



B. L. ens. sen. delin.

J. Stuart sculp.

Secura fas est Diis indulgere quieti

Et licet humanis rebus abesse Jovi.

*Indefessus Atlas caelorum sustinet Orbis
Tellurisque regit pervigil ANNA glori*

*Let various Realms in various Tongues no more
Altræa's flight and their own loss deplore;*

*To Britain's Isle withdrawn the Goddess Reigns
And, as full in her Scales, is Charge of Earth's*



*Secura fas est Diis indulgere quieti
Et licet humanis rebus abesse Jovi.*

*Indefessus Atlas caelorum sustinet Orbis
Tellurisque regit pervigil ANNA glori*

*Let various Realms in various Tongues no more
Altræa's flight and their own loss deplore;*

*To Britain's Isle withdrawn the Goddes's Reign
And, as full in her Scales, is Charge of Earth's*

445 E 2
4-BB. C.
ATLAS GEOGRAPHUS:
OR, A COMPLEAT
System of Geography,
ANCIENT and MODERN.

CONTAINING

What is of most Use in *Bleau, Varenins, Cellarius, Cluverius, Baudrand, Brietius, Sanfon, &c.*

WITH THE

Discoveries and Improvements of the best Modern
AUTHORS to this Time. Illustrated with
about 100 New MAPS, done from the
latest Observations, by *Herman Moll*, Geogra-
pher; and many other CUTS, by the best
Artists.

EUROPE is Two Volumes, with Sixty eight
MAPS, *Sanfon's TABLES, &c.*

VOL. I.

In the *SAVOR*:

Printed by *John Nutt*; and Sold by *Benjamin Barker* and *Charles King*
in *Westminster-Hall*; *Benjamin Tooke* at the *Middle-Temple Gate*; *William*
Taylor at the *Ship* in *Pater-Noster-Row*; *Henry Clements* at the *Half-Moon*
in *St. Paul's Church-yard*; *Richard Parker* and *Ralph Smith* under the
Piazza of the *Royal-Exchange*; and *John Morphew* near *Stationers-*
Hall. MDCCXI.

ADVERTISEMENT.

EUROPE being finish'd, except *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, which is now preparing for the Press; and as Informations and Accounts of Places come in, they are inserted in their County, &c. It is entituled, *Britannia & Hibernia Antiqua & Nova*; in which will be a new and accurate Map of each County, with the Wapentacks, Laths, Hundreds, &c. and all the Roads exactly mark'd. In the Whole will be about 100 Maps, and many Cuts. We have receiv'd Accounts from above 100 Persons, each giving an Account of some or more considerable Places, and many more are doing; as, a Gentleman will give a particular Account of *Eaton* College, how endow'd, what Livings in their Gift, &c. another that of *Winchester*, with *William of Wickham's* Life, his Foundations, Charities, &c. and so of most other Places in *Great Britain* and *Ireland*. In less than Six Months we shall begin to print, and shall do the Counties in Alphabetical Order; as *Bedfordshire*, *Berkshire*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Cambridgeshire*, *Cheshire*, *Cornwal*, &c. Gentlemen are desired to send in what Accounts they think proper for this Design to *John Nutt*, Printer, in the *Savoy*, paying Postage.



T H E

PREFACE.

THE Usefulness of Geography is so well known, and the Study of it so general among all Persons of Education, that 'tis needless to enlarge upon that Head, to insist upon the Use of it to Statesmen, Scholars of all Sorts, Merchants and Tradesmen, or to say that 'tis both profitable and pleasant to Persons of all Ranks, who by reading a Work of this Nature may know all that is curious in the World, without the Fatigue or other Inconveniencies of Travelling.

The Turks have a Proverb, That those who never saw the World, think 'tis made like their Father's House; and they have a particular Reason for it, since one of their late great Courtiers, when he heard the Siege of Vienna was rais'd by the King of Poland, fell into a great Rage against the French King for suffering that Prince, as he suppos'd, to march thro' his Dominions, in order to do it. M. Martineau du Pleffis, in the Preface to his Three Volumes of Geography, takes Notice of several gross Errors of Authors for Want of a competent Knowledge in this Science, and especially of the Ancients, French as well as others; some of whom talked of burning the Pont-Euxin, because Pont in that Language signifies a Bridge. Some thought the Morea to be the Country of the Moors; and others, when they heard of Venice, Genoa, and Lucca, took them to be rich Italian Ladies. That same Author relates a very pleasant Mistake of an Ambassador of our own Country through Ignorance of Geography. He happened to be at the Court of Rome when M. Bethancourt, a Frenchman, discover'd the Canaries, which were the Fortunate Islands of the Ancients, Pope Clement VI. having made a Grant of them under that Name in 1343, to the Count de Clermont, Son to Alphonfus de la Cerda, a Prince of the Blood Royal of France and Spain. The Ambassador thinking there were no other Fortunate Islands but those of Great Britain, left Rome in Disgust, and made Hast to England, to acquaint his Master that the Pope had given away his Crown.

The Want of a sufficient Knowledge in this Science, has led even some late Authors into such gross Mistakes, as to talk of Vessels sailing from the Caspian into the

a

Euxin

Euxin Sea, without considering that they have no Communication with one another, and that the Mountains of Elbours lie betwixt them.

—We have Reason to be thankful that we live in an Age of more Knowledge, towards which the many learned Books of Geography have not a little contributed.

And we have Ground to hope, that the following Work will advance that useful Science further among us than any Thing which has yet appeared in English; not that we would disparage the Endeavours of such of our Countrymen as have gone before us, which have all of them been useful in their Way and Time.

But we may presume to say without Vanity, That as we have taken a larger Field than any of our Predecessors, we have likewise had better Opportunities to improve it; for the greatest Part of the modern Discoveries have been printed since any Work of this Nature was done in English. Because Geography of it self is looked upon by all but the Curious to be a dry and unpleasant Study, we have taken Care to mix it with ancient and modern History in their proper Places; and besides the General History at the Beginning of each Country, we have taken Notice of the remarkable Actions that have happened in or near any of the Places we describe, as well as of every Thing that is curious in Art or Nature, in order to make this Work pleasant as well as instructive to the Reader; so that it contains a View of Universal History of all Sorts, as well as of Geography.

Some of our Subscribers have indeed complain'd of our being too prolix; but if they consider the great Number of Authors we had to peruse, and that our Plan was to take in Ancient History and Geography as well as Modern, with Natural History, and an Account of the Religion and Government of every Country, we hope they will excuse us, and particularly as to the ancient Geography of Germany, the Netherlands, France, Spain, Portugal, Swisserland, Italy, and Greece, because those Countries having been the Scene of great Actions, the ancient Historians and Geographers who treat of 'em cannot be understood without such Helps as are here afforded.

The Learned know how much Baudrand is valued upon that Account, tho' he has little else but a bare Description of the Places he treats of; what Pains Valesius, Papyrius Masson, and others, have taken upon the ancient Geography of France; what Esteem Cluverius has justly acquir'd for his *Germania Italia*, and *Sicilia Antiqua*. Wormius is deservedly praised for his *Antiquities of Denmark*, &c. and Brietius did very much oblige the learned World by his *Parallela Geographiæ Veteris & Novæ*. Buno, and the other Annotators on Cluverius's *Introduction*, have had their deserv'd Applause; and Cellarius's *Notitia Orbis Antiqui* comes short of none of them. The *Atlas Historique* furnishes us with many Curiosities in Relation to Genealogy, History and Geography, that had not been taken Notice of in other Works of this Nature; which, together with *Bleau's Atlas in Eleven great Folio Volumes*, and the Four of 'em that were done into English with Improvements, besides the Geographies of Varenus, Luyts, La Forrest, Du Plessis, &c. and the celebrated Travels of Monconys, Dr. Brown, Mr. Ray, Mr. Laffels, Mr. Misson, Mr. Willoughby, Dr. Northleigh, Mr. Wheeler, and Mr. Spon, with the Histories of the French Royal Academy, our own Philosophical Transactions, and others whom we can't now stay to name, have all of them been carefully consulted, in order to make this Work complete.

The P R E F A C E.

iii

Particular Care has likewise been taken to make our Descriptions agree with our Maps, a Thing too much neglected by those who went before us, which made their Descriptions the less intelligible; and where our own Maps were wanting in any Place because of the Smallness of the Scale, we always consulted those of Sanſon and Bleau to supply that Defect, as to the Distance and Bearing of Places; and have taken Notice of any considerable Difference betwixt their Maps and Moll's, which being from the latest Discoveries, and engraven on Purpose for this Work, are much more exact than theirs. We must own, that we were very much obliged to the learned Dr. Nicholſon, now Lord Bishop of Carlisle's Volume of the great English Atlas for our Account of Germany, that learned Person having very much improved the Account which Bleau and others had given of it before him: And besides what Books the Proprietors could purchase at Home and Abroad to carry on the Design, which already amount to 150 l. we have been obliged to publick Libraries in this City as well as to private Ones, and particularly to those Two learned and communicative Gentlemen, Dr. Hans Sloane, and Dr. Tancred Robinson, whose Libraries are as well furnished for this Sort of Learning, as any perhaps in Europe. We could do no less in Justice, than to take this Way of returning our Thanks to those Two worthy Gentlemen, and to let the Publick know, how much they are obliged to them for many curious Things in this Work, which we could not be furnished with elsewhere.

By this it appears, that our Materials are much better than ever were used for any Work of this Nature done in England, and that we have likewise been supplied with the best that could be had for Money Abroad. The Authors we made Use of are too many to enumerate here; but when the whole is compleated, a Catalogue of them will be printed, and such as belong to the Proprietors sold by publick Auction, for which End they are carefully preserved, and lock'd up as they are done with; and those which are lent by private Gentlemen duly return'd.

Modesty will not allow us to commend our own Performance; but this we can truly say, That we have not been wanting in Pains; and by the good Reception it has met with from the Publick, and above 100 Letters we can produce, which commend it to be the largest and most compleat System of this Nature in all Parts yet extant, we have no Reason to doubt of the like Encouragement for the remaining Parts of the World.

'Tis Seven Years since this Work was first undertaken; and that Mr. Moll begun to engrave the Maps, which he has now compleated, for the Four Parts of the World.

The Introduction which relates to the Scientifical Part, was done by the Direction of the learned Dr. Gregory, late Astronomy Professor at Oxon, who likewise gave his Advice as to the Choice of Books and Materials; and for the History and Geography he recommended Two ingenious Gentlemen, who, with some others of University and liberal Education, have been employed in it; and if Health permit, will go through with the Whole.

We are not so vain as to think our Performance without Faults; for to pretend to that, especially in a Work of this Nature, were to suppose our selves to be more than Men, but we have been as careful to avoid Errors as we could. We invited Gentle-

The P R E F A C E.

men from Time to Time to send us an Account of what Mistakes they found, but very few of 'em have thought fit to oblige us in that Matter. We were indeed challenged by a Gentleman for saying, the Muscovites deny Transubstantiation; and giving this as one of the Reasons, That they had their Religion from the Greeks, who never believed any such Thing. Our Authority for saying so of the Muscovites, was the Earl of Carlisle's Embassy; but we own there are Writers who say otherwise. Yet that the Ancient Greek Church believed no such Thing, is evident from the Account we have given of their Religion in its proper Place.

The same Gentleman complains that we say, Pag. 948. the English Seminary at Doway is under the Conduct of Jesuits, but mistakes us; we said it was so at its first Institution by Philip II. and thought we had Reason, since William Allen, afterwards Cardinal, who founded that Seminary, wrote a Book entituled, *Apologetica pro Sacerdotibus Societatis Jesu*, as appears by the *Athenæ Oxonienses*. The English Priests, &c. who fled thither in Queen Elizabeth's Time, were afterwards obliged by D. Lewis de Requiesens, Governour of the Spanish Netherlands, to retire from thence and went to Rheims; but what Alteration has been made in the House at Doway since, we know not. As to what that Gentleman says further, that we are too partial against the Roman Catholicks when Matters of Controversie come in our Way: We shall only reply, that we act as Historians, and not Criticks, and quote our Authors of both Communions. However, we shall always be thankful to him or any other Gentlemen that inform us of what they think Mistakes, and shall impartially consider them.

Another Gentleman was so kind as to inform us of a Mistake and an Omission in our Accounts of the Dukes of Holstein, Pag. 549. They were occasioned by mislaying an Insertion in the Copy, and to be corrected thus: Col. 1. Pag. 549. towards the Close, after Christian Albert, read, Who was born in 1641, expelled his Dominions by the King of Denmark, his Brother-in-Law who demolished his Strong Towns, &c. Then after the Words on both Sides in the last Line, add, Christian Albert died in 1694, and was succeeded by his Son Frederic, who married Hedwige Sophia, Daughter to King Charles XI. of Sweden, was killed at the Battle of Clissen in Poland, in 1702. and succeeded by his Son Charles Frederic, born at Stockholm the 10th of April, 1700.

The same Gentleman took Notice that we had omitted, 1. The County of Werin-gen in Lower Saxony, Pag. 543. and its chief Town Elbingerode. The Reason was, that 'tis now an obsolete Distinction, not mention'd in Sanfon's Maps, or the Matricula of the Empire; the Town inconsiderable, and that this Division is included in the Counties of Blankenburg and Reinsteine. 2. That we had omitted the Town and County of Pappenheim. To this the same Answer may serve, that Count being more noted for his Post as Hereditary Marshal of the Empire, than for his Territory, which is very small, and lies betwixt those of Oettingen and Newburg in Franconia. The Family has also some Lands about Donawert and Memmingen. The Town of Pappenheim lies about 12 Miles S. E. from Donawert, but does not merit a Description.

The P R E F A C E.

IV V

We were obliged for gaining Time and Room to forbear giving the Long. and Lat. of every Place, but satisfied our selves with giving those of the Capital or most remarkable Towns, from which we give the Distance and Bearing of others; so that they will be as readily found by the Scale and Compass, as if the Long. and Lat. had been set down.

The Account of Great Britain and Ireland is reserved for a Volume by it self, for the Reasons which have been published in several of the preceding Months. We shall begin it as soon as our Materials are all come to Hand, of which we receive more or less from Gentlemen in the Country every Post. In the mean Time we go on with Asia, for which the 12 following Maps are done by Mr. Moll, viz.
1. Asia in General. 2. Turkey in Asia, or Asia Minor. 3. Arabia. 4. Persia. 5. The West Part of India, or the Empire of the Great Mogul. 6. The East Part of India, or that beyond the Ganges. 7. Independant Tartary. 8. China. 9. The Principal Islands of the East-Indies. 10. The Isle of Japan. 11. North Guinea. 12. North Britain, the Ladrones, &c. The Maps of the Ancient Geography of Asia, &c. are, 1. Asia Antiqua & Nova, Cluver. 2. Scythia & Tartaria, Cluver. 3. India Orientalis & Insularum Antiqua & Nova, Cluver. 4. Persia, Armenia, Assyria, Mesopotamia & Babylonia, Cluver. 5. Chersonesi hodie Natolia, Cluver. 6. Terra Sancta, Cluver. 7. Syria, Cluver.

Besides these, we take in Sanfon's Tables with many Cuts, and shall bring the Whole into one Volume of 12 or 14 Months.

Africa will be contained in such another; and America, with Great Britain and Ireland, will be Two Volumes more.

To each Volume there will be an Alphabetical Table like this, and a general Index of Omissions and Errata to the Whole; with Tables for reducing Foreign Weights, Coins, and Measures, to those of Great Britain.

*We shall take Care when the Work is finished to collect the Errata of the Whole; in the mean Time the Reader is desired to read, *Introduct.* pag. 21. l. 38. for 16. 61. to observe that pag. 235 and 236 are Twice number'd; and therefore if he seek for any Place referred to in those Numbers, he must look to both. And in the Table, add *Kingdom* to *Astracan*.*

It would have swelled the Index too much to insert the Name of every particular Prince, but the Reader may easily find them in the History of the Counties to which they belong.

The

*The NAMES of so many of the
SUBSCRIBERS as have sent
them in to the Undertakers.*

Note: Those that are omitted, (for we are informed several were sent that never came to our Hand) shall be inserted when Asia comes out, if they please to send them.

A.

SIR Hugh Acland, of Devonshire, *Bar.*

William Abboll, of East-Claydon, *Esq;*

----- Abell *Esq;* at Aylesbury.

William Acton *Esq;*

John Alexander, of Black-house near Glasgow *Esq;*

Edmund Arblaster, of Longdon in Staffordshire, *Esq;*

Nathaniel Axtell, of the Inner-Temple, *Esq;*

Matthew Aylmer *Esq;* Commander in Chief of Her Majesty's Fleet at Sea.

Mr Thomas Agnes of Colchester.

Mr Thomas Anger at Colchester.

John Alder, of St. Andrew's Holborn, *Gent.*

Thomas Allestree, of Alvaiston, Derbyshire, *Gent.*

Mr Robert Alexander, Merchant in Glasgow.

Mr John Andrews, Teacher of the Mathematics in James-Deeping, Lincolnshire.

The Rev. Mr Israel Antony Aufere, Minister of the French Church in the Savoy.

Mr Matthew Appleyard, of St. Margaret's, Westminster.

Mr Peter Aram, Gardiner, at Newly, Yorkshire.

The Rev. Mr George Arnett, of Roxham near Sleiford, Lincolnshire.

Timothy Ash, of Gunthorp near Peterborough, *Gent.*

Mr Edmund Asheton.

Mr Atkins of Dounham-Market.

Mr Henry Atkins of Exon.

Mr Ashworth, Bookseller in Durham.

B

THE Rt. Hon. William Henry Granville, Earl of Bath.

The Rt. Hon. Charles Lord Marquis of Beverley

Sir Edward Bagot *Bar.*

Robert Balch, of Bridgewater, *Esq;*

Richard Barker, of Great Horwood, *Esq;*

Richard Barker *Esq;* at Aylesbury.

William Barret, of the Inner-Temple, *Esq;* Solicitor of the Treasury.

John Beacroft *Esq;*

Francis Boynton *Esq;*

John Bridges *Esq;*

Joseph Brown, of Shepton-Mallet in Somersetshire, *Esq;*

William Burton, of Bullwell-Park, Nottinghamshire, *Esq;*

William Busby *Esq;* at Aylesbury.

Thomas Byre, of Shepton-Mallet in Somersetshire, *Esq;*

Mr George Baker of Durham.

Mr Samuel Ball of Bristol.

Gabriel Ballam *Gent.*

William

The NAMES of the Subscribers.

vii

- William Banks, of Wike, *Gent.*
 Mr Barber.
 The Rev. Mr Thomas Barbon, *Vicar of Burton in Kendall*
 The Rev. Mr John Barker of Peterborough.
 Mr Benjamin Bartlett of Bradford.
 Mr Moses Bartlet of Biddeford.
 Mr Samuel Barton at Keverston in the County of Durham.
 Mr Roger Basket of Sarum.
 Mr James Baskerville of Bristol.
 Mr Stephen Bais.
 Mr William Bais of Aunby, Lincolnshire, *Clerk.*
 The Rev. Mr Basset.
 Mr Batchelor.
 The Rev. Mr Paul Batchelor.
 The Rev. Mr Thomas Battersby in Durham.
 Mr George Batton of Bishopston near Sarum.
 Mr Thomas Baxter.
 William Baynes, of the Custom-House, *Gent.*
 Mr William Beamond of East-Bargholt near Colchester.
 Mr John Beaufoy, of Evelshams.
 Mr Jonas Beaver of Cullingworth.
 Mr Martin Bedwell, of St. Margaret's Westminster, *Brewer.*
 The Rev. Mr Belgrave, *Rector of North-Kilworth, Leicestershire.*
 Mr James Belts of Dis in Norfolk.
 The Rev. Mr Edward Bentley at Coggeshall in Essex.
 Cha. Benskin, of Albvafton, Derbyshire, *Gent.*
 Thomas Benskin of Leicester, *M. D.*
 William Benson, of St. Andrew's Holborn, *Gent.*
 - - - Berbeare, of St. Margaret's, Westminster.
 The Rev. Mr Best.
 Dr Bierman.
 Mr George Billamy.
 The Rev. Mr William Bishop.
 Mr Orlando Birch.
 Mr William Blount of Hortham in Suffex.
 Mr Thomas Blyth.
 Captain Richard Boswell.
 Mr William Bothway of Crowland, Lincolnshire.
 Simon Boulte, of the Exchequer, *Gent.*
 Edward Boulte, of the same, *Gent.*
 John Boulte, of the same, *Gent.*
 The Rev. Mr Samuel Bourne, *Fellow of Christ-Church College, Oxon.*
 John Bowden, of Derbyshire, *Gent.*
 The Rev. Mr John Bower, *Rector of Roas.*
 Mr William Boyer, *Printer.*
 The Rev. Mr Edward Boys.
 The Rev. Mr William Bracket.
 Mr James Braine Junior.
 Mr Nicholas Braman, *A. M. of Wadham College, Oxon.*
 Mr Richard Braxton of Bristol.
 Mr Brayman of March-Gibbon near Aylesbury.
 Dr. Robert Bredy in Newcastle upon Tyne.
 Thomas Brerewood *Gent.*
 Mr John Brook.
 The Rev. Mr Brookes of Norton, Leicestershire.
 The Rev. Mr Broughton of Leicester.
 John Brown, of Peterborough, *Gent.*
 Mr . . . Brown of Exon.
 Mr William Brown of Ashweek.
 The Rev. Mr Brundish, *Rector of Welham.*
 Mr Morgan Bruton.
 Mr John Bryars.
 Mr George Buchan, *Clerk to the Lord of the Sessions at Edinburgh.*
 Robert Buckbury, of Sleiford, Lincolnshire, *Gent.*
 Mr Joseph Bully, *Woollendrapier in Dartmouth.*
 Mr William Busby, of March-Gibbon.
 Mr John Bushell of Hackney in Middlesex.
 The Rev. Mr Burnet of Uxtoxeter, Staffordshire.
 The Rev. Mr Burrough, *Rector of Depden.*
 Mr Robert Burroughs.
 The Rev. Mr Burton, *Rector of Lofthouse.*
 Mr John Butcher of Colchester.
 Mr Robert Butterworth.
 Mr William Baily, *Bookseller in Lichfield.*
 Mr Benjamin Barker, *Bookseller.*
 Mr John Barkidall, *Bookseller in Cirencester.*
 Mr Barnes, *Bookseller in Pall-mall.*
 Mr Andrew Bell, *Bookseller at the Cross-Keys and Bible in Cornhil.*
 Mr Francis Blich, *Bookseller in Colchester.*
 Mr Bodington, *Bookseller.*
 Mr James Bonwick, *Bookseller in London.*
 Mr John Bouchier, *Bookseller in Peterborough.*
 Mr Godfrey Bouchier, *Bookseller in Peterborough.*
 John Bushel, of Hackney, *Gent.*
 Mr Boyer, *Bookseller in Ludgar-street.*
 Mr Joseph Button, *Bookseller in Newcastle.*

SIR Marmaduke Constable Bar.

Richard Camell, of Kilkenny, Esq;
 John Cathcart, of Calaltoun near Glasgow,
 Esq;
 John Clerk Esq;
 Robert Corker, of Falmouth, Esq;
 John Crawford, of Chelsea, Esq;
 Crauford, of Chelsea, Esq;
 John Cuthberts Esq; Recorder of Newcastle
 upon Tyne.

Mr Alexander Caldwell.
 Mr William Carelyll, Merchant in Glasgow.
 Mr Ger. Carmichall, Philosophy Professor in
 Glasgow.
 Edward Carter Gent.
 Mr Carter, Supervisor of the Excise.
 The Rev. Mr Cartwright, Rector of Kelham,
 Nottinghamshire, and Prebendary of South-
 wea.
 The Rev. Mr Castell.
 Mr John Cauley of Lincoln.
 Mr Sheppard Cerne.
 Mr Edward Chaloner at Gisborough in
 Yorkshire.
 Mr Henry Chandler of the Bath.
 Mr Samuel Chandler of the same.
 The Rev. Mr Benjamin Chandler at Worth in
 Sussex.
 The Rev. Mr Thomas Chapham, Master of the
 Free-School in Bradford, and Lecturer there.
 Mr Thomas Chapman, of Inglesby in Lin-
 colnshire, Philomat.
 Mr Nathaniel Charnels of Nottingham.
 Al. Chaulk, of the Exchequer, Gent.
 Mr Richard Chauncy.
 Edward Checkley, of Allerton near Peter-
 borough, Gent.
 William Chetwood, M. D.
 Mr James Clapham, Mathematician.
 Mr Edmund Claypot.
 Samuel Clark, of Chesterfield, Derbyshire,
 Gent.
 The Rev. Mr Clement of Long-Sutton in
 Lincolnshire.
 The Rev. Mr Robert Clerk, Rector of Barford
 and Baverstock near Sarum.
 Mr Nathaniel Cock of Chunligh.
 The Rev. Mr Francis Coleman, Fellow of Cor-
 pus Christi College, Cambridge.

Mr Richard Collet of London, Vintner.
 The Rev. Mr Philip Collier, Rector of St. Co-
 lumbe, Cornwall.
 Mr John Collins, of St. Margaret's, West-
 minster, Gent.
 Mr Nathaniel Collins, of the same, Distiller.
 Henry Coltman, of the Exchequer, Gent.
 The Rev. Mr John Comin of Kingsbridge.
 Mr Conduit at Stauton, Leicestershire.
 The Rev. Mr William Cooke of Clare, Suffolk.
 Mr Jonathan Cotton of Kidder.
 Mr Coulson of Lichfield.
 The Rev. Mr Cowper, Rector of Scole in Nor-
 folk.
 Mr Cox, of Molton, Lincolnshire.
 Mr William Craige, Merchant in Glasgow.
 The Rev. Mr John Creed.
 Dr Cromwell of Mansfield.
 Mr James Croftland, Minister of the Gospel.
 The Rev. Mr Thomas Crowther.
 William Curtis Gent.
 Mr Thomas Curtis
 Mr Patrick Campble, Bookseller in Dublin.
 Mr Clayton, Bookseller in Manchester.
 Mr Samuel Crouch, Bookseller in Pope's-head
 Alley, Cornhil.

D.

HENRY Darby Esq;
 Christopher Duffield Esq;
 Mr William Dadley.
 Mr Thomas Dalgarno.
 Mr John Darby of Dis in Norfolk.
 Mr Darch of Glastenbury.
 Capt. Darlignevare.
 Robert Darwent, of Rotheram, Yorkshire,
 Gent.
 James Deacon Gent.
 Capt. Nicholas Deareing, of St. Margaret's
 Westminster.
 Mr Denison of Great Wigborough near Col-
 chester.
 Mr William Dickson.
 The Rev. Mr Thomas Dixon at Whitehaven
 in Cumberland.
 Mr John Dougharty of Bewdly.
 James Douns, of Red-Lion-Square, Gent.
 The Rev. Mr Drury, Rector of Keyworth in
 Nottinghamshire.
 Mr Alexander Dunlop, Greek Professor in
 Glasgow.

Mr Wil-

The NAMES of the Subscribers.

ix

Mr John Davis.
Mr ~~De launet~~ in Berwick-street near Soho-Square.
Mr William Dunlop, *Bibliothecarius*, Glasgow.
Mr Matthias Dagnell of Aylesbury, *Bookseller*.
Mr John Darby, *Bookseller*.
Mr Dickie, *Bookseller* in Glasgow.

E.

William Eberall, *Clerk*.
Mr Thomas Edmonds, *Surgeon* at Kingston in Warwickshire.
Mr John Edwards of Bristol.
Mr Thomas Ellerby, *Writing-Master*.
Mr Thomas Ellis of Wernae, Carnarvonshire.
Mr Thomas Ellison of Bingley, *Master of the Free School there*.
Mr Elly of Hinkley, Leicestershire, *Apothecary*.
George Empson, of Wike, *Gent*.
Mr Thomas Effenton of Cirencester, Gloucestershire.
The Rev. Mr Hugh Evans.
The Rev. Mr David Evans at Chesham in Hertfordshire.
The Rev. Mr. John Eveleigh of Brixham.
Mr John Exton of Lynn in Norfolk.
Capt. David Eyton, of Mairegwaylodd in Flintshire.

F.

SIR Thomas Franklyn, of the County of Middlesex, *Bar*.
John Forcer, *alias* Fossour, at Harberus nigh Durham, *Esq*.
William Freke, of Hinton St. Mary's, Dorset, *Esq*.
Mr John Fabyan of Totnes.
Mr George Faithing of Worcester.
Mr Farrer, *Apothecary* in Mansfield.
Mr Lawrence Fashion.
Mr Timothy Felton at Sudbury in Suffolk.
The Rev. Mr Bradgate Ferrand, *Vicar* of Bradford, Yorkshire.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Ferrand of Bingley, *Pastor* of Thornton.
Mr Robert Few of Lynn in Norfolk.
Mr Nicholas Field, *Surgeon*.
Mr Thomas Fincher of Worcester.
Dr Fitzgeraldell.

Mr John Fleming of Stamford, Lincolnshire.
Thomas Fletcher, of the Exchequer, *Gent*.
Mr Thomas Fletcher of Mansfield, *Clerk*.
Mr Fonvive in Leicester-Fields.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Forbes, *Rector* of Bicester, Oxfordshire.
Mr John Forth of Staindrop in the County of Durham.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Foster, *Picar* of Cliffe-Pypard near Marlborough in Wiltshire.
The Rev. Mr Peter Foulks, *Canon Residentiary* of St. Peter's, Exon.
The Rev. Mr Frankland, *Rector* of Oswaldkirk.
Mr Sam. Freeman, *Minister* in Nottingham.
Mr Frickleton of Lidford.
Mr Tho. Frye of Collumpton, Devonshire.
Mr John Full Jun. of Downton, in the Parish of Dittisham.
The Rev. James Fymey, D. D. *Prebendary* of Durham.
Mr David Fucebain, *Bookseller* in Edinburgh.
Mr John Fowler, *Bookseller* in Northampton.
Mr William Freeman, *Bookseller* in Durham.

G

John Gascoigne *Esq*.
William Gee *Esq*.
John Godfrey at Norton-Court in Kent, *Esq*.
Thomas Green at Easthorp near Colchester, *Esq*.
Thomas Gresley, of Neatherseale, Leicestershire, *Esq*.
Nehemiah Griffith, of Rhual, *Esq*.
Joseph Guildford *Esq*.
The Rev. Mr Miles Gale, *Pastor* of Kighley, Yorkshire.
John Gallop, *Jun.* of Dorchester, *Gent*.
Mr Charles Garboe near Thorney-Abbey.
Thomas Gardener, of the Tower of London, *Gent*.
Mr Maurice Gardiner.
Mr Francis Garner, of Idle in Yorkshire.
Ephraim Garthwaite, of Rapsley, Lincolnshire, *Clerk*.
Mr Robert Geldart.
The Rev. Mr Ralph Gladman.
Mr Edward Gataker, of Swanburn near Ailesbury.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Gibson *Rector* of Peoplaton.
Mr John Gilman, B. D. *Fellow* of St. John's College, Oxon.

c

Mr Ralph

The NAMES of the Subscribers.

Mr Ralph Gladman, *Clerk, at Ailesbury.*
 Eman. Gladurin, *Derbyshire. Gent.*
 Mr Richard Godson.
 Mr William Goldwyn, *of Bristol.*
 Mr Le Grand.
 Mr Green, *of Sandingham.*
 Mr Gregory, *Son to Dr. Gregory.*
 The Rev. Mr Griffith, *Rector of Whitwell.*
 Francis Guyton, *M. D. of Dis in Norfolk.*
 Mr Luellen Gwillim.
 Mr Thomas Gittins, *Bookseller in Salop.*
 Mr Goodwin, *Bookseller in Fleetstreet.*
 Mr Richard Gravet, *Bookseller in Bristol.*

H.

THE Hon. William Lord Marquis of Har-
 tington.

Sir John Holland Bar.

John Hall, *of Pitcombe, Esq;*
 Richard Haynes, *of Bristol, Esq;*
 Carew Hervey, *alias Mildmay, of Marks
 near Rumford in Essex, Esq;*
 Thomas Hewit, *of Shire-Oakes, Notting-
 hamshire, Esq;*
 John Hill *Esq;*
 Robert Holt *Esq;*
 Thomas How Jun. *of Grays-Inn, Esq;*
 The Rev. Mr Charles Hacker, *Vicar of Lawd-
 ham in Nottinghamshire.*
 Mr Roger Hainworth, *of Lynn in Nor-
 folk.*
 Jeremiah Halfehide, *of Orsdale, Notting-
 hamshire, Gent.*
 John Hall *Gent.*
 Mr Ezekiel Hall.
 John Hamilton *Gent.*
 Mr Thomas Hamilton, *Son of Sir David.*
 Thomas Hancock *M. D.*
 Mr William Hardesly, *M. D. of Ashburn,
 Derbyshire.*
 Mr Richard Hardwick, *of Lynn in Nor-
 folk.*
 Mr Thomas Harison, *Mathematician.*
 Mr Hawker, *of Luppit, Devonshire.*
 Mr Walter Hawkeiworth, *of Bristol.*
 The Rev. Mr Thomas Hawkins, *A M. Pre-
 bendary of Southwell, Nottinghamshire.*
 Mr Hawkins, *of Wisbich in the Isle of Ely,
 Cambridgehire.*
 Mr John Hawky.
 The Rev. Mr Richard Haworth, *Rector of
 East-Hoadly in Suffex.*

Mr John Hayes, *Merchant.*
 The Rev. Mr John Hayes, *of Whopland,
 Lincolnshire.*
 Mr Abraham Hayman, *Attorney at Law in
 Dodbrooke.*
 Mr Haywood, *A. M. of Dronfield, Derby-
 shire.*
 Mr John Heales, *of the Close, Sarum.*
 Dr. Heburne, *of Lynn in Norfolk.*
 Mr Thomas Helcoate, *of Litcham.*
 Mr Hemus, *Apothecary in Nottingham.*
 Mr Henry Heylin.
 Mr Heywood *of Mansfield.*
 Mr Samuel Hillary.
 Mr Richard Hill.
 Mr Harry Hill, *of Banwell.*
 Mr Hill, *of Pepper-Hill.*
 Mr Hoare, *of Bridgewater.*
 The Rev. Mr William Hodson, *A. M. Rector
 of Salsaby St. Peter's, in the County of
 Lincoln, and Chaplain to the Right Hon. the
 Earl of Lincoln.*
 The Rev. Mr Hodson, *Rector of Baynton.*
 Mr Hoyle.
 The Rev. Mr Holland, *Rector of Waltham,
 Leicestershire.*
 Thomas Holland, *Surgeon, of Chesterfield,
 Derbyshire.*
 Isaac Hollings, *of Shipley, Gent.*
 Mr Tempest Holms.
 Mr Hook, *of Bridgewater.*
 The Rev. Henry Hootton, *M. A. Rector of
 Peddletown, Dorsetshire.*
 Mr Thomas Horne.
 The Rev. Mr Howell, *of Abington, Staf-
 fordshire.*
 Mr Francis Howgrave, *of Gainsborough.*
 Mr Samuel Hyghmore, *of Darking, Sur-
 rey.*
 The Rev. Mr John Hughes, *of Ware in Hert-
 fordshire.*
 Mr Adiel Humphrey, *of Linton, Cam-
 bridgeshire.*
 Mr Christopher Hunter *in Durham.*
 The Rev. Mr Christopher Hunter, *A. M. Cu-
 rate of Ledgfield, Durham.*
 The Rev. Mr Hunter, *Prebendary of the Ca-
 thedral Church of Litchfield.*
 Mr Hurdman, *of Stone in Staffordshire.*
 Mr Robert Hutton, *of Houghton Lespring
 in the County of Durham.*
 Mr Hamond, *Bookseller, at Bath.*
 Mr Harding, *Bookseller, in St. Martin's
 Lane.*

Mr Hart-

The NAMES of the Subscribers.

xi

Mrs. Hartford, *Bookseller in Portsmouth.*
Mr Joseph Hodgson, *of the City of Chester, Bookseller.*
Mr Thomas Horne, *Bookseller, at the South Entrance of the Royal Exchange.*
Mr. James Howard, *Bookseller in Kidderminster.*
Mr John Hunt, *Bookseller in Hereford.*
Mr Thomas Hurt, *Bookseller in Coventry.*

I.

Alexander James, *of Bristol, Esq;*
Thomas Jenkins, *of Burwalsh, Esq;*
Thomas Jeynson Esq;
Mr Robert Jackson, *Customer, of the Port of Hull.*
Mr Theodore Jacobson, *Merchant.*
Henry Jescott *Gent.*
Mr John Jennings, *of Bristol.*
The Rev. Mr. Jenkinson, *Minister of Datchet.*
Mr Peter Jennings.
Mr Stephen Jeudwin.
Mr Martin Innis, *of Bristol.*
John Jobber, *of the Pipe-Office, Gent.*
Mr Johnson, *Master of the Free-School in Nottingham.*
Mr James Johnson, *of Nottingham.*
Mr — Johnson.
Mr John Johnson, *Merchant.*
Dr. John Johnston.
Mr Thomas Jones, *A. B.*
Mr Edmond Ireland, *of Oundle, Northamptonshire.*
Mr Edmond Jeffreys, *Bookseller, in Cambridge.*
Mr Michael Johnson, *Bookseller, in Hitchfield.*

K.

Samuel Kemp *Esq;*
Charles Killigrew *Esq;*
Charles Knotesford *Esq;*
The Rev. Mr John Keighby, *Minister, at Woborough.*
Mr Henry Kellhal, *of Trinity-College, Cambridge.*
Mr Christopher Kemp.
Mr Robert Kendale, *Curate of Fiscarton.*
Mr Stephen Kenward.
John Kighley, *of Gray's-Inn, Gent.*
Mr Nevil King, *of Alhby in Lincolnshire.*
Mr William King, *of East-Ham.*

John Kingstone, *Jun. of Thorney-Abbey, Gent.*
Mr John Kinnes, *of Belgrave, Leicester-shire.*
Mr John Kirke, *A. B.*
Mr Thomas Kneaton, *Writing-Master in Rufford, Essex.*
Mr George Knyfton, *of Uphill in Somerset-shire.*
Mr King, *Bookseller.*
Mr Knaplock, *Bookseller, in St. Paul's Church-yard.*
Mr Knapton, *Bookseller, in St. Paul's Church-yard.*

L.

Frevill Lambron *Esq;* *at Hardwick in the County of Durham.*
Marmsduke Langdale *Esq;*
Francis Lindley, *of Bouling in Yorkshire, Esq;*
Robert Lounds *Esq;* *at Aylesbury.*
Robert Lownds, *of Winslow, Esq;*
Mr William Lacey, *of Falkingham, Lincolnshire.*
Mr Henry Lane, *Merchant in Dartmouth.*
Valentine Lane, *of Dodford, Northamptonshire, Gent.*
Mr John Lamb, *of Nottingham.*
Mr John Lambert.
The Rev. Mr. Loughton, *Rector of Ipstock, Leicestershire.*
Anthony Lawrence, *M. D. of Tewkesbury.*
The Rev. Mr. Thomas Leavelly, *at Malden in Essex.*
Mr. Edward Leeds, *Jun. of London.*
Mr Leeds, *Usher of Bury School.*
Mr John Levit, *Merchant.*
The Rev. Mr. Lewis, *of Benifield, near Oundle.*
The Rev. Mr Samuel Ley, *of Exeter-College.*
The Rev. Mr. Lloyd, *Rector of Thraudiston in Suffolk.*
Mr James Loddington.
The Rev. Mr. John Loder, *M. A. Vicar of Napton, Warwickshire.*
James Loet *Gent.*
Francis Loggin, *of Gray's-Inn, Gent.*
Mr John Looker, *Surgeon.*
Mr Caleb Loudham, *Surgeon, of Exon.*
Mr William Loupe, *of Bristol.*
Mr John Lowdon, *Philosophy Professor in Glasgow.*

Mr Ro-

Mr Robert Low, of Ufford, near Stamford.
 Mr George Low, of Litchfield.
 Mr Thomas Ludwell, of Bruton.
 Mr Lawrence, Bookseller, in the Poultry.
 Mr William Lewis, Bookseller in Russel-street,
 Covent-Garden.
 Mr Loveday, Bookseller in Evelham, Wor-
 cestershire.

M

THE Rt. Hon the Earl of Meath.
 The Lord Viscount Morpeth, Son to the pre-
 sent Earl of Carlisle.

Robert Maclellan, of Barclay near Glasgow,
 Esq.

Gideon Maynard, of Brodridge in the Parish
 of Corneworthy, Esq.

Charles Milbourn, of the Pipe Office in
 Grays Inn, Esq.

Thomas Moore, of Bristol, Esq.

George Moreland, at Winifson in the County
 of Durham, Esq.

Francis Mundy, of Osbaston, Leicestershire,
 Esq.

Mr Hugh Mack-Bryd, Merchant in Glasgow.

James Mainwaring, Alderman of Chester.

The Rev. Mr John Mandevill, Rector of Waf-
 sop, Nottinghamshire.

Mr B. Marten, Physician in Broad-street.

Mr George Martin of St. Margaret's, West-
 minster, Brewer.

The Rev. Mr Thomas Martin.

Mr John Martin, Surgeon in Hatton-Gar-
 den.

Mr Thomas Mayers.

The Rev. Mr Samuel Maynard of Totnes.

The Rev. Mr Daniel Mayo at Kingston, Sur-
 rey.

The Rev. Mr. Mickelwaite, M. A. Rector of
 Gilling, Yorkshire.

The Rev. Mr. John Miller, M. A. Vicar of Ef-
 fingham, Surrey.

Mr John Mitchel of Lewis in Suffex.

Mr Mitchell of Evelham.

The Rev. Mr Edw. Moises, Vicar of Wimef-
 wold, Leicestershire.

The Rev. Mr Mompesson, Vicar of Mansfield,
 Nottinghamshire.

Mr More of Netherseale, Leicestershire.

Mr William Mores of Kilmarnock.

The Rev. Mr Morgan of Lichfield.

The Rev. Mr Roger Morgan, M. A.

Mr Cha. Morley, of Lincoln's-Inn-Fields.
 Thomas Moor Gent.

Mr John Moor of Bridgewater.

Mr Francis Moore, M. D. in Christ-Church
 Parish, Southwark.

Mr Morris of Exon, Druggist.

Mr John Moulton of Dils in Norfolk.

Mr John Mowbray, Attorney at Law, Dur-
 ham.

Mr Thomas Metcalfe, Bookseller in Drury-
 Lane.

Mr Daniel Midwinter, Bookseller, St. Paul's
 Church-yard.

Mr Mortlock, Bookseller in St. Paul's Church-
 yard.

Mr John Mountfort, Bookseller in Worcester.

N.

William Nelson Esq.

Mr Thomas Naylor, of the Parish of Ecclefs,
 Lancashire.

Mr John Newbold, Officer of the Excise.

The Rev. Mr Newcome, Vicar of Hunmandly.

Mr Nichols, of Stone in Staffordshire.

Mr Robert Nichols.

Mr Isaac Noble of Bristol.

Mr Henry Norbone, of Chute in Wilt-
 shire.

Mr Thomas Norbury.

Mr John Norman, of Bristol.

Mr John Norman of Biddesford, Devonshire.

Mr Thomas Normandy, Merchant.

Mr Norris, of Evelham.

The Rev. Mr North.

George North, Derbyshire, Gent.

Mr John Davison Norton, in the County of
 Durham.

Mr — Noy, of Exon.

Mr Thomas Norman, Bookseller in Lewis in
 Suffex.

O.

THE Right Hon. the Lord Overy.

William Oaker Gent.

The Rev. Mr. Offley.

The Rev. Mr Oldfeild, Rector of Brome in
 Suffolk.

Mr Oldfeild of Uttoxeter, Staffordshire.

The Rev. Mr John Olive.

Mr Thomas Oliver of Worcester.

Mr John Ore, A. M. at Glasgow.

The NAMES of the Subscribers.

xiii

The Rev. Mr. Charles Owen at Warrington in Lancashire.

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Owen of Hemsted in Hertfordshire

Mr Thomas Osborne, Bookfeller, in London

Mr John Porter, Nottinghamshire.

Mr Robert Potter of Colchester.

Mr Poulsted of Litchfield.

Mr Poultney of Evesham.

The Rev. Mr Powell, Rector of North Win-

feild, Derbyshire.

Mr Thomas Preston, Usher of the Free-School

in Bradford.

Mr Pretty of Little Cornard near Colchester.

John Prichard Gent.

Cæsar Printrose, Dr. of Physick, in Lincoln.

The Rev. Mr William Pritchard, Vicar of

Townstall and St. Saviour in Dartmouth.

Mr. William Proves, Jun.

Mr Conyer Purdhal of Worcester.

Mr Michael Puxton of Bristol.

The Rev. Mr Thomas Pyle, of Lynn in Nor-

folk.

Mr. John Phillips, Bookfeller.

Mr Picfley, Bookfeller in Oxon.

Q.
MR. Quant of Litchfeild.

Francis Quyno Gent.

R.
SIR John Rous Bar.

Sir Robert Raymond Knt. Her Majesty's

Solicitor General.

Walter Radenig, of Leicester, Esq;

Mr George Righton, of Peckham, Esq;

David Rowlands, of Hinton-Hall in the Isle

of Ely, Esq;

Mr Randall, Master of Bury School.

Thomas Rawlins, of Pophills, Warwick-

shire, Gent.

Richard Rawlinson Gent.

William Rawson, of Bradford in Yorkshire,

Gent.

The Rev. Mr. Raynes, Rector of Cranwell,

Nottinghamshire.

The Rev. Mr. Samuel Renshaw, of Thorney-

Abbey near Peterborough.

Mr Reynolds, of Monks, Risborough.

Mr John Reynolds.

Mr James Reynolds, of Monks Risborough.

--- Mr Revell, of Heath in Derbyshire.

The Rev. Mr Rice at Standish.

Mr William Rippon of Nottingham.

Mr Edward Rishton.

Tancred Robinson, M D.

Stephen Rose, of East Rhetford in Notting-

hamshire, Gent.

Mr Andrew Ross, *Humanity Professor in Glasgow.*
 Mr. Francis Ross, of Exon near Stamford.
 Mr Will. Ross, of Peterborough, *Carpenter.*
 Guideon Royer *Gent.*
 The Rev. Mr Tho. Rudd, *A. M. Master in the Free-School, Durham.*
 Mr Rudd, *Fellow of Trinity-College in Cambridge.*
 Mr Lewis Rush, *Strand.*
 Mr. Richard Randall, *Bookseller, in Newcastle upon Tine.*
 Mr Robinfon, *Bookseller, in St. Paul's Church-yard.*
 Mr John Rogers, *Bookseller, in Salop.*
 Mr James Round, *Bookseller, in Exchange-Alley.*
 Mr Thomas Ryles, *Bookseller, in Hull.*

S.

William Sacheverill, of Derby, *Esq;*
 Francis Sittwell *Esq;* of Renihaw, *Derbyshire.*
 Thomas Slater *Esq;*
 Tyringham Stephens, of Leicester, *Esq;*
 Henry Summers, at Hedingham-Sible, *Essex, Esq;*
 Capt. Salter of Collumpton, *Devonshire.*
 Mr Robert Sampson.
 The Rev. Mr Robert Sandiland, *Vicar of Speen, Berks.*
 Dr Savage.
 Mr Robert Savell of Colchester.
 Mr Robert Say, of Lynn in Norfolk.
 Mr Daniel Scar'et, of Lynn in Norfolk.
 Mr John Scobble of Nutcombe, in the *Parish of East Allington.*
 Mr John Seabourne, of Lynn in Norfolk.
 The Rev. Mr Nathaniel Seaman, *Rector of Kings-Bridge.*
 Mr John Seawell at Windfor Castle.
 The Rev. Mr Sedgwick, *Rector of-Walkington.*
 Mr Thomas Seed.
 Mr. William Sexty of Worcester.
 The Rev Mr Sharp, *Rector of West Stowe.*
 Abraham Sharp, of Little Horton, *Gent.*
 William Sharpe *Gent.*
 Samuel Shaw, *M. D. in Tamworth:*
 Mr Samuel Shaw of Bristol.
 The Rev. Mr John Shepard, *Rector of Brock-hall, Northamptonshire.*
 Mr Ralph Shepherdson, of Halgarth nigh *Durham*

Mr Bennet Sherrard, *M. D.*
 The Rev. Mr Sherwin, of Colby, *Derbyshire.*
 Joseph Shbbing *Gent.* *Derbyshire.*
 Mr Shibbins of Braughton, *Derbyshire.*
 Mr Shipman of Walsop, *Nottinghamshire.*
 Mr Short of Uffco'me, *Devonshire.*
 Mr Robert Shorthose, of Peterborough, *Hat-Maker.*
 Mr Henry Sikes.
 Mr John Simson, *Divinity Professor in Glasgow.*
 Mr Robert Simson, *Merchant in Glasgow.*
 John Sinclair, *Jun. of Stinson near Glasgow, Esq;*
 Mr Joseph Singleton of Darlington, *Yorkshire.*
 William Singleton, of East Rhetford in *Nottinghamshire, Sub-Schoolmaster.*
 Mr Joseph Singleton, of Darlington in the *County of Durham.*
 The Rev. Mr Skinner, at Sunbury in *Middlesex.*
 Mr George Slea, of Lynn in *Norfolk.*
 Hans Sloane, *M. D.*
 The Rev. Mr Smalwood, of Mare in *Staffordshire.*
 Mr Francis Smith, alias Carington, of *Huddelstone in Yorkshire.*
 Mr George Smith.
 Mr Thomas Smith, *Merchant in Glasgow.*
 Richard Smith, *M. D. at Aylesbury.*
 The Rev. Mr Smith, of Morton in *Derbyshire.*
 Mr Postumous Smith at *Durham*
 The Rev. Mr Henry Snook, *Vicar of Ring-mear in Suffex.*
 The Rev. Mr Spademan of Aston Abbots, near *Aylesbury.*
 The Rev. Mr Joseph Sparks of Peterborough.
 The Rev. Mr Sparling, *M. A.*
 The Rev. Mr Beckwith Spencer, *Vicar of Southwell.*
 John Spicer, of Leicester, *Gent.*
 John Spencer, of Peterborough, *Gent.*
 Mr Jo. Stainforth
 Mr Rutter Stalbridge.
 John Stanhope of Eccleshill, *Jun. Dr. of Physick.*
 Mr Francis Stapleton of Bradford.
 William Stephens, of Worcester, *Gent.*
 Mr. Henry Stevenson, *Master of the Free-School at East Rhetford, Nottinghamshire.*
 Mr Thomas Stockdale.
 Mr Robert Stone.

Mr Tho-

The NAMES of the Subscribers.

XV

Mr Thomas Stonestreet, of Lewis in Suffex,
Surgeon.
The Rev. Edward Storer, Rector of Buck-
minster, Leicestershire.
Thomas Storey of Hallaxton, Lincolnshire,
Clerk.
Mrs Sarah Stuart, of Lynn in Norfolk
Mr Strubbins of Braughton, Derbyshire.
Mr John Stuckey, Schoolmaster in Stoke-
Newington
Mr John Sturt, Engraver, in Aldersgate-
street, London.
The Rev. Mr Swaine of Farnmarke, Leicester-
shire.
William Swaine, of Bradford in Yorkshire,
Gent.
The Rev. Mr Timothy Swift, M. A. at Ring-
stead
The Rev. Mr Sye, Rector of Winteringham.
Matthew Symonds, of Hawksbury, Glou-
cestershire, Gent.
Mr Nevil Symonds, Bookseller in Sheffield.

T.

SIR Thomas Tanckred Bar.
Thomas Thoroton Esq; Recorder of Lincoln.
John Thoroughgood, of Sampson's-Hall
near Colchester, Esq;
Thomas Tonkin, of Lambrigan, Cornwall,
Esq;
John Turner, at Stainsby in Yorkshire, Esq;
Thomas Tankard Gent.
Francis Tanner Gent.
The Rev. Mr John Tarran, A.M. at St. John's
Chappel in the County of Durham.
The Rev. Mr Tassell, of Goreing, and Master
of the Free-School in Newberry.
Thomas Tax of London, Surgeons Instrument-
maker.
Francis Taylor, at South-Littleton, Wor-
cestershire, Gent.
The Rev. Mr John Taylor, Vicar of Sutton
super Lound, Nottinghamshire.
Mr Richard Taylor
Mr Charles Taylor of Mariage.
Mr Abdias Taylor.
Mr Richard Taylor of Kirkham in Lanca-
shire.
The Rev. Mr Taylor.
Mr John Taylor.
The Rev. Mr. Elias Thomas, Rector of East-
Allington.

Mr Thomas, D. M. in Chesterfield, Der-
byshire.
The Rev. Mr William Thomas, at Exall, War-
wickshire.
The Rev. Mr John Thompson, at Bishops-
Itchington, Warwickshire.
The Rev. Mr Richard Thompson, Rector of
Hawerbie.
Mr George Thompson, Minister of Darling-
ton in the County of Durham.
Edmund Thorp Jun. M. D.
Mr Rowland Thruppe of Bristol.
Mr Thomas Tilladam of Bristol.
Mr John Tillorson at the Queen's Warehouse,
Custom-House.
The Rev. Mr Jacob Tireman.
The Rev. Mr. Marcus Toller, M. A.
Mr Henry Forkington, Apothecary in Tot-
nes.
The Rev. Mr Andrew Tooke, one of the Ma-
sters of the Charter-House.
Mr Marmaduke Tounfon.
Mr John Towne of Horne-Castle, Lincoln-
shire.
The Rev. Mr. Toy.
Mr George Traverse.
The Rev. Mr Robert Trayle.
The Rev. Mr Trever, of Litchfield.
Mr Edward Tucker, of Weymouth, Mer-
chant.
Capt. John Turner of Lynn in Norfolk.
Mr James Taylor, Bookseller in Chatham.
Mr Thurlbaine, Bookseller in Cambridge.
Mr Benj. Tooke, Bookseller.

V.

William Vane, Esq;
Mr. John Valange, Bookseller in
Edinburgh.
The Rev. Mr George Vernon, Rector of Han-
bans.

W.

William Wakefield, Esq;
Benedict Wakeman, Esq;
Hovenden Walker Esq; Super-Intendant at
Plimouth.
John Walkinshaw of Scottstoun near Glas-
gow. Esq;
John Walter Esq;
Edmond Waterion, Esq;
Matthew Whitfield, Esq; at Woolingham in
the County of Durham.

Mr. Ti-

- Mr Timothy Wales of Beverley in York-shire.
 Mr. George Walker.
 Mr John Walker, at Brentford.
 Mr Thomas Wall of Rouselench.
 Mr John Wall of Crombe.
 Mr. Humphrey Wall of Doveridge, Derby-shire.
 Mr Wall of Doveridge, Staffordshire.
 Mr John Wallis.
 Mr. Henry Walter.
 Mr John Wallworth, Charles-street, Westminster.
 Mr Ward of Shenston, Staffordshire.
 The Rev. Mr Ward of Blichfield, Stafford-shire.
 Mr Ambröse Warren.
 The Rev. Mr James Waters at Uxbridge, Middlesex.
 The Rev. Mr Weaver.
 The Rev. Mr Francis Webber, *Prebendary of St. Peters, Exon.*
 James Webster of Brampton, Derbyshire, *Gent.*
 Mr Stephen Weelks.
 Mr Welbarne of Cherry Burton.
 Edward Welchman, *Clerk,*
 The Rev. Mr Wells.
 Mr Walter West, at the *Receiver-General's Office, Custom-House.*
 Mr Samuel Westley, *Clerk.*
 Mr Geo. Wharton.
 Mr Samuel Wheatly.
 Mr White.
 Mr Whitely.
 Dr. Wickham.
 Mr Wigmore, of Stamford in Lincoln-shire.
 Mr Richard Wilcocks.
 The Rev. Mr John Wilcox, *Rector of Ex-burne, Devonshire.*
 The Rev. Mr. John Wilcox, *Rector of More-hard, Devonshire.*
 John Wilkins of St. James's Westminster, *Gent.*
 Edward Willes Junior, *Gent.*
 The Rev. Mr. Richard Willson *Rector of Bab-worth, Nottinghamshire.*
 The Rev. Mr Willson, *Minister at Whiteby.*
 The Rev. Mr John Willson M. A. at Ring-head.
 Mr John Withers of Exon.
 John Woodhouse, M. D.
 Samuel Wright, of the Middle-Temple, *Gent.*
 Mr Wright of Vineton, Devonshire.
 The Rev. Christopher Wyvill, *Dean of Rippon.*
 Mr Walthoe, *Bookseller in the Temple-Cloysters.*
 Mr John Ward, *Bookseller in Leicester.*
 Mr William Ward, *Bookseller in Notting-ham.*
 Roger Warne, *Bookseller in Chipenham.*
 Mr Watson, *Bookseller in Bury.*
 Mr Ralph Watson Junior, of Bury, *Book-seller.*
 Mr Webster, *Bookseller in Cambridge.*
 Mrs West, *Bookseller in Oxon.*
 Mr Wilkins, *Bookseller in St Paul's Church-Yard.*
 Mr Nicholas Woolfe of London, *Stationer.*
 Mr Wyatt, *Bookseller in St. Paul's Church-Yard.*
 Y.
 Edward Yard, of Churston, *Esq;*
 Mr. — Young, *Clenk.*

Note, If any of these Gentlemen or their Friends will communicate any Thing remarkable relating to any Part of Great Britain or Ireland, it shall be faithfully inserted in *Britannia Antiqua & Nova*, now preparing for the Press; or to any Part of Asia, Africa, or America.

ATLAS GEOGRAPHUS.
OR, A COMPLEAT
System of Geography,
ANCIENT and MODERN.

Containing what is of most Use in *Bleau, Varenius, Cellarius, Cluverius, Brietius, Sanfon, &c.*

With the Discoveries and Improvements of the best
Modern Authors to this Time.

CHAP. I.

An INTRODUCTION to Ancient and Modern
GEOGRAPHY in General.

SECT. I.

The Antiquity of GEOGRAPHY.

THIS Science appears to be as ancient as the Use of Letters. The Invention of it is ascrib'd to the *Egyptians*; at least they are supposed to be among the first who made use of it, and not only wrote on this Subject, but convey'd it to Posterity by Figures and Charts. *Hommer*, as he was the first noted Author among the *Greeks*, was also their first Geographer, and carefully described their Towns and Country, and that Part of *Asia*, which lies on the *Hellepont*: He was followed by others of his Country-

men, who gave learned Descriptions of the World, as appears by *Strabo*, *Pliny*, *Stephen of Byzantium*, and others: But their Works, together with most of their Names, are lost. The Industry of the Ancients in this Matter is evident from their Tables or Charts, and Spheres. *A-maximander* the *Milesian*, Scholar to *Thales*, one of the Seven Sages, is reckoned the first who attempted to draw the Earth on a Map. *Laertius* says, he likewise drew the Sea, and prepared a Terrestrial Globe, which *Eratosthenes* corrected. *Aristagoras*, the *Milesian* Tyrant,

The General Introduction to GEOGRAPHY.

is said to have shewn the *Spartans* a Brass Table, in which the Circumference of the whole Earth was engraved. *Socrates* shew'd *Alcibiades* at *Athens* a Chart, containing a Description of the Earth. *Theophrastus* had several of them, which he ordered by his Will to be hung up in his Gallery.

That the *Romans* understood and practised this Science, is evident from *Varro*, who says, They had Tables or Maps in the Temple of *Tellus*; and *Suetonius* mentions a Map of the Earth in Parchment by *Metius Pomposianus*, in *Domitian's* Reign: Nor had they only Maps of Kingdoms, and of the whole World, in those Days; but likewise Globes, the Way of Projecting which on a Plain was taught by *Ptolemy*. From *Rome* this Science was derived to the Provinces, as appears by *Emmenius Rhetor*, who mentions such Maps to be hung up in the Galleries of the School of *Antonin*, in his Oration to the President of *Gaul*, exhorting him to restore the Schools, in the Reigns of *Constantius* and *Dioclesian*. The Curious may see more on this Subject in *Gellarius's Notitia Orbis Antiqui*, Cap. 1. and in *Varenius*, published by Mr. *Newton*, (now Sir *Isaac*) Lib. 1. p. 5. which is the Edition we make use of.

SECT. II.

The Definition of GEOGRAPHY.

THE Literal Signification of the Greek Word, implies no more than a bare Description of the Earth; and so *Cluverius* defines it to be a Description of the whole Earth, as far as 'tis known to us. In *Varenius* 'tis defin'd to be a mix'd Mathematical Science, which teaches the Qualities of the Earth and of the Parts of it, depending on Quantity; viz. Figure, Place, Magnitude, Motion, the Heavenly Appearances, and other such Qualities. But *Baudrand*, and other modern Geographers, understand by the Word Geography the Description of the Terraqueous

Globe, as it contains both Land and Water; and 'tis now become customary to intermix with Geographical Descriptions something of the Political and Natural History of Countries, which is more instructing and diverting to the Reader than meer Geography.

SECT. III.

The Division of GEOGRAPHY.

IT differs from Cosmography as a Part from the Whole, and from Chorography as the Whole from the Part; for Cosmography implies a Description of the whole World, as composed of Heaven and Earth. Chorography is the Description of particular Countries, as *Great Britain*, *France*, &c. Topography is the Description of a particular Place or District; and some add *Topobesia* as a special Description of the Situation of a particular Place. *Varenius* divides it into General and Special: By General Geography, he understands a Description of the Earth, and its Qualities in general, without Relation to any particular Country; and special Geography he divides into Chorography and Topography. To General Geography he assigns Three Parts, viz. Absolute, Respective, and Comparative. The Absolute Part considers the Body of the Earth, and its Parts, with their proper Qualities, as Figure, Magnitude, Motion, Lands, Seas, Rivers, &c. The respective Part relates to those Qualities and Accidents which happen to the Earth from Celestial Causes. The Comparative Part contains an Explication of those Properties which flow from a Comparison of divers Places of the Earth with one another.

SECT. IV.

The Object and Properties of GEOGRAPHY.

THE Object is chiefly the Surface of the Earth, and its Parts. *Varenius* divides the Things which are principally

The General Introduction to GEOGRAPHY.

3

to be considered in every Country into *Celestial, Terrestrial, and Humane*. The Celestial are those Properties which depend on the apparent Motion of the Sun and Stars, *viz.* 1. The Elevation of the Pole, the Distance of the Place from the Equator and the Pole. 2. the Obliquity of the Diurnal Motion of the Stars over the Horizon of the Place. 3. The Quantity of the longest and shortest Day. 4. The Climate and Zone. 5. Heat, Cold, and the Seasons of the Year; also Rain, Snow, Winds, and other Meteors. 6. The Rising, Appearance, and Continuance of the Stars over the Horizon. 7. The Stars passing through the Vertical Point of the Place. 8. The Swiftiness of the Motion, by which, according to *Copernicus*, each Place is wheeled about every Hour. The 9th Property, added by some Astrologers, of a peculiar Planet that rules and governs every Country, he rejects as frivolous.

The Terrestrial Properties are reckoned 10.

1. The Limits. 2. Figure. 3. Magnitude. 4. Mountains. 5. Waters, *viz.* Rivers, Fountains, and Bays. 6. Woods and Defarts. 7. Fruitfulness and Barrenness, and the Sorts of Fruit. 8. Minerals. 9. Animals. 10. The Longitude of the Place.

The Humane Qualities he divides into 10.

1. The Stature, Shape, Complexion, Length of Life, Origine and Diet, of the Inhabitants. 2. Their Commerce, Trades, and Commodities. 3. Their Virtues, Vices, Learning, Genius, and Schools. 4. Their Customs at Child-bearing, Marriages, and Funerals. 5. Their Language. 6. Their Civil Government. 7. Their Religion and Ecclesiastical Polity. 8. Their Towns and Places of most Note. 9. Their most remarkable Histories. 10. Their Famous Men, Artists, and Inventions.

SECT. V.

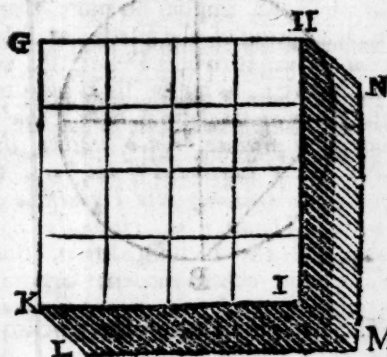
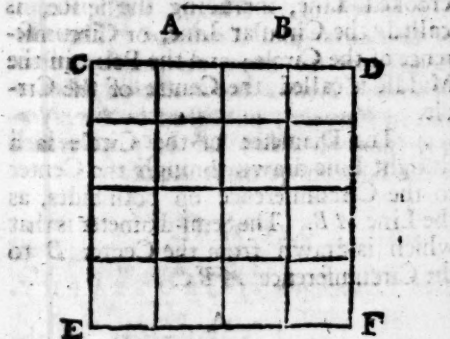
The Principles of GEOGRAPHY.

Geographers make use of Three Sorts of Principles, to confirm the Truth of their Propositions. 1. Of Geometrical, Arithmetical, and Trigonometrical Propositions. 2. Of Astronomical Precepts and Theorems. 3. Of Experience; for the greatest Part of particular Geography depends on the Experience of Men who have described the several Countries.

SECT. VI.

Some Things of Geometry and Trigonometry, necessary to be known by those who study GEOGRAPHY.

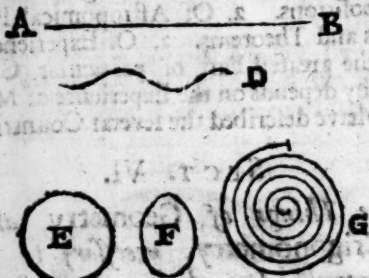
1. **GEOMETRY** has Three Species of Magnitude, by which all Things are measured; *viz.* *Lines, Surfaces, and Solid Bodies*, as *AB, CDEF, and GHIKLMN*.



A 2

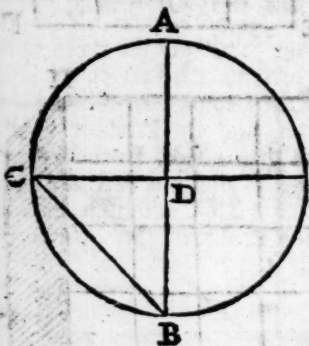
2. Lines

2. Lines are divided into straight and crooked, as the Lines *AB* and *D*; and the crooked Line is Uniform or Circular, as the Line *E*; or different, i. e. of a Dissimilar Form, as Oval Lines, *F*. Conchoides and Spiral Lines, as *G*.



3. A Circle is a Space or Plain Surface and Figure included in a crooked Line; in which Space there is a certain Point, from which the straight Lines being drawn to that crooked Line, which includes the Space, are all equal; and that crooked Line, including the Space, is called the Circular Line, or Circumference of the Circle; and the Point in the Middle is called the Centre of the Circle.

4. The Diameter of the Circle is a straight Line drawn through the Center to the Circumference on both Sides, as the Line *AB*. The Semi-diameter is that which is drawn from the Center *D* to the Circumference *ABC*.



5. The Arch is a Part of the Circumference of a Circle, as the Arch *CB*.

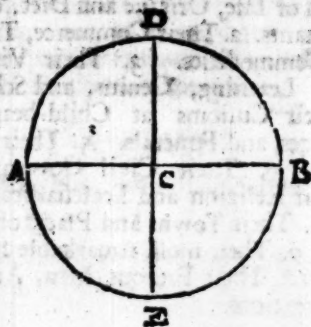
The Quadrant is the Fourth Part of the whole Circumference, as *CDA*. The Complement of any Arch, is an Arch by which it differs from a Quadrant, or falls short of it. The Excess is that by which it exceeds a Quadrant.

PROBLEMS.

6. A Straight Line being given, and a Point in it, or out of it, to draw a Perpendicular Line from that Point, let the Line given be *AB*, the Point *C*: Take any open Space of the Compasses, put one Foot in *C*, and with the other cut the Line in *D* and *F*, then on *F* describe the Arch *CH*. Likewise on the Center *D* describe another Arch, cutting the former at *C* and *H*, and let *CH* be drawn; and this will be the perpendicular Line.



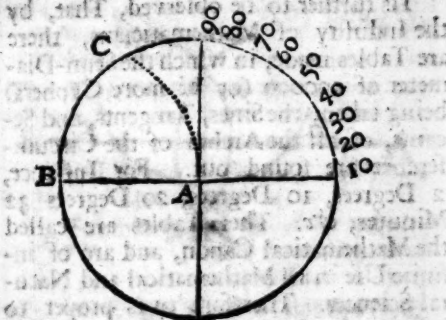
7. To divide a Circle and Circumference into Four Parts, draw a Diameter *AB*, and from the Center *C* raise a perpendicular Line upon it, *DCE*. This will also be a Diameter, and the Circumference and Circle will be divided into Four equal Parts or Quadrants.



Note,

Note, That Mathematicians cut a Circumference into 360 Parts, which they call Degrees. These Degrees they divide into 60 First Minutes, and the First Minutes they divide into 60 Seconds.

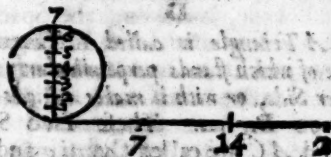
8. To divide the Circumference of a Circle into Degrees; first take the Quadrant of a Circle; then by your Compasses take the Semi-Diameter AB of the Circle, and by this Space of the Compasses take away the Arch CB from the Circumference. This Arch will contain 60 Degrees, and there remains in the Quadrant 30 Degrees; which being divided into Two Parts, you have 15 Degrees; and these being mechanically divided into Three Parts, you have 5 Degrees; and these being again divided into Five Parts, are the Degrees themselves. But these Things are best performed by Mathematical Instruments.



9. To find out the Area or Contents of a Right-angled Quadrangle, two Sides of the Quadrangle being given; multiply the one Side into the other, and the Product is the Contents. *Note*, That Lines are measured by Lines, Surfaces by Measures which are Surfaces, and those also square. Bodies and Solids are measured by Measures which are Bodies, and indeed solid Cubes. Thus we measure the Sides of an House by Foot-Lines, but the Floor with Square-Feet; and the Capa-

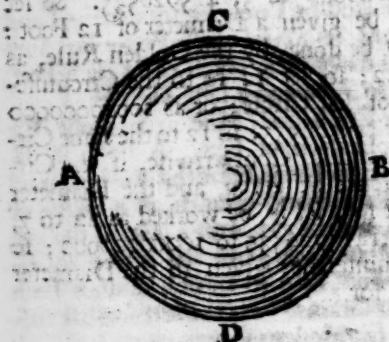
city or Solidity of the House with Cubick-Feet.

10. The Half-Diameter or Diameter of a Circle being given, to find out in the same Measure the Circumference of the Circle; and on the contrary, the Circumference of the Circle being given, to find the Diameter near enough to any Geographical Purpose, depends on the Proportion of the Diameter to the Circumference, which according to Archimedes's Demonstration, is much as 7 to 22, or more exactly, as 1000000000 to 3,1415926535. So let there be given a Diameter of 12 Foot: Let it be done by the Golden Rule, as 7 to 22; so let 12 be to the Circumference of that Circle; or as 1000000000 to 3,1415926535; so 12 to the same Circumference. Contrariwise, if the Circumference be given, and the Diameter sought for, let it be worked as 22 to 7, or as 3,1415926535 to 1000000000; so a Circumference given to the Diameter sought for.

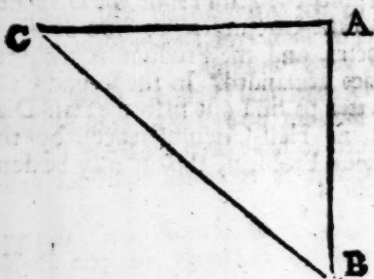


11. The Circumference of a Circle being given in Feet or Miles, and a Diameter: Or a Circumference alone, or a Diameter alone being given, to find out the Area of the Circle in Square Feet or Miles: In the first Case, multiply the given Circumference into the 4th Part of the Diameter, or half the Circumference into half the Diameter, and the Product is the Area or Space demanded. In the Second Case, 'tis better to find out first the Half-Diameter, or Half-Circumference, by the foregoing Problem, tho' it may be done without it.

12. The Half Diameter, or Diameter, of any Globe, $ABCD$, being given, to find its Surface in Square Measure, and its Solidity in Cubical Measure. First, let the Circumference of the Circle be found out by the Diameter given, then multiply the Diameter into the Circumference, and the Surface of the Globe will be the Product in Square Measure. Further, multiply this Surface by the 6th Part of the Diameter, and the Product is the Solidity of the Globe in Cubick Measure.



13. A Triangle is called Rectangular; one Side of which stands perpendicularly upon the other Side, or with it makes a Right Angle of 90 Degrees. These Two Sides AB and AC are called Catheti; and the Third, CB , Hypotenuse. The Measure of the Angles is the Arch described, the Center being taken in the Top of that Angle; viz. Of how many Degrees that Arch intercepted between the Legs of the Angle is, of so many Degrees that An-



gle is said to be. So a Right Angle is said to be 90 Degrees, because the Arch so describ'd is always the Quadrant or 4th Part of the Circumference of the Circle.

The Sine of any Arch is call'd a straight Line, which is drawn perpendicular from the Extreme of the Arch upon the Diameter, drawn through the other Extreme of the Arch.

The Tangent of an Arch is the straight Line touching the Arch at one Extremity, and terminated by another straight Line drawn from the Center through the other Extremity of the Arch: And this Line so drawn is called the Secant of the Arch.

But the Sine of an Angle is said to be the Sine of that Arch which measures that Angle: So the Tangent of the Angle, and its Secant.

'Tis further to be observed, That, by the Industry of Mathematicians, there are Tables made, in which the Semi-Diameter of 100000 (or of more Cyphers) being taken, the Sines, Tangents, and Secants, of all the Arches of the Circumference are found out. For Instance, 2 Degrees, 10 Degrees, 20 Degrees 32 Minutes, &c. These Tables are called the Mathematical Canon, and are of infinite Use in all Mathematical and Natural Sciences. Therefore 'twas proper to inform the Students of Geography of those few Things; but they are of principal Use in the measuring Spherical and Plain Triangles: Since the measuring of Spherical Triangles is attended with some Difficulty, and is only necessary for those who would dive deep into this Art, we shall only treat of Rectangular Plain Triangles, whose Dimension is easy to be apprehended by any Body.

SECT. VII.

Two Theorems of frequent Use in GEOGRAPHY.

14. Three Angles of any Triangle whatever are equal to Two Right Angles, or 180 Degrees.

The General Introduction to GEOGRAPHY.

7

Degrees; and therefore Two Acutes in a Rectangular Triangle make 90 Degrees. Further, If a straight Line touch a Circular Line, and from the Point of Contact or Meeting, a straight Line be drawn to the Center of the Circle, it makes a Right Angle with the Tangent-Line.

The Problems of most Use are those which follow:

16. I. The Hypotenusa, together with the Cathetus of a Rectangular-Triangle, being given, to find out the Angle contained, or the other Acute Angle: For the finding out of this, let it be done by the Golden Rule: As the given Hypotenusa is to the given Cathetus; so the whole Sine 100000 (which Number is the Semi-Diameter taken in the Table of Sines) is to the Sine of the other Angle. This Sine, sought for in the Canon, will shew the Arch or Quantity of the Angle which joins to the Hypotenusa. But the Angle contained is the Complement of the Angle found out, to 90 Degrees: Therefore if you subtract the Angle found out from 90 Degrees, the Remainder is the Angle sought for.

II. A Cathetus and the Acute adjacent Angle being given, to find out the Hypotenusa; Do it by the Golden Rule: As the Sine of the Complement of the Angle given, is to the whole Sine 100000, or 10000000 in the greater Canon; so is the given Cathetus to the Hypotenusa demanded.

17. III. Two Cathetus's being given, to find the Angle adjacent to either of them; Work thus: As one Cathetus is to another; so is the whole Sine 100000 to the Tangent of the Angle, which is adjacent to the first assumed Cathetus.

18. IV. A Hypotenusa, and one Acute Angle being given, to find out either Cathetus; Work thus: As the whole Sine 100000 is to the Sine of the Angle, which is opposite to the Cathetus demanded, so is the given Hypotenusa to that Cathetus.

SECT. VIII.

Of the different Measures made use of in GEOGRAPHY.

THE Famous Measure is, The Length of a Foot; but differs according to the Custom of Nations. Mathematicians now make use of Snellius's Rheinlandish Foot, which he says is equal to the ancient Roman Foot.

The Rod or Perch for measuring Land contains 10 Rheinlandish Feet; but Surveyors make their Perch of 12 such Feet, or of 16 Foot and a half English.

The Perch and Mile arise from the Multiplication of Feet. A Foot is divided into Hand-breadths, Inches, and Grains: A Hand-breadth is 4 Digits or Inches, a Foot 12, and a Grain the 4th Part of an Inch; but 'tis better to divide a Foot into 10 Inches, and an Inch into 10 Grains. These Measures are sufficient for Modern Geography.

The Measures of the Ancients were those of the Egyptians, Greeks, Romans, Persians, &c. and the Measures of these of later Times are those of the Turks, Poles, Germans, Muscovites, Indians, Spaniards, French, English, &c.

The Greek Stadium or Furlong is reckoned 600 Greek Feet, which make 625 Roman or Rheinlandish Feet.

The German Mile (of which Geographers allow 15 to a Degree) contains 14000. $\frac{1}{2}$ Feet, and is reckoned 4000 Paces, or 32 Furlongs, and bears Proportion to the Rheinlandish Mile, as 19 to 15. The Italian or Roman Mile is 1000 Paces, or 8 Furlongs.

A Geometrical Pace is 5 Foot.

A Fathom is 6 Foot, and by some reckoned to have been the Greek Pace.

A Cubit is reckoned one Foot and a half.

Parasange, or the Persian Mile, is reckoned 30 Furlongs, or 300 Persian Paces.

Schoenus, the *Egyptian Measure*, is, according to *Herodotus*, 360 Furlongs; but, according to *Pliny*, 40; which is supposed to arise from different Customs of Places; or else is a Mistake in the Books.

The *French League* is to the *Rheinlandish Mile*, as 19 to 25. The *Spanish Leagues* is to the same Mile as 17½ to 19; but because there is a Difference of Leagues both in *France* and *Spain*, these Things are uncertain.

The *English Mile* is to the *Rheinlandish*, as 19 to 55 or 60. But the *English* have Two Sorts of Miles, Computed and Measured: Of the first Sort 50, and of the last Sort 55 or 60 make a Degree.

Morden, in his Introduction to Geography, says, 'Tis a common Opinion, that 5 of our *English Feet* make a Geometrical Pace, 1000 such Paces make an *Italian Mile*, and 60 of those Miles, in any great Circle upon the Spherical Surface of the Earth or Sea, make a Degree: So that a Degree of the Heavens contains, upon the Surface of the Earth, according to this Account, 60 *Italian Miles*, 20 *French or Dutch Leagues*, 15 *German Miles*, 17½ *Spanish Leagues*, and 56½ *English Miles*.

But, according to several Experiments made, the Quantity of a Degree is variously accounted for thus: By *Albazzard*, an *Arabian*, 333333 *Arabian Feet* in one Degree, which reduced to our *English Measure*, is 367283 Feet, or 70 Miles and 1128 Parts of a Foot. By *Ptolomy*, 360000 *Rheinland Feet*, which reduced to our *English Feet* is 371900, or 70 Miles 1154. By *Willebrordus Snellius*, Anno 1613, 342000 *Rheinland Feet*; in *English* 353306 Feet, or 67 Miles. *Nor-*

wood, by his Experiment betwixt *York* and *London*, finds one Degree upon the Earth to contain 367200 Feet, which makes 69½ Miles. *Picart*, a *Frenchman*, makes it about 73 *Italian Miles*, and is the nearest Measure yet found by these Experiments to answer to a Degree of the Heavens.

The *Danish* or *Swedish Miles* are to the *Rheinlandish*, as 19 to 10; but in some Places the *Danes* and *Swedes* use the *German Mile*.

The *Russian Miles*, called *Korss*, are to the *Rheinlandish Mile* as 19 to 80.

The *Turkish Miles* are the same with the *Italian*.

The old *Arabian League* was reckoned the 25th Part of a Degree; but they used another Measure, 55 of which made a Degree.

Indian Miles are 100 to a Degree; for the *Indians* commonly measure their Distances by Journeys of Hours or Days.

Those of *Camboja* and *Guzarata* have a Measure called *Cosa*, 30 of which are a Degree.

The *Chinese* use Three Measures for Journeys; (1.) *Li*, the Space as far as a Man crying aloud in a Plain may be heard in a calm Day, supposed to be 300 Geometrical Paces; (2.) *Pu*, which contains 10 *Lis*; (3.) *Uchan*, which contains 10 *Pus*, and by them is reckoned one Day's Journey.

The *Square Rheinlandish Mile* consists of Square Feet: The *Cubick Rheinlandish Mile* of Cubick Feet. The Amount of the *Square Rheinlandish Mile* arises from multiplying the same Mile into it self, and that of the *Cubick Mile* by multiplying the *Square Mile* by a Simple Mile. The like is to be said of *Square* and *Cubick Feet*.

Cluve-

The General Introduction to GEOGRAPHY.

9

Cluverius gives us the following SCHEME of the Measures used by several Nations.

DEGREES.	1	2	3	4
Russian Miles.	20 40 60 80	120 160	200 240	280 320
Italian Miles.	10 20 30 40 50 60	90 120	150 180	210 240
English Miles.	27½ 55	82½ 120	165	220
Scottish Miles.	10 20 30 40 50	100	150	200
French Leagues.	5 10 15 20 25	50	75	100
Leagues of an Hour.	5 10 15 20	30 40	50 60	70 80
Spanish Leagues.	17½	35	52½	70
German Miles.	5 10 15	30	45	60
Swedish and Danish Miles.	2 4 6 8 10	20	30	40

For the Benefit of those that read the ancient Geographers in Greek or Latin, we thought fit to subjoin a more particular Account of their Geographical Measures from *Brietius*, Part I. Lib. 3. Cap. 6.

The ancient Measures of the Greeks are comprehended in these Technical Verses.

Quatuor ex digitis constabat Græca Paleste

Ille ter in Spiteme : justo quater in Pede : Senos

Fert Orgia Pedes : Pelethro centesimus est Pes :

Arvus dimidium est : Stadiumque coeret Achivum

Sexcentes : Stadia Assyriis ignota Phærique

Triginta antiquis Parafanga, & Schoenus habebant.

Paleste is translated by the Latins *Palmarum parvus*, and was of Two Sorts, the lesser consisting of 4 Fingers, and the greater, which *Pliny* confounds with *Spiteme*.

Spiteme contains 12 Fingers, or Inches ; is translated by the Latins *Dodrans*, and sometimes *Pedalis*, and at other times *Semipedalis*, a Foot, or half a Foot

Pes, Πούς, according to *Herodotus*, Lib. 2. contains 4 *Palestes*, which is 16 *Digiti*, and therefore something larger than the Roman Foot.

Orgia, ὀργία, translated by the Latins *Ulna*, from the Arms extended, contain'd 6 Foot, or 4 Cubits ; and this was of Two Sorts, one called the *Just Orgia*, of 6 Foot ; and the other, call'd the *Great Orgia*, contain'd 10, according to *Theophrastus*.

Plethrum, or *Pelethrum*, by the Latins call'd *Jugerum*, contain'd 100 Foot.

Arvus, ἀρεως, 50 Foot ; but by some extended to 100 Cubits.

Stadium, στάδιον, or the proper Greek *Stadium*, measured by *Hercules* with his Feet in the *Olympick* Field, was 600

Foot ; when doubled, it was called *Diaulos* ; and the *Diaulos* doubled, was call'd *Dolichos*.

Parafanga, a Persian and Egyptian Measure, according to *Herodotus*, consisted of 30 *Stadia* ; but this Measure was various, according to *Pliny*, Lib. 6. Cap. 26.

Schoenus : Of this Measure there are Three different Opinions ; the First, according to *Ptolomy*, *Pliny*, *Artemidorus*, and *Sirabo*, was of 30 *Stadia* : The Second, according to *Pliny*, who seems to have forgot himself, Cap. 14. Lib. 12. is 40 *Stadia* ; and this he says was taken from *Eratosthenes* ; though in the same Place he says it was contracted to 32 *Stadia*, which is a Mistake, for it ought to be 30. The Third Opinion is that of *Herodotus*, who, Lib. 2. says it was 60 *Stadia* ; and with this *Hermogenes* is said to agree. *Sirabo* seems to reconcile all those Opinions, Lib. 17. when he observes from *Artemidorus*, That this Measure was various ; that from *Pelusium* to *Memphis* it contain'd 30 *Stadia* ; that from *Memphis* to *Thebais* it was 120 ; and from *Thebais* to *Syene* it was 60. He adds, That he has found it elsewhere to be 40.

The Measures used by the ancient Roman Geographers, are contained in the following Technical Verses.

Quatuor ex granis Digitus componitur unus :

Est quater in Palmo digitus : quater in Pede Palmus.

Quinque Pedes Passum faciunt : Passus quoque centum

Viginti quinque Stadium dant : at Milliare.

Octo dabunt Stadia : duplicatum dat tibi Leucam.

Digitus, the least of the Country Measures, according to *Frontinus*, contained 4 Grains of Barley laid Longwise.

Uncia

Uncia was more than a Digit, and the 12th Part of a Foot. This he says was us'd in *Apulia*: But in the rest of *Italy*, they divided a Foot into 16 Digits; so that the *Uncia* answer'd to the *French* Inch.

Palmus contain'd 4 Digits, and therefore was call'd *Quadrans*.

Pes, or a Foot, of 16 Digits, or 12 *Uncia*, *Brevius* says he finds to answer to the ancient *Roman* Foot, and is 5 *Paris* Lines less than the *Paris* Foot.

PACE,	Single,	{ Of the 1st Difference,	contain'd 2 Foot.
		{ Of the 2d Difference,	2 Foot and half.
		{ Of the 3d Difference,	3 Foot, or the <i>French</i> Pace.
	Double,	{ Of the 1st Difference,	4 Foot.
		{ Of the 2d Difference,	5 Foot, or the Geometrical Pace.
		{ Of the 3d Difference,	6 Foot.

Pertica, a Perch, by *Isidorus*, *Lib.* 15. *Orig.* Cap. 15. is reckon'd 2 Paces, or 10 Foot, and seems to answer to the Measure call'd a *Reed* in Scripture.

Stadium was 125 Geometrical Paces, or 625 Foot, according to *Pliny*, *Columnella*, and *Julius Frontinus*. *Bergerius* gives the Reason why 25 *Roman* Feet were added to the 600 *Grecian*, because the *Roman* was less than the *Greek* Foot.

Milliare, or *Milliarium*, a Mile, was so call'd, because it contain'd 1000 Geometrical Paces: But there are Three Opinions as to the Number of *Stadia* in a Mile; the First is that of *Polybius*, in

Cubitus, a Cubit, contain'd a Foot and half, that is, from the End of the Middle-Finger to the Elbow.

Passus, or a Pace, is the Step of a Man as he walks, and by the Ancients was divided into the lesser and the Greater; the Lesser contain'd a Foot and a half, and was call'd *Gressus*; the Greater was twice as large, and was call'd the Geometrical Pace, or Pace simply; but afterwards the Pace was thus divided:

Strabo 7 *Geogr.* who says, 8 *Stadia* make only 960 Paces, each *Stadium*, according to the *Greek* Measure, containing 600 Foot. The Second is that of *Plutarch*, in *Camillus*, who says, 7 *Stadia* and an half are equal to a *Roman* Mile. *Suidas*, *Phocinus*, and all the *Greek* Authors, are of this Opinion. The Third is that of the *Roman* Writers, and of the *Roman* Empire it self, when the Mile-Stones were fix'd, from whence Miles were call'd *Stones*, and these Miles contain'd 8 *Stadia*; and into this Computation *Polybius* had slip'd many times unawares.

The Measures for Voyages and Journeys.

The Sea-Journey of the Ancients.	{	<i>Herodotus</i> reckons	{ 70000 <i>Orgia</i> by Day, 60000 by Night; that is, 700 <i>Stadia</i> , or 84 <i>Roman</i> Miles, by Day; and 600 <i>Stadia</i> , or 72 <i>Roman</i> Miles, by Night.
		<i>Polybius</i> ,	{ In <i>Strabo</i> , denies that in one Day they can sail 2000 <i>Stadia</i> , or 240 Miles.
		<i>Aristides</i>	{ Thought, that with a fair Wind they might sail 1200 <i>Stadia</i> , that is, 144 Miles.
		<i>Marinus</i> ,	{ In <i>Ptolomy</i> , thought they might sail 1000 <i>Stadia</i> , that is, 120 Miles, in one Day.
		<i>Strabo</i>	{ Thought, that in a Day and a Night they might sail 1000 <i>Stadia</i> .
		<i>Scylax</i>	{ Compares the Voyage of a Day and a Night to a Journey of 3 Days, which he does not compute at above 108 Miles.

The Sea-Journey of the Moderns.

The *Arabians* reckon'd 10000 Paces in a Day, perhaps 145 Miles. Mariners reckon'd a *German* Mile for every one of our Hours; but when the Wind was very brisk, they reckon'd 60 *German* Leagues in a Day.

In the *Mediterranean* they sail 16 Miles an Hour; but no Ship can hold that Course long there without Danger.

Journeys on Foot.

Strabo in his first Book seems to hint, That one Day's Journey is 333 *Stadia*, or 20 Leagues, or at least 250 *Stadia*, i. e. 15 Leagues; but in his 7th Book, he makes one Day's Journey 310 *Stadia*, i. e. 37 Miles.

Herodotus, Lib. 4. reckons it 200 *Stadia*, i. e. 12 French Leagues. *Polybius* and *Livius*, Lib. 5. reckon it 150 *Stadia*, that is to say, a Journey through *Cilicia*, which is something above 9 French Leagues. *Xenophon*, in the same 5th Book, concerning the Way through *Armenia*, which is 120 *Stadia*, i. e. 7 French Leagues and an half, is of the same Opinion.

Procopius, Lib. *Rerum Goth.* reckons 100 Miles, from *Ravenna* to the *Tuscan* Sea, to be 8 Days Journey to an expedite Man, though it seems to require no great Expedition to travel 12 Miles and a half per Day.

Military Journeys.

The *Romans* commonly reckoned this to be 20 Miles; but *Claudius Drusus Nero* reckoned it 33.

Alexander, to suppress the Rebellion of the *Arcei*, travelled 600 *Stadia* in two Days, that is, each Day 72 Miles: But now, because of Baggage and Artillery, an Army can scarce march 10 Miles in a Day.

Those who have Occasion to read ancient Authors, or those of the middle Age, and since, for the better understanding them, may observe, That the ancient *German Rasta* contained Three Miles.

The *Arabians* make use of Three Sorts of Measures: The First contains 12000 Cubits; their Cubit 24 Inches; their Inch 6 Grains of Barley laid Broadwise, and 25 of this First Measure make a Degree. The Second Measure contains 6000 Feet, or 4000 of our Cubits, and 56 of this Second Measure make a Degree. The Third Measure used by those who inhabit *Arabia*, is by them called *Fom*, and contains 3 *Parasanga*, or 9 Miles.

The *Jews*, who are scattered in the East, measure the Distance of Places by *Sta-*

tions, *Parasanga*, Miles, and Cubits. Their *Station*, or one Day's Journey, contains 9 French Leagues and an half, or 150 *Stadia*. Their *Farsanga*, or *Parasanga*, contain 4 Miles; their Mile 2000 Cubits; the common Cubit 5 Hand-breadths; the greatest 10 Hand-breadths, or 40 Inches; their Inch is either that which is common to all Nations, or the great Inch, by which all Things are measured in the Law, and answers to the Thumb of a Man's Hand.

All the *Asiatick* Moors reckon by *Parasanga*, each of which contains 3 *Italian* Miles.

The *Tartars*, and those of *Canada*, measure their Journey by Days, which contain 15 French Leagues, or 13 where the Ways are bad.

'Tis to be observ'd, That the Leagues of an Hour, which are frequently set down in Maps, are not always alike; and the common Rule of measuring them is according to the Strength or Weakness of the People. Thus the *French*, says *Brietius*, reckon one of their Leagues to an Hour, and the *English* reckon two. Hence it comes to pass, that the Leagues of several Countries are unequal; but Astronomers always reckon 20 Leagues of an Hour to a Degree; and so 'tis always to be understood in Geographical Maps, where the Scale of Miles is mark'd with the Leagues of an Hour.

SECT. IX.

Of the Figure of the EARTH.

THE Ancients had different and very odd Opinions concerning the Figure or Form of the Earth. *Cleomedes* says, some of the Ancients thought it to be plain; others thought it hollow, because Water stays upon it; but both those Opinions were soon found to be absurd. Some were still more absurd, and thought it to be quadrangular; but *Cleomedes* tells us, in his *Kuzianis Oewcia*, That all his Countrymen, the Mathematicians, and *Socrates's* Followers, held it to be of the Figure of a Globe. *Aparchemerus* tells us, there were those who held it to be of an oblong Form, and that it was one half longer than broad: Others alledg'd it to be twice as long as broad; and others gave the Length a greater Proportion. *Crates* resembled it to a Semi-Circle; *Hipparchus* to a Table; *Posidonius* to a Sling, whose Breadth or Middle lay South and North, and its narrower Ends East and West. The Curious may see more of this in *Cellarius's Notitia Orbis Antiqui*, Cap. 2. *Varenius* tells us, The Vulgar commonly thought it to be a broad circular Plain. *Lactan-*

tius and others of the Fathers were of the same Opinion, and thought the Earth extended downward with infinite Roots, because of certain Places of Scripture which they misunderstood. Some thought the ancient Heathen Philosopher *Heracitus* to be of the same Opinion; and others say, he alledg'd it was shap'd like a Boat. *Anaximander* is said to have ascrib'd it to the Form of a Rolling-pin; but this is deny'd, because he understood Astronomy. *Leucippus* thought it of the Shape of a Drum.

Cosma the Egyptian, who flourished about the Sixth Century, in his *Christian Topography*, thought the Earth to be twice as long as broad, and to be in Form like an oblong Square; and that the Heaven was rais'd in Form of an Arch over it: He conceived it to be represented by the Table in *Moses's* Tabernacle, which was two Cubits in Length, and one in Breadth: He was so very zealous for his Opinion, that he would scarcely allow those who were for *Ptolemy's* System the Name of Christians. He had a particular Fancy of a certain Mountain of a prodigious Height, in Form of a Cone, round which he suppos'd the Sun and Moon to take their Course; and by this he endeavoured to account, for the Seasons of the Year, the Length and Shortness of Days and Nights, and the Eclipses, &c. He founded his System on the Authority of *Patricius*, a Chaldean Doctor, whom he reckon'd to be a Divine Man. Those who have a Mind to see more of his Sytem, may find it in his *Topography* inserted in the Second Volume of Father *Montfaucon's* New Collection of the Greek Fathers and Writers, lately printed at Paris in Folio; where that Author tells us, That *Ptolemy's* System was not admitted into the Schools till very late; And that about the End of the 14th Century, 'twas the common Opinion of Divines, That the Earth was flat; and that even *Tostatus*, a few Years before the Discovery of

America.

America, rejected the Opinion of the Spherical Figure of the Earth as a rash Doctrine, and inconsistent with the Christian Faith.

SECT. X.

Arguments to prove that the WORLD is round.

V*arentius*, in his Third Chapter concerning the Figure of the Earth, rejects the Sophistical Arguments brought by several Authors for the Roundness of the Earth, and prefers *Archimedes's* Demonstration of those of *Aristotle*; tho' he owns that they also have their Difficulties: Therefore he proves the Earth to be round, because all the *Appearances*, as well *Celestial* as *Terrestrial*, are most commodiously explained by the Round or Spherical Form, as is evident from the Consideration of all other Figures. The Celestial Appearances he reckons to be the different Elevations of the Pole, the different Altitudes of the Sun, in one and the same Day in different Countries, the Proportion and Shadows, the Difference and Increase of the longest Days towards the Pole, the appearing of more or fewer Stars about the Poles, the different Times of the Rising and Setting of the Stars, &c. The *Terrestrial* he reckons to be the Directions of Navigation, the Appearing and Disappearing of Towers and Mountains, the Distances of Places, the Winds, &c. He adds, That our artificial Terrestrial Globe represents all Things so as they are to be really found in the Earth, which certainly could not be if the Earth were not round. Besides, whatever other Form we chuse, 'twill be attended with innumerable Absurdities; for 'tis manifest from the Appearances, that 'tis not plain: Nor can it be hollow, because the Sun and Stars must then appear to those who inhabit the West, before they appear

to those in the East; as we see the Sun illuminates the Vallies before it appears to those on the opposite Side of the Mountains.

Some of these Arguments are more particularly illustrated thus:

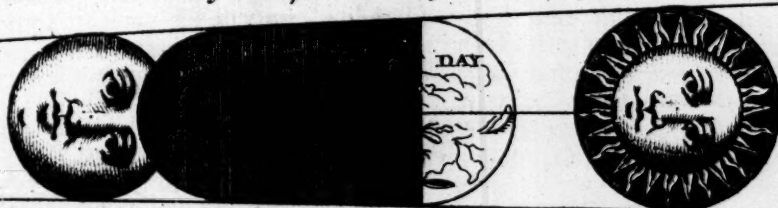
The Earth is prov'd to be of a Spherical Form, because the Sun and Stars rise and set a great deal sooner to those who live East from us, than to those who live West from us; and on the contrary, to those who live West from us, they rise and set later than to us, according to the Proportion of Time which the Distance of their Meridians have from ours. Thus if two Places be taken from ours, *viz.* the Distance of the Meridian of one towards the East 225, and the Distance of the other 450, then we shall find that in the latter the Sun rises two Hours sooner than with us, and in the former only one Hour. The Argument is still more clear, if it be propos'd according to the Sun's Arrival of coming to the Meridians of different Places; for whatever the Distance is betwixt their Meridian and ours, or Proportion between the Arches of the Equator intercepted between their Meridian and ours, the different Time of the Sun's Arrival will be found to be the same, which is plain from the Eclipses; for these Things are demonstrated by the artificial Globe, if we ascribe a Spherical Form to the Earth; whereas no other Form can do it.

The Globular Form of the Earth may be also prov'd by the Latitude of Places only, if any Difficulty be found to arise from their Longitude; for all Sections of the Earth, which are made according to its Latitude in different Places, are the Circumferences of Circles, and pass thro' the same Point of Heaven, *viz.* the Pole of Conversion, which lies near to the Polar Star. From these two Reasons it may be solidly infer'd, that the Figure of the Earth is Spherical; for this is a Geometrical Proposition which Geometricians

Hoc Schema demonstrat terram esse globosam

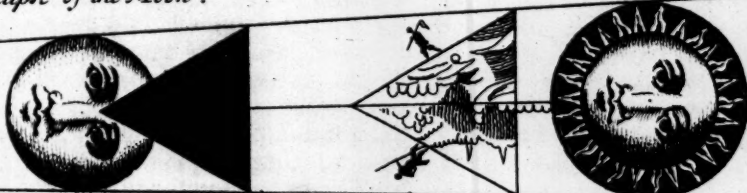
p. 14

This Scheme demonstrates y^e Earth to be of a Globular form.



Si terra esset trigona, umbra quoque triangulari figura in eclipsi Lunari appareret.

If the Earth were of a Triangular form, y^e Shadow woud appear so in the Eclipse of the Moon.

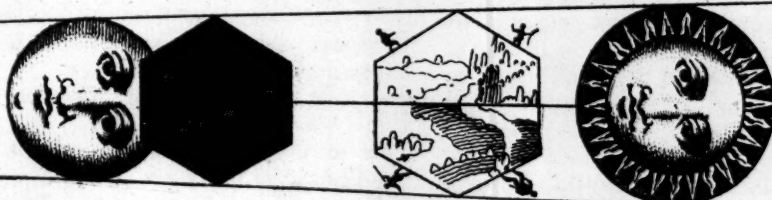


Si terra esset tetragona umbra quoque tetragonæ haberet formam.

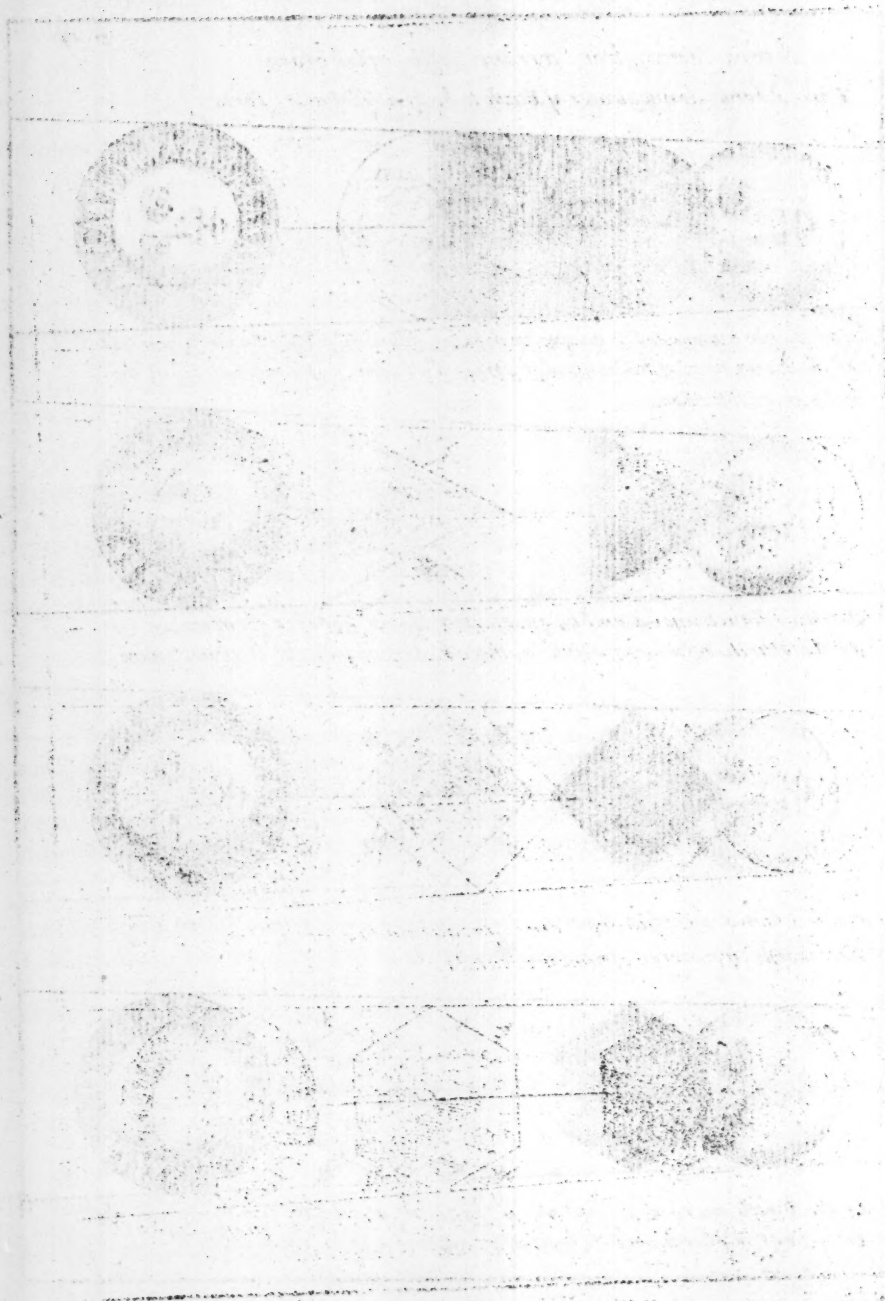
If the Earth were four Square, the Shadow would also be four Square.



Si terra hexagonæ esset figura, ejus quoque umbra in defectu Lunari hexagona appareret. quæ tamen rotunda.



If the Earth were six-square, y^e Shadow would be six-square in the Eclipse of y^e Moon, which however appears to be round.



metricians ought to demonstrate. If any solid Body be cut with what Number of Planes you please, passing through some one Point, and that all those Sections do make Circles in the Surface of the Body, that Body is Spherical.

Another Argument of yet greater Force is brought from the Shadow, which the Earth, from the Side opposite to the Sun, casts upon the Moon; by which means she is eclips'd: For this Shadow being round and circular, it proves the Form of the Earth to be so.

Other Arguments are brought for the Spherical Form of the Earth, from the following Considerations:

1. From sailing round it. Our *Europeans* parted from *Europe* 8 times, steering directly to the West and South as far as the Straights of *Magellan*, and afterwards to the West and North, and return from the East into *Europe*; and all these *Phenomena* happen'd to them that rise from the Properties of a Globe, which could never have happen'd, had not the Earth been of a Spherical Form: For since upon this Supposition these Voyages were undertaken, the Sailors could never have succeeded in 'em, had the Earth been of another Form.

2. When either by Land or Sea we go from high Towers and Mountains, the lower Parts of them disappear first, and then they go out of View more and more, till the whole of them disappear. In the same Manner when we travel towards a Tower or Mountain, the Tops of them first appear to our View, and then the lower Parts, according as we draw nearer, until we see the lowermost Parts of them; and the appearing or disappearing of those Mountains or Towers is in Proportion to the Spherical Tumor of the Earth: Nor can this *Phenomenon* be explain'd by any other Way or Figure. The like is to be said as to Ships, which go from or come towards the Shore: When they sail from us, the Hulk first

disappears, then their Sails, and at last their highest Masts, the natural Convexity of the Water appearing betwixt them and our Sight; but when a Ship comes towards the Shore, the Masts appear first, then the Sails, and at last the Hulk. To this may be added, That to those who live more or less Northward, the Pole is more or less elevated; for the Inhabitants of *Island* and *Lapland*, &c. who live about 1000 Miles more Northward than we, do see the Pole-Star 15 Degrees higher than we can. And those who sail hence for those Countries, do find that this Variation comes to about a Degree and a half at the End of every 100 Miles, which could not be, except the Body on which they mov'd were Spherical. The Curious may see more of this in Dr. Gregory's Learned and Elaborate Work, Entituled, *Astronomia Geometrica & Physica*; where he lays down a Method to determine the Figure of the Earth exactly.

SECT. XI.

Of the Dimensions and Magnitude of the EARTH.

THIS Noble Property of the Earth hath exercis'd the Wits of the greatest Men in all Ages. *Anaximander*, who liv'd about 550 Years before Christ, is said to be the first who described the Circumference of the Earth and Sea; and his Dimensions were follow'd by succeeding Mathematicians, till the Time of *Eratosthenes*; and therefore is thought to be the same which *Aristotle* takes Notice of in the Close of his Second Book concerning the Heavens; viz. That the Circumference of the Earth was 400000 Stadia. *Eratosthenes*, who lived about 200 Years before Christ, and was an expert Mathematician, assign'd 250000, or, as some say, 252000 Stadia, to the Circumference of the Earth, which according

ding to *Pliny*, makes 315000 Roman Miles. *Hipparchus*, who lived 100 Years after *Eratosthenes*, added 25000 Stadia to *Eratosthenes*'s Number. *Posidonius*, a learned Philosopher, and particularly well vers'd in Astronomy, who lived in the Time of *Cicero* and *Pompey* a little before our Saviour, said the Circumference of the Earth was 240000 Stadia, as *Cleomedes* relates; but 180000 according to *Strabo*, which seems to be truest. However, *Eratosthenes*'s Dimension was follow'd by most till the Time of *Ptolomy*, who lived 144 Years after Christ, and asserted the Circumference to be 180000 Stadia. *Maimon*, King of the *Arabians*, order'd some learned Mathematicians to meet in the Fields of *Mesopotamia*, and enquire into the Circumference of the Earth, which they determined to be 20060 or 20340 Miles. From that Time till our Days this Problem lay neglected; the *Arabians* follow'd their own Mathematicians, and the *Latins* follow'd *Ptolomy*. But about 60 Years ago, *Snellius*, Professor of Mathematicks at *Leyden*, a very learned Man, finding these Computations defective, demonstrated one Degree in the Earth to consist of 28500 Perches of 12 *Rheinlandish* Feet each, which make 19 *Dutch* Miles; and by Consequence the whole Circumference of the Earth to be 8640 Miles, each Mile

containing 18000 *Rheinlandish* Feet. The Curious may find the several Ways of making up those Computations in Sir *Isaac Newton*'s Edition of *Varenus*, *Lib. 1. Cap. 4.* with his own Opinion and Animadversions upon them. The Surface of the Earth, Mr. *Keil*, in his Examination of Dr. *Burnet*'s Theory, makes to be 170981012 *Italian* Miles. The Circumference of the Earth, according to the *French* Measure, is 123249600 *Paris* Foot, or 24649 $\frac{7}{8}$ *English* Miles. The mean Semi-Diameter of the Earth is 19615800 *Paris* Foot, or 3933 Miles, of 5000 Foot to a Mile; but the Earth is higher at the Equator than at the Poles by 85200 Foot, or 17 Miles; so that the Radius of the Earth may be taken in a round Number as 200000000 Feet. The solid Content of the Globe of the whole Earth is 30000.000000.000000.000000 Cubick Feet.

Since in Geography we not only consider the greater Circles of the Earth, as the Equator, &c. but also the Parallels of the Equator; therefore we must also determine how many Miles or Perches answer to one Degree in each Parallel. I took, says *Varenus*, the Computation of the Perches from *Snellius*; but I computed the Miles my self; viz. 1900 Perches for a *German* Mile, 1500 for a *Dutch* Mile, and 475 for an *Italian* Mile.

A TABLE of the Quantity of One Degree in every Parallel

Latitude.	Perches in one Degree.	Holland Miles and Perches.	German Miles and Minutes.	Italian Miles and Minutes.
1	28500	19 0	15 0	60 0
2	28496	18 1496	14 59	59 56
3	28483	18 1483	14 59	59 55
4	28461	18 1461	14 58	59 52
5	28431	18 1431	14 57	59 50
6	28392	18 1392	14 56	59 46
7	28344	18 1344	14 55	59 42
8	28288	18 1288	14 53	59 37
9	28223	18 1223	14 51	59 34
10	28149	18 1149	14 48	59 12
11	28067	18 1067	14 46	59 4
12	27976	18 976	14 43	58 32
13	27877	18 877	14 40	58 40
14	27769	18 769	14 37	58 18
15	27653	18 653	14 33	58 12
16	27529	18 529	14 29	58 0
17	27396	18 396	14 25	57 40
18	27255	18 255	14 21	57 20
19	27105	18 105	14 16	57 4
20	26947	17 1447	14 11	56 44
21	26781	17 1281	14 6	56 24
22	26607	17 1107	14 0	56 0
23	26425	17 925	13 54	55 36
24	26234	17 734	13 48	55 12
25	26036	17 536	13 42	54 48
26	25830	17 330	13 36	54 24
27	25616	17 116	13 29	54 0
28	25394	16 1394	13 22	53 28
29	25164	16 1164	13 15	53 0
30	24927	16 927	13 7	52 28
31	24681	16 681	12 59	51 56
32	24429	16 429	12 51	51 24
33	24169	16 169	12 43	50 52
34	23902	15 1402	12 35	50 20
35	23618	15 1128	12 26	49 44
36	23346	15 846	12 17	49 8
37	23057	15 557	12 8	48 32
38	22761	15 261	11 59	47 56
39	22458	14 1458	11 49	47 16
40	22149	14 1149	11 39	46 36
41	21832	14 832	11 29	46 0
42	21509	14 509	11 19	45 16
43	21180	14 180	11 9	44 36
44	20843	13 1343	10 58	43 52
45	20501	13 1001	10 47	43 8
46	20152	13 652	10 36	42 24
47	19798	13 298	10 25	41 40
48	19437	13 0	10 14	41 0
49	19070	12 1070	10 2	40 8
50	18698	12 698	9 50	39 20
	18319	12 319	9 38	38 32

<i>Latitude.</i>	<i>Perches in one Degree.</i>	<i>Holland Miles and Perches.</i>	<i>German Miles and Minutes.</i>	<i>Italian Miles and Minutes.</i>
51	17936	11 1436	9 26	37 44
52	17146	11 1046	9 14	37 0
53	17152	11 652	9 2	36 8
54	16752	11 252	8 49	35 26
55	16347	10 1347	8 36	34 24
56	15937	10 937	8 23	33 32
57	15522	10 522	8 10	32 40
58	15103	10 103	7 57	31 48
59	14679	9 1179	7 44	31 0
60	14250	9 750	7 30	30 0
61	13817	9 317	7 16	29 4
62	13380	8 1380	7 2	28 8
63	12939	8 939	6 48	27 12
64	12494	8 494	6 34	26 16
65	12045	8 45	6 20	25 20
66	11592	7 1092	6 6	24 24
67	11136	7 636	5 52	23 28
68	10676	7 176	5 38	22 32
69	10213	6 1213	5 23	21 32
70	9748	6 748	5 8	20 32
71	9279	6 279	4 38	19 32
72	8807	5 1307	4 23	18 32
73	8333	5 933	4 8	17 32
74	7846	5 346	4 52	16 32
75	7376	4 1376	3 36	15 32
76	6895	4 895	3 53	14 32
77	6411	4 411	3 38	13 32
78	5925	3 1425	3 23	12 32
79	5438	3 938	2 8	11 28
80	4949	3 449	2 53	10 24
81	4458	2 1458	2 20	9 20
82	3966	2 966	2 5	8 20
83	3473	2 473	1 50	7 20
84	2979	1 1479	1 34	6 12
85	2484	1 984	1 18	5 12
86	1988	1 488	1 3	4 12
87	1492	0 1492	0 47	3 12
88	995	0 995	0 31	2 4
89	497	0 497	0 16	1 4
90	0	0 0	0 0	0 0

SECT.

SECT. XII.

Of the Motion of the EARTH.

THE *Copernicans* say, That the Pythagorical Motion or Circumrotation of the Earth is the Cause of most of the Celestial Appearances; otherwise every Place would have a perpetual Constancy of those *Phænomena*. But no Property of the Earth has been more warmly disputed than this; and it was formerly condemned by the Church of *Rome*.

Every Body knows that the Sun, Moon and Stars, seem, in 24 Hours time, to be moved from East to West, and to return to the same Places of the Heaven; therefore of Necessity either they or we must be moved. 'Tis the common Opinion of those who follow *Ptolomy*, that the Heavens with the Stars are moved, and that the Earth stands still; yet the *Pythagoreans* maintained the contrary long ago, for which *Aristarchus* of *Samos* was accused of prophaning Religion, before the *Areopagites*, who acquitted him: Yet this Opinion lay buried in Oblivion till that eminent Astronomer *Copernicus* revived it about two or three Ages ago, wherein he was followed by many excellent Astronomers. Their Reasons in brief are these:

1. Because of the Number of Stars which seem to perform their Circuit round the Earth in 24 Hours, that it seems to be more reasonable to explain it by the Motion of the Earth, which is but one, tho' still keeping its own Place; as when we sit in a Ship, and sail near a Harbour of Ships, which seem to move towards us, tho' it be we that move towards them. And since Nature does not use to effect that by many Things which may be done by a few, we have Reason to think she observes the same Rule in this Case.

2. Because such a swift Motion of the

Stars seems to be incredible, and to surpass all Imagination; for since they are almost at an infinite Distance from the Earth, and run through such a vast Orb, they must run in a Minute's Time at least 100000 Miles: If this Motion be ascribed to the Earth, it continues still in its Place; nor is there any Thing to be apprehended from its Swiftmess, because it's carried round its own Axis.

3. This Argument appears yet more strong, if we compare the Vastness of the Celestial Bodies with that of the Earth; for since the Sun is at least 200 times bigger than the Earth, and the fix'd Stars above 1000 times bigger, it seems much more probable that the Earth turns round its Axis with a natural Motion, than that such huge Bodies are moved from Place to Place with that incredible Swiftmess.

4. Because all the greatest Astronomers find themselves obliged, with *Tycho Brache*, to deny those solid Orbs which the Ancients made use of to maintain their Hypothesis of the Motion of the Stars, their Circumrotation about the Earth seems much more incredible: For if they should allow those solid Orbs, they must grant a mutual Penetration of those Orbs, since certain Planets are frequently found in the Sphere of another.

5. No Reason can be given why the Stars should be moved round the Earth; whereas there are some to be assign'd why the Earth and the rest of the Planets may be moved round the Sun.

6. Because neither the Pole nor the Axis is real, about which the Stars are said to move; whereas there is a Pole and an Axis in the Earth.

7. Because all the Celestial Appearances, the Rising and Setting of the Stars, and the Lengthening of Days, may be easily explain'd, if we allow the Earth to move, especially since the Convenience and Necessity of this Hypothesis is easily perceived in those admirable Properties of the Planets; to explain which

Ptolomy's Followers have been forced to invent many Excentrick Circles and Epicycles, without any Reason; but the *Copernicans* do so easily deduce those Appearances from the Earth's second Motion round the Sun, as to make them intelligible to the Unlearned; viz. 1. Why the Planets seem sometimes to go retrograde, and *Saturn* oftner and for a longer Continuance than *Jupiter*, and *Jupiter* than *Mars*; and why sometimes they seem to be carried with a more rapid Motion, and sometimes to be Stationary? 2. Why *Venus* and *Mercury* can never be seen during the whole Night? 3. Why *Venus* is never at more than 60 Degrees Distance from the Sun, and *Mercury* no more than 30; and therefore are never seen opposite to the Sun.

These Arguments, tho' not demonstrative, yet make the Motion of the Earth more probable than the Motion of the Sun.

The Arguments brought against this System are;

1. That the Weight of the Earth makes it unfit for Motion.

2. That the Parts of the Earth are naturally carried in a straight Motion towards the Center; therefore a Circular Motion is contrary to its Nature.

3. If the Earth were moved, a Stone let fall from the Top of a Tower could not fall at the Foot of it.

4. A Bullet shot towards the West at any Mark, or a Bird flying Westward to any Place, they could not hit it, if the Mark or Place were moved with the Earth towards the East; or at least they would reach it sooner than if the Bullet were shot towards the East.

5. Neither Towers nor other Buildings could stand, but must be overturn'd by such a Motion; and all Men would be troubled with a *Vertigo*.

6. Because we see plainly, say they, that the Stars change their Place; but we do not perceive that the Earth does so.

7. Because the Earth is in the Center of the World, and the Center is not moved.

8. Because the Scriptures assert the Stability of the Earth.

To these Arguments, the *Copernicans* answer thus:

To the First, by denying the whole Earth to be heavy; for Gravity or Weight is the Tendency of the Parts to the Whole of the same Nature, and such a Gravity is discovered in the Parts of the Sun and Moon; yet neither of them is said to be heavy.

To the Second they answer, That this straight Motion is of the Parts of the Earth, and not of the Whole; and that the Circular Motion of the one does not hinder the Rectilineal Motion of the other; which is plain from the Parts of the Sun and Moon.

To the Third they give Three Answers: 1. That such heavy Things are not primarily carried to the Center, but to the Earth it self, and therefore by the Shortest Line to its Surface. The Shortest is that which answers to the Tower; as Iron tends not to the Center of the Load-stone, but to the Load-stone it self. 2. The whole Air adheres to the Earth, and is moved with it; therefore such heavy Things thrown down, do, together with the Earth, acquire its Circular Motion, and are moved, as 'twere, in a Vessel. 3. *Gassendus* has demonstrated, by frequent Experiments, That if any Thing be thrown from a moving Body, the Thing thrown is moved with the same Motion as the moving Body: For Instance; a Stone thrown from the Top of a Mast of a Ship under Sail, falls down at the Foot of the Mast; and a Bullet being shot up perpendicularly from the Foot of a Mast, falls down again perpendicularly: So that this Objection has nothing in it.

To the Fourth Objection they give the same Answer as to the Third.

To the Fifth, they say, There is no Room for it, because the Motion of the Earth is equal, and it dashes against no other Body; and Buildings being heavy Bodies, of the like Nature with the Earth, are moved with it, as in a Ship; for if a Ship be moved slowly or swiftly, if the Motion be equal in calm Water without Waves, we find that erected Bodies are not overturn'd by the Motion; nor will a Cup full of Liquor on board any Ship spill one Drop.

To the Sixth, they answer, That the Change of Place in the Stars is not perceiv'd, but only the Change of their Situation, with respect to our selves; and this Change of Situation may both be observ'd, and have a Being, whether we move with the Earth, or whether the Stars move, and we continue fix'd, or whether both we and the Stars do so.

To the 7th, they answer, That both the Major and Minor of the Argument are false, or at least doubtful.

To the Eighth, they answer, 1. That the Scripture speaks in natural Things according to Appearance, and the Capacity of the Vulgar: For Instance, The Moon as well as the Sun is call'd a great Light, because 'twas created to give Light to the Night; tho' the Moon cannot be call'd great, if compared to the Stars; nor has it any Light of its own, or does illuminate the Earth every Night. So the Scripture says, The Sun goes from the one End of the Earth to the other, and returns again; whereas in Truth there is no such End. So in the Book of *Job* a plain and square Figure is ascribed to the Earth, with Pillars to support it; yet every body knows, that this must not be understood in the literal Sense. Other Places of the like Nature might be brought; but these are enough; for the Scriptures are design'd not to teach us Philosophy, but Piety. 2. *Ptolomy's* Followers use to bring some Places of Scripture to prove the Earth to be unmoveable, which are not to be understood with respect to its Motion, but

to its Duration and Constancy; and such is that Place of *Job* just now mention'd. Thus we have briefly explain'd the Motion of the Earth according to the *Copernican* Hypothesis; but must refer the further Explication of it to Astronomy; and this Motion being suppos'd, all those Things are to be applied to the Earth, which use to be consider'd in a Globe turn'd round; viz. The Axis, round which 'tis turn'd, is one of its Diameters: The Poles, or the Extremities of the Axis, are two Points which are not moved. In the Third Place we are to consider the greatest Circle or Circumference, according to which its Circumrotation is made, and its Parallels. Then as to the Quantity or Swiftness of its Motion. The First Motion, by which the Earth is turn'd round its Axis, cannot be perceiv'd in the whole Earth, but is different according to the Difference of Places; viz. the nearer any Place is to the Equator, with so much the greater Swiftness 'tis mov'd; and the nearer the Pole, with so much less Swiftness: For because in 24 Hours every Place of the World is turn'd round by the Space of the whole Circumference, to wit, 360 Degrees, the Space mov'd in 1 Hour is found thus; if we divide 360 by 24, the Quotient will be 15 Degrees, the Number by which a Place lying in or out of the Equator is turn'd round in one Hour: And if the Place lie in the Equator, they make 225 *German* Miles; from whence, in 4 Minutes, it is turn'd round one Degree, that is, 15 *German*, or 16 *English* Miles; and in one Minute, $3\frac{1}{4}$ *German*, or 15 *English* Miles.

But Places lying out of the Equator, towards either of the Poles, are in an Hour's Time turn'd round so many Degrees, but such as are, much less; for the Proportion is the same betwixt the Swiftness of the Motion, and the Distance of two Places, as it is betwixt the Sines of the Arches by which those Places are distant from the Pole: For Instance, The Distance of *Amsterdam* from the Equator,

of the Elevation of the Pole is 52 Deg. 23 Min. therefore its Distance from the Pole is 37 Deg. 27 Min. whose Sine is 61037. Let us take another Place in the Equator, whose Distance from the Pole is 90 Deg. its Sine is 100000. But a Place under the Equator is in 4 Minutes turn'd round 15 German Miles, and in an Hour 225. Therefore by the Golden Rule;

As 100000 to 61037, so 15 to 9 Miles.
Or thus: So is 225 to 137 Miles.

Therefore *Amsterdam* is turn'd round every Hour 137 German Miles, and 9 Miles in every 4 Minutes of Time.

But the Discovery of this is much easier by the Table at the End of the preceding Section; for 360 Degrees being divided by 24 Hours, we find that any Place is turn'd round 15 Deg. of its own Circle every Hour, and 1 Degree in 4 Minutes: Therefore if we enter the Table with the Elevation of the Pole, or Distance from the Equator, we shall find the Number of Miles set down at the Degrees of the Elevation given, that the Place propos'd is turn'd round in 4 Minutes. For Instance, at *Stockholm*, the Elevation of the Pole is about 60 Deg. and in the Table at 60 Degrees, I find 7 German Miles answer one Degree: Therefore I say that *Stockholm* is turn'd round so many Miles in 4 Minutes.

So great is the *First Motion* consider'd in the Place of the Earth: But the *Second Motion* is that of the whole Earth from Place to Place; and all Parts or Places are mov'd with equal Swiftneſs, and by equal Circumferences. The Quantity of this depends on the Distance of the Earth from the Sun, and is perform'd in a whole Year; and therefore every Day the Earth is turn'd round about one Degree; and in one Hour, two Minutes and an half of a Degree.

The *Third Motion* of the Earth we leave to Astronomers.

SECT. XIII.

Of the Situation of the EARTH, with respect to the Planets and fix'd Stars.

Ptolomy, and those that follow him, place the Earth in the Center of the World, in the middle of the Stars and Planets; but the ancient *Pythagoreans* and *Copernicans* place the Sun in the Center, and the Earth as a Planet betwixt *Mars* and *Venus*, and alledge it to be carry'd round the Sun in one Year; which will be better understood by the following Diagrams. In this however they agree, that the Center of the First Motion is in the Earth, by which the Stars seem to be carry'd round in 24 Hours: For both *Astronomy* and *Geography* require this Hypothesis; so that whether you follow *Ptolomy* or *Copernicus*, it detracts nothing from the Certainty of General *Astronomy* or *Geography*. The Difference being only this, That *Ptolomy* ascribes this Motion to the Stars, and *Copernicus* to the Earth.

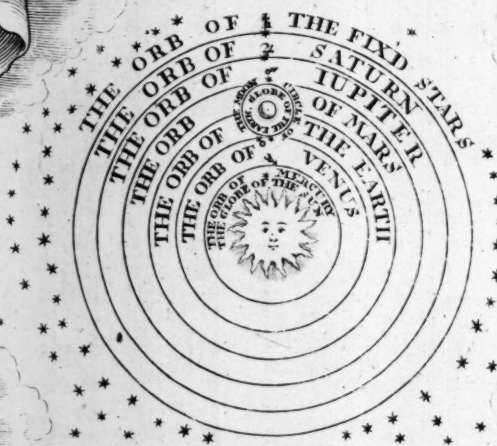
According to *Ptolomy* the Situation of the Earth, with respect to the Planets and fix'd Stars, is thus: The Earth, the Moon, *Mercury*, *Venus*, the Sun, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, the fix'd Stars.

According to *Copernicus*, the Sun is plac'd in the middle of the World, as the Heart; next to him, the Orb of *Mercury*, then *Venus*, the Earth, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, the fix'd Stars.

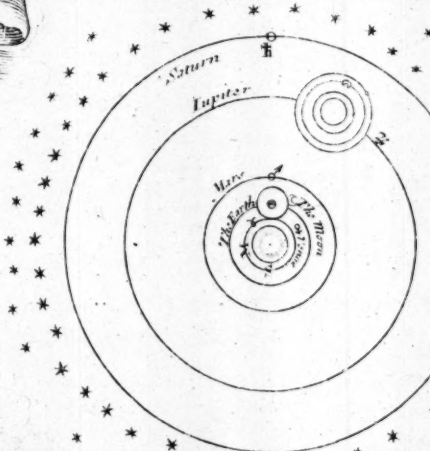
If the Distance betwixt the Earth and Planets be demanded, it must be observ'd, that it is not always the same, but changes every Day: Therefore Astronomers reckon three Degrees of Distance, viz. the Least, the Mean, and the Greatest. The Mean Distance of the Earth, from the other Planets, according to most Astronomers, is thus:

From

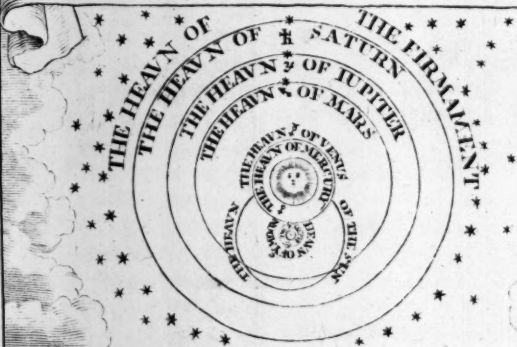
The Systeme of Copernicus who holds y^e Sun is unmoveable in y^e Center of y^e World. y^e Mercury makes his Revolution round y^e Sun in 7 Months. Venus makes here afterward in 7 & 1/2 The Earth in a year. the Moon goes round y^e Earth in about 27 days. and afterwards Mars Jupiter Saturn & y^e Firmament &c.



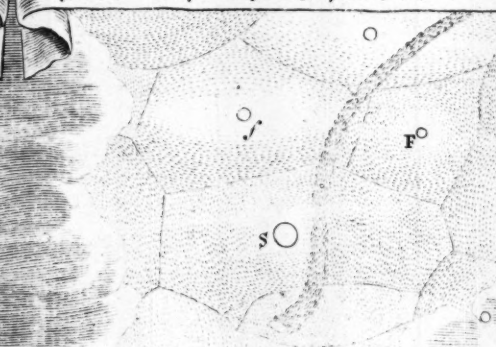
The Sytème of Des Cartes who holds that y^e Sun in y^e Center of y^e World, that all y^e Matter of y^e Heav'n is on y^e same side with y^e Sun that is from y^e West by y^e South finds a Medium betwixt Copernicus and Tichobrunius Motion to y^e Earth as Copernicus does. but contrary to the contrary.



The Systeme of Ticho Brahe who holds y^e Earth to be y^e Immoveable Center of y^e World. y^e Motion of y^e two Luminaries and of the primus Mobile. as he makes y^e Sun to be Center of y^e Motion of Mercury Venus Jupiter & of Saturn &c.



Des Cartes places y^e Sun among y^e fixd stars. & y^e Earth. He says that tho' y^e Sun & fixd stars seem to be situated in y^e sphere, these different bodies are nevertheless situated in space. Another is that y^e S be the Sun F. f. will be y^e fixd stars. & w^{ch} an Infinite Number of others above beneath and beyond the p^{re} dispersed thro' all y^e dimensions of space. &c.

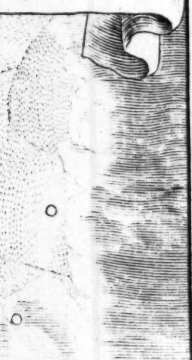


place the bot

Sun is unmoveable
 in turns on y^e same
 h to y^e East. He
 who Brahe by afri-
 cut forme. Argu-

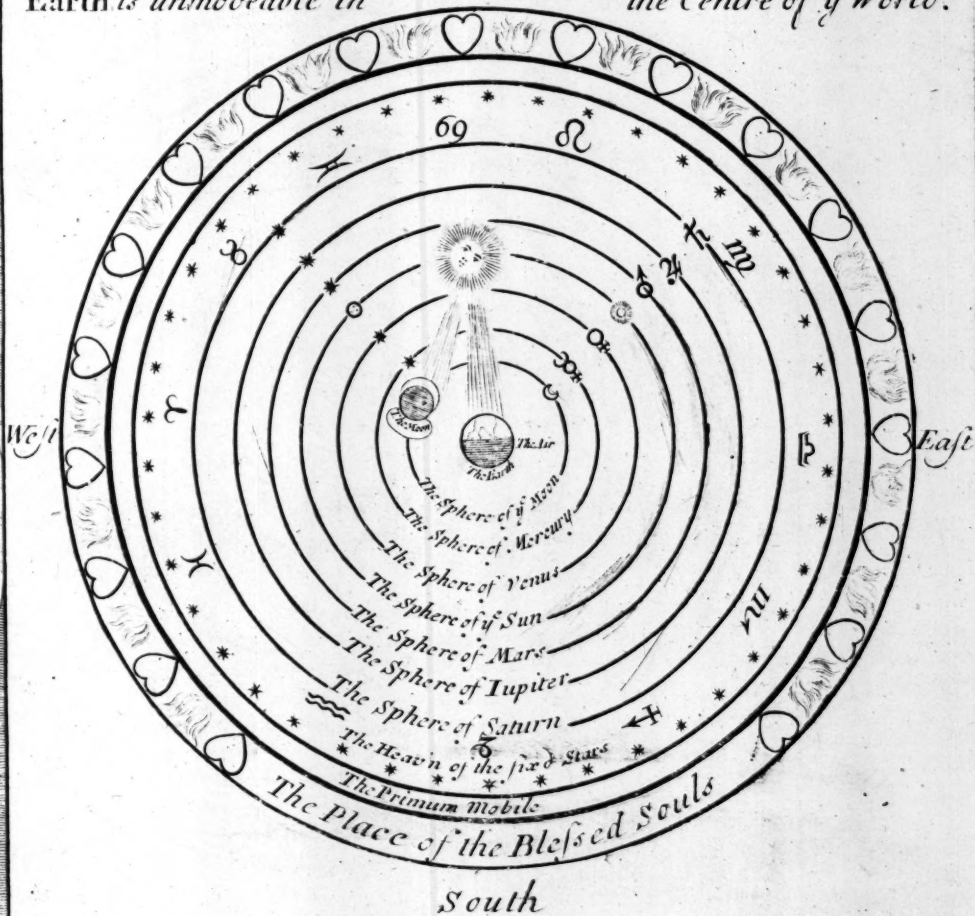


Earth among y^e Planets.
 in y^e same surface of the
 spaces superior to ene
 we may conceive
 the plan of this figure.



The Figure of the World

According to the System of Ptolomee who holds that the
 Earth is unmoveable in North the Centre of y^e World.



From the Moon, 60 of its Semi-Diameters.

From Mercury, 110.

From Venus, 700.

From the Sun, 1150.

From Mars, about 5000.

From Jupiter, about 11000.

From Saturn, 18000.

But the Distance of *Mars*, *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, and the fix'd Stars, is very uncertain, because of the Want of the Parallaxis. In the *Copernican* Hypothesis, the Distance is varied, not only from the Motion of the Planets, but from the Motion of the Earth. The Reasons for both Opinions are much the same with those in the preceding Section about the Motion of the Earth; for if you ascribe the Second, which is called the proper Motion to the Sun, the Earth, and not the Sun, will be in the middle; If otherwise, the Sun will be in the middle. The *Copernicans* offer the following Arguments for their System:

1. The Sun is not only the Fountain of Light, which, as a clear shining Torch, illuminates the Earth, the Moon, *Venus*, and the rest of the Planets; but is the Focus of Heat, and Vital Spirits by which the Universe is nourished and sustained: Therefore 'tis probable 'tis in the middle.

2. 'Tis more likely that the Earth turns round the Sun, that, with the rest of the Planets, she may receive Light and Heat from him, than that the Sun goes round the Earth, since he receives nothing from it.

3. The Sun being placed in the middle, furnishes us with a Reason how the Earth and the rest of the Planets are carried round him; viz. Because the Sun is a most vast Body, and endowed with great Force, and therefore puts the rest in Motion. This Argument will appear still more strong, if we consider *Kepler's* Hypothesis concerning the Motion of the Planets.

4. The Sun is turned round his Axis, as is proved by *Galileus* and *Sveinerus*, concerning the Spots of the Sun.

5. If we place the Earth betwixt *Mars* and *Venus*, and the Sun in the Center, the Motions of each of the Planets commodiously answer their Distance from the Center; which cannot be done by *Ptolomy's* System, as is evident from the Consideration of the Motion of the Sun, *Venus* and *Mercury*.

6. Those Celestial Appearances made use of in the former Section, to prove the Motion of the Earth, do likewise conclude for this Situation of it; viz. the retrograde Course of the Planets, and their Station, and the wonderful Appearances and Motions of *Venus*, *Mercury*, &c. For this Second Motion of the Earth presupposes the Situation of it. And this Argument, in my Opinion, is one of the chief; for from the First Motion of the Earth, nothing can be infer'd concerning its Situation; for the Earth might be in the Center of the World, if it wanted the Second Motion, as *Origanus* has also laid down.

7. Thus also the Variation of the Distances of Planets from the Earth is commodiously explained.

The *Aristotelians*, and those who follow *Ptolomy*, offer the following Arguments to prove the Earth to be in the Center: 1. Heavy Things are carried to the Center of the World; but the Earth is the heaviest Body; therefore it is in the Center. 2. Heavy Things would descend from the Earth towards the Center of the World, except the Center were in the Earth. 3. The Center is the ignoblest Place; but the Earth is the most ignoble Place of the Universe; therefore 'tis the Center. 4. If the Earth were without the Center of the World, and of the Motions of the Stars, then the Stars and Constellations would at some Seasons and Days of the Year appear greater than at others. 5. Neither would one half of the Heaven be always conspicuous; so that when *Taurus* rises, *Scorpius* should set, &c. 6. Nor would there be Equinoxes. 7. Nor when the Moon

Moon rises in an Eclipse, would the Sun set, &c. 8. Nor would an equal Number of Miles in the Earth answer to every Degree of the Heaven.

To these Arguments, the *Copernicans* answer thus: The First and Second are easily refuted, because the Motion of heavy Things is not to the Center of the World, but to Bodies of the same Nature; as is proved by the Parts of the Moon, Sun, and Loadstone. The Third is false, both in the Major and Minor; for the Center is a noble Place, and the Earth not ignoble. The rest of the Arguments are easily confuted by the Diagrams; at least if this be pre-supposed, that tho' the Distance of the Earth from the Sun or Center be very great, yet if compared to the Distance of the fix'd Stars from the Sun, 'tis so small, that it bears no Proportion: And this by some is reckon'd the great *Postulatum* in the *Copernican* Astronomy.

To this Place belongs the Explication of the Theorem, that the Distance of the fix'd Stars, and superior Planets, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, and *Saturn*, is so great from the Earth, that the Semi-Diameter of the Earth bears no Proportion to it; but that the Distance of the Moon, *Venus*, and *Mercury*, is not so great. As to the Sun, 'tis still in doubt; but certainly if there be any Proportion of the Semi-Diameter of the Earth to the Distance of the Earth from the Sun, it must be very small.

The Theorem is thus proved: 1. The fix'd Stars and superior Planets appear to us to rise in the same Moment, as by Computation they would appear to rise if we were placed in the Center of the Earth. Therefore the Distance of the Place where we are from the Center of the Earth, i. e. the Semi-Diameter, bears no Proportion to the Distance of the fix'd Stars. 2. If we take the Meridian, or any other Altitude, of a fix'd Star, or of one of the superior Planets, with an Instrument, we find it to be the same as

if we had observed it in the Center of the Earth: Therefore the Semi-Diameter of the Earth is nothing at all, if compared to that Distance. 3. If there were any Proportion, then the Distance of Two Stars would be found less about the Horizon than about the Meridian; because in this Situation, they are nearer to the Earth almost by one Semi-Diameter. The same holds as to the Sun; for his Diameter is not found to be greater in the Meridian, than when he is in the Horizon; but the Diameter of the Moon in the Meridian is observed to be something greater than when it is in the Horizon; and therefore in the Meridian 'tis nearer us almost by one Semi-Diameter of the Earth.

SECT. XIV.

Of the Substance and Constitution of the EARTH.

Proposition I. To explain of what Simple and Simil^r Parts the Earth is compos'd.

Philosophers are divided in this Matter: The *Peripateticks* reckon Fire, Air, Water and Earth, to be the Four Elements of all the Sublunary World. Many of the Ancients, as *Democritus* and *Leucippus*, held, that the World consisted of little solid Particles, differing only in Figure and Magnitude: They have been followed in this by many of the Moderns; and *Cartes* lately endeavoured to explain all natural *Phenomena* by such an Hypothesis.

Chymists lay down three Principles, viz. Salt, Sulphur, and Mercury; to which some add, *Caput Mortuum*.

But *Varenius* is of Opinion, That there are five First Simple Bodies, viz. Water, Oil of Sulphur, Salt, Earth, and a certain Spirit which some call Acid, and perhaps is the Mercury of the Chymists: For all Bodies and Parts of the Earth are resolv'd into those Elementary Substances;

stances; yet he owns, that they differ not so much in Essence, as in Figure and Magnitude. Of these Bodies, he holds the Earth to consist; and which being differently mix'd, produce such a Variety of Bodies, that being compared with one another, appear different or similar.

Prop. II. *The Earth is divided into dry and Liquid, or into Earth and Water; to which some join the Atmosphere.*

Water in this Sense is taken for all that's Liquid, and the Earth for every Thing that's Dry, and consists of Earthy Parts; as, 1. Sand, Loam, Clay and Mineral Earths, Chalk, Cinnaber, Ochre, *Terra-Lemnia*, brought from the Isle of *Lemnos*, called likewise *Terra-Sigillata*, Earth of *Samos*, *Armenia*, and many other different Species of Earth. 2. Stones, of which there is great Variety. 3. Metals, as Gold, Silver, Copper, Tin, Lead, Mercury or Quick-silver, or Metalick Oars; such as of Gold, Silver, &c. 4. Sulphur, Salts, Nitre, Allom, Bitumen, Vitriol, Antimony. 5. Herbs and Animals.

To the Water are referr'd, 1. Seas, and the Ocean. 2. Rivers and fresh Water. 3. Lakes and Marshes. 4. Mineral Waters, as Baths, &c.

The Atmosphere is that thin and subtil Body which encompasses the Earth towards the Heavens, and comprehends the Air, Clouds, Rains, &c. Philosophers differ in their Opinion as to the Height of the Atmosphere: *Kepler* makes it 8 Miles; and *Ricciolus* makes it probable, that 'tis at least 50 Miles high. The late Honourable Mr. *Boyle* makes the common Height of the Atmosphere, when the Mercury in the Baroscope is at 30 Inches, to be 7 Miles; upon a Supposition, that all our Air is of the same Density and Weight, from the Surface of the Earth to the Top of the Atmosphere: But since this cannot be supposed, he suggests it must be much more; and in his Book against *Linus*, he supposes it to be probable it may be some Hundreds,

say Thousands, of Miles high, in case the Atmosphere be not a bounded Portion of the Air, but reaches as high as the Air.

Prop. III. *How Earth and Water cohere, and constitute the Earth.*

1. The dry Part of the Earth has not always a regular Surface, but many Cavities and raised Parts. In the Cavities, which are round the whole Earth, is contained the Sea or Ocean: Therefore Part of the Surface of the Earth is covered with Water, and Part rises above it. The Cavities are not all equally hollow, but here and there have Rocks and raised Parts, and in some Places very deep Gulphs: So the dry Land is some Parts higher, and some Parts more depressed than others. Hence it comes to pass, that the Water which encompasses the Earth is hinder'd from overflowing it.

2. Besides that continued Cavity in the Surface of the Earth, there are also in the inner Part or solid Body of it many Hiatus's, Recesses, Windings, Conveyances, Gulphs, Conduits, and vast Receptacles; in some of which there is Sea, which is join'd to the Channel of the common Sea by some secret Conveyance: In some of them there is fresh Water, Rivers and Streams; in some of them Spirit, or a sulphurous smoaking Substance. This was also *Seneca's* Opinion, and 'tis proved by the following Arguments: 1. Because of the Rivers found in many Places, when the Earth is dug to any considerable Depth, as happens frequently in Mines. 2. Because in some Places the Sea is of an unfathomable Depth. 3. Because of Streams that are found in Caves of the Earth; particularly there is a Mountain in the West Part of *Hispaniola* of a considerable Height, with many Caves, into which Streams fall with such a Noise, that 'tis heard for 5 Miles. 4. Several Whirlpools are found in the Sea, particularly in that called *Pentland-Frith*, betwixt the

D

Orkney

Orkney Isles, and Caithness in the North of Scotland. 5. Because several Rivers hide themselves under Ground, such as the *Niger* and *Tygris*, &c. 6. Salt Fountains are found in many Places, which, doubtless, for the most Part come from the Sea. 7. Earthquakes prove the Existence of Subterranean Cavities. 8. In many Places the Earth shakes, as at *St. Omers* in the *Netherlands*, and *Peel* in *Brabant*.

From hence 'tis plain, That the Opinion of some ancient Philosophers was false, who alledged, That the Earth swims upon the Water. Some of them were likewise of Opinion, That the Earth was of old mix'd with the Water, so that it was of a middling Nature, betwixt Dry and Liquid, and of a Spherical Form: But at last the Watery Particles gathered together by Degrees into one Body, by that natural Property of joining together which is discerned in Water, that the Terrestrial Parts became thus condens'd; and that the Waters, as they retired, made Channels in the Earth. Some Modern Christian Philosophers defend this Opinion, and thus they understand that Text, *Let the Waters be gathered together into one Place, and let the dry Land appear*, Genesis i. 9. But most of the Primitive Fathers thought otherwise, for they were of Opinion, That the Water at first was separated from the Terrestrial Parts, and covered the whole Earth; but upon this Saying of *Jeboah*, the Waters retired miraculously, and the Earth was discovered, and that hitherto they are hindered by the singular Providence of God from overflowing the Earth again: And thus they look upon this Constitution of the Earth and Sea to be a Miracle. But *Varenius* shews, That there is no need of having Recourse to that, because the Inundation of the Sea is hindered by the Height and Consistency of the Land, which if at any Time removed, as by Earthquakes, &c. the Sea immediately overflows such Parts: And as to the Opinion of the ancient Philosophers, there can no Reason

be given why the Terrestrial Parts might not as well have sunk down, and have been wholly covered with Water, as that the Water should remove, and leave the Earth dry.

Prop. IV. 'Tis uncertain how those Parts of the Earth which lie towards the Centre are constituted.

Some think there is Water about the Centre of the Earth; but 'tis more likely, that the Earth possesses that Place. Mr. Gilbert, an *Englishman*, was of Opinion, That the innermost Body of the Earth is a very hard Loadstone, and that those Parts which we dig, and upon which Herbs and Trees grow, is like the Bark or Crust of the Earth, wherein there happens continual Generation and Corruption. *Cartes* differs not much from this: He thinks there are Three Regions of a different Substance in the Body of the Earth; the innermost, about its Centre, like the Substance of the Sun and fix'd Stars: The Second, which is thick and opaque, consists of very minute Particles; and the Third, upon which we live, consists of Particles that have not so close a Coherence: But there is nothing certain about these Things. That there is Fire in many Subterranean Places, and Smoke which proceeds from Sulphur, is manifest from the Baths: And *Thurnheusrus* affirms, That he found by Experience, that the nearer Mines are dug to the Centre of the Earth, the less Water is found in them.

Prop. V. The Consistency and Coherence of the Earth proceeds from Salt.

The Artificial Dissolution of the Parts of the Earth shews, that in all of them there is a certain Species of Salt to be found, and the harder the Body is, so much the more Salt, (a few oily Parts excepted) as in Metals, Rocks, &c. And that the Consistency or Concretion of all Things proceeds from Salt, is manifest from the very hard Stones that are made

made of Salt by Art. If you separate Salt from the Earth, it will no more stick together, but becomes meer Dust, and cannot be reduced to Hardness without a Mixture of Salt.

Prop. VI. *The Sorts of Earth are differently mix'd among one another in the Bowels of it.*

Thus in Mines there are found Particles of Gold, Silver, and Lead, not separate from other Particles, but sometimes mutually mix'd with one another, and sometimes with the Earth; and in some small Particles, that Artists cannot discover at first Sight but by other Ways of Trial, what it is that is contained in any Mineral Earth. When at *Amsterdam* a Well was dug 232 Foot deep, the Veins of Earth appeared as follows: 7 Foot of Garden Mold; 9 of Turf, or Peat; 9 of soft Clay; 8 of Sand; 4 of Earth; 10 of Clay; 4 of Earth; 10 of Paving Sand; 2 of Clay; 4 of White Loam; 5 of dry Earth; 1 of muddy Earth; 14 of Sand; 3 of sandy Clay; 5 of Sand mix'd with Clay; 4 of Sea-Sand mix'd with Shells; and then Clay of 102 Foot deep; and at last 31 Foot of Loam, where the Digging ceased.

Prop. VII. *The Cavities of the Earth, and its internal and external Disposition, and Situation of Parts, are not always the same, but differ at different Times:*

For not only the Sea makes several Changes in Parts of the Earth, by stopping up some Cavities, and enlarging others, but Spirits and Sulphureous Substances lurking here and there in the Earth, when they begin to kindle, and to be resolved into Vapours, they impetuously move and thrust forward the Parts of the Earth, as is plain from Earthquakes; and 'tis very probable there are such Motions in the innermost Parts of the Earth, of most of which we perceive nothing.

SECT. XV.

Of the Division of the EARTH by the Ocean.

THE Terraqueous Globe is divided into Earth covered by the Water, into Earth standing out of the Water, and Water it self. The Surface of the Earth standing out of the Sea, is divided into these Four Parts by the Interflux of the Water.

I. Into great Continents, or greatest Islands; of which we reckon Four:

1. The Old World,	} <i>Europe, Asia, Africa.</i>	} The Boundaries of this Continent, are,	On the North, the Northern, Frozen, and Tartarian Sea.
whose Parts are,			On the East, the <i>Pacifick</i> and <i>Indian</i> Sea.
			On the South, the South Sea.
			On the West, the <i>Atlantick</i> .

2. The New World,	} <i>Northern, and Southern,</i>	} Its Boundaries are,	On the North, <i>Davis's</i> Straights.
or <i>America</i> , whose Parts are,			On the East, the <i>Atlantick</i> Sea.
			On the South, the <i>Magellanick</i> Straights.
			On the West, the <i>Pacifick</i> Sea.

3. The Land of the North Pole, or *Greenland*, is every where encompassed by the Sea and Straights.

4. The South Land, or Land of *Magellan*, not yet discovered.

II. The Second Division is *Peninsula's*, or *Cherfonesi*, which are Parts of these Continents, and join'd to them by narrow Necks of Land: They are divided into Round, Oblong, and into such as have an Affinity with *Peninsula's*.

The round ones, } *Africa*,
whose Latitude } *Peloponnesus*, or the *Morea*; the *Cherfonesus* of *Grecia*,
and Longitude } *Cherfonesus Taurica*, or *Tartaria Preeopenfis*.
are almost equal: } *Cambaiia*.

The oblong are many in Number. }
1. The *Golden Cherfonesus*, or *Malacca*, adjoining to *India*.
2. *Cimbrica*, or *Futland*, adjoining to *Holstein*.
3. *Corea*, adjoining to *Tartary*.
4. 5. *North and South America*.
6, 7, 8. *California*, *Jucatan*, the *Cherfonesus* of *Thracia*.
9, 10. *New France*, *Ionia*, *Cnidensis*, *Myndensis*.

Those which have an Affinity to *Peninsula's*. } *Italy*, *Greece*, *Achaia*, *Spain*, *Asia Minor*, *Arabia*, *Norway*,
with *Sweden* and *Lapland*; *Beach*, a Country of *Magellan*;
New Guinea, *Indostan*, *Cochinchina*, [*New England*, *Monomota*,
tapa, and *Cambaiia*.

III. The Third Division is *Islands*, of which there are,

Nine great ones; } *Great Britain*, *Japan*, *Iland*, *Canada*, *Sumatra*,
Madagascar, *Borneo*, *Nova Zembla*, *California*.

Thirteen middling ones; } *Sicily*, *Ireland*, *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, *Java Major*.
Celebes, *Crete*, *Luconia*, *Sardinia*, *Friseland*, *Terra Nova* near
New France, *Mindanao*, and *Ceilan*.

Nine little ones; } *Gilolo*, *Amboina*, *Timor*, lie among the *Indian Islands*.
Corfica, *Majorca*, *Cyprus*, *Negropont*, lie in the *Mediterranean*.
Danish Zealand, and *Jamaica* which lies in the Bay of *Mexico*.

Very small ones; } 1. Those of most Note which lie alone, as *Rhodes*, *Malta*,
Lemnos, *St. Helens's*, *St. Thomas's*, *Madera*, &c.
2. Those which lie together in great Numbers very near one
another, viz. the *Canary Islands*, the *Caribbee Islands*, the
Hesperides, those in the Bay of *Mexico*, the *Maldiva Islands*,
those about *Madagascar*, the *Molucca's*, and *Illes of Banda*,
the *Philippin Islands*, those of *Japan*, the *Illes of Theeves*,
those of the *Aegean Sea*, those about *Great Britain*, and the
Islands of Solomon.

IV. The Fourth Division is *Isthmi*, or narrow Necks, of Land, which are those betwixt *Egypt* and *Arabia*, or betwixt *Africa* and *Asia*; the *Corinibian Isthmus*, betwixt *Peloponnesus* and *Achaia*; the *Isthmus of Panama*, or *Darien*, in *America*, the longest of them all; that betwixt *Futland* and *Holstein*; that betwixt *Malacca* and *India*, &c.

SECT. XVI.

Of MOUNTAINS in General.

TIS needless to insist on the Description of Mountains, and how they differ from little Hills, since that is known to every Body. The natural Use of them is very well described by *Kircher Lib. 2. Mund. Subter. viz.* That they are the same to the Earth as Bones are to the Body, and fasten the Globe so as it cannot be dissolved: For since the Earth is compos'd of Soil of different Sorts, and produces innumerable Species of different Things, as Minerals, and Mineral Fluors, these Things could not consist together, except they were kept in by the firm Structure of the Mountains. 2. Since the Sea flows perpetually round the Land, and is in continual Motion by the Winds and Tides, the Earth could not last without the Mountains, which keep the Sea within Bounds like so many Barriers; and, as *Job* expresses it, sets Bars and Doors to it. 3. Mountains are absolutely necessary to further and regulate the Course of Fountains and Rivers, since their Water would stagnate or overflow the Country, if the Surface of the Ground were altogether level: Therefore, says he, the Mountains are like Dugs in the Bosom of the Earth, and serve as the Repositories of Nature to supply the Earth perpetually with Liquor, and to fructify the neighbouring Vallies. 4. Mountains are necessary for breaking high Winds, and for producing Variety of Herbs, which could not subsist without them. 5. Mountains are the Repositories of Minerals, in whose Cavities the Subterranean Fire matures them, as in a Furnace, for humane Use. We need say nothing of the pleasant Prospects they afford, and of the useful Shade they give, at some Times of the Day and Year, to the neighbouring

Valleys, to prevent their being parch'd up; and of the Heat of the Sun, which at other Times they reflect upon them, to prevent their being absolutely drowned with Moisture: And, in the last Place, they make the Air serene and healthful. 'Tis evident, That most Countries rise from the Shore towards the Inland Places, it being necessary that it should be so for the Course of the Rivers and Brooks: So that the Proportion of Height betwixt the Midland and Maritime Places may be known by the Declivity of the Rivers. For the Way of measuring the Height of Mountains, we refer to *Varenius, Lib. 1. cap. 9.*

'Tis evident, by the Reasons that Author gives us, That the Height of Mountains bear so small a Proportion to the Semi-Diameter of the Earth, that they hinder its Roundness no more than a Grain of Sand does that of an Artificial Globe: For since we find by Experience, that there is no Mountain which exceeds an *English* Mile and an half in Height, and that the Semi-Diameter of the Earth is 860 *German* Miles, the Proportion betwixt the highest Mountain and that can be no more than 1 and an half to 860.

Philosophers differs as to the Origin of Mountains. Some think they were created at first: But 'tis evident, that several of them have fallen down by the Decay of the Rocks which supported them, from whatever Cause that Decay proceeded; and since there are natural Causes for their Corruption, there may be the like for the Generation, at least of some of them: For that several Mountains have been generated by Progress of Time, is infer'd from the Shells that are found in the Tops of many of them, particularly in *Gelderland*: And their Way of Formation, seems to be by Heaps of Sand and Dust being blown together by strong Winds, and brought to a Consistency by Rain: But this must only be understood of the lesser Sort, since

since 'tis more reasonable to conclude, that the greater Sort were concreted with the Earth.

The same Author considers the Reason why there is frequently Rain, Clouds and Snow, on the Tops of Mountains, when the Air is clear in the neighbouring Valleys. He rejects their Opinion, who think that Mountains attract the Air and the Clouds, because they give no Reason for it. He gives his own Opinion thus: He thinks that the Vapours and Exhalations being condens'd into Drops in the middle Region of the Air, they begin to fall downward, and because the Tops of the Mountains are nearer them than the Valleys, those Drops which fall on the Mountains leave their Place in the Air, which is immediately filled by those that are next, being either pushed forward by what Philosophers call *Fuga Vacui*, or because the Nature of Water is such, that it flows to that Place where the Flux first begins.

In his 10th Chapter he treats of the Difference of Mountains, which are either in single or long Tracts, and particularly of burning Mountains, which we refer to the Description of those Countries they belong to, and shall only take Notice here, That he assigns the Cause of those *Vulcano's*, or burning Mountains, to be the Sulphureous and Bituminous Substance contained in them.

Every one knows, that Mountains which run into the Sea, or rise very high on the Shore, are called *Promontories*, or *Capes*.

To Mountains are opposed Gulphs, Caves, Abysses, and deep Valleys: The most remarkable of which, we shall treat of in their respective Countries; and the like as to Mines, Woods, and Deserts.

In his 12th Chapter he treats of the Division of the Ocean by the Earth, and proves, That the Ocean encompasses the Earth, and the Parts of it, by a conti-

nued Tract, and that its Surface is nowhere totally interrupted by Lands interposed, but only its larger Continuity, and coming together freely, a little hinder'd. This is evident from the Experience of those that sail round the Earth. As to the Seas of different Denominations, and the Division of the Ocean into particular Seas, Bays and Friths, we refer them to the particular Countries from whence they take their Name, and shall only take Notice here, That the Ocean is divided into 4 great Seas, sometimes also called Oceans, viz. the *Atlantic Ocean*, which lies betwixt the West Shore of the Old World, and the Eastern Shore of the New, and is commonly, though improperly, called the *Northern Sea*, and therefore is more rightly divided into Two Parts, one lying from the Equator Northward, where it joins with the North Sea, and the other Southward, where it joins with the South Sea. 2. The *Pacific Ocean*, commonly called the *South Sea*, which lies betwixt the Western Shore of *America* and *Asia*, as far as the *Indian* and *Philippine Islands* and *China*. 3. The *Hyperborean*, or Northern Ocean, which lies about the North Pole. 4. The Southern Ocean, that lies about the *Terra Australis*, of which the *Indian Ocean* is a Part.

In his 13th Chapter he treats of some Properties of the Ocean, and its Parts, wherein he proves, That the Surface of the Ocean, and of all Liquids, is round, or a Part of the Spherical Surface, whose Center is the same with that of the Earth. He makes use of the same Arguments that were formerly brought, to prove the Roundness of the Earth, and likewise of *Archimedes's* Demonstration, which supposes Three Things: 1. That the Earth has some Center in its Middle, and therefore is Spherical. 2. That 'tis the Nature of all Fluids, that their Parts lying equal, and continued among themselves, at an equal Distance from the Center of the Earth, that which is less press'd

is expelled by that which is more pressed, as is plain from Experience. 3. That every Part of a Fluid is press'd by the Fluid above it perpendicularly, with respect to the Center of the Earth, if this Fluid descend, or be press'd by another Body. For his Geometrical Demonstration of this, we refer to the Book it self.

He likewise proves, That the Ocean is no higher than the Shores of the Land; and therefore that the Land and the Sea are every where almost of the same Height, excepting high Mountains. This is proved *a Priori* by the preceding Proposition; and he proves it also *a Posteriori* by the following Arguments:

1. We find by Experience, that Water, unless it be stop'd, runs from higher to lower Places; Therefore if the Places about the Shores were lower than the middle of the Ocean, Part of the middle of the Sea would flow to the Shores.

2. If the Ocean far from the Shore were much higher than the Sea at the Shore, that Height would be perceiv'd at a greater Distance than a Spherical Surface admits of: Nay, it must be seen at the same Distance from which the intercepted Parts of the Ocean are seen betwixt that Height and the Shore. But we find by Experience, that 'tis not seen at a greater Distance, but that the more remote Part is gradually seen after the nearer Part, when we come to the Shore from Inland Places; and the nearer that any Part is to the Shore, so much the sooner 'tis seen at the greater Distance from the Shore.

3. When Mariners sail in the middle of the Ocean or deep Sea, tho' they make use of Mathematical Instruments, they find it no higher there than in the Parts next the Shore; which could not be, if the Sea were elevated like a Tower or high Mountain: For as by Instruments we discern the Height of Towers or Mountains above the lower Parts of the Earth, we must of Necessity by the same Instruments perceive the middle of the

Ocean to be higher than the neighbouring Parts, if it were really so.

4. In the middle of the Ocean Islands are found here and there, and that also in great Numbers in some Parts near the Continents: Therefore the middle of the Ocean is not higher than the Earth, because 'tis not higher than the Shores of those Islands.

5. No Wave of the Ocean continues long in the Form of a Heap or Hill, but is immediately dispersed, so as to make an Equality with the neighbouring Parts. Therefore there can be no such Height in the middle of the Ocean above the adjacent Parts of it.

6. If the Water were higher in the middle of the Ocean, no Reason can be given why it should not flow into the Channels of the Rivers, if their Waters were lower; for we find by Experience, that Water, wherever it is, flows into the lower Parts; and hence Inundations are occasioned. It makes nothing against this, that in some few Places the Shores are higher than the neighbouring Inland Parts, since in most Parts 'tis otherwise; and 'tis evident in the main, from the Course of Rivers, that the Midland Places are higher than the Shores. He does not however deny, that there are Countries somewhat lower than the Water of the Ocean; but they are either defended by the Height of the Shores, or by Ramparts made on Purpose, which for most part are not cast up, because the Ocean is higher than that Part of the Shore in its natural and calm State; but to save the Country from being overflowed, when the Sea is swollen by tempestuous Weather.

From all this he concludes, That the Waters of the Ocean are no higher than the Earth; and that there is no need of having Recourse to the miraculous Providence, which prevents the whole Earth from being overflow'd.

In the next Place, he gives us the Reason why the Sea, view'd from the Shore, seems to rise higher and higher the more remote

remote it is ; and concludes, that this proceeds from a *deceptio visus*, or rather from a Mistake of our Conception, which led many into that Error, that the middle of the Ocean is higher by many Furlongs than the Shore ; and wonders they were not convinced of this Fallacy by daily Experience : For if we look at an *Area* extended to a considerable Length, any Body would think that the remote Parts arise gradually higher than those which are next us, though they be all of an equal Height. He says, 'tis the same with the Waters of the Ocean ; and that if we make use of a proper Mathematical Instrument on the Shore, we shall find no Part of the remote Ocean to be higher than the Shore, but rather a small Depression ; so that the Water sinks beneath the Horizon of the Shores.

He explains this Fallacy of our Sight by the Opticks, and demonstrates it by a Figure ; for which we refer to the Book it self.

In the Fourth Proposition of this Chapter, he explains the Causes and Rise of the Bays and Friths of the Ocean, which he thinks ought more properly to be called the Bays of the Earth, and Arms or Branches of the Sea ; and that those are more properly call'd Bays of the Sea, where *Peninsula's* run into it from the Land.

The Cause of those Bays he ascribes to the Separation of some Part of the Earth from others ; and that those separated Parts are lower than the Surface of the Sea : And hence it comes to pass, that the Water overflows those depressed and separated Parts, until it meet with a higher Land, which fixes its Boundary ; and the Cause of Friths is the same.

He assigns the Cause of the Separation of the Parts of the Earth to the impetuous Motion of the Sea, by Winds or otherwise ; which happening almost every Day, in Progress of Time some Parts of the Shore are so shook by the Waves, that they give Way to the Sea ; and the

more depressed the Shore is, the more easily Bays are form'd, especially if the Matter of the Shore be such as may be wasted by the Water : Yet we must not conclude, that all Bays and Friths have been so form'd ; for 'tis probable, that some of them are as old as the Creation. We have no Account in History of any new Bay or Frith's being formed ; tho' the ancient *Greeks* tell us some such Fables concerning the Streights of *Cadix* or *Hercules* ; viz. That *Calpe*, a Mountain on the *Spanish* Shore, and *Abyle*, another on the *African* Shore, were formerly one, but separated by *Hercules*, from whence they were called his Pillars ; and the Streights were also call'd by his Name.

The Opinion of the Ancients, concerning that Streight betwixt *Sicily* and *Italy*, is much more probable, because 'tis but small.

In the Fifth Proposition of this Chapter, he handles that Question, Whether the Sea be every where of an equal Height ? That it is so, is proved by the First Proposition, (provided there be no Impediment or Stop) wherein he shews the Surface of the Ocean to be Spherical, and that it has the same Center with the Earth. But since 'tis doubted whether there are not some Causes which may make some Parts of the Ocean higher than others, he thinks it a Matter of Moment that deserves Consideration, especially to those who have occasion to dig through Isthmus's for a Communication of Trade, &c.

Many are of Opinion with *Aristotle*, That the Ocean and Earth are higher towards the North, but lower towards the Equator. The Reason is, that the Ocean seems to flow from the Northern Regions as from its Fountain ; but from this he can infer no certain Conclusion, because 'tis still a Question, whether the Northern Countries, especially the Northern Channels, be higher or lower than those next to the Equator ? Nor is it sufficiently proved from this Motion of the Sea, because

because 'tis not general, nor perceiv'd in all Northern Countries; but tho' this Motion be allow'd, it will not follow that the Ocean is higher there, because to avoid this Excess of Height, the Ocean flows from those Places to the Equator.

This Opinion, That the Northern Regions are higher than the rest, seems to have taken its Rise from this; That when we travel to the Northward, we conceive the Pole to be elevated above the Horizon, and the Place where we are; and therefore, that the Pole of the Earth and the neighbouring Countries are higher than others.

Some think, that the *Indian Ocean*, betwixt *Africa* and *India*, is higher than the *Atlantick*, and endeavour to prove it from the *Arabian* and *Mediterranean Seas*: Where, at the same time, we are to consider, whether Bays be higher or lower than the Ocean, especially in the extream Parts of those Bays, and particularly those which are join'd to the Ocean by narrow Streights.

'Tis not unlike, that the *Atlantick* and *Indian Oceans* are higher than the *Mediterranean*, especially the extream Parts of it, towards *Asia Minor*, and *Egypt*: For the *Atlantick Ocean* flows into the *Mediterranean* by the Streights of *Cadix*; and 'tis likely that the Ocean is somewhat higher than *Frishts*, because the Water has not a Free Influx into them. At the Streights, indeed, the Difference can be but small; but as we advance further into that long and broad Tract betwixt *Europe* and *Africa*, this Bay seems to be lower depress'd than the Ocean, especially when it is stop'd by Rocks, Islands, and Promontories, which repel the Water, and lessen the Influx. And if it be true what credible Writers say of *Darius*, *Sesostres*, and other Kings of *Egypt*, we are not to doubt of this Inequality of Height; for those Kings attempted to dig a Canal betwixt the *Red Sea* and the *Nile*, that Ships might sail this Way from the *Indian* and *Red Seas* by *Egypt*, and from

thence by the Mouth of the *Nile* into the *Mediterranean*, which would have been of vast Advantage to *Egypt*, and to many Countries on the *Mediterranean Sea*: but they desisted, upon Information by Persons of Skill, that the *Red Sea* was much higher than the Land of *Inner Egypt*: Therefore if the *Red Sea* be higher than *Egypt*, it must be higher than the *Nile*, and by Consequence than the *Mediterranean*: For 'tis plain, that the *Nile* is not lower than the *Mediterranean*, because it flows into it. Therefore the *Indian* and *Red Seas* are higher than the *Mediterranean*, at least than the extream Parts of it about *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Thracia*, and the *Aegean Sea*. Besides, not only the ancient *Egyptian Kings*, but their latter Sultans, and the Emperors of the *Turks*, are said to have attempted the same Thing, and to have forborn it for the same Reasons.

But what we have said concerning the *Red Sea's* being higher than the *Mediterranean*, is questioned by some, since they are both Bays of the Ocean, the *Mediterranean* of the *Atlantick*, and the *Red Sea* of the *Indian Ocean*. *Varenius* thinks the Cause to be, that tho' both of them are Bays from the Ocean, and are therefore probably somewhat lower than the Ocean; yet it is not so sensible in the *Red Sea*, because 'tis of a much less Length than the *Mediterranean*; and therefore a great deal nearer to the Ocean than the extream Parts of the latter.

Therefore if a Canal were dug from the *Red Sea*, the *Indian Ocean* would send in abundance of Water into the *Mediterranean*; but he questions whether it would send so much as to overflow the Countries which lie upon the *Mediterranean*; for it might perhaps be, that if the *Indian Ocean* sent in more through that Canal, the *Atlantick* would send in less through the Streights; because the Height of the *Atlantick* would be lessen'd if the Motion were from the *Indian Ocean* into the *Mediterranean*.

E

There

Therefore he thinks, those Princes gave over the Attempt rather from Political Reasons : And,

1. Because of the Trouble and Charge ; for the *Isthmus* is at least 40 German Miles broad where 'tis narrowest ; the Ground is full of Rocks ; and Ramparts must have been cast up in many Places by skilful Engineers, which those Governments had not.

2. Because the Christians, particularly the *Venetians* and other *Italians*, the *French* and *Spaniards*, would have reap'd more Advantage by it than *Egypt*, and other of the *Turkish* Dominions ; for the Christian Merchants would have sail'd that Way to and from *Persia* and the *Indies*, and brought home those Goods in Ships, which the *Turks* had rather should be brought through their Dominions on Camels which by the Toll they pay in several Places, bring much Money into their Treasury. *Masse*, in his History of the *Indies*, confirms this Conjecture, when he tells us how ill *Campson*, the Sultan of *Egypt*, took the Navigation and Trade of the *Portuguese* to the *Indies*.

3. He supposes the Sultans and *Turks* were afraid that the Christians, whom they knew to be strong in Shipping, would make themselves Masters of that Canal, and the adjacent Countries, together with *Medina* and *Mahomet's* Sepulchre ; since it would have been easy for them to have transported Armies by their Fleets for that End.

Alphonfus Albuquerque, the *Portuguese* Governor of the *Indies*, is said to have form'd another Design, viz. to turn the Course of the *Nile* from *Egypt*, and by that Means to have render'd it barren and useless to the *Turks*, by digging a new Channel for it from *Abassia* into the *Red Sea* ; but he dy'd without doing any Thing in it.

This may be confirm'd by another Instance : The *German Ocean*, which is Part of the *Atlantick*, running in between *Erijsland* and *Holland*, makes a Bay ;

which tho' comparatively small in respect of others, yet is called a Sea, and comes up to *Amsterdam*, the famous *Emporium* of *Holland*. Not far from thence is the Lake of *Haerlem*, which is also call'd a Sea ; 'tis as high as the Bay just now mentioned, and sends out a Branch to the City of *Leyden*, where 'tis divided into several Canals. Therefore since neither this Lake nor that Bay overflow the adjacent Countries, except in case of Tempests, against which Ramparts and Dikes are provided, 'tis plain that they are not higher than the Land of *Holland*. But that the *German Ocean* is higher, the Citizens of *Leyden* found by Experience, when they attempted to dig a Canal from that City to the said Ocean, near *Carnick*, which is but 2 Miles distant, in order to let in the Sea by that Canal, that they might have sent Ships from thence into the said Ocean ; but when they dug a great Way, it was discovered by Observation, that the *German Ocean* was higher than the Land betwixt it and *Leyden* ; and therefore they gave it over.

'Tis otherwise with those Bays which flow in, not by an oblong and narrow Channel, but by one that is large and broad betwixt Lands ; such as those of *Bengall*, *Mexico*, &c. for 'tis not to be doubted that they are of the same Height with the Ocean, from which they are not separated by any Streights. I know 'tis said, the *Spaniards* doubted whether the *Pacifick Sea* was higher than the Bay of *Mexico*, when they thought of digging a Canal through the *Isthmus* of *America* or *Darien*, for the Convenience of a free Navigation to *Peru*, *China*, and the *Indian Islands* ; but the true Reasons of their forbearing it were found to be Political, because they were afraid lest the *English*, *Dutch*, and other Nations, should make themselves Masters of this Canal, fortify it at both Ends, and invade *Peru*, &c. For 'tis certain, in this Case, the *Dutch* had been under no Necessity to undertake long and dangerous Voyages by the Streights of *Magellan* and.

and *Le Maire* to attack *Pern*, and weaken the Strength of the *Spaniards* in those Parts.

The continual Flux and Reflux, and other Motions of the Sea, occasion a different Height of the Ocean, in the same Part, at different Times and Hours of the Day; but these are external Causes; but we speak of the natural Constitution of the Water. Besides, they do not so much vary the Height in the Ocean it self, as they do near the Shores.

In his Sixth Proposition he asserts, That the Depth of the Ocean may be founded in most Parts by a Line; and that there are few Places where the Bottom has not been found.

The Depth of the Sea is various, according as the Channel is more or less depressed, $\frac{1}{2}$ of a *German Mile*, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{5}$, &c. and in some Places it is found to be about a whole *German Mile*, where Lines are not long enough to sound it; tho' probably it is not much deeper. We don't deny however, but that in some deep Channels there are a certain sort of Whirlpools and Subterranean Passages.

The Depth is much less in Bays than in the Ocean, because the Channel is more shallow on Account of the Nearness of the dry Land; and for the same Reason, the Ocean is shallower towards the Shore than in Places more remote, because of the hollow Figure of the Channel.

Mariners sound the Depth with a Plummet of a Pyramidical Form, weighing about 12 lb. If the Line be of 3 lb. or more, such as is sufficient for 200 Perches, the others require a Plummet of more Weight. Yet there may be a Mistake in this Observation, if the Line be hinder'd to descend perpendicularly by the Waves or Vortices of the Water.

From the Depth hitherto observ'd in most Places, 'tis manifest, that it is very near equal to the Height of Mountains and Inland Places, viz. As much as they are elevated above the Horizon of the Shores, so much are the Channels depressed

below it; but the Depth is sometimes alter'd by the Flux and Reflux, by the Increase and Decrease of the Moon, by Winds, and by the settling of Sand and Slime in the Channels.

His Seventh Proposition is, That the Ocean has no Fountains, but is contain'd within the Cavities or Channels of the Earth.

Varenius has a long Dissertation upon this Subject, with the Arguments *pro* and *con*, but determines nothing. He takes Notice, that some of the Ancients thought the Ocean flow'd from 4 Conduits under the North Pole, and represented it so in Maps; but he accounts for the Motion of the Sea from North to South, that is often observ'd in the Northern Parts by the following Reasons:

1. The Frequency of the Northern Winds.

2. The great and perpetual Quantity of Snow and Rain in those Places, which increases the Water, and makes it flow towards the South. Upon the whole, he says, he will not controvert the Opinion of those who assert, That the Fountains of all the Rivers which disburden themselves into the Ocean, are the Fountains which supply it; nor that the Water returns again to those Fountains and Rivers by Subterranean Passages, and the Vapours rais'd from the Sea, which occasion Rain. The Curious, who would see more of it, we refer to the Book it self.

In his Eighth Proposition, he asserts, That the salt Taste of the Sea-Water proceeds from the Particles of Salt mix'd with it: But whence those Particles come, or how they are augmented and preserv'd, is doubtful.

The First Part of the Proposition is plain from Experience, and known to the Vulgar, that Salt is made by the boiling of Sea-Water, and by the Heat of the Sun and Fire. In *Germany*, and many other Places, 'tis separated from the Water by Fire: In *France*, where

the Sun is hotter, the Sea-Water is let into Pits made on purpose, where, in some Months time, the Water being dry'd up by the Heat of the Sun, there is Salt found at bottom. In the Shores of many Countries, there is found Plenty of Black Salt; for the Sea flowing frequently upon the Coast, and leaving some Particles or Moisture behind it, the Water, or more subtil Part, exhales from it, and leaves Salt behind it, the Blackness of which is cured by boiling; tho' in most Shores 'tis carried off again, and dissolv'd by the Sea, which is the Reason that 'tis not found on all Shores. Hence 'tis plain, that the immediate Cause of the Saltiness of the Sea-Water is the Salt Particles contain'd in it. Therefore *Aristotle* and his Followers were in the Wrong to ascribe this Saltiness to the Heat of the Sun, or adust Particles.

The chief Controversy is about the other Member of the Proposition, from whence these Salt Particles come. *Aristotle* says, That dry Exhalations of a Saline Nature, rais'd from the Earth, mix'd with moist Vapours, and meeting with Rain, fall together with it into the Sea, and there produce Salt Particles, which occasions this Saltiness of the Water.

Other Peripateticks alledge, That the Saltiness of the Sea is occasion'd by the scorching Heat of the Sun, because the Surface of the Water is found to be most Salt.

But both these Opinions are attended with Absurdities. *Aristotle's* Opinion is confuted thus: 1. That the Sea-Water was never yet found without a Salt Taste; so that it cannot proceed from Salt Rains. 2. That the Sea would be less Salt when Rain is not frequent; which is contrary to Experience.

The Arguments of the other Peripateticks are answer'd thus: 1. That 'tis not true that the nearer the bottom, the Waters are the less salt; and there are but very few Places where fresh Springs are found in the bottom of the Sea. 2. Experience shews, that fresh Water, tho'

long expos'd to the Heat of the Fire or Sun, does not thereby become salt. *Scaliger's* Objection against this, That the fresh Water, because of its small Quantity, does not grow thick, but dissolve, is likewise answer'd by Experience; for tho' you take a great Quantity of Water, and set it over a gentle Fire to prevent its Dissolution, yet the Water does not grow salt. 3. Lakes and Marshes, tho' scorcht by the Sun, do not grow salt. *Scaliger's* Objection against this, That it proceeds from a Succession of Rain-Water, is likewise easily answer'd; for those Pools and Lakes which proceed from Rain and Snow, are dry'd up during a long Intermission of Rain or Snow, without growing salt.

From hence *Varenius* infers, That these Salt Particles were created with the Ocean; and that we are no more to dispute this, than the Origine of the Ocean it self, or the Origine of the Earth and Generation of the World. 2. If this seem less probable, he adds, that these Salt Particles may be deriv'd from the Earth, and dissolv'd in the Sea; for he tells us, 'tis certain there are many Salt Mountains or Rocks in the Bosom of the Ocean. The whole Isle of *Ormuz* is a white hard Salt Rock, of which they build the Walls of their Houses; and there is no fresh Water found in that Island. He adds, That none can be ignorant that many Salt Mines are found on the Land; but there is no need of being particular in this, for the greatest Part of the Earth is nothing but Salt: And as the Chymical Philosophers have prov'd, that every Thing owes its Consistency to Salt, Experience makes good their Assertion; for if we take a Piece of hard Earth, and burn it to Ashes, we shall find much Salt in them. To the Objection, That those Salt Parts of the Earth could not perpetually supply the Sea with Salt Particles, but they would in Time be consumed by the Ocean; he answers, That the Salt of the Sea-Water is not consum'd in such Abundance,

dance, as to need much Supply ; and if any be dissolv'd, it still remains in the Bottom, and supplies the Saltness of the Sea.

In his Tenth Proposition, he asserts, That the Water of the Ocean is so much the less salt, the nearer 'tis to the Poles ; and becomes more salt, the nearer it lies to the Equator or Torrid Zone. But tho' this may be understood of most Parts of the Ocean, yet he owns, that it admits of some Exceptions. He assigns Six Causes why the Ocean is more salt in some Places than others.

1. Under and near the Torrid Zone, where the Sun is hotter, the fresh Vapours are more separated by the Heat ; and hence it comes to pass, that the Water is more salt there than in the Northern Places, where there is not so much fresh Water separated, because of the weak Heat of the Sun.

2. The Second Cause is the Heat or Coldness of the Water ; for the same Numerical Water, or Salt Meat, &c. is more Salt to the Taste when hot, than when cold ; for the Heat or Particles of Fire make the Salt more acute and sensible to the Taste ; and this is the Reason why the Waters near the Equator seem more salt to the Taste, than those which are near the Poles, even though they should contain the same Quantity of Salt.

3. It proceeds from the greater or lesser Quantity of Salt in the different Parts of the Channel of the Ocean ; for as we find that there are not Pits of Salt in all Places of the Earth, and that those Pits do not all contain a like Quantity, we must judge the same of the Channel of the Sea ; and by Consequence, where there is most Salt in the Channel or Shore, there the Water is more salt. Thus the Isle of *Ormuz* being all Salt, the neighbouring Ocean is very salt : But whether there be more Salt in the Channels and Shores in the Torrid Zone than in the North, is doubtful ; tho' some are of Opinion, that there is more

Salt in those Places, because the greater Heat of the Sun separates the Water from the Earthy and Salt Parts : But this is not to be depended on, because we have no Observations to confirm it.

4. It proceeds from the unequal Frequency of Rain and Snow. In the Northern Places, Rain and Snow is frequent. In the Torrid Zone, they are less frequent some Parts of the Year, and at other Times they are almost continual ; and in the rainy Months the Water of the Ocean is less salt ; as is plain from the Coasts of *Malabar*, where the Ocean is fresh, in rainy Months, because of the great Quantity of Water that flows into the Sea from the Mountain *Gatis*.

5. It proceeds from the unequal Faculty of the Water to dissolve the Salt, and unite it to it self ; and since hot Water dissolves the Salt better, therefore the Ocean is more salt under the Torrid Zone.

6. It proceeds from the more or less Quantity of fresh Water that flows into the Ocean from Rivers : Thus Mariners affirm, That on the Coast of *Brasile*, where the Silver River falls into the Sea, the Ocean loses its Saltness, and affords fresh Water 15 Miles from the Shore. 'Tis the same on the *African* Coast, where the River *Zaire* discharges it self into the Ocean : And to these we may add, the fresh Water Fountains that spring up in some Parts of the Bottom of the Sea.

From hence, says *Varenius*, 'tis easy to give an Account why Salt is not so easily separated by boiling from the *German* and Northern Ocean, as from the *Spanish* Sea, and that about the *Canary* Isles and *Cape Verd*, (from whence the *Dutch* fetch great Store of Salt) because this Ocean is nearer the Torrid Zone : Yet he does not deny the Channels themselves to be more or less salt in their Constitution ; for the Sea-Water at *Guinea*, in the *Ethiopian* Sea, produces Salt at one Boiling as white as Snow ; such as neither the *Spanish* Ocean, nor any other

other in *Europe*, produces at one Boiling.

In his Eleventh Proposition, he considers why Rain in the middle of the Ocean is sweet, tho' it proceeds from the Vapours rais'd out of the Sea; and yet Sea-Water is continually salt, tho' boil'd or distill'd: And here he tells us, That Chymists have hitherto laboured in vain to extract fresh Water from that of the Ocean; for tho' both when they boil and distil it, they find Salt left in the bottom of the Vessel; yet Water separated either Way, is still found to be salt, and not fit for Men to drink. The Chymists, he says, tho' it seems strange to others, have found the Reason of it; *viz.* That there are two Kinds of Salts in Bodies, which tho' they agree in Taste, yet differ in other Qualities. The one they call Fix'd Salt, the other Volatile. The Fix'd Salt, by reason of its Weight, is not rais'd by Distillation, but remains in the bottom of the Vessel; whereas the Volatile Salt is full of Spirit, and in Reality is nothing else but a most subtil Spirit rais'd by a gentle Fire; and therefore in Distillation ascends with the Water, and is more firmly united to it by the Subtilty of the Atoms. Nor is this Volatile Salt found only with Fix'd Salt in Sea-Water, but almost in all Bodies, as Chymists find by Experience in greater and lesser Quantities. Thus sharp-tasted Herbs are found to have a greater Quantity of Salt than those which are oily.

He assigns Four Reasons why Rain-Water is as fresh by Sea as by Land, tho' it be extracted from the Exhalations of the Sea by the Heat of the Sun, or Subterranean Fires: 1. From the Slowness of the Operation, by which the more subtil Part is only rais'd from the Ocean; which, tho' it contains a Salt Volatile Spirit, yet has it in less Quantity than it would have were the Exhalation occasion'd by a stronger Heat. 2. 'Tis probable, that before these Vapours arrive at that Region of the Air where they are

condens'd into Rain, the Salt Spirit is separated by Degrees from the watery Parts. 3. The Mixture of other watery Particles which exist in the Air. 4. The cooling and condensing of the Vapours; for these Exhalations, rais'd from the Ocean by Degrees, are more and more cool'd, and being join'd with other Vapours in their Way, they are condens'd into a more thick Cloud; and in this Condensation of the Salt Spirit with the fiery Particles, they fly into the higher Part of the Air.

He gives us Two Reasons why the same is not perform'd in Distillation, where the exalted Vapours are also condens'd. 1. Because of the Smallness of the Passage, the Salt Spirit is too straitly conjoin'd to the watery Parts. 2. Because the Vapours restrain'd in the Vessel allow not a free Passage to the Volatile Spirits.

In his Twelfth Proposition, he lays down, That the Sea-Water is more heavy than fresh Water; and that the Water of one Sea is heavier than another. The Cause of this, he says, is manifest from what has been said already, because the Sea-Water contains a fix'd Salt, which is a heavier Body than fresh Water; and that the Sea is not equally salt in all Places: Yet he alledges, it does not follow, the more salt the Water is, the more heavy it is, because Salt does not augment the Weight, but lessens it, and yet makes the Water very salt.

In his Thirteenth Proposition, he assigns the Reason why salt Water does not so easily freeze as fresh Water; *viz.* Because in the Salt there is a certain Spirit which resists Congelation, and being separated from the Salt, cannot be frozen by the hardest Frost, as Chymists very well know.

In his Fourteenth Proposition, he gives us the Reason why the Ocean is not made bigger, tho' it receives so many Rivers. 1. Because the Water returns from the Sea through Subterranean Passages. 2. Because much of the Rain which

is rais'd from the Vapours of the Sea falls on the Land.

In his Fifteenth and Sixteenth Propositions he gives an Account why the Sea differs in Colour, which he assigns to the different Colours of the Sand at Bottom. Thus the *Red Sea* appears always of that Colour, because the Red Sand is kept in continual Motion by the violent Flux and Reflux of the Water there; which being taken up in a Vessel, the Red Sand sinks to the bottom. In other Places, 'tis occasioned by multitudes of small Red Worms, which Mariners call Sea-Fleas. About Cape *Verd* in *Africa*, the Sea appears Green, from a Green Herb which lies in the Surface of it, and is troublesome to Sailors. We pass by the several Things which are found in the Sea, and the different Sorts of Animals which are bred in it, till we come to the particular Countries most noted for those Animals.

In his Eighteenth Proposition he gives us the Reason why the Ocean, or rather all Water, casts Terrestrial Bodies ashore, especially in the full Moon. He ascribes this to the Motion of the Water, which if it be swift, and towards one Quarter, it carries Terrestrial Bodies with it until they come to the Shore, where the strong Motion of the Water ceasing, those Bodies are laid down; and because all Waves tend to some Coast, therefore all Terrestrial Bodies are carried to the Shore; and this happens at the Full Moon, because then the Motion of the Sea is greatest.

SECT. XVII.

Varenius, in the Fourteenth Chapter of his First Book, treats of the Motions of the Sea in general, and particularly of its Flux and Reflux.

IN the First Proposition of this Chapter, he asserts, That Water has only one natural Motion, viz. from a higher

to a lower Place; and if the neighbouring Body or Place be either equal with, or higher than the Surface of the Water, then the Water rests, except it be put in Motion by a violent Cause. This being plain from Experience, there is no need to insist upon the Proof of it.

In his Fifth Proposition, he divides the Motion of the Sea into General, Proper, and Contingent Motions. The General Motion is that which is found at all Times in all Parts of the Ocean. The proper Motions are those by which some Parts of the Ocean are only moved, and those Motions are either perpetual or anniversary; the latter being found only at certain Months and Days of the Year. The Contingent Motions are such as begin and end without any certain Order, and these are infinite; the Cause of which is the Wind, which drives the Sea before it to an opposite Point; and from this, the Sea is never free in one Part or other.

In his Seventh Proposition, he divides the General Motion of the Sea into two Sorts: The one is continual from East to West; and the other consists of two contrary Motions, call'd Flux and Reflux.

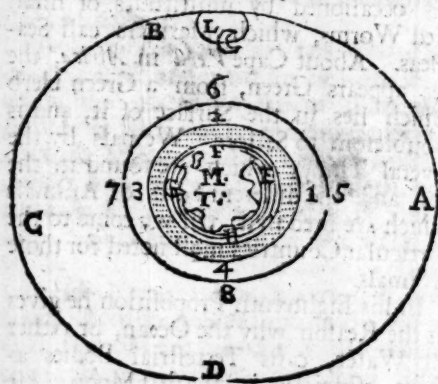
That the Ocean moves continually from East to West, is proved chiefly from the Motion of that Sea which lies in the Torrid Zone, betwixt the two Tropicks. This Motion is plainly perceived by those who sail from *India* to *Madagascar* and *Africa*; and likewise in the *Pacifick* Ocean, betwixt *New-Spain* and *China*, and the *Molucca's*; and likewise in the Ocean betwixt *Africa* and *Brasile*. For the particular Instances of this, we refer to the Account of the several Countries, and of the Seas adjoining to them.

In his Eighth Proposition, he shews us, That the Winds frequently alter this Motion of the Sea, especially the West Winds: For because those Winds blow for most Part from South and North, or from their collateral Points; hence it comes to pass, that the Sea, which by

its General Motion tends to the West, is carried towards the collateral Points of the West; and likewise because the General Wind blows very rarely from the East it self, but for most Part from the collateral Points of the East, it changes the General Motion of the Sea. The Northern Winds change this Motion more frequently in the Northern Sea, where the General Motion of the Ocean is sensible but in a few Parts.

In his Ninth Proposition, he tells us, That the Cause of this General Motion of the Sea from East to West is uncertain. Here he informs us, that the *Aristotelians* think it proceeds from the first Motion of the Heavens, which is not only common to all the Stars, but also in Part to the Air and Ocean, by which all Things are carried from East to West; tho' this was unknown to *Aristotle* himself, and all our *European* Philosophers, until the *Portuguese* sail'd through the Ocean under the Torrid Zone. Some of the *Copernicans*, tho' they ascribe this Motion to the Moon, yet they think the Motion of the Earth contributes much towards it; for they suppose the Water cannot follow the Circumrotation of the Earth, and that it stops towards the West, while the Earth is carried Eastward; and that so the Sea is not mov'd from one Part of the Earth to another, but that the Earth leaves Parts of the Water; one after another, behind it. Others, who are neither satisfied with *Aristotle* nor *Copernicus's* Opinion, have Recourse to the Moon, as that which governs all Moistures; and therefore they will have it, that she carries the Sea about from East to West: But if you ask them how, they tell you, 'tis by an occult Quality, Influence, Sympathy, her Nearness to the Earth, and such like; which is as much as to say, they knew not how. 'Tis indeed very probable, that the Moon is the Cause of those Motions, because at the New and Full Moon the Motion is much more violent than in the Quarter Moons, when 'tis commonly very small.

The acute *Mr. des Cartes* explains, in a Mechanical Manner, how the Moon occasions this Motion both in the Water and Air: For he supposes, according to his general Hypothesis, that infinite Numbers of Atoms are carried round the Earth, by which the Space, which he calls the Vortex of the Earth, is filled up, without any *Vacuum*, as far as the Moon; viz. Let the Earth be FEHG, the Water 2143, the Air 6587, the Vortex of the Earth BADC, the Moon B:



If therefore in the Vortex BADC, there were no Moon, says he, the Particles of that Vortex would, without any Let, be turn'd round the Center T: But because the Moon is in it, therefore the Space by which the Celestial Matter flows, betwixt B and T, is made more strait; and hence it follows, that the Celestial Matter flows more swiftly there, (betwixt B and T) and therefore presses more both the Surface of the Air in 6, and the Surface of the Water in 2, than if the Moon were not in the Diameter of the Vortex BD: And since the Bodies of the Earth and Air are fluid, and easily give Way to that Pressure, they could not be so high above the Parts of the Earth F and H, as if the Moon were without the Diameter BD; and on the contrary they must be higher towards E and G. But while the Earth is carried from E by Way of F towards G, or from West to East, the Tumor of the Water 412, and like-

likewise of the Air 856, which now lie upon the Part of the Earth E, do move by Degrees towards more Western Parts; so that in 6 Hours Time they come to the Part of the Earth H, and in 12 Hours to the Part of the Earth G. Hence it comes to pass, that the Water and Air are carried from the East Parts of the Earth to the West by a continual Flux. Thus, says *Cartesius*, the Force of the Demonstration lies in this; because the Earth E F G H is carried round with the Water 1234, together with the Celestial Matter of the Vortex betwixt B A D C and 6587; but the Moon being in B, makes the Space B 6 more straight; therefore the Celestial Matter, with a certain Pressure passing through the straighter B 6, the Air and Water, while F passes through below B, must be pressed forward towards H G E, and while E passes through under B, must be pressed forward towards H G F, and so on. Nor can the Part of the Celestial Matter which reaches the Moon in B D refuse back, tho' repell'd, because all is full of Bodies: And tho' it press the Air and Water from 62 F, not only towards the West E 15, but also towards the East 73 G. Yet because the Parts situated from 62 F towards the East 73 G, do more and more recede from those Streights, but the Parts situated towards E 15 do more and more approach 'em; therefore this Force is principally received by them.

But there are several Things wanting in this Explication of that ingenious Person.

1. It would follow from hence, That the Sea should fall as the Moon approaches it, and rise in those Parts which are a Quarter or 6 Hours distant from it; that is to say, the Tumor is in E 15; but in F 26, where the Moon is Vertical, there's the less Height: But this is contrary to Experience; for in F 26, the Sea swells; but in E 15, there's the least Swelling. How this Absurdity may be avoided, shall be observ'd in the following Proposition.

2

2. 'Tis not sufficiently shew'd (*Cartes* himself has plainly omitted this) why when the Celestial Matter presses the Air in the straight Space B 6, and the Water 2, that it is not equally moved towards G 37; since, with the Earth it self, both the Air and the Water, as well as the Celestial Matter, are carried towards G 37; and therefore the Water and Air are rather carried towards the East than towards the West. I doubt, says *Varenius*, whether this Objection can be sufficiently remov'd, merely by the Subduction of the Parts from 6 B, towards G 3.

3. When the Moon approached any Sea, the Wind would be found more vehement in that Part towards the West from the East, than at another Time: But it is not so.

4. It is more manifest, that the Sun occasions that Motion in the Air, or rather General Wind, from the East towards the West, because we perceive it in the Morning, before and at the Rising of the Sun, in most Places; for then it is a Quarter distant from the Vortex of the Place. These Things deserve to be consider'd in Mr. *des Cartes's* Explication, to say nothing of the Hypothesis it self.

Varenius doubts whether this Motion of the Ocean can be ascrib'd to a general East-Wind; for since that Wind is perpetual under the Torrid Zone, it would seem that it might also occasion that perpetual Motion of the Sea. 'Tis certain, that this Motion is encreas'd with the Highness of the Wind; but that's no sufficient Proof that the Motion it self depends on the Wind. The Connexion which this Motion has with the Moon seems to oppose this, because when the Moon approaches the Sea, it makes it swell. 2. Because in the Full and New Moon that Motion is more vehement than in the Quarter Moons. This is excellently explained by Mr. *des Cartes's* Demonstration; viz. because in the New and Full Moon, the Moon is nearer the Earth; and thus the Passage B 6 is made

F

more

more strait for the Celestial Matter to pass through, and therefore there is the greater Pressure. And tho', when the Moon is Full, the Swelling of the Sea may be ascrib'd to her greater Light, yet when the Moon is New, this Reason ceases; and so 'tis plain, that the Light of the Moon is not the Cause of this Motion, but it must rather come from *Cartes's* Pressure; as we shall have Occasion to shew in what follows.

In his Tenth Proposition, he lays down, That the Second General Motion of the Sea is its Flux and Reflux, by which in 12 Hours and an half 'tis perceiv'd to flow and ebb; viz. it flows when the Moon comes to the highest or lowest Meridian, and it ebbs when the Moon retires from the Meridian towards the West or East.

Here he proposes to be enquir'd, in the first Place, Whether the Ocean by this Motion be carried towards one certain Point, i. e. from East to West, and from West to East?

For the Shores of Bays, and the Channels of Rivers, in which the Flux and Reflux is more discernable than in the Main Sea, lie towards different Points; some from West to East, as the *Mediterranean* Sea; some from South to North, as the *Arabian* Gulph: And in each of those Bays and Shores, the Waters flow according as they lie; and by Consequence, in those different Bays and Shores, the Motion of the Ocean is towards different Points: Therefore 'tis to be enquir'd in the first Place, Whether this Motion of the Ocean observes no certain Point, or is in some Places carried to different Points, or whether it observes two Points, i. e. the Western Point in the Flux, and the Eastern Point in the Reflux, or whether 'tis carried to the Western Point both in the Flux and Reflux? He answers, That the whole Ocean by the Flux is carried from East to West, and the like in the Reflux; but in the latter by a less Quantity of Water: And therefore he concludes,

That the Flux and Reflux of the Sea is not to be reckon'd distinct from that General Motion by which it is continually carried from East to West, but only as a Modification of that General Motion, and is more properly called a Rising and Falling, than Flux and Reflux; but 'tis call'd Flux and Reflux, because it seems to approach to, and retire from the Shore, not from the Quality of the Motion it self, but because of the Situation of the Shores, tho' the Ebb be not occasion'd by that Situation, but by the Nature of the Motion it self. Nor can the Motion of the Sea be consider'd from its flowing to the Shore; for whatever the Motion of the Sea be, and to what Point soever it tends, the Flux is always towards the Shore, because of the fluid Nature of the Water.

He says, That the Flux and Reflux of the Sea is prov'd to be always from East to West, by the following Arguments: 1. In the Ocean remote from the Shore, under the Torrid Zone, there is no other Motion perceiv'd but that from East to West. 2. In such Friths as are directly extended from East to West, and by which the Parts of the Ocean are join'd, as the Streights of *Magellan*, *Manila*, and *Java*, &c. the Sea rises and falls 12 Hours; but in the Fall it does not flow back out of the Friths from West to East, but flows out by the other Mouth of the Frith into the West; which is a manifest Proof, that this Rising and Falling of the Sea is not a peculiar Motion, but a Modification of the General Motion; and that the Sea does not flow back towards the East. But we are to observe as before, That when we say the Sea flows from East to West, we understand not only the Cardinal, but also the Collateral Points.

In the Eleventh Proposition, he explains the Cause of the Flux and Reflux of the Sea, or rather of its Rising and Falling: And here he tells us, That no Phenomenon in Nature has more exercised the Pens and Thoughts of the

Learned,

Learned, tho' for most Part to little Purpose. Some were so weak as to fancy the Sea and Earth to be an Animal, and that the Flux and Reflux of the Sea was occasioned by its Respiration. Others fancied there was a great Vortex in the Sea near *Norway*, which swallowed up the Water for 6 Hours, and threw it out again as many. *Scaliger* and others ascrib'd it to the Shores, particularly to those of *America*, which repell'd the Sea when it was carried towards them by its General Motion; but most when they perceived the Connexion of the Rising and Falling of the Sea with the Motion of the Moon, concluded it to depend intirely on that.

Mr. *des Cartes* deduces this Motion from his general Hypothesis thus: Look back into the Diagram of the Ninth Proposition, in which let A B C D be that Vortex, which has the Earth for its Center, and which, with it and the Moon, is carried round the Sun in the greater Vortex. M the Center of this Vortex, E F G H the Earth, 1234 the Surface of the Sea; by which, for the better Perpicuity, we suppose the Earth to be every where covered, and 5678 to be the Surface of the Air which encompasses the Sea: Therefore if there were no Moon in that Vortex, the Point T, which is the Center of the Earth, would be in the Point M, which is the Center of the Vortex; but the Moon being towards B, this Center of the Earth T ought to be betwixt M and D; because when the Celestial Matter of this Vortex is moved any thing quicker than the Moon and Earth, which it carries with it, except the Point T be somewhat more distant from B than from D, the Prefence of the Moon would hinder it to flow so freely betwixt B and T, as betwixt T and D: And since the Place of the Earth in that Vortex is not determined, except from the Equality of the Force of the Celestial Matter which flows about it; therefore 'tis evident, that it ought somewhat to approach towards D: And the same Way when the Moon is in C, the Cen-

ter of the Earth ought to be betwixt M and A; and so the Earth always departs a little from the Moon. Moreover, because by the Moon's being towards B, not only that Space by which the Celestial Matter flows betwixt B and T, but also that by which it flows betwixt T and D, is made straiter. Hence it follows, that that Celestial Matter flows more swiftly there; and therefore does the more press both the Surface of the Air in 6 and 8, and likewise the Surface of the Water in 2 and 4, than if the Moon were not in the Diameter of the Vortex B D: And since the Bodies of the Air and Water are fluid, and easily submit to that Pressure, they ought to be less high over the Parts of the Earth F and H, than if the Moon were without this Diameter B D, and on the contrary must be higher towards G and E; so that the Surface of the Water 1, 3, and of the Air 5, 7, would be protuberant there. But because the Part of the Earth which is now in F opposite to the Point B, where the Sea is lowest, will after 6 Hours be in G, opposite to the Point C, where the Sea is highest, and in 6 Hours more in H, opposite to the Point D, and so on: Or rather, because the Moon does in the mean time move something forward from B to C, and in the Space of a Month runs through the Circle A B C D. The Part of the Earth which is now in E, opposite to the Body of the Moon, will be in 6 Hours and about 12 Minutes beyond the Point G, in that Diameter of the Vortex A B C D, which cuts the Diameter of the Vortex, in which the Moon will then be at Right-Angles, then the Water will be most high there, and after 6 Hours and 12 Minutes, it will be beyond the Point H, in the Place where the Water will be lowest, &c. From whence 'tis clearly understood, that the Water of the Sea must in every 12 Hours and 24 Minutes flow and ebb in one and the same Place.

This is *Cartes's* Demonstration, in which 'tis particularly ingenious, because it very aptly shows not only how the Afflux of the Sea is made towards a Place when the Moon is moved towards the Vortex or Meridian of it, but also when the Moon is mov'd below the Horizon to the Midnight Meridian.

We told in the Clofe of the Ninth Proposition what was wanting in this Demonstration: And 'tis chiefly to be wonder'd at, that *Cartes* did not observe, that, according to his Demonstration, the Height of the Water must be least, and the Swelling intirely cease, when the Moon came to the Meridian; as when the Moon is in B, the Water is lowest in 2 and 4, and on the contrary the Water swells at the Departure of the Moon or Earth; so that when F is in G, that is, 6 Hours from the Moon, it will be at the highest: Which is manifestly contrary to Experience; for when the Moon approaches the Meridian, the Water increases, and when she goes from it, it decreases; yet *Cartes* asserts the contrary, both in his Words and Diagram. But I think, says *Varenius*, that the Absurdity may be removed from the Demonstration thus: Let us suppose that the Vortex of the Earth ABCD is without the Moon, and that the Water 1234 is equally distant from the Center T, without any Tumor, but carried about with the Earth and Celestial Matter betwixt ABCD and 5678. Let the Body of the Moon approach in this Vortex; for Instance, in B, and thus the Space TB is made straiter, and the Celestial Matter, as it endeavours to get through that Passage, will press the Water in 2 towards I.

Therefore whilst the Water is pressed from 2 towards I, 'tis to be enquired where the greatest Swelling of the Water will be, whether in the Place E, which is a Quarter distant from the Place F, (to which the Moon is Vertical) or in the Place near unto, or which is next to F towards E? If we assert

the First, to wit, the Tumor, must be in E, Experience gainsays it; but that the Second is truly so, is confirm'd by Experience, and proved by Reason, viz. while the Moon is over the Place E, the Water will be expell'd from 2 towards I; but the greatest Swelling will be in the Place next to 2, not in I; but the least Increase will be in I. This is manifest from Experience, because in the Western Places, the Swelling of the Sea is latest perceived. Reason it self, and the Nature of the Motion of the Water, require this: For if the Water be poured out into 2, that it may flow towards E, the greatest Plenty will be in the Place E, a little less in the neighbouring Place, and still a little less in the Place next to that, and the least in E: Therefore when the Water is thus pressed from 2 towards E, the greatest Quantity of it will be in the Place next to 2, and the Tumor will be so much the less, the more remote the Tumor is from 2: For because the Earth is carried round, that E might come to F, then the greatest Tumor will be in E, and the Water will be thrust towards H.

Therefore *Cartes's* Diagram and Demonstration is so to be chang'd, that the Tumor may be in the neighbouring Place to 2; that is, to the Place to which the Moon is Vertical.

In his 12th Proposition, he informs us, That in the Full and New Moon, the General Motion of the Sea from West to East is most vehement, and the Swelling of the Sea is in most Parts perceiv'd to be greater; but in the Quarter-Moons, the Motion and Swelling are both least.

Experience proves this Proposition; for Mariners testify, That the Sea swells at New and Full Moon, but is calmer in the Quarter-Moons. This is also demonstrated easily, according to the Hypotheses of the foregoing Propositions: For the Moon, when Full and New, is nearer to the Earth than at any other Time, and further off in the Quarters, as Astronomers demonstrate: For when the Moon

Moon is nearer to the Earth, that is, when the Space B T is less, the Celestial Matter being stop'd, presses the Water with more Force from 2 to 1, (because 'tis nearer;) but in the Quarters 'tis contrary.

Yet the Motion is observ'd to be more violent at the Full than at the New Moon, at least in some Places; for which, says *Varenius*, he can see no Cause, except it be ascrib'd to the Light of the Moon. Nor can it be otherwise explain'd, why at Full Moon both Trees and Animals are more impregnated with the Moisture of the Ocean than in the New Moon, tho' the Sea does equally swell them. Yet he says, 'tis wonderful what *Twiss*, a *Netherlander*, says in his Description of *India*, of the Kingdom of *Guzareth*; in which he lived many Years, viz. That Cockles, Crabs, and other Shell-Fish, have less Moisture and Flesh in the Full Moon, but most in the New Moon; which is contrary to what is perceiv'd in all other Countries. Nor is it less wonderful, that at the Shores next to the Mouth of the River *Indus*, in that same Kingdom, the Sea increases and swells at the New Moon; and that not far from thence, in *Calecut*, the Sea increases at the Full Moon.

In the Time of the Equinoxes, the Floods are greater and stronger than at other Times; but during the Solstices, they are less. *Cartesius* thinks, this Phenomenon is only to be accounted for from his Hypothesis; but his Account of it is very obscure, and far from a Demonstration: 'Tis probable, the Sun and General Winds contribute much towards the Swelling of the Sea during the Equinoxes, the Sun being directly over the Sea under the Torrid Zone; so that either through Influence of the Sun or Wind, the Sea cannot fail to swell more then, than at other Times: Or we may say, That the Swelling of the Sea, great Rains, Winds, and Inundations, at that Time, are to be derived all from the same Cause.

In some Bays, Shores, and Parts of the Ocean, there's a great Increase and Decrease of Water in the Ebbs and Floods: In some, it is very small; and in others, there's no sensible Flood or Ebb.

Those Places have the greatest Flood and Ebb, 1. That are in the Torrid Zone, within the Tropicks. 2. Those lying directly East and West, or towards the Collateral Points. 3. Bays that are very long, and not broad. 4. Places that have few Islands or Promontories.

The most remarkable Flood and Ebb hitherto known is in the Bay of *Cambaia*, in one of the Mouths of the River *Indus*; for it ebbs speedily, and the Water retires a vast Way: Whence 'tis reasonably thought to be the Place where *Alexander the Great* arrived with his Fleet, in order to transport his Army; but finding the Water to retire all of a sudden, and his Fleet to be left on dry Land, he judg'd it was the Mind of Heaven that here he should put a Stop to his Progress: And this is also reported by the Inhabitants of *Cambaia*. For the higher the Channel is, the more it is uncover'd at the Tide of Ebb; but 'tis probable there may also be some other Cause.

At the Town of *Damma* in *India*, near *Surrat*, the Height of the Water is varied to Two Fathom and an half, and the Sea retires half a German Mile from the Shore.

In the Bay of *Cambaia*, the Water rises sometimes 5, and at other Times 7 Fathom high; which Strangers not knowing, do many Times lose their Ships; which, upon the retiring of the Sea, are dash'd against the Rocks.

There is a vast Irregularity of the Tides in the Bays and Shores of the Straights of *Magellan*; sometimes the Tide of Ebb and Flood lasts 3 Hours, and sometimes 12, which is ascrib'd to the violent Irruptions of the Sea into that Frith, and to the frequent tempestuous Winds.

About

About *Malacca*, and the Streights of *Sunda*, there are very great Floods and Ebbs.

Some of the Ancients (as *Scaliger* informs us) said, there was so great an Ebb in the *Arabian Gulp*, or *Red Sea*, that *Moses* and the Children of *Israel* passed it without a Miracle; but this is false, because the Sea never ebbs there so much as to leave the Channel dry.

Thomas Button, an *Englishman*, when he winter'd at *Nelson's Bay* in *Hudson's Streights*, at 57 Degrees of Northern Latitude, observ'd, that every 12 Hours the Water rose 15 Foot and more; and next Summer he found it much the same in the 60th Degree: But in *Hudson's Bay*, and in that of *Sirame*, the Water did not rise above Two Foot.

Along the Coasts of *China*, and in the Islands of *Japan*, the Tides are very discernable.

They have great Tides at *Panama*, a Town in *America*, upon the *Pacifick Ocean*, the Water rises very high, and immediately falls: At Full Moon, the Floods are so great, that the Water enters the Houses of the Town. Along all the Coasts of the South Sea, they have very great Floods and Ebbs; and at low Water, the Sea retires Two *German Miles*, that it cannot be seen by those who stand on the Shore.

In the Gulph of *Bengal*, upon the Coasts of *Siam*, the Water rises 10 Foot.

In the *Mediterranean*, the Floods are not perceived, because the Situation is contrary to the Point towards which the Sea is carried; therefore the Water is so little augmented by the Flood, that it is not perceptible, except in the Gulph of *Venice*, which, because of its great Length, and small Breadth, shews the Flux and Reflux of the Sea, which is not perceiv'd in the rest of the *Mediterranean*, because of its great Breadth. Hence it comes to pass, that this Flux and Reflux of the Sea was unknown to the *Greeks*, and likewise to the *Romans* in the Time of *Scipio Africanus*: So that both of

them, when they perceived it in other Places, look'd upon it as a Miracle; as is evident from *Alexander the Great's Expedition*, and *Scipio's Siege of Carthage*: But in *Cicero's Time*, it was well enough known to the *Romans*. Some small Fluxes were observ'd at *Marseilles*; and in some Coasts of *Barbary*, it is said to be remarkable enough.

But in the *Baltick Sea*, and likewise in the whole *North Sea*, beyond *Great Britain*, *Norway*, and *Greenland*, and in the Northern Shore of the *Pacifick Sea*, no Flood or Ebb has hitherto been observed. The Cause of this is not yet very well known, except we ascribe it to their being far remote from the Course of the Moon, that they are extended from the West to the East and North, and that the Tides are hindered by Multitudes of Islands and Promontories. These Three together must be assigned as the Causes which hinder the Tides in those Seas. Thus the Objection, as to the Tide in *Hudson's Bay*, will be removed, because it lies from East to West; and when the Sea is carried to the latter, it is no wonder that the Flood is more perceptible there than in the Sea of *Norway*, the *Baltick*, and other Northern Places.

In his 16th Proposition, he shews, That in those Places to which the Moon is Vertical, the Flood and Ebb is greatest, except other Things hinder it, as we mention'd in the 14th Proposition: From whence it comes, that the more remote those Parts of the Sea are from that Place, so much the less is the Flood and Ebb.

In his Eighteenth Proposition, he shews us, That the greatest Flux of the Sea in any Place, and the Time of it, ought to be when the Moon is in the highest or lowest Meridian of that Place; but in many Parts it is found in another Situation of the Moon.

For then the Moon is nearest to any Place when she is in the Meridian of it, because the *Hypotenuse* of a Right-Angled Triangle is longer than the *Cathetus*: From whence it is infer'd by the 16th

Pro-

Proposition, That when the Moon is in the Meridian, then the Flood ought to be highest, and an Ebb immediately follows; but when the Moon is in the low Meridian, then the narrow Part of the Vortex of the Earth opposite to it is in the high Meridian, and effects the same Thing as if the Body of the Moon were there.

But here we meet with a great Difficulty; for there are many Shores of the Earth, where we find that the Flood is not highest when the Moon comes to the Meridian, (as the Philosophers of former Ages taught) but sooner or later, viz. as the Moon comes to a certain Vertical Circle, or to a Point that is not Cardinal. Nor is this Point constantly observ'd; but for most part at New and Full Moon the Flood is highest, and the Ebb begins before the Moon comes to this Quarter or Vertical Circle. Thus at *London*, the Water is at highest when the Moon comes to the Point betwixt the South and West, or betwixt the North and East; that is, to the South-West, or North-East Point. For *Varenius's* other Instances to prove this Proposition, we refer to the Book it self.

It is very difficult to explain the Cause of this remarkable Difference in all Places, tho' it be incumbent on a natural Philosopher or Geographer to do it. It is probable, that the various Windings of the Shores, their Situation with respect to the Sea, the Obstructions occasion'd by Islands, the Meeting of different Tides, the Distance of Places from the Course of the Moon, the various Winds, especially the Constant and General Winds, and the Declivity of the Shores, contribute much to the remarkable Difference above-mentioned. For Instance; At the Port of *London*, the Tide flows till the Moon comes to the South-West; viz. she declines from the Ecliptick towards the South; for then the Water begins to ebb, but not when the Moon comes to the Meridian; therefore we must say, That while the

Moon moves from the Meridian of *London* towards *Brasile*, (or from *Brasile* towards *London*) therefore the Sea does not ebb from *London*, but still flows, because the Shores of *America*, towards which the Ocean is mov'd by the Moon, repels that Water towards *England*. But why, whilst the Moon declines from the Ecliptick to the North, is the Flood greatest, and the Beginning of the Ebb observ'd, before the Moon comes to the Meridian, viz. in the North-East Quarter?

I answer, That it is because the Moon is much nearer *England* when she declines from the Ecliptick towards the South, and therefore hastens the Flood; but the Cause why 'tis not continued till the Moon comes to the Meridian, may be, because the Moon moves the Sea more towards the Sea of *Mexico* and *Hudson's Bay*, where a great Flood and Ebb is observ'd. But *Varenius* owns, that these Reasons do not satisfy him; and therefore he leaves it to further Observation and Enquiry.

In his 19th Proposition, he lays down, That in most Places, the Sea flows Six Hours and Twelve Minutes, and ebbs as much.

In some few Places it flows longer, and ebbs in a shorter Time; and on the contrary, in some few Places it flows a shorter Time, and ebbs longer, but so as the Flood and Ebb together make 12 Hours, with 24 $\frac{1}{2}$ Minutes; so that it flows and ebbs twice in 24 Hours and 48 $\frac{1}{2}$ Minutes; that is almost 25 Hours; so that each Day High-Water happens almost a whole Hour later, because the Moon returns every Day to the same Point of the Compass so much later.

Varenius thinks it difficult to assign the Causes of this Difference: Some are of Opinion, That the impetuous Current of some Rivers is one Cause why the Time of Flux and Reflux is so unequal. For Instance; the *Garonne* flows 7 Hours, and ebbs in 5; for the Violence

lence of the Stream bears against the Tide, and stops its Motion when it flows.

In the 21st Proposition, the Hour being given when it is High Water or Lowest Ebb in the Day of the New or Full Moon, where the Flood and Ebb is ordinary, viz. 6 Hours 12 Minutes, he shows how to find the Hour and Minute of High or Low Water any Day of the Moon.

It was said before, That the Time of High and Low Water is every Day later by $48\frac{1}{2}$ Minutes; or, to speak more accurately, $48\frac{1}{2}$ Minutes, than it was the former Day.

If therefore the Time of High Water at any Place on the Day of the Full Moon be at 12 of the Clock, the High Water will be the following Days of the Moon's Age, according to the following Table.

<i>Moon's Age.</i>	<i>Hours.</i>	<i>Minutes.</i>
1	12	48
2	1	37
3	2	27
4	3	16
5	4	5
6	4	55
7	5	44
8	6	34
9	7	23
10	8	12
11	9	1
12	9	51
13	10	40
14	11	29
$14\frac{1}{2}$	12 at Midnight.	
15	12 of the Day.	

This Calculation supposes an equal Motion of the Moon from the Sun, which however is unequal; so that the Moon in her *Perigeum* moves much more swiftly from the Sun, than when she is in her *Apogaeum*; and then the Flood is longer than 6 Hours and 12 Minutes: But when the Moon is in her *Apogaeum*, the Flood is sooner; for some of the Lunar Months exceed 30 Days, and others are less than 29, and the Medium is reckon'd 29 Days, 12 Hours, and 44 Minutes.

But this Matter of the Tides is more clearly and accurately described by the Learned and Ingenious Captain *Edmund Halley*, in his true Theory of the Tides,

extracted from Sir *Isaac Newton's* admirable Book, Entituled, *Philosophia Naturalis Principia Mathematica*: Being a Discourse presented with that Book to the late King *James*, thus:

He explains this, and most of the great and surprizing Appearances of Nature, by the sole Principle of *Gravity*, whereby in the Earth all Bodies have a Tendency towards its Center; and having demonstratively prov'd the Law of the Decrease of Gravity, he enquires into the necessary Consequences of this Supposition, whereby he finds the genuine Cause, and discovers the hitherto unknown Laws of the Ebbing and Flowing of the Sea.

He

He shews the Theory of the Motion of the Primary Planets to be nothing else but the Contemplation of the Curve Lines; which Bodies cast with a given Velocity in a given Direction, and at the same Time drawn towards the Sun by its gravitating Power, would describe; or, which is all one, that the Orbs of the Planets are such Curve Lines as a Shot from a Gun describes in the Air, being cast according to the Direction of the Piece, but bent in a crooked Line by the supervening Tendency towards the Earth's Center; and the Planets being suppos'd to be projected with a given Force, and attracted towards the Sun after the afore said Manner, are prov'd to describe such Figures as answer punctually to all that the Industry of this and the last Age has observed in the Planetary Motions: So that it appears, that there's no Need of solid Orbs and Intelligences, as the Ancients imagin'd; nor yet of Vortices or Whirl-pools of the Celestial Matter, as *Des Cartes* supposes: But the whole Affair is mechanically perform'd upon the sole Supposition of a Gravitation towards the Sun.

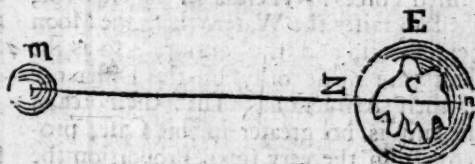
He proves, That all the Inequalities of the Motion of the Moon rises from the same Principles; only here the Effect of Two Centers operating on, or attracting a projected Body, comes to be consider'd; for the Moon, tho' principally attracted by the Earth, and moving round it, does, together with the Earth, move round the Sun once a Year, and is, according as she is nearer or farther from the Sun, drawn by him more or less than the Center of the Earth, about which she moves; whence arise several Irregularities in her Motion.

All the surprizing *Phenomena* of the Flux and Reflux of the Sea, are in like Manner shewn to proceed from the same Principle.

If the Earth were alone, that is to say, not affected by the Actions of the Sun and Moon, 'tis not to be doubted but the Ocean, being equally press'd by the

Force of Gravity towards the Center, would continue in a perfect Stagnation, always at the same Height, without either ebbing or flowing: But it being here demonstrated, That the Sun and Moon have a like Principle of Gravitation towards their Centers, and that the Earth is within the Activity of their Attractions, it will plainly follow, that the Equality of the Pressure of Gravity towards the Center will thereby be disturb'd: And tho' the Smallness of these Forces, in respect of the Gravitation towards the Earth's Center, renders them altogether imperceptible by any Experiments we can devise, yet the Ocean being fluid, and yielding to the least Force by its Rising, shews where 'tis less press'd, and where it is most press'd by its sinking.

Now if we suppose the Force of the Moon's Attraction to decrease, as the Square of the Distance from its Center increases, (as in the Earth and other Celestial Bodies) we shall find, that where the Moon is perpendicularly either above or below the Horizon, either in Zenith or Nadir, there the Force of Gravity is most of all diminish'd; and consequently, that there the Ocean must necessarily swell by the coming in of the Water from those Parts where the Pressure is greatest, *viz.* in those Places where the Moon is near the Horizon: But that this might be better understood, I though it needful to add the following Figure;



where m is the Moon, E the Earth, C its Center, and Z the Place where the Moon is in the Zenith, n where in the Nadir. Now by the Hypothesis it is evident, that the Water in Z being nearer, is more drawn by the Moon, than the Center of the Earth C, and
G that

that again more than the Water in *n*: Wherefore the Water in *Z* hath a Tendency towards the Moon, contrary to that of Gravity; being equal to the Excess of the Gravitation in *Z*, above that in *C*: And in the other Case, the Water in *n*, tending less towards the Moon than the Center *C*, will be less pressed, by as much as is the Difference of the Gravitations, towards the Moon in *C* and *n*. This rightly understood, it follows plainly, That the Sea, which otherwise would be Spherical, upon the Pressure of the Moon, must form it self into a Spheroidal or Oval Figure, whose longest Diameter is where the Moon is Vertical, and shortest where she is in the Horizon; and that the Moon shifting her Position as she turns round the Earth once a Day, this Oval of Water shifts with her, occasioning thereby the Two Floods and Ebbs observable in each 25 Hours.

And this may suffice as to the General Cause of the Tides. It remains now to shew how naturally this Motion accounts for all the Particulars that have been observ'd about them; so that there can be no Room left to doubt, but that this is the true Cause thereof.

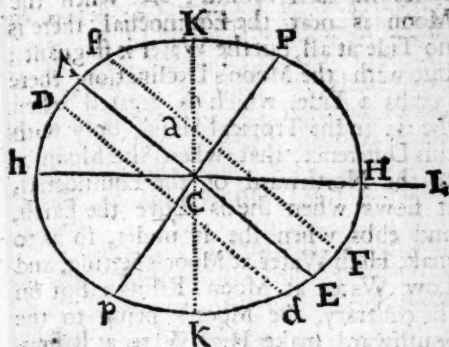
The Spring-Tides upon the New and Full Moons, and Neap-Tides on the Quarters, are occasion'd by the attractive Force of the Sun in the New and Full, conspiring with the Attraction of the Moon, and producing a Tide by their united Forces: Whereas in the Quarters, the Sun raises the Water where the Moon depresses it, and the contrary; so as the Tides are made only by the Difference of their Attractions. That the Force of the Sun is no greater in this Case, proceeds from the very small Proportion the Semi-Diameter of the Earth bears to the vast Distance of the Sun.

'Tis also observ'd, That *ceteris paribus*, the Equinoctial Spring-Tides in *March*

and *September*, or near them, are the highest, and the Neap-Tides the lowest; which proceeds from the greater Agitations of the Waters, when the fluid Spheroid revolves about a great Circle of the Earth, than when it turns about in a lesser Circle; it being plain, that if the Moon were constituted in the Pole, and there stood, that the Spheroid would have a fix'd Position, and that it would be always High Water under the Poles, and Low Water every where under the Equinoctial: And therefore the nearer the Moon approaches the Poles, the less is the Agitation of the Ocean, which is of all the greatest when the Moon is in the Equinoctial, or farthest distant from the Poles: Whence the Sun and Moon being either conjoin'd or opposite in the Equinoctial, produce the greatest Spring-Tides: and the subsequent Neap-Tides, being produc'd by the Tropical Moon in the Quarters, are always the least Tides: Whereas in *June* and *December*, the Spring-Tides are made by the Tropical Sun and Moon, and therefore less vigorous; and the Neap-Tides by the Equinoctial Moon, which therefore are the stronger. Hence it happens, that the Difference between the Spring and Neap-Tides in these Months, is much less considerable than in *March* and *September*. And the Reason why the very highest Spring-Tides are found to be rather before the Vernal, and after the Autumnal Equinox, viz. in *February* and *October*, than precisely upon them, is, because the Sun is nearer the Earth in the Winter Months, and so comes to have a greater Effect in producing the Tides.

Hitherto we have considered such Affections of the Tides as are universal, without Relation to particular Cases. What follows, from the different Latitudes of Places, will be easily understood by the following Figure.

Let



Let $A p E P$, be the Earth covered over with very deep Waters, C its Center, P, p its Poles, $A E$ the Equinoctial, $F f$ the Parallel of Latitude of a Place, $D d$ another Parallel, at equal Distance on the other Side of the Equinoctial, H, h the Two Points where the Moon is Vertical, and let $K K$ be the great Circle where in the Moon appears Horizontal. It is evident, That a Spheroid describ'd upon $H h$ and $K K$, shall nearly represent the Figure of the Sea, and $C f, C D, C F, C d$, shall be the Heights of the Sea in the Places f, D, F, d ; in all which it is High Water: And seeing that in 12 Hours Time, by the Diurnal Rotation of the Earth, the Point F is transferr'd to f , and d to D , the Height of the Sea $C F$ will be that of the High Water when the Moon is present, and $C f$ that of the other High Water when the Moon is under the Earth; which, in the Case of this Figure, is less than the former C, F ; and in the opposite Parallel $D d$, the contrary happens. The Rising of the Water being always alternately greater and less in each Place, when it is produced by the Moon declining sensibly from the Equinoctial, that being the greatest of the Two High Waters in each Diurnal Revolution of the Moon, wherein she approaches nearest either to the Zenith or Nadir of the Place: Whence it is, that the Moon in the Northern Signs, in this Part of the World,

makes the greatest Tides when above the Earth, and in Southern Signs when under the Earth; the Effect being always the greatest where the Moon is furthest from the Horizon, either above or below it. And this alternate Increase and Decrease of the Tides has been observed to hold true on the Coast of *England*; at *Bristol* by Captain *Sturmy*, and at *Plimouth* by Mr. *Colepreffe*.

But the Motions hitherto mention'd, are somewhat alter'd by the Libration of the Water, whereby, tho' the Action of the Luminaries should cease, the Flux and Reflux of the Sea would continue for some Time. This Conservation of the impress'd Motion diminishes the Differences that otherwise would be between two consequent Tides, and is the Reason why the highest Spring-Tides are not precisely on the New and Full Moons, nor the Neaps on the Quarters; but generally they are the third Tides after them, and sometimes later.

All these Things would regularly come to pass, if the whole Earth were cover'd with Sea very deep; but by reason of the Shoalness of some Places, and the Narrowness of the Streights, by which the Tides are in many Cases propagated, there arises a great Diversity in the Effect, and not to be accounted for without an exact Knowledge of all the Circumstances of the Places, as of the Position of the Land, and the Breadth and Depth of the Channels by which the Tide flows; for a very slow and imperceptible Motion of the whole Body of the Water, where it is (for Example) 2 Miles deep, will suffice to raise its Surface 10 or 12 Foot in a Tide's Time: Whereas if the same Quantity of Water were to be convey'd upon a Channel of 40 Fathoms deep, it would require a very great Stream to effect it in such large Inlets as are the Channel of *England* and the *German Ocean*: Whence the Tide is found to set strongest in those Places where the Sea grows narrowest; the same Quantity of Water being to pass

pass thro' a smaller Passage. This is most evident in the Streights between *Portland* and *Cape de Hague* in *Normandy*, where the Tide runs like a Sluce; and would be yet more between *Dover* and *Calais*, if the Tide coming about the Island from the North did not check it; and this Force being once impressed upon the Water, continues to carry it above the Level of the ordinary Height in the Ocean, particularly where the Water meets a direct Obstacle, as it is at *St. Maloes*; and where it enters into a long Channel, which running far into the Land, grows very straight at its Extremity, as it is in the *Severn* Sea, at *Chepflow* and *Bristol*.

This Shoalness of the Sea, and the intercurrent Continents, are the Reason that, in the open Ocean, the Time of High Water is not at the Moon's Apulse to the Meridian, but always some Hours after; as it is observed upon all the West Coast of *Europe* and *Africa*, from *Ireland* to the *Cape of Good Hope*: In all which, a S.W. Moon makes high Water; and the same is reported to be on the West Side of *America*. But it would be endless to account all the particular Solutions which are easy Corollaries of this Hypothesis; as, why the Lakes, such as the *Caspian* Sea, and *Mediterranean* Seas; such as the *Black* Sea, the *Streights*, and the *Baltick*, have no sensible Tides: For Lakes having no Communication with the Ocean, can neither encrease nor diminish their Water, whereby to rise and fall; and Seas that communicate by such narrow Inlets, and are of so immense an Extent, cannot in a few Hours time receive or empty Water enough to raise or sink their Surface any thing sensibly.

Lastly, To demonstrate the Excellency of this Doctrine, the Example of the Tides in the Port of *Tunking* in *China*, which are so extraordinary and differing from all others we have yet heard of, may suffice. In this Port there is but one Flood and Ebb in 24 Hours, and

twice in each Month; viz. when the Moon is near the Equinoctial, there is no Tide at all, but the Water is stagnant; but with the Moon's Declination, there begins a Tide, which is greatest when she is in the Tropical Signs; only with this Difference, that when the Moon is to the Northward of the Equinoctial, it flows when she is above the Earth, and ebbs when she is under, so as to make High Water at Moon's Setting, and Low Water at Moon's Rising: But on the contrary, the Moon's being to the Southward, makes High Water at Rising, and Low Water at Setting; it ebbs all the Time she is above the Horizon, as may be seen more at large in the *Philosophical Transaction*, Numb. 162.

The Cause of this odd Appearance is proposed by Sir *Isaac Newton* to be from the Concurrence of Two Tides; the one propagated in 6 Hours out of the great *South* Sea, along the Coast of *China*; the other out of the *Indian* Sea, from between the Islands, in 12 Hours, along the Coast of *Malacca* and *Cambodia*. The one of these Tides, being produc'd in North Latitude, is, as has been said, greater when the Moon, being to the North of the Equator, is above the Earth, and less when she is under the Earth. The other of them, which is propagated from the *Indian* Sea, being rais'd in South Latitude, is greater when the Moon, declining to the South, is above the Earth, and less when she is under the Earth: So that of these Tides alternately greater and lesser, there comes always successively Two of the greater, and Two of the lesser, together every Day, and the High Water falls always between the Times of the Arrival of the Two greater Floods; and the Low Water between the Arrival of the Two lesser Floods. And the Moon coming to the Equinoctial, and the alternate Floods becoming equal, the Tide ceases, and the Water stagnates: But when she has pass'd to the other Side of the Equator, those Floods which in the former Order

were

were the least, now becoming the greatest: That that before was the Time of High Water, now becomes the Low-Water on the Converse. So that the whole Appearance of these strange Tides, is without any forcing naturally deduc'd from these Principles, and is a great Argument of the Certainty of the whole Theory.

For other special Motions of the Sea, we shall take Notice of them in the Description of the particular Counties where they are observ'd.

SECT. XVIII.

Of LAKES.

Varenus gives it as his Opinion, That such Lakes as are not nourished by Rivers, and yet are never dried up, are fed by Rain, Snow, and Springs, which yield as much Water as the Sun exhales from them; and for Salt Lakes, such as that of *Harlem*, &c. he supposes they have a Communication with the Sea: For those Lakes and Pools that are dried up in the Summer, there can be no Doubt but they proceed from Rain and Snow, or small Fountains, which are consum'd by Drought, till again supplied by Rain, &c. For the particular Lakes which are remarkable, we shall treat of them in their respective Countries. For such as send out Rivers, tho' they receive none, it's natural to suppose that they proceed from large, or at least many Fountains; which filling up the low Ground in the Neighbourhood, form a Lake; and that overflowing its Banks at the lowest Place, becomes a River. Such of them as send out large Rivers, are thought to be supplied by large Streams, thro' Subterranean Passages. Those which receive Rivers, and send out none, must have what's more than sufficient to fill them, convey'd likewise from them by Conduits under Ground. The few that there are of this Sort, shall

be taken Notice of in their proper Places. Such as send out greater Rivers than they receive, must be supplied by Fountains, or Streams under Ground.

SECT. XIX.

Of RIVERS.

OF such as proceed from known Fountains, and are encreas'd by many Brooks, Streams, and other Rivers, there is no need to say any thing, the Cause of their Rise and Encrease being visible. The like may be said as to those small Rivers which run by Day, and are dried up by Night, because they proceed from Snow melted by the Heat of the Sun: And from the same Cause it is, that some great Rivers encrease by Day, and decrease by Night, and are greater in the Spring and Summer than in Winter.

SECT. XX.

Of the Origine of FOUNTAINS.

THE Learned differ very much upon this Subject. Some think they proceed from Rain and melted Snow, because great Rivers decrease, and small ones are dried up by a long Drought; and because in Places where it seldom rains, there are few Fountains and Rivers, as in *Inner Africa*: But this proceeds from a Mistake, and Want of due Consideration, because Rivers are found where there's seldom any Rain, and never any Snow. Nor does Rain moisten the Earth above 10 Foot deep; whereas many Fountains spring much lower. They mistake the Question, who say, That Water being an Element, we are no more to enquire into its Origine, than into that of other Elements; for the Question is, how the Water comes to the Places from whence the Fountains spring.

Aristotle

Aristotle and his Followers think, That Water is generated from Air in the Bowels of the Earth, *De Meteor. Lib. 1. Cap. 11.* as Rain is from Air above the Earth; and that the Air is condens'd in both by Cold. 2. They appeal to Experience, because in the Earth small Drops running together, drop down into Cavities; and that the Beginning of Rivers is from Springs of Water that run together in one Part. Thus they, who make Aqueducts, perceive it to sweat, as it were, from the Bowels of the Earth, and to fall down into the Conduits. 3. Because many Fountains, and those too of the greatest Rivers, are in Mountainous Places, and few of them in Plain Ground; which they think is a manifest Proof, that Water is generated from the Air and Vapours, which move to the higher Places; and that the Mountains, like Sponges, suck up the Moisture from the low Grounds. To which may be added, That when the Air is cloudy and condens'd, Mineral Fountains are found to be less Acid; which is a Proof, that they are encreas'd by the Air.

Cardan and others think, That Fountains proceed from little Rivulets, generated by Watery Vapours, both within and without the Earth; and that Fountains alone can scarce make Rivers without Rain or melted Snow, because, 1. Mountains are found to be moist in the Morning. 2. Rivers encrease in the Morning, and so much the more as the Fountains are nearer; but it is not probable, that perpetual Fountains can be thus supplied.

Some of the Ancients thought, That Rain being gather'd together in the Cavities of the Earth, did at last break out as from a Channel, and that no Water is generated; but the Water being thus gather'd together into those Repositories during the Winter, serves to supply Fountains and Rivers; And hence they think it proceeds, that Rivers are greater in Winter than Summer, and

that some Fountains and Rivers are constant, and others not: But *Aristotle* rejects this Opinion, because he says, there flows a greater Quantity of Water from one River in a Year, than the Bulk of the whole Earth.

Some Modern, as well as ancient Philosophers, think the Earth receives again from the Sea whatever Water the Rivers pour into it; and that being convey'd by Subterranean Passages through Sand, Clay, &c. as through a Strainer, it loses its salt Taste. This Opinion *Varenius* approves, tho' he will not exclude Rain, melted Snow, and Vapours, from having their Share in it; and his Reasons are, 1. Above 1000 Rivers disburthen themselves into the Sea, and the greater ones in such Plenty, as would in one Year's Time cover the whole Earth, as the *Volga* into the *Caspian* Sea, and others. Were it otherwise, no Reason can be given why the Sea should not encrease infinitely, and why Fountains should not cease to flow. 'Tis in vain to say, That as many Vapours are raised from the Sea, as there comes Water into it from the Rivers; for those Vapours only make Rain, and are nothing in Quantity compar'd to the Water of the Rivers. 2. Because Fountains near the Sea are salt or brackish, and the nearer, the saltier, as in the Shores of *Africa*, *India*, &c. 3. Because 'tis manifest, from the Salt-Pits of *Lunenburg* and *Hall* in *Germany*, &c. that the Sea conveys its Water into the Earth by Subterranean Conduits. 4. Because, when we dig deep, we find Plenty of Water in Mines, &c. which we cannot suppose to proceed from the Air.

The principal Objections made against this Opinion are, 1. That most Fountains rise in Mountainous Places, which are higher than the Surface of the Sea; therefore Water cannot flow from the Sea to those Places, because 'tis the Nature of Water to flow towards lower Places, and not to those which are higher; as is plain from the Course of

of Rivers and Water-works made by Engineers. 2. If the Bottom of the Sea be clayie, slimy, or sandy, so that the Water may sink through it, 'tis more reasonable to think, that it should moisten the Earth under it, than flow upwards to the Place of Fountains, especially since that is many times full of Stones and Rocks, as appears by the Mountains of the Island of *St. Helena*. 3. No Reason can be given, why Water coming thus from the Sea, should not burst out Mid-way betwixt the Sea and the Fountain. In the deepest Mines, there is little or no Water found, as *Thurnbenferus* testifies. 5. The Water of Fountains would be salt, if it came from the Sea. To which *Varenius* answers, 1. Those who maintain the Ocean to be higher than the Earth, deny the Assumption; and, according to them, 'tis easy for the Water of the Sea to flow to the Tops of the highest Mountains. This they maintain from an Experiment made by *Olearius*, in his *Persian* Journey, who, going to the Top of a Mountain that lies on the *Caspian* Sea, found, by a Mathematical Instrument, that the extreme Surface of that Sea seem'd to be higher than the Top of the Mountain where he stood: But *Varenius* does not allow this, because 'tis contrary to the frequent Observations of other Mathematicians, as has been mentioned already; and therefore thinks *Olearius* was deceiv'd by the Refraction or Waves, and that the Mountain he stood on was not so high as others upon the *Caspian* Sea.

Others perceiving the Weakness of this Solution, argue thus; That the natural Place of the Water is about the Earth, and therefore ought to cover the whole Earth, because 'tis higher than it. But because 'tis hinder'd from coming to this its natural Place by Mountains, and the Height of the Earth, which rises towards the Inland Places; therefore that Part of the Ocean which ought to be where the Mountains and high Grounds

lie, not being in its natural Place, presses the Water that lies under it, which indeed is in its natural Place; but is pressed by the other incumbent Water towards the Bottom, and finding no Passage, moves towards the Sides and Roots of the Mountain, where, being gather'd together as in a Cistern, 'tis thrust by the Water of the Ocean, which presses it, towards the Top of the Mountain, just as in a Vessel, which has a Pipe in the Side of it, that reaches from the Bottom: If we put Liquor into it, and throw a Stone into the Vessel, the Liquor will flow out at the Mouth of the Pipe or Spout. This is a Subtilty of *Scaliger's*; but *Varenius* rejects it, because Experience shews the contrary: And besides, if the Water were thus pressed towards the Tops of the Mountains, the Water of all Fountains must be salt. Moreover, what he assumes is false, *viz.* That the Water is not in its natural Place, as is plain from Experience; because Water does not press upon the Part which lies under it, except it be higher than the neighbouring Water, and therefore rests where the Surface of the Ocean is Spherical; and if any Motion were occasion'd by the Pressure, it would rather thrust the Water to the Shore, where there is more Room, and not through the small Caverns of the Earth. 'Tis certain, that Water flows into the Earth by great Cavities from the Bottom of the Sea; but they do not make a Sweet-Water Fountain, because the Saltness of the Water still continues.

Varenius thinks the Solution not difficult, if we consider how Water comes to the Fountain, not by any Channel or Conduit from the Bottom of the Sea, or Foot of the Mountains, (for so 'twould retain its Saltness) but by a continual Progression or creeping of the Water through the Earthy Matter to the Places near the Fountain, till at last it falls into some Cavity, and by a continual Succession of Water forms a Fountain. This, he says, is found to be true, by digging the

the Earth to any considerable Depth, where we find little Drops of Water; which being pressed by others, make little Streams or Veins; and if many of them come together, form a Fountain, as is very well known to those who dig Wells or Conduits.

If it be objected, That many Fountains are discover'd in the Middle of Rocks, through which 'tis not probable the Watery Particles could creep in this Manner; *Varenius* answers, That in those Mountains where Springs are found, the Rocks do not lie very deep, or only cover the Surface; whereas the Earth within is either more soft, or the Rock is of that Nature, as it may be pierced by the Water; and when it comes to those Places which are more hard, there it stops, and forms a Fountain, which sends forth a Stream, if it finds a Passage through the Rocks. He adds, That the Mountains and Rocks of the Island of *St. Helena*, and others, are not so rocky and hard in the Inside, because most of those Mountains have sent forth Smoak at some Time or other; and 'tis likewise plain from the Alhes of Earth or Sulphur found in those Places. To this he subjoins, That the Fountain, as has been already mention'd, is not always in that Place where it seems to be, but comes by some Subterraneous Passage from a higher Place to that from whence it flows out: And hence it comes, that many Wells break out with great Force.

He answers the Second Objection thus; That the Water does not so much descend into the Earth under the Sea, because 'tis found by Experience, that the Earth in the Bottom of the Sea is more hard, and full of Metal; but where 'tis not so hard, there the Water penetrates: And this he thinks to be the Reason why, in some Places at the Bottom of the Sea, there are found sometimes Rivers, and at other Times Lakes, of fresh or salt Water. But because there are few such Cavities in the Bottom of the Sea, it cannot but continually imbibe the Water,

and then it proceeds towards higher Places. This he thinks to be much promoted by the different Height of the Sea, sometimes here, and sometimes there, occasion'd by Waves and Tempests; for the Water being thus made higher, presses that which lies under it so much the more, and promotes its Passage through the Earth to Fountains; but this he thinks cannot effect much.

To the Third Objection, he answers, That the Moisture is carried to the Fountains, and does not break out at any other Place betwixt them and the Sea, because of the Nature and Situation of the Places.

He thinks the Solution of the Fourth Objection to be somewhat more difficult, because it would seem, that the Saltness could not be remov'd meerly by the Water's being strain'd thro' the Earth: For tho' that might strain away the Fix'd Salt, it could not remove the Volatile Salt; which we find by Experience cannot be remov'd by Distillation, how frequent soever repeated: But he thinks it a sufficient Answer, 1. That 'tis so in Fact, tho' we do not know the Manner how 'tis done; and therefore 'tis not to be denied, because we find the Separation made by Nature in those fresh Rains which fall into the Middle of the Ocean, tho' they were generated by Vapours rais'd from the Sea. 2. Those Particles of Sea-Water which enter the Earth, are, before they reach the Fountain, mix'd here and there with other fresh Moistures, proceeding from Rain and Vapours; and so the small Saltness which they retain becomes imperceptible. 3. 'Tis not true, that the Saltness is wholly imperceptible in all Fountains, because, as has been already mentioned, some of them are sensibly salt, and so much the more as they lie nearer the Sea. Therefore there is a Necessity of a long and very slow Straining and Evaporation, to separate the Water from the Volatile Salt, since 'tis known, that by Art we can make the Sea-Water less salt; and 'tis pro-

probable, that this is also the Reason why Rain that falls into the middle of the Ocean is sometimes found to be more salt than at other times, because the Vapours rais'd from the Sea had not Time enough to evaporate the volatile Salt.

From all this *Varenius* concludes, That the Water of Fountains comes partly from the Sea, partly from Subterraneous Waters, and partly from Rain, Snow, and Dew, which moisten the Earth; and that the Water of Rivers proceeds partly from Fountains, and partly from Snow and Rain.

Such Rivers as hide themselves under Ground, and flow out again in another Place, we shall account for in the respective Countries where they are found.

In his 18th Proposition, he gives an Account of many Rivers which carry down with them Particles of several Metals, and of oily or fat Bodies; and some of them have Gold Dust mix'd with their Sands, because they flow through Places in which there are Gold Mines: But we refer the Particulars to the Description of their respective Countries.

Rivers that carry down Particles of Silver with their Sand, are not taken Notice of by Writers, because of the Difficulty to distinguish the Sand from the Silver, and partly because it would not be worth while to separate the one from the other. From the same Cause, those Rivers which carry down Particles of Iron, Copper and Tin, have been omitted by Authors, except a very few; and where Men perceive their wonderful Effects, they are amazed, and Philosophers straitways have Recourse to occult Quality. We shall only take Notice at present of a River in *Upper Germany*, which changes Iron into Copper, as is commonly thought; so that if you put a Horse-shoe of Iron into it, you find it immediately transform'd into Copper, as the Vulgar think; whereas the Particles of Copper and Vitriol in the River, with the Help of the Water, corrode the Iron, and succeed in its Place; which our modern Na-

tural Philosophers and Chymists have found out by another Experiment.

Water thus impregnated with different Particles has different Effects. Some Waters give all Things boil'd in it a black Colour: Some will never boil Pease soft, &c. because such Water is full of Particles of Iron or Vitriol, and has no Mixture of oily Substances. This Variety proceeds from the Difference of the Soil the Rivers run through.

In his 19th Proposition, he shews, That Waters differ in Colour, Weight, and other Qualities, from the same Reason: The Instances we refer to the particular Countries, and shall only observe here, That the Water of the *Ganges* is so light and wholesom, that the Great Mogul carries some of it always with him wherever he is.

In the 20th Proposition, he discourses of some Rivers which overflow their Banks at stated Seasons; among which the *Nile* is most remarkable. The particular Instances we refer likewise to the respective Countries.

In the 21st Proposition, he gives us an Account how Fountains break out, thus: 1. If there be a Cavity in any Place, the Water drops into it till it be full, and then forces its Passage. 2. The Spirits mix'd with the Water remove the Earth, and the Water being rarified in the Earth, makes further Room to it self; and Subterraneous Fires contribute also towards this. 3. Rains do sometimes make Way for Fountains, by opening the Pores of the Earth. 4. Fountains are sometimes open'd by Earthquakes. 5. A Passage is frequently open'd by the Industry of Men. 6. They are sometimes discover'd by Animals, who open the Ground by digging with their Snouts. Thus the salt Fountains of *Lunenburg* were discover'd by a Hog, which having dug up the Ground, the Water issued, and making a Puddle, the Hog, as is usual with those Creatures, laid down and wallowed in it, and when its Back was dry'd by the Heat of the Sun, the

People perceived Salt upon it; upon which they went to the Place, and, by digging, discover'd several other such Fountains. In Memory of this, they kill'd the Hog, and having dry'd his Quarters, hung them up in the Town-House, where they are still kept, as a Memorial of this Discovery; but by Length of Time are reduc'd to meer Skins.

In his 22d Proposition, he gives us an Account, from *Vitruius's* Architecture, *Lib. 8. Cap. 1.* how to discover where Water or Fountains may be found; which in brief is thus: Lie down, says he, upon your Face on the Ground, before the Sun rise, and fixing your Chin upon the Earth, look about, and where you perceive Vapours gathering together, and rising in the Air, 'tis a certain Sign of Water in the Place. Small Rushes, Willows, Elder-Tree, Withies, Reeds, Ivy, are also Signs of Water. But where there are none of those Signs, he advises to dig a Hole 3 Foot broad, and 5 deep, and about Sun-set to place in it a Balon of any Metal, anointed with Oil in the Inside, and its Mouth turn'd downward: Cover the Hole with Reeds, or Leaves of Trees, throw Earth over them; open the Hole next Day, and if you find in the Vessel Drops of Water resembling Sweat, 'tis a Sign of Water. A Vessel of Chalk, not bak'd, put in the Hole, and found to be moist or dissolv'd next Day, is also a Sign of Water. A Fleece of Wool, if put into the Hole, and found to be so moist next Day, as you may press Water out of it, is a Sign of a plentiful Fountain. If a Lamp full of Oil, and lighted, be put into the Hole, and cover'd, and found next Day not to be quite suck'd up, it is likewise a Sign of a Fountain. If when a Fire is made upon any Place, the Earth, when it's heated by the Fire, sends out a Cloudy Vapour, 'tis a Sign of a Fountain.

In this Proposition, and likewise in the 23d, he lays down Rules for judging if Water be wholesom; the chief of

which are as follow: 1. If the Soil be chalky, the Water is thin, in no great Plenty, and ill tasted: The like if the Soil be a loose Sand. 2. Water found in low Places is generally slimy, and ill tasted. 3. If the Soil be black, the Water has a very good Taste. 4. If the Soil be full of Pebbles, the Water is not very plentiful, nor certain, but very sweet. 5. If it be gravelly, and mix'd with Slates and Sand, the Water is more plentiful, and very good. 6. Where there are red Rocks, the Water is generally plentiful and good. 7. That which flows from the Roots of Mountains, and flinty Rocks, is cold and wholesom: But Fountains in Plains or Champion Places are generally brackish, hot, and ill tasted, except they proceed from the Roots of Mountains, and break out in the neighbouring Fields, shaded with Trees; in which Case they are generally sweeter than those which immediately proceed from the Roots of Mountains. 8. If the People who dwell near Fountains be of strong Bodies, good Limbs, and a clear Complexion, 'tis a Sign that the Water is very good. 9. If the Water be put into a Vessel of *Corinthian*, or other good Brass, and leave no Stain behind it, 'tis a Sign that 'tis very good. 10. If the Water be heated in a Kettle, and poured out when settled, and leave no Sand or Slime behind it, 'tis very good. 11. Water which speedily boils Pease or Beans, is certainly good. 12. When Fountains are clear, and the Streams which flow from them have no Moss or Rushes in them, 'tis a Sign that the Water is pure and wholesom.

On this Occasion, he takes Notice of dangerous Vapours that proceed from the Earth, and sometimes kill those who dig Wells and Mines. The Earth, he says, as other Things, is compos'd of Four Principles; the First is the Terrene Part; the Second is the Moist Part, which produces Fountains. It has likewise Heat, from whence proceed Sulphur, Allum, Bitumen, and great Spirits of the

the Air, which, when they pierce thro' the porous Part of the Earth that lies betwixt the Veins, kill the Diggers, and stop their Breath by these Vapours, if they do not make a speedy Escape. The Way to avoid this Danger, he says, is to let down a burning Lamp, and if it continue burning, the Workmen may descend without Danger; but if the Lamp be put out, they must dig other Holes on the Right and Left of the Well, which will let out those Vapours.

In his 17th Chapter, he treats of Mineral Waters, Baths, and those properly call'd Medicinal Waters; and because their Effects are much admir'd, he undertakes to treat of them, and of their Causes, with more Clearness and Exactness than former Geographers.

In his first Proposition, he lays down, That there is no Water so pure but is mix'd with Particles, such as are found in Earthy Bodies; yet those Particles are not Earth, but Spirits, Oils, &c. He calls that Mineral Water, which has so many Particles of a different Nature from the Water as endow it with some remarkable Quality perceptible to our Sense.

The Truth of the Proposition is manifest from Experience, and proved by the Difference of Tastes and Distillation. The Cause of the Difference is the various and perpetual Agitation of the Particles; but the Mixture is not alike in all Waters: Therefore he calls those only Mineral Waters, which have some remarkable Quality beyond common Water.

In his Second Proposition, he divides Mineral Waters into Three Sorts; the First he calls *Corporeal*, for Want of a better Word; the Second he calls *Spiritous*; and the Third *Corporeal* and *Spiritous*. He calls those Mineral Waters *Corporeal*, which contain solid and fix'd Parts of Minerals, that may be separated from the Water, and discerned by the Eye. These he divides into Two Sorts; the First contains those Particles of Mi-

nerals, so large, that they may be easily seen in the Water, and, properly speaking, are not mix'd with it, nor do any way impregnate the same; Such are those in whose Sand Gold and other Minerals are found. To this last, Bituminous Fountains must be reduced.

Therefore those are more properly call'd *Corporeal* Mineral Waters, which contain indeed solid Mineral Particles, but so small, and so much mix'd with the Water, that they are not straitway to be discover'd by the Eye, but by Art; or when, after a long time, they settle to the bottom, and grow together, as in Salt and Sulphureous Fountains, and Chymical Waters, in which Metal is dissolv'd.

These he calls *Spiritous* Waters, which contain only a Volatile Spirit, such as is found in Minerals; but no fix'd Particles that are to be seen.

Those he calls both *Corporeal* and *Spiritous* which contain Solid and Volatile, or Spiritous Particles of Minerals.

In his Third Proposition, he explains how Mineral Waters are generated.

1. If Water be carried with a rapid Stream by Subterraneous Passages, in which Metallick Earths and Minerals are not very thick, the Water may easily carry with it Grains of those Minerals.
2. If Water come through Minerals that are imperfect, and not very thick, as Vitriol, Sulphur, Salts, &c. which are easily united to Moisture, it must necessarily be mix'd with the Atoms of those Minerals. There are some indeed who call this in Question, because the Mineral Particles being hard and solid, are not easily united to Water: But *Vareninus* thinks, that it may easily be done, not indeed by meer Water, but by that which is mix'd with Vitriol and a Spiritous Salt, and is like the *Aqua-Fortis* of the Chymists. For as *Aqua-Fortis* dissolves Metals into Atoms, and unites them to it self, so that they do not fall to the bottom, except they be separated

by Art: In the same Manner, Water, which flows through Mineral Earth, may dissolve Mineral Particles into Atoms, and unite it to it self. 3. In the Bowels of the Earth, before Metals be generated, Vapours and Fumes are condens'd upon the Corners of the Rocks to which they adhere; so that if Water flow through those Places where such Vapours are, they are impregnated by them, and become Spiritous Mineral Waters. But imperfect Minerals make Mineral Waters of the same Nature with themselves, in another Manner thus: Those Minerals being heated by a Subterranean, or their own proper Heat, send forth Spirits and Vapours, as Sulphur, Vitriol, Salt, Coals, &c. And such Fumes and Exhalations are constantly found where such Minerals are; by which Means, Water which flows through those Places is impregnated with those Spirits.

Varenus rejects the Opinion of those who think, that such Spiritous Waters may be generated by Waters merely flowing through that Metallick Earth, or standing long upon it in Mines, &c. because he says, 'tis contrary to Experience, by which we find, that Water receives no Quality by Minerals, how long soever they may be steep'd in it; and therefore he says, that Water is impregnated, 1. By the Seeds of Metals. 2. That Water being already impregnated by other subtiler Spirits, as of Vitriol, Salt, &c. by their Assistance the Spirits are extracted from hard Metals; yet he is not positive in this, because the Question will still recur, how those Waters are impregnated with the Spirits of Salt or Vitriol, &c.

In his Fourth Proposition, he gives an Account of the innumerable Species of Mineral Waters, which 'tis needless to insist on, since 'tis obvious to every body, that the Difference arises from their being impregnated with one or more of the Minerals, which we shall have occasion to treat of in the Description of those Minerals. Here such Mineral Waters are found.

He reduces them into 11 Classes. 1. Acids. 2. Bitter. 3. Hot. 4. Very Cold. 5. Oily and Fat. 6. Poisonous, or Deadly. 7. Those which are Coloured. 8. Those which boil up. 9. Such as make Things which are less hard more hard, or that change or die Things thrown into them. 10. Salt. 11. To these may be added such as are endowed with some other wonderful Qualities. To these Classes may be reduc'd all the Waters which are describ'd by Authors. We shall briefly shew their Generation and Difference, and give some Instances.

In his Sixth Proposition, he accounts for the Causes, Difference, and Species, of Acid Waters.

They proceed from a Mixture of the Spirit of Vitriol, Salt, Allum, &c. His Reasons are; 1. Wherever such Waters are found, Mines of Vitriol, Salt, and Allum are found. 2. Because the Spirit of Vitriol, Salt, and some Sort of Sulphur, is Acid. 3. Because no Acid Body can be separated from those Waters, but only Spirits very like those of Vitriol, &c.

There are reckoned in *Germany* alone about 1000 Springs of Acid Waters: They abound most where there are Mines.

The Difference of those Waters is very great: Some are nothing short of Vinegar in Sharpness, and are used instead of it. Of this Sort, there is a Fountain in *Sicily*. Some have much the Taste of Wine: Near *Lions* in *France* there is such a Fountain, called *Fontaine forte*, which sometimes supplies the Want of Wine; so that if a Fourth Part of it be mix'd with Three Parts of Wine, the Strength of the Wine is nothing abated: It ferments when Meal is mix'd with it. Meat cannot be boil'd in it, for it evaporates, because of its great Subtlety. 'Tis so very healthful, that the People there seldom make use of Physicians.

Some are Astringent, and contract the *Pallat*, which is a Sign that they are mix'd.

mix'd with Particles of Iron, Vitriol, or Allum. If they be expos'd to Heat, or not covered close, they lose that Acidity, which shews, that it proceeds from a subtil Spirit.

He thinks, the Reason why they are seldom found in Countries far North, is the Want of Subterranean Fires, and the Thickness of the Earth; and this he takes also to be the Reason why there are no Gold Mines in those Countries.

In his Seventh Proposition, he gives us the Causes of Hot Baths.

In *Japan*, there is a Fountain so prodigiously hot, that no Water can be made so hot by the most violent Fire: The Natives call it Hell. The Hot Fountains of *Baden* in *Switzerland*, and those at *Buda*, are remarkable: In the latter, they boil Eggs to any Degree of Hardness they please.

The Cause of the Hotness of those Fountains, according to *Varenius*, is a Mixture of Sulphur. 2. The Fumes, Vapours, and Exhalations of Sulphur, Coal, Amber, &c.

In his Eighth Proposition, he says, That Oily and Bituminous Fountains proceed from Sulphureous and Bituminous Matter, melted in the Bowels of the Earth by Heat and Spirits, and their Difference proceeds from the different Matters they flow through, as Amber-greece, Amber, Petroleum, Pitch, Naphtha, Bitumen, &c.

In his Ninth Proposition, he says, That Bitter Waters proceed from a Sort of impure Sulphur, Bitumen, Nitre, Vitriol, and Copper.

His Tenth Proposition is about very cold Springs. Near *Vienne* in *Dauphiny*, there is a Spring so extraordinary cold, that no Man can endure to put his Hands in it, and it makes the Faces of those who drink it swell. This proceeds from a Mixture of Nitre, Allum, Mercury, or Iron. Sometimes it proceeds from the Deepness of the Spring, and the Want of the Heat of the Sun and Subterranean Fires. Some Fountains are hot

and cold by Turns. The Cause of this, he says, is, That the Pores of the Earth being open in the Summer, the hot Spirits evaporate; but being shut in the Winter, they make the Water warm: And thus some Fountains are hotter by Night than by Day.

In his Eleventh Proposition, he treats of those Waters which change the Nature of Things thrown into them.

In the Province of *Ulster*, in the North of *Ireland*, there's a Lake which, in Seven Year's time, turns Timber thrown into it into Stone. Some again don't change the Timber into Stone, but the stony and salt Particles in the Water cleave to the Wood, and cover it with a Crust of Stone. Others don't change the Timber, but make it as hard as Stone. *Varenius* thinks, the Change of Timber into Stone is effected thus: The Mineral Waters entering the Pores, dissolve, or at least alter, the Form of the long Fibres by which the Parts of the Timber cohere; and at the same Time condense the Timber more, and communicate to it their Mineral Particles. For such as change Iron into Copper, his Opinion is, That they communicate Particles and Spirit of Copper and Vitriol to the Iron.

In his 12th Proposition, he explains the Cause of poisonous Waters, and says, they flow through Soil mix'd with Arsenick, Mercury, and Antimony.

The Thirteenth Proposition treats of the different Colours of Waters, which proceed from the different Colours of the Soil.

The Fifteenth Proposition is about Fountains that boil up, and send forth a great Quantity of Spirit. *Varenius* says, this is occasioned by Sulphureous and Nitrous Spirits; that such of them as are hot, are impregnated with Sulphur; and those that are cold, with Nitre. In *Westphalia*, there is a Fountain of this Sort, which, because of the Noise it makes as it bubbles up, is call'd *Bolderborn*.

Mr. *Edmund Halley*, in his Estimate of the Quantity of Vapours rais'd out of the Sea, together with an Account of the Circulation of those Vapours, and of the Cause of Springs, presented to the Royal Society, says, This Matter has not been any where well examined, tho' it seems to be one of the most necessary Ingredients of a Real and Philosophical Meteorology: Therefore he made the following Experiment:

He took a Pan of Water about 4 Inches deep, and 7 Inches $\frac{1}{2}$ Diameter, in which he placed a Thermometer, and by means of a Pan of Coals brought the Water to the same Degree of Heat with our Air in the hottest Summer, the Thermometer nicely shewing it; then he fix'd the Pan of Water, with the Thermometer in it, to one End of the Beam of a Pair of Scales, and exactly counterpois'd it with Weights in the other Scale; and by the Application or Removal of the Pan of Coals, 'twas easy to maintain the Water in the same Degree of Heat precisely. He found the Weight of the Water sensibly to decrease; and at the End of two Hours he observ'd, that there wanted half an Ounce Troy all but 7 Grains, or 233 Grains of Water, which in that Time had gone off in Vapours, tho' one could hardly perceive it smok, and the Water was not sensibly warm. This was little less than 6 Ounces in 24 Hours, from a Circle of 8 Inches Diameter. He quotes the Experiment to have been made in the *Oxford Society*, by Dr. *Edward Bernard*, That the Cube Foot *English* of Water weighs 76 Pound Troy: This, divided by 1728, the Number of Inches in a Foot, will give 253 $\frac{1}{2}$ Grains, or $\frac{1}{3}$ Ounce 13 $\frac{1}{2}$ Grains, for the Weight of a Cube Inch of Water: Wherefore the Weight of 233 Grains is $\frac{233}{253\frac{1}{2}}$ or 35 Parts of 38 of a Cube Inch of Water. Now the Area of the Circle, whose Diameter is 7 $\frac{1}{2}$ Inches, is 49 Square Inches; by which, dividing the Quantity of Water evaporated, viz. $\frac{1}{2}$ of an Inch the Quote $\frac{1}{2} \div \frac{35}{38}$, or $\frac{3}{2}$

shews, that the Thickness of the Water evaporated was the 53d Part of an Inch; but he supposes it only the 60th Part, for the Facility of Calculation. If therefore Water, as warm as the Air in Summer, exhales the Thickness of a 60th Part of an Inch in Two Hours, from its whole Surface in 12 Hours it will exhale $\frac{1}{4}$ of an Inch; which is abundantly sufficient to serve for all the Rains, Springs, and Dews, and to account for the *Caspian Sea's* being always at a stand, neither wasting nor overflowing; as likewise for the Current said to set always in at the Streights of *Gibraltar*, tho' those *Mediterranean Seas* receive so many and so considerable Rivers.

In estimating the Quantity of Water arising by Vapours out of the Sea, he considers it only for the Time the Sun is up, because the Dews return in the Night as much, if not more, Vapours than are then emitted; and in Summer, the Days being longer than 12 Hours, this Excess is ballanc'd by the weaker Action of the Sun, especially when rising, before the Water be warm'd: So that he allows $\frac{1}{4}$ of an Inch of the Surface of the Sea to be rais'd *per Diem* in Vapours, as a probable Conjecture. Upon this Supposition, every 10 Square Inches of the Surface of the Water yields in Vapour *per Diem* a Cube Inch of Water, and each Square Foot half a Wine Pint; every Space of 4 Foot Square a Gallon; a Mile Square 6914 Tuns; a Square Degree, suppose of 69 *English* Miles, will evaporate 33 Millions of Tuns. It is fit to observe, That when Mr. *Halley* made the said Experiment, the Water he made use of was salted to the same Degree with common Sea-Water, by the Solution of about a 40th Part of Salt.

Having thus shew'd, by Experiment, the Quantity of Water rais'd in Vapour from the Surface of the Sea in a Day's Time, he was order'd by the *Royal Society* to enquire how Nature returns those Vapours again to the Sea, which he says is

so justly perform'd, that in many Hundreds of Years we are sufficiently assur'd, that the Sea has not sensibly decreas'd by the Loss in Vapour, nor yet abounded by the immense Quantity of fresh it receives continually from the Rivers. Upon this he gave the Society what to him seem'd the most satisfactory Account of this grand Phenomenon, in Substance thus: He attempted in another Place to explain the Manner of the Rising of Vapour by Warmth; by shewing, That if an Atom of Water were expanded into a Shell or Bubble, so as to be 10 times as big in Diameter, as when it was Water, such an Atom would become specifically lighter than Air, and rise so long as that *Flatus* or warm Spirit, that first separated it from the Mass of Water, shall continue to distend it to the same Degree; and that Warmth declining, and the Air growing cooler, and withal specifically lighter, the Vapours consequently stop at a certain Region of the Air, or else descend, which may happen on several Accounts: Yet he does not assert, that this is the only Principle of the Rise of Vapours, or that there is not a certain Sort of Matter whose *Conatus* is contrary to that of Gravity; as is evident in Vegetation, wherein the Tendency of the Sprouts is directly upwards, or against the Perpendicular. But whatever is the true Cause, 'tis certain in Fact, That Warmth doth separate the Particles of Water, and emit them with a greater Velocity, as the Heat is more and more intense, as is evident in the Steam of a boiling Cauldron, wherein likewise the Velocity of the Ascent of the Vapours does visibly decrease, till they disappear and are dispersed, and assimilated with the ambient Air.

Now the Ocean being divided with wide and spacious Tracts of Land, and high Ridges of Mountains, which surpass the usual Height to which the aqueous Vapours of themselves ascend, and on the Tops of which the Air is so cold and rarified, as to retain but a small

Part of those Vapours brought thither by Winds. Those Vapours therefore that are rais'd copiously in the Sea, and by the Wind are carried over the low Land to those Ridges of Mountains, are there compelled by the Stream of the Air to mount up with it to the Tops of the Mountains, where the Water presently precipitates, gleeting down by the Crannies of the Stone; and Part of the Vapour entering the Caverns of the Hills, the Water gathers into the Basons of Stone it finds, which being once fill'd, the Overplus runs over at the lowest Place, and breaking out by the Sides of the Hills, forms Springs. He says, This Theory of Springs is not a bare Hypothesis, but founded on Experience; for when he was at St. *Helena*, on the Tops of the Hills, at Night, making his Celestial Observations, his Glasses were covered with Drops, so that he was oblig'd to wipe them each half quarter of an Hour; and his Paper was so wet with Dew, that it would not bear Ink.

Thus one Part of the Vapours is return'd by Rivers into the Sea, and the greatest Part by the Cool of the Night falls into it by Dew or Rain before it reaches the Land; and this is the Reason why Rivers do not return so much into the *Mediterranean* as is extracted into Vapour. A Third Part falls on the low Lands, and is the *Pabulum* of Plants, where yet it does not rest, but is again exhal'd in Vapour by the Heat of the Sun, and is either carried by the Winds to the Sea in Rain or Dew, or else to the Mountains, where 'tis form'd into Springs: And thus, after several Vicissitudes, each Particle of the Water is return'd to the Sea from whence it came. Add to this, That the Rain-Waters, after the Earth is fully sated with Moisture, does, by the Vallies, find its Way into Rivers, and so is compendiously sent back to the Sea. After this Manner, he says, Circulation is perform'd; and he doubts not but this Hypothesis is more reasonable than that which derives

all

all Springs from Rain, tho' many of them be perpetual, and without Diminution, even when no Rain falls for a long Time. He thinks it also more reasonable than that Hypothesis which derives them from the Sea through certain imaginary Passages within the Earth, where they lose their Saltness: This, besides many others, labouring under this principal Absurdity, That the greatest Rivers have their most copious Fountains farthest from the Sea, whither so great Quantities of fresh Water cannot reasonably be deriv'd any other Way than in Vapour. This, if we may allow final Causes, seems to be the Design of the Hills, That their Ridges being plac'd through the midst of the Continents, might serve, as it were, for Alembicks, to distil fresh Water for the Use of Man and Beast, and their Heights to give a Descent to those Streams to run gently like so many Veins of the Macrocosm, to be the more beneficial to the Creation.

Varenius, in his 18th Chapter, gives an Account how the Earth and Water may change their respective Places.

In the Third Proposition, he advances a Conjecture about the Quantity of Water and Earth the Globe may contain; but several Things hinder a demonstrative and satisfactory Account of this Matter, as, the Uncertainty of the Deepness of the Sea in different Places, our Ignorance of what Water may be contain'd in the Abyss, and what Proportion the Water may bear to the Earth: But upon Supposition that the Water covers the one half of the Surface of the Earth, and that the Sea may, by a Medium, be computed at a quarter or half a Mile deep, the Calculation may be thus; Subtract from the Semi-Diameter of the Earth a quarter or half a Mile, and the Solidity of the Sphere may be found, whose Semi-Diameter is equal to the Remainder: Let this Solidity be subtracted from the Solidity of the Earth, the one Half of the Remainder will be

the Quantity of Water: The same Half being subtracted from the Solidity of the whole Earth, there will remain the Quantity of the Earth; to which, upon the Account of the Height of Mountains, must be added a Fourth or Fifth Part of the Quantity of the Water, or of the former Half: But this Calculation is very uncertain, tho' it may be near the Truth.

The Fourth and Fifth Propositions are concerning the deserting of their former Channels, by Seas, Rivers, and Lakes. Many Lakes have been drain'd by the Industry of Men; of which, 'tis needless to give Instances. Rivers change a Part of their Channel, 1. When they carry down with them Quantities of Earth and Mud, which settling to the bottom of the Channel, makes it as high as its Banks. 2. When they take another Course, by Inundations, Winds, or Earthquakes. 3. The Mouths of Rivers are sometimes stop'd by violent Tempests, which choak them up with Sand.

In the Seventh Proposition, he acquaints us, That Friths are dried up sometimes, and turn Isthmus's, or Parts of the Continent. Thus 'tis probable, That the Isthmus of *Suez*, which divides the *Red Sea* from the *Mediterranean*, was formerly Sea. So the *Zuider-Zee* in *Holland* is shallower than formerly; which seems to presage, That some time or other it will be quite dried up.

In the Ninth Proposition, *Varenius* gives the Reasons why the Sea sometimes retires from the Shore. 1. If the Shore be of a rocky hard Substance, that the Sea can wash nothing away from it, but brings Slime and Sand, &c. towards it, the Shore cannot fail to become higher than the Sea. 2. If the opposite Shore be of a soft porous Soil, then what the Sea washes away from that, it will restore to another, and overflowing the Shore so wasted, leaves the opposite Shore dry. 3. When great Rivers bring down vast Quantities of Mud, Earth, &c. it subsides, and makes the Shores higher.

higher. 4. If great Storms and Winds blow from the Sea to the Shore, and if the Shore be hard and rocky, or of firm Earth, it must be enlarged by Slime and Sand from the Sea. 5. If the Flood be swift, and the Ebb slow, then the Slime and Sand settles on the Shore, and adds to the Land.

Thus *Homer* and *Aristotle* were of Opinion, That *Egypt* formerly was almost all cover'd with Sea, but at last was made higher than the Sea, by the Mud and Slime that the *Nile* left Annually behind it. Ancient Histories tell us, That a great Part of *Holland*, *Guelderland*, and *Zealand*, were formerly under Water. The Shells of Sea-Fish, found in the Hills above *Nimeguen*, seem to be a Proof of this.

In the 19th Proposition, he enquires into the Reasons why there are more Islands near the Continent than in the middle of the Ocean. In the *Pacifick* Ocean there is scarce an Island to be seen. In the Ocean betwixt *Africa* and *Brazile*, there's few, except the Islands of *St. Helena* and *Ascension*. The *Azores* are the only Islands betwixt *Europe* and *America*.

The Cause of this, he says, is, because the Ocean, by its Irruptions, separates Parts from the Continents, which become Islands; but the Ocean not being high enough to cover those separated Parts, therefore great Numbers of them are about Continents: Others again are form'd of the Slime and Mud brought down by Rivers, or of that which the Sea washes from the neighbouring Continent, but settles down again, and by the Addition of Slime, &c. rises higher than the Surface of the Water: Some Islands have likewise been rais'd in the Sea by Earthquakes, and Mines of Sulphur, which have taken Fire, as one lately in the *Archipelago*.

SECT. XXI.

Of the ATMOSPHERE and WINDS.

Arenius, in his 19th Chapter, gives an Account of the Atmosphere and Winds: He describes the Atmosphere thus; That 'tis a Space round the whole Earth, which contains the Exhalations that are rais'd from it; but 'tis uncertain whether it contains any other Body besides. 'Tis also taken for the Exhalations themselves, and, by no mean Philosophers, is confounded with the Air; beyond which they immediately place what they call the Etherial Substance. That Vapours are continually exhaled both from Earth and Water, is too evident to be denied; and these Exhalations are occasioned, 1. By the Heat of the Sun, Moon and Stars. 2. By the Heat of the Earth, mix'd with its Parts, or by Subterranean Fires: For we perceive, that Fire put to any Body, causes it to send out Exhalations; and Experience shews us, that by Night, when the Moon shines, Vapours are rais'd from Water. But other Philosophers suppose, that, besides those Exhalations in the Space about the Earth, there is some peculiar and simple Body, which they call Air; altho' they freely grant, that Exhalations may be changed into Air; and on the other hand, that Air may be changed into Clouds, and thicker Vapours. Exhalations are more or fewer, according to the different Elevation of the Sun above the Horizon, or its Depression under it, according to the different Age and Elevation of the Moon, according to the Rising, Setting, and Constitution, of the Stars above the Horizon, and according to the Nature of the Soil; for moist Places send forth more than dry, and the

Exha-

Exhalations are of different Kinds, viz. Watery, Salt, Sulphureous, Earthy, Spiritous, &c. according to the Bodies they are rais'd from. From those Sulphureous Particles, fiery Meteors, Lightening, *Ignis fatui*, and Thunder, proceed. And the Difference of Air is occasion'd by those different Vapours.

He affirms in the Sixth Proposition, That Exhalations don't ascend of their own Nature, but by a violent Motion from another Cause; or that Air is not light, but heavy, absolutely speaking; and proves it thus: Every Thing is to be call'd heavy, which moves towards the Center of the Earth, except it be hinder'd: But Air does so; for if a Hole be dug in the Earth, Air descends into the Hole; and the Reason of its being carried upwards, is, 1. Because 'tis rarified by the Heat, which makes it seek for a larger Space. 2. Because it is thrust upwards by other Vapours. Hence 'tis, That in cold Places, such as *Nova Zembla*, and with us in the Night-Time, Clouds don't ascend; but when the Sun approaches, they are rarified, so as one Part pushes another forward.

In his Seventh Proposition, he proves, That the uppermost Parts of the Atmosphere are more subtle than the lower Parts; yet it may so happen, that the middle Parts are more gross than the lowermost Parts which are next the Earth, because the lighter Parts tend naturally to the higher Place; but those in the Middle may easily come together again, and so be more gross, the hot Particles which were carried up with them having left them, and the Beams of the Sun reflected from the Earth having no Power in the middle Region, because of their Distance. Hence it is, that the middle Air is more clear after Rain, because the grosser Parts are separated.

In his Eighth Proposition, he proves, That the Atmosphere or Air, when warm, takes up a greater Space than before; and the colder it is, the more 'tis contracted,

and requires the less Space. This is plain from the Thermometer; for the colder the Air is, the less Space it takes up in the Glais; and the warmer it is, the more. The Cause is this, the warm Particles of the Beams of the Sun, or of any other Fire, are the most subtle Particles of the World, and in continual Motion. Therefore while they are mix'd with the Atmosphere, they separate those Particles with great Force, and make more Pores; but when those fiery Particles are gone, the Particles of the Air, being left to themselves, do again unite.

In his Tenth Proposition, he asserts, That a clear Air may be so rarified by a violent Fire, as to take up 70 times more Space than it did before, and may be so condens'd in an Air-Pump, as only to take up the 60th Part of what it did before; but the Heat of the Sun never occasions a Rarefaction, nor the Coolness of the Air a Condensation, to that Degree. This is prov'd by the *Aelopila*, which being made hot by the Fire, will contain 13 Ounces of Water; but when cold, contains half a Dram over: Therefore the Air, while warm, took up so much more Space in the *Aelopila* when hot, than when it was cold; which answers to the Quantity above-mention'd.

In the Eleventh Proposition, he gives the Reasons why in the Frigid Zone, when they have no Sun, the Air is sometimes clear, but for most Part thick and cloudy. The latter, he says, proceeds from the small Subterranean Heat of the Earth, and of the Moon and Stars, which continue, while the Sun is absent, many Days and Nights above the Horizon; and that the Air is sometimes clear, is either because the thick Vapours fall down to the Earth, or are carried elsewhere by the Winds.

In his Twelfth Proposition, he gives the Reason why, many times in the coldest Days of Winter, the Air is clear, and not condens'd by the Cold. A Middling Cold,

Cold, he says, does not make the Air clear, but cloudy; because the small Heat still left in the Air raises the Vapours; but does not dispel them; but a violent Cold makes the Air clear. 1. By making the gross Matters yet more gross; by which means they settle and fall to the Earth. 2. By shutting up the Pores of the Earth, so that the Vapours cannot rise.

In the Eighteenth Proposition, he gives an Account of the Three Regions of the Air. The First is that in which we live, and reaches to the Middle Region. The Middle is that wherein Snow, Rain, and Hail, are generated. The Third is that which begins at the highest Part of the Middle Region, and reaches to the highest Part of the Surface of the Air; above which the *Aristotelians* place what they call the Sublunary Fire.

The Middle Region is reckon'd colder than the First and Third. 'Tis colder than the First, because the Earth reflects the Beams of the Sun, and so doubles the Heat, besides what it receives from the Particles of the Subterranean Fire. 'Tis colder than the Third, because that contains the more subtle fiery and sulphureous Parts of the Exhalations, which are carried thither from the Place of the watery Particles. The Middle Region is colder, because it is neither reach'd by the Beams of the Sun reflected from the Earth, nor by the fiery Particles, &c. of the Upper Region.

In his 41st Proposition, he gives us the Observation made by one *David Frelichius* upon the Mountain *Carpathus* in *Hungary*, which is the highest in that Country, and gives Name to all that Tract of Mountains which divide *Hungary* from *Poland*, *Moravia*, *Silesia*, and that Part of *Austria* which lies beyond the *Danube*. He thinks this Observation very proper to help us to make a Judgment concerning the Height of the Air, and the Constitution of its Regions.

In *June* 1615, he went up with Two

Companions to view these high Mountains, and when, with great Fatigue, he came to the Top of the first Rock, which, from the low Ground, he thought was as high as he needed to go, he perceived another Rock much higher, which he also climb'd up, through vast loose Rocks; of which, if any fell down, it carries Hundreds of others with it, of a much larger Size, with such a terrible Noise, as if the whole Mountain were tumbling down. When he came to the Top of that, he still found another higher, till at last he came to the Top of the highest. When from the lower Hills he look'd down to the Vallies, which were full of large Trees, he could perceive nothing but what either resembled dark Night, or the blue Sky in a clear Day, the visible Species were so much extenuated by the vast Declivity. Whilst he climb'd up the higher Mountain, he found himself encompass'd with thick Clouds. When he got through them in some Hours time, and drew near the highest Summit, he sat down and view'd the Place, where he was encompass'd with Clouds, and there he saw thick white Clouds moving; over which, for some Miles, he had a pleasant Prospect, and perceiv'd some Clouds higher, some lower, and some that mov'd at an equal Distance from the Earth; from whence he inferr'd these Three Things: 1. That he was enter'd the Middle Region of the Air. 2. That the Distance of the Clouds from the Earth was not equal, but some higher, and others lower, according to the Nature of the Vapour. 3. That the Distance of the Clouds nearer the Earth was much less than some Natural Philosophers say, and, instead of 72 *German* Miles, is only half a *German* Mile. When he came to the highest Summit, he found the Air so calm and subtle, that it did not so much as move a Hair; whereas in the lower Mountains there was a very high Wind. From this he conjectur'd, That this Summit was a

Ger-

German Mile from the Root of the lowest Hill, and that it reach'd above the Region of the Air where the Winds come. He fir'd a Pistol on the Top of it, which at first made no greater Report or Noise than if he had broke a little Stick; but in a small Time the Sound increased, and fill'd the lower Parts of the Mountain, the Vallies, and the Woods. As he came down through Snow, which had lain some Years in the Distances and Clefts of the Mountains, he fir'd another Pistol, which made a greater Noise than the largest Gun. This put him in Fear that the Mountain would fall with him. The Noise continued half a Quarter of an Hour, and went through all the Caverns of the Mountains, which multiplied it; there being no such Cavities in the Top of the Mountain, the Sound at first was very small; but meeting with Resistance in the Caves and Distances between the Rocks, it became louder. He adds, That in those high Mountains, there is Snow and Hail in the middle of Summer, as often as it Rains in the neighbouring Vallies: And he perceiv'd, by the Colour and Hardness of the Snow in several Parts, that it had lain there for some Years.

Varenius, in his 20th Chapter, treats of Winds in general, and of the Quarters of the World, or 32 Points of the Compass; of which he gives us the following Table, with their Distances from each Pole, viz. of the first 16 from the *Antarctic*, and of the rest from the *Arctic*.

	Degr.	Min.
East	90	0
East by South	78	45
East-South-East	67	30
South-East and by East	56	15
South-East	45	0
South-East by South	33	45
South-South-East	22	30
South and by East	11	15

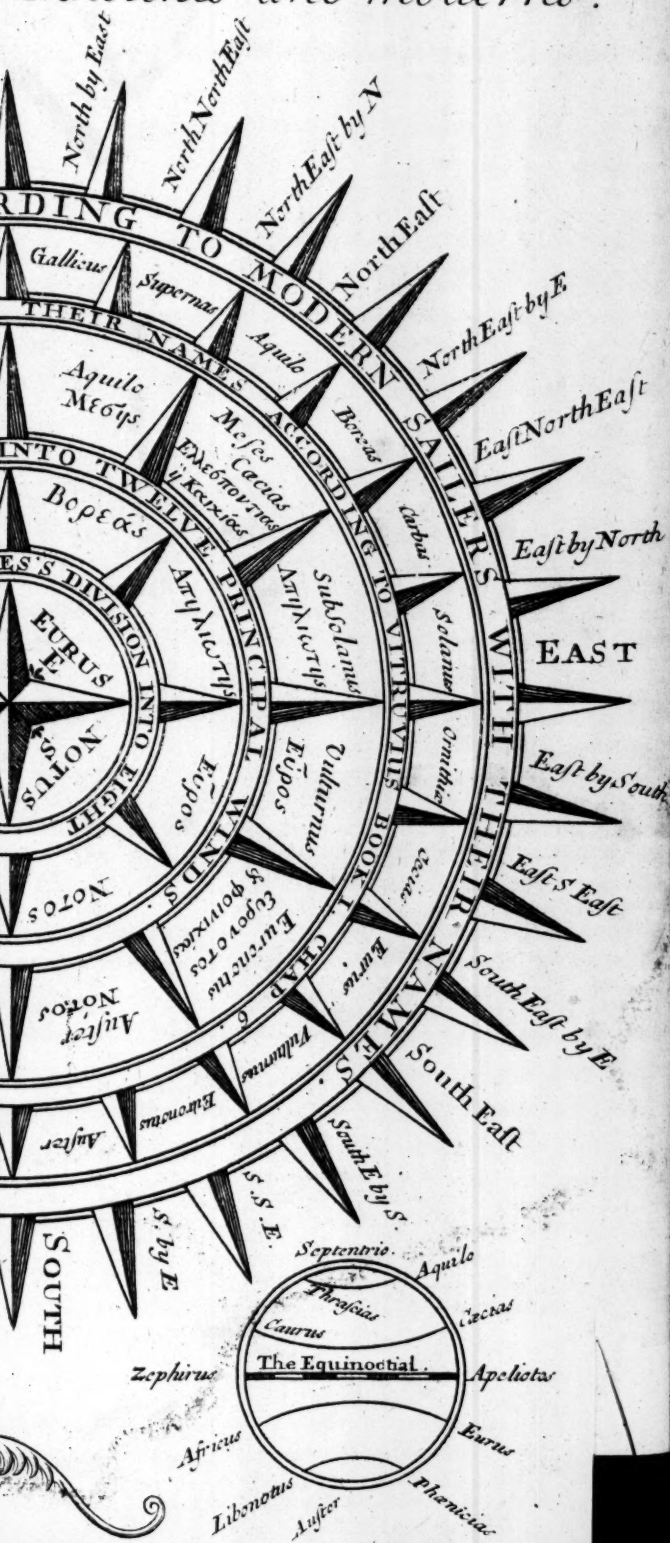
	Degr.	Min.
South	0	0
South by West	11	15
South-South-West	22	30
South-West and by South	33	45
South-West	45	0
South-West by West	56	15
West-South-West	67	30
West and by South	78	45
West	90	0
West by North	78	45
West-North-West	67	30
North West and by West	56	15
North-West	45	0
North-West by North	33	45
North-North-West	22	30
North and by West	11	15
North	0	0
North by East	11	15
North-North-East	22	30
North-East and by North	33	45
North-East	45	0
North-East by East	56	15
East-North-East	67	30
East and by North	78	45

Brietius, lib. 2. p. 32. gives us the following Account of the Winds, according to the Ancients. *Aristotle de Meteor.* lib. 1. Cap. 13. says, some Philosophers allowed only one Wind, because Wind was only the Motion of the Air. *Theriacles*, in *Strabo*, makes only Two, opposite to one another, according to the Poles, *Boreas*, *Notus*. The Greek and Latin Poets allow Four, which they place thus; *Auster* or *Notus*, opposite to *Aquilo* or *Boreas*; *Eurus*, opposite to *Favonius* or *Zephyrus*. The latter, in Time of a Tempest, they call *Africus*.

Andronicus Cyrrhestes, in *Strabo*, drew Eight, upon an Eight-corner'd Tower in *Athens*, pointed out by a Triton, with a moveable Rod.

Pliny, *Seneca*, and *Aristotle*, make 12, which *Seneca* collected from the Points of the Tropicks, of the Polar Circles, and of the Meridian intersecting the said Circles; and *Vernvius* made 24.

of the Winds and their
Ancients and Moderns.



SECT. XXII.

The Causes of WINDS in General.

V *Arenius*, Cap. 20. Prop. 10. gives an Account of the Causes of Wind, thus: The First and General Cause is the Sun, who by its Heat rarifies the Air, which obliges it to seek a greater Space, and one Part of the Air to thrust forward another. Thus, when the Sun moves from East to West, the principal Impulse of the Air is towards the West. A Proof of this is, That in most Places by Land, under the Torrid Zone, and every where by Sea, the Wind blows continually from the East; that is to say, the Sun thrusts the Air from East to West, but does not exceed the Torrid Zone. The rarified Air is indeed thrust forward toward all Quarters, *viz.* N. S. E. W. and the intermediate Points; but 'tis not admitted in all Points, the greatest Impulse or Protrusion being to the West, because the Sun moves that Way. It is almost continually so in the Torrid Zone; but in ours it blows generally before the Rising of the Sun, and after it, when most other Winds cease. Some Points are sometimes more disposed to receive this Impulse of the Air than others; and thus, when the Impulse is most towards the North, it is called a South Wind, &c. Here it is to be observed, That when this Impulse is towards any of the Points without the Four Cardinal Ones, then in different Countries the Wind seems different; for tho' that Point be one with respect to the Place to which the Sun is vertical, yet in respect to the other Places it is different; and this is the Reason why the same Wind is call'd by different Names in different Countries: But this is either assisted or hinder'd by other Causes; if it be assisted, then the Wind becomes violent; but if hinder'd, it becomes less violent from that Quarter, and frequently another Wind blows then, which is rather assisted by the General Cause. The Second Cause of Winds, he says, is frequent Exhalations rais'd plentifully from the Sea and Earth with great Force; but they scarcely occasion a Wind till they begin to be rarified. The Third Cause is the Rarefaction of

greater and lesser Clouds, either by the Sun and other Stars, or by the Fiery and Sulphureous Particles contained in themselves. The Fourth is the Dissolution of Ice and Snow, especially in Mountainous Places; for they are not altogether dissolv'd into Water. The Fifth is the Rising and various Situation of the Moon, and of the rest of the Stars. The Sixth is the Condensation and Rarefaction of the Air and Vapours by any Heat or Cold. The Seventh is the Descent of Clouds, by which the Air is pressed. These Things are better understood by the Consideration of the Instrument call'd *Æolopila*, in which Water being inclos'd, and the Instrument put to the Fire, it sends forth Wind with a great Force, until all the Water be exhal'd. He thinks, the Part of the small Orifice of the *Æolopila* is perform'd, 1. By the thicker neighbouring Air. 2. If that Air be pressed or hindered to give Way by other Vapours or Clouds. 3. If the Air be more condensed towards one Quarter, and so make Way for Blasts or Gusts of Wind.

In Prop. 11. he accounts for the Winds blowing so as to form a perpendicular Line above the Horizon. He says the Cause is, because the Air goes round the Earth in a Spherical Form, and the Protrusion is for most part made through the greatest Circle of the Sphere; but this will be better apprehended, if we consider the First Cause of the Wind: For the Sun thrusts the Air towards all those Quarters of the Places to which it is vertical; but the Impulse is not receiv'd in all those Places, as has been said already. Then if we consider the greatest Circles drawn from that Place, and among those such as receive the Protrusion and Impulse of the Air, all those Places of the Earth, situated in this Circle or Semi-Circle, will have the Wind perpendicular; because every great Circle of the Earth passing thro' any Place of it, is perpendicular to the Horizon of that Place. 'Tis the same when a Gust of Wind breaks out from a Cloud; but the Places situated without those Circles are not sensible of the Wind, tho' the Air be mov'd above their Horizon, because it is not perpendicular to that Horizon, but oblique: Yet he owns, 'tis not generally true that the Wind moves perpendicularly to the Horizon, because we many

times perceive the Wind to blow Cross-wise in the Air; and thus Smoak from a Chimney is sometimes carried to different Points by the Wind at the same time.

In Prop. 12. he gives the Reason why, during a Wind, the Blasts sometimes cease, and of a sudden renew their Force; and thinks, it's occasion'd by the ceasing of the Cause; and that Time is required for collecting the Vapours to break thro' the Air with such Force: Therefore the Wind is more continued at Sea, because the Exhalations there are so.

The Cause why Westerly Winds are less frequent than the Easterly, is accounted for in the 10th Proposition.

The Cause why North and East Winds are more strong than the South and West Winds, he accounts for thus: The Northern Air is more thick, because of the Cold; and the Southern Wind in our Zone is thinner, because the Air is rarified by the Heat of the Sun, &c. But it must be observ'd, That the South Winds are as dry, cold and impetuous in the Temperate Zone, opposite to ours, as the North Winds are to us; but the East Wind is stronger for another Reason, because it rises for most part from the Rarefaction of the Air by the Sun, which being continually carried from East to West, blows the more strong; tho' there may be other Causes which either further or hinder it.

In Prop. 16. he gives the Cause why the South and West Winds are warmer than those of the East and North: But he says, this is only to be understood of the Places in our Zone; for in the other Temperate Zone, situated from the Equator towards the South, it is contrary, because in those Places the North Winds are more warm, and the South Winds more cold. This, he says, must be so, from the Nature of the Thing; for the South Winds are more warm to us, and the North Winds colder, because our South Winds come from the Places which are nearer to the Torrid Zone, or the Course of the Sun; but it is otherwise as to the Northern Winds. In Places situated from the Equator towards the Antarctic, 'tis just the contrary, because the North Wind blows upon them from the Torrid Zone, and the South Wind from Places which are nearer the Antarctic Pole.

But we must answer otherwise as to the Eastern and Western Winds, because the Diversity of the Places of ours and the opposite Zone has no room here. In the first Place, 'twas said in the former Proposition, That the Western Winds are less frequent, and they are more warm, because they blow for most part by Night, after the Sun sets; and the Air which comes from that Quarter is warmer than ours, because we are further from the Setting Sun. Here's another Cause (which holds also in the Difference betwixt the North and South Winds) why the Western Winds are less strong: for 'tis known that any Air or Wind is found to be the more or less cold, according as it blows more or less strong; tho' it be in reality neither colder nor hotter, as we may perceive by our own Breath, which we can blow both hot and cold as we please.

In Prop. 17. he gives us the Signs of approaching Wind. When Mariners see a pale or blackish little Cloud, they look upon it as a Sign of Wind from that Quarter; for Clouds of that Colour are a Sign that they are forthwith to be dissolv'd into Blasts, or the Clouds themselves settling downwards because of their Weight; and being separated from other Clouds, they press the Air which is under them, and so occasion it to blow. Other Signs are; 1. If the Sun when it rises appear with Spots, and lurk under a pale or black Cloud, it foretells either Wind or Rain. 2. If the Rising Sun appear Concave, so that it shines in the middle, and casts out Rays, it foretells a moist and windy Tempest: The like if the Setting-Sun look pale. 3. But if it look red, the Air will be calm and clear next Day. 4. If the Sun look pale, and set in a black Cloud, it presages a North Wind. 5. If the Moon be of a Gold Colour, it's a certain Sign of Wind, according to the Verse:

Pallida Luna pluit, rubicunda stat, alba serenat. i. e.

A Pale Moon Rain foretells, the Red brings Wind;

But when there's White, the Air is clear we find.

6. A Circle round the Moon. 7. If the Horns of the Moon be sharp. 8. If the Nor-

Northern Horn of the Moon be longer than the other, it presages a North Wind; but if the Southern Horn be more erected, a South Wind. 9. The Rising of the Moon and more noted Stars, as *Arcturus*, *Orion*, and of those little Stars called *Hedi*, with the Sun. 10. If the little Stars in *Cancer*, which are call'd *Astiles*, be cover'd with a small Cloud, especially if the Northernmost of the two be covered, it presages a South Wind; but if the other, a North Wind. 11. When Rain ceases, Wind begins to blow for most Part. 12. When a Sound or Noise, like bubbling up of Water, is heard in the Sea. 13. The Ancients took Marks of approaching Winds from Animals, as the Crow, the Dolphin Fish, &c. 14. From Fiery Meteors and Lightening.

In Prop. 18. he gives the Reasons why Winds are more frequent in Spring and Autumn, and blow harder than in a hot Summer or cold Winter.

This happens in the Spring, partly from the Dissolution of Snow, especially in Mountainous Places, partly because the Pores of the Earth are then open, and send forth more Exhalations, and partly because the Air and Vapours are then more rarified than in Winter. Add, That in the Month before the Spring begins, and in the Spring it self, there happens for the most Part to be much Rain, because the moist Constellations are in those Places of the Zodiac; into which, when the Sun enters, we reckon the Spring begins. The same Frequency of Rain and Exhalations is the Occasion of Wind in Autumn, because the middling Heat of the Sun does indeed raise the Vapours, but thick, and not enough rarified: But in a hot Summer, Winds and Rains are less frequent, because the Sun attenuates the Exhalations too much, and does not suffer them to come together in such Plenty as is required to the Generation of Wind. In a hard Winter, the Winds are more seldom, because the Pores of the Earth being shut, there are few Vapours rais'd; and such as are, do either condense into Snow, or are hinder'd by the Frost from rarifying so much as to occasion Wind.

In Prop. 19. he gives an Account how high in the Air Winds blow, or in what Region of the Air they begin. Some think that Winds don't go above the Lower Re-

gion of the Air, because none is perceiv'd in the Tops of high Mountains, such as *Olympus*, &c. But *Varenius* doubts of this, because Smoak issuing from the Top of Mount *Aetna*, is carried about by the Wind.

In Prop. 20. he gives an Account how far one and the same Wind may extend, and tell us, there's a great Diversity in this Matter: For Winds which blow from East to West, under the Torrid Zone, seem to go round the whole Earth; and those which blow from South and North, Mariners find to continue many Days, and to blow thro' a great Space of the Globe. The same seems to hold of Collateral Winds, but with this Diversity, that the same Wind is different in different Places, as was mention'd in the 10th Proposition.

SECT. XXIII.

Varenius, Cap. 21. treats of Winds in Particular, and of Tempests.

THE Second Proposition treats of General and Particular Winds.

A General or Trade Wind is so called, because it blows from the same Point in many Places at the same time over large Tracts of the Earth, and for most part of the Year; but is most discernable at Sea. A Particular Wind is just the contrary.

The General Wind at Sea is interrupted sometimes by an opposite Land-Wind from Places near the Sea; so that this Wind is most constant in the middle of the Sea: Such Winds are found only in the Seas under the Torrid Zone, or in Seas within the Tropics, and sometimes 7 Degrees without the Tropics. All these General Winds are from the East, and its Collateral Points, viz. East, North-East, and South-East. They are most constant in the *Pacific Ocean*; so that Ships bound from *Aquapulco* in *New-Spain* to the *Philippine Islands*, which lie from East to West, frequently perform this great Voyage of 1650 Leagues in 60 Days, without shifting their Sails, the Wind being all that Time at East or North-East; so that the Seamen say, they may sleep securely all that Voyage, 'till they come in sight of the *Philippine Islands*, where this Wind is interrupted by others. The same General Wind

is observ'd betwixt the Cape of *Good Hope* and *Brafle*, betwixt whom lies the Island of *St. Helena*. They fail from this Island to the Cape of *Good Hope* (which is 350 Leagues) very often in the Space of 12 or 16 Days; but if they fail beyond this Island the 8th Part of a League, they cannot tack about to make it again, the Wind blows so hard from the East.

The Causes of these Winds are accounted for thus: Some are of Opinion, That the Motion of the Sun from East to West carries the Air along with it, and with more Force in the Torrid Zone than in other Places. Those who are of Opinion, That the Earth moves round the Sun, say, The Air, when carried about with the Earth, moves slower than the Earth. Hence it is, That when we are carried with the Earth from West to East, the Air moving with less Swiftnefs, seems to be against us, and to move from East to West. *Cartes* advances a new Solution of this Phenomenon, Part 4. Prop. 49. of his Principles, where he ascribes this to the Moon, as well as the Motion of the Sea from East to West.

In the 3d Prop. *Varenius* discourses of Fix'd and Periodical Winds, and of such as are unconstant; some are Anniversary; some return every six Months, some once per Month, and some every Day. The most remarkable are the *Mouffons*, (as the *Dutch* call them) or Trade-Winds, for their Usefulness in Trade. In the *Indian Ocean*, they have this Wind constantly for some Months, and when they cease, a contrary Wind begins, and lasts as long; and sometimes there is a Cessation of both for some Days: During which, sometimes there are Calms and variable Winds, and frequent Storms. In that Part of the *Atlantick* which lies in the Torrid Zone, and sometimes in the Temperate Zone, the North Wind blows during *October*, *November*, and *January*, which is therefore a fit Time for a Voyage from *Europe* to *India*. *Varenius* thinks, the Dissolution of Snow, the Plenty of thick Vapours, and the continual Pressure of heavy Clouds, during those Months, may occasion the said Winds, especially since they blow for most part from the North and South Quarters; but refers the Matter to further and more accurate Observations of the Seasons of the Year, and the Mountains in those Places.

In the 4th Proposition, we have an Account of those Winds the *Greeks* call'd *Etesie*, or Anniversary: They were of Two Sorts; the Summer Winds, which blow from the North, begin about the 6th or 15th of *July*, and lasts 40 Days or longer: They blow only in the Day-time; nor do they begin early in a Morning. This Wind is observ'd not only in *Greece*, but in *Thrace*, *Macedonia*, in the *Archipelago*, *Egypt*, and *Africa*. *Varenius* thinks they proceed from the melted Snow and Rain in the neighbouring Mountains; and the Reason why they don't blow in the Night-time, is, because the Snow does not melt then, or at least not so much, because of the Absence of the Sun. The South Winds begin after Winter, and are very low. The *Greeks* call'd the former *Etesie*, by way of Eminence, because they are the strongest; and the latter they call *Chelidonius*, or *Ornithias*, because they foretel the coming of the Birds call'd *Chelidona*, or Swallows. He thinks those Winds proceed from the melting of the Snow in the Mountains of the Moon in *Monomotopa*, it being Summer there when it is Winter in *Europe*. These Winds begin in *Congo* and *Guzarate* in *September*, and continue till *March*. He is doubtful how to give Reasons why these Winds are not equally observable in *Italy*, *Germany*, *France*, &c. as in *Greece*, &c.

In the 6th Proposition, he gives an Account of some Winds that are peculiar to some Places, viz. On the Coasts of *Peru*, *Chili*, and the adjacent Sea, the South Wind, or South-West Wind, is perpetual. It begins at 46 Degrees of Latitude, and reaches beyond *Panama*, in the Isthmus of *America*. Hence it is, That Ships from *Lima* to *Panama*, in a very few Days compass their Voyage; but from *Panama* to *Lima*, much more Time is required. This Wind blows only near the Coasts of *Peru*. Upon the Coasts of the *Terra Megallanica*, or *del Fuego*, about the Frith of *Le Maire*, the West Winds are very frequent. On the Coasts of *Malabar* in *India*, the North and North-East Winds blow all the Year. Our Author believes, his former Hypothesis of the melting of Snow in the Mountains, will answer this, and all other Difficulties of that Sort.

In the 7th Proposition, he speaks of Winds that blow at certain Times of the Day and Night;

Night; as on the Coasts of *Malabar*, from September to April, the Wind begins to blow at East from Midnight till Noon from the Land; but from Noon till Midnight, there blows from Sea a Westerly Wind.

On the Coasts of *New Spain*, they have Land-Winds all Night, and Winds from the Sea all Day. In the Kingdom of *Congo*, they have Winds from the Land all Night, but cool refreshing Breezes from the Sea all Day; which is a great Comfort to the Inhabitants of those sultry Countries.

In the 8th Proposition, he observes, the nearer we come to the Equator from the North Pole, the North Winds are the less violent; and when we pass the Equator, in Part of the *Terra Australis*, we find the South Winds strong, which are cold and dry in those Places, especially in *Chili* and *Peru*. He thinks the Cause of both to be the same, because they come from the Polar Places.

In the 10th Proposition, he discourses of Winds remarkable for their fatal Effects, as Whirl-Winds, Hurricanes, &c.

The Winds which Mariners call *Travado's*, break out suddenly from a Cloud; and while they last, carry all before them: They are very frequent betwixt the Cape of *Good Hope* and *Brasile*, and on the other Side of *Africa* as far as the Country of *Natal* and *Guinea* under the Equator. Mariners, as soon as they observe the black Clouds gather together, they know it is their immediate Concern to provide against the Storm; upon which they furl their Sails. Before the Mariners knew the Signs and *Travado's*, many Ships were lost. The *Portuguese* were first acquainted with these Winds, being the first *Europeans* who sail'd over the *Ethiopic* Ocean. Upon the Discovery of the Way to the *Indies* by the Cape of *Good Hope*, by *Vasco de Gama*, the King of *Portugal* set out 13 stout Ships of great Burden in the Year 1500, which was the first Fleet from *Europe* that arrived at *Brasile*. They continu'd there during April; and sail'd in May for the Cape of *Good Hope*; Tho' they saw the Signs of the approaching Storm, they did not understand them. Before the Storm, they were becalm'd, and spread all their Sails, to gather what Wind they could; but all of a sudden a furious North Wind blew, and sunk 4 of their Ships immediately. The whole Fleet had been irrecovera-

bly lost, if they had not straightway furl'd their Sails. In the Ocean betwixt *America* and *Africa*, under the Equator, these Winds are very frequent, especially in April, May, and June. They are also observ'd upon the Coasts of *Guinea*. In the *Arabian* Gulph, in *Arabia* it self, and *Ethiopia*, those Winds are frequent; so that in one Year's Time 6000 Travellers, with their Camels, have been buried under vast Mountains of Sand. 'Tis probable the Mummies are nothing else, but such Corps which are immediately dried by the scorching Sand.

Varenius thinks these Winds may be produc'd, 1. By the sudden falling down of Clouds, because of their Weight. 2. By the sudden breaking out of Spirits, Fire, or Sulphureous Matter; as Spouts proceed from watery Clouds, which fall down with great Force perpendicularly when they become too weighty to be supported by the neighbouring Air.

Hurricanes are very frequent in the Eastern Ocean. In the Seas of *Japan* and *China* they begin at West, and go over all the Points of the Compass in 24 Hours. This makes Voyages from the *East-Indies* to *Japan* extremely dangerous; so that they reckon it a prosperous Voyage if one Ship in three returns safe. These Winds have prodigious Effects, pull up Trees by the Roots, overturn Houses, and throw huge Ships quite out of the Water a great way into the Land. *Varenius* thinks, the Cause of these Whirl-Winds and Hurricanes to be a Wind which breaks out with great Violence from some Quarter, and meeting with a Stop, is whirl'd round into it self, as we see Water in a Whirl-pool; or that they proceed from opposite Winds, which blow fiercely at one and the same Time.

Prop. 13. He thinks the Wind may proceed from the Earth and Water: For since there are Cavities in both, with Spirits and Sulphureous Substances, he sees no Reason why we may not think, that strong Blasts of Wind are generated there; that is to say, if it be hinder'd from coming out by Degrees as it generates, or if so much be generated at once as is sufficient to form a Wind. Thus when Wind is stop'd in the Bowels of the Earth, it occasions Earthquakes; and the same is the Occasion of *Smook's* rising frequently out of the Sea in

leve-

several Places of the World: But he owns, he never read of any Winds breaking out of the Sea.

Prop. 14. Upon the Question, Whether Wind rises from the Flux of the Sea and Rivers? he says, 'tis plain from Experience, That when the Sea flows and ebbs, if the Air be free from other stronger Winds, there's generally a Wind from the Sea with a Tide of Flood: Therefore he thinks 'tis probable that the Air, because of its Contiguity, is carried towards the same Quarter with the Water; or, he thinks, the Air may be thrust from its Place by the flowing Water; for the Air is mov'd with a very small Impression.

Prop. 15. He gives the Reason why *Ignes-Fatui*, *Castor*, *Pollux*, and *Helenæ*, are perceiv'd during Tempests. The Portuguese call 'em *Corpo Santo*; the Spaniards *St. Elmo*. Many of them are sometimes seen moving about the Masts of Ships, with a wandering and uncertain Motion, like other *Ignes-Fatui*; tho' at other times they rest upon the Masts and Sails, and give a faint Light, like a Candle that burns dark. If 5 of them be seen together, the Portuguese call them *Our Lady's Crown*, and take them as a certain Token that the Tempest will immediately cease. The Cause of these Fires he thinks to be a Sulphureous Bituminous Matter, thrust downward by the great Motion of the Air, and being gather'd together, is set on fire by the Agitation and coming together of the Particles.

Prop. 16. He thinks the Cause of the frequent and long Calms in the Sea near Guinea, and under the Equator in the *Atlantic*, especially in April, May and June, to be, that there's no Snow upon the Mountains in those Parts, which, by its Dissolution, may generate Winds.

S E C T. XXIV.

HERE 'tis fit to add what Mr. Edmund Halley says, in his *Historical Account of the Trade-Winds and Monsoons observable in the Seas between and near the Tropics; with an Attempt to assign the Physical Cause of the said Winds.*

He says, This is a Part of Natural History, no less desirable and useful, than hard to obtain: That *Varenius's* Account of it is

not accurate, but full of Mistakes, which he will endeavour to rectify, from the Accounts of experienc'd Sailors, and his own Observations whilst he lived between the Tropics.

The Substance of what he had collected, is briefly as follows:

The Universal Ocean may most properly be divided into 3 Parts, viz. 1. The *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic* Sea. 2. The *Indian* Ocean. 3. The great South Sea, or *Pacific* Ocean. And tho' these Seas do all communicate by the South, yet, as to our present Purpose of the Trade-Winds, they are sufficiently separated by the Interposition of great Tracts of Land; the first lying between *Africa* and *America*; the second between *Africa* and the *Indian* Islands, and *Hollandia Nova*; and the last between the *Philippine* Isles, *China*, *Japan*, and *Hollandia Nova*, on the West, and the Coast of *America* on the East. Now following this Natural Division of the Seas, so will we divide our History into 3 Parts in the same Order.

I. In the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic* Seas, between the Tropics, there is a general Easterly Wind all the Year long, without any considerable Variation, excepting that it is subject to be deflected there from some few Points of the Compass towards the North or South, according to the Position of the Place. The Observations which have been made of these Deflections are the following:

1. That near the Coast of *Africa*, as soon as you have pass'd the *Canary* Isles, you are sure to meet a fresh Gale of N. E. Wind, about the Latitude of 28 Degrees North, which seldom comes to the Eastward of the E. N. E. or passes the N. N. E. This Wind accompanies those bound to the Southward to the Latitude of 10 North, and about 100 Leagues from the *Guinea* Coast, where, 'till the 4th Degree of North Latitude, they fall into the Calms and Tornado's: Of which, more hereafter.

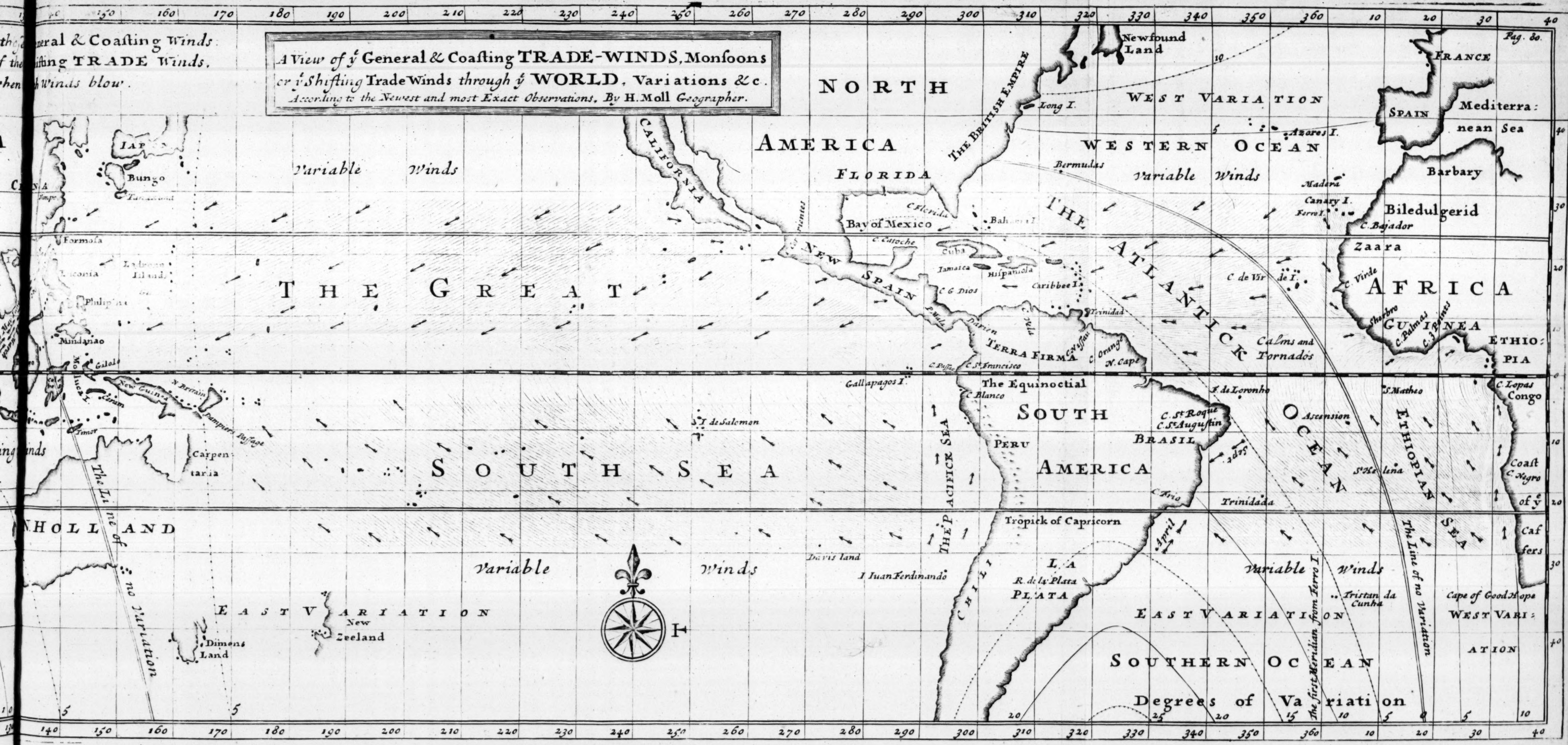
2. That those bound to the *Caribbe* Isles, find, as they approach the *American* Side, that the aforesaid N. E. Wind becomes still more and more Easterly, so as sometimes to be E. sometimes E. by S. but yet most commonly to the Northward of the East a Point of two, seldom more. 'Tis likewise observ'd, That the Strength of these Winds does

Note, that the Arrows among the Lines shew the Course of the
 and that the Arrows in the void Spaces shew the Course of the
 and the Abbreviations, Sept &c. Shew the Times of the Year when



General & Coasting Winds
of the
Shifting Trade Winds blow.

A View of y^e General & Coasting TRADE-WINDS, Monsoons
or y^e Shifting Trade Winds through y^e WORLD, Variations &c.
According to the Newest and most Exact Observations, By H. Moll Geographer.



does gradually decrease as you fail to the Westward.

3. That the Limits of the Trade and variable Winds in this Ocean are farther extended on the *American* Side than the *African*; for whereas you meet not with this certain Wind 'till after you have pass'd the Latitude of 28 Deg. on this Side, on the *American* Side it commonly holds to 30, 31, or 32 Degrees of Latitude: And this is verified likewise to the Southward of the Equinoctial; for near the Cape of *Good-Hope*, the Limits of the Trade-Winds are 3 or 4 Degrees nearer the Line than on the Coast of *Brasile*.

4. That from the Latitude of 4 Degrees North, to the aforesaid Limits on the South of the Equator, the Winds are generally and perpetually between the S. and E. and most commonly between the S.E. and E. observing always this Rule, That on the *African* Side they are more Southerly, on the *Brasilian* more Easterly, so as to become almost due East; the little Deflection they have being still to the Southward. In this Part of the Ocean it has been my Fortune to pass a full Year, in an Employment that oblig'd me to regard more than ordinary the Weather, and I found the Winds constantly about the S. E. the most usual Point S. E. by E. When it was Easterly, it generally blew hard, and was gloomy, dark, and sometimes rainy Weather: If it came to the Southward, it was generally serene, and a small Gale next to a Calm; but this not very common: But I never saw it to the Westward of the South, or Northward of the East.

5. That the Season of the Year has some small Effect on these Trade-Winds; for that when the Sun is considerable to the Northward of the Equator, the S. E. Winds, especially in the Streight of this Ocean, (if I may so call it) between *Brasile* and the Coast of *Guinea*, do vary a Point or two to the Southward, and the N. E. become more Easterly: And on the contrary, when the Sun is towards the Tropic of *Capricorn*, the South Easterly Winds become more Easterly, and the North-Easterly Winds on this Side the Line were more to the Northward.

6. That as there is no General Rule that admits not of some Exception, so there is in this Ocean a Tract of Sea wherein the

Southerly and S. W. Winds are perpetual, viz. all along the Coast of *Guinea*, for above 500 Leagues together, from *Sierra Leona* to the Isle of *St. Thomas*; for the S. E. Trade-Wind having pass'd the Line, and approaching the Coast of *Guinea* within 80 or 100 Leagues, inclines towards the Shore, and becomes S. S. E. and by degrees, as you come nearer, it veres about to S. S. W. and in with the Land S. W. and sometimes W. S. W. which Variation is better expressed in the Map hereto annexed, (*Vide Map.*) than it can well be in Words. These are the Winds which are observ'd on this Coast when it blows true; but there are frequent Calms, violent sudden Gusts called *Tornadoes* from all Points of the Compass, and sometimes unwholesome foggy Easterly Winds, called *Hermillas* by the Natives, which too often infect the Navigation of these Parts.

7. That to the Northward of the Line, between 4 and 10 Degrees of Latitude, and between the Meridians of *Cape Verde* and of the Eastermost Islands that bear that Name, there is a Tract of Sea wherein it were improper to say there is any Trade-Wind, or yet a variable; for it seems condemned to perpetual Calms, attended with terrible Thunder and Lightening, and Rains so frequent, that our Navigators from thence call this Part of the Sea the Rains: The little Winds that are, be only some sudden uncertain Gusts, of very little Continuance, and less Extent; so that sometimes each Hour you shall have a different Gale, which dies away into a Calm before another succeed; and in a Fleet of Ships in sight of one another, each shall have the Wind from a several Point of the Compass. With these weak Breezes, Ships are oblig'd to make the best of their Way to the Southward thro' the aforesaid 6 Degrees, wherein 'tis reported some have been detained whole Months for want of Wind.

From the three last Observables is shewn the Reason of two notable Occurrences in the *East-India* and *Guinea* Navigations: The one is, why notwithstanding the narrowest Part of the Sea between *Guinea* and *Brasile* be about 500 Leagues over, yet Ships bound to the Southward sometimes, especially in the Months of *July* and *August*, find a great Difficulty to pass it. This happens because

of

of the S. E. Winds, at that time of the Year commonly extending some Degrees beyond the ordinary Limit of 4 Degrees North Latitude; and withal, they come so much Southerly, as to be sometimes South, sometimes a Point or two to the West. There remains then only to ply to Windward; and if on the one Side they stand away W. S. W. they gain the Wind still more and more Easterly; but there is Danger of not weathering the *Brazilian Shore*, or at least the Shoals upon that Coast. But if upon the other Tack they go away E. S. E. they fall into the Neighbourhood of the Coast of *Guinea*, from which there is no departing, without running Easterly as far as the Isle of *St. Thomas*, which is the constant Practice of all the *Guinea Ships*, and which may seem very strange without the Consideration of the 6th Remark, which shews the Reason of it: For being in with the Coast, the Wind blows generally at S. W. and W. S. W. with which Winds they cannot go to the Northward for the Land; and on the other Tack they can lie no nearer the Wind than S. S. E. or S. With these Courses they run off the Shore; but in so doing they always find the Winds more and more contrary: So that when near the Shore they could lie South, at a greater Distance they can make their Way no better than S. E. and afterwards E. S. E. with which Courses they fetch commonly the Isle of *St. Thomas* and *Cape Lopez*, where finding the Winds to the Eastward of the South, they keep them favourable, by running away to the Westward in the South Latitude of 3 or 4 Degrees, where the S. E. Winds are perpetual.

For the Sake of these General Winds, all those that use the *West-Indian Trade*, even those bound to *Virginia*, count it their best Course to get as soon as they can to the Southward, that so they may be certain of a fair and fresh Gale to run before it to the Westward: And for the same Reason, those homeward-bound from *America* endeavour to gain the Latitude of 30 Degrees as soon as possible, where they first find the Winds begin to be variable; tho' the most ordinary Winds in the Northern Part of the *Atlantic Ocean* come from between the S. and W.

As to those furious Storms call'd Hurricanes, which are, as it were, peculiar to the *Caribbe Isles*, and which so dreadfully afflict

them in the Month of *August*, or not much before or after, they do not so properly belong to this Place, both by reason of their small Continuance and Extent, as likewise because they are not Anniversary; some Years having more than one, and sometimes, for several Years together, there being none at all. But their Violence is so unconceivable, and their other *Phænomena* so surprising, that they merit well to be consider'd apart.

What is here said, is to be understood of the Sea-Winds at some Distance from the Land; for upon and near the Shores, the Land and Sea-Breezes are almost every where sensible; and the great Variety which happens in their Periods, Force and Direction, from the Situation of the Mountains, Valleys and Woods, and from the various Texture of the Soil, more or less capable of retaining and reflecting Heat, and of exhaling or condensing Vapours, is such, that it were an endless Task to endeavour to account for them.

II. In the *Indian Ocean* the Winds are partly General, as in the *Ethiopic Ocean* partly Periodical; that is, half the Year they blow one Way, and the other half near upon the opposite Points; and these Points, and Times of shifting, are different in different Parts of this Ocean: The Limits of each Trade of Sea, subject to the same Change or Monsoon, are certainly very hard to determine; but the Diligence I have us'd to be rightly inform'd, and the Care I have taken therein, has, in a great Measure, surmounted that Difficulty; and I am persuaded, that the following Particulars may be rely'd upon.

1. That between the Latitudes of 10 Degrees and 30 Degrees South, between *Madagascar* and *Hollandia Nova*, the General Trade-Wind about the S. E. by E. is found to blow all the Year long, to all Intents and Purposes, after the same Manner as in the same Latitudes in the *Ethiopic Ocean*; as it is describ'd in the 4th Remark foregoing.

2. That the aforesaid S. E. Winds extend to within two Degrees of the Equator, during the Months of *June*, *July*, *August*, &c. to *November*; at which Time, between the South Latitudes of 3 and 10 Degrees, being near the Meridian of the North-End of *Madagascar*, and between 2 and 12 South Latitude,

rude, being near *Sumatra* and *Java*, the contrary Winds from the N. W. or between the N. and W. set in and blew for half a Year, viz. from the Beginning of *December* till *May*: And this Monsoon is observed as far as the *Molucca* Isles of which more anon.

3. That to the Northward of 3 Degrees South Latitude, over the whole *Arabian* or *Indian* Sea, and Gulph of *Bengall*, from *Sumatra* to the Coast of *Africa*, there is another Monsoon, blowing from *October* to *April* upon the N. E. Points; but in the other half Year, from *April* to *October*, upon the opposite Points of S. W. and W. S. W. and that with rather more Force than the other, accompanied with dark rainy Weather; whereas the N. E. blows clear. 'Tis likewise to be noted, That the Winds are not so constant, either in Strength or Point, in the Gulph of *Bengall*, as they are in the *Indian* Sea, where a certain and steady Gale scarce ever fails. 'Tis also remarkable, That the S. W. Winds in these Seas are generally more Southerly on the *African* Side, more Westerly on the *Indian*.

4. That as an Appendix to the last describ'd Monsoon, there is a Tract of Sea to the Southward of the Equator, subject to the same Changes of the Wind, viz. near the *African* Coast, between it and the Island *Madagascar* or *St. Lawrence*, and from thence Northward as far as the Line; wherein, from *April* to *October*, there is found a constant fresh S. S. W. Wind, which, as you go more Northerly, becomes still more and more Westerly, so as to fall in with the W. S. W. Winds, mention'd before in those Months of the Year to be certain to the Northward of the Equator. What Winds blow in these Seas for the other half Year, from *October* to *April*, I have not yet been able to obtain to my full Satisfaction; for that our Navigators always return from *India* without *Madagascar*, and so are little acquainted in this Matter: The Account that has been given me is only this, That the Winds are much Easterly, hereabouts, and as often to the North of the true East, as to the Southward thereof.

5. That to the Eastward of *Sumatra* and *Malacca*, to the Northward of the Line, and along the Coast of *Cambodia* and *China*, the Monsoons blow North and South; that is to say, the N. E. Winds are much Norther-

ly, and the S. W. much Southerly. This Constitution reaches to the Eastward of the *Philippine* Isles, and as far Northerly as *Japan*; the Northern Monsoon setting in, in these Seas, in *October* and *November*, and the Southern in *May*, blowing all the Summer Months. Here it is to be noted, That the Points of the Compass, from whence the Wind comes in these Parts of the World, are not so fix'd as in those lately describ'd; for the Southerly will frequently pass a Point or two to the Eastward of the South, and the Northerly as much to the Westward of the North; which seems occasion'd by the great Quantity of Land which is interspers'd in these Seas.

6. That in the same Meridian, but to the Southward of the Equator, being that Tract lying between *Sumatra* and *Java* to the West, and *New Guinea* to the East, the same Northerly Monsoons are observ'd, but with this Difference, That the Inclination of the Northerly is towards the N. W. and of the Southerly towards the S. E. but the *Plaga Venti* are not more constant here than in the former, viz. variable 5 or 6 Points: Besides, the Times of the Change of these Winds are not the same as in the *Chinese* Seas, but about a Month or 6 Weeks later.

7. That these contrary Winds do not shift all at once; but in some Places the Time of the Change is attended with Calms, in others with variable Winds: And it is particularly remarkable, That the End of the Westerly Monsoon on the Coast of *Coremandel*, and the two last Months of the Southerly Monsoon in the Seas of *China*, are very subject to be tempestuous. The Violence of these Storms is such, that they seem to be of the Nature of the *West-India* Hurricanes, and render the Navigation of these Parts very unsafe about that Time of the Year. These Tempests are by our Seamen usually term'd, *The Breaking up of the Monsoons*.

By reason of the shifting of these Winds, all those that sail in these Seas, are oblig'd to observe the Seasons proper for their Voyages; and so doing, they fail not of a fair Wind, and speedy Passage: But if so be they chance to out-stay their Time till the contrary Monsoon set in, as it frequently happens, they are forc'd to give over the

Hopes of accomplishing their intended Voyages, and either return to the Port from whence they came, or else put into some other Harbour; there to spend the Time till the Wind shall become favourable.

III. The 3d Ocean, call'd *Mare Pacificum*, whose Extent is equal to that of the other Two, (it being from the West Coast of *America* to the *Philippine* Islands not less than 150 Degrees of Longitude) is that which is least known to our own or the neighbour Nations: That Navigation that there is on it, is by the *Spaniards*, who go Yearly from the Coast of *New Spain* to the *Manilla's*, but that but by one beaten Track; so that I cannot be so particular here, as in the other Two. What the *Spanish* Authors say of the Winds, they find in their Courses; and what is confirm'd by the old Accounts of *Drake* and *Candish*, and since by *Schooten*, who sail'd the whole Breadth of this Sea in the Southern Latitude of 15 or 16 Degrees, is, That there is a great Conformity between the Winds of this Sea, and those of the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic*; that is to say, That to the Northward of the Equator, the predominant Wind is between the E. and N. E. and to the Southward thereof there is a constant steady Gale between the E. and S. E. and that on both Sides the Line with so much Constancy, that they scarce ever need to attend the Sails; and Strength, that 'tis rare to fail of crossing this vast Ocean in 30 Weeks time, which is about 130 Miles *per Diem*. Besides, 'tis said, That Storms and Tempests are never known in these Parts; so that here is the very best of Sailing, no Want of a fresh fair Wind, and yet no Danger of having too much: Wherefore some have thought it might be as short a Voyage to *Japan* and *China*, to go by the Straights of *Magellan*, as by the Cape of *Good Hope*.

The Limits of these General Winds are also much the same, as in the *Atlantic* Sea, viz. about the 30th Degree of Latitude on both Sides; for the *Spaniards* homeward-bound from the *Manilla's*, always take the Advantage of the Southerly Monsoon, blowing there in the Summer Months, and run up to the Northward of that Latitude, as high as *Japan*, before they meet with variable Winds, to shape their Course to the Eastward. And *Schooten* and others, that

have gone about by the *Magellan* Straights, have found the Limits of S. E. Winds much about the same Latitude to the Southward. Besides, a farther Analogy between the Winds of this Ocean, and the *Ethiopic*, appears in that upon the Coast of *Peru*, they are always much Southerly, like as they are found near the Shores of *Angola*.

Thus far Matter of Fact, wherein if the Information I have receiv'd be not in all Parts accurate, it has not been for want of Enquiry from those I conceiv'd best able to instruct me; and I shall take it for a very great Kindness if any Master of a Ship, or other Person, well inform'd of the Nature of the Winds in any of the aforementioned Parts of the World, shall please to communicate their Observations thereupon; so that what I have here collected, may be either confirm'd or amended, or, by the Addition of some material Circumstances, enlarged. 'Tis not the Work of one, nor of few, but of a multitude of Observers, to bring together the Experiments requisite to compose a perfect and complete History of these Winds: However, I am not much doubtful that I have err'd in, or omitted, any of the principal Observables, whatever lesser Particles may have escap'd my Knowledge.

To help the Conception of the Reader in a Matter of so much Difficulty, I believ'd it necessary to adjoin a Scheme, shewing at one View all the various Tracts and Courses of these Winds; whereby 'tis possible the Thing may be better understood, than by any verbal Description whatsoever.

The Limits of these several Tracts are design'd every where by prick'd Lines, as well in the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic*, where they are the Boundaries of the Trade and variable Winds, as in the *Indian* Ocean, where they also shew the Extent of the several Monsoons. I could think of no better Way to design the Course of the Winds on the Map, than by drawing Rows of Strokes in the same Line that a Ship would move, going always before it; the sharp End of each little Stroke pointing out that Part of the Horizon, from whence the Wind continually comes: And where there are Monsoons, the Rows of the Strokes run alternately backward and forward; by which

Mean

Means they are thicker there than elsewhere. As to the great South Sea, considering its vast Extent, and the little Variety there is in its Winds; and the great Analogy between them and those of the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic* Oceans; besides that the greatest Part thereof is wholly unknown to us; I thought it unnecessary to lengthen the Map therewith.

In the foregoing History are contain'd several Problems, that merit well the Consideration of our acutest Naturalists, both by reason of the Constancy of the Effect, and of the immense Extent thereof; near half the Surface of the Globe being concern'd. The chief of these Problems are, 1. Why these Winds are perpetually from the E. in the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic*, as likewise in the *Pacific* Ocean, between the Latitudes of 30 N. and 30 S? 2. Why the said Winds extend no farther with Constancy than to the Latitudes of 30 Degrees? 3. Why there should be a constant South-Westerly Wind upon and near the Coast of *Guinea*? 4. Why in the North Part of the *Indian* Ocean the Winds, which for one half Year do agree with those of the other two Oceans, should change in the other half Year, and blow from the opposite Points, whilst the Southern Part of that Ocean follows the General Rule, and has perpetual Winds about S.E? 5. Why in these General Trade-Winds it should be always true; That to the Northward of the Equator, it is inclin'd to the Northward of the East; and in South Latitudes, to the Southward thereof? 6. Why in these Seas of *China*, there should be so great an Inclination from the E. to the N. more than elsewhere? With many more, which it would be much easier to propose, than answer.

But lest I should seem to propose to others, Difficulties which I have not thought worth my own Time and Pains, take here the Result of an earnest Endeavour after the true Reason of the aforesaid *Phenomena*; wherein if I am not able to account for all Particulars, yet 'tis hoped, the Thoughts I have spent thereon will not be judged wholly lost by the Curious in Natural Enquiries.

Wind is most properly defin'd to be the Stream or Current of the Air; and where such a Current is perpetual and fix'd in its Course, 'tis necessary that it proceed from

a permanent unintermitting Cause. Wherefore some have been inclin'd to propose the Diurnal Rotation of the Earth upon its Axis, by which, as the Globe turns Eastward, the loose and fluid Particles of the Air, being so exceeding light as they be, are left behind; so that in respect of the Earth's Surface, they move Westward, and become a constant Easterly Wind. This Opinion seems confirmed; for that these Winds are found only near the Equinoctial, in those Parallels of Latitude where the Diurnal Motion is swiftest; and I should readily assent to it, if the constant Calms in the *Atlantic* Sea near the Equator, the Westerly Winds near the Coast of *Guinea*, and the Periodical Westerly Monsoons under the Equator in the *Indian* Seas, did not declare the Insufficiency of that Hypothesis. Besides, the Air being kept to the Earth by the Principle of Gravity, would acquire the same Degree of Velocity that the Earth's Surface moves with, as well in respect of the Diurnal Rotation, as of the Annual about the Sun, which is about three times swifter.

It remains therefore to substitute some other Cause, capable of producing a like constant Effect, not liable to the same Objections, but agreeable to the known Properties of the Elements of Air and Water, and the Laws of the Motion of fluid Bodies. Such an one is, I conceive, the Action of the Sun-Beams upon the Air and Water, as he passes every Day over the Oceans, consider'd together with the Nature of the Soil, and Situation of the adjoining Continents. I say therefore, 1. That, according to the Laws of Statics, the Air, which is less rarified, or expanded by the Heat, and consequently more ponderous, must have a Motion towards those Parts thereof which are more rarified, and less ponderous, to bring it to an *Equilibrium*: And, 2. That the Presence of the Sun continually shifting to the Westward, that Part towards which the Air tends, by reason of the Rarification made by his greatest Meridian Heat, is with him carried Westward; and consequently the Tendency of the whole Body of the lower Air is that Way.

Thus a General Easterly Wind is form'd, which being impress'd upon all the Air of a vast Ocean, the Parts impel one the other,

and so keep moving till the next Return of the Sun, whereby so much of the Motion as was lost, is again restor'd; and thus the Easterly Wind is made perpetual.

From the same Principle it follows, That this Easterly Wind should, on the North Side of the Equator, be to the Northward of the East, and in South Latitudes to the Southward thereof; for near the Line, the Air is much more rarified than at a greater Distance from it, because of the Sun twice in the Year vertical, and at no Time distant above 23 Deg. and a half; at which Distance the Heat, being as the Sine of the Angle of Incidence, is but little short of that of the perpendicular Ray. Whereas under the Tropics, tho' the Sun stays long vertical, yet he is as long 47 Deg. off; which is a kind of Winter, wherein the Air so cools, as that the Summer-Heat cannot warm it to the same Degree with that under the Equator. Wherefore the Air to the Northward and Southward being less rarified than that in the middle, it follows, that from both Sides it ought to tend towards the Equator: This Motion, compounded with the former Easterly Wind, answers all the *Phænomena* of the General Trade-Winds; which if the whole Surface of the Globe were Sea, would undoubtedly blow all round the World, as they are found to do in the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic* Oceans.

But seeing that so great Continents do interpose and break the Continuity of the Oceans, Regard must be had to the Nature of the Soil, and the Position of the high Mountains, which I suppose are the two principal Causes of the several Variations of the Winds, from the former General Rule: For if a Country lying near the Sun prove to be flat, sandy, low Land, such as the Desarts of *Lybia* are usually reported to be, the Heat, occasion'd by the Reflection of the Sun's Beams, and the Retention thereof in the Sand, is incredible to those that have not felt it; whereby the Air being exceedingly rarified, it is necessary that the cooler and more dense Air should run thitherwards to restore the *Equilibrium*. This I take to be the Cause why, near the Coast of *Guinea*, the Wind always sets in upon the Land, blowing Westerly instead of Easterly; there being sufficient Reason to believe, that the inland Parts of *Africa* are pro-

digiously hot, since the Northern Borders thereof were so intemperate, as to give the Ancients Cause to conclude, That all beyond the Tropic was made inhabitable by Excess of Heat: From the same Cause it happens, that there are so constant Calms in that Part of the Ocean call'd the *Raines*, (describ'd in the 7th Remark on the *Atlantic* Sea:) For this Tract being plac'd in the middle, between the Westerly Winds blowing on the Coast of *Guinea*, and the Easterly Trade-Winds blowing to the Westward thereof, the Tendency of the Air here is indifferent to either, and so stands in *Equilibrium* between both; and the Weight of the incumbent Atmosphere being diminish'd by the continual contrary Winds blowing from hence, is the Reason that the Air here holds not the copious Vapour it receives, but lets it fall into frequent Rains.

But as the cool and dense Air, by reason of its greater Gravity presses upon the hot and rarified, 'tis demonstrative, that this latter must ascend in a continued Stream as fast as it rarifies; and that being ascended, it must disperse itself to preserve the *Equilibrium*; that is, by a contrary Current, the upper Air must move from those Parts where the greatest Heat is: So by a kind of Circulation, the N.E. Trade-Wind below will be attended with a South-Westerly above, and the South-Easterly with a N.W. Wind above: That this is more than a bare Conjecture, the almost instantaneous Change of the Wind to the opposite Point, which is frequently found in passing the Limits of the Trade-Winds, seems to assure us. But that which above all confirms this Hypothesis, is the *Phænomenon* of the Monsoons, by this Means most easily sol'd, and without it hardly explicable.

Supposing therefore such a Circulation as above, 'tis to be consider'd, That to the Northward of the *Indian* Ocean, there is every where Land within the usual Limit of the Latitude of 30, viz. *Arabia*, *Persia*, *India*, &c. which for the same Reason as the *Mediterranean* Parts of *Africa* are subject to unsufferable Heats when the Sun is to the North, passing nearly vertical; but yet are temperate enough when the Sun is remov'd towards the other Tropic, because of a Ridge of Mountains at some Distance within the Land, said to be frequently in

Winter

Winter cover'd with Snow; over which the Air, as it passes, must needs be much chilled. Hence it comes to pass, That the Air coming according to the general Rule, out of the N. E. in the *Indian Seas*, is sometimes hotter, sometimes colder, then that which by this Circulation is return'd out of the S. W. And by Consequence, sometimes the under Current of the Wind is from the N. E. sometimes from the S. W.

That this has no other Cause, is clear from the Times wherein these Winds set in, viz. in *April*, when the Sun begins to warm those Countries to the North, the S. W. Monsoon begins, and blows during the Heats till *October*; when the Sun being retired, and all Things growing cooler Northward, and the Heat encreasing to the South, the N. E. Winds enter, and blow all the Winter, till *April* again. And it is undoubtedly from the same Principle, That to the Southward of the Equator, in Part of the *Indian Ocean*, the N. W. Winds succeed the S. E. when the Sun draws near the Tropic of *Capricorn*: But I must confess, That in this latter occurs a Difficulty, not well to be accounted for, which is, why this Change of the Monsoon should be any more in this Ocean than in the same Latitude in the *Ethiopic*, where there is nothing more certain than a S. E. Wind all the Year.

'Tis likewise very hard to conceive, why the Limits of the Trade-Wind shou'd be fix'd about the 30th Degree of Latitude all round the Globe, and that they should so seldom transgress or fall short of those Bounds: As also, That in the *Indian Sea*, only the Northern Part should be subject to the changeable Monsoons, and in the Southern there be a constant S. E.

These are Particulars that merit to be consider'd more at large, and furnish a sufficient Subject for a just Volume, which will be a very commendable Task for such, who, being us'd to Philosophical Contemplations, shall have Leisure to apply their serious Thoughts about it.

SECT. XXV.

An Account of Meteors, from Monsieur Bion's Use of the Globes; approv'd by Monsieur de la Hire, the French King's Professor of Mathematicks, and one of the Royal Academy of Sciences.

Of DEW.

DEW is occasion'd thus: The Cold which is upon the Surface of the Earth during the Winter, covers it on all Parts, and concentrates the Heat in low and Subterraneous Places; and in the Spring, the Cold being abated, and the Pores of the Earth open, it has a Sort of Sweat or Perspiration: From whence it is, That many Vapours must then of Necessity flie up into the Air; and the Nights of that Season being still cold, condense those Vapours and Exhalations that are rais'd by Day, and change them to a very small and insensible Rain, of a short Continuance, that falls early in the Morning, and is found in Drops of Water like Pearl upon the Tops of Herbs and Flowers. But the Exhalations which are easily rais'd with those Vapours, are more subtle, and less corrosive: Whence it is, That they make a very healthful Water upon the Tops of tender and blooming Flowers, which is indeed so very healthful; that it is gather'd to be made use of on many Occasions.

Of MISTS, or FOGS.

The Mists in Winter are form'd of Vapours rais'd in that Season, and condens'd by the Cold in the lower Region of the Air: Whence it comes, That tho' fewer Vapours are then rais'd than in other Seasons, we have yet more frequent Mists.

Mists in Summer are partly form'd of Vapours, and partly of Exhalations, rais'd in the Day-time by the Heat of the Season; and because the Mist, by reason of the Grossness

Grossness and Weight of the Exhalations, cannot easily mount to the higher Region, where the Air is more subtil; and so the Coldness of the Night condenses those Exhalations and Vapours, which in the Morning appear to be Mists. But the Air which has been cool'd in the Night, and but little warm'd by the Morning-Sun, has then only a small Heat; which if it have Force enough to raise the Fog, then we have either bad Weather, or many Clouds: But if the Morning-Sun cannot draw it up, the Mist falls down again upon the Earth by its natural Gravity, and is a Sign of fair Weather.

Of MILDEW.

This is a kind of Fog that happens in the middle of Summer, when, by the Heat of the Season, many corrosive Exhalations are rais'd with the Vapours; which falling upon the growing Corn, blasts and scorches it, especially if heated by the Sun, which makes them still more corroding. Therefore skilful Countrymen kindle great Fires of Straw on that Side of their Corn from whence the Winds blow, to protect it from the Mildew.

Of FROST and ICE.

Frost comes from a violent North Wind, that brings a colder Air with it than what we had, which, by the Violence of that Wind, only glances upon the Surface of the Earth: It stops the Motion of the small Particles of the Earth and Water, and by this Means hardens and condenses them. Ice comes from the same Cause, but with this Difference, That the Air which the Wind brings from the North is very cold; and it being the same in the Place where it comes, those two concurring Winds freeze the Water.

Of CLOUDS.

They are form'd when Vapours being drawn up into the Air from all Parts, their Motion is lessen'd, and their Parts come

nearer together, and reaching the middle Region of the Air, they become more united, and form those Clouds which we see move in the Air when driven by Winds.

Of RAIN.

Rain comes from Clouds driven from one Point of the Air to another more cold, or from Vapours elevated from the lower to the middle Region of the Air, which is more cold: These Clouds being condens'd by this Cold, turn to Water, which, by its Gravity, falls to the Earth in small Parcels call'd Drops, form'd by the Agitation of the Air. Hence it is, That Rain for most part follows a South, but seldom a North Wind; tho', from particular Causes, it may happen, that the Air is more warm sometimes in a more Northern, than in a more Southerly Place. In *France*, they have seldom Rain when the Wind is in the East, but frequently when in the West; because the Sea is on that Quarter, from whence a great Quantity of Vapours arise, which form Clouds, and are brought into *France* by that Wind.

Rain is also form'd from Clouds elevated to the middle Region of the Air, which is more cold than ordinary at some times. Hence it is, that those Vapours are hastily condens'd as they rise, and before the other Vapours can arrive there. Thus they form little Clouds heap'd one upon another, that makes the Sky look as if it were curld'd. This shews, that Vapours are rising from the Earth; that the middle Region is more cold than ordinary, and presages Rain. When that Part of the Horizon where the Sun rises or sets is of a pale or yellowish Colour, it shews, that there are many Vapours in the Air, and foretels bad Weather: But when the same Parts of the Horizon are of a bright Red, there are few Vapours in the Air, and those very subtil; the Rays of the Sun coming then to us Horizontally, they meet the better with those few subtil Vapours and Exhalations, which denotes a Continuation of good Weather, especially if the Wind in the South or West Points has not begun to blow.

Of S N O W.

Snow comes from this, That in the Winter, the Regions of the Air are altogether cold, and the Clouds meeting that great Cold every where, pass very soon from that Degree of Condensation which is requisite to change them to Rain, to that which is necessary to change them to Ice; so that in Winter, as soon as the Clouds begin to change into Rain, the small Particles of Water immediately freeze, and turn to Snow, which touching upon one another, make Flakes; and having small Intervals, like so many Pores, are therefore very light.

All these Flakes continuing for most part together, have still Intervals betwixt one another, and together form a Cloud, which, tho' it appear thick, yet, because of those small Intervals, is easily carried about: Therefore those Flakes take some Time before they fall to the Ground.

The Snow is not chang'd into a sensible Body of Ice during that Time, because when it is once form'd, the small Intervals, which are only fill'd with a subtiler Air, hinder it to be chang'd into any other Form.

It falls when the Wind divides its Flakes into other smaller ones, which then fall to the Ground, not so much by their Gravity, which is very little, but because they are driven towards the Ground by the Air of the middle Region, which is repelled itself by the Wind which blows beneath the Cloud.

And as the small Particles of the Ice that compose these Flakes are hard, solid, transparent, and all of different Figures and Positions, they reflect the Light from every Part, so appear white, just like white Sand, which is only a Heap of little transparent Bodies, as we perceive by the Microscope; but with this Difference, That Snow being form'd of Vapours, and having no Mixture of Earthy Parts; therefore it is of a very bright White.

If it happen that the Coldness of the Air that form'd the Snow be abated, then some of the Flakes melt, and dividing those that are not melted, insinuate some Water into

the Intervals, which freezing, they become heavier; then both the Snow which is melted, and that which is not, fall: And thus it both snows and rains at the same time.

Of H A I L.

Hail is form'd under the Clouds, thus: The Air of the middle Region is very cold in Summer, and in the temperate Seasons; and when the Air is under a great and thick Cloud, which deprives it of the Rays of the Sun, by this means it grows cold to a great degree. Hence it is, That if that Cloud fall down in Rain, it necessarily happens, that the Drops of Water, as they pass thro' the cold Air under that Cloud, must freeze, and fall down in little Particles of Ice, much of the Figure and Greatness with the Drops of Rain.

Of T H U N D E R.

Thunder is form'd of Exhalations, which are rais'd in great Abundance by the Heat of Summer. These Exhalations cannot be rais'd, especially in that Season, but their Particles must receive Agitation, and begin to grow warm; so that being in the middle Region, among the Vapours which are there chang'd into Clouds, these Exhalations being mix'd with them, disperse the Vapours hither and thither, and gathering together in the Center of the Clouds, they continually grow more and more hot, to that degree, that they swell those Clouds; and if other Clouds beat against them, they burst out with great Force: And this is always followed by a great Noise, and with Lightning, which appears to us before the Noise; because Light being more subtiler than the Air, which occasions our Hearing, reaches our Eyes sooner than that does our Ears.

The Continuation and Repetition of the Noise of Thunder is from a sort of Echo in the Clouds. Sometimes we see Lightning without Thunder, because that Cloud has no Vapours; tho' enough to condense the Circumference, so as to make it uneasy to burst: Not but that at the same time it makes

makes a Noise, but so small, that we cannot hear it at so great a Distance.

Lightning without Thunder happens ordinarily in a Time of great Heat, because then there are more Exhalations than Vapours rais'd: And hence we observe, That when there is Lightning without Thunder, there is no Rain, because there is not Vapours enough to make Rain.

But when Lightning is accompanied with great Thunder, 'tis a Sign there are a great many Vapours condens'd round the Circumference of the Cloud, and almost form'd into Rain already; because the Heat concentrating in the Center of the Cloud, leaves a greater Cold to the Vapours in the Circumference. Thus we find every time the Thunder shakes and bursts the Cloud, the Rain encreases the more: For these Reasons, the Water being almost form'd, falling by the shaking of the Cloud, must needs fall in very great Drops; which passing thro' the middle Region of the Air, are many times, by the great Cold there, immediately turn'd to very big Hail, which frequently makes terrible Devastations.

The more thick and condens'd the Circumference of the Cloud is by the Vapours, the Exhalations burst out with the greater Force; the Lightning is carried further, and sometimes touches the Surface of the Earth; and then it is called a Thunder-bolt, and burns and overturns Buildings, sets all in a Flame where it comes, and kills Men and Beasts.

Lightning has frequently surprizing and prodigious Effects, as melting the Blade of a Sword in the Scabbard, and Money in one's Pocket, without hurting the Scabbard or Pocket. This happens when the Particles that compose the Lightning are so subtil, and small, as to make no Impression upon Bodies that have large Pores, to give a Passage to them; so that they spend their Force upon those Bodies that resist them. On the contrary, sometimes it burns Men's Clothes and Hair, without hurting their Flesh: The Reason of which is, That the Particles and Exhalations which compose that Lightning, are more gross, fat and oily.

SECT. XXVI.

The Definition of the *GLOBE*, and its Parts.

THE Terrestrial Globe is a Spherical Body, made by Art, upon whose Surface the Parts of the Earth, and their Situation with respect one to another, are represented as they really are, according to the Proportion the Surface of the Terrestrial Globe bears to that of the Earth.

A Map, Chart, or Geographical Table, is a plain Figure, in which the Parts of the Earth are placed, according to their real Situation, viz. their Situation as to North, South, East and West, and their Distance from other Places. The Advantage of Maps is this, That they lay the Globe of the Earth before us at once. In all Maps, the Places on the Right Hand lie East, and those on the Left lie West, the Top of the Map is the North, and the Bottom the South. But the Terrestrial Globe most naturally shews the different Situations of Places, the Motion of the Sun, the Difference of Climates, the Inequality of Days, and many other Parts of pleasant and useful Learning, which cannot be understood without it. The Difference betwixt a Map and a Globe, is much the same with that betwixt a Picture and a Figure in *Basso-Relievo*.

Maps are either General or Particular; the General Map shews us the whole Surface of the Earth; and a Particular Map is that of a particular Kingdom or Country.

The Poles of the Earth are two fix'd Points, Diametrically opposite to one another, directly under the Poles of the World. The Pole of the Earth, under the Constellation of *Ursa Major*, is call'd the North or Artic Pole: It is represented in the Heavens by the Polar Star, in the Extremity of the Tail of *Ursa Minor*, and is distant from the true North Pole about $2\frac{1}{2}$ Degrees. This Star may easily be known; for it makes almost a Right Line with the two last

Wheels

Wheels of *Charles's Waine*, in the Constellation of *Ursa Major*.

The South or Antarctic Pole is known by 4 Stars in the Southern Hemisphere. The Mariners, who lately discover'd them, call them the *Croisade*, because they are in Form like a Cross. These two Poles are 180 Degrees distant from one another. The People who live under the Poles have but one Day of 6 Months length, and one Night of the same: This is easie to be conceiv'd; for when the Sun takes his Course to the North of the Equator during those 6 Months, it is above the Horizon of those who live under the N. Pole; and for the same Reason, the Stars that are near the Pole never set. The Doctrine of the Poles is easily understood by the Terrestrial Globe; for when it is turn'd round, we see the two Poles fix'd. If we conceive a Line to be drawn through the Center of the Earth from one Pole to another, this is call'd the Axis, because the Heavens and the Stars move round that Line, as a Wheel does round its Axle-Tree. This Motion may be easily explain'd by the familiar Experiment of piercing a round Orange through the middle with a long Needle: The Needle represents the Axle-Tree of the World; its two Extremities represent the two Poles; and if you move the Orange round the Needle, it resembles the Motion of the Earth.

The Globe is surrounded with many imaginary Circles, which are divided into Greater and Lesser: The Greater have the same Center with the Globe, and divide it into two equal Parts, as the Equator, the Zodiac, the Horizon, the Meridian, and the two Coluri: The Lesser Circles have a different Center from that of the Globe, and divide it into two unequal Parts; they are the 2 Tropics, and the 2 Polar Circles. They are also divided into 5 Parallel and 3 Oblique Circles: The Parallels are the Equator, the two Tropics, and the two Polar Circles, so called, because all the Parts of these Circles are equally distant from one another, and because they have the same Poles with the World. The 3 Oblique Circles, so called, because their Poles are not the same with those of the World, are the Zodiac, the Meridian, and the Oblique Horizon.

Of these Circles, some are call'd Right

Circles, because they make Right Angles with the Equator; viz. the two Coluri, the Meridian, and the Horizon when Right.

The Equator is the greatest Circle of the 5 Parallels, and is equally distant from both Poles: Seamen call it the *Line*. This Circle divides the World into two equal Parts, of which the one is called the Northern, and the other the Southern Part: The Extent of the Northern is from the Equator to the North Pole, and that of the Southern from the Equator to the South Pole: It is call'd the Equinoctial, and the Equator, because it shews when the Equinoxes are to come, viz. when the Sun comes to that Part of the Ecliptic where the Ecliptic and Equator intersect each other.

There are two Equinoxes, one in Spring and the other in Autumn; the first is about the 20th of *March*, when the Sun enters the first Degree of *Aries*; and the second is when the Sun enters the first Degree of *Libra*, which is about the 23th of *September*. All the People of the World, except those under the Poles, have at the same time of the Year their Day and Night of an equal Length; for at that Time the Sun moves in a middle Course, betwixt the two Poles. Those who live under the Equator, have equal Days and Nights all the Year, because their Horizon divides all the Diurnal Circles of the Sun into two equal Parts. The Equator is the Measure and Rule of the Diurnal Motions of the Stars; for every Star, by its Diurnal Motion, describes a Circle parallel to the Equator. When they ascend 15 Degrees of the Equator above the Horizon, we reckon it an Hour; for by this Account, the Sun runs through all the 360 Degrees in 24 Hours. The Equator has mark'd upon it the Degrees of Longitude from W. to E. Places under the Equator have no Latitude.

The Parallel Circles are of great Use to shew the Latitude of Places, and for this Reason are called the Circles of Latitude.

The Tropics are the two greatest Circles parallel to the Equator, which touch the Ecliptic in the Signs of *Cancer* and *Capricorn*: They are distant from the Equator 23 Deg. and a half. The Sun, on the 21th of *June* and 21th of *December*, describes these Circles. The Tropic of *Cancer* is nearest us. When

the Sun comes to the first Degree of *Cancer*, then we have the longest Day, and shortest Night: It is also call'd the High-Solstice; for then the Sun is in his greatest Height with regard to us. Some call it the Tropic of Summer, or the Northern Tropic. The other is call'd the Tropic of *Capricorn*, because when the Sun enters the beginning of that Sign, he returns, and goes no further Southward from the Equator. Some call it, in regard to us, the Low-Solstice; for the Sun being then at the greatest Distance from our Zenith, we have the shortest Days.

The Tropics are the Boundaries of the Course of the Sun, and have their Name from a Greek Word, which signifies to return; for whenever the Sun touches those Points, he returns towards the Equator, and goes no further either Northward or Southward. The Tropics do likewise show the Place in the Ecliptic where the Solstices are celebrated; and in the Horizon, they show the greatest Eastern and Western Amplitude of the Sun: In the Meridian, they discover the least and greatest Distance of the Sun from the Zenith of those who live in an Oblique Sphere. They also show the Breadth of the Torrid Zone, which is 47 Deg. Betwixt them and the Equator lies the Torrid, and betwixt the Polar Circle and Tropics lie the Temperate Zones. The Northern Parts of *Africa*, some Places of *Asia*, and *North America*, are under the Tropic of *Cancer*. The Southern Places of *Africa*, *Terra Magellanica*, and *South America*, are under the Tropic of *Capricorn*.

The Polar Circles are the two least of the Parallel Circles, and nearest the Poles, being distant from them 23 $\frac{1}{2}$ Degrees, and 66 $\frac{1}{2}$ Degrees from the Equator, and are call'd the Artic and Antartic Polar Circles, from those two Poles: They terminate the Frigid and Temperate Zone. They who live under those Circles, or (which is the same thing,) are 66 $\frac{1}{2}$ Degrees distant from the Equator, have their longest Day 24 Hours, and their longest Night the same. If the North Pole be elevated 66 $\frac{1}{2}$ Degrees, by this Position we may see, That the Artic Polar Circle passes through the Zenith, and the Antartic through the Nadir, the Tropic of *Cancer* will be entirely above the Horizon, and

the Tropic of *Capricorn* quite below it; so that the Sun, when in the Tropic of *Cancer*, will be 24 Hours above the Horizon.

The Meridian is a great Circle, passing through the Poles of the World, and takes its Name from the Latin Word *Meridies*, Mid-day, or Noon: For whenever the Sun touches the Meridian of any Place, then it is Noon to the Inhabitants. We change Meridians when we go from E. to W. or from W. to E. but if we go straight N. or S. we are still under the same Meridian, though we change our Zenith and Nadir. Globes have a great Brazen Meridian fix'd to them, having the same Poles with those of the World: It divides the Globe into two equal Parts, viz. the Eastern and Western: It shews the Latitude of Places, or their Distance from the Equator.

To know the Latitude of any Place, or the Altitude of the Pole in that Place, turn the Globe about, till the Place whose Latitude you want touch the right Side of the Meridian. Observe the Figure upon the Meridian which the Place given touches, and you have its Degrees of Latitude. One half of the Meridian is above the Horizon, and the other half below, which shews the same thing in that Hemisphere.

Geographers have invented a First Meridian, to be the Boundary and Measure of all other Meridians. Authors are not agreed which is the first, so that every one may follow their own Judgment in this Matter; but they generally plac'd the First Meridian in the most Westerly Place of our Continent. *Ptolomy*, and others of the Ancients, plac'd the First Meridian in the *Canary Islands*; but *Ptolomy* was mistaken when he thought all those Islands to be of one Longitude. The French King, *Lewis XIII.* by an Edict of the 25th of *April*, 1634. order'd his Subjects to place the First Meridian in the Island of *Fer*, the most Westerly of all the *Canaries*, by the Advice of the ablest Mathematicians of *Europ.*, who came to *Paris* at the Invitation of Cardinal *Richlieu*. The *Hollanders* make it the Pic of *Teneriff*, which is two Degrees more to the E. Others make the First Meridian to pass thro' the Islands of *Gorée* and *Flores*, part of the *Azores*. The Reason they give, is, That they observe the Needle of the Compass has no Decl-

Declination in that Place. Astronomers ordinarily make the Places of their Observations the First Meridian; as *Ptolemy* made *Alexandria*; *Tycho Brahe* a small Island belonging to *Denmark*, call'd *Uraniburg*; but most People make the Cape of *Teneriff* their First Meridian. Mr. *Moll* makes it at *Ferro* Island, the same that the *French* call *Fer*.

In general Maps, all the different Meridians meet in one Point in the Poles of the World. The nearer those Meridians are to the Poles, the less Distance they have from one another; so that one Degree of Longitude near the Equator contains many more Miles than one Degree of Longitude near the Poles. Tho' Meridians might be drawn through every Point of the Equator, yet for Orders sake the Makers of Maps have contracted them to 36, 18 Degrees distant from each other, of which they give 18 to the Upper, and as many to the lower Hemisphere.

The Meridian touches the Horizon in two Points, *viz.* the N. and S. and the Equator intersects the Horizon at E. and W. which are the 4 Cardinal Points.

The Meridian is of Use to show the Elevation of the Pole above the Horizon, which is an Arch of the Meridian from the Horizon to the Pole; and as many Degrees as the Pole is above the Horizon, so many it is said to have of Altitude.

The Meridian and the Horizon divide the Heavens into 4 Parts, *viz.* the E. and W. of the higher Hemisphere, and the E. and W. of the lower.

This Circle is also of Use to show the greatest Height or Ascension of the Sun and Stars, and the Beginning of the natural Day. Astronomers begin the Day when the Sun is in the Meridian; but most Nations of *Europe*, with *Copernicus*, begin the Day at Midnight: The *Jews* begin theirs at the Setting of the Sun; and the *Greeks* begin theirs at the Rising of it. This Circle divides also the Day into the Morning before the Sun comes to the Meridian, and the Afternoon after it has pass'd the same.

The Meridian shows also the Latitude of Places, which is nothing but an Arch of the Meridian from the Zenith of the Place where we are, to the Equator.

The Meridians are reckon'd from W. to E. and show the Longitude of Places, which

is their Distance Eastward and Westward from one another. The more Eastward any Place is, the sooner the Sun and Stars come to the Meridian. If one Place be 15 Degrees more to the E. than another, it will be Noon there an Hour sooner than at the Place more Westerly: And if one Place be 90 Degrees more E. than another, it will be Noon there 6 Hours sooner. Thus if two Ships sail round the Earth, one of them steering E. and the other W. and if they meet at the 180th Degree of Latitude, the Ship that sail'd E. reckons one Day more than the Ship that sail'd W. The Reason is plain; for the Eastward-bound Ship sails towards the Day, and has the Sun-rising and setting every Day sooner; whereas the other has them every Day later, and by Consequence loses Time.

The Zodiac is so call'd, because the 12 Parts it is divided into have their Names from living Creatures; for the ancient Astronomers thought the Stars which compose the Constellations of *Aries*, *Taurus*, &c. had something of the Resemblance of those Creatures.

The Zodiac is the only Circle in the Sphere which has Breadth assign'd it, and is reckon'd 16 Degrees broad, *viz.* 8 on each Side the Ecliptic: It is in Form more like a Girdle than a Circle. The Ecliptic divides the Equator obliquely; so that these 2 Points of it which are most distant from the Equator are 23 $\frac{1}{2}$ Deg. distant from it. The Equator intersects the Zodiac in the Points of *Aries* and *Libra*; and by this the Zodiac is divided into two Parts, the one N. and the other S. This Circle is plac'd obliquely betwixt the two Poles, and touches the Tropics in two opposite Points. The Breadth of the Zodiac is of use to terminate the Course of the Planets: But upon the Globes and Maps, the Zodiac is represented by a Line in the middle of it, call'd the Ecliptic; because the Eclipses of the Sun and Moon are upon the Plain of it.

The Sun makes his Annual Course upon the Ecliptic without ever leaving it, and every Day runs over almost one Degree of this Circle; but not one intire Degree, otherwise he would run thro' all the 360 Degrees of the Ecliptic in so many Days: Whereas he requires 365 Days and 5 $\frac{1}{4}$ Hours to complete his Course. The Circle

ele the Sun makes every Day upon the Globe is not a perfect one; for he changes every Day the Place of his Rising and Setting in the Horizon, as he does his Place in the Meridian.

The Northern Part of the Zodiac has 6 Signs, and the Southern Part the like. The Names and Figures of these Signs, upon the Horizon of the Globe, are these:

The 6 Northern Signs, and their Characters, are these:

<i>Aries.</i>	♈
<i>Taurus.</i>	♉
<i>Gemini.</i>	♊
<i>Cancer.</i>	♋
<i>Leo.</i>	♌
<i>Virgo.</i>	♍

The 6 Southern Signs, and their Characters:

<i>Libra.</i>	♎
<i>Scorpius.</i>	♏
<i>Sagittarius.</i>	♐
<i>Capricorn.</i>	♑
<i>Aquarius.</i>	♒
<i>Pisces.</i>	♓

Each of these 12 Signs has 30 Degrees.

The Sun runs through one of these Signs every Month: The Constellations which formerly answer'd to these Signs do not so now; for they are 28 Degrees more Eastward than anciently. Thus the Constellation of *Aries*, which formerly answer'd to the first Sign of the Zodiac, is now 28 Degrees more towards the E. in the Place where *Taurus* was formerly.

When the Sun is in the Northern Signs, we have the longest Days, and the shortest when he is in the Southern.

When the Sun is in *Aries*, *Taurus*, and *Gemini*, we of the Northern Hemisphere have Spring; when in *Cancer*, *Leo*, and *Virgo*, we have Summer: When in *Libra*, *Scorpius*, and *Sagittarius*, we have Autumn; when the Sun is in *Capricorn*, *Aquarius*, and *Pisces*, we have Winter: But in the Southern Hemisphere our Winter-Signs are those of their Summer; and *vice versa*, our Autumn is their Spring.

The Obliquity of the Ecliptick is the

Cause of the Variety of Seasons, and of the Inequality of Days and Nights.

The Horizon is so call'd from a Greek Word, signifying to limit or bound, because it bounds our Sight, when we view the Heavens round from any Part of the Earth or Sea. This Circle in the artificial Globe is of Wood, supports the Globe, and has usually 3 Circles on its Surface: The innermost represents the Figures of the Signs of the Zodiac, with their Names and Degrees: That in the middle has the Months of the Year, and the Days of every Month, according to both *Julian* and *Gregorian* Accounts; and the outermost has the Quarters of the World, and the Names of the principal Winds.

The Horizon is either Rational or Sensible: The Rational, so call'd because we conceive it only by our Understanding, is a great Circle, which we apprehend to pass through the Center of the Earth, and by Consequence divides the World into two equal Parts or Hemispheres; the one above, and the other below: The sensible Horizon is a small Circle parallel to the Rational Horizon, that touches the Surface of the Earth in a Point, which is that where our Feet stands. This is the Reason that it does not divide the Heaven into two equal Parts, as the Rational Horizon does: But the Difference of those two Horizons is insensible, being only occasion'd by the Semi-diameter of the Earth, which is only a Point, compar'd to the immense Extent of the Firmament, since we see the half of the Heaven above the Surface of the Earth, the same as if we were at its Center.

The Rational Horizon, with respect to the Equator, may be divided into Right, Oblique, and Parallel.

Both the Sensible and Rational Horizon have the same Poles, which are call'd Zenith and Nadir, the Names given them by the *Arabians*, under whose *Kaliphs* Astronomy and other Sciences flourish'd. The Zenith is the Point of the Heavens which is over our Head; the Nadir is that below our Feet, and is at the same time the Zenith of our Antipodes: The Meridian and Horizon are both changeable Circles; for every different Place hath a different Horizon and Zenith.

The Right Horizon passes through the Poles of the World, and has its Zenith in the Equator, which it divides at Right Angles, and into equal Parts. The Oblique Horizon has its Zenith betwixt one of the two Poles and the Equator; so that one Pole is nearer its Zenith than the other: It cuts the Equator obliquely. The Parallel Horizon has one of the Poles for its Zenith, and the Equator for its Horizontal Circle.

The 3 different Horizons make 3 different Positions of the Sphere, *viz.* the Right, Oblique, and Parallel Position, which are useful to explain the different Appearances of the Sun, as to its Rising and Setting, Length of Days, Heat, &c. The Right Sphere has a Right Horizon, because the Equator, Tropics, and Polar Circles, cut the Horizon at Right Angles. This Position belongs to those who live under the Equator: They have always their Days and Night equal, and the Sun is twice a Year perpendicularly over their Heads, *viz.* the 11th of *March*, and the 12th of *September*. All the Stars rise and set to them, and are the same Number of Hours above as below the Horizon.

The Oblique Sphere has an Oblique Horizon; and all the Circles, as the Equator, Tropics, and the Polar Circle, cut this Horizon at Oblique Angles. It agrees to those who live betwixt the Equator and the Poles: They have equal Days and Nights only during the Equinoxes. In the Summer, their Days are shorter than their Nights, because the Horizon doth not divide the Tropics into equal Parts. In this Position, some Parts of the Heavens are never seen, and some Parts are always visible.

The Parallel Sphere has the Horizon parallel to the Equator, and all the Circles and Revolutions are parallel to the Horizon. This Position agrees to those who live under the Poles, (if there be any such) and they have only one Day and one Night in the Year of 6 Months each; because the Sun never rises with them, but at one of the Equinoxes, and sets not till the other. The Axis of the World in this Sphere is perpendicular, one of the Poles the Zenith, and the other the Nadir of the Place. When the Sun enters *Aries*, he rises to those un-

der the North Pole, and sets when he enters *Libra*. The Moon is 15 Days above their Horizon, and so many below it; *Saturn* 15 Years, and *Jupiter* 6.

From what has been said, it appears that the Horizon has many Uses; 1. It divides the World into two Hemispheres, *viz.* those of the Day and Night. 2. It shews us the Elevation of the Pole; for so many Degrees as the Pole is above the Horizon, so many Degrees it is said to be elevated. 3. It shews us the Place and Time of the Rising and Setting of the Sun, Moon, and Stars; for when they come to the East Part of the Horizon, they are said to rise; and when they go below the Western Part, they are said to set. It determines the ending of the Morning *Crepusculum*, or Dawning of the Day, which is before the Rising of the Sun; and of the Evening *Crepusculum*, or Twilight, when the Sun is about 18 Degrees below the Horizon. This Circle is the Seat of the 4 Cardinal Points, North, South, East, and West, which are 90 Degrees distant from each other. The South is the Point the Sun is in when it is Noon: The true East is that Point of the Horizon where the Sun rises in the time of the Equinoxes: The true West is the Point where the Sun sets at the same time. These Points make 4 Collateral Points, *viz.* the Place where the Sun rises in the Summer-Solstice, which is N. E. and where it rises in the Winter-Solstice, which is S. E. The Place in the Horizon where the Sun sets in Summer, which is N. W. and the Place where it sets in Winter, which is S. W. The Sun's rising in the N. E. and setting in the N. W. shews us that Part of the Tropic of *Cancer* that is above our Horizon; and his rising in the S. E. and setting in the S. W. shews his Motion in the Tropic of *Capricorn*.

The ZONES.

The 4 small Circles, *viz.* the two Tropics, and the Polar Circles, divide the Globe of the Earth into 5 Parts, call'd Zones by the Ancients, from a Greek Word which signifies a Girdle. The Space betwixt the Tropics is call'd the Torrid Zone, and is divided by the Equator into two equal Parts. The Ancients, because little of the World was discover'd in their Time, thought the

Zone

Zone was not habitable, because of the violent Heat of the Sun; but 'tis now found to be otherwise. 'Tis true, the Heat of the Sun there is violent; but the Length of their Nights, frequent Rains, Winds and Dews, make it supportable. The Sun raises a great Quantity of Vapours, which occasion those frequent Rains, Dews, and Winds; so that after the setting, and before the rising of the Sun, they have constantly fresh Breezes, which make their Nights cool. The Dews do likewise contribute towards it; which, with the Rains, refresh the Inhabitants, and make the Soil produce abundance of Provisions. They have two Summers, *viz.* when the Sun enters the Equinoctial Signs. Their Winters are, when the Sun is in the Tropics, because then he is at the greatest Distance from their Zenith. The Air under the Tropics is more violently hot than that in the Torrid Zone, because the Sun is longer above their Horizon. They who have their Zenith betwixt the Equator and the Tropics, are in an Oblique Sphere: Therefore all the Places of the Heavens do not rise and set to them; and having one of the Poles above their Horizon, their Days and Nights are unequal, except in the Time of the Equinoxes. They who have their Zenith in the Tropics, have but one Summer, because the Sun is but once vertical to them, *viz.* when he is in the Tropic they live under, and when the Sun is in the opposite Tropic, it is 47 Degr. from their Zenith; so their shortest Day is $10\frac{1}{2}$ Hours, and their longest Day $13\frac{1}{2}$ Hours: But to those who live betwixt the Tropics, the Sun is twice a Year in their Zenith.

The two Zones betwixt the Tropics and Polar Circles are call'd the Temperate Zones, because they are not liable to such excessive Heat and Cold as the other Zones: One of these is betwixt the Tropic of *Cancer*, and the Artic Polar Circle; and the other Temperate Zone is betwixt the Tropic of *Capricorn*, and the Antartic Polar Circle. They have their Zenith betwixt the Tropics and the Polar Circles: Their Sphere is extremely oblique, and so are all the Revolutions of the Heavens. A great Part of the Heaven is never seen in their Hemisphere: They have their Days and Nights more unequal than in the Torrid Zone; the

Sun is never in their Zenith; and they have four Seasons in the Year. The Air is more temperate than in the Torrid Zone, because the Beams of the Sun fall more obliquely upon them; whereas in the Torrid Zone they are more perpendicular.

The People who live under the Polar Circle, or, which is the same, are 66 Degr. and a half distant from the Equator, their Pole is of the same Altitude above the Horizon: They have a more oblique Sphere than any of the other preceding Zones: They have one Tropic entirely above the Horizon, and the other Tropic altogether below it. Therefore they have one Day in the Year, *viz.* when the Sun is in the Tropic next to them, of 24 Hours; and one Night of the same, when the Sun is in the opposite Tropic. They have 4 Seasons in one Year. Having a very oblique Sphere, the opposite Places of the Heavens are never seen by them: The greatest Ascension of the Sun at Noon, when it is in the Tropics, is only 47 Degrees; and so is 43 Degrees from their Zenith. From the 4th of *April* to the 9th of *September*, they have Twilight all the Night over, because the Sun, during that Time, is never 18 Degrees perpendicularly below their Horizon.

They who have their Zenith betwixt the Polar Circles and the Poles, are in the Frigid Zone: Their Sphere is more oblique than any of the former; so that their Days and Nights are more unequal. In the Summer they have many Days without any Night at all; and likewise many Nights without any Day. Since they want little of having a Parallel Sphere, they never see the opposite Part of the Heavens. Their Air is warmer in Summer than under the Polar Circles, because the Sun is longer above their Horizon.

They who have for their Zenith the Poles of the World, are in the middle of the Frigid Zones: Their Sphere is parallel. And hence it is, that all the Revolutions of the Heavens are parallel to the Horizon. They have 6 Months of Day, and as much Night: The Sun, when in the Tropic nearest them, is in its greatest Height only $23\frac{1}{2}$ above the Horizon, which is the same Height the Sun makes with us an Hour and an half after his rising. They constantly see the same

same Half of the Heavens; and the same Fix'd Stars, which never set with them.

The CLIMATES.

The Zones being only of use to distinguish the Places of the World with regard to their different Degrees of Heat and Cold, ancient Geographers invented Climates, to determine the Difference of the Length of Days. The Climates are reckon'd from the Equator to the Poles. Under the Equator, their Day is always 12 Hours in Length: Under the Polar Circle, the longest Day is 24 Hours. Geographers have made 24 Climates betwixt the Equator and each of the Polar Circles, because there are 24 half Hours of Difference betwixt the Length of the Day under the Equator, and the longest Day under the Polar Circles: So that any Place having its longest Day half an Hour longer or shorter than that of another Place, is of a different Climate. The first Climate begins at the Equator: The second begins where the longest Day is 12 hours and an half; and the third where the longest Day is 13 Hours: And so on.

The first Climate begins at the Equator, and ends at 8 Degrees 34 Minutes of Northern Latitude: The longest Day is 12 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. It comprehends the *Molucca*, *Maldive*, and *Sumatra* Isles, in the *East-Indies*.

The 2d Climate begins at 8 Deg. 34 Min. of Northern Latitude, and reaches to 16 Deg. 43 Min. Their longest Day is 13 Hours. It comprehends *Abissinia*, *Aden*, *Siam*, *Coromandel*, and the *Isle of Ceilan*.

The 3d Climate reaches from 16 Deg. 43 Min. to 24 Deg. 11 Min. Their longest Day is 13 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. It contains *Mecca*, *Arabia Felix*, *Bengal*, *Mexico*, and *Tunquin*.

The 4th Climate is betwixt 24 Deg. 11 Min. and 30 Deg. 47 Min. Their longest Day is 14 Hours. It passes over *Ormus* in *Persia*, *Agra* belonging to the Great Mogul, *Fechu* in *China*, *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and the *Canary* Islands.

The 5th Climate is extended from 30 Deg. 47 Min. to 36 Deg. 30 Min. Their longest Day is 14 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. It comprehends *Babylon*, *Tunis* in *Barbary*, *Nicossia* in the *Isle of Cyprus*, *Nankin* in *China*, *Rhodes*, *Ispahan* in *Persia*, and *Pekin*.

The 6th Climate begins at 36 Deg. 30 Min. and ends at 41 Deg. 22 Min. The longest Day is 15 Hours. To this Climate belong *Lisbon* in *Portugal*, *Palermo* in *Sicily*, *Madrid* in *Spain*, and *Mechet* in *Persia*.

The 7th Climate is from 41 Deg. 22 Min. to 45 Deg. 29 Min. Their longest Day is 15 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. It comprehends *Marseilles*, *Rome*, *Constantinople*, and *Tanchut*.

The 8th Climate is from 45 Deg. 29 Min. to 49 Deg. 1 Min. The longest Day is 16 Hours. *Paris*, *Vienna*, the *Crim Tartars*, and the *Eastern Tartars*, are in this Climate.

The 9th Climate is from 49 Deg. 1 Min. to 51 Deg. 58 Min. Their longest Day is 16 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. *London*, *Prague* in *Bohemia*, *Cracow* in *Poland*, *Rouen*, *Amiens*, *Frankfort*, belong to this Climate.

The 10th Climate is from 51 Deg. 58 Min. to 54 Deg. 29 Min. Their longest Day is 17 Hours. This Climate contains *York*, *Dublin*, *Amsterdam*, *Warsaw*, and *New-France*.

The 11th Climate is from 54 Deg. 29 Min. to 56 Deg. 37 Min. Their longest Day is 17 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. It contains *Edinburgh*, *Vilna* in *Lithuania*, *Smolensko* on the *Boristhenes* in the West of *Muscovy*, and the *Tartars* of *Mordwa*.

The 12th Climate begins at 56 Deg. 37 Min. and reaches to 58 Deg. 26 Min. Their longest Day is 18 Hours. *Aberdeen*, *Copenhagen*, and *Riga*, are in this Climate.

The 13th Climate is from 58 Deg. 26 Min. to 59 Deg. 59 Min. Their longest Day is 18 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. *Stockholm*, and *Revel* in *Livonia*, are in this Climate.

The 14th Climate is from 59 Deg. 59 Min. to 61 Deg. 18 Min. The longest Day is 19 Hours. This Climate passes thro' the *Orkney* Islands of *Scotland*, *Aronis* in *Norway*, and *Muscovy*.

The 15th Climate is from 61 Deg. 18 Min. to 62 Deg. 25 Min. Their longest Day is 19 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. *Bergen* in *Norway*, *Norremburg* in *Finland*, and *Oustoug* in *Muscovy*, are in this Climate.

The 16th Climate begins at 62 Deg. 25 Min. and ends at 63 Deg. 23 Min. Their longest Day is 20 Hours. *Perma Welick*, a Town of *Muscovy*, belongs to this Climate.

The 17th Climate is from 63 Deg. 23 Min. to 64 Deg. 16 Min. The longest Day is 20 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. This Climate passes thro' the Country of *Finland*, belonging to the *Swedes*.

The

The 18th Climate is from 64 Deg. 16 Min. to 64 Deg. 55 Min. Their longest Day is 21 hours. *Drontheim* in *Norway* belongs to this Climate.

The 19th Climate is from 64 Deg. 55 Min. to 65 Deg. 25 Min. Their longest Day is 21 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. *Tobel* in *Siberia* belongs to it.

The 20th Climate is from 65 Deg. 25 Min. to 65 Deg. 47 Min. The longest Day is 22 Hours. The North of *Finland* belongs to it.

The 21st Climate is from 65 Deg. 47 Min. to 66 Deg. 6 Min. The longest Day is 22 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. *Torna* in *Botnia*, a considerable Harbour belonging to the *Swedes*, is in this Climate.

The 22d Climate is from 66 Deg. 6 Min. to 66 Deg. 20 Min. The longest Day is 23 Hours. *Caiembourg* in *Muscovy* belongs to this Climate.

The 23d Climate is from 66 Deg. 20 Min. to 66 Deg. 28 Min. The longest Day is 23 $\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. *Skallott* in *Iceland* is in this Climate.

The 24th Climate is from 66 Deg. 28 Min. to 66 Deg. 31 Min. Their longest Day is 24 Hours. This Climate passes thro' *Hola*, a small Town of *Iceland*.

To know what Climate any Place is in, see how many Hours the longest Day of that Place is more than 12, the Number of half Hours contain'd in the Difference, is the Number of Climates that Place is distant from the Equator.

There are also 24 Climates in the Southern Hemisphere: The Ancients did not reckon so many Climates, because they thought the Places beyond their own Number of Climates were quite desolate; little of the World being then known. They had only 7 Climates; their first Climate pass'd thro' *Meroë*, an Island and City in the Nile in *Africa*; the 2d Climate went by *Siene*, a City of *Egypt*; the 3d Climate by *Alexandria*, a City of *Egypt*; the 4th Climate by the Island *Rhodes*; the 5th Climate by *Rome*; the 6th Climate by the *Euxine* Sea; and the 7th by the Mouth of the *Borysthenes*. *Strabo* adds two more: He tells us, the 8th Climate went thro' the *Palmus-Mestis*; but does not tell us where the 9th ended.

Near the Equator, the Climates are very much larger than towards the Polar Circles;

the first Climate is 8 Deg. 34 Min. broad; the 24th Climate is but 3 Min. in breadth.

To explain this Inequality, it must be observ'd, That in a Right Sphere, which is under the Equator, the Half of the Tropic of *Cancer*, which is below the Horizon, is divided into 48 equal Parts; each of these Parts consist of 3 Deg. and 45 Min. which make one Quarter of an Hour: The Tropic of *Cancer* has one of these Parts, which is nearest the Horizon on the East Side, and another nearest the Horizon on the West Side. These two Parts together make up one half Hour, which is the Distance of one Climate from another. This being laid down, it is easie to conceive, That the Inequality of the Extent of the Climates proceeds from the more or less oblique Interfection of the Tropic by the Horizon, according to the Different Elevation of the Pole. The Ancients made no Account of the Climates on the S. Side of the Equator, because they had no Knowledge of those Places. There are 48 Climates in all; viz. 24 betwixt the Polar Circle and the Equator in the Northern Hemisphere, and as many betwixt the Equator and the Polar Circle in the Southern Hemisphere, which are called Climates of Hours.

The 12 Climates betwixt the Polar Circles and the Poles are call'd Climates of Months; because the longest Day in the second Climate is one full Month longer than the longest Day of the first Climate.

The first Climate begins at 66 Deg. 31 Min. Northern Latitude, and ends at 69 Deg. 48 Min. The longest Day is 1 Month, or 31 Days, without Night. This passes thro' *Lapland*, belonging to *Muscovy*.

The 2d Climate begins at 69 Deg. 48 Min. and ends at 73 Deg. 37 Min. They have Day without Night for 2 Months, or 62 Days. This Climate passes thro' *Greenland*, a Country so cold, that the Sea is almost constantly frozen there.

The 3d Climate begins at 73 Deg. 37 Min. and ends at 78 Deg. 30 Min. They have a Day of 3 Months, or 93 Days. This Climate belongs to the South Part of *Newa Zembla*.

The 4th Climate begins at 78 Deg. 30 Min. and ends at 84 Deg. 5 Min. They have a Day of 4 Months continuance, without

without any Night. This Climate passes through the North Part of *Nova Zembla*.

The 5th Climate begins at 84 Deg. 5 Min. and ends at 90. They have a Day of 5 Months, or 155 Days.

The 6th Climate is at 90 Deg. The Day there is of 6 whole Months, i. e. 186 Days, or 4464 Hours.

SECT. XXVII.

Of the Longitude and Latitude of Places.

THE Earth being a Globe, in a strict Sense, it can neither have Longitude nor Latitude; yet Geographers, for very good Reasons, have introduc'd the Doctrine of Longitude and Latitude: The Usefulness of knowing the Longitude and Latitude of a Place, is great; for when we know that, we know the Situation of it by Sea or Land.

The ancient Geographers knew more of the World from West to East, than they did from South to North; therefore they had more Degrees of Longitude than Latitude. In *Ptolemy's* Time, there were only 80 Degrees of Latitude, taking in all then known on both Sides the Equator; whereas they had 180 Degrees of Longitude.

The Latitude of a Place is its Distance from the Equator; or, properly speaking, an Arch of the Meridian from the Zenith of a Place to the Equator; or, which is the same, it is the Elevation of the Pole above the Horizon of any Place. They who are under the Equator, have no Latitude; for none of the Poles are elevated above their Horizon: But when we go from the Equator towards any of the Poles, one of the Poles ascends above the Horizon, and the other descends. The Latitudes of Places are reckon'd from the Equator to the Poles; tho' in every Point of the Meridian, and in every Point of the Equator, different Degrees of Latitudes and Longitudes may be reckon'd: Yet Geographers, to avoid Confusion, have reckon'd 90 Degrees from the Equator to the North-Pole; and from the North-Pole to the Equator, in the same Hemisphere, 90 Degrees, which make 180.

And the same Way they reckon 180 Degrees for the Southern Hemisphere, which make up 360, the Number of Degrees every Circle contains. But the Degrees of Longitude are reckon'd from the first Meridian, from West to East, quite round the Globe; and the Reckoning ends at the first Meridian where it began, at 360 Degrees. The Degrees of Longitude are reckon'd upon the Equator; tho' they might also be reckon'd on the parallel Circles of Latitude.

The Longitude of a Place is an Arch of the Equator betwixt one Place and another, or the Distance of one Place from another, from W. to E. The Places more Eastward have Noon sooner than the Places more to the West, because they have different Longitudes. A Place 15 Degrees more to the East than another, will have Noon one Hour sooner than another Place. From what has been said before, this Question, which to many appears very unaccountable, may easily be answer'd; viz. If Twins born at the same Hour, and both dying at the same Minute, one of these Children can, at his Death, be two Days older than the other: For if the one be carried round the World in a Ship from W. to E. and the other from E. to W. the Child which went the Eastern Voyage will be two Days older than the other, for the Reasons before given.

One Degree of Longitude under the Equator is reckon'd about 60 *Italian Miles*; but the further you go from the Equator, either Northward or Southward, a Degree of Longitude contains fewer Miles: For Instance, under the Equator, one Degree of Longitude contains 25 *French Leagues*; but at *Paris*, one Degree of Longitude contains only 16 *French Leagues*. Under the Poles, they have no Longitude, because all the Meridians or Circles of Longitude meet there in a Point. We refer to the Table, Page 17. to shew the Number of Miles a Degree of Longitude contains, with regard to the different Latitude of Places.

The Knowledge of the Longitude of Places is very necessary, and of great Use in Navigation and Geography: The Longitude is not so certainly known as the Latitude. For this Reason, the greatest Part of the People of *Europe* concern'd in Trade, as the *English, French and Dutch*, have offer'd a Reward of 50000 Florins to those who could

find out the Way to adjust the Longitude of Places by Sea with equal Exactness to what we have of the Latitude of Places. Many who have attempted this, gave out they had succeeded, and laid down a great many Rules, which, upon Trial, did not answer Expectation. This may be owing in part to the great Difficulty in taking Observations at Sea; for Instruments of a necessary Length cannot be us'd there with that Steadiness requisite to compass the Design. The Longitude of Places at Land may be found out to a sufficient Degree of Exactness, by observing the Eclipse of the Moon, and the Eclipse of the first Satellites of *Jupiter*. The French Missionaries to *Siam*, &c. from their Observations of the Eclipses of the Satellites of *Jupiter*, are positive that *China*, *Siam*, and *Japan*, and those Eastern Countries, are plac'd in all our Globes and Maps many Degrees more Eastward than they ought to be.

To find out the Longitude of any Place, is not to find, as some imagine, the East and West of it, for that may be known by the Compass; for if your Face be towards the North, the East will be on your Right Hand, and the W. on your Left: But it is to know the Distance any Place of the Land or Sea is from another from West to East, or the Distance of any Place from the first Meridian.

The most sure Way to know the Longitude of any Place, is from the Appearances of the Stars: Ephemerides are a great Help in this Matter; for when we know the Hour and Minute of the Eclipse in a certain Place, and by Observations find that the Eclipses of the Moon, Satellites of *Jupiter*, &c. are sooner or later than in the Place given, we infer, that the one Place is more Eastward or Westward than the other.

Observations from the Motions of *Saturn* are altogether unserviceable on this Head, because he does not move above 5 Seconds in an Hour; for which Cause we can make no comparative Judgment betwixt the Time of his Appearance in one Place and another.

Observations from the Motion of the Sun are not to be depended upon; because the Sun, by its diurnal Motion, moves only one Degree in the Ecliptic in 24 Hours. This Motion is too slow to answer the Observations above-mention'd, which ought to be

so accurate, that in a Minute we may observe a sensible Motion in that Star from which we make our Observations; otherwise we may mistake the $\frac{1}{4}$ of a Degree of Longitude. So Observations must be taken, 1. From the Beginning, Middle, and End, of the Eclipse. 2. From the Moon's Place in the Zodiac. 3. From the Moon's Distance from a Fix'd Star. 4. From the Moon's Entrance into the Ecliptic. 5. From the Eclipses of the Satellites of *Jupiter*, which are observ'd by the Help of a Telescope.

To know the Longitude of any Place by the Eclipses of the Satellites of *Jupiter*, Two Things must be observ'd; 1. The Manner of observing the said Eclipse. 2. The precise and exact Time of the Observation of those Eclipses. The Satellites of *Jupiter* are small Planets, which are turn'd round *Jupiter*, according to these Periods:

	Days.	Hours.	Min.
The first Satelles of <i>Jupiter</i> makes its Revolution in	1	18	29
The 2d, in	3	13	19
The 3d, in	7	4	0
The 4th, in	16	18	5

Jupiter being an opac gross Body, like the Earth or the Moon, must necessarily occasion an Eclipse of his Satellites sometimes, as the Earth occasions an Eclipse of the Moon.

When the Satellites of *Jupiter* are in his Shadow, they suffer an Eclipse of a longer or shorter Continuance, according to the slower or swifter Motion of each of the Satellites. Their Eclipse commences when they enter the Shadow of *Jupiter*, and ends when they go out of it. The Entry of these Satellites into the Shadow is call'd Immersion, and their going out of it Emerision. The fittest Time for observing the Immersion is, when *Jupiter* rises after the Sun; and their Emerision is best observ'd, when *Jupiter* sets before the Sun.

That these Observations may be more easie, M. *Cassini's* Tables are necessary, which tho' calculated for the Meridian of *Paris*, yet may answer any other Meridian, by knowing the Difference betwixt the Meridian of *Paris*, and that of the other Place given.

But

But to prevent being surpriz'd and unpar'd for these Observations, it is most advisable to be ready an Hour before the Time given by the Tables. As the first of the Satellites is the swiftest of 'em all, it is by much the more fit for Observation of the Longitude of Places; for being 16 times swifter than the Moon, its Motion is so many times the more sensible. Telescopes from 18 to 21 Foot in Length are us'd for this purpose. By reason of the great Rapidity of the Motion of the first of the Satellites of *Jupiter*, it is easie to observe the first Moment of its Immersion or Emerfion. Pendulum Clocks exactly rectified, having the Minutes and Seconds, must be us'd in this Matter. Such Clocks are of great use in all Astronomical Observations: The Length of the Pendulum ought to be $36\frac{1}{2}$ Inches. The Way of regulating Pendulum Clocks, is known to those who are acquainted with Astronomical Observations.

All these Precautions being taken, it is very easie to know the Longitude of a Place; Let there be two Observers in two different Places, they must both observe the Hour and Minute of the Immersion and Emerfion of the first of the Satellites of *Jupiter*. The Difference of the Time of the two Observations shews the different Longitude of Places; for if the Immersions and Emerfions are at the very same Minute, then these two Places are of the same Longitude, or under the same Meridian: But if two Persons, the one at *Paris*, the other at *Lisbon*, with Pendulum Clocks well rectified, observe at the same time the Immersion or Emerfion of the first Satelles of *Jupiter*; if the Immersion or Emerfion be at *Paris* at 10 at Night, and at *Lisbon* at 9, we may conclude, That *Paris* is more Eastward than *Lisbon* by one Hour, which answers to 15 Degrees: So that if the Longitude of *Paris* be 23, the Longitude of *Lisbon* must be 8 Degrees.

To find the Longitude of Places by the Eclipses of the Moon, we must observe, by the Assistance of a Telescope, the Beginning, the Continuance and End, of the Eclipse, and the Elevation of the Pole. The Hour and Minute being known by the Altitude of any Fix'd Star, or if a Star be in the Meridian of the Place, we may easily know the Hour and Minute: But now Pen-

dulum Clocks rectified are us'd in such Matters. Then compare the Time of the Beginning of the Eclipse in one Place, with that of another, for whose Meridian Ephemerides are calculated; for if the Eclipse begin in one Place $\frac{1}{4}$ of an Hour sooner than in the other, that Place must be 3 Deg. 45 Min. more Eastward than the other; But if the Eclipse of the Moon begin one Hour sooner in one Place, that where the Eclipse is sooner by an Hour is 15 Deg. more Eastward than the other. This has been the ordinary Way to find the Longitude of Places; which tho' useful by Land, yet it will not answer the Seamens Purpose, because the Eclipses of the Moon seldom happen. Astronomers make use of another Way to find out the Longitude of Places: When the Moon is in the Meridian of a Place, whose Longitude we want, then find what Hour this happens at, by the Altitude of any Fix'd Star then in the Meridian of the Place; the Hour being found, we may know what Part of the Ecliptic is in the Meridian of the Place we are in: So by knowing the Place of the Zodiac the Moon is in at that Time by Ephemerides, we know at what Time the Moon comes to that Place of the Zodiac for which the Ephemerides were calculated. By this means we have two different Times of the Moon's coming to a Place in the Zodiac; and by the former Principles, the Longitude of the Place where we are may be found out. Some are of Opinion, That if Watches and Clocks were made with that Equality and Justness of Motion as is requisite, we might easily know the Longitude of Places. When Ships are to go off from any Port, let the Watch or Clock be exactly 12 when the Sun is in the Meridian of the Place the Ship parts from; keep the Clock or Watch a going: When you want the Longitude of any Place, observe exactly when the Sun is in the Meridian of that Place; compare the Difference of Hours and Minutes betwixt the Times of the Sun's being in the Meridian of the Place you left, and in the Meridian of the Place you are then in: By the former Principles, you will easily know the Difference of Longitude.

The Distance of Places in Particular Maps, is easily known by a Scale of Miles which such Maps always have; Take the Distance

of two Places by your Compass, then bring the Distance taken to the Scale of Miles or Leagues; if the Distance be greater than the Scale, then by another Pair of Compasses you may take the Excess, and bring it to the Scale, and adding it to the Number of Miles or Leagues the Scale contains, you have the Distance of one Place from another. But upon Planispheres, if the Distance of two Places be only in Latitude, then allowing 60 *Italian* Miles for one Degree, the Number of Miles the two Places are distant may be known. If two Places differ in Longitude, knowing their Latitude, and observing by the Table of the Diminution of Longitude, how many Miles one Degree of Longitude contains in such a Latitude; by this means you have the Distance of these two Places. But when Places differ both in Longitude and Latitude, the ordinary Method is to take their Distance by your Compasses: Bring this Distance to the Side or Circumference; if the Map be a Planisphere, then reckon how many Degrees that Distance makes, and for every Degree allow 60 *Italian* or *English* Miles.

S E C T. XXVIII.

Of the *Afcii*, *Heteroscii*, *Periscii*, *Amphiscii*, *Periæci*, *Antiaeci*, and *Antipodes*.

THE Inhabitants of the Earth are thus distinguish'd, with regard to the Points their Shadows go to, when the Sun is in the Meridian: This Difference proceeds from the Obliquity of the Ecliptic, and from the Spherical Figure of the Earth.

The *Afcii* are those who live betwixt the Equator and the Tropics, who some Days in the Year, when the Sun is in the Meridian, have no Shadow at all. Those under the Equator, the two Days of the Equinoxes, have no Shadow at Noon, the Beams of the Sun falling then perpendicular. Those under the Tropic of *Cancer*, when the Sun is in the first Degree of that Sign, have no Shadow at Noon: The Tropic of *Capricorn* the like. At other Times, under the Tropic of *Cancer*, their Shadow at Noon points to the North; but under that of

Capricorn towards the South; and then they are call'd *Heteroscii*. The same in both the Temperate Zones.

The *Periscii* are those whose Shadow, in 24 Hours, is carried round all the Points of the Compass. The Inhabitants of the Frigid Zones, the Sun being some time of the Year all the 24 Hours above their Horizon, are so call'd.

The *Amphiscii* have their Shadow at Noon, sometime towards the North, and sometime towards the South. The Inhabitants of the Torrid Zone are therefore call'd by this Name.

The People of the Earth, with respect to their Situation, are *Periæci*, *Antiaeci*, and *Antipodes*.

The *Periæci* are those who dwell in the same parallel Circle of Latitude, but in opposite Points of the same, *viz.* in opposite Meridians. Hence it is, That when the one, *viz.* those who are 180 Degrees of Longitude further East have Noon, the other have Midnight, their Days are of equal Length, their Seasons are the same, because the same Pole is equally elevated in both Places: But in Places that belong to the Frigid Zone, this Difference of Day and Night is not observed, because the Sun is 24 Hours or more above their Horizon.

The *Antiaeci* are those who live under the same Meridian, but in opposite Parallel Circles of Latitude, and they are equally distant from the Equator; so if one live in a Northern Latitude, the other live in a Southern, and have the same Elevation of different Poles, they have Noon and Midnight at the same time; but 'tis not so as to the Rising and Setting of the Sun. The Seasons of the Year are also opposite; for when it is Winter in the one Place, it is Summer in the other; and when the one has the longest Days, the other has the shortest.

The *Antipodes* are the People who are Diametrically opposite to one another, at the Distance of one half of the Circumference of the Earth: They have contrary Parallels and Meridians. If the one Place have so much Southern Latitude, their *Antipodes* have the same Northern Latitude; their Meridians are 180 Degrees distant. Hence it is, That when the one have Night, the other have Day; when the one have Summer, the other have Winter. Our *Antipodes*
can

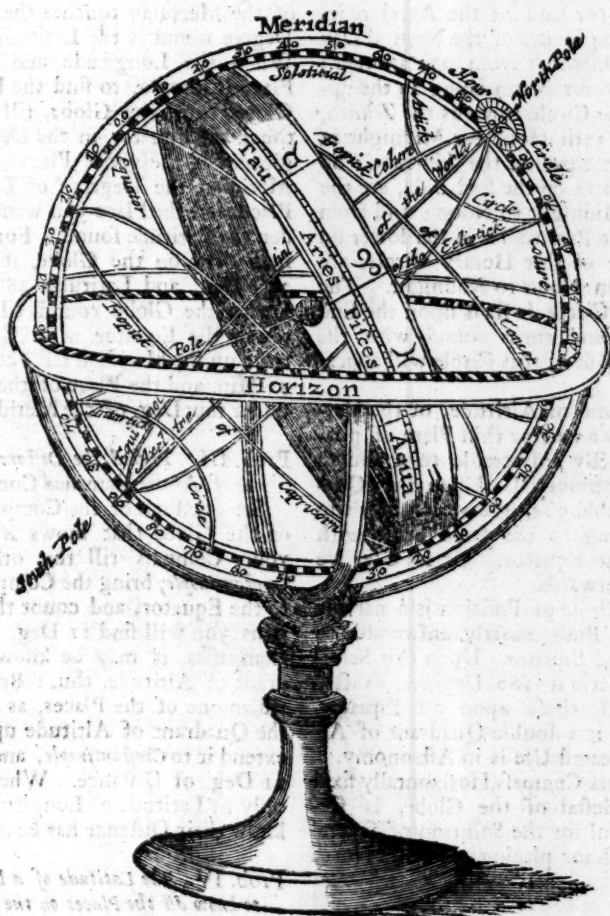
can see no more of our Stars than we can of theirs; and the Stars that never set to us, never rise to them.

The Ancients could not believe the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*; so that whoever maintain'd that Opinion in the first Times of Christianity, were accounted Hereticks. *Virgilius*, Bishop of *Salzburg*, in 745. upon the Complaint of *Boniface*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, to the Duke of *Bohemia*, and afterwards to Pope *Zachary*, was by him con-

demn'd of Heresie on that Account; as *Aventinus* says. *Annal. Boicis*, Lib. 3.

The Venerable *Bede* reckon'd the Opinion of the *Antipodes* a meer Fable. *Lactantius* and *Augustine* were of the same Mind; and 'tis no Wonder, since they thought the Earth was shap'd like a Table.

Those who live under the Equinoctial, have no People who are their *Antiaci*. *Perraci* and *Antipodes* under the Equator are the same.



S E C T. XXIX.

Of the Use of the Terrestrial
G L O B E.

HAVING explain'd the Circles of the Sphere, we come now more particularly to the Use of the Terrestrial Globe: Some few Things belonging to it, which could not fall in so naturally before, are first to be explain'd.

The Horary Circle is a small Circle of Brass, and so affix'd to the Brazen Meridian, that the Pole (or End of the Axis) is its Center. The 24 Hours of the Natural Day are at equal Distances from one another; the 12th Hour for Noon being in the upper Part of the Circle towards the Zenith, and the other 12th Hour for Midnight in the lower Part towards the Horizon: So that from 12 to 12 on the East-Side, are the Hours from Midnight to Noon; and from 12 in the upper Part to 12 in the lower on the West Side of that Horary Circle, are the Hours from Noon to Midnight. The Index to this Circle is fix'd upon the End of the Axis, and turns round with the Globe. The Use of this Circle will appear afterwards.

The Quadrant of Altitude, or the Vertical Circle, is a narrow thin Plate of pliable Brass, exactly answerable to a fourth Part of the Equinoctial. Upon this Quadrant are inscrib'd 90 Degrees, each of them being according to the same Scale with those upon the Equator. Of its Use, we shall speak afterwards.

The Semi-Circle of Position is a narrow solid Plate of Brass, exactly answerable to one half of the Equator. Upon this Semi-Circle are inscrib'd 180 Degrees, exactly the same with those upon the Equator. We may term it a double Quadrant of Altitude: Its greatest Use is in Astronomy.

The Mariners Compass, Horizontally fix'd upon the Pedestal of the Globe, is frequently needful for the Solution of several Problems, and for placing the Poles North and South.

Prob. I. To rectifie the Globe.

The Globe being upon a true Plain, elevate the Pole above the Horizon, according

to the Latitude of the Place given; fix the Quadrant of Altitude in the Zenith, the Mariners Compass upon the Pedestal, the Brazen Meridian standing due North and South.

Prob. II. To find the Longitude and Latitude of a Place.

Turn about the Globe, till the Place whose Longitude and Latitude you want touch the East-Side of the Brazen Meridian: Observe what Degree of the Equator touches the said Meridian, and that Degree is the Longitude of the Place. See what Degree of the Meridian touches the Place, and the Degree found is the Latitude of the Place. When the Longitude and Latitude of a Place is known, to find the Place upon the Globe, turn the Globe, till the Meridian touch the Equator in the Degrees of Longitude of the given Place; find upon the Meridian the Degrees of Latitude of the Place, and the Place you want is exactly under the Latitude found. For Instance; To find *Paris* on the Globe, its Longitude is $23\frac{1}{2}$ Deg. and Latitude 48 Deg. 51 Min. I turn the Globe round till the Meridian touch the Equator in $23\frac{1}{2}$ Deg. then I trace up the Meridian till I come to 48 Deg. 51 Min. and the Place of the Globe exactly under that Deg. of the Meridian is *Paris*.

Prob. III. To find the Distance of two Places, as of Amsterdam and Constantinople.

Set one Foot of the Compass in the Point of the Globe that shows *Amsterdam*, open your Compass till the other Foot touch *Constantinople*, bring the Compass thus open'd to the Equator, and count the Deg. it contains, you will find 21 Deg. Or, instead of Compasses, it may be known by the Quadrant of Altitude, thus: Bring to the Meridian one of the Places, as *Amsterdam*, put the Quadrant of Altitude upon that Place, extend it to *Constantinople*, and you will find 21 Deg. of Distance. When Places differ only in Latitude or Longitude, the Way to know their Distance has been shown before.

Prob. IV. The Latitude of a Place being given, to know all the Places on the Earth that have the same Latitude.

Find the Latitude in the Brazen Meridian, then turn the Globe round, and all Places

Places touching that Deg. of Latitude in the Meridian, are of the same Latitude.

Prob. V. *The Longitude of a Place being known, to find all Places upon the Globe that have the same Longitude.*

Bring the Longitude of the Place upon the Equator to the Brazen Meridian; then all Places that touch the Meridian quite round the Earth are of the same Longitude.

Prob. VI. *To find the Sun's Place in the Zodiac on the 18th of August, N. S.*

Seek for the Day of *August* in the Wooden Horizon: In the Circle of Months, observe the Difference betwixt the *Julian* and *Gregorian* Calendar, and you find over against it, in the Circle of the Signs, the 25th Degree of *Leo*; find that Degree of *Leo* in the Ecliptic of the Globe, and that is the Place of the Sun the 18th of *August*: But in Leap-Year, for the 19th of *February*, you must seek the first of *March*.

Prob. VII. *To know on what Day of the Year the Sun is at Noon perpendicular above any Place given in the Torrid Zone.*

Let the Place be *Goa*, which is in the 16th Deg. of Northern Latitude; mark upon the Brazen Meridian that Latitude; turn the Globe quite round, and observe what Signs of the Zodiac pass under that Latitude of the Meridian, and you will find two that touch that Deg. of the Meridian, viz. the 13th Deg. of *Taurus*, and the 18th of *Leo*: Look on the Wooden Horizon, and you will find the Days that answer those Degrees, viz. the 3d of *May*, and the 11th of *August*, N. S.

Prob. VIII. *The Month and Day, and Time of the Day, being known, to find those Places on the Globe, in whose Meridian the Sun is at that Time.*

The Pole being elevated according to the Latitude of the given Place, bring the said Place to the Brazen Meridian, set the Index of the Horary Circle at the Hour of the Day of the given Place, turn the Globe till the Index point at the upper Figure of 12; which done, fix the Globe in that Situation, and observe what Places are exactly under the upper Semi-Circle of the Brazen Meridian, and those Places have the Sun in their Meridian at that Time.

Prob. IX. *To know the Length of the Day and Night in any Place of the Earth at any Time.*

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place whose Length of Day you seek for; find the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic at that Time; which being brought to the East-Side of the Horizon, set the Index of the Horary Circle at the upper Figure of 12; and turning the Globe about till the said Place of the Ecliptic, where the Sun is at that Time, touch the Western Horizon, reckon the Number of Hours the Index of the Horary Circle has pass'd from the Figure of 12, and that is the Length of the Day.

Prob. X. *To find on the Globe the Antæci, Periæci, and Antipodes.*

Bring the Place whose *Antæci* you want to the Brazen Meridian, by which you will know its Northern Latitude; see what Place touches the same Deg. of Southern Latitude; and that Place is the *Antæci*: Bring the Place given to the Brazen Meridian, in the same Parallel Circle of Latitude, and that Place that touches the opposite Part of the Meridian, in the same Hemisphere, is the *Periæci* of the Place: Or add 180 Deg. to the Longitude of the Place given; turn about the Globe till that Deg. of Longitude upon the Equator touch the Meridian, and under that Latitude, upon the Meridian of the Place given, the *Periæci* are to be found; Or having brought the Place given to the Brazen Meridian, observe the Place of the Meridian it touches; set the Index of the Horary Circle at 12, and turn the Globe till the Index comes to the opposite 12, the Place that touches the same Deg. of Latitude in the Meridian is the *Periæci*.

Prob. XI. *To find the Antipodes of any Place; for Instance, the Antipodes of London.*

Turn the Globe round, either towards the East or West, till *London* touch the Horizon; count upon the Horizon the Deg. that that Place of the Horizon which *London* touches is distant from the Brazen Meridian; if *London* touch the Horizon in the East-Side of the Meridian, reckon the same Number of Deg. from the West-Side of the Meridian, and where the Reckoning ends, that Place is the Antipodes of *London*. Or having found out the Latitude of the Place, by bringing

bringing the Place to the Brazen Meridian, set the Index of the Horary Circle at the upper 12, turn round the Globe till the Index touch the lower 12; then whatever Deg. of North Latitude the Place given has, seek in the Brazen Meridian for the same Deg. of South Latitude; which being found, is the Antipodes of the given Place.

Prob. XII. To find the Sun's Declination.

The Sun's Declination is its Distance from the Equator, either Northward or Southward; first seek, according to the former Directions, the Place of the Sun in the Ecliptic for that Day; the Sign and Deg. of it being found for that Day, bring that Sign and Deg. to the Brazen Meridian, then see what Deg. of Latitude it touches; which being found, is the Sun's Declination from the Equator. Take the Sun's Declination from the Latitude of the Place, the Remainder will be the Distance of the Sun from the Zenith of the Place given at Noon: But if the Sun is not on the Side of the Equator we are on, then add the Sun's Declination to the Latitude of the Place, and this makes the Distance betwixt the Sun and the Zenith of the Place.

Prob. XIII. To find the Time of the Sun's Rising and Setting in Places that are betwixt the Equator and the Polar Circles.

Elevate the Globe according to the Latitude of the Place: For Instance; *Amsterdam*, the 30th of *July*, N. S. Seek the Sun's Place in the Wooden Horizon, according to the former Directions, and you will find it to be then the 7th Deg. of *Leo*: Bring that Place of the Zodiac to the Brazen Meridian, set the Index of the Horary Circle at the upper 12, turn the Globe from W. to E. till the Place of the Ecliptic, where the Sun is for that Day, touch the Eastern Horizon; see what Hour the Index of the Horary Circle points at, which is 4 Hours 17 Min. in the Morning; and this in the Place sought for is the Hour of the Sun's Rising. Turn the Globe Westward, till the same Point of the Ecliptic touch the Western Horizon; observe what Hour the Index of the Horary Circle points at, which is 7 Hours 43 Min. in the Evening; and that is the Hour of the Sun's Setting.

Prob. XIV. To find the longest Day of any Place betwixt the Equator and the Polar Circles.

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place, viz. *Paris*; if it be of Northern Latitude, the longest Day is when the Sun enters the first Deg. of *Cancer*, which bring to the Brazen Meridian; set the Index to the upper 12, turn the Globe round Eastward, till the first Deg. of *Cancer* touch the Eastern Part of the Horizon; see what Hour the Index points at, which is 4 Hours for the Rising of the Sun; turn the Globe Westward, till the same Degree of *Cancer* touch the Western Horizon, the Index will point at 8, which is the Hour of the Sun-setting for the longest Day at *Paris*: So the longest Day there is 16 Hours, which is 8 half Hours longer than their Day under the Equator; by which we know, that *Paris* is in the 8th Climate. Observe the same Way of Operation for Places that have Southern Latitude, whose longest Day is when the Sun is in the first Deg. of *Capricorn*.

Prob. XV. To find in what Climate any Place, lying betwixt the Polar Circles and the Poles, is.

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Places, viz. 69 Deg. 30 Min. Northern Latitude; turn the Globe Eastward, till the Ecliptic touch the Northern Point of the Horizon; observe the Deg. of the Ecliptic that touches the Horizon, and you will find it to be the first Deg. of *Gemini*; count how many Deg. there are from that to the first Deg. of *Cancer*, and you will find it 30 Deg. which doubled, makes 60, the Number of Days without any Night for their longest Day; and you find that Place to be the End of the second Climate of Months.

Prob. XVI. To know what Hour it is in one Place, when it is Noon in another.

Let the Example be, to know what Hour it is at *Constantinople*, when it is Noon at *Paris*: Bring *Paris* to the Brazen Meridian, set the Index at the upper 12, move the Globe from E. to W. (because *Constantinople* is E. from *Paris*) till *Constantinople* touch the Brazen Meridian; observe what Hour the Index touches, which is 2 in the Afternoon, and that is the Time of the Day when it

The General Introduction to GEOGRAPHY. 101

is 12 at *Paris*, because *Constantinople* is 30 Deg. more Eastward than *Paris*, and so has Noon two Hours sooner.

Prob. XVII. *To know what Hour it is in all Places of the Earth, when you know what Hour it is in a particular Place.*

When it is 10 in the Morning at *Paris*, to know what Hour it is at that Time all the World over; Bring *Paris* to the Brazen Meridian, set the Index at 10 of the Morning, turn the Globe round; the Index will mark what Hour it is in all Places that come under the Brazen Meridian. If you turn the Globe towards the West, you will find, for Example, that when it is 10 of the Morning at *Paris*, it is Noon at *Constantinople*; $2\frac{1}{2}$ in the Afternoon at *Ispahan*, the Capital City of *Persia*; $4\frac{1}{2}$ after Noon at *Siam*; and 7 at Night at *Meaco*, the Capital of *Japan*. If you turn the Globe towards the East, you will see, that when it is 10 in the Morning at *Paris*, it is only $9\frac{1}{4}$ at *Lisbon*; $5\frac{1}{4}$ of the Morning at *Quebec*; $4\frac{1}{4}$ of the Morning at *Cartagena* in *America*; and $2\frac{1}{2}$ at *Compostella* in *Mexico*.

Prob. XVIII. *To find the Beginning and Ending of the Twilight in any Place, and at any Time of the Year.*

The Twilight is before the Sun's rising, and after its setting. When the Sun is 18 Deg. perpendicularly below the Horizon in the Morning, the Twilight begins; and when the Sun is 18 Deg. perpendicularly below the Horizon after its setting, the Twilight ends. In a direct Sphere near the Equator, the Twilights are of shorter continuance, because the Sun then goes below the Horizon in a perpendicular Line. But in an oblique Sphere, the Twilight is longer; and longest of all in a parallel Sphere. For Instance:

To know when the Twilight begins and ends at Amsterdam the 5th of October.

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place; seek the Place of the Sun for that Day, according to the Directions above, which is the 12th Degree of *Libra*; bring this to the Meridian, and set the Index to 12 at Noon; turn the Globe towards the East, till the 12th of *Aries*,

which is diametrically opposite to the Place the Sun is then in, be elevated 18 Deg. above the Western Point of the Horizon; which done, you will see, 1. That the Place of the Sun is 18 Deg. below the Eastern Horizon. 2. That the Index points at 4 Hours 26 Min. after Midnight for the Beginning of the Morning Twilight. Turn about the Globe, till the 12th of *Aries* be elevated 18 Deg. above the Eastern Horizon; which Elevation is known by the Quadrant of Altitude: Then the Index shows 7 of the Clock and 37 Min. after Noon for the End of the Evening Twilight.

Prob. XIX. *To find those Places that have Twilight all the Night at a certain Day.*

Seek, by the Directions above, the Declination of the Sun for that Day; elevate the Pole so many Deg. above the Horizon, as the Declination of the Sun is Deg. from the Equator; which being done, all the Circles of Latitude that are not 18 Deg. below the Horizon, have Twilight all the Night over.

Prob. XX. *To find the Hour of the Day by the Globe at any Time when the Sun shines.*

Divide your Equinoctial Line into 24 equal Parts, and in small Figures set down the Hours of the natural Day after the following Manner: At the Intersections of the Ecliptic and Equator, place the Figure 6, and bring those Places to the Brazen Meridian, one being in the upper, and the other in the lower Hemisphere; which done, place the 12 Figures in the Western Hemisphere in this Order following; 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6; then beginning at the same Figure of 6, and proceeding Eastwards, set down the other 12 Figures thus; 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6. The Equator being thus divided and mark'd, elevate the Globe according to the Latitude of the Place where you are, and bring the Intersection of the Vernal Equinox to the upper Part of the Brazen Meridian; and placing the Globe duly South and North, observe exactly that half of the Globe upon which the Sun doth actually shine; for the last Part of the enlighten'd Hemisphere doth always show the Hour of the Day upon the Equinoctial Line.

O

Prob. XXI.

Prob. XXI. *The Latitude of the Place, and Height of the Sun, being known, to find thereby the Hour of the Day.*

The Pole being elevated according to the Latitude of the Place, and the Height of the Sun being found by an exact Quadrant, mark his Place in the Ecliptic for the given Day, and bring the same to the Brazen Meridian; after this, fix the Quadrant of Altitude at the Zenith, and mark in the said Quadrant the particular Degree of the Sun's Altitude; set the Index of the Horary Circle at Noon; move the Globe, together with the Quadrant of Altitude, till the Sun's Place mark'd in the Ecliptic, and his Deg. of Altitude mark'd upon the Quadrant of Altitude, do come both in one: Which done, observe what Hour the Index pointeth at, and that is the Hour wanted.

Prob. XXII. *The Latitude of the Place being given, as also the true Bearing of the Sun in the said Place at any Time, to find thereby the Hour of the Day.*

The Pole being elevated according to the Latitude of the Place, and the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic for that Day being found and mark'd, fix the Quadrant of Altitude to the Zenith, and by the Mariners Compass observe the true Bearing of the Sun; and then bring the Quadrant of Altitude to the observ'd Point of the Compass upon the Wooden Horizon, and move the Globe till the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic coincide with the said Quadrant: Which done, and the Globe continuing in that Position, the Index of the Horary Circle will point at the Hour of the Day at the Time desir'd.

Prob. XXIII. *The Latitude of a Place, and the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, being given, to find thereby the Hour of the Day.*

Elevate the Pole according to the given Latitude, and place the Globe directly South and North by the Mariners Compass; then fix a small Needle perpendicularly in the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, and bringing the same to the Brazen Meridian, set the Index at Noon; turn the Globe till the Needle cast no Shadow; and then what Hour the Index points, is the Hour of the Day.

When any Place is 90 Deg. above the Horizon, the Wooden Horizon is the Horizon of that Place.

Prob. XXIV. *To find the Meridian Line by the Globe in any Place, and at any Time of the Day.*

The Latitude of the Place being known, and the Pole elevated answerably, observe the Height of the Sun above the Horizon at that Time, and draw upon a true Horizontal Plain a straight Line in, or parallel to, the Shadow of a Stile perpendicularly erected upon that Plain; in which describe a Circle at any opening of the Compasses, and finding the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, mark his observ'd Height in the Quadrant of Altitude; then move the Globe, together with the said Quadrant, till that Mark in the Quadrant, and the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, come both in one; which done, count upon the Wooden Horizon the Number of Degrees between the Quadrant of Altitude and the Brazen Meridian, and set off the same Number of Degrees upon the aforesaid Circle drawn upon the Plain, by making a visible Point in the Circumference, where the Reckoning ends, (beginning still at the Side towards the Sun, and proceeding E. or W. according to the Time of the Day;) then draw a Line from that Point in the Circumference through the Center of the said Circle, and the same will prove the true Meridian Line of that Place, at what Time soever the Observation is made.

Prob. XXV. *The Month and Day being given, to find by the Globe those Places of the North Frigid Zone, where the Sun begins to shine constantly without setting; as also those Places of the South Frigid Zone, from which the Sun begins at that Time totally to absent himself.*

Find the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, bring it to the Brazen Meridian, and reckon the same Number of Degrees on the Meridian from the North Pole to the Equator, as the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic is Degrees from the Equator: Observe, that in all Places, when the Globe is turn'd round, that touch that Degree of the Meridian, the Day in those Places begins to be continual.

Prob. XXVI.

The General Introduction to GEOGRAPHY. 103

Prob. XXVI. *A Place being given in the North Frigid Zone, to find by the Globe what Number of Days the Sun doth constantly shine upon the said Place, and what Days it is absent; also the first and last Days of its Appearance.*

Bring the given Place to the Brazen Meridian, and observing its Latitude, elevate the Pole accordingly; then turn the Globe about, till the first Deg. of *Cancer* come under the Meridian, and count the same Number of Deg. upon the Meridian from each Side of the Equator, as the Place is distant from the Pole; and making a Mark where the Reckoning ends, turn the Globe round, and carefully observe what two Degrees of the Ecliptic pass exactly under the two Points mark'd in the Meridian; for the Northern Arch of the Circle, (*viz.* that comprehended between the two mark'd Degrees) being reduc'd to Time, will give the Number of Days that the Sun doth constantly shine above the Horizon of the given Place; and the opposite Arch of the said Circle will give the Number of Days that he is absent. The Pole continuing in the same Elevation, bring the beginning of *Cancer* to the Brazen Meridian, and observe the two Points of the Ecliptic, which in the mean time coincide with the Horizon; then search upon the Wooden Horizon for those Days that the Sun doth enter into the aforesaid Degrees of the Ecliptic, and these are the Days of his first or last Appearance in the given Place.

Prob. XXVII. *The Hour of the Day being given, according to our Way of Reckoning in England, to find thereby the Babylonick Hour at any time.*

The *Babylonians* of old, and the People of *Nuremberg* now, commence their Hours from the Appearance of the Sun in the Eastern Horizon. For the finding this Hour at any Time, and at any Place, elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place; note the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic at that time, bring the same to the Brazen Meridian, and set the Index of the Horary Circle at Noon: After this, turn the Globe either Eastward or Westward, according to the Time of the Day, till the Index point the given Hour; then fix the Globe in that Position, and bring back the Index to Noon, and move the

Globe from West to East, till the Sun's Place mark'd in the Ecliptic coincide with the Eastern Horizon: Which done, reckon upon the Horary Circle the Number of Hours between the upper Figure of 12, and the Index; for that is the Number of Hours from Sun-rising for that Day in the given Place, or the true *Babylonick Hour* desired.

Prob. XXVIII. *The Babylonick Hour being given, to find the Hour of the Day at any time, according to our Way of Reckoning in England.*

Elevate the Pole according to the given Latitude, and marking the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, bring the same to the Brazen Meridian, and set the Index of the Horary Circle at Noon; then turn the Globe Westward, till the Index point at the given Hour from Sun-rising; and fixing the Globe in that Situation, bring the Index back again to Noon, and turn the Globe backwards, till the Sun's Place mark'd in the Ecliptic return to the same Semi-Circle of the Brazen Meridian from whence it came: Which done, observe what Hour the Index of the Horary Circle points at, and the same is the Hour desired.

Prob. XXIX. *The Hour of the Day being given, according to our Way of Reckoning in England, to find thereby the Italic Hour at any time.*

The *Italic Hour* is the Number of Hours from Sun-setting at all times of the Year, to Sun-setting the next following Day: For the finding such Hours, elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place; and noting the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic upon the given Day, bring the same to the Brazen Meridian and set the Index of the Horary Circle at Noon; then turn the Globe either East or West, according to the Time of the Day, till the Index point at the given Hour; and fixing the Globe in that Situation, bring the Index back to Noon: Which done, turn the Globe Eastward, till the Mark of the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic coincide with the Western Horizon, and observe how many Hours there are between the upper Figure of 12 and the Index (reckoning them Eastward as the Globe mov'd) for these are the Hours from Sun-set, or the *Italic Hour* desired.

Prob. XXX. *The Italick Hour being given, to find thereby the Hour of the Day at any time, according to our Reckoning in England.*

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place; note the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, bring the same to the Western Horizon, set the Index at Noon, turn the Globe Westward, till the Index point at the *Italick Hour* given; then fixing the Globe in that Position, bring the Index back to Noon, and turn the Globe backward, till the Mark of the Sun's Place return to the Semi-Circle of the Brazen Meridian, from whence it came: Which done, observe how many Hours there are between Noon and the Index, (reckoning them from W. to E.) for those are the Hours desir'd, according to our Way of Reckoning in England.

Prob. XXXI. *The Hour of the Day being given, according to our Way of Reckoning in England, to find thereby the Judaical Hour at any time.*

The Jews divided their artificial Day into 12 Hours, which must be unequal according to the Length of the Days in the particular Places: For finding which, elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place, mark the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic at that Time, bring it to the Eastern Horizon, and set the Index at Noon; then turn the Globe about, till that Place mark'd in the Ecliptic come to the Western Horizon, and observe the Number of Hours betwixt Noon and the Index, these being the Hours of which the given Day doth consist; which Number you are to note down, and to find what Hour from Sun-rising corresponds with the given Hour, or from Sun-setting, if the given Hour be after Sun-set: Which done, work by the following Proportion: As the Number of Hours whereof the Day given consisteth, (*viz.* those noted down) is to 12; so is the Number of Hours from Sun-rising, (if it be an Hour of the Day) or from Sun-setting, (if an Hour of the Night) to a 4th Proportional; which is the Number desir'd, *viz.* the *Judaical Hour* at the Time given.

Prob. XXXII. *The Judaical Hour being given, to find thereby the Hour of the Day at any time, according to our Way of Reckoning in England.*

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place, find the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic at the Time, bring the same to the Eastern Horizon, and set the Index at Noon; then turn the Globe Westward, till the Sun's Place coincide with the Western Horizon; then the Index points at the Number of equal Hours whereof the Day consisteth; which Number you are to note down, and bring the Sun's Place to the Brazen Meridian, and setting the Index again at Noon, turn the Globe till the Sun's Place coincide with the Eastern Horizon, and the Index will point at the Hour when the Sun riseth in the given Place: Which done, work by the following Proportion: As 12 is to the given Number of *Judaical Hours*; so is the Length of the Day in equal Hours (formerly found out) to a 4th Proportional; which is the Number desir'd, *viz.* the Hour of the Day according to our Way of Reckoning in England: Only note, That if the 4th Proportional be less than 12, you are to add the same to the Hour of Sun-rising, and the Product will give the Number of Hours before Noon for that Day; but if it be more than 12, then subtract it from 12, and the Remainder will give the Hour of the Day for Afternoon.

Prob. XXXIII. *The Day and Hour of either a Solar or Lunar Eclipse being known, to find by the Globe all those Places in which the same will be visible.*

Mark the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic for the given Day, as also the opposite Point thereunto, which is the Place of the Moon at that Time; then find that Place of the Globe to which the Sun is vertical at the given Hour, and bring the same to the Vertical Point or Pole of the Wooden Horizon, and fixing the Globe in that Situation, observe what Places are in the upper Hemisphere; for in most of them the Sun is visible during his Eclipse. As for the Lunar Eclipse, you are to find the Antipodes of that Place, which hath the Sun vertical at the given Hour, and bringing the same to the Pole of the Wooden Horizon, observe, as formerly, what Places are in the upper Hemisphere of the Globe, for in such will the Moon be visible during her Eclipse, except those that are very near unto, or actually in the Horizon.

Prob. XXXIV.

Prob. XXXIV. *To know all the Places that have Day, or the Sun shining upon them, at the same Time.*

The Globe being rectified, *i. e.* the North Pole standing due North, and elevated according to the Latitude of the Place, bring the Place you are in to the Brazen Meridian, expose the Globe to the Sun; all Places on the Globe that are illuminated, have Day at that Time; and those that are not, have Night at that Time: Then bring the Index of the Horary Circle to Noon; bring that Point of the Equator, where the Sun's shining ends, to the Brazen Meridian; the Index shews how many Hours the Sun is distant from the Meridian.

Prob. XXXV. *A Place being given, to find the Situation of another, according to the Angle of Position.*

Let the given Place be *Paris*, to know what Point the Cape of *Good Hope* is in regard to it; elevate the Globe according to the Latitude of *Paris*, which is 49 Deg. bring *Paris* to the Brazen Meridian, fix the Quadrant of Altitude in the Zenith, *i. e.* upon *Paris*, and make the Quadrant touch the Cape of *Good Hope*; then you will find that the Arch of the Horizon, betwixt the Zenith of the Cape of *Good Hope* and that of *Paris*, or the Brazen Meridian, is 18 Deg. for the Angle of Position; so that we find that the said Cape is in a Point a little less Easterly than South-South-East.

It being troublesome to quote Authors for every Particular, we think it proper to acquaint the Reader, That in the Description and Use of the Globes, we have made use of *Bleau, Varenius, Ozanam, Brietius, Brion, Martineau de Pleffis*, besides *English* Authors who have wrote on that Subject.

CHAP. II.

Of the Origine of Mankind, and Peopling the World.

THAT Mankind had their Original at the Time so particularly accounted for in the sacred History, can be doubted by none who believe the Divine Authority of the Scriptures. But abstracting from that unquestionable Authority, we may prove the Truth of it, as Men, by the following Arguments: 1. That in all Ages, and among all Nations, there has been a constant Tradition, That Mankind had its Original from some first Parents, not begot in the common Way, but immediately created by God. 2. That by Observation, we find the Increase of People daily exceeds their Decree: From whence 'tis, That Nations usually double their People in 360 Years, or sooner. 3. If we enquire into the Original Invention of Arts and Sciences, we shall find by History, That they all had their Rise within the Compass of 5 or 6000 Years. 4. By consulting the Histories of the most ancient Times, it will appear, That

we have no Authentic Account of any Originals of Kingdoms, Wars, Institutions of Laws or Governments, higher than that Time; but that the Plantations of all the known Parts of the World, nay even of the Original and Apotheoses of the Heav'n Deities, do all fall within that Period. By Consequence 'tis evident, That *Moses's* History, abstracting from its Divine Authority, is not only the most ancient, but the most valuable Piece now extant: For 'tis plain, That to him alone we are indebted for our Knowledge of the Time and Manner of the beginning of the World; of our first Parents; of the Frailty and Degradation of humane Nature; of the Inventors of Arts; of the Original of Nations; of the first Founders of Empires and Kingdoms; and of the Institutions of Laws and Government. These Things in all other ancient Histories are so blended with Fables and ridiculous Stories, that we may easily perceive the Authors knew nothing of the Matter,

Matter, but what they stole from him, or had convey'd to them by uncertain Tradition.

Moses's Account of the Situation of *Paradise*, the Original Seat and Dwelling-Place of our first Parents, is very particular. He tells us, That it was in *Eden* Eastwards; i. e. Eastwards from *Judea*, or from the Defart of the *Amorites*, where he wrote his Account. Some are of Opinion, That the Name *Eden* is deriv'd from the Pleasantness of the Place. We read of the Country of *Eden* in several Places of Scripture, as in 2 *Kings* 19. 12. *Isa.* 37. 12. *Ezek.* 27. 23. and this lay Eastwards of *Judea*. That it was Part of the Kingdom of *Assyria*, seems plain from 2 *Kings* 19. 12. and that Kingdom contain'd anciently not only the Country then call'd *Assur*, but also *Mesopotamia*, *Babylonia*, &c. And Dr. *Patrick*, Bishop of *Ely*, in his Commentary on *Genesis*, alledges, That *Paradise* was situated in Part of the latter; tho' most Authors think it was in *Mesopotamia*.

Moses says, a River went from *Eden*, and from thence was parted into two Heads. This River, according to the best Accounts, was a Conjunction of *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, which meet in *Apamia*, according to *Ptolemy*; which the Learned *Bochart* says, is the Place now by the *Arabians* call'd *Alcatjar*, about 45 Miles from *Bagdat*; and then they run together for a great Way. 'Tis probable, this united Stream ran through the Country of *Eden*, and that the Garden lay on the East-Side of it, and its Southern Boundary at the parting again of the two Rivers.

This River, *Moses* says, became into 4 Heads, which Sir *Walter Raleigh* understands to be Streams; and these 4 Streams were *Tigris* and *Euphrates* before they join'd, and *Pishon* and *Gihon* afterwards. *Pishon* was probably the Western River *Pasitigris*, the same with *Oreantis*, according to *Salmasius*, Sir *Walter Raleigh*, and *Bochart*. Mr. *Carver* observes from *Zenophon*, That this River was call'd simply *Physus*; and *Bochart* says, There was a Place call'd *Pasumum* lying near *Euphrates*: In all which Names, there are some Footsteps of the Name *Phison*, or *Pison*. *Moses* informs us in the 2d of *Genesis*, That this River encompass'd the whole Land of *Havilah*: And in the 10th of *Genesis*, he mentions two *Havilah's*, one descended from *Joktan*, v. 29. but this cannot be the *Havi-*

lah here mention'd, because his Posterity were planted Eastward: But the other *Havilah*, mention'd v. 7. is said to be descended from *Cush*, and gave Rise to a more Western People, seated on that Part of *Arabia-Felix* which borders on this Stream; for we read, *Gen.* 25. 18. That the *Ismaelites*, who were certainly Inhabitants of *Arabia-Deserta*, are bounded by *Shur* towards *Egypt*, and by *Havilah* in the Way to *Assyria*: And after this, we read, 1 *Sam.* 15. 7. That *Saul* found *Havilah* in the same Situation. The next Stream *Moses* calls *G-hon*, of which Name there are scarce any Footsteps left; but by the Country 'tis said to encompass, must be the Eastern Division of the River after its parting at *Eden*. This Country he calls *Ethiopia*, or *Cush*, by which we are not to understand that *Ethiopia* in *Africa*, but *Ethiopia* in *Asia*: For the Ancients mention two *Ethiopia's*, as *Bochart* informs us; and *Steph. Morinus*, in his Treatise of *Paradise*, proves it to be the Country of *Susiana*, which the *Greeks* call *Kissia*; and the *Persians* at this Time call it *Chuzestan*, or the Country of *Chus*.

The Name of the 3d River *Moses* says is *Hiddekel*, which, *Dan.* 10. 4. is call'd the great River, and therefore must be *Tigris*. *Rauwolf*, in his Travels, P. 11. Ch. 9. says, That in his Time, the River *Tigris* was by the People of *Caruch*, on the Confines of *Media*, call'd *Hiddekel*. *Plin. Lib.* 6. Cap. 27. says, That *Tigris* is so call'd from its Swift-ness; but where it runs slower, 'tis call'd *Diglitis*; and the *Arabians* call it *Deglat*, and *Degela*: All which are evident Corruptions of the Name *Hiddekel*, which the Targum of *Onkelos* and *Jonathan* render *Diglat*.

The 4th River, *Euphrates*, is only mention'd by *Moses*, because it was well known at the Time when he wrote. The Seat therefore of *Paradise* was thus: The Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, i. e. *Hiddekel*, joins somewhere in ancient *Babylonia*, or, as some call it, *Mesopotamia*, in one great Stream; on the East-Side of whose Banks lay the Garden of *Eden*; at the South End of which the River parted again into two Streams, then call'd *Pishon*, and *Gihon*, but in Process of Time *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, as before their Conjunction; and this Name we find given them both in Greek and Roman Authors. Mr. *Whiston*, in his new Theory of the Earth, Pag. 104. supposes the ancient *Paradise* to be

be at the Confluence of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, either before they fall into the *Persian* Gulph, where they now unite, and separate again, or rather where they anciently divided themselves below the Island *Ormus*, where the *Persian* Gulph under the Tropic of *Cancer* falls into the *Persian* Sea: So that the exact Place of *Paradise*, according to him, is now under Water. For his Reasons, we refer to the Book it self.

There is little more of Geography taken notice of before the Deluge, but *Cain's* going out of the Presence of the Lord into the Land of *Nod*, on the East of *Eden*; his dwelling there, and building a City, which he call'd *Enoch*, after his Son's Name. *Nod*, which is as much as to say, the Land of Vagabonds, probably took its Name from his wandering up and down in it. *Junius* thinks, the first *Nomades* liv'd in this Country, and perhaps took their rambling Way of Living from this first Vagabond *Cain*; and he supposes it lay near *Susiana* or *Chuzestan*.

There is nothing certain of the History of those before the Deluge, but what's to be found in the 6 first Chapters of *Genesis*. This Period of Time is said to have consisted of 1656 Years, which is prov'd from the History of *Genesis*, by taking the Years which *Adam* and his Descendants liv'd before they had those Children, which make up the List of the Patriarchs till *Noah*, *Gen. 5, 6, and 7. viz.*

	Years.
<i>Adam</i> had <i>Seth</i> at the Age of	130
<i>Seth</i> was Father at	105
<i>Enos</i> at	99
<i>Cainan</i> at	70
<i>Mahalaleel</i> at	65
<i>Jared</i> at	162
<i>Enoch</i> at	65
<i>Methuselah</i> at	187
<i>Lamech</i> at	182
	1056
<i>Noah's</i> Age at the Time of the Flood	600
In all - - -	1656

Moses tells us, That after the Flood, the Ark rested on the Mountains of *Ararat*, which the Learned agree is that long Ridge of Mountains now call'd *Taurus*, as it was

in the Time of *Pliny*, and runs through *Armenia*, *Assyria*, *Mesopotamia*, *Media*, *Susiana* &c. from *Cilian* to *Parapomissus*. The Ark is thought to have rested on the highest and more Easterly Part of this Tract of Hills, call'd by *Epiphanius* and *Bechart* the *Gordiean* Mountains; and observ'd by *Theodoret*, on *Isay* 16. and 13. to have been always reckon'd the highest in the World. *Portius Cato* says, That about 250 Years before *Ninus*, the Earth was drown'd by a Deluge, and that Mankind was restor'd again in *Scythia* Saga, which, according to *Sir Walter Raleigh*, is under the Mountain *Parapomissus*. *Dr. Heylin* mentions a Tradition of the Inhabitants of that Country, That near the Foot of Mount *Caucasus*, there was a large Vineyard, in *Margiana* of *Noah's* planting. *Mr. Whiston*, in his New Theory of the Earth, thinks it plain from the Text and the Nature of the Thing, That the Ark rested on the highest Hill of *Asia*; for the Water was 15 Cubits above the Tops of all the other Mountains, when the Ark rested on Mount *Ararat*: Therefore *Parapomissus*, the ancient *Caucasus*, must be the Place. *Bechart* says, these Mountains were not above 200 or 300 Miles from *Eden*, and probably about half as far from the Place where *Noah* built the Ark. The Course of the Rains, and the Rise of the Water coming from the South, might gently drive the Ark so far Northerly, as to set it down on the Top of those vast Hills. That it was the most Easterly Part of those Mountains on which the Ark rested, seems plain from the Account which *Moses* gives us of the first Removal after the Deluge, which was from the East to the Plains of *Shinar*. *Gen. 11. 2.*

The Waters being asswag'd, and the Earth become dry, we are not to doubt that *Noah's* Family seated themselves in the Neighbouring Country, where they judg'd it most for their Conveniency, and spread as their Posterity increas'd, till they came to replenish the whole Earth, as *Moses* informs us, *Gen. 9. 19.* 'Tis more than probable, that from *Ararat* they mov'd first towards the South, Peopling by degrees *Assyria*, *Babylon*, *Syria*, *Egypt*, and *Ethiopia*: So that the *Egyptians* were in the Wrong to pretend to be the most ancient People of the World. *Bechart* takes notice of the Difficulty Interpreters meet with to reconcile this with the Scripture Account,

Account, in *Gen. 11. 2.* where those who came from the Mountains of *Ararat* into the Valley of *Shinar* are said to journey from the East, because those Mountains do not lie to the East, but to the North of *Babylon*; and on this Occasion he gives us the Opinion of those who think *Noah's* Family first came down into the Plains of *Affyria* and *Susiana*, and afterwards mov'd Westward to *Babylon*. He acquaints us also with the Solution of this Difficulty, by *James Cappel*, his Kinsman, in his Notes on *Genesis*, which were not then publish'd; viz. 'That the Posterity of *Noah* went from the Mountains of *Armenia* into that Country afterwards called *Keden*, from *Kedma*, *Ishmael's* youngest Son, *Gen. 25. 15.* *Ishmael's* second Son was *Kedar*; and that those two Brothers liv'd near one another, is infer'd from *Jer. 29. 48.* *Arise ye, go up to Kedar, and spoil the Men of the East.* So that when *Moses* says, *Gen. 11. 2.* They journey'd from *Kedem*, or the East, and found a Valley in the Land of *Shinar*, he thinks this Place is to be understood in this Manner." *Bochart* adds his own Conjectures thus: 'That he thinks the Scripture speaks here according to the Custom of the *Affyrians*, who call'd that Part of their Empire beyond the *Tigris* the East, and that on this Side of it the West: And therefore, according to this Division, the Mountains of *Ararat* are rightly said to be in the East. The first Thing they undertook after their Arrival here, was to build a Tower, whose Top might reach to Heaven. The Town is by *Moses* call'd *Babel*, *Gen. 11. 9.* which all agree to be *Babylon*. *Bochart, Lib. 1. Cap. 8.* takes Notice of the Mistake of those who confound *Babylon* with *Susa*, the Metropolis of *Susiana*; and of such as will have it to be *Nineveh*, from the Authority of an Anonymous Writer in *Suidas*, who says, That *Semiramis* first encompass'd *Nineveh* with Walls, and then chang'd its Name into *Babylon*. He likewise confutes those who will have *Bagdad* to be *Babylon*, an Error which many Learned Men fell into; but the Mistake is evident from the different Situation of the Places, *Babylon* being on the *Euphrates*, and *Bagdad* on the *Tigris*. And *Texeira*, an Eye-Witness, says, That the Ruins of *Babylon* were to be seen in his Time, and

were 40 Miles distant from *Bagdad*. For the Way how they came to fall into this Mistake, we refer to the Book it self; and likewise for his exact Description of the Situation of the ancient *Babylon*, and of the Division of the *Euphrates* into many different Streams in that Country. In his 9th Chapter he proves, That the Tower was built in the City, and made Part of it; and Chap. 10. he proves, That it was built in the 10th Year after the Deluge, because it's said, *Gen. 10. 25.* That to *Heber* two Sons were born, one of whom was call'd *Phaleg*, because in his Time the Earth was divided; which is the same as if he had said, This happen'd when *Phaleg* was born, because his Father gave him this Name at his Birth: And that *Phaleg* was born in the 10th Year after the Deluge, appears from *Gen. 11. 10.* to the 16th Verse." This first Century is what the Poets call the *Golden Age*, because the Earth not being then divided, they enjoy'd all Things in common; and *Noah*, who was the Saturn of the Heathens, govern'd Men not as a King does his Subjects, but as a Father does his Children; not so much by Fear, as by Love, and the Respect which is due to a Parent.

Bochart is not of their Opinion, who think that the Tower was immediately destroy'd by strong Winds, or Fire from Heaven; but believes it stood long after the Dispersion; that it was the same which was consecrated to *Belus*, and is describ'd at large by *Herodotus, Lib. 1.* Nor does he think that *Noah*, or any of his Religious Posterity, was concern'd in this impious Undertaking, but that it was such of his Posterity as had cast off the Fear of God; because, *Gen. 11. 5.* they are call'd the Children of Men, in the same manner as *Gen. 6. 2.* The Sons of God are oppos'd to the Daughters of Men, as Believers to Unbelievers: And hence it came to pass, That all those who were Partakers of the Covenant, i. e. *Abraham's* Forefathers, as high as *Noah*, were exempted from the Punishment inflict'd upon the rest; for when the Language of others was confounded, they retain'd their own Language in its Purity, viz. the Hebrew, so call'd from *Heber*, and was transmitted to his Posterity. In like manner, when the rest were dispers'd, they continu'd in their ancient Habitations.

At least 'tis plain, that *Ur* of the *Caldees* where *Abraham's* Ancestors liv'd, *Gen.* 11. 28. was not far from *Corduena*, where *Noah's* Ark rested. This is plain from *Ammianus*, *lib.* 5. where he says, the *Romans* pass'd the *Tigris* about 100 Miles from *Corduena*, and after 6 Days Journey came to a *Persian* Castle call'd *Ur*; from whence they march'd first to *Thisafpata*, and then to *Nisibis*: Therefore *Ur* must lie about *Nisibis*, and nearer at least to the *Tigris* and *Corduena* by two Stations. He is also of Opinion, That *Nimrod* was not among the Builders of this Tower, otherwise he must have been obliged to remove with the rest. Therefore he thinks that the Plain of *Shinar* lay desolate for some Years, the Memory of such a Dispersion having frighted Men from repossessing it, till obdurate *Nimrod* ventur'd to go thither with a great Number of *Cushites* to continue and perfect the Work, and to make that very Place, from whence Mankind was dispersed, the Metropolis of his Kingdom: To which he was perhaps induc'd by the extraordinary Fruitfulness and Pleasantness of the Country.

As to the Confusion of Tongues, *Bochart* is of Opinion, That 'tis not to be taken as if every one concern'd in this Attempt spoke a distinct Language, and that none of them could understand another; for by that means all Societies must have perish'd, if the Husband could not have understood the Wife, nor the Children the Parents, and *vice versa*. But he thinks every Family had a distinct Language. He is also of Opinion, That there is nothing certain to be determin'd as to the Number of Languages then spoke, tho' they are commonly said to be 70, or 72, but without any good Foundation, as the Curious may see by his Book, to which we refer. 'Tis enough that the Confusion was such as made them give over the Work; for when they could not understand one another, and when one ask'd for Brick, another brought Mortar, it must needs occasion Contention, and make them think they were mock'd, which must be attended by an Alienation of Mind, and mutual Aver-sion; from whence a Dispersion must naturally ensue.

He confutes the Opinion of *Epiphanius*, who thinks they divided the World among them by *Lot* in the Town of *Rhinocolura*,

and judges rather that they were drove asunder into the remotest Parts of the World by the secret Impulse of the same Spirit which confounded their Tongues. Nor is it likely, after they were Barbarians to one another in Language, that they could agree to meet together in one Place to divide the World among them by *Lot*: But there is nothing more certain, than that they could not meet at *Rhinocolura*; for *Diodorus* tells us, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 38. That that Town was not built till many Ages after, by *Artisanes*, King of *Ethiopia* and *Egypt*.

In his 16th Chapter, he describes the Boundaries of the Dispersion thus: On the North, *Thracia*, where *Thiras* fix'd; and *Caucasus*, where *Magog* settled: On the South, *Lybia*, where *Phut* planted himself; *Ethiopia*, whither *Ludim* went; and *Arabia* the *Spicey*, where *Jectan* and his Children chose their Seats. On the West, *Gaul*, where *Rhodanim* posted himself; and *Spain*, the Habitation of *Thar-sis*. On the East, *Media*, the Country which *Madai* took for the Place of his Abode; *Persis* and *Elymais*, where *Elam* pitch'd his Tents; and *Carmania*, the Country where *Sabthea* dwelt. He differs from those who, following *Josephus*, alledge those Colonies went as far as *India*. He adds, That since many of *Cham's* Posterity went into *Africa*, and many of *Japhet's* Posterity into *Europe*, it was peculiar to the Posterity of *Sem*, that they did not go out of *Asia*. Yet he does not think that this was done by joint Consent, or any fix'd Purpose, but that each of them possessed themselves of such Countries as first fell in their Way. This does not agree very well with his fixing *Rhodanim* in *France*, and *Thar-sis* in *Spain*, at the first Dispersion; for they must have travelled thro' many Countries before they came thither: Therefore 'tis more probable, that the first Colonies which went from *Babylon* settled themselves much nearer it than either *France* or *Spain*, especially considering how little they understood of Navigation.

'Tis plain from the Writings of the ancient Heathens, both Poets and Historians, That they knew of the Deluge, and of the Dispersion after it; tho' they mix their Accounts of it with Fables, and give *Noah* and his Sons other Names. *Bochart* proves this undeniably, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. by the following

P Argu-

Arguments: 1. *Noah* was the common Parent of Mankind after the Deluge; and so *Saturn* is call'd in *Orpheus's* Hymns the Father of all Men, and his Wife *Rea* their Mother. 2. *Noah* is called in *Scripture* a just Man, and a Preacher of Righteousness. *Diodorus* and *Aurelius Victor*, and *Justin*, &c. say much the same of *Saturn*. 3. *Noah* was a Husbandman, and planted a Vineyard; and the Poets ascribe the Teaching of Agriculture to *Saturn*, and making his Wife *Rea* and *Tellus*, i. e. the Earth, the same Thing. 4. *Noah* was overtaken with Drink, and the Heathens make *Saturn* to preside over Drunkenness; from whence came their Debauches call'd *Saturnalia*. 5. *Noah* curs'd his Son *Cham*, for looking upon his Nakedness when drunk. The Poets say, *Saturn* made a Law to punish those who look'd upon the Gods

naked. 6. *Noah* and his Family escap'd the Deluge. The Poets make *Saturn* and his Wife *Rea* the Children of the Sea, which they call *Oceanus* and *Thetis*; and the old *Romans* made a Ship the Symbol of *Saturn*; and the *Assyrians*, as *Alexander Polyhistor* informs us, said that *Saturn* foretold the Deluge, and order'd an Ark to be built for preserving so many Men, and other living Creatures. 7. *Noah* foretold the Destruction of Mankind by the Deluge, and accordingly none were sav'd but himself and his Family. The Heathens say, *Saturn* destroy'd all his Children but three, viz. *Jupiter*, *Neptune*, and *Pluto*, which answers to *Noah's* three Sons, *Shem*, *Cham*, and *Japhet*. We refer the Curious, who would see more of this, to the Book it self.

C H A P. III.

Of the WORLD in General.

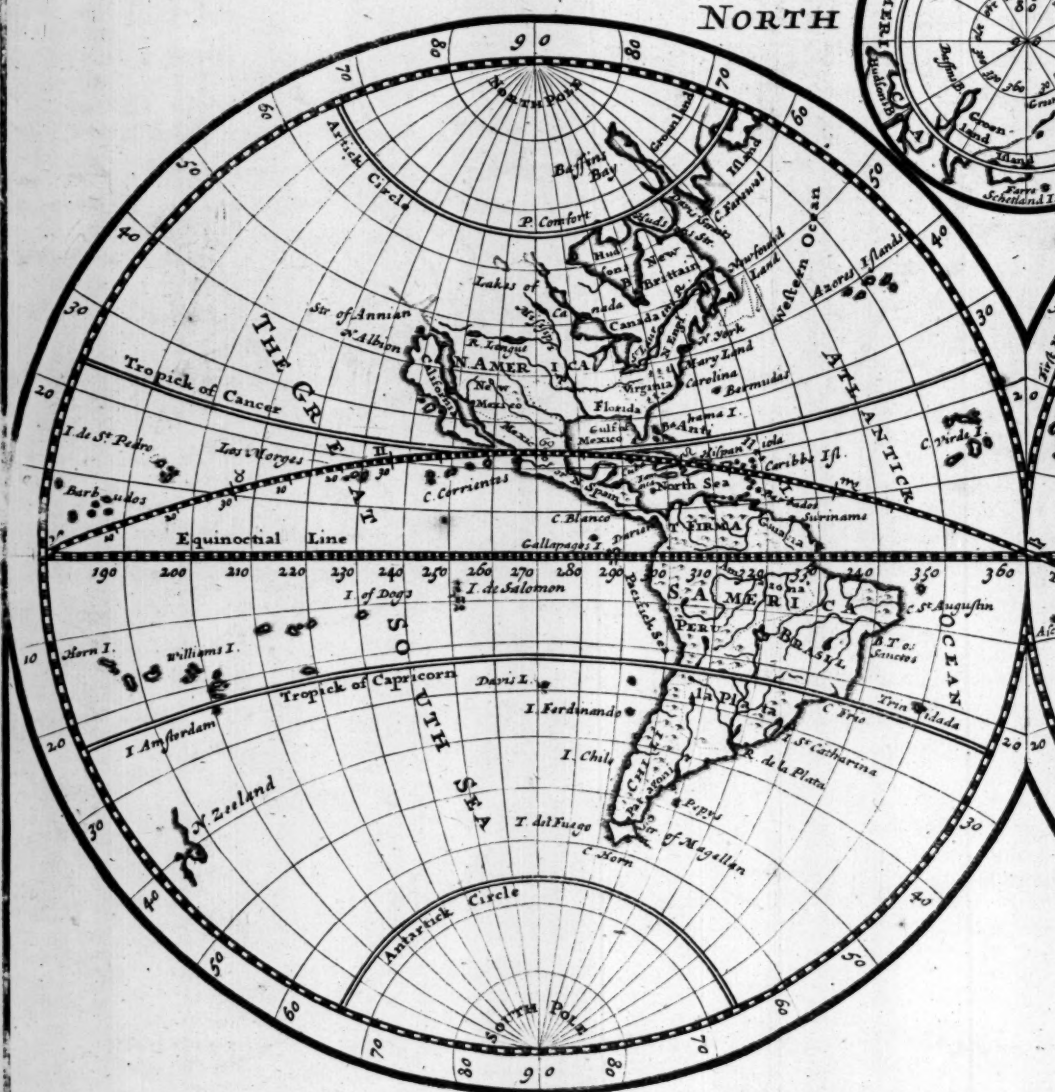
HAVING accounted for the Peopling of the World after the Deluge, and how much of it appears then to have been known according to the Scriptures, we come next to consider how much of it was taken notice of by the ancient Heathen Writers.

Their Knowledge of it appears to have been very indistinct, and their Sentiments about it very different. *Agathemerus* and others thought there was not above a 4th Part of it habitable; as we find in his Geography, lib. 1. cap. 6. Most of them agreed, That the Temperate Zones were only habitable; and of this Opinion was *Strabo*, lib. 1. p. 44. They were not ignorant, that the World was inhabited as far South as the Tropic of Cancer; but how far it was habitable Northward, they were altogether uncertain, because neither the *Greeks* nor *Romans* had gone far that Way. *Salust*, in his *Jugurthin War*, cap. 19 says, That be-

yond *Numidia*, the *Gatuli* dwelt, some in Cottages, and others wander'd up and down. Next to them are the *Ethiopian*, and beyond *Ethiopia* are the Places which are scorched with the Heat of the Sun. Thus it appears he thought *Ethiopia* to be on this Side the Torrid Zone; but *Ptolomy*, lib. 4. cap. 6. and 9. places the *Ethiopian* for most part in the Torrid Zone, and not only as far as the Equator, but some of them beyond it; tho' by why Authority, we are not certain.

They were yet more in the Dark as to the Northern Parts, which is plain from this, That *Strabo*, *Dionysius Periegeta*, *Pomponius Mela*, *Pliny*, and *Solinus*, took the *Caspian Sea* to be a Bay of the *Scythian Ocean*; tho' they might have been better inform'd by *Herodotus*, lib. 1. cap. 203. where he says, That it has no Communication with any other Sea. Nor do they write with any greater Certainty as to the Places beyond the *Black Sea*, or beyond *Germany* in *Scandinavia*: And what they write concerning the further

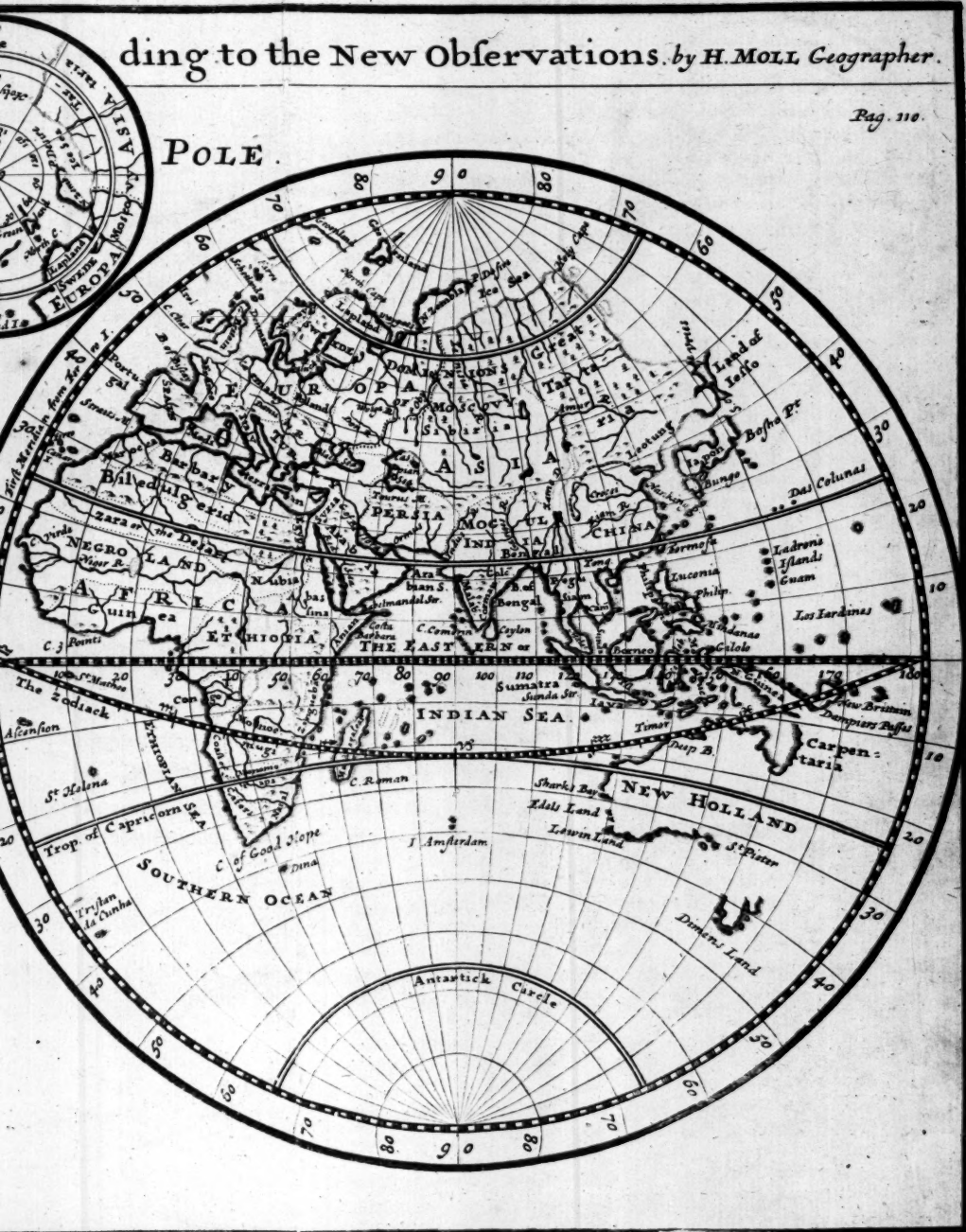
NORTH



ding to the New Observations. by H. MOLL Geographer.

Pag. 110.

POLE.



Parts of *Sythia*, is equally doubtful and fabulous. *Agathemerus* and *Ptolemy* indeed seem'd to have had better Information, and perhaps from some of the Inhabitants; but that they knew all *Sythia*, we cannot be persuaded, because the Eastern Part of it, or *Great Tartary*, is not fully known to us Europeans at this very Day. So far as *Alexander* carried his Arms to the East, was pretty well known: But what the ancients wrote of Places beyond the Limits of that Expedition, is altogether fabulous and uncertain; which is the Occasion of their differing so frequently from one another, as we find in *Strabo*, *Lib. 2.* and *15.* They are plain and clear enough as to the Western Boundary of the World in *Mauritania*, *Spain*, *Gaul*, the *British Isles*, the *Atlantic*, *Aquitain*, and *British Ocean*; but they were at no Certainty as to the Places which lay further South or North of those Boundaries.

And tho' the Form of this Part of the World known to them had much more Length than Breadth, yet the Latin Writers call it always *Orbis Terrarum*: Nor are we to wonder at it, since they frequently call lesser Divisions by the Name of *Orbis*, as *Europæus Orbis*, *Africanus Orbis*, *Orbis Persicus*, and *Orbis Iberus*, &c. 'Tis known, That the Romans call'd their Empire *Orbis Romanus*; and so 'tis call'd in the 3d of *Luke*, and not undeservedly, since it comprehended the greater and more noble Part of the then known World. And thus *Augustin* elegantly calls the Church of Christ, dispers'd through the World, *Orbis Christianus*.

The Navigation of the Ancients is as imperfect and full of Errors, as their Geography: Nor could it be otherwise, since they knew not the Use of the Compass, and never durst venture far from Shore. 'Tis not certain when Men began first to sail in the *Atlantic*, which lies betwixt *Europe*, *Africa*, and *America*. The Scriptures mention the sailing to *Ophir* by the Kings, *Solomon*, *Hiram* and *Jehoshaphat*; and *Job* speaks of the Gold of *Ophir*. *St. Jerom* and *Strabo* mention Voyages from *Egypt* into *India*. *Pliny* says, The Trade of *Egypt* was thereby much augmented; and describes the Way of travelling to the *Indies*, *Lib. 6. Cap. 23.* *Reiskius*, in his Notes on *Cluverius*, *Lib. 1. Cap. 13.* thinks that the Voyage to *Ophir* in *Solomon's* Time was only made by Coasting; and that it is not to be

doubted, if we place *Ophir* in the *Golden Chersonesus*, or *Taproban*: Nor could the Voyage from *Egypt* to *India*, mention'd by *St. Jerom* and *Strabo*, be perform'd otherwise, if there were any such Thing. *Bochart. Lib. 2. Cap. 27.* takes Notice of two *Ophirs*, one in *Arabia*, the other in *India*. He takes the former to be that mention'd by *Job*, because in his Time, which was much about that of the Patriarch *Jacob*, *India* was not known to the People of *Judea*, or at least they had no Commerce with it. He is likewise of Opinion, That the 3000 Talents of the Gold of *Ophir*, given by *David* towards the building of the Temple, came from *Arabia*, where there was great Plenty of excellent Gold, as is plain from *Strabo*, *Diodorus*, and others. He owns however, that *Ophir* to which *Solomon* and *Hiram* sent Ships, was That in the *Indies*, because there were three Years spent in the Voyage; whereas *Arabia* was near him, and the Journey must have been perform'd by Land: Nor was there any Ivory there, because no Elephants. He is not positive in what Part of *India* this *Ophir* was; but, after having given the different Opinions of the Learned about it, he thinks it most probable to be *Taproban*, which he elsewhere proves to be *Ceylon*, where 'tis very well known there is Plenty of Gold, Ivory, Jewels, abundance of Peacocks, and Apes, which are mention'd to be brought from *Ophir* by *Solomon's* Ships.

The *Phanicians* are reckon'd by the Ancients to be the first who understood Navigation; and of them, the *Tyrians* are said to be the first who taught the Art of Sailing, according to that of *Tibullus*.

Prima Ratem Ventis credere docta Tyrus.

Sidon however is with good Reason thought to have produc'd the first Navigators; for in *Joshua's* Time, *Cap. 11.* 'tis call'd the *Great Sidon*; and this is reckon'd to be the 2500th Year after the Creation. 'Tis also mention'd to be famous for Trade in *Isaiah* and *Ezekiel*, and was so considerable, that *Artaxerxes Ochus*, King of *Persia*, about the Year of the World 3590, could not take it with a mighty Land Army, 300 Gallies, and 500 Ships of Burden, till they were betray'd by *Tennis*, the chief Man of their Republick, and Mentor their General, as we are inform'd by *Diodorus Siculus*. *Tyrus* came

next to it in Reputation, and is supposed to have been built by the first Inhabitants, to secure themselves from the *Israelites*, under the Conduct of *Josua*, there having been first a Town of that Name on the Continent; but the People thought they would be more secure by removing it to the neighbouring Island: 'Tis call'd by the Name of the *Strong City*, *Josua* 19. and by *Isaiab*, *Cap.* 23. a *Crown of Glory*, whose Merchants were Princes, and her Traffickers the Honourable of the Earth. The Power of that City must needs have been very great, since they gave *Alexander* a Repulse, and held out 7 Months Siege before he could take it. Both those Cities flourish'd again afterwards by their Navigation, till they fell under Arbitrary Government. *Bochart*, in his *Canaan*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 2. gives an Account of a Multitude of Colonies planted by the *Phanicians* in *Europe*, and of their Navigation as far as the *Cassiterides*, now call'd the *Scilly Islands*; or, as some suppose, the County of *Cornwall*, where he and other Authors say, they traded for *Tin*.

Pliny, *Lib.* 11. *Cap.* 69. says, That in his Time, the *Romans* sail'd round *Spain* and *France*; and that in *Augustus's* Time, they sail'd as far North as the Promontory of the *Cimbri*, now called *Scagen*, in *North-Jutland*, about 9 Miles West from *Norway*: And *Velleius*, in his 2d Book, says, That in *Tiberius's* Time, they sail'd as far North as the *Scythian* Country, now *Tartary*; but this latter is very improbable, and may as justly be exploded as the Voyage of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*, and that of *Eudoxus*, who is said to have sail'd from the *Red Sea* round *Africa*, to have doubled the Cape of *Good Hope*, and afterwards arriv'd at *Cadiz*. Nor can we give any Credit to the Story, That the King of the *Suevi* sent some *Indians* (who were drove ashore on the Coast of *Germany* by Storm) to *Quintus Metellus Celer*, the *Roman* Consul; tho' all these Things be asserted by *Cornelius Nepos*, since the *English* and *Dutch*, tho' incomparably beyond the *Romans*, or any of the Ancients, in Navigation, have never yet been able to find out a Passage to the *Indies* by the North-East; so that 'tis next to impossible the *Indians* could in those Days find a Passage that Way from their own Country to the North of *Germany* on the *Baltick*, which was the *Sea* of the ancient *Suevi*.

But that the Mistakes of the ancient Geographers may the better appear, we shall give the following Account of their most remarkable Errors from *Brisetius*.

The first and most gross Mistake was of those who plac'd the New World, the Habitation of the *Antichionies*, or *Antipodes*, below *Africa*: So *Pomponius Mela*, *Macrobius*, *Manilius*, and most of the Ancients. They made *Tappoban* the Beginning of this New World, and fancied the *Nile* had its Fountains there; which passing thro' the Ocean by secret Conduits, broke out again in *Africa*. And they run into the like Mistake, who let the Ocean in between the two Tropics, and fill'd it with Monsters, which hinder'd any further Navigation that Way; of which Opinion were many of the Ancients. Their 2d Mistake was, That they separated the *Arabian* Gulph from the Ocean, and made it a Lake full of Trees and wild Shrubs; as *Damastes* does in *Strabo*. Their 3d Error was, That they denied the *Mediterranean* Sea to have any Communication with the Ocean towards *Spain*; and alledge, That what is now called the Mouth of the *Streights*, was a Canal dug by Human Industry. Most of them were of the like Opinion as to the *Black Sea*, as we find in *Strabo*, *Lib.* 1. But those Fictions, together with the Fables, That *Italy* and *Sicily*, and *France* and *England*, were formerly one Continent, are easily refuted by the Course of the Rivers which fall into those Friths on both Sides; of which, *Cluverius* discourses at large in his Description of *Sicily*. Their 4th and most absurd Error is, That they join the *Mediterranean* Sea with the *Persian* Gulph: So *Diotimus*, in *Strabo*, *Lib.* 1. who pretended, That when he went Ambassador from *Athens*, he sail'd up the *Cydnus*, a River in *Cilicia*, and by that means falling into *Coasphe*, a River of *Persis*, sail'd down the said River to *Susa*. Their 5th Error is, That they join'd the North Sea with the *Caspian* Sea, by a narrow Canal or River; which Mistake they were led into by one *Patrocles*, an Admiral of the *Macedonian* Fleet; for before his Time, *Aristotle* and *Herodotus* divided the *Caspian* from the other Seas: But after that fabulous Author said, he sail'd from the *Caspian* Sea into the Northern Ocean, all the Geographers, till *Ptolomy's* Time, fell into that Error. Their 6th Mistake

Mistake was, That they made *Scandia* and *Fennigia* two Islands, both divided from *Europe*, the former more to the West, and the latter more to the East, according to *Pliny*. Their 7th Error is, That they brought the River *Tanais* from the remotest Places of the North, as *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and almost all of them do. An 8th Mistake was, That some of the Poets made the *Ganges* fall into the *Mare Eoum*; whereas it certainly falls into the Southern or *Indian* Sea.

Time discover'd these and many more Errors, as Colonies remov'd into unknown Countries; for it was not so easy for a Multitude to agree in a Lie, as single Travelers, who by those Fables think to acquire Glory to themselves. *Strabo* is in the right, when he says, Those Discoveries were perfected by the Conquests of Princes; that the East was made known by *Alexander the Great*, the West by the *Romans*, the North by *Mithridates Eupator*, and the South by the Kings of *Alexandria*.

The Ancients, who fell into those Mistakes, drew the Map of the World in an Oval Form; the Length of which lay from E. to W. the *Mare Eoum* being the Eastern, the *Atlantic* the Western, the *Mare Cronium* the Northern, and the Mountains of the Moon the Southern Boundary; and betwixt *Africa* and the *Antichtones*, they brought the Ocean into the Torrid Zone, for the Boundary betwixt themselves and the Southern People, or Antipodes, as we find by *Macrobius*, *Lib. 1. in Somnio Scipionis*. This is the oldest Map of the World now extant. The Curious may find it in *Brietius, de prima Orbis Notitia, Part. 1. Lib. 5. Cap. 2.*

We come next to the Mistakes of *Ptolomy*, who corrected many of those before him, and yet fell into other very great ones, which they had avoided.

All the ancient Maps being lost, there remain'd only one of *Agathidemon* of *Alexandria*, compos'd from *Ptolomy's* Observations, which is necessary to be taken notice of by those who would compare the Ancient and Modern Geography.

Ptolomy's first Error, and which appears by this Map, is, That he represents *Africa* as a Country that was not to be said about, tho' some of his Predecessors had justly represented it otherwise. Besides, whereas he

ought to have drawn it decreasing, in Form of a Wedge, he enlarges it on the South Side; and towards the Equator, he strangely alters the Form of it, and omits some of the greatest Rivers; tho' he ought to have been better inform'd of those Parts, which were so near his own Country. The 2d Error is, That whereas he ought to have extended *Albion* or *Scotland* towards the North, he brings it East towards *Germany*; and assigns the same Elevation of the Pole to *Ireland*, as he does to *Scotland*. The 3d Error is, That instead of placing the *Chersonesus Cimbrica*, now *Jutland*, Westward, he makes its Situation lie East, and too much contracts the *Sinus Venedicus*, now the Gulph of *Dantzick*. His 4th Mistake is, That he represents *Scandia*, now *Sweden* and *Norway* a very large Peninsula, as a small Island; to which he joins three lesser ones on the East, quite contrary to the true Situation of the Country. A 5th Mistake is, That he thinks the Northern Parts of *Europe* and *Asia* terminate in the *Terra Incognita*, or unknown Countries; tho' many of the Ancients own'd there was a Sea on the Northern Parts of both, as in Truth there is. His 6th Mistake is, in placing *China* South from *India*, and bringing it beyond the Equator, does, by a very gross Mistake, thereby join *Africa* and *Asia*; whereas *China* lies North from *India*. This occasion'd some People, out of Respect to the Name of this great Author, to strike this Mistake out of his Geography, *Lib. 7. Cap. 3.* His 7th Mistake is, That he extends *Taproban* too much, whether we take it to be *Ceylan* or *Sumatra*; and the lesser Islands he places about it, neither agree in Situation nor Number with the late Discoveries made by the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*. His 8th Mistake is, in representing the Southern Tracts and Coasts of the *Indies* quite otherwise than they are. He divides *India* on this Side the *Ganges* into two Promontories, tho' there be but one large one, call'd *Cape Commorin*; and that this Place was then well known to the *Romans*, who had traded thither ever since *Claudius's* Time.

'Tis fit to observe further, That his Map of the World has 180 Degrees of Longitude, about 60 of North, and somewhat more than 10 of South Latitude.

Others

Others of the Ancients divided the World in Six different Manners.

The First we find in *Strabo*, where *Eratosthenes* confutes those who divided the whole World into Greeks and Barbarians; and therefore advis'd *Alexander* to use the Greeks as his Friends, and the Barbarians as his Enemies. But whether the Greeks accounted the Romans Barbarians, is not clear; yet *Plutarch*, in the Life of *T. Flaminius*, seems to be for the Negative.

The 2d Division is that of *Ephorus*, in *Strabo*, who divides the World into four People, viz. the Indians, Ethiopians, Celts, and Scythians. *Scymnus*, who formerly went under the Name of *Marcianus Heracleota*, was of the same Opinion; but *Cluverius* was in the wrong to join *Dionysius Halicarnassensis* with him: And some are of Opinion, That this Division was only to be understood of the Barbarians, and not unjustly, since *Homer* makes no mention of it.

The 3d was of those who divided it only into two, calling the Northern Part Europe, and the Southern Asia. This we find in *Varro*, *Lib. 1. De Re Rustica*, where he commends *Eratosthenes* as the Author of it. *Isocrates*, in his Panegyrick, hints this to have been the Opinion of the Persians; and the same is mention'd by *Silius Italicus*, *Lucan*, *Augustin*, *Orosius*, &c. But these again are divided in their Opinion; some of them join'd Africa to Asia, as we find in *Pliny*, *Lib. 3. Cap. 1.* And *Silius*, *Lib. 3.* expresses it thus:

*Æstivo Libye torretur subdita Canero,
Aut Ingens Asia latus, aut Pars tertia rerum.*

Others again join'd Africa to Europe, as we find in *Salust. De Bello Jugurthino*, which *Lucan*, *Phars. 9.* expresses thus:

*Tertia Pars rerum Libye, si credere fames
Cuncta velis, at si ventos calumque sequaris
Pars erit Europa.*

A 4th Division was into Asia, Europe, Africa and Egypt, which is mention'd by *Ortelius* and *Cluverius*; but they do not give their Authors. It may also be inferr'd from *Pliny*, *Lib. 5. Cap. 9* who divides Egypt from Asia by the Eastern Mouth of the Nile, called then *Ostium Pelusiacum*, and now *Carabes*; and from Africa, by the *Ostium Canopicum*,

the Western Mouth of the Nile, now call'd *Bochir*: And the Reason why they call so small a Country a 4th Part of the World, seems to be, that there were then more Towns in it than in all the rest, as *Eusebius* testifies. *Pliny* says, it had 2000 Towns in the Reign of *Anasis*; and *Diodorus Siculus* says, there were 3000 remaining when he wrote.

The 5th Division was likewise into four Parts; but they made *Græcia* one instead of Egypt. This we find by *Herodotus* in *Melpomene*, where he divides *Crete*, which is a Part of Greece, from Europe; and *Aristotle* more plainly in his *Republick*, *Lib. 7.* divides the Greeks from the Europeans and Asiatics.

The 6th and most common Division, which was generally receiv'd by all, is into Europe, Asia, and Africa. Europe they represented lying West and North; and sometimes they divided it from Asia by the River *Tanais*; and at other Times, enlarging its Boundaries, they parted them by the River *Carambyce*, now call'd *Oby*, and by *Constantinople*.

To Asia, was ascrib'd the Eastern Part of the World, extending far North and South, and equal almost to both Africa and Europe in Breadth.

Africa was divided from Europe by the *Mediterranean*; from Asia, by the *Arabian Isthmus*, according to the Learned; but by the River Nile according to the Vulgar.

Whether America was known to the Ancients under the Name of *Atlas's Island*, or an Island in the Atlantic, shall be consider'd when we come to treat of America.

Of the Roman World, or Empire.

POets and Flatterers gave out, That the Romans possess'd the whole World; That they seiz'd what Part of it they thought fit, and rather despis'd the rest than despair'd of reducing it. History tells us, That they set the following Boundaries to their Empire, viz. the Rhine, the Tigris, or, as others say, the *Euphrates*, and the Mountain *Atlas*. We shall give the following succinct Account of it from *Bristius*, and the *Notitia Imperii*.

This Empire increas'd to so great a Bulk thus: The Romans having struggled 600 Years

The General Introduction to GEOGRAPHY. 115

Years with their Neighbours, first reduc'd Sicily into a Province, when call'd into that Country as Auxiliaries; *Sardinia* and *Corsica* follow'd the Example of *Sicily*. *Gallia Narbonensis* opened *Julius Caesar's* Way into the other Parts of *Gaul*, call'd *Aquitanica*, *Celtica*, and *Belgica*. He likewise attempt'd *Britain*, most of which was conquer'd by succeeding Emperors, and separated from the *Scots* and *Picts*, whom they call'd *Barbari*. *Agrippa* conquer'd *Spain* in the Reign of *Augustus*, and divided it into *Boetica*, *Lusitania*, and *Tarraconensis*. *Juba* being conquer'd, they became Masters of both the *Mauritania's*. *Antiochus* left to them most Part of *Asia Propria*. *Nicomedes* yielded *Bitbynia*. *Mithridates* on his Death-Bed left 'em *Pontus*. *Augustus* took all or most of *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*, from *Antony's* Favourers. The Barbarity of the Inhabitants gave them *Thracia*. The Coverousness of *Perseus* brought them *Macedonia*. The Ralhness of the *Aetoli* possess'd them of *Epirus*,

Hellas, and *Peloponnesus*. The Credulity of *Gentius* made them Masters of *Illyricum*. Their Victory over *Jugurtha* subjected *Nu-midia*. The demolishing of *Carthage* added *Africa Propria*. They obtain'd *Cyrennaicum* by the Liberality of *Ptolemy Apion*. They possess'd themselves of *Egypt* after *Cleopatra's* Death. And *Pompey* made a very easy Conquest of all *Syria* and *Armenia*, with *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*.

When they came to have Emperors, and that the Empire subsisted chiefly by the Army, the Administration was committed to the *Præfetti Prætorio*, who were a sort of Lieutenant-Generals. At first there was no certain Number of them, nor was the Time of their Government fix'd; but *Constantine* made four of them, whose Office was to be perpetual. When the Empire was divided betwixt *Honorius* and *Arcadius*, each of them had two of those *Præfetti* under them. Their Jurisdictions were as follow.

The Western Empire.

1. The Præfettus Prætorio of Italy had under his Jurisdiction,

The Vicarius, or Lieute- nant of Rome.	Consul.	<i>Latium & Campania</i> , <i>Roma</i> , now <i>Rome</i> .
	Consul.	<i>Tuscia & Umbria</i> , <i>Sena</i> , now <i>Sienna</i> in <i>Tuscany</i> .
The Diocese of Italy.	Præses.	<i>Picenum Suburbicarium</i> , <i>Ancona</i> .
	Præses.	<i>Valeria</i> , <i>Reate</i> , now <i>Rieti</i> .
The Vicarius of Italy.	Corrector.	<i>Sammium</i> , <i>Corfinium</i> , the Ruins of <i>Corfinium</i> near <i>Pentinia</i> .
	Corrector.	<i>Apulia & Calabria</i> , <i>Brundisium</i> , now <i>Brindes</i> .
The Diocese of Illyricum.	Consul.	<i>Lucania & Brutium</i> , <i>Consentia</i> , now <i>Consenza</i> .
	Præses.	<i>Sicilia</i> , <i>Syracuse</i> , now <i>Syracuse</i> .
The Vicarius.	Præses.	<i>Sardinia</i> , <i>Caralis</i> , now <i>Cagliari</i> .
	Præses.	<i>Corsica</i> , <i>Aleria</i> , where there are now the Ruins of <i>Aleria</i> .
The Diocese of Illyricum.	Consul.	<i>Venetia & Istria</i> , <i>Aquileia</i> .
	Consul.	<i>Emilia</i> , <i>Bononia</i> , now <i>Bologna</i> .
The Vicarius.	Consul.	<i>Flaminia & Picenum Annonarium</i> , where <i>Raven-na</i> lies; and <i>Senagallica</i> , now <i>Senigaglia</i> .
	Consul.	<i>Liguria</i> , <i>Genoa</i> .
The Diocese of Illyricum.	Præses.	<i>Alpes Cottia</i> , <i>Augusta Taurinorum</i> , now <i>Turin</i> .
	Præses.	<i>Ratis prima</i> , <i>Curia</i> , now <i>Coire</i> .
The Vicarius.	Præses.	<i>Ratis secunda</i> , <i>Augusta Vindelicorum</i> , now <i>Augsburg</i> .
	Præses.	<i>Noricum Ripense</i> , <i>Arelape</i> , now <i>Paklarn</i> on the <i>Erlap</i> .
The Diocese of Illyricum.	Præses.	<i>Noricum Mediterraneum</i> , <i>Juvana</i> , now <i>Salzburg</i> .
	Præses.	<i>Pannonia prima</i> , <i>Sabaria</i> , now <i>Saricuar</i> .
The Vicarius.	Consul.	<i>Pannonia secunda</i> , <i>Sirmium</i> , now <i>Sirmich</i> .

The

The Dioceſe of Illyricum.	Illyrici.	Dux Limit.	Valeria, Aquincum, now Buda.
		Corrector.	Savia, Siſcia, now Siſeg.
		Præſes.	Dalmatia Salona, now Spalatto.
		Præſes.	Liburnia, Jadera, now Zara.
The Dioceſe of Africa.	The Lieute- nant of A- frica.	Proconſul Africa.	Africa, Carthago, now the Ruins of Carthage, near Tunis.
		Conſul.	Nemidia, Cirta, now Conſtantine.
		Conſul.	Byzacium, Adrametum, now Souſe.
		Præſes.	Tripoliſana, Tripoliſ, now Tripoli in Barbary.
		Præſes.	Mauritania, Sitifenſis, now Sitifi, or Eſteſe.
		Præſes.	Mauritania Caſarienſis, Julia Caſarea, now Algier.

2. The *Præſectus Prætorio* of Gaul.

The Dioceſe of Gaul.	The Lieute- nant of Gaul.	Conſul.	Lugdunenſis prima, Lugdunum, now Lions.
		Præſes.	Lugdunenſis ſecunda, Rotomagus, now Rouen.
		Præſes.	Lugdunenſis tertia, Caſarodunum, now Tours.
		Præſes.	Lugdunenſis quarta, Agendicum, now Sens.
		Præſes.	Maxima Sequanorum, Viſontio, now Beſançon.
		Conſul.	Belgica prima, Auguſta Trevirorum, now Treves.
		Conſul.	Belgica ſecunda, Durocortorum, now Rheims.
		Conſul.	Germania prima, Moguntia, now Mentz.
		Conſul.	Germania ſecunda, Colonia Agrip. now Cologne.
		Præſes.	Aquitania prima, Avaticum, now Bourges.
		Præſes.	Aquitania ſecunda, Burdegala, now Bourdeaux.
		Præſes.	Novem Populania, Auguſta Auscricorum, now Auch.
		Conſul.	Viennenſis prima, Vienna, Vienna in Dauphine.
The Dioceſe of Spain.	The Lieute- nant of Spain.	Præſes.	Viennenſis ſecunda, Narbo, now Narbonne.
		Præſes.	Viennenſis tertia, Aquæ Sextia, now Aix.
		Præſes.	Alpes Maritima, Ebrodunum, now Ambrun.
		Præſes.	Alpes Grata, Tarantaſia, now Mouſtier in the Ta- rentaiſe.
		Præſes.	

The Dioceſe of Spain.	The Lieute- nant of Spain.	Conſul.	Bætica Hiſpalis, now Seville.
		Conſul.	Luſitania, Emerita, now Merida.
		Præſes.	Mauritania Tingitana, Tingis, now Tangier.
		Conſul.	Gallæcia, Bracara, now Bragues.
		Præſes.	Tarragonenſis, Caſarauguſta, now Sarageſſa.
The Dioceſe of Britain.	The Lieute- nant of Bri- tain.	Præſes.	Carthaginenſis, Carthago Nova, now Carthagina.
		Præſes.	Baleares, Palma, & Majorca.
		Præſes.	

The Dioceſe of Britain.	The Lieute- nant of Bri- tain.	Præſes.	Britannia prima, Londinium, London.
		Præſes.	Britannia ſecunda, Iſcaſilurum, Caerleon, now ruin'd.
		Præſes.	Flavea Caſarienſis, Verulamium, now St. Albans.
		Conſul.	Maxima Caſarienſis, Eboracum, now York.
		Conſul.	Valentia, Alata Caſtra, now Edinburgh.

The Eastern Empire.

3. The *Præſectus Prætorio* of the Eaſt.

The Dioceſe of Aſia.	The Procon- ſul of Aſia.	Aſia Epheſus.	
		Conſul.	Helleſpontus, Cyzicus, now Cyzico.
		Præſes.	Infula, Rhodus, now Rhodes.

The Diocese of Asia.	The Lieutenant of Asia.	Præfes.	Phrygia Salutaris Pergamus, now Pergamo.
		Præfes.	Phrygia Pacatiano Synnada.
		Consul.	Lydia Sardis.
		Præfes.	Caria Laodicea, now Laodichi or Leufke.
		Præfes.	Lycia Myra, now Strumita.
		Consul.	Pamphylia Perge, now Perges.
The Diocese of Pontus.	The Lieutenant of Pontus.	Præfes.	Pisidia Antiochia Pisidia, Antioch in Pisidia.
		Præfes.	Lycaonia Iconium, now Cogne.
		Consul.	Bithynia Nicomedia, now Comedia.
		Præfes.	Honorias Heraclea Ponti, now Pendarachia.
		Corrector.	Paphlagonia Pompeopolis, now Tarachipoli : Gangra, now Castmoni.
		Consul.	Galatia Ancyra, now Angori.
The Diocese of the East.	Comes Orientis.	Præfes.	Galatia Salutaris Pessinus, now Pessene.
		Præfes.	Helenopontus Amasia, now Amasee.
		Præfes.	Pontus Polemoniacus Neocæsaree, now Tocat.
		Præfes.	Cappadocia prima Mazaca Cæsarea, now Sarnusad.
		Præfes.	Cappadocia secunda Tyana, now Tyazna.
		Præfes.	Armenia prima Sebastia, now Syvas.
The Diocese of Egypt.	Comes Egypti.	Præfes.	Armenia secunda Melotene, now Malatie.
		Consul.	Cilicia prima Cæsarea ad Anazarbum, now Anazarbe, or Aixar.
		Præfes.	Cilicia secunda Tharsus, now Tarsa, or Trefe.
		Præf. Perf.	Isauria Seleucia, now Selechhia.
		Consul.	Syria Antiocha, the Great Antiochia.
		Præfes.	Comagena, or Euphratensis Samosata, now Samasat.
The Diocese of Thracia.	The Lieutenant of Thracia.	Præfes.	Syria Salutaris Palmyra, now Faid.
		Consul.	Phenice Sidon, now Siden, or Said.
		Præfes.	Phenice Libani Damascus, now Damas.
		Consul.	Palaestina prima Cæsarea, now Azor.
		Præfes.	Palaestina secunda Scabaste, anciently Samaria, now Napolitza.
		Præfes.	Palaestina Salutaris Hierosolyma, Jerusalem.
The Diocese of the East.	Comes Orientis.	Præfes.	Osrhoene Edeffa, now Rhoads.
		Præfes.	Mesopotamia Nisibis, now Nisibi.
		Præf. Perf.	Arabia Petraea, now Arach.
		Præfes.	Cyprus Salamis, near Famagusta.
		Præfes.	Egyptus Alexandria.
		Corrector.	Augustamnica Pelusium, now Damietta.
The Diocese of Egypt.	Comes Egypti.	Præfes.	Arcadica Memphis, now Grand Cairo.
		Præfes.	Thebais, Theba, Thebes.
		Præfes.	Libya Superior, Cyrene, now Corene.
		Præfes.	Libya Inferior, Paratonium, now Abreton.
		Consul.	Europa Constantinopolis, by the Turks call'd Stambul.
		Consul.	Thracia Philippopolis, now Philippopoli and Polibe.
The Diocese of Thracia.	The Lieutenant of Thracia.	Præfes.	Hemimons Hadrianopolis, Adrianople.
		Præfes.	Rhodope Maximianopolis, now Maminopoli.
		Præfes.	Mysia secunda Martianopolis, now Provaz.
		Præfes.	Scythia Tomi, now Constantia, or Tmeswa r.
		Præfes.	
		Præfes.	

4. The *Præfectus Prætorio Illyrici*.

The Dioceſe of Dacia.	The Lieute- nant of Da- cia.	Præſes.	<i>Moeſia prima Viminacium</i> , now <i>Uinczidernum</i> .
		Præſes.	<i>Dacia Ripenſis Oſeſe</i> , now <i>Iſcar</i> .
The Dioceſe of Macedonia.	The Lieute- nant of Ma- cedonia.	Conſul.	<i>Dacia Mediterranea Neſſus</i> , now <i>Nyſſa</i> .
		Præſes.	<i>Dardania Scupi</i> , now <i>Uſchup</i> , or <i>Uſcopie</i> .
		Præſes.	<i>Prævalitana & Pars</i> } <i>Juſtiniana prima Ochrida</i>
			<i>Macedonia Salutaris</i> , } <i>Scodra</i> , now <i>Scutari</i> .
The Dioceſe of Macedonia.	The Lieute- nant of Ma- cedonia.	The Proconſul of Achaia.	<i>Achaia</i> .
			<i>Patrae</i> , now <i>Patras</i> .
			<i>Athene</i> , now <i>Sitines</i> .
		Conſul.	<i>Macedonia Parva Theſſalonica</i> , now <i>Salonichi</i> .
		Præſes.	<i>Theſſalia Lariffa</i> , now <i>Larizo</i> .
The Dioceſe of Macedonia.	The Lieute- nant of Ma- cedonia.	Conſul.	<i>Creta Gnoſſus</i> , now <i>Cynſa</i> .
		Præſes.	<i>Old Epirus</i> , or the <i>Inferior Nicopolis</i> , now <i>Præ- viza</i> .
			<i>New or the Upper Epirus</i> , } <i>Dyrracehium</i> ,
		Præſes.	and Part of <i>Macedonia</i> } now <i>Duras</i> .
			<i>Salutaris</i> .

This was the Division of the Roman World or Empire. By the Map that was made of it, according to the *Notitia Imperii*, it was extended from the 14th to the 75th Degree of Longitude; viz. from *Atlas Major* in *Africa*, to *Arabia Felix*; from *Spain* in *Europe*, to the *Tigris* in *Asia*, it was extended from the 14th Degree of Longitude to the 75th: From *Atlas Major* in *Africa*, to the *Thule* in *Europe*, which they place where the *Schetland* Iſles, now belonging to *Scotland*,

lie, it reach'd from the 25th to the 61st Degree of North Latitude; and on the Eaſt, from *Arabia Felix*, to the Head of the River *Euphrates*, it reach'd from the 25th to the 45th Degree of the ſame Latitude.

The Modern Division of the World is well enough known to be into *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*, and *America*; and, according to the receiv'd Cuſtom among Geographers, we ſhall begin with the firſt.

C H A P. IV.

Of EUROPE in General.

Ortelius, Maginus, Merula, and others, think it was formerly called *Japetia*, becauſe moſt of it fell to *Japhet's* Lot. *Theocritus* ſays, it was call'd *Tyria*, from the *Tyrian* Damſel, who, the Poets ſay, was raviſh'd by *Jupiter*. *Diodorus Siculus* ſays, it was call'd *Galatia*, and that moſt of its Inhabitants had the Name of *Galatians*. *Ptolemy*, Lib. 2. Op. *Quadri-partit.* ſays it was call'd *Celtica*, becauſe the *Celts* were

ſpread through the moſt part of it, which is confirm'd by *Ortelius* and *Cluverius*. As to its preſent Name *Europe*, ſome derive it from *Europa*, the *Tyrian* Damſel above-mention'd: Others from *Europus*, a King mention'd by *Troges*, who perhaps was the King of the *Scythians*, ſpoken of by *Pausanias* and *Eusebius*. Others derive it from the Beauty of the Country.

The Extent of ancient *Europe* was reckon'd by old Authors thus: *Strabo* accounts it about

4. The *Præfectus Prætorio Illyrici*.

The Dioceſe of Dacia.	The Lieute- nant of Da- cia.	Præſes.	<i>Moeſia prima Viminacium</i> , now <i>Unverzahn</i> .
		Præſes.	<i>Dacia Ripenſis Oeſus</i> , now <i>Iſcar</i> .
		Conſul.	<i>Dacia Mediterranea Neſſus</i> , now <i>Nyſſa</i> .
		Præſes.	<i>Dardania Scupi</i> , now <i>Uſchup</i> , or <i>Uſcopie</i> .
The Dioceſe of Macedonia.	The Lieute- nant of Ma- cedonia.	Præſes.	<i>Prævalitana & Pars</i> } <i>Juſtiniana prima Ochrida</i>
			<i>Macedonia Salutaris</i> , } <i>Scodra</i> , now <i>Scutari</i> .
		The Proconſul of Achaia.	<i>Patrae</i> , now <i>Patras</i> .
		Achaia.	<i>Athene</i> , now <i>Setinæ</i> .
The Dioceſe of Macedonia.	The Lieute- nant of Ma- cedonia.	Conſul.	<i>Macedonia Parva Theſſalonica</i> , now <i>Salonichi</i> .
		Præſes.	<i>Theſſalia Lariffa</i> , now <i>Lariza</i> .
		Conſul.	<i>Creta Gnoſſus</i> , now <i>Cyzoſa</i> .
		Præſes.	<i>Old Epirus</i> , or the <i>Inferior Nicopolis</i> , now <i>Præ- vuxa</i> .
		Præſes.	<i>New or the Upper Epirus</i> , } <i>Dyrracehium</i> , and Part of <i>Macedonia</i> } now <i>Duras</i> .
			<i>Salutaris</i> .

This was the Division of the Roman World or Empire. By the Map that was made of it, according to the *Notitia Imperii*, it was extended from the 14th to the 75th Degree of Longitude; viz. from *Atlas Major* in *Africa*, to *Arabia Felix*; from *Spain* in *Europe*, to the *Tigris* in *Asia*, it was extended from the 14th Degree of Longitude to the 75th: From *Atlas Major* in *Africa*, to the *Thule* in *Europe*, which they place where the *Schetland* Isles, now belonging to *Scotland*,

lie, it reach'd from the 25th to the 61st Degree of North Latitude; and on the East, from *Arabia Felix*, to the Head of the River *Euphrates*, it reach'd from the 25th to the 45th Degree of the same Latitude.

The Modern Division of the World is well enough known to be into *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*, and *America*; and, according to the receiv'd Custom among Geographers, we shall begin with the first.

CHAP. IV.

Of EUROPE in General.

Ortelius, Maginus, Merula, and others, think it was formerly called *Japetia*, because most of it fell to *Japhet's* Lot. *Theocritus* says, it was call'd *Tyria*, from the *Tyrian* Damsel, who, the Poets say, was ravish'd by *Jupiter*. *Diodorus Siculus* says, it was call'd *Galatia*, and that most of its Inhabitants had the Name of *Galatians*. *Ptolemy*, Lib. 2. Op. *Quadripartit.* says it was call'd *Celtica*, because the *Celtae* were

spread through the most part of it, which is confirm'd by *Ortelius* and *Cluverius*. As to its present Name *Europe*, some derive it from *Europa*, the *Tyrian* Damsel above-mention'd: Others from *Europus*, a King mention'd by *Troges*, who perhaps was the King of the *Scythians*, spoken of by *Pausanias* and *Eusebius*. Others derive it from the Beauty of the Country.

The Extent of ancient *Europe* was reckon'd by old Authors thus: *Strabo* accounts it about



about 30000 Stadia in Length, which is about 3750 English Miles. *Pliny* reckons it 8414000 Paces; i. e. 8414 Miles; and *Ptolemy* 24000 Stadia, or 3000 Miles.

Strabo reckons the Breadth of it 14100 Stadia, about 1712 Miles. *Pliny* makes it 618000 Paces, or 6018 Miles; and *Ptolemy* 14900 Stadia, or 1750 Miles.

As to the Qualities of *Europe*, the Ancients reckon'd 4 very remarkable. 1. That it was the whollomest of all the Divisions of the World. So *Varo de re Rustica*, Lib. 1. reckons it whollomer than *Asia*, because it lies more to the North; and *Strabo*, Lib. 2. says, 'tis every where habitable. 2. That it abounded with all Necessaries for Life: So *Herodotus*, *Varo*, and *Strabo*. The latter adds, That it communicates its Product to the other Parts of the World, and needs nothing from them but what her Inhabitants may very well want. 3. That her People excel the rest in Learning, Valour and Politicks, as appears by *Mamilius*, *Strabo* and *Aristotle*, who asserts it of the *Greeks*; and every one knows, the *Romans* deserv'd the Character as well. The 4th Quality they ascribe to *Europe*, was, That in it only Amber was found. They ought to have added a 5th, That it gave Rise to two of the greatest of those call'd Universal Monarchies, viz. the *Grecian* and *Roman*; and a 6th, That for many Ages, it has been the chief Seat of the Christian Religion.

For the Boundaries of Ancient *Europe*, they reckon'd them thus: *Pliny*, *Mela*, and *Stephanus*, own'd, That on the North, it was bounded by the Northern Ocean, tho' *Herodotus* and *Ptolemy* doubted it. On the West, it had the Western Sea, besides part of the North Sea, elsewhere call'd the *British*. On the South, it was bounded by the *Mediterranean*, as at present. On the East, it was divided from *Asia* as at present, by part of the *Mediterranean*, call'd the *Mare Egeum*, the *Hellepont*, *Propontis*, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, and the *Euxine Sea*. But as to the other Boundaries towards the North, the Ancients were divided into Five different Opinions. 1. *Herodotus*, *Dionysius*, and others mention'd by *Eustathius*, thought *Europe* to be bounded on the East by the Conjunction of the Northern and *Caspian Sea*; and others divided *Europe* from *Asia* by an Isthmus between the *Caspian* and the *Euxine*.

2. Some made the River *Phasis*, call'd otherwise *Hypanis*, the Boundary of *Europe* on that Side: So *Herodotus*, *Procopius*, and others.

3. *Seneca*, Lib. 4. *Nat. Quaest.* makes the River *Danube* the Eastern Boundary of *Europe*; but this perhaps is to be understood of the River *Tanaïs*, which is sometimes called the *Danube*, as *Acron* observes in his Notes on *Horace*, which *Ortelius* seems to approve: And this is also favour'd by *Isidorus*, *Orig. Lib.* 17. *Cap.* 9. where speaking of *Rhubarb*, he says, that it grows in the Country of the Barbarians beyond the *Danube*; since 'tis known, that that Plant is now found on the *Volga*, which lies near the *Tanaïs*.

4. Some added to the *Euxine Sea* the *Bosphorus Cymmerius*, the *Palus Meotis*, and all the River *Tanaïs*, with a Line drawn from its Fountains Northward; and of this Opinion were most of the Ancients. 5. Some take in only part of the *Tanaïs*, and add to it a Line as far as the River *Rha*, now the *Volga*; and from hence they draw another Line to the River *Carambyce*, by most now reckon'd the *Oby*; and they take in all this River as far as the Mouth of it, above the Island *Elixona*, which most think to be *Nova Zembla*. *Ortelius*, and *Cluverius* in his *Germania Antiqua*, endeavour'd to fix this Opinion on *Pliny*, because he makes the Promontory *Listarmis* and *Carambyce* the Boundary of *Celtica*, which is the same with *Europe*: And this River is now call'd *Oby*; and, according to *Stephanus*, above *Carambyce* lies the Island *Elixona*, equal in Extent with *Scilly*: And here there is none, except *Nova Zembla*, which lies almost at the Mouth of the *Oby*. They argue likewise, That *Pliny* places the End of the *Rhiphaean Mountains* on the River *Carambyce*; and these Mountains are now called by the *Russians*, *Kameny Poyas*, which end at the Mouth of the *Oby*. To this they add from *Pliny*, That those who come from *Asia* into *Europe*, must pass the *Ryphean Mountains*, which cannot be, except *Europe* be extended to the River *Oby*.

Brietius having diligently consider'd the Matter, gives his Opinion thus: That *Carambyce* is the River *Dwina*; near the Mouth of which lies *Archangel*, where the Line drawn from the Fountains of the *Tanaïs* towards the North by the Ancients commonly ends. His Reason is, because the An-

cients did always call *Tanais* the Boundary of *Europe*, which would have been very improper, had the least Part of that River only separated *Europe* from *Asia*: And he thinks *Pliny*, *Lib. 4. Cap. ult.* to be of his Opinion, since he reckons the Length of *Europe* from *Cales* to the *Tanais*; for 'twould have been a very gross Error in him to have extended *Europe* as far as the *Oby*, and then to have cut off the Country betwixt the *Tanais* and the *Oby*: Besides, what Occasion had there been for the Division of *Sarmatia*, made use of by most, into *European* and *Asian*, if *Sarmatia* had been all in *Europe*?

To the Objection which *Cluverius* makes from the *Riphaean* Mountains, he answers, That the Ancients speak of their Situation with very great Uncertainty, as he himself confesses; and that *Pliny*, *Lib. 4. Cap. 12.* brings the *Tanais* from those Mountains, which cannot agree with the Stone Girdle, or *Kameny Poyas*: And *Mela*, *Lib. 3. Cap. 5.* places the *Hyperborei* on the *Asian* Shore, tho' he extends them above the *Riphaean* Mountains. How then can the *Hyperborei* be in *Asia*? As to the *Elixona* of *Stephanus*, some think it not improbably to be that Island which we first meet with as we go out of the *Sinus Granducius*, now the *White Sea*; for 'tis large enough to have given the Ancients, who were ignorant of that Country, Ground to compare it with *Sicily*; but certainly no Man of Sense will think *Stephanus's* *Elixona* to be the *Nova Zembla* of the Moderns: And for the Promontory *Lytarmis*, no body will place that out of *Europe*, since *Ortelius* thinks that call'd *Kibarnes*, near the Island *Wardhuys*, to be the same. Others do more probably take it to be *Cape Orleganas*, in the Mouth of the *White Sea*.

The Languages of Ancient *Europe* were reckon'd Four, of which the rest were only Dialects. 1. The *Sarmatian* Tongue, or, as some call it, *Riphaean*, from whence they derive the *Slavonic*. 2. The *Celtic*, from whence came the *German* or *Teutonic*, the *Gaulic* and *British*, which some say are one, and the *Ilyric*. 3. The *Latin* Tongue, the Ancient call'd *Osca*, and the New call'd *Romana*. 4. The *Greek*, with its 5 Dialects, viz. 1. The *Common*, made up of them all. 2. The *Attic*, from whence came the *Baotic*, *Calcedic*, *Pamphylian*, and *Cyprian*. 3. The *Ionic*, from whence, mix'd with the *Doric*,

came the *Thessalian*, and from it the *Macedonian*. 4. The *Eolic*, from whence *Dion. Halicarnassensis* thinks the *Latin* took its Rise. 5. The *Doric*, from whence the *Peloponnesian*, subdivided into the *Common*, *Argive*, *Laconic* or *Spartan*, the *Libye*, us'd by those of *Cyrene* and *Pentapolis*. The *Rhodian*, *Cretian*, and *Sicilian*, subdivided into the *Common*, and those call'd *Rhagina* and *Tarentina*.

The Ancients divided *Europe* into West, North, and South: In the West, they plac'd the *British* Isles, *Spain* and *Gaul*; in the North, *Germany* and *Sarmatia*; in the South, *Dacia*, *Ilyricum*, *Greece*, and *Italy*.

According to the ancient Map of *Europe*, exhibited by *Britania*, it lay betwixt 35 and 70 Degrees of North Latitude; but the Longitude was very uncertain.

The Description of EUROPE, according to Modern Authors.

AS to its ancient Name, it has still retain'd it, none of the greatest Princes that ever rul'd in it having attempted a Change. Tho' this holds among our selves, yet those of *Asia* and *Africa* call us by several Names. The *Asiatics* call us in-general *Franks*, because the *French* made the greatest Appearance of any of the Christian Princes who attempted the Recovery of the *Holy Land*. At present, the *Turks*, who follow the *Latin* Way of Speaking in that respect, call us *Romei*; and those who follow the *Greek* Way of Speaking, call us *Franki*. The *Ethiopians* call us *Alfrangues*; and some of the *Turks* call us *Cauri*; i. e. Infidels, because we do not believe in their *Mahomet*: And others call us *Dzinzis*, which signifies a Pagan, as *Brietius* informs us.

The Boundaries and Extent of Modern EUROPE.

TOWARDS the North, it is bounded by the Northern or Frozen, call'd by the Ancients the *Hyperborean* Ocean: On the West, by the *Atlantic*: On the South, by the *Mediterranean*: On the East, 1. By the *Archipelago*, anciently call'd the *Aegean* Sea, from a *Greek* Word signifying Goats, because the Islands scatter'd up and down in

it resembled a Flock of Goats. 2. By the *Hellepont*, where were *Cassos* and *Abydos*, on the opposite Shores, now call'd the Streights of *Gallipoli*, or of the *Dardanelles*. 3. By the *Propontis*, now the Sea of *Marmora*, or the *White Sea*. 4. By the *Bosphorus Thoracicus*, now the Streights of *Constantinople*. 5. By the *Pontus Euxinus*, now the *Black Sea*. 6. By the *Bosphorus Cimmerius*, now the Streights of *Caffa*. 7. By *Palus Maotis*, or the Sea of *Zabaque*. 8. By the *Tanais*, or River *Donn*. 9. By a Line drawn from the most Easterly Turnings of that River to the *Obi*. 10. By a Line from the *Obi* to the Northern Ocean.

The Length of *Europe* is variously calculated by Geographers. *Cluverius* says, That from the Cape of *St. Vincent* to the Mouth of the River *Obi*, it is 900 German Leagues, or 3600 Italian Miles. *Morden* says, there is but 50 Degrees of Longitude from the Cape of *St. Vincent* to the Mouth of the River *Obi*; but *Sanfon* makes the Distance 55 Degrees, and *Mr. Moll* 68.

Cluverius reckons the Breadth of *Europe* from the Cape of *Matrapan*, a Promontory in the *Morea*, or ancient *Peloponessus*, to the North Cape in *Normy*, to be 550 German Leagues, or 2200 Italian Miles. *Morden* says, from the most Southerly to the most Northerly Parts of *Europe*, there are only 35 Degrees of Latitude: *Sanfon* makes them 38; the Great Atlas makes them 44; and *Mr. Moll* makes them 42.

Europe, in respect of Government, is divided into Empires, Kingdom, Republicks, and Principalities. Of the first, there are Three, viz. The Empires of *Germany*, *Muscovy*, and *Turky*. The Kingdoms are Nine: 1. *Spain*. 2. *France*. 3. *Portugal*. 4. *Britain* and *Ireland*. 5. *Hungary*. 6. *Bohemia*. 7. *Poland*. 8. *Swedeland*. 9. *Denmark* and *Norway*. The Commonwealths are, *Venice*, *Genoa*, *Lucca*, the *Swiss Cantons*, the *United Netherlands*. Some add *Ragusa*, *St. Marino*. The Principalities are, the *Patrimony of the Church*, the Great Dukedom of *Tuscany*, the Dukedoms of *Savoy*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Mantua*, *Mirandola*, *Transilvania*, *Moldavia*, *Walachia*, *Malta*, *Lorrain*, *Curland*, and *Lesser Tartary*. Some add the Nine Electorates, viz. *Mentz*, *Treves*, *Cologne*, *Bohemia*, *Bavaria*, *Saxony*, *Brandenburgh*, *Palatinate of the Rhine*, *Hanover*.

The principal Languages spoke now in

Europe are, the *Latin*, *Greek*, *Teutonic*, and *Sclavonic*. The *Teutonic* is of Three Sorts; *High Dutch* in *Germany*, *Saxon* in *England*, *Danish* in *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*: The *Latin* is corrupted into *French*, *Italian*, and *Spanish*: The *Modern Greek* is much different from the *School Greek*: The *Sclavonic* Language is used in *Sclavonia*, *Bohemia*, *Poland*, *Muscovy*, and *Turky* in *Europe*: The *Tartarian* Language is a Dialect of the *Sclavonic*. There are several Languages of less Note which are used in *Europe*: The *Albanian* or *Epirotic* in *Epirus* and *Macedonia*: The *Cossack* and *Tartarian* in Part of *Poland* and *Tartary*: The *Hungarian* or *Bulgarian* in *Servia*, *Bosnia* in *Bulgaria*, and *Hungary*, &c. The *Finnick* in *Finmark* and *Lapland*: *Irish* in the Highlands of *Scotland*, and amongst the ancient *Irish* in *Ireland*: The *British* is spoken in *Cornwall*, *Wales*, and *Britany* in *France*: The *Biscayan* is spoken only in *Biscay*, near the *Cantabrian* Ocean or Bay of *Biscay*; and *Arabic* in Part of *Spain*.

The Religions in *Europe* are the *Christian*, which is divided into *Papists* and *Protestants*; the *Jewish*, the *Mohometan*, and *Pagan*. There are some of the last in *Lapland*.

Of the Quality of EUROPE, according to the Moderns.

THE Ancients have been much too short in the Account they give of the distinguishing Qualities of this most famous Part of the World, we think it proper to enlarge a little upon it.

Bochart says justly, That though it be the least of the Principal Divisions of the World, it is by far the best cultivated, and most populous; has for many Ages been the Seat of Civility or good Breeding, as well as of polite Learning; and was the Mother of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, who extended their Empire to the remotest Parts of *Asia* and *Africa*. To which we may add, That she has likewise brought the far greatest Part of what is known in *America* under her Subjection, and introduced Civility and the Christian Religion among the Inhabitants of that Part of the World. Which, taken all together, is by *Bochart* and other Interpreters understood to be the Accomplishment of that Prophecy, *Gen. 9. 27.*

That

That God shall enlarge Japheth, and he shall dwell in the Tents of Shem, and Canaan shall be his Servant. Bochart agrees with those who think the Meaning of this to be, That in the Division of the Earth, Japheth shall have the largest Share; which he says every one must own to have been abundantly fulfilled, when they consider, That, besides Europe, which fell to Japheth's Lot, his Posterity likewise inhabited *Asia Minor, Medea, Part of Armenia, with Iberia and Albania,* and those vast Countries towards the North, formerly inhabited by *Scythians*, and now by the *Tartars*. To say nothing of the new World, or *America*, into which 'tis very probable the *Scythians* sent a Colony by the Straights of *Anian*.

Dr. Heylin is of the same Opinion in his General Description of Europe, as to the Enlargement of Japheth's Borders, and the dividing the Isles of the Gentiles among his Sons, which he takes to include all the Continent of Europe, and the Isles adjacent: And he further observes, That the great Countries of *Anatolia, Greece, Spain, and Italy*, all which did fall to the Posterity of Japheth, are but so many Peninsula's, environ'd round almost with one Sea or other. Nor was, says he, the Name and Memory of Japheth so much forgot by the Children who descended of him; but that the *Greeks*, who were the first Colony they sent into Europe, retain'd it a long time in their *Japetus*, whom they make to be the Son of *Calum* and *Terra*, and the Father of *Prometheus*, whom *Ovid* therefore calls *Satus Japeto*, in his First Book of his *Metamorphosis*.

The Doctor adds, That the Second Part of the Prophecy, *That he should dwell in the Tents of Shem*, though it was long before it came to the Accomplishment, yet it was fulfilled at last, and that both in the literal and mystical Sense: 1. In the literal Sense, when the Posterity of Japheth, both *Greeks* and *Romans*, made themselves Masters of *Judea*, and of the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eastern Parts promised to him, and possessed by the Seed of *Shem*. Next in the mystical, when God was pleased to break down the Partition-Wall, and to incorporate the Gentiles of the House of Japheth into the Body of the Church, which for a long time was restrain'd to the Line of *Shem*.

We may add to the other Qualities of Europe, especially of its Northern Parts, what *Jornandes*, an ancient *Gotthick* Writer, says of it deservedly, viz. *Est Officinas Gentium & velut Faginas Nationum; i. e.* That they are the Nurseries and Seminaries of Nations and People, because of their being so extraordinary prolific.

Ortelius also takes Notice, That *Pliny* called Europe, *Altricem Vixoris omnium Gentium Populi, Terrarumque pulcherrimam*; the Nurse of that People (the *Romans*) which have conquer'd all the rest, and the most beautiful of all Lands that are known. And tho' it is certainly the least of all the Four great Parts into which the World stands now divided; yet, as *Ortelius* goes on, it is of great Fertility, naturally temperate, (being seated in the Northern Temperate Zone) and therefore enjoying the Blessings of a temperate Air, and its Soil producing Fruits of all Sorts, Wine and Trees equal to the best, which make it extremely pleasant to the Eye. It is also adorn'd with Cities, Towns and Villages, and a numerous Progeny of Men beyond any of the rest. Its Inhabitants are not only more numerous in Proportion, but much more civil and ingenious; so that tho' it is less than any of the other Three in Extent, yet it is, and ever was, thought much more excellent than any of the other; and, besides its present Grandeur, it is venerable on the Account of the *Macedonian* and *Roman* Empires. Thus far that great Man.

There are many other Authors who have given Europe the Preference of the other Divisions of the World, particularly *Boissardus*, in his *Epigrams, Lib. 2. Epig. ult.* who writes concerning the Four Parts of the World, thus:

*Artium Genetrix, Scientiarumque
Europa, ut fuit, estque, eritque semper.
Rerum Stamine fulgido celebris
Et dente Indo, Asia est, ordoribusque
Auro fertilis atque Margaritis
Est, & Murice dives Afra Tellus.
Balsamum Americi legunt, Piperque
Thus & Zinziber, & fragrans Anomum.*

Brietius tells us, the *Saracens* own Four remarkable Qualities in Europe: 1. That 'tis very fruitful; 2. That it breeds Warlike Inhab-

habitants; 3. That they are very Religious; 4. That they are fit to govern the rest of the World.

As to its *Fruitfulness*, he observes, That there is scarcely any Country of *Europe*, which is not commendable for some Product or other; yet he might have excepted, as to the general Qualification of Fertility, some of those Countries which lie near the North Pole, as well as he does Part of *Spain*. 'Tis true however, with respect to those which he calls the most cultivated Nations, viz. *Greece*, *Italy*, *France*, and Part of *Spain*. What he says of *England's* Fruitfulness in Corn and Cattle, every one knows to be true; but he might have extended it to the whole Island in general, and ought not to have omitted its Naval Strength, our Materials for building of Ships, our Fishery, Mines, and Fruit-Trees; and *Ireland* ought at least to be allowed its Share of those Qualifications.

What he says of the Fruitfulness of *Germany*, is true, as to many Parts of it; but he has omitted their Forests, Vines, and Minerals. That 'tis a Nursery of Soldiers, and has maintained many great Armies at one and the same time, is not to be denied.

To what he says of *Poland*, That in time of a Famine it furnished Provisions to a great Part of *France*; he might have added, That it has been justly esteemed the Granary of *Europe*, though it has suffered much in that Respect by the present War, which obstructs their Cultivation.

He takes Notice of the Fruitfulness of *Hungary*, though subject to frequent Devastations by the *Turks* and *Germans*.

He observes of *Europe* in general, That for the Advantage of mutual Commerce, and publick Society, *Spain* furnishes Iron, dry Fruits, and fine Wool; *England*, Hides, Wool, Tin, and Lead; *France*, among other Things, furnishes Corn, Salt, and very fine Oil; *Germany*, Horses, Arms, Iron, and Silver; the *Netherlands*, Manufactures; *Italy* and *Greece*, Silks; the Northern Kingdoms, Hides, Tallow, Copper, and Timber for Shipping; *Poland* and *Russia*, rich Furs and Skins, Honey, and Wax. He concludes this Head of *Europe's* Fertility thus; That it produces all Things necessary for Life, except Drugs; the Reason of which he alledges to be, That it is not so obnoxious to Diseases as other Parts of

the World, except such as are introduced by Intemperance and Luxury. What he says as to its Want of Drugs, may be justly disputed, since in general it produces many excellent Simples, which are of Use in Physick.

For his other Defects in the general Description, they shall be supplied in the particular Accounts of the several Countries.

As to the Second Head, That the *Europeans* are a Warlike People, he says 'tis plain from this one Instance, That though they be all good Soldiers, and have each had their Share in Military Glory; yet hitherto none of the Warlike Nations, of which 'tis composed, have been able to obtain the Sovereignty of the whole: And when the *Turks* and *Saracens* have joined their Forces against them, yet they were not able to stand before them in *Europe*, *Asia*, or *Africa*.

He likewise takes Notice of the particular Military Virtues of its several Nations thus: The Inhabitants of *Great Britain* despise Dangers; the *French* are quick and fierce; the *Spaniards* are extraordinary patient; the *Germans* are stedfast; the *Netherlands* are sagacious; the *Hungarians* vigilant; the *Poles*, *Russians* and *Swedes*, tenacious; and all of them are ready to conquer or die: Only the *Grecians* and *Italians*, formerly the Glory of War, do now understand better to obey than to fight, some of them excepted: Yet both of them, he says, seem to be born for Empire, would they resume their ancient Courage. He adds, That 'tis certain, since the *Ottomans* fixed the Seat of their Government in *Europe*, and chose their Janizaries from among the *Europeans*, they have had much braver Armies than before, and make very little Account of their *Asian* Troops.

In his Account of the Religion of the *Europeans*, he governs himself by the Principles of the Church of *Rome*, and is very liberal of his Censures upon *Luther* and *Calvin*, and those who are called their Followers.

The Protestant Religion has its chief Seat in the Empire, *Switzerland*, the Vallies of *Piedmont*, the *United Netherlands*, *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*. It had formerly a very large Footing in *France*, *Bohemia*, *Hungary*, and *Poland*; but has lost much of it (at least as to the external Profession in those Parts) by the violent Persecution of Popish Princes.

The

The principal Seat of Popery, is *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, *Portugal*, and in those Parts of the Empire which are the Hereditary Dominions of the House of *Austria*, the Electorate of *Bavaria*, the Dominions of the Three Ecclesiastical Electors, and the *Spanish Netherlands*.

As to that which is called the *Greek Church*, the principal Seat of their Religion is *Greece* it self, with some of the neighbouring Islands, and such Parts of the *Moscovite* Dominions as are in *Europe*. 'Tis observed by some, That the prevailing Languages in those Parts, which are the principal Seat of Popery, are derived from the Latin: The Languages of those who have chiefly embraced the Reformation, are derived from the *Téutonic*; and where the *Greek Church* prevails, the *Sclavonic Language* is most in Use. There are some Exceptions however to those Generals, which shall be taken Notice of in the particular Countries.

Though it must be own'd, That there is more true Religion in *Europe* than in all the rest of the World; yet 'tis justly observed by some, That the Lustre of Christianity is very much eclips'd by the unnatural Divisions among Protestants, about Things of lesser Moment, by the gross Idolatry and Superstition among the Papists, and by the scandalous Lives of too many of both: And had it not been for those Things, *Europe* might truly have been accounted the Temple of Religion, the Court of Policy and Government, and the Paradise of Human Felicity.

The *Mahometan* Religion is only profess'd in some of those Parts of *Europe* which are subject to the *Turks*.

The *Jewish* Religion is in a vagabond State like themselves, the visible Effects of the Curse of God upon them for their blaspheming and crucifying our Saviour; which being foretold so many Ages ago, as appears by the History of the Gospels, is, together with the Apostacy of the *Roman Church*, foretold likewise so expressly in other Parts of the New Testament, an undeniable Proof of the Truth and Divine Authority of the Christian Religion.

As to the Fourth Head, which is *Policy*, *Brietius* instances, 1. In the *Spaniards*, who, he says, in the Memory of our Fathers, did

with admirable Prudence govern a large Empire, diffus'd through the World, and made up of disjointed Parts, and carried War every where, while they themselves were at Peace. His 2d Instance is that of the Commonwealth of *Venice*, than which he says there can be nothing better constituted; and that their Senators resemble so many wise and prudent Kings. His 3d Instance is of the *Dutch*, who being, according to him, nothing at first but a Mob of rebellious Fishermen, have spread their Commerce and Victories through the World, to the great Damage of the *Spaniards*; which is a plain Argument, that the latter had declined very much in the Politicks and Prudence that he ascribes to them, when they provok'd the *Dutch* to revolt by their Bigottry and Tyranny. His 4th Instance is of the *Greeks* and *Italians*, who, by their too great Prudence, (which he ought rather to have call'd Effeminacy and slavish Principles) are kept from knocking off their Shackles. His 5th Instance is of the *French*, who, in his own Time gave a sufficient Proof of what they were capable to do in Government under the Administration of the Great Cardinal. The Book being published in 1648, 'tis suppos'd he meant Cardinal *Mazarin*. 'Tis evident however, That he might have very well allow'd Cardinal *Richlieu* a Share; tho' the Administration of *Henry IV.* commonly call'd the *Great*, seems to be a more proper Instance than either of them. But 'tis probable, a few Years will demonstrate to the World, That the *French* have been guilty of as great a Failure in Politicks, in grasping at the universal Monarchy, and persecuting their Protestant Subjects, as the *Spaniards* were before them: And had not our Author been carried away with Partiality towards his own Country, he might have added the Instance of the Great *Gustavus Adolphus*, who gave signal Proofs of his Ability both for Government and War: And we may add, for the Honour of our own Country, without Flattery, (since 'tis known to all the World) That *Great Britain* has oftner than once held the Ballance of *Europe* in her Hand, and is always capable of doing so, under a good Government, as is evident (to go no higher) from the Instances of *Henry VIII.* Queen *Elizabeth*, the late King *William*, and Her present Majesty Queen *Anne*.

CHAP. V. OF GREENLAND.

HAVING given a Description of Europe in General, we come now to the particular Countries; and, according to the Method of *Bleau's Atlas*, shall begin with those which lie next the North-Pole, and first with *Greenland*.

GREENLAND.

TIS supposed this Country was so called by the *English* Discoverers, because the Water of the neighbouring Sea appear'd to them as green as Grass. The *Dutch* call it *Spitzbergen*, because of its sharp pointed Rocks and Mountains. What Part of it is yet discovered, lies from 76 to 82 Deg. N. Lat. and from Long. 30 to 50. How much further North it runs, or whether it be an Island or Continent, is not known. Our Mariners take it to be an Island; but the *Dutch* think it goes much further North, because they found the Ice not floating as at Sea, but firm and stable, as it uses to be near the Shore. The South Part of it looks towards the Promontories of *Finland* and *Lapland*, *North-Cape*, *North-Kin*, &c. On the West lies the large Country of *Groneland*; and on the East *Nova-Zembla*.

The *Dutch* ascribe the first Discovery to three of their Pilots, and have given Names to the Bays, Creeks and Promontories, according to their own Fancy. They oblige their Masters of Ships to make Charts of the Places they discover; and had we done the like, several of our Discoveries had been ascertain'd, which are now disputed. *Purchas* observes, That the *Dutch* have given Names to Places long before discovered by the *English*, as if they themselves had been the first Discoverers.

The *Dutch* say, That *Jacob Heemskirk*, Ba-

rents, and *Cornelius Ryp*, searching for a N. E. Passage, discover'd *Greenland* in 1596; tho' Sir *Hugh Willoughby* was the first Discoverer of it in 1553, as is probable by the short Notes found upon his Table after his Death, which tell us, That Aug. 14, they were 160 Leagues N. and E. from *Seynam*: They continued sailing till the 14th of September, when they landed on a Country, high, rocky, and uninhabited; from whence, by Cold and Ice, they were forced to return more S. till they came to *Arxina River* in *Lapland*, where next Spring they were all found frozen to Death in their Ship. Captain *Stephen Barroughs*, afterwards Comptroller of the Navy to Queen *Elizabeth*, in 1556, searching a N. E. Passage to the *Indies*, arrived in 112 Deg. of Long. and 76 of Lat. and sailed to 80 Deg. 11 Min. of N. Lat. where he says the Country was desolate, the Ice of a blue Colour, and great store of Fowls, which can be no other Place but *Spitzbergen*.

The best Account of this Country, is the Voyage of *Frederick Martens*, an *Hamburgher*, who sailed from the *Elb* April 5, 1671. and arrived at *Charles-Isle*, 70 Miles long, and 10 Miles broad, separate from *Greenland* by a narrow Streight, called *Foreland's-Erd*.

The external Appearance, or Face of the Country, is in general Rocks and Mountains, rising above one another, from the Shore to the Inland Parts, to a prodigious Height: And those next the Shore, tho' so high, that the tallest Ships with her Masts is no more, when compar'd with them, than a little Cottage to a Steeple, are as much inferior to those which rise higher in the Country behind them. The Rocks being red, the Foot of those Mountains look like Fire, especially before a Storm. The Tops of them are cover'd with Fogs and Snow; and the latter is marbled as if it were

R

Branches

Branches of Trees, and gives as glorious a Light by Reflection on the Sky, as if the Sun shin'd on them. Below, at the Foot of those Mountains, there are others of Ice of a great Height, which increase continually by the Rain and Snow that falls and freezes upon them: And during the Summer, when the Snow melts elsewhere, it continues in the Clefts, which makes those Mountains appear at a Distance like dry Trees, with Branches and Twigs; and when new Snow falls upon them, at first it resembles Leaves. There are 7 of those Icy Mountains in a Line, that lie betwixt the high Rocks, are reckon'd the highest Mountains in the Country, and appear of a glorious blue Colour, with abundance of Cracks and Holes in them. Some of the Rocks are one continued Stone from Top to Bottom, look like a decay'd Wall, and smell very sweet, as the green Fields do with us after Rain in the Spring. The Stones for most part are vein'd like Marble, with white, red, and yellow. They sweat at the Alteration of Weather, which gives the Snow upon them a red Colour; and the Rain does the like when it runs down from the Rocks. At the Foot of the Mountains, where there are no Hills of Ice, there lie great loose Rocks, as they had fallen by Chance upon one another, which form Caves and Holes, so that 'tis very ticklish walking upon them. They are mix'd with Stones of a grey Colour, with black Veins, and glister like Silver Ore. They seem to be much of the Nature of our Pebbles, with which we pave the Streets. Those Mountains look as if there were Earth on the Tops of them, because of their great Height; but are found to be Rock at Top as well as Bottom. Stones flung down from them, or Peices that fall off, make a Noise like Thunder. Those Mountains are full of Cracks, where the Birds build their Nests. They are very difficult and dangerous to climb or walk up, and those who do so, mark the Way they go with Chalk, that they may find it again when they return. They are so high, that when the Day is not clear, one half of them seem to be above the Clouds; and some of them look as if they would tumble down every moment. The Sharpness of the Rocks, loose Pieces of Ice, and Want of Paths, do soon

fatigue and heat those that travel on them, be it ever so cold, and quickly wear out their Shoes.

Great Peices break off many times from the Ice Hills, fall into the Sea, are far more firm and compact than the other Ice, and are form'd by the Water of the Sea into several Shapes: Some of them resemble Churches with arch'd Windows, and Doors and Pillars within of a curious Blue: Others resemble round and square Tables with blue Pillars underneath, and Icicles on the Sides, that look like fring'd Table-Cloths; smooth and white on the Top with the Snow, and sometimes Peices of Ice of various Shapes lying upon them. The Country at a distance looks like a Cloud, and is scarce to be distinguished from the Air.

The Soil, so far as yet discover'd, is in most Places nothing but Rock, Heaps of big Stones and Slates standing Edge-wise. What Mould there is, comes from Moss, wash'd down from the Hills, and the Dung of Birds: It bears Heath, Moss, Grass, and some Plants. The Herbs produc'd here are fit for the Distempers of the Climate. In *June* and *July* they grow up to bear Seed: The most remarkable are, small House-Leek, 4 Sorts of Crow's-Foot, Sorrel, Scurvy-Grass in great Quantities, but so mild, that they eat it for Sallads; Snake-Weed, an Herb like Mouse-Ear, another like Perewinkle, Cabbage-Lettice, which tastes like Cresses; Ranunculus's of several Sorts, Semperivives, Herbs like Aloes, Wall-Pepper, Prick-Madam, and others unknown to our Climate.

The Sun appears about the middle of *February*, and leaves them the first of *October*; but they have a Twilight when the Sun comes near their Horizon. From the beginning of *May* to the first of *August*, the Sun never sets; yet they reckon Night and Day all that time thus; when the Sun is West, they call it Night; and when it comes about to the East, they call it the beginning of another Day. *Martens* observes, That the Light of the Sun is then like that of a clear Moon, and Men may look on it without dazzling their Eyes. It rises no more than 33 Deg. above their Horizon, and so is not warm enough totally to melt the Snow and Ice, nor to raise the Vapours so high as to make the Air

tempe-

temperate; so that they hang for most part in thick dark Mists, and to that degree sometimes, as a Man cannot see from one End of a Ship to another. The Cold is so violent here, that it immediately freezes dead Corps; and some say, they have found them entire after having been buried 30 Years.

No Springs of fresh Water are yet discovered in the Country; so that what fresh Water they have comes from melted Snow and Ice, that runs down from the Mountains.

The AIR.

THE Air here is so cold, that the Frost is almost continual, and strongest in *April* and *May*, when Men can hardly keep Heat within them: Their Teeth chatter, and their Appetite is greater than in other Countries. During those two Months, the Weather is very unconstant. When the Wind blows hard from North and East, it's scarce possible for Men to live. West and South Winds, if any thing constant, bring much Snow, sometimes Rain, and moderate the Cold. In *June*, *July*, and *August*, the Air is for most part pretty calm. The Winds are strangely chang'd by the Clouds, so that when it is South-West in one Place, at a few Miles Distance it blows quite another Way. The Air over those Places called Ice-fields appears white, and by this Mariners know where the fix'd Ice lies. In the two last Months of the Summer, especially in *July*, the Sun shines so warm, says *Martens*, as to melt the Tar of the Ships betwixt the Seams, where the Wind cannot come at it. There is hardly any Difference of Cold betwixt Night and Day. The Meteors generated in the Air fall down like small Needles of Snow into the Sea, and cover it as if it were sprinkled with Dust, or a tender Ice, which tastes fresh. This is easily perceiv'd in a clear Sun-shine, when one looks towards a shady Place, and they sparkle like Diamonds; but the Particles are so small as not to stick to or wet ones Clothes. When the Sun shines warm towards Noon, they melt in the Air, fall like Dew, and sometimes occasion a Reflexion like a Rainbow. They have another which they call a Sea-Bow, that ap-

pears in the Atmosphere of the Water, blown up by the Wind. In the Clouds near the Sun, they have *Parelia*, or Mock-Suns, which the Seamen call Weather-Galls. They move about with the Sun Day and Night, and are much bigger in the Morning, Evening, and Night, than in the Day-time. When the Cold increases, the Sea and other Waters send forth a Vapour, which is turn'd into Rain or Snow in the Air, and smells like Fog. When great Vapours rise constantly during the shining of the Sun, 'tis a Sign the Cold is remitting. When the Air is over-burthen'd with them, they last a great while with a constant Wind. From those small Vapours, the Snow is first generated, and falls down in various Shapes like Needles, Crosses, Roses, and Stars, according as the Cold is more or less strong; but if not dispers'd by Wind, it falls down in Clusters.

Their HARBOURS.

1. *South-Haven*, where they commonly repair their Ships: It is large and commodious, so that sometimes 40 Ships at a time have Anchor'd conveniently in it. Here they take in fresh Water, which runs plentifully from the melted Snow and Ice on the Mountains; for the Rivers, as far as has yet been discovered, are brackish. It has high Mountains on both Sides, especially on the Left, there is one call'd the *Bee-Hive*, and another the *Devil's-Huck*, which is commonly covered with a thick Mist, that darkens the Haven when driven into it by the Wind. Within this Harbour lies the Island of *Deadmen*, so called, because it is the Burying-Place for such as die there: They dig no Graves, but heap Stones upon the Coffin. Here are several others called *Fowl-Islands*, because of the vast multitude of Fowls that breed there.

2. *Maurice's-Bay*, where some People have winter'd. Near this are the only Houses in the Country, being a few Cottages and Warehouses built by the *Dutch* for making their Oil, where they have a great Gun to defend them. This Place they call *Smearbourg*, and the *Harlingish Cookery*. All other Nations burn their Houses when they leave the Place.

3. The Northern Bay, in which there is an Island by the Dutch called *Vogel-Song*, because of the great Noise which the Fowls make there. This, with *South-Haven*, and one called *Safe-Harbour*, are the most known of any Harbours of the Country.

4. *Monyers-Bay*, which lies furthest North on the West Part of *Greenland*.

5. *Rosfield*, so called, because it abounds with Deer.

6. *Muscle-Haven*, which lies at the Mouth of the *Weygatt*: North of which, *Martens* says, he sail'd to 81 Deg. and saw 7 Islands further North, but could not approach them because of the Ice. The lowest Part of the Country lies about this Harbour.

7. *Alderman Freeman's Inlet*, by the Dutch called *Walter Thymen's Fort*: It is the large Mouth of a River, which is not yet discover'd.

The Voyages mention also the *English*, *Hamburg*, *Danish*, and *Magdalen* Havens, with one called the *Bay of Love*; but not so distinctly as to enable us to judge whether they be different from those already mention'd with Dutch Names. They take Notice likewise of the Haven of *Weygatt*; as to which, they do not know whether it goes through the Country, but say it is not the Streights of *Weygatt*; of which so many Things are writ: They call it by this Name, because of the Winds which frequently blow there: And about this Place, they tell us the Country is low, and adorn'd with small Hills.

The whole Country is encompassed with Ice, which makes the Approach difficult.

Their BEASTS.

1. **W**Hite Bears, which are quite otherwise shap'd than those commonly seen with us: They have long Heads like Dogs, and bark like a hoarse Dog: They are slenderer, and much swifter than other Bears. Their Hair is long and soft, like Wool; their Noses, Mouths and Talons, are black. Their Skins make comfortable Clothes for those that travel in the Winter, and are dress'd at *Spitzbergen*, by treading them in hot Saw-Dust, which sucks up the Fat, and dries them. The Fat of their Feet melted out is used for Pains in the Limbs, and given to Women in Child-bed

to hasten Delivery. It likewise occasions plentiful Sweat. It is spongy, and feels very soft, and is best when tried up there, for if it be long kept, it grows foul and stinking. Their other Fat is like Sewer; when tried up, it becomes thin like Train-Oil, and the Skippers many times sell it as such; yet it is nothing so good, and is chiefly used for Lamps, because it does not stink so much as the other. *Martens* says, if it were tried up with *Orris-Root*, it would keep better, and smell well. Their Flesh is whitish and fat, like that of a Sheep. The Seamen say, That it makes the Hair of those who eat it grey. The Milk of the Females is very white and fat, and they are so fond of their Young, that they will rather be kill'd than leave them. Their Teeth burn'd and powder'd, and taken inwardly, disperses congeal'd Blood. They feed upon the Carcasses of Whales, and likewise upon Birds and Eggs. They eat Men alive when they can master them; so that when Sailors travel any where in the Country, they carry Guns and Lances for their Defence. Their Heads are very strong, and when struck with some Cudgels as would knock down a Bullock, they don't matter it. They roll away the Stones of Burying-Places, tear up the Coffins, and eat the dead Men. They dive under Water when pursued, or in Search of their Prey at Sea.

Some of them are 6 Foot high, and 14 Foot long. An Hundred Pound Weight of Fat has been taken out of one of them. When any of them are killed, and not carried off, others run away with them in their Mouths, and eat them. When they are attacked, they run to help one another, and the old ones will rather suffer themselves to be kill'd, than leave their Young. The largest are those called Water-Bears, which live upon what they catch at Sea, and have sometimes been seen 12 Miles from Shore. The Story, That they lick their Young into Shape, is false; for the Cubs are found in the Bellies of their Dams perfectly form'd.

2. Deer of a greyish yellow Colour, with Cloven Feet, and Horns like a Hart or Elk: They have three or four Branches on each Side about two Inches broad, and a Foot long, They have long Ears, and short

Tails.

Tails. When they see Men, they run away; and if you stand still, they do so, which is the Time to fire at them. They feed on Grass and Moss, and grow very fat in three Months time, which enables them to hold out during the Winter; yet many of them are then starved; and in the Spring they are generally lean. They are very good Meat when roasted.

3. Foxes, which don't much differ in Shape from ours; some of them have their Heads black, and their Bodies white; and they make a Noise at a Distance as if a Man laugh'd: They feed generally upon Birds and Eggs, but for most part have short Commons.

4. Sea-Dogs, called Rubbs or Seals: They are reckon'd among Beasts, because they live by Land as well as by Water. On their Feet they have 5 Claws, like Fingers join'd together, with a thick Skin like that on a Goose's Foot. The most known is the Seal, called Sall-Dogs and Rubbe by the Germans. Their Heads are like that of a Dog with cropp'd Ears, but not all of one Shape. They have Beards about their Mouths, and Hair on their Noses and Eye-Lids, but seldom above 4 on the latter. Their Eyes are large, hollow, and clear; their Skins cover'd with short Hair, and of several Colours; some of them spotted like Tygers: They have sharp Teeth, with which they will break a Stick as thick as ones Arm. Their Tails are short; they bark like a hoarse Dog, and their young ones mew like Cats. They are very numerous in some Places of this Country, and lie in Multitudes on the Ice-Fields. Where they abound most, there are but few Whales, because there is no Food for them. The Seals live on small Fish and Sea-Worms. They will stand upon their Defence, pursue and bite Men. The biggest are from 5 to 8 Foot long, and some of them yield half a Barrel of Fat, which lies about three Inches thick betwixt the Skin and Flesh, and makes the best Train Oil. Their Flesh is black, and they abound with Blood. They have large Livers, Lungs and Hearts, which the Sailors eat sometimes, after they draw out the Rankness with Water; but it is loathsome Food. They are hard to be killed, and are generally knock'd down with long Poles upon the Ice-Fields: The Sailors first raise them with a Shour, upon which

they stretch out their Necks like Dogs, and bark, which gives them the better Opportunity to fell them. When they run away, they squirt out a yellow Dung, and stink abominably.

Their BIRDS.

They saw no Land-Fowls here, but one of the bigness of a Lark, with a square Bill, which feeds upon Worms; and another they call Snow-Fowl, of the Size and Colour of a Sparrow, with a white Belly: Being almost starv'd, they flee to the Ships in great Numbers, and are so tame, that the Mariners take them as they please; but as soon as they are fed, they flee away. There is great Variety of Water-Fowl, and in such Numbers, that when they flee they darken the Sun; and at rising make such a Noise, that one cannot hear another speak: The most remarkable are, 1. One by the Dutch called *Raadsheer*, white as Snow, except his Bill, Feet and Eyes. 2. A *Diver*, almost as big as a Duck, with a thin crooked sharp Bill two Inches long, black Feathers, and red Legs and Feet. They swim very fast: They have little Horns above their Eyes, and a cross one underneath them; continue a long time under Water, and are tolerable Meat. 3. The *Lumb*, much like the other, but his Belly is white, and he croaks like a Frog: They build in the Mountains, and carry their young ones in their Beaks to the Sea, to teach them to swim and dive, and will be killed rather than abandon them. They are not good Food. 4. A *Mew*, with a crooked Bill, and a Bunch under it, a white Belly, grey Wings and Back, black Pinions, Legs and Feet, and a red Ring about his Eyes: The Seamen take them with Hooks baited with Whales Flesh. 5. The *Dung-hunter*, that pursues the *Mew* for his Dung, which, as soon as he drops, the other eats it, and leaves him. 6. The *Allen*, which pursues and beats the other Birds, till they vomit their Prey, which he eats. 7. *Mallamucks*, which feed on dead Whales, and are so greedy of their Prey, and loth to leave it, that they suffer the Seamen to fell them with Sticks in great Numbers. They eat till they vomit, and tumble about in it. 8. *Mountain-Ducks*, which

which are very good Meat, but their Fat is thrown away, because it tastes like Train-Oil, and makes Men sick. The Birds of Prey are not so good to eat as others, till they be hung up by the Legs, that the Train-Oil may run out, and the Air blow through them. All these Birds come at certain Times, and abide here as long as the Sun shines, and then return to their former Places altogether in great Flocks.

Of their FISH, and the WHALE.

THE Whale-Fishing being the chief Occasion of People's going to *Greenland*, we shall give a brief Account of them from *Martens*. He says, they differ from other Whales in their Fins and Mouths, which are without Teeth; but instead of them, have long black horny Flakes, all jogg'd like Hair, and somewhat broad: They differ from the Fin-Fish in their Fins; the Fin-Fish has a great Fin on his Back, where the Whale has none; but he has two behind his Eyes, cover'd with a thick black Skin, delicately marbled with white Strokes, or Representations of Trees, Houses, &c. With these he steers himself, as a Boat is row'd with Oars. He says, in the Tail of one of them, there was marbled very delicately and exactly the Number 1222. Their Tails don't stand up as the Tails of most other Fish, but lie Horizontally, as those of the Fin-Fish and Dolphin, and are from 3 to 4 Fathoms broad. The Head is the 3d Part of the Fish, and some of them more. Their Lips are plain, somewhat bended like an S, and end underneath the Eyes before the two Fins: They are smooth, and quite black, round like the Quarter of a Circle; and when they draw them together, they lock in one another. Within, in the uppermost Lip, is the Whale-bone, of a brown, black, and yellow Colour, with Streaks of several Colours. The Whale-bone of one of the young ones is blue. Just before, in the under Lip, there is a Cavity or Hole, which fits the upper Lip exactly as a Sheath does a Knife, and through this Hole he draws the Water he spouts out. The Whale-bone hangs down on both Sides within his Mouth, all hairy, like a Horse's Hair. The Whale-bone of some of them

is bended like a Scymiter, and in others like a Half-Moon: In one Side, all on a Row, there are 250 Pieces of Whale-bone, and as many on the other, besides the small Whale-bone which is not regarded, because they cannot well come at it to cut it out. The middlemost is the greatest and longest, and is sometimes two or three Mens length: It lies in a flat Row, one Peice by another, is broad at Top, where it sticks to the upper Lip, and towards the Root cover'd with white Sinews; which, when boil'd, smells pleasantly. There grows small Whale-bone at the Root of the greater, and they make of it Boxes, Handles for Knives, Walking-Sticks, &c. *Martens* is of Opinion, That Packthreads and Clothes might be made of their Hair, as the *Spaniards* do of the *Sempervivae Aloes*, which they drefs like Hemp. It is a peculiar Trade to cut out the Whale-bones, and requires abundance of Iron Tools. The Tongue lies among the Whale-bones, is close fix'd to the under Chap, is very large and white, with black Spots at the Edges; it has a soft spongy Fat, and cannot be easily cut, so that it is generally flung away, tho' it would yield 6 or 7 Barrels of Train-Oil: It is pleasant Food to the Sword-Fish, the Whale's mortal Enemy. Upon his Head there is a Bump. Before his Eyes and Fins, at the Top of this Bump, on each Side, there is a Spout-hole bended like an S, out of which he blows the Water so fiercely, that it roars like a great Wind. When he is wounded, his blowing resembles the roaring of the Sea in a great Storm. His Head is somewhat flat, and slopes downward like the Ridge of a House to the under Lip, which is broader than any Part of the Whale's Body, and broadest in the middle behind the Bump; and between that and the Fins are his Eyes, not much bigger than those of a Bullock, with Eye-lids and Hair like Men's. The Chrystal of the Eye is not much bigger than a Pea, clear and transparent, and in some white, and in others yellowish. The Eyes lie low, almost at the End of the upper Lip. He does not hear when he spouts the Water, and is easiest struck at that time. His Belly and Back are quite red; but under the Belly they are commonly white, and some of them coal-black. They look very beautiful when the Sun shines on them, and the small

small clear Waves over them glister like Silver; Some of them are white all over, and some of them are half white; but they lose much of their beautiful Colour when they grow dry. The outward Skin is thin, like Parchment, and is easily pull'd off when the Fish grows hot, which they frequently do by hard swimming, and then stink alive. The Yard of the Whale is a strong Sinew, and from 6 to 8 Foot long. Where the Yard is fix'd, the Skin is doubled, so that it lies like a Knife in a Sheath. The *Puenda* of the Female is shap'd like that of Four-Leg'd Beasts: They have Breasts, with Nipples at the Sides of it, like those of a Cow. When they couple, they stand upright, with their Heads out of the Water. How long they carry their Young, is uncertain. They are never observ'd to have more than two young ones at a time. Their Sperm, when fresh, smells like Wheaten Flower boil'd in Water, and may be drawn out in Threads, like hot Sealing-Wax, or Glew. When cold, it turns to a Musk Colour, and smells strong. *Martens* says, he has try'd several Ways to keep it sweet and fresh, but could never make it like that *Sperma-Ceti* which the Apothecaries sell in their Shops. He says, they may take whole Pails-full of it out of the Water, for it swims upon the Sea like Fat; as does that of the Sea-Horses and Seals. The Seamen make twisted Whips of the Sinews of the Yard. The Bones of the Whales are hard, like those of great Four-footed Beasts; but porous like a Sponge, and fill'd with Marrow; and when that is consumed, the Holes are as big as those of a Honey-Comb. They have two great and strong Bones, which hold up the under Lip: They lie against one another in Form of a Half-Moon: Some of them are 20 Foot long of a Side. The Flesh of the Whales is coarse and hard, like that of a Bull, mix'd with many Sinews: It is very dry and lean when boil'd, because their Fat lies wholly betwixt the Flesh and the Skin. When the Sailors have a Mind to eat of it, they cut great Pieces off before the Tail, which is tenderest, and boil it: Some of it looks green and blue, like powder'd Beef: The Fat is mix'd with Sinews, which holds the Oil as a Sponge does Water. The other strong

Sinews are chiefly about the Tail, with which he turns and winds himself as a Rudder does a Ship. He swims as swiftly as a Bird flies, and makes a Track in the Sea like a great Ship under Sail. The middling sort of Whales here are about 50 or 60 Foot long, and commonly yield 70, 80, or 90, Kardels of Fat. *Martens* mentions one Whale that yielded 130. Besides the uppermost thin Skin, there is another of about an Inch thick, and of the same Colour with the other; but both are so brittle when dry, that they are of no Value; and the Softness of the Skins is reckon'd to be the Cause why the Whale, tho' the strongest and biggest of all Creatures in the Water, cannot make much use of his Strength. He says nothing of the inward Parts, but only that the Guts are of a Flesh Colour, and the Dung within them yellow. Their Food is Sea-Snails, Herrings, and other small Fish. They are not very courageous, considering their Strength; for when they see a Man, or a Long-Boat, they dive and run away: But when he is in Danger, he values a Man no more than a Straw, and frequently beats the Long-Boats to pieces; but great Ships are too hard for him, and when he strikes against them with his Tail, he receives more Hurt than he does. Sometimes he runs away with Thousands of Fathoms of Rope-Line, a great deal swifter than a Ship can sail, or a Bird fly. In the Spring they keep Westward from *Spitzbergen*, near *Old Greenland*, and the Island of *John Mayen*, and then run Eastward to *Spitzbergen*. After them come the Fin-Fish, and then the Whales do probably retire to warmer Seas. They have Ailments as well as other Beasts, and are mightily tormented by Lice, and sometimes leap out of the Water as if they were in an Agony. Before a Tempest, they beat the Water about with their Tails like Dust. They are observ'd to have the greatest Strength when they strike Side-ways. If they escape, their Wounds are soon heal'd, because of their Fat; but the Wound always leaves a white Scar behind it.

The young ones, when brought forth, are as big as an Hogthead, and they suck their Dams, whose Milk is very white and sweet, but tastes Fishy.

Of the Taking of the WHALE

When the Fishermen hear a Whale blow or spout, they call into the Ship, *Fall, Fall*; then every one gets into their Long-Boats, which for most Part contain 6 or 7 Men: They row till they come near; then the Harponier takes his Harpoon, or sharp Iron, which resembles an Arrow fix'd to a Stick, and strikes him. They take Care to have Rope enough, otherwise, when the Whale dives straight down, as he frequently does, he would sink the Boat: And to prevent the Rope's setting the Boat on Fire when it is drawn quick, they take Care to water it sufficiently; for he draws many Hundred Fathom of Rope under Water with incredible Force. The Line fasten'd to the Harpoon is 6 or 7 Fathom long, and call'd the Forerunner: It is made of the finest and softest Hemp, and not pitch'd, that it may the more easily follow the Harpoon. Join'd to this, there's a whole Heap of Lines, divided into 3, 4, or 5 Parts, of 80, 90, and 100 Fathoms each, made of strong Hemp well tarr'd. If the Whale run under Water, they tie more and more to it, and if there be not enough in one Long-Boat, they make use of that which is in the next; and they take special Care that they don't entangle and overset the Boat. The Steersman observes which Way the Rope goes, and steers the Boat accordingly, that it may run exactly out before; for the Whale runs away with the Long-Boat as fast as the Wind, and would overturn it, if the Line be not kept straight. If the Harpioneer can, he darts the Harpoon just behind the Spout-Hole, or in the thick Fat of the Whale's Back, which makes him spout more Blood, and dye sooner than when wounded in the Belly, or through the Guts, except they be wounded in the Privy-Parts, which puts them to extream Pain; and even when they are almost dead, if they be wounded there, it causes their whole Body to tremble. About the Head, the Harpoon does them but little Hurt, of which the Whale seems to be sensible: And therefore when struck at, rather exposes his Head than any other Part, because the Harpoon gets out easier there, and so he escapes. When the Whale is struck,

the other Long-Boats row before, and take notice which Way the Line stands, and sometimes pull at it. If they find it stiff, 'tis a Sign the Whale still pulls with Strength; but if it hang loose, and the Long-Boat lie equally high before and behind in the Water, they pull it in, but lay it in Order, that the Whale may have it easily again if he recover Strength. If he run on a Level, they take Care not to give him too much, lest he should entangle himself about a Rock, and pull out the Harpoon, which he does sometimes. 'Tis observ'd, That the fat ones don't sink immediately when dead, but the lean do, and come up again after some Days. When dead, they immediately begin to stink, and their Flesh ferments like Beer or Ale, and the Steam enflames Men's Eyes if they be weak. When he runs under Ice, where he cannot be follow'd, they cut off their Line, if they cannot pull out the Harpoon; for they always retire to the Ice if they be near, and frequently endanger the Boats. When they are wounded, they spout so loud, that one may hear them as far as a Cannon; but when he grows feeble, the Noise decreases, and sounds like the bubbling of an empty Bottle in the Water, which is a Sign of his being just a dying. Some of them spout Blood to the last, cover the Men and Sloops, and tinge the Sea with it. They likewise fling up a fattish Substance, which looks like Sperm, and is greedily devoured by the Birds call'd *Mallmucks*, and others, who eat them while alive. Sometimes they are surrounded with Boats, and killed with Lances; but this is a dangerous Way for the Men and Boats. The Females, when with Young, are the most dangerous, and make the longest Defence.

2. The Fin-Fish is as long as a Whale, but scarce so bulky by two thirds: He is known by the Fins on his Back near his Tail. The Knob on his Head has a long Hole, thro' which he blows up the Water higher, and with more Force, than the Whale. His Back is not so much bended as that of the Whale. His Lips are brown, and twisted like a Rope, and the Whale-bone hangs to the upper Lip. He is not black like the Whale, but colour'd like a Tench. He is not so fat as the Whale, yet is more dangerous to take, because he moves quicker,

and

and is soonest kill'd by Lances. 'Tis dangerous to strike him with a Harpoon, especially near the Ice; for by his quick Motion, he sometimes pulls the Boat and Men under it. When those Fish appear, there are no more Whales to be seen.

The Ships that go a Whale-fishing carry 30 or 40 Men, and sometimes more, and have generally 5 or 6 Sloops apiece. The largest Ships hold from 800 to 1000 Cardels or Barrels of Fat, and the lesser from 400 to 700. In each Ship there are 60 Lances, 6 Sea-Horse Lances, 40 Harpoons, and 10 long ones to strike Whales under Water, 6 small Sea-Horse Harpoons, and 30 Lines of 80 or 90 Fathom each. The Scurvy is the common Distemper in this Voyage, besides Fevers and Imposthumes; and the Surgeons provide accordingly.

3. The *Sea-Horse*, by some call'd the *Morse*, *Melrusk*, and *Horse-Whale*, is shap'd much like the Seal, but as big as an Ox. Their Legs and Claws are like the Seals, but their Nails short. Their Head is thicker, rounder and stronger: Their Skin an Inch thick, chiefly about the Neck, cover'd with short Hair. They have two great long Teeth in their upper Jaw, about a Foot and two Foot long, and sometimes longer: They hang below their under Lips. They are more esteem'd than Ivory, as being whiter, firmer and heavier, and fit for Handles of Knives, Boxes, &c. The *Furlanders* make Buttons of them, and use them against Poyson and malignant Diseases, wherein they excel that called the *Unicorn's Horn*. Their Mouth is broad before, like a Bullock's, with Bristles above and below, hollow within, and as big as a Straw: The Seamen make Cramp-rings of them. He has two Semi-circular Nostrils, from which he blows the Water like the Whale, but with less Noise. Their Eyes are at a good distance from their Nose, and red like Blood. Their Eye-lids are like those of Four-footed Beasts. Their Eyes are like the Seals: Their Tongues as large as a Neat's-Tongue, and when new boil'd, eatable; but if kept two or three Days, tastes like Train-Oil. Their Necks are thick, so that they seldom turn their Head about. Their Flesh is like that of a Hog, and their Heart and Liver eatable. Of their Yards, which are hard Bone, Handles of Knives

are made. They feed upon Herbs and Fish. They lie in great Numbers upon the Ice, and roar most terribly. They sleep and snore either upon the Water or Ice, and dive like the Seals. They are stout, undaunted Creatures, and stand by one another as long as they have Life; and tho' wounded, make to the Boats, endeavour to get in, pursue them a great way, and sometimes strike Holes in them with their Teeth, or jump in and overset them. They defend their Young as long as they have Breath. They are chiefly taken for their Teeth, of which there are many that are hollow, and worth nothing. When they lie upon the Ice in Numbers, one of them keeps Watch, and when Boats come near, he strikes the next Morse with his Tooth, and so the Signal goes round; upon which they rise up, stand on their fore Foot, look and roar terribly, and make to the Water. The Skin about their Neck is thicker than that of an Elk, and if dressed, would be as good as the best Buff, and very light. They frequently sleep on the Shore, and if they can, get up to high Places. They scarcely value Shot, or Blows, but are easiest kill'd with Javelins. Sometimes Sailors make a good Voyage with their Oil and Teeth, when the Whale-Fishing does not answer.

4. The *Dragon-Fish* has two Fins on his Back, the foremost of which has long Strings, about two Inches high above the Back. He has no Gills, but blowing Holes in his Neck, and on each Side of them two short Fins, and underneath a broad one. Beneath his Belly he has a long narrow Fin, that reaches to his Tail. His Head is oblong, composed of many Bones. He has a raised Part before his Nose. His Tail is about an Inch broad. His Body is long, thin and round; and his Skin is greyish, and shines like Silver.

5. The *Butskopf*, or *Place's-Head*: His Head is blunt, with a Beak of an equal bigness all along, and of a brown Colour marbled. His Fins are like the Dolphin's: His Tail like a Whale's. He has a Spout-Hole above in his Neck, out of which he spouts Water. They are from 16 to 20 Foot long. His Back brown, and his Belly white. They run near the Ships, and keep Company with them a long time.

All these Fishes swim against the Wind, as do the Whales, Fin-Fish, and Dolphins, Mr. *Martens* is of Opinion, That when they tumble, it is not by Way of Play or Diversion, but that they run away before the Storm, and are sensible of it by some Pain in their Bodies a while before it comes, because they generally continue to tumble till the East Wind, which torments them, ceases. They saw another Fish here resembling the Butskopf, but larger, and with a Fin three times as high, by which they may easily be taken as they tumble.

6. *White-Fish*, as large as a *Butskopf*, shap'd like a Whale, without Fins on his Back, but two on his Belly, and a Tail like a Whale's. He has a Spout-Hole on his Head, is of a yellowish Colour, and one of them yields a Barrel of Fat, which is soft, and not much valued. When there's Plenty of them, 'tis a Sign of a good Whale-Fishing, for their Food is the same.

7. The *Unicorn*, has no Fin on his Back, but a Spout-Hole in his Neck. When they swim swiftly, they say they hold up their Horns, or rather Teeth, out of the Water, and go in great Shoals. They are shap'd like a Seal. Their undermost Fins and Tail are like the Whale's; some of them are white, others a dappled grey. Their Bellies are white, and they are from 16 to 20 Foot long.

8. The *Saw-Fish*, or *Sword-Fish*, has a long broad Bone fix'd to his Nose, with sharp Teeth like a Saw on each Side of it. He has two Fins on his Back; that next the Tail is hollow, like a Sickle. He has four underneath his Belly, viz. two on each Side. His Tail is like a Piece of Board pointed behind and underneath, but not divided. His Shape, from Top to Tail, is like a Man's Arm. His Eyes stand high out of his Head. His Nostrils are oblong. His Mouth is directly under his Eyes; and the Fishes are from 2 to 20 Foot long. They are mortal Enemies to the Whale and Fin-Fish, about which they gather in great Numbers, and when they kill them, eat only their Tongue. Sometimes they will sing'y attack a Whale; and in calm Weather the Whale-Fishers lie by till they kill the Whale; and upon the Approach of the Boats, the Sword-Fish being frightened, retreats.

9. The *Hay*. Of this Fish there are several Sorts: They have two Fins on their Backs, and 6 underneath their Belly. Their Tail is of a peculiar Shape, one Part like half of that of the Sword-Fish, and the other shap'd like a Lilly. He has a long Nose. His Mouth is shap'd like the Sword-Fish, is full of sharp Teeth, of which there are three Rows above and below. His Eyes are oblong, and very clear. He has 5 Gills on each Side. His Skin is hard and thick, and rough if struck upwards. They are of a grey Colour, and from one to three Fathom long. They bite great Pieces from the Whale, as if they had been dug out with Shovels, and they devour all the Fat of the Whales under Water; whence Seamen take them up sometimes half devour'd. The Hays have large Livers, which yield Oil. The Flesh of their Backs being cut off, and hung up some Days in the Air, the Seamen think good Meat, and boil or roast it when scarce of other Provisions. The least are best. They devour and eat Men if they catch them swimming in the Sea. They are caught by a great Hook baited with Flesh, and fasten'd to a strong Iron Chain.

The other Fish here are the *Craw-Fish*, without a Tail, otherwise call'd the *Sea-Spider*. They are shap'd like Lobsters, and eatable. They have also *Garnels* or *Prauns*; and a Fish call'd the *Louse of the Whale*, with Scales as hard as Prauns. Their Head is like that of a Louse, with 4 Horns. The two short ones, which stand out before, have Knobs like the Sticks of Kettle-Drums. They have 6 Plates on their Backs: Their foremost Legs are crooked, like a Half-Moon, with sharp Points, by which they fasten in the Skin of the Whale, and bite pieces out of them. Whales are most annoy'd with them in warm Weather. They have also those call'd the *Star-Fish*, of two Sorts, some larger, and some lesser, of a reddish Colour, with 15 Rows of Knobs, which together make the Form of a Star of 5 outward bended Points.

They have also Fishes here call'd *Rotz-Fish*, *Sea-Qualms*, or *Slime-Fishes*, of several Sorts: They seem to be nothing else but Slime, and are transparent. Some of them resemble flat Snails, and instead of Fins, have Stalks like Feathers. Some call them

314-N
Pain
might
as
is ca
dissol
two
those
white
dle.
in th
breac
red l
Eyes
then
easily
Colo
Egg:
tle,
is ca
rent,
and
such
with
of a
in t
Sun.
them
Har-
Toac
dicul
Know
Rose-
inde
call'
call'
semb
Spou
but
all th

T
Air
if c
fogg
dark
clou
black
obse
Mus

Sea-Nettles, because they occasion a burning Pain like a Nettle. They cleanse the Sea mightily, for all sort of Filth sticks to them, as a Bur does to Cloth. The first of them is call'd a *Sea-Mayfly*, are transparent, and dissolve, if held in one's Hand. They have two Fins under their Neck, resembling those of Whales. They are shap'd like white Rowls, broad and thick in the middle. The Head is broad and round, split in the middle, and has small Horns of the breadth of a Straw. They have 6 little red Knobs on their Heads, suppos'd to be Eyes. Their Mouth is split, and from thence to the Belly are its Guts, which are easily seen, because he is transparent. The Colour of the Fish is like the White of an Egg: It moves in the Water like a Sea-Nettle, and the Birds feed on them. The 2d is call'd the *Snail-Slime-Fish*: He is transparent, flat and round about, like a Snail; and upon the Land are found Shells of such flat Snails; on each Side are Stalks, with which he moves in the Sea. They are of a brown Colour, and are as numerous in those Seas, as Atoms of Dust in the Sun. 'Tis suppos'd, the Whales feed on them, as well as the Birds. The 3d is the *Hat-Slime-Fish*; his upper Part resembles a Toad-stool. They go up and down perpendicularly in the Water, and have a blue Knob in the middle. The 4th is call'd the *Rose-Slime-Fish*, being round as a Circle, and indented on the Edges. There is another call'd the *Slime-Fish like a Cap*; and a 6th call'd the *Slime-Fish like a Fountain*, resembling a Fountain with 8 Streams or Spouts. Their Body is as white as Milk; but their Streams sometimes change into all the Colours of the Rainbow.

Of the SEA.

THE Colour of the Sea changes here according to that of the Sky: If the Air be clear, the Sea is as blue as Saphir; if cloudy, it is green as an Emerald; if foggy with Sun-shine, 'tis yellow: if it be dark, it looks like Indigo. In stormy and cloudy Weather, 'tis of the Colour of black Lead. The Stream among the Ice is observ'd to run Southward, and at the *Musile-Harven* it runs Northward. There is

nothing certain as to its ebbing and flowing; but when the Winds are high, the Water is observ'd to be higher about the Land than at other Times. The Water in a Calm is very clear, so that one may see 12 or 14 Fathom deep. The Waves begin to rise first from a small Breeze of Wind; and as the Wind increaseth, they grow higher and bigger, till they grow as high as Mountains, and break with Foam, which in a hard Wind blows like Dust, and the Waves fall over one another with great Noise. At Night, when it dashes much, it shines like Fire.

Of the ICE.

THE West-Ice begins to break in *April* and *May*. The Ice here is not so smooth as to slide on, nor transparent, but looks like Loaf-Sugar. Where 'tis fix'd on the Sea, it reflects a Snow-white Brightness on the Sky. The Sea dashes against those Ice-fields, which occasions several fine Figures, like Mountains, Tables, Chapels, and all sorts of Beasts. They are much deeper under the Water than high above it, and as hard as Stone. The small Ice-fields are dangerous for Ships, and many times break them to pieces; but they fasten themselves to the greater ones with large Ice-hooks fix'd to strong Cables. Their best Defence against the smaller Pieces of Ice are dead Whales, or their Tails and Fins hung round their Ships; and sometimes they keep them off with long Poles and Hooks. The Ice rises sometimes 16 Fathoms above the Water, and often freezes to the bottom, and at other times about 35 Fathoms under Water; and that below is more salt, and easier melted than that above. It makes a terrible Noise when it freezes or breaks, is sometimes of a delicate blue Colour, and the deeper the bluer.

The Trade from *England* to those Parts, begun a little before *Stephen Burroughs* had been there in search of a N. E. Passage to the *Indies*: For we find, That in 1553, King *Philip* and Queen *Mary* gave Commission to certain Merchants to trade to *Russia*, and made them a Corporation, which not only begun a profitable Trade to those Northern Countries, but employ'd several Ships

to find out a N. E. Passage to the *Indies*, particularly *Arthur Pett* and *Charles Jackman* about 1580, who 'tis probable were also upon *Greenland*. None but the *English* frequented those Seas till 1578, that a *Dutch* Ship came to *Cola*, and a Year or two after another to *St. Nicholas*, by the Advice of an *Englishman*, who oppos'd the Company. In 1594, the *Dutch* employ'd *Barents*, and others to find out a Passage to the *Indies*; and in 1596, they sent 3 Pilots upon the same Design, who first came to *Bear Island*, and then to *Greenland*. In 1603, *Stephen Bennet* went as far as *Cherry Island*, from whence he brought *Lead-Oar*. In 1608, *Henry Hudson* was sent to discover the North Pole, went to 82 Deg. where he saw several Islands beyond that, and gave Names to several Places of *Greenland* formerly discover'd.

The Company being inform'd of the great Number of *Morses* and *Whales* in those Parts, they sent two Ships thither, which kill'd many *Morses*. In 1610, they sent out the Ship *Amity*, *Jonas Pool* Commander, a *Whale-fishing*, who fell upon the Land formerly discover'd, tho' not regarded, and call'd it *Greenland*, either because of the green Moss, or because the Sea about it look'd green. He call'd it also, *King James's New Land*; but that Name was soon forgot. He seiz'd the Country for the Use of his Masters, and for that end set up a red Cross, with Writing upon it. He made some Oil there, and brought home one of those call'd *Unicorn's Horns*. In 1611, the Company sent two Ships more thither, where they killed several *Whales*, and 500 *Morses*. In 1612, they sent two more, which killed 17 *Whales*, with some *Morses*, and made 180 Tun of Oil. That same Year, a *Dutch* and a *Spanish* Ship were conducted thither by two *English* Pilots, who were threaten'd by the *English* Ships; but notwithstanding made a good Voyage. In 1613, the Company sent 7 Ships, with a Patent to prohibit all Strangers to fish there, except the *Muscovia* Company. They found 15 *Dutch*, *French* and *Flemish* Ships there, with some *English* Interlopers: To some of them the General gave Liberty, with others he compounded for half their Fish, and others he drove away, after taking the *English* Sailors from them. This Year they discover'd

Hope Island, and others to the West, but returned home not very well laden. In 1614, the Company sent 13 great Ships, and two *Pinnaces* well arm'd, and the *Dutch* sent 18, 4 of which were Men of War; so that being stronger than we, they stay'd and fish'd, as we also did; but both return'd poorly laden. Our Men discover'd the Country then to 80 Degrees. They took possession of several Parts of the Coast for the King, and set up a Cross with his Arms upon it in Lead; and the *Dutch* did the like afterwards in the same Places for the Prince of *Orange*. In 1615, the Company sent two great Ships and two great *Pinnaces*; but the *Dutch* having 14 Ships there, ours had not their full Loading. That Year the King of *Denmark* sent 3 Men of War there, with an *English* Pilot, to demand Custom for fishing on his Island, as he call'd it; but it was deny'd him, and the Right of the *English* asserted. In 1616, the Company sent 8 great Ships, and 2 *Pinnaces*, which being appointed to several Harbours, they return'd full laden. The *Dutch* sent 4 Ships, which made but a bad Voyage. In 1617, the Company sent 14 Ships and 2 *Pinnaces*. They met 11 Sail of *Dutch* in *Hornsound*, from whom they took their Fish, and their *English* Sailors, and then forc'd them away. This Year the Company's Ships made 1900 Tun of Oil. In 1618, the *English* forc'd the *Dutch* again from *Hornsound*, and took from them some of their Goods, with Ordnance and Ammunition, which were afterwards restor'd.

A new Company of *English*, *Scotts* and *Zealanders*, procur'd a Grant to fish in those Parts: Upon which the former Adventurers join'd with the *East-India* Company, and sent out 13 Ships and 2 *Pinnaces*; but they were worsted by 23 *Zealanders*, which made it an unfortunate Voyage. In 1619, the Company sent 9 Ships; but the *Dutch* being there before them, they made a losing Voyage; and one of their great Ships lying at Anchor under a Mountain, a great Piece of Ice fell down from it, kill'd and wound several of their Men, and shatter'd their Ship so much, that she was with Difficulty repair'd. The *Dutch* at the same time being fully laden, did so much undersell them, that they gave over trading thither as a Company.

But Mr. *Ralph Freeman*, and others of the Company, continu'd it, and in 1620 sent 7 Ships, who return'd but with half Loading. In 1621, they sent 8 Ships, which, notwithstanding the Harm done them by the *Dutch*, brought home 1100 Tun of Oil. In 1622, they sent out 9 Ships, one of which was lost in the Ice, and the rest brought home 1300 Tun of Oil.

We find nothing more worth relating till 1630, when the Company sent a Ship commanded by *William Goodler*, who quickly made up his Lading; and sending 8 of his Men on Shore to kill Deer, they lost their Way in a Fog; and the Ships going off because of the Ice, they were forc'd to Winter there, and took up their Habitation in the Couper's Tent, within which they built another with 4 Cabbins, which they furnish'd with the Skins of Bears, Deer and Foxes, and Pieces of old Sails. Having lost their Sloop, with the Deer they had formerly kill'd, in the Ice, they went out a hunting for more, and kill'd 2 Morfes, which they roasted, and eat at leisure.

Finding that their Provisions were not enough for half the Winter, they made it up with Fritters of Whales, and reserv'd their Deer for Sicknefs and Holy-days, which they preserv'd by roasting, and stowing it in the empty Casks they found there. The Want of Light was a great Hindrance to their getting Provisions; for from the 14th of *October* to the 3d of *February*, they saw not the Sun; but in clear Weather, they had Moon-light; and the Bears coming to-

wards their Tent, at several times they killed 8 of them: They found their Flesh wholesome; but when they eat their Liver, it made their Skins peel off. When the Sun began to appear, the Fowls and Foxes came abroad, for which they set Traps. They catch'd abundance of Fowl, and about 50 Foxes, which being roasted, were good and pleasant Meat, and reliev'd them much against the Scurvy. The first of *May*, the Weather being somewhat warm, they went abroad for Provisions, and found great Quantities of Willocks Eggs, which were very refreshing. That same Day two *English* Ships arriv'd in the *Sound*, which took them on board, and brought them safe to *England*. The Cold was so severe during the Winter, that it rais'd Blisters on their Flesh, as if they had been burnt. If they touch'd Iron, it stuck to their Fingers; and while they sat by a great Fire, which they made of broken Sloops, &c. tho' their Stockings were burnt, their Feet were numb'd with Cold, and their Backs frozen, so that they were forc'd to heat Stones at the Fire to apply to their Feet, and other Parts of their Bodies, to keep them from freezing.

'Tis proper here to observe, That the *Dutch*, in order to deprive Sir *Hugh Wilmoughby* of the Honour of first discovering *Greenland*, call an imaginary Island by his Name, alledging that was the Place he discover'd: They place it near *Nova-Zembla*. But tho' *Hudson* sail'd in quest of it, he could never find it.

CHAP. VI.

NOVA-ZEMBLA.

Nova-Zembla is separated from *Samøia* by the Streights of *Weygates*. On the N. E. is the *Still Sea*, into which the River *Oby* runs. The Lat. is from 68 to 78 Deg. and the Long. from 70 to 98. *Morden* says, in all the Maps he ever saw, it is plac'd

110 or 150 Deg. too far E. and thinks this Mistake was the chief Cause of Captain *Wood's* failing in his Search of a N. E. Passage to *China*. It was first discovered by the *English* in 1556, and has oft been visited both by them and the *Dutch*, to find out a N. E. Passage; but this Design has always been

been defeated, by the Flakes of Ice. The Misfortune of that worthy Pilot *William Barents* has also been discouraging to others: He adventur'd so far, that his Ship was first hemm'd in, then frozen and broken in the Ice, so that he was forc'd to Winter upon the Land, where he lost his Life.

Those that Winter'd in *Nova-Zembla* in 1596, in 76 Deg. on Nov. 2. N. S. saw the Sun not fully above the Earth: It rose S. S. E. and set S. S. W. After November 4, they saw it no more; but the Moon, from the first Quarter to the last, is to be seen Night and Day. January 24, they saw the Edge of the Sun above the Horizon; and the 27th, they saw his whole Body: He was in 5 Deg. 25 Min. of *Aquarius*. They farther observ'd, by an Ephemerides they carried with them, that at *Venice* there would be a Conjunction of the Moon and *Jupiter* that very Day at One a Clock in the Morning, which they in *Nova-Zembla* saw at Six in *Taurus*: So that the Difference of Longitude of those two Places is 5 Hours, or 75 Deg. *Venice* being in Long. 37 Deg. 25 Min. *Nova-Zembla* must be 112 Deg. 25 Min. But these Observations are contrary to the Opinion of all Astronomers. There is publish'd lately in *Holland* a new Chart of *Nova-Zembla*, which places the N. of it in the same Parallel with Part of *Greenland*. A late *French* Traveller, who was Chirurgion in a *Danish* Ship, affirms, That *Nova-Zembla* is join'd to *Samoieda* on the South by the *Pater-Noster* Mountains, and

on the North to *Greenland*: But this is contrary to the Observations of both *English* and *Dutch* Mariners. *Nova-Zembla* signifies in the *Russian* Language a *New Land*. Some *Danish* Seamen, sent out by their King's Order in 1653, say, they passed the *Weygate* Streights, and found some Inhabitants of *Nova-Zembla* in their Canoes. They add, That they are very nimble Footmen; That their Clothes were made of the Skins of great Birds, like Penguins and Pelicans, with the Feathers on them. Their Boots were of the Hides of Morfes, or great Seals: That they had Quivers at their Backs full of Arrows, with a Hatchet of Fish-Bones: That their Temper is untractable and indocil; and they abhor our Beer, Spirits and Meat. The *Dutch*, who Winter'd there, mention no other Beasts than Bears, Foxes, and such others as live upon Prey. They add, That there is neither Leaves nor Grass for other Beasts to feed upon. But Mr. *Hudson*, who was there in the Summer, saw some green Places, and Deer feeding in them. 'Tis probable, upon the Approach of Winter, the Deer retire to *Samoieda*, or other neighbouring Places. Our Merchants who have liv'd in *Russia* say, That in *Nova-Zembla* there is a great Lake, where a great Number of Geese and Swans breed, which moult about St. *Peter's* Day; and then the *Russes* go thither to gather the Feathers, and kill the Fowls, which they dry and bring home for Winter Provision.

CHAP. VII.

Of Attempts to discover a North-East Passage to China, &c. by Nova-Zembla.

WE shall pass by the Attempts of others, and only take Notice of those mention'd by Captain *John Wood*, beginning with that made by himself in the Ship *Speedwell*, by the Order of King *Charles II.* of Great Britain. The Captain

was induc'd to this by several Relations sent from *Holland* and elsewhere, which made him believe that such a Passage had been found, and in a great measure discover'd by others. Therefore he set out with the *Speedwell*, and another Ship call'd the *Prosperous Pink*, fitted for the Voyage at the Charge

Charge of the Duke of York and others, the 28th of May, 1676. On the 29th of June after, the *Prosperous* struck on a Ledge of Rocks, and sunk, and the Men escap'd with Difficulty on Shore in *Nova-Zembla* with part of their Provisions; but were brought off by Captain *Flaws*, after having stay'd on Shore some Time. Captain *Wood* gives the following Account of the Voyage, and of the Reasons of their Miscarriage. He says, it was their following the Opinion of *William Barents*, which was to steer directly N. E. from the North Cape, and to fall in betwixt *Greenland* and *Nova-Zembla*, which he attempted accordingly. He continued coasting the Ice sometimes with great Hopes of a clear Sea, and then again was dishearten'd by more Ice; but at last lost all Hopes, when he saw *Nova-Zembla*, and the Ice join'd to it; by which he found that *Barents* was mistaken, and that all the *English* and *Dutch* Relations, which encourag'd him to the Undertaking, were meer Forgeries; for he could get no further than 76 Deg. and found the Sea frozen without Intermission, which would have taken some Centuries of Years to thaw it. He concludes *Nova-Zembla* and *Greenland* to be the same Continent; for had there been a Passage, there would have been some Current, which he could not find, but only a small Tide, which rises about 8 Foot. He thinks 'tis not certainly known whether *Nova-Zembla* be an Island, or join'd to the Continent of *Tartary*; but says, 'tis no great matter, since 'tis the most miserable Country upon Earth, most of it always cover'd with Snow; and what is not so, is not to be walk'd on, being like Boggs, with a Moss on the Surface, that bears a small blue and yellow Flower, which is all the Product of the Earth here. Upon digging two Foot deep, they came to a firm Body of Ice, the like of which he thinks was never heard before; and shews their Mistake, who think Men might preserve themselves there during the Winter, by digging Caves in the Earth. The Snow lies there contrary to what it does in other Climates, where it melts soonest near the Sea; but here it washes under the Snow a prodigious way, and the Snow hangs over in a manner fearful to behold. The Mountains are cover'd all the Way up with Snow,

which he thinks has lain there ever since the Creation. On the Top of the Mountains they found it bare, and had indifferent good walking upon Slates; but they durst not go far, lest they should have lost their Way in the Fogs. The Beasts of the Country, he says, are large white Bears and Deer, with some Foxes, a little Creature resembling a Cony, but not so big as a Rat; and they saw no Fowls, but little Birds about the Size of a Lark. Every quarter of a Mile, there runs down from the Hills into the Sea a small River of very good Water, melted from Snow; and where those Rivulets fall into the Sea, they found black Marble with white Veins. The Westernmost Point of *Nova-Zembla*, where he lost his Ship, he call'd *Point-Speed-ill*. It lies in 74 Deg. 30 Min. N. Lat. and in Long. E. from *London* 63 Deg. The Tide rises 8 Foot, and sets directly upon the Shore, which, he says, is a certain Sign that there is no Passage to the Northward. The Sea about the Ice and Land is the saltest that ever he tasted, and the heaviest and clearest Water in the World; for he could see the Bottom with Shells upon it at 80 Fathom Water, which is 480 Foot deep.

The Captain takes Notice of the like Attempts made formerly by others, as follows:

The First that ever attempted the said Voyage was Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, in the Year 1553, with 3 Sail of Ships, and he sail'd to the North-Cape of *Finmarke*, and then into the Lat. of 72, where he says he saw Land; but to this Day it cannot be found again; And I am of Opinion, says the Captain, That it was some Fog-Bank that he saw; for in my Return home, I run over the same Place where our Chart-makers lay down that Land: But certain it was, that by foul Weather he was forc'd into a Harbour in *Lapland* call'd *Arxena*, whence, by the continuance of bad Weather, he could never return out, but was there frozen to Death with all his Ship's Company: So that by this Voyage, there was no Light given to find a Passage that Way.

The Second that attempted it was one Capt. *Stephen Burroughs*, afterward Comptroller of the Navy to Queen *Elizabeth*. In the Year 1556, he set forward, and passed the North-Cape; and sailing farther Easterly,

disco-

discover'd the *Weygates*; that is, the Streight that runneth between the South Part of *Nova-Zembla*, and the *Samoieds* Country, where he entred; and believing that *Sinu*, or by the Eastward of the Streights, to be a free and open Sea, he return'd with Hopes of Passage that Way to *China* and *Japan*.

The Third that attempted it was Captain *Arthur Pett*, and Captain *Charles Jackman*, in the Year 1580. being sent out by Queen *Elizabeth* to follow the Track of *Burroughs*: So setting forwards, they came to the *Weygates*, pass'd the Streights, and came into the Sea to the Eastward, where they met with such a vast Quantity of Ice and bad Weather, that they with great Hazard, Peril, and Labour, were forc'd to return; but by foul Weather lost one the other, and *Pett* was never heard of since: So the Passage through the *Weygates* was in *England* laid by, as thought not possible that Way; and then the *Hollanders* undertook it.

The Fourth that attempted it was *William Barents*, a well experienc'd Navigator and Artist, sent out of *Holland* by Prince *Morrice* in the Year 1606. He sail'd into the *Weygates*; but being entred, he found the same Incumbrance with Ice that *Pett* and *Jackman* had done before: So tasting of the Water, and finding it fresh, which neither *Burrough*, *Pett*, nor *Jackman*, had observ'd, he return'd without any Hope or Probability of a Passage that Way: But this not discouraging him, he resolv'd a second Adventure to the Northward of *Nova-Zembla*, to see what might be perform'd that Way.

So in the Year 1607, he set forward, and arriv'd on the Coast of *Nova-Zembla* in the Lat. of 73, where he met with Ice; and so coasted the Shore till he came to the Lat. of 76, where he could get no farther, and by the Ice was there driven on Shore, and his Ship broke in pieces by it, and he confin'd to Winter there, where they all endur'd the greatest Extremity of Cold that ever Mortals did. The Winter being past, they with Difficulty, in two Boats, got to *Cola* in *Lapland*; but before their Arrival there, *William Barents* dy'd, to the great Grief of all his Company.

The next that attempted it, was that famous Discoverer of our Nation, Mr. *Henry*

Hudson, in the Year 1610; but he being dishearten'd by the Voyage of *Barents*, attemp'ted but little.

So the Thoughts of a Passage by the N. E. was wholly laid aside, till Captain *Wood* undertook it again; of whose ill Success, we have heard already.

Cherry Island.

THIS Island lies in 74 Deg. 30 Min. N. Lat. and in Long. 40. It was first call'd, and discover'd to be of any Profit, in 1603. A Ship then set out at the Charge of Sir *Francis Cherry* touch'd upon it, and call'd it by his Name.

May 1. 1604. *Stephen Bennet* sail'd from *London*, and July 8. came in Sight of this Island; and going ashore, one of his Men with a Gun kill'd as many Fowls as almost laden the Boat: They found likewise many Foxes. In another Bay, they saw an incredible Number of Morfes swimming in the Sea, and 1000 lying on the Ground like Hogs. They kill'd 15, and found as many of their Teeth as fill'd a Hoghead.

In 1605, the same Persons slew there abundance of Morfes with Lances, which they found did greater Execution than Guns. They made 11 Tun of Oil of their Blubber. In 1606, they return'd, and in 6 Hours slew 800 Morfes, and 2 great Bears: Of which they made 22 Tun of Oil, and 3 Hogheads of Teeth. In 1608, they slew 900 Morfes in 7 Hours, which made 31 Tun of Oil. They brought one Male Morfe to *England*, which liv'd 10 Weeks, and was taught many Things. In 1610, two Ships arriv'd there, and found three Lead-Mines. They set up an Ensign, as a Token of their taking Possession of the Island for the *Russia* Company. Three other Ships kill'd 800 Morfes there that same Year.

It is worth Observation, That both the Whale and Morfe-fishing was known and practis'd 800 Years ago, as appears by the Relation which *Offher* the *Norwegian* made to *Alfred* King of *England*, when he acquainted him, that the Morfes were hunted for their Teeth, which were then mightily esteem'd.

Mayen's Island.

John Mayen's Island has its Name, as the *Dutch* pretend, from the first Discoverer, their Countryman. Some take it to be what the *English* call *Hope* Island. It is of no great Consequence now, since the Whales have left it; but formerly it was frequented in the Summer-time on the Account of Whale-fishing, and was well known to most of the Northern Adventurers of *Europe*. On the West-Side 'tis not so much inclos'd with Ice as on the North, and therefore Mariners steer their Course to the West-Side; but if by Mistake they come to the East-Side, they are forc'd to sail North about the Island, which is very dangerous,

by reason of the Ice and high Winds. The Sea flows here from S. to N. and ebbs from N. to S. At the North-End lies *Bears* Mountain, which takes up the whole Space betwixt the two Shores: 'Tis very steep, and so high, that 'tis seen 30 Miles off at Sea. It derives its Name from the many Bears seen upon it. There are several Bays in this Island, to which the *Dutch* have given Names; one of them is call'd the *English* Bay. The Sea is 60 Fathom deep about a Musket-shot from the Shore; but a little further, the Sounding-Line cannot reach the Bottom. It lies from S. W. to N. E. and the further it shoots in Length, the narrower it grows. The Northernmost Point of it lies in 71 Deg. 23 Min. N. Lat.

CHAPTER VIII.

GRONELAND.

CAll'd also *Groinland*, *Groenland*, and anciently *Engroenland*, lies (as the Islanders say) like a Half-Moon, about the North of their Country, at the Distance of 4 Days sailing; yet it seems not to lie so much East, but rather on the North of *America*. The Lat. of it, from Cape Farewell to the most Southerly Point, is 60 Deg. 30 Min. It is unknown how many Deg. it lies North. The East and West are encompass'd by two great Oceans; but at what Deg. of Longitude, is not yet discover'd: Only Mr. *Fotherby* found it near the Coast of *Groneland* in 71 Deg. and the South of *Groenland* to be above 200 Leagues. Common Maps place the most Eastern Parts in 15 Deg. of Longitude.

It is said to have been first discover'd by a *Norwegian* nam'd *Eric Rotsep*, who having committed a Murder in *Iceland*, resolv'd to fly to some strange Country. He landed here, and, because of its Greenness, call'd it *Greenland*. He sent his Son to *Olaus Trug-*

ger, King of *Norway*, to get his Pardon, which was obtain'd. Upon this, many Gentlemen adventured to plant there, settled Christianity, and built two Towns, called *Garde* and *Albe*. The King sent thither a Vice-Roy, who had his Seat at *Albe*, which was also made a Bishop's See, and had a Cathedral. They write also of a Monastery dedicated to St. *Thomas*, which they pretend was built of Pumice-Stone, and that it had a Spring so hot, as to boil their Meat, and being convey'd into the Rooms by Pipes, warm'd them as well as Stoves; but this seems fabulous. This small Colony fail'd about 1349, whether by a Disease they call'd the *Black Plague*, or the Barbarity of the Natives, is not certain. In 1406, the Bishop of *Drontheim* sent one *Andreas* to bring an Account of the State of Christianity there; but he never return'd.

The late Voyages to those Coasts were to find out a N. W. Passage to *China*, after the N. E. Passage had been long sought in vain.

Martin Frobisher was the first who set out for that Design in 1576, and he came to a great Inlet in 62 Deg. call'd by him *Frobisher's Streights*. He sail'd 60 Leagues into it, and had main Land on either Side. He found an Oar, which he thought to be Gold, but it prov'd only Black Lead. They found a Silver Mine; but it lay so deep in the Rocks, that they could not dig it. They melted also Gold, but in very small Quantities, out of Stones they found in *Smith's Isle*. They found a dead Fish 12 Foot long, not unlike a Porpus, with a Horn growing out of his Snout like that call'd the *Unicorn's Horn*, which is still kept at *Windsor*. In 1578, he took Possession of the Land in the Name of *Queen Elizabeth*, and call'd it *Metacognita*.

In 1585, 1586, and 1587, *Mr. John Davis* was employ'd in this Design: He enter'd a Streight on the West-Side of *Greenland*, call'd after him, *Davis's Streights*; then into a wide Sea, 72 Deg. 12 Min. Westward, where there was 40 Leagues betwixt Coast and Coast. *Mr. Hudson*, in 1610, went to the S. W. of *Davis's Streights*, 100 Leagues further than any had done, which he call'd *Hudson's Streights*. And in 1615, and 1616, *Mr. Baffin* discover'd that there was no Passage in the North of *Davis's Streights*. He found Rocks of white Stone, finer and purer than *Alabaster*, and Plenty of *Angelica*, which the Natives us'd to eat.

In 1605, the King of *Denmark* set out 3 Ships, *John Cuningham*, a *Scotts-man*, was Admiral: They went a great way up *Davis's Streights*. In a Place they call'd *Cuningham-Ford*, they found Stones, out of 100 Weight of which they extracted 26 Ounces of fine Silver. They brought with them 3 of the Natives of *Greenland* to *Denmark*.

In 1619, *John Munch*, with 2 Ships, was sent thither by the King of *Denmark*. They arriv'd at *Cape Farewell* in 65 Deg. 30 Min. They could not handle their Tackle for Icicles. He call'd that Part of *Hudson's Bay* towards *Greenland*, *Mare Christianum*; and the South Part of the Bay he call'd, *Mare Novum*. As to the 8 *Greenlanders* transported at several times to *Denmark*, the King commanded them to be treated with all possible Humanity. They lov'd Flesh and Fish raw better than all other Meats. They abhorr'd Wine and Brandy. Train-Oil was their

favourite Drink; but no Offices of Kindness or Care could take off their Melancholy and Chagrin, for the Want of their belov'd Country. Two of 'em were dextrous at rowing. They often had a Design to make their Escape home, and were excellent in diving for Pearl Muscles; but the Governor's Covetousness and Cruelty, in making them dive in Winter, kill'd one of them. The other never enjoy'd himself after: He was resolute to go home, and told those who dissuaded him, That he would go Northward so far, and then the Stars would direct him to his own Country.

The Country is almost all high Land, cover'd with Snow. It has little or no Wood, except some few Bushes, and not many Plants or Herbs. They live upon Fish, and have but few Beasts. The Country is subject to Earthquakes, but healthful. The Natives neither plant nor sow, tho' the Soil seems to be fertile and pleasant betwixt the Mountains. The North Parts are undiscover'd, because of the Ice; and the Southern Part consists of many Islands, which occasion Variety of strong Currents.

Their Beasts are Foxes, Bears, Black Rain-Deer, and Dogs; the bigger Sort of which draw their Sleds; the lesser kind they feed for Meat. All those who have been there talk of a North Light, as they call it, because it appears in that Point. They say it resembles a great Pillar of Fire, darts out Streams every way, moves from Place to Place, leaves behind it a Mist or Cloud, appears usually about the Time of the New Moon, enlightens the whole Country, and continues till it be hid by the Beams of the Sun.

Their Fish are Whales, Dog-Fish, and Sea-Unicorns; the Horns, growing in their Snouts, are kept as Rarities in Princes Cabinets. The Natives use them to head their Darts and Arrows, and when sharpen'd and ground on Stones, are as piercing as ours. This Creature fights the Whale with his Snout.

They have Fowls here in great Number, particularly *Solan Geese*, such as are in the Island of the *Bast* near *Edinburgh*. The Natives use their Skins for Clothes, with the Feathers inwards in Winter, and outwards in Summer. Two or Three of our Men kill'd 1500 of those Geese with their Guns.

in one Day. Their Skins are thicker, and their Flesh worse tasted, than those elsewhere.

The *Norwegians* found several Nations there, govern'd by different Kings, who all join'd in War against them. Our late Discoverers found a Country in 66 Deg. 50 Min. the Natives call themselves, as they thought, *Secanunga*, and said they had a great King call'd *Cachio*, who was carried on Men's Shoulders.

Their RELIGION.

They seem to worship the Sun; for when our Men invited them to Conversation, they held up their Hands toward it, crying, *Totan*, and would not come near till they did the like. Yet some, who have been further in the Country, say, they found such Images as we make of the Devil, with Altars, and the Bones of many Beasts by them. The Natives are given to Inchantment and Sorcery, and when they worship the Devil, lie flat on their Bellies, and mutter their Prayers into the Ground, under which they conceive the Devil to have his Abode. In some Diseases they tie a Stick to a great Stone, and pray to it, and if they can lift it up easily, they think their Prayers are heard.

Their STATURE and TEMPER.

They are generally low, have black Hair, flat Noses, broad Faces, Lips turn'd up, of a ripe Olive Colour, and some of them quite black. The Women stain their Faces with blue, and sometimes with black Streaks, which they let into the Skin, by pricking it with a sharp Bone, so as it can never be taken out again. They very much resemble the *Samoeids* and *Laplanders*. They are active, strong, courageous, and desperate, so that many of them chuse rather to throw themselves Head-long from the Rocks, than be taken by our Men. They are thievish, revengeful, and treacherous, and not to be gain'd by any Civilities; so that frequently after they have been kindly entertain'd, they would shoot at, sling Stones, and kill our Men if they could. They de-

light exceedingly in Musick, and keep Time to it with Voice, Hands and Feet. They are so very affectionate one to another, that meeting a *Danish* Seaman, who looked somewhat like them in his Features, they gave him all possible Demonstration of Kindness.

Their HABITATIONS.

IN the Summer, when they fish, they have Tents, which they remove from Place to Place in their Boats: They consist of 4 Poles, which they cover with Skins. In the Winter, they retire to the Vallies, and their Houses are round Caves at the Foot of an Hill, near together, and Passages from one to another within. Their Doors open to the S. and, with the Entries, stand without the Caves, and are made artificially with Ribs of Whales, cover'd with Seal-Skin. The Place where they lie is rais'd higher than the rest, and cover'd with Moss.

Their Way of TRADING.

They make two Heaps, one of such Things as they want, and the other of what they would part with, and they balance the Account, by adding or taking away from the respective Heaps.

Their CLOTHES.

They wear either the Skins of Birds, as has been mention'd already, or those of Seals, Dog-Fish, &c. with the Fur outward, the better to deceive the Seals when they fish for them. They sew their Clothes with the Sinews of Beasts, and with Needles made of Fish-Bones.

Their BOATS.

They make them of Whale-Bone, stitch'd with Sinews of Beasts, and cover'd with Seal-Skins. They are shap'd like a Weaver's Shuttle, so that they can row 'em either way. In the middle are the Ribs, to keep the Sides asunder, and to make a Hole

in the Covering where the Rower sits. They have a Deck of the same Materials. In the middle, there's a Hole as big as a Man's Waste. When he goes to Sea, he sets himself in that Hole, stretching his Feet forward into the Hollow of the Boat, and stops the Hole so close with his Frock, that no Water can enter, tho' it were at the bottom of the Sea. His Frock is streight ty'd at the Wrists and to his Neck, and his Capouch is also sew'd close to it; so that if his Boat be overturn'd in the Sea, he rises again without any Wet, either upon his Skin, or in his Boat. They have but one Oar, 6 Foot long, with a Paddle 6 Inches broad at either End. This serves both to ballance his Boat, and to move it, which he does with such incredible Swiftneſs, that

one of our Boats with 10 Oars is not able to keep Company with them. The *Danish* Relation says, they row'd so swift, that they dazzled the Eyes of the Spectators; and tho' they cross'd frequently, they never interfered or hit one another. They fish ordinarily with long barb'd Darts, with Bladders ty'd to them, that when they have struck the Fish, he may spend himself by struggling to get under Water, which yet he cannot do, and so is easily taken. Their Fishing-Boats are from 10 to 20 Foot long, and their larger Boats are 30 or 40, with 10 or more Seats for Rowers. *Bembo*, in his *Venetian* History, says, That one of these Boats, with 7 Persons in it, was by Storm cast upon the Coasts of *Britany*.

CHAP. IX. FREESLAND.

Some say, this Island lies 60 Deg. more Westward than any other Part of *Europe*. Mariners are not agreed about its Extent: Some say, it is not much less than *England*. There are Maps which place it from Lat. 60 to 63, 30 Min. and in Long. from 340 to 347.

It was first discover'd by *Nicolao* and *Antonio Zani*, two *Venetian* Gentlemen, that were shipwreck'd here.

They say, the Inhabitants are very good Christians, and civil, govern'd by a great Lord call'd *Lichamay*. The People our

Men saw resembled the *Groenlanders* in every thing, and were perswaded it join'd to *Greenland*; in which they were confirmed, by the many Islands of Ice they saw there, which coming from the North, shews that there is Land that way. There is some pale Coral here, and little Stones, clear as Chrystal, in a Place they call *West-England*. There is good fishing every where upon the Coast, which is so full of Ice, that 'tis almost inaccessible. The Land is rugged and high, and the Mountains cover'd with Snow.

CHAP. X.

Of ISELAND, or rather ICELAND.

THis Country, according to some Maps, lies from $64\frac{1}{2}$ Deg. to 68 N. Lat. and from Long. 345 to 4. Moll from 355 to 8. *Burns* on *Cluverius* says, it is 144 German Leagues long, and 65 broad. It lies 420 Miles W. from the Coast of Norway, and 360 N. from Scotland.

It was first discover'd by *Nadocum*, a Privateer of Norway, in 860, who, because of the great Quantity of Snow there, call'd it *Snowland*. Some Years after, *Flaccus*, another Norway Privateer, gave it the Name of *Iceland*, from the great Quantity of Ice he found there.

It was first inhabited by the *Norwegians* in 874, who were led thither by *Ingulphus*, one of their Lords.

Their Government was an Aristocracy till the Year 1262, that the Kings of Norway subdued them.

They continued in Idolatry till the beginning of the 11th Century, that *Olaus Trugger* the Pious planted Christianity among them, which occasion'd 20 Years Civil War with the Natives. *Christian III.* about 1550, introduc'd the Reformation. *Christian IV.* caus'd the Scriptures to be translated for the Use of the Islanders into their own Language.

Of the AIR, SOIL, and PRODUCT.

THE Air is very cold, and the Country Mountainous; but in the Southern Parts of the Island, where it is more level, the Meadows are so rich, that Beasts put into them must be fed by Measure, otherwise they would burst themselves. The Natives love the Flesh of Bears, Wolves and Foxes, which they catch upon the Ice, better than Beef. The Oxen of this Island have no Horns. There are scarcely any

Trees, save low Birch, and Juniper Bushes. Horses and Cows are their only Cattle, which feed on dry'd Fish when they want Hay. They have excellent little Dogs, not unlike those of *Malta*. They have also Falcons and White Bears. There is a smoking Fountain, whose Exhalations turn every thing into Stone, without altering the exterior Form. There is also another Fountain, whose Water kills all that drink of it. It has 3 very high Mountains, cover'd with Snow at Top, which at Times vomit Fire: The most noted is *Hesla*, in which there are rich Mines of Brimstone. It often throws out Flames and Stones at a prodigious distance, so that those who adventure too near, are frequently swallow'd up in Gulphs of Brimstone, which are so cover'd with Althes, that one cannot perceive them. The Natives call this Place the *Mouth of Hell*: And the frequent Apparition of Ghosts there, (if we may believe *Olaus Magnus*) confirms them in that Opinion. *Grotius* thinks, that *Mexico* was Peopled from this Place. In 982, *Ericus Rufus* Peopled *Greenland* from hence.

The Inhabitants were formerly accounted nothing inferior in Wit and Understanding to any of the Northern Countries, and were said to be skill'd in the Greek. They have writ the History of their Country in their own Language. They are very strong, but of low Stature, the tallest not above 5 Foot high. *Olaus* says, They have Spirits that serve the Natives in their ordinary Affairs. The People are long liv'd, some of them living to 150 Years.

Their TRADE.

THeir principal Traffick consists in Butter, Tallow, Sulphur, dry'd Fish, and small Cod, of which Stock-Fish is made. They

They have Whales, but not of such Value as those about *Greenland*. An Ancient Poem, writ about 1449, call'd, *The English Policy*, says, That we then drove a considerable Trade by fishing there.

The Inhabitants dwell in Caves, and, for want of Wood, build their Tents of Fish-Bones, which they also grind, and make Bread of.

Of the Division of ISELAND.

THIS Isle is divided into 4 Parts, nam'd according to the 4 Quarters of the World they lie towards. The Inhabitants call them thus: The North Quarter, *Norlendinga-Fiordung*; the Southerly, *Sudlendinga-Fiordung*; the Westerly, *Westlendinga-Fiordung*; the Easterly, *Ostlendinga-Fiordung*. Those 4 Parts are subdivided into 12 Bailiwicks, which contain about 330 Parishes, and have their particular Governor, subordinate to the Governor-General of the Isle, under the King of Denmark.

1. North-Quarter.

Is the greatest and best Peopled of the whole Isle. *Holar*, or *Hola*, seated upon the

Gulph Skaga, is the chief Town here, and a Bishop's See. 'Tis a small Town without Walls, and has a good and well frequented Harbour.

2. The East-Quarter.

The chief Town is *Kurbar*, which is but small.

3. The South-Quarter.

The chief Town of this Quarter, and of the whole Isle, is *Shalhor*, which lies in 66 Deg. 25 Min. The longest Day is 23 ½ Hours. 'Tis situated among Mountains, and has no manner of Fortifications. It is a Bishop's See, and the chief Court of Justice for the whole Isle is kept here. It is 160 English Miles from *Hecla*. *Haner* and *Keplawick* are two commodious and well frequented Harbours. *Befede*, or *Comingsgard*, is a small Fortress, where the Governor keeps his Court.

4. The West-Quarter.

Gilr, a small Hamlet, is the Chief of this Division.

CHAP. XI.

Of the THULE of the ANCIENTS.

THIS Country having by many Authors been taken for the *Thule* of the Ancients, we think proper to say something in this Place as to the Opinions both of the Ancients and Moderns about it. Some derive the Name from the *Arabian* Word *Tule*, which signifies Far off. This is supported by some Authorities; for the *Carthaginians* seem to have called *Ireland* by that Name, because it was the farthest of their Discoveries: But the Opinion of *Bochart*, as to the Name *Thule*, seems to bid fairest for

the Truth: He thinks *Thule* is a *Phœnician* Word, (the *Phœnicians* being the first Discoverers of the Place) which signifies an Island of Darkness, because of the Length of their Nights. Both Greek and Latin Authors were of Opinion, That Northern Places were condemn'd to perpetual Darkness, as *Pliny* and *Solinus*, &c. *Tibullus* speaking of the Frigid Zone, says,

Illic & densâ Tellus absconditur Umbrâ.

In thickest Darkness, there the Earth's involv'd.

Strabo tells us, That in Homer, the North and Darknels are the same thing. The *A-rabians* also call the Northern Sea the Dark Sea. The Poet *Statius*, speaking of *Thule*, has the same Notion of its Darknels, in his 3d Book, *Hesperia vada caligantia Thules*; i. e. the dark Friths of Western *Thule*; and in his 4th Book to *Marcellus*, *Nigra Littora Thules*; i. e. the Coasts of dark *Thule*.

Authors are not agreed where the *Thule* of the Ancients was; some are for having *Island* to be it. *Pythias Massiliensis* seems to favour this Opinion, for he places *Thule* under the Polar Circle; but the Character that *Polybius* and *Strabo* give him, lessens his Credit, for they call him a trifling lying Author. It is not probable, that the *Romans* durst lose the Sight of the Land, and venture into those dangerous and frozen Seas; far less could they be acquainted with the Inhabitants of *Island*, and defeat them in Battles, as we find by their Authors they did those of *Thule*. Others maintain, That *Ireland* was the *Thule* of the *Romans*; but tho' the *Phenicians* have been in *Ireland*, it is certain the *Romans* never were there. The *Glacialis Ierne*, i. e. the Frozen *Ierne*, of *Claudian*, in Verse 33, of the 4th Consul. of *Honor*. cannot be *Ireland*, because it deserves not the Epithet of *Glacialis*, or *Icy*; for their own Writers say, That Frost and Snow don't continue long there: But *Claudian* in this Place gives an Account how *Theodosius* pass'd the Friths of *Forth* and *Clyde* in *Scotland*, which are his *Hyperborea Unda*, the *Hyperborean Seas*; and *Theodosius* upon that Account is call'd *Vastator Borea*, *D. bel-latorque Britanni Littoris*; i. e. the Conqueror of the North, and the Subduer of the *British* Coasts. That he enter'd *Strathern*, which to this Day bears the Name of *Ierne*, the *Roman* Medals, Camps, and Military Ways, still to be seen there, put it beyond Controversy; whereas *Ireland* has no Monuments to prove that ever the *Romans* were in that Country.

Others, with greater Probability, think that *Schetland*, or some of the *Orkney* Islands, was the *Thule* of the Ancients. *Marinus* was of this Opinion, and also *Ptolemy*, who says *Thule* was a little *Island* in 62 Deg. of North Latitude, not above a Day's Voyage from *Britain*, where the longest Day is 20 Hours, which agrees to *Schetland*. *Agathemerus*

agrees with this. *Stephanus Byzantin* allows only 20 Hours to the longest Day in *Thule*. The Learned *Cambden* is positive in this Matter, and observes, That Mariners call *Schetland*, *Thylenfol*, which is deriv'd from *Thyle*, or *Thule*.

This Opinion seems to be supported with very good Reasons. *Tacitus*, in the Life of *Julius Agricola*, says, when the *Roman* Navy sail'd about *Britain*, *Despecta est & Thule quam hactenus Nil & Hiems abscebat*; i. e. Then *Thule* was discover'd, which hitherto was unknown, because of its Snow and constant Winter. This puts it out of doubt that it could not be *Island*, which was impossible to be seen by the *Roman* Fleet when sailing about *Britain*. Further, *Silius Italicus* gives the same Description of the Way of Fighting by the Natives of *Thule*, that *J. Caesar*, *Mela*, *Martial*, and *Tacitus*, give of the Old *Britains*. In his 17th Book he says,

*Cervulus haud aliter cum dimicat incola Thules,
Agmina falsifero circumvenit acta corvino.*

*The Thule-Men, whose Face has a Blue Dy,
With Chariots hook'd surround their Foes that fly.*

Seneca calls also one of the Tribes of the *Scots*, *Ceruleos Scoto Brigantes*; the *Blue Scots Brigantes*: And *Claudian*, in the above-mention'd Place, strengthens this Opinion, by joining the *Orcaes* and *Thule* together; for he says,

*Maduerunt Saxone fuso
Orcaes? Incaluit Picorum Sanguine Thule.*

*The Orkney Isles were drench'd with Saxon
Gore,
And Pictish Blood did thaw cold Thule's
Shore.*

The Circumstances of the Story make it plain, that *Thule* can only be in some of the Northern Places of *Scotland*. Besides, *Claudian* in many Places makes the *Orcaes* lie over against *Thule*. We refer the curious Reader to Dr. *Wallace's* Description of the *Islands* of *Orkney*, where there are strong Arguments to prove, that the *Thule* of the *Romans* was the Eastern Coast of *Sutherland*, and the adjacent Country in the North of *Scotland*.

C H A P. XI.

Of M U S C O V Y.

The Ancient and Modern EXTENT.

Muscovy is a great Part of the Old *Sarmatia Europea*, the ancient Boundaries of which were upon the West, 1. The River *Vistula*. 2. The Gulph of *Finland*. 3. A Line from that Gulph to the *White Sea*. The Northern Limits were the *Sarmatian* or Frozen Sea. Upon the East, it had the same Boundaries with *Europe*, viz. the *Palus Meotis*, the Isthmus of *Taurita Chersenesus*, now called *Crim-Tartary*. On the South, it had the *Euxine Sea*, the *Ister* or *Danube*, the River *Hierafus*, now *Prut*, and that Part of the *Carpathian Mountains* betwixt the River *Patissus*, now *Tey*, and the *Danube*.

The Length of the *European Sarmatia*, from the Conflux of the Rivers *Ister* and *Patissus*, to the Mouth of the *Obi*, is 540 *German Leagues*. Its Breadth, from the *Wolga* to the *White Sea*, 360.

It comprehended Part of the Modern *Moldavia*, lying betwixt the Rivers *Nieper*, *Danube*, and the *Prut*; a Part of *Hungary* betwixt the *Danube* and the *Tey*; and that Part of *Poland* beyond the *Vistula*. It comprehended *Prussia*, *Livonia*, *Lithuania*, and *Muscovy*.

The ancient *Greeks* knew little or nothing of the old *Sarmatians*; but because they resembled the old *Parthians* in Manners, they thought they were of the same Origin: The Inhabitants of *Sarmatia Europea* were the *Isirici*, so call'd from the River *Ister*; the *Boristhenite*, from the *Boristhenes*; the *Neuri*, living near that River; the *Alani*, who dwell above the Sea of *Sabach*, near the *Tenais*, or *Don*; the *Roxalani*, who lay to the West of them; the *Geloni*, who inhabited Part of *Mazovia* and *Podolia*; the *Aethyrsi*, who liv'd about the *Palus Meotis*;

and the *Hyperborae*, a Name us'd for all Northern Places, Seas and People, that the Ancients were not acquainted with.

The Modern *Muscovy*, otherwise call'd *Russia Alba*, from the white Caps worn by the Natives, is bounded on the N. by the Frozen Sea, by *Great Tartary* on the E. by *Poland*, *Turky*, *Georgia*, and the *Caspian Sea*, on the S. *Sweden* and *Livonia* on the W.

The Latitude is from *Astracan* in 46 Deg. to 73, which reckoning 60 Miles to a Degree, makes 1620 *English Miles*. The Longitude is from the outmost Boundaries of the Dutchy of *Pleskow*, in 47 Deg. to *Wielka*, a Bishoprick, in 89, which makes 1980 *English Miles*. Others reckon the Extent of *Muscovy* from the the N. W. to the S. E. viz. from the outmost Parts of *Muscovite-Lapland*, to the most Easterly winding of the *Don*, 589 *Leagues*; and from the S. W. to the N. E. viz. from the Shore of the *Boristhenes* or the *Nieper* in *Ukrania*, to the Mouth of the River *Obi*, 460 *Leagues*. The *Czar's* Dominions reach to *Argunskoi* in *Asia*, upon the Borders of *China*, Lat. 50. Long. 125. according to the Account of *Tsibrant Ides*, Ambassador to *China* from his *Czarish Majesty*. Some place *Astracan* in Long. 90; but Mr. *Moll*, whose Maps we follow, places it in 73, and *Morden* in 78.

Of the ORIGINE of the Muscovites.

Some, from the Similitude of the Name, fancy that *Mesoch*, or *Mesec*, the Son of *Japhet*, Peopled this Country. We find also in *Strabo* frequent Mention of the *Meschi*, tho' he is not positive where their Country was. *Mela* places them near the *Caspian Sea*; *Pliny* near *Iberia*, which is now call'd

Georgia:

The Dominions of MOSCOVY or RUSSIA.

By H. Moll Geographer

NB. The faint double line shews
the Tract of M^r I. Strands Travels
by Land & Water from
Moscow to Peking in
China.



Georgia: *Lucan*, and after him *Sidonius*, say, they dwelt near the *Sarmata*: So that the *Moschi* were some of those many Nations that dwelt in the Southerly Parts of the *Russian Empire*. But their old Histories say, they were most anciently call'd *Russes*. *Pliny* and *Protolomy*, as well as some Modern Latin Authors, call them *Roxalani*, and think they are the Posterity of the ancient *Roxalani*, who dwelt about the *Taurica Chersonesus*. Others say, this Country was call'd *Rossia*, which signifies Dispersion, or Scattering, because they liv'd dispers'd, without any certain Government, in continual Quarrels and Dissentions one with another, till *Genareta Daniel*, or *Ivan* his Son, surnam'd *Caleta*, gather'd and join'd them together in one Government and Body; and for their better Union, he built almost in the middle of the Country the City *Moscow*, upon a River of that Name, and made it the Metropolis of the Empire; from whence they began to be call'd *Muscovites*. *Bochart* thinks, in *Phaleg. Lib. 3. Cap. 13.* they are from מושכ, i. e. *Rhos* and *Mesech*. *Ezech. Cap. 38. v. 2.* who were the same with the *Rossi* and *Moschi*, People that dwelt near the River *Araxes*. He quotes the *Nubian Geographer* and *Tzetzes* for this, who call the *Sythians* of *Taurica Rhos*. *Strabo* and *Pomponius Mela* call them the *Asiatick Moschi*. The *Sclavonian Histories* say, they have the Name of *Russes* from one *Russus*, the Brother of *Lechus*; but the *Muscovites* themselves boast that they are descended from the ancient *Greeks*.

in one Year they have exported 100000 Pood. Hides of *Black-Cattle*, of which they have sold in a Year 100000, besides 30000 Hides of *Losh* (*Lozzi*) and *Buff*; with multitudes of *Goat-Skins*, and others: *Train-Oil*, made of *Seals*; *Caviar*, made ordinarily at *Astracan* of the *Roes* of *Sturgeon* and *Belluga*, a Fish 15 Foot long, much like a *Sturgeon*, but without Scales. They salt and press the *Roes*, and put them up in Casks. In one Fish, they find sometimes 150 or 200 lb. Weight of Spawn. The *Caviar* of *Sturgeon* is small, black, and waxy: That of *Belluga* is darkish, grey, and the Grain as large as Pepper. This Spawn they cleanse from its Strings, salt it, and afterwards into small Part, by laying it on shelving Boards; then they put it into Casks, and press it till it grow hard. *Isinglass*, or *Ichthyocolla*, made of the Sounds of Fish. This Trade is reserv'd to the Emperor himself. Salt, of which they have great Plenty: *Tar*: *Morses-Teeth*, transported into *Turky* and *Persia*: *Slude*, which is a soft Rock in *Corellia*, that they cut out in Lumps, and afterwards into small Pieces, we call it *Muscovy-Glass*; it can neither be broken nor burnt: 'Tis the *Lapis Specularis*, and is us'd for Lanthorns, Windows, &c. *Salt-Petre*, and *Masts*, better than those of *Norway*. The Commodities of this Country are transported by the Way of *Archangel* to all Parts of *Europe*; and by *Astracan* and the *Caspian Sea* to *Persia*, and other Places in *Asia*.

Their AIR, and SOIL.

They differ according to the Situation of the Places; some are in the 8th Climate, and some beyond the Polar-Circle. It is generally marshy, full of Forrests, Pools, and Lakes, which hinders its being populous. Towards the North, the little Corn they sow never comes to Perfection; for they have 9 or 10 Months Frost and Snow. Towards the South, they have Plenty of Corn, with which they furnish *Lapland*, and the North of *Sweden*. The *Dutch* also transport Corn from this Place. The Heat is intolerable in Summer, being reflected from the Sandy Ground. This likewise makes their Corn to ripen very soon. They sow in the end of May, and reap in July.

The PRODUCT.

THE Commodities of this Country are *Sturgeon*, *Pot-Ashes*, *Hemp*, such Plenty of *Honey* in the Woods, that hollow Trees are filled with it; *Salt-Fish*, *Soap*, *Russia-Leather*, *Elkes-Hides*, *Fine Furs*, as *Ermins*, *Martens*, *Sables*, *Black Foxes-Skins*, *Beavers*, *White Bears*, *Squirrels*, *Wolverins*, and *White Foxes-Skins*; as also that of a *Water-Rat*, which smells like *Musk*. *Siberia* is the most famous Province of *Muscovy* for Furs: The *Czar* has the Monopoly, and makes Presents of them. *Wax*, of which they have Ship'd in one Year 50000 Pood Weight, each Pood containing 40 lb Weight. *Tallow*, of which

July. In Winter, the Frost is so violent, that the Rain freezes as it falls, and the Earth chaps, by reason of Cold, sometimes above 20 Fathom long, and a Foot broad: Travellers are found dead in their Sleds, and sometimes are frozen to Death, standing like Statues. Their Houses are lin'd with Furs, and they are obliged to make use of Stoves. When they travel on the Road, they rub their Noses and Ears with Snow, as a Remedy against their freezing. The Turk's Ignorance of this, occasion'd that of 70000 Men who invaded *Muscovy*, 40000 were destroy'd by the Cold. In Winter, they lay the Bodies of their dead Friends on Heaps in the Belfries of their Churches: But when they design to bury them immediately, they put a great Fire of Wood for a long time upon the Place where they are to dig their Graves. Because of the great Cold, they never putrify nor stink; but their usual Time of burying after Winter is in the beginning of *April*, when the Earth is fit for digging. It is surprizing to Strangers to see Fields all covered with Grass and Plants, that a few Days before were cover'd with Snow and Frost. In Winter, they travel conveniently on Sledges, wrapt up in Furs. In Summer, they have prodigious Quantities of Gnats and other Insects, which are very troublesome. The Heat in Summer is extraordinary, for nothing less can melt their Ice and Snow. Sometimes their Corn is burnt up by the Heat. The Country is in general overgrown with Wood. Parts of the great *Hircanian* Forrest, which anciently over-run all the North, are more visible here than in other Places. This proceeds either from the Idleness of the People, or because the Country is not populous enough to cut it down. The tallest Trees of the World grow here. Their Forrests consist most of Firs and Birch, which love a light sandy Soil. They have Apples, Pears, Plumbs, Cherries; yet they are never quite ripe, nor can they be preserved as in other Places. Fruits and Herbs of sudden Growth are very good here, as all sorts of Berries, Gourds, Melons, which are exceeding large, and eat well; some of them weigh 40 lb. *Olearius*, and other Authors, speak of a certain Melon and Gourd found near *Afracan*, *Samara* and *Casim*, called by the Natives *Borometz*, or a Lamb,

that grows upon a Stalk. Others call it *Zoophyton*, which signifies the Animal Plant. It withers, or, as some say, eats up all the Grass within its reach; after which the Stalk withers, and the Fruit ripens. The outward Rind of this Melon is cover'd with a kind of Hair, which they use instead of Fur.

They shew'd us, say the *Holstein* Ambassadors, some of those Skins, which were cover'd with a soft frizzling Wool, not unlike that of a Lamb newly taken out of a Sheep's Belly, and swore that they came from that Fruit. *Julius Scaliger* says, the Wolf is the only Beast that will feed upon this Lamb, and therefore 'tis us'd as a Bait to catch him. The *Muscovites* affirm the same.

In the Time of the Great Duke *Michael Federowitz*, who began his Reign in 1613, and was a great lover of Gardening, Flowers and Sweet-Herbs, were first transported into *Muscovy*, and planted there; and it is but few Years ago since the first *Provence* Roses were brought hither by *Peter Marcellus*, the *Danish* Commissary. Some of the *German*s and *Dutch* have lately shew'd them the Way of managing the *Asparagus* Beds; so that they grow now to the Thickness of 2 Inches. The *Muscovites* were averse to all Salad-Herbs till of late.

Their TRADE of IMPORT.

THE Commodities imported to them, are *Silk*, *Suffi*, *Cloth of Gold*, *Cloth of Silver*, *English Cloth*, *Tapestry*, *Pearls* and *Precious Stones*, *Spices*, *Wine*, *Brandy*, and *Hot Liquors*. In 1634, the Emperor discharg'd, by an Edict, the Use or Importation of any Tobacco, on Pain of being whip'd, or having their Nostrils bor'd; but the present Czar has allowed the *English* and *Dutch* to import it into his Dominions. Their Trade is always by Barter. They are not allow'd to buy Foreign Goods with Money, and must not export Coin. Before the Discovery of the Passage by Sea to *Archangel*, their Trade was carried on by Way of *Narva* and *Revel*; which tho' nearer, yet Merchants chuse to go to *Archangel*, to avoid the great Imposts by the *Swedes* and *Danes*.

The ESTABLISHMENT of the English Russia Company.

THE first Discoverers of the Way by the North Cape were the *English*. In the last Year of *Edward VI.* viz. 1553, *The Company of Merchants Adventurers for the Discovery of unknown Places* set forth 3 Ships, under the Command of *Sir Hugh Willoughby* and *Richard Chancellor*. *Sir Hugh* and the other Ship put into a River on the Desert-Coasts of *Lapland*, where they were soon frozen in, and their Bodies were found dead next Summer by *Russian* Fishermen. *Mr. Chancellor* pursued his Voyage, and first discover'd the Bay of *St. Nicholas*. The Fishermen there were frighted at the Greatness of his Ship, and endeavour'd to fly from him; but he overtook them, and was inform'd the Country was call'd *Russia*, and the Duke's Name was *Juan Vasilwick*. He was honourably conducted to Court, and splendidly entertain'd by the Duke; and having obtain'd a Privilege written in *Russe*, with the Great Duke's Seal, they return'd in 1554. In 1555, the same Emperor granted the first Privileges to the *English* Merchants, viz. That they should not be liable to the Payment of any Toll or Subsidy for ever; That they should not need to ask any Licence or safe Conduct; That they might sell their Goods to whom they pleas'd, of whatever Country; That all *Englishmen* there should be under the Company's Government; That no *Englishmen* should be imprison'd for Debt, upon finding Bail; That he would assist the Governor and Chief Factor, if any rebell'd, and refus'd to obey their Commands; And that they should have Dispatch and speedy Justice when cited to *Russian* Courts. The same Year *Philip* and *Mary* granted a Charter to the *Russian* Company, by which they were empower'd to make Conquest of undiscover'd Places; and all others not of that Company were discharg'd, and prohibited Trading to *Muscovy*. In 1556, the Company sent two Ships: At their Return, they brought with them an Ambassador from the Czar. The *Edirard*, on the 10th of *November*, arriv'd in the Bay of *Pitslego*, in the North of *Scotland*, where she was

split upon Rocks in the Night: *Mr. Chancellor*, with 7 *Russes*, and divers Mariners, were drown'd, the Ambassador hardly escaping. Many of the Presents design'd for the King and Queen were lost, viz. 6 Timbers of rich Sables; 1 Timber is 80 Skins; 20 entire Sables, with Teeth, Ears, and Claws; 4 living Sables, with Chains and Collars; 30 large and beautiful Luforns; 6 large and great Skins, such as are only worn by the Emperor; a large and fair white Jer-Faulcon, for the Wild-Swan, Crane, Goose, and other great Fowls; with a Drum of Silver, us'd as a Lure to call the Hawk. These Privileges from the Czar were sometimes renewed and augmented, with the Exclusion of all other Nations from that Trade: Sometimes they were retrench'd and lessen'd, according to the Interest of the Czar. Upon the Murder of King *Charles I.* the then Czar revok'd all the former Privileges granted to our Merchants, the *Dutch* having aggravated that Matter to our Loss, and their own Advantage.

Of the MANNERS of the Muscovites, from the Travels of the Holstein Ambassadors, and the Earl of Carlisle, &c.

MOST of them are very barbarous: They despise all Arts and Sciences. They look upon a Mathematician as a Sorcerer. A *Dutch* Surgeon, for having a Skeleton in his Room there, was accus'd of Magic, and in great Danger of Death; and, after all could be done by his Friends, he was banish'd the Country, the Skeleton dragg'd thro' the Streets, and afterwards burnt. *Dr. Flecher* says, some of them have very good Parts. A Merchant there is not thought to understand his Business, if he be not Crafty, and well skill'd in Cheating. A *Dutch* Merchant, noted for this Quality, was the more valued for it by the *Russians*; so that many of them desir'd to be his Partners, that they might be perfected in the Way of Cheating. They are much given to Lies and Calumny; insolent both to Foreigners and one another. They are very quarrellsome, and liberal of their

their brutish Reproaches. Their Resentments never go the Length of Blood, but end in a Kick or two. Their *Boiars*, or Noblemen, decide their Differences upon Horseback with Whips. 'Tis but of late they made use of Physicians, Garlick and Strong-Waters were then their only Remedies for all Diseases; and they are not asham'd to belch the Exhalations of their Garlick and Onions into the Faces of People of whatever Quality. Their Ignorance of Sciences, and of the World, makes their Conversation run generally upon nothing but Brutality and Vices not to be nam'd, which they commit when Drunk. Men and Women are not asham'd to come to the Streets stark naked from Brothel-Houses. Drunkenness is so modest a Vice here, that none are free from it, Men or Women. The Wives, after their Husbands are fallen asleep on the Floor with Drink, sit upon them, and continue drinking till they themselves tumble also down. They bow their Heads to the Ground to their Superiors, after they have been soundly cudgell'd, which is a Demonstration of the Lowness of their Spirits. The greatest *Boiar*, when he writes to the Czar, expresses his Name in the Diminutive, as, *Petrushe twoy Golop, I Petrillo your Slave*, instead of *I Peter*. They are perswaded Physicians can cure all Diseases if they please, and punish them severely if their Patients die. The *Boiars* keep great Numbers of Slaves both in City and Country, which commit great Disorders, and frequently murder People in the High-Ways. Because they us'd to approach their Images with their Breaths stinking of Tobacco, the Patriarch obtain'd from the Czar a Prohibition of it. All Strangers admire, that from sweating in a hot Stove, they frequently go out naked, and wallow in Snow, and return to it again without any Harm.

Reading and Writing is the heighest Degree of Learning among them: They count by Forties and Nineties; so that their Arithmetick can be none of the best. Their Priests go no further in Learning than to be able to read a Chapter in the Bible. They have their Characters from the *Greeks*, but have much alter'd and augmented them, for they have 39 Letters. They reckon their Years from the Creation of the World,

and maintain that Christ was born in the Year 5508, after the Creation. Our present Year 1708 is their 7216. Their Year commences the first of *September*. They begin their Day at Sun-rising, and end it at Sun-setting. They write upon long Scrolls of Paper glu'd together, sometimes 25 or 30 Ells. Endeavours have been us'd to reform them from this scandalous Ignorance. *Ivan Brissovitz Cirka* got divers Histories and Books of Learning translated into the *Russian* Language, and after that a *Greek* and *Latin* School was erected in *Moscow*. The present Czar gives Leave to his Nobility to acquire the Liberal Sciences, particularly the Mathematicks, to acquaint themselves with Foreign Countries, and has set them an Example in his own Person, with a Design to understand Sea-Affairs and Shipping. The *Muscovites* are jealous. Some say, they use *Italian* Locks, to ensure the Chastity of their Wives. They are cruel and bloody minded, insolent in Prosperity, and cowardly in Adversity; yet have such an Opinion of their own Abilities and Merits, that you can scarce ever pay them enough of Respect.

The *Muscovites* in general are of a very healthful Constitution, and long liv'd: Their Bodies are robust, and strong built, but not tall.

They are frugal in their House-keeping: They live in wretched Wooden Houses; but their Merchants and Lords have of late built Houses of Stone. Their Household-Stuff consists in 2 or 3 Pots, and as many Wooden or Earthen Dishes. Some of the better sort have Pewter. They hang their Rooms with Mats, and sleep on Benches. The whole Family is squeez'd together into the same Room. In the Country, the Pigs and Poultry are lodg'd in the same Place with the Family. Their Food is Turnips, Colworts, and Cucumbers. Their Salt Fish, tho' it smell strong, because not well salted, is to them a great Rarity. Their Beef is good, but their Mutton indifferent. The greater Part of the Year is spent in Fasts, and then they eat Fish and Pulse, but no Flesh: Therefore they dress Fish better than Flesh. Their ordinary Drink is a sort of small Mead call'd *Quax*. They brew strong Beer in *March*, and make a Bed of Ice and Snow mix'd together, upon which they

they lay Barrels. Over them they lay another Bed of Ice, and then another Row of Barrels. They cover all with Straw and Planks, for their Cellars are not cover'd. They prefer Metheglin to *French* and *Rhenish* Wines. They put one lb. of Honey to every three lb. of Water, and add the Juice of Raspberries, Cherries, and Strawberries. They make it ferment with a Toast dip'd in the Dregs of Beer: Some put into in a Bag with Cloves, Cinnamon, and Grains of Pepper.

All *Muscovites*, of what Quality soever, must have their Afternoons Sleep. They are all fond of hot Baths, and discover'd the Imposture of the false *Demetrius*, by his Aversion to those Customs.

There are some Authors, and particularly *Dr. Fletcher*, who soften this Character, and say, That among the Nobility, there are very many of excellent Parts, Courage and Discretion; and among the People, some who are not Strangers to those Qualities; but they own, that many of those Things they are charg'd with proceed from their Want of Education, and the Oppression of their Superiors.

Their RELIGION.

BEFORE Christianity was known in *Muscovy*, the *Russians* were involv'd in the thickest Darkness of Paganism; for, besides such Gods as *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, and *Mars*, known to the ancient Pagans, they ador'd their peculiar Idols of monstrous and terrible Shapes, under the Names of *Pioruni*, *Stribi*, *Corfi*, *Mecosti*, all set on Pedestals. The first resembles a Dog with two big Breasts, his Tongue hanging out, and his Ears long. The 2d is like a Satyr, with two Feet like a Horse: It has 4 Horns, and a Tail. The 3d is also like a Satyr sitting, and has two Feet like a Horse, the Body like a Man's, with an open Mouth, flaming Eyes, and 4 Horns; in one Hand holding something like a Scepter, and the other Hand is like the Claws of a Fowl. The 4th is a big Head, with a wide Mouth, glaring Eyes, and Ears resembling Wings.

P. Wladimir, who married *Anna*, the Sister of *Basilius Porphyrogeneta*, about the Year 989, introduc'd the Christian Religion into this unpolish'd Nation; but they themselves

boast that their Nation was converted by *St. Andrew*; upon which Account the present Czar hath erected an Order of Knighthood, called, the *Order of St. Andrew's Cross*. When they embrac'd Christianity, it was much allay'd with a mixture of Superstitions and Follies, which are since improv'd by the modern *Muscovites*. They are of the *Greek Church*, because converted by the *Grecians*. Their Monks are all of the Order of *St. Basil*. Their Sermons are from *St. Chrysostom*, translated into their own Language. The Patriarch of the *Greek Church* resided formerly at *Constantinople*; but being forc'd from thence by the *Turk*, he remov'd to the Isle of *Scio*, whither the Emperors of *Russia* and their Clergy were wont to send Gifts every Year, in Acknowledgment of their Spiritual Subjection. In 1588, one *Hieronymo* came to *Moscow*, pretending to be Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and that he was banish'd by the *Turks*. Some say, he was depos'd by his own Clergy. He came by the Way of *Italy*; and the Pope, by his Practices and Intrigues, engag'd him in a Design to reconcile the Church of *Russia* with that of *Rome*; but this not succeeding, he propos'd the Translation of the See of the Patriarch from *Scio* to *Moscow*, and to resign his Patriarchate. This was very well receiv'd by the Czar. The Reasons *Hieronymo* alledg'd for removing this See, were these: 1. Because *Scio* was under the *Turk*. 2. Because the *Russian Church* was the only natural Daughter of the *Greek Church*; and agreeing with her in Doctrine and Ceremonies, 'twould be a great Honour to the Emperor and the Country of *Russia*. The Resignation in Writing, and the Patriarchal Staff, were delivered to the Metropolitan of *Moscow* with great Solemnity, before the Clergy of *Russia*, on the 25th of *January*, 1588. who by this became Patriarch, and was immediately inaugurated. *Hieronymo* got a deal of Money by the Bargain; upon which Account the *Russians* think it valid. The Patriarch of *Constantinople* never quarrels at it; and to bribe him to Silence, a Present of 500 Crowns is sent him every Year: Besides, the *Greeks* send frequently consecrated Toys and Relicks to *Moscow*, for which they get considerable Gifts.

The Invocation of Saints is a principal Part of their Devotion; every Family has the

the Picture of some Saint in their Houses, and a Wax Candle before it lighted in the Time of Worship. The Pictures are flat, and wretchedly done. They use none in *Basso-Relievo*. The Picture of St. *Nicholas*, and of the Virgin *Mary*, is over their Church-Porches, and City-Gates, through which no *Muscovite* passes without bowing to them. They bow likewise to all Crosses, and frequently make the Sign of the Cross. When they purchase an Image, they will not say they bought it, but exchange'd it for Silver. When they are old, they bury them under Ground, or throw them into Rivers. They go thrice to Church on *Sundays* and Holidays, and attend Divine Service standing. Their Churches have no Seats. The Women stand in the Porch, because they reckon them all impure. They know not what Preaching is. Their Service consists only in reading Psalms or Chapters in the Bible, some of *Chrysostom's* Homilies, and *Athanasius's* Creed. They sing certain Hymns. When they say the *Gospeld*, i. e. *Lord God have Mercy on me*, they beat their Foreheads to the Ground. They have 15 Festivals: and besides their stated Fast-Days, as *Wednesdays*, *Fridays*, and the *Eves* before Holidays, they have four severe *Lents*, in which the Use of Butter, Milk, and Eggs, is forbidden, except the first Week of their great *Lent*, in which they commit all manner of Debaucheries; and to make Amends for this, all the rest of that *Lent* they live upon Pulse, Herbs, Garlick, and Onions. During their *Lents*, the Husband is not to converse with his Wife, on Pain of Excommunication for a whole Year. Their Penance consists, 1. In abstaining from hot Liquors. 2. From the Pleasures of Matrimony. 3. To say the *Gospeld* with the usual Reverence: (The Emperor *Ivan Basilowick* had his Forehead swell'd by knocking it on the Floor upon this Occasion.) 4. To stand in the Porch during Divine Service. 5thly, and chiefly, To wash with Holy Water, consecrated on the *Epiphany*; the telling of which is Part of the Clergy's Perquisites. That they don't believe Transubstantiation, is evident, 1. Because on all Occasions they speak of the Absurdity of that Doctrine. 2. They never adore the Host. 3. The *Greeks*, from whom they had their Religion, never believ'd any such thing. As Followers of

that Church, they deny the Holy Ghost to proceed from both Father and Son. They deny Purgatory, but pray for the Dead. They communicate in both Kinds, with Leaven'd Bread, and with Wine mix'd with Water. They mix the Bread and Wine together, and make use of Spoons when they communicate. Some sleep after it, to prevent any Occasion of sinning. Children of Seven Years of Age are admitted to the Sacrament in both Kinds, because, according to them, they begin then to sin. Before that Age, they communicate only in one Kind. They forbid Extreme Unction, and punish fourth Marriages with Death. They admit none to Orders but those who are married. They divorce their Wives upon slight Occasions, and never fail to do it if a Woman be barren, and then send her to a Monastery, which they call sending her to her Prayers. They hate the *Roman-Catholics*, *Jews* and *Turks*: Therefore the *Ottoman* Ambassadors are not admitted to kiss the Czar's Hands. Whoever embraces the *Russian* Religion, must be re-baptized. The Czar gives great Gifts to Proselytes. *Lutherans* and *Calvinists* are tolerated, and have Churches in his Dominions.

If any Stranger enter their Churches, they think them polluted, and afterwards purify them with strange Ceremonies. It is a known Story at *Moscow*, That a Monk belonging to an *English* Ambassador entred a Church, and tore an Image of St. *Nicholas*. The *Muscovites* were perswaded that it was an old Heretick, and, by a particular Order from the Patriarch, it was carried in Shew through the Streets, and afterwards put to Death.

They look upon Baptism as absolutely necessary to Salvation: They baptize in the Church, and have two Godfathers, who are obliged to be so to all Children as long as they live. They consecrate the Water first, then the Father and Godfathers renounce the Devil and all his Works; and at naming the Devil, they spit upon the Ground. The Priest exorcises the Child at the Church-Door, because they believe all Children are possessed with the Devil: Therefore they are not allowed to enter the Church till the Devil is thrown out. The Priest hangs a Cross of Gold, Silver, or Lead, about the Child's Neck, which it must wear till Death; and

and such as want this, cannot have Christian Burial. The Priest assigns a Saint to the Child, whom he must ever after reverence as his Patron. They dip the Child three times in the Water, put some Salt in his Mouth, make the Sign of the Cross on his Forehead, Hands, Breasts and Back, with consecrated Oil, and put a clean Shirt on him, saying, *Thou art as clean and as clear of Original Sin as this Shirt.* They plunge Profelites over Head and Ears in Water.

Their MARRIAGES.

THE young People are not allow'd to see one another; but the Relations of the Bridegroom see the Bride naked, and give an Account of their Remarks to the Bridegroom. Young Women are not allow'd to come abroad. The Nuptial Bed is made upon 40 Sheaves of Rye, laid in good Order, and encompass'd with several Barrels of Wheat, Barley, and Oats. The Bridegroom near Night goes from his own House to the Bride; the Priest leads the Van on Horseback; a Piece of Taffeta is held betwixt the Bride and Bridegroom, that they may not see one another; then the Bride is painted, has her Hair ty'd up in two Knots; and, if a Person of Note, has a Coronet of Leaf-Gold, or of Silver-gilt, lin'd with Silk, put upon her Head, having on both Sides near the Ears 5 or 6 Rows of Pearls, hanging down in Strings to her Breast: The upper Garment sometimes costs 1000 Crowns, and is richly embroider'd. Then the Bridegroom is painted: After that they go to Church, and there a Canopy of Taffeta is put over them. When they have made the usual Offerings, the Priest gives them his Blessing, by holding Images over their Heads, and taking the Man by the Right, and the Woman by the Left Hand, asks them three times, If they be willing to be married? When both answer, Yes, the whole Company join Hands; then the 128th Psalm is sung, the Priest singing one Verse, and the Company the next; and they dance all the time. Then he puts a Garland of Rue upon their Heads, and about their Shoulders, if they have been married before, and says, *Multiply and Increase;* and dismisses them, saying these Words, *Whom God hath joined*

together, let no Man separate. One of the Company gives a Glass of Wine to the Priest, and he drinks to the married Couple. The Bridegroom throws down the Glass on the Ground, and they both tread upon it, and say, *May they thus fall under our Feet, and be trod to pieces, who shall endeavour to sow Division between us.* Then the Women throw some Flax and Hemp-seed at the young Couple, wishing them much Prosperity: Others pull the Bride by the Robe; but she embraces the Bridegroom, and will not part from him. She is conducted home in a Sledge, with an old Woman in Company, who entertains her with smuggy Conversation. As soon as the Marriage-Feast is done, they go to Bed. The Guests in the mean time use many Charms, which they think advantagious to the Consummation. An old Servant of the House, that attends at the Door, asks the Bridegroom if the Business is done. As soon as the Bridegroom answers, Yes, the Trumpets and Timbrels sound till they have conducted them to the Stoves; then the Bride sends the Bridegroom a Shirt richly embroider'd. The two next Days they spend in Merry-making. If the Husbands happen to be drunk, the Wives never fail to improve that Time to vicious and leud Purposes. The Wedding-Day may be said to be the last Day of Pleasure to the Women, for after that they must not stir abroad, except on extraordinary Occasions. They know nothing of House-keeping, but are employ'd in embroidering, or making Purfes, or such Toys. Their Diversion within Doors is in swinging. Their Wives are hardly used, and sometimes beat. The Husbands excuse themselves, alledging, that they are addicted to strong Liquors, have lewd Tongues, and are not chaste. They have no other Notion of Adultery, but marrying another Man's Wife. Tho' they be much given to Lust, they will not lie with a Woman till she take off the Cross from her Neck, and the Images in the Room be cover'd, lest they should inform against them.

Of their CHURCHES.

THose of their Churches that are built of Stone, are round, and vaulted, that they may resemble the Heavens. They have

have no Seats nor Organs, nor any other Instruments of Musick. Their Patriarch, in 1636, forbade the Use of Musical Instruments in private Houses, and order'd 5 Waggon full of them to be burnt. Each Church has a Tower, with a triple Cross at Top. If a Dog chance to get into the Church, they not only sweep it, but purify it with Incense. Nor are any allow'd to make Water in the Church-Yards. Their Bells are not hung in the Steeples, but in certain Engines built for that purpose near the Church, and are commonly small, of 150 or 200 Pound. They toll them at the beginning of the Service, and the Elevation of the Chalice, which is done but once, because they put the Bread into it immediately after the Consecration. Every Church has an Image over the Door. The Corners of the Streets, and the very Gates of the Cities, are beset with Images, which the *Muscovites* reverence as they pass along, as well as the Crosses on their Churches, and never forget at such Times to say their *Gospels*.

Of their BURIALS.

WHEN a Man dies, the Kindred and Friends are sent for by the Widow, who ask the Deceased, Why he would die? Whether he wanted any thing? Whether his Wife was not young and handsome enough? Whether she had been inconstant? Then they wash the Body, and put on it a clean Shirt and Shroud, with a new Pair of thin Shoes on his Feet. They lay him with his Arms across in his Coffin. The Priest is to pray for his Soul, and to purify the Corps with Holy Water and Incense. The Burial is perform'd thus: The Priest goes first with the Image of the Saint, Patron of the Deceased; then 4 Virgins that are nearest of Kin to the Deceased, who make mournful Lamentations; next comes the Body, carried by 6 Men upon their Shoulders; but if a Monk, he is carried by those of his own Profession: The Corps is surrounded by Priests, who burn Incense, to keep off evil Spirits. When they come to the Grave, the Coffin is uncover'd: The Widow still asks the Former Questions; and the Priest, with an Image in his Hand, re-

peats often these Words, *Lord, look upon this Soul in Righteousness*. The Friends take their Leave, by kissing the Corps or Coffin; then the Priest puts a Piece of Paper betwixt his Fingers, which is his Pass to the other World, certifying St. Peter, That upon seeing this, he may open the Gates of Heaven to him. The Certificate is sign'd by the Metropolitan or Patriarch, and Confessor: It shews, That the Bearer has behav'd himself like a good Christian of the *Greek* Religion, and that he was absolv'd of his Sins; then the Coffin is put in the Grave; after which, the Friends drown their Sorrow in good Liquor. Prayers are made for the Deceased 40 Days, at which Time the *Muscovites* believe their Sins are expiated.

Of their CLERGY.

THE Patriarch is oblig'd to reside constantly at *Moscow*: He is next in Dignity to the Czar, who leads his Horse by the Head at the Procession on *Palm-sunday*. He determines all Ecclesiastical Affairs, wears a long black Robe, and always has a Cross carried before him. They have 4 Metropolitans, and 7 Bishops, who dare not reside in their Dioceses, because the Czar is jealous lest they should excite the People to Rebellion. Next to them are the Priests, call'd by them Popes, or *Papa's*. No other Qualification is requisite for this Office, but some small Skill in Reading, Writing and Singing. As a Badge of their Office, a *Calot*, or Cap, is put upon their Heads at their Consecration, and they are obliged to wear it while they are Priests. When Laymen design to beat a Clergyman, they first secure his Calot, beat him to purpose, and then put it on again. The Priests bless the People as they pass along the Streets with the Sign of the Cross. This Country swarms with Monks.

The Bishops live upon Tithes; but the Priests have no other Maintenance except what private Persons think fit to bestow upon them; yet by what they get at Baptisms, Marriages, Burials, by Prayers for the Dead, or upon People's undertaking any Journey, and by blessing of Houses, they obtain a competent Livelihood.

*The Czar's TITLES, from Ysbrant
Ides's Dedication of his Travels
to his Czarish Majesty.*

THE most Serene and most Potent Sovereign Czar, and Great Prince *Peter Alexowitz*, by the Grace of God, Emperor of the Whole, Great, Little, and White Russia, Monarch of *Moscow, Kiow, Wolodimer*, and *Novogorod*, Czar of *Casan*, Czar of *Astracan*, Czar of *Siberia*, *Daour*, *Samoiedia*, Lord of *Pleskow*, Great Duke of *Smolensko*, *Twere*, *Jugoria*, *Permia*, *Wiatska*, *Bulgaria*, &c. Lord and Great Prince of *Novogorod*, of the *Nederigen* Countries, *Czernikow*, *Rezan*, *Polosko*, *Rostkow*, *Jawoslau*, *Biela-Ozera*, *Udoria*, *Obdoria*, *Condoria*, and of the whole North Sea, Commander and Lord of the *Ivershian* Countries, the *Kartalinshian*, *Grusinschian* Czars, the *Kabardinschian* Dominions, the *Czerkassian* and *Gorsjschian* Princes, and many other Countries and Territories East, West, and North, the Inheritance of his Ancestors.

Those who treat with his Ambassadors, have the greatest Trouble in the World to give him his Titles, because of his extraordinary Pretensions. In 1654, to give some Colour to his making War upon *Poland*, and to assist the *Cossacks*, the Czar pretended that some of the *Polish* Lords had not given him his due Titles, and that they had printed Books in *Poland* in Derogation of his Honour. One of his Predecessors was so cruel, that he caus'd the Hat of a *French* Ambassador to be nail'd to his Head, because he refus'd to be uncover'd in his Presence.

*Of the Czar, and his Method of
Government.*

THE *Muscovites* have a great Reverence and Regard to the Czar, and look upon his Will as the Will of Heaven. They call him *God Almighty's Chamberlain*, so that it is a Proverb among them, *God only knows it, and the Great Duke*. Persons of the chief Rank in the Empire approach him with the same Reverence they do God. If he gives them the least Mark of his Displeasure, they are ready to expiate their Faults with the

Loss of their Lives. He is Arbitrary in all Parts of his Government, and absolute Lord of the Lives and Estates of his Subjects.

His REVENUES.

1. **T**HE Crown-Lands are 136 Towns with their Territories, of which some pay Money, and others Corn and Provisions: This being more than is spent in his Household, the Surplus is sold at 230000 Rubles per Ann. a Ruble being a Mark Sterling; and commonly pays his Servants. 2. An Imposition upon every Measure of Grain that grows in the Kingdom, and a Tax on every Town and Precinct, which is commonly 400000 Rubles per Ann. 3. The Customs, which rise or fall according to Trade; those of *Archangel* amount sometimes to 600000 Rubles per Annum, and the Customs of other Towns to about 340000. These are levied by the Court of the Great Income, which also levies the Tax on Bath-Stoves and Publick-Houses. There are 3 in *Novogorod*, which pay 4000 Rubles per Annum; and it is said, there are 1000 such in the Empire, which pay the like in Proportion. They collect also 10 per Cent. upon those that are cast in Law-Suits, and an Impost for every Name contain'd in Writs that pass out of the Courts, amounting commonly to 3000 Rubles per Ann. 4. The Half of Felons Goods, the other Half going to the Judge and Informer. 5. Rents of Lands, allow'd for maintaining Soldiers. These Branches of the Revenue above-mention'd were sometimes reckon'd to bring in 1400000 Rubles per Annum. 6. The Monopoly of *Caviare*, *Isinglass*, and Fishing, for which he pays the Labourers, and sometimes farms the fishing of Rivers and Lakes. 7. By Furs from all Parts of his Dominions, which he sells by his Merchants, and no other must sell till all his be disposed of; so that he rates them as he pleases. 8. The Preemption of all Goods that come to his Country, which he sells as he thinks fit. He generally purchases with his own Commodities, and seldom suffers Gold or Silver to be carried out of his Dominions. 9. Sables, the best Trade of his Country, are all his own, as Tribute, or purchas'd by him at a small set Rate. 10. Five per Cent. of all Goods exported and imported.

His Expences are answerable to his Revenues, his Family being at least 1000 Persons, besides 16000 Musketeers, and 5000 Horse, for his Guards, and 100000 Men in Garisons. His Table consists usually of 50 Dishes. He defrays the Charges of all Ambassadors from their entering his Country till they go out.

The vast Extent of his Dominions; his unlimited Power, and the Splendour of his Court, make such Impressions upon his Subjects, that they glory in their Chains, and despise all other Nations. 'Tis common to hear them say, *I have had, or shall have, the Honour of seeing the bright Eyes of his Czarish Majesty.*

His tyrannical Government is supported by the following Methods: 1. His Subjects are not allowed to travel, lest having seen and tasted Liberty abroad, they should not relish Slavery at home. 2. The Czar never marries a Foreign Princess, for fear she should introduce Customs destructive to his absolute Power. 3. Their Ignorance contributes much to this, for they know nothing of the Foundations of Government, and the Privileges of Human Nature.

The famous Tyrant *John Basilowitz* was the first Inventer of the Czar's Arms, in Imitation of the *German* Emperors: He bears a Spread-Eagle, but the Wings somewhat less than the Imperial Eagle, having on the Breast, in an Escutcheon, one on Horseback fighting with a Dragon, representing *St. Michael*, or rather *St. George*. Above and between the Eagles-Heads, are 3 Crowns, signifying *Muscovy*, and the two *Tartarian* Kingdoms, *Astracan* and *Casan*.

Their POLICY.

THE Czar himself bestows all Places of Honour and Profit on whom he pleases. This breeds a Dependence on him, that he may oblige more of his Subjects, and hinder them from growing too powerful. No Governor is to keep his Post above 3 Years. Tho' the Czar may, yet he seldom takes the Lands of Fathers from their Children. *Dr. Fletcher* says, They pass their Lands by Descent of Inheritance to which of their Sons they please, and commonly after our Gavel-kind, and dispose of their Goods by Gift or Testament, without any Controul:

Yet they pay the Czar an Acknowledgment after the Nature of an Herriot or Relief.

Their LAWS.

NO Law of any Consequence is determined without the Approbation of the Czar: The Chief Justice receives Appeals from all Places, and acquaints his Majesty with them. In 1647, the Czar, with the Advice of his Counsellors, publish'd a Code, containing the Laws the Judges were to observe in all their Sentences, which are printed in Folio, by the Title of, *Solomns Ulofenia*, or Universal Right. The Czar makes Peace or War, and sends Ambassadors ordinarily of the richest of his *Boiars*, who are able to bear their own Charge. When they are recall'd, he takes to himself what he pleases of the Presents that are given them. When extraordinary Laws or Constitutions are to be made, the Czar summons a Meeting of the Clergy, and such of the Nobility as he pleases. One of the Secretaries proposes the Matters that are to pass into Acts; the Clergy are first ask'd their Opinions: If all agree, the Proposals pass into a Law. When the Czar consents, the Secretaries draw them up into the Form of a Proclamation, and send them to the great Cities, with Charge to the Governors to see them observ'd.

The Great COUNCIL.

THE Czar gives the Title of Counsellors to many that never come to Council. Those that belong to the Council, are called *Dumoy-Boyaren*, and are such as the Czar pleases to call. The Great Officers of State belong to this Council. He has also his Privy-Council, who for the most part rather consent and approve of the Czar's Resolves, than argue or give their Opinion. The Patriarch's Advice is ask'd in Matters of Consequence.

Particular COUNCILS.

THE Principal Councils are six; the first is for Ambassadors, and Foreign Affairs; the 2d for Matters of War; the 3d for the Revenues of the Crown; the 4th for Trade and Merchandize; the 5th for Determination

tion of Civil Affairs among themselves; the 6th for Criminal Matters. Every Province is assign'd to a certain Council. They use Tortures if the Criminal deny the Fact. Oaths there are perform'd in the Church, by kissing a Cross; but such as swear thus frequently, become infamous, are prohibited Entrance into the Church, and Persons of Condition will not converse with them. False Swearing, and frequent solemn Oaths, are very scandalous here.

Their PUNISHMENTS.

A Robber is broke on the Wheel; a Sacrilegious Person impal'd; a Traytor and Servant that murders his Master, beheaded: Those in Debt, are kept Prisoners to the Time appointed for paying the Debt: If they fail then, they are every Day brought into the Court, and beat for an Hour upon the Shins and the Calves of their Legs, sent back to Prison against Night, and so on till the Debt be paid; but if they be unable to pay it, they are made Slaves to the Creditor.

OFFICERS of STATE.

1. The Chancellor presides in the Office of Ambassadors, presents Petitions to the Czar, and returns the Answer, which must be in the Czar's own Words. 2. The Treasurer, takes Care of the Revenue. 3. The Constable, who looks after Military Affairs. 4. The Master of the Horse, who, besides commanding the Czar's Guards, oversees his Stables. 5. The Chief Justice, who is always present with the Czar.

Inferior MAGISTRATES.

IN all great Frontier Cities, they have Weywodes, who are Governors of great Quality and Experience. In lesser Cities, the Czar appoints Governors, by delivering them, as a Badge of their Power, a Staff, which at their Return they restore to him again.

Of their COIN.

Their Coin is Silver only, and of an Oval Figure: (No Gold is coin'd here, except Medals upon extraordinary Occa-

sions) It is very small, so that the biggest Piece, called a *Copee* or *Denning*, is worth no more than a Penny. This Money is very troublesome, by reason of its Smallness: 'Tis mark'd with the Arms of *Muscovy*, and has on the other Side the Name of the Reigning Czar, and of the City where it was coin'd. Four Cities only enjoy this Privilege, viz. *Moscow*, *Novogorod*, *Twere*, and *Pleskow*. Rix-Dollars of all sorts, *Joachim* Dollars, and *Spanish* Reals, pass current in *Muscovy*.

Of their NOBILITY.

THE Nobility were formerly younger Branches of the Royal Family, and had great Power; but since the Days of *Ivan Basilowick*, they have been mortified and kept under. Now the chief Degree of Nobility is that of the *Boiars*, or *Boiarents*, who are of the Emperor's Council, and delight in having great Bellies, as generally all *Muscovites* have, by tying their Belts below their Bellies. They who have born any Office in War, as General, Governor, &c. leave something of Title to their Posterity. They also carry a Kettle-Drum at the Pommel of their Saddles, and beat with the End of their Whip, to make Way for them in Crouds in the Streets; and in Wars, to give Notice of Marching, Halting, or the like: The first that bears the Command, beats, and all the rest answer him. The Czar obliges them to constant Attendance at Court, lest they should foment Insurrections among the Subjects.

Of their MILITARY DISCIPLINE.

IN Field-Battles and Sieges, they were formerly reckon'd nothing, being soon brought into Confusion; so that they own'd other Nations were their Masters in this Point: But they defend a Fortrefs to the utmost, not only because they are able to undergo Hardships of all Sorts, but because they know it is present Death for them if they return home, after they have surrendered a Fortrefs by Capitulation; so that their Women sometimes fight stoutly upon the Works, and defend Breaches. They endeavour now to bring the Soldiers under better Discipline; for which End they

make use of a great many *Scots* and *German* Officers, who instruct them in all the War-like Exercises that are practis'd by other *European* Nations. The Martial Genius of the present Czar has accustomed them more to the Use of Arms, than any of his Predecessors. He has also improv'd their Naval Affairs. They fight best under the Command of Strangers. They have four Potent Enemies, the *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Poland*ers, and *Swedes*. The Czar maintains 16000 *Strolitzes*, or Guards, and 4 or 5000 Foot, in the City of *Moscow*, and 100000 Men upon the Frontiers. He has also a Militia, who are to rendezvous and march as he shall command them. They are maintain'd by a great Part of the Empire, let out to those call'd *Sinaboiarsky*, on Condition that they themselves, their Sons and Farmers, shall serve him with Horse and Arms at their own Charge in the Wars. All their Sons are *Sinboiars*, or Gentlemen, and as soon as able to bear Arms, enter themselves in the Great Constable's Office, petition for Maintenance, and are frequently put into mean Employments, till they can be better provided. When the Emperor makes War in Person, he has a select Guard of 15000 Horse, who have from 12 to 70 Rubles *per Annum* each, according to their Degree, besides their Lands. His Nobles and Officers maintain also 60000 Horse at their own Charge, who Muster once a Year on the Borders of *Tartary*: So that besides 100000 Men in Garrison, he has 300000 Horse ready on all Occasions. Their Foot have a Gun, a Sword, and an Ax behind them: Their Horse have Helmets, Corslets, Bows, Arrows, Iron Masses, Scymeters, Targets, Lances; and now they have Fire-Arms. They had formerly a great Drum, carry'd upon 4 Horses, fasten'd together, and 8 Men to beat it. They had in their Wars with the *Tartars* a double Wall, or Fortification of thick Pales, so contriv'd, that it might in a short Time be set up 7 Miles in length, with Holes for their Muskets to fire through. This defended them from the Arrows of the *Tartars*, who had no Fire-Arms. History informs us, That in some Invasions, the *Tartars* have carried off 400000 Captives from that Country.

Of their HISTORY.

ALL that we can be inform'd of as to this vast Monarchy, is, That it was formerly divided into several Principalities and Governments; which being united, brought it to its present Bulk. As to the Origine of their governing Families, Authors are at an Uncertainty; some derive their first Governors from *Beala*, a King of *Hungary*; and 'tis certain, their Imperial Family bore that Name. Queen *Olga*, one of them, went to *Constantinople* in 876, where she embrac'd Christianity, brought it into *Russia*, and is now one of their Saints. They keep her Anniversary on the 11th of July. To her succeeded several other Princes; but the first, of whom we have any Certainty, is, Prince *Wolodimer*, who, in 988, married *Anna*, the Sister of *Basilius Porphyrogeneta*, introduc'd the Christian Religion into this unpolish'd Nation, was baptized at *Constantinople*, in the Presence of the two Emperors, and nam'd *Basil*. Their History is very confus'd after this, till they became a Prey to the *Tartars*, when their Prince *George* was defeated by the *Tartarian* King *Batio* in 1273. The whole Country was miserably enslav'd, and burden'd with an insupportable Tribute for about 200 Years. This *Batio* impos'd very hard Terms on the *Muscovites*, viz. That the *Tartars* should chuse from Time to Time the Princes of *Muscovy*; That when the *Tartars* sent an Ambassador, the Prince should go to meet and wait upon him on Foot, offering the Ambassador a Platter of Mare's-Milk; That if the Ambassador let any of the Milk fall upon the Mane of his Horse, the Prince of *Muscovy* should lick it up; and that he should be bare Headed, and give the *Tartarian* Ambassador's Horse his Provender out of his Cap. But the hardest of all was, That the *Tartars* had a House and Guard in the Castle of *Moscow*. But in 1450, *Joku*, the Son of *Basilius the Blind*, became their Deliverer, and erected the numerous scatter'd Provinces into a great Principality. After a bloody War with the Great Master of the *Teutonic* Order in *Livonia*, he made a Truce with him for 50 Years. He subdued the Dukes of

of *Tiver* and *Great Novogorod*, in which City it is said he got a Booty of 300 Cart-load of Gold and Silver: He built *Ivanogorod*, a Castle near *Narva*. In 1509, his Son *Basilius* took *Pleskow* from the *Poles*: He afterwards took *Smolensko*; but was beat by the *Casan-Tartars*, who at the same time ransack'd the City of *Moscow*. His Successor was his Son, *John Basilowitz*, or *Basilides*, who rais'd the Empire of *Muscovy* to its Height, subdued the Kingdoms of *Casan* and *Astracan*, which alarm'd his Neighbours, especially *Selimus*, the Emperor of the *Turks*; who in 1569 sent 340000 Men to recover *Astracan*, which was bravely defended by *Serebrine*, the *Muscovite* General: So that this vast Army was partly by their unsuccessful Rencounters with him; and chiefly for Want of Provisions, for most part consum'd, and the remainder of them was cast away in the *Black Sea* as they return'd; so that few of them escap'd. He also obtain'd a Victory over the Master of the *Teutonic* Order, *William Von Furstenbourg*, whom he took, and suffer'd to perish in a miserable Prison; which was the Occasion that the City of *Revel*, and all *Esten*, surrender'd themselves to *Sweden*, as the rest of *Livonia* did to *Poland*. He was at first victorious over the *Poles*; but afterwards *Stephen Batori* took *Platsko*, and several other Places, from him. He died in 1584, and was one of the most cruel Tyrants that ever liv'd. To him succeeded his Son *Theodore Ivanowitz*, a mild and simple Prince, against whom the *Swedes* wag'd War about *Ingermanland*. He left the Nation involv'd in grievous Troubles.

This *Theodore*, who was the last of the House of *Beala*, dying without Issue, his Sister's Husband, *Boris Gudénov*, did, by his clandestine and unwarrantable Intrigues, obtain the Empire, but reign'd with very indifferent Success. Before he was Emperor, by his covetous and oppressive Practices, he had gathered together an Estate of 93700 Rubles *per Annum*; upon which, and other Accounts, many did afterwards favour the false *Demetrius*. After his Death, his Son *Fedor Borissowitz* took the Title of *Grand Duke*; when the Impostor *Demetrius* (whose true Name was *Gregorius Utrepeja*) personated his murder'd Brother *Demetrius*, and carried the Matter so far, thro' the Assi-

stance of *Poland*, that he took *Fedor* Prisoner, and causing him to be strangled, proclaim'd himself Czar, July 29. 1605. And the better to establish himself by Foreign Alliances, he married *Maria*, the Daughter of *George Minzack*, Weywode of *Sandomir*, soon after. This alienated the Affections of the *Muscovites*, because by this Alliance they thought he design'd to bring in *Poper*y: And they likewise suspected him of being an Impostor, because he did not conform himself to their Customs of sleeping after Dinner, &c. So that a few Days after, *Basilius Ivanowitz Zuski*, (a *Russian* Prince, of the Royal Family by the Mother's Side) with 20000 Men, surpriz'd and cut in pieces the Bridegroom, imprison'd the Bride, with several of the Nobility, and was proclaim'd Czar, June 1. 1606. but soon after was oppos'd by another Counterfeit *Demetrius*, (*Gregorius Schasopski*, formerly Secretary of *Moscow*) who pretended to be *Demetrius*: That he had escap'd from *Basilius*, instead of being kill'd, as the other report'd, and claim'd his imprison'd Wife. All these Divisions were fomented by *Charles IX.* King of *Sweden*, who at length offer'd his Assistance against the second *Demetrius*. *Zuski* at first refus'd to accept it; but when the other began to grow powerful, he earnestly desir'd it, and promising to deliver *Kockholm* to *Charles* as an Acknowledgment, pursuant to his Request, the King sent to his Assistance *Peritus de la Gardie*, with some Thousands of Men, that were very serviceable to the *Muscovites*; who refusing, upon several frivolous Evasions, to deliver up the Places stipulated to *Charles*, he took them by Force, and by so doing, annex'd *Carelia*, and the rest of *Ingermanland*, to the Kingdom of *Sweden*. Then the *Swedes* were defeated by the *Poles* near *Clusjin*; the Effects of which were the deposing of *Zuski*, whom they shav'd, and shut up in a Monastery, and offer'd the Crown of *Muscovy* to *Uladislaus*, the Prince of *Poland*, who accepted it, on Condition of delivering up *Zuski*. Soon after this, the *Polish* Army being admitted into the City, they quarrell'd with the Inhabitants, and in despite of their General plunder'd and burnt it; at which Time 200000 Persons perish'd, the Treasury was pillag'd, and the Wealth of the Emperor was divided amongst the *Poles*.

Poles. In this miserable Condition, a *Muscovite* Butcher gave out among the People, That if they could find an honest Treasurer, they would soon get good Officers and Soldiers of their own Nation to recover their Country. The People laying hold of this, bid him name a General; and accordingly he nam'd a very worthy, but mean Gentleman, whom they approv'd, and made himself Treasurer. They paid him all that was in Arrear to the Emperor, and what else they could, with which he rais'd an Army, attack'd the *Poles*, and forc'd them to leave the Country. After this, the Nobility chose *Michael Feodorowitz*, (the Son of *Feodor Mikilowitz*, the Patriarch of *Moscow*) Nephew to the Tyrant *John Baslides*, who, by his Accession to the Throne, began the Race of *Alexiewitz*, the present Royal Family: He began to Reign in 1613: and by making Peace with *Sweden* and *Poland*, and a long Reign of 33 Years, he settl'd the Country in a prosperous Condition. He was succeeded by his Son *Alexius Michaelowitz*, who, in 1653, falling upon the *Poles*, took from them *Smolensko* and *Kiow*, and committed great Depredations in *Lithuania*. Then invading *Livonia*, he took *Dorpt*, *Kokenhusen*, and several other Places of less Note; but was oblig'd to raise the Siege of *Riga* with great Loss. Soon after a Peace ensu'd, by which he restor'd to the *Swedes* all the Places he had taken from them. In 1669, one *Stephen Ratzin*, a Seditious Rebel, disturb'd the Repose of his Government, and made him very uneasy; for having master'd *Casan* and *Astracan*, he committed great Depredations all over *Muscovy*, till at last he was taken, and brought to condign Punishment; upon which all the Countries he had overrun return'd to their Obedience. Soon after this, many of the *Cossacks* submitted themselves to the Protection of *Alexius*, who was thereby engag'd in a War with the *Turks*, but not to his Advantage. He died in 1675, leaving his Empire to his Son *Theodore Alexowitz*, a sickly Prince, who was succeeded in 1682 by his Brother *Peter Alexiewitz*, the present Czar, who govern'd in Conjunction with him before, and narrowly escap'd the treacherous Designs of his Sisters *Sophia* and *Maria*, with their Confederate *G. Gallyzin*. He at present sways the Scepter alone, and vigorously endea-

vours, as much as possible, to polish his rude Subjects, by Introduction of Learning and Arts among them.

Their LANGUAGE.

THEIR Language has nothing common with the *Greek*, but comes so near to the *Sclavonian* and *Polish*, that whoever knows the one, may understand the other.

A SUPPLEMENT, from the Travels of the Baron de Mayerberg, the Emperor's Ambassador into Muscovy, Printed at Leyden in 1688.

Of their MANNERS.

HE says, there is great Impurity of Crimes among 'em, and that prodigious Villanies are not punish'd there according to Merit. He gives an Instance of a Criminal, who was apprehended in the very Act of Sacrilege; and when brought before a Judge, he frankly own'd the Fact, and without the least Concern laid the Blame upon the Infirmary of Human Nature, and told, that a Priest was his Accomplice. He also own'd what he had done; upon which he was sent to a Monastery, to bolt Flower for 6 Weeks; and after that, when he said *Gospodi* for some Time, he was absolv'd. The other Fellow was deliver'd to his Master, who was oblig'd to pay the Value of what he had stole.

The Czar washes his Hands after he has saluted Ambassadors of the Popish Religion, because he looks upon them as Pagans, and thinks the Touch of them defiles him.

The *Muscovites*, from their Cradles, are so addicted to Lying, that it is not safe to trust any of them. Not only the Boors and meaner sort are addicted to this Vice, but their Ministers of State. They maintain one Lie with a Hundred; and if they happen to be convicted, they don't blush at it, but smile, as if they had done some worthy Action.

The People drink in Publick-Houses till their Money is gone, and frequently sell all their

their Clothes to pay their Reckoning. Their Priests outdo the People in Drunkenness. It is very ordinary for them, when drunk, to wallow in a Kennel, and then Hackney-Carmen or Coachmen carry them off to some By-way, and rob them.

Their People of Note have many Servants, but are at small Charge for their Maintenance or Cloathing. Their Drink is Water, unless on some Holiday, when they mix a little Leaven with it. They have no Wages, because they are for the most part either Slaves, or the Sons of Slaves. They are much inclin'd to Drunkenness, and set Fire to Houses, that in the Time of the Hurry and Confusion they may have Occasion to rob; and frequently the Guards or Watch go Shares with them in their Robberies and Murthers by Night; so that every Morning almost the Corps of murder'd People are found in the Streets.

Their Beggars ordinarily steal Children, break their Arms and Legs, and sometimes dig out their Eyes, to move the People to Compassion, by pretending they were born so. Their usual Stile of begging is, *For the Sake of God, and the Great Duke.*

The greatest Part of their Knowledge of the Affairs of Europe comes from *Prussian* or *Dutch* Gazets; which Merchants bring sometimes to *Moscow*; and they implicitly believe them as Articles of Faith. Sometimes they use this Method to know the Secrets of State of Foreign Kingdoms. When they take any Prisoners, tho' but common Soldiers, they threaten to torture them, if they will not discover the present State of Affairs in the Countries they belong to; tho' poor Souls they know nothing of the Matter themselves; but understanding the Simplicity of the *Muscovites*, they tell them any thing they know will please them. When their Affairs are prosperous, they are unsufferably insolent; but when otherwise, they are as much dejected; which makes the Negotiations at the Czar's Court very troublesome and uncertain.

No Man is advanc'd to any Business or Command in the Army for Merit and Abilities, but on Account of his Birth, how insufficient soever for the Post. This damps all Courage and Bravery in the Val-

gar, because they have no Hopes of raising their Fortune.

Foreign Ambassador are in effect Prisoners here; all Commerce with their Acquaintance by Letters is forbid, and the Letters from their Masters to them are intercepted.

Of their W O M E N.

They have more Monasteries for divorc'd Wives than for Maids. The Carriage of both is very scandalous; for after their *Matings*, they walk abroad, and having no Guardians of their Chastity, upon the first Temptation they comply with any lewd Proposal, and gratify their own vicious Inclinations.

The Women have not that Regard and Respect paid them here as in most other Nations of Europe. No Man here will undervalue his Sex so much as to bow to any Woman, of what Quality soever. There is nothing heard in *Moscow* of admiring the Female Sex, or of adoring their Divine Beauty and Charms; for they are not liberal in bestowing Incense of that sort.

The Czar's Sisters and Daughters are for most part shut up in Monasteries, or in the Palace, where they are forc'd to continue in Virginity. The Reason is, because the Czar will not marry them to any Prince that is not of their Faith, for all such they reckon Pagans, and all the Children begot of such Marriages they think Bastards. Neither are they allow'd to marry any Subjects, for they are accounted the Czar's Slaves.

The *Muscovite* Women are not asham'd to be seen naked by Men when in the Bath, and very often go naked into the same Bath with them.

The Czar does not suffer his Wife, Sons or Daughters, to eat with him; nor are his Wife, Sisters and Daughters, seen by any. Tho' he has above 1000 Courtiers, yet scarce any one of them ever see them. If the Grand Dutchess be sick, when a Physician comes into the Room, the Windows are all shut, that he may not see her. If he wants to feel her Pulse, she holds out her Arm, cover'd with a Veil of fine Silk.

Of their RELIGION.

ON *Wednesdays* and *Fridays* they abstain from Eggs, Flesh and Milk. Some of the more Religious will not on those Days use refin'd Sugar, because they are inform'd that it is purified with the White of an Egg.

The Week after *Easter*, they abandon themselves to all sorts of Riots and Extravagancies, and commit the maddest and most foolish Things imaginable. All Business is then at a stand, their Shops are shut; but the Taverns, Publick-Houses, and Stews, are open. The Air resounds with their confus'd Cries; and when they meet one another, one says, *Christ is risen again*; and the other answers, *He is certainly risen*. The Priests have their large Share in the Debaucheries of that Time: They have a young Man who goes before them with a Crucifix. They visit their Friends and Acquaintance, and are sure to be drunk. Their Bells toll Day and Night, for they are perswaded that it contributes to the Ease and Comfort of the Souls of their deceas'd Friends.

Their Priests account all those Pagans who are not of the *Muscovite* Faith. A Curate, says the Ambassador, refus'd to give us his Hand, lest by touching us he should be defil'd. None of their Boors, and but very few of their Citizens or Monks, can repeat the *Lord's-Prayer*.

When a *Muscovite* enters a Room, he takes no Notice of the Company, but looks about till he perceives an Image; then he bows to it three times, makes the Sign of the Cross, and afterwards salutes the Company. If any be found worshipping secretly an Image erected at the Charge of another, the Owner upbraids him with Injustice; in designing to have a Share in the Favour of that Image, which is only due to the Proprietor; and they are often oblig'd, by way of Punishment, to pay the Owner some Part of the Money he has laid out for the Image.

When a Man is excommunicated by the Church, his Saint must also partake of the Disgrace, and is allow'd no Place in the Church till the Man be restor'd to Commu-

nion, and then the Image is replac'd. Our Landlord, says the Ambassador, took all the Images out of our Rooms, for fear they should be provoked, if he suffer'd them to lodge with Pagans.

They allow no Preachers, lest they should teach the People Heresie. They are oblig'd to confess before they receive the Sacrament, but are sure to conceal their greatest Sins.

Many of the *Muscovites* are not call'd by the Names they receiv'd in Baptism, for their Parents conceal their true Names, and give them others, lest Magicians, or other wicked Persons, knowing their true Names, should make use of them to their Ruine.

Of the RIVERS of Muscovy.

Ptolmy says, the *Rha* is the greatest River of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, and has its Rise in *European Sarmatia*. The *Muscovites* now call it *Volga*: the *Tartars*, *Edel*; the *Armenians*, *Thamar*. Its Source is in the Province of *Reschow*, from the Lake *Bornow* in the Forrest of *Volkenk*. Out of this Lake runs a small River, which, after a Course of 8 *English* Miles, falls into a Lake call'd *Volga*, with which it joins its Waters for 30 *English* Miles, comes out greater than it enter'd, and has the Name of *Volga* from that Lake: Then it runs E. and waters *Jeroslaw* and *Nisi-Novogorod*, where the *Occa* falls into it: It also runs by *Casjan*. A little lower, the great River *Kama*, that divides *Europe* from *Asia*, falls into it. Then its Course is S. till it reach *Samara*, and runs S. W. to the City *Saratoff*. Then it runs S. and waters *Zariza* and *Astracan*. The *Volga* there is 2216 Foot broad. Twelve Leagues below this, it falls into the *Caspian* Sea, by 25 Mouths, in Lat. 46. Long. 76 $\frac{1}{2}$. and makes it less brackish for many Leagues. From its Source to the *Caspian* Sea, it runs 2900 Miles.

Occa. The Source of this River is not far from the Borders of the *Precopian Tartars*, about Lat. 49. It runs N. till it comes to *Kohn*, in Lat. 55. and Long. 56. Then it turns E. and waters *Resjan*, *Casigorod*, and *Nisi-Novogorod*, where it falls into the *Volga*, in Long. 64.

Dvina, signifies in the *Russian* Language Two, from two Rivers of which it is made up,

up, viz. *Suchina* and *Juga*: The first rises in the Province of *Vologda*, and waters the City of that Name; then it runs N. to the City *Ustjugh*, where the *Juga* falls into it, whose Course is from S. E. to N.W. At this Place it is call'd *Duina*, from the Conflux of those two Rivers. A little lower fall into it the River *Wizogda*, whose Course is from N. E. to S. W. the *Waga*, that runs from S.W. to N. E. and the *Pinega*, that runs from E. to W. Then it waters *Archangel*, and falls below it into the *White Sea*, in Lat. 64½. and Long. 58.

Oby. *Ptolomy*, and others of the Ancients, call'd it *Carambucis*; and their Island *Carambyce* is now call'd *Novia-Zembla*. It has its Source from the Lake *Osero-Kankisan*, in Lat. 48. and Long. 95. and runs from S. W. to N. W. 'Tis the most considerable River in *Siberia*. In some Places 'tis half a League, and in other Places a whole League broad. This River has many Cataracts, which makes the Navigation of it very troublesome. Many great Rivers fall into it, as the *Keta*, which rises in Lat. 51. and Long. 98. It runs N. to *Makofikoi*, in Lat. 56. and Long. 97. From thence it takes its Course W. and falls into the *Oby* at *Keetskoi*, in Lat. 55. and Long. 90. This River has Plenty of Fish, and washes considerable Towns, as *Tomsko*, *Narum*, *Surgut*, *Kozkosa*, and *Berefowa*. It falls into the *Icy-Sea* by six Mouths, in Lat. 68. and Long. 83. The Way by this River to the Sea is seldom passable, because of the Mountains of Ice that for most part choak up the Mouth of it.

Irtis, has its Rise from the Lake *Osero-Susan*, about Lat. 46. and Long. 92. It runs from the S. to the N. W. till it joins with the *Tobel*: From thence, till it falls into the *Oby*, it runs N. E. Its whole S. E. Shore is all high Hills, on which grow some Cedars. The N. W. Shore is low Pasture Ground; and on this Side there's a prodigious Number of great Black Bears, Wolves, Red and Grey Foxes. It falls into the *Oby* N. from *Samarofskoy*, in Lat. 64. and Long. 84. *Tora*, *Tobolska*, and *Samarofskoy*, are seated on this River.

Tobel, has its Source in Lat. 51. and Long. 80½. It runs N. W. till it joins with the River *Tura*, near *Tumcen*: Then it takes its Course N. E. till it falls into the *Irtis* at *Tobolsko*, in Lat. 56½. and Long. 81.

Jenisa, rises out of the *Kalmachian* Mountains, in the S. of *Tartary*, in Lat. 40. Long. 101. and runs N. almost in a straight Line to the *Icy-Sea*. The Water of this River is white and light; but it does not much abound in Fish. It falls into the *Icy-Sea* in Lat. 70. and Long. 92. None have travelled further, either by Water or Land, than to the River *Tarsida*, on the E. of *Jenisa*, because Ice from the Sea drives into it, and makes it utterly unnavigable. Most of the Inhabitants between *Tarsida* and *Jenisa* are *Samoiedes*, and *Tunguzian Tartars*. Three very fine Rivers fall into the *Jenisa*, which are, the *Werguaja-Tunguska*, *Podkamenna Tungusk*, and *Nisnaja-Tunguska*; on all which dwell great Numbers of a barbarous wild sort of *Tunguzians*, which may be ranked with the *Samoiedes*; but are of a less Size, and weaker.

Lena, rises in Lat. 56. and Long. 114. N. from the Lake *Baikals*, and falls into the *Icy-Sea* in Lat. 73. and Long. 123. It is a great River. Small Barks coast it along by the Shore, and go through the Cape to *Saxoxia*, *Onodjeskoy*, and *Kamsatka*, in search of Sea-Calves, Teeth, and Train-Oil. The neighbouring *Tartars* make use of little Leathern Boats on this River, which sail very swift. The Rivers which run from the S. and fall into the *Lena*, are, the *Wittim*, which rises in Lat. 55. Long. 121. and falls into the *Lena* in Lat. 63½. and Long. 115. Its Course is to the N. W. The *Oluckma* has the same Course, rises in Lat. 60. Long. 124. and falls into the *Lena* in Lat. 65½. and Long. 118. *Maia* has also the same Course, and rises in Lat. 63. Long. 126. and falls into the *Lena* in Lat. 70. and Long. 120. All these Rivers fall into the Right Side of the *Lena*.

These are the most remarkable Rivers belonging to the vast Empire of *Muscovy*; concerning which 'tis observ'd, that most of them have their Source from Lakes, are broad and shallow, full of Illands, Flats, and deep Holes.

Of the L A K E S.

Juan-Osero, is a great Lake, 8 Miles E. from *Tula*, in the Province of *Resan*: It is near 500 English Miles long. From this the *Dnn* takes its Rise.

Y

Bielefer

Bielosera, is 64 Miles long, and 48 broad : It lies S. from *Archangel*, in Lat. 60. The River *Schexma*, which falls into the *Wolga*, 4 Leagues below *Mologa*, rises from this Lake.

Ilmin, is 48 English Miles long, and as many broad, and ends about 2 Miles from *Novogorod-Weliki*. It receives the River *Schalona*, and the *Lowat*, which rises in the Forreft of *Wolkowsky*, from a Lake call'd *Bornow*.

Ladoga, is 400 English Miles long, and 240 broad, is full of Isles. The *Neva*, which falls into the German Ocean, rises from this Lake.

Muscovy is divided by some into 4 Parts, viz. *West-Muscovy*, or *Russia*, bordering on *Poland*, containing 22 Provinces. 2. *East-Muscovy*, or *Russia*, which reaches to the Straights of *Weygates*, and contains 7 Provinces. 3. *Muscovian-Tartary*, comprehending the Kingdom of *Astracan*, the Kingdom of *Bulgar*, the Kingdom of *Casan*, the Kingdom of *Siberia*, the Country of the *Samoiedes*, the Tartarian Fortification *Asoph*, and all its Dependencies, with the demolish'd Places *Towan* and *Kasikermen*, and has a free Commerce with the *Black Sea*; all which were confirmed to the Czar, by the Peace with the *Turks* in 1700. 4. The *Muscovite-Lapland*, extending along the *White Sea* to the Swedish Borders.

Some divide *Muscovy* into Southern and Northern : The Northern Part contains 16 Provinces, viz.

1. *Lapland*, belonging to *Muscovy*; chief Town *Kola*.
2. *Kargapol*, S. E. from *Lapland*, near *Archangel*; chief Town *Kargapol*.
3. *Duina*, N. E. from *Kargapol*; chief Town *Archangel*.
4. *Condora*, E. from *Archangel*; chief Town *Wergaturia*.
5. *Juhorski*, N. from *Condora*, near *Weygates* Straights; chief Town *Juhora*.
6. *Petxora*, E. from *Condora*, near the *Samoiedes*; the chief Town *Petxora*.
7. *Obdora*, N. E. from *Condora*, near the Mouth of the *Oby*; chief Town *Beresof*.
8. *Permski*, S. E. from *Condora*, near *Siberia*; chief Town *Perma-Weliki*.
9. *Wiatka*, S. from *Permski*; chief Town *Wiatka*.

10. *Nisi-Novogorod*, S. W. from *Wiatka*, near the *Volga*; chief Town *Nisi-Novogorod*.

11. *Oustiong*, W. from *Wiatka*; chief Town *Oustiong*.

12. *Wologda*, S. W. from *Oustiong*, near the Lake *Onega*; chief Town *Wologda*.

13. *Bielä-Ozera*, S. from *Wologda*, near the *Volga*; chief Place *Bielä-Ozera*.

14. *Novogorod-Weliki*, on the E. of the Lake *Ladoga*; chief Town *Novogorod-Weliki*.

15. *Pleskow*, near *Riga* in *Livonia*; chief Town *Pleskow*.

16. *Czeremissis-Logoway*, W. from *Casan*, upon the *Volga*.

The Southern Provinces are also 16.

1. *Reschow*, S. E. from *Pleskow*; chief Town *Reschow*.

2. *Bielka*; chief Town *Bielka*.

3. *Smolenski*, S. from *Reschow*, upon the *Nieper*; chief Town *Smolenski*.

4. *Novogorod-Sewierski*, S. E. from *Smolenski*; chief Town *Novogorod-Sewierski*.

5. *Czernikow*, W. from *Novogorod-Sewierski*; chief Place *Czernikow* River.

6. *Ukrain*, belonging to *Muscovy*, S. from *Smolenski*, upon the *Nieper*; chief Town *Kiew*.

7. *Worotin*; chief Town *Worotin*.

8. *Rezan*, S. from *Wolodimer*; chief Town *Rezan*, on the S. Side of the *Volga*.

10. *Moscow*, N. E. from *Reschow*; chief Town *Moscow*.

10. *Twer*, N. from *Reschow*; chief Town *Twer*.

11. *Roskow*, N. from *Moscow*; chief Town *Roskow*.

12. *Jarostaw*, N. from *Roskow*, on the N. Bank of the *Volga*.

13. *Susdale*, E. from *Roskow*, upon the *Volga*; chief Town *Susdale*.

14. *Wolodimer*, E. from *Susdale*, upon the S. Bank of the *Volga*; chief Town *Wolodimer*.

15. *Czerimisses-Nagornay*, S. W. from *Casan*, berwixt the *Volga* and *Donn*.

16. *Mordwa*, W. from *Czerimisses-Nagornay*, upon the *Donn*.

OF LAPLAND.

The *Muscovite-Lapland* is much less than that belonging to Sweden. On the West, it has Swedish Lapland : On the N. and N. E. the Frozen Sea; and on the S. and S. E. the White

White Sea. Its Latitude is from 64 to 72 Deg. N. Lat. and its Long. from 43 to 58. It is divided into 3 Parts, viz. 1. *Mourmans-koy-Leporie*, the most Northern Part, in which lies *Kola*, a Sea-Port Town, upon a River of the same Name, which runs into the *Frozen Sea* a little below it. This Port is well known to the *English* and *Dutch*, who buy Furs here. 2. *Terskoy-Leporie*, N. from the *White Sea*. In this Part, there's a little Town call'd *Warfiga*. 3. *Bellamoresky*, S. W. from the *White Sea*. In this are the Towns of *Kandalax* and *Ombay*. This Country is barren; the Inhabitants are the wickedest of all the *Laplanders*. We refer the particular Account of the Manners, Customs, Religion, and Natural History, &c. of the *Laplanders*, till we come to treat of *Swedish Lapland*, which is larger by much than the other two *Laplands*.

KARGAPOL. This Province is desert, and has a Town of the same Name. The Lake *Omga* is on the W. of it: The Town is on the River *Omga*, which runs into the *White Sea*.

DUINA. This Country is so called from the River *Duina*, that runs through it. It abounds with *Isinglass* and *Pitch*; but is otherwise barren, and ill inhabited, tho' 100 Leagues long: 'Tis very cold, which hinders their having any Corn. The People live on dry'd Fish and Venison, and their chief Commodity is Salt. *Archangel* is the chief Town, and lies upon the *Duina*, which runs into the *White Sea* 6 Miles below it. It has a good Trade with the *English* and *Dutch*, and is the greatest Staple-Port belonging to the *Muscovites*, which makes it populous, tho' but small: 'Tis so called from the *Archangel St. Michael*. Customs are very heavy here upon all Commodities. *St. Nicholas* is a Sea-Port, on the Left Branch of the *Duina*, so call'd from a Saint of that Name, in whom they trust more than in *St. Peter* or *St. Paul*, because he is their Countryman.

CONDORA. We know little of it, but that it is over-run with Woods. On the North, it has the *Frozen Sea*. This Country and *Obdora* receiv'd the Christian Faith in 1618, and were not amongst the Czar's Titles till the Reign of *Ivan Bailiwick*. Some say, the Inhabitants are *Sam-*

moiedes, and barbarous Cannibals. *Wergaturia* is their chief Town.

JUHORSKI. It is uncertain where it is situated; but some Maps place it on the *Frozen Sea*. *H. Smith*, who liv'd in *Petzora* in 1580, says, That it lies over against the Streights of *Weygates*. The Baron of *Herbestein* thinks, 'twas from this Place that *Attila* over-ran Europe, and call'd *Pannonia*, Hungary, from the Name of their own Country. He thinks it is evident from this also, that the Remainder of the ancient *Hungarians*, who live betwixt the *Danube* and *Tibiscus*, speak the same Language with the Natives of *Juhorski*. They live after the Manner of the *Samoiedes*. *Juhora* is their chief Town.

PETZORA. It is bounded by a River of the same Name, and is on the W. of *Obdora*. *Petzora* is their only Town, which has 3 Churches: They are a sort of Christians since 1581, and live chiefly upon Geese and other Fowls, which they catch in the Spring and Summer. They sell the Feathers to Merchants; the Flesh they dry and salt for Winter: They are descended of the *Samoiedes*, but civiliz'd a little by the *Muscovites*. They have many Salmon, and great Plenty of Sables.

OB DORA. It has the River *Oby* on the E. and is inhabited by *Samoiedes*, who are Idolaters and Savages. The *Muscovites* have some Castles built there, to keep them in Subjection, and secure their Tribute.

PERMSKI. They have little Bread here, live upon Hunting, and have their Sleds drawn by Dogs, in which they slide over the Snow with great Expedition. *Perma-Weliki*, their chief Town, was formerly very considerable, but now is ruinous: 'Tis a Bishop's Seat. The People have a peculiar Character and Language, and pretend to be very ancient.

WIATKA. It abounds with Honey, Wax, and Furs. *Wiatka* is the Capital. The Country in general is marshy and barren.

NISINOVOGOROD: Is one of the best Countries belonging to *Muscovy*. The chief Town is of the same Name, and lies upon the S. Side of the *Volga*, at the Conflux of that River, and the *Occa*, 100 German Leagues from *Moscow* to the N. E. 'Tis

great City, fortifi'd with strong Stone Walls, has a Castle built of Stone, and a famous Church, built like that of St. Sophia in Constantinople. *Vasligorod* is a small Town upon the *Volga*, and belongs to that Province.

OUSTIOUGH. The Natives there had a Language of their own; but the Czar introduc'd the *Russian*, the People being willing to use it, because it is more advantageous to their Trade. They have Black Foxes, and famous Fairs and Marts. The chief Town is *Oustiough*, a noted Place for Trade in Furs.

WOLOGDA. This Country is marshy, and full of thick Woods. They sell much Tallow to Strangers. The chief Town is of the same Name, and fortified with a Stone-Wall. The Czar, in Time of Danger, uses to secure Part of his Treasure here. Many Places of this Country are unpassable, except on Sleds, during the Winter. It formerly belong'd to the Dutchy of *Novogorod*.

BIELAOZERA. This is the most ancient Dutchy of *Muscovy*: It has its Name from a Lake, in the middle of which the Capital is built: They think it impregnable, being advantageously situated, and having strong Fortifications. The Czar keeps his Treasures here, under the Guard of his principal Officers, and a strong Garison. It is one of the Titles of the Czar, and is distant from *Moscow* and *Novogorod* 100 German Miles.

NOVOGOROD-WELIKI. 'Tis fertile in Flax, fine Hemp, and has Honey, Wax, and Leather. The Capital is of the same Name, well built, strong, and has a good Castle. It is situated upon the River *Volga*, in a great Plain. It was formerly an Independent Republick, under its own Prince, and then was so wealthy and strong, that it became a Proverb, *Who can do any thing against God and Great Novogorod?* The *Hanse-Towns* drove a great Trade here; and the River being navigable, contributed much to its Strength and Riches. *Russian* Leather is better dress'd here than any where else. The Causes of its Decay were, 1. That in 1477, *Ivan Vasilii Grotstein* forc'd them to receive a Governor; after which, pretending a Pilgrimage, he pillag'd it, and carried away 300 Cart-load of Jewels, Gold and Silver, besides many others fill'd with

rich Stuffs and sumptuous Moveables. He transported the Inhabitants, and sent *Muscovites* to dwell in their Place. 2. *Ivan Bassilowick*, in 1569, upon Pretence of a Revolt, cut off the greatest Part of the Inhabitants; upon which there follow'd a great Plague; and then a Famine, so that they eat one another: Then, pretending to punish their Inhumanity, he destroy'd the greatest Part of those that were left. In 1611, the *Swedes* took it by Storm, but it was redeliver'd by Treaty to the *Muscovites*. There are about 100 Monasteries, Churches and Chapels here, that have their Steeples and Towers cover'd with gilt Copper. The Cathedral Church is that of St. Sophia. On the other Side the River, there's a strong Stone Castle, join'd to the City by a large Bridge.

PLESKOW. It abounds with Wax and Honey: The chief Town is *Pleskow*. It is 36 German Miles S. W. from *Novogorod*, and 27 E. from the Borders of *Livonia*. In 1509, it came under the Power of the *Muscovites*, by a Civil War among the Citizens, and was once the only Town in *Muscovy* that had Walls. It is divided into three Parts, every one of which is surrounded with strong Walls. It was besieged by *Stephen* King of *Poland* in 1581, when some say the Garison consisted of 70000 Foot, and 7000 Horse, besides the Citizens.

Southern *Muscovy* has the 16 Provinces following:

RESCHOW. The *Volga* begins in this Province, in Lat. 55. Long. 55. and falls into the *Caspian* Sea, Lat. 46. Long. 76½. It has also the Fountains of the *Dniuna*, *Nieper*, and *Lowat*, all great Rivers. The Hares in this Province are White. Some say, That all Beasts brought hither turn of that Colour. The Inhabitants have a Language proper to themselves. The chief Town is *Reschow*, on the Borders of *Lithuania*, 40 English Miles from *Twer* to the S. W. and 50 from *Bielka* to the E. *Wyelikeluki* and *Torepyecz*, large Cities with Castles, are also in this Country.

BIELKA. This Country has *Lithuania* on the W. and S. and *Twer* on the E. The chief Town is *Bielka*, with a Castle, seated on a River of the same Name.

The Dukedom of SMOLENSKO. It belong'd formerly to *Lithuania*; but has been subject to the *Muscovites* since 1654, that the Czar *Alexius Michaelowitz* took from the *Poles* the chief Town of the same Name, and united it to *Muscovy*. It was taken in 1611 by the *Poles*, after a Siege of 2 Years, with the Slaughter of 200000 *Muscovites*. The *Muscovites* besieg'd it in 1633, but were defeated before it. 'Tis 150 Miles E. from *Warsaw*, 100 Miles from *Vilna*, and 150 N. from *Kiow*. 'Tis a great City, but not populous: The Walls are 6 Cubits broad, and have 52 Towers. There's a strong Castle in the middle of the City. They have Plenty of Wild Beasts, whose Skins are much valued. Here the Czar once a Year diverts himself and the Foreign Ambassadors by Hunting. *Drobohus*, *Wielma*, and *Mosaisko*, are Cities belonging to this Province.

NOVOGOROD-SEWIERSKI It has *Worotin* and *Resan* upon the E. *Lithuania* on the W. from which the *Nieper* divides it, and *Smolensko*, to which it formerly belong'd, on the N. The chief City is of the same Name, and is distant from *Moscow* 150 Leagues. The Inhabitants are Warlike, being kept in constant Exercise of their Arms by the neighbouring *Tartars*. The City and Castle are well fortified after the *Russian* Manner.

CZERNIKOW. It belong'd once to *Lithuania*, and is so call'd from its chief Town on the River *Denzia*, N. from *Kiow*, two Polish Miles from the *Nieper*, and 17 W. of *Novogorod-Sewierski*.

The Muscovite UKRAIN: Was formerly a Part of the *Lower Volhinia*, and is divided in the middle by the *Nieper*. The chief Town is *Kiow*, which was given by the *Poles* to the *Muscovites* for 700000 Florins. Little *Tartary* is on the S. of it.

WOROTIN. Its chief Town is *Worotin*, with a Castle, upon the River *Occa*.

REZAN. *Wladimer* lies N. of this Province, and *Ukraine* and the *Precopian Tartars* to the South. It is situated betwixt the *Donn* and the *Occa*: It had formerly a Prince of its own, but is now subject to the *Muscovites*. The River *Donn* has its Source in this Province, which is fruitful in Corn, Honey, Wax, Fish and Fowl, besides *Ermins*, *Beavers*, and other Furs. The chief

Town is *Resan*, 36 Miles N. W. of *Moscow*. It was formerly considerable, but is now ruin'd by the Neighbourhood of the *Tartars*. *Pereflow*, *Colluga*, and *Tulla*, are Cities in this Province; and *Czirpac*, where they have Iron Mines.

MOSCOW. This Province is bounded on the N. by *Rostow* and *Susdale*, on the E. by *Resan*, on the W. by *Bielka*, on the S. by *Worotin*. It is so healthful a Country, that they reckon it a Wonder to hear of any Epidemical Disease here. The great Number of navigable Rivers contribute much to their Plenty of Provisions in Summer; and their Sledges, drawn by Deer or Horses upon the Ice, bring them all Necessaries at easie Rates in the Winter. The Deer are fed with Moss, of which they have abundance in their Woods. Their Horses travel 50 of our Miles without baiting; so that a Countryman will conduct one 11 or 1200 Miles for 4 Crowns, besides the passing and repassing of so many Governors to and from their Posts, for their Commissions last only for two or three Years, makes Travelling both safe and cheap. The chief City of this Province, and of all the Empire, is *Moscow*. It is in Long. 59. Lat. 56. Some say, That in 1571, when it was burnt down, 80000 Souls were destroy'd in the Flames. It was twice as large then as now. In 1611, 41000 Houses were reduc'd to Ashes, and 200000 Persons slain by the *Poles*. It is situated upon the River *Moskwa*, which begins to be navigable 6 Miles above it. It is 16 Miles in Compass, but not Peopled in Proportion; for within the Walls, they have many Gardens and Meadows. The Streets are not pav'd, except in some Places with round Fir-Trees. People of Fashion ride here in Summer, and are carry'd in Sledges in Winter. Their Houses are ill contriv'd, built of Fir-Timber, squar'd and Dove-tail'd one into another. The Chinks between are stop't up with Moss, and the Roofs are cover'd with Bark. Many *Tartars*, *Greeks* and *Persians*, live here. Some reckon the Number of the Inhabitants to be about 700000. The *Lutherans* and *Calvinists* are allow'd the Exercise of their Religion here. Their Houses are liable to Fire, because built of Wood, and by the Drunkenness of the People. To prevent

its spreading, those upon the Guard are provided in the Night-time with Pole-Axes, to break down the next adjoining Houses. New Houses are purchas'd here at an easie Rate. The Great Duke's Palace, called *Cremelena*, takes up one half of the City: It is fortified with 3 Walls, and a good Ditch, and well provided with Cannon. All the Steeples within the Castle are cover'd with Copper-gilt: One of them, called *Iuan-Veliki*, i. e. *Great John*, is remarkable for its great Height; and another for its Bell, which weighs 33600 lb. and what is more surprizing, was cast by a *Russian* Founder: 'Tis bigger than the great Bell of *Peking* in *China*; than that in *Rouen*, called *George d'Amboise*, and is probably the greatest in the World: Its Height 19 Foot, its Diameter within 18, the external Circumference 64, and the Thickness 2. It was cast in 1653, in the Reign of *Alexis Michaelowitz*. 'Tis never toll'd but upon extraordinary Occasions, when 24 Men pull the Rope below, and several others above. There is a very fine Piece of Architecture of Stone, built after the *Italian* Manner, for the young Prince; but the Czar continues in his Wooden Palace. On the South-Side of the Castle-Gate, without the Walls, there's a Church dedicated to the Blessed *Trinity*, and by some called *Jerusalem*, built by the famous *Russian* Tyrant *John Basilowitz*, who caus'd the Architect's Eyes to be put out, to prevent his undertaking any thing like it for the future. Every Trade have their own Station and Place in this City.

The 2d Quarter is call'd *Czar-Gorod*, or the City-Royal: It encompasses the other like a Semi-Circle, and is walled about with white Stone. The Arsenal, and the Place where the great Guns are cast, are here. The *Muscovites* are now as expert in casting Guns as other Nations.

The 3d Quarter, which encompasses the former from the E. along the N. to the W. is call'd *Skoradam*: The River *Jagusa* passes through it. Here they have a Market for Houses ready built, which are taken to Pieces, and transported to any Place in the Town.

The 4th Quarter, which lies to the S. on the opposite Side of the River *Mosca*, is fortified with Wooden Walls and Ramparts.

It is the Habitation of the Czar's Guards. The Chapels and Churches in this City are 2000, and, by Order of the Patriarch, are now all built of Stone. This City lying betwixt *Narva*, *Archangel*, and *Astracan*, makes it a Place of great Trade.

TWER: Is situated betwixt the Provinces of *Roschow* and *Novogorod-Weliki*. Near this Province rises the *Volga*, which runs 2400 Miles before it falls into the *Caspian* Sea. This Province is rich in Corn and Merchandize, and very populous. They can furnish their Prince with 40000 good Horses, and 80000 Foot. The Capital City is *Twer*, 140 Miles from *Moscow*, and situated on the River *Twertza*, where it runs into the *Volga*. It has about 60 Churches, is a Bishop's See, and has a Mint.

ROSTHOW. It has *Susdale* on the E. and *Twer* on the W. This Province was the Inheritance of some Princes of the Blood of *Russia*; but they were entirely rooted out, and the last Heir murder'd in 1565, by *John Basilowick*. They have Plenty of Salt. The chief Town is of the same Name, lies 26 Miles S. from the *Volga*, 36 Polish Miles from *Moscow*, and 48 S. of *Jaroslau*. *Pereflow*, *Uglisz*, and *Chlopigrod*, are Towns in this Province.

JAROSLAW. It is situated betwixt *Wologda* to the N. and *Roschow* to the S. The chief Town is of the same Name; lies upon the River *Volga*. They had Princes of their own, till *John Basilowick* destroy'd them. Some say, the City is well fortified, and contains about 40000 Inhabitants: It is 45 Polish Miles N. of *Moscow*. They have a great Trade in Leather, make much Linen, and abound with Corn, Cattle, and Honey. They have an easie Passage to *Archangel*. *Romanow* belongs to this Province, and lies also upon the *Volga*.

SUSDALÉ. It has *Roschow* on the W. and *Wolodimer* on the E. The chief Town is *Susdale*, an Archbishopsrick, 80 Miles N. E. from *Moscow*, and 130 Miles S. W. from *Nisi-Novogorod*. It has a famous Nun-nery.

WOLODIMER. *Susdale* is on the W. *Mordwa* on the E. *Resan* on the S. and *Nisi-Novogorod* on the N. of this Province. The principal Town is of the same Name. It is 190 Miles S. from *Nisi-Novogorod*, and was formerly the Metropolis of *Muscovy*, and the





The Dominions of
M O S C O V Y in
EUROPE.

By Herman Moll Geographer.

the Residence of the Great Dukes, till the Seat of the Empire was translated to *Moscow*, by John the Son of *Daniel*, because *Wolodimer* was too near the *Tartars*. It is now the second City of the Empire. The Czar styles himself Duke of this Place. 'Tis an exceeding fruitful Country, and yields frequently thirty for one. It abounds with Honey and Wax.

CZEREMISSES-NAGORNAY. They are People who live on the E. of *Muscovy*, and on the S. of the *Volga*. Some of them are Mahometans, but most of them Pagans. They live on Mountains; and those called *Logoway* live in Champaign Countries.

The MORDWA TARTARS: Are planted betwixt the *Volga* and the *Don*, where it begins to turn Westward towards the *Euxine* Sea. They have the *Czeremisset-Nagornay* to the E. *Wolodimer* to the W. and are near *Little Tartary*, and the Provinces of *Roslan* and *Worotin*. They are savage idolatrous People: They practice Polygamy, and divorce when they are wearied one of another. When a rich Man dies, they kill his best Horse to serve him in the other World, and then they eat the Horse. Both Men and Women are good Archers. They pay Tribute to the Czar.

Having thus given an Account of the Provinces belonging to the *Muscovites* in *Europe*, we come now to those they possess in *Asia*, which formerly belong'd to *Tartary*, as the Kingdoms of *Casán* and *Astracan*, *Samoieda*, *Siberia* and *Dauria*.

SAMOIEDA.

THE Lat. and Long. of this Country is not very certain. *Isaac Massa* makes it to lie both on the W. and E. Side of the *Oby*. *Petzora* lies on the W. but what Countries are to the E. is not known. The Northern Boundaries are, the Streights of *Weygates*, and the *Frozen Ocean*. Their Country extends to Lat. 72. The Ambassadors from the Duke of *Holslein*, in their Travels to *Muscovy* in 1643, tell us they had occasion to discourse in the Czar's Anti-Chamber with two of the Deputies of the *Samoiedes*, who understood the *Russian* Language; and from them they give us this Account: They were anciently comprehended under the ancient *Scythæ*. Their present Name

signifies *Cannibals*, or Man-Eaters; (but the *Hollanders*, who were shipwreck'd on their Coasts, speak much of their Humanity and Kindness.) The *Muscovites* call'd them so, because they us'd to mix the Flesh of their deceas'd Friends with Venison. Their Huts have Passages under Ground, by which they converse one with another during the Winter, when the Sun leaves them for several Months; for their Huts being then cover'd with Snow, they cannot walk abroad, but visit their Friends by those subterranean Walks. The Want of Light they supply by Lamps, fed with the Oil of Fish they take in Summer. This gives Rise to the Fable, That they sleep six Months in Winter, and rise again in the Spring. They don't cultivate the Ground, nor have any Cattle. They eat dry'd Fish instead of Bread. They have also Venison and Honey. They cloath themselves with the Skins of Rain-Deer. They are low of Stature, with broad flat Faces, little Eyes, short Legs, and wear their Hair long, not unlike the *Greenlanders*. When the Sun returns, they creep out of their Huts by the Tops of their Chimnies. They wear large Caps made of Furs, or Pieces of Cloth of divers Colours, which fall down about their Shoulders. Their Shirts are made of the tender Skins of Rain-Deer, and are softer than Linen, under which they wear Drawers, and over their Shirts certain Cassocks, reaching down to their Mid-leg, with Furs on the outside. They put them on in very cold Weather over their Heads, so that their Faces appear only thro' the Cleft at the Neck; which has occasion'd some Historians to say, they were without Heads, and had Faces on their Breasts. The *Samoiedes*, as well as the *Laplanders* and *Finlanders*, wear a kind of Pattins, of an Ell and an half long, made of the Barks of Trees, with which they slide on the Snow without sinking. The *Laplanders* and *Finlanders* have theirs as long behind the Heel as before the Toe; but the *Samoiedes* have them only turn'd forwards. Colonel *Porter*, Governor of *Riga*, gave the *Holslein*-Ambassadors the Diversion of seeing two *Finlanders* belonging to his Garrison run down a Hill with those Pattins; which they did with so much Swiftness, that a Horse in a Gallop could scarcely keep Pace with them.

They

They use the Nerves and Veins of the Rain-Deer instead of Thread, and the Shavings of Beach-Bark serves them for Napkins. When one of those *Samoiedes* was ask'd, What he thought of *Muscovy*? He answer'd, That tho' *Muscovy* was a Country pleasant enough, yet he was confident, if the Czar was sensible of their secure and quiet Life, he would chuse their Retirement before all his Grandeur. They were all Pagans till within these few Years, that they were converted by a *Muscovite* Bishop of *Wolodimer*. They pay Tribute in Furs to the Czar, who has Garisons there. *Stephen Burroughs*, an *Englishman*, in 1556, first discover'd them in his Voyage to find out a N. E. Passage. *Richard Johnson* was also there: His Relation of them is in *Hackluit*. Afterwards, in 1596, *William Barents* gave some Account of them.

Pitt's Atlas has this further Account of them. They have different Languages, but how many, and the Place where each Language is spoken, is not so well known. When the Weather is tolerable, they go from Place to Place, where they can find best Pasture for their Rain-Deer, by which they are carried in Sleds, and can travel 200 *Italian Miles* in one Day. This frequent shifting of their Quarters enables them to be Guides to Merchants; and they seldom mistake their Way in the greatest Mist. They are very nimble, and excellent Archers. Some of them at *Moscow*, for an Essay of Skill, set up a small round Piece of Tin, from which they retir'd as far as they could discern it, yet never fail'd to hit it with their Arrow. The Women have the same Garments with the Men, and are not easily distinguish'd from them: Only they have on either Side a Lock of Hair hanging down below their Ears, and make blue Lines in their Faces, by drawing a Thread dip'd in blue Paint lightly under the Skin. The Fashion of their Habits is not the same in all Places. They have no Bread, or any thing like it. Their Food is Train-Oil and Honey, with raw Flesh and Fish; but they usually dry it in the Sun and Wind.

Their QUALITIES and CUSTOMS.

They are strong and healthful: The Husbands are their Midwives: The Mother washes the Child as soon as born in cold Water or Snow, and next Day is able to wait upon her Rain-Deer and Sleds. They are stout, though not quarrellsome. Their Weapons, besides Bows and Arrows, are long Spears, and short Swords. Those who are not subject to the Czar, are under no Government. They consult the most ancient Persons in Affairs of Difficulty, who are also their Priests. They ask them, which Way they shall move? What Success they are like to have in Hunting, or in Journies? They have but few Controversies, which are determined by a sort of Oath, in this Manner: They make an Image of a Man in Snow, and lay before it a Wolf's Snout: He who is to swear takes a Sword, and tells over the Names of his Wives, Children and Friends; wishes, if he swear falsely, they may be all cut to pieces, as he cuts that Image with his Sword, which he immediately performs. He also wishes, That the Wolf may destroy his Rain-Deer; That hence-forward he may never kill any Beast. Then he cuts the Wolf's Snout to pieces; and so the Controversy is ended.

Their MARRIAGES and BURIALS.

They buy as many Wives as they can purchase for Deer. Persons of Note have 4 or 5. He is reckon'd the richest Man that has most Deer and Daughters, and they sell both to those that bid most. Their Marriages are celebrated without much Ceremony. The Bridegroom makes a Feast, which sometimes lasts 7 Days. After this the Bride, adorn'd with many Brass Rings and Bells, Fish-Bones, &c. is deliver'd to her Husband: Then all the Friends depart from their Tent till next Morning. If they like not their Wives after half a Year or a Year's Trial, they return them to their Friends, and receive back the Deer they paid

paid for them. When a rich Man dies, they strangle one of his Slaves, and bury him beside his Master, to do Drudgery for him in the next World; and they kill 3 of his Deer, with which they feast themselves. If a Child die under 7 Years of Age, they hang it by the Neck on a Tree, and say, it must flee to the other World.

Their RELIGION.

They seem to acknowledge a God, but represent him by such Things as they receive most Benefit from. In a Morning, as soon as they go out, they fall on their Knees, and hold up their Hands to the Sun. They have Images, resembling Men as near as they can make them, to which they sacrifice, and besmear them with Blood. Many Bones and Althes lie before them; and there's a Chopping-Block by them, on which they kill and divide the Beasts that they sacrifice; as *Richard Johnson* tells us in *Hackluit*, Page 283. The Priest wears on his Head a Garland, and a Piece of a Coat of Mail, with Fish-Bones and other Trinkets fasten'd to it. He first beats upon an Instrument like a Half-Drum with a little Mawl; after that he whoops and hollows as our Hunters do, and the People answer him. He roars with great Violence, till he becomes hoarse, and lies as if he were dead for some time. When he recovers, he rises up, and commands 3 Deer to be killed; then he takes a Sword of near a Yard long, and seems to thrust it several times into his own Belly, but without any Wound. He afterwards heats it in the Fire, thrusts it in at his Navel, and out at his Fundament; when, saith *Johnson*, I laid my Finger upon it, but no Wound was to be seen. The Priest being wearied, reposes himself, whilst they heat a Kettle of Water; which being hot, they sing again, and bring a Thing like the Frame of a Sedan, into which the Priest, putting off his Clothes and Shirt, sits down, and puts a Rope about his Neck, and under his Left Arm, with a Slip-knot, gives one End to one lusty young Fellow, and the other End to another: Then they set the boiling Water before him, and cover both the Frame wherein he sits, and the Kettle, so as no Man can see those dreadful Mysteries. The People begin again

to sing furiously, and the two young Men draw the Cord close: Whereupon, hearing something fall into the Water, I ask'd, said *Johnson*, what it was? They told me it was the Priest's Head and Left Shoulder, which the Cord had cut off; but they would not suffer me to go and see if it was so. After more furious singing, the Priest comes from behind the Curtain safe and well. I demanded what their God had said, and whether they were to go? They answer'd, That it was not for them to know what their God had said, but they were to obey what the Priest commanded. This was before their Submission to the Czar; but since that Time, he has sent Preachers amongst them to convert them. We leave the Readers to judge whether these Things be fabulous, if perform'd by Juggling, or by the Assistance of the Devil.

Their Submission to the Czar.

IN the Time of *Ivan*, or *John Basilowitz*, there liv'd a Husbandman call'd *Onyka*, on the River *Witzogda*, who by his Industry became rich. Among other Children, he had 3 Sons, nam'd *Jacove*, *Gregory*, and *Simon*, who were Partners in Trade. They dwelt chiefly with the *Samoiedes*, that came Yearly to the Fairs of *Ofel* and *Onsting*. *Onyka* had not only a Design to carry on his Trade, but had also the Curiosity to enquire from whence they came, and prevail'd with them that 12 of his Servants might go home with them, to whom he gave Orders how they should behave themselves, and make their Observations. At their Return, he treated the *Samoiedes* very kindly, and forbade his Servants to discover what they had observ'd. The next Year he sent more Servants, and some of his Relations, with Goods that the *Samoiedes* wanted, at very low Rates. They went as far as the River *Oby*, and found Furs there to be of small Price; That the People were barbarous, without Cities or Bread, without Laws or Property. Thus *Onyka*, with his Sons and Kindred, manag'd this Trade till they were extream rich. They built many Churches, and some Towns, and acquir'd 300000 Rubles or Marks in Money. They had constantly at work 10000 Men, besides 5000 Slaves, and paid the Emperor Yearly 23000

Rubles for Customs. They also maintain'd several Garisons on the Confines of *Siberia*. At length they discover'd this Trade to *Boris Godenow*, the Emperor's Brother-in-Law, the Advantage that might be reap'd from it, and the Way to those Countries. The Emperor *Pheodor Juanwicz* was so well pleas'd, that he granted *Onyka* and his Family all the Privileges and Honours that Subjects were capable of, and sent him in Quality of Ambassador to *Samoieda*, with some Soldiers and Gentlemen, who had Toys of small Value to give the Natives, in order to gain their Affections. They behav'd themselves with so much Kindness and Humanity towards the *Samoiedes*, and gave them such an Account of the great Power of the Czar, that they perswaded them at length to give him a Yearly Tribute of a Pair of Sables for every Person that could shoot. Tho' this was a small Matter to the *Samoiedes*, it turn'd to a vast Advantage to the Czar. Some of the Natives came to see the Czar's Court at *Moscow*, and thought the *Muscovites* were happy under such Government.

Vibrant Ides, in his Travels, gives this further Account of the *Samoiedes*:

They are under the *Siberian* Government, and subject to the Weyvode of *Pelun* as far as the Sea. There are several Sorts of them, different both in Language and Customs, as the *Berefskians*, so called from *Berefska*, a Town on the *Oby*, Lat. 64. and Long. 85. and *Pustosersians*, who say they are of the same Nation. Another Sort live on the Sea-Coast beyond the E. Side of the *Oby*, as far as *Truckamskoy* or *Mangazeiskoy*. Others reside for the greatest Part of the Year about *Archangel*, near the River *Duina*; and in Summer live in Huts. There are other *Samoiedes* who inhabit the Icy-Coast of the Province of *Siberia*, which has the *Icy* or *Frozen Sea* on the N. and extends to the *Holy Cape* in the Eastern Ocean, which lies in Lat. 73. Long. 147. They can scarce pretend to any thing of Men, but Face and Shape, have little Understanding, and, like Wolves and Dogs, eat the dead Carcasses of Horses, Asses, Dogs or Cats, Whales, Sea-Cows, Sea-Calves, and Sea-Horses, raw. Their Country abounds however with Fowls, Fish and Flesh; but they are too idle to furnish themselves with it.

Their Governors receive their Tribute of Furs, and are obliged to carry the same to the Czar's Cities or Garisons. A Gentleman who had been among them told the Ambassador, That their Hart-Sleds were very convenient, and they run prodigiously fast over Mountains cover'd with Snow. Their Clothes are Buck-skins, with the Hair outward. Their Governors travel in Sleds drawn by 6 or 7 harness'd Bucks, and are cloath'd in Scarlet. The Arrows of the Natives are pointed with the Bones of Sea-Calves, or some other Animal.

They make a very disagreeable Figure, in somuch that such ill-look'd People are not to be found in the whole Earth. Their Stature is short, their Shoulders broad, their Faces flat, with broad Noses, great hanging Lips, and frightful Eyes, like those of the *Linx*. Their Complexion is brown, their Hair dishevell'd; some of them have it red or pale, but most of them black as Pitch. They have very small Beards, and are swift Runners. The Roebucks, which draw their Sleds in Winter, are horn'd and shap'd like Harts, but have crooked hanging Necks like Dromedaries: They are as white as Snow in Winter, and greyish in Summer. They feed on Moss, which grows in Woods.

The *Samoiedes* are gross Idolaters; they worship the Sun and Moon: Their Tents are cover'd with Birch-Barks sew'd together, and their Fire is in the middle of their Tent, round which both Men and Women lie naked in the Night. They lay their Children in Boxes or Cradles made of Birch-Bark sew'd together, fill'd with Shavings of Trees, which are as soft as Wool; and they cover them with Buck-skin. When they design to be merry, they stand in Couples opposite to each other, throw up one of their Legs, and clap the Soles of one another's Feet so hard with their Hands, that it may be heard at a good distance. Instead of singing, they howl like Bears, neigh like Horses, or chirrup like young Birds. They marry within the Degrees of Consanguinity; they buy their Wives with Bucks and Hides, and marry as many as they can keep. They have Conjurors, that play all sorts of Diabolical and Juggling Tricks.

Near this Coast, as far as the Streights of *Weygates*, their Beasts are Wolves, Bears, Foxes and Hares, &c. The Fowls are Ducks, Partridges, &c. that are as white as Snow in Winter, which is so severe, that Rooks and Magpies fall down dead as they fly.

Of the Streights of Weygates.

A Great deal has been said on this Subject by *English*, *Dutch*, and *Danish*, who have twice passed this Icy Channel, to find out a N. E. Passage to *China* and the *Indies*, but were forced to return by the great Fields of Ice; so that from *Weygates* to the *Icy* or *Holy Cape*, the Sea is utterly unnavigable. The Sea of *Siberia* is so full of Ice, that no Ship can come to the Mouth of the River *Jenisea*, which lies 15 Deg. further E. than *Weygates*: Much less can they go farther Northward, or by the Way of the *Icy Cape* sail round *Japan* and *Jedzo*.

The Ambassador adds what he had learn'd from the *Russians*, who have several times sail'd through those Streights, which lie in Long. 75. to the Mouth of the *Oby* in 84.

We go, say they, with our Barks to *Weygates*, to fish for Sea-Calves: If we meet with great Quantities of them, we sail directly into *Weygates*; But if the Wind blows from the Sea, the whole Coast is cover'd with Ice; so we are obliged to put into some Creeks or little Rivulets, where we dare not venture too far, but stay till the Wind blows from the Shore, which clears the Streights of Ice, and drives it several Miles out to Sea: And if we find not such a Creek, our Barks are shatter'd to pieces by the Ice. This Sea, as far as the *Icy Cape*, is sometimes frozen up two or three Years successively, as it was from 1694 to 1697.

About 50 Years ago, the *Russians* that dwelt in *Siberia*, had free Liberty to fetch their Provisions from the Sea-Ports, and to carry their *Siberian* Commodities thither through the *Weygates*, provided they paid the Toll to the Czar: But they brought great Quantities of Goods by Stealth into *Russia* by other Ways and Rivers, whereby the Czar suffer'd much in his Revenues; for which Reason the Importation of Goods to *Russia* thro' the Streights of *Weygates* has been prohibited ever since.

Of SIBERIA.

IT has on the W. the River *Kama*: *Ustuga* is the first considerable City on that Side, in Lat. 55. Long. 73. and the N. Parts reach to Lat. 73. the N. E. Parts to Long. 140. The Lake of *Baikala*, which borders on the Province of *Dauri*, and the Town of *Jekusky* near that Lake, are the furthest Places towards the S. E. This Town lies in Lat. 54. Long. 110. The Places furthest to the S. W. border upon the *Kalmuck Tartars*, in Lat. 50.

Father *Avril*, a Jesuit, sent by Order of the French King to discover a Way by Land to *China*, gives the following Account of the first Discovery of *Siberia*:

The *Zaporozian Cossacks*, who liv'd beyond the *Nieper*, being subdu'd by the *Muscovites*, were resolv'd to shake off that Yoke. In order to this, they advanc'd by the Way of *Kasan*, near the River *Kama*; from thence to the River *Irtish*, at the Conflux of which with the River *Tobol* they built *Tobolski*, the chief Town of *Siberia*, which is 3000 Miles from *Moscow*. They extended their Conquests to the River *Oby*. The adjacent Country they call'd *Siberia*, from *Sibor*, which in the *Slavonick* signifies North. But after all, to carry on their Fur-Trade to the greater Advantage, they thought fit to submit to the Czar. As soon as the *Muscovites* got Possession of this Country, they improv'd it to great Advantage, by sending their Sable-hunters, and banishing their Prisoners of State to this Place. The Desire of getting Sables brought those Hunters by degrees to the River *Yamour*, that runs into the *Amoersham* or *Japan Sea*. Upon this River liv'd those *Tartars* that conquer'd *China* in 1644. So that now the Way to *China* by Land is perfectly known by the *Muscovites*.

Isbrand Ides's Account how *Siberia* became subject to the Czar, is thus:

About 100 Years ago, *Jeremak Timisewitz*, a Robber in the Reign of *Ivan Basilewicz*, plunder'd the neighbouring Countries subject to the Czar; and being pursued, he and his Companions fled up the River *Kama*, and from thence to the River *Juzawaja*, which falls into the *Kama*, where are the

Lands of *Stroginoſſ*, famous for his vaſt Eſtate, which take up the greateſt Part of the Shore, and reach 70 German Miles in Length. The Robber apply'd himſelf to this rich Man's Grandfather for Protection, beg'd his Intereſt to procure him the Czar's Pardon, and offer'd at the ſame time, by way of Atonement, to reduce the whole Province of *Siberia* for his Czariſh Maſteſty. Purſuant to this, he obtain'd from *Stroginoſſ* Barks, Arms, and Men. Being thus provided, and accompanied with his Fellow Robbers in light Barks, he ſail'd up the River *Serebrenkoy*, which runs N. E. of the *Wergaturian* Hills, and falls into the *Juzawaja*; thence he convey'd his Equipage by Land to the River *Togin*, on which he ſail'd to the *Taura*, took the Fort of *Tumeen*, that lies upon it, raz'd it to the Ground, and advanc'd up the *Tobol* to *Tobolsko*, the Reſidence of a *Tartarian* Prince, aged about 12 Years, whoſe Name was *Alſani Kutzumowitz*, whoſe Grandſon at preſent lives at *Moscow*, and is honour'd with the Title of the *Siberian Czarewitz*. This City he took with ſmall Loſs, ſent the Prince to *Moscow*, and put the conquer'd City into a better Poſture of Defence.

After this he went down the River *Jetiſch*, but was attack'd in the Night by a Party of *Tartars*, not far from *Tobolsko*, who cut off a great many of his Men; and as he endeavour'd to ſtep from one Bark to another, he fell into the River, and was drown'd. In the mean while *Stroginoſſ* had obtain'd the Czar's Pardon for *Jeremak*; and ſeveral Hundreds of *Muſcovite* Officers arriv'd, who fortify'd and garison'd the Places he had taken, which compleated the Reduction of the Country.

He ſays, That the Frontiers of *Siberia* in general are every where well garison'd; That the Circuit of this Kingdom is very large; That he took the Latitude of Places with a Mathematical Inſtrument, and was the firſt German that ever went through this vaſt Country to *China*. He owns that the Learned World is oblig'd to *Nicholas Witzzen*, Burgher-Maſter of *Amſterdam*, who firſt drew a Map of thoſe Countries, and diſcover'd to the Europeans all *Siberia*, the *Calmuckan*, *Mugalian*, and other Provinces, as far as the *Chinese* Wall.

The Natives of *Siberia* are Pagans; but the Cities are fill'd with *Ruſſians* and *Coffacks*. They pay Yearly 200000 Rubles in Sables, Martens, and Black Fox-Skins, found nowhere but here and in *Kitay*. They are ſold from 20 to 30 Rubles apiece. They catch the Ermins in Traps, but ſhoot the Sables with Arrows in the Noſe, for fear of ſpoiling their Skins. They alſo make Fire under Trees where the Sables haunt, and being ſtifed with the Smoak, they fall down and are catch'd. Thoſe who are baniſh'd hither, muſt ſtay 7 Years. The Czar's Officers, to encourage the People's Diligence, allow them to kill ſome Sables for their own Advantage.

Ysbrant Ides's Account of the Country and People of Siberia.

THE Western Part of this Country lies on the E. Side of the *Kama*, which is a pleaſant and beautiful River: It ſeparates *Europe* from *Aſia*, and abounds with all ſorts of Fiſh. The Banks of it are very populous, and noted for Salt-works. The firſt *Siberian Tartars* are call'd *Wogulskoi*: They live on the Banks of this River, which are the moſt charming in the World: The Hills are covered with beautiful Flowers and Plants, and all Sorts of great and ſmall Wild-Beaſts in great Numbers. The Inhabitants are ſtupid Heathens. They are naturally ſtrong, and have large Heads. Their Worſhip conſiſts in having once a Year an Offering. Then they go to the Woods, and kill one of each Species of Beaſts, but prefer the Horſe and Tyger: They ſlea off their Skins, and hang up the Carcaſſes on Trees, and pray to 'em, falling proſtrate to the Earth; then they eat the Fleſh together, and return home, and at once finiſh one whole Year's Devotion. They own a God, that made the World: They deny Devils, becauſe they ſay they never ſaw them: They acknowledge a Reſurrection, but know nothing of the Rewards or Punishments of a future State. They bury Money, Apparel and Ornaments, with the Body of the Deceaſ'd. They cry over their Dead in a diſmal manner, and the Husband is oblig'd to continue a Widower a whole

a whole Year. If a favourite Dog die, that has been a good Hunter, they erect a Hut to his Memory. They marry as many Wives as they can keep, and when any one is near her Time, she must retire to a Hut in the Wood, and there be delivered. Her Husband must not come near her for two Months. When any one desires to marry, he is to buy his Wife from her Father. They have no Priests, and marry no nearer than the Fourth Degree of Consanguinity. The Ambassador recommended the Christian Religion to them, as the Way both to secure their Temporal and Spiritual Welfare; but they told him, They daily saw some Russians who were in a starving Condition; and as for Things of another Life, they would adhere to the Opinion of their Forefathers.

Their Dwellings are square Wooden Huts. As soon as the Wood upon the Hearth is burnt to a Coal, they cover the Smoak-hole in the Roof with Ice, which reverberates the Heat into the Room, and also lets in Light.

Their chief Game is Elks, of which they have whole Herds: They cut them in pieces, and hang them round their Houses to dry. If they stink by the falling of Rain upon them, they dry them again, and eat them as a great Delicacy. They don't eat Cocks, Hens, nor Hogs. Their Way of catching Wild-Beasts is very pleasant, for they plant a sort of Bows in the Woods, fastening a String to them, to which they fix some Corn or other Bait, leaving only a Place for the Game to enter; so that the Beast that comes in cannot pass without touching the String, which makes the Bow discharge the Arrow, and it enters the fore Part of their Body. They also dig Pits in the Woods, which they cover with Reeds and Grass; so that if any Beast comes thither, he is sure to fall in. They live along the River *Juzawaia* to the Castle of *Utsko*, 240 English Miles S. E. from *Kama*. Their Country reaches Northward to the *Samoisides*. This Castle is a Frontier Garison against the *Baskirian* and *Uffimischan Tartars*. The latter live upon the *Volga*, as far as *Saratoff*, in Lat. 52. and along the Banks of the River *Kama*, to Lat. 58. the Czar is oblig'd to keep them in awe by Garisons, otherwise they would not pay their Tribute of Furs and Honey. They are some-

times join'd by a Clan of their own Nation near *Astracan*, and together rob *Siberia*. N. from the Conflux of the *Kama* and *Juzawaia* lies *Solikamskoi*, in Lat. 59. Long. 70. 210 Miles from that Confluence, and 211 N. W. from *Wergaturia*. Travellers to *China* must lie here all the Summer, because of the Morasses, till they freeze in the Winter. Here are many Salt-Works or Pits, besides above 50 Salt-Springs, from 25 to 35 Ells deep. Great Quantities of Salt are boil'd there, and stow'd in long Ships, mann'd with 800 Sailors each, and carry 1600 or 2000 Tun. They sail down the *Kama*, till it fall into the *Volga*, and from thence go to *Casan*, *Nisna*, &c. Those Vessels have Kitchens, Bagnio's, and other Conveniencies on board.

Neuianskoi, is 240 Miles S. E. from *Utsko*. The most charming Fields in the World are betwixt these Places: The Ground is fertile, well cultivated, and inhabited by *Russians*. *Tumeen* is 180 Miles N. E. from *Neuianskoi*; the Country all along pleasant and fruitful: The Town lies in Lat. 55. Long. 76. is strong and populous, mostly inhabited by *Russians*; the rest are *Mahometan Tartars*: They drive a Trade with *Bulgaria*. The *Kalmack* and *Cossack-Orda Tartars* make frequent Irruptions into *Siberia*, lay the Villages waste, and cut the Inhabitants in pieces. This and the neighbouring Places afford red Foxes, Bears, and Wolves-Skins. *Heetkoy Wollock*, a Wood 5 Miles distant from this Place, abounds with the very finest grey Squirrels, which keep their Colour both Summer and Winter: They are as large as common Squirrels, and are no where in the *Muscovite* Empire but here. They are all kept for the Czar's Use, and none must sell them to Merchants.

Tobolsko, is seated upon the Confluence of the *Tobol* and *Irtis*. The Course of the *Irtis* is N. W. to *Tobolsko*, and from thence till it fall into the *Ob* N. E. *Tobolsko* lies in Lat. 58. Long. 81. It is the chief City of *Siberia*, and its Jurisdiction of a vast Extent. This Province is every where well Peopled by *Russians*, *Tartars*, *Heathens*, and all sorts of Nations, who pay Tribute to the Czar. An Hundred German Pounds of Rye may be bought here for 16 Stivers, a fat Ox for 11 Shillings Sterling, a large Hog for 30 Stivers. The River *Irtis* produces such

a prodigious Quantity of Fish, that a Sturgeon of 40 Pound Weight may be had for 5 Strivers: When boil'd, their Fat swims above the Water an Inch thick. Elks, Stags, Deer, Hares, and other Wild-Beasts, abound here, as do Pheasants, Partridges, Swans, Wild-Geese, Ducks, Storks, &c. which are cheaper than Beef. This City is naturally strong, and is seated on a Hill: They have a strong Garison of well arm'd Soldiers, and can bring 9000 Men to the Field, besides some Thousands of *Tartars* on Horseback, when the *Kalmuck*, *Kosack-Orda*, *Bucharian*, and *Bakirian Tartars*, invade them. The Metropolitan of all *Siberia* and *Dauria* resides here.

The *Tartars* that live round *Tobolsko* are all Mahometans, and the *Mufti* is an *Arabian*.

The Countries betwixt the *Tobol* and *Oby*, as far as the *Jamuschowa-Oser* Lake, which lies about Lat. 48. and Long. 93. 900 Miles from *Tobolsko* to the S. E. are inhabited by *Kalmakians*. This Lake abounds with hard Salt, which is dug like Ice from the Shore. The *Russians* come here in a Military Way, and load their Vessels in spite of the Natives.

Tora, upon the River *Irtis*, in Lat. 56. Long. 83. is 300 Miles S. E. from *Tobolsko*: It is inhabited by a People call'd *Barabinskoy*. Their Country is extended Eastward to the River *Oby*, and the City of *Tomskoi*. They are a sort of the *Kalmakian Tartars*, and pay Tribute to them and to the Czar.

They have great Numbers of Cattle, as Camels, Horses, &c. They don't eat Hogs. Their Country abounds with fine Sables, Martens, Squirrels, Ermins, Foxes, Hyæna's, Beavers, Minks, Otters, &c. of all which they pay a Tribute.

When they hunt, they carry their Idols with them, and if they have good Luck, their *Saitan*, or Image of Wood, carv'd with a Knife, is set up in a high Place of the House, and cover'd round with fine Furs, which must stay there till they rot; for to take any of them away, would be thought great Sacrilege. This is their Way of Gratitude to their Gods.

Their Drink is *Arak*: They eat the Bulb of yellow Lillies, dry'd, stamp'd, and boil'd with Milk. *Tora* is their Frontier Place. The *Kalmakians* live on the S. and S. W. of it.

Tomskoi lies on the River *Tom*, which falls into the *Oby*, a little below it, in Lat. 52. Long. 95. 660 Miles S. E. from *Tora*, and 200 N. E. from the Lake *Jamischowa-Osera*. It is a Frontier Place belonging to the Czar, and garison'd by *Russians* and *Cossacks*, to prevent the IncurSIONS of the *Tartars* into *Siberia*.

Samorofskoy-Jani, lies on the River *Irtis*, N. E. from *Tobolsko*, in Lat. 63. Long. 83. *Kasinka*, a Rivulet that runs into the *Oby*, not far from this Town, affords fine grey Squirrels: Most of the Inhabitants are *Russian Jemicks*, and supply the Weyvodes, and other Persons concern'd in the Czar's Affairs, with Carriages over the Ice in Winter, and by Water in Summer, at reasonable Rates. They draw their Sleds with Dogs, of a strange sort, which couple with Wolves and Foxes. Horse-Sleds are unserviceable here, because the Snow on the *Oby* is sometimes more than a large Fathom deep. The Sleds are light and thin, and can carry from 2 to 300 *German* Weight. Two yoked Dogs draw one. They run very swiftly, and leave only a Track of an Inch deep in the Snow. If they be inclin'd to hunt, their Master unyokes them, takes his Gun, and puts on his long sliding Shoes, and sometimes in the Woods kills fine black Foxes, which he fleas, and gives the flesh to his Dogs.

Surgut, lies in Lat. 62. Long. 84. It is seated on the famous River *Oby*, 300 *English* Miles N. E. from *Tobolsko*, and 180 S. E. from *Samorofskoy-Ani*. Here are great Numbers of those call'd Cross-Foxes, whose Skins are of a mix'd black and grey, but few black: They have red Foxes, and Hyæna's, that are very mischievous, and live by Prey. They place themselves in the Trees, like the Linx, and lie very still, till a Hart, Elk, Doe, or Hare, runs under the Tree, from which they leap upon him, and eat a Hole in his Body, which by the Pain forces it to lie down. One of the Weyvodes there kept a Hyæna, which he put into the Water, and let two Water-Dogs loose at him: He held one of them so long under Water, till he drown'd him, and would have done so by the other, if he had not been interrupted by throwing Wood at him. They have great Plenty of Beavers, of which the Inhabitants tell incredible Stories:

sies: For which, we refer the Reader to the Ambassador's Travels.

Narum, lies on the E. Side of the *Oby*, 300 Miles E. from *Tobolsko*, and 270 S. E. from *Surgut*, in Lat. 58. Long. 89½. It has a strong Garison of *Cossacks*, and a Castle. All the neighbouring Country abounds with Crofs and Red Foxes, Beavers and Sables, some of which are pale, others as black as Pitch, and the finest and largest Ermins in all *Siberia* and *Russia*; but above all, Black Fox-Skins, which are the finest and richest in the World; the best are reserv'd for the Czar: Some are valued from 2 to 300 Rubles a Skin, and are so very black, that the blackest *Daurian* Sable is not comparable to them. These Foxes are caught by Dogs.

The Southern Banks of the *Oby*, as far as this Place, are inhabited by a People call'd *Ostjacks*: They worship Gods of Wood and Earth, of the Shape of Men and Women, and sometimes dress them in Silks after the *Russian* Fashion: They are plac'd in their Huts, made of the Barks of Trees, few'd together by Hart's Guts. On one Side of the Idol hangs a Bunch of Humane and Horse Hair, and next that a Wooden Vessel with Milk-Pap, which they thrust into its Mouth with a Spoon, till it runs out in such a manner as is enough to make one vomit. When this cleanly God is to be ador'd, they stand upright, and toss their Head up and down without bending their Back, and chirrup or whistle through their Lips, as we do when we call a Dog.

They call their God *Saitan*. Several of 'em came aboard our Ship to sell Fish, says the Ambassador, where one of my Servants had a *Nuremberg* Bear in Clock-work, which he wound up, and made him drum, and turn his Head backwards and forwards, and move his Eyes. As soon as the *Ostjacks* saw it, they perform'd their wonted Religious Worship, and danc'd excessively to the Honour of the Bear, nodding their Heads, and whistling at a great rate. They all said, our Bear was a right *Saitan*, crying out, *What are our Saitans which we make? If we had such a Saitan, we would hang him all over with Sables and Black Fox-Skins.* They ask'd if the Bear was to be sold; but the Ambassador order'd it out of sight, to avoid their Idolatry.

They marry their nearest Relations without any Scruple, and have as many Wives as they can keep. They are a poor People, and live in sorry Huts: They are lazy, and lay up no more Fish or Flesh than will barely suffice them in Winter. All Places here about the *Oby* abound with rich Furs. They have Plenty of Fish, and sometimes sell 20 great Sturgeons for 3 Pennyworth of Tobacco.

They are of a middle Stature, their Hair yellowish or red, their Faces and Noses agreeably broad: They are weak, and not inclin'd to War, being utterly incapable of Military Exercises. Their Weapons are Bows and Arrows, with which they shoot some Beasts. Their Clothes are of Sturgeon and other Fish-Skins: Their Shoes and Stockings are fasten'd together; and their Shoes are of Fish-Skins. If they are overtaken with a severe Frost when a Hunting, which is frequent on the *Oby*, they immediately throw off their Clothes, and leap into the deep Snow, and so freeze to Death. They pull off their Coats, that they may die the sooner, and with less Pain. The Women's Clothes are like the Men's.

Their greatest Diversion is Bear-hunting: Their Arms on this Occasion is a large Knife fix'd to a Stick of a Fathom long.

They have some petty Princes; one of whom is call'd *Kneska*, whose Authority extends over some Hundreds of Huts, and he levies the Tribute which they pay to the Czar's Weyvodes. This Prince came aboard the Ship, and invited the Ambassador to his Palace, which was made, as the rest of the Houses, of the Barks of Trees few'd together. He had four Wives, two old, and two young: One of the young ones had a Red Cloth Coat, and was adorn'd with Glas Corals about her Neck and her Middle, and in the Curls of her Hair, which hung down on both Sides of her Head in two Rows. She had in her Ears great Thread Rings, with long Strings of the same Coral hanging at them. Each of the old ones presented the Ambassador with a Barrel of Birch-Bark few'd together, full of dry Fish. The youngest gave him a Barrel of Sturgeon-Fat, as yellow as Gold. The Ambassador treated them with Brandy and Tobacco, which is to them a great Delicacy. The whole Furniture of the Palace was
some

Some Cradles and Chests, of Barks of Trees sew'd together, in which the Bed-Clothes lie, being of Wood-Shavings, yet almost as soft as Feathers. The Children lie naked in the Cradles. They smook Tobacco thus: Instead of Pipes, they use a Stone Kettle, in which they stick a Pipe made for that purpose. They take some Water in their Mouths, then suck out at once a whole Pipe, and swallow the Smoak; upon which they fall down as if they were dead; their Eyes are distorted, and their Hands and Feet tremble for half an Hour; they foam at the Mouth, and are like People in an Epilepsie. We could not see, says he, where the Smoak vented it self. Some of them lose their Lives this way, by falling into the Water when they travel, or into the Fire when at home; and those of weak Constitutions are frequently suffocated with the Smoak.

They don't till their Land, and have neither Temples nor Priests. Their Shipping or Boats are of Barks of Trees sew'd together; the inside Ribs are of very thin Wood, two or three Fathom long, and one Ell broad. They can secure themselves in the greatest Storms in those Boats. In Winter, they live under Ground in Caves; the Entrance is a Hole in the Surface of the Earth, which also lets out their Smoak. The Snow sometimes falls two or three Inches thick upon that Part of their Bodies which is furthest from the Fire when they are asleep, and when they awake, they turn that Side to the Fire, and warm it by turns.

When an *Ostiac* is jealous of his Wife, he offers the suspected Person some of the Hair of a Bear-Skin: If he be innocent, he takes it; but if not, he confesses; for they are persuaded, if a guilty Person take that Hair, the Bear whose it was will revive, and within 3 Days tear them to pieces, and revenge the Affront for taking his Hair, in order to deny the Truth. They also offer Bows and Arrows, Knives and Axes, to the suspected Person, and believe, that if they be guilty, and take any of them, they shall die by that individual Instrument. The Eastern Shore of the *Oby* is all untill'd, from the *Icy-Sea* to the River *Tom*, (on which lies the City *Tomskoi*) by reason of the extreme Cold; so that there's no Honey,

Corn or Fruit, here, except a few Nuts, which grow on the Cedar-Tree.

The Ambassador sail'd up the River *Keta*, which falls into the *Oby* near *Narum*: The most Easterly Winding of it is near the great River *Jenifia*, which runs into the *Icy-Sea*, in Lat. 70. and Long. 92. The City *Makoskow* is 360 English Miles E. and by S. from *Narum*. The Inhabitants are *Ostiacs*. Here are great Numbers of Woodcocks, Pheasants, Partridges, and other Wild-Fowl, which come in Flocks to the River to drink. About the Banks of it grow Strawberries, black and red Currans, and Blackberries.

The City *Jenizeskey* is 60 Miles E. from *Makoskow*, in Lat. 57. Long. 99. on the River *Jenifia*. Below the City, the River is the third Part of a Mile broad. This City is large and populous; the Citadel indifferent strong. All Provisions are plentiful here; but they have no large Fruit-Trees, by reason of the Cold, only some Strawberries, Gooseberries, Currans, &c. From this City to the Lake *Baikal*, there's a continu'd Ridge of Hills, where there are Sables and Cabardines.

The City *Ilinskey* is in Lat. 56. Long. 105. 360 Miles S. E. from *Jenizeskey*: It lies on the River *Ilin*, which runs from the S. S. W. to the N. N. W. and falls into the *Tunguska*. Some few Days Journey from hence, is the great Rocky Water-fall, call'd the *Negromantick-Fall*, because a Conjuror lives there, who deludes the People. It is a Descent of half a Mile long; the Shore and Ground of the River is rocky: The Noise it makes, may be heard in calm Weather 3 German Miles. They cannot perform the Voyage against the Stream in less than 5, 6, or 7 Days; the Ships must be empty, and are frequently obliged to cast Anchor, and in some Places they must tow a whole Day, before they can get forward the Ship's Length; but they sail down this Torrent in 12 Minutes; the Ships must have Rudders fore and aft, and Rowers on both Sides: The Pilots give their Orders by a Handkerchief, for no Voice can be heard; the Ships are closely shut up, that the raging Waves may not enter and sink them. Many Ships are cast away here every Year.

The

The Natives are call'd *Tungusians*: Their Country reaches 600 Miles further North and East to *Argunskoy*. They pay a Tribute of Furs to the Czar for every Bow. The Men are tall and strong, have long black Hair, which is bound up like a Horse's Tail, and hangs down upon their Backs: They are broad Fac'd, have flat Noses; but their Eyes are larger than those of the *Kalmachians*. Both Men and Women go naked in Summer, except only a Leathern Girdle of 3 Hand-breadths, that they cut in the Shape of Ribands, and wear it about their Waste. They carry a Pot on their Left Arm full of old Smoaking-Wood, to prevent the biting of the Moskitoes. They admire Beauty in their own Way; and to improve it, they adorn their Forehead, Cheeks and Chins, with several Figures, which they make by running a Needle with Threads greas'd with black Grease thro' the Skin, and leave the Threads there for several Days; which, when drawn out, leave Marks behind them. Some of these Figures are Lozenge-wise, and others Semi-circular.

Their Winter-Habits are of Doe-Skins, border'd with Dog-Skins: Their Breast-Piece is hung with Horse-Tails: They know not the Use of Flax or Wool. Their Nets and Sowing-Thread are of Fish-Skins: Their Caps are a Roebuck's-Skin, with the Horns sticking out on the Crown of their Heads. By this means, and by creeping on the Grass, they deceive the Beasts, and get near enough to shoot them. They lay their Dead upon Trees, and after they are rotten, burn their Bones.

The Conjurers are their only Priests. In their Huts they have Wooden Idols, of half an Ell long, of a Humane Figure, which they feed as the *Ostiacks*. Their Huts are made of Birch-Bark, and are hung round with Horses-Mains, Tails, and other Baulbes. Before the Doors they hang their Bows and Quivers, and young dead Dogs by 'em. Their Boats are made of the same Materials with their Houses, are long, slender, and without Benches. They sit upon their Knees, and can bear up against violent Streams. They subsist chiefly by Hunting and Fishing. There's another Clan of them near the Borders of *China*.

They marry as many Wives as they please, buy them one of another, and think nothing the worse of 'em for having liv'd with another Man. They acknowledge a God, but perform all their Worship to their *Saitans*, in the Night-time, by beating Drums, and Exorcisms, when they are to go a Hunting or Robbing. They fuddle themselves now and then with *Arak*, a sort of Brandy, made of distill'd Mare's-Milk. Men, Women and Girls, drink it to that Excess, that they become insensible for a long while. Both Sexes ride on Horseback, arm'd with Bows and Arrows. Their Bread is a refin'd Flower, of the Bulbs of yellow Lillies, of which they make also a sort of Pap; and sometimes eat the Bulbs dry. They know nothing of Agriculture: Their Trade is by bartering Furs with the *Targansians* and *Kixigarthians*, who live under the *Chinese*, for Blue Callicoos, Linen and Tobacco.

The City *Buratskoy* is S. from *Iliniskoy*, upon the River *Angora*. *Bulaganiki* is on the same River, 90 Miles S. from *Iliniskoy*. The *Buratsians* live here. Their Country reaches S. from this Place 360 Miles. They have great Plenty of Cows: Their Bulls are more hairy than Goats. Their Dwellings are low, made of Wood join'd together, and cover'd with Earth, and are commonly near Rivers. They have nothing of Agriculture. In Spring and Harvest, they go a Hunting by Hundreds together. When they have found out their Game, as Wild-Sheep, Stags, or Roebucks, they form themselves into a Circle, surround the Beasts, and shoot them; each Hunter having 30 Shot. When the Hunting is over, every one finds his own Arrows by his Mark. Both Men and Horses are frequently wounded by this confus'd Method. They hunt no more till all their Provisions be done. Their Hills are full of Wild-Sheep, as white as Snow. They furnish Travellers to *China* with Oxen and Camels of an extraordinary Size. They deal by Barter, and truck Pale-Sables for Pewter and Copper Basins, Red *Hamburg* Cloths, Otters-Skins, *Persian* Shaggy Silk of all Colours, and Gold and Silver Bullion. An Ox of 800 or 1000 *German* Pound Weight, is valu'd at 5 Rubles; a Camel at 10 or 12. One of their Rubles

is two Rix-Dollars. The Men are robust, large, and have handsome Faces, as Beauty goes here. They are something like the *Chinese Tartars*.

In Winter, both Sexes wear Coats made of Sheep-Skins, and in Summer of Red Cloth. They never wash their Face, or any Part of their Body, nor do they cut the Nails of Hands or Feet; so that they look strangely. The Hair of their young Women sticks close together in Plaits, and stands on End, which makes them look as Envy is represented by Painters. Married Women have two Plaits that hang down on each Side their Head, adorn'd with Tin-Figures. When they die, they are buried with their Ornaments, Clothes, Bows and Arrows.

Their Religion consists in worshipping dead Bucks and Sheep, stuck on Poles before their Doors, till they be putrified, and then they put others in their stead. Their Adoration is perform'd by bowing their Heads, and sitting on their Knees with their Hands join'd, without speaking a Word.

They have some Priests, whom they kill now and then, and bury them with their Clothes and Money. The Reason they give for it is, That they need Priests to go before them to the other World, and pray for them. When they take an Oath, they go to the Lake *Baikal*, near which there's a Hill, which they account Sacred. There they take the Oath, and are perswaded, that those who swear falsely, can never come down alive. To this Hill they offer up all sorts of Cattle, and have done so for many Years.

They have Store of Musk-Cats, which look like young Bucks without Horns, only their Hair is somewhat black, and their Head much like that of a Wolf. The Musk is contain'd in a Swelling at their Navel, like a little Purse, of a thin Skin, cover'd with very fine Hair. The *Chinese* call it a Musk-Hart, because it resembles that Creature. It has two Tusks, like those of a Wild-Boar. *Philip Martinus*, in his *Chinese Atlas*, says, this Animal is found chiefly near the City of *Lao*, in the Province of *Xamsi*, and in *Xenxi*, but especially in that of *Hanching-Bu*. He describes it thus: It is like a young Doe or Hart; but more brown, flow and unactive; so that the greatest Difficulty is

to put him up; but when that is done, he suffers himself to be tamely shot. His Blood is drawn off and reserv'd. They take off a Bladder near his Navel, which is fill'd with Blood, or some other odoriferous Liquor that gathers naturally there; after which they flea and cut him to pieces.

When the *Chinese* design to make the best Sort, they take the hinder Part of the Animal, beginning from the Kidneys, which they stamp and bruise to a Jelly; then they dry it, and put it in small Bags, which they make of his Skin.

But if they design a coarser Sort, which is still very good, and not sophisticated, they beat all the Parts of the Animal together to a Jelly in a Mortar, with a little of his Blood, and put in Bags as before.

There's yet another Sort of Musk, highly valued, tho' not so good as the former: This is prepared from the fore Part of the Animal to the Kidneys, which they particularly lay by, in order to make the common Musk; so that none of this Creature is thrown away, all Parts of it being good for Musk. But whether the Barbarians make the same Use of the Musk-Cat as the *Chinese* do, is not known.

Jekutskoi, is situated on the River *Angora*; whose Course is from N. to S. Its Source is from the Lake *Baikala*, 8 Miles from this Place, in Lat. 54, Long. 110. This City is lately rebuilt, and strongly fortified; the Suburbs are large, and there is great Plenty of all Grain here; so that 100 German Pound Weight of Rye is sold for 7 Stivers. On the E. of this City, there's a burning Cove, which flam'd very much formerly; but now is almost extinguished, and little or no Smoak issues out of it at present. In Harvest, Earthquakes are frequent, but not very prejudicial in this Country. A *Mongolian* Baron resides here, who embrac'd the *Grecian* Faith, under the Protection of the Czar. His Sister was a Pagan Devotee, and well nigh perswaded to receive the Christian Faith. She said, The Christians God must necessarily be a strong God, since he hath beat their God out of Heaven; but alledg'd, he would return thither, and be beat out the second time. The Rules of her Order would not allow her to salute any body. She had a *Refery*, or String of Beads, which

which she incessantly turn'd round her Fingers. I found a Priest with her, says the Ambassador, who by the same Practice had his Thumb worn up to the Knuckle; which rubbing off by Degrees, did not at all pain him.

Of the Province of DAURI.

THE Lake of *Baikala* is the Western Frontier of this Province, and the River *Gobritz* the Northern. The W. and N. Side of this River belong to the Czar, and the Eastern to *China*; but the Southern Boundary is not so well known. The River *Argun* is its Boundary on the S. E. 'Tis a fine Country, well water'd with Brooks: The Hills and Vallies abound with the most charming Herbs and Flowers; and in some of the Vallies, there's long Grass about half a Man's Height. Tillage is not much practis'd here, the People being lazy: They are *Tartars*, subject to his Czarish Majesty.

The Lake *Baikala* is 6 German Miles broad, and 40 long. The Ice about the beginning of *March* was full two Dutch Ells thick, and dangerous, when Passengers are overtaken with a great Snow or high Wind. The Ice is slippery, so that the Horse must be sharp shod. The Camels have a high Shoe or Boot ty'd about their Legs, and sharp at Bottom. The Oxen have Irons struck thro' their Hoofs. The Ice of this Lake is sometimes tore open for several Fathoms by stormy Winds, with a Noise as loud as Thunder-Claps; but after a few Hours, the Ice joins close as before. About this Lake, there are very fine Black Sables and Caberdines.

The Water of the Lake tastes fresh, is clear, and of a deep green Colour, where the Ice is open. Sea-Dogs appear blackish here, and not variegated as in the *White Sea*. They have great Plenty of Jacks and Sturgeon, some of which weigh 200 German Pounds.

Ilunskoy, lies on the S. E. of the Lake, Lat. 53 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 116. It is a very large Town. Most of the Inhabitants are *Russians*. In Winter, they go a Sable-hunting, and till no more Ground than Necessity requires. The Castle of *Tanzieniskoy*, near this

Place, is provided with a strong Garison of *Cossacks*, to cover this Country from the Incursions of the *Mongolians*, who border on it. *Udinskoy*, a Fortrefs N. E. from *Ilunskoy*, is situated on a Hill; but most of the Inhabitants live at the Foot of it. This Place has also a strong Garison of *Russian Cossacks*, because they border on the *Mongolians*, who in Summer carry off their Horses. No Trees are to be seen here: They have abundance of Carrots, Cabbage, and Turneps.

Jarauna, is 120 English Miles S. E. from *Udinskoy*. The Country betwixt them is uninhabited: It is also garison'd with *Cossacks*, and inhabited by *Russians*, who live by Sable-hunting. The Heathens here are called *Koni-Tunguxi*. When any one dies, he is buried, with his Clothes and Bows, under Ground. Stones are laid upon his Grave, and a Pole erected, to which they tie his best Horse, being first shot to Death.

A *Tungusian* Prince came to visit me, says *Tibrant Ides*, who had prodigious long Hair, bound up with Leather, tied three times about his Shoulders. I was very curious to see if his Hair was really so long as I was told, and drunk him with Brandy, for which Favour he allow'd me to loose his Hair. I found it to be all natural, and 4 Dutch Ells long. He had a Son of 6 Years of Age, whose Hair was near an Ell long. They live on the Hills, and grow rich by catching fine and beautiful black Sables, inferior to none in the Province of *Siberia*. Here are also very fine Linxes, and a sort of Squirrels, for which the *Chinese* are their chief Merchants.

Nerzinskoy, lies on the River *Nerza*, (that runs N. N. E.) in Lat. 53. Long. 124. 540 Miles from *Jekutskoi*. 'Tis the chief City of *Dauria*, is pretty strong, with Brass Guns, and a great Garison of *Daurian Cossacks*, both Foot and Horse. The Fields about it are very fruitful. Above and below the City, for some Miles, dwell several *Russian* Gentlemen and *Cossacks*, that live by Tillage, grazing of Beasts, and Fishing. Among the Hills, and round the City, there are very fine Garden-Trees and Plants, as *Bastard-Rhubarb*, of an extraordinary Thickness and Length, fine White and Yellow *Lillies*, vast Quantities of Red and Snow-

white *Peonies*, which have a fragrant Scent. Here's Plenty of *Marjoram*, *Rosemary*, *Lavender*, *Thyme*, and several other odoriferous Plants and Flowers, unknown to our Authors. Their Fruits are only Red and Black Currans.

The *Konni-Tunguzians* are obliged to be ready on Horseback at the Command of the Weywode, when the roving *Tartars* make any Incursions on the Frontiers; and the *Oleni-Tunguzians* must be ready on Foot when there is any Occasion in the City. The Prince of the former was under the Emperor of *China*; but falling into Disgrace, he and his Clan retir'd to *Dauria*, put himself under the Protection of the Czar, and embrac'd the *Greek* Religion. He can in one Day raise 3000 well appointed Horsemen. They are good Soldiers, and 50 of them will rout 400 *Mongolians*. They live chiefly by grazing; but those on the River *Schilka* and *Amur* maintain'd themselves by hunting Black Sables.

Their Religion is much the same with the other *Daurian* Heathens; for throughout all Great *Tartary*, to the beginning of the *Mongolian* *Tartars*, there's a great Similitude in Religion.

Their common Drink is Water; but the better Sort drink Black Tea: They boil it in Mare's Milk and Water, to which they add a little Butter or Lard: They also use *Arak*. None of the Cows in *Siberia* or *Dauria* will suffer themselves to be milk'd; for which Reason Mare's Milk is much used by those People.

In Spring and Harvest, they go a hunting to provide Flesh against Winter, which they dry in the Sun. They gather the Pulp of yellow Lillies, and when dry'd and beaten to Meal, they make 'em into several sorts of Dishes.

They are dextrous at shooting Fish in the Water, with a sort of Arrows that are heavy, round, solid, and about 3 Fingers thick at the Head. At the End of 'em, under the Iron Point, there's a Ball of Bone bored through, that makes a loud whistling Noise as the Arrow flies, which is commonly no more than 15 or 20 Fathom. When they hit the Fish, they make a very large Orifice.

Their Way of Exculpation by Oath is very extraordinary: The accus'd Person takes a live Dog, lays him on the Ground, pierces him in the Belly with a Knife, claps his Mouth to the Wound, and sucks out the Dog's Blood as long as he can; after which he lifts him up on his Shoulders, and claps his Mouth to the Wound, in order to suck out the remaining Blood. When he has gone thro' this Trial, he is set at Liberty, and the Accuser is punish'd for his false Accusation.

Argunskoy, is on the River *Argun*, which runs from S.W. to N.E. and falls into the *Amur*. By a Treaty betwixt the Czar and the Emperor of *China* in 1689, this River was made the Boundary of their Dominions on that Side. The W. of the River belongs to the Czar. On the E. of it, begins the great uninhabited *Tartarian* Wilderness: It lies about Lat. 50. and Long. 125. This Country is very populous. The *Tunguzians* pay a voluntary Tribute to the Czar of Linxes and grey Ferrets, which are very fine here.

The Country betwixt the Rivers *Tugur* and *Uda*, and further North, belongs to the Czar. There's great Plenty of Black Sables here. The Natives are *Tunguzians*, *Jakutians*, *Amurians*, and *Korlitzians*. They are under the Jurisdiction of the Governor of *Jekutzkoy*, on the River *Lena*, which is the Capital of those Northern Provinces. All the Woods here are strongly guarded, to prevent the *Chinese* *Tartars* from hunting Sables.

The Country on the Rivers *Lena* and *Amga* is inhabited by a sort of People called *Jakutians*: Their upper Coats are Furs of different Colours, border'd with Buckskin. They have long Hair, and wear no Shirts. They believe there is a great Being above in Heaven, who gives them Wives and Food. They celebrate a great Festival in the Spring, when they offer *Arak* to that Being. During this Feast, they dont drink themselves, but make great Fires, and continually sprinkle the *Arak* towards the E. When any of them dies, his nearest Relation is buried alive with him. About one half of their Language agrees with that of the *Mahometan* *Tartars* near *Tobolskoy*, which

is derived from the *Bulgarian*. They take as many Wives as they can maintain. Stags are their chief Beasts of Burden, upon which they also ride, and make great Journeys in a little Time. They are a valiant quick-witted People, and seem to be great Lovers of Truth. When the Governors of *Jekutzkoi* are remiss, they do one another all possible Mischief. They say, their Ancestors came from *Kalmuckia*, from whence they were driven by the *Russians*, and were forc'd to take up their Abode in that cold District. They are much afflicted with the Scurvy, which they soon drive away by eating raw Fish, and a sort of Tar.

The *Jugogayars* are Heathens, and inhabit Part of this Country. They cut off all the Flesh of their dead Relations, dry the Skeleton, hang it with Glass-Corals of all Colours, carry it round their Huts, and worship it.

To the Shores of *Tugur* and *Uda*, come Yearly a tall People out of the Island in the Neighbourhood, well dress'd in fine Fur-Surtouts, under which they have Silken Coats, as rich as those of *Persia*. They come in small Barks to the *Siberian Tartars*, buy Girls and Women of them, and give 'em in Exchange rich Sables of Black Fox-Skins, which they have in great Quantities in their Islands. These two Rivers fall into the *Amoerschoan* or *Chinese* Ocean, Long 150. The Mouth of the *Uda* lies in Lat. 58.

Northwards of those two Rivers rises the *Ogela*, which runs N. E. and falls into the *Chinese* Ocean, in Lat. 64. and Long. 145. All the Coast from the Mouth of this River to the *Ky-Cape* abounds with Whales, Sea-Horses, and Sea-Dogs.

K A M S A T K A,

Lies in Lat. 71. and Long. 146. near a River of that Name, that falls into the *Chinese* Ocean. The People are call'd *Xuxi* and *Koeliki*, and have each a peculiar Language. Those who live near the Sea are cloth'd in Seal-Skins, and dwell in Caves. Those who inhabit the Inland Country, are generally rich. They hunt Harts, eat Flesh and Fish raw, and wash themselves with

their own Urine. They are a false and treacherous People.

C A S A N.

THIS Province reaches on the Left of the *Volga* as far as *Siberia* to the North, and to the *Nugayan Tartars* on the East. It was formerly under the *Crim Tartars*, and was capable of bringing 60000 Men to the Field. The Great Duke *Basil Janowitz*, Father to the famous Tyrant *John Basilowitz*, after a Victory over these *Tartars*, made one *Shenle*, a weak Man, their Governor, whom the *Casan Tartars*, join'd by the *Crim Tartars*, obliged to quit the Country, and give up all their Conquests. Not contented with this, they march'd their Army into the Heart of *Muscovy*, under the Conduct of two Brothers, called *Mendigleri* and *Sapperi*, forced the *Muscovite* Lines near the River *Occa*, and had the Chase of them to *Nisi-Novogorod*. Having thus master'd all Difficulties, they march'd streight to *Moscow*, which they besieged, took and plunder'd. The Castle was also obliged to capitulate on scandalous Terms, viz. That the Czar and his Subjects should be Tributaries to them for ever; and as a Sign of their Subjection, the Great Duke should be obliged to smite his Head before the Statue of *Mendigleri*, erected in the Market-place of *Moscow*, as often as the Tribute should be paid to the *Tartars*; and these Articles were sign'd and sworn to by the Czar; so the Kingdom of *Casan* fell to the Share of *Sapperi*, and *Crim Tartary* to *Mendigleri*; who proposing nothing less than the entire Conquest of *Muscovy*, they invaded the Country again, sat down before *Razan*, summoned *Kowar*, the Weywode of the Castle, to surrender, and told him the Czar himself was now his Subject. The Weywode pretended Ignorance, desired to be satisfied about it, and then promised to surrender. *Mendigleri* sent him the Instrument of Subjection, sign'd and seal'd by the Czar. *Kowar* having gain'd this Point, he sent him Word, That he would keep both the Czar's Original Letters and the City to the last Drop of his Blood; which he did accordingly,

dingly, and obliged the *Tartars* to raise the Siege with great Loss. He sent the Original Letter to the Czar; upon which the Statue of *Mendigleri* was broke down; and the Czar afterwards laid Siege to *Casan*: But after much Bloodshed on both Sides, he was forced to raise it. His Son *John Basflowitz*, to revenge this Affront, began his Reign with the Siege of that Place. He batter'd the City furiously two Months, and offer'd 'em honourable Terms, if they would surrender; which they rejected, in hopes of being relieved by the *Crim-Tartars*. Upon this he immediately order'd his Mines to be sprung, buried a vast Number of *Tartars* in the Ruins, and so took it by Storm on the 9th of July, 1552. The *Tartars* defended themselves with the utmost Bravery in two Intrenchments within the City, after the *Muscovites* made themselves Masters of the Breach, and at last forced their Way at one of the Gates through the *Muscovite* Camp to the other Side of the River *Casanka*. The Czar order'd the Breaches to be immediately repaired, because the whole Province depended on the Fate of this City, which has remained in the Possession of the *Muscovites* ever since.

Casan is situated in a large Plain on the River *Casanka*, about 7 Versts from the *Volga*, in Lat. $55\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $69\frac{1}{2}$. This City is considerable for its Extent and Situation, as well as its Strength: The Castle and its Fortifications are of Stone, well provided with Artillery, and a good Garison of *Muscovites*. The *Tartars*, who are allowed to live here, are forbid, on pain of Death, to set a Foot between the Walls of the Castle. The Country is fertile, especially of all Sorts of Fruits, and Melons of an extraordinary Taste, as big as our Pumpions; but it is not populous, because frequently ravaged by the *Cossacks*. The Duke of *Holslein's* Ambassadors observe, That the Course of the River *Volga* from *Nish-Novograd* to *Casan* is E. and S.E. but from *Casan* to *Astracan*, and to the *Caspian* Sea, it runs from N. to S. Seventy Miles from *Casan* stands *Rockshagra*, and 130 to the N. *Malmisch*, on the *Casanka*. On the W. Side of the *Volga* lies *Tetus*, on the Borders of *Bulgaria*. 'Tis irregu-

larly built, and resembles a Village rather than a City.

BULGARIA.

THIS *Tartarian* Province is South from *Casan*. *Bulgar* is the Capital; and the River *Ulka* rises in its Neighbourhood. The Ruins of many Cities destroyed by *Tamerlane* are to be seen all along the Banks of the *Volga*. *Samara* lies on the E. Side of the *Volga*, about two Miles from the Shore, Lat. $52\frac{3}{4}$, and Long. $70\frac{1}{4}$. about 200 Miles S. from *Casan*. It is square, and built all of Wood, except the Churches and Monasteries. The River *Samara*, from whence it has its Name, falls into the *Volga* 3 Miles below it.

They have Plenty of Fish and Caviar in this Country. The Soil is fruitful: They have fine Meadows and Pastures, and Plenty of Apple-Trees in the Vallies, of which they make Cyder. Their Mountains are cover'd with Pine-Trees; but much infested by the *Cossacks*, who lurk there.

ASTRACAN.

THE Kingdom of *Astracan* has the *Caspian* Sea on the S. the Kingdom of *Bulgaria* on the N. the *Nogai* *Tartars* and the River *Donn* on the W. and the *Kalmuck Tartars* on the N. E. The Duke of *Holslein's* Ambassadors are singular in their Observation, That the Elevation of the Pole in the City of *Astracan* is only 26 Degrees 22 Minutes; and Dr. *Comnor* follows them in this Mistake: But Father *Avril* says, the Lat. is 48 Degrees. Mr. *Moll* makes it 47. They had a King of their own; but in 1554, the City and whole Kingdom was taken by *John Basflowitz*. Before this it belonged to the *Tartars* of *Nagaia*, and had its Name from a *Tartarian* Prince named *Astra-Can*, its Founder. It is situate in the Isle of *Dolgoi*, in the *Volga*, which is all over sandy and barren, except some Gardens and Grounds cultivated with great Care: So that *Herbeftin* is mistaken when he says, that

it lies some Days Journey from that River. The Ambassadors observe, That the Heats were as excessive there in *September* and *October*, as in *Germany* in the middle of Summer. The Winter lasts only two Months; but is so exceeding cold, that the River is frozen up, and bears Sledges. On this Side the *Volga*, there's a Heath extending 70 *German* Leagues to the W. and another of 80 *German* Leagues to the S. Those Heaths are remarkable for Salt-Pits. The Heat of the Sun bakes the Salt, so that it swims upon the Surface of the Water an Inch thick, and appears like Rock-Chrystal. They have such Quantities of it, that for an Half-penny one may buy 40 Pound Weight. The *Volga* some Miles lower abounds with Salmon, Sturgeon, white Fish, and Belluga, of the Roes of which Caviar is made. Twelve large Carps may be had for Two Pence, and 200 young Sturgeons for half a Crown. They have an incredible Number of Wild-Fowl, especially Geese and Ducks, which the *Tartars* hunt with Hawks, whereof each House has one, and they are very expert in breeding them.

The Fruits about *Astracan* are equal in Goodness and Beauty to those of *Persia*, especially their Apples, Quinces, Nuts, Peaches, and Melons; but chiefly that Sort called *Carpus*, whose Rind is of a lively Green, and the Meat of a Carnation Colour. Grapes were first brought hither in 1613, by some *Persian* Merchants, and planted by an old *German* Monk. Now they have a Vineyard, that produces 60 Pipes of excellent Wine in one Year; and every House has its Walks or Arbours of Vines. The Herb *Esula* grows here as high as a Man, and the Root of *Angelica* as big as one's Arm. About *Astracan*, and many Miles further N. there grows a prodigious Quantity of *Liquorish*: The Stalks are sometimes above four Foot high, and very thick; yet 'tis inferior both in Bigness and Taft to that in *Asia*, near the River *Araxes*. They have 500 great Brass Cannon, besides many Mortars, in *Astracan*. The Garison consists of 9 Regiments, of 500 Musqueteers each, to keep the neighbouring *Tartars* in Awe. The Town is fortified with a double Wall, and

some Towers, within half a Musquet-shot of one another. The Fortifications are all very high, and of Stone, which make a noble Figure, especially towards the River; but the Town is not answerable, because the Houses are low, and of Wood. *Michael Phedorowitz* built that Part of the City called *Stelitzza-Gorod*, i. e. the Soldiers-Town. The Ruins of the great City *Czarsgorod*, with its Palace, and Walls of Brick, demolish'd by *Tamerlane*, have furnished the City of *Astracan* for many Years with Materials for their Publick Buildings.

The City is inhabited by *Muscovites*. The *Armenians* and *Nagarian Tartars* have each of them a peculiar Suburb. The *Tartars* have 1000 Houses, which are most Part of Bukrushes; but they are not allow'd to come within the Walls.

As this City is in a manner the common Frontier on this Side betwixt *Asia* and *Europe*, not only the *Crim*, *Precopense*, *Bulgars*, and *Nagarian Tartars*, but also the *Armenians*, *Persians* and *Indians*, have a particular Place assign'd them, and drive a considerable Trade here; so that the Customs of this Place, when at the lowest, amount to 250000 Crowns per Annum. Others of the most remarkable Towns belonging to this Kingdom are, *Soratoff*: It lies in Lat. 52. and Long. 67 $\frac{1}{2}$. in a large Plain upon a Branch of the *Volga*, about 4 Miles from the main Stream. 'Tis garison'd and inhabited only by *Muscovites*, who serve as a Guard against the Invasions of the *Kalmuck Tartars*, that inhabit a vast Country N. and E. from the *Caspian* Sea. *Zariza* lies in Lat. 49. Lon. 42. and is situated on the W. Bank of the *Volga*. It is fortified with several Bastions and Towers of Wood, and is a Frontier Garison against the neighbouring *Tartars* and *Cossacks*. The Soldiers also convoy the Vessels that pass up and down the River. The Soil here is barren. *Szornagor* lies on the Right Side of the *Volga*, on a high Ground: It is square, fortified with Wooden Towers and Ramparts; and is also a Frontier Garison against the *Cossacks* and *Tartars*.

The *Nagarian-Cossack Tartars* were unknown to ancient Geographers. They are said to have been *Indians*, who revolted from.

from their Kings, and about 1212 settled near the *Euxine* Sea, upon the *Palus Meotis*, where the ancient *Getae* dwelt, and extended their Conquest first to the River *Don*, and afterwards to the *Volga*, where they now inhabit. Those of *Nagaisa* lie betwixt the *Volga* and *Taika*, as far as the *Caspian* Sea. Their principal City then was *Astracan*.

They live in round Huts of Bulrushes, about 12 or 13 *English* Yards in Compass. The *Muscovites* call them Vagabonds, because they ramble in Summer from Place to Place, to seek Grass for their Cattle, and carry their Huts in Carts. In Winter they dwell near *Astracan*. They pay no Tribute to the Czar, but are obliged to serve him in his Wars. They have petty Princes of their own, some of whom the Czar keeps as Hostages in the Castle of *Astracan*.

They are generally *Mahometans*, and very few of them of the *Muscovite* Faith: They vow some of their Children to God, or to some Saint, which are distinguished by a

Ring in their Nostrils, if Girls; and in their Right Ear if Boys.

They eat Fish dry'd in the Sun instead of Bread, and have sometimes Cakes of Meal and Rice. Their Drink is generally Milk and Water; but there is Beer, Wine, Mead, and *Aqua-Vite*, at *Astracan*. Their Cattle are large, and the Tails of their Sheep so fat, that some of them are 30 Pound Weight. Their Ears hang down like Spaniel-Dogs. Their Horses, tho' small and ill shap'd, are hardy and strong. Those *Tartars* have bad Lineaments, are low and fat, with large Faces, and little Eyes, of an Olive Complexion, and full of Wrinkles. They wear little Beards, and keep their Heads shaven; but the Women are tolerably handsome. The Men's Clothes are a loose Coat of coarse Cloth, with a short Cloak of Sheep-Skins, the Wool outwards, and a Cap of the same, but commonly black. The Women wear white Linen, and have plaited Coifs on their Heads, with a great many *Muscovian* Pence hanging down on both Sides.

C H A P. XII.

LITTLE TARTARY.

THIS Country had anciently several Names: 1. *Chersonesus-Taurica*, from the *Tauri*, or the *Tau-ro-Scythæ*, who inhabited there, as *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Ovid*, inform us, and *Chersonesus*, because it was a Peninsula. 2. *Crim Tartary*, from a City of that Name. 3. *Precopian Tartary*, from the City *Precopz*. 4. *Little Tartary*, to distinguish it from the *Great Tartary*. 5. *Strabo* calls it *Chersonesus Scythica*. 6. Others call'd it *Gazaria*. It has the *Euxine Sea* on the S. which *Pliny* tells us, was formerly called *Azenos*, i. e. Inhospitable. On the E. it has the *Bosphorus Cimmerius*, so call'd from the *Cimmerii*, a People inhabiting there, now call'd the *Streights of Caffa*. It has the *Sinus-Carcinius*, the Mouth of the *Borysthene*s, on the W. and the Rivers *Psol* and *Desna* on the N. W. They both fall into the Left-Side of the *Nieper*, and run from N. E. to N. W. The Boundary on the N. E. is the *Great Donn*, and the *Lesser*, call'd sometimes the *Donetz*. On the N. lies the Province of *Muscovy*, call'd *Rezan*. The Mouth of the *Nieper* is 150 English Miles S. W. from the *Taurica-Chersonesus*; and the Mouth of the *Donn* is 135 N. E. from it. The most Southern Promontory of that *Chersonesus* is 315 N. E. from *Constantinople*. The Town *Precopz* is 580 S. from *Moscow*. According to *Brietius*, from the Mouth of the *Nieper* to the Conflux of the *Greater* and *Lesser Donn*, i. e. from 49 to 60 $\frac{1}{2}$ Long. is 11 $\frac{1}{2}$ Deg. which make 690 Miles. But he not observing the Diminution of the Degrees of Long. is out in his Reckoning: The Mouth of the *Nieper* is in 50, and the Conflux of the *Donn* and *Donetz* in 61 $\frac{1}{2}$ Long. so that the Distance is only 375 English Miles; and the Breadth is from the most Southern Part of the *Chersonesus* in Lat. 46. to the most Northerly Winding of the *Little Donn* in Lat. 52. about

360 Miles. The most Southerly Promontory of the *Chersonesus* is in Lat. 44 $\frac{1}{2}$. and that Confluence in Lat. 49 $\frac{1}{2}$, makes 320 Miles.

Of the History of Little Tartary.

THIS Country was famous for its fruitful Soil, and Plenty of Fish. It was subject to several Masters, call'd the Princes of *Bosphorus*; but had no certain Form of Government. After that the *Tauri*, a *Scythian* People, conquer'd it, and call'd it *Taurica*, as formerly mention'd. It is probable they were the *European Scythians*; whom *Darius*, the Son of *Hystaspes*, made War upon with an Army of 700000 Men, and was routed by them, as *Herodotus* informs us. *Mithridates* King of *Pontus* defeated them, and annex'd *Taurica-Chersonesus* to his own Dominions. But being overcome by the *Romans*, he not only lost his new Conquests, but also his Kingdom of *Pontus*. After that the *Romans* set up Kings there, whom they call'd the Kings of *Bosphorus*. Upon the Division of the Empire among the Sons of *Constantine the Great*, those Provinces fell to the Share of the Eastern Emperors. (The *Tartars* now inhabiting *Crim-Tartary* are originally from *Asia*, and began to be famous about 950, in the Greek, Latin, and Arabian Histories.) The *Genoese* taking Advantage of the Confusion and Disorders among the *Greeks*, about the Time of the Holy War, and being then powerful at Sea, possess'd themselves of the greater Part of *Crim-Tartary*, and especially of *Caffa*, call'd by the *Greeks Theodosia*. In 1250, the *Tartars*, puff'd up with the great Victories they had gain'd under their Prince *Batu*, who ravag'd for two Years together *Hungary*, *Slavonia*, *Bosnia*, *Rascia*, *Bulgaria*, and the Countries on both Sides the *Danube*, and also wast'd great Part of *Russia*, they invaded the Pla-

ces belonging to the *Genoese*; and tho' not able to expel 'em, yet they oblig'd them at length to pay Tribute. Some are of Opinion, that the *Tartars* suffer'd the *Genoese* to continue in that Country, because of the Gain they made by their Traffick, principally of Slaves, which the *Genoese* furnish'd to a great part of the World, but especially to *Egypt*, who generally had all their *Mamelukes*, as long as that Government lasted, from *Cassia*; or rather, the *Tartars* having no Skill in besieging Towns, especially such as might constantly be relieved, could not totally drive them out. Those Plantations were very convenient for the *Genoese*; for they had a great Colony at *Pera* near *Constantinople*, by which they enjoyed the whole Trade of the *Black Sea*. At this Time the *Tartars* were Masters of the other Coasts of that Sea, of the *Palus Meotis*, and of many Places in the *Peninsula* and Continent, together with those where the *Nagaian Tartars* now live. But when the Emperor of the *Turks*, *Mahomet II.* had taken *Constantinople* in 1452 by Storm, he applied his utmost Force to drive the *Genoese* from his Neighbourhood; which by degrees he effected, and took *Cassia*, their principal Town, in 1475, after a Siege of 14 Years, when some say the Garison was brib'd to betray the City. 'Tis now the Residence of a *Beglerbeg*.

The *Tartars* of this Country acknowledged the Superiority of the Great Cham till 1400, that *Lochlan Chan*, one of the Descendants of *Batu*, refus'd Obedience, and took upon himself the absolute Dominion over all those Parts, except some few Places in *Taurica*, which still remain'd in the Power of the *Genoese*. But in 1584, their Independency was taken from them by *Amurath III.* who order'd their Prince's Throat to be cut, and set up *Iffan*, the Brother of *Mahomet*, their last Prince, under such Conditions and Marks of Slavery as the Grand Seignior pleas'd. The *Tartars* then were possess'd of all the Country of *Budziack*, which lies between the *Nieper* and *Borysthenes*; but the *Turk* seiz'd upon that; so that their Dominions reach only from the *Borysthenes* or *Nieper* to the *Dona* or *Tanaïs*, of which the *Peninsula* is the chief Part. This Conduct of *Amurath III.* was contrary to a League betwixt *Selim I.* and the *Crim-Tartar*, who married the Daughter of the

Grand Seignior, and assisted him with an Army of 150000 Men against his Father; by which League it was provided, That the *Tartars* should assist the *Turk*, when required, with 50000 Horse, headed by the Cham's Son, or some principal Officer; but when the Grand Seignior went to War in Person, the Cham was oblig'd to attend him with 100000 Horse. The *Turk* sometimes keeps the young Princes as Hostages for Performance of the Conditions: One of which is, not to make War, except against the *Muscovites*, without Consent of the *Turk*; and that they should pay him Yearly a Tribute of 300 Christians, some Furs, Butter, and such other Things; for which the *Turk* is to pay them 5500 Ducats: And the Cham is to succeed to the *Turkish* Empire, if the Males of the *Ottoman* Line fail. In 1663, the *Tartars*, being call'd to the Assistance of the *Turks*, made Incursions into *Hungary*, *Moravia*, and *Silesia*, sack'd and burn'd Cities and Towns, and carried off in one Year 160000 Captives, that they sold to the *Turks*, who trade with them for this Merchandize; as *Sir Paul Ricaut* informs us.

Of the MANNERS of the Tartars.

THIS Country is very populous, by reason of their Polygamy; so that they talk of a *Tartar* who had 40 Children born in one Year by his Wives. They endure Thirst, Hunger, and Toil, with great Patience, and feed upon raw Flesh and Mare's-Milk. A Horse's-Head is a choice Dish with them: They prepare their Horse-Flesh thus; They cut it out in thin Pieces, lay it upon their Horses-Back, ride on it all Day, and at Night eat it. They think the Heat of their Thighs, and the Sweat of the Horse, gives it a pleasant Taste. This is all their Cookery. They eat Garlick in abundance, which they say helps 'em to digest their raw Mear. They reckon it unworthy of a Man to till the Ground; and have no fix'd Habitations, but with their Flocks and Families wander from Place to Place over the large Countries betwixt the *Dona* and the *Nieper*. They think it the greatest Curse they can give their Enemies and Children, when angry with them, to wish,

wish, *That they may live as long in one Place as the Christians do.* They use no Finery in Apparel, but are great Slovens. Most of them are Atheists, and place their Happiness in the Pleasures of Sense; but some of them are *Mahometans*; yet *Jews, Armenians*, and other Christians, dwell in *Cassa*, &c. and are allow'd the Freedom of Worship. The Natives have no Table-Cloths: They fast long, and when they get Meat, eat so much, that they sleep for two Days. During this Surfeit, the *Poles* frequently surprize and kill them. Their Drink is Water, Milk, and Ale of Millet. They are mighty Lovers of sour Milk, think it a great Cordial, a help to Digestion, and use it also as a Purge. They feed likewise upon Herbs that grow on the Banks of the *Dunn*, but chiefly on one call'd *Paltraca*, which they say is nourishing, and makes them sprightly. If they have enough of this Herb, they are not afraid to go thro' the most wild and desolate Places of *Tartary*. They are, generally speaking, of an ordinary Stature, well set, have short Necks, broad Faces, large Foreheads, Eyes black and hollow, but very lively, with other Features peculiar to themselves, by which they may be distinguish'd from other Nations. They have long Beards, but shave all other Places of their Bodies. They have no Notion of Justice and Equity, but take any thing they want, without any Scruple, wherever they find it: Yet they keep their Promise to their Enemies; so that the *Poles* often let the *Tartarian* Prisoners go upon their Parole of Honour, to endeavour the Recovery of their Liberty by Exchange of Prisoners, which if they cannot obtain, they never fail to return by the Day prefix'd. When any of them are summon'd before a Judge, and convicted of Theft or Robbery, they do not deny the Fact, but insist upon this as an Excuse, That they needed those Things; upon which the Judge gives Sentence, by telling the Plaintiff, That if he wants any thing, he may also furnish himself from his Neighbour's Goods. They sell *Polish* Virgins, whom they take Captives, at great Prices to the *Persians* and *Indians* for their Seraglio's, after the *Cham* has had his Share of them. If Murderers be apprehended, their Punishment is to take from them their Clothes, Arms, and Horses, and then absolve them,

and sometimes allow them a Horse and a Bow; and the Judge discharges them, with an Advice to go and mind their Affairs. They know no such thing as Boundaries and Limits of Lands, but live where they can. It is reported by most Authors, That for some Days after their Birth, they don't open their Eyes. Their Mothers and Nurses wash them every Day in salt Water, to harden and thicken their Skins against Cold, which is absolutely necessary; for from 7 Years old, that they leave their Huts of Osiers or Reeds, of about 12 or 15 Foot wide, and cover'd with a coarse Hairy Felt, or Cloth, they never sleep in an House, but in the open Air, tho' it be Frost and Snow; nor do they eat any thing but what they shoot with their Arrows. At 12 or 15 Years of Age, they go with their Fathers to the War. Their Cloathing is a short Shirt, with coarse Drawers, and a Sheep-Skin with the Wool on it over their Shoulders. The Women are distinguish'd from the Men by a Linen-Coif, or a Piece of Cloth round their Heads. The Wives of the *Cham*, and of Persons of Note, wear a Veil over their Faces when in publick, and are cloath'd in Silks, Callicoes, &c. The chief Men have their Horses of *Arabian* Breed, and use *Turkish* Saddles. They allow no Change in the Fashion of their Clothes, and punish Adultery with Death.

Of their SOIL.

THE Country is plain, and the Air unhealthy, because they don't cultivate the Ground. Tempestuous Winds rage frequently here. The *Chersonesus* is the most fruitful and best improv'd of all the Dominions of the *Crim-Tartars*. They say, the Country is naturally fertile, yields 100 Measures of Millet for one, and 50 for one of other Grain. Their Horses are little, ill shap'd, have ugly low Necks, but are strong, and endure Cold and Hunger without much Prejudice. They are very swift, and ride sometimes 20 or 30 Leagues without baiting. Their Food oftentimes is nothing but Leaves, Branches and Bark of Trees; and sometimes they dig up the Roots of Grass with their Hoofs, which altogether, makes them preferable to any other Horses in the World. The *Tartars* are most terri-

ble, and do most Execution, when mounted on their own Horses. Their Oxen are large, and grow very fat, upon the good Pastures on the Banks of the *Borysthenes*.

Their MILITARY AFFAIRS.

THeir Arms are Bows, Arrows, and Darts, in the use of which their Women are expert. The *Tartars* Way of fighting is to dissemble a Flight, and then throw their Darts behind them with great Dexterity. When they are at the Point of Death, they will fight with their Teeth and Heels, and then are most revengeful. Their Saddles and Stirrups are of Wood, and they breed their Horses to swim Rivers. When their Enemies chase, and are ready to catch 'em, they throw away their Saddles, Clothes, and every thing else but their Arms, that they may ride off with the greater speed. They frequently retire on purpose to make their Enemies break their Ranks, and then they rally, and attack them with great Fury. When they fight in a plain Country, they don't draw up their Forces as other Nations; but when within Arrow-shot, they endeavour to surround the Enemy, that they may have the greater Opportunity of throwing their Darts and Arrows upon them from all Sides. Their Method of advancing and retiring is very surprizing: They carefully follow their Leaders; but if they be shot, or mistake, their whole Army is disorder'd, and can never rally again. They cannot fight in narrow Passes, because they have no Arms of Defence. They use short Stirrups, and are such excellent Horsemen, that if any thing fall to the Ground, they can take it up again, tho' their Horse run at full speed. They can avoid the Enemy's Spears, by throwing themselves to the other Side of the Horse, where they hang by one Hand and one Foot; and when the Danger is over, speedily mount again. When they make Inroads into the neighbouring Provinces, each Man provides himself with two or three Horses, that when one is wearied, he may have another at hand. They don't use Spurs, but have fine Whips, so well twisted, that ours

are much short of 'em. Their Saddles serve 'em at Night for Pillows, and they tie their Horses to their Legs. If the Cham go in Person upon an Expedition, he seldom has fewer than 80, and sometimes more than 100000, under his Command; but if a Mirza be General, he has never more than 50000. They chuse to march in the Winter, when the Rivers are frozen, and as much as they can take unfrequented Ways, to shun the Scouts of the *Cossacks*, and have a Compass to direct them through those Deserts. An Army of 80000 has commonly 200000 Horses. They return always by another Way than they came. The Wings of their Army divide themselves into small Troops, ravage and burn the Country all round for 10 or 12 Leagues, and kill all that resist. Such as yield, they bind, and carry away Prisoners, with all their Cattle, except Swine, which they burn as unclean Creatures. As soon as those Wings have done with their Ravage, they return to the Body of the Army, and others are sent out in their turn. To prevent the Consequences of such Invasions, their Neighbours have always their Houses fortified, or Places of Strength and thick Woods, to which they retire. The *Cossacks* fill their Grounds full of Trenches and Hedges, to hinder their March, and keep very diligent Watches every where. If they cannot overtake them, they repair to the Passages of the *Nieper*, where they lie in Ambush, and frequently recover much of the Prey. When the *Tartars* return to their own Country, they divide the Plunder, and first consider those who have lost their Horses in the Service: In the next place they give a Share to the Kindred of the Slain; then the Cham has his; after him the Officers; and the rest is divided among the Soldiers. If any of the Captives be old, they give them to their Boys, that they may learn to shoot, throw Darts, and kill them, which is charming Sport to their Youth. They carry their Household-Furniture over Rivers, by tying Branches of Trees twisted together to the Tails of Horses, upon which they lay their Goods, and ferry them over; but if the River be broad, they kill their worst Horses, and make Boats of their Hides.

Of the REVENUES of the Cham.

HE has no certain and fix'd Revenue; but his Funds are, 1. The Tenth of all Captives; for every Captive of Distinction, 3 Sequins, and a Dollar for every one else. 2. One half of the Tribute of the *Taurica-Chersonesus*, the Grand Seignior having the other. 3. The Grand Seignior pays him every Day 25 Dollars, to the Sultan *Galgas* 12 $\frac{1}{2}$, and to the Sultan *Hostage* 12 $\frac{1}{2}$, besides Lands; and all the great *Tartars* have Salaries from him, but uncertain. 4. Donatives sent him Yearly by neighbouring Princes. The *Muscovites* and *Poles* having given Money to the Cham, to prevent his Invasions, they afterwards claim'd it as a Tribute. The Prince of *Moldavia* presents him Yearly with 20 Cart-load of Honey, each Cart drawn by 4 Oxen. 5. For every Well in the Country, he has a Horse. 6. The richer and better sort of *Tartars* furnish him with Provisions, and in case of Necessity, all the Nation contribute towards it. 7. He has vast Flocks and Herds kept by his Factors. 8. He coins Copper Money, which is only current in his own Dominions, and once in 4 or 5 Years he calls it all in, and coins a new sort. The Forces of the Cham are reckon'd to amount in all to 300000 Horse. He has no Foot, but a few Janizaries he borrows from the Turk for the Guard of his Person when he goes to War. He has also a green or purple Standard sent him from the Port; and the Grand Seignior obliges such *Tartars* as are his Tributaries to join the Cham with some Auxiliaries, when he designs any Invasion upon Christians. The *Beglerbeg* of *Cassa* manages the *Turkish* Affairs in these Parts.

Of the Division of Lesser Tartary.

IT is divided, 1. Into *Gazaria*, or *Preecopia*, belonging to the *Turks*: The chief Towns are *Cassa*, *Sogdat*, and *Sarigermen*. This Country is call'd the *Peninsula*, or *Chersonesus*.

The *Preecopia*, or *Cumania*, belonging to the *Tartars*: The chief Towns are *Preecopz*, *Crim*, and *Buccasar*. All these Places are in the *Peninsula*.

2. Into *Crim-Tartary*, properly so call'd: The chief Towns are *Okzakow* and *Asoph*.

Of the CHERSONESUS.

THE *Chersonesus* is 140 German Leagues in Compass, 180 English Miles long, 120 where broadest, and one Mile over where narrowest. This is the fruitfulest Country that belongs to the Cham. Towards the S. it is Mountainous, and well Water'd: The rest is Champaign, and ill Water'd, so that they are oblig'd to dig deep Wells. The principal Cities are, 1. *Cassa*, anciently call'd *Theodosia*. *Pliny*, *Strabo*, *Ptolemy*, and *Ammianus*, mention it. *Appian*, and *Stephanus Byzantinus*, call it *Theodosia*: 'Tis in Lat. 44 $\frac{3}{4}$, Long. 55 $\frac{1}{4}$. a great City, a noble Mart, with a large and safe Port, and lies 380 Miles N.E. from *Constantinople*. Here are many *Armenian* and *Greek* Christians; all of them, when above 15 Years of Age, pay a Tribute of a Piaster and 2 half to the Grand Seignior, as Lord of the City, tho' the Cham's Jurisdiction reaches to the very Walls of it. Sir *John Chardin* gives this Account of *Cassa*: 'Tis a great City, built at the bottom of a little Hill, upon the Sea-Shore, and encompass'd with strong Walls, that advance a little into the Sea: It has two Castles, one of them the Residence of the *Basha*, and about 4000 Houses, 3200 of which belong to *Turks* and *Tartars*, the rest to Christians. The Houses, Bazars, Mosques, and Baths, are small, and built of Earth. The Soil about it is dry and sandy, the Water bad; but the Air pure and wholesome. Provisions are very cheap; good Mutton not above a Farthing a Pound, and other Things in proportion. The Harbour is safe, where Ships lie close to the Shore, in 10 or 12 Fathom Water. They have a great Trade in Fish and *Caviar* taken in the Lake *Meotis*, 26 Miles distant from it, and transported into *Europe* and the *Indies*. They likewise export Corn, Butter, and Salt, to *Constantinople*, and other Places. Their Butter is the best in *Turky*. 2. *Ingermen*, on the S.W. where there's now only a Castle, possess'd by the *Turks*. It has been a great Town, as appears by its Ruines; among which are many Caves cut out of the Rocks, with Wells, and old Greek Buildings.

dings, as appears by the Inscriptions. 3. *Sa-rigermen*, anciently call'd *Corfuna*, and then the noblest and most populous City of all the Peninsula, but now desolate: 'Tis still compass'd with a Stone Wall; and several Aqueducts, with other noble Buildings, remain intire: It lies W. from *Cassa* 120 Miles. 4. *Volodimer*: The Czar took this Town from *Joannes Zimisces*, and, with other rich Plunder, carried off two large Brazen Gates to *Kiow*; from whence *Boleslaus II.* King of *Poland*, transported them to *Gnesna*, where they still remain.

Of the Places belonging to Crim-Tartary in Taurica-Chersonesus.

1. *Precopz*, anciently call'd *Taphra*, or *Taphre*. The *Tartars* call it *Or*, and the *Polanders*, *Precop*, which signifies a Ditch: It was taken by the Emperor *Trajan's* Army. 'Tis the chief City of the Country, and gives it the Name of *Precopian Tartary*. It has the Gulph of *Nigropoli* on the W. and the Lake of *Bugey* on the E. This City lies 90 Miles N. W. from *Cassa*, 120 W. from the *Bosphorus-Cimmerius*, 380 S. W. from the Mouth of the River *Donn*, and is situate in the *Isthmus*, near the Ditch, built by the *Tartars* to defend the *Chersonesus*: It is not well fortified, but has a strong Castle, the Residence of the Governor, who commands the Guards upon the *Donn* and *Nieper*; examines all Strangers, and suffers none to pass without the Cham's Letters. 2. *Sackingerai*, where the Great Cham overthrew the *Nagay-Tartars*, and rais'd 17 Forts upon the Dyke, some of them of the Skulls and Bones of the Slain. 3. *Sackingeri*, on the *Black Sea*: It has 2000 Houses, and a good Trade. 4. *Balacra*, call'd *Jemboli* by the *Genoese*, now possess'd by the *Turks*, who build their Gallies here. 5. *Mongut*, an inland Town, once a great City, but now in Ruines: It is inhabited by *Turks* and *Greeks*. 6. *Pontico*, anciently call'd *Panticapeum*, and formerly the chief City of this Country, on the Mouth of the Straights of *Cassa*. 7. *Kersa*, S. E. from *Precop*, on the Straights, and has above 1000 Houses. 8. *Arbetok*, on the S. of the *Palus Meotis*, 60 Miles S. E.

from *Precop*: It has two Castles, and the Cham keeps 70000 Strads here. Other Towns belonging to the *Chersonesus* are, *Kossos*, S. W. from *Precop*, on the *Black Sea*; *Bolushaf*, S. E. from *Kossos*; *Belbeg*, S. from *Bolushaf*, and S. W. from *Cassa*; *Keraber*, E. from *Bolushaf*: But we forbear the Description of them, because they have nothing remarkable. 9. *Grim*, 25 Miles from *Cassa*, formerly a large City, but now almost reduc'd to a Village: It gives the Name of *Crim-Tartary* to the Country. The Cham has his Mint and Seraglio here. 10. *Bacca-Saray*, or *Baccasar*, alias *Bostan-Serail*, the Residence of the Cham: It has about 4000 Houses, and a Mosch, with a magnificent Palace, and divers stately Sepulchres of the Chams. This City lies in a Country proper for Hunting and Fowling, in which the *Tartars* are very skilful. It is adorn'd with Baths, Gardens, Orchards, &c. stands 55 Miles N. W. of *Cassa*, and about 50 S. from *Precop*.

Of CRIM-TARTARY, properly so call'd.

IT lies N. from *Precop*, and has but few Towns: The Soil is fertile, and had formerly many Colonies of *Greeks*, most of 'em being now demolish'd. The Town of *Nigropoli* is near the Sea, and gives Name to the Gulph. *Oczakow*, was once a Town of *Podolia*, and taken from the *Lithuanians* by the *Tartars*. It is sometimes the Seat of the Cham, and lies near the Mouth of the *Nieper*, on the *Sinus-Carcinatus*. The Inhabitants are *Tartars*; but it is garison'd with *Turks*, and lies in Lat. 46. Long. 51½. Betwixt the *Nieper* and *Niesler* live the *Tartars* of *Oczakow*, otherwise call'd the *Tartars* of *Budziack*. The *Niesler* parts them from *Bes-Sarabra* on the S. They are subject to the Turk; and to secure their Dependance, the Grand Seignior has built Towns on the Sea-Coasts, and along the Rivers. They are said to be a Nation of Banditi and Libertines, who regard neither God nor Man. They go to their Rendezvous in small Parties. All Authors take Notice of an Advantage they have over other Nations, viz. That they can see further and better; info-

much

much that a *Tartar* will discern a single *Russ* further than a *Russian* can discern a whole Troop of *Tartars*. Sometimes the *Cossacks* pursue them in their own Country, and when they do so, march always in their Tabor; that is, in the middle of their Chariots, and send out Centinels on every Side at a good distance. If they first spy the *Tartars*, they leave their Tabor, and fall upon them, and commonly have the Advantage; but if the *Tartars* first see the *Cossacks*, they assault them in their Tabor with their Arrows, which, tho' they reach further than the *Cossacks* Guns, yet their Tabor is so good a Defence, that 50 *Cossacks* will not flee from 500 *Tartars*.

Of the RIVERS of Lesser Tartary.

1. **TANAI**, so called by the Ancients, as *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and *Pomponius Mela*, was the old Boundary betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*. 'Tis now called *Donn*, by those of the Neighbourhood. The *Italians* call it *La Tana*. Its Source is in the Province of *Rhesan* in *Muscovy*, in Lat. $54\frac{1}{2}$, Long. 58. 110 Miles from *Moscow*, and rises from the Lake *Ivanouva* *Leziora*, which is 500 *Russian* Versts broad. The Ancients believed this River had its Fountain in the *Riphean* Mountains. It runs first Eastward. Some Maps place the most Easterly Winding of that River in Lat 53; but Mr. *Moll* places it in 48: then it turns S. W. runs through the Country of the *Præcopian Tartars*, and falls into the *Palus Mæotis*, according to Mr. *Moll*, in Lat. 46; but according to others, in 50. Near the Mouth of this River, is the City of *Asoph*, as the *Germans* call it. *Ptolomy*, and *Stephen of Byzantium* name it *Tanais*; the Natives *Azack*; and the *Italians*, *La Tana*. The River *Donn* divides it: It is situated at the Foot of a Hill; is of a square Figure, and has a Castle of great Strength. It is 300 Miles N. E. from the Streights of *Cassa*. It was formerly taken by the *Muscovites*, and retaken by the *Turks*. But the present Czar designing to make War upon the *Crim-Tartars*, and proposing no less than the Conquest of their Capital City *Præcop*, he resolved first on the Siege of *Asoph*; which being situated upon the Mouth of the River *Donn*, is an Inlet to *Lesser Tartary*. 'Tis strange that the *Turks*, who are so much bent on Conquests, were

so careless of such a considerable Place as *Asoph*, and did not improve the Opportunity they had of joining the Rivers of *Donn* and *Volga* together by means of a Canal, which was very practicable, because there are two Rivers there of less Note; one call'd *Ilaffa*, which falls into the *Donn* from the N. E. the other, call'd *Camisfinca*, falls into the *Volga* from the N. W. Those two Rivers are not above 5 *English* Miles asunder, which is not taken notice of by ordinary Maps; but they mention the Canal of *Camons*, which has no Being. The Ground betwixt these two Rivers is easie to be dug; and by this Canal, they might have open'd their Way into the Heart of *Muscovy*: and by the *Volga*, into *Persia*. The *Turkish* Garrison consisted of 10000 Men; the Czar's Army was 100000 Foot, and 20000 Horse; but being destitute of Shipping, the *Turks* got in Supplies whenever they pleas'd, and the approaching Winter oblig'd the *Muscovites* to raise the Siege: But the Czar being eager to repair that Disgrace, made greater Preparations of Artillery and Bombs than formerly, and also of large Gallies, some of them 100 Foot, which in a Sea-Fight took or sunk the *Turkish* Saigues, laden with Supplies and Provisions. The Czar himself boarded the *Turkish* Admiral, and gave 50000 Ducats, found in the Enemy's Ships, to his Men. Upon this Naval Victory, the Garrison capitulated: The Czar, after taking this City, order'd it to be repair'd, and fortify'd more regularly; then he commanded,

1. The building of 80 Gallies, and 150 Brigantines.
2. The making a good Harbour on that Side.
3. The Conjunction of the two Rivers *Volga* and *Donn*, and immediately 20000 Men were employ'd in that Work. A new Draught of that artificial Channel, and the Dams and Locks, &c. in order to a Passage of Ships through the Rivers of *Ilaffa* and *Camisfinca*, and to the *Volga*, as also to the *Donn*, for a Communication betwixt the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Seas, is drawn by Mr. *Moll*.
2. The *Borysthenes* of *Ptolomy*, which the Natives call *Nieper*, the common Boundary of *Lithuania* and *Muscovy*, rises in *Muscovy*, in the Dutchy of *Bielka*, near the Village of *Dniepersko*, in Lat. $56\frac{1}{2}$, Long. 55. 10 Leagues from the Lake of *Fronovo*; from whence, continuing its Course to the S. near *Wiesna*, it runs Eastward.

ward, and passes by the Cities *Progonus*, *Smolensko*, *Orska*, *Du*, *Crowna*, and *Mobilow*: From thence it runs S. and passes by *Kiow*, near the *Circassian Tartars*, and from thence towards *Oczakow*, a City of the *Precopian Tartars*, and disembogues into the *Euxine Sea*, 50 Miles from the Mouth of the *Niester*, and 100 N. from the Mouth of the *Ister* or *Danube*. Seventy five Miles above the Mouth of the *Niester*, there are 13 Cataracts, which hinder the Navigation of this River; the Fountain of which was unknown to *Herodotus*. 3. The *Niester*, call'd the *Tyras*, by *Protony*, *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, and *Pliny*. The Spring of this River is in *Red Russia* in *Poland*, from a small Lake 9 Miles E. from *Preflow*, and 4 from *Leopold*; then it runs E. and separates *Podolia* and the *Palatinate of Bracław* from *Moldavia*, and falls into the *Euxine Sea* 6 Miles N. from the Mouth of the River *Danube*. *Ovid* makes mention of this River in *Lib. 4. de Ponto*.

Of the COSSACKS.

SOME say, the Word *Cossack* is *Russian*, and signifies *Free-booter*, or *Banditi*. Others derive it from *Cosa*, signifying a *Goat*, because of their *Nimbleness*. Some say, That *Cosa*, in the *Slavonian Language*, signifies a *Syth*, their ordinary Weapon. They are thought to have come first from the Islands of the *Borysthenes*, near the Mouth of that River, and were called *Zaporienfes*, from the *Porowis*, or Cataracts and Rocks in the *Niester*. The *Turks* call them *Russians*: They dwell in a Part of *Red-Russia* in *Poland*, and in *Bessarabia*, betwixt the Rivers *Borysthenes* and the *Niester*. They are terrible to the *Turks*, because of their Invasions by way of the *Black Sea*. In 1548, in the Time of *Sigismund I.* King of *Poland*, these *Cossacks* were only *Voluntiers* of the Frontiers of *Russia*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and the other Provinces of *Poland*, who assembled together, partly to defend themselves from the *Tartars*, by fighting them at the Passes of the *Niester*, as they returned with their Prey, and partly to rob upon the *Black Sea*, where, getting rich Booty, they drew more into their Association. Sometimes they made Descents upon *Natolia*, and plundered the great Towns, as *Trebisond* and *Sinope*. At other

Times they advanc'd within two Miles of *Constantinople*, and brought off Booty and Prisoners. At first they were about 6000, under *Eustachius Deskevicius*, their General; but their Numbers were quickly increas'd by their Neighbours, because of the Gain they made by their Pyracies, part of which they laid in their *Schorbinza Woskoma*, or Magazine, and the rest they brought home to their Houses. About the end of the Season, these Adventurers separate, and agree upon the Time and Place of Rendezvous next Spring in the Isles and Rocks of the *Niester*, whence they return to their Piracy. *Stephen Battori*, King of *Poland*, who began his Reign in 1576, considering the Service that might be made of those Thieves, for guarding the Country and Frontiers against the Inroads of the *Tartars*, formed them into a regular Body, and they serv'd him as Foot-Soldiers; for the *Polish Army* consists of Horse for most part. He gave them the Town and Territories of *Trehimorow*, about 80 Miles in length, in the *Palatinate of Kiow*, upon the *Borysthenes*; which Town they made their Magazine, and the Residence of their Governor-General, whom they nam'd, and gave him Power to chuse Subalterns. *Stephen Battori* also join'd 20000 Horse to this *Cossack Infantry*, to whose Maintenance he assigned the 4th Part of his Royal Revenues; whence they are call'd *Quartani*. These Forces did so secure the Frontiers, that the Country beyond *Bracław*, *Bar*, and *Kiow*, betwixt the *Niester* and *Nieper* was re-peopled, the Towns rebuilt, and Colonies planted there from the neighbouring Places. The *Cossacks* being thus brought into good Discipline, did frequently considerable Service to the Crown of *Poland*; but have since done the Republick much Mischief by their frequent Rebellions; for the *Cossacks* knowing their own Strength, and of what Importance they were to the *Poles*, began to set up for themselves, and would not obey the Orders of their Superiors, nor acknowledge the Power of the *Poles* over them. Their first Rebellion was in 1587, under their General *John Podkowa*, who was taken, and his Head struck off in 1596. *Sigismund III.* upon the Complaints and Threats of the Grand Seigneur, forbade them to pillage any more upon the *Black Sea*. They obey'd his Orders for a while; but then turn'd their Force against

ganst *Russia* and *Lithuania*, under the Command of their General *Nalewaiko*; and having had some Advantages over the *Polish* Army, commanded by General *Zolskiewski*, they looked upon themselves as invincible; yet that able Warriour found Means to block them up so close, that he forced them to deliver him their General, who was beheaded.

In 1637, the Ground of a new War with the *Cossacks*, was laid thus: The Numbers of the *Cossacks* being greatly increas'd, by the Multitude of Boors who frequently ran over to them, to share their Privileges, some great Men in *Poland*, who had got Estates in the Places appointed for the Quarters of the *Cossacks*, were of Opinion that their Revenues would be considerably increased, if the Liberties of the *Cossacks* were abridg'd. Whereupon they advis'd the King to restrain 'em, and began to use the same Severity to the *Cossacks*, as to the *Polish* Boors, who are obliged to work 3 Days in a Week with Man and Horse for their Lords, and to pay so much Corn, Poultry, &c. to carry home their Master's Wood, to pay him so much Money, and the Tenth of their Possessions. The *Polish* Lords being absolute at home, and not punished for killing their Slaves, they represented, That the *Cossacks* deprived them of all the Advantages they could expect from their Lands in the *Ukrain*; for when the Boors were disoblig'd, they went over to them. Therefore they resolv'd to build a Fort at *Kudac*, a Place near their *Perongki*, at a Point where the River *Zwamer* falls into the *Dni-per*, or *Borysthenes*, and therefore very convenient to bridle the *Cossacks*; who understanding the Design, cut in Pieces 200 Men that guarded the Builders; but being attacked by the *Polish* General *Potoski*, and divided among themselves, they were routed at *Korsun*, and forc'd to deliver up their General, and four more of their Chief Officers, who were put to Death at *Warsaw*, tho' *Potoski* had promis'd them their Lives. After this, all their former Privileges were taken from them, with their Fortrefs *Tschitino-avia*, and in their stead a new Body of Militia was settled there. This more and more enraged the *Cossacks*, who again tried their Fortune with *Potoski*; but were worsted, tho' they fought

with great Bravery; then they fortified themselves upon the River *Staveza*, beyond the *Borysthenes*. After this, the *Poles* having lost so many Men by endeavouring to suppress them, they were forc'd to promise, That thier Ancient Privileges should be restor'd. and that their Militia of 6000 should be re-establish'd, under a General appointed by the King. The *Cossacks* returning to their Homes, and laying down their Arms upon the Faith of this Treaty, were kill'd or plunder'd by the *Polish* Soldiers, and another Militia set up, excluding the ancient and true *Cossacks*; and, among other oppressive Methods, the *Poles* took from them some of their *Greek* Churches. But the *Tartars* afterwards ruining a great Part of the *Ukrain*, convinc'd the *Poles* of the Necessity of restoring the *Cossacks*. *Uladislaus IV.* making War upon the *Tartars*, was very careful to see it done, and gave them for General, *Pogdan*, (or *Theodore Chmielinski*) and granted him a Privilege to build some Mills; but a *Polish* Gentleman nam'd *Jarinski* burnt them, ravish'd his Wife, and afterwards kill'd both her and her Son. The *Cossacks* were also highly provok'd by their Landlords, who had farm'd out their Lands to the *Jews*, that monopoliz'd all the Trade and Advantage of the Country, and got so much Power, that they would not suffer them to marry or baptize but upon their own Terms. *Theodore* and his *Cossacks* obtaining no Redress or Satisfaction for those Injuries, rais'd an Army of 200000 Men, who burn'd, plunder'd, and ravag'd the Country, and did what Mischief they could to the *Polish* Nobility. Upon which the Senators desired the King to march against them, who answer'd, That they ought not to have burnt down their Mills. King *John Casimir* did also favour them under-hand, and design'd to make use of them for the Conquest of *Crim-Tartary*; at which the *Poles* being dissatisfied, they levied an Army of 50000 Men, whom the *Cossacks* defeated, kill'd 10000 upon the Spot, and took the City of *Kiow*. To revenge this Affront, the *Poles* summon'd the 7th Man throughout the Kingdom, and march'd against the *Cossacks*, without the Consent of the King, and were again defeated by them. But

while *Chmielniski* was celebrating the Nuptials of his Son with the Daughter of the Prince of *Wallachia* at *Kiow*, the *Poles* surpriz'd the *Cossacks*, plunder'd the City, and took the *Grecian* Patriarch Prisoner. The *Cossacks* sent to the King, to know whether this had been done by his Authority? He answer'd, No; and that it was done by the Nobility out of Revenge. Upon this *Chmielniski* call'd in the *Crim-Tartar* with 100000 Horse, against whom the King went in Person, at the Head of the Nobility; and having routed them, tho' they were three to one stronger than the *Poles*, *Chmielniski* gather'd up the Remainders of his scatter'd Army, and continually harass'd the Country, so that the King was oblig'd to make an Agreement with them; but the Nobility were discontented at it, and alledg'd, the King had granted too much to the *Cossacks*. This Peace was made in 1649. *Chmielniski* fearing the *Poles* would not observe that Treaty, made an Alliance with the Grand Seignior and the Prince of *Moldavia*; and at a Diet he propos'd such Terms as shew'd he intended to make himself an absolute Prince, under the Protection of the *Turks*. Thus a new War broke out in 1651, when the *Cossacks* and their Confederates besieg'd *Smolensko*, took it next Year; and having ravag'd *Lithuania*, they took *Wilna*, and some other Cities, where they committed great Barbarities. It was chiefly owing to them that the *Muscovites* got Possession of the Provinces of *Smolenska* and *Seweria*, and the greatest Part of the Palatinate of *Kiowia*, which were confirm'd to them by the Treaty of Peace at *Oliwa* in 1666. What became of *Chmielniski* and his *Cossacks* since, we have little Account; only, that part of them have submitted themselves to the *Muscovites*, who garison many of their Cities in *Siberia*, and other Places that border upon the *Asiatick Tartars*. By an Agreement in 1677, betwixt the Grand Seignior and the King of *Poland*, *Ukrain* and the *Cossacks* were to be under the *Turks*. They have also a Prince of their own, subject to the Grand Seignior; some of them are also under the *Tartars*, and some continue subject to the *Poles*, who on that Account are called the *Loyal Cossacks*.

Their RELIGION.

THE Common Sort are of the *Greek* Church; their Worship is the same with that of the *Russians*: Their Metropolitan resides at *Kiow*, is consecrated by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and subject to him. The Whole of their Religion consists in Fasts and Holidays; but the greater Part of the Gentry are Papists, and a few of them Protestants.

Their MARRIAGES.

THEY differ in this from the *Poles*. 'Tis very common in this Country for Maids to woo the Men: If a young Woman be in Love with a young Man, she is not ashamed to go to his Father's House, and reveal her Passion in the most touching Expressions, and promises all Love and Obedience, if he please to accept of her in Marriage. If she be rejected by the young Man, because he is too young, or not dispos'd to marry, or the like, she tells him, That she is resolved never to go out of the House till he consent, and accordingly takes up her Lodgings there. To force her out, would be to provoke all her Kindred: Nor would the Church suffer them to use any Violence to her, without inflicting heavy Penances, and branding the House with Infamy; so that after two or three Weeks, the Parents, or the young Man himself, being mov'd with the Constancy of the Woman, accommodate Matters as well as they can, and make up the Match.

Of their MANNERS.

THEIR Manners are like those of Soldiers, not solicitous for what's to come, but spend freely what they have among their Companions, and leave Futurity to shift for it self. They are very inconstant, mutinous, and pursue their present Advantage, rather than their Faith or Promise. They are great Drinkers; but by reason of their Labour and Hardships, they have so much Health, that Physicians are of little use among them. They are of a good Stature, strong,

strong, nimble, great Lovers of Liberty, uneasie under any Yoke, and indefatigable. They are much given to Fishing and Hunting. None know better than they the Way of preparing Salt-Petre, and making Gun-Powder. Their Country abounds with Salt-Petre, and several Parts of *Europe* are furnish'd from thence. They have an odd kind of Distemper, particular to themselves; the Country-People call it *Goschett*; and the Physicians, *Plica*. They that are troubled with it, lose the Use of their Limbs, as if they had a Palsie, and feel great Pains in their Nerves, which commonly continues a whole Year: After that they fall into a great Sweat at Night, and next Morning their Hair is glu'd together, and has a nauseous Smell, which remains for ever. From this some think the *Poles* first made use of Powder for their Hair. The Humour falls on their Eyes, and deprives 'em of their Sight, if they cut their Hair. This Distemper is infectious, and, like the Venereal Disease, communicated by Coition. Some Children bring it with them into the World, but it decreases by degrees. The great Numbers of Arsenical Mines in *Poland*, which communicate their poisonous Qualities to the Waters, seems to be the Cause of this Distemper. Their Horses also have it, and have such a Knot in their Manes or Fore-top, of which, if the least Part be cut off, the Horse either dies, runs mad, or becomes blind and lame. Dr. *Cowper* says, That Foreign Physicians have cur'd this Distemper by the same Medicines as are us'd in Venereal Cases.

Of the SOIL.

THIS Country was almost a Desert, till improv'd by the Industry of the *Cossacks*, and other Colonies. The many Rivers add much to its Fruitfulness. They have some Animals peculiar to their Country. 1. A Beast call'd *Bobac*, not unlike a *Guiney Pig*: It makes Holes in the Earth, which it enters in *October*, and comes not abroad till *April*. Within these Holes, there are many little Apartments, for they dispose of their Provisions, Lodgings, and Dead, in separate Places. Eight or Nine Herds of those Beasts live together in such Caves:

They are easily tam'd, and are very diverting. When they go out for Provisions, they set a Centinel, who, as soon as he spies any body, gives a Signal, by making a Noise, and they all run to their Caves. 2. *Sounaky*, a kind of Goat, remarkable for his beautiful Fur, resembling Sattin, and white, shining, smooth, delicate Horns. He has no Horn in his Nose, as some report; but as he feeds, goes backward. They have many Wild-Horses, of no Value but for their Flesh, which they sell in their Markets, and think it better than Beef or Veal. When those Horses come to be old, their Hoofs never being par'd, do so contract their Feet, that they cannot go. In Summer, they are mightily incommoded with Flies and Grasshoppers, in such vast Numbers, that they form a Cloud of 5 or 6 Leagues long, and 3 or 4 broad, darken the Air in the clearest Day, and destroy the Corn they light on in less than two Hours time.

Of their SEA-AFFAIRS.

WHEN they rendezvous upon the Islands of *Sharbniza-Waskowa*, the first thing they do is to chuse their General for that Expedition, and to make their Boats, which they call *Colna*, of about 60 Foot long, 12 Foot deep, and as many wide: They are built very light, one Plank being pinn'd on the Edge of another, and widening upwards. They have a Stern at each End, and about 12 or 15 Oars of a Side. They have no Deck; but to prevent their sinking, tho' full of Water, they encompass them round with a Border of Reeds, as big as a Barrel, ty'd together, and fasten'd to their Boats with Ropes. They have a sorry Mast and Sail, but seldom use them, except in fair Weather. Their Provision is a Tun of Bisket, which they take out of the Bung as they use it; a Barrel of boil'd Miller, and another of Paste, made with Water, which they eat with their Miller. Every Boat carries about 60 Persons, every Man having two Guns, and each Boat five or six Falconets. They set out about the beginning of *June*, and return about the first of *August*. They wait for a dark Night, that they may pass undiscovered by the *Turks Gallies*, which lie at *Oczakow* to intercept them.

them. With these Boats they cruise over the *Black Sea*. If they spy a Galley, they keep at a distance till Night, observe the Course of the Vessel, and when it is dark, come up and board it: They take out all the Cannon, Money, and Merchandize, and sink the Ship, because they have neither Skill nor Opportunity to use it. No sooner have the *Turks* Intelligence that the *Cossacks* are abroad at Sea, but the Alarm is taken immediately, which reaches quickly to *Constantinople*: From thence Couriers are dispatched to the Coasts of *Natolia*, *Romelia*, and *Bulgaria*, to bid them be upon their Guard; but the *Cossacks* are generally too nimble for them, and are 40 Hours upon the Coasts of *Natolia* before them. If a Galley spy them in the Day-time, which is not ordinary, for their Vessels are not above $2\frac{1}{2}$ Foot above Water, they avoid fighting, by rowing away from her, or retiring to Shallows, and among Reeds, where the Gallies cannot follow them. This was their Way of living, till the Grand Seignior oblig'd *Sigismund* King of *Poland* to prohibit those Pyracies, as was said before. 'Twas bad Policy in the *Poles* to suffer them to chuse their own General; for their General being their own Creature, is forc'd to comply with their Methods. They handle their Guns very dextrously, and have Sythes set long-ways upon Poles, with which they fight very fiercely and skillfully.

Their Manner of Fighting by Land.

They are very indifferent Horsemen, but excellent Soldiers on Foot. They are inur'd to all manner of Fatigues and Hardships, obedient to their Commanders, active and dexterous in intrenching themselves, not only in the ordinary Way, but also by making a Fence of their Baggage-Waggons as they march. These moving Intrenchments are absolutely necessary for them when they march without Horse in open Plains, and the Desarts of the *Tartars*, against whom they are forced to stand wherever they meet them. There have been several Instances, that 1000 *Cossack* Foot marching betwixt their Chariots and Waggon, have in a Plain repuls'd 5 or 6000

Tartars on Horseback. Their Horses, tho' swift, are but weak, and stopp'd by the least Barricado. This Way of marching in the midst of their Baggage and Ammunition-Waggons would scarcely be practicable in any other Country but *Poland* and the Desarts of *Tartary*, which lie all upon a Level.

Of the Country of the Cossacks.

THE *Ukrain* signifies a Frontier Country, and lies betwixt 48 and 52 Deg. of N. Latitude; the *Niester* is the Western, and *Nieper* their Eastern Boundary, according to some; but *Baudrand* says, it divides the *Ukrain*; the East-Side belongs to the *Muscovites*; *Razkow*, *Kalnick*, *Broclaw*, *Kimirow*, *Bialocerkiw*, *Pawvolocz*, *Korestefow*, *Mohilow*, and other Places, belong to *Poland*: *Kiow* is the chief Town, and belongs to the *Muscovites*, being taken from the *Poles* in 1653, by the Confederate Army of the *Muscovites* and *Cossacks*. This City gives Name to the Palatinate of *Kiow*, which had Princes of its own, till 'twas reduc'd to a Province by *Casimir* III. who began his Reign in the Year 1333. *Pit's* Atlas says, this City was the Metropolis of the *Russians*; but being ruin'd by War, *Volodomir* translated the Seat of the Empire to *Volodomir*. The Ruins of the Walls shew it to have been 8 Miles in Compass. Here are to be seen still the Ruins of many Arcades, high Walls, Churches, and the Sepulchres of many Kings, with Greek Inscriptions. The Church of *St. Sophia*, whose Walls are lin'd with excellent Mosaick Work, and that of *St. Michael*, remarkable for its gilded Roof, are still in a tollerable Condition. Betwixt this Town and the *Nieper*, lies *New Kiow*, along the Banks of the *Nieper*, which has about 6000 Inhabitants. The Papists have 4 Churches, and the Greeks 10, with a sort of an University. The second Town of Note is *Perejlaw*, on the E. Side of the *Nieper*, upon the River *Trubicz*, which falls into the *Nieper* two Miles below it: It lies 10 German Leagues S. E. from *Kiow*, is a strong Town, and contains 6000 Families. Here the *Cossacks* have a Regiment, and another at *Kaniow*, a little lower on the E. Bank of the *Nieper*. On the same Side is *Cirkasht*, the Center of all their Retreats, which was burnt

burnt by the *Polanders* in 1637. On that same Side lies *Krilew*, and below that *Cremierczow*, the lowest Town upon the River, all the Country below it being desart. Further down the River, there are many Isles, most of them uninhabited, because overflow'd in the Spring, but much frequented by Fishers. Several other Rivers increase the *Nieper* at *Romanow*, but chiefly *Samar*, which supplies the Country not only with Fish, but with other Commodities, as Honey, Wax, Venison, and especially Timber. The *Cossacks* call this River the *Holy River*. In the Spring, they catch Sturgeons and Herrings here. A little below this, the *Poles*, in 1635, built a Fort at *Kudac*, which is the first of the *Porohi*. *Constantinow*, on the River *Slicz*, which runs into the *Nieper* N. from *Kudack*, is a small Town, in Lat. 54. *Braclovia*, lies upon the River *Bog*. *Winnicza*, *Human*, *Gzernikow*, *Lubnie*, *Powolocz*, and *Chwaslow*, are other Towns, but inconsiderable, and not worth insisting upon.

Porowi, or *Porohi*, in the *Russian* Language signifies a Rock: Of these there are 13 Chains, that cross the *Nieper*, and render the Navigation from the *Ukrain* to the *Black Sea* impossible; so that tho' the *Ukrain* be fruitful in Corn, yet the Inhabitants not being able to export it, suffer much of it to lie untill'd. Of these Rocks, some are under Water, some above it, as big as Houses, very near to one another, and stop the Course of the River; so that when it is low, they make Cataracts sometimes of 15 Foot high; but in the Spring, when the melted Snow swells the River, all the Rocks are cover'd with Water, except the 7th, which still hinders the River to be navigable. Near the lowest *Porohi*, the River is not above 150 Paces broad, and is the best Passage for the *Tartars*. Below that lies the Isle *Toma-bouka*, the Place where the *Cossacks* rendezvous: But their chiefest Retreat is below the *Czertomlick*, (about 18 German Leagues from the Mouth of the *Nieper*) upon an Island, surrounded with a vast Number of small ones, some of them dry, and others overflowed in the Spring: Some of them are Morasses, but all of them cover'd over with Reeds and Canes, as big as Pikes, which hide the Passages between the Islands, and make it a Labyrinth, known only to the *Cossacks*, who call it *Starbniza-Woykowo*, or

the Treasure of the Army. Here they lay up their Money and Ordnance. The *Turks* have lost many Gallies among these Islands, which not being able to disentangle themselves, fell into the Hands of the *Cossacks*.

From these *Porohi*, the *Cossacks* are called *Zaporouki*, which is the great Body of the Nation, and none can be listed among that Number, till he has passed in his little Boat all the *Porouki's*, and from thence by the Mouth of the *Nieper* to the *Black Sea*. The River there is three Miles broad, yet both the *Cossacks* and others pass it in this manner; They furnish themselves with Flat-bottom'd Boats, at the Stern of which they fasten cross Poles of a good length, to which they tie the Heads of their Horses, as many on the one Side as on the other, to ballance them; and putting their Baggage in the Boat, they row over, the Horses swimming after them.

The *Ukrain* is a very fertile Country, tho' the third Part of it is scarcely cultivated: It produces such a vast Quantity of Grain of all Sorts, that the Inhabitants are at a loss how to consume it: They cannot export any of it, because their Rivers are not navigable. They abound in Honey, Wax, Wood, Cattle, Fowl, and Fish. *Hungary*, *Transilvania*, *Wallachia*, and *Moldavia*, supplies them with Wine. They also make good Beer and *Aqua Vita* out of their Corn. They have much Mead. The Salt-Pits near *Cracow* furnish them with Salt. They have also some out of the Country of *Pokutia*, on the Borders of *Moldavia* and *Transilvania*, where there are Salt-Springs. Their Houses are of Wood, and their Fortifications of Earth and Wood, which they account better against Cannon than Brick Walls; but they are soon set on fire.

The Rivers of Note here are, the *Borysthenes*, or *Nieper*; the *Bog*, *Tyras*, or *Nieser*, the common Border betwixt them and *Wallachia*; the *Dezna*, the *Ros*, the *Horin*, the *Stucz*, and the *Ster*, near which was fought the last Battle betwixt the *Poles* and *Cossacks* in 1651, which oblig'd the *Cossacks* to seek Protection among the *Muscovites* and *Turks*.

The Language of the *Cossacks* is a Dialect of the *Polish* Tongue, as the *Polish* is of the *Sclavonian*: But that of the *Cossacks* is much more smooth, and full of Diminutives, which makes it very agreeable.

C H A P. XIII. Of P O L A N D.

POLAND was anciently a Part of the *Sarmatia Europea*. The old Inhabitants were the *Carini*, who dwelt in the N. of Poland, on the E. of the *Oder*. The *Burgundiones* lay S. W. from them, according to some; but the Seats of those People are not very certainly describ'd, because the *Romans* went no further that Way than the *Elbe*. *Zozim. Lib. 1. Cap. 67.* says, That the Emperor *Probus* fought with the *Burgundi* and the *Vandali*: But *Valesius* thinks the German and *Sarmatian Burgundi* are different People. The *Lugii* were S. E. from the *Burgundiones*, upon the Banks of the *Vistula*. *Cluverius* joins them with the *Vandali*, and says, that some Places betwixt the *Oder* and *Vistula* have still a Resemblance of those Names. The *Burii* lay S. W. from the *Lugii* on the *Oder*. *Tacitus, Cap. 43.* places them N. E. from the *Marcomanni* and *Quadi*. The *Legiones* were situated E. from the *Burii*, and the *Osi* S. from them, on the *Oder*, near the Head of the *Vistula*. The *Gothini* were near the *Quadi* to the E. and the *Osi* to the N. They seem to be the same whom *Pliny* calls *Guttones*. *Cluver. Germ. Antiq. Cap. 34.* is at much Pains to prove that the *Goths*, who over-ran the Roman Empire, came from this Place: but most incline to follow *Jornandes*, who tells us they came from *Scandinavia*. The *Bastarni* were on the E. Side of the *Vistula*, and had the *Carpathian* Mountains, and the River *Nießer*, anciently call'd *Tyras*, on the S. the *Venedi* on the N. and the *Peucini* on the W. *Cluverius* thinks they possessed the Countries of *Red Russia*, *Podolia*, and *Volhinia*, where lay *Ptolomy's* *Oppida-Bastarnica*, as *Carrodunum*, now *Lemberg*; *Clepidavia*, now *Caminiec*; and *Vibansavarium*, now *Bar*. The *Venedi*, *Jornandes* calls *Winidi*: This Name is preserv'd in their Successors still, call'd *Die Binden*. They

had the *Alauni* on the N. the *Æstiei* on the W. the *Hamaxobii* on the E. and the *Bastarni* and *Peucini* on the S. *Brieti* and *Cluverius* think they inhabited the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* and *Livonia*, where lay Part of the *Hercinian* Forrest; and from this People the *Sinus Venedicus*, now the Gulph of *Dantzick*, had its Name. The *Æstii* were to the N. W. of the *Venedi*, near the *Insula Eleftrides*, so call'd from the Plenty of *Amber*. They inhabited along those Coasts, in Part of *Poland*, *Prussia* and *Samogitia*. *Cluverius* thinks that *Esthonia*, a Part of *Swedish Livonia*, derives its Name from them. The *Peucini* had the *Bastarni* to the E. the *Venedi* to the N. the *Lygii* to the W. and *Dacia* to the S. Their Country, according to *Sanson* and *Orbelius*, is that now call'd *Lesser Poland*.

Poland is by the Natives call'd *Polska*, and as some think from *Pole*, which in the *Sclavonian* Language, commonly spoke here, signifies a *Champaign Country*, as *Poland* is known to be. Others derive that Name from *Polinezæ*, a little Town on the *Vistula*: And some will have it that *Polachi*, or *Polacki*, signifies the Posterity of *Lachus*. 'Tis urg'd in Favour of this Opinion, That they are by themselves call'd *Polacki*; by the *Italians*, *Polacchi*; and by the *Muscovites*, *Greeks*, *Tartars* and *Turks*, *Lachi*. *Cromerus* says, the present Name is not old; for in the Time of *Alfred* King of *England*, about 880, this Country was call'd *Weomodland*, which seems to have been derived from the *Winidi*.

This Nation did formerly inhabit nearer to the Country of the *Tartars*; but after vast Numbers of People from *Germany*, as *Goths*, *Vandals*, &c. enter'd the Roman Provinces, the ancient Inhabitants mov'd further to the W. The *Poles* are undoubtedly the Posterity of the *Slavi*, or *Sclavonians*.

SUECIA

PARS

Copied by
55



50

55



Jornandes tells us, That in Justinian's Time, they were seated on the N. of the Carpathian Mountains, from the Fountain of the Weissel to the Nieper, and thence extending themselves Westward to the Danube, and Eastward to the Euxine Sea; from whence they made Inundations upon the Roman Provinces, being join'd by others of the ancient Inhabitants. Some think this People, after their Conquests, took the Name of *Slavi*, which in their Language signifies *Fame*, or *Glory*; and their Posterity, as *Cromerus* observes, still retain it in their Compound Names, as *Strani-Slavis*, *Wenceslavis*.

The Extent of Poland was not formerly so large, as *Cluverius* informs us: The Length then from *Schwibussen* in *Silesia*, 30 Miles S. E. from *Frankfort* on the *Oder*, to *Leucania* on the Borders of *Russia*, was not above 80 German Leagues; and the greatest Breadth, from the Springs of the *Vistula*, to *Wangrow* in *Masovia*, was 60 Leagues: But since that Time, *Lithuania*, *Black Russia*, *Podolia*, *Volhynia*, *Masovia*, *Samogitia*, and Part of *Livonia*, have been added at different Times to this Kingdom. *Brieti* says, the Length of it, from the most Westerly Place of *Silesia*, to *Smolensko* in *Muscovy*, is 690 English Miles; and the Breadth of it, from the Mouth of the *Nieper*, to the most Northerly Parts of *Livonia*, is 640. The Longitude, according to *Staravolskius*, quoted by *Pie's* Atlas, is from the Marquisate of *Brandenburgh*, in Deg. 38. to the Mouth of the *Borysthenes* or *Nieper*, in Deg. 54. and the Lat. from the Palatinate of *Pocence* in *Red Russia*, in Deg. 48. to the most Northerly Place of *Livonia* subject to this Crown, in 58. According to *Mr. Moll*, the Long. is from 36 to 53 Deg. and the Lat. from 46½, to 56½. *Du Pleffis* says, the Situation is betwixt *Polsna* in *Great Poland*, in Long. 38. to *Kudack*, a Fort upon the *Nieper*, in Long. 60. The Lat. is from the most Southerly Point of the Palatinate of *Red Russia*, in 47, to the most Northerly Place of *Curland*, in 58.

The Boundaries of Poland on the N. are the *Baltick*, the *Swedish* Sea, the *Gulph* of *Finland*, *Swedish* *Livonia*, and a Line drawn from *Pernaw* in *Livonia*, to the Fountains of the River *Dwina*. *Muscovy* is upon the N. E. and E. *Little Tartary* on the S. E. The Limits on the S. are *Bessarabia*, *Moldavia*, from which it is separated by the River *Nieper*;

Transylvania, and Part of *Hungary*, from which it is divided by the *Carpathian* Mountains. On the W. the Marches are *Silesia*, the Marquisate of *Brandenburgh*, and the further *Pomerania*.

Of the HISTORY of Poland.

DU GLOSSIUS says, The Reason why we have no early Accounts of Poland, is, That they had few Governors who left any Fame behind them; but 'tis rather to be charg'd upon the Ignorance and Barbarity of those Times. Historians reckon four remarkable Changes in Poland: The first began in 550, under *Lechus*: His Posterity, call'd *Lechida*, continu'd till 830; then *Piasum*, a private Man, succeeded, and his Line was call'd *Piasii*. Others say, the second Race began in *Cracus*, in 700, who built *Cracom*. The Jagellonian Family began in 1386, in *Uladislaus Jagello*. Their Elective Kings began in the Person of *Henry Valois*, Duke of *Anjou*, in 1574.

Of the LECHIDÆ.

In 550, *Lechus* and his Followers possess'd themselves of this Country, and laid the Foundation of Government: Finding it abandon'd by the old Inhabitants the *Vandals*, or *Venedi*, he took up his Residence at *Gnesen*, where finding an Eagle's Nest, he call'd the Place *Gniazdo*. This he took for a good Omen, and made a Spread-Eagle the Arms of this new Commonwealth. He also built *Polsna*. Their Limits then reach'd no further than the *Greater* and *Lesser* Poland.

Historians are not agreed about the Country of *Lechus*, whether he was a *Croatian* or not, when he began his Reign; nor who were his Successors, and what Actions they perform'd. Their first Governors did not assume the Name of King, but only that of Dukes. After the Race of *Lechus* was extinguish'd; they chose 12 Governors, call'd *Woiewodes*, i. e. Captains of War, who polish'd this rude and barbarous People by good Laws; but at last, falling into Parties, the People were forc'd to chuse a King, who was *Cracus*, a Man of great Interest and Prudence, and well vers'd in the Arts of Government. He restor'd the Republick.

to its former Tranquility, built the City of *Cracow*, so call'd from his own Name, and there kept his Court. *Lecous II.* his second Son, succeeded him, having first murder'd his elder Brother to make Way for himself: Upon the Discovery of which, he was banish'd. His Sister *Wenda*, a Virgin, succeeded, who chose rather to rule alone, than to be the Wife of a King. She defeated one *Ridiger*, a German Prince, who would have oblig'd her to marry him; upon which he kill'd himself; and the Queen, lest any adverse Fate should endanger her Honour and Virginity, leap'd from the Bridge of *Cracow* into the *Weissel*, and drown'd her self. After this, the Government was for some time in the Hands of *sz Vauwodes* or *Palatines*. Then, in 760, the People elected *Premislaus*, or *Lescus I.* a Goldsmith, in Consideration that he routed, by a Stratagem, the *Hungarians* and *Moravians*, who invaded their Country. He died without Issue. The People, to determine who should succeed, appointed a Horse-Race, and declar'd, he that won it should be King: Upon this one of the Candidates strow'd Iron Hooks in the Ground, which he knew, and therefore avoided; but the other Horses were lam'd, and he came first to the Mark: But the Fraud being discovered, he was kill'd on the Spot; and a poor Fellow call'd *Lescus*, who had run the Race on Foot, being next to the Impostor, the People saluted him Prince in 776. He always kept his sorry Clothes, to put him in mind of the Meanness of his Original. This *Lescus II.* was slain in the Wars with *Charles the Great*, and his Son *Lescus III.* in 804, made Peace with him, and acknowledg'd himself his Vassal. He left *Poland* to his lawful Son *Popiel I.* and *Pomerania*, *Mark*, *Cassubia*, and other Places, to his Bastards. *Popiel II.* succeeded his Father *Popiel I.* and, by the Persuasion of his Lady, murder'd his Father's Brethren; after which he with his Wife and Children were eat up by Rats or Mice, which some say came out of the Corps of his Uncles.

In 820, the *Poles* exalted to the Royal Dignity *Piasum*, or *Piasus*, a Wheelwright, Son to *Cossiscow*, a Citizen of *Cruswic*, of noted Hospitality and Charity; and he being the first King of that Name, all Natives that

came to the Crown after him were call'd *Piasii*; and thus began the second Period. Others place this in 843. 'Tis said, that he was 120 Years old before he died: His Posterity reign'd long in *Poland*, and from them descended the Race of the Dukes of *Lignitz* and *Brieg* in *Silesia*, which is but lately extinguish'd. When *George William*, the last of that House, dy'd in 1675 without Issue, the Dukedom fell to the Emperor. His Son *Ziemowicus* succeeded in 895, a Prince of a Martial Spirit. After him reign'd his Son *Lescus IV.* of a peaceable Genius. His Son *Ziemomyslus*, of the same Temper, succeeded him in 921. He had but one Son, who was born blind; but at 7 Years of Age he got his Sight; and being the Time when, according to their Custom, he was to be shav'd and nam'd, 'twas look'd upon as an Omen that he should be enlighten'd with the Christian Faith: His Name was *Mieslaus I.* He began to reign in 962. He had no Children for some time by his many Wives; upon which some *Germans* told him, That if he left Paganism, and turn'd Christian, he would be bless'd with Children: But some say, his Conversion was owing to the Arguments of his Wife *Dambrawca*, the Daughter of *Bogislaus* Duke of *Bohemia*. He first introduc'd the Christian Religion into *Poland*, as also the Custom of drawing out half their Swords when the Gospel is read at Mass, to signify they were ready to fight for the Christian Faith. He founded the Archbishopricks of *Gnesna* and *Cracovia*, and gave the Tythes of the whole Kingdom to the Clergy.

His Son *Boleslaus Chrobry* was, in 999, by the Emperor *Otto III.* created first King of *Poland*, (his Predecessors being only Dukes) in Consideration of his Devotion to the Shrine of *St. Adelbert*, Bishop of *Gnesen*, then famous for Miracles, and at that time visited by the Emperor, to fulfil a Vow made in his Sickness. This first King of *Poland* enlarg'd his Dominions by his Wars against the *Red Russians*, the *Bohemians*, *Saxons*, and *Prussians*. But his Son *Mieslaus*, who began his Reign in 1025, lost all his Father's Conquests: He died in 1034, leaving one Son, call'd *Casmir*, and his Queen *Rixa*, behind him, who, during her Son's Minority, had the Administration of the Govern-

vernment. Her bad Conduct occasion'd Factions and Parties against her; which oblig'd her to leave the Kingdom, with her Son: He travell'd thro' Hungary, Germany, Italy, and France, where he assum'd the Order and Habit of a Monk in the *Benedictine* Convent at *Cluny*; but he was invited from thence by the *Poles*, who, to procure the Pope's Dispensation, promis'd a perpetual Tribute of a Farthing for each Head, except those of the Nobility and Clergy, towards the maintaining of a perpetual Lamp in St. Peter's Church, from thence called *Peter's Pence*; and also to cause their Heads to be shaved above their Ears like Monks. After he came to the Throne, he defeated *Maslaus* and the *Prussians*, and restor'd the Kingdom to its former Tranquility.

His Son *Boleslaus II.* called the *Bold*, began to reign about 1059. At first he made War successfully against the *Prussians*, *Bohemians*, and *Russians*; but having order'd *Stanislaus*, Archbishop of *Cracow*, who exhorted him to amend his vicious Life, to be cut in pieces before the Altar, the See of *Rome* took it so ill, that Pope *Gregory VII.* excommunicated and depos'd him; upon which he murder'd himself. This Bishop *Stanislaus* was canoniz'd by Pope *Gregory VII.* and has since that time been receiv'd as the Patron of *Poland*. *Boleslaus's* Successors were depriv'd of the Title of King, and the Bishops were forbid to anoint any of them. This continued 213 Years, till the Reign of *Premislaus*.

Uladislaus I. in 1082, succeeded him, but durst not take the Title of King, for fear of offending the Pope. He was successful both in his Foreign and Civil Wars. In 1103, *Boleslaus III.* his Son, succeeded, a brave Prince, and good Soldier, famous for 47 Battles, in most of which he was victorious: The greatest was that at *Huntsfield* near *Breslaw*, against the Emperor *Henry V.* In his last Battle against the *Red Russians*, he was defeated, by the Cowardice of the *Weyvode* of *Cracow*; for which, as a Mark of Disgrace, the King sent him a Hare-Skin, and a Spinning-Wheel, which did so vex him, that he hang'd himself; and the King was so much troubled at this Defeat, that he died of Grief.

He left four Sons behind him, one of whom, *Uladislaus II.* in 1139, obtain'd a

great Part of the Kingdom, with the Name of Prince, and the other Brothers shar'd several Provinces among them, according to their Father's last Will. This occasion'd Civil Wars between them and *Uladislaus*, who pretending to dispossess the rest, was himself oblig'd to quit the Country. After him, his Brother *Boleslaus Crispus*, or the *Curl'd*, was in 1146 made Prince of *Poland*: He was engag'd in a War against the Emperors *Conrade III.* and *Frederick I.* who design'd to restore *Uladislaus*: But at last a Peace was concluded, by which *Poland* remain'd to *Boleslaus*; but he was obliged to surrender *Silesia*, that then depended on *Poland*, to *Uladislaus*; which being afterwards divided into a great many Dukedoms, at last fell to the Crown of *Bohemia*, and has never since been in the Possession of the *Poles*. This *Boleslaus* receiv'd a great Overthrow from the *Prussians*, his Army, by the Treachery of a Guide, being misl'd into Morasses and Bogs. His Brother *Miceslaus*, Senior, so call'd for his Prudence, tho' but a young Man, succeeded in 1174; but was depos'd, because he follow'd the Advice of evil Counsellors, and twice, by his Cunning, regain'd the Kingdom. In 1178, his Brother *Casmir* succeeded. This Prince having received a Box on the Ear from one of his Pages, whose Money he had won at Play, pardon'd the Boy, saying, *That the Lad was enrag'd with the Loss of his Money, and that he himself had been justly punish'd for prostituting his Dignity*. He is famous for curbing the *Prussians* by War: He also made a City of *Danzick* in *Prussia*, which before was only a poor Fisher-Town. He died in 1194. His Son *Lescus the White* succeeded in 1195; but was oblig'd to contend with the banish'd *Miceslaus* for the Kingdom, with various Success, till *Miceslaus* died. This *Miceslaus* is noted for saying, *That a King was no longer oblig'd to keep his Oath, than while it was neither safe nor beneficial for him to break it*. *Uladislaus*, *Miceslaus's* Son, gave him some Disturbance for a while; but at last was forc'd to leave him in quiet Possession. In the Reign of this *Lescus*, the *Tartars* made their first Inroads into *Russia*, and have since prov'd very troublesome to *Poland*. *Lescus* was forc'd to make War against *Suentopock*, whom he had made Governor of *Pomerania*, where

where he set up for himself, under the Title of Duke of *Pomerania*, and dismembred it from *Poland*. *Conrade*, the Brother of *Lesius*, possess'd himself of *Masovia* and *Cujavia*; but not being strong enough to make Head against the *Prussians*, who invaded his Country, he invited in the Knights of the *Cross*, and of the *Teutonic Order*, who were driven by the *Saracens* out of *Syria*. To them he surrendred the Country of *Culm*, on Condition, That such Places as by their Assistance were conquer'd in *Prussia*, should be divided betwixt them, which afterwards prov'd an Occasion of great Wars betwixt those Knights and the *Poles*.

In 1226, *Boleslaus the Chast* succeeded his Father *Lesius*. In his Reign, the *Poles* receiv'd so great a Defeat from the *Tartars* in a Battle near *Lignitz*, that they fill'd 9 great Sacks with the Ears of the *Poles* they cut off. His Reign was also disturb'd by Civil Wars. In 1279, succeeded his Cousin *Lesius*, surnam'd the *Black*, who was very fortunate against the *Russians*, *Tartars*, and *Lithuanians*. The *Russians* were headed by *Leo* their Duke: The Place of their Defeat was call'd from him *Leopol*. They invaded *Poland* a second time, with a far greater Number of Men, and an innumerable Company of Mastiff-Dogs, train'd to War. He also rooted out the *Jazygians*, who inhabited *Podolia*. During his Reign, the *Tartars* made another Incursion, and carried away so many Captives, that there were reckoned 21000 Virgins among them. They murth'rd the Men, and poisoning their Hearts, cast them into the Waters, from whence several new Diseases were occasion'd in the Country, and among others (as some say) the *Plica Polonica*.

After the Death of *Lesius*, there were great Contests in *Poland* concerning the Succession, till at last *Premislaus*, Lord of Great *Poland*, carried it in 1295. He re-assum'd the Title of King, after it had been disus'd for 213 Years, and was Crown'd by the Archbishop of *Gnesen*. One Reason why his Predecessors were not ambitious of that Title, was, because the Country was divided among several Princes; but *Premislaus* thought himself powerful enough to re-assume it. He was barbarously murth'rd by Assassins, Servants to the Marquis of *Brandenburgh*. After him succeeded *Ulada-*

slaus Lockius, so call'd from the Shortness of his Stature; *Lokiek* in their Language signifying an Ell. He did not assume the Title of King, but of Heir of *Poland*, and was depose'd for Male-Administration. In 1300, *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia* was elect'd in his stead: He died in 1309, when *Lockius* was restor'd, and had long Wars with the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*, whom at last he vanquish'd in a great Battle. In his Reign, the Dukes of *Silesia*, who were formerly Vassals of *Poland*, submitted to the Crown of *Bohemia*. He died in 1333, and was succeeded by *Casimir III.* surnam'd the Great, the last of the *Piastian* Race: He introduced the Laws of the *Teutonic Order*, call'd *Magdeburg Laws*, and invited the *Germans* to till the Ground, by whose Industry and Example the Villages grew into great Towns; and several wall'd and fortified Cities, as well as Churches and Monasteries, were built. He very much improv'd and enrich'd his uncultivated Country. In his Reign, the Duke of *Masovia* did first submit himself as a Vassal to the Crown of *Poland*. He died in 1370, without Issue.

After his Death, the *Poles* were displeas'd with his Successor, *Lodowick* King of *Hungary*, his Sister's Son, because he prefer'd his *Hungarians* before his *Polish* Subjects. This Prince being very curious to know what Opinion People had of him, he frequently disguis'd himself, and ask'd the People, *How they lik'd their King, and what they thought amiss in him*; and according to their Answers, reform'd Grievances. He died in 1382; and for want of Male-Heirs, they Crown'd his Daughter *Hedwig* Queen. She married *Jagello* Duke of *Lithuania*, on Condition that he should embrace the Christian Religion, oblige his Subjects to do the same, and annex his Dutchies of *Lithuania*, *Samogitia*, and Part of *Prussia*, to the Kingdom of *Poland*. The first Condition was immediately perform'd, for he was baptiz'd, and call'd *Uladislaus IV.* The Kings of *Poland* his Successors delay'd the Performance of the other Condition, on Pretence that the *Lithuanians* were not satisfied with it; but the true Reason was, That they were unwilling to surrender their Right of Succession to the Dukedom of *Lithuania*; so that this Union was not perfected till the Reign of King *Sigismundus Augustus*. *Uladislaus*.

John was oblig'd likewise to pay 200000 Florins to *William Duke of Austria*, forfeited by *Hedwig*, who was before-hand contract-ed to that Duke. *Uladislaus* defeated the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*, kill'd 50000 of their Men in one Battle, took from them a great many Cities in *Prussia*, and had certainly destroy'd that Order, had not the Em-peror *Sigismund* come to their Relief; so that they afterwards recover'd themselves. He founded the University of *Cracow*, and died in 1434. In him commenc'd the 3d Epoch of the *Polish History*. His Son *Uladislaus V.* succeeded, and was afterwards made King of *Hungary*, where he was engag'd in a War with the *Turks*. During this War, *John Huniades* first defeated the *Turks* near the River *Moravia* in *Hungary*, where they lost 30000 Men, and *Uladislaus* beat them upon the Frontiers of *Macedonia*; so that they were forced to make a Truce for 10 Years: But by the Perswasion of the Pope, who sent Cardinal *Julian* to absolve the King from his Oath, the Truce was broken; and not long after, that memorable Battle was fought near *Varna*, where the King himself was kill'd, and his Army defeated, to the great Shame and Prejudice of *Christendom*. Af-ter this, the *Turks* were implacable against the Christians, because they thought they would never keep their Oaths or Word: And not long after, in 1453, *Mahomet the Great* took *Constantinople*.

Casimir IV. was made King in 1445. A great Part of *Prussia*, weary of the Govern-ment of the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*, submitted to him, This occasion'd a War betwixt the *Poles* and those Knights, which was carried on with various Success, till a Peace was at last concluded, the Pope Me-diator; by which the *Poles* got *Pomerellia*, *Culm*, *Marienburg*, and *Elbing*; and the rest remain'd to the Knights, on Condition that the Master of the Order should be a Vassal of *Poland*, and a Duke and Senator of that Kingdom, and maintain the King and his Court for 4 Days, whenever he should be pleas'd to come among them. Much about the same Time, the Dukes of *Wallachia* and *Moldavia* submitted themselves, did Homage to the King of *Poland*, and paid him Tribute. In this Reign, the De-puties of the Provinces first appear'd at the Diets of the Kingdom. *Loecenius* reports

of this King, That meeting with *Charles* King of *Sweden* at *Dantzick*, *Casimir* was forc'd to get a Monk to talk Latin with him, because he understood no *Polish*, but spoke Latin accurately; upon which *Casi-mir* was so sham'd of the Ignorance of him-self and his Retinue, that when he return'd home, he issued a Proclamation, That from thence-forward, no Man should be advanc'd to any Dignity, except he were able to speak Latin. Hence it came, says *Loecenius*, that the *Polanders* have ever since excell'd in the Latin Tongue. *Casimir* died in 1492, and was succeeded by his Son *John Albert*, who was defeated by the *Turks* and rebellious *Wallachians*, when they carried away about 100000 Captives. The former invaded *Poland* again; but by a sudden great Frost, above 40000 of them were starv'd to Death. The *Tartars* also in his Reign laid waste *Red Russia*, *Podolia*, and several other Parts of the Kingdom; but they were beaten back with Loss, and about 20000 of them kill'd. His Brother *Alexander* succeeded in 1501, and was so great a Prodigal, that had he rul'd long, he would have beggar'd the Kingdom. His Queen *Helena* was not Crown'd, because being Daughter to *John*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*, and a *Greek*, he would not conform to the *Roman Church*. He died in 1506. *Sigismund I.* his Successor, was the greatest Prince in his Time. *Paulus Jovius* says, That the Emperor *Charles V.* *Francis I.* of *France*, and this King, being cotemporary, were the Three Worthies of *Europe*; and that each of them deserv'd to be Universal Monarch. *Sigismund*, besides the great Abil-ities of his Mind, was also remarkable for his vast Strength; for in his Youth, he was able to break Horse-shoes and strong Ropes in pieces with his Hands. He had three fe-veral Wars with the *Muscovites*, whom he always beat in the Field; but the *Muscovites* got *Smolensko* by Treachery, and kept it. His War in *Prussia* with the Knights of the *Teutonic Order* was concluded, on Con-dition that *Albert Marquis of Brandenburg*, who was then Master of that Order, should hold the Eastern Parts of *Prussia* of the King of *Poland* as an Hereditary Fief, and acknow-ledge himself a Vassal of that Crown. In his Reign, the whole Country of *Masovia* was re-united to *Poland*. He had great Suc-cess against the *Wallachians*, and died in 1548.

His Son *Sigismund Augustus* succeeded. About this Time *Livonia* submitted to the Crown of *Poland*, because not able to defend it self against the *Muscovites*, who had taken *Dorpt*, *Elm*, and several other Places from them. During this publick Conster-nation, *Eslad* and *Revel* surrendred to *Erick* King of *Sweden*: But the Archbishop of *Riga* and the Master of the *Teutonic* Order fought the Protection of the King of *Poland*, which he would not grant on any other Terms, than that they should swear Fealty to him: Whereupon the Master of that Order having abdicated the Dignity, surrendred the Castle of *Riga* and other Places; in lieu of which, he was created Duke of *Sennigal* and *Carland*. This gave Rise to a War betwixt the *Muscovites* and *Poles*, in which the latter lost *Plotzo*. This King encourag'd the *Lutheran* and *Reform'd* Religion. He died without Issue, and put an end to the *Lithuanian* or *Togellon* Line, which made Way for the 4th and last Revolution: Since which, their Kings have been elected out of several Nations.

After his Death, there were great Contentions about the Election of a new King. At last *Henry de Valois*, Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Charles IX.* of *France*, was elected; and after a Reign of 5 Months, the Throne of *France* being vacant by his Brother's Death, his private and hasty Retreat convinc'd the World, that he did not think the one worth keeping, when he could come at the other: He made his Escape in the Night, during a thick Fog, lest the *Poles* should detain him. He travell'd thro' *Austria* and *Italy* into *France*, and was there-upon deposed by the *Poles* in 1574. The *Poles* falling into Dissention, chose two Kings; the Archbishop of *Gnesen* and his Followers adher'd to *Maximilian* of *Austria*, and the Nobility to *Stephen Bathori*, Palatine of *Transilvania*, who was declar'd King in 1576, by Plurality of Votes. He married *Anna*, the Sister of *Sigismund Augustus*, to confirm his Title, and became famous for many great Actions. He reduc'd the City of *Dantzick*, which sided with *Maximilian*, and took *Potzko* and the neighbouring Countries from the *Muscovites*. The Articles of the Peace he made with the *Muscovites* were, That they should resign to him the whole Country of *Livonia*; in lieu of which, he

was to restore all the Places he had taken from them. He made good Laws, and establish'd the Soldiery of the Republick upon a good Foot. What he did towards bringing the *Cossacks* under Discipline, has been mention'd before in the History of the *Cossacks*. This brave King, while he was making Preparations against the *Turks*, died in 1586. After his Death, there was another double Election, in which *Sigismund III.* the Son of *John III.* King of *Sweden*, who pretended to be defendcd of the *Togellonick* Race by his Mother *Catharine*, whom he gave out to be Sister of *Sigismundus Augustus*, was chosen. *Maximilian* of *Austria* was elected by the other Party, but defeated and taken by *Sigismund*, and obliged to sign a Resignation of the Crown. *Sigismund*, after his Father's Death, went to *Sweden*, where, in 1592, he was Crown'd King; but was depos'd by his Subjects for attempting to introduce Popery, and his Uncle *Charles IX.* Duke of *Sudermania*, was elected in his place. This occasion'd a War betwixt *Poland* and *Sweden*: In the beginning of which, *Charles IX.* took a great many Places from the *Poles* in *Livonia*, which were all retaken by the *Polish* General *Zamoiski*. The King of *Sweden* was also routed in a Battle near *Riga*: But *Sigismund* being in danger of his Life, by some Broils betwixt himself and the Nobility, it gave King *Charles* an Opportunity to recover himself, and recruit his Army.

At this Time began a new War betwixt the *Muscovites* and *Poles*, because the latter concern'd themselves in the Affair of the false *Demetrius*, who pretended to be the Son of *John Basilowitz*, Grand Duke of *Muscovy*, said to have been murder'd by the Order of *Boris Gudenow*, who hop'd thereby to succeed to the Empire after the Death of *Theodore*, the eldest Son of the said *John Basilowitz*. *George Minzeck*, Weyvode of *Sandomir*, gave *Demetrius* great Encouragement, on Promise to marry his Daughter. Upon the Hopes of so honourable a Match, the Weyvode, with other *Polish* Lords, gather'd an Army, and marched with *Demetrius* into *Muscovy*. The Czar, *Boris Gudenow*, happening to die suddenly at that Time, *Demetrius* was well receiv'd by the *Russians*; and having worsted those that declar'd against him, he marched to *Moscow*, where he was pro-

proclaim'd Czar: But he presently became odious to the *Muscovites*, who suspected him to be an Impostor, because of his Aversion to their Customs, as mention'd already in the History of *Muscovy*. They conceal'd their Resentment till the Arrival of his *Polish* Bride, when the *Muscovites*, headed by some of the House of *Zuski*, related to the Czars by the Mother's-Side, assembled an Army of 20000 Men; and while the Nuptials were celebrating, they rais'd a Tumult, attack'd the Castle, kill'd *Demetrius*, and a great many *Poles* of his Bride's Retinue. Some of the Chief of them defended themselves bravely, and got off. Then *Basilius Zuski* was proclaim'd Czar, who caus'd the Body of *Demetrius* to be expos'd in publick; but his Face being much wounded, the Multitude could not discern his Features; upon which a Report was immediately spread, That *Demetrius* had escap'd: And soon after another appear'd who gave himself out to be the Man; but whether he was so, is not yet determin'd. The *Poles* acknowledg'd him, and gave him all the Titles and Regard due to the Czar. Some say, their Desire to revenge the former Affront, and the Death of their Friends, inclin'd them to declare for him. This *Demetrius*, with an Army of *Poles* and *Cossacks*, march'd into *Muscovy*, beat *Zuski* in several Engagements, and oblig'd him to restore the Captive Bride, who acknowledg'd this *Demetrius* for her true Husband, which strengthen'd his Party both in *Muscovy* and *Poland*; so that had not the King of *Sweden* sent *Pontus de la Gardie* to reinforce *Zuski's* Army, he must have been ruin'd. *Sigismund III.* of *Poland*, design'd to make his own Advantages of those Civil Wars, and had the Recovery of *Smolensko* and *Seweria* in View. He invest'd *Smolensko* in 1609, and took it by Storm in 1611, when he recalled his Forces that had hitherto supported *Demetrius*, not thinking it fit that such a considerable Army of his Subjects should be under the Command of a Foreigner. The *Polish* Army being thus withdrawn, *Zuski* had Time to recruit his Troops; and being join'd by *Swedish* Auxiliaries, he march'd to *Smolensko*, to oblige the *Poles* to raise the Siege; but was routed near *Clusin*. After this Defeat, *Zuski's* Affairs were in great Disorder, the *Poles* gain'd Ground, and they who former-

ly declar'd for him, now depos'd him, to avoid the Threats of the *Poles*, and offer'd the Crown of *Muscovy* to *Uladislaus*, the Prince of *Poland*; by which they hop'd to be reconcil'd to the *Poles*, and to ruine *Demetrius*; and when their Affairs were in a better Posture, they doubted not to get rid of the *Poles*. This had the desir'd Effect, for immediately the *Poles* abandon'd *Demetrius*. *Zuski* was surrender'd to them, and the *Poles* promis'd to the *Muscovites*, who had sworn Allegiance to *Uladislaus*, that he should appear in Person in 1610. But King *Sigismundus* refus'd this Offer of the *Muscovites*, inclining rather to found his Right to that Kingdom upon Conquest, than on the Consent of the People; and 'tis said, had he march'd his Army straight to *Moscow*, he might have taken it at the first Assault: But as soon as the *Muscovites* discover'd his Design, they revolted from *Uladislaus*; but before this Revolt, *Demetrius* was murder'd by his *Tartar* Guards. The *Muscovites* attack'd the *Polish* Garison in the City of *Moscow*, consisting of 7000 Men, who defended themselves bravely, and set Fire to the Town, which then had 180000 Houses, where abundance of People were burn'd: But notwithstanding this, the *Muscovites* recover'd themselves, and besieg'd the Castle of *Moscow*; and *Sigismund*, by not sending Supplies to them after the taking of *Smolensko*, made all his Affairs miscarry; for he march'd his Army back to *Poland*, and sent the Besieged neither Men nor Money, who, after they had plunder'd the Treasury of the Great Duke, left some to guard the Castle, fought their Way through the *Muscovites*, and came to *Sigismund* to demand their Pay. He apply'd himself afterwards to retrieve his Affairs in *Muscovy*; but his Designs were baffled by Jealousies betwixt his Generals, so that his Guards in the Castle of *Moscow* were forc'd to surrender by Famine. Thus all *Sigismund's* Expectations came to nothing, which griev'd him the more, because he promis'd to himself that the Conquest of *Muscovy* would open his Way to that of *Sweden*. That same Year, the *Poles* were worsted in *Moldavia*. In 1617, Prince *Uladislaus* undertook another Expedition into *Muscovy*; but to no purpose; then he made a Truce with them for 14 Years: The Articles of which were, That the

Poles should keep Possession of *Severia*, *Zernigo*, and *Novogorod*, which they had taken in the last War. In 1620, the *Poles* were engag'd in a War against the *Turks*, by the Practices of *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, because the King of *Poland* assisted the Emperor in his War against him. Upon this the *Turks* enter'd *Moldavia*, with an Intention to banish the Duke of that Country, because he sided with the *Poles*. The Polish General *Zolkiewski* march'd to the Duke's Assistance; but advanc'd too far into the Country, and as he retir'd, his Army was totally routed, and himself slain on the Spot. In 1621, the *Turks* marched against the *Poles* with 39000 Men; the Polish Army consisted of 65000. The *Turks*, commanded by their Emperor *Osman*, assaulted the Polish Lines three times; but were as often repuls'd with great Loss, tho' the *Poles* at that time suffer'd much by Want of Provisions and Ammunition, Sickness, and a great Mortality among their Horses. In these three Attacks, the *Turks* lost 60000 Men, and were forc'd to make Peace upon Terms very honourable to the *Poles*. They also lost a far greater Number in their Return to *Constantinople*. In 1621, *Gustavus Adolphus* took *Riga* without any great Resistance, and conquer'd all the rest of *Livonia*, except *Dunneburgh*. That same Year he enter'd *Prussia*, and took *Martensburgh* and *Elbing*. In 1629, *Hans Wrangel*, the Swedish General, defeated the *Poles* near *Gorzno*. The Emperor sent Auxiliaries to the *Poles*, who in a Battle near *Stum* had almost taken *Gustavus* Prisoner; but they lost the Day. By those Defeats, and other Discouragements, the Affairs of the *Poles* were in a very bad Condition, which obliged them to make a Truce with the *Swedes* till 1634; the *Poles* being allow'd to keep *Elbing*, *Memel*, *Braunsberg*, *Pillau*, and what else they had taken in *Livonia*. *Sigismund* King of *Poland* died in 1632.

His Son *Uladislaus IV.* succeeded in 1633. He obtained a great Victory over the *Muscovites*, who besieg'd *Smolensko*, forc'd them to raise the Siege, and then to surrender their Army Prisoners of War. The *Turks*, who design'd to give him a Diversion, were also repuls'd. This *Uladislaus* (who, as we said before, was elected Czar) made Peace with the *Muscovites* on Terms very honou-

rable to himself, by which *Smolensko* and *Czernickow* were granted to the *Poles*. The Fame of this Martial Prince so terrified the *Turks*, that the Grand Signior allow'd him the Charges of the War; and to pacify him, strangled the *Bashaw* that commanded the Forces against him. His Truce with *Sweden* was renew'd for 26 Years; and the *Swedes* were obliged to restore to the *Poles* the Places they held in *Prussia*; for the *Swedes* being defeated at *Norlingen* by the *Germans*, were much mortified; and were also embroil'd with the *English* and *Dutch*, who were displeas'd with the Tolls they paid them in *Prussia*. In 1637, began the War betwixt the *Poles* and *Cossaks*, mention'd already in the History of the latter.

In 1637, *Uladislaus* died: *John Casimir*, his Brother, succeeded: He was design'd for a Monk, and had liv'd two Years of his Novitiate among the *Jesuites*. *Hartknock* says, *Innocent X.* made him Cardinal. He afterwards married his Brother *Uladislaus's* Widow. His Wars with the *Cossaks* we have related before in their History. In 1655, *Charles Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, enter'd *Poland* with an Army of chosen Men. He conquer'd Great *Poland*, *Masovia*, *Lesser Poland*, and the Capital City *Cracow*; and all the Cities of *Prussia*, except *Danzick*, open'd their Gates to him. Many of the Citizens of this Town were also inclinable to follow the Example of the rest; but by the Perswasion of some Ministers, were kept in Obedience. This put a Stand to the Victories of the *Swedes*, and alter'd the Face of Affairs to that degree, that they could not maintain themselves in *Prussia*, tho' the Militia of *Poland* and *Lithuania* was under their Command, and that they had obliged *John Casimir* to flee to *Silesia*. After the Consternation was over, the *Poles* join'd the *Tartars*, and kill'd such of the *Swedes* as they found straggling; and the *Lithuanians* kill'd all the *Swedes* in Winter-Quarters among them. *Charles Gustavus* had also weaken'd his Army by his great March to *Jersaw* and *Czerneski*; so that the Polish General, by his Light Horse, cut off the Rear of the *Swedes*. At this Time the *Poles* retook *Warsaw*; but King *Charles* being join'd by the *Brandenburghers* at *Warsaw*, fought that memorable Battle, which lasted 3 Days, wherein the *Poles* and *Tartars* were routed; upon which

all

all the Princes and States of *Europe* began to look upon the Success of *Sweden* with a jealous Eye, and thought the Greatness of that Prince inconsistent with the Ballance of *Christendom*. The *Muscovites*, to give them a Diversion, fell into *Livonia*, and besieg'd *Riga*; and the *Hollanders* did as much as they could to hinder the King of *Sweden* to be Master of *Prussia*. At the same Time the *Danes* made War against the *Swedes*, which obliged them to leave *Poland*. At this Time *Ragotzi*, Prince of *Transylvania*, enter'd *Poland*, fancying he might get the Crown to himself; but was routed, and forc'd to make Peace on disadvantageous Terms. Upon this *Cracow* and *Thorn* were recover'd by the *Poles*; the *Swedes* were forc'd to quit all their Conquests in *Curland*, and the *Poles* took the Duke of *Curland* Prisoner; but were obliged to rise from before *Riga*. By the Peace of *Oliva*, the *Poles* recover'd all *Prussia*, but were obliged to quit their Pretensions to *Livonia*: The *Muscovites* got *Smolensko*, *Serweria* and *Kiow*: And how the *Cossacks* dispos'd of themselves, has been told before. In short, *John Casimir's* Reign was very unhappy, so that at last, being tired with the *Cossackian*, *Muscovian*, *Tartarian*, *Swedish*, *Siebenburgian*, and Civil Wars, he voluntary resign'd the Crown in 1668, retir'd to the Abbey of *St. Germain*, and there died a few Years after. He was succeeded by two *Piasti*, or Natives; the first was *Mickael Koributh*, Duke of *Wisnowiski*, whose Reign was disturb'd with Civil Wars; and by his Male-Administration, the *Turks*, in 1672, took *Caminiec*, which was formerly thought impregnable, and by this means open'd their Way into *Poland*. He concluded a Peace with them, by which the said Town was left in their Hands, and the *Poles* were also obliged to pay them a Yearly Tribute. He died in 1673, and was succeeded by *John Sobieski*, who was formerly General against the *Turks*. In 1673, he forc'd the Camp of the *Turks* at *Kotchim*; so that of 32000, scarce 1500 escap'd. This War with the *Turks* continu'd till 1676; when a Peace was concluded, by which they kept *Caminiec*; but the *Poles* got off the Yearly Tribute. In 1683, when *Vienna* was besieg'd, the Relief of it was chiefly owing to his timely Succour; for it could not have held out much longer against the

Turks, if he had not marched in Person with his *Poles*, and routed their Army. Tho' he was married to a *French* Lady, ow'd his Exaltation to the Throne to the Intrigues of *France*, and had vast Promises made him by that Crown if he would invade *Silesia*, when the *Turks* fell into *Hungary*, he disdain'd those Offers, would not in the least assist the Common Enemy of *Christendom* in their Designs against the Empire, but enter'd into a League Offensive and Defensive with the Emperor. He also had his Share with the Duke of *Lorraine* in the Victory obtain'd over the *Turks* at *Barkan*, where 10000 *Turks* were cut to pieces. These great Actions vex'd the Court of *France*, who design'd to ruine the House of *Austria*. Therefore they form'd all the Factions and Parties they could against the King of *Poland*, which was the Occasion that his following Campaigns had not the wish'd-for Success; so that seeing himself thus embroil'd, he thought it most advisable to apply himself to enrich his Family. In 1684, he made himself Master of the Fortrefs of *Jaslowitz*, marched to *Caminiec*, bombard'd it, and routed a strong Detachment of *Tartars*. In 1685, the *Tartars* ravag'd *Podolia*. In 1686, the King marched in Person at the Head of a great Army into *Moldavia*, and took the City of *Jassi*, the Residence of the *Hospodar*, who fled upon the Approach of his Army. He then marched to the Country of the *Budziack Tartars*, where the Court-Marshal routed 8000 of them; but when the *Polish* Army marched further, they found the Country laid desolate, and burn'd by the *Tartars*; so that they were oblig'd to march back to *Jassi* in 6 Days; but all the Foragers were intercepted by the *Tartar* Sultan *Muradin*. Some Time after, a *Moldavian* Spy brought him an Account, That a Detachment of 4000 *Tartars* were posted at some distance from their main Body. The King sent the Court-Marshal with some select Troops, who surpris'd and routed them. The King himself marched up to their main Body, and oblig'd the Sultan to leave his Camp to the Mercy of the *Poles*; but this Action was more glorious than advantageous to them; for the advanc'd Season obliged the King to quit *Moldavia*, and march back his Army to *Poland*. While his Army was busie with the *Tartars*, the Garrison of *Caminiec* had

rais'd

rafs'd the Country, and committed great Outrages. In 1687, the King's eldest Son, Prince *James*, bombarded *Caminiec*, but with no Success. The Diet of *Grodno* broke up in Confusion, which disabled the *Poles* from appearing against the *Tartars* next Year. The *Tartars* and *Turks* perceiving the King of *Poland* embarrass'd, sent an Envoy to persuade him to a separate Peace; but finding themselves disappointed, they laid waste the Province of *Volhinia*, before the *Poles* were ready to march out of their Winter Quarters; but when they took the Field, they obliged the *Tartars* to repass the *Nieper*; who perceiving the *Polish* Army in Disorder, they were encourag'd to repass it, and fall upon the *Poles* before they were drawn up, when they cut 17 Companies of them to pieces, and made a new Invasion. This obliged the King to march an Army of 19000 into *Moldavia*, where he garrison'd *Seckow*, upon the S. Bank of the River *Sereth*; and so this Campaign ended. In 1691, the King enter'd *Moldavia*, took *Jassi*, *Nimick*, and several other Places, without Opposition: But the Season being far spent, and the *Tartars* still troublesome on his Rear, it disappointed his Design of invading the *Budziack Tartars*; only the Chastellan of *Chelm*, assisted by the *Cossacks*, defeated 4000 *Tartars*, and made himself Master of the Fortrefs of *Serock* upon the *Nieper*. In 1692, the *Poles* block'd up *Caminiec* in September, but to no purpose; and doing nothing remarkable that Campaign, the Imperial Court were jealous that they inclin'd to a separate Peace with the *Turks*. The Ground of this Suspicion was, besides some Differences betwixt the King and Emperor, That the King of *Poland* had sent an Envoy to *Adrianople*, to whom the Cham of *Tartary* made several Proposals for a separate Peace; but they did not take. The *Tartars*, in 1694, with an Army of 20000 Men, relieved *Caminiec*, and furnish'd it with Men and Provisions; but going on to plunder and harass the Country, according to their usual Custom, they were routed by the *Poles*, and 2000 of them slain. In 1695, the Contest betwixt the General of *Lithuania* and Bishop of *Wilna* defeated all the King's Designs for that Campaign; and in 1696, the King's Death put a Stop to all his Projects of War. He was 71 Years of Age when

he died, was a Prince of great Bravery, and ow'd his Advancement chiefly to his own Merit and Valour.

After his Death, several Competitors appear'd for the Crown, among whom was his Son Prince *James*; but he had not Interest enough. The *French* King set up the Prince of *Conti*, who was elected by a Party that was not able to support him; so that tho' he was sent to *Polish Prussia* by a *French* Squadron, he was obliged to return without being put in Possession. *Frederick Augustus*, Elector of *Saxony*, having renounc'd his Religion to make himself capable of being chosen, carried it by the Assistance of the Allies, notwithstanding the long and vigorous Opposition by Cardinal *Radzinski* and the *French* Faction; and probably might have continued in peaceable Possession, had he not made War upon the *Swedes*, which brought their young King *Charles XII.* upon him, who in 1704 set up *Stanislaus*, a *Polish* Nobleman, Palatin of *Posen*, against him; and by several Battles, and at last by invading *Saxony*, has obliged King *Augustus* to surrender all but the Title; tho' King *Stanislaus* is not yet in quiet Possession of the Crown, the Chief General, and a great Part of the *Poles*, having form'd a Confederacy against him. These Things being fresh in Memory, we need insist no longer upon hem.

Of the A I R.

THE Air of this Country is according to the Differences of the Climate, and sometimes so very cold, that Rain freezes ere it falls to the Ground; and Lakes and Rivers are so frozen, that Coaches and loaded Carts pass over them for 5 or 6 Months together. The Air of *Poland* is more healthful than that of *Lithuania*, because of the many Morasses there. This Cold is not so much to be imputed to its Northerly Situation, as to its nearness to the vast and cold Countries of *Muscovy*, from whence the cold Winds blow.

Of the S O I L.

THE Soil for most part is Champain and open; but towards the Borders of *Hungary*, Mountainous and Woody; so that 'tis

'tis observ'd, the Places furthest distant from *Hungary*; are most fruitful. There is only one great Mountain in the middle of *Lesser Poland*, call'd *Mons Calvus*: It has a Monastery on the Top, famous, as they pretend, for the real Cross of Christ. What other Hills one meets with here, are rather to be esteem'd rising Grounds than Mountains. The Eastern Part of the Kingdom is full of Woods, Forrests, Lakes, Marshes, and Rivers, which afford a delightful Prospect to the open Country.

The PRODUCT.

Poland is said to have been formerly almost all Wood; but now, being cultivated by the Inhabitants, it is very fertile, and produces every where all kinds of Fruit, Corn and Herbs. A great Part of the Corn made use of in *Holland* comes from this Country, by Way of *Dantzick*. They have a good Breed of Horse, so that their Cavalry is numerous, and well mounted. Their Pastures are good, and feed a great many Cattle, which they export to Foreign Countries. The Forrests abound with Wild-Beasts, and also with Bees, that afford vast Quantities of Honey and Wax. They have also abundance of Flax and Hemp, and Vines in many Places, whose Grapes are grateful to the Taste, especially if the Summer and Harvest be favourable; but the Wine is generally very sharp when drawn off. In the Mountains, there are Mines of Lead, Silver, Copper, and Iron, with other kinds of Minerals, as Quicksilver at *Tustan* in *Red Russia*, and Vitriol near *Biecz* in the Palatinat of *Cracovia*. But the most considerable of all are the Salt-Mines at *Bochnia* and *Veliska* in *Lesser Poland*, which are the chief Riches of the Country, and bring most Money into the Exchequer. They work in those Mines as we do in our Coal-Pits; the Salt is generally of a bluish Colour, but some of it white and transparent, like Chrystal. When it is new dug, it has a brackish Taste; but when expos'd to the Air, becomes brittle, and more sweet. They have also some Veins of *Sal Gemme*.

Of their BEASTS.

THE Woods are well stor'd with Hares, Conies, Squirrels, Deer, Foxes, Bears, Wolves, and Boars. The *Masovian* Forrests have Plenty of *Elks*, *Wild-Asses*, *Uri*, which *Dr. Charlton* interprets *Owres*; and the *Bisontes* *Jubati*, by some rendred *Buffs*. *Aldrovandus* says, these *Bisontes* in Shape and Horns resemble an Ox, have Mains like Horses, Beards on their lower Jaws, Tongues rough, like a File, and very hard; a Bunch upon their Backs, and their Hair smells like Musk. They are incredibly strong. The *Polish* Nobility hunt them, and esteem their Flesh when powder'd a great Dainty.

The *Owr*, or *Urus*, call'd by the *Polanders*, *Thur*, is a kind of Wild-Ox, bigger, stronger, and swifter, than the Tame. He has a short black Beard, a Bush of Hair upon his Forehead, and Horns very wide and large. *Pliny* says, the *Romans* made Lanthorns of them.

The *Elk*, call'd by the *Poles*, *Lofs*; by the *Germans*, *Ellend*, which signifies Miserable, because of the Falling-Sickness it is troubled with; is about the Size of a large Horse, Bodied like a Stag, but broader; its Legs longer, and its Feet cloven, and large. Their Hoofs are reckon'd a Specifick against the Falling-Sickness. In the Deserts near the *Nieper*, *Herbststein* says, there is a sort of Wild-Sheep call'd *Solbac*, shap'd like a Goat, but with shorter Legs and Horns, growing straight up. They are exceeding swift, and leap very high. They have a Sort of Wild-Horses in the *Ukraine*, call'd by them *Dzikie-Konil*, which their Nobles eat for a great Rarity.

In *Lithuania* and *Muscovy*, there's a voracious unserviceable Beast, not found elsewhere, as *Mat. a Michovia* tells us, called *Rossomaka*, with the Body and Tail of a Wolf, and the Face of a Cat: It feeds on dead Carcasses, and eats till its Belly is swelled to the utmost Stretch; then it squeezes it self betwixt two Trees, forces the Load from its Stomach, and returns to its Prey, devouring and disgorging successively, till all is consumed.

The *Wolf*, resembling a *Hart*, or the *European Lynx*, called by the *Latins*, *Lupus Cervarius*, and by the *Natives*, *Rus*, with Spots on its Belly and Legs; affords the best Furs in *Poland*.

The *Quails* in *Podo'ia* have green Legs: Their Flesh is unwholesome, and if immoderately eaten, breeds the Cramp.

Their Trade of EXPORT.

THE Western Parts of this Kingdom produce a great deal of Corn of all Sorts, which is exported from *Dantzick*; as also Honey, Wax, Amber, Hides, Tann'd Leather, *Muscovite* and *Polish* Furs, Oak, Wainscot, Masts, Planks, Fir, Deal, Pitch, Tallow, Salt-Petre, Hops, Hemp, Flax, Salt, Beer, Pot-Ashes, Opium, *Frussia* Wool for coarse Manufactures, Vitriol, *Lapis Lazuli*, Vermilion, Brass, Lead, Iron, Copper, Glass, and Earthen Ware, Oxen, Sheep, Hogs, &c.

Their Trade of IMPORT.

STuffs of Silk, and Worsted, *English* Cloths, Tapestry, Jewels, Sables, Salt-Fishes, Tin, Steel, Martens, &c. Iron Ware, *Rhenish*, *French*, *Spanish*, and *Hungarian* Wines, Spirits, *Aqua Vite*, Brandy, Spices, of which they make a great Consumption. They might be much richer, if they were industrious and frugal, and applied themselves to Manufacturies: But the *Poles* are little inclin'd to either; for, the Gentry are absolutely forbid to follow Trade of any kind, on Pain of forfeiting their Honour; and the Commonalty want Funds; so that all the Trade there is chiefly carried on by Foreign Merchants: Besides, such of the *Poles* as have any Fortunes, spend too much of their Revenues in costly Habits and Luxury, to be able to undertake any considerable Traffick; nor have they any good Ports except *Dantzick*, which is not enough to improve the Trade of so large a Country.

The Complexion, Constitution, Genius, and Manners of the Poles.

THEIR Complexion is generally inclining to Fair, and their Hair of a pale Yellow. Their Stature is commonly somewhat above the middle Size. Their Constitutions are generally good, and their Bodies gross; so that the Women of Quality make it their chief Study to be lean and thin. They abhor Painting and Washes to improve their Complexion; nor have they any occasion for it.

The Gentry are civil, value themselves upon their Honour, are affable to Strangers, brave, sincere, not vers'd in the Arts of Dissimulation, but excessively jealous of their Liberty, and rather compel than invite their Kings to observe their Laws. The Gentry claim such Prerogatives, as they can scarce be found guilty of any Crime; and when they happen to be, the Prince has scarce Power enough to punish them. They have no manner of Regard to their Clergy, but act and talk as they please against them, and think themselves sufficient to be their own Guides.

The *Poles* exceed most Nations of *Europe* in Vivacity of Spirit, Strength of Body, and long Life, which cannot be occasion'd by their Climate, because the *Swedes*, *Muscovites*, and *Germans*, tho' they live under the same Parallel, yet enjoy not the like Vigour and Health; so that 'tis reckon'd to proceed; 1. From their Diet, which is generally fresh Meat, or Fowls roasted. 2. From their Drink, which is spiritous and strong, as *Hungarian* Wine, Aniseed-Water, &c. The poorer Sort have a Liquor distill'd from Wheat, Barley, Oats, and Cyder, which the Gentry rectify with Anniseeds and Spices. 3. From their hard Way of living, for they hate Effeminacy, and love a Cottage as well as a Palace. The common People frequently weave Tapestry and Arras as they travel. They sleep frequently in Snow and Frost, without any Bed or other Conveniency; and Children of two Months old are carried about stark naked. 4. From their

their Hunting much. 5. From their Exercises, for they are much inclin'd to Dancing and Vaulting, and are expert Horsemen. 6. From their hard Beds, which contribute much towards strengthening their Bones. Their Slaves have no Beds, and their Gentry seldom any but Quilts. 7. From their Freedom and Liberty, for Slavery dulls the Mind, and enervates the Body.

Of their NOBILITY.

Selden, in his Titles of Honour, says, in Poland and the Great Dutchy of Lithuania, there are many Weyvodes, which is not a Feudal or Hereditary Title, but Office, and for Life only. They command the Territories committed to them, like the Lords Lieutenants in England, and have Castellans under them in all Places but Cracow, where the Weyvode is subject to the Castellan, in Memory of the dishonourable Flight of the Weyvode of Cracow, under King Boleslaus Krziwousti, from a Russian Ambush. This Office and Title is almost of 1000 Years standing. The modern Greeks make use of the Word Βεββδος, to denote a Weyvode.

In the Laws of Poland, the Secular States are call'd *Comites, Barones, Principes, Nobiles, & Milites*: But the Archbishop of Gnesna signs himself, *Legatus Natus, & Regni Poloniae Primas, & primus Princeps*. Cramerus says, the different Titles us'd there import no Distinction of Honour, and that all their Noblemen have equal Power as such; so that what Inequality is among them, proceeds from their Publick Employment.

Dr. Connor's Account of their NOBILITY.

HE says, they engross all Preferments and Posts of Honour; and no Foreigner, however Noble and deserving, can rise higher than a Colonel, or at most to be a Major-General, which is much the same as our Brigadier. Their common People can have no Possessions, unless a few Houses in a City, or a small Piece of Land about a League off in the Country: But the Citizens of Danzick, and other Places of Prussia,

with those of Cracow, Leopold, and Vilna, are excepted from this Badge of Slavery.

Every Gentleman or Nobleman, which is the same thing there, has his Coat of Arms granted by the Republick; but then he or some of his Family must have an Estate there in Land. They are capable of the greatest Employments and Offices in the Kingdom, and may buy Lands where they please all over the Country, and have a Right to be elected King, if their Credit and Interest can procure it. Every Gentleman is a Sovereign Prince in his own Lands, and has Power of Life and Death over his Tenants, or rather Slaves, who have no Laws nor Privileges to protect 'em. They dare not leave his Lands to go to another's, on Pain of Death, unless he sells them; and if he do, his Tenants are made over with his Lands. But if their Lord ravish their Wives or Daughters, the Tenants may leave his Service; and they are many times glad when their Wives or Daughters give them such an Opportunity.

If one Lord kills another's Slave, he is not punish'd for it, but only obliged to give another in his room, or as much Money as will buy one, and to maintain the Family of him that is kill'd. If he kills one of his own Slaves, he only pays 15 Livres. Nay, if one Gentleman kills another, he cannot be apprehended or imprison'd, unless convicted by a Court of Justice, which gives him Time enough to escape; and when condemn'd, he cannot be executed without the King's Consent. No Soldiers can be quarter'd upon the Gentry: If any Officer do it, the Diet either sentences him to die, or declares him infamous. Since 1433, the King himself cannot lodge at a Nobleman's House without asking his Leave. If a Foreigner dies without Heirs, his Estate falls to the Lord of the Manor where he died, and not to the King. The Houses of the Nobility are Sanctuaries; so that no Delinquent can be taken thence by Force, tho' he may be arrested.

If a Nobleman will swear that his Goods were not bought, but are the Product of his Lands, he may send them any where out of the Kingdom without Custom, and after he has sworn, his Certificate suffices to exempt the Purchaser from the Duty. In Prussia, the Nobles are not only free from

Customs, but likewise all the other Inhabitants, by the *Magna Charta* of *Culm*. The *Polish* Noblemen have also the Privilege of Pre-emption.

All the Gentry of *Poland* are equal by Birth: They don't value Titles of Honour, and think that of a Noble Pole, or Gentleman of *Poland*, the greatest they can have. Neither the King nor Republick creates any with the Title of *Prince*, which belongs only to the Sons of the Royal Family; for tho' some are made Princes of the Empire, and enjoy the Title of *Prince*, as we shall afterwards hear, they have no Precedency upon that Account; nor have they any Dukes, Marquisses, Counts, Viscounts, or Barons, but what have Foreign Titles, which the rest generally despise; for they don't value any borrow'd Character, or external Denomination, but say, that 'tis only intrinsic Worth, and Services done to their Country that deserves Preferment.

King *Sigismund III.* establish'd an Order of Knighthood of the *Immaculate Conception*, created several Knights, and allow'd them Privileges and Superiority above others; but they were so much undervalued and despised by the rest of the Gentlemen, that the Order soon came to nothing.

When they travel into *France*, *Italy*, or *Germany*, they assume the Titles of Counts and Barons, because they are admitted more easily to People of Quality, especially in *Germany*, where they scarce think any a Gentleman under a Baron, and consequently not fit for their Conversation.

Those great Privileges make the *Polish* Gentry powerful. Many of them have also large Territories, with a Despotick Power over their Tenants, whom they call their Subjects. Some of them have 5, some 15, some 20, and some 30, Leagues of Land, contiguous; but the poor Gentry have their Votes in the Diet as well as the richest. Some of them are Hereditary Sovereigns of Cities, with which the King has nothing to do. *Lubomirski* possesses above 4000 Cities, Towns and Villages. Some of them can raise 5, 6, 8, and 10000 Men, and maintain them at their own Charge. Dr. *Connor* says, Prince *Lubomirski* had actually in his own Pay, when he was in *Poland*, 7000 Horse, Foot and Dragoons.

The Gentry of Note have Horse and Foot Guards, which keep Gentry Night and Day at their Gates. They make an extraordinary Figure when they come to the Diet: Some of them have 5000 Guards; and *Hautenville* says, some of them had formerly 10000. They esteem themselves, especially the Senators, above any Prince in *Germany*, and want nothing of Sovereign Power, but the Liberty of coining Money, which is reserv'd to the Republick. Foreign Ambassadors are oblig'd to make a great Figure here, otherwise the Gentry despise them. When great Men have Suits at Law, and the Diet or other Tribunals decide it, yet the Execution of the Sentence must be left to the longest Sword; for the Justice of the Kingdom is commonly too weak for the Grandees. Sometimes they raise 5 or 6000 Men of a Side, plunder and burn one another's Cities, and besiege Castles and Forts; for the Grandees think it below 'em to submit to the Sentence of a Company of Judges without a Field-Battle.

Yet formerly their Noblemen were little better than Slaves. *Cromerus* says, they were oblig'd to keep the King's Dogs. Their first Rifle is ascrib'd to the Privileges granted by *Boleslaus* the Chast to the Clergy; and afterwards, when *Poland* was harass'd by Civil Wars, the Gentry obtain'd many Privileges from their Kings, which they have since taken Care to get augmented at every new Election.

The most flourishing Families in *Poland* are, 1. That of *Radziwil*, which has the Title of Prince. 2. The Dukes of *Wisniowiec* and *Zharaw*, one of which Family was elected King of *Poland* in 1664. 3. The Princes of *Lubomirsky*, who are Princes of the Empire. 4. The Princes of *Ozartorysky*. 5. The Princes of *Sapieha*, Great Governors of *Lithuania*. 6. The Family of *Leszczinski*. 7. The Family of *Joblonowsky*. 8. The Family of *Przyemski*. 9. That of *Lipski*.

Those that are not Noble by Birth, may be created Noblemen: This was formerly at the King's Pleasure, but of late is at the Disposal of the Senate or Diet. All the little Diets of the Republick must give their Consent, which must afterwards be approved by the great Diet, before they have their

their Patent. A Jew is made a Gentleman by turning Christian; and by signaling himself in the Wars; but the King must propose it, and the Diets approve it. The new-made Nobility are liable to several Impositions and Inconveniencies, from which the others are exempted. If any one be a Magistrate in *Cracow* or *Vilna*, he and his Posterity are Noblemen.

Nobility is forfeited here three Ways: 1. By some heinous Crime; for Instance, when a Nobleman permits one that is Ignoble to usurp his Coat of Arms. 2. By exercising any Trade or Merchandize. Sometimes Posterity are restored, when Parents have quitted their Title thro' Poverty. And, 3. By bearing Office in any City that is not priviledg'd.

Of the PEASANTS.

They are born Slaves, have no Notion of Liberty, but live very well satisfied without it. In *Courland*, they are as subject to their Landlords as in *Poland*, and in both Countries almost adore them. They love their Landlords, fight willingly for them, and all they have is absolutely at their Devotion. When they debauch their Wives or Daughters, those poor Wretches don't think their Women the worse, or that they themselves are injur'd or dishonour'd by it. They have scarce any Religion, but, like Brutes, work on *Sundays* for their own Subsistence, being obliged to work 3 or 4 Days each Week for their Masters, without Meat or Wages. Each of them earns his Master at least 100 Livres *per Ann.* They have no Property, nor can they be made free, except they get into some Convent, be ordain'd Priests, or that their Masters debauch their Wives or Daughters, as has been already mention'd.

When a Lord lets any Ground to a Peasant, he orders his other Peasants, at their own Charge, to build him a House, to give him a Cow, Hens, Geese, and as much Rye as will keep him a Year. A Slave cannot send his Son to the University without buying a Liberty from his Lord. They reap their Master's Corn, and have rigid Tax-Masters over them, who punish them severely if they don't work as much as is

requir'd of them. Their Masters commonly boast of their Clemency, and say, That tho' they have an absolute Power over them, they seldom make use of it, any more than other Christians do over their Horses and Dogs.

Dr. *Comnot* says, he ask'd some *Polish* Noblemen, Why they so inhumanely treated and undervalued their Boors? Who answer'd, That formerly all the Boors revolted from their Landlords, and conspir'd to extirpate and destroy them, and murder'd so many, that the rest were obliged to hide themselves, or to leave the Kingdom; but at last, the Gentry getting together from all Parts, and being assisted by their Neighbours, they quelled the poor Peasants, who intended to have set up a Commonwealth of their own; and brought them to such Extremities, that ever since they have been contented to live like Slaves.

Of the APPAREL of the Gentry.

ALL of them love to make a Show, and to be splendidly Clad: They formerly delighted in Foreign Fashions. When they had Wars with the *Muscovites*, they follow'd theirs; and when with the *Turks*, they took their Habits. Their present Fashion is, a Vest that reaches to the middle of their Legs; with a long Robe lin'd with Fur, and ty'd about the Middle with a Sash: Little Boots, with Iron Heels, and Furr'd Caps, and a Sabre by their Side. When they ride, they have a short Cloak like an *Irish* Mantle furr'd within and without. The better Sort have rich Furs from *Muscovy*; but the poorer Gentry content themselves with the Skins of Tygers, Leopards, Panthers, and a kind of grey Furs. The finest of their Furs cost above 1000 Crowns; are worn only at Diets, and descend from Father to Son. Some of the *Polish* Gentry imitate the *French* Fashion, and wear Linen, Lace, Point, Perukes and Swords. The ordinary sort of Gentry put Chaff into their Boots, which serves them instead of Socks. Some of the Nobles have 50 Suits of Clothes, all as rich as possible; and they love to have their Servants as well Apparel'd almost as themselves.

-Of the HABITS of the Boors.

IN Winter, they wear a Sheep-Skin, with the Wool inwards; and in Summer, a Close-body'd Coat, of coarse Stuff, of a Colour much like our Chimney-Sweepers, with sorry Caps: Their Boots are ordinarily the Rinds of Trees wrapp'd about their Legs, with the thicker Part to guard the Soles of their Feet against the Stones. They cut their Hair close like Monks, and shave all from their Faces but a large Whisker. They walk gravely, with a Poll-Ax in their Hand, and a Sabre by their Side, which they never put off till they go to Bed: It hangs by a Strap of Leather, to which there is fasten'd a Handkerchief, and Knife and Sheath, and a small Stone to whet their Knives.

In *Lithuania*, the Boors Shoes are of the Barks of Trees, and their Stockings of thin Bark, which they wrap about the Calves of their Legs. Before they enter any Town, they always take Care to put on fresh Shoes. They also wear a Sort of Ash-colour'd Habit, with Sleeves woven all of a Piece. The Boors here are more miserable than in *Poland*, for Gentlemen commonly go into Boors Houses, tho' not their own, take all they have, and beat and wound them shamefully, because they are not able to bribe such as have Power to do them Justice.

The *Prussian* Gentry are not so gaudy in their Habits as those of the more Southerly Parts of *Poland*. Their Peasants differ also in Habit from those of *Poland*, and wear sometimes long straight Coats of Leather.

-Of their Meat, Drink, Houses, Marriages and Burials, &c.

THE *Poles* never live above Stairs, and their Apartments are not united: The Kitchen is on one Side, the Stable on another; the Dwelling-House on the third, and the Gate in the Front. Their Houses are for most part of Wood; but they have some of Brick and Stone.

Their Houses are generally hung with Tapestry or Arras; but towards *Tartary*, they keep no extraordinary Furniture, because of the Incursions of that barbarous

People. They content themselves with a few small Beds with Taffety Curtains; and if any one lodge at their Houses, they must carry their Bedding with them.

The Moveables of the Peasants are a few Earthen and Wooden Dishes, a hard Bed, and a wretched Coverlet. Their Children are not allow'd Beds till they marry, but lie upon Boards by the Fire. They have no Chimnies, but little Holes in the Tops of their Houses.

The Peasants Children go naked till they are 4 or 5 Years old, and frequently eat in the same Trough with the Pigs. They crawl on Hands and Feet till they are strong enough to walk; and when they are dirty, the Mother washes them in cold Water, which makes them exceeding hardy. *Hanteville* says, he has seen Children there stark naked slide upon the Ice a great Way.

The Peasants of *Lithuania* and *Samogitia* build their Houses round, narrow, and open at Top, to let out the Smoak and Stink: They are generally cover'd with Boards, Straw, or Bark of Trees, and, with the Family and Cattle, are under the same Roof.

The *Polish* Gentry have seldom any Gardens or Orchards, tho' their Country be very proper for it, and might, by making Cyder and Perry, save a great deal of Corn, which they consume in Beer.

Their ordinary Meat is Beef and Veal, and they leave the Mutton to their Servants. They have Store of grey, but no red Partridges; many Hares, but no Rabbits; than which, they say, they would sooner eat Cats; but they breed white Rabbits for the Sake of their Furs. They have many Roebucks, but few Stags, Plenty of Wild-Oxen, Wild-Boars, Hogs, Poultry, Pigeons, &c. There are many Heath-Cocks and Pheasants in *Lithuania*, and Bustards in *Prussia*.

The *Baltick* Sea has scarce any Fish; but that Defect is supplied by great Plenty of Fresh-Water Fish from Lakes and Rivers. The *Poles* have a peculiar Way of preserving Cabbage: They chop it small, put it into a Tub between Lays of Salt, press it very hard, and afterwards pour warm Water upon it, which makes it ferment, and serves them for Pickles. This they preserve all Winter, and sometimes the whole Year.

Tho

Tho it smells strong at a distance, yet they think it a great Dainty.

Their usual Drink is Beer, which in *Prussia* is made only of Malt; but in the rest of *Poland*, of Wheat ground small, and boil'd with Hops. Sometimes they mix it with Oats, and Spelt, a kind of Wheat which grows in *Italy* and *Flanders*.

In *Lithuania*, *Russia*, and *Ukraine*, they make both a red and a white Liquor with Honey, which they call Mead. At *Warsaw*, they mix it with Spice and Juice of Cherries and Blackberries.

The *Lithuanians* and *Poles* have Wine from *Hungary*, *Italy*, *France*, and *Germany*. That of *Hungary* exceeds *Spanish* Wine in Strength, is brought to *Cracow* over the *Carpathian* Mountains in large Casks drawn by Oxen, and sold at 20 Shillings the *Polish* Pot, which is about 3 Quarts. The *Italian* Wine is also brought over Land, and on that Account is dearer than the other.

In the Morning, both Men and Women generally drink Ginger, Yolks of Eggs and Sugar boil'd together in Beer. They are immoderate Lovers of rusty Bacon and Pease. They eat all manner of Mushrooms, and preserve them for Pickle. They eat great Quantities of Poppy-Seed, drink the Milk of them, and make it into several Dishes and Sauces. They make likewise abundance of Oil of the Seed of Hemp and Flax, which they eat on Fast-Days. They use Spice to that Excess, that some great Men spend above 50000 Livres *per Ann.* in that single Commodity. They use Spice and Pickles in all their Sauces, which differ much from ours: Some of them are yellow, made with Saffron; others white, made with Cream; some grey, made of Onions; and others black, made of the Juice of Plumbs. They have all Sorts of choice Pot-Herbs, and some that are found no where else. They have also Confections of several kinds, and make much use of *Pistacho-Nuts*.

They generally eat a great deal of Meat to a little Bread, tho they have Plenty of Corn, especially Rye, which is much better than in other Countries. They are great Admirers of Roots, have a Dish call'd *Crachat*, made of coarse Flower of Wheat; Barley, Millet, or Oats, and sometimes of

a small Grain they call *Maina*. On Flesh-Days, they eat it with Milk and Butter; and on Fast-Days, with Oil. When the Boors want Bread, they make it of Acorns dry'd and groun'd.

Near the Mountains of *Hungary*, there are Wild-Goats, which they admire as very good Meat. They also make a Dish of Beavers-Tails, but throw away the Body. Bears-Paws pickl'd they reckon a great Dainty. When they kill Elks, they don't gut 'em for 14 or 15 Days, and in Winter not in a Month. When the *Grande*s come to the Diet, they bring them in their Skins and Guts, and hang them at their Windows by 5 or 6 at a time, till they grow rank; then they roast some, and dress others like Beef *A-la-Mode*; and none but great Men have this Dish at their Tables.

The *Poles* are generally open Hearted, courteous and hospitable to Strangers, invite them to their Houses, converse with them freely, and endeavour to imitate 'em. *Hautenville* says, he has known them entertain Strangers whom they knew nothing of, merely because they were out of Employment.

The Slavery of their Boors is so much the more tolerable to them, because they seldom want Victuals and Drink: They have generally three or four Sorts at a Meal, one of Pease with slic'd Bacon, another of *Crachat*, and two more of several Sorts of strengthening Roots, which they have in great Plenty.

In *Lithuania*, their Bread is coarse and black, made of Rye, Smutty Wheat, and Barly, all groun'd together. They have abundance of Flesh, Fish, and Fowl; and what Cattle or Poultry they think they cannot keep in Winter, they kill in Harvest. They are good Marks-men, and maintain their Families in a great measure by Fowling. Every House has 4 or 5 Hand-Mills to grind their Corn.

The Peasants of *Samogitia* are not so laborious as those of *Lithuania*, and consequently have not such Plenty. Instead of Bread, they eat a sort of Turnep as big as one's Head, which grow of themselves, without Cultivation. They quench many red hot Stones one after another in their Beer, Metheglin, and Mead, after they have boil'd

boil'd it a whole Night, in order to make their Bellies soluble. This Liquor they put up in Vessels made of Barks of Trees.

They reward the stoutest Drinkers at their Merry-meetings with a Shirt, Handkerchief, Frock, or the like. They live longer here than in *Lithuania*, and many of 'em reach to 120 Years of Age.

Formerly, the *Prussians* dwelt in Wagons, or Huts made of Boughs; and the Peasants are not yet much improv'd in Architecture, for they generally live in Hovels built of Stakes, Roof and all twisted over with Rods, without other Covering. Their Furniture is not much improv'd, for the old *Prussians* slept on the Ground, or on the Skins of Beasts, and these lie upon the Straw.

They are content with a spare Diet, and more addicted to Sloth than Gluttony; yet, like the *Poles* and *Lithuanians*, they drink hard, especially at Feasts, where they frequently get drunk. Their former Drink was Water, or Mare's Milk, mix'd sometimes with Blood; but now it is Mead and Beer. Their ordinary Food is Fish. They knew not the Use of Roots, till the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order came among them; but now the Peasants make them their chief Dainties.

When the Gentry make a Feast, they never supply their Guests with Spoons, Knives or Forks, so that they must bring them with them. They have a broad Piece of starch'd Linen sow'd round the Table-Cloth for Napkins: The Reason they give for it, is, to prevent their Servants from stealing 'em.

Their Servants have their Meat reach'd them by their Masters, which they eat behind their Backs. They bring twice as much Wine as their Masters need, and drink the remainder themselves. They seize on what is left after Dinner. And their Ladies each of them carry a Napkin to prod for dry'd Sweet-meats or Fruits.

These Feasts are made by Friends and Neighbours to one another by turns. Full Brimmers are much in use among the *Poles*, for they will scarce excuse a Man unless he pledges them *Super-Naculum*. This Vice reigns equally in Feasts and Taverns; and Saints-Days are not excepted out of their Drunkards Calendar. Those Disorders are tolerated, because of the great Excise they

bring to the State. The Master of a Feast is esteem'd an unreasonable Niggard, that does not allow his Guests as much as will sufficiently fuddle them.

The Inns in this Country are long Stables, built up with Boards, and cover'd with Straw, without Furniture or Windows. There is a Chamber at one End, but none can lodge there because of Flies, Fleas, Bugs, and noisome Smells; so that Strangers chuse rather to lodge among the Horses, where there is also an intollerable Smell of rotten Cabbages, which those People keep always by them. Travellers are oblig'd to cary Provisions with them, and when Foreigners want, they apply themselves to the *Lord of the Village*, who forthwith supplies them *gratis*.

Poland being for most part a Champagne Country, a Calash and two Horses will ride a great deal of Ground there in a Day.

Travellers ought to take more than ordinary Care as they pass Bridges in this Country, because they are generally very bad, and seldom repair'd. In Winter, they use a Furr'd Sack for their Feet; but there is no resting at Nights in their Inns, especially on Holidays, the Boors make such a continual Noise with their excessive Singing, Drinking, and Dancing, in the same common Room where you are oblig'd to lodge; for they have no Fire elsewhere.

When they go a hunting for Bears, they take those of the biggest Size with Nets; and when they have hamper'd him, all the Hunters ride about him, and having pinn'd down his Head and Feet with great Wooden Forks, they bind him so about with strong Hempen Cords, that he is not able to stir; then they roul him into a great Wooden Chest: The Knors of the Cords are so contriv'd, that with one Pull they may be untied. The Bear is kept thus till they have a mind to hunt him, and then they let him out at a Trap-Door made on purpose.

They surround their Wild-Bulls with a great Number of Horsemen, when each of them rides up and darts an Arrow at him: Upon this the Ox pursues his Enemy; then another darts him behind; and as he turns about to pursue him, they dart him so by turns, till the Beast being tir'd with pursuing so many Assailants, falls down, and is easily taken or killed. They have another

Way

Way of hunting, by making the Boors fell a great Number of Trees, and enclose 'em: Each Hunter has his Post assign'd him, at which they throw Darts; and as the Bull runs towards his Enemy, the Hunter runs behind gives him his Death's Wound: But if he breaks thro' the Inclosure, the next Hunter holds out a Piece of red Cloth, against which the Beast having an Antipathy, he forthwith leaves that Person, and runs at another, who being provided for him, commonly kills him. If the Beast catch a Man by the Cloaths, he pulls him to him with his Teeth or rough Tongue, and endangers his Life, if he be not speedily rescued.

Of their W O M E N.

THE Polish Ladies are generally very modest, and do not abuse the great Liberty allow'd them. They seldom stir out of Doors without a Coach and Six, to Church, or to visit a near Neighbour, and are always attended by a great Number of Servants. When they go abroad at Night, they have 24 or more Flambeaux carried before their Coach. Their Train is born up by He or She Dwarfs; and they have always an old Woman attending them, whom they call *Gouvernante*, and an old Gentleman for their Usher.

Notwithstanding all those Honours done the Women, they are intirely managed by their Husbands, and dispose of no Money without his Leave. When they want any thing, they must ask him for it kneeling, embrace his Knees, and call him their Benefactor: But some few Trifles are allow'd them of course. The Fashion of the Women's Cloaths comes nearer to that of the Men, than in most other Countries. They formerly wore Garlands on their Heads, compos'd of Gold, Jewels, Flowers, Silk, and the like; but now they wear Silk Caps lin'd with Fur, like the Men. In King John III's Time, they imitated the French Mode, because the Queen was of that Nation.

The Peasants Daughters are so extremely reserv'd, that they will draw a Knife at any Man that offers to kiss them: Besides, their Mothers have a watchful Eye over them, and make them wear little Bells before and

behind, to give Notice where they are, and what they are doing; but those Precautions don't always preserve their Chastity.

The Country Women are Habited as in other Countries, but that their Petticoats are very short. Those in *Red Russia* go generally in Summer with an Apron before them, that reaches lower than ordinary.

Their M A R R I A G E S.

THE Wedding-Feasts of the Gentry last ordinarily three Days. If a Lady marry any of her Waiting-Maids, she costs her almost as much as one of her Daughters. On the second Day all the Guests present the Bride with something new, which makes commonly a good Part of her Portion. The late Princess of *Poland*, when married to the Elector of *Bavaria*, had above 100000 Crowns presented her.

Among the Boors, a Maid never marries till she be 24 or 30 Years of Age, and has wrought with her own Hands several Baskets full of Cloths of different Sorts, which, at the time of her Espousals, she is to distribute among the Guests that her Husband brings with him. She must also have serv'd her Mother in all Domestick Affairs for a certain Time. The same Rule is observ'd with respect to their Sons. 'Tis also observable, that those employ'd to make up the Match, always enquire more strictly into the Manners and Behaviour of the Persons, than after their Stock of Corn and Cattle, which is their usual Allotment.

Their Godfathers and Godmothers are always accounted Relations, tho' they be nothing a-kin, and cannot marry this suppos'd Kindred without a Dispensation from the Bishop.

The *Sieur de Beauplan* gives this Account of the Weddings of the *Cossacks*: After the Married-Couple go to Bed, the Company wait in the same Room till the Marriage is consummated, and the Bride shifts her self. If they find the Tokens of Virginity, they make joyful Acclamations, in which all the Kindred join, and next Day carry her Shift publicly about the Town like a Banner, that all the People may be Witnesses of the Bride's Virginity; and the People follow with Musick, Singing, and Dancing.

But if they don't find those Marks, every Man throws down his Glass, all the Jollity is at an end, and the Bride's Kindred out of Countenance: Then the Guests commit 1000 Extravagancies in the House, break the Pots and the Earthen Cups, put a Horse's Collar about the Bride's Mother's Neck, make her drink out of one of those broken Cups, and upraid her for not having been more watchful of her Daughter's Chastity; and after they have treated her with all the vile Language imaginable, the Company breaks up: The Friends of the Bride keep within Doors for some Time, being atham'd to go abroad. The Bridegroom may put away his Bride if he pleases; and if he keeps her, he must resolve to put up abundance of Affronts.

Of their BURIALS.

THE Burials of those of Quality are celebrated with such Pomp and Magnificence, that they are more like Triumphs than Interments. The Corps is carried in a Horse or Chariot with Six Horses, all cover'd with Black: The Coffin has a large Black Vellvet Pall over it, with a Cross of Red Sartin in the middle, and Six long Black Silk Tassels, supported by as many of the Deceased's Domestick Servants in close Mourning. Several Priests, Monks, and others, march before the Horse, each of 'em having a white Wax Torch in their Hand. Immediately before the Horse, come 3 Men on Horseback, who carry the Arms of the Deceased, one his Sword, another his Lance, and the third his Dart. After the Burial-Service is over, those that carry the Armour enter the Church on Horseback, and riding furiously up to the Coffin, break the Arms of the Deceased upon it; after which the Body is interr'd. Then there is a Feast, where the Lay-Guests not only drink to Excess, but likewise force the Clergy to follow their Example. When the King dies, he is laid on a Bed of State, and a certain Number of Senators, Ecclesiastical and Temporal, are appointed to attend his Corps. The Republic defrays the Expences out of the Revenues of the Crown. The deceased Queen has the same Ceremonies and Honours allow'd her.

When Women of Quality mourn, they are Apparell'd in a coarse black Stuff; and their Linen is not much finer than Canvas; and the greater their Quality, their Mourning-Weeds are the coarser. All Senators, Deputies and others, that appear at the Diet for electing the next King, must be in Black.

The King's TITLES.

THE Titles given him by Ambassadors, and commonly made use of in the Acts of the Diet, are, *King of Poland, Great Duke of Lithuania, Duke of Russia, Prussia, Masovia, Samogitia, Kiovia, Volhonia, Podolia, Podlachia, Livonia, Smolensko, Severia, and Czernichovia.*

Of the ELECTION of the King.

WHEN the Throne becomes vacant by Death, Deposition, or voluntary Abdication, the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, as *Inter-Rex*, issues Circular Letters to acquaint the Provinces with it, and to summon a General Convocation of the Gentry to meet at *Warsaw*. Before this Meeting, the little Diets take Care to secure the Roads from Thieves, and to guard the Frontiers against Invasions; and Spies are sent into all neighbouring Countries to discover their Designs. They suffer none to go out or come into the Kingdom without Passports till the Election is over: All Foreign Letters, tho' to Senators, are intercepted; the High-Ways are block'd up with Trees, and Ambuscades are plac'd about them. None must write to the Army during this Time; the Use of Fire-Arms is forbid to the People; and all Taverns are shut up.

The Diet consists of the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, who represents the King; and the other Senators, with the Deputies of the Provinces.

In the first Place, they send some of the Senators to the Army to direct the Affairs of War: Others have the Charge of the Treasure; and, till a King is elected, the Senate claims the Title of *Serene* from Foreign Governments. The Diet for ordering Affairs relating to the Election sits only a Fortnight, during which Time all Courts of Judicature cease, except that of the Marshals.

thals. Most Crown'd Heads, Princes and States, send Ambassadors at such Times to the Senate, and the Pope sends his Nuncio. A Gentleman is appointed to attend every such Foreign Minister, to prevent their corrupting the Electors with Money: But this Precaution is of little Use now, since Avarice bears so great Sway here.

When the Diet ends, the Deputies retire to their respective Provinces, acquaint their Constituents with their Proceedings, and of the Day appointed for the Election; and then the Gentry advise what is fit to be propos'd in the Diet.

This Diet of Election, before the Union of Poland with the Great Dutchy, was held at *Pétriow*; but since that Time, it is kept in an open Field half a League from *Warsaw*, near the Village *Pola*, and must not continue above 6 Weeks. There is a great Hall of Boards erected here for the Senate. They first go to Church, to pray God to direct them in their Choice: Then the Nobility chuse their Speaker, who takes an Oath that he will receive no Bribes, keep no Correspondence with any of the Competitors, and do nothing without Consent of the Republick. The Deputies sit in the open Field.

After they have appointed a Court of Justice during the *Interregnum*, all the Senators and Deputies take an Oath on their Knees, administred by the Primate, to maintain an Union among themselves, and to acknowledge none for King but him who is lawfully and unanimously elected; and swears to preserve inviolable the Rights and Privileges of the Republick. Then they oblige themselves not to give their Votes for any, till all the Disorders and Irregularities of the former Reigns be consider'd and redress'd. They annul all the Decrees of Tribunals, and all the Statutes of Kings that intrench on their Liberties; and the Generals are sworn to remove the Forces from the Place of the Diet.

Then the Diet gives Audience to Ambassadors from the Competitors or others, who must be very liberal to the Deputies, by giving Presents, and keeping an open Table, &c. After the Ambassadors have Audience, they proceed to the Election. If the Votes be equal, the Archbishop of *Cnesna* demands three times, If the Exorbitancies and Grievances be redress'd. And if

answer'd in the affirmative, he declares the King Elect, which is also done by the Marshal of the Crown, and the Great Dutchy; and then *Te Deum* is sung.

'Tis a Rule with the Poles never to elect any powerful neighbouring Prince, lest they be subdued, and brought under an absolute Power. Hence it is, that they never elected a King of the House of *Austria*, lest they should be treated by them as are the *Hungarians* and *Bohemians*. The Candidates must not only bribe the Senators and Deputies, who have a Vote in the Election, but also the other Gentlemen who come in great Numbers to the Diet; for they often threaten the Senators and Deputies, if they don't elect whom they propose.

The Qualifications now requir'd in a Candidate are, That he must not be a Native, nor present at the Election; but must be rich, and no absolute or neighbouring Prince. He must either actually be a Roman-Catholick, or promise to become one before he be Crown'd. He must also have the Reputation of a great Soldier. The Person elected commonly expends some Hundred Thousand Pounds Sterling; and the other Competitors generally as much a-piece; so that the Members of the Diet make great Advantage of the Election; and this seems to be one main Reason why they keep their Kingdom Elective.

Their chief Reasons are, 1. That they will rather obey a King than their own Creature, than a Prince whom Hereditary Succession obliges them to obey. 2. They think this Form of Government not liable to the Inconveniencies and Hazards of a King's Minority, which is always attended with Confusions and intestine Broils. 3. They say, when a King owes his Crown to the free Election of the People, he will be more like, in common Gratitude, to make suitable Returns by Clemency and Justice. 4. That no Princes take so great Care to educate their Children as theirs, that they may set up for the Succession on the Bottom of their own Merit, and not on the Plea of Blood. The Power they have of limiting their Kings by the Diet, and redressing the Grievances of former Reigns.

At the Time of this Election, the Diet forms an Act for the Security of their Rights and Privileges, which

Passa Convventa. The King Elefts Ambassador, figns thofe Articles, and takes the Oath for him: Then the King himfelf fwears to keep this Contract inviolable before the Altar in the Church of St. John at Warfaw. The Form of the Contract is,

1. That the King fhall not appoint any Succeffor, but preferve all the Laws made for the Freedom of Election. 2. That he fhall pretend to no Right of Coining of Money, but leave that, and the Profits arifing from it, in the Hands of the Republick. 3. That he will ratify and confirm all the former Articles of Peace made with Foreign Princes. 4. That he will maintain the Peace and Tranquillity of the Publick. 5. That he will not declare War againft any Prince, bring Foreign Troops into the Kingdom, or fuffer any to go out, nor levy any new Troops without Conſent of the Diet. 6. That all Field-Officers fhall be either Poles or Lithuanians, or Natives of thofe Provinces depending on the Crown of Poland. 7. That all the Officers of the Guards fhall be Poles or Lithuanians, and their Colonel a Polish Nobleman, who muſt all ſwear to be ſubjeft to the Grand Marſhal. 8. Not to uſe his Privy-Seal in Affairs that concern the Republick. 9. That he fhall give no Man more Places than the Law allows. 10. After a Place has been vacant 6 Weeks at furtheſt, he fhall beſtow it on ſome well qualify'd Polish Gentleman. 11. That he fhall not marry without Conſent of the Senate, who fhall aſſign him what Retinue they pleaſe. 12. That, by the Conſent of his Council, he fhall regulate the Number of his Troops, and preferve good Diſcipline among 'em. 13. That he fhall build no Fleet without the Advice of his Senate and Gentry. 14. That he fhall not diminifh his Treafure in the Caſtle of Cracow, but rather increaſe it. 15. That he fhall borrow no Money without Conſent of the Diet. 16. That he fhall always adminiſter Juſtice, by the Advice of his Senators. 17. That he fhall be content with thoſe Revenues his Predeceſſors had. 18. That no Strangers be introduc'd into his Council, and that he fhall beſtow no Offices or Dignities upon them. 19. That he fhall not diminifh any of the Offices at his diſpoſal, in the Republick or Countie. 20. That he fhall maintain and defend all Rights, Liberties, Immunities, and Privileges, granted by former Kings to the Poles or Lithuanians, or to any of the Provinces that depend on thoſe two Nations. To theſe Articles they commonly add others, according to the Circumſtances of Time, or the Quality of the Perſon

elect'd. When the King has ſworn to obſerve the *Paſſa Convventa*, the Chancellor preſents him with the Decree of his Election, ſign'd by all the Senators; and the King Eleſt may appoint a Day for his Coronation, which is now perform'd at Cracow. When the King is in the Church, the Archbiſhop of Gneſna asks him, If he will ſupport and maintain the Catholick Faith? If he will rule according to Equity and Juſtice? Then the King Eleſt kneels, kiſſes the Archbiſhop's Hand, and laying his owa upon the Evangeliſt, ſwears to perform all that he had before ſworn at Warfaw: The Subſtance is, That he will maintain all the Rights and Liberties of both theſe Nations granted at any Time to them, or agreed to by his Ambaſſadors, and to perform whatever has been enact'd in the Diet of Election; to reſtore to the Kingdom whatever has been alienated or diſmembred from their Lands and Revenues; not to leſſen the Boundaries of the Kingdom, but to defend and enlarge them; to eſta bliſh Courts of Juſtice throughout the Kingdom, and Great Dutchy; and to ſee that Juſtice be render'd without Delay, without any Favour to Perſons or Things; And laſtly, he conſents, That if it ſhould happen, which GOD forbid, that he the ſaid King Eleſt ſhould violate this his Oath, or any Part of it, that the Inhabitants of the Kingdom, and all his Dominions, ſhall be totally diſcharg'd from paying him Obedience and Fidelity.

After the King is thus Sworn, he riſes, hears the *Paſſa Convventa* read again, and confirms the Oath which he had taken concerning them. Then kneeling, he receives the Benediction of the Archbiſhop and Biſhops; and his upper Garment being put off, the Archbiſhop anoints his Right Hand and Arm up to his Elbow; and his Shoulder, with conſecrated Oil, with theſe Words, I anoint thee King with conſecrated Oil, in the Name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghoſt. Amen. Then he is led to a Chapel, where he is Habited much like a Biſhop: After which he has other Ornaments put on by the two Marſhals of the Kingdom and Great Dutchy; and then he is convey'd to the Throne erected in the Church, by the Senators, who are Officers of State, the Standard-Bearer of the Kingdom walking before. After hearing Maſs, he is brought back to the Altar, where the Archbiſhop delivers a drawn Sword into his Right Hand, ſaying, Receive

this

this Sword, and cordially protect and defend the Holy Church against all Unbelievers. Then the King delivers the Sword to the Great Sword-Bearer of the Kingdom: He puts it up in the Scabbard, and returns it to the Archbishop, who girds it to the King's Side; upon which the King rises, and drawing it again, flourishes it three times over his Head, to signify that he will defend the Trinity and Church against all Unbelievers. Then the King kneels, and the Archbishop puts the Crown on his Head, which the Bishops of Cracow and Cujavia support with their Hands. In the mean time the Archbishop says some Prayers; after which he puts the Scepter into the King's Right Hand, and the Globe into his Left. Then his Majesty is brought back between the Archbishop and the two Bishops to the Throne, where he is plac'd by the Archbishop, with these Words, *Sit, and maintain the Place given you by GOD, &c.* The King being thus seated, the Archbishop and Bishops return to the Altar, where they sing *Te Deum*; which being ended, the King comes and offers him Gold, kisses his Hand, and having made his Confession, receives the Sacrament and Benediction from him. Then the Court-Marshal cries, *Vivat Rex, Vivat Rex.*

Next Day the King goes in great Pomp to the Town-House, the Senators carrying the *Régale* before him; and the Great Treasurer of the Kingdom scatters among the People a great Number of Gold and Silver Medals. He is then Habited anew with his Royal Robes, and seated on a splendid Throne. Then the Magistrates of Cities pay him their Homage, assure him of their Fidelity, and present him with the Keys of their City-Gates: Then they take the Oath of Fealty on their Knees. After this the Primate lays down his Authority as *Inter-Rex*, and all the Members of the Diet take the Oath of Allegiance to the King.

The A R M S of Poland.

ARE Quarterly: In 1st and 4th *Quarters*, an Eagle-Argent Crown'd and Arm'd Or, for Poland. In the 2d and 3d *Quarters*, a Cavalier Arm'd Cap-a-pee Argent. In the *Dexter*, a naked Sword of the same. In the *Sinister*, a Shield-Azure, charg'd with a double-barr'd Cross Or mounted on a Courtes

of the 2d, barb'd of the 3d, and neil'd of the 4th for *Lithuania*. For the Crest, a Crown heighten'd with 8 Flurets, and clos'd with 4 Demi-Circles, ending in a *Mantle*, Or, which is the Crest of Poland: The Motto is, *Habent sua fidera Reges.*

Piszecki, in his Chronicle, says, That after the Defeat over *Varnus*, the Germans took a Black Eagle, one of the Roman Standards, and the Sarmatian Auxiliaries a White one. Upon this Account the Poles have still for their Arms, in a *Field-Gules*, an Eagle-Argent, and the Germans a Black Eagle.

Of the King's REVENUES.

WHEN the King is Crown'd, the Diet allows him a Pension of above 140000 *l. per Annum*, which, together with his Patrimonial Estate and Crown Lands, maintains him a very splendid Court in that cheap Country. He has besides great Sums of Money for Nominations to Employments, Civil and Military. *John Sobieski* had in Revenues, Pensions, his own Estate, and other Casualties, about 300000 *l. Sterling per Annum*. The Crown Revenues are Imposts on Merchandizes, and the *Jews*, Part of the Customs of *Dantzick*, and the Revenues of the Salt-Mines of *Cracow* and other Places. The Republick frequently allows the Queen an Annual Pension, which is generally computed at 30000 *l. Sterling*. The King has his *Polish*, *German*, and *Hungarian* Guards, and the same Officers of his Household as other Kings.

The Power of the King is much limited, for the Subjects have all along secur'd their Liberties by their Prudence and Valour. They don't relish the Slavish Temper of the *Turks* and *Muscovites*, who suffer themselves to be govern'd according to the Humour or Pleasure of their Prince. He cannot name any of his Children to Places of Profit or Honour, nor purchase Land for them in any Place of the Kingdom, without Consent of the Diet. When a *Polish* Nobleman is in any Preferment, tho' he commit Crimes against the Crown or State, the King has no Power to turn him out, without the unanimous Consent of the Diet; for every Member has a negative Voice, which occasions great Inconveniencies; for neither the King nor the State are well serv'd.

Of the SENATE of POLAND.

THE Government is intirely in the Hands of the Gentry, who are not the tenth Part of the Kingdom: Their Vassals or Slaves have no more Property, or Benefit of the Laws, than our Negroes in the *West-Indies*. The Senators are nam'd by the King, and continue for Life: They take an Oath to conserve inviolable the Rights and Liberties of the Republick; by which they think themselves oblig'd to contradict the King when he designs to invade their Rights: Even the Nuncio's in the Diet assume this Liberty. They have the same Power the *Tribuni Plebis* had among the *Romans*. These Nuncio's or Deputies sometimes affront and huff their Kings; as they did to *John Sobieski*, whom they call'd a *Nero* and Tyrant. Four of the Senators always attend the King, and he is oblig'd to consult 'em in all Affairs.

There are 17 Ecclesiastical Senators. The Archbishop of *Gnesna* is Primate of the Kingdom, and styles himself, *The Popes Legate born*. He can reverse whatever is done in any of the Bishops Courts; and it is Death to draw a Sword in his Presence. A Golden Cross is carried before him when he goes to the Diet, or to the King; and when he sits, his Chaplain holds it behind his Chair. His Marshal, who is a Senator, carries a Staff before his Coach, and salutes none with it but the King. He visits no Ambassadors, tho' they visit him. During the *Interregnum*, he may coin Money in his own Name, the Revenues of the Crown belong to him, and he has then the same Officers with the King; but at all times he has Drums beating and Trumpets sounding within and without, before he sits down to Table; and he may visit the King when he pleases.

The Lay-Senators are 128. The Diet or Parliament consists of King, Senators, and Deputies. The King is oblig'd every 3d Year to call a Diet; two must be held at *Warsaw*, and the 3d at *Grodno* in *Lithuania*; because, at making the Union, the *Lithuanians* alledg'd it was inconvenient for them to come always as far as *Poland*. The King must send his Circular Letters six Weeks before the Session, and a List of all the Affairs

and Articles he proposes to be treated in the Diet. Upon this, a little Diet, of all the Gentry in each Palatinate, meets, and resolves what is to be done about the Articles sent by the King, and chuse Nuncio's or Deputies to represent their Decisions, to the Diet. The Decision here, as well as in the great Diet, goes not by Plurality of Votes, but by Unanimous Consent; which often occasions great Confusions, and the Diets to break up without doing any thing. The Number of those Deputies is, 178 for *Poland*, and 70 for *Prussia*, according to the Number of their Provinces and Towns. Sometimes they disagree about chusing a Speaker, and break up as in the Grand Diet, in 1695. *Hauteville* says, the Poles employ more Time in drinking and feasting, than in debating Matters of State; for they never think on that Work 'till they begin to want Money and Hungarian Wine. In the Grand Diet, the Lower House is made up of the Deputies, and the Higher of the Senators; the latter are Judges of Criminal Affairs, and the Deputies bring up Bills to them to be debated. Five Days before the Conclusion of the Diet, the Senators and Deputies meet together in the Upper House. The Diet is not to sit above 6 Weeks, and when that Time is expir'd, the Deputies send their Speaker to the King, to take leave of him in their Name, and will not sit any longer, be the Affairs of the Republick ever so pressing; as they did in 1649, when the *Tartars* and *Cossacks* had almost over-run the Kingdom. The Reason of this is, that by this Time their Provisions are spent by their great Train of Guards and Domesticks. The King, during the Diet, is oblig'd to increase his Guards, otherwise he might be expos'd to the Insults of the Gentry, who frequently take Liberty in the Diet to threaten and abuse him to his Face.

There is no Assembly in *Europe* more subject to Disorders, Factions, and Bribes; so that it seldom concludes in Peace. These Intrigues and Mismanagements are generally fomented by the *French* and *Austrian* Factions.

Their L A W S.

THEY bear Date from the Time of *Cassimir the Great*, before whose Time they have none in Writing; being then govern'd by the Customs of their Ancestors: But

But he brought in the *Magdeburgh Laws*, which are now call'd the *Constitutions of Poland*. *Lithuania* and *Polinia* have still their own Laws and Customs: And the *Regal* and *Ducal Prussias* have also their own Municipal Laws, call'd the *Laws of Culm*.

The *Poles* admire this Form of Government, because it defends them against the Oppressions and Tyrannies of absolute Governments; of which their Neighbours, the *Turks* and *Muscovites*, are miserable Examples. Their former Miseries, under the *Weywodes*, made them abhor *Aristocracy*, and their Gentry are averse to *Democracy*, because of its levelling Principles.

Of their MILITARY AFFAIRS.

IN the Infancy of the *Polish* Government, the *Poles* were obliged to fight their King's Quarrels whenever requir'd. *Bolslaus Chrobry* first instituted a Militia of Horse and Foot, to be levy'd out of every Palatinate and District. *Boterus* says, the *Poles* can raise above 100000 Horse, and the *Lithuanians* 70000. Their Foreign hir'd Foot have sometimes exceeded 30000. The *Cossacks*, when subject to the *Poles*, serv'd on Foot, and were of great Use in their Wars, especially in those against the *Tartars* and *Turks*. *Amurath the Great* used to say of 'em, *That in spite of the other Potentates of Europe, he could sleep on both Ears; but that those Gad-flies, meaning the Cossacks, would scarce suffer him to sleep on either.* They had at one Time, when in Rebellion against *Poland*, an Army of 100000 Men.

The *Polish* Armies are badly pay'd, which occasions frequent Mutinies: The Soldiers are also obliged to rob for Sustainance. They seldom make use of Spies, so that they know little of the Designs of their Enemies. Provisions are frequently scarce in their Army, because they have no such Thing as Suters or Magazines; and, which is extremely impolitick, if their Army consist of 20000 Men, they have certainly 20000 more Servants and idle Fellows attending them.

It is not in the King's Power to chuse Men of greatest Experience and Merit for Generals; but he is often obliged to give the Charge of the Army to a rich Nobleman, who knows nothing of the Matter;

and when he once gets his Commission, the King cannot recal it. The Subalterns don't come to the Place of Rendezvous till six Weeks after the Time appointed, and leave the Army a Month before the Campaign is ended, which Grievance is not to be redress'd without great Danger.

Monsieur Dalerac's Account of their Military Affairs.

THE Republick has two separate Armies, under two different Generals, who are not subordinate nor dependant upon one another: The first is that of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the second is that of the Grand Dutchy of *Lithuania*, which is an Auxiliary State, and Ally to the other, and not a subjected Province; so that their best concerted Expeditions frequently miscarry, for want of Union and Expedition: For Instance; At the Siege of *Vienna*, in 1683, the King was returning back to *Poland*, when the *Lithuanians* join'd him in *Hungary*. The Army of the Kingdom is to consist of 36000 Men, and that of *Lithuania* of 12000.

Each Army has a great and little General; and their Badge of Command is a great Lance, adorn'd at the End with Feathers or Knots of Ribbons, under a great Ball of some rich Stuff: It is carried before the two Generals. The King's has a Plume of *Heron's* or *Eagle's* Feathers; and when he commands in Person, his only is carried aloft: They have also a Battoon given them, as the Marshals of *France*. A Great General is only accountable to a General Diet, and has an Allowance of 60000 Francs, at 10 Sous per Franc.

The *Hussars* are the first *Gens d'Arms* of the Kingdom, and the finest Cavalry in *Europe*: They are compos'd of handsome Men, mounted on the finest Horses of the Kingdom, with Led-horses richly capparison'd; their Bridles adorn'd with Plates and Nails of Silver, or Vermilion gilt; embroider'd Saddles, with gilt Boy's; Houz's according to the *Turkish* Fashion, with Fringes of Gold and Silver; and a rich Sword fix'd to the left Side of the Saddle, under the Horseman's Thigh. They have also Pistols; do no Duty, are all of them Exempts, and reserv'd

serv'd for Battle, and other distinguishing Actions. The King and Generals call them *Tovariches*, which signifies Comrade. They have much Equipage, fine Tents, and a great Number of Servants. They are arm'd with Back and Breast, a scal'd Head-piece, adorn'd with Pendants of Iron Plates quilted, which come down to their Shoulders: They have a Gantlet of Mail: Over this they wear a great Leopard's or Tyger's Skin, in Form of a loose Coar, made in a Warlike Fashion.

Their Lances are larger than the *French* great Pikes, and pointed with Iron; the upper Part has a Streamer of Taffeta, in Form of a Standard, 3 or 4 Ells long: Because of its Weight, it must be carried in a Boot fix'd to the Saddle. When they attack their Enemies, they never retire, but break through all that oppose them, except they be encompass'd; but if their Enemies open their Ranks, the Danger from them is over. If the Horse be kill'd, the *Hussar* cannot raise himself, because of the Weight of his Armour; so that they are only of Service in Plains.

They have two Servants, each arm'd with Head-pieces and Lances, have Coats of the Skins of White Wolves, and behind their Backs a great Wing of Eagle's Feathers, which is good for nothing but to frighten Children. The King, the Princes of the Blood, the Senators, Bishops, and Ministers of State, have all Companies of them to attend them.

The 2d Sort of *Gens d'Arms* is the *Pancernes*, inferior to the *Hussars*, but above the rest of the Cavalry; they have a Coat of Mail, with an Iron Cap, cover'd with a Net-work of the same, which comes down to their Shoulders, and shewing only half their Visage, with their great Whiskers, makes them look like Satyrs: They have Falcheons and Muskets: They are as well mounted as the *Hussars*, but not so richly equip'd. In lieu of a Trumpet, they have an Instrument of Copper, not much bigger than a Flageolet, crook'd and hollow like a Cornet, which makes a shrill and savage Noise: 'Tis suppos'd to be the *Litnus* of the Ancients.

The rest of the *Polish* Army consists of *Walachians*, *Cossacks*, *Poles*, and sometimes *Tartars*.

That which they call the Foreign Army has another Sort of Discipline than the former; they are arm'd like those of *Germany* and *France*; only the Dragoons are mounted on sorry Jades, and are almost naked. The Infantry is more tatter'd than any *Spaniards* or *Italians*, and not uniform in their Cloaths: They have no Swords, but long Battle-Axes which are of admirable Use; they serve as Rests to their Muskets, and there's nothing comparable to them for covering a Battalion, and defending them against Horse. All Foreigners may be employ'd in this Army. In a Word, they are the Safety of the whole, and do all the Service, the rest being little more than Ornament.

The old Weapons of the *Poles* were Scimiters, Lances, Gides, Javelins, Bows and Arrows. At present they use Fire-Arms; so that now they have nothing of the old *Sarmatian* Armour left but the Bow and Arrow. The *Poles* had formerly Bucklers of Osier of a round Figure, cover'd with Skins a little rais'd and pointed in the middle, where there was a Piece of Iron, but is now almost quite out of Use. Some of these Bucklers cost 300 Ducats of Gold. At the Siege of *Vienna*, *John Sobieski* had one of beaten Gold fix'd to his Saddle: It had upon it the Representation of the Battle of *Kotchim* in *Basso Relievo*.

The *Poles* have a Scimiter longer and heavier than those of the *Turks*, but they don't cut so well.

The *Cossacks* are the only Persons employ'd to bring them Intelligence; of which our Author gives a pleasant Instance: One of them having catch'd a *Turk*, threw him down like a Bundle into King *John Sobieski's* Tent, went to the Treasurer for his Premium; which having receiv'd, he went back to the King's Tent, and said, *John, they have paid me, God restore it thee, and good Night*. The *Poles* know little of the Stratagems of War, or of carrying on Sieges. Till of late, they had neither main nor ordinary Guards, nor Convoy for their Foragers. Their Intrenchments were like the Tabor of the *Cossacks*. The Marches of their Army ruins the Country more than the Incursions of the Enemy: For if an Officer be only to march from *Warsaw* to *Leopol*, which is but 50 Leagues, he is sure to march to the Left and to the Right, and

make

make a long *Tour*, for they have no such thing as a *Route* appointed; so that he will spend in that Journey two or three Months, eating up the Peasants at Discretion: And if he does but come at the Time appointed, there is no Enquiry made; so that an Officer will make 5 or 6000 Francs by a small Journey.

Their RELIGION.

THE Poles were first converted in 964, in the Reign of *Miecslaus I.* as is said already in the History of his Reign. The Day of that Prince's Conversion is observ'd as an Anniversary, when the Boys dip Statues in Rivers in Memory of his Baptism. Together with Christianity, they receiv'd all the Errors and Corruptions of the then Church of Rome. Those of *Red-Russia* entertain'd the Faith of the Greek Church, which they follow in many Places to this Day, and call the Roman-Catholicks *Latins*, by way of Contempt. Some of the Greek Church in this Kingdom are call'd *Uniate*, and differ only from the Papists by having their Worship in the Greek Language. Their Priests are call'd *Popi*.

Formerly Poland swarm'd with *Anabaptists*, *Arians*, *Tritheists*, *Photinians*, *Ebionites*, *Nestorians*, and *Socinians*: The last were expelled by *John Casimir*, who obliged them by an Edict to leave the Kingdom, and allow'd them 3 Years to remove their Effects. Notwithstanding this, they were encouraged by some of the Gentry, and among others by *George Blandrata*, a Physician, till *John Sobieski* publish'd a more severe Edict, whereby the *Socinians* were immediately driven out. One Reason was, that they publish'd a Book, Entitled, *Tormentum Trinitatem Throno deturbans*.

The Lutherans are tolerated in *Polish Prussia*, the King being oblig'd to it by his Coronation-Oath. There are also some Calvinists in this Kingdom. *Nicholas Radziwil* was the first Polish Nobleman that embrac'd Calvinism, in the Reign of *Sigismundus Augustus*, and protected all of that Profession.

They have also *Armenians*, chiefly in the Towns of *Russia* and *Podolia*: They have their Worship in their own Language, but acknowledge the See of Rome. There are Jews every where in Poland; but they must

not trade within 12 Leagues of *Warsaw*. They pay about 120000 Florins per Annum to the State. In the Great Duchy of *Lithuania*, there are about 30000 *Tartars*, who are *Mahometans*, and are oblig'd to send 1200 Men Yearly to the Wars against the *Turks* and *Tartars*. There are many Pagan Idolaters on the Frontiers of *Livonia*, *Prussia* and *Samogitia*, who still retain their ancient Superstitions, whereof one is, That when any one dies, they dig up the Body of the last deceased of that Family, and cut off its Head, to prevent the Death of any more of their Friends.

The Poles are generally bigotted Papists, and formerly would make no Alliance with Protestants: So that *Uladius Jagello* rejected the Crown of *Bohemia*, because the *Hussites* had then over-run that Kingdom.

Bishops preside in the Assembly of their States, that the Church may receive no Prejudice. The lesser Clergy have Seats in all Tribunals, and the Great Secretary of the Kingdom is always a Churchman.

The Regular Clergy are more esteem'd than the Secular. Fryars-Mendicants may enter the privatest Part of any House without knocking at the Door. The Regulars there are all rich, but debauch'd, immodest, and avow'd Drunkards: Nor do their Superiors or the People rebuke them for it.

On Fast-Days, the Poles abstain from Milk, Eggs, Flesh, and boil'd Fish, at Nights only; but may drink all Day if they please. On *Fridays* and *Saturdays*, they forbear Butter, Cheese, Milk, and Eggs. On Fast-Days, they won't eat Butter or Cheese, tho' the Pope give them a Dispensation, as he did in Cardinal *Radziwiski's* Time; for which they call'd the Pope a Heretick.

The Inferior Secular Clergy never attend at the Offices of their Church, but give poor Scholars Two-pence a Day to say their Hours for them in the Quire. All the Priests here neglect their Cures, and the Bishops never correct the Inferior Clergy when they do amiss.

The Poles, at the Elevation of the Host, beat themselves, and knock their Heads against the Pavement, or the Benches where they sit, with so great Violence, that it may be heard at a considerable Distance. In Winter, the Ladies, and some of the ni-

cest Men, have Furr'd Bags in Church, to preserve their Feet from the excessive Cold. Their Churches are fine, and well adorn'd. The Jesuits of *Leopol* have a Cope they wear at Mass, so thick set with Pearls, that a Man is scarce able to bear its Weight.

Their LEARNING.

IN the Universities of *Cracow* and *Vilna*, their chief Study is to speak Latin; but they are Strangers to Polite Learning. They disregard the Oriental Languages; but are so fond of Latin, that their Servants and common People speak it fluently, and so much the more easily, that the Latin Syntax agrees with that of their Native Tongue: In every Village, they have Schoolmasters to teach it; and the Jesuits in all Towns of Note have Colleges to instruct their Youth in that Language. The Poles value themselves upon this as the greatest Improvement of Humane Nature.

Their Theology is a Mixture of *Aristotle's* Logicks and Metaphysics with School-Divinity. They talk constantly of *Quiddities*, *Modes*, *Entities*, *Substantial Forms*, and *Essences*. They quote *Albertus Magnus* upon all Occasions, and admire *Thomas Aquinas* and *Scotus*. Their Divines know little of the Scriptures, Practical Divinity, Church History, or Antiquities; but give an implicit Faith to Councils and Church Decisions.

Dr. Connor says, they have few Physicians, except Foreigners. The Gentry have little Opportunity to improve themselves at home, and none but the richer Sort can go abroad, who are generally too lazy or proud to give the necessary Application to that Study: Tho' such of the Natives as are Physicians, use some of the same Medicines that we do, they know not how to apply them. They don't use Salivation in Venereal Distempers, but pretend to cure it by sweating or Bathing in a hot Decoction of Herbs. The Poles are seldom troubled with the Scurvy or Malignant Fevers. Pleurifies are not so dangerous there as in other Countries; but they think Wounds and Ulcers in the Legs incurable.

The *Sieur de Benuplan* says, he has seen *Cossacks* sick of a Fever, who us'd no other Medicine but half a Bandaleer of Gun-

powder, dissolv'd in half a Pint of *Aqua-Vita*, mix'd well together, which they drank off, went to Bed, and rose next Morning in perfect Health. He says, others mix Ashes with *Aqua-Vita*, and it has the same Effect. Many of their Diseases proceed from Drunkenness, to which they are generally so much addicted, that they have a Proverb, *That a Man had as good drink Water, if he does not feel the Effects of drinking.*

They have had some very great Scholars however, as *Stanislaus Hossius*, Cardinal and Legate at the Council of Trent, and *Martinius a Michovia*; *Johannes Dlugossius*, *Martinus Cromerus*, and *Starowolscius*, reckon'd good Historians; *Nicholaus Copernicus*, the great Astronomer; *Martinus Smiglecius*, a Logician; *Abr. Brzovius*, the Continuator of *Baronius's* Annals; *Sorabrevius*, and *Johannes a Lasco*, a Nobleman, a famous Reformer. *Casimir* has in his Odes endeavour'd to imitate *Horace*, and his Language is not contemptible.

Their LANGUAGE.

AS the Poles have the same Origin with the Muscovites, Bohemians, Croatsians, Moravians, Silesians, Cassubians, Bulgarians, Rascians, Servians, Illyrians, &c. *Cromerus* says, they have the same Sclavonick Language, but differ so much in Dialects that they scarce understand one another. The Terms of Mechanick Arts are German, and in some Towns and Villages they speak that Language. Many of the Gentry speak French and Italian. The Polish Tongue is not copious, and very harsh, and difficult to pronounce, and abounds so with Consonants, that some Words, for Instance, *Chrzesciez*, a Gad-fly, have 7 or 8 Consonants without any Vowel; yet in speaking, they sound them with Vowels.

Of the Divison of POLAND.

IT is divided into the Kingdom of Poland and Dukedom of Lithuania, which was united to that Kingdom in 1569, by the Diet of Lublin, in the Reign of *Sigismundus Augustus*. The Kingdom of Poland contains Great and Little Poland, Red Russia, and Prussia. The Dutchy of Lithuania is divided into Lithuania, White Russia, Samogitia,





P A R T

O F

M O S C O W

POLAND.

According to y'Newest Observations
By H. Moll Geographer.

C O V Y

LITTLE
TARTARY



Polish Livonia, and Curland. These are divided into Provinces, which are subdivided into Palatinates or Governments.

GREAT POLAND.

IT is bounded on the N. W. by *Pomerania*, on the W. by the Electorate of *Brandenburgh* and *Silesia*, on the S. by Part of *Silesia*, on the S. E. by *Little Poland*, on the E. by *Mazovia*, and on the N. by *Regal Prussia*: 'Tis generally a Level and Champagne Country, has pleasant Rivers, Lakes and Ponds, and is well furnish'd with all manner of Fish and Fowl. Some Parts of *Cujavia* are more Mountainous: The Hills there abound with Sheep and other Cattle, and the Vallies have Plenty of Corn. Great Poland is so call'd, because *Lechus* chose *Gnesna*, a City belonging to this Country, for his Residence: It comprehends 3 Provinces, viz. *Poland*, properly so call'd, *Cujavia*, and *Mazovia*: The Metropolis is *Posna*, or *Posnan*, in Lat. 52 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 37. and gives Name to a Palatinate: 'Tis seated upon the River *Worta*, 10 German Miles S. W. of *Gnesna*, and 50 N. from *Cracow*. This City is famous for Trade, and for an University, founded by Bishop *John Lubrinski*. The Jesuits College is a fine Place, where Learning is much encourag'd, and the Monastery is neatly built. The People here are richer in their Apparel than in any other Place of *Poland*, except *Cracow*, to which it is not inferior in Trade, Beauty or Riches. The Inhabitants are most Papists. Here are also many Jews, who have greater Privileges than the Citizens. The Bishop is subject to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*. This City is strong, and has a good Castle: It is surrounded with a double Wall, and a deep Ditch. The Suburbs are encompass'd by a Morass and deep Lake, and are frequently laid under Water by the overflowing of the *Worta*. Other Towns of Note are, 1. *Koscien*, built among Marshes, defended with a broad and deep Ditch, and a double Wall, and lies 28 Miles from *Posnan*. 2. *Uskow*, a Wall'd Town, in a Plain, 44 English Miles from *Posnan*. 3. *Sremisk*, *Krzwin*, *Premeck*, Timber-Towns belonging to this District. 4. *Miedzycze*, on the

Confines of *Silesia*, 60 English Miles from *Posnan*: The Castle is thought impregnable, and several German Princes have found it so. 5. *Slupca*, upon the *Worta*, with a very strong Wall, and other Fortifications. 6. *Plydra*, a Wall'd Town, upon the *Worta*, 36 Miles from *Kalish*. Most Towns of this Palatinate are built of Wood, except the Publick Edifices.

The Senators are, the Bishop, Palatine and Castellani of *Posnan*, the Castellans of *Miedzycze*, *Ragozna*, *Santoc*, *Krzwin*, *Premeck*, and *Srymsk*.

The Standard and Arms of this Palatinate are, in a Field-Gules, an Eagle expanded Argent.

Of the Palatinate of KALISH.

IT has the Palatinate of *Posna* to the W. that of *Siradia* to the S. and *Lencicia* to the E. has its Name from the City of *Kalish*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, on the River *Prośnie*, which a little lower falls into the *Worta*: It is fortified with a strong Brick Wall. *Stanislaus Karnicow* founded here the stately College of Jesuits. It is 20 Miles E. from the Confines of *Silesia*, and as many N. from *Siradia*. It has the Ruins of a strong Castle, destroy'd by the *Teutonic* Knights. The other remarkable Towns are, 1. *Gnesen*, or *Gnesna*, in Lat. 52 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 38. It was formerly the Metropolis of all *Poland*, but now only of *Great Poland*: It was built by *Lechus*. In the Cathedral, there's inestimable Treasury of Gold, Silver, and curious enamell'd Vessels, left by *Sigismund III.* other Princes of *Poland*, and the Archbishops of this See; but most of it is owing to the Tomb of *St. Adelbert*, which is cover'd with Silver. The Legacies of *Henry Firley*, late Archbishop, has greatly increas'd it; for besides many costly Vessels and Priests Vestments, he gave them his own Mitre, worth 23000*l.* Sterling. The Gates of the Cathedral are of Corinthian Brass, curiously wrought: They were brought from the Grecian Monastery of *Corfuna*, in the *Taurica Chersonesus*, to *Kiow*, and from thence to this Place, by *Bolleslaus II.* In 1611, this City was burnt down, daily loses Part of its ancient Glory.

and is now only considerable for being the Seat of the Cardinal Primate. 'Tis 28 English Miles N. W. from *Kalisz*, 28 E. from *Pozna*, 132 N. W. from *Warsaw*, 120 S. from *Danzick*, and 52 from *Thorn*. 2. *Kolo*, a Timber-built Town, on the *Warta*, 20 English Miles from *Kalisz*. 3. *Land*, on the *Warta*. 4. *Naklo*, a Timber-Town, near the Lake *Goplo*, with a Wall'd Castle, situated among Marshes. 5. *Chocia*. *Andrew Lipski*, Bishop of *Cracow*, founded a Collegiate Church here, with vast Expence.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Kalisz*, and the Castellans of *Land*, *Naklo*, and *Kamin*.

The Standard and Arms of the Palatinate are, in a *Field-Argent* and *Gules*, a Buffalo's-Head eras'd *Sables*, with a Crown betwixt his Horns, all in a *Chieky*.

Of the Palatinate of SIRADIA.

IT has *Silesia* on the W. and *Little Poland* on the S. and S. E. *Kalisz* on the N. and *Lencicia* on the E. The chief Town is *Sirad*, 24 English Miles S. from *Kalisz*, and 40 S. W. from *Lencicia*. It is situated upon the River *Warta*, fortified with a strong Brick Wall and a Castle: The Houses are of Wood, very mean, and low. This City, and the Territories about it, was made formerly a Dukedom, and was usually given to the King's Second Son. Other Towns of Note are, 1. *Petricow*, 28 English Miles E. from *Sirad*, and 16 English Miles N. from the Frontiers of *Lesser Poland*. 'Tis situated in a Fenny Place, but is a neat well-built City. The Diet of *Poland* sits once *per Ann.* here, as does one of the Great Tribunals in the Suburbs. In 1640, this City was burnt down. The King had a Palace here, which is now gone to Decay. 2. *Vielum*, which borders on *Silesia*. 'Tis not equal in Beauty to the other Cities of these Parts, tho' its Houses are of Brick. A great Part of it was burnt in 1656, during the *Swedish War*; but 'twas afterwards repair'd. 3. *Rospirza*, seated among Marshes. 4. *Spicimir* built of Wood. 5. *Wort*, built on a River of the same Name. 6. *Lusk*, where *Johannes Las-*

cus, Archbishop of *Gnesna*, founded a Church, and richly endow'd it at his own Charge. 7. *Ostresow*, built of Timber, on the Borders of *Silesia*, and encompass'd with Woods.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Sirad*, the Castellans of *Rospirza*, *Spicimir*, and *Konarzew*.

The Arms of this Palatinate are, in a *Field-Vert*, a *Lion-Gules*, and *Engle-Sables*, both Counter-coup'd in the middle.

Of the Palatinate of RAVA.

IT is situated between *Lesser Poland*, *Masovia*, *Cujavia*, and the Palatinate of *Lanschet*. It is so called from its principal Town *Rava*, on the River of that Name, 60 Miles S. W. from *Warsaw*, and 44 S. from *Ploczko*: It is built for the most part of Wood, and tolerably populous. Prisoners of Quality, and Part of the Revenues of the Crown, are kept in the Castle. In this City the Jesuits have a College, much visited by Learned Men.

Other Towns are, 1. *Lowitz*, more populous than the former, and lies 20 English Miles from it. The Castle is surrounded by the River *Bsure*. The Archbishop of *Gnesna* has his ordinary Residence in his Palace built here among the Marshes. The Church is a beautiful Structure. In this City are many great Fairs, frequented by Merchants from all Places. 2. *Volhovia*, a populous Town, where the Bishop of *Cujavia* has his Palace. 3. *Gombin*, a large Town, built with Timber. 4. *Sochaczow*, defended with Palisadoes, and a Castle built on a Rock. 5. *Gostinin*, built of Wood, among Marshes. *Demetrius Zukki*, Czar of *Muscovy*, was imprison'd and dy'd here. 6. *Viasdum*, remarkable for its Strength, and the Beauty of its Castle: It lies near *Rava* to the W.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Rava*, and the Castellans of *Gostinin* and *Sochaczow*.

The Standard and Arms are, in a *Field-Gules*, an *Engle-Sable*, with the Letter R. on his Breast.

The Palatinate of LENCICIA, or LANSCHET.

IT is situated betwixt *Rava* to the S. E. *Siradia* to the S. W. *Kalish* to the W. and *Little Poland* to the S. The chief Town is *Lenicia*, seated upon the River *Bure*, among Lakes. It has a Castle built upon a Rock, is encompass'd with a Ditch and Brick Wall, and has a great Fair once a Year. It was burnt in 1656. 'Tis about 10 English Miles from the River *Warta*, and 40 Miles S. E. from *Gnesna*. One of the little Diets meets here. *Orlow*, is built of Timber, seated among Lakes, and is 16 Miles from *Lanschet*. *Piantkum*, built among Marshes, on the Banks of the River *Bure*, Beer is transported from this Place all the Kingdom over. Here is also a Monastery. *Uniejovia*, has a famous Castle, founded on the *Worta*.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Lanschet*, and the Castellans of *Bresina*, *Inowlacz*, and *Biechovia*.

Their Arms are, in a Field-Gules, an Eagle-Argent, and Lion-Sables, both Counter-coup'd in the middle, and the latter Crown'd Or.

The Province of CUJAVIA.

IT has *Masovia* on the E. *Kalish* on the S. and *Regal Prussia* on the N. It contains two Palatinates, viz. *Brzestye*, which lies to E. and S. and *Inowladyslaw*, or *Inowlacz*, to the S.

The Palatinate of BRZESTYE.

THIS Palatinate is so call'd from *Brzestye*, a small Town, 16 English Miles W. from the *Weissel*, 32 S. from *Thorn*, and 40 from *Lenicia*. It is situated in Fenny Ground, is built of Brick, and Wood inter-laid, and defended with a very strong Wall, and deep Ditch. Other Towns are, 1. *Uladyslaw*, the chief Town of the Province of *Cujavia*, lies upon the *Weissel*, and is the Seat of the Bishop of this Province, and of *Pomeran*, who have been under the Arch-

bishop of *Gnesna* since 1173. The Cathedral is a sorry old fashion'd Building, but well furnish'd with Plate, rich Ornaments, and Relicks. The Houses are generally of Brick, and it has a Castle indifferently fortified. *Matthias Golanciew*, 42 Years Bishop of this See, built a stately Palace here, and founded the Church of St. *Vital* the Martyr. This City lies betwixt *Thorn* and *Poloczko*, 20 English Miles S. W. from the first, and 20 S. E. from the latter, 60 Miles N. E. from *Gnesna*, and 88 S. E. from *Warsaw*. 2. *Cruswie*, upon the North Bank of the Lake *Goplo*: It has a Brick Castle in the middle of the Lake, to which *Papiet* retir'd, and was destroy'd by Mice and Rats, as a Punishment from Heaven for poisoning his Relations in a Banquet. It is next to *Gnesna* for Antiquity. Upon the same Shore with *Uladyslaw*, and not far from it, lies, 3. *Niesowia*, a Wall'd Town. 4. *Radziew*, built of Timber, near a very great Lake. The Diets of this Palatinate, and of *Inowladyslaw*, are kept in this Town. 5. *Kosnow*, which has a strong Castle. 6. *Kowalew*, built of Timber, among Marshes.

This Palatinate is very fertile, and abounds with all Sorts of Grain, which not only suffices the Inhabitants, but is transported in vast Quantities to *Dantzick* by several navigable Rivers.

The Senators are, the Bishop of *Uladyslaw*, the Palatine and Castellan of *Brzestye*, and the Castellans of *Cruswie* and *Cowal*.

The Arms are, in a Field-Or, an Eagle-Gules, and Lion-Sables, Counter-coup'd in the middle.

The Territory of *Dobrzin* is separated from *Cujavia* by the *Weissel*, and is so call'd from the chief Town of that Name, on the River *Weissel*, betwixt *Poloczko* and *Uladyslaw*: 'Tis fortified with Palisadoes, and is seated on a Hill. It had formerly a Castle, and was given to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order by the Duke of *Masovia*.

The Palatinate of INOWLA- DISLOW.

IT has *Prussia* on the N. *Brzestye* on the S. E. the *Weissel* on the E. and *Kalish* on the S. It contains the Territories of *Bydgosz*, *Petro*,

Bebro, and *Nowolacz*: This Palatinate sends to the Diet of Poland, besides the Palatine, 4 Castellans, viz. of *Nowolacz*, *Bydgosz*, and *Czanow*; the chief Town is *Nowolacz*, on the River *Notec*: It is little, but has a strong Castle, and lies 28 English Miles W. from *Uladislaw*. *Bydgosz* is a Wall'd Town, on the River *Barde*, by which all Sorts of Merchandize are brought to it from the *Weissel*. It has a good Trade in Salmon.

The Province of MASOVIA.

THIS Province had Dukes of its own till 1526, that, by the Death of its Duke, is fell to the Kings of Poland, who now reside frequently there: It has *Lithuania* on the E. *Prussia* on the N. *Great Poland* on the W. and *Little Poland* on the S. It contains three Palatinates. It was subjected to Poland by *Casimir the Great*. 'Tis said, there are 40000 Nobles in this Province, and that 15000 of them met at the Election of *Sigismund III*.

The Palatinate of MASOVIA.

IT has *Polachia* on the E. and *Ducal Prussia* on the N. and is very fruitful in Corn. *Warsaw* is the chief City, seated upon the *Weissel*, in Lat. 52, Long. 39 $\frac{1}{2}$, in the very Center of the Polish Dominions: It is encompass'd with a double Wall, and deep Ditch. The Diet of Poland meets here, and the King keeps his Court in a large Palace built by *Sigismund III* and beautified by his Successors. The Wooden Bridge over the River is of admirable Workmanship. St. John Baptist's Church here is a fine Structure. In the Suburb call'd *Cracow* there's built, as a Trophy of the Victory over the *Muscovites*, a small Chapel, for the Sepulchre of *Joannes Demetrius Zucki*, *Czar* of *Moscovy*, who, with his two Brothers, died in the Castle of *Gostinin*. It lies 12 English Miles N. E. from the Borders of *Little Poland*, 96 E. from *Lencicia*, 132 E. from *Gnesna*, 160 from *Pesna*, 116 S. E. from *Thorn*, 96 N. from *Lublin*, and 160 N. from *Cracow*. In the Neighbourhood of this Place, the Kings of Poland are elected in the Fields; the No-

bility have their Tents, and are encamp'd during that Time. Merchant Goods are brought by a River from the neighbouring Provinces, and from hence to *Dantzick*. This City was taken by the *Swedes* in 1655. Other Towns of Note are, 1. *Czersko*, 40 English Miles S. from *Warsaw*, upon the River *Weissel*. 2. *Wisna*, in a Plain, near the River *Narew*, with a Castle on an adjoining Hill. 3. *Wissigrod*, built of Timber, on a Plain, has a strong Castle, and lies 48 English Miles from *Warsaw*. 4. *Ciekanow*, at the like Distance from *Warsaw*, and has a strong Castle in the middle of a Morass. 5. *Lombae*, on the River *Narew*, handsomely built, and about 96 English Miles from *Warsaw*. 6. *Rdzan*, in a Plain, near the River *Narew*. 7. *Liw*, built of Timber, with a Castle, on the Banks of the River *Limejecz*. 8. *Pulawia*, the Bishop of *Plosko*'s Residence: The Houses are of Brick; the Castle is strong, and the Publick Edifices stately. 9. *Akroczim*, built with Timber, on the *Weissel*, with a good Castle, 32 English Miles from *Warsaw*. 10. *Varka*, a large Town, near the River *Pilecz*, about 32 English Miles from *Warsaw*. 11. *Blonye*, 16 Miles from *Warsaw*. 12. *Pultowsko*, a Wall'd Town, with a Castle, on the River *Narew*. 13. *Tarcin*, 20 English Miles from *Warsaw*. 14. *Grodzyec*, 28 English Miles from *Warsaw*, and 8 from *Tarcin*. 15. *Prasnia*, a large Town, with many fair Edifices of Stone.

The Palatine of *Masovia*, the Castellans of *Cyrna*, *Warsaw*, *Wissigrod*, *Wisna*, *Liw*, *Ciekanow*, and *Zakroczin*, are the Senators of this Palatinate.

The Arms are, in a Field Gules, an Eagle expanded Argent.

The Palatinate of PLOCZKO.

IT lies E. from *Masovia*, between the *Weissel* and *Ducal Prussia*, and has its Name from *Ploczko*, the chief City, seated on a high Bank of the *Weissel*, from whence there's a Prospect of a pleasant and fruitful Country: It is a Bishop's See, and very populous: It has Churches very well endow'd, besides the Cathedral, and also many Religious Houses, especially the Abbey of the *Benedictines* in the Suburbs, where they keep the

the Head of *St. Sigismund* in a Gold Shrine, given by *Sigismund III.* The Church is dedicated to him. It has a Castle, on the *Weissel*, and lies 56 English Miles S. W. from *Warsaw*, 36 S. E. from *Thorn*, and 40 N. E. from *Lencicia*. This City is enrich'd by the *Weissel*, which is navigable here. The other Towns are; 1. *Sieprez*, built with Timber, among Marshes, 20 English Miles from *Plockow*. 2. *Srensko*, also of Timber, with a Castle: It lies among Bogs, 40 Miles from *Plockow*. 3. *Mlaw*, on the Confines of *Prussia*, seated on a River of the same Name, 40 English Miles from *Plockow*. 4. *Radzanow*, a Timber Town, on the River *Ukra*, with a Castle, on a Rock.

The Senators are, the Bishop, the Palatines and Castellans of *Plockow*, the Castellans of *Sieprez* and *Radzanow*.

The Arms are, in a Field Gules, an Eagle expanded Sables, with a P. on the Breast.

The Palatinate of DOBRINA.

IT lies towards the W. between *Cujavia* and *Prussia*, and abounds with all Sorts of Fruit and Fish. *Dobrina* is the chief Town, built of Timber, on the *Weissel*: The Castle was demolish'd by the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. The other Towns are; 1. *Ripin*, 20 English Miles from *Dobrina*, on the River *Odlek*. 2. *Slask*, on the *Weissel*, 8 Miles from *Dobrina*. 3. *Gorzno*, a Town, built of Wood, and strong both by Nature and Art. This Palatinate was formerly the Cause of many Quarrels betwixt the *Teutonic* Knights and *Poland*.

The Senators are, the Castellans of *Dobrina*, *Ripin*, and *Slonsk*.

The Arms are, in a Field Gules, a Man's Head Proper, doubly Crown'd Or and Argent.

The Palatinate of POLACHIA.

IT has *Lithuania* to the E. and *Masovia* proper to the W. and was united to the Crown of *Poland* in 1369. The Chief Town is *Bielsko*, on the River *Biel*, with the Fortifications and Castle of Timber, formerly,

burnt by Lightning. It has *Gradus* on the N. and *Bresle* on the S. Other Towns are, *Mielnik*, *Digitzin*, and *Tykotin*, where they coin Money, and keep the King's Treasure.

LITTLE POLAND.

HAS Part of *Hungary*, and the Mountains of *Crapack*, on the S. *Silesia* on the W. and *Great Poland* on the N. from some Part of which it is separated by the River *Warta*, and from others by the *Pulcna*. It has *Red Russia* on the E. and contains three Palatinates; viz. *Cracow*, *Sandomir*, and *Lublin*; is about 50 German Leagues in Length, and as many in Breadth. This Country was formerly overgrown with vast Forests, in which Robbers skulk'd, and laid many Places under Contribution. In 1450, *Casimir* call'd an Assembly of the Nobles of *Little Poland*, to consider of Ways and Means to suppress them; but not being then satisfied with *Casimir's* Title to the Crown, they did not fall in with his Proposals, by which the Robbers increas'd in Number and Boldness; and under the Conduct of two Noblemen, *Casco Szeborauski*, and *John*, his Brother, they fortified the Mountain *Zeborze*, near *Oswnikim*, and other Places, where they intrench'd, and great Numbers of *Russians* joining them, they were not suppress'd without great Bloodshed and Hazard. The chief City of *Little Poland* is *Cracow*.

The Palatinate of CRACOW.

IT has *Silesia* on the W. the Palatinate of *Sandomir* on the E. *Hungary* on the S. and *Siradia* on the N. It takes Name from *Cracow*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, 36 English Miles E. from the Confines of *Silesia*, 86 S. W. from *Sandomir*, 44 from the Borders of *Upper Hungary*, 100 S. W. from *Warsaw*, 140 S. E. from *Breslavia*, 120 W. from *Olmutz*, 160 N. E. from *Vienna*, and 200 from *Budapest*. It is in Lat. 50, and Long. 38. Some think it to be the *Coradunum* of *Ptolomy*. It is seated on a Rocky Bank of the *Weissel*, and is the largest and best built City in *Poland*; the Houtheart of Bre-Stone,

4 or 5 Stories high, cover'd with Boards. There are many *Italian* and *German* Merchants here, who import such Foreign Goods as the Country needs: 'Tis very Populous, and divided into 4 Parts; 1. *Cracow*, or the Ancient City. 2. *Czimiria*, join'd to the other Parts by a Wooden Bridge over the *Weissel*. 3. *Stradonia*, which lies betwixt *Cracow* and the Bridge. 4. *Cleperia*. The King's Palace is on the Top of an high Hill, and overlooks both City and Country. It was rebuilt by *Sigismund* the Elder, who added the Gallery on the North Side, which has one of the best Prospects in *Europe*. The University of *Cracow* was first begun by *Casimir the Great*, finish'd by *Uladiassau Jagello*, in Performance of the last Will of his Queen *Hedwig*, and had its Privileges confirm'd by Pope *Urban*. All Sorts of Learning are taught here, and it contains 11 Colleges. In 1549, the Students left the University, because the Magistrates would not punish the Servants of *Andrew Czarnickowski*, who had murder'd many of the Scholars. They dispers'd themselves over *Germany*, where they learn'd the *Lutheran* Principles, and on their Return, spread them all over *Poland*. There are 14 Grammar Schools in the City, and University Learning is taught in some of them. *Cracow* was made an Archbishoprick when Christianity was first planted here: But, 100 Years after, *Lampert Zula* refusing to receive his Pall from the Pope, as his Predecessors had done, it was degraded into a Bishoprick. In the Reign of *Boleslaus the Chast*, which began in 1226, a Contest arising betwixt two Bishop of this See, and the Bishop of *Breslaw*, about Precedency, the Bishop of *Cracow*, upon his Submission, was restor'd to the Dignity of an Archbishop; which lasted only during his Life. At this Time, the Bishops of *Cracow* wear an Archbishop's Pall, set richly with Jewels; which is the only Relique they have of their ancient Honour. The Streets are badly pav'd, tho' broad and straight. The Market Place is one of the greatest in *Europe*, and has a stately Church dedicated to the Virgin: Those of the Jesuits and Dominicans are very fine, and well built. The Cathedral is within the Castle, but neither great, nor of good Architecture: 'Tis re-

markable for being the Sepulchre of the Kings of *Poland*, and the Place of their Coronation. The Reliques of *St. Stanislaus*, once Bishop of this See, to whom it is dedicated, are kept there. This Saint is the Patron of the *Poles*; and being murder'd, in 1079, in this Church, by *Boleslaus the Bold*, the Kings of *Poland* go to his Shrine upon Foot, in Procession, with all the Nobility, the Day before the Coronation; which they do to expiate that cruel Action. *Sigismund III.* and *Uladiassau VII.* offer'd on that Tomb many Gold and Silver Vessels. *Sigismund I.* built a Silver Altar over it, with Golden Crucifixes, and many Vestments embroider'd with Jewels of all Sorts; so that this Cathedral is remarkable for its Chapter and Treasury. There are 50 other Churches in the Town and Castle. The Archbishop of *Cracow* is the Chancellor of the University.

The Castellain here has the Precedency of the Palatine, and takes Place of all the Lay Senators of the Kingdom: The Reason is, because a former Palatine deserted King *Boleslaus* in the *Muscovite* War; as has been already mention'd. *Cracow* was taken by the *Swedes* in 1655, but was retaken in 1657.

Dr. Comor gives this Account of the Salt Mines near *Cracow*: The Depth is about 300 Geometrical Paces: One can scarce go over all the Alleys and Passages of them in a Week's Time: There are sometimes such fierce Winds in 'em, that nothing can withstand them; and the Cold, in general, is hardly to be endur'd. The Yearly Revenue of these Mines is about 400000 *French* Livres; of which 50000 go to the King, 10000 to the Queen, and some Thousands more to the Officers of the Crown: Besides which, the Proprietor is oblig'd to make a Yearly Present to all the Cities of *Poland*, and to their Starosta's. They were discover'd in 1548. There are 4 Kinds of Salt here; one is extream hard and rocky, like Christal; another less hard, and clearer; a third white and pure, but brittle and softer: They are all brackish; but the fourth is somewhat fresher. In these Mines, there's on one Side a Stream of Salt Water, and on the other one of Fresh. There are some Places in these Mines where none can work, because they dare not

not carry a Candle for fear of setting the Vapours on Fire; which being nitrous, are easily inflam'd.

Other Towns in this Palatinate are; 1. *Zator*, upon the *Weissel*, 24 English Miles W. from *Cracow*, and 20 from the Confines of *Silesia*: It has a strong Castle, and gives Name to a Dutchy. 2. *Severil*, which gives Name also to a Dutchy, has a strong Castle, and Mines of Silver and Lead. 3. *Biecz*, a Wall'd Town, water'd by the River *Rapa*, a Branch of the *Weissel*, of the Froth of which they make Sulphur: It is 60 English Miles from *Cracow*. 4. *Wojnicz*, built of Timber, on the River *Dnaniex*, 36 English Miles from *Cracow*. 5. *Sandecz*, a Wall'd Town, on the former River, 44 English Miles from *Cracow*. It has a Collegiate Church, with several Monasteries, and its Inhabitants are Industrious. 6. *Lelaw*, surrounded with an old Wall, and has a strong Castle on a Hill, with a Palace and Gardens after the *Italian* Manner: 'Tis seated on the River *Lelaw*, 44 English Miles from *Cracow*. 7. *Oswieczin*, upon the *Weissel*, the Capital of the Dutchy of the same Name, built of Timber, among Marshes, with a Wooden Castle, plaster'd only with Clay: It is 28 English Miles from *Cracow*, and 12 from the Borders of *Silesia*, to which it formerly belong'd; but since 1454, it has been possess'd by the *Poles*. 8. *Czestochowa*, famous for good Beer, transported to most Places of *Poland*, and the neighbouring Countries of *Germany*. Without this Place, stands a famous Monastery, where they have a Picture of the Virgin *Mary*, said to be painted by *St. Luke*, to which Pilgrims come from all Places and make their Offerings. It has vast Quantities of Gold and Silver Plate, many rich Ornaments for Altars, and Habits set with all Sorts of Jewels, and particularly Pearl. Not only great Families give large Gifts to this Convent, but the Commons impoverish themselves to enrich it. The Monks are Masters of a great Territory near it, and maintain a Garison of 300 Men, which are in a better Condition than any other Soldiers of the Republick. In a Word, this is the *Loretto* of *Poland*. 9. *Slawcovia*, in the same Dutchy, famous for Silver Mines. 10. N. of *Cracow*, lies

Proszowice, built of Timber: The King has a Palace here, on the Banks of the River *Saxeniorva*. 11. *Ilkusk*, 20 English Miles from *Cracow* to the W. is famous for Mines of Silver and Lead. This Town is encompass'd with a Wall of Brick. Their Bread is extraordinary good, and their Beer the best in *Poland*. 12. *Wielickz*, and *Bochna*, remarkable for Quarries of excellent Rock-Salt. These two Mines were discover'd in 1252. This is the only Province in *Poland* that has Metals and Minerals; and besides those already mention'd, has Marble, Salt-Petre, Vitriol, Brass, and Gold.

The Philosophical Transactions of the English Royal Society, N. 61, P. 1099. give this Account of the Salt-Gemme-Mines of *Wilickz*: The Mines are below the Town, out of which they dig and cut three Sorts of Salt; one common, coarse, and black; another somewhat finer and whiter; the 3d very white and clear, like Christal. The coarse and black is cut out in great Pieces, 3 Polish Ells long, and one thick, which cost from 50 to 70 Polish Florins; but the Inhabitants of *Cracow* have them at 8 Florins a-piece. They lay the greatest Pieces before their Doors, that their Cattle may lick them. They use Mills and other Engines for grinding it. The Mine belongs to the King, and is one of the best Branches of his Revenue. 1000 Men are constantly employ'd in these Mines. The Horses that work below Ground grow blind by the Sharpness of the Salt. This Salt-work has beneath it several Salt Springs, whence the Salt Water is convey'd by Channels to the Places where it is boyl'd to Salt.

The Mineral Salt-work at *Bochna* is not so well order'd as the former.

The Senators of this Province are, the Bishop, Castellan, and Palatine of *Cracow*; the Castellans of *Wounitz*, *Oswieczin*, *Sandecz*, and *Biecz*. The King names the Mayor of *Cracow*, who was a *Scotts-man* when *Dr. Connor* was there.

The Arms are, in a Field Gules, an Eagle expanded Argent, Crown'd Or, with a Baton cross its Wings of the Second.

In this Palatinate, there is a particular Sort of *Manna*, which they gather in May and June, and sweep it off the Grass, with

Hh

Sieves,

Sieves, together with the Dew. They eat this *Manna*, and make several Dishes of it for their Table.

The Palatinate of SENDOMIR.

IT has *Red Russia*, and the Palatinate of *Lublin*, on the E. *Mazovia* and *Great Poland* on the N. the Palatinate of *Cracow* on the W. and *Hungary* on the S. It has its Name from *Sendomir*, the chief Town, upon the Bank of the *Weissel*, where that River receives the *San*, and has a strong Castle. This City was sack'd by the *Tartars* in 1240, taken by the *Suedes* in 1655, and retaken the following Year: 'Tis 112 *English Miles* N. E. from *Cracow*, and 128 S. from *Warsaw*. The Fortifications and Castle were built by *Casimir the Great*, who died of a Surfeit, by eating too liberally of the Fruits of this Country, which are reckon'd the fairest and best in *Poland*. The *Affizes* are kept here by the Magistrates of the Palatinate. Other Towns are, 1. *Kunow*, famous for its Marble. 2. *Schydłowicz*, which has store of Iron and Steel in its Neighbourhood: It formerly belong'd to the Dukes of *Radziwil*, and is encompassed with an old Wall: The Castle is pretty well fortified. 3. *Opatow*, 16 *English Miles* from *Sendomir*, in a pleasant Country, and wash'd by the River *Pilcza*. 4. *Viasden*, a new built Town, which has a good Trade, and is well fortified. 5. *Radom*, Capital of that District, built in a Plain, surrounded with strong Walls, and other Fortifications. 6. *Jedlink*, famous for a School, and a well built Church. 7. *Solecia*, on the *Weissel*, has a noted Castle, which was repair'd and beautified by its ancient Duke *Christopher Zborawius*. 8. *Ilza*, a neat Town, built with Brick, belonging to the Bishop of *Cracow*: It is remarkable for Earthen Ware, with which it furnishes all *Poland*. The Castle is an old Building; but the Bishop's Palace is new, and very stately. 9. *Rozentin*, which has great Plenty of Iron: It belongs also to the Bishop of *Cracow*, who has a House and pleasant Garden here: 'Tis beautiful, and well fortified, and lies near the bottom of *Mons Calvus*, which is by much the highest in *Poland*. 10. W. from this

Town lies *Kielcz*, famous for Mines of Copper, and *Lapis Lazuli*. The Bishop of *Cracow* has a fair Collegiate Church here. 11. *Chencin*, 12 *English Miles* from *Kielcz*: It abounds with Lead, Marble, and Silver, belongs to the King, and has a Castle on a Rock. Justice is administred here to the District. 12. *Malagofsch*, noted for being a Castellany, and is built of Wood. 13. *Stenzicz*, Capital of the District of that Name: It has a stately Monastery of *Benedictine Monks*. 14. *Slupiecz*, situate also at the Foot of *Mons Calvus*; at the Top of which is the Abbey of the *Holy Cross*. 15. *Racovia*, formerly a Nest of *Socinians* and *Photinians*, and the Center of their Religion: It was pretty populous, and had a considerable Academy to instruct Youths, which was prohibited, on Account of their Errors, by a publick Edict. 16. *Cortzin*, Capital of the District of the same Name, a new Town, built with Timber: It has a Castle, lies near the River *Wislock*, and is surrounded with Marshes. 17. *Wislicz*, on the River *Nida*, built of Wood, and situated on a Rock: The Cathedral is built of square Stone, with beautiful Cloysters for the Canons. The adjacent Country abounds with all sorts of Serpents and Insects; but the ignorant Inhabitants say, that being interdicted by the See of *Rome*, they have no Power to do any Harm. When they are transported elsewhere, they immediately die. 18. *Pilzno*, a Timber Town, on the River *Wislock*. 19. *Bolowicz*, also built of Timber, among the Hills, and is a Castellany. 20. *Zawichoff*, also of Wood, lies on the *Weissel*, and has a Castle, with a double Wall, on the other Side of the River: 'Tis likewise a Castellany. 21. *Zaslisin*, famous for a considerable Market. 22. *Lexaick*, has a noted Monastery, where they pretend several Reliques are miraculously kept, which draw thither great Crouds of People from all Parts.

The Senators are, the Castellan and Palatine of *Sendomir*, and the Castellans of *Wielicz*, *Radom*, *Zarnow*, *Sechow*, *Polewicz*, *Malagofsch*, and *Zawichoff*.

The Arms are, *Party per Pale Argent* and *Azure*; in the 1st 3 Bars *Gules*, and in the 2d 3 Stars *Sables*, two and one.

The Palatinate of LUBLIN.

THIS Palatinate was taken out of that of *Sandomir* by *Casimir Jagellonides*, because too big for one Palatinate: It has adjoining to it the Territory of *Lucovia*, which contains near 2000 Gentlemens Houses. This Palatinate, and the other two, is the Diocefe of *Cracow*, which comprehends 1018 Churches, 13 of which are Collegiate. It has *Red Russia* and *Sandomir* on the S. E. and *Masovia* on the N. It takes Name from the chief City, *Lublin*, 20 *English* Miles from the Frontiers of *Red Russia*, 96 S. from *Warsaw*, 48 W. from *Chehn*, 144 N. E. from *Cracow*, 56 N. from *Sandomir*, in Long. 42, and Lat. 51 $\frac{1}{2}$. It is a well-built City, and pleasant, but not large. The Morasses about it are a greater Fortification than its Walls. *Casimir the Great* Wall'd it, and the *Russians* built the adjoining Castle. The great Church was built by *Lesius the Black*, upon a Conquest obtain'd over the *Lithuanians* near this Place: He dedicated it to *St. Michael*, who they say appear'd before the Castle. *St. Bridget's* Monastery was founded by *Uladislaus Jagello*. Two Courts of Judicature are kept in *Lublin*, from which there's no Appeal, except to the Diet of *Poland*. It lies on the River *Ryszticz*, and is a Place of great Trade, and frequented by *Turkish*, *Armenian*, *Muscovite* and *German* Merchants, especially at the four Yearly Fairs, of a Month's continuance each. The *Jews* possess the Suburbs. Other Towns of Note are, 1. *Casimir*, a very fair Wooden City, with a beautiful Palace, built by *Henry Firleius*, Archbishop of *Gnesna*, and adorn'd with delightful Gardens. 2. *Urzendow*, a large Town, built of Timber, on a Lake, 28 *English* Miles from *Lublin*. 3. *Lulow*, Capital of the Territory of *Leucovia*, defended partly by Bogs, and partly by Palisadoes, 56 *English* Miles from *Lublin*: It has a considerable Jurisdiction. 4. *Parkow*, also built of Wood, near a very large Lake, 36 Miles from *Lublin*.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Lublin*.

The Arms are, in a *Field-Gules*, a *Stag Passant Argent*, Collar'd Or.

RED RUSSIA.

OTHERWISE call'd *Roxalania*, from the ancient Inhabitants: The Southerly Boundaries are a Part of *Hungary*, *Transylvania*, *Moldavia*, and *Bessarabia*; on the N. *Polesia*; on the W. *Little Poland*; and on the E. the Desarts of *Little Tartary*. It abounds in Corn, Beasts of all kinds, Fish, and Honey. There are Trees found in the Banks of the River *San* very hard, and black as Ebony. The Country People say, they have lain there since the Deluge; but it is probable they have been wash'd down by the Course of the River many Years ago. The Capital is *Leopol*, or *Lemberg* according to the *Germans*; but the *Poles* call it *Lnow*, or *Lunow*: 'Twas call'd *Leopolis*, because founded by Prince *Leo* about 1289. It was made an Archbishoprick in 1414. It is built among Hills, on the River *Peltew*, and is a Place of Strength, with two Castles, one within, and the other without the Walls, on a high Mountain. It lies in Lat. 49 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 42 $\frac{1}{2}$. 60 Miles N. from the *Carpathian* Mountains, 60 N. E. from *Premislaw*, 160 E. from *Cracow*, 200 S. E. from *Warsaw*, and 120 N. W. from *Gaminiec*. It was besieg'd in vain in 1648 by *Chmielnicz*, the General of the *Cossacks*, with an Army of 120000 Men. In 1672, the *Turks* took it, but quitted it again by Treaty. It has lost much of its ancient Splendour, being impoverish'd, as the whole Province is, by the Civil Wars, and the Incurfions of the *Turks* and *Tartars*. Many *Turkish*, *Moldavian*, *Armenian*, and *Greek* Merchants, reside here, and drive a considerable Trade. This City gives great Encouragement to Learned Men, who are very civilly entertain'd by their Academy, which is supply'd with Professors from that of *Cracow*. The River *Roxalania* is near it, where are taken Barbels of a great Size. It has likewise a vast Number of Fish-Ponds, full of several sorts of fat Fish, which are salted, and transported all over *Poland*. The Churches are generally fair, and well built, and abound with costly Ornaments. 2. *Godeck*, a Pallisado'd City, with a Castle, built in a Plain, and surrounded with Bogs: It lies

H h 2

about

about 10 English Miles from Leopold. 3. *Jaworsko*, famous for a natural Bath in a neighbouring Village, which disperses several stubborn Distempers, as *Sixtus Leo*, a Physician of great Experience, testifies in his Treatise concerning it. 4. *Zolkiew*, a Town defended by a Castle, has many pleasant Gardens, and a Church built with various sorts of Marble. This City was the Seat of *John Sobieski*. The Arms of this District are, in a *Field-Azure*, a *Lion-Passant*, Crown'd Or, by a *Rock-Sablas*.

Other Towns are, 1. *Premislaw*, upon the River *San*, a Bishop's See, with a Castle, on a Hill: It is a pleasant and populous City, and lies in Lat. 49½, and Long. 41. 48 English Miles N. from the Borders of Hungary, 40 Miles E. from the Frontiers of the *Lesser Poland*, and 64 S. E. from *Sandomir*. They have one Bishop of the Russian Church. The Jesuits have a College here. The Citizens are addicted to Trade. Near this City the King has a Park, full of all kinds of Wild-Beasts; and the Country has many Castles, for fear of the *Tartars*. 2. *Chelm*, an Episcopal See, 40 English Miles E. from *Lublin*, 96 N. from *Premislaw*, and 48 N. from *Beltz*. It has been oft laid waste of late by the *Tartars* and *Turks*. It is of no great Compaſs, has a Castle of Wood, and is the Capital City of a Territory of the same Name, which has *Volhinia* to the E. *Little Poland* to the W. *Lithuania* to the N. and *Bielza* to the S. 3. *Krasnoslaw*, on the River *Wieprz*, 20 English Miles S. W. from *Chelm*, and 20 S. E. from *Lublin*. It is a strong, tho' small Town. 4. *Sambor*, a Palisado'd City, with a Castle, upon the River *Tyrra*, near the Borders of Hungary. 5. *Jaroslaw*, famous for a Fair on *Lady-day*, which is the most celebrated in Poland. Goods are brought hither from *Persia*, *Constantinople*, *Venice*, *Moscow*, and *Amsterdam*. They say, there is usually brought hither above 400000 Black Cattle, and 200000 Horses. The Jesuits have a College here, and without there is a stately Nunnery of modern Architecture. The Castle is seated on the River *San*. 6. *Lancut*, noted for several magnificent Churches, founded by *Ladislaus Ludomirski*, Palatine of *Cracow*: It has a Castle well fortified, as a Security against

the *Tartars*. 7. *Resovia*, which has a good Castle, many Monasteries, and a Fair on the Feast of *St. Albert*. This Town is famous for a Linen Manufactory, manag'd by *Germans*, whose Ancestors were taken Prisoners by *Casimir the Great*, and settled in and about this Place.

The Arms of the District of *Premislaw* are, in a *Field-Azure*, an *Engle* expanded with two Heads, both Crown'd Or.

HALICZ, is the Metropolis of a District of that Name, which is encompass'd towards the W. with the Mountains of *Transylvania*; on the S. by the Beech Woods of *Transylvania*: Towards the E. it is divided in two Parts by the *Nieſter*, a rapid River, which has its Rise among the *Carpathian Mountains*. The S. Division of this District is call'd *Pocutze*, or *Potutze*. *Halicz* was formerly the Metropolis of the Russian Kingdom, then divided into several Tetrarchies, each of which had its proper Duke. It is a large Town, built with Timber, and separated from *Moldavia* by the River *Prut*, and on the other Side wash'd by the *Nieſter*. The Inhabitants are Boorish, and more inclin'd to Husbandry than Trade. Other Towns are, 1. *Coloni*, near the River *Prut*: It is much frequented on Account of its fine Salt, with which it furnishes all the rest of *Russia* and *Lithuania*, there being none in those two Provinces, except in the District of *Premislaw*. All over this Country there are deep Wells, whose Waters are boil'd up into Salt. 2. *Martinow*, with a Castle, situated among Marshes. 3. *Dolina*, seated among Hills. 4. *Podock*, on the other Side of the *Nieſter*, defended by a Castle, and has a fair Monastery, built by *Stephen Potucina*, Palatine of *Breclaw*, who is buried here. 5. *Brezana*, a populous Town, with a Castle, on a Hill. 6. *Buczavia*, or *Buzko*, built among Marshes, near the Spring of the River *Bug*, by which Goods are carried to *Lemberg*. 7. *Sanock*, is another District of *Red Russia*, near the Mountains of Hungary and *Transylvania*. The Town of *Sanock* lies near the River *San*, and has a Castle, pretty strong, founded on a Rock. 8. *Croſna*, the Staple of Hungary, whither they bring all their Metchandize and Wines.

There

Therefore the Marts and Fairs here are more celebrated than those of their Neighbourhoods. The Jesuits have a College in this City. The other Cities of *Brozovia*, *Rimamovia*, *Dinovia*, and *Lesko*, are Places of Strength, to prevent the Incursions of the *Tartars*.

The Palatinate of BELCZ.

THIS Palatinate lies near that of *Leopol* and *Gheln*, and contains 4 Territories: It has its Name from *Belcz*, the chief Town, 20 Miles from the River *Bog*. *Lemberg* is on the S. E. *Sandomir* on the N. W. and *Samoscie* on the N. *Samoscie* stands upon a Lake, and is erected into a Principality: It lies 56 English Miles E. from *Sandomir*, 60 N. from *Lemberg*, and 36 S. from *Lublin*. It was built by *John Samosky*, Great Chancellor of Poland, in a pleasant Plain not far from the River *Vapr*. The *Cossacks* besieged it in 1681, but were obliged to raise the Siege. There is an University in this City. *Brady* belongs to this Palatinate, and lies E. from *Belcz* 60 English Miles. *Olesko* lies 50 N. E. from *Lemberg*. There's another Town call'd *Grobs*, with a Castle, but otherwise of no great Note.

The Palatinate of UPPER VOLHINIA.

IT has *Red Russia* on the W. *Podolia* on the S. *Ukrain* on the E. The chief Town is *Lucko*, on the River *Steer*, near a Lake, 24 English Miles E. from *Red Russia*, and 100 N. from *Lemberg*. The City is large, and has a greater Number of *Greeks*, *Jews*, and *Protestants*, than *Papists*. The Trade is managed by the *Jews*. *Uladaimierz*, lies on the River *Lug*, which falls into the *Bog* a little lower, and is 48 Miles W. from *Lucko*. *Creminec*, is a little Town, upon a Hill, 30 Miles from *Lucko*. The *Tartars* have often visited this Place, and done it much Mischief. *Baranouka* is 80 English Miles N. E. from *Lucko*, and 44 W. from the Castle of *Korsee*. It lies on the River *Horin*. The *Turks* have done great Damage to this City. Other Towns are, *Oiska*, *Zassaw*, *Osfrog*, and *Zytomierz*.

LOWER VOLHINIA, or, The Palatinate of KLOW.

THIS Palatinate was Part of the *Ukrain*, the Country of the *Cossacks*, which we have describ'd in the former Account of the *Cossacks*. The *Poles* have only now some small Towns here, as *Bialacerkiew*, 64 English Miles S. W. from *Klow*, and 140 N. from *Broclaw*; *Zerkass*, and *Czernobel* upon the River *Usz*, 72 English Miles W. from *Czernikow*, and 8 from the *Nieper* and *Kudac*.

The Province of *Podolia* is divided into *High* and *Low*.

HIGH PODOLIA.

HAS *Red Russia* on the W. *Upper Volhinia* on the N. *Lower Podolia* on the S. E. and the *Nieper* on the S. It is a fruitful Country, tho' Mountainous, and has Plenty of Honey. The Vallies are well Water'd: It has been the Seat of the *Tartarian*, *Cossackian*, and *Turkish* Wars, for many Years, and expos'd to their Barbarities. The chief City is *Kaminiec*, upon the River *Smotrick*, which a little lower runs into the *Nieper*. The City lies 120 English Miles N. E. from *Lemberg*, and is a Town of the greatest Strength of any in Poland, defended by high Rocks, so that the Tops of the Houses cannot be seen. It has held out many Attacks of *Tartars*, *Turks* and *Wallachians*, and was much damaged by Fire in 1669. It has two Bishops, one a *Papist*, the other an *Armenian*. It was taken by the *Turks* in 1672, and all the adjacent Country was subject to them, till the Peace of *Carlowitz* in 1699; by which this City, all *Podolia*, and the *Ukrain*, were restor'd to the *Poles*, who frequently endeavour'd to retake it, but in vain. It lies 60 English Miles S. W. from *Bar*, 280 S. W. from *Klow*, 120 S. E. from *Lemberg*, 320 S. E. from *Warsaw*, and 680 N. from *Constantinople*. The other Cities here are, 1. *Trembowla*, which lies under a great Mountain, with a strong Castle upon it. 2. *Latyckow*, which is well fortified.

has a strong Castle, and Warlike Inhabitants. 3. *Bar*, a strong Town, on the River *Kiow*, and is surrounded with Lakes: It lies 72 English Miles N. E. from *Kaminiec*, and 72 N. W. from *Broclaw*. The Castle is built upon a Rock. This City was founded by *Bonno Sforza*, the Duke of *Milan's* Daughter, Wife to King *Sigismund*. 4. *Husiatnow*, well fortified. 5. *Czortkow*, with a strong Castle, and well fortified. 6. *Chmielnick*, on the River *Bog*, defended only with Palisades, and a Wooden Castle. 7. *Muedzibofz*, with a large Wooden Castle: 'Tis situated among Marshes, and has no Avenue but over Bridges. This Place was formerly much infested by *Tartars*. The Senators are, the Bishop, Palatine, and Castellan of *Kaminiec* and *Podolia*. The Arms are, in a Field-Azure, the Sun in its full Glory. Most of the Cities of *Podolia* are fortified, to protect them from the Inroads of the *Tartars*. This Country is so fertile, that it may vie with *Italy* or *Hungary*.

LOW PODOLIA, or the Palatinate of BROCLAW.

THIS Palatinate has the ancient *Tyras* or *Nießer* on the S. W. and *Lower Volhinia* on the E. *Upper Podolia* on the N. and *Budziack Tartary* on the S. and S. E. The chief Town is *Broclaw*, on the River *Bog*, in Lat. 48 $\frac{1}{2}$, and Long. 47. In 1672, it was taken and plunder'd by the *Turks*. *Winniczka*, is a fortified Town, upon the *Bog*, 48 English Miles E. from *Bor*, and 40 N. from *Broclaw*. In 1560 it was taken by the *Cossacks*. This City is famous for a Meeting of the Gentry, and a Court of Justice. The *Jesuits* have a College here. This City has been very much infested by the *Tartars*. The Senators are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Broclaw*. The greatest Part of *Podolia* was restor'd by the *Turks* to the *Poles*, Sept. 22. 1699. by the Peace of *Carlowitz*.

Of the RIVERS of Poland.

THE Chief Rivers in Poland are, 1. the *Weissel*; *Ptolomy* makes it a River of *Germany*, and calls it *Viadus* and *Sucvus*; *Pliny* calls it

Vistillus; and *Mela*, *Visula*: 'Twas the ancient Boundary of *Germany* and *Sarmatia*, according to *Agathemerus*. The *Poles* and *Slawonians* name it *Wissa*; the *Germans*, *Der Weissel*. It has its Source in the *Higher Silesia*, from the *Carpathian Mountains*, in the Borders of *Hungary*, now call'd *Krapock*, about Lat. 49 $\frac{3}{4}$, and Long. 41; *Moll* makes it Long. 38. It takes its Course N. E. runs into Poland, and waters *Oswiecin*, (near which the *Sala* falls into it) *Zator*, and *Cracow*, where it begins to be navigable; then the River *Nida*, whose Course is S. E. the *Dunaiac*, near to *Polanice*, and the *Wislick*, which runs N. E. fall into it. Below *Sendmir*, it is augmented by the *San*, which has also its Source in the Mountains of *Krapack*, and runs N. After this the *Weissel* runs N. The River *Vieprex*, which rises in the Palatinate of *Belcz*, and runs thro' that of *Lablin*, falls into it near the W. Borders of that Palatinate. Next, the *Pileza*, which rises in the Palatinate of *Cracow*, and runs by the N. Borders of *Sendmir*, falls into it 15 English Miles above *Czersko*. After this, the *Weissel* runs thro' the Province of *Masovia*, and waters *Czersko* and *Warsaw*: Then it runs N. W. thro' the Palatinate of *Plocksko*, and runs by *Plockzko*, *Dobrzin*, and *Wladislaw*. Next it goes thro' *Polish Prussia*: Then its Course is N. E. and waters *Thorn*, *Culm*, *Graudentz*, and *Newenburgh*. Twenty English Miles below that Town, it divides it self into two Streams; the Easterly one, call'd *Nogat*, runs by *Marienburg* and *Elbing*, and falls into the Bay of *Frisch-Haff*, or the Cold Bay, in Lat. 54 $\frac{1}{2}$, and Long. 42 $\frac{1}{2}$. according to *Jailor's* Map; but Long. 38 by *Moll's* Map. The Westerly Stream waters *Dirfaw*; then, at the Castle of *Heust*, it divides again into two: That to the E. falls also into the *Frisch-Haff*: The Westerly Branch waters *Dantzick*, and falls into the *Baltick*, after a Course of more than 400 English Miles, in Lat. 54 $\frac{3}{4}$ and in Long. 37. near the Fortrefs of *Munda*, or *Weisselmund*, and surrounds the greatest Part of the Island *Neringa*.

The *Romans* had no certain Knowledge of this, or of other Rivers beyond the *Elbe*.

The 2d River is *Worta*, which rises in the Palatinate of *Cracow*, in Lat. 52 $\frac{1}{2}$, near the City of *Cromlow*. It runs N. thro' the

the Palatinate of *Soradia*, and waters *Sirad*, *Worta*, and *Kamia*; then it runs W. crosses the Palatinate of *Kalisch*, and Waters *Laudick*, *Pfydry*, and *Srin*: Next it runs thro' the Palatinate of *Posna*, takes its Course N. and waters *Posna*. The *Notecz*, which rises in the Palatinate of *Cujavia*, and runs thro' that of *Posna*, falls into this River at *Zantok*. The *Obra* has its Spring in the Palatinate of *Posna*, runs N. W. and falls into the *Worta*, 3 English Miles S. of the Mouth of the *Notecz*. Afterwards it runs thro' some Part of the Marquisate of *Brandenburgh*, and waters *Landsperg*, and *Kustrin*; not far from whence it falls into the *Oder*.

3. *Tyras*, *Pliny* calls it *Tyra*; *Mela*, *Tyras*; *Ptolomy*, and *Scimnus Chius*, call it *Tyras*. The last gives a Description of it, and says, it was a deep navigable River, and had plenty of Fish. *Ovid* speaks of it, *Lib. 4. de Ponto*, *Epist. 10. Vers. 50.*

--- Nullo sordior amne Tyras.

It rises in *Black Russia*, in the Palatinate of *Lemberg*, from the Lake of *Leopol*, 16 Miles S. from *Lemberg*, about Lat. 49° and Long. 46°, according to some Maps; but *Moll* makes it Long 42°. It runs S. E. thro' the Province of *Pocuce*, and waters *Halicz*: Then it runs thro' *High Podolia*, or the Palatinate of *Caminiec*, and waters *Crudeck*, *Dzwingrod*, *Zwaniecz*, *Kylaigrod*, and *Ladawa*: Then it runs thro' *Lower Podolia*, and waters *Lampol*, *Kaminicze*, *Raskow*, and *Tekin*, or *Bender*. Then it takes its Course through the *Tartars* of *Oczakow*, and falls into the *Black Sea*, near *Bialogrod*, in Lat. 47°, and Long. 56°, according to *Jailor's* Map. Its Mouth lies 60 Miles N. from the Mouth of the *Danube*; whereas *Strabo* makes it but 300 Furlongs.

4. The *Bug*, which has its Spring in *Red Russia*, near the Town *Olesko*, in Lat. 49°, and Long. 48; but according to *Moll*, in Long. 44°. It runs N. thro' the Palatinate of *Belcz*, and waters *Krylow*: Then it runs thro' the Palatinate of *Chelm*, and waters *Dubna*, and other small Towns; and taking its Course N. W. it divides the Palatinate of *Belsk*, where it waters *Mielneck*, and *Groddeck*: Then it runs through the Palatinate of *Czersko*, where the *Narew* falls into it,

whose Course is S. W. and is noted for this, That no Venemous Creature will live in its Streams; so that Snakes, sticking to the Sides of the Boats that come out of the *Bug*, as soon as they enter this River, give a Hiss, and swim back to the *Bug*; which falls into the *Weissel* near *Wischegorod*, in Lat. 52°, and Long 43; but in *Moll's* Map, in Long. 39.

5. The *Bug*. *Herodotus* and *Pliny* make mention of it, and call it a River of *Sarmatia Europea*. Its Spring is in the Borders of *Podolia*, (in Lat. 49°, Long. 50. *Moll* makes it lie in Long. 45.) which it separates from *Volhinia*. It waters *Ghmielnick*, *Winnicza*, and *Braclow*, runs through the Palatinate of that Name, and at last falls into the *Nieper* near *Oczakow*; and a little lower, both of them fall into the *Euxine Sea*, in Long. 57°, after it has run a Course of more than 400 English Miles, from W. to S. E.

5. The *Niemen*, anciently call'd *Chironus* by *Ptolomy*, who says it is a River of the *Venedi*, in *Sarmatia Europea*. *Ammianus Marcellinus* makes mention of it. The *Germans* call it *Memel*. It rises in the Palatinate of *Minski*, near the Borders of that of *Novogrodeck*, and is the Boundary of those two Palatinates. Its Spring is in Lat. 53°, and Long. 51°. It runs N. W. and waters *Bielcz*, where it enters the Palatinate of *Troki* in *Lithuania*, and there begins to run W. 'till it reach *Grodno*, which it waters: Then it takes a Northerly Course, 'till it comes to *Kouno*, where it enters *Samogitia*; Then it runs W. and waters *Geersburg*, on the Borders of *Ducal Prussia*, where it is call'd *Rufs*. Next it waters *Tilse*, and afterwards is divided into two Branches, which fall into the Lake call'd *Kurisch-Haff*, and both they and the Lake fall into the *Baltick*, near *Memel*, in Lat. 55°. Long. 44°. but in Long. 40. by *Moll's* Map. Some think the *Mare Cronium* has its Name from the ancient Name of this River.

6. *Dniina*. The *Poles* call it *Duna*. It has its Spring in *Novogrod*, a Province of *Muscovy*, near the Lake *Volga*, and the Fountains of the River *Volga*. It runs S. W. and crosses the Palatinate of *Witepsk*, waters the City of *Witepsk*, turns N. W. and en-

ters

ters the Palatinate of *Poloczke*, which it divides, and waters the City of *Poloczke*. Afterwards the River *Dryssa*, which runs S. W. and the *Dzicna*, which runs E. fall into it. Then it goes thro' *Livonia*, which it separates from *Semigallia*, waters *Düneburg*; and still keeping the same Course, runs by *Riga*; below which it falls into the Bay or Gulf of *Riga*, the ancient *Sinus Clilipenus*, in Lat. 57, and Long. 47 $\frac{1}{2}$. but according to *Moll*, in Long. 43. after a Course of 130 Leagues. It was anciently call'd *Rubo*, as some Moderns think.

The L A K E S.

Great Poland, *Cujavia*, and the Territory of *Lublin*, have several great and remarkable Lakes, abounding with Fresh Fish of all Sorts. The chief of them is *Gopole*, in the Palatinate of *Brzesky*, 5 Miles in

Length, and half a Mile in Breadth. It lies 24 *English* Miles W. from *Brzesky*, and 32. N. from *Lanscher*.

2. *Briales*, or the *White Lake*, so call'd by an *Antiphrasis*, becausè, in April and May, it dyes the Skins of those that wash in it of a swarthy Colour.

Puffendorf says, That *Poland* is very Populous, and full of Towns and Villages. Some have computed, that the King and the Nobles have in their Possession Ninety thousand Cities and Villages: The Bishops and Canons One hundred thousand five hundred and fifty: The rest of the Clergy, Monks, and Nuns, Sixty thousand nine hundred and fifty: Which in all amount to Two hundred and fifty thousand, nine hundred and fifty Towns and Villages: But he says, he will not be answerable for the Exactness of this Account.



C H A P. XIV.

P R U S S I A in General.

PRUSSIA in general has on the N. the *Baltick Sea* for near 200 *English Miles*; on the N. E. the *River Memel*, which, at its Mouth, is called *Rusi* and *Chironon* by the Ancients. On the S. lie *Podlachia* and *Lithuania*; and on the W. *Great Poland*, *Masovia*, *Cosubia*, and *Pomerellia*. *Cluverius* says, the Extent of it, from *Thorn* upon the *Weissel*, to the Mouth of the *Rusi*, is 45 *German Leagues*, or 180 *English Miles*: The Breadth, from *Raigrodt* in *Polachia*, to the Mouth of the *Weissel*, as many: Its Long. according to *Mr. Toll's Map*, is from *Thorn* in 38, to the *Rusi* or *Mimel* in 41 *Deg.* and its Lat. from *Raigrodt* in 53 $\frac{1}{2}$, to the Mouth of the *Rusi* in 55 $\frac{1}{2}$.

Whence *Prussia*, *Borussia*, or *Preussen*, has its Name, is not certain. *Cluverius*, in *Germ. Antiq.* thinks *Helmoldus* (who flourish'd in the 12th Century) to be the first who makes mention of *Prussia*; but *Dithmarus*, who liv'd in the 12th Century, and the Anonymous Author of the Life of *St. Adelbert*, in the End of the 10th, speak of it. *Marianus Scotus* says, the Name came from the City *Aprutis*, where *Adelbert* suffer'd Martyrdom in 995: But this Opinion is rejected, because none else make mention of any such City. The most probable Opinion is, That they derive their Name from the *Borussi*, who dwelt, as *Strabo* says, in *Russia*, near the *Riphean Mountains*, and remov'd from those cold Places to *Prussia*. The Affinity of the Name and Language, (for the ancient *Prussian* is only a Dialect of the *Russian*.) makes some People to embrace this Conjecture. Others say, the *Venedi*, a Colony of the *Slavonians*, planted this Country, and quote *Palmus* for it, who says, That the *Venedi*, upon the *Vistula* or *Weissel*, had the *Phynni* and *Gythones* on the S. which is favour'd by *Cluverius's* Observation, That

several Places in *Liesland* still retain the Name of *Wenden*, *Windaw*, *Ushewinds*, &c. All Geographers, ancient and modern, place the *Electrides Insula* over against the Mouth of the *Weissel*, from whence *Amber* was carried all over *Greece* and *Italy*. This occasion'd some Latin Poets, who read that *Amber* came from the *Venedi*, to confound them with the *Venetians*. *Hartknock* alledges, from the Idolatrous Worship us'd anciently in *Prussia*, That the *Goths* were sometimes Masters of that Country.

The HISTORY of Prussia.

THE Origine and earliest Times of this People, as of most others, are very obscure. History tells us, they were at first a free and independent State, and had many Wars with their Neighbours; then they united with the *Slavi*. After 997, they were harass'd with Invasions by the *Poles*, till at last *Boleslaus Chrobry* conquer'd and impos'd a Tribute upon 'em, because, as some say, they murder'd *St. Adelbert* at *Fischhausen*. This perfidious Pagan Nation, tho' frequently worsh'd by their Christian Neighbours, did still disturb the Peace of all Kingdoms within their reach, which induc'd *Conrade*, the Duke of *Masovia*, to invite the Knights of the *Cross*, or of the *Teutonic Order*, to assist in reducing them. But the present State of *Europe*, printed in *Germany*, gives this Account of it, viz. That the uneasy *Prussians* endeavour'd often to free themselves from the *Polish Slavery*; and in 1300, in order to moderate the *Polish Rigour*, *Conrade* Duke of *Masovia* invited *Herman van Saltza*, Great Master of the *Teutonic Order*, and his Knights, to his Assistance, on Condition, That if, by their successful Arms, they should wrest *Prussia*

and *Culm* from the *Poles*, half the former should remain to them, as a Reward of their Valour, and the other half, with the latter, should continue to the *Prussians* themselves. These Terms were accepted, but not perform'd by the Knights; for in 53 Years Time, they extirpated the old *Prussians*, and became absolute Masters of the Country, as we shall hear more at large anon. This Order was instituted in 1191, by *Henry*, Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, and other Christian Princes, in Favour of the German Nation, upon this Occasion. When the Emperor *Frederick* took the Cross to recover *Jerusalem*, and the *Holy Land*, whereof *Saladin* Sultan of *Egypt*, had made himself Master in 1187, a great many German Noblemen and Gentlemen follow'd him as Volunteers, who signaliz'd themselves upon all Occasions; and wanting a Leader after the Emperor's Death, when the Christians besieg'd *Acre*, they chose *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, Second Son of the Emperor, and *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, for Captain-Generals of their Nation, under whom they distinguish'd themselves with so much Bravery at the taking of *Acre*, and other Places of that Country, that *Henry* King of *Jerusalem* propos'd the instituting of an Order in their Favour; and, with the Patriarch and other Princes, form'd the Statutes according to the Model of the Knights of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*, and excerpted what they thought most agreeable to an Order both Military and Hospitable; so that the Priests of this Order might celebrate Mass arm'd Cap-a-pe. The Statutes, among other Things, bore, That the Knights should be of a Noble Race; That they should vow the Defence of the Christian Religion, and the *Holy Land*; and finally, That they should call themselves, *Knights of our Lady of Mount Sion*. The Emperor *Henry VI.* and Pope *Celestin III.* approv'd the Institution, order'd that they should be clad in White, and wear a Black Cross, like that of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*, in their Habits, Standards and Arms, and live according to *St. Austin's* Rule. Hereupon the King of *Jerusalem*, with *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, created the first Knights, to the Number of 40, making *Walpot* their Great Master. All Christian Princes shew'd their Affection to this Order by their Gifts, which began to be con-

siderable under their fourth Great Master, *Herman* of *Salza*, in whose Time these Knights rescu'd *John*, Son of *Henry* King of *Jerusalem*, in a Battle which the Christians lost against *Conradin* King of *Syria*; in Acknowledgment of which good Service, the same *John* honour'd them with the proper Arms of the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*. This Order consisted of 12 Provinces, viz. that of *Alsace* and *Burgundy*, *Austria*, *Coblenz* and *Esch*, still call'd Provinces of the Jurisdiction of *Prussia*; the Provinces of *Francia*, *Hesse*, *Bieffen*, *Westphalia*, *Lorraine*, *Thuringia*, *Saxony* and *Utrecht*, which are of the Jurisdiction of *Germany*; but now the *Hollanders* are Masters of all that belong'd to them in the Province of *Utrecht*: Each Province had its Commanderies, and the ancientest of the Commanders was call'd the *Provincial*; but all are under the Great Master, as their Chief. The 12 Provincial Commanders assembled together, to chuse a Great Master or Coadjutor. The Great Master keeps his ordinary Residence at *Mariendal* in *Francia*, since the Order was forc'd out of *Prussia*, and is worth about 20000 Crowns per Annum. The most Part of the Commanderies are possess'd by German Lords, or Princes younger Sons. To return to the History of *Prussia*: The Duke of *Masovia* in *Poland* gave these Knights a Grant of what Lands they could conquer from the Pagans in *Prussia*, which the Pope and Emperor confirm'd. They engag'd them in several Encounters, defeated them intirely, and in less than 60 Years drove the Pagans out of *Prussia*, and made themselves Masters of *Pomerellia*, *Samogitia*, *Livonia*, and *Curland*; and having built several Towns, Churches and Castles, and planted several German Colonies, they enter'd *Russia*, where they establish'd the Christian Religion. Whilst they were victorious here in *Europe*, in 1291 the Town of *Acre* was taken by the Sultan of *Egypt*, and the Knights were oblig'd to return to *Germany*. About 1400, their Affairs were very prosperous: They then made a considerable Figure in *Europe*; but at last, being flush'd with their frequent Victories, and a long Succession of good Fortune, they attempted to conquer *Lithuania*, and were very troublesome to all the neighbouring States, till in 1410, they were intirely routed by *Bolissaus* King

of *Poland*, at the River *Debrantz*, on the Borders of *Masovia*. Upon this they lost a great Part of *Prussia*, and would have lost all their Conquests, if their Subjects had not been true to their Interest. After this they fell into Civil Wars, and, by their great Exactions and Severities, they alienated the Hearts of their Subjects. Moreover, some of their Commanders having Designs upon the Liberties of the People, built Citadels and Castles in Cities, to bridle the Citizens. They invited also some of the Senators and chief Citizens of *Dantzick* into the Castle there, on Pretence of Kindness and Friendship; but when they came into the Castle, they murder'd them. After this they stuck at no Villany, but debauch'd the Wives and Daughters of honourable Citizens, and us'd their Subjects as Slaves. The Nobility and Citizens, exasperated with such Tyrannical Government, assembled at *Culm*, and enter'd into a League, obliging themselves to defend their common Liberty and Privileges, and agreed to give in a Memorial to the Provincial Meeting of the Estates, of their Sufferings from the Master of the Order and the Commanders. The Emperor *Frederick III.* declar'd what they had done was a Rebellious Confederacy, and by his Edict commanded them to abjure that League, to obey the Master of the Order without Reserve, fin'd them in great Sums, and depriv'd them of their Liberties and Privileges. Upon this they renounc'd their Allegiance to *Lewis Erlsbua*, the Grand Master of the Order, who defeated the *Poles* in a Battle, kill'd 30000 on the Spot, and took 136 of their Noblemen Prisoners; but was at last worsted by them. In 1454, the *Prussians* revolted to *Casimir* King of *Poland*, and swore Allegiance to him. In 1466, when the Knights of the Order had lost many of their Castles and Places of Strength, they were oblig'd to enter into Articles with the said *Casimir*, by which they quitted all Pretences for ever to the Territories of *Gulm*, *Michelaw*, *Pomerellia*, *Elbing*, *Christburg*, *Stum*, *Tolkemisch*, and all the Castles and Dependencies of those Places, with *Nerung*, an Island in the *Baltick*, which has the *Weissel* on the S. W. and the Diocese of *Varmia*; reserving

to themselves only that Part of *Prussia* of which *Koningsberg* is the Capital, and held it of the King of *Poland* by a Feudal Tenure. Most of the Knights swore Fealty to the Republick, except *Frederick* the Duke of *Saxony*, and Grand Master of the Order, who relying upon the Friendship and Assistance of the Emperor and Princes of the Empire, still asserted the Independency of *Prussia*; but when he saw the Military Preparations of the *Poles*, who design'd to decide that Controversy by the Sword, and knowing he was not able to encounter them, he fled to *Germany*. After his Death, he was succeeded by *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburgh*, the 34th Great Master, who also refus'd to do Homage to the King of *Poland*, and gave this for Reason, That both the Emperor and Pope forbade him. This brought on a War between the Marquis and *Poland*, which he carried on for some time with great Vigour; but finding himself over-march'd, he made Peace with *Poland*, on these Terms, That he should be made Hereditary Duke of *Prussia*, and hold it as Vassal to the King of *Poland*. Thus in 1525, he was created the first Hereditary Duke of that Part of it he then possess'd, which was afterwards call'd *Ducal Prussia*, to distinguish it from that Part of the *Polish* Dominions which was called *Regal Prussia*: And thus the Knights were wholly drove out of that Country. His Successors thought this Treaty too favourable to the *Poles*, as they believ'd it too advantageous for him: But *George William*, Elector of *Brandenburgh*, and his Son *Frederick William the Great*, succeeded so well in their Design, that in 1657, at a Treaty then on foot, the Sovereignty of *Prussia* was afterwards at *Koningsberg*, October 18, 1663, confirm'd to him and his Heirs by the *Polish* Ambassador, on Condition, That in case of the Failure of his Heirs, it should return to the *Poles*, and become a Fief of that Crown. This prosperous State of *Prussia* has been highly improv'd by the Son of that great Prince, who so far honour'd this Country, as to cause himself to be proclaim'd King of it, with an unusual Magnificence, January 18, 1701.

Of the RELIGION of the Prussians.

WE have no certain Accounts of the Manner of their Worship while Pagans, nor at what Time, or by whose Means, they embrac'd Christianity: But all agree in this, That towards the End of the 10th Century, St. *Aldbert*, or *Adalbert*, Bishop of *Prague* in *Bohemia*, and afterwards Archbishop of *Gnesna*, as the *Poles* say, came thro' *Poland* into *Prussia*; where he either first plant'd or restor'd Christianity. But the Pagan Priests seeing their Gain struck at, so inflam'd the People against St. *Albert*, that they murder'd him barbarously at *Rasthausen* in *Sambland*, in 997. Upon which, *Bolleslaw* King of *Poland*, as has been already said, conquer'd them, and oblig'd them to embrace Christianity; and to prevent their Relapse into Idolatry and Superstition, he burnt the great Oak at *Romanow*, the Temple of three of their Superior Gods: Yet no sooner had the *Poles* withdrawn their Troops, but they return'd to Paganism. In the Beginning of the 13th Century, the Civil Broils among the Polish Nobility occasion'd the Neglect of the Conversion of the *Prussians*. About 1215, *Christianus*, a *Cistercian* Monk, endeavour'd to re-convert them, and for that End, by the Pope's Command, took upon him the Office of a Bishop; but finding his own Power insignificant, he was quickly forc'd to beg the Assistance of *Conrad* Duke of *Masovia*. This Expedient also prov'd unsuccessful; for the Knights of *Dobrin*, whom the Duke had oppos'd to the Fury of the *Prussians*, making Incursions into *Masovia*, were all vanquish'd and slain by the Idolaters. When all those Expedients prov'd unsuccessful, the Christians began to consider of some other Means of converting the *Prussians*, and pitch'd upon the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, who were famous at that Time over all *Christendom*, as most likely either to persuade or force them to Christianity. *Conrad* Duke of *Masovia*, pleas'd with these Proposals, immediately dispatch'd Letters to the Master of the Order, profering him the Land of *Culm*, and Auxiliary Forces, in case he should meet with any Opposition. Upon this, in 1226,

Herman de Salza, 4th Great Master of that Order, forthwith sends *Herman de Balke*, one of his Knights, among the *Prussians*, with the Title of *Superintendent*, (afterwards chang'd into *Provincial* of *Prussia*;) But so vigorously did the Heathens oppose those Undertakings, that it was 53 Years before they could be brought to renounce their Idolatry. After Christianity began to take Root among them, several Bishopricks and Monasteries were founded; notwithstanding which, many Heathens were wink'd at; for the barbarous Commonalty could not be brought from their ancient Folly but by degrees. Besides, the Masters of the Order minded the Enlargement of their own Power and Dominion, more than the Preaching of the Gospel, and (tho' Papists) despis'd the Canons and Constitutions of the Church of *Rome*, and mock'd the Pope's Threats and Excommunication, which made Way for many Divisions: And at this Time the *Waldenses*, *Wiclefites*, and *Hussites*, prevail'd mightily in *Prussia*. However, the *Teutonic* Order still profess'd Popery, till the Time of *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburgh*, last Master of that Order, and first Duke of *Prussia*, who having cast off the Polish Yoke, not without a great deal of Blood, about 1520, he embrac'd the Protestant Religion, and, by his own Authority and Example, perswaded the greatest Part of the Knights to marry; and by Degrees brought over the whole Country to Lutheranism. *Frederick William* the Great, who died in 1688, was a Calvinist, and countenanc'd Calvinism in *Koningsberg*, and other chief Cities of *Ducal Prussia*: But in *Dantzick*, and the other Towns upon the *Weissel* which are subject to the Crown of *Poland*, the People are Lutherans.

Of the MANNERS of the Prussians.

THE Inhabitants are generally strong Body'd, and long liv'd. *Adam Bremen*sis, in his Description of *Denmark*, and the Northern Parts of *Europe*, tells us, the *Prussians* were grey Ey'd, and yellow Hair'd. The Ancients, as *Sidonius Apollinarius*, and *Ausonius*, had the same Opinion of all the Northern Nations: But since the *Prussians* have

have mix'd with other People, and admitted the modern Luxury of other European Countries, they are neither so healthy, nor of the same Complexion, as formerly. The Apparel of the Prussian Gentry is not much different from that of the more Southern Nations, tho' not altogether so gaudy. The Boors wear long and Strait Coats, of coarse Wool or Leather, after the Fashion of their Forefathers; but their rich Yeomen wear coarse English Cloth for a Holiday Suit. Tacitus tells us, the Venedi were the first of the Scythian Race that forsook their Waggon, and began to build Houses; yet their Successors are not arriv'd at any great Skill in Architecture. Near the Weisfel, which is the ancient Seat of the Venedi, the Houses are magnificent, compar'd with the Wooden Huts which you meet with towards the wild Confines of Lithuania. Tacitus tells us, the Phenni, who dwelt in those Parts, had no other Shelter from the Injuries of the Weather and Wild-Beasts, but the Boughs of Trees twisted together: And to this Day the Invention is not much improv'd; for the Boors now have no other Houses than Hovels made of Stakes, interwoven with Rods, and cover'd with Earth, or, at best, a little Fern. The many Incursions which have been made into this Country upon the several Quartels of the Electors of Brandenburg, with the Poles and Swedes, have forc'd them to raise some Castles and Fortifications of Stone; but otherwise, a Stone House here is a Rarity. The ancient Prussians slept on the Ground, or sometimes on the Skins of Beasts; and now they sleep on Straw; as was mention'd before.

Of the AMBER in Prussia.

THE old Prussians traded by exchanging one Commodity for another: Their chief Trade was the *Electrum*, or Amber, so famous among the Ancients; but was at last neglected by the Idleness of the People, who contented themselves with bare Necessaries. All those who have wrote of Prussia, have endeavour'd to find out the Nature of this *Electrum*. Ovid feign'd it to be the Tears of the *Heliades*, deploring the Fate of their Brother *Phaeton*. Some Philosophers fancied it to be the Fat of the

Sea: Others alledg'd it to be the Gum of a Tree; but could not say of what kind, whether Cedar, Poplar, or Elm. Kircher thinks 'tis a Bituminous Substance, which rising from the bottom of the Sea, is toss'd by the Waves till it be brought to a Consistency; but none that liv'd on the *Baltick*, could ever yet observe any such Bitumen in those Seas. Besides, the Veins of Amber found under Ground in Places far distant from the Sea, do sufficiently prove the contrary: So that when 'tis found in the *Baltick*, and in the adjoining Lakes and Rivers, we must suppose 'tis broke off from some Vein under Ground by Floods or Tempests. Mr. Hartman, in his Treatise *De Succino Prussico*, gives this Account of it: Since (says he) it can neither be melted, nor is malleable, 'tis impossible it should be Metal: And because it is too solid a Body to come under the Species of Sulphur or Bitumen, it must needs be rank'd among Precious Stones. Amber, or *Succinum*, is a Coagulation of *Petroleum*, which being of divers Colours, White, Yellow, Red, and Black, accordingly grows into several Substances of those Colours: While 'tis very liquid, like Oil, it is call'd *Petroleum*: When somewhat thicker and clammy, 'tis call'd *Naptha*: When still more thick, we call it *Bitumen*: But when it comes to be a Hard or Stony Substance, it becomes White, Yellow, Red or Black Amber. If very Black, it is call'd *Gagati*, or Jet. When our Men broke the Rocks near *Tangier*, to form the Mole, they frequently found Amber in the Clefts of the Stones. The Marquis de Binot, Envoy Extraordinary from the King of France to the King of Sweden, in a Letter to the Royal Academy of Sciences at Paris, says, he saw in some Places near *Dantzick* Yellow Mineral Amber, of the same Sort with that found on the Sea-Coast. The Academy gave their Opinion about it: Messieurs *Giffini* and *Miraldi* observ'd, That Jet, and a sort of Yellow Amber, was found at *Bugarch* in *Languedoc*, 27600 Fathom from the Sea; and that it is also found in the Rocks of *Provence*, and in *Sicily*, along the Coasts of *Agriento*, *Catanea*, *Leocata*, and on the Shores of *Corsica*, *Bowonia*, *Ancona*, and *Umbria*. They farther observ'd, That the Insects inclos'd in the Amber were of the Terrestrial kind, as Bees, Emamets, &c. and that none ever observ'd.

observ'd Trees distilling Amber, as they do Pitch, Resin, &c. from whence they infer, That Amber may probably be an Oil distilled from Rocks, like *Petroleum*; and that those Insects are entangled in it when it is liquid. Amber is also found sometimes in great Lumps on the Coasts of the Scottish Islands. *Pliny* tells us, the ancient Germans call'd it *Glessum*, or Glass, because of its Transparency; whence the Romans call the Island where it was gather'd *Glessaria*; and the Barbarians call'd it *Austinaia*. But some think, the true reading of that Word in *Pliny* is *Austania*, because the ordinary German Word for Amber is *Augstein*; and they are suppos'd to have given it that Name, on Account of its being good for the Eyes. *Tacitus de Moribus German. Cap. 45.* says, the *Esti*, dwell in that now call'd *Prussia* and *Curland*, and were so call'd, because they lay Eastward from the *Eveni*. He adds, That they search'd the neighbouring Sea, and were remarkable for their peculiar Skill in gathering Amber. *Cassiodorus*, who liv'd in the 6th Century, quotes a Letter which *Theodoric*, a King of the *Goths*, wrote to those *Esti*, thanking them for their Present of Amber, which he told them was very acceptable. Their Ambassadors, who brought it, could not inform him how it was generated; but told him that it was only found in their Country. *Heylin* thinks, Amber proceeds from the Juice of a Stone, which grows like Coral, in a Mountain on the *Baltick*; but by the Violence of Storms is tore from the Rock, and is cast out on the Coasts of this Country, and sometimes on those of *Pomerania* and *Sweden*. The People who gather it leap into the Sea, tho' ever so raging, from whence they first take up some Wads, after that this Liqueur; which being expos'd to the Air, turns hard like Coral. It is good against bleeding at the Nose, Agues, Falling-Sickness, Dropsies, Stone, Cholick, Weakness of the Stomach, Head-Ach, and the Yellow-Jaundice.

Of their MONEY.

THE *Prussians* had little or no Knowledge of Money before the Arrival of the *Teutonic Order* in 1230, who coming out of *Germany*, brought with them the

Coin of their Country. Among the rest of their Pieces, the Broad *Bohemian Gros* was long current both in *Prussia* and *Poland*; but knowing that this small Stock would not go far, they set up Mints, and coin'd Pieces of their own; which they did exactly, that most Nations have own'd, that they first brought the Art of Coining to Perfection. Hence the Learned *Sir Henry Spelman* think, that our English Word *Sterling* is deriv'd from the *Eastwings*, who coming out of *Prussia*, first taught the Art of Refining and Coining purer Silver in *England*, than before their coming had been made use of. The Species of Money now current in *Prussia* are;

1. A *Schilling*, which contains Six-pence, or Pfennings; no single Pence being now in use there.
2. A *Gros*, which consists of 3 Schillings, and 20 of them make 1 Mark.
3. A *Mark*.
4. A *Gulder*, which contains 30 Grosses.
5. A *Dollar*, (or *Thaler*) worth 3 Gulders.
6. A *Ducate*, equal to 2 Dollars, and is valued at 9 Shillings-English.

Swedish and *Danish* Money is also current here. Some late *Prussian* Writers derive the Word *Schilling* from one *Barnhard Schilling*, who first stamp'd this sort of Coin; but this is confuted by *Schortelius*. The *Gros* was so call'd, because it was the greatest Piece in the Infancy of their Coinage, and from thence perhaps we have our Groat. A *Mark* was no peculiar Piece of Coin, but a certain Weight, equal to 36 of the now *Prussian* Marks; so that it had not its Name, as *Loccenius* thinks, from the German Word *Mark*, because 'twas mark'd or stamp'd with some particular Impression, but was only us'd in that Country in reckoning of Money, as we do by Pounds and Marks, and the *French* by *Livres*; tho' neither of us have any Piece of that Value. *Gulder* signifies no more than a Piece of Gold Coin. The *Dollar*, (or *Thaler*) as the Germans call it, has its Name from the German Word *Thal*, a Valley, or Dale, because that Piece was first coin'd at the Mines in *Joachim's Dale* in 1517; whence for some Time, instead of the Word *Thalerus*, they us'd *Joachimicus*.

chymicus for a Dollar. The Value of these is alter'd frequently by Allays of Brass and Copper, according to the Humour of several States or Sovereigns.

Their LANGUAGE.

THAT the *Venedi*, the first Inhabitants of some Parts of *Prussia*, spoke *Sclavonick*, is beyond all Controversy. After them, the *Goths* brought in a Dialect of the *Celtick*, differing a little from the *German*: But this did not take with the *Prussians*; for till the Arrival of the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, they spoke, as they do still in many Places, a Language materially the same with what the *Muscovites*, *Poles* and *Lithuanians*, now use. *Grunovius*, a *Prussian* by Birth, is of another Opinion, because the *Poles* do not at all understand the *Prussian*, and scarce any thing of the *Lithuanian* Tongue: But this Argument is not conclusive, if we consider what Difficulty an *Austrian*, *Lunenburgber*, and *Fleming*, have to understand one another; and how much harder 'tis for a *Dan.*, *German*, and *Englishman*, to discourse together, tho' their Language be of one Origine: So that a Mixture of the *German* and *Sclavonian* Tongues, and a Revolution of perhaps 2000 Years, must needs have much alter'd the *Prussian* Language from what it was at first.

This Country is large and fertile, being water'd with 2037 Rivers and Lakes, as their Monks have reckon'd, which afford them store of Fish for their ordinary Food. This Province has no great store of Mines, but abounds with Cattle, Wild-Beasts, Fish and Fruit of all Sorts, and enjoys a very temperate Climate. The Goods they have from *Poland*, *Russia*, and *Lithuania*, they export in great Quantities, and import whatever *Europe* or the *Indies* afford, but chiefly by Way of Exchange; whence the Inhabitants live richer and better than in any other Province of *Poland*. In this Country, they make Glass of Ashes of a certain sort of Wood, or of the largest sort of Pebbles, which they boil 12 Hours before they vitrify. When they would have their Glass clearer than ordinary, they mix with the Ashes a certain sort of Earth of the Hard-

ness of Tartar, which renders the Glass of different Colours, according to the Quantity mix'd with the Ashes. They observe, That if Salt be mix'd with Glass, it is much easier blown by the Artificer.

The principal Rivers of this Province are, the *Weissel*, the *Memel*, *Nogat*, *Elbing*, *Wesser*, *Passer*, *Alla*, *Pregel*, *Ossa*, *Drebnick*, *Lica*, and *Lavia*.

The chief Lakes are, *Habua*, near 15 Miles long, and 2 broad, disjoin'd from the Sea by the Peninsula *Neringa*, which has a Communication with the Sea, where the Inhabitants gather Amber in Nets of a Conick Figure, with a large Mouth, and narrow at Bottom, which they tie to a long Pole, and put into the Sea when it begins to flow, and sometimes hale up Pieces of Amber as big as one's Fist. *Comor* was of Opinion, That the Amber was form'd by great Quantities of Resin or Turpentine, which drop'd from the Fir-Trees into the Lake, and being carried into the *Baltick*, was by the Waves congeal'd into Amber; but was afterwards inform'd, that Amber is a Mineral Juice that runs into the Sea, which at first taking up is soft, but is quickly harden'd by the Air.

Of POLISH PRUSSIA.

THIS Country is divided into 3 Palatinates, *Pomerellia*, *Culm*, and *Marienburg*.

The Palatinate of POLISH POMERANIA, or POMERELLIA.

THIS is the most Easterly, and least Part of *Pomerania*: It has *Brandenburg-Pomerania* on the W. the *Baltick* on the N. the *Weissel* on the E. and *Great Poland* on the S. When the *Goths* abandon'd this Province, the *Borussians* and *Scythians* settled here. The Palatine of *Pomerellia*, and the Castellan of *Dantzick*, are the Senators of this Palatinate. The chief City is *Dantzick*, which lies in Lat. 54 $\frac{1}{2}$, Long. 38. call'd in Latin *Godanum*; by the Natives, *Gdanek*; by the *Poles*, *Danzik*; by the *Germans* and *Fench*, *Dantzick*. 'Tis one of the chief Hans-Towns, and has the greatest Part of the Trade of *Poland*. It is seated upon the *Weissel*, which 4 English Miles below falls into the Gulph of *Dantzick*.

Danzick, anciently call'd *Venedicus Sinus*. When and by whom this City was built, is not certain. *Beccius* and *Pontanus* think it was built by the *Danes*, about 1165, when *Woldimar* King of Denmark, having then War with *Sobeslaus* I. Prince of *Pomerania*, built a Fortrefs here, and call'd it *Daneswick*, which *Sobeslaus* took from them in 1116. Some think it is more probable, that to the Word *Dan*, *Gedan*, *Gdun*, or *Gdan*, the *Sclavonian* Termination *Ske* was added, which made it *Danske*, or *Gdanke*, and was afterwards chang'd into *Danefick*. *Cluverius* is of this Opinion, and thinks the Name is deriv'd from the *Sinus Codanus*, so call'd from an ancient Idol of the Germans. It continued a Village till 1295, that *Premislaus* King of Poland made himself Master of it, and, by adding many Buildings to it, gave it the Form of a City. In 1343, it was Wall'd, as *Cluverius*, in his *Germ. Antiq.* informs us. The chief Part of the City, call'd *Die Rechte Stadt*, was built by *Conrad Wallenrode*, Master of the *Tentonic Order*, about 1390. In 1454, it submitted to *Casimir* King of Poland. They afterwards declar'd for the *Augsburg* Confession, and sided with *Maximilian* of *Austria* against *Stephen Battori* King of Poland, who proscrib'd and besieg'd them in 1577, but was oblig'd to raise the Siege. In 1579, they were restor'd to their Privileges, with a Reservation of many more; for they have a Suffrage in the Diet of that Kingdom, and are govern'd by their own Magistrates, who finally determine all Criminal Causes without Appeal, and all Civil Causes not exceeding 1000 Livres; and, with the Approbation of the Council of 100, impose necessary Taxes upon the Inhabitants. It lies 24 *Engl.* Miles N.W. from *Morlenburg*, 32 W. from *Elbing*, 88 N. from *Thurn*, 120 N. from *Gnesen*, and 160 N.W. from *Warsaw*. In 1626, during the *Prussian* War, it was faithful to the Interest of the King of Poland. And lately, in 1655, when *Charles Gustavus*, King of Sweden, had over-run Poland, all the Cities open'd their Gates to him except *Danzick*, which put a Stand to the Swedish Victories: So that the Faithfulness of this City retriev'd the Affairs of *John Casimir*, when almost desperate. It is water'd by the *Widlaw* and *Rodawn*, and is built partly of Stone, and partly of Brick. The Hou-

ses are generally 6 or 7 Stories high. It consists of 3 Cities; the first call'd *Voorstat*, or the *Fore City*; the 2d *Alstat*, or the *Old City*; the 3d *Rechte Stadt*, or the *Empero's City*. All the 3 are encompass'd with a high Wall, so broad, that Coaches easily go round it, and the Fortifications are of a vast Extent; but being commanded by two Hills on the S.W. it cannot well hold out a Siege. *St. Mary's Church* in *Danzick* is the stateliest Fabrick in *Prussia*, has 48 Altars, and 3722 Windows. The Font was made at *Antwerp*, and cost 24000 *Rix-Dollars*. The principal Trade here is in Corn, which comes from *Poland*; and one Year with another, 'tis computed that they export 730000 Tuns of Wheat, 2 Tuns making up a Last. The Citizens have many Privileges, and particularly this, That they may buy up Corn as soon as it enters the Haven. This City is the Granary of *Holland*, and of other Northern Countries. Travellers and Merchants tell us, That the Granaries of *Danzick* are generally 7, and some 9 Stories high, having each of them a Funnel to let the Corn run down from one Floor to another, to save the Labour and Charge of Carriage. These Granaries are surrounded with Water, so that Ships lie close to them to take in their Loading; and no Houses are suffer'd to be built near them, for fear of Fire, as we are inform'd by *Phil. Transact.* of R. S. N. 25. P. 466. Merchants import Foreign Commodities to this Place, which furnishes all *Poland*; and this contributes to the enriching of it. One Half of the Port-Customs belongs to the King of Poland, since the Reign of *Sigismundus Augustus*: And one Mill brings him in every Hour of the Day and Night 24 Gold Ducats: It is built on the *Rodawn*, which runs through the City. The Yearly Revenue of this Mill is 4320 *l.* Sterling to the State, beside the Profit it brings to the Proprietors. The Harbour is not deep, so that Ships of Burden can scarce reach the City. Tho' it is subject to the King of Poland, their Form of Government is Republican: The Establish'd Religion here is *Lutheranism* since 1525; the Calvinists are tolerated; and some Papists and Anabaptists are allow'd the Exercise of their Religion. *Cluverius*, the most eminent Geographer of his Time, was born here. There

are 20 Parishes in the City and Suburbs. One Half of the latter belongs to the Crown of Poland, and the other to *Dantzick*. The Streets are dirty in Winter, as in most Towns of Poland. The greatest Part of the Inhabitants are Germans, and are reckon'd above 200000 in all. The Town-House, where the Magistrates meet, is a very magnificent Structure, and has an exceeding high Spire. This City has 3 Magazines, well provided with Stores and Ammunition for Land-Forces. They have a College, with Professors of all Faculties; but don't give the Degree of Doctor. The Jurisdiction of this City extends above 40 English Miles in Circumference. They send two Deputies to the Diet of Poland. The Senators, when once created, continue for Life: Four of the Senate are Calvinists. Out of the 4 Proconsuls or Burgoasters, the King nominates a Burgrave to represent him in the Senate, who signs all Sentences of Death. To represent the Grievances of the People, and to maintain their Privileges, there are 100 Burghers chosen to inspect the Conduct of the Senate. The *Centum-Viri* and Senate chuse their Ministers, which is the Manner in all Lutheran Countries. When the King comes hither, the City treats him for 3 Days; but he is allow'd only to bring a few Guards with him. They have a Secretary always at the Court of Poland. They can coin their Money without the King's Leave: His Effigies is on one Side, and their own Arms on the other. If any appeal to the Tribunal of Poland, he is to lay down 100 Guilders in the Town-House of *Dantzick*, to prevent the Frequency of such Appeals. They have constantly above 200 Soldiers in Pay, can easily maintain 12000, and sometimes they have had an Army of 60000. They have no Men of War, but abundance of Merchant-men of 3 or 400 Tuns, and 30 or 40 Guns apiece. They never Trade into the East or West Indies, but into the *Streights*, and all over Europe. In 1642, the Declination of the Magnet here was 3 Deg. 5 Min. W. In July, 1670, it was 7 Deg. 20 Min. The Scots, in Consideration of the eminent Service they did to this City against the Poles, under the Conduct of one of the Family of Douglas, were allow'd to be Freeman of the Town, and other Privi-

leges, beyond other Foreigners; and one of the Suburbs is still call'd *Scotland*, in Remembrance of this Exploit, and was mostly inhabited by Scots. The Arms of Scotland was also set up over the Gate, from whence they sallied upon the Polish Army, and continued there till lately, that the Gate was rebuilt.

Not far from *Dantzick* to the E. is *Olivka*, an Abbey of the *Benedictines*, remarkable for a Peace concluded there in 1660, betwixt the Emperor, the King of Poland, and the Elector of Brandenburg, on the one Side, and the King of Sweden on the other. *Munde*, or *Weisselmunde*, is a strong Fortress, upon the Mouth of that Branch of the *Weissel* which runs by *Dantzick*, and can hinder the Entry of Ships. *Cenitz*, lies upon the Borders of Brandenburg *Pomerania*, upon the River *Ebro*, 32 English Miles W. from *Culm*. *Dirschow*, is seated upon the *Weissel*, 12 English Miles W. from *Marienburgh*, and 24 S. from *Dantzick*; was once a Place of Strength, but now dismantled: 'Tis an ancient Monument of the Magnificence of the Teutonic Knights. *Pautzke*, lies upon the Gulph of that Name, which is a Part of the *Baltick*, near *Dantzick*: It has a strong Castle, which was taken by the Swedes in 1626, and retaken in 1627. In 1655 the Swedes besieg'd it, but were oblig'd to raise the Siege. *Hella*, is a small Town near *Pautzke* to the W. *Schlau* belongs also to this Palatinate.

The Palatinate of CULM

IT lies betwixt the *Weissel*, Great Poland, and Ducal Prussia, and was one of the 13 Parts of Prussia: It has its Name from *Culm*, the chief City, in Lat. 53 $\frac{1}{2}$, Long. 39. 16 English Miles N. from *Thorn*, and 60 S. from *Dantzick*. This City was built by the Teutonic Knights in 1213, is situated upon a Hill, the Foot of which is washed by the *Weissel*, and was an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Gnesna*. It has few Inhabitants, and no Trade since the Swedish Wars; therefore the Bishop's See is translated to *Colmetssee*, 12 English Miles S. E. from it, *Herman de Saltza*, Master of the Teutonic Order, gave Laws and Constitutions for the Government of this Town; a Specimen

of which is given by *Lambecius*, from an old Dutch MSS. in the Emperor's Library at *Vienna*. The Municipal Laws of this Place are famous all over *Prussia*. It is still reckon'd one of the *Hans-Towns*. *Thorn*, is a *Hans-Town*, on the *Weissel*, which divides it: It lies in Lat. 53, and Long. 39. 16 English Miles S. from *Culm*, 72 S. from *Marienburg*, 88 S. from *Dantzick*, 60 N. from *Lancicia*, and 116 N. W. from *Warsaw*. It was built at the same time with *Culm*, by the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*, as a Garrison to curb the Pagan *Prussians*, but not in the Place where it now stands. Old *Thorn*, was seated a Mile W. from the New; but by whom and when New *Thorn* was built, is not certain. *Cluverius* says, it was a famous Mart, long before *Dantzick* was considerable for Trade. It has a Bridge over the *Weissel*. In 1454, both Old and New *Thorn* revolted from the *Teutonic Knights* to the *Poles*, who allow'd them great Privileges; whereas the Knights govern'd them in an Arbitrary Manner. It has its Name from the German Word *Thor*, a Gate, because built by the Knights to receive such Forces into their Dominions as they needed. Hence the Arms of *Thorn* are a Castle and a Gate half open. This City is the neatest and best built of any in *Prussia*: The Houses are more stately, and the Streets broader, than at *Dantzick*. It owes much of its Beauty to *Henry Strickland*, Burgo-Master of the Town, who died in 1609. He built the University, and endow'd it with a considerable Revenue. The Professors here are Men of great Learning. He founded also the Town-Hall, which, next to the *Stadthuis* in *Amsterdam*, is reckon'd the stateliest in *Europe*. He built a Hospital, and founded a Library, where two of *Cicero's* Epistles are preserv'd upon Tables of Wax. *Nicolaus Copernicus*, the great Astronomer and Mathematician, and remarkable also for his Piety, was born here in 1473, and died here in 1543.

In 1645, by Order of the King of *Poland*, a Conference was held here betwixt Lutherans, Calvinists and Papists, which had no Success. The Acts of this Conference were printed at *Warsaw* in 1646, and *Georgius Calixtus* wrote Animadversions upon it. This Place is famous for holding out a long Siege against the *Swedes*, who took

it in 1655. The *Poles* retook it in 1658, after a Siege of 6 Months. The *Swedes* recover'd it afterwards; but in 1665, the *Poles* surpris'd it. The Fortifications were formerly very considerable; but *Charles* the XIIth. the present King of *Sweden*, having taken it October 14, 1703. dismantled it.

Other Towns of Note here are, 1. *Graudenz*, a pleasant and strong Town, upon the *Weissel*, where the *Ossa* falls into it, and is now well fortified; so that it is in no Danger from any Surprize. It lies 36 English Miles N. from *Thorn*, and 44 S. from *Marienburg*. 2. *Strasburg*, is seated on the River *Debrentz*, E. from *Culm*, which in the last Age was frequently taken and retaken by the *Swedes* and *Poles*. 3. *Gbortza*, one League from *Culm*, on the opposite Bank of the *Weissel*, has now nothing remarkable but a fine Church; tho' during the Government of the *Teutonic Knights*, 'twas the most flourishing Town of *Prussia*, as is evident from some of its stately Ruins. 4. *Novi*, two Leagues below *Graudenz*, is built on a Hill, the Foot of which is wash'd by the *Weissel*. 5. *Glnief*, a small Town, with a strong Castle, where *John Sobieski* kept his Treasures.

The Territory of *Michalovia* in this Country is a strait Neck of Land between the Rivers *Brodna* and *Drebentz*, and was the Occasion of bloody Wars betwixt the *Poles* and *Teutonic Knights*.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Bishops of *Culm* and *Warmia*, and the Palatine and Castellan of *Culm*.

The Palatinate of MARIENBURGH.

IT lies betwixt the *Weissel*, the *Baltick*, and *Ducal Prussia*, and has its Name from *Marienburg*, the chief City, in Lat. 54, Long. 38. It lies upon the *Nogat*, a Branch of the *Weissel*, which loses it self in *Frische Haff*. The Natives call it *Margenburgh*. It derives its Name from an Image of the Virgin *Mary*, found there when the Fortifications were built. It lies 24 English Miles S. E. from *Dantzick*, 16 S. W. from *Elbing*, and 44 N. from *Thorn*. In 1281, the Castle was built by the *Teutonic Knights*, to stop the Inroads of the *Prussians*, and was the

Capi-

Capital of their Dominions, and reckon'd impregnable. *Casimir IV.* King of Poland, took it in 1460. The *Swedes* took it in 1626, after 5 Months Siege. In 1640, it was burnt down by the *Germans*. In 1655, the *Swedes* took it; but it was restor'd again to the *Poles* in 1660, by the Peace of *Oliva*. The Town is but meanly built; most of its Houses are of Wood, and the Inhabitants poor; for thò the Island of *Marienburg*, which is made by the *Weissel*, be rich, its Revenues are spent in casting up great Banks to preserve it from the Inundations of the River. The best Mead in *Prussia* is made here. The fruitful Island of *Zulna* lies near this City. *Elbing*, lies in Lat. 54 $\frac{1}{2}$, Lon. 40, on a small River of the same Name, which falls into the *Frisch-Haff*. *Protolomy* seems to place his *Elveones*, and *Tacitus* his *Helvecones*, near this Town. *Fredericus Zamalius* calls this City *Augusta Elveonum*, and *Elveopolis*, not doubting but it had its Name from those ancient People. *Hemshergus* more probably derives that Name from *Oehlsing*, *Oelfany*, or *Oelfang*, i. e. a Place where Eels are caught. *Comringius* says, it is from *Elff*, a Name given to Rivers by the *Goths*. It was built in 1239, by the Burghers of *Lubeck*, who obtain'd from the Knights, that it should enjoy the same Privileges and the same Laws that the Emperor *Frederick II.* had granted to *Lubeck*. The Master of the Order gave them for their Arms two Crosses and a Net, from the Arms of *Lubeck*. Their great Trade made it in a small time one of the most considerable Cities on the *Baltick*. In 1454, they put themselves under the Protection of the King of Poland, and levelled their Castle, because the *Teutonic Knights* invaded their Privileges: It continued faithful to the *Poles* till 1525. *Albert Marquis of Brandenburg*, and first Duke of *Prussia*, built an University here in 1542. In 1626, it was taken by the *Swedes*, who restor'd it in 1636. After this, they open'd their Gates to *Charles Gustavus*, King of Sweden; but it was restor'd again to the *Poles* by the Peace of *Oliva*: It now

belongs to the King of *Prussia*; thò they never own'd that Prince till 1698, that General *Brant* laid Siege to it, and oblig'd them to surrender, having then but a small Garrison. It is the chief Town of *Hockerland*, and lies near the *Baltick*. When *Stephen* King of Poland belieg'd *Dantzick* in 1577, he made *Elbing* the Staple of Trade. At that Time the *English* set up there, and brought their Cloths to it; and *Gustavus Adolphus* design'd also to make it the Staple during his *Prussian* Wars. This City is well built, and very clean. Many *English* trade here, thò their Number is abated since the Staple of our Cloth was fix'd at *Dantzick*. The Boors in the Neighbourhood of *Elbing* have as good Clothes and Houses almost as the Noblemen in *Curland*; and one cannot distinguish a Boor from a Burgher by their Apparel. The Country is Champagne and Level, like *Holland*, and as fruitful and well Peopled as any Part of that Province; *Amsterdam* excepted.

WARMIA, by some reckon'd the 4th Palatinate of *Polish Prussia*, is a Bishoprick, where the Gentry are exempt from the Regal Jurisdiction, and govern'd by the Laws of *Prussia*, under their Bishop, who is a Prince of the Empire. His Seat is *Heilsberg*, on the River *Alle*, 32 *English* Miles S. from *Koningsberg*. 'Twas built in 1240. *Frauenburgh*, or *Frauburg*, lies upon the Bay called *Frisch-Haff*, where the River *Schöna* falls into it: It has a convenient Harbour, is 11 *English* Miles N. E. from *Elbing*, and as many from *Pillau*. The Cathedral Church of *Warmia* is here, of which the famous *Copernicus* was a Canon. *Braunsberg*, lies betwixt *Marienburg* and *Koningsberg*, upon the *Baltick* Sea, near the Bay of *Frisch-Haff*, 30 Miles E. of *Dantzick*, and 25 E. of *Elbing*. It has been mortgaged to the King of *Prussia* for many Years, is populous, and has a famous University.

The Senators of the Palatinate of *Marienburg* are, the Palatine and Castellan of that City.

CHAP. XV.

The Great Dutchy of LITHUANIA.

IT has *Muscovy* on the E. some Parts of it on the N. E. *Livonia* on the N. *Samogitia* on the N. W. *Ducal Prussia* and *Masovia* on the W. *Little Poland* on the S. W. *Red Russia* on the S. and the *Ukrain* on the S. E. This is the greatest Province belonging to *Poland*. *Stararvolsci*, whose Opinion in this is most to be trusted, says, the Length of *Lithuania*, from the Borders of *Ducal Prussia*, which joins the Palatinate of *Truki*, in Long. 43, to the Frontiers of *Muscovy*, or the Borders of the Dutchy of *Novogorod*, in Long. 54, is 660 *English Miles*; and the Breadth, from the Borders of *Red Russia*, in Lat. 50, to the Borders of *Muscovy* in 56, is 360 *English Miles*. In the Time of its Great Duke *Vitoldus*, it reach'd from the *Euxine Sea* to the *Baltick*. *Cluverius* says, the Length of it is, from the Fountains of the River *Polot*, in the Confines of *Livonia* and *Muscovy*, to the Town of *Dassow* near the *Black Sea*, 260 *German Leagues*; and the Breadth, between the *Memel* and the *Nieper*, 80; which makes *Lithuania* much larger than really it is; for it does not come near the *Black Sea* by many Miles. The Natives call it *Litwa*; the *German*, *Die Littawen*; the *French*, *La Lituanie*; the *Italians*, *Lituania*; and the *Poles*, *Litewsky*.

Whence the Name is deriv'd, is not certain; some will have it from *Litum*, a Hunting-Horn, because the Natives were given to Hunting; but this is too general. *Erasmus Stella*, a good Historian, says, That a Colony of *Prussians* settled here, under the Command of *Lituo*, their King's Son, in 573, whence the Country was called *Lithuania*; but this is also rejected, for the *Prussians* obtain'd this Place by Conquest since that Time. The *Polish* Historians generally agree, That *Palemon* flying from the Fury of *Attila* the *Hun*, left *Rome*, and

came hither with a Colony of *Italians*, who call'd it *La Italia*, which was afterwards corrupted into *Lituania*. The *Lithuanians* are fond of this Origine, and think it confirm'd by the *Roman* Names of their Nobles, *Ursin*, *Column*, *Julian*, &c. But *Hartnack* says, it had its Name from *Littwa*, one of the *Alani*, who was one of their Dukes long before *Palemon*'s Time; and thinks this the more probable, because the *Lithuanians* still retain some Footsteps of the Name of those People in their *Lithalini* and *Roxalani*; but the Account that *Amianus Marcellinus* gives of the *Alani*, differing so much from that given of the *Lithuanians* by their best Authors, shows that they are not of one Nation; and their Language proves them to be of the same Origine with the *Prussians*.

We have no Accounts of this Country that can be depended on earlier than the 12th Century, when that People began to come out of their Woods, and to make a Figure in the World. In 1252, *Mendog*, a brave Man, headed his Countrymen, who, under his Conduct, recover'd their Liberty, and revolted from the *Russians*. He afterwards became their Prince, civiliz'd them by good Laws, and in the beginning of his Reign defeated the *Tautonick* Knights, and over-run all *Prussia*. He was succeeded by others that made Wars on the *Poles*, *Prussians*, &c. who invaded their Country. In 1304, their famous Prince *Godimin* refus'd to pay Tribute to the *Russians*, and entering the Country of *Novogorod* with an Army, took *Volodomir*, and made all *Polhinia* swear Fealty to the Magistracy of *Lithuania*. He conquer'd all the *Ukrain*, *Prussia*, and a great Part of *Muscovy*. In 1305, he built *Vilna*. In 1331, he invaded the *Tartars*, and recover'd *Podolia*. About this Time *Demetrius* Duke of *Muscovy* sent an Ambassador into
Lithu

Lithuania, to demand a Restitution of all those Places and Provinces that belong'd to the Great Dukedom of *Russia*. *Godimir* imprison'd the Ambassador, march'd a great Army to *Muscovy*, surpris'd the Czar in his Palace, and forc'd him to accept a Peace upon disadvantageous Terms, viz. That the Bounds of *Lithuania* should reach as far as *Moscow*, and the River *Ugra*. In 1386, *Uladislaw Jagello*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, was chosen King of *Poland*, on Promise that *Lithuania* should be annex'd to *Poland*: But it was provided by the Articles of the Union, That *Lithuania* should have their ancient Laws, Privileges, Senators, and Great Officers, continued. At this Time the *Lithuanian* and *Polish* Nobility swore Allegiance to the King and Queen of *Poland*, which was renewed in 1401, and 1414, but still the *Poles* were oblig'd to send *Lithuanian* Princes to govern them. Afterwards, when the *Poles* design'd to join *Volhynia*, *Podolia*, and some other Provinces of *Russia*, to the Crown *Poland*, the *Lithuanians* oppos'd it with such Vigour and Bravery, that it occasion'd a long War betwixt the two Nations: At last, in 1566, the Differences were a little compos'd, and finally ended in 1569. The Articles were sign'd by both People, in Presence of Foreign Ambassadors; viz. That the *Lithuanians* should for ever disclaim all Right or Pretensions to the Provinces of *Polachia* and *Volhynia*, and *Palatinates* of *Kiow*, and never elect a separate Duke or Governor; but upon a Vacancy, should repair to the Place whither they should be summon'd by the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, the Inter-Rex of *Poland*: That in every Election, the *Lithuanians* and *Polish* Nobility should have equal Freedom in Voting: That whoever, by a Majority of Votes of both Nations, should be elected King of *Poland*, should at the same time be pronounc'd Great Duke of *Lithuania*: That the Election should always be held in some Place near the Confines of both Countries: And that the Diet should sit in *Poland* and *Lithuania* by Turns, &c. In 1654, and 1665, the Czar invaded *Lithuania*; upon which the King of *Poland* made Peace with *Sweden*, and drove the *Muscovites* out of *Poland*. In 1667, 13 Years Truce was concluded betwixt the *Muscovites* and *Poles*, on Condition, That *Blackz*, *Vitepski*, and the Higher *Livonia*, should be restor'd to *Poland*; That *Novel*, *Velise*, and *Sibisch*, should be excepted from

the *Palatinates* of *Polockz* and *Vitepski*; That the *Muscovites* should keep *Smolensko*, *Sevir*, and all the *Ukrain* beyond the *Nieper*; and that *Kiow*, after two Years, should be restor'd to the Crown of *Poland*.

Of the CLIMATE and SOIL of Lithuania.

THE Air is extream thick and foggy, because the Country is full of Woods and Lakes, there being one Forrest of 100 Miles in Length. They have store of Venison and Fish, and the Land is tolerably fruitful; but the extream Cold frequently spoils their Harvest. *Lithuania* was overgrown with Woods till the Reign of *Sigismundus I.* who burnt down many of them. His Example was follow'd by succeeding Kings, who us'd all Endeavours to cultivate this Country. Their Beasts of all kinds are little, because of the Cold. Besides those they have in common with *Germany*, they have Elks, Wild-Horses, Wild-Oxes, or Buffalo's, Wild-Asses, and the Beasts called *Uri*.

Of their COMMODITIES.

THE greatest Trade of *Lithuania* is in Pitch, Tar, and Timber, which are transported to *Holland* and other Nations, for which they receive Salt and Wines. They are sufficiently provided with all other Necessaries, have great Herds of Black Cattle, and considerable Flocks of Sheep; with Ermins, Sables; and all manner of Furs. They have great Plenty of Wax, Honey, and Pitch.

Of their TEMPER.

THEir Nobles are insolent, proud, and domineering, and the Boors slavish, mean and cowardly, as has been mention'd already in the General Description of *Poland*. In their Wars with *Poland*, they discover'd their barbarous and cruel Temper, deny'd Quarter to all Captives, ripp'd up Women with Child, and murder'd Infants. They are treacherous to their Prince, regard-

gardless of Oaths and Promises, and to this Day have an inveterate Hatred to the Poles. Dr. Connor says, he was assur'd at the Court of Poland, That Children, when expos'd or lost, are frequently nurs'd by Bears, who are very numerous in those Woods; and that one who had been nurs'd was kept in a Convent; his Countenance was frightful, and he had neither the Use of Reason nor Speech; he went upon all four, and often endeavour'd an Escape to the Woods: He was taught to stand, as we do Dogs, by placing his Body straight against a Wall. Monsieur Cleverickirk, Ambassador from Holland to K. W. III. confirms this in a Letter to Dr. Connor, and says, That in 1661, he saw a Boy in a Nunnery of 12 Years of Age who had been so nurs'd: He catch'd at one of his Silver Buttons, smell'd to it, and then leap'd to a Corner and howl'd. When he got any Bread, he leap'd upon a Bench, and walk'd on all four; then putting the Bread to his Nose, he leap'd down to the Ground, and howl'd as before. He was not then brought to speak, and had some Scars on his Face, occasion'd by the Scratches of the Bear.

Of their APPAREL.

THE old Lithuanians wore raw Hides of Beasts, Linen, and the inner Barks of Linden Trees, for Clothes. *Uladislaus Jagello* brought many of them to Poland, where he clad them with Woollen, and gave 'em Shoes. Their Nobles bought their Clothes ready made from other Nations. The Boors in many Places still wear their ancient Habit. They eat Bread made of the Ears of Wheat unwinnow'd. Their Drink has already been accounted for in the Description of Poland.

Of their LANGUAGE.

THE Lithuanians generally speak the *Sclavonick* and all their Pleadings in Courts of Judicature are in that Tongue. They have a great Mixture of *Polish*, and much Latin, which seems to confirm the Story of *Polemon*, formerly mention'd; some Instances of which are as follow:

Duonus, *Donum*, a Gift; *Ugnis*, *Ignis*, Fire; *Oras*, *Air*, *Air*; *Saule*, *Sol*, the Sun; *Mensus*, a Month; *Diena*, *Dies*, a Day; *Rajsa*, *Ros*, Dew; *Diewas*, *Dew*, God; *Viras*, *Vir*, a Man, &c. The Latin Tongue is as common here as in Poland, and spoke by People of all Ranks.

Of their RELIGION.

NO Nation in Europe has been more bewitch'd with Idolatry: They worship'd Serpents, and many of them continued to do so till within these few Years; of which *Sigismund Baroh* of *Herbestein* (in *Comment Rer. Muscov. P. 84.*) gives us this memorable Story, "Returning (says he) lately from *Masovia*, at *Troki*, a small Town 8 English Miles from *Vilna*, my Host acquainted me, That the same Year he had chanc'd to buy a Hive of Bees of one of those Serpent-Worshippers, whom with much ado he perswaded to worship the true God, and kill his Serpent. Within a while after, coming that Way, he found the poor Fellow miserably tortur'd and deform'd, his Face wrinkled and turn'd awry; and demanding the Cause, he receiv'd this Answer, *That this Judgment was inflicted on him for killing his God; and that he was like to endure heavier Torments, if he did not return to his former Worship.*" There are still some Remains of this Idolatry in the Country; for in many Villages both in *Lithuania* and *Prussia*, the poor Boors keep Adders in their Houses, to which they pay a Superstitious Respect, tho' they profess Christianity, and fancy some great Disaster will certainly befall them, if those Household-Goods be hurt or injur'd. The ancient Lithuanians had also an Idol called *Percune*, to whom they kept a Fire continually burning, with as much Caution and Diligence, as the Vestal Fire was kept at Rome; and if the *Waidelot*, or Priest, suffer'd the Fire to go out, he was sure to die for it. The like Ceremonies were perform'd in Remembrance of *Kirm*, one of their Princes, on the Top of a high Hill near *Dziemalston*. Some think these Ceremonies were deriv'd from the Roman Colony that settled there under *Polemon*. They also buried their Dead, as *Cypelwick* informs us in his History

story of *Lith. Lib. 5. Cap. 140.* and expected a Resurrection from the Ashes, upon the coming of a strange God to judge the whole Earth, from the Top of one of their Mountains. In 1386, *Uladislaus Jagello*, their Great Duke, converted them from their Idolatry; for upon his marrying of *Hedwig*, Queen of *Poland*, he turn'd Christian, and was baptiz'd at *Cracow* by *John* Bishop of that See. When he first undertook the Conversion of the Pagans, he met with great Opposition; but when he cut down their tall Trees, the Temples of their Heathenish Gods, and the People saw that no Mischief or Punishment befel him, they began to reason thus; Our Gods would never have put up this Affront, if they had been able to revenge it, and shew'd themselves inclinable to listen to *Jagello's* Advice: Upon which the King built a Cathedral, and founded a Bishoprick at *Vilna*, and the Queen gave Chalices, Vestments, and other Ornaments, to 7 Churches in the Neighbourhood. At this Time many *Lithuanians* are of the Greek Church, tho' more of the *Roman*. In *Vilna*, and several other great Towns, vast Numbers of the Inhabitants are *Lutherans*. They marry'd and unmarried as oft as they thought fit; and tho' they thought it a Fault to lie with a Harlot, yet it was very ordinary and modish for their Wives to have Gallants, to whom their Husbands thought themselves obliged, look'd upon them as their Assistants and Partners, and valued them more than their other Acquaintance. *Narimundus*, their Great Duke, is said to have invented the Arms of *Lithuania*, which are, *Party per Pale, Gules and Azure*: In the former a Warrior arm'd Cap-a-pee, brandishing a Sword over his Head, and riding a Horse *Argent* in full Career; and in the second the *Virgin Mary*, with our Saviour in her Arms, surrounded by a *Glory*.

The Division of LITHUANIA.

Lithuania is divided by *Starovolscius*, whom most Geographers follow, into *Lithuania Proper*, which contains the Palatinates of *Vilna* and *Troki*. The 2d Division is, according to *Hartknock*, *Little White Russia*, which contains 8 Palatinates.

The Palatinate of VILNA.

IT is a little Palatinate, has that of *Breslaw* on the E. *Troki* on the W. *Samogitia* on the N. and the Palatinate of *Minskue* on the S. It has its Name from the chief Town, which was built in 1305 by *Godimin*, the Great Duke of *Lithuania*. In 1655, it was taken and plunder'd by the *Muscovites*; but was after retaken by *Casimir* King of *Poland*. It is seated upon the *Vilia*, a navigable River, where the *Wila* falls into it, and lies 130 Polish Miles N.E. from *Cracow*, 48 N. from *Riga*, 70 N.E. from *Warsaw*, and 100 E. from *Smolensko*. This City is large, and indifferently populous; but the Streets are badly pav'd, and nasty: All their Houses are of Wood, except the Palace of the Great Dukes of *Lithuania*; and some Merchants Houses, which are of Stone. It has two Castles; that on a Hill is ancient, and almost ruin'd; but the other is a Pile of beautiful modern Architecture. The Churches are all of Stone, and are possess'd by those of the *Roman* and *Russian* Faith. The Cathedral stands in the lower Castle, where the Body of *St. Casimir*, Canoniz'd by *Pope Leo X.* lies in a large Silver Tomb of great Value. Here is also a very large Bell, that requires 24 strong Men to ring it. King *Stephen* founded the Academy in 1579, which was erected then into an University by *Gregory XIII.* There are 6 Professors of Divinity, 5 of Philosophy, 4 of Laws, and 7 of Philology. The *Muscovite* Company there have a neat Warehouse for their Ermins, Sables, and other Merchandize from *Moscow*. Guns, and other Warlike Instruments, of excellent Workmanship, are made here. *Vilna* has the Honour of having the Tribunal for all *Lithuania*. *Alexander* King of *Poland* died here in 1506. The Citizens are exceeding poor and idle, Slaves to their Noblemen, and their Bellies. They are great Lovers of Garlick and Onions, which, with their smoaky Houses, make half of them blind before they arrive to any considerable Age. They are great Drinkers, and quarrelsome; and if a Stranger be kill'd in any such Riot, the Murderer is only to pay 16 Dollars as a Mulct. When a *Lithuanian* is slain, his Corps is preserv'd till they can find the

gaily

guilty Person, whom they cannot condemn without shewing him the Corps of the deceased. They have no Hospital in that City, tho' they need one more than any Place in Europe. The Streets are crowded with Swarms of Beggars. Other Towns are, 1. *Osmian*, a Wooden Town, Capital of its District, about 28 English Miles S.E. from *Vilna*, to which belongs a large Jurisdiction, with several eminent Towns. 2. *Braslaw*, built of Timber, on a large Lake, with a Castle on a Rock: It has a considerable Jurisdiction, and lies 80 English Miles N. E. from *Vilna*. *Sanson* and others make *Braslaw* a particular Palatinate; but *Hartnack*, the most learned of all the Polish Writers, says otherwise. 3. *Wilkomitz*, upon the River *Swienta*: It is fortified, and has an ancient Castle, which the *Muscovites* took in 1655. It lies N. W. from *Vilna*, on the Borders of *Samogitia*. The Causes of the Gentry are tried here. It has a very large Jurisdiction, in which are several considerable Towns, belonging to the King, Bishops and Gentry. 4. *Ikaznia*, near a River of the same Name, about 12 English Miles S. E. from *Braslaw*. 5. *Drizwicz*, on a Lake near a River of that Name, 20 English Miles S. W. from *Braslaw*.

The Arms of this Palatinate are *Argent* and *Gules*; in the former the Arms of *Lithuania*, and in the latter 2 Pillars of the first.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Vilna*.

The Palatinate of TROKI.

IT has *Samogitia* on the N. *Ducal Prussia* on the W. the Palatinate of *Vilna* on the N. E. and that of *Novogrodec* on the S. The Senators are, the Palatine and Castellan. The chief Town is *Troki*. It was founded in 1321, by *Godimin*, who made it his Seat. In 1655, it was taken by the *Muscovites*, who plunder'd and burnt it, and massacred the Inhabitants with so great Cruelty, that the River on which the City stands was dy'd with Blood. It has a strong Castle, and is seated on a Point of Land that shoots out into a Lake, and lies 16 English Miles W. from *Vilna*. It had formerly a strong Wall, which was destroyed by the Knights of the

Teutonic Order. It has a Castle in a Lake, fortified both by Nature and Art. Other Towns are, 1. *Grodno*, upon the *Memel*, S. from *Troki*. *Sigismund III.* built a Bridge over that River of Timber, so artfully contriv'd, that there is nothing in *Poland* comparable to it. The Castle was built by *Stephen Battori*, and is strong. The Jesuits have a College in this City. The General Diets of the Kingdom every third Year are kept here. The *Muscovites* took it in 1655, and destroy'd it entirely; but now it is rebuilt, and has a good Trade. 2. *Lida*, the Capital of its District, built with Wood, has a tolerable Castle, and a Court of Justice for the Gentry. 3. *Couna*, a small Town, on the Confines of *Samogitia*, upon the Conflux of the *Memel* and *Welia*, with a strong Castle, founded on a Rock. Its Situation would make it impregnable if it were fortified. 4. *Upita*, is Capital of a large District, where there are several Towns. 5. *Mereczis*, built at the Confluence of the *Merecz* and the *Memel*, N. from *Grodno*.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Troki*.

The Arms are, in a Field *Azure* those of *Lithuania*.

The 3d. Palatinate is LITTLE WHITE RUSSIA:

IN Length about 200 Miles, and in Breadth 120. It is divided into six Parts, the first of which is,

NOVOGRODEC.

WHICH is divided into the two Districts of *Novogrodec* and *Slonim*. *Novogrodec* is the chief City, is built of Timber, and was the Appenage of the second Sons of the Dukes of *Lithuania*. The Diet for the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* is held by turns in this Place and *Minski*. It is built on a Plain, has no Fortifications, and lies 12 English Miles S. from the *Memel*. Other Towns are, 1. *Slonim*, which has a Castle, and some other regular Fortifications lately built. The District of this City was formerly a Dutchy: It lies 32 English Miles S. from *Novogrod*. 2. *Wolkowisko*, is a large Town,

on the Borders of *Podlachia*, S. from *Grodno*, and has a Court of Justice for the Gentry.

3. *Lacowicz*, famous for a very fair Palace, built by a Grand General of *Lithuania*, is well fortified after the modern Way.

4. *Myſza*, a Town with a Castle, seated on a Lake.

5. *Zlucz*, one of the largest Cities in this Country, on a River of that Name,

80 *English* Miles S. E. from *Novogrodeck*. The Cathedral and Ducal Palace are of Stone.

This City had not long ago a Prince of its own, with large Territories; but he was always Tributary to *Poland*, and is at present in Possession of the Family of *Radziwil*.

The three pitch'd Battles which *Constantine* Duke of *Ostrog* gain'd over the *Tartars* near this Place, make it famous.

6. *Rozan*, a well built Town, with very fair Streets.

7. *Nezwitz*, 60 *English* Miles E. from *Novogrodeck*.

Nicholas Radziwil, surnam'd the *Pilgrim*, founded some noble publick Edifices here.

The River *Ofza* falls into the *Memel* near this Place.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Novogrodeck*.

The Arms are, in a *Field-Azure* those of the Great Dutchy.

The Palatinate of BRIESCIA, or POLESIA.

IT lies betwixt *Red Russia* on the S. E. *Volkonia* on the S. *Mazovia* on the W. and the Palatinate of *Novogrodeck* on the N. It is overgrown with Woods, and has many Lakes and Pools. It has its Name from the chief Town *Briescia*, which is a large Wooden City, near the Confines of the Palatinate of *Lublin*, on the *Bug*, where the *Muhavetz* falls into it, which makes it strong. The Castle is of Timber, but founded on a Rock. It lies 80 *English* Miles N. E. from *Lublin*, and 120 E. from *Warsaw*. The Jews have their chief Academy here, to which they resort from *Italy*, *Germany*, *Moravia*, *Silesia*, &c. not only to study, but also to take Degrees in that Religion. There's a Palace of modern Architecture here, with Variety of pleasant Gardens. 2. *Prinsko*, indifferent large, on the River *Pina*, which falls into the *Przpiec*, that joins the *Nieper* on the Borders of the

Dutchy of *Czernichow*. It lies 90 *English* Miles E. from *Briescia*. The *Cossacks* took,

plunder'd and burnt it; so that little but the Ruins are now to be seen.

The Inhabitants are industrious, and make frequent Journeys into *Muscovy* and *Germany* on Account of Trade.

They are generally of the *Greek Church*, and have a Bishop, who resides here.

3. *Biala*, S. W. from *Bressici*, famous for a Palace built by the Dukes of the Family of *Radziwil*, which is now a College for instructing of Youth.

4. *Prepetus*, a Town with an old Castle, built on the River of the same Name.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Briescia*.

The Arms are the same with the former, differing only by a B in the middle.

The Palatinate of MINSKO.

IS in the middle of *Lithuania*, has the Palatinate of *Mscislaw* on the E. that of *Witepsk* on the N. *Vilna* on the N. W. *Novogrodeck* on the S. W. and *Robaczow* on the S. E.

The Capital is *Minsko*, a large Town, on the River *Swisloetz*, in the middle of a Morass, with a double Wall, a strong Castle,

a very deep Ditch, and other Fortifications. Formerly the Diet was kept here alternately with *Vilna* and *Novogrodeck*.

2. *Borissow*, on the River *Berezina*, whose Course is S. E. After it has run through this Palatinate, and the Territory of *Robaczow*, in

Lat. 52 $\frac{1}{2}$, it falls into the *Nieper*. The Castle is well fortified, and the Garison is very strong, to prevent the Incursions of the *Muscovites*.

It lies about 150 *English* Miles S. E. from *Vilna*. It was ruin'd in 1655 by the *Muscovites*, and nothing rebuilt since but the Castle.

3. *Kordanow*, with a Castle, about 100 Miles from *Vilna*.

4. *Radoskowiz*, which has also a Castle. *Sigismundus Augustus* muster'd above 100000 Men here at once in 1568.

5. *Robaczow*, the chief City of a Territory of that Name, lies near the *Nieper*, where the River *Odniecz* falls into it,

80 *English* Miles S. from *Mohilow*, and 160 from *Kiow*.

6. *Loboisko*, about 30 Miles from *Borissow*.

7. *Bobroisko*, on the River *Berezina*.

8. *Odruczko*, with a Castle: It formerly gave Name to a Dutchy, whereof several

Noble *Russians* had the Title. 9. *Mozyr*, on the River *Przypiecz*, where the *Tur* falls into it.

The Palatinate of WITEPSK, or VITEBSKO.

The Palatinate of MSCISLAW.

HAS that of *Minski* on the W. *Witepsk* on the N. and the Duchy of *Smolensko* on the E. It is divided by the *Nieper*, is a very Woody Country, and the Frontiers towards *Muscovy* are overflowed with Water: The Champagne Ground is generally fruitful; it abounds with Cattle of all sorts, and has great Numbers of excellent Fowl: 'Tis divided into the 2 large Districts of *Mscislaw* and *Modziria*. *Jagello* erected it into a Duchy for his Brother *Simon*. The Capital is *Mscislaw*, which is a small Town, on the River *Sofz*, near the Frontiers of *Muscovy*, and therefore strongly garison'd. It lies 64 English Miles S. from *Smolensko*, and 72 E. from *Mohilow*. This District was formerly a Sovereignty, but now reduc'd. It is famous for a great Victory obtain'd in 1514 over the *Muscovites*, by *Constantine* Duke of *Ostrog*; but in 1660, the *Muscovites*, to revenge this Loss, took the City, and massacred all the Inhabitants. 2. *Modzir*, is Capital of its District, and built among Marshes. 3. *Dambrow*, 14 Miles W. from *Smolensko*, on the Confines of *Muscovy*: It has a strong Castle. 4. *Bychow*, 48 English Miles from *Mohilow*, upon the *Nieper*, has also a Castle. 5. *Kopysc*, with a Castle. 6. *Sklow*, both on the same River. 7. *Raczycza*, with a Castle. 8. *Wischchorod*, about 12 English Miles from *Kiow*. 9. *Striffin*, with a Castle, all on the *Nieper*. 10. *Mohilow*, is built on a Hill, the Foot of which is water'd by the *Nieper*: 'Tis large and well built, and one of the strongest Towns of *Lithuania*. The *Muscovites* took it in 1654, and kept it till 1656, when it was retaken by the *Poles*. It is noted for its Trade, and a fine College, built by the *Jesuits*. The *Muscovites* transport their Furs this Way into *Germany* and *Poland*.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Castellans and Palatine of *Mscislaw*.

The Arms are the same with those of *Lithuania*, with an *M* in the middle.

IT has *Muscovy* on the E. the Palatinate of *Poloczko* on the N. W. and W. and those of *Minsko* and *Mscislaw* to the S. It had Dukes of its own till the Heirefs married *Olgor*, the Father of *Jagello*, in 1359. It has its Name from *Witebsko*, its Capital, which is very strong, because it lies on the Confluence of the *Dwina* and *Wiezba*; by which Goods are transported to *Riga* in *Livonia*: It is about 48 English Miles from the Borders of *Muscovy*, 64 E. from *Poloczko*, 100 N. W. from *Smolensko*, and 300 N. E. from *Vilna*. It was often taken and retaken in the late *Muscovite* Wars. It has two large Castles, well defended by Nature and Art, against the Incurfions of the *Muscovites*, who have often been repuls'd here with great Loss. It has always a Garison of 2000 Men. 2. *Orska*, a large City, defended on the one Side with Palisadoes, and on the other by the *Nieper*: It has a strong Stone Castle, wash'd by the River *Orsca*, lies 72 English Miles W. from *Smolensko*, and 48 N. from *Mohilow*. 3. *Czarniki*, on the River *Ula*. 4. *Siewco*, with a Castle, about 24 Miles from *Czarniki*. 5. *Leplo*, with a Castle, on a Lake, 28 English Miles from *Czarniki*. 6. *Woroniec*, with a Castle, on the River *Usacza*, about 12 Miles from *Poloczko*. 7. *Wielicz*, which was taken in 1573 by the *Muscovites*, and retaken in 1579.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Palatine and Castellans of *Witebsko*.

The Arms are in a Field-Vert, those of *Lithuania*.

The Palatinate of POLOCZKO.

IT lies in the N. E. Part of *Lithuania*, has *Muscovy* on the N. and E. and the Palatinate of *Vitebsko* on the S. E. It is so call'd from the chief Town, on the Confluence of the *Dwina* and *Polesa*, in Lat. 55 $\frac{1}{2}$, Long. 48; according to Mr. *Moll*; but *Jaillet* places it in 53 $\frac{1}{2}$. It was formerly very considerable;

ble; but in 1562, *John Basflowitz*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*, took it, and carry'd away most of the Inhabitants. *Stephen Bastori* recover'd it in 1579, together with the whole Territory. It was formerly a Dutchy, and subject only to its own Princes. A *Russian* Prelate resides here. The *Jesuits* have a fair College here, built and endow'd by *Stephen Bastori*: It has two Castles, upon the *Dwina*, where the *Polesa* falls into it. It is the Bulwark of *Lithuania* against the *Muscovites*, who belieg'd it in vain in the

last Wars. 2. *Usacz*, 12 *English* Miles from *Polocz*, on a River of its own Name. 3. *Dishna*, on the *Dwina*, tolerably fortified: It lies 24 *English* Miles from *Polocz*. 4. *Drissa*, upon the *Dwina*, 45 *English* Miles N. W. from *Polocz*.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Palatine and Castellán of *Polocz*.

The Arms are the same with those of *Lithuania*, with a P side-ways in the middle of the Coat.

C H A P. XVI.

S A M O G I T I A.

IT is divided into 3 Governments or Captainships: It has *Lithuania*, the Palatinates of *Vilna* and *Troki*, on the S. E. *Courland* and *Semigallia* on the N. the *Baltick* on the W. and *Ducal Prussia* on the S. W. The *Estions* were the ancient Inhabitants. This Province takes its Name from its Situation, which is low and marshy; for the Word *Samogitz* signifies so much. It abounds with Lakes and inaccessible Mountains, and is much over-run with Woods, which afford great Quantities of Honey, purer than that of *Lithuania* or *Livonia*. Their Ploughs are wholly of Wood; and tho' their Soil be fat and stiff, they are fond of those Wooden Ploughs to a Superstition. One of their *Starosta's* design'd to introduce Iron Plough-shears; but the Season not proving so warm as formerly, they imputed it to the Change of their Ploughs; so that he was forc'd to allow them their former Ploughs, to prevent an Insurrection. Their Horses are very swift, but generally so small, that one would wonder they endure so much Fatigue. *Vitoldus*, Duke of *Lithuania*, in 1404, gave this Country to the *Teutonic* Knights; but in 1408, it was taken from them. After *Jagello's* Death, in 1446, by a Treaty with *Poland*, they were possess'd again of this Dutchy; but in 1525, when *Albert* of *Brandenburgh* was made Hereditary Duke of *Prussia*, it fell to the Crown of *Poland*. In 1655, when the *Muscovites* had over-run the Palatinate of *Troki* with Fire and Sword, they durst not enter the vast Forrests of *Samogitia*. In the late Wars with *Sweden*, it was almost entirely ruin'd.

denburgh was made Hereditary Duke of *Prussia*, it fell to the Crown of *Poland*. In 1655, when the *Muscovites* had over-run the Palatinate of *Troki* with Fire and Sword, they durst not enter the vast Forrests of *Samogitia*. In the late Wars with *Sweden*, it was almost entirely ruin'd.

Of their MANNERS, RELIGION, &c.

MOST of the Inhabitants differ little in Manners, Habit or Language, from the *Lithuanians*; yet some of them still retain Part of their old Pagan Idolatry, which was the most ridiculous of any in *Europe*, especially in the Desarts, where they pay Devotion to a Four-footed Serpent, under the Name of *Girvoft*. Few Families here are without Serpents for their Household-Gods, to whom they pay more than ordinary Veneration, tho' they profess Christianity. The Manner of the Pagan Sacrifices here about the End of *October* was as follows; Men, Women, Children, and Servants, met at the Place appointed, where a Cloth was spread upon Straw, with Loaves set in due Order, and between each Loaf a large Pot of Beer; then Beasts of divers kinds, and of both Sexes, were sacrific'd

fic'd after the ancient Custom thus; First the *Angur*, or Priest, after having mumbled over some Words, strikes them on the Back, Belly, &c. with a Rod; then all that are present follow his Example, crying out, O *Zimiennick!* (for so they call their God) *These Offerings we make to thee for protecting us so mercifully hitherto, and we most humbly implore thee to have the like Compassion on us for the future, and to preserve us from Fire, Sword, Pestilence, and our Enemies.* Which being said, they immediately fall to eat, but first cut off a Bit from every Plate, and throw the Pieces about the Room, crying, O *Zimiennick! Graciously partake of our Sacrifices, and favour thy Adorers.* After which they eat and drink heartily, and so the Ceremony concludes. These Sacrifices are still observ'd by the Country People in several Places of *Lithuania* and *Russia*. Christianity was first preach'd here by *Meinardus* in 1200.

The Houses of the Boors are low, and built long-ways, and for the most part of Wood, near Lakes or Rivers: They have an Hearth in the middle, and but one Room, which serves themselves and their Cattle. The better Sort drink out of Horn Cups, and eat out of Wooden Platters. They have Plenty of extraordinary White Honey in their Woods, but little Wax; and they have also abundance of Elks.

The Length of *Samogitia* from E. to W. is 140 *English* Miles; but it is not so broad: It has no Palatinate, but 3 Captainships. The Senators are, the Bishop, the Great Captain, or *Starost*, and the Castellan of *Samogitia*.

The 1st Government or Captainship is
R O Z I E N E:

Whose chief Town is *Rosenia*, in Lat. 55 $\frac{3}{4}$, Long. 41 $\frac{1}{4}$. 'Tis small, and ill built, and lies on the River *Dubisz*, 48 *English* Miles N. from *Kowna*, 120 S. from *Riga*, and 108 W. from *Vilna*. The Assemblies of the Province are kept here.

2. The Captainship of MIDNICK.

The chief Town is of the same Name, and is the Seat of the Bishop of *Samogitia*, who is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*. It is better built than the former, and seated near the Fountains of the River *Wirwitz*, 25 Miles N. W. from *Roziena*, 2. *Kowna*, on the River *Memel*, famous for a College of Jesuits, and several considerable Monasteries. This Town was formerly much frequented by German Merchants, who built many splendid Houses of Stone and Brick, which the Inhabitants have imitated, and in some Things excelled.

3. The Government of PONIEWISS.

The chief Towns are, *Poniewiesz* and *Birza*.

The Senators of the Province of *Samogitia* are, the Bishop, *Starosta*, and Castellan.

Of LIVONIA.

SEeing a very inconsiderable Part of this Country belongs to *Poland*, we refer the Description of it till we come to *Sweden*. *Dunaburg*, a strong Town on the *Dwina*, is the only considerable Place in *Polish Livonia*; yet it has 3 Senators, viz. the Bishop, Palatine, and Castellan of *Livonia*.

C H A P. XVII.

C O U R L A N D.

THE Dutchy of *Courland*, which comprehends the Provinces of *Courland* and *Semigallia*, is bounded on the N. and W. by the *Baltick*, on the S. E. by the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, on the N. E. by *Livonia*, and on the S. by the Dutchy and Province of *Samogitia*. Its Length is, from *Memel* in *Prussia*, to *Riga* in *Livonia*, about 200 *English* Miles. The Breadth is different; from the *Baltick* to *Lithuania* and *Samogitia* being in some Places 30, and in others but 24 Leagues.

Of the S O I L.

THIS Duchy is a plain champagne fruitful Country, and has always been well inhabited: It has many Woods. The Corn of *Courland* and *Livonia* is more valued by the *Dutch* than that of *Poland*, because it is better prepar'd here than in other Countries; for they dry their Corn in the Straw, as we do Malt, and afterwards thrash both together: But this consumes a great deal of Wood; therefore the King of *Sweden* has forbid it to be practis'd in his Dominions. According to some, *Courland*, *Semigallia*, and the District of *Pilten*, lie from Long. 45, to 50. and from Lat. 56 Deg. 5 Min. to 57 Deg. 5 Min. But Mr. Moll makes it from Long. 40, to 46.

The Commodities of *Courland* are much the same with those of *Poland*, as Flax, Hemp, Honey, and Linseed, of which many Ship-loads are sent abroad; Tar, Masts, Timber of all sorts, Pot-Ashes, Goat-Skins, &c. They have Plenty of Black Cattle and Horses. They carry their Goods down the *Dwina* to *Riga*, and export them by the *Baltick*. Many Authors say, That Herring-fishing, was on these Coasts till

1313; after which they went to the *Danish* Coasts, then to those of *Norway*, and at last to the Coasts of *Great Britain*.

The RELIGION of Courland.

THE first Efforts to convert *Livonia* and *Courland* to the Christian Faith were made by *Ausgarius*, the *Danish* and *Swedish* Apostle, as *Adam* of *Bremen* informs us. Afterwards, about the End of the 11th Century, by the *Danish* King's Order, a certain Merchant built a Church there, but with little Effect; till *Waldemar II.* a succeeding King of that Nation, founded a Bishoprick in that Country: But Christianity gain'd little Ground here till about 1180, when *Meinhard de Segeberg* of *Lubeck* made further Advances in it, and was ordain'd Bishop of *Livonia* (which then comprehended *Courland*.) by the Archbishop of *Bremen*.

To him succeeded *Berthold*, a *French* *Cistercian* Abbot, who in 1194 began to build *Riga*, and was Archbishop of it; but was kill'd the same Year in a Battle against the Infidels. Next one *Albert* was chosen in 1194, in whose Time the Order of *Livonian* Knights was instituted by the Pope, to further the Progress of Christianity here. The Provincial Master of the Order was chosen by the Great Chapter of *Prussia*. The Knights were call'd the Order of *Sword-Bearers*, and their Habits and Arms were, a White Mantle, with a Sword on the Breast in *Pale*, and a Star *Gules* in Chief: But after their joining with the *Teutonic* Order, they took also their Habit and Cross.

Religion continued on the same Foot here till 1561, that *Gothorred Ketler*, then Master of the *Livonian* Order, turn'd Protestant.

The

The People are generally Lutherans; but there are a few Papists and Calvinists.

The late Duke, at the King of Poland's Request, gave Leave to build two Churches for the Papists, one at *Mittaw*, the other at *Goldingen*. The Jesuits pretended to have bought the Curacy of *Mittaw*, and settled there; but their College was lately demolished; yet they still continue in the Country.

The Dutcheffes of *Courland* have since 1645 been always Calvinists, and had a Church at *Mittaw*, where the Calvinists of *Livonia*, and the English Merchants of *Riga*, come to worship, there being no Liberty allow'd the Calvinists in the King of Sweden's Dominions except at *Stockholm*, where the French Protestants have a Church.

Since the Reformation, there has been no Schism among them: The Greeks are tolerated, and also the *Uniti*, who own the Pope; but the *Socinians* are not tolerated. Some Jews from *Poland* and *Lithuania* have crept in here. The Clergy have no Tythes, but Land, and they have Money from the People when they confess. In some Places the Duke, and in others the Nobility, are Patrons of Churches.

The Families of the Gentry are very ancient, have great Privileges, and are exceeding jealous of suffering any upstart Nobleman to come among them; for they esteem nothing so much as ancient Families and Creations. There is scarce a Gentleman of Note who has not been a considerable Officer abroad or at home. The best Officers in *Poland* are generally *Courlanders*. Some of them are Princes and Counts of the Empire, and there's scarce a Family but may be Knights of *Malta*, because of their Antiquity. They enjoy the Privileges of Nobles in *Poland*, of which many Foreigners of great Quality have been ambitious, as the Duke of *Saxony*, who was in 1652 created a Polish Nobleman. In 1568, the Marquis of *Huntly*, in *Scotland*, was made a Marquis of *Poland*, and is the only one there.

Of the ancient State of this Country.

ABOUT the 9th Century, *Courland* was subject to *Sweden*, and paid them a small Tribute; but was not possess'd by 'em.

Baron *Blenberg*, the late Duke of *Courland*'s Minister, says, That *Courland* was not totally subdued till 1488, when it was conquer'd by the *Tatonic* Knights, who some Time before were sent thither by *Volquinius*, the 2d Great Master, tho' it had been attempted frequently; for in 1248, their 5th Master, *Detericus a Groninghen*, took several Towns from them; upon which the *Courlanders*, fearing they might be forc'd to embrace Christianity, submitted.

In 1250, the 6th Master of the Order, *Andrew a Stuckland*, attack'd them so vigorously, that the *Semigallian* Pagans submitted to pay Tribute, and afterwards, by his Perswasion, *Mindog*, Duke of *Lithuania* and *Courland*, turn'd Christian, and was Crown'd King of *Lithuania* by *Henry* Bishop of *Culm*, and *Albert* Archbishop of *Riga*, by Order from Pope *Innocent IV.* and among other Provinces, he restor'd *Courland* to the *Livonian* Order, in 1252.

But notwithstanding this Concession, the *Courlanders* were not easily subjected or converted; for the following Masters of the Order had constant Wars with them about their Religion: But in 1488, the 17th Provincial Master, *Conrade Herzogenstein*, subdued the sturdy *Semigallians*; yet they gave frequent Disturbance to the Order afterwards.

After him they had 4 Absolute, instead of Provincial Masters. In 1513, *Walter Plettenburg*, Absolute Master, upon *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburg*'s resigning his Order to *Sigismundus Augustus*, King of *Poland*, obtain'd Leave from *Albert* to be free from his Subjection.

In the Time of *William Plettenburg*, Absolute Master, *Luther's* Doctrine prevail'd in *Courland* and *Livonia*, particularly at *Riga*, *Revel*, *Dorpt*, &c.

The last Absolute Master was *Gothofred Ketler*, in whose Time, those Provinces not being able to resist the *Muscovites* under *Iohn Basflowitz*, they divided into two Parts, of which *Revel* and *Esthonia* put themselves under the Protection of *Sweden*, and the rest united to *Poland*, under *Ketler*, who was thereupon made Hereditary Duke of *Courland* and *Semigallia* in 1558, by *Sigismundus Augustus*, King of *Poland*, on Condition that they should be held in Fee of the Republic. He was accordingly invested with them

them in 1561; and upon renouncing his Pretensions to *Livonia*, had the same Privileges that were granted to *Albert Marquis of Brandenburg*.

He was succeeded by his eldest Son *Fredrick* in 1587, who dying without Issue, the Dukedom came to his Brother *William*, in 1602, who returning from Banishment, was receiv'd by the *Courlanders* with great Joy. This Duke had but one Son, who was Godson to our King *James I.* After his Death, his Son Duke *James* inherited the two Duchies of *Courland* and *Semigallia* in 1639. This Prince was much given to building of Ships, and had 30 or 40 well Rigg'd, half of them being Men of War. from 80, 50, 40, to 30 Guns. So that *Charles Gustavus* of *Sweden* us'd to say, *My Cousin the Duke of Courland has too much for a Duke, and too little for a King.* *Gustavus* afterwards broke the Neutrality agreed on, without any Ground, surpris'd and seiz'd the Duke and his Family, rifled his Treasury, ruin'd his Country, and dispers'd his Ships; by which the Duke said, he lost Six Millions and a half of *Rix-Dollars*. His Ships discover'd the River *Semigal* in *Guinea*, and the Island of *Tobago*, one of the *Caribbees*, then uninhabited, where he built a Fort, and call'd it *Fort James*, after his own Name. He was at a vast Charge to cultivate and fortify this Island, which he enjoy'd without any Interruption for many Years.

But at length one *Lambson*, a *Zeelander*, a very rich Man, one of the States of *Holland*, getting Possession of a Corner of it, was, after much Dispute, suffer'd to plant there, on paying a Yearly Tribute to the Duke; but taking Advantage of the Wars betwixt the *Swedes* and *Poles*, and of the Duke's Imprisonment, he at last dispossest'd him of the whole.

The *Dutch* being thus in Possession, kept it, and the Duke, after many fruitless Endeavours with the *Lambsons* and the States, finding neither of them inclinable to a Restoration, applied himself to King *Charles II.* of *Great Britain*, for Assistance, submitted the Island to his Protection, and held it by Way of Grant from the Crown of *England*. Whereupon a Treaty was formally concluded; upon which The King granted the Duke, and his Successors, full Liberty of Trade and

Commerce for such Ships as properly belong'd to him and his Heirs, (but not to those of his Subjects) in any Rivers or Havens within the Dominions of his Majesty on the Coast of *Guinea*; as also to trade for Goods not exceeding the Value of 12000 l. Sterling per Annum, according to the Price they were first bought for on those Coasts from whence they were exported, with full Liberty to build one or more Store-houses to lay up Goods, under the Castles and Forts belonging to his said Majesty or Subjects on those Coasts; to hold and enjoy the said Liberties as long as Friendship, Amity, and a good Understanding, continued between the said King and the Duke, and their Successors. And in Consideration of this Concession and Grant, the Duke made over to his Majesty, his Heirs and Successors, the Fort of *St. Andrew* in *Guinea*, and all other Forts, Fortifications and Sconces there, belonging to the said Duke, together with all Guns, Bullets and Powder, and other Instruments of War belonging to the same.

And the Duke agreed, That he and his Heirs should pay 3 per Cent. for all Goods imported or exported from any of his Majesty's Ports in *Guinea*.

Moreover, his Majesty granted to the said Duke, and his Heirs, &c. that Island of *Tobago*, together with all Lands, Havens, Creeks, Rivers, and Profits to the same belonging, to be held and enjoy'd under the King's Protection.

Provided always, That the said Duke, &c. should not suffer any other beside his Subjects, and the Subjects of the King, to abide in the Island, to settle Plantations, or build Houses; but the King's Subjects should have all the Privileges of the Duke's Subjects. Moreover, the Duke agreed and promis'd, That neither he nor his Heirs, &c. nor his Subjects, nor any for their Use, should export any Merchandize or Product of the said Island of *Tobago*, or import, otherwise than out of, or into some Ports belonging to *England* and *Courland*, or the Ports of the City of *Dantzick*.

Moreover, for acknowledging that the Duke of *Courland* did hold and enjoy the said Island from his Majesty, it was further provided and agreed, That when, and as often as the King of *Great Britain*, his Heirs, &c. should so require it; or when he or they were engaged in a War against any other King, Prince or State, except the King of *Poland*, the Dukes of *Courland*, at their own proper Charge, from Time to Time, should bring, or cause to be brought, one good Man

of War, furnish'd with 40 great Iron Guns, to such Ports, Station or Place, which his said Majesty, &c. should name; into which Ship his Majesty should put Commanders and Seamen, and supply them with Food and Wages, under the Conduct and at the Expence of the said King, so long as the said Ship should abide in his or their Service, which at one Time should never exceed the Limits of a Year. For the Testimony and undoubted Confirmation of this Treaty, Charles II. King of Great Britain, and the Duke of Courland, sign'd and seal'd the above-nam'd Treaty, Nov. 17. 1664.

Upon this, the King wrote a Letter to the States, but without Success, for they favour'd *Lambson's* Pretensions. Afterwards the Count d'Étrec, the French Admiral, took the Island, where he made a miserable Slaughter of the Dutch, and oblig'd them to quit the Possession of the Island.

Several Merchants and others solicited the King of France to grant them the conquer'd Island; but he refus'd it, declaring that it belong'd to a Neutral Prince, who did no body any Harm.

In 1680, King Charles II. of Great Britain, sent a Letter to the Governor of Barbadoes, commanding him to assist the Subjects of the said Duke to regain and repossess the Island; but the Duke's Ship which carried the Letter was betray'd to the Privateers of Algiers by the Commander. The Duke however sent a Governor afterwards to Tobago, till, by the Assistance of the English, he might be able to establish a Colony there.

In 1681, the Duke entred into a Contract with Captain Pointz, and granted him and his Company very advantageous Terms, viz. That the English under his Command should possess 120000 Acres of Ground in that Island.

Duke James was succeeded by his eldest Son Frederic Casimir, who died in February, 1698. and was succeeded by his eldest Son Frederic Casimir II. the present Duke, who was then not above 6 Years of Age.

The Dukes of Courland are Vassals to the Crown of Poland, and when any new King is elected, the Duke is oblig'd to send his Envoy to receive Investiture, by having a Standard-deliver'd him, with the Arms of Poland on one Side, and those of Courland

on the other. After which the Envoy is permitted to sit down on the Throne, on the King's Left Hand, to cover his Head, and has great Civilities paid him.

This Duke has all the Regalia that the German Sovereign Princes have, and has Place in the Diet of Germany, above the Dukes of Mecklenburg. He coins Money in his own Name, and has Supreme Jurisdiction over the Noblemen of his Country; only in some extraordinary Cases, they may appeal to the Court of Poland.

He has a great Demefne, of which his Revenue chiefly consists, and keeps a very pretty Court, having all his Officers of State as other Princes; and he and his Nobility are able to raise 18000 Men.

This Dutchy, in case the Duke want Heirs-Male, is to revert to the Crown of Poland.

The Nobility and People are much inclin'd to Hospitality, which was the old Character Tacitus gave the Germans in his Book *De Moribus Germanorum*.

The Diet of the States is conven'd by the Duke as often as Affairs of State require it. He sends his Letters of Summons to all his Starosta's, with a Schedule of the Points to be debated, and requires them to cause Deputies or Representatives of the Gentry to be forthwith elected in their respective Jurisdictions; upon which they are chosen, and furnish'd with Instructions from their Electors, how they shall behave themselves, in like Manner as the Deputies of Poland.

Courland is divided into Two Governments.

1. The Government of GOLDINGEN.

Goldingen is the chief Town of this District, and of all Courland: It was formerly one of the Hans-Towns. It is seated on the River Metaw, 28 English Miles W. from Windaw, 60 S. W. from Mittaw, and 75 from Riga, in Lat. 56½, Long. 41. This City has a large Jurisdiction. 2. Windaw, call'd by the Poles Kiełsz, is a City and Palatinate: It has a Castle on the Sea, which was formerly the Residence of the Livonian Knights, and the Place where they conven'd their Assemblies: It has usually a Garison of Poles, under Command of the Duke of

Cour.





Courland. It is one of the Sea-Ports of *Courland*, and trades in Pitch, Tar, Wax, &c. 3. *Libau*, where the Duke's Ships are built, and has the greatest Trade of any of his Towns. 4. *Angernund*, in a Bay of the *Baltick*, between *Riga* and *Windaw*. 5. *Pildyn*, 22 English Miles N. W. from *Goldingen*, is a Palatinate, whose Gentry being Protestants, and offering to submit to the King of *Poland's* Protection, he endeavour'd to re-establish a Popish Bishop over them; upon which they alter'd their Resolution, and forthwith submitted to the Duke of *Courland*. They are the richest Gentry in all *Courland*: The Principal Families are those of *Maydel*, *Behr*, *Sacken*, *Mandevill*, &c. 6. *Durben*, S. from *Goldingen*. Their other Towns are, *Erdwallen*, *Grubin*, *Tuckow*, *Frawenburgh*, *Ufchwend*, *Talsen*, *Candaw*, *Hesepot*, *Oendange*; and *Tuccum*, which belongs to the Government of *Tuccum*.

2. *SEMIGALLIA*, which has 2 Captainships.

1. The Captainship of *Mittaw*, the chief Town, which is situated on the *Mutza*, 22 En-

glish Miles S. from *Riga*, 16 N. from the Borders of *Samogitia*, and 60 Miles E. from *Goldingen*. It lies in Lat. 56½, Long. 43. It is the usual Residence of the Dukes of *Courland*, and their Burial-place. They have a very fine Castle on the River *All*, which might be made navigable, if those of *Riga* did not choak up its Mouth. It is well fortified, with two Bastions, surrounded by Marshes, and defended by a strong Garison. The City is large, and contains about 12000 Inhabitants. The Streets are not pav'd, because they wanted Stone, till of late that they have found Quarries; so that it is now fortified with many Bulwarks. It was twice taken by the *Swedes*; but has been since regain'd, and is at present subject to its Duke. 2. *Bauke*, another strong City, with a Castle, which was taken by Storm by *Gustavus Adolphus*. They have a numerous Garison here. 3. *Selburg*, the chief Town of a Government. Other Towns are, *Egypten*, on the Borders of *Lithuania*, *Dubro*, *Dalen*, *Schudding*, *Pilkal*, *Behr*, *Nerfsten*, *Salatt*, *Pozwole*, *Radziwiliuski* and *Lunka*.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of S W E D E N.

O *Laus Rudbeck* is very positive, that this is the most ancient Kingdom of *Europe*, and that other *European* Nations are Colonies from thence; but few will believe either his Account, or that of *Joannes Magnus*, who fancies the *Swedes* have their Name and Descent from *Suemo*, the Son of *Magog*, the Grandchild of *Noah*, by his Son *Japhet*; but this Folly of tracing the Original of Kingdoms higher than is consistent with History, is not peculiar to the *Swedish* Historians; Those of most other Nations have their Share of it. *Puffendorf*, in his History of

Sweden, mentions the same Opinion of the Antiquity of his Native Country; and that after the Deluge, it was inhabited before any other on this side the *Mediterranean*. He thinks, their Curiosity to know the Reasons of the Obliquity of the Sun's Course, and of the Length of the Days in Summer, might induce them to travel so far North: But at last tells us, he would not oblige any Man to take up with his Conjectures, and indeed they seem to be but ill founded; for it is certain, that all ancient Colonies were from the E. and S. to the W. and N. and that when the more Southerly and fruitful Places were stock'd

M m

with

with People, some were oblig'd to seek their Fortune in the Northern Countries.

The most probable Account is, That the Swedes had their Name from the *Suiones*, mention'd by *Tacitus* in *Lib. de Moribus Germ.* Cap. 44. & 45. whom he places beyond the *Suevi*, who dwelt in the N. of Germany, betwixt the *Elb* and the *Weissel*. He says, the Seat of the *Suiones* was in the Ocean, and beyond them, he says, there was a still Sea, which he thought furrounded the Earth. This Account agrees best to the *Peninsula of Scandinavia*.

Lozenius Antiq. Lib. 1. Cap. 1. says, The Swedes were so call'd from their Military Bravery; for *Suen* in their Language signifies a sprightly Youth. *Schefferus*, and others of their Antiquaries, are of this Opinion.

Sweden is bounded on the N. by *Norwegian Lapland*, on the N. E. by *Muscovite Lapland*, on the E. and S. E. by *Muscovy*, on the S. by *Beland* and the *Baltick*, on the S. W. by the *Sound* and the *Gulph of Schaggar Raakt*, and on the W. by *Norway*, from which it is separated by unpassable Mountains.

The Latitude is from the most Southerly Part of *Schonen* in 56 Deg. to the Borders of *Norwegian Lapland* in 69. The Longitude from the most Westerly Place of the Government of *Bahus* in 32, to the East Side of the Lake *Onega* in 55, according to *Mr. Moll*; but in 62 according to *Taillet's* Maps, with whom *Ozanam* agrees; for he makes *Archangel* in the same Longitude that *Taillet's* Maps do.

The Extent of this Kingdom in Length, according to *Taillet*, is 900 English Miles. *Mr. Moll* makes it 660. *Du Plessis* reckons its Breadth, from the S. Parts of *Schonen* to the N. Sea, 340 Leagues, or 1020 English Miles; and its Length, from the Westerly Parts of the Government of *Bahus*, to the Easterly Places of *Ingria*, 780. *Brietius* makes the Breadth, from *Christianopol* in Lat. 56, to the Mouth of the River *Pas*, that runs into the Northern Ocean in Lat. 70, 840 English Miles: But *Brietius* is mistaken, when he makes *Christianopol* the most Southerly Place of Sweden, and likewise in making its Latitude 56 Deg. when it is more than 57; and by extending its Breadth to the Mouth of the River *Pas*; he makes a great Part of *Norwegian Lapland* belong to Sweden. He

makes the Length of it 750 Miles. The true Breadth is, from Deg. 56 to 69, 780. But many Abatements are to be allow'd for several Seas, many great Lakes, some of 'em above 80. English Miles long, and 20 broad, which, together with the Rocks, Woods, Heaths and Morasses, make the habitable Part of this large Kingdom not very great.

Of the ancient INHABITANTS.

THE Ancients made *Scandinavia* an Island of unknown Extent; and all other Places N. of the *Baltick*, which *Tacitus* calls *Mare Suevicum*, they make Islands: But *Mela* and *Pliny* call the *Baltick*, *Sinus Codanus*; and *Ptolomy* calls that Part of it into which the *Weissel* falls, *Sinus Venedicus*. *Pliny* quotes *Xenophon Lampsaenus*, who says, That *Scandinavia*, which he call'd *Baltia*, was an Island of vast Extent. *Jornandes de Reb. Get. Lib. 37. Cap. 2.* names it *Scanzia*, and says, it was a Nursery of People, and Seminary of Nations; and that the *Goths*, who overran the *Roman Empire*, came from thence.

The *Hilleroiness* inhabited the E. and S. Parts of the *Defrine* Mountains, which separate *Norway* from Sweden. *Pliny* calls those Mountains *Seris*, or *Sulvis*, and says, they are as large as the *Riphean* Mountains. Their Seat probably was in *Schonen*, *Blekinge*, *Halland*, and the neighbouring Places; for he says, they possess'd 500 Villages.

We have spoken already of the *Suiones*. The *Scritofuni* of *Paulus Diaconus*, the same with the *Scratofenna* of *Jornandes*, and the *Scritifinni* of *Procopius*, probably dwelt in *Finmark* and *Norwegian Lapland*. *Pliny, Lib. 14. Cap. 13.* speaks of a large Island, which he calls *Emingia*, but should be read *Finningia*. He calls the Inhabitants *Fenni*, which is the modern *Finland*. *Brietius* and *Gluerius* make the *Gulph of Riga* *Pliny's* *Sinus Clitipenus*, and others make it that of *Livonia*. The *Carbantes* were planted in *Cavellia*, and the Country betwixt the Lakes *Ladoga* and *Onega*. The *Seyrii* resided on the E. Side of the *Gulph of Bothnia*; and the *Pharona* lay N. from them, on the W. of the *White-Sea*, anciently called *Sinus Grandicus*.

Pliny speaks of many Islands in the *Baltick* that were visited by the *Roman Arms*, and

and says, the most remarkable was *Fabaria*, or *Burchania*, which probably is that now call'd *Borcum*.

The *Goths* are by all the Swedish Historians plac'd in *Scandia*, and reckon'd the Posterity of *Magog*, the Father of all the European *Scythians*, who in *Ezek. 28. 2.* is call'd the Chief Prince of *Mesech* and *Tubal*, or the Prince of *Rhos*, *Mesech* and *Thubal*. *Bochart* says, the Hebrew will allow this Reading, and that the 70 Interpreters, *Symmachus*, *Theodotion*, and *Proclus*, read it so; and approves of *St. Ambrose's* Conjecture, who from this Place infers, that the *Goths* had the same Original with other *Scythians*.

Cluverius makes the *Gothini*, who dwelt near the Fountains of the *Weissel*, to be those that over-run the Roman-Empire, and to be the same with the *Goths*, and calls *Jornander's* Account fabulous, who places the *Goths* in *Scandia*: But *Cluverius* is thought to have done this out of Emulation and Respect to his own Country; for his Opinion seems not probable, for Reasons which shall be mention'd anon. The Account of the *Goths*, that bids fairest for Truth, is, That they were call'd by Strangers *Got*, or *Guten*, for their Humanity or Hospitality, which is observ'd in the Northern People by *Tacitus*: And *Howell* observes, That others were nam'd *Zuandi*, and *Thaifal*, for the contrary. Whether the *Goths* were planted here before the Arrival of *Woden*, is not certain, tho' some will have it so, and that they sent Colonies to *Asiatick Scythia*, and built a City call'd *Asgard*, near the Lake *Motis*, where *Woden* was King; but came from thence, and settled in *Scandia*. Whatever may be in this, it is certain that both *Scandia*, *Pontus* and *Thrace*, &c. had People of the same Name; and that on the Sea-Coasts of the *Baltick*, they speak at this Day the Language which was spoken by the ancient *Getae*, who liv'd about *Pontus*, and the Northerly Parts of *Asia*, as the Account which *Ovid* gives of the Language of that People proves, and the Humours and Manners of the *Scandian Gths* did agree with those of the *Asiatick*; but the Question is, Whether the *Scandian Goths* were Colonies of those about *Pontus*, and the *Palus Meotis*, &c.? Or if the *Asiatick Goths* derive their Origine from *Scandia*? The last is most probable, because the vast Countries

in *Scandia*, in the Northerly Parts of *Germany*, and the Islands speaking that Language, seem to prove, that those of *Asia* being few in Number, compar'd to the *Goths* in *Scandia*, and the neighbouring Places, were Colonies from thence. Besides, the People that liv'd near the *Asiatick Goths* spoke a quite different Language, and were more numerous by much than they. *Andreas Bureus*, a Swede, says to this Purpose, That the Laws of the *Westgoths*, which were made about the Time when Colonies of those People went to *Asia*, *Thrace*, &c. ordain, That no *Goth*, who shall leave his Native Country *Scandia*, and plant in *Greece*, *Thrace*, *Pontus*, and other Places abroad, shall have any Right or Pretension to the Lands or Goods they left in *Scandia*, unless they return and settle in their own Country. He says, those Laws are much the same with *Isidore's* Laws of the *Visigoths* in *Spain*; and concludes, that they were borrow'd from those Laws of the *Goths*, their Countrymen, in *Scandia*; and that the Swedish History, and those of other Nations, shew, that many went from *Scandia* to visit their Friends and Relations in *Thrace*, &c. *Jornander*, in his History of the *Goths*, writes, That *Rudolphus*, the 25th King of Sweden, left his own Kingdom, and visited *Theodoric*, King of the *Goths* in *Italy*; and *Volfgangus Lazius* tells us, That it was ordinary for many from Sweden to travel to *Illyricum*, *Italy*, and other Places, to visit the *Goths*, their Countrymen. To prove this Point further, *Bureus* says, 'tis evident from History, That after the *Goths* settled in *Spain*, they entertain'd a Correspondence with the *Goths* in *Scandzia*, as Sweden was called in those barbarous Times; and that several Noblemen from thence subscrib'd the 8th Council of *Toledo*. Another great Proof of this is, That the Name of *Goths* continues in no Place except Sweden, where we have *Gothland* in the Peninsula, and an Island of that Name.

Grotius, in *Prolegomenis ad Histor. Gothorum Vandalorum*, &c. conjectures, That about 300 Years before our Saviour, the *Goths* went out of *Scandia*, or *Gothland*, into the Continent of *Germany*, where they left a Colony, which *Tacitus* calls *Gottones*. Before that Time, they had Peopled the Islands of the *Baltick*, and the Sea-Coasts,

from whence they made Inroads into *Dania*, and the *Palus Meotis*, before the Time of the *Antonini*. *Spartianus* says, the *Gothi* and *Getae* were the same People. *Jornandes* thinks, that in the Reign of *Philip*, they came into *Masia* and *Thrace*; and those who resided in *Masia*, were called *Gothi Minores*. *Grotius* is positive, they had the Name of *Ostrogoths* and *Westrogoths* in their own Country, which is probable from *Jornandes's* Description of *Scandi*. The *Jutes*, *Getae*, or *Gothi*, who with the *Saxons* and *Angli* conquer'd *England*, were of *Scandian* Original; and *Ptolomy* says, in *Scythia*, or *Cymmeria*, there were People call'd *Jota*, the same with the *Getae* or *Gothi*.

Procopius affirms, That the *Gepida* were of *Gothick* Extract. *Jornandes* does the like, and gives this Account of their Original, That *Berick*, a King of the *Gothi*, with three Vessels, sail'd from *Scanzia*; and one of 'em sailing slower than the rest, the Crew was on that Account call'd *Gepida*; for that Word signifies so much. They landed in an Island of the *Vistula*, and afterwards proceeded further.

Procopius is also of Opinion, That the *Vandali* were *Gothick* Nations, and spoke that Language; the Truth of which he had good Occasion to know. for he was acquainted with *Gelimir* their King, and many of his Nobles, that were brought Prisoners to *Constantinople*.

The HISTORY of Sweden.

Grotius gives an Account of *Swedish* Kings 3000 Years before Christ; which Form of Government is pretended to have continued till the 100th Year after the Foundation of *Rome*; then it became a Republick, which lasted 250 Years. Monarchy was re-establish'd by *Erick II.* German's Wife, who is said to have had 21 Successors, till *Anno Christi* 455. *John Magnus* continues this List till the Time of *Bjorn*, who was contemporary with *Charlemagne*; but it is certain, their first Kings were rather Judges or Captains, and each Canton of *Sweden* had one of them. It is most reasonable, says the Author of the *Revolutions of Sweden*, to think that their Historians, in order to make a long Catalogue of Kings, made those Princes that at the

same time liv'd in different Provinces to succeed one another. In those fabulous Times, their Historians make their Kings all Giants, Magicians or Robbers, who had no Idea of Honesty or Virtue: Cruelty and Valour were the same thing among them. They thought it unworthy of their Character to marry any Princess, except they had first ravish'd her; and none of them could pretend to Courage till they kill'd a Savage Beast in View of the People, or surpris'd and assassinated their Enemy in his own House. Such Actions entituled them to the Name of Heroes during Life, and to Deification after Death.

Puffendorf owns those Antiquities of *Sweden* to be fabulous; and that the ancient *Swedes* had no *Epocha* from whence they date their History; so that the Catalogue of their Kings is not Authentick. Their ancient Historians were Poets, and that Part of their History is form'd from old Ballads and fabulous Legends. Those Poets embellish'd their Stories with Allegorical and Figurative Expressions, which Posterity mistook for Fact; and *Joannes Magnus* strives to outdo *Saxo Grammaticus* in Fiction and Romance. *M. Jensenius* says, That all their History, before the Nativity of Christ, is fabulous.

They alledge, That 60 Years before Christ, the famous *Woden*, or *Odin*, was driven out of *Asia* by *Pompey the Great*. After which *Woden* and his Followers conquer'd *Russia*, the *Saxons* and *Danes*, and last of all *Norway* and *Sweden*, 24 Years before our Saviour. He kept *Sweden* for himself, and all the other *Scandinavian* Princes were to do him Homage. Thus for many Years after, the King of *Denmark* us'd to hold the King of *Sweden's* Bridle, and the King of *Norway* his Stirrup. Many Northern Nations are ambitious to derive their Extraction from this *Odin*. He introduc'd the Heathen Worship, Witchcraft and Magic, and the Custom of raising great Heaps of Earth on the Graves of Persons of Note, and of engraving Funeral Inscriptions on Rocks and Stones, which yet remain in many Places of the Country. *Frotho Jorgo* succeeded, who is said to have cover'd the Temple at *Upsal* with Gold, and surrounded its Pinnacle with a Golden Chain. After him succeeded *Njord*, *Sigtrug*, *Asmund*, *Uffe*, *Hindings*.

Hindings, Regner, Halvard, Helgo, Attilur, Hother, Roderick, Arnam'd Singabond, Hognor, Hogrin, Erick, Haldan, Sivand, Erick, Haldan, Ungrin, Regnald. About 588, *Rodolph* was King of the *Goths* in *Scandinavia*, and defeated by the *Angles*, who possessing themselves of that Kingdom, he fled to *Italy*, to *Theodoric* King of the *Goths*. *Frotho* succeeded him, and was follow'd by *Fiolmus, Snercher, Valander, and Vistur*, who was burnt by his own Sons. *Damalder*, another King, was sacrific'd by his Subjects to their Idol at *Upsal*. Those who succeeded, were *Damar, Digner, Duger, and Aginus*, whom his Wife hang'd. After him came *Airick, Erick, Ingo, Hugler, Haco, Ibrunder, Hacquin; Ring*. In his Time the Battle of *Broualla* was fought, where 30000 *Danes* and 12000 *Swedes* were kill'd. He sacrific'd 9 of his Sons to the Idol at *Upsal*. Next to him came *Egilus, Othor, Odel, Ostan, Ingward, Amund, Sivard, and Herot*, who was cruel to his Nobility: And for his Male-Administration, *Regner* King of *Denmark* made War upon him. When he was reduc'd to Extremity, by the Advice of his cruel Daughter, who had murder'd her Husband and his Brother, he burnt himself, with her and his whole Family, except his Son *Olaus*, in his own Palace; and *Regner* King of *Denmark* made his own Son *Bero*, or *Biron*, by *Herot's* Daughter, King of *Sweden*.

The first Piece of probable History we meet with is, the Preaching of the Gospel in *Sweden* in this *Bero's* Reign, by *Ansgarius*, a Monk of *Corbey*, in 829, who was sent by the Emperor *Ludovicus Probus*. The *Swedes* banish'd *Bero*, because he would not turn Christian. *Armund*, another of their Kings, persecuted the Christians, and was also banish'd: Then they invited *Olaus* from *Wermeland*, who, to secure his Title to the Crown, marry'd his Son *Ingo* to *Regner's* Daughter. He was converted by *Ansgarius*, and quietly possess'd the Kingdoms of the *Goths* and *Swedes*; till some of his Heathen Subjects sacrific'd him to their Idol at *Upsal*. *Ingo* was kill'd in his War against the *Russians*. After him succeeded *Erick Weatherhal*, who was skill'd in Witchcraft; then *Erick Sege-sel*, who conquer'd *Finland, Courland, Livonia, Esthen, Halland, and Schonen*, and drove King *Sueno* out of *Denmark*. *Erick's* Son *Stenchil* turn'd Christian, burnt

down the Idol at *Upsal*, and forbid Idolatry on Pain of Death, which so enrag'd his Subjects, that they burnt him and two Priests near *Upsal*. His Brother *Olaus*, and many of his Subjects, were converted by some Ministers from *England*, who perswaded him to grant a Yearly Tribute, call'd *Roms-skot*, to the Pope, to maintain the War against the *Saracens*. He dethron'd the King of *Norway*, and made an Union betwixt the *Goths* and *Swedes*, who formerly had been great Enemies.

After him came his Son *Amund*, in whose Reign Christianity flourish'd. His Brother *Amund Slemme*, a careless Prince, succeeded, and, with the greatest Part of his Army, was slain by *Cnut*, King of *Denmark*. After his Death, the *Goths* and *Swedes* disagreed about a Successor: At length it was concluded that *Hacquin*, who was then old, should be King during his Life, and that *Stenchil* should succeed. *Hacquin* defeated the *Danes* in three Battles. After *Stenchil*, came *Ingo the Pious*, who destroy'd all Monuments of Idolatry at *Upsal*, for which his Pagan Subjects banish'd him, and then murder'd him in *Schonen*. After him were *Halstan, Philip, and Ingo*, who had no Sons, but two Daughters, viz. *Christina*, who was married to *St. Erick*, and *Mar arct* to *Magnus* King of *Norway*. This *Ingo* was poison'd by the *East-Goths*.

After this the *East-Goths* chose a King for themselves, call'd *Ragwald Knappofde*: He was very strong, but foolish, and was slain by the *West-Goths*. The *East-Goths* elected *Su rcher II.* a good King, who was murder'd by one of his Servants; then they chose his Son *Charles*; and *Erick* was King of the *Swedes*: But they and the *Goths*, being sensible of the Necessity of an Union among them, they agreed, that *Erick* should rule both Kingdoms; that *Charles* should succeed him; and that their Heirs should reign by Turns. This *Erick* reduc'd the *Fins*, and oblig'd them to be Christians. He collected a Body of Laws from the ancient Constitutions of the Kingdom, which was call'd *St. Erick's Law*. *Magnus*, the King of *Denmark's* Son, slew him, and defeated his Forces; but the *Swedes* and *Goths*, headed by *Charles*, the Son of *Su rcher*, rallied and kill'd all the *Danes*, with their King, and his Son; and thus *Charles* became also King of

Denmark, and reign'd with general Applause, till *Cnut*, the Son of *Erick*, surpris'd and killed him. He also rout'd the Forces commanded by *Koll*, the Brother of *Charles*, and kill'd himself upon the Spot. *Cnut* reign'd successfully 23 Years. After his Death, *Suercher*, the Son of *Charles*, was made King; but *Erick*, the Son of the last deceased King, being his Rival, the Difference was compos'd thus; *Suercher* was to be King during Life, and *Erick* to succeed; but *Suercher*, contrary to the Agreement, murder'd all the Sons of *Cnut* except *Erick*, who fled to Norway, from whence returning with some Forces, and being join'd by the Swedes, he oblig'd *Suercher* to flee to West-Gothland, *Waldemar* King of Denmark sent him 12000 Men, with which he endeavour'd to recover his Kingdom, but was routed. He afterwards invaded West-Gothland, where he was defeated and slain. *John*, the Son of *Suercher*, succeeded *Erick*, who reign'd but three Years.

After his Death, *Erick the Lisper*, Son to the former *Erick*, was King. To bring the potent Family of the *Tolkungers* over to his Interest, he married his three Sisters to three of the Chief of them, and married one of their Daughters himself; but the *Tolkungers* being now more potent by this Alliance, they rebell'd, and defeated the King, who fled to Denmark; and being re-inforc'd there, he return'd, and routed *Cnut Tolkunger*, and caus'd him and his Son *Hallinger* to be slain, which restor'd Peace to the Kingdom. In his Reign *Gulielmus Sabienensis*, the Pope's Legate, first introduc'd the Celibacy of the Clergy here. *Erick* forc'd the *Finns* to return to their Obedience, and to profess Christianity, in 1250. *Waldemar*, this King's Sister's Son, was made King during his Minority, and the Administration was in the Hands of *Birger Yerle*, his Father. He augmented the Laws, and govern'd with much Wisdom and Goodness. This *Birger* was made a Duke, being only an *Yrle*, or Earl, before. He ruin'd the factious Family of the *Tolkungers*: He married his Son *Waldemar* to *Sophia Erick*, the King of Denmark's Daughter, and founded *Stockholm*. He died in 1266, after he had been Regent 15 Years, and left 4 Sons, *viz.* *Waldemar* King of Sweden, *Magnus* Duke of *Sundermanland*, *Erick* of *Smaland*, and *Bo-*

nedict of Finland. *Waldemar* went in Pilgrimage to Rome and Jerusalem, and left the Government to his Brother *Magnus*. Upon his Return, he accus'd him of a Design to set up for himself; and the Assembly of the States not being able to compose those Differences, *Magnus* and *Erick* retir'd to Denmark, return'd with a great Army, routed *Waldemar*, and made him Prisoner. Upon this the States declar'd *Magnus* King of East and West-Gothland, and *Dahr* fell to *Waldemar*'s Share. The *Danes* sided with *Waldemar*, because *Magnus* did not pay the Subsidies promis'd, and so the War was renew'd, till the *Danes* having receiv'd Satisfaction, they left *Waldemar* in the lurch, who was thereby oblig'd to resign the Kingdom to *Magnus*.

Magnus was Crown'd at *Upsal* in 1279, and assum'd the Title of King of the Swedes and Goths, which had not been us'd since the Time of *Olafus Skotkonung*. The *Tolkungers* began anew to make Disturbances, killed *Ingemar Danskehpe*, the King's Favourite, took *Gerhard* Earl of *Holstein*, the King's Father in-Law, Prisoner, and besieg'd the Castle of *Jenkoping*. The King dissembled his Displeasure, and made them fair Promises; but he afterwards accus'd them to the States of High-Treason, for which they were all hang'd at *Stockholm*. He died in 1288, and left the Care of the Kingdom to *Torchel Cnutson*, who was Regent 13 Years, during his Son *Birger*'s Minority. He subdued *Carelia*, forc'd them to profess Christianity, and built the Fortreiss of *Wibourg* to curb them, and took *Kekholm* from the Russians. *Birger*, when he was of Age, married *Mareta*, Daughter to *Erick* King of Denmark. He built the Fortreiss of *Norburgh* on the Frontiers of Russia, which the Russians afterwards took and demolish'd. He declar'd his Son *Magnus*, then but 3 Years old, his Successor. His Brothers fell into Animosities amongst themselves, and the King having seiz'd their Inheritance, they made Inroads into West-Gothland, and dispers'd the King's Troops; but at last a Peace was made, which cost old *Torchel*, one of his Counsellors, his Head, on Pretence that he had inflam'd the Differences betwixt them. After this the two younger Brothers aspir'd to the Crown, surpriz'd the King, oblig'd him to surrender, and made him

him Prisoner in the Castle of *Nicoping*. The King's Son escap'd to *Denmark*: The King of which, by three Expeditions, attempted to relieve the King his Brother-in-Law; but to no purpose; so that at last it was agreed the States should determine those Differences. They concluded, That King *Birger* should pardon all past Injuries, be content with what Part of the Kingdom should be assign'd, and have his Liberty; upon which the Senate and his Brothers swore Fealty to him. After this, *Erick* of *Denmark*, and *Haquin* of *Norway*, came with 60000 Men into *Sweden* to assist *Birger* against his Brothers: They took *Jencoping*, and oblig'd their Forces to fly; but the *Danes* wanting Provisions, return'd home, and by a new Agreement Duke *Erick* had *West-Gothland*, *Dahls*, *Halland*, *Wermeland*, and *Smaland*; and Duke *Waldemar* had *Upland*, *Oeland*, and Part of *Finland*, which they were to hold of the King in Fief: And thus Peace was restor'd to the whole Kingdom. *Waldemar* and his Brother *Erick* were afterwards perswaded by the King to come and visit him; and when they were in Bed, and their Servants dispers'd, they were made Prisoners, beaten, and laid in Irons, and their Servants all kill'd or taken. The King design'd to besiege *Stockholm*; but the Citizens being apprisd of his Barbarity, repuls'd him, and pursued him to *Nicoping*. He retir'd to *Steckeburgh*; and before his Departure, threw the Keys of the Prison into the River, and caus'd the Doors to be barricado'd; so that before *Nicoping* could be taken by Storm, both the Princes died of Famine. The whole Kingdom was enrag'd at this barbarous Action, so that *Birger* was forc'd to fly to *Denmark*, where gathering some Forces, he shifted from Place to Place, till most of them were surpris'd at *Sudercoping*; then he fled to *Gothland*. The Swedes besieg'd *Steckeburgh*; where his Son *Magnus* commanded; forc'd him to surrender, sent him Prisoner to *Stockholm*, and made *Matthieu Kuthmundson* Regent of *Sweden*, who drove the King's Party out of the Country about 1319.

Upon this the States elected *Magnus Smek*, Duke *Erick's* Son, then but 3 Years of Age. Next Year *Magnus*, King *Birger's* Son, was wickedly sentenc'd to Death and beheaded; notwithstanding the States of the Kingdom

had sworn Fealty to him as their future King; upon which *Birger* and his Queen died of Grief. *Kathmundson* manag'd Affairs with great Equity and Wisdom, till *Magnus Smek* came of Age, who disappointed their great Expectations of him; for he slighted the Advice of the Great Council, hated the Senate, and design'd entirely to abolish it, because it was a Check to his Arbitrary Designs. He married *Blanche*, Daughter to the Earl of *Namure*, and was managed entirely by his Favourite *Benedict* of *Gothland*. At this Time those of *Schonen* being oppress'd by the *Holfsteiners*, put themselves under his Protection, which was afterwards confirmed by *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*, and the *Sound* was made the Boundary of the two Kingdoms. After he had rul'd 12 Years, he made War upon the *Russians*, but with bad Success; for he was oblig'd to quit Part of *Carrelia* to purchase a Peace. His Treasury being exhausted, he laid heavy Taxes upon the People without Consent of the States, and mortgaged many of the Crown-Lands. The Pope excommunicated him, because he applied the *Peter-Pence* to defray the Charge of the *Russian* War. The People of *Norway* offer'd their Crown to his Son *Haquin*, who married *Margaret*, Daughter to *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*. *Erick*, Son to *Magnus*, being declar'd King of *Sweden*, the States of the Kingdom revolted from *Magnus Smek*, and slew his Favourite *Benedict*: Then *Magnus* sought Assistance from *Denmark*, which enrag'd his Subjects so, that they oblig'd *Erick* to take Arms against his Father. The End of this Controversy was the Division of the Kingdom, of which *Upland*, *Gothland*, *Wermeland*, *Dahls*, *North-Halland*, *West-Gothland*; and *Oeland*, fell to *Magnus*; and *Schonen*, *Blekingen*, *South-Halland*, *East-Gothland*, *Smaland*, and *Finland*, to his Son *Erick*; in 1363.

After this *Magnus* sent for his Son *Erick*, and perswaded his Mother to poison him; by which he re obtain'd Possession of the whole Kingdom, and reveng'd himself upon the Nobility, who were the Barriers of the People's Liberty: And to accomplish his Tyrannical Designs, he made *Waldemar* King of *Denmark* his Friend, by restoring *Schonen*: Upon this *Waldemar*, with *Magnus's* Connivance, fell into *Gothland* and *Oeland*, kill'd many Boors, plunder'd the

Conna-

Country, and demolish'd *Borgholm*. This oblig'd the *Swedes* to submit to *Haquin* of *Norway*, who imprison'd his Father *Magnus*; and by the Advice of the States, married the Earl of *Holfstein's* Daughter, who in her Voyage to *Sweden* was drove on the Coasts of *Denmark*, and detain'd by King *Waldemar*, who design'd his Daughter *Margaret* for *Haquin*; but *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, and the Earl of *Holfstein*, declaring War against *Denmark*, the Earl of *Holfstein's* Daughter was set at Liberty, and coming to *Sweden*, was slighted by *Magnus Smiek*, which made her retire to a Nunnery; and *Haquin*, notwithstanding his Contract with her, married *Margaret* of *Denmark*.

The banish'd Lords, Senators, and others of the *Swedes*, took up Arms against *Magnus*, as one who had forfeited his Title to the Crown; and consulting about chusing another, they agreed upon *Henry* Earl of *Holfstein*, who declin'd it, because of his Age, and recommended *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, *Magnus's* Sister's Son; but they chose his own second Son, also call'd *Albert*, and proclaim'd him King at *Stockholm*. Upon this, *Magnus* and his Son *Haquin* march'd against *Albert*, and fought him near *Encoping*; but were defeated, *Magnus* taken, and *Haquin* wounded. After this, *Sweden* continued to be a Theatre of War for many Years; for *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*, and *Haquin*, constantly sent Forces into *Sweden* to reinforce *Magnus's* Party; and *Haquin* once defeated *Albert* in Battle, and besieg'd *Stockholm*. At last it was agreed, That *Magnus* should have his Liberty, on paying 12000 Marks of fine Silver, and resigning the Crown and *Schonen* to *Albert*. After this *Magnus* retir'd to *Norway*, where he was drown'd by Accident, and *Haquin* and his young Son *Olavs* died soon after, by which the ancient Royal Line of *Sweden*, which had ruled 200 Years, since *St. Erick's* Time, was extinguished. Not long after, *Waldemar* of *Denmark* died without Heirs Male; and the *Danes*, in order to unite *Norway* to *Denmark*, declared *Margaret* Queen of *Norway*, his Daughter, their Queen, to which the *Norwegians* were induc'd to agree by Intrigues and Bribes.

Albert's Enemies being thus all taken out of the Way, he began to hate the Nobility, to be jealous of the Senate, and to follow

the Arbitrary Methods of his Predecessors; but gradually and slyly, because of the Fate of *Manus*, which was still fresh in his Memory. However, to effect his Designs, he invited in Foreign Noblemen, especially those of his own Family, and *German* Officers, and put the Administration into their Hands, under various Pretexts. He also brought in Foreign Troops, so that his Subjects began to suspect him, since all this was contrary to the Fundamental Laws of the Kingdom. He likewise oblig'd them to pay excessive Taxes. The Treasury being exhausted by the Wars against *Denmark*, he propos'd the annexing the Revenues of the Clergy, and some of the Lands of the Nobility, to the Crown, which they refused: And he continuing to extend his Prerogative, it occasion'd a Civil War; upon this the States applied to *Margaret* of *Denmark* for Assistance, which she granted, on Condition that she should be their Queen when they had humbled *Albert*. On his Part, he mortgaged the Isle of *Gothland* to the *Teutonic* Knights for 20000 Nobles, and challenged Queen *Margaret* to a Battle, which was fought at *Talkoping* in *West-Gothland*, where she obtained the Victory, and took King *Albert* and his Son. After this the Dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, the Earls of *Holfstein*, and the *Hans-Towns*, sided with *Albert*, and sent him Supplies; so that by this War, which lasted 7 Years, *Sweden* was laid under Contribution by Foreigners, and their Trade ruin'd.

At length a Peace was concluded at *Stockholm*, by which King *Albert*, his Son, and the rest of the Prisoners of Note, were set at Liberty on Condition that within three Years he should resign all his Pretensions to the Crown in favour of Queen *Margaret*. The *Hans-Towns* were Guarantees of the Treaty, and in case of failure, were to pay her 60000 Marks of fine Silver. *Albert's* Son died within two Years, which made him lay aside all Thoughts of recovering the Crown, and he soon after died in *Mecklenburgh*; so that *Margaret* was left Queen over the three Northern Nations, and call'd the *Semiramis* of the North.

The *Swedes* before this seeing she had no Heirs, and fearing that after her Death *Albert's* Son, who was then alive, might pretend to the Succession, they desir'd her to marry, which

which she would not listen to, being jealous that a Husband would claim a Share of the Sovereignty: But to give some Satisfaction to the Swedes, she told them, She would name for Successor *Henry of Mecklenburgh*, her Nephew, then very young; for she thought if he had been of Age, he might have disturb'd her ambitious Projects, out of his Impatience to mount the Throne. By her Intrigues, she perswaded the Estates of the three Crowns to go into this Succession. At the same Time she told them, how profitable an Union of the three Northern Nations would be; how likely to terminate all Quarrels for the future; that thereby they would soon become Masters of all the Trade of the *Baltick*; and that their Disunion was the only thing that could effectually gratify the *Hans-Towns*. The Estates being gain'd thus, partly by her Presence and Eloquence, but more by the secret Practices and Bribes of her Courtiers, they consented to this Union, and made it a Fundamental Law, which was call'd, the *Union of Calmar*, and laid the Foundation of bloody Wars for more than one Age betwixt *Denmark* and *Sweden*. The Articles of this Union were, 1. That these 3 Kingdoms, for all Time coming, should have one and the same King or Queen; and that he or she that was to succeed to the Throne of those 3 Realms, must be elected by all the 3 Kingdoms; and that the Election should be in each Kingdom by Turns. 2. That the Sovereign should be oblig'd by these Articles to reside by Turns in each of the 3 United Nations, and so spend in each of them the Revenues arising from that Kingdom; That the Revenues, Money, &c. of each Kingdom might not be exported, nor employed any other Way, than for the Advantage of that Kingdom from whence they were collected. 3. That each of the 3 United Kingdoms should for ever have their own Senate, Laws, Customs, Money, and Privileges; and that the Governors, Magistrates, Generals, Bishops, Troops, Garisons, should be Natives of the Kingdom where they were employ'd; and that none born in one of the 3 Kingdoms should bear Office in any of the Kingdoms but in that where he was born.

The Swedes thought that those wise Limitations would secure their Peace; but tho' their Senate and Laws protected them for a while, they soon found, that *Denmark* being the Center of the Union, and then

the more powerful Nation, *Margaret* and all her Successors favour'd the *Danes* more than them, whom they endeavour'd by all Ways and Means to keep under, and make miserable.

During *Henry's* Minority, (whose Name she chang'd to *Erick*, to please the Swedes, who had 12 Kings of that Name) in 1410, she endeavour'd to regain the Isle of *Gotthland* from the *Prussian* Knights; but failing in it, was oblig'd to pay the Mortgage, which was 10000 Nobles. In 1412, *Erick* married *Philipa*, the Daughter of *Henry IV.* King of *England*; and his Aunt Queen *Margaret* died much about this Time. He was soon engaged in a War with the Earl of *Holstein*, the *Hans-Towns*, and the Dukes of *Mecklenburgh* and *Saxony*, about *Sleswick*. Tho' this was only the Quarrel of *Denmark*, the other Kingdoms were more oppress'd than they, and their Trade with the *Hans-Towns* was broke off. Besides, the King's Officers us'd the Swedes very Tyrannically, and he himself broke many Articles of the Union, especially when he sent away the most ancient Swedish Records into *Denmark*. This at last oblig'd the Swedes to take desperate Counsels. *Engelbrecht Engelbrechtsen*, a *Dalecarlian*, headed his Countrymen, who besieg'd *Jesse Erickson*, one of the King's Officers, and a great Oppressor, who, to prevent an Insurrection, was turned out; yet the Boors, with *Engelbrecht* at their Head, over-ran the neighbouring Country with Fire and Sword, and destroyed those who would not join them. At last one *Erick Puke* came over to them with the *North-Hallanders*, took many Places of Strength, killed all the *Danes* they met, and forc'd the Senate of the Kingdom to renounce their Allegiance to *Erick*. This oblig'd him to make Peace with the *Holsteiners*, and to turn his whole Force against *Sweden*; but a great Part of his Fleet was destroy'd by Storm: He came with the rest to *Stockholm*, and was forc'd to make a Truce for 10 Months with the Swedes. *Olof*, the Archbishop of *Upsal*, perswaded them to own him as King, provided he would stand to the Union, which the King at that Time consented to, and reserv'd only to himself the Castles of *Stockholm*, *Calmar*, and *Mycoping*, leaving the Swedes to command the rest. No sooner had the King done this, but he

left *Sweden*, contrary to the Union; and the Estates being afraid he might return with a greater Force, they assembled at *Arboka*. In the mean time *Engelbrecht* took *Stockholm*, and besieged the Castle. At this Time the Marshal *Charles Cnutson* was declared Governor and General of the Kingdom, and *Engelbrecht* was kill'd by one *Benedict Suenfson*, his old Enemy. Some were jealous of the Marshal's too great Power, which occasion'd a new Treaty, wherein the King promis'd to put the Natives of *Sweden* only in Places of Trust in that Kingdom; and *Benedict Suenfson*, as a Reward for murdering *Engelbrecht*, was made Governor of *Calmar*. The King soon after, in his Voyage from *Gothland* to *Sudercoping*, was overtaken by a Storm, wherein most of his Ships were lost, and he narrowly escap'd. When the *Swedes* heard of the Tempest, and not knowing whether the King was alive or dead, they resolv'd that both the first and second Treaties at *Calmar* should stand. By this Means the Marshal got most of the Castles of the Kingdom into his Hands; at which *Erick Puke* being disgusted, he rais'd a great Number of Boors, and defeated the Marshal and his Troops. Upon this, the Marshal desired an Interview with *Puke*, and, contrary to Promise, sent him Prisoner to *Stockholm*, where he was beheaded. When the Senators heard the King was alive, they sent to him to know if he would confirm their former Treaty at *Calmar*, which he refused. Upon this they made a secret League with some Leading-Men in *Denmark* against him. The Marshal prevailed with the Senators to appoint a Day for the King to appear in *Sweden*, to renew their Privileges; and in case of failure, they were to renounce his Authority: But the Archbishop perswaded them to forbear bringing Matters to Extremity, till a General Meeting of the Estates of the 3 Kingdoms might redress their Grievances; and when they met, the King's Commissioners would not confirm the Treaty of *Calmar*; upon which they broke up. The King retir'd with all his Treasure out of *Denmark* to *Gothland*; and those of the Danish and Swedish Senators, who were dissatisfied with the King's Government, agreed to dethrone him, and chose another, who would observe the Articles of the Union. The *Danes* sent to

Christopher Duke of Bavaria, desiring him to accept of their Crown, and acquainted the Marshal with it; upon which he was own'd as King by the Senators and the Marshal, and Crown'd at *Upsal* about 1439. He afterwards married *Dorothy*, Daughter of *John Marquis of Brandenburg*. *Erick*, who was still in Possession of *Gothland*, took many of the Swedish Ships, for which the Senate desired *Christopher* to make War upon him, which he did; but suddenly clapp'd up a Peace, by which *Erick* was left in Possession of *Gothland*. *Christopher* died at *Helsingburgh* in 1448, and left great Legacies to the Churches of *Sweden*; but the *Danes* being possess'd of his Ships, Ammunition, rich Furniture, and ready Money, would not pay them.

The Marshal *Charles Cnutson*, upon *Christopher's* Death, got himself elected King: But the *Danes* offer'd their Crown to *Christian Earl of Oldenburg*. *Charles* in the beginning of his Reign besieged *Erick* in the Castle of *Wisby*; but *Christian*, the new King of *Denmark*, rais'd the Siege. *Erick* retired to *Pomerania*, without making any further Pretensions to the Crown, and died at *Rugen*.

The greatest Part of the *Norwegians* elected *Cnutson* also for their King, which occasion'd constant Wars betwixt him and *Christian of Denmark*. *Cnutson* was successful at first; but after the Death of his brave General *Thord Bonde*, *Christian* was too hard for him. The Archbishop of *Sweden* declared also for *Christian*, surpris'd *Cnutson's* Forces at *Strengness*, and besieged himself in *Stockholm*; upon which he embarked with all his Treasure for *Dantzick*. The Archbishop having got all the Strong-holds into his Hands, sent for *Christian* to *Sweden*, where he was declared King. His Government was tolerable at first; but afterwards his Cruelty and heavy Taxes made him odious to the *Swedes*: He tortur'd to Death many of their Great Men, on Pretence of corresponding with *Cnutson*: He was also cruel to the Boors, who took Arms against him, and imprison'd the Archbishop of *Sweden* in *Copenhagen*. *Katil*, Bishop of *Lyncoping*, being provok'd at this, made an Insurrection, and obliged the King to fly to *Denmark*, whence he returned next Year with a considerable Force; but the Bishop's

Army

Army defeated him, and forc'd him to leave *Sweden* a second time. The Bishop also besieg'd *Christian's* Garrison in *Stockholm*, and sent to *Cnutfone* for Help, who came to *Sweden* with Forces that he had levied in *Prussia* and *Poland*; and *Stockholm* surrendering to him, he was again made King: But some Differences happening betwixt him and Bishop *Katil* about exchanging the Archbishop, the Bishop made Peace with *Christian*, who came with a powerful Army to *Sweden*: He defeated *Cnutfone's* Forces upon the Ice near *Stockholm*, and set the Archbishop at Liberty; and getting all the Places of Strength into his Hands, *Cnutfone* was obliged to give up all his Pretensions, and leave the Kingdom: But *Nils Sture*, and *Erick Axelstone*, *Cnutfone's* Friends, did for some Time oppose the Archbishop's Designs; and *Axelstone* being declared Regent of the Kingdom, the Archbishop was obliged to surrender *Stockholm* and other Strong-holds to him: But *Nils Sture* and *Erick Nilstone* going over to the Archbishop's Faction, they involved the Kingdom in Blood and Confusion: Yet the Archbishop's Party was worsted at last; upon which he died of Grief, and the Commons of *Sweden* once more restored *Cnutfone*: But *Erick Nilstone*, *Erick Carlstone*, *Trolle*, and some others, surpris'd *Cnutfone's* Army during a Truce, and forc'd his Men to fly; but pursuing them too far, they were entirely routed by *Cnutfone*, and their Leaders fled to *Denmark*; upon which *Cnutfone* returned to *Stockholm*, and recommending the Kingdom to his Nephew *Steen Sture*, he died there about 1470.

After his Death, there was nothing but Confusion and Anarchy in *Sweden* for one Year. But at last *Steen Sture* was declared Regent, vanquish'd *Christian* of *Denmark* in a Battle near *Stockholm*, and drove him out of the Kingdom, to which he never return'd, but died in *Denmark* in 1481.

After his Death, the *Danes* made *John, Christian's* Son, their King. The *Swedes* agreed to this Choice, provided that he would observe the *Pacta Conventa* which King *John* swore to and seal'd; but the Articles not being duly perform'd, *Steen Sture* continued Regent 14 Years after. The Kingdom was at this Time miserably afflicted with intestine Divisions, and had also a War with *Russia* and *Denmark*. The

Senators advis'd *Sture* to lay down his Regency; but he refusing it, they invited King *John*, who defeated *Sture's* Party; upon which the Senate, and *Sture* himself, acknowledged *John* as King, and the Succession was settled upon his Son *Christian*. *John* Reign'd for some Time peaceably; but at last, falling into the Arbitrary Measures of his Predecessors, he oblig'd *Sture*, and others of the Nobles, to surrender the Fiefs of the Crown which they possess'd, and gave them to *Danes* and *Germans*. His Officers followed his Example, and committed all manner of Insolencies in their Provinces: But when *John* was defeated at *Ditmarsen*, the *Swedes*, headed by *Steen Sture*, assembled at *Wadstana*, and renounc'd their Allegiance to *John*, because he had broke the Articles of *Calmar*.

Upon this *John* sail'd to *Denmark*, and his Queen was left in *Stockholm*, which *Sture* besieg'd, forc'd it to surrender, and was constituted Regent of the Kingdom. In the mean Time the *Danes* burnt *Elfsburg* and *Oresteen*, and committed great Cruelties in *West-Gothland*, under the Command of *Christian*, *John's* Son, who had also destroy'd most of the Noble Families of *Norway*; but their Fury was a little allay'd, because the Queen was in the Hands of their Enemies. At last the *Lubeckers* and Cardinal *Raimond* procur'd her Liberty to return to *Denmark*. The Regent conducted her to the Borders, but in his Return died suddenly. Upon this the States, at their Meeting in 1503, made *Suante Nilstone Sture* Regent. Then the War began afresh with King *John*, with various Success. At first, the Emperor, the *Russians*, and Pope, join'd with the *Danes*: But the Regent made Peace with the *Muscovites*, and set the *Lubeckers* against the *Danes*, from whom they retook *Calmar* and *Bornholm*. In the midst of this Success *Suante* died, in 1511, in the 8th Year of his Regency. After his Death, *Steen Sture*, the Regent's Son, was chosen Regent with great Difficulty; the ancient Senators inclining more to *Gustavus Trolle*, a Man of greater Experience. King *John* died at *Alburg* in *Jutland* in 1513, and the *Danes* and *Norwegians* declar'd his Son *Christian* King. The *Swedes* hated him for his Father's Cruelty, and desired Time to consider of the Matter; and *Christian*, after 4

Years, perceiving the *Swedes* were not resolv'd to elect him, and that the Regent would not part with his Power, he instigated Pope *Leo X.* against him, strengthened his Party, by bringing over *Gustave Trolle*, the new Archbishop, and perswaded the *Russians* to invade *Enland*. When the Regent found out the Archbishop's Treachery, he tender'd the Oath to him, and upon his refusing it, he besieg'd him in the Castle of *Steeka*. *Christian* of *Denmark* took some Ships with Ammunition belonging to the Regent, but could not raise the Siege; so that the Archbishop was forc'd both to surrender the Castle and his Office, for which the Pope excommunicated the Regent, fined the *Swedes* in 100000 Ducats, and order'd it to be levied by *Christian*, who fell into *Sweden* with a great Army. The Regent met and gave him Battle; but being killed, his Army was soon dispersed. Upon this the Archbishop assum'd his former Dignity, and being assisted by two other Bishops, declared *Christian* King of *Sweden*, who at first treated the *Swedes* with a great deal of Humanity; but afterwards, on Pretence of the Pope's Fine and Excommunication, he committed all manner of Cruelties and Barbarities; and the Archbishop, in the Pope's Name, demanded a Million of Pounds for Reparation of Damage done to the Church at *Upsal*, and his Castle of *Steeka*, and on Pretence that Gunpowder was convey'd under the King's Palace to blow him up. The Regent's Widow, his Mother-in-Law, and 15 others, besides the Senate and Common-Council of *Stockholm*, were accused for it, and all condemned as Hereticks; upon which 94 of them were beheaded at *Stockholm*, and their Servants hang'd. The Regent's Body was also hung up among the rest, and their Quarters affix'd in many Places of the Country. His Widow and his Mother-in-Law gave all they had for their Lives, but were committed to close Prison. In *Finland*, *Hemming Gudde*, notwithstanding his former Services to *Christian*, was executed, with 10 more: The Abbot of *Nydala*, and 10 Monks, were drown'd: Two Gentlemen's Sons, one of 9, the other of 7 Years, were beheaded at *Jenscoping*; and after *Christian* had murder'd 600 of his *Swedish* Subjects, he returned well-satisfied to *Denmark*.

At this Time *Gustavus Erickson*, whose Father had been beheaded, and his Mother thrown into Prison by the Tyrant, having escaped from Prison, he shelter'd himself among the *Dalekarlians*, who chose him for their Captain; and the States of the Kingdom following their Example, declar'd him Regent: But the Clergy, ever since the Union, continued firm to the Enemies and Murderers of their Countrymen; and *Christian*, to be reveng'd on *Gustavus* the Regent, kill'd his Mother and Sister in Prison at *Copenhagen*, order'd no Quarter to be given to any *Swedish* Nobleman, and committed great Barbarities wherever he came. The Regent made Reprisals upon the *Danes*, and being assisted by the *Lubeckers*, he besieg'd *Stockholm*, and during the Siege receiv'd the glad News, That the *Futlanders* had renounc'd their Allegiance to *Christian*. This so encouraged the Regent's Party, that they drove the *Danes* out of the whole Kingdom, retook *Osland* and *Borkholm*, and the Castle of *Calmar*, and the Regent was made King; upon which *Stockholm* surrendred to the *Lubeckers*; and *Christian* and his Queen retiring to the *Netherlands*, the *Futlanders* made *Frederick I.* King *Christian's* Uncle, King, and were very desirous to bring the *Swedes* to own him; but they having already smarted sufficiently by the Union, and the *Danish* Kings, who did them more Mischief under the Title of Kings of *Sweden*, than they could have done if the Kingdoms had been separated, and at War as formerly, they would not agree to it. The Reformation began at this Time; of which more in its Place.

Soren Norby still adher'd to *Christian's* Party, and had *Gothland* in Possession, which enabled him to annoy the *Swedes* in their Trade: Upon this *Gustavus* sent *Bernard Van Melen* to reduce the Island, and *Norby* put himself under the Protection of *Denmark*, which occasion'd some Differences betwixt those two Northern Kings.

Gustavus having surmounted those Difficulties, was Crown'd at *Upsal* in 1528; and the rebellious *Dalekarlians*, who were discontented at the Change of Religion, were also obliged to come hither. They were headed by *Thure Johanson*, the Rix-Marshal, who made them revolt, endeavour'd to do the same by the *West* and *East Goths*, and per-

persuaded them to elect *Magnus Brynjeson*, a popular Man among them, for King: But King *Gustavus* appeas'd those Comotions, by granting an Indemnity to most of them, and beheading only some of their Leaders. The King having dispos'd of some super-numerary Bells, the *Dalcarlians* began a new Rebellion, and design'd to depose him; but he terrified them so by his Forces, that they crav'd Pardon, and promis'd Obedience for the future. The King married *Katherine*, Daughter to *Magnus Duke of Saxe-Lauenburg*. *Christian* after this landed in Norway with a considerable Force, and the King sent some Troops to the Frontiers, under the Command of *Lars Sigefson*, Rix Marshal, who being join'd by the *Danes*, forc'd *Christian* to raise the Siege of *Babus*, and obliged him to surrender himself to the *Danes*. He was thereupon committed to Prison by *Frederick King of Denmark*, where he died 27 Years after, being justly called the Nero of the North. The *Lubeckers* began another War against Sweden; because *Gustavus* would not grant them the Monopoly of Trade on his Coasts, demanded the Money due to them for assisting him with their Ships, and join'd the remainder of *Christian's* Party. They made *John Earl of Hoya*, *Gustavus's* Brother-in-Law, their Head, design'd the Conquest of the Northern Kingdoms, and brought over some of the Citizens of *Stockholm* to their Party, by promising it should be a Hans-Town. After *Frederick* the King of *Denmark's* Death, they persuaded the Senate of *Copenhagen* to enter into their League, and their Party was numerous, till the *Danes* chose *Christian III.* for King; and being assisted with Money and Forces by *Gustavus*, they defeated the *Lubeckers* near *Elfborg*; and in a Sea-fight, destroyed their Fleet, and carried many of their Ships to *Denmark*. *Gustavus* married for second Wife *Margaret*, the Daughter of *Abraham Erickson*, Governor of *West-Gothland*; and apprehending the Designs of *Charles V.* the Emperor, he sent into *France*, and made an Alliance with that Crown.

In 1544, a Diet of the States met at *Westeras*, where, in Gratitude to him for being the Instrument of delivering them from the Danish Slavery, and freeing them from an Union with that Nation, declared the Succession Hereditary in his Family, and settled it upon his Son *Erick Gustavusson*, then

11 Years of Age. By his Will, he gave to *John*, his second Son, the Dukedom of *Finland*; to his third Son, *Magnus*, the Dukedom of *East-Gothland*; and to *Charles*, the youngest, the Dukedom of *Sudermania*, *Nerick* and *Wermeland*, to be held in Fief of the Crown of Sweden. *Erick*, the eldest, was persuaded by his Tutor *Dionisius Burræus*, a Frenchman, to make his Addresses to Queen *Elizabeth* of England. This *Dionisius*, and after him *Erick's* Brother *John*, and *Steen Sture*, went to England to propose the Match, who mistaking Compliments for Realities, wrote that it was advisable for *Erick* himself to come over and complete the Marriage; but when he was ready to go, his Father died at *Stockholm*, in 1559; so that he durst not leave his Dominions with his Brethren.

Erick was 27 Years of Age when he succeeded: He obliged his Brothers to subscribe new Articles at *Arboga*, and first introduc'd Hereditary Titles of Honour, as Earls, Barons, &c. alledging, That in an Hereditary Kingdom, it was reasonable there should be Hereditary Dignities among the Nobility. Some of the *Lieflanders* had formerly put themselves under the Protection of *Denmark*, and others of them under *Poland*. Those of *Revel* and *Esthonia*, being nearest to Sweden, sought Protection from *Erick*, which he granted, together with all their former Privileges. When the *Poles* heard that the Swedes had garison'd *Revel*, they sent an Ambassador to demand it; but the Swedes answer'd, That they had as good Right to it as the *Poles*: Upon which the latter besieg'd the Town; but the Garison fallying upon them, oblig'd 'em to raise the Siege. When *Erick* design'd to come to England about his Match with Qu. *Elizabeth*, he was blown back by a great Storm: He was inconstant in his Temper, and superstitiously fond of Judiciary Astrology. He laid aside his Design of courting Qu. *Elizabeth*, and made his Addresses to *Mary* Qu. of *Scotland*, and the Princess of *Lorrain*, at one and the same Time, and not long after to *Catherine*, Daughter to the Landgrave of *Hesse*; but succeeded in neither. His Brother *John* married *Catherine*, Daughter of *Sigismund*, King of *Poland*, without *Erick's* Consent, for which he besieg'd him in the Castle of *Arboga*, took him, and sentenc'd him to Death, which was chang'd to perpetual Imprisonment.

ment. To revenge this Affront, the Poles instigated the *Lubeckers* and *Danes* to make War upon *Sweden*, and the *Danes* affronted the *Swedish* Ambassador. The *Suedes* routed the *Danes* and *Lubeckers* at Sea, but lost their Admiral, which carried 200 Brass Guns. They had not the like Success by Land, except in *Livonia*, where their Affairs went well. King *Erick* had the Misfortune to fall into Broils with his Subjects, on the Account of his bad Administration and Amours: He fell deeply in Love with one *Katherine*, a Peasant's Daughter, who manag'd him as she pleas'd. In her younger Days, she sold Nuts on the Streets of *Stockholm*: But notwithstanding this, and the Remonstrances of his best Subjects, he debas'd himself so far as to marry her. In Matters of Government, he was rul'd by two Favourites; one was *Dionisius Burræus*, his Tutor, who enrag'd him to that degree against the Family of the *Stures*, that *Erick* suborn'd Knights of the Post against the Chief of them; upon which they were put in Prison, and there murder'd by the King's Command, who with his own Hand stabb'd *Nils Sture*. He afterwards laid the Blame of this Cruelty on *Burræus*, and, to pacify the People, caus'd him to be slain by his Guards; and fearing that his Subjects would resent those impious Practices, he releas'd his Brother *John*, and declar'd, that *Joran Pearson*, his other Favourite, advis'd him to these illegal Methods, and *Joran* was committed to Prison; but upon his Success against the *Danes*, he relaps'd to his former Arbitrary Ways, justified all his Acts of Injustice, and would have taken away the Lands left his Brothers by his Father's Will; but they refused to accept the Equivalent he offer'd them in *Livonia*. Upon this, he design'd to have had his Brother *John* murder'd, at the Nuptials betwixt himself and his Mistress *Katherine*: But his Brother being appriz'd of his Plot, did not come to the Marriage, but associat'd with some Noblemen, who were displeas'd with *Erick's* Government, and resolv'd to dethrone him. By the Mediation of the King of *Poland*, they procur'd a Truce with *Denmark*; and having strengthened their Party by some *German* Forces in *Erick's* Service, who revolted to them, they seiz'd his Castles. In that of

Wadstena, they found a great Treasure; then they besieg'd *Stockholm*, with *Erick* in it, and the Senate open'd the Gates to them whilst he was at Church; but he escap'd into the Castle, which the Duke's Forces besieg'd, and press'd it so hard, that he was oblig'd to surrender, and resign the Crown. Then the Estates assembled at *Stockholm*, renounc'd their Allegiance, made him close Prisoner, and committed him to the Custody of the Friends of the murder'd Lords, who us'd him barbarously.

In 1566, *John*, his Brother, was proclaim'd King of *Sweden*, who in the first Place did Justice on some of the bad Counsellors of the former Reign, and sent an Ambassador to *Denmark* to get the Truce prolong'd, or to make a Peace, which they accepted on disadvantageous Terms, for which the whole Transaction was declared void at the next Diet. *John*, to please his Brother *Charles*, to whom he had promis'd a Share in the Government, put him in Possession of *Sudermania*, *Naricke* and *Wermland*, which his Father had left him. Then he was Crown'd at *Upsal*. He sent Ambassadors to *Muscovy* to prolong the Truce; but the *Muscovites* put them in Prison, and made *Magnus*, Duke of *Holstein*, King of *Livonia*, on Condition that he should hold it of the Czar. The *Lieflanders*, loving to be under the Government of a *German* Prince, consented to the Proposal; and to bring this Project to bear, the *Muscovites* advanced with a great Army; so that the King was obliged to make Peace with the *Danes* on their own Terms. While the *Muscovites* were in *Livonia*, the *Tartars* invaded *Muscovy*, took and burnt the City of *Moscow*, and cut above 30000 of the Inhabitants in pieces. After the *Muscovites* had made a Truce with the *Poles* and *Tartars*, they fell again into *Livonia* with 80000 Men, and committed inhumane Barbarities: But a *Swedish* Party of 600 Horse and 1000 Foot routed 16000 *Muscovites*, and killed 7000 of them on the Spot: Upon which the Czar offer'd a Treaty to be set on foot at *Newgarten*; but King *John* disliking the Place, the War began again, in which the *Suedes* had but indifferent Success, and were repuls'd before *Wesenburg* and *Telsburg*. The *Russians* also surpris'd the *Suedes* and *Germans* when drunk in their Camp, and killed a great many

many of them. The *Swedes* however made several Inroads into the Territories of the *Muscovites*, which brought on a Truce for two Years. It was thought this War might have been more successful, had not *John* been engaged in a Design of changing the Established Religion in *Sweden* for Popery. For, tho' educated a Protestant, he was misled by his Wife, and resolved to restore Popery by degrees. To effect this, he designed to follow the Scheme of *Cassander*, who was set on work by the Emperors *Ferdinand I.* and *Maximilian II.* to compose the Differences about Religion in *Germany*. *John* invited some Jesuits, who in Lay-Habits were to assist his Secretary Mr. *Peter Frensius*, the chief Manager of this Affair; and at the Convocation of the Clergy, proposed a new Liturgy, with a great many Popish Ceremonies, to be used in the Administration of the Sacraments, and Consecration of Bishops and Priests. He likewise introduced the Mass. Some of his new consecrated Bishops complied with all this; so that Popery was openly professed all over the Kingdom, except in the Provinces belonging to his Brother *Charles*, whom he endeavoured to persuade to approve of this Change, but in vain. At last the King got the Liturgy approved by a General Synod of the Clergy, and also by the Estates of the Kingdom, who made it Treason to oppose it. After this the King banish'd and imprison'd all who would not conform: But notwithstanding those severe Methods, many of the Clergy preach'd against the Wickedness and Impiety of those Principles and Practices, and sent their Remonstrances to the *German Universities* of *Wittenberg*, *Leipsick*, *Helmstadt*, *Frankfort*, and others, who all approved of their Zeal for the *Augsburg* Confession, and condemn'd the Liturgy as dangerous to the Protestant Religion. King *John* at this Time sent and poison'd his Brother King *Erick* in Prison; and having gain'd this Point, he more openly own'd his Affection to Popery. The Invocation of Saints was publicly preach'd, and whoever oppos'd it were imprison'd. He sent afterwards an Ambassador to *Rome*, and the Pope sent a Nuncio to *Stockholm*; and King *John* sent a great many young Gentlemen abroad, to be educated by the Jesuits.

The *Russian War* in the mean time was carried on with various Success. The *Poles* and *Swedes* agreed, That whatever Towns either of them took from the *Muscovites*, should remain to those who took them. The *Swedes*, under the Command of *Pontus de la Gardie*, took from the *Muscovites* the strong Fortress of *Kekholm*, the Castle of *Padus*, *Wesenburg*, *Telsburg*, and *Narva*, where they killed 7000 of them. They also took *Juanogrod*, and other Places of Note; but the *Poles* growing jealous of those Advantages, the *Swedes* were obliged to make a Truce with the *Muscovites*, which continued 4 Years. The Misunderstanding betwixt King *John* and his Brother *Charles* increas'd, so that he summon'd him to appear before the Diet at *Wadstena*; but by the Mediation of some of the Senators, they were made Friends. The King did all he could to persuade the Clergy of his Brother's Territories to approve the Liturgy, but without Effect. King *John* died at *Stockholm* in 1592.

His Son Prince *Sigismund*, who before this was elected King of *Poland*, succeeded. In the *Interregnum*, Duke *Charles* took upon him the Administration, by Consent of the Senate, which was approved afterwards by *Sigismund*. *Charles* call'd together the *Swedish* and *Gothick* Clergy at *Upsal*, where the *Augsburg* Confession was confirmed, and the new Liturgy and other Popish Ceremonies abolished. The States approved of this, and of another Decree, forbidding any Appeal out of *Sweden*, and order'd that *Sigismund* should sign those Decrees before his Coronation; but *Sigismund* declar'd, That being an Hereditary Prince, he ought not to oblige himself to any thing before his Coronation. He came to *Sweden*, accompanied with the Pope's Nuncio, and demanded a Popish Church in every City; that the new Archbishop should be deposed; and that he might be Crown'd by the Nuncio. *Charles* and the States endeavour'd to persuade him from those unpopular Courses, but in vain: Upon which they enter'd into an Association for the Defence of the Protestant Religion, and muster'd their Troops near *Upsal*. *Sigismund* fearing the Consequences, pretended to repent of his former Conduct, sign'd the Proposals of the States, and was Crown'd.

by the Bishop of *Strengnes* in 1594. When the Coronation was over, he attempted by Force what he could not gain by Persuasion, and sent for Troops from *Poland*; but Duke *Charles* was provided to receive them. The King finding himself baulk'd, resolv'd to leave the Kingdom. When the States knew it, and that he was sail'd for *Dantzick*, with the Consent of *Charles* they took upon them the Administration, deposed the King's Governor at *Stockholm*, because a Papist, and forb'd Popery in *Sweden*. After this, a Peace was concluded with the *Muscovites*, and in a Diet at *Suderköping*, the States justified their Proceedings in a Letter to *Sigismund*, confirmed the *Augsburg* Confession, abolish'd Popery, and made Duke *Charles* Regent, but accountable to the Senate. *Sigismund* wrote to dissuade *Charles* from it, and also to the States, to whom he committed the Government in his Absence, and deprived *Charles* of his Regency: But another Diet was call'd at *Arvoga*, where *Charles* was again declared Regent. About this Time *Nicolas Flemming*, the King's General, killed a great many *Swedish* Boors, for which *Charles* made War upon him, possess'd himself first of *Gothland*, and then of the whole Kingdom, which oblig'd the Governors for the King to fly into *Poland*. King *Sigismund* perceiving his Affairs in *Sweden* requir'd his Presence, he resolv'd to go thither with 6000 Men, and the States resolv'd to meet him with an Army. The *West-Goths* and *Finlanders* declared for *Sigismund*: The *Finlanders* equipped some Ships for his Service; and while *Charles* sail'd with his Fleet to reduce them, the King landed at *Calmar*. All Overtures of Accommodation being rejected, the War began, wherein *Charles* was worsted at first, and his Men laying down their Arms, obtained Pardon; but afterwards at *Stangbroo* he surpris'd the King's Army, and killed 2000 of them on the Spot, with the Loss only of 40 of his own Men. The King after this Defeat promised to content his Subjects, but he fail'd to *Dantzick*; and the States convening again, once more constituted *Charles* Regent, renounc'd their Allegiance to the K. and offer'd the Crown to his Son *Uladislaus*, provided he would come to *Sweden*, and be bred a Protestant; but in case of failure, he and his Heirs

were to be excluded for ever from the Succession. *Charles* march'd against the *Finlanders*, whom he defeated, and made an Alliance with the *Muscovites*. In 1600, the States met at *Sincoping*, where some of the Lords who assist'd *Sigismund* to invade their Country were declared guilty of High-Treason, and executed; and *Sigismund* was declared to have forfeited his Right to the Crown, and his Son *Uladislaus* the like; because he did not appear within the limited Time. The Duke knowing that those of *Esthonia* and *Revel* were his Friends, he march'd thither with a great Army, where he was joyfully receiv'd; upon which the *Polish* Governors retir'd to *Poland*. At first he had good Success in *Livonia*, and took several Places; but the *Poles* rais'd the Siege of *Riga*, and retok *Kokenhausen*, and other Places near it. In 1604, *Charles* was declared King; and the Succession entail'd on his Heirs Male or Female: After which he was routed by the *Poles* in *Livonia*; but the confused State of *Sigismund's* Affairs hinder'd him from making his Advantage of it. *Charles* assist'd the *Muscovites* against the *Poles* with good Success; but the *Swedish* Affairs were not so prosperous in *Livonia*; and the *Danes* perceiving the *Swedes* so deeply engag'd in War, they thought it the best Time to attack them. By this means the *Swedes* were brought to an Extremity; but Prince *Gustavus Adolphus*, tho' under Age, retriev'd them by his extraordinary Conduct and Valour; for with 1500 Horse, he surpris'd the chief Magazine of the *Danes* at *Christianstadt*, and took from them the Isle of *Oeland*, and the Castle of *Borkholm*. Soon after his Father *Charles IX.* died in 1611, in the 61st Year of his Age.

The States considering they were embroil'd in War with the *Poles*, *Russians*, and *Danes*, thought it most advisable, that *Gustavus*, though not 18 Years of Age, should take upon him the Administration. The *Danes* had the Advantage by Sea, because *Gustavus's* Fleet was in a bad Condition, and took *Calmar*, *Rysbyfort*, and *Elfsburg*. At this Time *Gustavus* rais'd 2300 Men in *Scotland*, and hired 5 *Scotch* Ships, which did him great Service, for they took and plunder'd the City of *Dronheim*, and its Territory, and afterwards sail'd to *Sweden* by Way of *Finl.* The *Muscovites* were wil-

ling

ling to have given their Crown to *Charles Philip*; *Gustavus's* Brother, but it came to nothing, because *Gustavus*, designing that Crown for himself, delay'd sending his Brother; and the *Muscovites*, when they perceived this, elected *Michael Pheodorowitz*; yet *Charles* arriv'd in *Muscovy* at last: But *Michael's* Party was by this Time so strong, that *Charles's* Friends thought it not safe to declare for him. The *Swedes* however took many Places in *Muscovy*; till at last a Peace was concluded in 1617. by which the Town of *Kexholm*, and the Province of *Ingermania*, fell to Sweden. Thus the *Swedes* on that Side had a Barrier betwixt them and *Muscovy*, and the *Muscovites* were entirely separated from the *Baltick*.

This same Year *Gustavus* was crown'd at *Upsal*, and married *Eleonora*, Daughter to the Elector of *Brandenburg*. The Truce with *Poland* being expir'd, *Riga* surrender'd to the *Swedes*, after Six Weeks Siege; and *Sigismund* of *Poland* rejecting the Proposals of Peace, *Gustavus* enter'd *Livonia*, and defeated 3000 *Lithuanians*; so that the *Poles* lost all *Livonia*, except *Dunaburg*. He also routed the *Lithuanians* again in *Semigallia*: Yet *Sigismund* would not make Peace, being encourag'd by the Emperor's fair Promises. Upon this, *Gustavus* sail'd with 80 Ships and 26000 Land-Forces to *Pillaw*, where he was receiv'd by the Elector of *Brandenburg's* Orders; and landing his Men, took *Raunsberg* and *Frauenburg*, and most other Places of *Polish Prussia*. The *Poles* were forced to raise the Siege of *Marienburg*, with the Loss of 4000 Men; and also to raise that of *Dirschau*. But *Gustavus* designing to attack *Dantzick*, he was wounded in the Belly, which oblig'd him to delay the Siege. Soon after this he defeated *Konierzpoliski* near *Darssaw*; and some Days after he received another Wound in his Left Shoulder. A Treaty of Peace betwixt *Poland* and Sweden was almost concluded: But the Emperor promising to assist *Sigismund* with 24 Men of War and 12000 Men to continue the War, the Treaty was broke off, and the *Swedes* and *Danes* join'd in ruining the *Polish* Fleet; for none of them were willing they should encrease their Naval Strength in the *Baltick*. *Gustavus* took 3 *Dantzick* Ships, and sunk one, near that Town; but was repulsed before the Fort of *Dantzick*: To revenge

which, he threw himself into the Harbour, cut in Pieces 200 of the Enemy, and took 14 Pieces of Cannon. *Alexander Lesly*, a *Scotts* General, being detach'd by *Gustavus* with two Companies of Foot and a Troop of Dragoons, to take a View of the Enemy's Army; this small Detachment was surrounded by 17 Troops of *Polish* Cavalry, but broke through them twice, killed above 100 Horse, and carried off 4 Standards. This brought on a general Engagement of both Armies, in which the *Poles* lost 3000 Men, 4 Field-Pieces, and 14 Standards; but the Victory did also cost the *Swedes* much Blood. *Gustavus* block'd up the Harbour of *Dantzick* with 8 Ships; and the *Poles* encounter'd them with 10 Men of War, who kill'd the *Swedish* Admiral, took his Ship, and oblig'd the Vice-Admiral to blow up his; but the *Poles* also lost their Admiral and 400 Men. *Gustavus* after this detached 1000 Foot, who pass'd the *Weissel*, and surpriz'd *Nauenburg*, a *Polish* Magazine, where they took most of their Baggage, and 600000 Crowns in Money. The *Swedish* General *Wrangel* did also raise the Blockade of *Brodaintz*, where he killed 3000 *Poles*, took 1000 Men, 5 Pieces of Cannon, and 2000 Waggons with Provisions. This Defeat oblig'd the *Poles* to accept the *German* Auxiliary Troops, consisting of 5000 Foot and 2000 Horse, under the Command of General *Arnheim*, who having joined the *Poles*, offer'd *Gustavus* Battle, which he accepted, tho' he had only 5000 Horse and 8000 Foot. At first the *Swedish* Horse were repuls'd; but the King charging in Person, soon made the *Poles* retire; and as they design'd to pass the *Nogatx*, *Gustavus* posted Forces to dispute their Passage: Upon which the Battle was renewed; and *Gustavus* venturing too far, a *Pole* took hold of him by the Shoulder-Belt; but the King, by slipping it over his Head, got free of him. After this, another catch'd him by the Arm, and design'd to have carried him off; but *Erick Soop* shot the *Polander*, and rescu'd his Majesty. In the Action, which was near *Strum*, the *Swedes* took 7 Colours and 5 Standards. The *Poles* imputed those Losses to *Arnheim*, whom they suspected of a Correspondence with the Elector of *Brandenburg*; and being weary of their Foreign Auxiliaries, and afflicted with Famine and Plague, they con-

cluded a Truce with the *Swedes* for 6 Years; by which, *Gustavus* was to restore to *Poland*, *Brednitz*, *Wormdit*, *Melsack*, *Stum*, and *Dirschaw*, all in *Prussia*. *Marienbourg* was left to the Elector of *Brandenburg*; and *Gustavus* was to keep the Castle and Harbour of *Pillaw*, *Memel*, *Elbing*, and *Brounsburg*, besides all his Conquests in *Livonia*: So that this War concluded to his Honour and Advantage.

The Protestants in *Germany* being jealous of the Designs of the Papists, and sensible of the Oppressions of the Emperor, who aim'd at being absolute, during the War betwixt the *Poles* and *Swedes*, desir'd the Assistance of *Gustavus*; but he being then so entangled that he could nor disengage himself, *Christian IV.* of *Denmark* declared for the Protestants; but was defeated by the Imperialists, who afterwards made themselves Masters of *Lower Saxony*, and of many Places upon the *Baltick*. *Gustavus* fearing the Consequences, press'd the harder upon the *Poles*, to oblige them to a Peace. He represented also to the States of *Sweden* the Danger of the Neighbourhood of the Emperor's Forces, who had made themselves Masters of Part of *Denmark*: Upon which they unanimously agreed, That War with the Emperor was necessary, since he was the declar'd Enemy of *Sweden*, as appear'd by his interesting himself so much in the *Polish* Quarrel; and by his refusing the Title of King to *Gustavus*. In the Beginning of this War, Count *Wallenstein* laid Siege to *Stralsund*; and *Gustavus* offer'd 'em Assistance, and sent Ammunition to the Town. Upon this, the Citizens made an Alliance with him, and he sent an Army, which oblig'd *Wallenstein* to raise the Siege. The next Year he made War upon the Emperor; and, in the first place, sent General *Lesly* with some Troops, to drive the Imperialists out of the Isle of *Rugen*, which he effected. Then *Gustavus* embarked with 92 Companies of Foot and 16 of Horse. Some Regiments were rais'd for him in *Prussia* before-hand, which were join'd by several Regiments of *Finnlanders*, and commanded by *Gustavus Horn*. The King landed at *Stetin*, and oblig'd the Duke of *Pomerania* to make an Alliance with him. The Administrator of *Magdeburg*, who had been depos'd by the Emperor, declar'd for him, having before his Arrival recover'd

the Town and Territories of that Name. *Gustavus* with these Forces beat the Imperialists out of the furthestmost Parts of *Pomerania* and *New-Mark*; and the Success encourag'd the Duke of *Lunenbourg* and the Landgrave of *Hesse* to enter also into an Alliance with him.

In 1631. *Gustavus* concluded an Alliance with *France*, by which he was to have yearly from that Crown 400000 Crowns; and, notwithstanding the Winter Season, he took the Cities of *Lokenitz*, *Prentzlow*, *New-Brandenburg*, *Clempenow*, *Tremptow*; and *Loitz-Demmin* surrender'd to him, after a Siege of 3 Days; and *Colberg* did the like, after a Blockade of 5 Months; by which the Imperialists were drove quite out of *Lower Pomerania*. The Emperor finding his Generals not able to make head against *Gustavus*, gave the Command of the Army to Count *Tilly*, the experienc'd and successful *Bavarian* General. He fell upon *New-Brandenburg*, a Place of no Strength; in which, *Kniphausen* commanded with two Regiments of *Swedes*, storm'd it, after a brave Defence, and kill'd most of the Common Soldiers. *Gustavus* in the mean time march'd to *Frankfort* upon the *Oder*, commanded by the Earl of *Shaumberg*, took it by Storm, after a Siege of 3 Days, slew 1700 of the Enemy, and took 800. He afterwards sent some Troops to *Landsburg*, who oblig'd the Town to surrender.

About this Time the Protestant Princes met at *Leipsick*, to concert Measures about opposing the Emperor's Edict for the Restoration of the Church-Lands. *Gustavus* sent to them, exhorting them to Union among themselves, and to demand Assistance of Men and Money from them. But the Elector of *Saxony* hinder'd the Princes from entering into the propos'd Alliance, because he design'd to head them himself, though he had not Courage to make an open Breach with the Emperor; and he was also jealous of the *Swedish* Power, and thought it his Interest not to engage so far against the Emperor, as to leave no room for a Retreat when he found it needful; and for the same Reason he refused Protection to the City of *Magdeburg*. *Gustavus* perceiving the Protestant Princes to be mistrustful of him, thought it not fit to attempt the Relief of that City; especially since the Elector of

Saxony

Saxony refused either to join him, or to supply him with Provisions and Ammunition. By this Means *Tilly* took the City by Storm, sack'd it in a barbarous Manner, burnt it to the Ground, and cut off all the Inhabitants but 400. This Cruelty drove the Protestants to Despair; and *Gustavus* issued a Manifesto, declaring, That the Irresolution of the other Protestant Princes was the only Cause of those Calamities. He sent Part of his Forces to assist the Duke of *Mecklenburg*; and with the rest he march'd into *Mark*. With the Assistance of those *Swedish* Troops, the Dukes of *Mecklenburg* drove the Imperialists out of all their Territories, except *Donitz*, *Wismar*, and *Rostock*, which they block'd up. About this Time 6000 *English* and *Scots*, under the Command of the Marquis of *Hamilton*, arriv'd in *Pomerania*, to serve under *Gustavus*, for Relief of the *German* Protestants. The very Fame of his Arrival, and of the *Scots* Valour, says *Dr. Burnet* in his Memoirs of the House of *Hamilton*, struck a Terror into the Imperialists, made the Elector of *Saxony* agree with the *Swedes*, encouraged the Protestant Party, and oblig'd Count *Tilly* so to weaken his Army by reinforcing the Garrisons which lay in the Marquis's Way, that the Marquis's Arrival was confess'd through *Germany* to have been a great Occasion of *Gustavus*'s Victory at *Leipsick*; of which anon. The Marquis had an extraordinary Reception from the King of *Sweden*; who order'd him to guard the Passes upon the *Oder*, to secure a Retreat in case he should be beat. The Marquis after this reliev'd *Crossen*, and made the Imperialists retire, leaving Part of their Baggage and Cannon behind them. He also took *Guben*; and was order'd to reduce *Silesia*, but afterwards countermanded to the Siege of *Magdeburg*, where he offer'd to fight the Imperialists that came to relieve it; but the *Swedish* General declin'd it. The Marquis lost many of his Men by Plague and Famine; and in short was very ill used by the King of *Sweden*, who did not agree with his Master King *Charles* I. though he had a very high Esteem of the Marquis: So that his Army dwindled at last to two Regiments; and the Marquis return'd home a little before *Gustavus* was killed at the Battle of *Lutzen*, in order to have renewed a Treaty betwixt King *Charles* and *Gustavus*,

and to have remov'd the Misunderstanding betwixt them. But to return to *Gustavus*, he surpris'd *Tilly*'s Guards near *Wolmerstadt*, and cut off 3 Regiments; but *Tilly* march'd on with 40000 Men to *Leipsick*, and took it. This prompted the Elector of *Saxony* to declare for *Gustavus*, who would not join his Army except he deliver'd into his Hands the City of *Wittenberg*, to secure his Retreat, send his eldest Son into the *Swedish* Army, advance 3 Months Pay to his Troops; and deliver up those who counsell'd him to side with his Enemies: All which the Elector agreed to. Upon this, *Gustavus* pass'd the *Elb* near *Wittenberg*, with 13000 Foot and 9000 Horse, and joined the Elector near *Dieben*: And a Council of War being call'd, the Elector declared his Inclination for fighting. *Gustavus* thought it also adviseable to fight *Tilly* before he was joined by *Alringer* and *Tieffenbach*; the King being to command the Right, and the Elector the Left. *Tilly* hearing of this, fortified himself in his Camp; but *Pappenheim*, and others of the Imperial Generals, would fight; and talk'd contemptibly of the new-levied *Saxons*, and of the fatigued *Swedes*. The Armies being drawn up, *Tilly* had the rising Ground, and the Wind; but *Gustavus* putting some Squadrons of Foot among his Horse, and wheeling about, regain'd the Wind, and charging the Imperialists, forced them to open their Left Wing, when *Bannier* fell in, and put them into Confusion. *Gustavus* order'd his Men, when they attack'd the *German* Cuirassiers, to run their Swords into their Horses, which they did; but the *Saxon* Infantry, and some of their Militia-Horse, fled; which *Gustavus* perceiving, he fell upon the *German* Horse that pursued them, oblig'd them to give over the Chace, and gave the *Saxons* Time to rally. The Imperial Foot continued firm till *Gustavus* charg'd their Flank with his Right, and took their Cannon: So that they were entirely routed, 7600 kill'd on the Spot, and 5000 taken, who list'd themselves in *Gustavus*'s Service. *Tilly* was in Danger of being killed; but was rescued by the Duke of *Saxe-Lauenburg*. The *Swedes* took above 100 Standards and Colours; but lost 2000 Men, most of them Horse; and the *Saxons* had 3000 killed. After this, they retok *Leipsick*; and *Gustavus* at *Mersburg* cut off above 1000 Imperialists,

perialists, and took 500. He did not think fit to pursue *Tilly's* Army further; but agreed, That the Elector should march into the Emperor's Hereditary Countries; and that he himself should march towards *Franconia*, where he took *Königsbosen*, *Swinfurt*, and the Castle of *Wartzburg*. He was afterwards join'd by 12000 Men, under the Duke of *Holface*; and *Tilly* was also reinforced by the Imperialists: But the *Swedes* fell on his Rear, and cut off 4 Regiments. The Marquis of *Ansbach* made also an Alliance with the King: So he marched towards the *Rhine*, surpris'd *Hanaw*, and *Frankfort* on the *Mayne*; and being possessed of all the *Ringau*, he marched into the *Palatinats*, of which the *Spaniards* were then Masters; and driving them out, he entred the *Bergstrate*, took *Gersheim*, pass'd the *Rhine* near *Stockstadt*, defeated the *Spaniards* that disputed his Passage at *Oppenheim*, where he killed 5000 of them, and made himself Master of many Places. At this Time the Coast of the *Baltick* was cleared of all the Imperialists, by the Surrender of *Rostock* and *Wismar*. The States of the Circle of *Lower Saxony* agreed to levy 6000 Foot and 500 Horse for their own Defence against the Imperialists; and the Elector's Forces under General *Arnheim* took *Prague*: But this General being a secret Enemy to *Gustavus*, and corresponding with the Imperial Generals, he would march no further into the Hereditary Countries, otherwise he might have subdued all *Moravia* and *Austria*. The Emperor finding that *Tilly* was not able to cope with *Gustavus*, he gave the Command of his Army to Count *Wallenstein*, an old and experienc'd Soldier, and so rich, that he was able at his own Charge to raise an Army, and soon levied 40000 Men. In the Winter *Gustavus's* Forces took many Places on the *Moselle*, and defeated the *Spaniards*. In the Spring he marched into *Franconia*, and possessed himself of all the Places on the *Danube* as far as *Ulm*. Then he marched to the River *Leck*, where *Tilly* being intrenched on the other Side, was wounded by a Cannon Bullet, of which he died soon after. This did so much affright his Army, that the *Swedes* attacked and killed 1000 of them, and marched into the Circle of *Bavaria*, where they took *Ruin*, *Newburg* on the *Danube*, and *Augsburg*; but their Designs on *Ingolstadt* and *Ratisbon* mis-

carried. Before the first, the Marquis of *Baden* was killed by the King's Side, who had also his Horse shot under him. But *Gustavus* laid *Bavaria* under Contribution, and their Capital, *Munich*, surrender'd to him, where he found 140 Cannon, and in one of them 30000 Ducats. He would not suffer the Elector's noble Palace to be plundered. The *Swedes* routed 10000 *Bavarians*, who designed to surprize them: But the *Bavarians* afterwards took *Nortgau*, and broke the Articles with the Citizens. After this the *Swedes* made themselves Masters of most of the Places in *Upper Suabia*. *Wallenstein* would not then assist the Elector of *Bavaria*, but marched into *Bohemia*; from whence, by *Arnheim's* Treachery, he soon drove the *Saxons*. Then he directed his Course to *Bavaria*, where the Elector joined him. *Gustavus* encamped near *Nuremberg*; and the Imperialists cut off many of his Convoys: But he was reinforced from several Places by 15000 Foot and 10000 Horse. He attacked *Wallenstein* in his Camp; but was repulsed with the Loss of 2000 Men. In the mean time *Pappenheim* defeated the *Hessians*, forced the Duke of *Lunenburg* to raise the Siege of *Callenberg*, and obliged General *Baudist* to rise from before *Paderbon* and *Hexter*, relieved *Wolfenbittel*, took *Hildersheim*, and was marching to join *Wallenstein*. On the other Hand, the *Saxons* entered *Silesia* with 16000 Men, and might have possessed all the Country, had it not been for the Treachery of *Arnheim*, who was allowed by the Elector of *Saxony* to correspond with *Wallenstein*. *Gustavus* designed to have sent Part of his Forces to *Franconia*, and with the main Body to have marched into *Bavaria*; but pressing Letters from the Elector of *Saxony* obliged him to march to his Assistance; for *Wallenstein* had entred *Misnia* with all his Forces: Upon which, *Gustavus* fearing lest the Elector might make a separate Peace with the Emperor, he marched to join him, and concluded it was best to fight *Wallenstein* before he was joined by *Pappenheim*; and led his Army to *Lutzen*, where a Battle followed, in which the *Swedish* Infantry fell with such Bravery upon the Imperial Foot, that they routed them, and took their Cannon; but a broad Ditch hinder'd the *Swedish* Cavalry to advance. The King put himself at the Head of the *Smaland* Regiment of Horse;

and

and advancing bravely before the rest, accompanied only by the Duke of *Saxe-Lauenburg* and two Grooms, he lost his Life there. 'Tis most probable, says *Puffendorf*, he was shot or stabb'd behind his Back by the said Duke, who was brib'd by the Imperialists. The *Swedes*, enraged by *Gustavus's* Death, fell upon the Enemy with greater Fury than before, and routed them on all sides; but the Death of their Heroick King made this Victory too dear a Purchase. This Great Prince was justly called the *Cæsar* of the North, and would probably have dethroned the Emperor, and abolished Popery in the Empire, had he lived. He discovered his Military Bravery very early in his Father's Time, and was also remarkable for his Piety. He had abundance of *Scots* in his Army. In 1623, two Regiments of that Nation were appointed to guard his Person and the King of *Bohemia* at *Munich*, tho he had both *Swedes* and *Dutch* at that Time in his Service. He ascribed the Victory at *Leipsick* to a *Scots* Brigade. They performed great Service for him at other Times, as the noble Defence of *Stralsund*, the taking of *Frankfort* on the *Oder*, *Mentz*, *Donawert*, *Augsburg*, *Ingolstadt*, &c. for he had no less than three *Scots* Generals, one Velt-Marshal, one Lieutenant-General, two Major-Generals, 23 Colonels, 20 of which came afterwards to be Major-Generals, 55 Lieutenant-Colonels, 14 Majors, with an unknown Number of Captains and Subalterns, besides 7 Regiments of *Scots* that lay in *Sweden*, *Livonia*, &c. and the *Dutch* in *Gustavus's* Service were glad many times to beat the *Scots* March when they design'd to frighten and alarm the Enemy. 'Tis observed, That Colonel Sir *John Hamilton* abandoned the Army, tho earnestly pressed by *Gustavus* to stay, only because the *Swedes* and the *Dutch* were ordered to storm the Enemy's Works before him at *Wurzburg*, after he himself and his Men had boldly hewn out the Way for them.

The News of *Gustavus's* Death was joyfully received by the Emperor, who thought the *Swedes* would be obliged to abandon all their former Conquests in *Germany*. The Protestants there were also divided into Factions, being only united by the great Authority of *Gustavus*. The *Swedes* pro-

claimed *Christina*, his Daughter, Queen, being then but 6 Years of Age, and committed the Care of the War in *Germany* to Chancellor *Oxenstiern*, who first sent some Regiments back to *Sweden* to secure the Peace there. He went to *Dresden*, to persuade the Elector of *Saxony* to enter sincerely into the Alliance, and to concert Measures with him about the ensuing Campaign. The Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Landgrave of *Hesse*, and an Ambassador from *France*, went thither also to the same purpose, but with no Success, for he answer'd them coldly, and in general Terms; so that the Confederates could not expect much Constancy or Assistance from him. *Oxenstiern* sent 14000 Men, under the Command of the Duke of *Lunenburg*, into *Lower Saxony* and *Westphalia*: Other Troops were ordered to *Pranconia*; and the rest were detached to *Silesia*. The Duke of *Lunenburg* took several Places in *Westphalia*, and defeated Count *Mansfeld*. *Gustavus Horn* was also successful in *Alsatia*; but the Treachery of *Arnheim*, who still discovered all the Confederates Secrets to *Wallenstein*, and acted in concert with him, stop'd his Victories there. The Duke of *Lunenburg* took *Hamelun*, and defeated 15000 Imperialists who came to raise the Siege, kill'd 2000, and took as many Prisoners.

At this Time 4 Circles of *Upper Germany* assembled at *Hailbron*, and committed the Management of the War to *Oxenstiern*, who reinstated the Children of *Frederick Count Palatine* in his Territories and Electoral Dignity, in order to engage *England*, *Holland*, and the whole *Palatine* Family, in his Interest. *Arnheim* marched out of the Way; to give an Opportunity to *Wallenstein* to fall upon the *Swedes* in *Silesia*, and drive them from thence; but in other Places the *Swedish* Affairs were in a tolerable Posture. *Gustavus Horn* did so harraßs the Duke de *Ferris* in his March from *Italy*, that of 30000 Men, he had only 12000 Men left; which broke his Heart. *Horn* also took *Ratisbon*, and ravaged *Bavaria*.

The Emperor was at this Time suspicious of the Designs of *Wallenstein*, who was grown too great for a Subject; for he had bargain'd with the *French* to join 'em, and made some Proposals to *Oxenstiern*, who would never trust him. The Emperor resolved

solved to take him off; but in this dangerous Juncture, had none he could trust with the Conduct of this Affair but 3 Scots Colonels, *Gordon, Lesly*, and *Butler*, who boldly seiz'd this perfidious General, and struck off his Head in the View of his Army. The King of *Hungary* was made General in his stead, who retook *Ratisbon*. After this happened the fatal Battle of *Nordlingen*, where 6000 Swedish Foot were killed, and a great many taken, with their General Count *Horn*, and 130 Colours. Upon this the Elector of *Saxony* made a separate Peace with the Emperor. The Elector of *Brandenburg* sided with the Saxons, and all *Upper Germany* was over-run by the *Imperialists*; and the Truce with *Poland* being expired, the *Swedes*, to procure a new one, were obliged to quit *Prussia* to the *Poles*. *France* also refused to engage further with the *Swedes*, unless *Philipsburg* was surrender'd to them, which was complied with. Then a War began betwixt the *Swedes* and the Elector of *Saxony*, who demanded the Restitution of the Archbishoprick of *Magdeburg*, and offer'd 2500000 *Misnia Livres* as an Equivalent; but *Oxenstiern* refused it. Upon which, the Saxons marched to the *Elb* to give the *Swedes* Battle: *Banier* defeated their advanced Guards at *Altenburg*; but 7000 of them having passed the *Elb* near *Domitz*, General *Ruthven*, a Scots-man, was detached with most of the Swedish Horse, and 1000 Foot, to secure that City. The Swedish Horse fell upon the Saxons, cut most of them off, and took 2500, whom they forced to serve in the Swedish Army. Most of the Allies, who prefer'd their private Interest to the Common Cause, had now deserted the *Swedes*, who, tho' they were less numerous than formerly, acted more unanimously, and resolv'd that *Wrangel* should command a Detachment on the *Oder*; That *Lesly* should act in *Westphalia* upon the *Weser*; and that *Banier* should command the Body of the Army upon the *Elb*, where he routed 12 Saxon Regiments. *Kniphausen* also routed a Body of *Imperialists*, and killed 1000 on the Spot, but lost his Life in this Engagement; upon which his Forces were obliged to retire; but General *Lesly* recruited them, and gathering up the dispers'd Regiments, made himself Master of *Minden*; the Garrison of which was subject

to the Duke of *Lunenbourg*, who had declared against the *Swedes*: And *Lesly* having joined the Swedish Troops who had been in the Service of that Prince to his own, he brought Affairs in *Westphalia* to a good Posture, and the Landgrave of *Hesse* join'd him to relieve the City of *Hanaw*, blocked up by *Lamboy*, which they did, and obliged *Lamboy* to retire with much Loss. After this, *Lesly* retired towards the *Weser*: For the Swedish Affairs in *Saxony* being in an ill Posture, *Banier* ordered *Lesly* to join him; and *Wrangel* having also brought him Recruits from *Pomerania*, *Banier* gave the Saxon Battle near *Perleburg*, where he attacked them in their fortified Camp, and killed 5000 in the Field of Battle, besides those slain in the Pursuit. He also defeated 8 Saxon Regiments near *Edenbourg*, and 2000 of their Men near *Pegau*. The next Year, being 1639, he drove the Imperial General *Gallas* into the Hereditary Countries. *Bernard* Duke of *Saxe-Weimar* had the same Success on the *Rhine*, where he twice routed the *Imperialists*, and afterwards killed 9000 of them, when they came to raise the Siege of *Brisack*. He likewise defeated the Duke of *Lorraine*, and killed 3500 of his Men; so that the Place was obliged to surrender. After this, the *Swedes* resolv'd to make the Emperor's Hereditary Countries the Seat of the War; but the Death of Duke *Bernard*, who was poison'd by the *French*, because he refused to surrender *Brisack* into their Hands, hinder'd it, and his Army was brib'd to submit to a *French* General. In 1641, *Banier* had well near surpris'd *Ratisbon*, where the Emperor and the Estates of the Empire were assembled; but a sudden Thaw hinder'd it. He design'd to carry the War into *Moravia*, *Silesia*, and *Bohemia*; but Duke *Bernard's* Forces, then under the Command of a *French* General, left him, and the *Imperialists* so closely beset him, that he had no Way to retreat but thro' the Forrest of *Bohemia*, which he did with great Expedition, and saved the Swedish Army, but died soon after, on May 10, 1642. After his Death, the *Swedes*, under the Command of *Wrangel* and *Coningsmark*, beat the *Imperialists* twice near *Wolfenbuttle*. *Leonard Torstenson* succeeded *Banier* in the Command of the Army, and march'd to *Silesia*, where he took *Glogaw* and other Places.

ces. He also defeated the Imperialists that came to relieve *Swinitz*, killed 3000 of their Horse, and their General the Duke of *Saxe-Lauenburg*: But not thinking fit to march into *Bohemia*, because the *Imperialists* were superior there in Number, he besieged *Leipsick*. The *Imperialists*, under *Piccolomini*, came to its Relief, which occasioned a Battle, wherein the *Swedes* killed 5000, and took 4500, with the Loss of 2000 of their own Men. After this, *Leipsick* surrender'd to *Torsten*, but *Piccolomini* obliged him to raise the Siege of *Friburg*; and the *Weimarian* Army, under the Command of the French General *Gustrian*, was routed by the *Barbarians*. 'Twas observ'd the French carried on a separate Interest from the *Swedes*, and were unwilling that they should be so powerful in *Germany* as to be able to carry on the War without their Help, and therefore endeavour'd to ballance the War in the Empire. In 1644, *Torsten* had private Orders to march into *Holstein*, where the *Danes* had done the *Swedes* a great many Injuries. Accordingly he surpris'd them, took a great many Places from them, beat their Troops in *Jutland* and *Sebonen*, ruin'd their Fleet, and made himself Master of the Bishoprick of *Bremen*, and the Isle of *Bornholm*. This obliged the *Danes* to agree to a disadvantageous Peace at *Bromesbroo*, by the Mediation of *France* and *Holland*; by which the King of *Denmark* gave up to *Sweden* for ever *Jemtland*, and *Harndal*, which borders on *Jemtland*, and was Part of the Government of *Drontheim*, with the Isle of *Gothland* and *Osel*, and gave the Province of *Bleking* for 26 Years as a Security. *Sweden* might have expected better Terms, had there not been a *Dutch* Fleet in the Sound of 48 Men of War, of whose Friendship they were not certain. *Torsten* made a Truce with the Elector of *Saxony*, march'd into *Bohemia*, and at *Jencowitz* killed and took 8000 *Imperialists*, with the Loss of 2000 of his own Men. After this he march'd into *Moravia* and *Austria*, took many Places on the *Danube*, and join'd *Ragotzki's* Army consisting of 25000 Men, but undisciplin'd, who ravag'd the Country. But *Ragotzki* afterwards made Peace with the Emperor, and march'd home. The French under the Command of *Turenne* were defeated by the *Barbarians*; and *Torsten*

march'd back to *Bohemia*, his Men being sick by eating too many green Grapes; and he himself being disabled by the Gout, he quitted the Command of the Army, which then consisted of 15000 Horse, and 8000 Foot, all Veterans. *Wrangel*, who succeeded him, made a Truce with the Elector of *Bavaria*; but the Emperor some Months after perswaded the Elector to break it. Upon which *Wrangel* belieg'd *Eger*, and after routing 3 Regiments of the Enemy that came to relieve it, it surrender'd in 1648. *Turenne* join'd *Wrangel*, and ravaged *Bavaria* and *Saxia*. They passed the *Danube* near *Lawingen*, overtook the Enemy's Rear-Guard, and killed 2000 of them, among whom was General *Haltzappel*. *Koningsmark* surpris'd the Suburbs of *Prague*, where the *Swedes* found an inestimable Booty in the Emperor's Palace, and Noblemen's Houses, and took many Prisoners of Note. He also took *Taber* by Storm. *Wittenburg*, another *Swedish* General, took Count *Bueheim*, and several Officers of Note, who fled from *Prague* with their Convoy, and a great many Lords, 350 ordinary Persons, and a considerable Booty. *Charles Gustavus*, Count *Palatine*, was by Queen *Christina* made Generalissimo of all her Forces. He learn'd the Art of War under *Torsten*, and brought with him 7000 Men from *Sweden*.

About this Time the Peace at *Munster* and *Osnabrug* was concluded, to the Honour of the *Swedes*, who had made *Germany* the Seat of War for 18 Years. Seven Years were spent in adjusting the Preliminaries: But the Emperor seeing that the *Swedes* were still victorious, and at that Time had an Army of 70000 Veterans, commanded by the bravest Generals of the Age: He granted the *Swedes* the Dutchies of *Bremen* and *Verden*, *Upper Pomerania*, and Part of the *Lower*, the Isle of *Rugen*, and the City of *Wismar*, which has a Vote in the Circles and Diets of the Empire, and 5000000 Crowns towards the Payment of their Army. It must be own'd, to the Honour of the *Swedes*, that they had frequently more advantageous Terms offer'd them, if they would have yielded to a separate Peace; which they refused, and would not lay down their Arms till they compos'd most of the Differences, which had till then divided

vided the Empire, reinstated many German Princes in their Territories, and settled both Peace and the Protestant Religion in Germany. If their Allies had not forsaken them at this Time, and that other States of Europe grew jealous of their Greatness, they might have laid under Contribution all the Countries from the *Baltick* to the Lake of *Constance*; for they had in Germany above 100 strong Places well garison'd. In 1654, Queen *Christina* surrender'd the Crown at *Upsal* to *Charles Gustavus*, her Nephew, on Condition that he should allow her an Yearly Pension, sufficient to support her Rank and Dignity. Then the Troops were disbanded at *Upsal*, to the great Grief of the People, because till then the like had not been seen or read of in their Histories. When the Queen had surrendered the Sovereignty to *Charles Gustavus*, she departed the Kingdom, publicly embrac'd Popery at *Innsbruck*, and passed most of her Time afterwards at *Rome*. *Charles* was Crown'd at *Upsal*, and obtain'd from the Diet, That the 4th Part of such Crown-Lands as had been given away since *Gustavus Adolphus's* Reign, should be reunited to the Crown. They likewise added something new, and made it unalienable. He settled his Military Affairs that were in Disorder since the Peace, and designed to make War upon *Poland*, because *Casimir*, their King, would not acknowledge his Title, and sent an Ambassador to Queen *Christina*, to persuade her to protest against the Resignation she had made, but in vain. The same Ambassador was also sent to the States of *Sweden* upon that Design, but with equal Success. Upon this *Charles* march'd into *Poland*, defeated those that oppos'd his Passage; and all the Forces of the Republick being dispers'd, the Waywodes and Castellans of *Poland* submitted, and swore Fealty to the Crown of *Sweden*. *Casimir*, after this, met him near *Cracow* with 10000 Men, who were defeated, 1000 of them slain, and all their Baggage taken: Upon which, *Cracow* surrendred; and *Casimir* being forced to fly into *Silesia*, did some Years after abdicate the Government; so that not only Great and Little *Poland*, but also the Provinces of *Masovia*, *Podolia*, *Red Russia*, and *Volhinia*, sent their Deputies to *Charles* at *Warsaw*, and, in the Name of their

Principals, submitted to him. Thus he conquer'd this Kingdom in 3 Months time, and *Dantzick* only held out against him. This amazing Progress alarmed most of the States of Europe, and afterwards the *Poles* revolted from him, because they fear'd a Change in Religion; and the Noblemen being jealous their Privileges should be abridged, in many Places they cut off the Swedish Garisons, especially in *Lithuania*. *Charles* having ended his Differences with the Elector of *Brandenburg* about *Prussia*, march'd back to *Warsaw*. In his Way he met *Czarniecki*, who commanded 12000 Men, whom he defeated, and took many Prisoners: And near *Warsaw* the Swedes also routed the *Poles* and *Tartars*, in a bloody Battle that lasted three Days, when many Thousands of 'em were kill'd and drown'd in a Morass. The Elector of *Brandenburg*, after this Victory, withdrew his Troops to *Prussia*, and was wavering. The Muscovites invaded *Carelia*, *Ingria*, and *Livonia*. In the latter, they took *Dunaburg* and *Kokenhusen*. They also laid Siege to *Riga*, but were forced to raise it. *Ragotzki*, Prince of *Transylvania*, with 30000 Men, joined King *Charles* near *Opotow* where they took the City of *Brassaw* in *Lithuania*. At this Time the *Danes* declared War against *Sweden*, being instigated by the Emperor, *Holland* and *Muscovy*. They demanded back all the Countries the Swedes had taken from them, and invaded the Dutchy of *Bremen*, which obliged King *Charles* to march directly to *Stetin*, and he advis'd *Ragotzki* to return to *Transylvania* in the mean time; but he refused it, and directing his Course to *Volhinia*, where he had neither Friends nor Places of Strength, the *Poles* and *Tartars* surpris'd him, and cut off most of his Army. After this the *Turks* declared War against him, and in a Battle with those Infidels he lost his Life. *Charles* recover'd in 14 Days time all the Places the *Danes* had taken in *Bremen*. He also invaded *Holstein*, where he carried all before him; and *Wrangel* took *Fredericks-Udde*; but the Swedes were worsted in *Holland*. At this Time the *Austrians* enter'd *Poland*, to drive the Swedes from thence, and took *Cracow*. The Polish General *Czarniecki* invaded *Pomerania*, and ravaged it cruelly. In 1658, *Charles* march'd over the Ice to the Island of *Fuinen*, or *Huen*, where he killed

killed 4400 Soldiers, and 1500 Boors, and from thence he went to other Islands, and at last into *Zeeland*, where he carried all before him. This distressed the King of *Denmark* to that degree, that he was obliged to clap up a Peace at *Roschild*, by which he resign'd to King *Charles* the Provinces of *Schonen*, *Holland*, and *Bleking*, with the Isles of *Huen*, *Falster*, *Bornholm*, and the Governments of *Babus* and *Drontheim* in *Norway*. *Charles* seeing this Peace with the *Danes* was not to be depended upon, and knowing his War with *Poland* was far enough from being ended, thought it most advisable to humble *Denmark* in the first place, as his weakest Enemy: Upon which he landed Forces in *Zeeland*, and besieged *Copenhagen*, while *Wrangel* reduc'd *Cronenburg*. The *Danes* in *Copenhagen* defended themselves bravely, till they were deliver'd by the Dutch Fleet, who after defeated the Swedish Navy, in which they lost their Admiral, and his Ship. They failed through the Fire of the Swedish Ships that lay before the Town, and reliev'd it; upon which the Siege was changed into a Blockade; and in the Island of *Huen*, the Swedish Infantry were cut off. At this Time *Charles* gave Orders to *Douglas*, one of his Generals, to make himself Master of *Mittaw*, and secure the Duke of *Cowland*'s Person, because he had broken the Neutrality; which *Douglas* performed, and brought the Duke Prisoner to *Riga*, from whence he was sent to *Ivanogorod*, where he continued till the End of the War. The King of *Sweden* was still Master of the Isles of *Langland*, *Huen*, *Falster*, and *Laland*; but the *English* and *Dutch* both declared against him, and threaten'd him if he would not make Peace with *Denmark*. After the Departure of the *English* Fleet, the Confederate *Dutch*, *Danes*, *Brandenburgers*, and *Poles*, transported their Troops into the Island of *Fuhnen*, or *Huen*, defeated the *Swedes* at *Nyborg*, and killed 4000 of their best Men. This Loss touched *Charles* in a sensible manner; and having assembled the States at *Gothenburg*, to consult about Affairs, he was taken with a Fever, and died in 1666, at a Time when he had 6 powerful Enemies combined against him.

Charles XI. was but 5 Years of Age when his Father died. The States were desirous of an honourable Peace, which was conclu-

ded at *Oliva* near *Dantzick*, with the Emperor, the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and the King of *Poland*, who resign'd his Pretensions to the Crown of *Sweden*, as the *Poles* did their Claim to *Livonia*. That same Month a Peace was concluded near *Copenhagen* with *Denmark*, upon the same Terms with that at *Roschild*; but that the *Danes* kept the Isle of *Bornholm*, and *Drontheim* in *Norway*. The *Swedes* however got *Bornholm*, in Consideration of an Equivalent in *Schonen*. The *Swedes* also concluded a Peace with the *Muscovites* about that Time; and in 1674, entred into the Triple Alliance with *England* and *Holland*, to preserve the *United Netherlands*. At length they broke this Alliance, and sided with *France* against the Elector of *Brandenburg*, to draw him from the Interests of the Empire; but the Elector routed the Swedish Army, and took all that the *Swedes* were possessed of in *Pomerania*. The *Lunenburgers* got the Dutchy of *Bremen* and *Verden* into their Possession, the King of *Denmark* took the City of *Wismar*, and also several considerable Places in *Schonen*; but the *Swedes* on the other side routed 5000 *Brandenburgers* in the Isle of *Usedom*; and *Koningsmark* defeated the Confederates in the Isle of *Rugen*, where he killed and took all their Men. The Swedish Fleet was about this Time shipwreck'd on the Isle of *Bornholm*, most of the Men were drown'd, and the rest stripp'd and imprison'd by the *Danes*, tho' they had Passports from the K. of *Denmark*. The *Danes* made an Inroad into *Schonen*, and took *Helsingburg* and *Christianstadt* by Storm; but the K. of *Sweden* marched against them, and entirely routed them. He also defeated them in another Battle at *Lunden*. Next Year the *Danes* were routed again at *Landskroon*, and *Christianstadt* surrender'd to *Charles*. By the Peace of *Nimeguen*, the *Swedes* were repossess'd of all the Countries they had in *Germany*, and all Places taken by the *Danes* were restor'd to them. The King of *Sweden* married *Ulrica Eleonora*, the King of *Denmark*'s Sister, in 1678.

After the Peace, he applied himself to repair the Damage his Dominions had sustain'd during the late War, to fortify his Garisons, which were in a bad Condition, and to re-establish his Authority in the Territories that were restor'd him at the Treaty

of *Nimeguen*. His Officers and chief Ministers about him, as Baron *Guildenshiern* and Baron *Flemming*, possessed him with an ill Opinion of the Faithfulness of the Senators. In 1680. the King called together the States, and proposed, That they should enquire into the great Losses during the last War, for they had lost above 40 Sail of good Ships, and above 100000 Men, and pass Sentence upon such as should be found guilty of Maladministration; so that the Odium of all this fell upon such as were in the Ministry during the King's Minority, and their Estates were confiscated to make Satisfaction. The States also voted, That the too great Power of the Senators contributed much to the former Miscarriages; and that they needed no such Mediators betwixt the King and them; therefore they absolv'd his Majesty from that Article of his Coronation-Oath, which obliged him to rule the Kingdom with the Advice of the Senators. They further declared, That the King might deny them their former Salaries, and only employ such of them as he pleased; and they were afterwards to be called the King's Senators, instead of the Senators of the Kingdom. To oblige the King yet more, they voted, That his Majesty, who had received his Crown only from God, was accountable to him alone for his Actions. They granted at the same time a very great Sum to the King, towards which every Servant was to pay the Tenth Part of their Wages, and each Farm Five Crowns, which was as much as the usual Rent of those Farms before that Time. Cities were to pay proportionably; and this was to last 4 Years. They established a new Court of Resumptions, to reunite all Crown-Lands formerly alienated, or sold at Under-Rates, and that the Proprietors should pay for the Loss the Crown had suffered from the Date of the Alienation. Thus those Lands were reunited, though greatly improved by the Owners. The same was done as to Noblemen's Possessions in *Livonia*. The Nobility were obliged to comply with all this, because many of them needed Court-Employments to support their Grandeur.

By those Methods the King got a vast Revenue; but it impoverished most Families in *Sweden*: For when the Crown ow'd Money to great Families, whose Lands

were to be reunited, they were left to state their Accounts in the Court of Liquidation; but what they owed the King was to be paid immediately.

At the Assembly of the Estates in 1683, a Sum was granted equal to the former, and they explained that Article of the Coronation Oath, whereby the King was obliged to Rule according to Law; and declared he was not thereby tied to the Laws then in Being, but might alter the same, and add what other Constitutions he thought fit. These and the like Concessions have made the King of *Sweden* as absolute as any in *Europe*. The Clergy, Burghers and Peasants, complied the more willingly with this Change, because they thought it would be the only Way to humble the Nobility, who were always Imperious and Tyrannical.

He resented the Affront put upon him by the *French*; in seizing the Dutchy of *Deux-Ponts*, and their entering into an Alliance with the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and therefore resolved to remain Neuter in the succeeding War. In 1696. he offer'd his Mediation to compose the Differences betwixt the contending Princes and States of *Europe*, which was accepted by the Confederates and *France* at the Treaty of *Ryswick*. He died April 17. 1697.

Upon the 16th of *November* following the States declared *Charles XII.* of Age, though but Fifteen Years old. In 1699. he sided with the Duke of *Holstein* against *Denmark*, with a Design to put a Stop to the late Alliance concluded betwixt *Muscovy*, *Poland*, and *Denmark*, against him. Upon this he ordered his Forces in *Pomerania* and *Bremen* to join those of *Lunenburgh*; and obliged the King of *Denmark* to rise from before *Tuenningen*. In 1700, the *English* and *Dutch* Fleet came into the *Sound*, declared against *Denmark*, joined the *Swedish* Fleet, and made a Descent on the Coasts of *Zeeland*. The King of *Sweden* landed 800 Foot; and a Storm having obliged the rest of the Transports to stand off to Sea for two Days, the *Danes* might easily have cut them all off; but at last the *Swedes* landed about 8000 more, who obliged the King of *Denmark* to put an End to those Differences, by the Treaty of *Truvendahl*; at which the Duke of *Holstein* obtained advantageous Conditions.

In the mean time, *Augustus* King of *Poland*, contrary to the Peace at *Oliva*, invaded *Livonia*, and besieged *Riga*; but afterwards quitted it. The Czar of *Muscovy* also invaded *Livonia*, without proclaiming War, and invested *Narva*. The Czar sent two Detachments, one of 5000, and another of 15000, to secure a Pass; but the King of *Sweden* routed those Detachments, and advanced directly to the Czar's Camp. The Dispute lasted 3 or 4 Hours, before the *Swedes* could enter the Enemy's Lines; many of the *Muscovites* were drowned by the breaking of a Bridge, and the rest laid down their Arms upon Quarter: So that about 30000 of them were killed and taken. The *Swedes* got all their Artillery and Baggage, with a considerable Sum of Money. This Victory encouraged the *Swedes* to attack the *Muscovites* in their fortified Camp, which the King enter'd Sword in Hand, and totally routed them, and about 30000 of them were said to be slain, with the Loss only of 3000 *Swedes*, who got all their Baggage, 70 Brass Cannon, 30 Mortars, and 164000 Rix-Dollars. The brave young Prince gain'd this remarkable Victory over his perfidious Enemies in the 17th Year of his Age; and thus *Narva* was relieved. After this he marched against the *Saxons*, made them abandon all their Conquests in *Livonia*, entered *Poland*, joined *Sapieha*, routed *Oginski*, drove King *Augustus* out of the Country, pursued him to *Saxony*, dethron'd him, and got *Stanislaus*, Palatin of *Posen*, elected in his room. The Particulars of this young Prince's War in *Poland* and *Muscovy* are of so late a Date, that 'tis needless further to insist upon them.

Of the AIR, SOIL, &c.

THE Air of *Sweden* is generally clear, dry, and cold, which contributes much to the Health and great Age of the Inhabitants, some of whom live 120, and others 130 Years; but ordinarily 'tis extream cold in Winter, which lasts 9 Months, and is immediately succeeded by the Summer; so that they have no Seasons like our Spring and Autumn.

Mr. *John Schefferus*, Professor of History and Antiquity in the University at *Upsal*,

writes, That the Frost pierces into the Earth two Swedish Ells; and what Moisture is found there, is white like Ice: That standing Water freezes 3 Ells deep, which kills the Fishes if the Ice be not broke; but where the Ice is thin, or the Bottom slimy, they die not so soon. When the Ice in great Lakes and Bays is broke either by the Force of the Water, or of the imprisoned Vapours, the Clefts reach the whole Length of such Lakes; and the Noise is as terrible as that of Peals of great Guns: The Air which comes in at those Clefts does for most part preserve the Fish in great Lakes. He observes, That a strong Brine made of Bay-Salt is never thoroughly frozen in those Parts: That they have Foxes and Hares, which about the Beginning of Winter are half white, and in the middle of it all white; and the Colour of the Squirrels is then of a mix'd white and grey, as we find it in *Philosoph. Transact. N. 19. P. 350*. The Frosts there come from the N. E. Winds, which blow from the Northerly Places of *Muscovy*, *Tartary*, and the Frozen Ocean near the Pole.

The Mathematicians of *Charles XI.* in their Travels through the Northerly Places of that Kingdom to *Torneo* in *Bothnia*, say, That though they delayed their setting out from *Upsal* till the 2d of May, O. S. they were detained in many Places by Snow and Mountains of Ice 20 Cubits high on both Sides of the Rivers; so that they had a Winter Journey in the End of May, and the Beginning of June.

The Heat of their Summer is almost as intolerable as the Cold of their Winter. It comes all of a sudden, and is so intense, that it sets Woods on fire, which spreads sometimes for many Leagues, and is scarce to be stop'd till it come at some Lake or very large Plain.

The Soil in the middle of the Country is indifferent fertile, and they have some fruitful Vallies; but the Mold is seldom above half a Foot deep; and where 'tis shallowest they have most Corn: And for this Reason the Ground is easily plough'd by one Ox. Their barren Land they enrich by Ashes of Trees, which they burn on the Place, and rake the Seed among the Ashes, which next Year, without further Pains, yields a plentiful Crop. This is an old Practice

Practice in this Country ; but the Danger of destroying all the Woods, has of late Years occasion'd some Laws to limit this Custom.

Were the Inhabitants industrious, they might have Corn enough of their own : but they are obliged to have much of it from *Livonia*, which is called the Granary of Sweden ; besides what they have from Parts of *Germany* near the *Baltick*. The poorer Sort in the Northern Places grind the Bark of Birch-Trees, which they mix with a little Corn, and make into Bread.

The Corn and other Fruits of the Earth ripen very soon here, as in other Northern Countries ; so that ordinarily they have but 6 Weeks between Seed-time and Harvest. The Reason seems to be, That the Oil and Sulphur which abound in their Soil, as appears by the Trees and Minerals produc'd there, being pent up all Winter by Frost and Snow, are all of a sudden actuated by the great Heat of the Sun, who scarce ever goes below their Horizon during those Weeks, which makes 'em amends for its short stay. Yet the Corn is liable to Danger from the Cold even in this Season ; for if there happen a Dew or a Frost while it ripens, it very much hurts the Grain, and sometimes destroys it, which is to be prevented no other way but by cutting it down immediately in that Case.

In Summer, the Fields are cover'd with Flowers, and they have Plenty of Currans, Strawberries, and Raspberries ; but Apricocks and other Wall-Fruit are very rare : Their Cherries are tolerably good ; but their Apples, Pears, and Plumbs, are scarce, and of no good Relish. They have abundance of Roots, which is a great Part of the Food of their Poor. In the Northerly Places, where the Ground is always cover'd with Snow and Ice, the People live by Hunting and Fishing.

Woods, Mountains, Heaths, Lakes, Mosses, and vast Forrests, cover a great Part of this Country. Oaks, Pines, Beech, Elder, Birch, and Fir, grow here in great Plenty ; and the Trees grow so close, that where they fall and rot, the Woods are scarce passable.

This Country abounds with Mines of Copper and Iron, and supplies most other Places with those Metals, because they are

better here than in other Countries. There are Silver Mines in *Salberg* in *Westmania*. *Finland* affords Pitch and Tar, and *Dahl* and *Wermeland* Masts, &c.

Of their BEASTS.

THE Cattle are of a small Size ; nor can the Breed be better'd by bringing in larger from other Places, for they soon degenerate, because in Summer the Grass is not very nourishing, and in Winter they are almost starv'd. Their Sheep bear a very coarse Wool. Their Horse, especially the *Finnish*, are small, but vigorous, strong, sure Footed, and swift.

Wild-Beasts are very plentiful, especially in the Northern Provinces, as Bears, Elks, Deer, and Hares, which are hunted for their Fleth ; but their Wolves, Foxes, Wild-Cats, and Ermins, for their Furs. They have no Rabbits, but what are brought in for Curiosity.

Of their FOWLS.

THEY have both Wild and Tame in great Plenty, and good of their kind, as *Orrus*, as big as a Hen ; *Kedlers*, as large as a Turkey. They have Partridges, and another Bird somewhat like them, called *Terpers*, Fieldfares, and Woodcocks. They have Plenty of small Birds, as Thrushes, Black-Birds ; and *Syden-Swans*, of the Size of a Fieldfare, but better Meat, and are supposed to come from *Lapland*. They have few Pigeons, because they are destroy'd by Hawks. They have many Eagles, Falcons, and other Birds of Prey.

The TRADE of Sweden,

IS in Copper, Iron, Steel, Pitch, Tar, Rosin, Masts, Planks, Oak, Deal-Boards, Wooden-Ware, and Furs, beside the Commodities exported from *Liesland*, which are valued at 700000 *l.* per Annum.

Tho' Sweden always had Materials of Trade, yet by the Idleness or Ignorance of the Inhabitants, Strangers had formerly all the Management of it. The Hans-Towns

on the *Baltick* engrossed all their Trade, till the *Dutch*, after their Revolt from *Spain*, got a Share of it. Before that Time, no Iron was made in *Sweden*, but the Oar was carried to *Dantzick*, and other Parts of *Prussia*, and there forged into Bars. Most of their Manufacturies are owing to some Mechanicks that were driven from the *Netherlands* by the Cruelty of the Duke of *Alva*. They erected Forges and other Conveniences for making of Iron Guns, Wire, and other Manufactures of Copper, Brass, &c. They know now how to take the Latens from the Copper, and make all sorts of Utensils of it.

In 1644, they obtained a Freedom from paying Customs to *Denmark*, when their Ships passed the *Sound*. In Time of War, the *English* used formerly to transport most of their Commodities; but in Peace, they transported them in their own Bottoms. The *Swedes* are not able to keep their Iron-Works a going without Credit from abroad. Hence it is, the *English* and other Foreigners pay them *per Advance* in Winter for the Iron they are to receive in Summer. If it were not for this, Foreigners could scarce live among them, for they envy the Thriving of Strangers, and treat them uncivilly. In 1687, an Act was made, That no Foreign Merchant should have Liberty of Trading in *Sweden* above two Months in a Year, except they would be Burghers; and now and then they put this in Execution. The third Part of the Goods and Estate of every Foreign Merchant that dies in *Sweden*, must be pay'd to the King, which hinders most of them from marrying and settling there; and sometimes the Government has demanded a 6th Part of the Estate Foreigners had got there, when they were going to leave that Country, and have arrested their Effects on that Account.

Their Trade of IMPORT.

From *Portugal* they import Salt, without great Quantities of which they cannot subsist. From *Scotland* they have store of Herrings, and had formerly Wool. From *France* they have strong Liquors, and *Pine-rice*, which supply their Vanity and Luxury, but occasion little or no Vent for their

own Commodities. From *England* they have Cloth, Stuffs, and other Woollen Manufacturies, that amounted sometimes to 50000 *l. per Annum*; Tobacco, *Newcastle* Coals, Pewter, Lead, Fruits, and Sugar, with other Commodities. Their Trade with *England* is very beneficial to them; for the *English* pay them but one Third, or at most one Half, in Goods, and the rest in Money. Of late they have set up Manufacturies of Cloth to supply their Army, and have clogg'd the Importation of coarse *English* Cloth with such excessive Duties, that it is almost equal to a Prohibition.

Of the MINES.

THE Silver Mine at *Salberg* is 145 Fathom deep. They have no Records so ancient as to give an Account of the first Discovery of this or the Copper-Mine there. The Oar seldom yields above 4 *per Cent*. The Yearly Revenue of it is about 20000 Crowns of fine Silver, of which the King has the Pre-emption, paying one Fourth less than the *Intrinsick* Value.

The Copper-Mine is 80 Fathom deep, and the Roof sometimes falls in. The Copper made here amounts Annually to 200000 *l.* the Fourth of which belongs to the King; and upon the Remainder, he has a Duty of 25 *per Cent*. when it is exported unwrought; so that the Proprietors have but small Profit.

Towards the Mountainous Parts, there are many Iron Mines and Forges, from whence they export Iron to the Value of 300000 *l. per Annum*. The great Woods and Forests supply those Forges with Charcoal, which is 6 times cheaper than in *England*; but not so good. Magnets are found in those Iron Mines; but the Mathematicians sent by *Charles XI.* to *Torneo*, say, The Loadstones they have from the Mines in *Lapland*; excel all they ever saw in attractive Force.

In *Nerick*, or *Nericia*, there is Plenty of Minerals of Vitriol, Allom, and Sulphur. *Westmania* abounds also with Mines.

Sir *Gilbert Talbot* says, There is a heavy Stone in *Sweden*, of a yellow Colour, intermix'd with Streaks of White, which makes it look as if 'twere compos'd of Gold and Silver.

Silver. It is found in firm Rocks, and runs in Veins, upon which they lay Wood, and set it on Fire. When the Stone is thus heated, they cast Water upon it to make it rend, and then dig it up, break it into smaller Pieces, and put it into an Iron Pot, the Mouth of which they put into another, and put both into an Oven, where the Stone being melted, runs into the lower Pot. The first running of this Stone is Sulphur. What remains of the Stone, is carried out, and exposed upon a high Hill to the Sun and Air for two Years, when it takes Fire of it self, and sends forth a thin blue Flame, scarce discernable in the Day-time. This being consum'd, there remains a blue Dust behind, which the Workmen put into great Tubs of Water, where it infuses 24 Hours, or longer; then they boil the Water in Kettles, as we do Salt-petre, and put it into cooling Tubs, where they place Cross-Sticks; upon which the Vitriol fastens like Sugar-Candy.

The Water that remains after the Extraction of the Vitriol, they mix with an 8th Part of Urine and the Lees of Wood-Alhes, which is again boil'd very strong, and being set to cool in Tubs, with Cross-Sticks in them, the Allom hangs upon 'em.

In the remaining Water after the Allom is extracted, there's a Sediment, which being separated from the Water, is put into an Oven, where Wood is burnt upon it till it become Red, from whence comes *Minium*, or Red-Lead. *Philosoph. Transact.* N. 21. P. 375.

Of the Inhabitants, their Dispositions, Manners, Customs, &c.

THAT Sweden was formerly very populous, is evident from the ancient Expeditions of the *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Normans*, and other People, who from *Scandinavia* over-ran most Countries of *Europe*, and erected Kingdoms in *France*, *Italy*, *Spain*, and other Places. The Polygamy then in use among those Pagans is commonly thought to have been one Cause why *Sweden*, *Norway* and *Denmark*, were thus over-stock'd with People.

The Nature of the Climate, which occasions a very healthful, dry and sharp Air, makes the Natives of a strong and vigorous

Constitution; which being confirmed by a hardy Education, coarse Fare, and indifferent Lodgings, qualifies them for all the Fatigues and Hardships of War. *Puffendorf* gives this Character of his Countrymen in general: That they are very grave and reserved, which if not qualified by Conversation with other Nations, often degenerates into Mistrustfulness. They over-value themselves, and despise others. They have Capacity sufficient to learn the Principles of Arts and Sciences, but commonly want Patience to attain to the Perfection of any; for many of them imagine themselves to be Masters, before they have got half way. They have but very little Inclination, and a less Esteem, for Mechanick Trades. They are but meanly qualified for such Manufactures as require Industry and Ingenuity; are observ'd to be invidious, and never love to see Strangers, nor one another, thrive. They are well vers'd in Dissimulation, have a great Inclination to make a Figure, and live beyond their Income, which ruins their Families.

Other Authors give this further Account of them; That the Peasants are very obedient and respectful to their Superiors; That most of them are very poor, and are taught by Necessity to make, after a rude Fashion, Shoes, Clothes, Instruments for Husbandry, and other Necessaries that they are not able to purchase: And to keep them to this Frugality, not above one Taylor or other Mechanick is allow'd to dwell in a Parish, tho' some of them are above 20 Miles in Extent. They are generally well made, handsome and strong, and Lovers of good Cheer, especially at other People's Charge. Their History already quoted, shews that they are not inferior to any Nation in *Europe* for Valour. The Peasants wear Clothes of Sheep-Skins in Winter, and their other Raiment is generally of coarse Cloth.

Their Houses are for most part of Wood, but low, because they are less obnoxious to Storms and Winds, very frequent in those Parts. The Houses of the Gentry are of Stone or Brick, and all of them make use of Stoves in the Winter.

Their Women are fair and handsome, and value themselves for being more witty and polite than other Women of the North.

Of their NOBILITY.

BEfore *Erick XIV.* there was no Hereditary or Feudal Titles of Honour, as Dukes, Counts, Barons, &c. the Titles then were only *Officiary*; so that *Charles VII.* and *Erick X.* though the Sons of Kings, had no other Title but that of *Juncker*, which signifies a young Nobleman; but when any Person signalized himself by his Bravery, the Government gave him some publick Post. *Selden*, in his Titles of Honour, Pag. 458. says, in the old Laws of *Sweden* there's no mention of any Secular Dignity that was not merely *Officiary*, besides *Miles* and *Militaris*, the first signifying a Knight, and the second a Gentleman.

In this Kingdom there are several noble Families, most of which signalized themselves in the long *German Wars*. The Original of their Hereditary Titles was in 1561. when *Erick XIV.* gave *Peter Brahe*, *Suanto Sture*, and *Gustavus Rose*, the Title of Earls, and at the same Time gave the Title of Barons to Two of the Family of *Steinbocks*, Two of the *Guldenstierns*, and to the Families of *Lewenhaupt*, *Gripp*, *Flemming*, and *Horn*. It is customary in *Sweden* to call the Sons of their Nobles by Three Names, the first his own Christian Name, the second that of his Father in the Genitive Case, and the third the Surname of his Family; for Instance, *Gustavus Suantonis Bannier*, i. e. *Gustavus* the Son of *Suanto*, *Bannier* being the Name of the Family.

The chief Families are those of *Aschenberg*, *Bannier*, *Bielks*, *Brahe*, *Axel*, *Horn*, *Coringmark*, *Lewenhaupt*, *Oxenstiern*, and *Steinbock*.

The making of Knights in *Sweden* was formerly performed with greater Ceremony and Solemnity than merely by the Stroke of a Sword. The Belt, Sword and Shield, were given them, together with Fiefs, and the Oath they swore obliged them to defend Christianity, their King, and Country; and to protect Orphans, Virgins, Widows, and the Poor, &c. Their Order of Knighthood is that of the *Sword*. The Nobility and Gentry are brave, and of a Warlike Temper, Civil, and of a stately Deportment, but over-value themselves, love Parade, are

magnificent in their Equipage, are loyal to their Prince, much enclined to travel, and more expensive in their Buildings, Apparel, and Number of Servants, than in Housekeeping. Though they endure the Fatigue of War patiently, yet they are not reputed to know much of Stratagem. When employed in State Affairs, they give great Application; but their Abilities come more from Experience, than from Study or Greatness of Genius.

They never allow their Children to study Law, Physick, or to learn any Trade, because they think it wouldully their great Birth, and this occasions their Trade to make so little Progress. Though to gain Experience in War, they submit to the lowest Offices abroad, yet at home there is but one Instance known of a Gentleman who accepted the Command of a Merchant-Ship. They imitate the *French* in the Fashion of their Clothes.

Of their RELIGION.

THE Historians of this Country say, The Rites and Ceremonies of Paganism were introduced by their famous *Woden*, who mix'd Witchcraft and Magick with it, as was hinted before. They had a Temple at *Upsal* lin'd with Gold, and 3 Idols in it; that in the middle was call'd *Thor*, from whence our *Thursday*: He presided over the Air and Storms. *Voda*, or *Woden*, was their *Mars*, from whence our *Wednesday*. *Fricco*, or *Friga*, was their *Venus*, from whence our *Friday*. Every Ninth Year they had a publick Sacrifice at *Upsal*, where all were obliged to be present. They offer'd Nine Heads of each Sort of Male Beast they could catch, and hang'd their Bodies on Trees. We meet also with some Footsteps of humane Sacrifice in their History. *Pomponius Mela* says, the *Getae* were remarkable for their Belief of a future State: That they weep'd at the Birth of a Child, and rejoyc'd at the Death of their Friends: That the Wives frequently kill'd themselves, to accompany their Husbands to the other World: And Polygamy being in Use among them, the Wives contended who should have that Honour, which was given to her that was found to be of the greatest Virtue.

Virtue. There are many Inscriptions on Rocks in Runick Characters still to be seen in Sweden, which prove that the Immortality of the Soul was an Article of Faith among the Pagan Goths.

Christianity was first preach'd in Sweden, by Order of *Charles the Great*, about the Year 800, after he had prevailed with the Pagan Saxons to turn Christians. He sent one *Herbertus* into Sweden, but with small Success. After his Death, his Son *Ludovicus Pius*, in 814, sent *Angarius*, a Monk of *Corbej*, and afterwards Archbishop of *Bremen*; but Christianity made no considerable Advancement till the Reign of *Olauus Skotkonung*, about 980, who sent Ambassadors to *Eldred*, a Saxon King in *England*, to desire Preachers from him: Upon which *Eldred* is said to have sent *Sigisfrid* Archbishop of *York*, who willingly left his Archbishoprick, and became the Apostle of the Goths. The Swedish Historians blame him for persuading this begottd easie Prince to subject his Kingdom to the See of *Rome*, and pay it an yearly Tribute. *Olauus's* Successors protested against this, which embroil'd them with the Court of *Rome*.

About 1150. *S. Erick* King of Sweden march'd into *Finland* with an Army, carried with him *St. Henry*, an English Bishop, and obliged a great Number of the *Finns* to profess Christianity; but at last this Bishop was murdered by the Infidels, and was buried at *Abo*, the chief City of that Country.

After Christianity was settled in Sweden, the Bishops minded their own Riches and Grandeur more than the Care of Souls; so that the Archbishops of *Upsal* frequently made a greater Figure than their King, and deposed them by their Interest and Power. The Clergy then possessed above half the Kingdom, were Temporal Lords in their Diocesess, and by Legacies, Mortifications, and other pious Frauds, annexed great Possessions to their Domains. At every new Election they had their Privileges encreased, for then Princes were obliged to comply with their Demands, because of the great Power they had in the Kingdom. Thus by Degrees they became almost independent on the Crown; so that they fortified their Castles, garison'd their Towns, kept Troops in Pay, and frequently made War upon those that disobliged them or their Vassals.

In 1395. when *Margaret* had united the Three Crowns, she foresaw that the only Way to entail Slavery upon the Swedes was to gain the Clergy, and bring them to a Dependence on *Denmark*; and for that End enlarged their Privileges, gave more Lands to the Church, and made them sensible, that they could not make such a Figure if the Kingdoms were disunited, since the Archbishop of *Upsal* was always to be Administrator of Sweden. This engaged them in an Interest contrary to that of their Country, and to join with the *Danes*, who oppressed it.

Thus in 1515. thô Archbishop *Trolle* ow'd his Advancement to the Administrator *Steno*; yet he would not acknowledge him, but corresponded with the *Danes*, and persuaded them to invade his Native Country; for which the States of Sweden cited *Trolle* to appear before them; but he refused, and retired to his strong Castle of *Steeka*, which his Predecessors had made impregnable. Upon this he was declared a Traitor, deposed from his Dignity, besieged in his Castle, and obliged to surrender: After which the Castle was demolished, because it had been a Receptacle to the *Danes*, and a skulking Place for Rebels, who were protected there by the Archbishops.

When the Pope was informed of the Proceedings of the States against the Archbishop, he excommunicated the Administrator, and the Senate fin'd him in 5000000 Ducats, to be paid to the Archbishop, put the Kingdom under an Interdict, and left the Execution of this Sentence to *Christian* King of *Denmark*, the sworn Enemy of the Swedes. The King of *Denmark*, glad to have any colourable Pretence against the Swedes, marched into Sweden, and besieged *Stockholm*; but was obliged to rise from before it, as has been hinted before; and his Fleet being becalm'd, it occasion'd a great Famine among his Men, which obliged him to propose a Peace, and to desire an Interview with the Administrator; and that *Gustavus Erickson* might be deliver'd for an Hostage: To which *Steno* consented. But as soon as *Gustavus* went on board, he was made Prisoner, contrary to the publick Faith, and Law of Nations, and carried to the Castle of *Calo* in *Jutland*.

The

The Administrator was unluckily killed afterwards in an Engagement with the *Danes*; upon which his Army was routed and dispersed, and all the Kingdom submitted to them except *Calmar* and *Stockholm*. The Archbishop forbade Christian Burial to those who took Arms against the *Danes*, and Christian return'd to Sweden, was Crown'd there, and committed the Massacres and Barbarities formerly mention'd.

Gustavus Erickson making his Escape from Prison, came to *Lubeck*, in order to engage that City in the Swedish Quarrel; but failing, he sail'd to Sweden, and in Disguise travelled through the most Desert Mountains and Forests, till at length he came to *Dalecarlia*, where he was forc'd to work in the Copper-Mines for Subsistence; but being discovered, went to another Place, and meeting with a Curate, who befriended him; by his Advice, he went to a Fair, which was the Yearly Rendezvous of the *Dalecarlians*, and perswaded them to take Arms. They were successful in their first Enterprize, which encouraged more of the Swedes to join him; so that at length he drove the *Danes* out of the Country, and established the Government.

About this Time Lutheranism began to enter Sweden, by means of two Brothers, *Lourentius* and *Olaus Petri*, of the Province of *Nerike*. They study'd at *Wittenberg* under *Martin Luther*, return'd to Sweden, and publicly preach'd against Popery. They represented, how inconsistent the Pride, Riches, Ambition, Cruelty, and other Vices of the Swedish Clergy, were with the Designs of Christianity. They shew'd, That the Clergy had been the Cause of all the Civil Wars; That without their Assistance, the *Danes* had never been able to compass their Designs. They expos'd the Covetousness of the Court of Rome, and how that the Legate *Arcambold*, by his Indulgences, laid the whole Kingdom under Contribution. *Olaus* went to *Upsal*, affix'd Theses there, and had publick Conferences with the Popish Clergy; the Issue of which gain'd him a great many Profelites among the Professors and Students of the University, and the great Families of the Kingdom; for he demonstrated plainly how Popery had viciated Christianity.

Gustavus lov'd those Principles, but thought not fit to declare for them till his Affairs were better establish'd. The Chancellor *Larz And:son* had demonstrated to him the Reasonableness of the Protestant Religion, and the Corruptions and Innoations of the Romish Church. Under the Chancellor's Protection, *Olaus* and other Lutheran Ministers had Liberty to preach the Gospel in Sweden; and the Popish Clergy being much inferior to them in Learning, they were baffled in all Disputes.

Gustavus delay'd his Coronation, because the Oath at that Time oblig'd the King to maintain the Establish'd Religion and Clergy in all their Privileges and Pretensions. His Scheme was gradually to humble the Clergy; in order to which, he first abolished the Impositions the Clergy levied for Dispensations to eat Flesh on prohibited Days; their meddling in Divorces, and other Processes about Marriage; then he disarm'd them of their Spiritual Artillery of Excommunication. He forbade them to annex to the Church the Estates of Ecclesiasticks, to the Prejudice of their Heirs; and discharg'd them to confiscate the Goods of any Subject. After this he made an Enquiry into the Rights of Monasteries, and reunited many of the Lands possess'd by Churchmen to the Crown. About this Time *Olaus* publish'd a Swedish Translation of the New Testament, against which all the Clergy remonstrated. *Olaus* confuted the Errors of Popery in a publick Conference before the King and Senate, in which the Bishops were worsted; and *Olaus* insisting upon the Authority of the Scripture in this Debate, the only Subterfuge the Papists had, was to alledge that his Translation of the Scripture was false. Upon this *Gustavus* desired the Bishops to make another, because few of the Clergy understood Latin; and *Olaus* printed the Conference, which brought over many to his Party.

Gustavus after this called together the Estates, and represented the bad Condition of the Kingdom by the long Wars, the Lowness of the Revenues of the Crown, and the Greatness of the Publick Debts, especially that they ow'd to *Lubeck*, who, for Security of their Money, had the Mo-

monopoly of their Trade, which would end in the Ruine of their Country; adding, That the other Subjects were not able to pay any suitable Taxes towards the clearing these Debts, while the Clergy were possess'd of all the Riches of the Kingdom. He shew'd further, what Share they had in bringing on these Troubles that had ruin'd the Country; and that it was reasonable they should contribute towards the paying of the Debts, since they made a bad Use of their Riches, to support their Pride and Ambition, and to enable them to embroil the Nation. He told them further, That he was willing to quit the Government, if they would reimburse the Expences he had been at in this War for the Honour and Independency of the Country. The Clergy, headed by *Tureiohanfon*, oppos'd his Proposals, and accus'd *Gustavus* of Heresy, who being enrag'd at it, accus'd them of Ingratitude, considering his great Undertakings to recover the Country from *Danish* Tyranny, and went out of the Assembly. The Chancellor represented to the States the bad Consequences of their Conduct, in which he was seconded by the Bishop of *Stregnez*, which prevailed on the States to make an Act, That the Bishops should surrender their Castles and Places of Strength into the Hands of the King's Officers; and that all Lands which had been alienated and granted to the Clergy, should be re-united to the Crown; That the Nobility might recover their Lands that were mortgaged to the Clergy, upon Payment of the Money; That the Clergy should pay Two Thirds of their Tythes to maintain the War against *Christian* of *Denmark*, and found Publick Schools and Hospitals; That the Clergy should be punish'd if they excommunicated any Man upon a civil Account; And that Men of good Lives and Learning should be preferr'd to Charges in the Church. This Act was sign'd by all the Senators, and *Gustavus*, who went with some Troops of Horse to put it in Execution, and carried along with him *Olaus Petri*, and many other Lutheran Doctors of Divinity. This Expedition of *Gustavus* completed the Ruine of Popery; so that most of the Inferior Clergy profess'd the Protestant Religion, some of the Bishops left

the Kingdom, and others complied with this new Regulation.

The Bishop of *Scara* join'd the Malecontents, and engag'd *Tureiohanfon* in their Party. They marched to *Dalescarlia*, where the Inhabitants, who were little better than Savages, declared against any Change in Religion; but *Gustavus* surpris'd them, and oblig'd them to lay down their Arms; and when *Gustavus* found most Part of the *Swedes* had chang'd their Religion, he declared himself a Protestant, and conven'd an Assembly of the Clergy at *Orrebro*, the chief City of *Nericke*, in 1529, who renounc'd their Dependence on the Pope, abolish'd Popery, and sign'd the *Augsburg* Confession.

The Archbishops and Bishops of this Kingdom retain now little more than the Name, and a bare Shew of Superiority over other Superintendants; for the Reformation depriv'd them of their former Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction. They have moderate Stipends; the Archbishop of *Upsal* has only 400 *l. per Annum*, and the rest of the Bishops proportionably. They have 10 Bishops, who are confined to their own Employments, are never call'd to Council, but come to the Assembly of the States: Neither are they troubled with the Administration of any Secular Affairs. Under the Bishops, there are 7 or 8 Superintendants, who differ only from the Bishops in Name. Each 10 Churches has a Rural Dean over them. The Number of Churches in *Sweden* and *Finland* amount to 2000. The Clergy have One Third of the Tythes: The other Two Thirds are annex'd to the Crown. The King is Patron of most Churches, and has the Nomination of the Archbishop. Their Churches are generally neat, and adorn'd with Sculpture, Painting and Gilding. Their Altar-Cloths, Copes, and other Vestments, are rich.

Of their MARRIAGES and BURIALS.

MATCHES are made here by the Will of Parents, and entirely for Interest. This Country is not much troubled with the Extravagancies of Lovers: None can marry

h
175





marry without Publication of the Banns. Persons of Quality don't marry till they are 30 Years of Age, or above, because they are not able to live suitably to their Birth till the Death of their Relations, or that Advancement to Offices afford them the Means of Subsistence.

The Women are generally fair, and well shap'd, and are said to be more chaste before Marriage than after. They are prolific, but great Drudges, the meaner Sort being put to Plough, Thrash, row in Boats, and bear Burthens: Yet Conjugal Broils are not frequent here, because the Wives never dispute their Husbands Authority. Divorces seldom happen in this Country. Cousin-Germans may not marry without the King's Consent, which is more frequently granted than refused.

They affect Pomp and Superfluity beyond their Abilities at their Weddings; so that many times, by the Excess of one Day, they involve themselves in Debt for many Years after.

Their Funerals have more of Jollity and Feasting, than suits the Occasion; and that they may have more Time for their Preparations, they transport their Dead to Vaults near the Church, where they remain unburied some Months, and frequently several Years: But of late, this and other unnecessary Expences begin by degrees to be laid aside, partly to conform with the Frugality of the Court, and partly because they are not so rich as formerly.

Of their LEARNING.

POLITE Learning can plead no great Antiquity in this Country; for the University of *Upsal* was not founded till 1476, when *Sixtus Quartus* gave it all the Privileges of that of *Bononia*. Among the ancient Western *Goths*, the *Runick* Poetry seems to have been as old as their Letters; and their Laws, their Precepts of Wisdom, their Records, Religious Rites, Charms and Incantations, were all in Verse or Rhimes, so called from the *Gothick* Word *Runes*, signifying the Verses which were invented or introduced by *Oden*; and because all their Writings for many Ages were in Verse, it came to be the common Name of all sorts

of Poetry among the *Goths*; and the Composers of them were called *Runers*, or *Rhimers*, and also *Vuises*, or *Wises*, because their best Performances in what Learning was among them were in Verse. The *Goths* had above 100 several sorts of those *Runes*, some in longer, some in shorter Lines, some equal, others unequal; with different Cadences and Quantities; some were fram'd with a Consonancy of Syllables, which made a sort of Gingle that pleas'd the People; and because their Language was compos'd for most part of Monosyllables, 'twas easy to make many of them end in the same Sound. Another sort of *Runes* were made so as two Lines, or the second of each four, should end with Words of the same Sound; which being easie, and needing less Spirit, because the Chime in the Sound supplied the Want of that, this in Time became general among all the *Gothick* Colonies in *Europe*, and made Rhimes or *Runes* pass for good Poetry: But because they did really want the true Spirit of it, to supply this Defect, their Bards possessed the People with a Belief, That Charms and other great Wonders were perform'd by the Force of their *Runick* Verses. Hence it came to pass, That this sort of Poems came to be decry'd, and the ancient Characters in which they were written to be abolished, first by the Zeal of the Bishops, and then by Orders of the State, which proved an unrecoverable Loss to the History of those Northern Kingdoms. Most are of Opinion, That this happened in the Time of *Olau Skothomung*, upon the Desire of Pope *Silvester II.* and *Wormius* says, They were also forbid by the Council of *Toledo*, because the Christians of those Times thought Paganism could not be abolished without such a Prohibition; as *Sir William Temple* informs us in his *Essay upon Poetry*.

The most curious Piece of Learning in this Country is a *Gothick* Translation of the Evangelists, of 12 or 1300 Years standing, by *Uphila*, a Bishop of the *Goths* in *Thrace*.

Gustavus Adolphus was a great Patron of Learning, and endow'd the Universities with tolerable Salaries for Professors in most Sciences. His Daughter *Christina* augmented them, and invited many Learned Men to Sweden, as *Grotius*, *Cartesius*, &c.

The *Swedes* are more given to transcribe, collect, and translate, than to write Original Pieces. The Clergy are but indifferent for Learning, and little acquainted with Ecclesiastick Antiquities, or the Controversies of Religion, because they have no Adversaries to oppose. The Country People have Kalendars on their Clubs, in *Runic* Characters, which show them the Seasons of the Year, the Full Moon and Change, Leap-Year, the Golden Number, and Dominical Letter.

The Chancellor of the University of Antiquities at *Upsal* is always a Minister of State, and the Archbishop is Vice-Chancellor. Here they profess the Northern Antiquities; and pretend to clear the Obscurities of *Gothick* Antiquity. The best Performances of the *Swedes* are in this sort of Learning; a Specimen of which may be seen in what *Olans*, *Varelius*, *Loccenius*, *Schifferus*, and *Rudbeck*, have published. There is another University for the Study of Antiquity at *Stockholm*; and there's one also at *Abo* in *Finland*; which has fewer Professors and Students.

There was a 4th at *Lunden* in *Schonen*; which during the Wars with *Denmark* was prohibited, because its Neighbourhood to that Kingdom was supposed to create in the Students an Affection for that Crown, to which that Province formerly belong'd; but now it is restor'd. The *Swedes* use the Old or *Julian* Style in all their Letters and Affairs.

Of their LANGUAGE.

It is a Dialect of the *Teutonic*, but rougher, and less capable of Improvement than either the *Danish* or *High-Dutch*. Hence it is, That the *Swedes* seldom write any thing in their own Language. The Gentry and Citizens speak *High-Dutch* and *French* to Perfection. The College of Antiquaries at *Upsal* have publish'd a new Edition of the *Codex Argenteus* with the modern *Swedish*, to demonstrate that their Language is a Dialect of the ancient *Gothick*.

The *Finlanders* have a sort of Gibberish of their own, altogether different from the *Swedish*. They send their Children when young to learn Foreign Languages, before

they learn their own; for a *Finlander*, if he pass 14 Years of Age, is utterly incapable of speaking or learning any other Tongue but his own. They don't use the Letter *F*, and have no Word that begins with *B*, *D*, *G*, or a double Consonant.

Of their GOVERNMENT.

THE Power of their ancient Kings was much limited; they could do nothing that concern'd the Government of the Kingdom without the Consent of the States; for the *Swedes* were jealous of their Liberties. In former Times, they had a Magistrate call'd *Drotzer*, design'd as a Curb to their Sovereign, who had a Power by their Constitution to reprove their King, when he acted contrary to the Laws of the Land, and to put him in mind of his Duty; but now the King of *Sweden* is Absolute, as we have heard before.

His TITLES are,

King of *Sweden*, of the *Goths* and *Vandals*, Great Prince of *Finland*, Duke of *Schonen*, *Esthen*, *Liesland*, *Carelia*, *Ingria*, *Bremen*, *Verden*, *Stetin*, *Pomeran*, *Cassuben*, and *Sclavonia*, Prince of *Rugen*, Lord of *Ingermanland* and *Wismar*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, Duke of *Bavaria*, *Cleves* and *Bergen*, &c.

The present King is of the Family of *Deux-Ponts* in *Germany*, a Branch of the *Palatine* Family, which came to the Crown in the Person of *Charles Gustavus*, who was Son to a Sister of *Gustavus Adolphus*.

His REVENUES.

THE Revenues of the Crown consist'd formerly in some Lands of a small Extent near *Upsal*, and in a Tribute, which the Peasants paid by Poll. In the Reign of *Magnus Ladassas*, the Senate annex'd to the Crown the Mines of Copper, made him Proprietor of the Lakes *Meler*, *Vener*, and *Peter*, with a Right to fish on the Coasts of the *Baltick*; and they order'd, That those who had Fiefs from the Crown, or Licence to hunt or feed their Cattle in the King's Forests, should pay a certain Rent to the Crown.

Crown. In those Days, few were punish'd by Death for Murther, or other Crimes, but the Criminals were fin'd in certain Sums, payable to the King, which was then a considerable Branch of the Revenue.

Gustavus Erickson reunit'd 30000 Estates that had been alienated from the Crown, and possess'd by the Clergy. *Charles XI.* resumed all the Lands that the Nobles had purchas'd from the Crown; and some say, That the Revenues in 1578 amounted to 700000 Dollars.

The present Revenues are from the Crown-Lands, the Customs, Poll-Money, Tythes, Copper and Silver Mines, Law-Suits, &c. Each Peasant above 16, and under 60 Years of Age, pays Twelve-pence *per Annum*; and such of them as plough a certain quantity of Ground, must pay Annually one Shirt, one Lamb-Skin Coat, one Pair of Mittens, one Pair of Woollen Stockings, and one Pair of Shoes, towards the Maintenance of the Soldiers. In short, the whole Revenue is reckon'd to be near 1000000 of Pounds Sterling *per Annum*.

Of the STATES of the Kingdom.

THEY have nothing left them now of their ancient Power; the End of their Meeting is only to ratify the King's Proposals. The Nobility and Gentry are represented by one of each Family, of which there are about 1000. The Colonels, Lieutenant-Colonels, the Majors, and a Captain of each Regiment, sit and vote in this Meeting.

The Bishops and Superintendents are Members of this Diet: The Body of the Clergy send about 200 to represent them; 150 are sent from the Boroughs, and 250 from the Peasants.

Of their MILITARY AFFAIRS.

THE Scots first introduced Military Discipline into this Country: Their Armies consist'd formerly of Peasants, who were remarkable only for their Courage and Numbers. The Feudal Laws first made in this Country oblig'd the Gentry, who held their Estates by Knights Service, to

bring a certain Number of Horse to the Army. The last King made great Regulations in his Military Affairs, and settl'd the Number of Horsemen that the Nobles and Gentry are to provide, and order'd each Farm of 60 *l. per Annum* to maintain one Foot-Soldier, who, if he marry, has a House built at the Charge of the Peasants, who also must furnish him with Hay, to keep a Cow in Winter, and Pasture in Summer, and plough, sow, and reap for him; and when this Soldier dies, they must provide one in his room.

The Officers of Horse and Foot are maintain'd by the King, who appoints Lands for that End; so that every Officer has a House and Lands, and the Rent of as many Farms as make up his Pay.

Of the ARMS of the Kingdom.

THE King of Sweden bears for that Country Quarterly; in the 1st and 2d and 4th *Azure*, 3 Crowns Or, two in Chief, and one in Base. For Finland; in the 2d and 3d *Barry-Argent and Azure*, a Lion Or, Crown'd *Gules*. For the Palatinate of the Rhine; over all Quarterly, in the 1st and 4th *Sables*, a Lion Or, Crown'd, Arm'd, and Langued, *Gules*. For *Bavaria*; in the 2d and 3d *Lozenges bend-wise*, of 21 Pieces, *Argent and Azure*. For the Crest, they have a Crown Royal, adorn'd with 8 Flowers, and clos'd by as many Demi-Circles, terminating in a *Monde Or*. The Supporters are two Lions Or, Crown'd of the same; and the Motto is, *Dominus Protektor meus*; i. e. The Lord is my Protector.

Of the LAKES, RIVERS, BAYS, &c.

THE chief Lakes are, 1. The *Veter*, in *Gothland*. The Natives say, it is remarkable for a Noise like Thunder, in that Quarter from whence a Storm is to happen the Day after, and for the sudden thawing of its Ice, so that it sometimes surprises Travellers, and in half an Hour becomes navigable. In some Places it is above 300 Fathom deep. 2. *Mälär*, in *Upland*, which falls into the Sea at *Stockholm*, and furnishes

one Half of that City with fresh Water. 3. The *Vener*, in *Weg-Gothland*, said to be 130 English Miles in Length, and 40 in Breadth. Twenty four Rivers from the Mountains of *Norway* fall into it. The *River Elve*, or, as some call it, *Trolbetta*, has its Source from hence, and falls over a Rock 60 Foot high, near *Gothenburg*, with such a Noise, that 'tis heard at the distance of 200 Furlongs. 4. *Huelmer*, in *Nericke*. 5. *Silian*, in *Dalecarlia*. 6. *Aava*. 7. *Lulatrek*. 8. *Enaratresk*, in *Lapland*. 9. *Ulatresk*, in *Cajania*. 10. *Pejenda*, in *Tawaasia*. There are many other Lakes; but these are the most remarkable, and are all stor'd with variety of Fish; as Salmon, Pikes, Perch, Tench, Trouts, Eels, and many other Sorts, unknown elsewhere, particularly a Fish call'd a Streamling, less than a Pilchard, which are taken in great quantities, salted in Barrels, and sent over all the Country. In the Lakes of *Finland*, they have vast quantities of Pikes, which, when salted and dried, are sold at cheap Rates.

From those Lakes most of the Rivers in this Country rise, but none of them are Navigable; the chief are, 1. The *Dalecarl*, which rises in the *Dofrine* Mountains, runs thro' *Dalecarlia*, and divides the Provinces of *Gestrucia* from *Upland*, and falls into the Gulph of *Bothnia*. 2. *Saga*, which divides *Upland* from *Westmania*. 3. *Angerman*, which waters *Angermania*, and falls into the Gulph of *Bothnia*, most of them are noted for Plenty of Salmon. Other Rivers of lesser Note are, *Ula*, *Tidalda*, *Nor*, *Eda*, *Usk*, *Nissa*, *Laga*, *Helga*, *Marbon*, *Aam*, *Cumoulf*, *Holff*, *Ulaeff*, *Perventz*, *Nieva*.

In the Lakes and on the Sea-Coasts they have vast numbers of small Islands, of which above 6000 are inhabited, and the rest are either bare Rocks, or cover'd with Wood.

Their chief Bays or Gulphs are, the Gulph of *Bothnia*, which separates *Sweden* from *Finland*, and reaches from Lat. 60 to 66. It abounds with Seals, which yield a considerable quantity of Train-Oil. The Gulph of *Finland* separates *Finland* from *Livonia* and *Ingria*: It runs from West to East, from Longitude 45 to 55, and the Gulph of *Riga* lies on the West of *Livonia*.

Of the Division of SWEDEN.

SWEDEN is divided into 8 Parts, viz. *Sweden-Propor*, *Gothland*, *Schonen*, the Government of *Bahus*, the *Nordelles* or *Northlands*, *Finland*, *Ingria*, and *Swedish-Livonia*.

I. SWEDEN PROPER,

IS Fruitful in Corn, and lies betwixt the *Nordelles* to the North, *Ostrogothland* to the South, the *Baltick* to the East, and the Governments of *Bahus*, *Aggerhus* and *Drontheim*, to the West; and is subdivided into 5 Provinces, viz. *Upland*, *Sudermania*, *Nericia* or *Nericke*, *Westmania*, and *Dalecarlia*.

U P L A N D,

HAS *Gestrucia* on the North, *Sudermania* on the South, the *Baltick* on the East, *Westmania* and *Nericia* on the West. The chief City is *Stockholm*, in Latitude 59 Deg. and 40 Min. according to the Observations of the King of *Sweden's* Mathematicians. Most Maps make *Dantzick* one half of a Degree more Eastward than *Stockholm*; and by the Observations of *Hevelius* and *Mr. Flamstead*, the difference of Meridians betwixt *London* and *Dantzick* is 1 Hour, 15 Min. 30 Sec. which is $18\frac{1}{2}$ Deg. so that *Stockholm* is about Longitude 37. It lies 28 English Miles West from the *Baltick*, 36 South from *Upsal*, 300 North from *Dantzick*, 180 North-East from *Gottenburg*, 150 North from *Calmar*, and 240 North-East from *Copenhagen*. The time when it was first built is not certain; some say, King *Birger* built it in 1261. About 300 Years ago it was only an Island, with two or three Cottages for Fishers; but upon building a Castle there, to stop the Inroads of the *Moscovites*, and by the Removal of the Court from *Upsal* to this Place, it became more Populous than the antient Cities, and is now the Metropolis of the Kingdom. It is naturally fortified with Rocks; which, towards the Sea, over-top the Houses, and make the Prospect not so pleasant. In 1552, a great part of it was burnt down, the Houses being then of Wood, which occasion'd an Act to rebuild it with Brick and Stone. Some say, the Houses at first were founded on Piles of Timber drove into the Ground,

Ground, because it was Marshy. It is built upon 6 Islands, join'd together by Bridges, and has two large Suburbs, one on the N. and the other on the S. The Port is one of the safest in *Europe*; for 1000 Ships of great Burden may lie without Anchor or Cable, and the Mountains round it defend them from Storms, as the Citadel and two Forts guard the Canal from the Insults of Enemies; but it has this Inconvenience, that it is far distant from the Sea; and the Lake *Meler*, that falls from it into the *Baltick*, is full of Windings, and has no Tides, which makes it the more difficult for Ships to get out. This City has almost all the Trade of *Sweden*. The King for most part resides here: 'Tis one of the finest Cities of the North, and supposed to be as populous as *Bristol*. The Castle is a large Building, cover'd with Copper, and serves for an Arsenal. The Officers of the Court lodge in it, and most of the Offices for Publick Affairs are kept there; but it has neither Strength nor Beauty. There are 9 large Churches, built with Brick, and cover'd with Copper, in the City. *St. Nicholas Church* is the most remarkable: It was founded by King *John*, on Marble Pillars. In the King's Chapel, at the Altar, there's a Silver Statue of our Saviour on the Cross at full Length. There's a Citadel, commanded by a neighbouring Hill, and the King's Palace, which is strong and high, lies within it. The Streets are very large, and there are many Gardens and Walks in and about the City, which make it pleasant.

Jacobdal, a Village within half a League of it, has a Castle, where the Kings of *Sweden* reside in Summer.

Enköping, W. from *Stockholm*, on the Lake *Leven*, is a pleasant Town, and of good Trade.

Upsal, lies in Lat. 59 Deg. 54 Min. according to the Observations of *Charles XIth's* Mathematicians, and the Meridian is near that of *Stockholm*, only a little more Westward. They observ'd also, That the Variation of the Compass there was 8 Degrees. *Joannes Magnus* is so vain as to say, it was founded 240 Years after the Flood, by *Ubbin*, one of their Kings. It lies on the River *Sala*, which falls into the Lake *Enkopen*, and is about 30 Miles N. W. from *Stockholm*. It is the most ancient City in the Kingdom,

formerly the Residence of their Kings, and from thence called *Upsala Konung*. Before the Reformation, all their Kings were Crown'd and bury'd in this City; and in 1654, Queen *Christina* resign'd the Crown here. It has a Castle built after the *Gothick* Manner, on a Hill, and commands the whole City. This Town was also the chief Seat of Paganism, where they had the rich Temple, of which *Joannes Magnus* tells so many Stories, and makes that at *Cuzco* to be mean, when compar'd with it. About 1148, *Eugenius III.* made it an Archbishop's See, who always keeps his Court here. The Cathedral has a Clock of admirable Workmanship. We have mention'd its University already. Most Part of the Books in the Library were given by *Gustavus Adolphus*, who took them from many Libraries in *Germany*, and especially from that of *Wurtzburg*.

Oregrund, is an ancient Town on the *Baltick*; N. E. from *Upsal*: It has a good Port, which occasions a Trade there.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Öst-Hammar*. 2. *Forsmark*. 3. *Elksarby*. 4. *Skopman*. 5. *Wadö*.

SUDERMANIA,

HAS Upland on the N. E. *Westmania* on the N. *Nivicia* on the W. the *Baltick* on the E. and S. and *Östrogöthland* on the S. W. It is fruitful in Corn, and has abundance of Mines. The chief Town is *Nyköping*: It lies on the *Baltick*, in Lat. 58 1/2, and Long. 36. has a good Port, and is tolerably rich. The Castle is strong, and formerly was the Residence of the Dukes of *Sudermania*. It has a good Dock for building Ships; lies 52 English Miles S. W. from *Stockholm*, and 28 N. E. from *Norwep* &c.

Trosa, is a small Trading Town betwixt *Nyköping* and *Telga*; on the *Baltick*.

Telga, a small Town, N. E. from *Trosa*, on the S. Side of the Canal, by which the Lake *Meler* communicates with the *Baltick*: It lies 16 Miles S. from *Stockholm*.

Stregner, lies in Lat. 59, on the S. Side of the Lake *Meler*, 32 English Miles S. W. from *Stockholm*, N. from *Norwep*, and W. from *Telga*. It is an ancient Town, and a Bishop's See. *Charles IX.* is buried here.

Kongser,

Kongfor, is situated on a pleasant River, where it falls into the Lake *Meler*. King *Charles XIth's* Mathematicians say, it lies in Lat. 59 Deg. 34 Min.

Other Towns are, 1. *Dunker*. 2. *Sirmada*. 3. *Osma*. 4. *Wetti*. 5. *Ostre*. 6. *Coredingen*. 7. *Garla*. 8. *Bierlanda*.

NERICIA,

IS fruitful in Corn and Mines, has *Westmania* on the N. *Ostrogotland* on the S. *Sudermania* on the S. E. and *Wermeland* on the W.

Orebro is the chief Town: It lies on the River *Trosa*, which *De la Forest* calls *Orebro*, near the Lake *Meler*, 16 English Miles S. W. from *Arboga*.

Other Towns are, 1. *Askeland*, S. from *Orebro*. 2. *Kunda*. 3. *Masjo*. 4. *Segersloo*.

WESTMANIA,

HAS *Nericia* on the N. *Upland* on the E. *Gestrucia* on the N. *Sudermania* on the S. E. and *Wermeland* on the W.

Arosia, or *Westera*, is the chief Town: It lies near the N. Side of the Lake *Meler*, in Lat. 59½, and Long. 35. 16 English Miles N. E. from *Arboga*, and 40 W. from *Stockholm*. In 1521, *Gustavus Erickson* defeated the Army of *Christian II.* of Denmark here, where, in 1544, the States made the Crown Hereditary to the Family of *Gustavus I.* It is a Bishop's See, and has a small Castle.

Arboga, is a small Town on a River of the same Name, near the Lake *Meler*, 20 English Miles S. W. from *Westera*, and 18 N. E. from *Orebro*. It was ruin'd by the *Danes* in the 16th Century.

Sala, or *Saalberg*, is N. from *Westera*, and remarkable for a Silver Mine discovered about the End of the last Age.

Other Towns are, 1. *Koping*, W. from *Westera*. 2. *Nobra*. 3. *Lindesaas*. 4. *Rittern*, 5. *Obomkolm*. 6. *Wela*.

DALECARLIA.

IT has *Gestrucia*, *Helsingia*, and *Medelpadia*, on the E. the Government of *Aggerhus* on the W. *Wermeland* and *Westmania* on

the S. It is divided into 3 Parts, viz. *Ostrodalia*, *Vesterdalia*, and *Sudalia*. This Country is Mountainous, and all over Woody. The ancientest Peasants are their Judges. The Kings of Sweden always took Care not to disoblige this People, and were not allow'd to send Troops or have Garisons there, and never enter'd this Country without giving Hostages for Security of their Privileges; nor did they exact any Tribute of them, but a small Number of Furs. Their Customs are quite different from those of the other Provinces. The Inhabitants of this Country were famous under the Conduct of *Gustavus I.* when they retrieved their Country from the Danish Yoke, as has been already mentioned. There are no Towns in this Province, but only Villages.

II. GOTHLAND,

HAS *Dalecarlia* on the N. *Norway* on the N. W. *Westmania*, *Nericia*, and *Sudermania*, on the E. the *Baltick* on the S. E. *Schenen* on the S. and the *Baltick* on the S. W. It is divided into *Westrogotland* and *Ostrogotland*.

Westrogotland is sub-divided into *Westrogotland Proper*, *Dahl* or *Dalia*, and *Wermeland*.

Westrogotland Proper has the Lake *Wener* on the N. *Dalia* on the N. W. the *Baltick* on the S. W. *Schenen* on the S. *Smaland* on the S. E. *Ostrogotland* on the E. and *Nericia* on the N. E.

Gothenburg, lies on the *Categat*, in Lat. 58½, Long. 30 Deg. 40 Min. has the best and most frequented Port on the *Baltick*: It is seated on the Mouth of the River *Trolhetta*, where it falls into the *Sinus Codanus*, 12 English Miles S. from *Bahus*, 264 W. from *Stockholm*, 200 N. W. from *Calmar*, and 120 N. from *Copenhagen*. It is a new built Town. In 1644, the Danish Fleet besieged it in vain. The Castle of *Elburg* lies near it.

Falkoping, S. from the Lake *Wener*, is a small Town, that has been frequently harassed in the Danish Wars. *Hio* is another Town on the W. of the Lake *Wener*.

Scara, is 10 English Miles S. from the Lake *Wener*: It was anciently the Seat of the *Gothick* Kings; but there remains little now except Ruins. It is a Bishop's See.

Lidokoping,

Lidokoping, a small Town on the S. of the Lake *Wener*. *Mariefbad*, another, lies betwixt the Lakes *Wener* and *Wener*.

Other Towns are, 1. *Bogestund*. 2. *Hallingfaas*. 3. *Brete*. 4. *Nylala*. 5. *Naranga*. 6. *Skofide*.

DALIA, or DAHL,

HAS the Government of *Bahus* on the W. *Werneland* on the N. and *Westrogothland Proper* on the E. 'Tis less fruitful than any other Part of *Gothland*.

The Towns are, 1. *Dalebourg*, on the W. of the Lake *Wener*, 44 Miles N. E. from *Bahus*. 2. *Bretten*, which some call *Menorbourg*, on the W. of that Lake. 'Twas sack'd in 1644 by the *Danes*, but is now rebuilt.

WERMELAND,

HAS *Dalecarlia* on the N. *Nericia* and *Westmania* on the E. the Lake *Wener* on the S. and *Dalia* and *Norway* on the W. It is said to have been the last planted of all the *Gothick* Provinces. 'Tis Mountainous and Woody, and has some Mines of Iron, and one of Copper.

The Towns are, 1. *Philippstadt*, the Approaches to which are difficult, because it lies in the middle of Morasses. 2. *Carlstadt*, built by *Charles IX.* on the N. E. of the Lake *Wener*: It was the Capital of *Werneland*, before the *Danes* ruin'd it in 1644. Other Towns here are, 1. *Grilberga*. 2. *Ruskyg*. 3. *Kolen*. 4. *Frixende*. 5. *Arwycka*.

OSTROGOTHLAND,

IS divided into *Ostrogotthland Proper* and *Smaland*. *Ostrogotthland Proper* has on the E. the *Baltick*, on the W. the Lake *Wener*, on the N. *Sudermania*, and on the S. *Smaland*. It is the best Place in Sweden for Pasture.

Norkoping, the Capital of all *Ostrogotthland*, lies in a Morass, on the River *Motala*, betwixt the *Baltick* and the Lake *Wener*, 20 English Miles from the *Baltick*.

Stegaborg, is a small Town, S. from *Norkoping*, and is remarkable for its good Port on the *Baltick*.

Linkoping, is S. W. from *Norkoping*, and has a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of

Upsal. It has a stately Church, which was built by *Herbertus*, the first Apostle of Sweden.

Suderkoping, lies on the *Baltick*, in the Bottom of a Bay, 20 English Miles E. from *Linkoping*.

Wadstena, famous in the Swedish History, had anciently a Fort and Monastery dedicated to St. *Bridget*, which is now an Hospital for Invalids.

Schening, anciently a famous City, but now inconsiderable. In 1248, Pope Innocent IV. order'd a Council to meet here, which prohibited Matrimony to the Clergy.

Other Towns are, 1. *Kelmo*. 2. *Nylochen*. 3. *Skensta*. 4. *Lindeny*. 5. *Rifinge*.

SMALAND.

THIS Province abounds with Black Cattle, which are transported to *Denmark*, and from thence to *Germany*, *Holland*, &c. It has the *Baltick* on the E. *Schonen* on the S. and is divided from *Ostrogotthland* by the Wood *Holawedh*. This Province is 380 English Miles in Compass. It has Mines of Copper and Lead; and there's Iron found, as some say, at the bottom of their Lakes and Rivers.

Calmar, is the Capital, was burnt down in 1647, but now handsomely rebuilt. It lies 180 English Miles S. W. from *Stockholm*, and as many N. E. from *Copenhagen*. It is one of the most considerable Places in Sweden. Its Fortifications are regular; the Citadel is of a great Extent. It has an excellent Port on a Creek of the *Baltick*, and is famous for the Union of the 3 Northern Crowns, that was concluded here.

Jonskoping, a small Town, but ancient, on the S. Point of the Lake *Peter*. It was plunder'd by the *Danes* in 1644.

Wexio, a Bishoprick, lies in the middle of the Province. St. *Sigisfrid* was buried here.

Other Towns are, 1. *Westerwick*. 2. *Eksio*. 3. *Erlanda*. 4. *Torsar*. 5. *Alafsa*. 6. *Hallors*. 7. *Kerna*. 8. *Moufcor*.

III. SCHONEN,

WAS purchas'd by the Swedes from *John*, Duke of *Holstein*, about 1330, was conquer'd by the *Danes* in 1341, and recover'd by the Swedes in 1658, by the Treaty

Treaty of Roschild. In 1676, and 1677, the *Danes* took many Places in it; but were obliged to restore them by the Treaty of *Fountainbleau* in 1679. It has *Smaland* on the N. the *Baltick* on the E. and S. and the Frith or Streight called the *Sound*, or *Orsundt*, which separates it from *Zeeland*, on the W. It is divided into *Schonen*, *Bleking*, and *Halland*.

Schonen has a high Coast; but the low Lands of it has charming fine Meadows, and fruitful Fields. The Beer of this Country is very good, and much better than that of *Zeeland*.

Lunden, the Capital, lies in Lat. $55\frac{1}{2}$, Long. $31\frac{1}{2}$, was formerly a considerable City, and had 22 Churches, but has little of its ancient Splendour now. The Cathedral of St. *Lawrence* is a stately Building. The famous Clock there is said to be the Contrivance of *Gasper Bartholinus*: It shews the Year, the Month, the Day of the Month, all the Festivals, fix'd and moveable, the Hour and Minute. At each Hour, two Horsemens come out and strike the Hours in a Fighting Posture; then a Door opens, which discovers the Virgin *Mary* on a Throne, with our Saviour in her Arms, and the *Magi* worshipping him. Two Trumpets sound all the while. There is also a magnificent Altar in this Church. The Town has no Walls, and but few Inhabitants.

Malmoe, is a small Town, but neat, and tolerably rich, because of its Port on the *Sound*, S. from *Lunden*, which is much frequented. In the War before the Treaty of *Fountainbleau*, the *Danes* besieg'd it twice in vain.

Trellebourg, lies also on the *Baltick*, S. from *Malmoe*.

Landscroon, over against the little Isle of *Huen*, was formerly only a little Castle, which *Erick*, who succeeded Queen *Margaret*, enlarg'd; but since that Time, the Kings of *Sweden* have fortified the Citadel with regular Fortifications. The *Danes* took it in 1670. 'Tis now a considerable Town, and has a well frequented Harbour.

Helsingburg, lies over against the Castle of *Ononenburg* in *Zeeland*. When it belong'd to the *Danes*, it was very rich, because of its Trade with *Elsinger*; but now the *Danes* impose so great Customs, that their Trade

is sunk. It was formerly well fortified; but by the Treaty of *Fountainbleau*, all the Fortifications were demolish'd, which has reduc'd this Place to a Village of 80 or 100 Houses, and one Church.

Other Towns are, 1. *Udsted*. 2. *Engelholm*. 3. *Ria*. 4. *Sandhamer*. 5. *Semmersbawen*. 6. *Julebo*.

B L E K I N G,

BELONG'd formerly to *Denmark*; but by the Treaty of *Roschild* in 1658, was annex'd to *Sweden*. It lies N. E. from *Schonen*, S. from *Smaland*, and has the *Baltick* on the E. and S. Their Pasture is good for Black Cattle, which they export in great Numbers.

Christianople, so call'd from *Christian IV.* King of *Denmark*, who built and fortified it, is the Capital of the Province. It lies on the Borders of *Ostrogotland*, 20 English Miles S. from *Calmar*, and 15 from the Island *Oeland*. It has a good Port, and a pretty Trade.

Carelskroon, so called from *Charles II.* who built it on a little Isle of the same Name, which is join'd to the Continent by a very long Bridge. The Town covers almost the whole Island, and has an excellent Harbour well fortified, where ordinarily 50 of the King's Ships lie secure from Storms, and the Insults of Enemies.

Rattenby, lies S. W. from *Christianople*, on the *Baltick*, and has a good Port.

Christiansstad, on the Borders of *Schonen*, was built in 1600, by *Christian IV.* of *Denmark*, near the Mouth of the *Heller*. It lies half Way betwixt *Copenhagen* on the W. and *Christianople* on the E. in the middle of a Morass, which makes it strong. The *Danes* took it in 1676; but two Years after were obliged to restore it.

Abus, two Miles S. from *Christiansstad*, is small, but an ancient Town.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Elleholm*, N. E. from *Christiansstad*. 2. *Selsburg*. 3. *Luskeburg*. 4. *Konsbro*.

H A L L A N D,

HAS *Schonen* on the S. E. *Westrogotland* on the N. E. and N. and the *Sound* on the W. It belong'd formerly to the *Danes*; but

but by the Treaty of Roschild, it was annex'd to Sweden. This Country abounds in Woods and Lakes, and is not so fruitful as *Schonen* or *Bleking*. It is 60 English Miles in Extent from N. to S. and 15 from E. to W.

Helmstadt is the chief Town, on the Mouth of a River that falls into the Sound, or Gulph of *Categat*.

Labolm, lies S. E. from *Helmstadt*, on the Mouth of a River that falls into the same Gulph, and is not considerable now, since its Fortifications were demolished.

Falkenbourg, lies also on the *Categat*.

Warborg, N. N. W. from *Falkenbourg*, is a small Town, in the Bottom of a little Gulph, with a Port defended by a strong Castle.

IV. The Government of BAHUS,

Belong'd to Denmark before the Peace of Roschild. It has the Sound on the S. W. *Dahl* or *Dalia* on the N. E. and the Government of *Aggerhus* on the N. W. is but thinly inhabited: It is 100 Miles long from N. to S. and in some Places about 15 broad. It is divided into 2 Parts.

1. *Inland*, of which *Bahus*, the Capital, lies 10 English Miles N. from *Gottenburg*: It was built in 1309 by *Haquin*, the 4th King of Norway, on an Island made by the River *Trollhetta*. It is well fortified, and has a strong Castle. The Danes besieg'd it in 1678, but in vain.

2. *Vyksheden*, of which *Maelfstrand* is the Capital: It is a strong Town, and has a Castle on a steep Rock, almost surrounded by the Sea. In 1678, *Christian V.* King of Denmark, made himself Master of it; but it was restored by the Treaty of *Fountainbleau*.

V. The NORDELLES, or NORTHLANDS.

These Northerly Provinces are 8, viz. *Gestricia*, *Helsingia*, *Medelpadia*, *Angermania*, *West-Gothland*, *Jempterland*, *Harndal*, and *Swedish Lapland*.

GESTRICIA,

HAS *Helsingia* on the N. Upland on the S. the Gulph of *Bothnia* on the E. and *Dalecarlia* on the W. It has Mines of Copper and Iron.

Geval is the chief Town. The King of Sweden's Mathematicians found the Lat. here 60 Deg. 31 Min. whereas most Maps make it 61. It is 50 English Miles N. from *Upsal*, and remarkable for being the Residence of the Governor of the Country, and having a Royal School. It lies on the Gulph of *Bothnia*, at the Mouth of a River of the same Name.

Fahlun, by the Observations of the Swedish Mathematicians, is in Lat. 60 Deg. 32 Min. and a pretty large Town.

Coperberg, a large Town, lies near a Mountain of the same Name, famous for the best Copper-Mines of the World. It is 50 English Miles W. from *Geval*.

HELSINGIA,

HAS the Gulph of *Bothnia* on the E. *Norway* on the N. W. *Dalecarlia* on the W. *Gestricia* on the S. and *Medelpadia* on the N. It is overgrown with Woods, has many Lakes and Mountains, and few Inhabitants, who don't cultivate much of the Country, but live by Fishing and Hunting.

Hudwicksvald, near the Gulph of *Bothnia*, is a neat City, and conveniently situated for Trade.

Spoderhamn, in Lat. 61 Deg. 12 Min. is another Town of this District.

MEDELPADIA,

IS N. from *Helsingia*, has many Lakes and thick Forrests, where grow excellent Masts. There are few Towns here, but many Castles in this Province.

Indal, near the Gulph of *Bothnia*, is the chief Town.

Tuna, another Town, lies S. from *Indal*, near the Gulph of *Bothnia*, and has a Castle.

ANGERMANIA,

IS N. E. from *Medelpadia*, and has its Name from the River *Angerman*, which rises from the Mountains of Norway.

Hernösand, on the *Baltick*, is the only Town of that District, which has a convenient Port. The Superintendent resides here.

WEST BOTHNIA,

HAS the Gulph of that same Name on the E. *Swedish Lapland* on the W. and *Angermania* on the S. W. It is water'd by many small Rivers, which make their Pastures good.

Torneo, or *Torneo*, is the chief Town of this Country, on a River of the same Name, which rises in *Lapland*, runs S. E. and falls at *Torneo* into the Gulph of *Bothnia*. They have a good Trade in Furs with the *Lapländers* and *Finlanders*, whose Language they understand. They have also a good Trade in Furs with the *Muscovites*. King *Charles XIth's* Mathematicians, after their most accurate Observations, found the Lat. there to be 65 Deg. 43 Min. The Difference of Meridians betwixt *Stockholm* and *Torneo* 19 Min. 20 Sec. which make 40 Deg. 50 Min. and that *Torneo* is more E. than *Stockholm*, and the Variation of the Compass from N. to W. 7 Deg.

Lubla, in Lat. 65 Deg. 25 Min. was built in 1622; and the new Town in 1642; but has been twice burnt down since.

Pithe, or *Bithe*, was built in 1621, has a convenient Port, and good Privileges to encourage Trade.

Uma, a considerable Town in those Parts, on the said Gulph, is the Seat of the Governor of that Province. The Lat. is 63 Deg. 48 Min. and the Variation of the Compass 7 Deg. There are many small Islands along that Coast.

JEMPTERLAND,

HAS *Angermania* or *Angermanland* on the E. *Medelpadia* and *Helsingia* on the S. E. and the Government of *Drontheim* in Norway on the W.

Refant, a small Town with a Castle, is the only considerable Place in this Province.

Of the ISLES on the Coasts of Sweden.

ALAND, lies over against *Upland*, to which Province it belongs. The most Southerly Places of it have the same Lat. with *Upland*.

GOTHLAND,

Is 70 English Miles from the Coasts of *Ostrogotland*. Its Length from N. to S. is 50 English Miles, and the Breadth from E. to W. 18. The *Prussian* Knights quitted this Island to the *Danes* in 1408 for 9000 Crowns. The *Swedes* got it in 1645, by the Peace of *Bromsebro*, and it was confirm'd to them by the Peace at *Fountainbleau*. It has good Pasture for Cattle, which they transport.

Wibby is the chief Place of the Island, and lies on the W. Side of it. 'Twas famous in Antiquity for its excellent Sea-Laws, which were observ'd by most Sea-Towns on the *Baltick*. It had formerly a great Trade, but 'tis now decay'd. Sea-Charter were first made here.

OELAND,

Lies near the Province of *Smaland*, from which it is divided by a Frith called *Calmar-Sound*. Its Length from N. to S. is 69 Miles, and the Breadth 18: It has 18 Parishes, and is one of the most pleasant Places of Sweden: The Air there is more calm, and the Soil is more fruitful, than in any other Place of that Kingdom. It has good Hunting, and the Kings of Sweden come hither in Summer for that purpose. The Coasts are well defended by Deep Rocks and strong Castles.

Berkholm, the Capital, lies on the E. Side of it, and has good Fortifications.

Ösenby, on the S. Side, is also well fortified.

HÜEN or WEEEN,

Was possess'd by the *Danes* till 1658. It lies in the middle of the Sound, betwixt *Landscron*

Handfiron and *Copenhagen*. All Strangers and Seafaring People call it the *Scarles* Island. It is not above 7 English Miles in Circumference, but one of the best Spots of Ground that can be seen, there being no barren Place in it: It produces great Plenty of Wheat, Rye, and other Grain, and good Fruit. They have all sorts of Cattle, and pay the King Yearly 800 Crowns. In 1776, *Frederick II.* King of Denmark, gave this Island to *Tycho Brahe* for his Life, that he might build an Observatory there for his Astronomical Observations. He allow'd him also a Sum of Money, and a Pension of 2000 Crowns per Annum. In 4 Years time, he finished the Castle of *Uraniburg* in the middle of the Island, which was a magnificent Building, with commodious Apartments: His Machines and Instruments were numerous and fine; and he had a Printing-House, a Mill for making Paper, and Laboratories for Chymical Operations, with Gardens, Fish-Ponds, and other Ornaments, which made it a charming Place. He also built *Stellenburg*, on the W. of *Uraniburg*, with all Conveniencies for Astronomical Observations. King *James I.* in his Voyage to Denmark to marry his Queen, honour'd him with a Visit; but the Court of Denmark turning his Enemies, he was oblig'd to leave his ungrateful Country. Whence he came to *Rosbeck*, but was invited to settle in *Prague* by the Emperor *Rodolph II.* who gave him a Pension of 3000 Gold Ducats, where he died in 1601. *Christian IV.* of Denmark, gave those fine Buildings to a Mistress of his, who destroy'd them; so that the Place of them now is scarcely to be known.

The Isles *Hanno* and *Malgormen* on the Coasts of *Bleking* are not very considerable.

VI. FINLAND,

Is call'd by Authors *Finnonia*, *Finnia*, and *Finnigia*, is extended from the Gulph of *Bothnia* on the W. to *Misewy* on the E. from which it is separated by the Lakes *Onega* and *Ladoga*. On the N. it has *Lapland*, and on the S. the *Baltick* and the Gulph of *Finland*. They had Kings of their own,

till they were conquer'd by *St. Erick*, King of Sweden, as has been said already. About the Time of the Death of *John King of Sweden*, 100000 *Misewites* invaded this Country in Winter; but were so warmly ply'd by 600 *Finlanders* only, who came with their Pattens upon the Snow, in which the *Misewites* could not move, that very few of this great Number return'd. This vast Country is barren every where, except on the Sea-Coast. It is divided into 6 Provinces, viz. *Finland Proper*, *Eastern Bothnia*, *Nyland*, *Tawasthus*, *Garelia*, and *Savolax*.

FINLAND PROPER,

HAS the Gulph of *Bothnia* on the W. *Eastern Bothnia* on the N. *Tawasthus* on the E. *Nyland* on the S. E. and the Gulph of *Finland* on the S. This Province is fruitful in Grain, and has some Mines of Copper and Iron.

Abo, the Capital, lies on the Mouth of the River *Åvaxjoki*. It has been a Bishop's See since 1198. Its University was founded in 1640, by Queen *Christina*. It has a good Port, which occasions some Trade there, and lies 100 English Miles N. from *Ravel*, and 144 E. from *Stockholm*.

Björnburg, 80 English Miles N. from *Abo*, on the Mouth of the River *Cumo*, where it falls into the Gulph of *Bothnia*, is a small Town of some Trade.

Other Towns are, 1. *Rawo*. 2. *Musko*. 3. *Nykyrsky*. 4. *Wirmo*. 5. *Haliko*. 6. *Biermo*.

EASTERN BOTHNIA, or CAJANIA,

LIES over against *West Bothnia*, from which it is separated by the Gulph of that Name; has on the N. *Kimi-Lapmark*, on the E. *Savolax* and *Garelia*, *Finland* and *Tawasthus* on the S. It is 300 English Miles in Length, and has many Rivers, that fall into the Gulph of *Bothnia*.

Cajenburg is the chief Town, and lies on the E. Side of a great Lake called *Uasanki*, in Lat. 65, and Long. 45.

Other Towns are, 1. *Ula* or *Ulaburg*. 2. *Curleby*. 3. *Nycarleby*. 4. *Wasa*.

NYLAND, or NEWLAND.

IT was so call'd, because its ancient Inhabitants being driven out, new Colonies were sent to plant here. It has good Pasture, and breeds large Oxen, Horses, and other Cattle. It has *Tavasthus* to the N. the Gulph of *Finland* on the S. and *Carelia* on the E.

The Towns here are, 1. *Borg* or *Borgo*, 60 English Miles N. from *Revel*, and 100 W. from *Wibourg* in *Carelia*, on the Gulph of *Finland*. 2. *Helsingfort*, W. from *Borgo*, with a large Port. 3. *Rasibourg*, W. from *Helsingfort*, on the same Gulph.

TAVASTHUS,

IS an Inland Province, has *East Bothnia* on the N. *Nyland* on the S. *Finland* on the W. and *Savolax* on the E. It has nothing remarkable but Mines of Iron.

Tavasthus, anciently call'd *Gronenburg*, 90 Miles N. E. from *Abo*, is the chief Town: It is situated in the middle of unpassable Morasses. In 1250, *Binger Jerl* built a Fort here, to bridle the *Tavastians*. This Town lies near the great Lake *Pejende*, that has much Iron at the bottom, which the Inhabitants take out for their Use.

CARELIA,

HAS the Gulph of *Finland* on the S. the Lake *Onega* on the E. *Savolax* on the N. and *Nyland* on the W. The Possession of this Province has been the Cause of great Wars betwixt *Muscovy* and *Sweden*. In 1292, *Birger King* of *Sweden* made himself Master of it. In 1338, another King gave back *Kexholm*, in the E. Part of this Country, to the Czar; but in 1617, *Gustavus Adolphus* retook it all again.

Wibourg is the chief Town of the Province, and has a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Upsal*. It is 45 Miles S. from *Kexholm*, as many W. from the Lake *Ladoga*, and 106 N. from *Narva*. It has a very strong Citadel, which the *Muscovites* have frequently besieg'd in vain with an Army of 100000 Men. It has a good Port, and a tolerable Trade.

Kexholm, which the *Muscovites* call *Careli-gorod*, or the Fort of *Carelia*, lies on the W. of the Lake *Ladoga*, where the River *Vonen* falls into it. This Lake overflows the Country for 20 Miles Northward; so that the Corn grows only on the Tops of Mountains or Hills; but the Inhabitants of this City and the adjoining Country live more by Fishing and Hunting than by Husbandry. The Lat. of this Town is 62. Long. 50. It has a strong Citadel. In 1558, the Constable *La Gardie* took it from the *Muscovites*. Near this Place some Rubies are found.

SAVOLAX,

IS a Desert Country, full of Lakes and Woods, has *Carelia* on the S. *Kexholm* on the E. *Tavastia* on the W.

Nyflot, N. from *Kexholm*, on a Lake, is the principal Place of this Province.

VII. INGRIA,

LIES on the bottom of the Gulph of *Finland*: It belong'd formerly to *Muscovy*. In 1609, *Iwan Basilowitz* being in Danger of losing his whole Empire in a War with *Sigismund* of *Poland*, was obliged to seek the Assistance of *Charles IX.* King of *Sweden*, and promis'd him the Province of *Carelia*; but after he was delivered from his Danger, he broke his Promise. To revenge this Affront, *Gustavus Adolphus* made War upon the *Muscovites*, and obliged *Michael Fedorowitz* to yield to *Sweden* for ever, by the Treaty at *Stockholm* in 1618, *Carelia*, *Kexholm*, and the greatest Part of *Ingria*; which was confirm'd in 1661, by a Treaty betwixt *Charles XI.* and *Alexis Michaelowitz*. This Province is barren, but considerable for being a good Frontier against the *Muscovites*, and for the hunting of *Elks* twice a Year, who pass the River *Nierva* for *Carelia* in the Spring, and in Autumn they return from *Carelia* to *Muscovy* thro' this Province. It has *Novogorod Weliki*, a *Russian* Province, on the E. the Lake *Ladoga* on the N. E. *Carelia* on the N. the Gulph of *Finland* on the W. and *Livonia* on the S. W.

Nottaburg,

Notteburg, which the *Muscovites* call *Oresca*, lies on the rapid and broad River *Niewa*, in Lat. 60, Long. 50, which contributes much to make this City impregnable. The Fortifications are strong, and of a large Extent. In 1614, *Gustavus Adolphus* sat down before it, and could not take it by Force; but the Garrison was obliged to capitulate, because they were plagued with a Disease of Boils or Warts in their Mouths, which hinder'd their eating. Since the *Swedes* became Masters of it, they have improv'd the Fortifications.

Capria, lies on the Gulph of *Finland*, and is a very strong, tho' a small Town.

Juanogorod, lies near the Confines of *Swedish Livonia*, not far from *Narva*, from which it is parted by a rapid River that runs out of the Lake *Peipus*, and falls into the *Finnish Gulph*: It is surrounded so with Rocks, that the Tops of the Houses are only to be seen. In 1700, the *Muscovites* besieg'd it, but could not take it.

Jamogorod, lies on the River *Laga* S. S. E. from *Juanogorod*, and is naturally strong.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Orlin*. 2. *Sanniz*. 3. *Derp*.

VIII. SWEDISH LIVONIA,

HAS *Courland* on the S. W. the Gulph of *Riga* on the W. that of *Finland* on the N. *Lithuania* on the S. *Muscovy* on the E. and *Ingria* on the N. E. and formerly comprehended *Courland*. It is 240 English Miles from N. to S. and 180 from W. to E. *Cluverius* makes it too large, by joining *Courland* to it, which belongs to its own Duke. Some make the *Levones* of *Ptolomy* the first Inhabitants of this Country; but it is more probable, that the *Estii* possessed it. *Hartknock* says, That the Provinces of *Letten*, *Courland*, and *Semigallia*, were inhabited by the *Venedi*. He thinks the *Sinns Venedicus*, and the Towns of *Wenden* in *Letten*, and *Windau* in *Courland*, prove this.

The Soil is very fruitful, and in some Places produces 30 for one. The Country is plain. They have a particular Way of Husbandry, which is, That wherever there is a Valley, they ditch it up, make the Water overflow it to a considerable Depth, and let it stand for 3 or more Years: Du-

ring this Time, they stock it with Fish, and then drein it. By this means the Ground becomes soft and fat, and requires but one easie Ploughing. The first and second Year they sow Barley, and the third Year Oats. Thus they never fail of having great Crops. They also improve their Ground by burning great Forrests, the Ashes of which are much better than Dung. They have great Plenty of Cattle and Fowl.

The Product is Plenty of Wheat, Barley, Rye, Oats, and Linseed, of which they export many Ship-loads, and 'tis reckon'd the best of any in *Europe*. They have also Flax, Hemp, Honey, Wax, Tallow, Cattle, Horses, Butter, Tar, Masts, Planks, Deals, all sorts of Timber, Pot-Ashes, Yarn, Hops, Goat-Skins, &c.

The Air is clear and healthy, tho' the Winter be long. The Natives dry their Corn in the Straw by hot Stoves, which makes it very hard, and not so liable to Corruption as other Corn; so that it will keep more than 20 Years: For this Reason the *Hollanders* prefer it to all other, and export it to the *East-Indies*. The Natives sow the Fields with this hard Grain, which yields a great Product. The Sea, Rivers, and Lakes, abound with Fish, of which they reckon above 50 Sorts.

Of the Religion, Ancient State, &c. of this Country.

THE Inhabitants are Pagans, and almost Savages; and till the Knights of the Sword settled here, and taught them better, they threw away the Wax after they had got the Honey.

About 1158, when *Frederick Barbarossa* was Emperor, several Ships belonging to *Bremen*, bound for *Wibye* in the Isle of *Gothland*, then a Town of great Trade, were driven by Stress of Weather into the Gulph of *Riga*; and finding this Country very fit for Trade, they sent Colonies hither, with Monks, and resolv'd to settle Religion here, either by Perswasion or Force; for the Natives then worship'd divers sorts of Beasts; but those dragooning Methods had not the Success propos'd; for after they had been constrain'd to be baptiz'd, they immediately ran to Rivers to wash away their Baptism.

Meinhard

Meinhard was their first Bishop, and was succeeded by *Berold*, who endeavouring to make Profelytes by Force of Arms, was killed, and many Christians with him, in 1186, and was succeeded by *Albert*, a Canon of *Bremen*, who built *Riga*. He held *Livonia* as a Fief of the Empire; upon which he got Liberty to coin Money, and Authority to institute, in 1204, an Order of German Knights, who were call'd the *Livonian Order*, or *Knights of the Short Sword*, according to the Rules of the *Knights Templars*. *Innocent III.* confirmed this Order. Their Habit was a white Cloak, with two *Swords Gules* in *Sautoir*, and a Star of the same Colour. They had a 3d Part allow'd them of what they should conquer from the Infidels. Tho' those Knights behav'd themselves bravely enough, yet the Pagans were too hard for them, and killed *Koburg Sobank*, their second and last Great Master, in a Battle in 1288. So that after this Order had continued 35 Years, they were forc'd to unite with the Order of *St. Mary of Jerusalem*, or the *Prussian Knights*. This Union was solemniz'd at *Rome* the same Year in the Pope's Presence. After this they fought against the *Courlanders*, because they would not be baptiz'd, and defeated them; and thus *Courland* and *Semigallia* were oblig'd to yield to the Order. Their Heer Master *Hans Duke of Brunswick* fought many Battles against the *Courlanders*, *Lithuanians*, and *Samogitians*, who had revolted from Christianity, in which many on both sides were slain. Those Engagements weaken'd the Order to that degree, that they were forc'd to be recruited by many new Croisades, till at last, in 1287, they brought those People to submit.

After the Order had Peace abroad, they began to make War upon the Bishop of *Livonia*, and abandon'd themselves to all manner of Vice. This War lasted from 1291 to 1341; in which both of them us'd the Assistance of Pagans. In one Year they had 9 pitch'd Battels. One Reason of this War was, because the Archbishop and Chapter would not wear Habits like those of the Order; who at last got the better, and dispossest the Archbishop of all his Towns except *Riga*. In 1350, they slew 10000 *Muscovites* in a Battle. In 1351, they kill'd

8000 *Lithuanians*, and had a War of 84 Years with them; during which there were left on the Side of the Order, 28 Knights of the highest Nobility, 49 of the lesser Nobility, 11000 Gentlemen, 4000 Citizens, 15000 Strangers, and 16000 Peasants. In 1394, the Archbishop join'd the Pagans of *Lithuania*, *Russia*, and *Samogitia*, and in a bloody Battle, both Armies were almost destroy'd.

The Order, when in the Height of their Prosperity, were encourag'd to break the Peace with the *Muscovites*. Upon which *Uladiasson Jagello* march'd against them with an Army of 150000 Men, and the Order had only 83000. They fought at *Tannenberg*, where the *Poles* slew 40000 belonging to the Knights, with all their Generals, and the Master of the Order himself, with the loss of 60000 of their own Men; but *Jagello* was so weaken'd with this dear-bought Victory, that he was oblig'd to seek Peace. After which, the Order became scandalously vitious. In 1498, the *Muscovites* invaded *Livonia*. To revenge this, *Walter Plettenberg*, their Great Master, march'd against their Army of 100000, and with 12000 Men only, kill'd 40000, with the loss of 400 of his Men. *Leunclavius* mentions this Victory. *Plettenberg*, in 1521, for a Sum of Money, was made Independent of the *Turonick Order*. The Emperor *Charles V.* made him a Prince of the Empire; he favour'd the Reformation, and died in 1535. About this Time, the People of *Livonia* declar'd for the Protestant Religion, and despis'd the Threats of *Charles V.*

In 1558 and 1559, *Ivan Bazilowitz* invaded *Livonia*, and haras'd the Country after a very barbarous Manner; and the *Lithuanians* not being able to make head against him, some of them, as *Courland*, &c. sought the Protection of *Poland*; and the Town of *Revel*, with Part of *Esthonia*, put themselves under the Protection of *Erick the 14th of Sweden* in 1560, as has been formerly mention'd. This was the Ground of long Wars betwixt *Poland* and *Sweden*, till *Gustavus Adolphus* conquer'd almost all *Livonia*; in which the *Swedes* were left in Possession by the Peace of *Oliva*.

The Manners, Customs, &c. of the Inhabitants.

THE Inhabitants are Lutherans, but tolerate the *Russians* and Papists. The Bible is lately translated into the *Lettish* Tongue among them. The Earl of *Carlsruhe* and the Duke of *Holstein's* Ambassadors say, They have little more than the Name of Christianity, and are intirely ignorant of the Principles of it. They have little or no Notion of a future Life, have still a Hanking after their old Paganism and Idolatry, and offer Sacrifice on the Top of some Hill, or in some Forrest. Sorcery is hereditary there. When they kill a Beast, they cast a Piece of it away; and when they brew, they cast some of it on the Ground, which is a remainder of the old Pagan Sacrifices. If their Children be sick within 6 Weeks of their Baptism, they re-baptize them, and attribute it to the Child's having got an improper Name: But they conceal this Custom, for fear of the Magistrate.

The Peasants are Slaves, and are not allow'd to purchase any Lands. When they venture to cut down Trees, or sow Wheat, and sell it underhand, if they be caught, they are sure to be lash'd with a Whip or Holly-Rod till the Blood follows. They are allow'd no Money, and if it be known they have any, Officers are appointed to take it from them. The late Kings of *Sweden* have order'd them to be treated with more Humanity, and the last King of *Sweden* humbled their Nobility. The Natives are of a strong Constitution, and fit for Hardships, but as brutish as the *Muscovites*.

Their Ceremonies of Marriage are peculiar to themselves. When a Peasant marries a Maid of another Town, he makes her ride behind him, and before him rides a Bag-piper, and two of his Friends with naked Swords, who give two Strokes cross the Door of the Bridegroom's House, and put one of the Swords in a Beam over the Bridegroom's Head, to prevent Charms. For the same Reason the Bride scatters many Pieces of red Stuff on the High-Ways, and on the Graves of unbaptiz'd Children. The Bride sits at Table with a Veil over her Face, and when the Guests are seated,

the Bridegroom and the rise and go to Bed and return in two Hours; and the Feast is concluded with Dancing and Drinking till they all drop down upon the Floor.

Livonia is divided into *Esthonia* and *Letten*.

LET TEN, or LETTONIA,

Is on the S. of *Livonia*; the chief Town is *Riga*, on the River *Dwina*, which, for about 500 *English* Miles, brings the best Products of *Muscovy*, *Poland*, *Lithuania*, and *Semigallia*, to this Place. The River here is three times broader than the *Thames* at *London*, but not very deep. On the Side towards *Poland*, the River is Defence enough to the Town, because the *Poles* have seldom Foot-Soldiers and Artillery sufficient for a Siege. On the Side towards *Moscow*, 'tis fortified according to the modern Way, has a fine new built Citadel, and is one of the greatest, best built, and most populous Towns on the *Baltick*, and has a great Traffick with the *Hans-Towns*, *English* and *Dutch*. In 1611, *Gustavus Adolphus* took this City from the *Poles*. It is 36 *English* Miles N. from *Mittaw*, 120 S. from *Revel*, 100 N. W. from *Dunemburg*, 160 N. E. from *Koningsberg*, and 200 N. from *Vilna*, in Lat. 57. Long 42.

Dunemond, is a strong Fortrefs at the Mouth of the *Dwina*, where it falls into the Gulph of *Riga* or *Livonia*, and commands the Entrance of it. In 1700, the *Saxons* took and ruin'd it; but the *Swedes* retook and rebuilt it. It is surrounded with unpassable Morasses.

Kockenhausen, is another Fortrefs on the *Dwina*, S. from *Riga*. In 1700, the *Saxons* took and destroy'd it; but it was also rebuilt by the *Swedes* a little Time after.

Wenden, is a little Town N. E. from *Riga*, and suffered much in the late *Swedish* and *Muscovite* Wars.

The Isle *Oesel*, which some think is the *Oserissa* of *Pliny*, lies in the Gulph of *Riga*. The *Danes* yielded it to *Sweden* in 1645, by the Peace of *Brombro*. *Arnsbourg* is the chief Town, has a strong Fortrefs, and lies on the N. Side of the Island.

Sonneberg, another Fortrefs, lies on the W. Side of the Island.

The Isle of *Dagbo*, lies N. from *Oesel*, and is separated from it by a Canal, which joins the *Baltick* and the Gulph of *Riga*. It was given to the *Swedes* by the Peace of *Bromsbro*. *Dageroot* and *Paden* are good Castles on the S. Side of that Isle.

ESTHONIA,

Is on the N. of *Livonia*, and divided into 7 Circles or Parts, viz. *Harnland*, *Wikesland*, *Esthonia Proper*, *Havenland*, *Wirland*, *Alentaken*, and *Oldempo*.

Harnland is the most Northern Part of *Livonia*, and *Revel* is the Capital, in Lat. 59. Long. 42. It was built in 1228, by *Waldemar II.* King of *Denmark*, on the Gulph of *Finland*. It has an excellent Port, and a large and commodious Station for Ships. It was one of the *Hans-Towns* above 300 Years, and has a good Trade, which makes it very rich. The Fortifications are strong. The Citadel is built on a Rock, steep on all Sides except on that next the Town. A Superintendent under the Suffragan of *Riga* resides here. In 1557, the *Muscovites*, with an Army of 100000 Men, besieged it for 6 Months, but in vain.

Wikesland is extended along the Coast of the Gulph of *Riga*. *Hopfel* is the Capital, and lies S. W. from *Revel*. *Lehal*, S. from *Hopfel*, on the same Gulph, is a little Town, but fortified with a good Castle.

Pernau has sorry Fortifications; but the Citadel is strong. This City has a great Trade in Corn with the *Dutch*, and has a good Port. Other Towns are, *Fellin*, on the River *Pernau*, E. from *Pernau*; *Witsenfein*, N. from *Fellin*; *Wesenburg*, E. from *Revel*. In 1700, the King of *Sweden* laid up Magazines here for his Expedition into *Livonia*.

Nerva, or *Narva*, a Place of great Importance, on a River of the same Name, is famous for the Victory that *Charles XII.* of *Sweden* obtained over the *Muscovites* near it on the 19th of *November*, 1700. and has a considerable Trade.

Dorpt, or *Juriegorod*, is on the River *Embeck*, on the S. Side of the Lake *Peipus*. This Town is small, but very ancient. It has a strong Castle, famous for the Sieges it has suffer'd by the *Teutonic Knights*, the *Muscovites*, *Poles* and *Swedes*. The last took it

in 1625. In 1632, *Gustavus Adolphus* founded an University here.

Of LAPLAND.

Swedish Lapland has *East Bothnia* and *Cajania* on the S. *Muscovite Lapland* on the E. *Norwegian Lapland* on the N. and *Norway* on the W.

Both the Name and Country is unknown to the ancient Geographers, who involv'd all those Northern Places in Darkness and Barrenness, and planted 'em with Monsters, as *Cyclopes*, *Cyncephales*, &c. *Saxo Grammaticus*, who liv'd about 1190, is the first that speaks of *Lappia*. The Inhabitants are from *Finland*, and it is probable had been banish'd thence, for the Word *Lapp* signifies so much; upon which the modern *Laplanders* take it as an Affront to be called *Lapps*. The ancient Northern Historians call'd this Place *Biarmia*. No Man can be positive as to the Extent of *Lapland*, because most of the Maps contradict each other; and that in *Scheffer's History of Lapland* is erroneous, because it makes *Torneo* in *Bothnia* in Lat. 67. whereas it is but in 65. 43 Min.

Of the AIR, SOIL, &c.

THE most Southerly Parts of *Lapland* are without the Polar Circle; so that the Sun, when in the Tropick of *Capricorn*, is above 90 Degrees from their Zenith, and about that Time never appears above the Horizon. The most Northerly Places have a Day of one Month long in Summer, and a Night of the same Length in Winter; and because the Sun is then long above their Horizon in Summer, its Heat is great, which speedily ripens the Product of the Country. The Air is pure and healthful; but they have frequently great Winds, which blow up the Trees that grow on the Tops of Mountains by the Roots; and Travellers are oblig'd, if surpris'd by those Tempests, to lie flat on the Ground till it be over, or to shelter themselves in the Cavities of Rocks. It is needless to speak of the cold Snow and Frost in this Country in Winter, for it must necessarily be conceiv'd to be excessive.

The

The Soil produces abundance of Pot-
Herbs, Flowers, and Shrubs. They have
Plenty of Berries of an excellent Taste, as
a kind of Bramble with Leaves like those
of Strawberries; another with yellow Ber-
ries, the thorny red and white Raspberries,
a kind of wild red Currans, as also white
and black Currans, Strawberries of many
sorts, a kind of Oxberry, a sort of Water
Calthorp, a white Gooseberry, a kind of
Sweet-briar; another sort with Fruits, large
like Pears; a kind of thorny wild Medlar
Tree, the common Juniper, another of the
same kind, with thick and broad Leaves;
a sort of wild Pear Tree, two kinds of Sar-
vice Trees, a wild Cherry Tree, a sort of
wild Apple Tree, Angelica, Sorrel, and se-
veral sorts of Moss, as *Rudbeck* informs us.

Their BEASTS,

ARE Stags, Bears, Wolves, Lynxes,
Foxes of several Colours, Squirrels,
Ermins, Martens, Haws, Glittens, Beavers,
Otters, Elks that come from *Lithuania*, and
therefore are challeng'd to belong to the
K. of *Sweden*; Rain-Deer: This Creature is
less than a Stag; his Colour inclines to an
Ash; but his Haunches, and under his Bel-
ly and Shoulders, are white: They have
long and rough Hair under their Necks:
Their Feet are thick, short, and cleft, re-
sembling those of Bulls. When they walk,
their Joints make a Noise like that of the
clashing of Flints: They have two Horns,
with two Branches each; the larger Branch
bends backward, and the lesser forward:
They feed on Moss. There is both a
wild and tame kind of them. Those be-
got betwixt a tame Doe and a wild Buck,
are the strongest and best siz'd: Their Milk
is nourishing and fat, and makes good
Cheese. This Creature is peculiar to the
Laplanders, and not known elsewhere, as
Schefferus says, which must be meant as to
that sort only. They have good Hunting-
Dogs, about a Foot high, of a bright ruddy
Colour: Their Tails turn up like our
Figs, and their Ears stand upright like those
of Wolves.

Their BIRDS.

THEY have Swans, Geese, Ducks, Lap-
wings, Snipes, all sorts of Water-Fowl,
Heath-Cocks, Stock-Doves, Wood-Cocks,
and Partridges. They have also Fowls not
to be seen elsewhere; as, 1. The Kniper, a
kind of Snipe, black on the Head, Back, and
Wings, but the Breast and Belly are white:
It has a red long Bill set with Teeth, red
short Feet, resembling those of Water-
Fowl. 2. The Loom: It is never seen on
the Ground, but either in the Water or
flying. Their Partridges are as white as
Snow in Winter. Their Feet are rough
like a Hare's; and instead of Feathers, they
have a sort of Wool.

Of their MOUNTAINS.

ON the W. they have the *Serco* of *Pliny*,
now the *Defrine* Mountains, which for
Extent are not inferior to the *Riphaean*
Mountains, and in some Places very high:
The Tops of them are cover'd either with
Snow, Sand, or Stone. All the Mountains
in *Lapland* are only Branches of them. The
Swedes call all Mountains *Fial*, as the Nor-
thern *English* and the *Scots* call them *Fells*.
These Mountains begin about *Jemtland*,
and from thence reach 400 *English* Miles
N. till they come to a Bay of the Frozen
Sea, call'd *Tisul*.

Of their MINES.

IN 1635, during Queen *Christina's* Reign,
a Silver Mine was discovered in *Nasafiel*,
in the Lapmark of *Pitha*, not far from the
Mountains of *Damfiel*, that separate *Lap-
land* from *Norway*. This Mine was spoil'd
in 1658, during the *Danish* Wars, by one
Van Anan, Governor of *Norway*. The se-
cond Silver Mine was discovered in 1660,
in the Lapmark of *Lulah*, above 120 *English*
Miles from *Lulah*, and 30 from *Raedstad*, a
Village of *Norway*. The chief Inconve-
nience attending it is the want of Wood;

so that they carry the Oar 5 Leagues. This Mine is still in being. There are many other Mines here; but some of them in unaccessible Places. The *Laplanders* know where there are many rich ones; but are unwilling to discover them, lest they should be forced to work in them, which does not suit with their lazy Temper. In 1655, a rich Copper Mine was discover'd in the Lapmark of *Torna*, where 100 lb. of Oar yields 40. In 1668, another was found 3 Leagues N. from the former. One of Iron was discover'd in 1640, near *Kengis*, where there is vast Quantities of it, and extream fine. *Charles XIth's* Mathematicians saw both those Mines in their Travels to *Lapland*, and say, That the Metal is carried with great Charge and Danger by rapid Rivers, and dangerous Cataracts, to the Gulph of *Bothnia*. Another Mine was lately discover'd in the same Lapmark, 100 lb. of the Oar of which yields 150 lb. of Copper.

Of their STONES, JEWELS, and PEARLS.

They have no Free-stone, but have others that bear the Impression of Animals, Trees, &c. and some that are shap'd like Counters. The *Laplanders* make Gods of 'em. They have abundance of Chrystal, which, if well polish'd and set, resembles Diamonds. *Beurais* speaks of Amethysts there; but they are flat and full of Clouds; and they have Topazes of a pale yellow. All their Precious Stones are much worse than those found elsewhere; and their Pearls are of a bad Water, and not comparable to the Oriental.

Of their RIVERS, LAKES, &c.

Most of them rise from the Mountains of *Norway*, and fall into the Gulph of *Bothnia*. The River *Uma* is increas'd by the Rivers *Vindilor*, *Pitha*, and *Skiofsre*. *Lahla* and *Kima* are considerable for their Bigness, and are augmented in their Course by vast Numbers of lesser ones. *Torna* receives 29 Rivers, one of which is a Swedish Mile

broad, as *Charles XIth's* Mathematicians inform us. When the Snow melts, those Rivers overflow their Banks, and all of 'em have frightful Cataracts. *Lapland* has also many Lakes, which, as also the Rivers, abound with Fish.

Of the Inhabitants, their Manners and Customs.

They are generally of a low Stature, of about 4 Foot and a half high: They stoop for most part, which some think is occasion'd by the Lowness of their Cottages: Their Complexion is swarthy, which is thought to be partly from the Coldness of the Air, and the constant Smoak of their low Huts. They are flat Fac'd, have broad and low Noses, hollow and bear'd Eyes, wide Mouths, black, straight and thin Hair, broad Breasts, slender Waists, and small Legs, but are swift, nimble, and so strong, that a *Norwegian* is not able to bend their Bows above one half. They are good Divers. 'Tis observ'd of them, That when they are transported to more moderate Climates, they seldom live long; tho' in their own Country they live to a good Age. They are great Cowards; therefore the *Swedes* never employ them in their Wars. Since their Converse with Foreigners, they have learn'd to cheat; but they are charitable to the Poor, and hospitable to Strangers.

The *Laplanders* on the Mountains live on the Flesh and Milk of their Rain-Deer: They also buy Cows and Sheep from *Norway*, and kill them against Winter. They hang their Rain-Deer's Flesh to dry in the Cold, as others do by Fire and Heat; and they have Plenty of Cheese.

Those who dwell in Woods and low Grounds feed on Venison and Fish. They have no Bread nor Salt; but instead of the latter, use the inner Rind of Pine-Tree dry'd: They sometimes pound their Fish to a Powder, which is their Flower. Their Confections are of Bramble-Berries, that they think good against the Scurvy, and Angelica, which they broil after the outer Rind is peel'd off. Their Drink is Water, of which in Winter they have always a Kettle

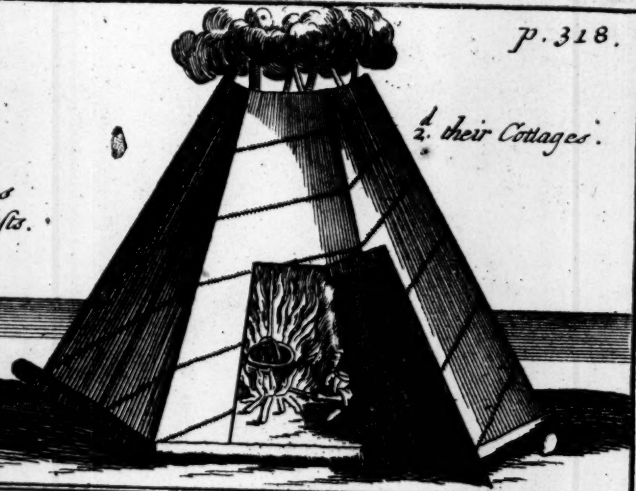


The Draughtsman of an Ancient Finlander.



1st The Laplanders houses on Trees for

landers houses for fear of Wild Beasts.



2^d their Cottages.



The Laplanders Summer dress.



A Laplander travelling over the Snow.



*Winter
Garments.*



*A Laplander on his Sledge drawn by a
Rein-Deer.*



A Laplander

*remoueing his
Family..*

Kettle over the Fire; and they also drink the Broth of Fish and Flesh boil'd together. In Summer, they wear a close Garment, reaching to the middle of their Leg, and gird them with Belts. They have no Linen, and their Clothes are made of coarse Wool, of a light grey Colour, without dying. The richer Sort have their Clothes of different Colours, and delight most in red. They hang at their Girdle a *Norway Knife*, and a Pouch, which keeps their Flint and Matches, Tobacco, and other odd Things. They wear Brass Rings and Chains on their Girdle. Their Night-Caps are of the Skins of the Bird Loom, with the Feathers on. Their Shoes are of the Skin of Rain-Deer, with the Hair outwards; sow'd at bottom, so as the Hair of one Part of the Sole lies forward, and the other backward; for if it should run all one way, it would be too slippery. In Winter, their Clothes are of the Skins of Rain-Deer, with the Hair inward. Their Caps, Boors and Gloves, are of the same. The Women's Apparel is not much different from that of the Men. They hang to their Girdles many Chains, Toys, Rings, Knives, with a Needle-Case, and other Things, sometimes weighing 20 Pound Weight. Their Thread is made of the Nerves of Rain-Deer, and they lie in Winter on their Skins. In Summer, they cover themselves at Nights, Face and all, with Blankets of coarse Wool, to defend them from the Gnats.

Formerly they wander'd about, and had no fix'd Habitation; but in 1602, *Charles IX.* of Sweden assign'd them their respective Abodes; but they still remove from Place to Place, as they find most fit for Pasture and Fishing within their own Bounds.

Their Huts are made of Pieces of Timber or Rafter's join'd together, and cover'd with Turf, or the Branches and Bark of Pine-Trees, and coarse Cloth. Some of their Houses are built upon Trees, to prevent their being overwhelm'd by Snow, or devour'd by Wild-Beasts. Their Huts have two Doors, at the lesser of which no Women must enter, because from thence the Men go to hunt, and look upon it as an ill Omen to meet a Woman. Their Store-houses are built on Trees, to secure their Provisions from Bears and other Wild-Beasts.

They have Days which they call Lucky and Unlucky in their Kalendar, and in the latter never go a hunting. In Summer, they pursue the Wild-Beasts with Dogs, and on Winter they follow their Tracks in the Snow with their Pattens or Scates. They kill the small Beasts with their Bows and Arrows, and the larger with Spears and Fire-Arms. They catch Ermins in Traps, as we do Mice, and sometimes they catch them with Dogs. They kill Squirrels, Martens and Sables, with blunt Darts, for fear of spoiling their Skins. They also kill Foxes, Beavers, &c. with Darts; but are careful to hit them, so as not to spoil their Skins. The Baron *Herberstein* says, they are the best Marks-men in the World. They sometimes use poisonous Baits; and they catch the wild Rain-Deer by letting out a tame Female, behind which the Huntsman hides himself, and shoots the wild ones. They dig Pits for larger sorts of Wild-Beasts, and have their own Fore-*rest Laws*; for if any catch a Wild-Beast in a Trap laid by another, he must give it to the Owner of the Snare or Trap; and he that first traces a Bear's-Den, has the Management of hunting him. They account the Flesh of this Beast the greatest Rarity imaginable. When they have caught a Bear, and return home, they are welcom'd by the Women, who spit chew'd Elder-Bark on their Faces, and there they are feasted for three Days. He that kills the Bear, is distinguish'd from the rest by Laces round his Cap, wrought with Tin Wire. When they kill any Fowl with a Gun, they pull two Feathers out of the left Wing, to appease the Anger of the God of the Fore-*rest*. One of their Skates is ordinarily as long as themselves, and the other is about a Foot shorter. They are fasten'd to their Feet by Withs, for which they have Holes on the upper Part. They put their Feet into the middle of the Skates, and use a long Pole, at the end of which there's a round Piece of Wood to hinder it from piercing too deep in the Snow, and run with great Swift-*ness* over it, as others do over Ice, without Weariness, and travel 60 Miles a Day with great Ease. Their Skates are cover'd with the rough Skins of Rain-Deer. The Hair is laid so as turn against the Snow, which

which prevents their falling backward; so that in this manner they can climb steep Mountains, and slide down again with all the Ease imaginable.

They make all their own Moveables and Boats, and fasten the Boards with Twigs, the Nerves of Rain-Deer, or the Roots of Trees twisted together like Ropes, and caulk 'em with Moss to keep out the Water. They are 6 Yards long, and $1\frac{1}{2}$ broad, and have sometimes 4 Oars. All of them make their own Sledges, which are shap'd like Boats, only they are flat behind, and not pointed as before: The Bottom is convex, that it may slide with the more Ease over the Snow. When they travel, they cover their Feet with Sea Calf-Skin, and lay Moss beneath them. They make Boxes of thin Birch Planks, and inlay them with Rain-Deer's Horns. They are dexterous at making Baskets of the Roots of Trees, slit in long thin Pieces, and twisted together, so as to hold Water on Occasion. The Swedes are very fond of those Baskets. The Laplanders make handsome Spoons of the Horns of Rain-Deer, and Moulds, in which they engrave Flowers and Birds, and cast Tin in them, with which they adorn their Girdles. The Men dress all the Meat. The Women are employ'd in making Clothes and Shoes, Harness for the Rain-Deer, spinning Thread, and in knitting the Fur of Hairs into Caps and Gloves, which are very soft and warm. They also draw Tin into Wire through a Horn with their Teeth, sometimes round, and sometimes half flat; and they cover their Thread with it for embroidering the Shapes of Beasts, Flowers, Stars, &c.

The Traces which tie the Rain-Deer to the Sledge are fasten'd about their Necks, go down by their Breasts through their fore and hind Legs, and are join'd to the Prow of the Sledge. The Reins are ty'd to their Horns, and held by the Traveller, who is tied in the Sledge as a Child in a Cradle, and has a Stick in his Hand to remove any Stone or Wood in his Way. He must balance the Sledge wsth his Body; for the Bottom being Semicircular, 'tis in Danger of being overfet. They hang Bells to the Trappings of the Rain-Deer, which please those Beasts very much. Before they set off, their Master, or those acquainted with

them, never fail to whisper something in their Ears. They travel frequently 48 English Miles in 10 Hours. The Laplanders are generally idle, never work but when forc'd by Necessity, and disdain all Foreigners.

Of their RELIGION.

BECAUSE this Nation has no ancient History, 'tis difficult to give an Account of their ancient Paganism, or to know if it was the same with what is now. Zeigler, who liv'd about the Time of the Reformation, thinks that Christianity was known among 'em before that Time. Others think, St. Erick, who liv'd above 500 Years ago, might introduce Christianity among them, Zeigler says, That in his Time, tho they had then heard of it, they hated it; but to please the Kings of Sweden, they did not openly declare against it.

Gustavus Erickson was the first who was any way successful in his Endeavours to establish Christianity among them; for bringing 'em immediately to depend on the Crown, he order'd them to meet at a certain Time of the Year to pay their Tribute to his Collectors, with whom he sent Ministers to teach them, and to baptize their Children; for till then they had no Churches nor Preachers. Gustavus Adolphus and Queen Christina founded Schools and Churches among them, and appointed Salaries for that End. Gustavus Adolphus order'd likewise some of the most useful Books to be translated out of the Swedish into the Lapland Tongue, which were the first that ever appear'd in that Language. In Queen Christina's Time, the Psalms of David, the Proverbs of Solomon, Ecclesiastes, Luther's Catechism, Sacred Hymns, and other Books of Devotion, were translated. More Books were also translated afterwards. And that they might be encouraged to send their Children to School, an Annual Revenue was allotted to maintain the Scholars both in Viſuals and Clothes. By this means some of the Laplanders became Preachers, which contributed much to the Improvement of Christian Knowledge there; for before that Time, all their Sermons were in the Swedish Tongue, of which the Laplanders knew little.

*Of the Reminders of Paganism
among them.*

There are still such considerable Remains of Paganism, as encline many Authors to believe that they never heartily embrac'd Christianity. The *Laplenders* plead the Authority of their Ancestors as a sufficient Reason to justify their Practices. The great Distance of Churches is us'd by them as an Excuse for their not coming to Worship; and they make heavy Complaints against the Covetousness of their Clergy. They think many Days of the Year unlucky, and will undertake no manner of Business upon them. If they meet in a Morning with such a Beast or Bird as they reckon a bad Omen, they return to their Huts, and don't stir abroad that Day. They don't believe the Resurrection, and worship their Idols and Christ promiscuously, and with the same manner of Worship, in which they are uniform, tho' they give their Idols various Names in different Places. They believe there are Fairies that wander about among Rocks, Mountains, Rivers and Lakes, and give them also a share of their Devotion. They own one Supreme God, whom they call with Thunder-bolts: They make the Rainbow his Bow, and have the same Notion of him that the old Pagans had of their *Jupiter*. They have another Subordinate God, to whom they acknowledge they owe all the Blessings of Life, and never fail to worship him. The Sun, whom they call *Baiver*, is another of their Divinities, because of his Influence on the Bodies of Men and Beasts. They have Temples and Images consecrated to each of their Gods. Their Idols are either the Trunks of Trees rudely carv'd, or of Stone. One of those is preserv'd in the Royal Cabinet of Antiquities at *Upsal*. All their Women are excluded from Worship; and they consult their Drum, whether the Sacrifice they intend to offer be acceptable; and they anoint the Idol with the Heart-blood of the Sacrifice: And when they cannot reach the Top of a Mountain consecrated to *Storjunker*, one of their Deities, they dip a Stone in the Blood of the Sacrifice, throw it up to the

Mountain, and so conclude their Devotion; and sometimes they strow Branches of Birch and Pine about their Images.

Of their MAGICK.

This Country has always been remarkable for that Diabolical Art: They excuse themselves, alledging it necessary for them to use Enchantments, to prevent their being hurt by others. Parents and Masters here teach young Children those Devilish Arts, and bequeath to them, as Part of their Inheritance, such Spirits as they suppose they have found serviceable to themselves. Each Family has their own Demons, and some of them foresee Things to come against their Will. Sometimes Demons appear to them in the Woods, and teach 'em a certain Song, that they must never forget, and they always appear to them for their Service when that Song is sung.

Their Drum is the most usual Instrument for Magick, and is made of the hollow Trunk of a large Pine, Fir, or Birch Tree, that grow in particular Places, or the Skin that covers it. They paint with the Juice of an Alder-Tree several red Figures with the Names of their Gods, the Beasts they hunt in the Woods, Birds, Fishes, Rivers, Lakes, &c. and with their Pagan Gods they paint also the Persons of the Trinity, and such other Figures as they think suit their Occasions.

When they use this Drum, they have an Index and a Hammer: The first is a Bunch of Rings made of Metal, and they beat the Drum with the Hammer, which puts the Rings in motion; and when they touch such and such Figures, they take it as a Determination of the Event of the Things they enquire about, and of the Expediency and good Success of their Undertakings. He that beats the Drum, and all that are present, must then kneel, and no Woman must touch the Drum. When the Drummer beats, he mutters some Charms, falls into a Trance, and continues in it answerable to the Distance of the Place he is to bring an Account from. During this Trance, all that are present must sing, and when he recovers, he gives them an Account of all their Questions as to the Health of their
absent

absent Friends, &c. and to convince them of the Truth of what he says, he sometimes brings a Ring, Knife or Shoe, &c. from the Place. When the Rings go about according to the Course of the Sun, they promise themselves Success in their Hunting, Fishing, &c. and if otherwise, they look for bad Luck.

They also tie Knots, by which they pretend to make the Winds favourable or cross to Seafaring Men. From the Voyage undertaken by the Company erected at *Copenhagen* in 1647, by *Frederick III.* of *Denmark*, we have this Account of these Wind-Merchants: They sent a Boat ashore to fetch the most noted Necromancer of the Place, who told them that he could not afford them Wind to the North-Cape, because his Command reached no further than the Cape of *Roucella*; and for 10 Crowns he sold them a Wind to that Cape, in a Piece of Linnen-Cloth tied with three Knots. When the Master of the Ship untied the first Knot, they had a fine Gale from E. S. E. which carried them 30 Leagues beyond the *Maelstrom*, and dangerous Rocks and Whirlpools on the Coasts of *Norway*: Then they were becalm'd, which oblig'd them to untie the second Knot; upon which they had a favourable Wind to the Cape *Roucella*; and the Wind then failing them, the Master untied the third Knot; after which they had a terrible Tempest: But we must leave the Reader to his own Judgment, whether this Account be fabulous, or that such Things are really performed by Evil Spirits.

They send abroad Flies of a bluish Colour, which they pretend to be their Familiars, to hurt their Enemies, their Cattle, or their Children; and sometimes they pretend that they cleave Rocks asunder, and try which of their Familiars are most powerful, and those are reckon'd so that kill the other Person's Rain-Deer, Wives or Children. They likewise use Balls made of Moss, or of the Hair of Beasts, for that purpose, and pretend by this means to convey Serpents into their Enemies Bodies, and so destroy them.

Their Language has greater Affinity with the *Finnish* than with any other, tho' it has a Mixture of other Tongues, as the *Swedish*, *Norwegian*, and *Tartar*.

Of their MARRIAGES.

THE young Men court young Women whose Parents or Friends can give 'em most Rain-Deer, and must bribe all her Relations for their Consent. When he comes first, he stands at the Door, and must not come in till her Father allow him; and if the Father break his Promise of giving him his Daughter, the Suitor recovers all his Expence and Gifts. When the Bride goes to Church, she is dragg'd along by her Relations, and pretends the greatest Reluctancy to Matrimony. The Bridegroom must serve his Father-in-Law a Year before he can take away his Wife, and her Patrimony of Rain-Deer: When all the Friends give Presents to the new married Couple. The *Laplanders* are observ'd to be very jealous.

The Women of this Country are frequently barren, and few of them have above 7 or 8 Children. After they are deliver'd, they take a good Draught of Whale's Fat, which they have from *Norway*: They walk the Child with Snow or cold Water, but don't suffer the Water to touch its Head till it be baptiz'd; then they wrap it in a Hare's-Skin. The Women lie in only 4 or 5 Days, and then go about their Business as before. They all of 'em suckle their own Children, and their Cradles are made of a Piece of hollow Timber, like a small Boat. The Child has no Bed-Clothes, but a kind of soft and fine Moss, and they cover it over with the tender Skin of a young Rain-Deer. When the *Lapland* Women travel, they tie this Cradle, with the Child in it, to their Back. When they rock the Child, they fasten the Cradle with a Rope to the Roof of the Hut, and tossing it from one side to the other, lull the Child asleep. The Boys are taught from their Infancy to handle their Bows, and shoot at a Mark, and are not allow'd to eat in a Morning till they have hit it. The Mothers train the Girls to Women's Business.

Of their GOVERNMENT.

They had Kings of their own till 1277, about which Time *Paulus Jovius* says, *Magnus Laduslax* undertook the Conquest of this

this Country, and employ'd their Neighbours of the District of *Bikarti* on this Design, who surpris'd the chief *Laplanders*, kill'd many of them, and obliged the rest to submit, which encouraged the *Muscovites* and *Norwegians* to conquer the *Laplanders* in their Neighbourhood. In 1518, *Gustavus Erickson* depriv'd those of *Bikarti* of the Tribute they had receiv'd from the *Laplanders* since the Time of *Magnus Laduslase*. They have now 3 Governors, who keep each a Court for the Administration of Justice.

In 1602, it was ordain'd, That instead of Skins, they should pay to the Crown of *Sweden* every Tenth Rain-Deer, and the Tenth of all their dry'd Fish. In 1606, instead of the former Tribute, each Native of *Lapland*, above the Age of 17, was to pay 2 Buck Rain-Deer, or 3 Does, 8 Pound of dry'd Fish, every Tenth Fawn of their tame Rain-Deer, and the Tenth of all the Fish they catch'd. Now they pay their Tribute in Rain-Deer, Money, or Skins. Each of them that possess such an Allotment of Land, pays two Rix-Dollars *per Annum*. Every Head of a Family must pay one white Fox-Skin, or two Pair of *Lapland* Shoes; or instead of them, half a *Lapland* Pound of dry'd Pikes. They pay also a certain Tribute to the Czar and the King of *Denmark*, for Liberty to hunt and fish in their Territories.

The Time of paying their Tribute to the *Swedish* Governors is at the Fairs, where most of their Trade is by Barter. Their Commodities are, Ermins, the Skins of Black, Red, Blue and White, Foxes, the Skins of Otters, Gluttons or Badgers, of Martens, Beavers, Squirrels, Wolves, Bears, Rain-Deer, and their Skins, *Lapland* Garments, Boots, Shoes, Gloves, dry'd Pike, Cheeses of Rain-Deer's Milk, &c. Those Commodities they exchange for Woollen and Linen Cloth, Copper, Brass, Salt, Meal, Ox's Hides, Brimstone, Needles, Knives, *Aqua-Vita*, and Tobacco, of which last they are extream fond. They buy Black Cattle and Sheep from *Norway*. Their Fairs are kept on the Ice.

Of their DISEASES and BU- RIALS.

NO Pestilential Disease is known here; but they are frequently troubled with sore Eyes, which is owing to their smoaky Huts. They are also subject to the Pleurisy, Inflammation of the Lungs, and Giddiness of the Head. They have no Physicians, and their universal Medicine is Angelica, boil'd in Whey of Rain-Deer's Milk. When they have a Pain in their Back, they anoint it with the Grease of Serpents. When they have Pains in their Limbs, they apply burning Chips, which occasion a Blister, and they think that draws off the Viscous Humour. To Wounds, they apply the Resin of Trees. When their Limbs are benumb'd with Cold, they thrust a red-hot Iron into a Rain-Deer's Cheese, and with the Oil that distils from thence, they anoint the affected Part with incredible Success. They boil this Cheese in Milk against a Cough, and all other Distempers of the Breast and Lungs. Most of them die rather of Age than by Distempers. When any of them die, a Brass Ring is ty'd to their Right Arm, which they think preserves them from having any Harm done them by the Ghosts of the Deceas'd. They put into the Coffin a Flint and Steel, that they may not want Light in the other World; and they lay a Hatchet by them, that they may cut out their Way to Heaven through Woods, &c. and never fail to lay Bows, Arrows, and Victuals, in the Coffin. If the Person was rich, they sacrifice to his Memory some Rain-Deer every Year; but some of them are buried after a Christian Manner.

Swedish Lapland is divided into 6 Marks or Countries, as *Uma-Lapmark*, *Anguerman-Lapmark*, *Pitha-Lapmark*, *Lula-Lapmark*, *Torna-Lapmark*, and *Kiemi Lapmark*. There's no considerable Town in all this Country, but only a few Villages, needless to be insisted on.

C H A P. XIX.

Of D E N M A R K.

SOME say, this Kingdom has its Name from *Danus*, a Prince of the *Goths* or *Jutes*. *Saxo-Grammaticus* and King *Erick* of Denmark think that it was so called from *Dan*, the Son of *Humble*, who was cotemporary with *David* King of *Israel*; but we cannot trust their ancient Historians, they are so fabulous. *Cluverius* derives it from the *Simus Codanus*; but *Gerardus Vossius*, *Lib. 1. De Idolatria*, *Cap. 7.* thinks that both the *Simus* and the Country were so called from *Woden*, afterwards called *Guodan*, and *Codan*. *Wormius* approves of this Conjecture.

Denmark is bounded on all Sides by the Sea, except where it is join'd to *Holstein*. This Peninsula was the *Chersonesus Cimbrica* of the Ancients. On the W. and N. W. it is wash'd by the German Ocean: On the N. and N. E. it has the Entrance into the *Baltick*, called *Categat*: On the E. the *Baltick*; and on the S. the River *Eider*, which separates it from the Dutchy of *Holstein*.

It lies betwixt $54\frac{1}{2}$ and 58 Deg. of Lat. and 26 and 34 Deg. of Long. *De la Ferrest* says, From the Borders of *Holstein*, to the most Northerly Parts of that Peninsula, 'tis 270 English Miles; and its greatest Breadth from W. to E. comprehending the Islands, 180 . *Burro* says, *Jutland* is 212 Miles from N. to S.

The HISTORY of Denmark.

THOUGH *Puffendorff* owns, That Denmark is one of the most ancient Kingdoms of Europe; yet *Buratus a Swede* says, That *Dan*, the Son of *Humble*, was only cotemporary with their 16th King. Most of the Danish Historians make one *Danus* or *Dan*

the first of their Kings, who headed the *Cimbri* and *Goths*, or *Jutes*, that marched into Germany, which they ravaged. Then they pretended that they worsted the Roman Army in several Engagements; but at last were defeated by *Marius* at *Verceil* 100 Years before the Birth of Christ, and returning homeward, settled in *Jutland*, which was so call'd from the *Jutes*. *Olav Wormius* owns, That the ancient History of Denmark is obscure and fabulous; and that most of the ancient Inscriptions that might have given Light to it are much defac'd, and many of them at this great distance of Time not legible. *Saxo Grammaticus's* Reputation is not much to be relied on; for every one is satisfied that he carries the Antiquity of his Country too high, and advances Fables for true History: So we cannot pretend to give an exact List of their ancient Kings; but shall only take Notice of such of them as were most remarkable.

Frothe III. is one of the most famous among them. *Wormius* thinks he Reign'd about the Birth of Christ, and says he was very rich, and so clear'd Denmark of Thieves and Robbers, that if Gold or Silver had been left in the Streets, it would have been safe.

Gotrick assisted *Wittekind*, King of the Saxons, against *Charles the Great*, by whom he was defeated: After which, to secure his Territories from the Inroads of *Charles's* Army, he built the Wall called *Danewerk*, which cross'd the Isthmus, and reach'd from the Mouth of the River *Eider* to *Sleswick* or *Gottorp*.

Erick began to Reign about A. Ch. 846, and is reckon'd the first Christian King; yet others say, his Brother *Harald*, who reign'd before him, did profess Christianity, being





being converted by Means of *Ludovicus Pius*. About this Time the *Danes*, under the Command of *Rollo*, are said to have settled in *Normandy*.

Erick, call'd the *Bairn*, or the *Child*, succeeded: His Government at first was very just; but at last he became cruel, persecuted the Christians, kill'd more Bishops, and demolish'd more Churches, both in *England*, *Germany*, and *Denmark*, than all his Predecessors. He died about 902.

Canutus the Hairy came after: In his Time every third Man in *Denmark* was obliged by Lot to go and seek his Fortune, and thereupon they over-ran *Prussia*, *Courland*, and *Semigallia*, and settled there. He died a Heathen in 912.

Frotho came next, who, according to their Historians, was 29 Years King of *Denmark* and *England*, and died a Christian.

His Son *Gormo* succeeded, who was born in *England*, and baptiz'd at *Aldre* in *Somersetshire*. King *Alfred* was his Godfather, and gave him the Name of *Athelstane*. From him, a Village near *Huntingdon* is called *Gorman-Chester*, as *Cambden* informs us.

Harald Blaataud, his Son, succeeded: He was worsted in many Encounters by *Otto I.* Emperor of *Germany*; from whom the Sea betwixt *Jutland* and *Fuhnen* was called *Ostensundt*, because that Emperor threw his Lance into it, as the utmost Limits of his Expedition.

His Son *Sueno Otto* succeeded in 980. At first he persecuted the Christians; but at last was converted, and founded three Bishopricks, at *Sleswick*, *Ripe*, and *Arhus*. The *Jutes* took him Prisoner, and he was ransomed by the Women, who on this Account had afterwards an equal Share of their Father's Inheritance with the Males. He conquer'd a Part of *England*, and died in 1012.

His Son *Canute*, or *Knute II.* surnam'd the Great, came after him, and was at the same Time King of *England*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Slavonia*, and *Sambland*. He was buried at *Winchester* in 1036.

Hardiknut, his Son, succeeded in the Kingdom of *England*, where he died in 1041.

Magnus King of *Norway* seiz'd the Kingdom of *Denmark* upon the Death of *Hardiknut*, died in 1048. and was succeeded by *Sueno Esfret*, who was a Religious Prince.

• He died in 1076, and left behind him five Sons, who came all successively to the Throne.

Harald the Eldest Reign'd two Years: He was a soft, effeminate, and bigotted Prince, which encouraged the *English* to throw off the *Danish* Yoak without any considerable Difficulty, after they had been subject to them 120 Years.

St. Canute, his second Brother, succeeded, and commanded his Subjects to pay Tythes to the Clergy. His Brother *Olaf* misrepresented this pious Design of *Canute*, and instigated the People to a Rebellion; upon which they took Arms, drove him out of *Jutland*, pursued him to *Fuhnen*, and barbarously murder'd him in the Cathedral of *Odense*, the Capital of that Island, in 1088.

Olaf Sueno, 3d Son, was declared King by his Party; in whose Reign a great Famine happen'd, which they reckon'd a Judgment for the Murther of their former King. Many of the People died for want of Bread, and *Olaf* himself had a Share in that Want. He died a Penitent in 1095.

Erick the Good Sueno, 4th Son, succeeded, died in his Pilgrimage to *Jerusalem*, and was buried in the Isle of *Cyprus* in 1106. In his Time, *Lunden* in *Schonen* was made an Archbishop's See. Before this Time, all the *Danish* Bishops were subject to the Archbishop of *Bremen*.

After his Death, the Kingdom was in great Confusion, because *Sueno III.* *Canute VI.* and *Waldemar I.* were all Competitors for the Crown; and after much Bloodshed, they agreed to divide the Kingdom into 3 Parts.

Nicolas, *Sueno's* youngest Son, was slain in 1135, by the *Jutes*, in Revenge of *Canute* Duke of *Flanders*, whom *Nicolas* had caus'd to be killed.

Erick Edmund, a good King, succeeded: He abdicated the Government, and put himself into a Monastery at *Odense* in *Fuhnen*, where he died in 1147.

Sueno Gratenbede, *Erick Edmund's* Son, got the Crown upon the Death of his Kinsman *Erick Lamb*. At this Time there were three Kings in *Denmark*. After 10 Years Civil Wars, in which both *Sueno* and *Canute* were slain, the whole Kingdom was govern'd by *Waldemar*, surnam'd the Great: He repair'd the Ruins of *Gotrick's* Wall, built a stronger one of Brick, and enlarged the Ditch. He

subdued the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Rugen*, who had been troublesome to *Denmark*, was Lord of all the Countries on the North of the *Elbe*, and died in 1182.

Canute, his Son, succeeded, and fought with great Success against the Emperor of *Germany*, who pretended a Superiority over *Denmark*. After he had Reign'd 22 Years, he died at *Ringsted* in 1202.

Waldemar II. his Brother, came next. At first he was very fortunate, and Reign'd over *Denmark*, *Livonia*, *Courland*, *Prussia*, *Pomerania*, *Rugen*, *Mecklenburg*, *Holstein*, *Stormar*, *Dithmarsen*, and *Wageren*, and the Cities of *Lubeck* and *Lunenburg*. The Emperor of *Germany* design'd to have invaded *Denmark*; but when he heard of the Preparations *Waldemar* made against him, he refus'd. *Wormius* says, he was a great Lover of Antiquities, and gave considerable Sums to those that were skilful in reading old Inscriptions. He abolish'd the Use of the fiery Ordeal, and died in 1242.

His Son *Erick* succeeded. *Waldemar* had given other Parts of the Kingdom to his other Sons, viz. to *Abel*, *Sleswick*; to *Canute*, *Bleking*; and to *Christopher*, *Lalana* and *Falster*, which occasion'd great Broils among the Brothers. At last *Erick* was murder'd by *Abel*, and he himself was slain by his Subjects in 1252.

He was succeeded by his Brother *Christopher I.* to whom the Archbishop of *Landen* occasion'd many Troubles, for which *Christopher* imprison'd him. Upon this the Clergy excommunicated the King, and at last he was poison'd by *Arnefast* Bishop of *Ahus* with the Eucharist.

Erick, his Son, abandon'd himself to all manner of Vice: He debauch'd the Wife of *Andrew Stigot*, Marshal of *Denmark*, who in Revenge murder'd him at *Endelorp*, a small Village in the Bishoprick of *Wiberg*, in 1286.

His Son *Menved* succeeded, was a pious Prince, and died in 1319.

Christopher II. *Menved*'s Brother, succeeded, and being vicious like his Father, his Subjects banish'd him, and made *Waldemar Duke of Sleswick* their King; but growing weary also of him, they recalled *Christopher*, in whose Reign *Schonen* surrender'd it self to *Sweden*, and *John Duke of Holstein* sold all his Pretensions to it for 70000 Marks of

fine Silver; most Parts of *Denmark* having afterwards revolted from him. He died at *Nicoping* in the Isle of *Falster* in 1333.

After his Death, the *Danes* had an Interregnum of 7 Years; during which Time the *Holsteiners* brought a great Part of *Denmark* under their Subjection; and the *Danes*, in order to drive them out of *Denmark*, invited *Waldemar III.* the Son of *Christopher II.* into the Kingdom.

He had the Character of a bold, subtle, and covetous Prince. When Pope *Gregory XI.* threaten'd to excommunicate him for slighting the Orders of the Apostolical See, he wrote a Letter to the Pope, telling him, That he held his Life from God, his Kingdom from his Subjects, his Riches from his Parents, and his Faith from the Pope's Predecessors, which if the Pope envied him, he was willing to quit it to him. He sold *Esthonia* and *Revel* to the Knights of the Cross for 28000 Marks of fine Silver, which was employed to defray the Charge of his Journey to the Holy Land. He got *Schonen* back again from *Magnus Smek* by fair Promises, and *Gothland* was also surrender'd to him. He had frequent Wars with the *Hans-Towns*, and died in 1375.

After him Reign'd his Grandson *Olav VI.* by his Daughter *Margaret*, and *Haukin* King of *Norway*. During his Minority, his Mother *Margaret* had the Administration of Affairs. After his Father's Death, he was King of *Norway*, and also claim'd the Crown of *Sweden*, because his Father was Son of *Magnus Smek*, King of that Country; but he died young.

In his stead the *Danes* and *Norwegians* made *Margaret* their Queen: She declar'd *Erick* of *Pomerania*, Son to her Sister's Daughter by the Duke of *Pomerania*, King. She made War against *Albert* King of *Sweden*, and in one Campaign she took him, *Rodolph Duke of Mecklenburg*, and the Earls of *Holstein* and *Reppin*, Prisoners. The *Swedes* being dissatisfied with their King, deserted him, and acknowledg'd her for Queen. In 1396, she made the Union of *Calmar*, which has been discours'd of at large in the History of *Sweden*. She died in 1412.

Erick succeeded: He surrender'd to his Cousins the Dukes of *Pomerania* the Island of *Rugen*, that had been long subject to the *Danes*. The *Swedes* were displeas'd with

Erick,

Erick, because he did not govern according to his Coronation-Oath, and oppressed them by Foreigners. The *Danes* thought him careless of their Affairs, and alledging he endeavour'd to settle the Succession on *Bogslaw* Duke of *Pomerania*, they chose *Christopher* of *Bavaria*; upon which *Erick* retir'd into *Pomerania*, where he died in 1438.

Christopher Duke of *Bavaria's* Reign was but short: He was successful against the Rebels of *Jutland*, and the *Hans-Towns*. He died Childless in 1448. The *Danes* call him a good Prince; but the *Swedes* had no Reason to be pleas'd with his Government.

Christian Earl of *Oldenburg*, his Sister's Son, succeeded, was declared King both by the *Danes* and *Norwegians*; and in this Family those two Crowns have remained ever since by a constant Succession. He made War upon the *Swedes*, because they had made *Charles* *Cnutsons* King; of which, see more in the *Swedish-History*. In 1471, the Emperor *Frederick* III. gave him *Dithmarsen* in Fief. He married his Daughter *Margaret* to *James* III. of *Scotland*, quitted to him the *Orkney* Islands and *Schetland* for a Dowry, and died in 1481.

His Son *John* succeeded. In 1501, he was miserably routed by the *Dithmarsians*, and died of the Plague at *Alburg* in 1513.

Christian II. his Son, succeeded. The *Danes* hated him, because he was entirely managed by *Sigiberta*, a Dutch Woman of mean Birth; as also because he had caused *Drilareven* *Ous*, the Governor of the Castle of *Copenhagen*, to be unjustly executed. We have spoke already of his Cruelties in the History of *Sweden*. The *Danes* revolted from him, and chose his Uncle *Frederick* Duke of *Holstein* for their King.

Frederick I. was Crown'd in 1524. The Reformation began here in his Time. *Christian* gather'd some Forces, with a Design to regain the Crown; but they were soon dispers'd. The Emperor *Charles* V. tho' he promis'd it, could give no Help to *Christian*, because he was entangled in War with *France*. And when *Christian* came with a Fleet to *Norway*, he was routed and taken by Count *Guldenstern*, and imprison'd in the Castle of *Cullenberg* in *Zealand*, where he died in 1559. *Frederick* died at *Sleswick* in 1533.

Christian III. his Son, succeeded, who met with great Troubles from the Earl of *Oldenburg* and the *Lubeckers*, that design'd to restore *Christian* II. but he happily disengag'd himself, establish'd the Protestant Religion in *Denmark* and *Norway*, and died in 1558.

His Son and Successor *Frederick* II. subdued the *Dithmarsians*. He made War upon *Erick* King of *Sweden* with various Success; but at last concluded a Peace at *Stetin* in 1570, and died in 1588.

Christian IV. his Son, succeeded, and Reign'd peaceably till 1611, when he made War upon *Charles* IX. of *Sweden*, and took *Calmar* and *Elfsburg*; but restor'd those Places to *Gustavus Adolphus*. In his Reign, *Ferdinand* II. Emperor of *Germany*, over-ran most Part of *Jutland*, and defeated him near *King Lutter*. He lost many Places, which were restor'd by the Peace at *Lubeck* in 1629. In the War betwixt *Sweden* and *Germany*, he was troublesome to the *Swedes*, did all he could to stop their Victories, and spoil their Trade, by detaining and confiscating their Ships in the *Sound*. To revenge this, the *Swedes* fell with an Army into *Holstein*, *Jutland*, and *Schonen*, and did the *Danes* much Damage both by Sea and Land, till the War was ended by the Peace of *Brombro*. The Dutch made use of this Opportunity to regulate the Toll of the *Sound*, which the *Danes* had hitherto exacted at Pleasure, and made it very burdensome to them. *Christian* died in 1648.

Frederick III. his Son, succeeded, who by the Persuasion of the Dutch broke the Peace with the *Swedes*. Upon which *Charles* *Gustavus* came suddenly with an Army into *Holstein* and *Jutland*, and took *Frederick* *Ude* by Storm. And in 1658, there being a great Frost, he march'd over the Ice to *Rubnen*, where he surpris'd the *Danish* Troops. From thence he came to the Islands *Langland*, *Falster*, and *Laland*, and at last to *Zealand*, and laid close Siege to *Copenhagen*, which City, and consequently the whole Kingdom, would have fallen into his Hands, had not the Emperor of *Germany*, the Kings of *Poland* and *England*, and the Dutch, concern'd themselves in the *Danish* Quarrel: Upon which a Peace was made near *Copenhagen*, as has been already said in the History of *Sweden*.

After

After this Peace, the King, at a Diet held at *Copenhagen*, was declared an absolute Monarch, and the Crown made Hereditary, whereby the Privileges of the Nobility were abolished, of which they had made a bad Use, in oppressing the Peasants. Thus a new Form of Government was introduced there, by Vertue of which the whole Management of Affairs depends absolutely on the King's Pleasure. This great Change was made on the 23d of October, 1660; of which more hereafter, when we come to their Government. He died of a Fever, Febr. 16. 1670.

His Son *Christian V.* succeeded, and made an Alliance with the Emperor, *Holland*, and their Confederates. He made War upon the Duke of *Holstein*, took him by Surprise at *Rensburg*, forced him to quit all the Advantages he had got by the Peace at *Roschild*, and obliged him to surrender *Tonningen*, which he demolished, and afterwards took *Wismar* from the *Swedes*. Next Year he enter'd *Schonen*, and took *Helsingberg*, *Lanscrons*, and *Christianstadt*, and the Isle of *Gothland*: But his Troops that went to invest *Helmstadt*, were routed by the King of *Sweden*. In 1677, the *Danes* were beat in a Battle near *Lunden* by the *Swedes*. *Christian* besieg'd *Malmoe*, but was obliged to rise from before it. He was afterwards routed again by the *Swedes* in a Battle near *Landskrona*. In the following Year, the *Danes* were obliged to raise the Siege of *Babuss*, and to surrender *Christianstadt*, which was reduced to Extremity by Famine; but at Sea they had better Success; yet by the following Peace with *Sweden* were obliged to restore all the Places they had taken.

After the Peace at *Antainbleau* betwixt those Crowns in 1679, new Troubles began betwixt the *Danes* and the Duke of *Holstein*, who alledg'd, That by the Peace, he was not only to have the Restitution of all his Dominions, but was also freed from the ancient Union betwixt the two Houses of *Denmark* and *Holstein*. The Duke began to fortify himself by new Alliances, of which the King of *Denmark* having Notice, he sequestred the Duke's Share of the Duchy of *Sleswick* a second time. The King of *Denmark* being encourag'd by the intestine Divisions of the City of *Hamburg*, made

use of that Opportunity to renew his ancient Pretensions on that City, which he besieged; but the *Hamburgers* being reinforced by the Elector of *Brandenburg* and Duke of *Lunenbourg*, sallied upon the *Danes*, chas'd them from their Works, and cut off 1500 of them. This Disaster obliged the King of *Denmark* to make Peace, by which the *Hamburgers* were left in their former Condition. In 1689, the King of *Sweden* declared for the Duke of *Holstein*, because of the above-mention'd Sequestration of the Duke's Part of *Sleswick*; so that a Rupture was likely to have followed betwixt the two Northern Crowns; but by the Mediation of *England* and *Holland*, and the Electors of *Brandenburg* and *Saxony*, a Peace was made at *Altena*, by which the Duke of *Holstein* was restored to all his Possessions and Rights. The *Jus Armorum* was the only Thing not decided by this Treaty, tho the chief Pretension of the Duke; yet the King of *Denmark* consented that the Mediators of the former Treaty should examine and determine it: But the Duke not trusting to this, rais'd some new Fortifications, and took Foreign Troops into his Service, which the *Danes* demolished; but the Duke rebuilt them, and added other additional Works. Upon this the young King of *Denmark*, *Frederick IV.* marched his Troops into the Duke's Territories, beat the *Swedish* and *Holstein* Troops from their Posts and Forts, and once more demolished all the Fortifications built on the Frontiers. After this he besieged *Tonningen*, a considerable Place belonging to the Duke; but the *Swedes*, with the Dukes of *Hanover* and *Zell*, marched to its Relief, and were joined by 3000 *Dutch* Auxiliaries. This obliged the *Danes* to raise the Siege, and retire to their own Territories, whither they were pursued by the *Swedes*. In the mean time the *English* and *Dutch* Fleet join'd the *Swedish* Navy, and dispers'd the *Danish* Fleet, who retir'd to the Harbour of *Copenhagen*, where they were cannonaded for 3 Hours; but the *Danes* were secure in that Harbour, so that only one Seaman was kill'd. The Confederate Fleet not thinking fit to pursue that Design any further, 'twas resolv'd that the King of *Sweden* should land in the Isle of *Zeeland*, which he did with 8000 Men; and

and this brought on the Peace at *Travendahl*, by which the Duke had his *Jus Armorum* granted him, and 260000 Crowns for his Damages by the late Irruption of the *Danes*. This Treaty was in 1700: And nothing remarkable having happen'd in that Kingdom since, 'tis needless to bring their History any lower.

The AIR, SOIL, &c.

THE Air in *Jutland* is not generally so cold as in some more Southerly Places of *Germany*, which proceeds from the nearness of the Sea. In *Zeeland*, the Air is gross and foggy, especially near *Copenhagen*; yet Colds of the Lungs are very rare there, which is attributed to the Pureness of their Firing, which is Beech Wood. Through all *Denmark*, they have but two Seasons, Summer and Winter; so that Extremity of Heat succeeds Extremity of Cold. During the Months of *June*, *July*, and *August*, the Heat is much more intense than in *England*: The Nights then are very sultry; and during all the Summer, they are plagu'd with vast Swarms of Flies, which they are obliged to kill with poison'd Water.

Denmark in general has Plenty of Corn, much of which is exported to *Holland*, *Norway*, *Island*, and other Places. They have Plenty of Black Cattle, great Numbers of which the *Dutch* transport to their more fertile Soil, where they grow prodigiously fat in a little time. They abound with Hogs, and have good Breed of Coach-Horses. The Gentry are much inclin'd to Gardening, and have Melons, Peaches, Grapes, and all sorts of Sallads, very early.

Their Cattle are for most part lean and small, and must be kept within Doors 7 or 8 Months in the Year. The Forrests abound with Game, as Harts, Wild-Boars, Elks, Stags, Roebucks. They have also Plenty of Hares, Conies, &c. and abundance of Fowl, Wild and Tame, and particularly of Partridges.

The *Baltick* affords them Plenty of Fish. Formerly they had Shoals of Herrings on their Coasts; but that Trade is now greatly decayed. They still abound with Cod, Whittings, Place, &c. Their River-

Fish are reckon'd as good as any in the World.

Their Trade of EXPORT

IS in Barley, Wheat, Rye, and Black Cattle, of which they have formerly exported 100000 *per Annum*. They have also Horses, Butter, and Tallow. The *Norwegians* export Timber of all kinds, especially Fir; but the Exportation of Oak is forbidden. They likewise export Masts, Tar, Pitch, Stock-Fish, Oil, and Iron. They have Copper and Silver Mines, but of small Value. Most Authors observe, That Trade is decaying in *Denmark*, for which they blame their Arbitrary Government, the great Taxes upon the Inhabitants, and the great Expence they are at in Keeping up so many standing Forces: All which diverts the Money that ought to be employed in Trade, which is also discouraged, because the Inhabitants know that the Government may seize at Pleasure what they have earn'd by their Industry.

Some Manufactories were lately set up by Courtiers and great Men, particularly those of Silks and Drinking-Glasses; but in a little time they came to nothing, because Trade is not to be forced where real Advantages and Encouragements are not to be found, and where Property is not secured.

Their Trade of IMPORT

IS Salt from *Portugal* and *France*: From the latter they have Wine, Brandy, Silks, and other Vanities, to which the rich People there are much addicted. *England* and *Holland* import many Commodities, both of their own Manufacture, and from their Plantations. Some reckon that 300 Vessels from *England* pass the *Sound* Yearly, and 1000 from *Holland*: Both those Nations pay for the most part ready Money for the Goods they export from *Norway*: The *Danes* have begun lately to bring Spices in their own Bottoms from the *East-Indies*, where they have a small Fort on the Coast of *Coremandel*: They have also an *East-India* Company, of which most of their Men of Quality are Members.

The Ancient INHABITANTS

WERE the *Cimbri*, of whom *Tacitus* gives this Account, *Cap. 37. De Mor. Germanorum*, That there were not many of them then remaining; but there were still some Monuments to be seen of their ancient Bravery, Power, and Numbers. They gave Name to *Jutland*, anciently called the *Chersonesus Cimbrica*, and had many People subject to them, whom *Ptolemy* names. *Wormius* is positive that the *Cimmerii* and *Cimbri* are one People, and quotes for it the Authority of *Procopius*, who was a General in *Belisarius's* Army against the *Goths* and *Vandals*. *Procopius* says also, That the *Goths* or *Geta* were the same with the *Cimmerii*. *Wormius* says further to this purpose, That *Wibourg* in *Jutland* was 600 Years ago called *Cimmerberg*. *Jonas Koldingensis* says, there is a Town on the Coast of *Schonen* called *Cimbershaven*. These People made many Expeditions into the East, and some of them settled in that Peninsula now called *Little Tartary*, where was the ancient *Bosphorus Cimmerius*. It is most probable that the Northern Places, from whence the *Cimbri* came, gave the first Rise to the Poets to speak so much of the *Cimmerian* Darkness, because, as has been mention'd already, they alledg'd all those Countries had perpetual Night.

Sabellicus and *Saxo Grammaticus* say, That the *Longobardi* were Inhabitants of *Jutland*, and alledge, That they left their Country about *A. C. 414*, there being then such a Famine in *Denmark*, that they were obliged to make a Law, That all the old People and Infants should be killed, because they were useless to their Country, that those who remained, and could manure the Ground, might have Food. Others propos'd, That it were more fit that some of the Inhabitants, for whom there was no Food at home, should go abroad and seek their Fortunes, which prevailed; so that they left their Country, and settled in the North of *Italy*, which from them was called *Lombardy*; but *Paulus Diaconus* says, they were called *Longobardi*, from their long Beards.

The *Dani* or *Daci* were the Posterity of the *Cimbri*. The Romans called the Eastern

Places of the Empire, where the *Goths* settled, *Dacia*. *Procopius* says, That the *Goths* and *Daci* were the same People, whom the Greeks call *Cimmerii* and *Geta*.

It is probable that the *Jutes* were the *Jute* of *Ptolemy*. *Wormius* says, *Jutland* was anciently called *Jotunland*. *Adamus Bremenensis*, *Beda*, and *Saxo Grammaticus*, speak of the *Jute*. *Lambard*, in his *Archeologia*, shews, That the Latin Translation of *Bede* is false, when it has *Vita* instead of *Jute*; for the Saxon Copy has it *Geatum*, i. e. *Jutes* or *Goths*; and in many other Places he calls them *Jut*. Archbishop *Usher* also says, That in all the Manuscript Copies of *Bede* he ever saw, he calls that People *Jute*, and not *Vita*. *Florence of Worcester*, *William of Mahmsbury*, *Henry of Huntingdon*, and other English Historians, are of the same Opinion. *Robins Ethelward*, a Saxon Writer, calls them *Gietæ*; and the Saxon Annals of *Peterburg* call them *Geatum*. *Spelman* says, That they were so called from the Gothic Word *Ju*, signifying a Giant.

The *Angli* and *Saxons* came also from this Country, of whom we shall discourse when we come to *England*. *Cellarius* places the *Teutones* in the Islands of *Fubnen*, *Zeland*, and the Southerly Places of *Schonen*. *Ptolemy* speaks of the *Holsati*, who were the Inhabitants of the modern *Holslein*; the *Vagri* of *Wagria*; of the *Storermarfi*, that dwelt in the modern *Stormar*; of the *Tintormarfi* in the modern *Ditmarsh*; and of the *Crempemarfi* and *Villemarfi*, who dwelt in the Southerly Parts of *Jutland*. *Nordalbingia* was the Name of *Jutland*, and other Places of that Peninsula, in the barbarous Times.

The Danish Historians boast that *Ireland* was 8 times conquer'd by the *Danes*, viz. in the Reigns of the Danish Kings *Fridleve I.* *Protho I.* *Hiaren*, *Fridleve II.* *Protho IV.* *Regner Lodbrog*, *Siward III.* and *Protho III.* who died *A. C. 912*.

They also say, That *Saxony* was made Tributary to *Denmark* 15 times, viz. in the Reigns of *Helgo*, *Robus*, *Hosher*, *Roderick*, *Uffon*, *Dan II.* and *III.* *Fridleve I.* *Protho III.* *Hiaren*, *Fridleve II.* *Protho IV.* *Regner Lodbrog*, *Siward III.* and *Protho VI.*

The *Livonians* were subject to the Danish Kings, *Canute IV.* *Waldemar II.* *Erik VI.* *Christopher* Son of *Waldemar II.* *Erik VII.* and *Christopher II.* *Courland*, *Esthonia*, and *Prussia*,

Prussia, were also frequently conquer'd by them. They say, the *Swedes* were defeated by them in 22 Battles, and swore Allegiance to 24 of their Kings, and the *Norwegians* in 32 Battles, and paid Homage to 12 of their Kings, before *Queen Margaret* united it to *Denmark*; and that the *Russians* have been Tributaries to 8 of their Kings. *England* was also conquer'd 10 times by 'em.

Of the present Inhabitants, their Dispositions, Manners, Customs, &c.

THE *Danes* are tall, handsome, and straight. Most of them have white or yellow Hair. *Lucan* observ'd, That they who dwelt on the N. of the *Elb* had yellow Hair in his Time. Formerly this Country was over-stock'd with Inhabitants, and upon that Account obliged to send abroad its supernumerary People; but now the Case is alter'd; for *Mr. Moldsworth* observes, that it is but indifferently Peopled, which he imputes to their hard Usage, Poverty, and bad Diet, which he says is general over all *Denmark*. The Burghers and Citizens eat Rye Bread, lean salt Flesh, Stock-Fish, Bacon, and very bad Cheese. The Peasants live on Roots, White Meats, and Rye Bread, seldom tast fresh Fish, and scarce ever any Flesh, except on some extraordinary Festivals. He further observes, That the common People are now mean Spirited, have lost their former Bravery, are inclin'd to gross cheating, and mistrust other People. Apoplexies and the Falling-Sickness are Epidemical Distempers there, which probably comes from their bad Diet. Their Peasants are as absolute Slaves as any in *Barbadoes*, but their Food not so good. Neither they nor their Posterity can leave the Land to which they belong; and when it is purchas'd, they are sold with the Freehold, as Timber-Trees are with us. They don't reckon Riches there by Numbers of Acres, but by Numbers of Boors, who, with all that belong to 'em, appertain to the Proprietor of the Land. When any of them get a little Money, they lay it out in Brandy, lest their Landlord should hear of it, and take it from them. They are also lia-

ble to the quartering and paying of Soldiers, and must furnish the King's Family, and all their Attendants, with Horses and Travelling-Waggons for their Baggage and Furniture, whenever the King makes a Progress, tho' but to his own Country-Houses; and all this at their own Charges for themselves and Horses for 2 or 3 Days together; and what makes it worse, is, that the Harvest is the usual Travelling-time of the Court. The King does also frequently give a Warrant to any Person of Quality or Officer that has a Journey to make; upon which the Peasants are obliged to serve and attend them.

Mr. Moldsworth says, it is difficult for a Stranger to find Conveniencies of Lodging and Eating in *Denmark*, even in *Copenhagen*, where there are few or no Lodgings to be lett in private Houses; and in the Taverns, one must be content to eat and drink in a publick Room, into which all Company may enter and do the like.

Their Divertisements in Winter are riding in Sleds, well wrapp'd up in Wool or Fur. None presume to use this Pastime till the King and Court has begun; as all the Clocks of *Copenhagen* must strike after the Court-Clock.

Of their NOBILITY.

FORMERLY ancient Estates and Valour were the only Title to Nobility in this Country: None took either Patent or Degree of Honour from the King; but of late, to supply the Want of Riches and Merit, some have got the Titles of *Baron* or *Earl*. No higher Title has yet been given to Favourites. They have some ancient Families, as that of *Wren*, and others, who were said to have been at the signing of a Treaty of Peace betwixt *Charles the Great* and their King at *Hemming* on the *Eider*.

The Chief Families in *Denmark* and *Norway* are, 1. The Earls of *Rantzau*, who are also Counts of the Empire, and have their Seats in the *Westphalian* Class, from which Country they came Originally. 2. The Earls *Ahlefeld*. 3. The Earls of *Brockdorff*. 4. The Earls of *Reventlau*. 5. The Earls of *Schack*. 6. The Earls of *Wedeln*. 7. The Earls of *Oldenburg*.

Their Nobility and Gentry have a single Coat of Arms, which they never alter nor quarter with any other. The Nobility don't enjoy the same Privileges by those Titles as our Peers do in *England*, but content themselves with a few airy insignificant ones, that distinguish them from the common People.

Before the Crown was Hereditary, the Nobility and Gentry liv'd in great Affluence and Prosperity; their Tenants respected them as so many Petty Princes. In the Time of the Convention of Estates, which was once *per Annum*, they met the King with great Retinues; and in publick Affairs, their Suffrages were of greatest Weight, and usually carried the Point, the Commons being in a great measure directed by them, because they depended much on them; but now the Case is alter'd, and they diminish daily both in Number and Credit; their Estates scarce being able to pay the Taxes impos'd on them, which makes them oppress their Tenants for their own Subsistence. Most of their Palaces are ruinous, and they are obliged to cringe to the Court for a Military or Civil Employment.

The Nobility love to go fine, after the *French* Mode; but the Ladies Winter-Dress is *Danish*, and very becoming and convenient. The People of Quality are much addicted to drinking strong Liquors, which occasions frequent Apoplexies among them.

Their Marriages are usually preceded by Contracts; which continue sometimes 3, 4, or more Years, before they proceed to a publick Wedding by the Minister; though the young Couple grow frequently better acquainted before these Formalities are over.

Sumptuous Burials and Monuments are much in Request with the Nobility, and it is usual to keep the Corps of a Person of Quality in a Vault or in the Chancel of the Church for several Years, till they have a fit Opportunity to celebrate the Funeral.

Their Orders of KNIGHTHOOD.

SOME say, the Order of the *Elephant* was instituted in 1190, by *Canute VI.* but this is not certain. It is more probable that it was instituted by *Christian I.* which is supported

by a Bull of Pope *Pius II.* dated at *Viterbi*, June 8, 1463. After his Death, this Order was much neglected, till *Frederick II.* reviv'd it in 1580. The Collar of the Order was then a Gold Chain, at the End of which hung an Elephant of the same Metal, enrich'd with some Diamonds, bearing a Tower on his Back full of arm'd Men, having the King's Cypher on the Side, and round it this Motto in *High-Dutch*, *My Help is in God alone.* Under the Elephant's Feet are those Symbolical Letters, *T. I. W. B.* the most likely Interpretation of which is, That the King having found the Unfaithfulness of most of his Friends, and having a Dog call'd *Wildbrat*, that lov'd him, and constantly attended him, he would hint the same by the Initial Letters of those Words, *Trew Is Wild Bratt.* *Christian V.* gave it a new Lustre, and caus'd the ancient Statutes of the Order to be review'd, and added new ones.

The Order of *Dannebrog* was founded by *Waldemar II.* King of *Denmark*, on *St. Lawrence's* Day, on Occasion of a long and doubtful, but at last a victorious Battle, with the Pagan *Lieslanders*; during which there appear'd in the Air a red Standard, with a white Cross in the middle, which he took as a Prefage of Victory, and appointed this Standard to be the *Palladium* of the *Danes*, who call'd it *Dannebrog*; but it was taken and cut in pieces by the *Ditmarshians* 200 Years after. Few believe this Account, but rather think the Standard called *Dannebrog* was sent to *Waldemar* from the Pope, to encourage him in the Holy War against the Pagans in *Livonia.* In 1671, *Christian V.* restor'd it. The Collar of the Order is Wove-work, intermix'd with a Cross of Gold enamell'd. At the End of the Collar hangs a Cross set with Diamonds, and in the middle of the Reverse appears a white Cross edg'd with red, surrounded with Rays, with these Letters at the 4 Out-Parts, *Ref. Ti. Tu. Tor.* The Knights have this embroidered on their Coats. Above the Hand, which holds the Collar of the Order, there are Rays coming down from on high, and round the Reverse these Words, *Tessera Fidelium.* Tho' this Order is not so honourable as that of the Elephant, yet it is conferr'd on none but Persons of Quality and Distinction.

Of their GOVERNMENT.

THE King's Titles are, King of Denmark, Norway, of the Goths and Vandals; Duke of Sleswick, Holstein, Stormar, and Ditmarsch; Earl of Oldenburg and Delmenhorst.

Before 1660, this Kingdom was Elective, as Waldemar III's Letter to the Pope shows: The King was chosen by his Subjects of all Ranks, for even the Boors had their Voices. They ordinarily had most Respect to the Merit and Valour of the Candidate, yet with a due Regard to the Family of the preceding Kings, if any of that Line were found qualified; but if their Kings deceiv'd their Expectation, they frequently depos'd and banish'd them. The King could do nothing without his Parliament; which Form of Government the Goths had introduc'd into most Parts of Europe.

The Manner how the Kingdom became Hereditary and Absolute.

THE King had gained great Reputation by his brave Defence of Copenhagen in 1659, which obliged the Swedes to raise the Siege: Upon this a Peace was concluded; but the Army was not disbanded, nor could they be for want of Money to pay their Arrears. The Peasants and Burghers were extremely impoverish'd by the last War, which had put a Stop to all Business and Trade; so that a Meeting of the 3 Estates was appointed at Copenhagen, in which the Nobility declared, That the Money necessary on that Occasion ought to be levied on the Commons, without designing to bear any proportionable Share themselves, but only a voluntary Contribution, tho' most of the remaining Riches of the Kingdom were in their Hands. The Burghers thought some Consideration should be had of their valiant Defence of Copenhagen, and of their Poverty; and that it was reasonable that the Nobility, who were Proprietors of the Kingdom, should at least pay their Share of the Taxes. This disoblig'd the Nobility: Upon which one Otto Craeg stood up and told the Commons, That they were only Slaves, and had no Liberty to disobey the Orders of the Nobility their Masters: To

which Nansen, Speaker of the Commons reply'd, *That the Commons were not Slaves, nor would from thenceforth be called so by the Nobility, which they should soon prove to their Cost.* Upon this the Commons and Clergy broke up, and met in *Brewers-Hall*, where, after many Debates, the Commons concluded, That it was most fit, without Delay, to wait upon the King, and offer him their Votes and Assistance to be an absolute Monarch, and that the Crown should be Hereditary to his Family. They expected by this to oblige the King to them, who in Gratitude could not but confirm and enlarge their Privileges; and they thought they should only change many Masters for one; and above all, they were prompted to this by a Desire of Revenge on the Nobility. The Clergy propos'd by this to be also freed from the Tyranny of the Nobles, and to have no other Superior but the King, whose Interest they thought it would be to favour them, because of the Influence they had on the Consciences of the People. The King was not to very fond of this Change at first, and said, *That tho' he knew it was not his own Inclination to abuse this Excess of Power which was offer'd him, yet some of his Successors might do so, to the Ruine of themselves and Subjects; but the Queen, who was a Woman of Intrigue and high Spirit, overpersuaded him.* The Nobles knew little of this Design against them; yet some of their own Number were also gain'd by the Court. Some of the Commons however declar'd, That it was reasonable they should have their Privileges drawn up and sign'd by the King for their Security; but the Clergy said, It was a Thing unbefitting and dishonourable to require any other Security than the King's bare Word.

Next Morning the Commons and Clergy came to the Council-House, where the Nobility were met, and Nansen told them, That the only Remedy for the Disorders of the Kingdom, was to make the Crown Hereditary, and the King Absolute; if the Nobility would concur, they were content; if not, they were going to the King themselves, and the Matter should be done without them. The Nobility were Thunder-struck with this; but seeing they were no longer Masters; that the Commons

were arm'd; and that the Clergy and Army were against them; that they were in a fortified City, remote from their several Countries and Interests, where formerly they had govern'd like Princes; they durst not oppose the Resolution of the Commons, but only told them, That a Business of this Importance requir'd Time and Consideration. *Nansen* deny'd them the least Delay: So the Commons and Clergy march'd in a Body to the Palace; and in their Name the Bishop of *Zeeland* offer'd the King an Absolute and Hereditary Dominion, which his Majesty accepted, and thank'd them; but told them, That the Concurrence of the Nobility was necessary: To procure which, Orders were given, That the City-Gates should be shut; and that none of the Nobility should depart till this great Change was finished with all possible Formality. This frighted the Nobility so, that they dispatch'd Letters to the Court, to signify their Willingness to comply with what the Commons had propos'd. Three Days were spent in making Preparations for this Solemnity: Scaffolds were rais'd before the Castle, and adorn'd with Tapestry; the Soldiers and Burghers were order'd to be in Arms; and on the 27th of *October* the King, on a Theatre erected for that purpose, receiv'd the Homage of all the Senators, Nobility, Clergy, and Commons, which was perform'd kneeling; and the Oath they took oblig'd 'em to obey him without Reserve as their Hereditary Monarch, which they also sign'd. Some say, That if the Nobility had made any Struggle for their Liberty, the King would not have push'd the Point so far as to desire an Arbitrary Dominion: But thus he was made above the Law, which the Commons have repented frequently since; and all that the Citizens of *Copenhagen* have by it, is, the Privilege to wear Swords. The Clergy are the only Gainers by it, whom the Court favours as subservient to their Designs of keeping the People in Slavery, by the Authority they have over them.

Of the King's REVENUES.

They arise, 1. From the Customs of Import and Export, which amount to 165000 Rix-Dollars per Annum. 2. From

the Land-Tax, House-Tax, and Fortification-Money, by which the Crown raises considerable Sums; for every House must pay 4 per Cent. of the Value that the Ground on which it is built is rated at. For every 100 Rix-Dollars Stock, the Inhabitants must quarter one Soldier, besides others in Proportion to their Trade; and when the Government is in great Want of Money, this Tax is doubled. The Yearly Sum rais'd from this Fund is reckon'd to be One Million of Rix-Dollars.

When the King has a Daughter to be married, her Portion is levied on the Subjects; 3. From the Tenths of Timber, Oil, Tar, Pitch, and Fish, and from the Copper, Silver, and Iron Mines, in *Norway*, which is reckon'd at 700000 Rix-Dollars per Annum. 4. From the Crown-Lands and confiscated Estates, valued Yearly at 200000 Rix-Dollars: But *Mr. Moldworth* observes, That this Branch of the Revenue does not enrich the Crown; for when any Man's Lands fall into the King's Hands, no Care is taken to improve 'em; so that they are turn'd to Forrest, and the Houses fall to Decay. 5. From the Excise of *Copenhagen* upon Provisions brought to the Market, and upon Tobacco, Wine, Salt, Corn, &c. which is farm'd at 140000 Rix-Dollars per Annum. 6. From the Excise of the rest of the Kingdom, which amounts to the like Sum. 7. From smaller Taxes, as upon Marriages, and Stamp'd Paper, some of which amount to several Rix-Dollars a Sheet; and upon Brewing, Grinding, &c. all which together make about 100000 Rix-Dollars per Annum. 8. From the Revenue of *Iseland*, which is 27000 Rix-Dollars per Annum. 9. From *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorst*, 80000 Rix-Dollars per Annum. 10. From the Toll upon the *Weser*, which is 50000 Rix-Dollars per Annum; all which amount to about 639250 l. Sterling per Annum.

Of the SOUND.

THIS Passage or Streight call'd the Sound, or Ore-Sound, lies between the Island of *Zeeland* and the firm Land of *Schonen*, is guarded on the Danish Side by the Castle of *Cronenburg*, over against which lies the Town and Castle of *Helsingburg* in *Schonen*, now demo-

demolish'd. Betwixt these, all Vessels that trade into the *Baltick* pass and repass; so that next to that of *Gibraltar*, we may justly reckon this Strait the most important and best frequented of any in *Europe*. Since the *Danes* lost *Schonen*, their Title to the Toll on Ships that pass the *Sound* is not so secure, because they are not Masters of the Land on both Sides; and upon this Account the Windows of *Cronenburg* Castle, whose Prospect lies towards *Schonen*, were walled up, that so hateful an Object might not cause continual Heart-burnings and Grief in the *Danes*.

The Origine of the Toll that the King of *Denmark* obliges Ships which pass the *Sound* to pay, was on Account of the Buoys which he kept there, that Ships might avoid the Shelves and Banks. *Cambden* informs us, in the Life of Queen *Elizabeth*, That in 1582, the *English* Ambassador represented to the King of *Denmark*, That *England* paid that Toll only on Account of those Buoys, and for defraying the Charge of Lights, which the *Danish* King put up in the Night for a Guide to Ships; and on the same Account all Trading Nations agreed, That their Ships which passed that Way should pay their Share. Before 1582, the *English* paid only one Rose-Noble for each Ship that passed the *Sound*; But there being no fix'd Treaty, the *Danes* began in Time to be Arbitrary, and to impose what they pleas'd, according to the Strength or Weakness of those they had to deal with, or according to their Friendships or Enmity with those Princes and States to whom the Ships belong'd. Therefore to ascertain this Toll, the Emperor *Charles V.* concluded a Treaty with the King of *Denmark* at *Spires*, in Behalf of his Subjects of the 17 Provinces, who then had a great Traffick in the *Baltick*; by which Treaty every Ship of 200 Tuns, and under, that enter'd the *Sound*, was to pay two Rose-Nobles at her Entrance or Return; and every Ship above 200 Tuns, was to pay three.

This Agreement remained in Force till the Revolt of the 7 United Provinces, when the *Danes*, taking the Advantage of those Wars, rais'd the Toll to an extravagant Height, because the State of Affairs would not allow the *Dutch* to redress them-

selves; and King *James I.* conniv'd at those Oppressions of the *Danes*, on Account of his Marriage to a Daughter of that Crown. However, about 1600, the *Dutch* join'd with the City of *Lubeck* against this exorbitant Toll; and from that Time the *Danes* exacted more or less, according as Fortune was favourable or adverse, but generally little: But in 1647, the *Danes* made a Treaty with *Holland* as a Sovereign State, that was to last 40 Years. After the Expiration of which, if no new Treaty was made, that of *Spires* was to be in Force. The *Danes* exacted once 519 Rix-Dollars on each Ship of 200 Tuns; and many are of Opinion, That the unreasonable heightening of this Toll occasion'd the K. of *Denmark's* losing so many Territories to the *Suedes*, who in 1645 got themselves free from paying any to the *Danes*.

This Strait is not above an *English* Mile and a half over. When the *Dutch* had War with *Denmark*, their Ships passed through the *Greater Belt*, which is 16 *English* Miles broad; and the *Danes* cannot hinder it, except they have a Squadron of Men of War constantly there; whereas they have only a small Frigate of 24 Guns, whose Station is at the Entrance of the Gulph of *Nibourg* on the Coast of *Fuhnen*.

In 1644, *Lewis de Geer*, Admiral of the *Dutch* Fleet, passed the *Sound*, and enter'd the *Baltick*, keeping to the Coast of *Schonen*, without receiving any Harm from the Castle of *Cronenburg*, that continually fir'd on him. In 1645, the *Dutch* Fleet of 50 Men of War, and 32 Merchant-men, commanded by *Witte Wittens*, passed the *Sound*: And *M. Terlon*, in his Memoirs, informs us, That he was with *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden* in the Castle of *Cronenburg*, when Admiral *Okdam*, who commanded the *Dutch* Fleet that was sent for the Relief of *Copenhagen*, passed the *Sound* in a Line of Battle, tho' the *Suedes* were Masters of both Sides, viz. of *Elfsnor* and *Helsingburg*, and fir'd all the Cannon of both Fortresses upon the *Dutch* Fleet; yet *Terlon* observ'd, That the Cannon from the Castle could not reach the Fleet that sail'd through the middle of the Strait; yet a Cannon Ball from the Fleet reach'd one of the Castle Windows with Violence enough.

About

About 1640, the Customs of the *Sound* yielded 240000 Rix-Dollars *per Annum*; but since 1645, they have not yielded above 150000; some Years not above 80000; and in 1691, they did not extend to full 70000.

Of the C O I N.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	
1 Double Rose-Noble	3	or	16	00 Sterl.
is equal to				
2 A Rose-Noble is	00	18	00	
3 A Ducat	00	09	00	
4 A Rix-Dollar	00	04	06	
5 A Slet-Dollar	00	03	00	
6 A Half Rix-Dollar	00	02	03	
7 A Half Slet-Dollar	00	01	06	
8 A Rix-Mark about	00	00	11	
9 A Slet-Mark	00	00	09	

Their W E I G H T S

ARE the great and small Hundred, the first of 120, and the other of 112 lb. The former is divided into 12 Parts or Stones, at 10 lb. *per Stone*.

They have also a Skip-Pound, which makes 32 Stone, at 10 lb. *per Stone*, which is 320 lb. Or 20 Lis-Pounds of 16 Pound Mark is a Skip-Pound. And the 100 lb. *English* is found to be 92 at *Copenhagen*.

Their Measures are not so certain; the best Account is, That 100 Yards *English* make about 163 *Danish* Ells.

Their L A W S.

MR. *Moldsworth* says, their Laws exceed all that he knows in the World for Justice, Brevity, and Perspicuity: They are contain'd in One Quarto Volume in the *Danish* Language, with so much Plainness, that no Man, who can write and read, is so ignorant but he may presently understand his own Case, and plead it too if he pleases, without the Assistance of Council or Attorney. They have none of that *Chicanery*, which destroys and raises so many Estates in other Places: A very few Advocates do the Business of all that have Law.

Suits there; nor are their Fees exorbitant. No Suit, tho' of the greatest Importance, hangs in Suspence longer than one Year and a Month; for a Man may go through all the Courts, and have Execution done within that Time, unless he be wanting to himself. They have 3 Courts in *Denmark*, viz. the City or Town Court, from which there lies an Appeal to the County, and from that to the highest Court in *Copenhagen*, where the King himself sometimes sits in Person, and it is always compos'd of the prime Nobility. This resembles our Court of *Chancery*; and if any Thing happen to fall in Debate, for the Decision of which there is not a positive Law, it is determin'd there by the King, or by the other Judges that are present, who are Keepers of the King's Conscience.

When the Estates made the King Absolute and Hereditary, they presented him with the Book of Laws called *Handfæstning*, which contain'd all that had ever been made against an Absolute Sovereignty. The *Lex Regia*, which contains the People's Surrender of their Rights, is contain'd in the *Codex Christianus*, made by *Christian V.* by which their Kings are declared to be the only Legislators, accountable to none; That no former Laws are binding upon them; That they may put in and out what Officers they please; do in Ecclesiastical Matters what they think fit; and make Peace and War, and Treaties with Foreign States, without Advice of their Council.

Before *Waldemar II.* who liv'd in the 12th Century, the *Danes* had no written Laws. *Christian V.* made the Collection now in use: They are very severe against Duels, so that few are heard of there. Their Laws are very just in respect of Shipwrecks, because of the Relief they give to those in Distress, and the Exactness with which they preserve the Goods they can save for the Use of the Owners, if they be claim'd before a Year and a Day; but if not, they belong to the King; and if the Goods be such as cannot be well kept, the Law orders them to be sold to the best Advantage, and the Money to be secur'd for the Owner. They observe the same Method in Goods found on the Roads.

Their

Their MILITARY AFFAIRS.

THIS needless to speak of their ancient Military Bravery, which is so well known in History; but as to the present State of their Soldiery, it is certain the King of *Denmark* levies more Men than his Country can maintain. Soldiers are thought here to be the Riches of the Kingdom; for when the King has no occasion for his Men at home, they are hir'd out to others; so that Mr. *Moldsworth* says, Soldiers are as Saleable here as Sheep or Oxen. Their King has found a Way to maintain 18000 Men at home for less than 100000 Crowns *per Annum* thus: The Country is divided into so many Ploughs, three of which are to find a Man; and when he is order'd to march, his Owners are obliged to give him so much a Day. The King finds them nothing but Arms. They are all handsomely cloath'd, and when any of them die or are sent abroad, the Masters are obliged to find others in their room, which dispeoples the Country. The Foot, both Officers and Soldiers, are for most part Strangers; the Natives being now so much dispirited, that they are not thought proper for Military Service.

There is kept in *Copenhagen* 3000 able Seamen in constant Pay. He has also some Thousands of Seamen at *Hamburg*, *Lubeck*, and other Cities; and tho' he does not make use of them, he now and then gives them a Month's Pay or two, for which he is sure of them on Occasion; so that in 12 Days, he can fit out a Squadron of 15 Men of War. He has also a great Number of Ship-Carpenters in Pay at *Copenhagen*, all well clad and disciplin'd.

The King has in the *Bacon* of *Copenhagen* 36 Ships of the Line of Battle, 15 or 16 Frigats, 8 or 10 Fire-Ships, and some Bomb-Vessels, besides Yachts, from 16 to 36 Guns, that may serve for Frigats.

The best Seamen he has are the *Norwegians*; but most of them are in the Service of the *Dutch*, and have their Families in *Holland*, from whence it is not likely they will ever return, except the *Dutch* use them worse, or the *Danes* better than hitherto they have done; for the *Danish* Provision by Sea is generally bad.

Some of the biggest of their Ships draw more Water by 5 or 6 Foot at the Stern than at the Head, which shows them to be broken Back'd. They are generally lower Masted than ours, and seem more unweildy, which makes them more proper for the *Baltick* than the Ocean, except a few of their Cruizers, and other Ships that convoy their Merchant-men to *France*, *Spain*, and *Portugal*.

The ARMS of Denmark.

THE King of *Denmark* bears Party of 3, and Coupe of 2, which make 12 Quarters. In the first for *Denmark*, Or, *Seme* of Hearts *Gules*, 3 Lions Passant-Gardant *Azure*, Crown'd, Langued, and Arm'd of the first. 2. For *Norway*, *Gules*, a Lion Rampant Or, Crown'd and Arm'd of the first: In his Paws a Battle-Ax *Argent*, hilted of the second. 3. For *Gothland*, *Gules*, a Lion Passant-Guardant Or, on 9 Hearts of the same in Fesse. 4. For *Schonen*, *Gules*, a Dragon Crown'd Or. 5. For *Jutland*, *Gules*, a Paschal-Lamb *Argent*, supporting a Flag of the same, marked with a Cross *Gules*. 6. For *Sweden*, *Azure*, 3 Crowns Or. 7. For *Sleswick*, Or, two Lions Passant-Gardant *Azure*. 8. For *Island*, *Gules*, a Fish Crown'd *Argent*: Over those 8 Quarters, a great Cross *Argent*, which is the ancient Devise of the Kingdom; on the Center of which are placed the Arms of *Ditmarsh*, viz. *Gules*, a Cavalier Arm'd *Argent*. 9. For *Holstein*, *Gules*, a Nettle-Leaf open, and charg'd in the Middle with a little Escutcheon; the whole *Argent*. 10. For *Stormar*, *Gules*, a Cygnet *Argent*, gorg'd with a Crown Or. 11. For *Delmenhorst*, *Gules*, two Fesses Or. 12. For *Oldenburg*, a Cross Pattee *Argent*: The Shield is surrounded with the Collar of the Order of the Elephant: The Helmet Or, embroider'd and damask'd; the Sights cover'd, and wanting Bars; above which a Crown Or, encircled with 4 Circles, and adorn'd with Precious Stones: On the Top, a Globe Or; and above all, a Cross Pattee *Argent*.

The Crest is a Leopard Passant over the Crown Or, 8 Streamers *Azure*; a plain Cross *Argent*, 4 Spears bending to the Dexter Side, and as many to the Sinister Side Or.

The

The Supporters are two Savages Crown'd and Girt with Ivy Proper, Arm'd with two pointed Clubs.

The Mantle Or, fown with Hearts Gules, and Lions Azure, doubled Ermin. The Motto is, *Pietas & Justitia coronant.*

The ancient RELIGION of the Inhabitants, from Olaus Wormius.

Othin or Woden first introduc'd Paganism here, as well as in other Northerly Countries. They had their Worship in Denmark in those ancient Times, either in Temples built with great Cost, or in the open Air. At first they plac'd their Idols in small Huts, open on all Sides, because they thought it unbecoming the Majesty of their Gods to be shut up in Houses. Afterwards they built splendid Temples. The most magnificent in the North was that at Upsal, which was the Center of Paganism. There are none of the Ruins of those Temples to be seen now in Denmark, partly because when Christianity obtain'd, they either demolish'd them, that the Remains of them might not appear, or built Christian Churches in their Place.

The Pagan Altars were a Heap of Earth, on the Top of which 3 great Stones supported a greater; below which the Blood of their Sacrifices was pour'd. They always made use of Flint-Stones to strike Fire, because they thought it unlawful to use any other Way of kindling Fire for their Sacrifices.

Of their GODS.

THeir most ancient Idols were Oden and Thor. The Norwegian History informs us, That Olaus Trugge, their King, took away the Statue of the latter, which was of solid Gold. Frigo or Friggo was another, and said to be the Wife of Othin. Solemn Oaths were ordinarily sworn by the Name of Thor, who had a Hammer in his Hand for a Scepter. These three were their chief Gods. They had other Inferior ones, viz. Difa or Thisa, the Wife of

Thor, from whom Tuesday was named. The Sun was another of their Gods, from whom came Sunday. He was represented by a naked young Man, his Face resplendent with Rays, and holding a Wheel in his Hand, which denoted his Course. They also worship'd the Moon in the Shape of a Man with Asses-Ears, holding a Moon in his Hand. Voden was their Mars, and was carv'd with a Crown on his Head, a Sword in his Right Hand, and a Buckler in the Left. From him the 4th Day of the Week was called *Badensdag*. Thor, their chief God, was represented lying on a Bed, with a Crown of Gold on his Head, adorn'd with 12 Stars, and a Scepter in his Right Hand. They represented Friga by the Statue of a Hermaphrodite, with a Sword in the Right, and a Bow in the Left Hand; and from her Friday was called *Fragedag*. Saeter was plac'd upon a Column, which had a Fish at the Top, and this Idol stood on its Back, bare Headed, with a long Beard, and long Hair; in his Right Hand a Vessel full of Water and Flowers, and his Feet bare. They had many other Gods; and their Kings, who had made themselves famous while alive, were deified after their Death.

Their SACRIFICES

WERE of two Sorts; the first was Solemn and Pompous, and celebrated each 9th Year, when they sacrificed 89 Men, and the like Number of Horses, Dogs, and Cocks. This Sacrifice was perform'd in Zealand. The second was offer'd each 9th Month, and continued 9 Days, in each of which, 9 different Sorts of Beasts were offer'd; and they also sacrific'd Men at this Time, whom they threw into a Fountain, and if they died soon, they expected all Happiness and Success. After they were drown'd, the Priests drew them out, and hung them on a Tree in a consecrated Wood, and afterwards reckon'd 'em among the Gods.

They sacrificed to Woden, their Mars, in Token of Gratitude, several of the Captives they had taken in Battle. Once, in Time of a great Famine, the Norwegians sacrific'd their King Olaus Tretelge. Fro, who succeeded Othin or Woden, instituted those Human

man Sacrifices, and told 'em, That after his Death, he would accept of no other. This barbarous Worship gain'd Ground to that degree, that *Haquin* King of *Norway*, before he engag'd *Harald* King of *Denmark*, sacrific'd his own Sons. They anointed the Temples and Seats with the Blood of the Sacrifices, drank to the Memory of all their Gods, and had sometimes Turnaments for their Honour.

Of the Fire-Ordeal of the ancient Danes.

WHEN any Person was accused of a Crime, and could not clear himself, he was commanded to offer himself to this Trial thus: A Piece of red-hot Iron was laid upon the Palm of his Hand, till he walked to a Place 9 Foot distant; then he threw down the Iron, and his Hand was seal'd up; and if after 9 Days there was no Appearance of the Burning, he was declared innocent. *Wormius* thinks this Custom had its Rise in *Denmark* on this Occasion: *Pope*, who was the Apostle of the *Danes*, and preach'd the Gospel for some Time with no Success among them, at a Meeting of the Nobles took up a red-hot Iron in his Hand, carried it about a long Time without Hurt, and told them, This Miracle was a Proof of his Mission, which gain'd many to Christianity. Upon this, the old Way of trying the Guilty by Combats was laid aside, and the Ordeal was appointed to be the only Way to purge the Accused. This was about A. C. 986. They had also a Water-Ordeal thus: The accus'd Person was thrown into cold Water, and if he sunk to the Ground, they reckon'd him innocent; but if guilty, they said the Water would not suffer him to be cover'd with it, but threw him out. They had also an Ordeal by hot Water, which was thus: The accused Person thrust his Arm up to the Elbow into boiling Water, and if his Arm was burnt, they reckon'd him guilty; but if not, they account'd him innocent. The Priests us'd many Prayers and Ceremonies on this Occasion, that God might make this Trial answer the End of it. They had afterwards another kind of Fire-Ordeal, by which the Accus'd was oblig'd

to walk over 9 red-hot Plough-Shears blind-fold, and bare-footed, and if they escap'd burnings, they were held to be innocent. *Waldemar* abolish'd this Custom A. C. 1242; and *Innocent* III. at the Council of *Lateran*, prohibited the Clergy to be present at such Trials, to Bless the Iron, or to use the other accustomed Rites. In 1248, *Haquin*, the 19th King *Norway*, did likewise abrogate this Fire-Ordeal.

Of their D U E L S.

MORE Controversies were decided this Way, and us'd by all Sorts of Persons, Churchmen not excepted. This Custom was observ'd in *Denmark* till the Time of *Christian* III. They had inclos'd Places for this Purpose with great Stones or Timber; and such of the Combatants as got the first Wound, was cast, and oblig'd to pay to the Conqueror 3 Marks of fine Silver, as the Ransom of his Life; but if the vanquish'd Person happen'd to be kill'd, the Conqueror fell Heir to all his Estate; and if any Person refus'd to meet his Adversary when challeng'd, he was declar'd to have lost the Business in Debate. Their Arms were a Sword, Spear, Helmet and Buckler. This Custom continued in *Norway* till A. C. 1006.

Of the B U R I A L S of the ancient Danes.

THEIR Kings were buried near their Palaces; and many of their Sepulchres are still to be seen, as that of *Sigar* in *Zee-land*, near a Village, from thence called *Segerstede*, which was formerly a great City. Most of the rest were buried near the High-Way, which was also the Custom of the ancient *Romans*; and if any *Dane* of Note died by the Hand of his Enemies, they made a Funeral suitable to his Birth. They us'd to build up Heaps of Earth and Stone to a considerable Height, as Monuments. *Cambden* tells us, That the *English* call those *Danish* Graves *Barrows*. Such of them as had a Lay of Stones at the Foundation, were for Generals, or considerable Persons; but those for the Vulgar were only of Earth.

These Tombs were afterwards more artfully contriv'd; for they not only fix'd great Stones upon them, with the Names and Titles of the Deceased, but surrounded those Heaps with great Stones at the Bottom, plac'd other Stones on the Top, and made an Inclosure of Stone round them. *Wormius* says, there are two of them still to be seen near *Roschild*. They buried also in Woods and Groves.

Some of those Monuments were extraordinary expensive. 'Tis observ'd, That *Harald Blaaland* employ'd his whole Army, and a vast Number of Horse and Oxen, to remove a very great Rock, which he design'd as a Monument for his Parents, and boasted, that none after him would ever attempt the like.

The ancient *Danes* burnt the Bodies of the Deceased, and many of the Sepulchral Urns, in which they put their Ashes, have been found. Those who were kill'd in Battle, were buried all together in one Heap, and every one of the surviving Soldiers were obliged to bring a certain Quantity of Earth and Stones towards making it. Sometimes they built it like a Mountain, Vault-wise, in which they inclos'd the Bodies of the Deceased.

After Christianity was establish'd, their Bodies were burnt with Juniper, and they put many precious Things in the Graves of their Kings. *Olav Trugge*, King of *Norway*, rifled the Graves of his Predecessors, and found great Riches in them. Many old Coins have been found in their Graves, and some of them very weighty, with old Weapons, and Spurs of a great Size. They us'd to put a Piece of Money in the Mouth of the Deceased. This Custom of burning their Bodies was instituted by *Othin*, who told them, the more valuable Things were put with them into the Grave, the more acceptable they would be to the Gods.

Of the CONVERSION of the Danes.

Christianity was first preach'd here in the Reign of *Harald Blaaland*, about A. C. 948, by *Poppo*, as we heard before; and about the middle of the 12th Century, it was establish'd by Pope *Adrian IV.* an

Englishman, whose true Name was *Nicholas Breakpear*. *Wormius* observes, That worshipping of Saints was not us'd in *Denmark* till a long Time after.

When the Corruptions of the *Roman Church* grew so intollerable to many Nations in *Europe*, that they found a Reformation necessary, *Denmark*, which had been more abus'd by the Priests than many Places more Southerly, embrac'd the Doctrine of *Luther*. This happened in the Reign of *Frederick I.* about the middle of the 16th Century, who establish'd that Doctrine so firmly and universally in his Dominions, that to this Day they allow no other Religion; only the Calvinists have a Church in *Copenhagen*, set up by the Queen; and there is a Popish Chapel allow'd at *Gluckstadt* to a few Popish Families in those Parts. There are no Factions or Disputes here about Religion. The Clergy depend entirely on the Crown; and tho' they flatter the Court, and preach up the Power of the Prince, they are not allow'd any Power in Civil Affairs, or Share in the Government; nor are they encouraged to come to Court, or to appear on any Publick Occasions; so that the Pulpit is their only Province. Their chief Subsistence is the voluntary Benevolence of the People, which makes them take Care to get their good Opinion; yet they keep 'em in Awe by the Practice of Confession before they administer the Sacrament, which every one that receives is obliged to. This, with Crucifixes, and some other Ceremonies, is all that they retain of the *Romish Church*.

There are 10 Superintendants, who take it kindly to be called *Bishops*, and *My Lords*; viz. one in *Zeeland*; one in *Fuhnen*, four in *Jutland*; and four in *Norway*. They all depend on the Superior Consistory or Meeting of the Clergy. They have no Temporalities, keep no Ecclesiastical Courts, and have no Cathedrals, with Prebends, Canons, Deans, Sub-Deans, &c. but have only the Rank above the Inferior Clergy of their Diocese, and a Power to inspect into their Doctrine and Manners. The Revenue of the Bishop of *Zeeland* is about 2000 Rix-Dollars per Annum. The other Bishops of *Denmark* have about 1500 Rix-Dollars; and the Bishops of *Norway* have 1000 per Annum. The King has a great Share of the Tythes, and the Bishops are allow'd to have two or three

three Parishes each. Their Habit is common with that of the other Ministers, viz. a plaited black Gown with short Sleeves, and a large stiff Ruff about the Neck; and on their Heads they wear a Cap with Edges, like our Masters of Arts; only theirs is round. Most of them understand *English*, and have the best of their Divinity out of the Writings of our Divines. Some of them, that have studied at *Oxford*, are more valued than the rest. The Commonalty are great Frequenters of the Church, which are kept much more decent, clean, and better adorn'd, than with us; so that they look almost as gaudy as the Popish Churches.

Of the ancient LEARNING of Denmark, from Olaus Wormius.

HE informs us, That anciently there were few Scholars in *Denmark*, and the *Gothick* Kings were very ignorant; so that any who could but read and write, was in great Esteem in that Country. The *Danish* History tells us, That one *Hjarn* was chosen King merely for making an Epitaph on King *Frotho*. *Saxo Grammaticus* saw it, and translated it into Latin. History tells us, That their Kings gave peculiar Marks of their Favour to Poets, as Gold Chains, Gold Rings, costly Garments, &c. entertain'd them in their Courts, and made them their Favourites. Their Rhimes or Runes were said to have had such Force, as they were able to appease the Kings when in Wrath. They instance in *Egillius Skalligrimus*, who tho' he had killed a Son and other Friends of *Erick Blodock* King of *Norway*, yet obtain'd his Pardon, for an excellent Copy of Verses he made. Those Poets were called *Scalders*: And *Wormius*, in his *Literatura Runicæ*, has a List of the most eminent. Their Subject was the History of former Times, and the Lives and great Actions of their Kings, and other brave Men.

Some will have *Uphilas*, the Bishop of the *Goths*, to be the Inventor of the Runick Letters; but this is not probable, only he was the first that acquainted the *Romans* with those Characters. *Wormius* thinks they were more ancient than the Greek Letters; but gives no Reason for it. He says, they were taken from the Hebrew Alphabet, and

have a great Affinity to the *Greeks*. *Selden*, in his *Janus Anglicus*, p. 19. and *Salmasius*, are also of this Opinion. The Use of those Letters seems to be very ancient in *Denmark* and *Sweden*; and *Wormius* tells us, they have Inscriptions 600 Years older than *Charles the Great*, and instances in a Rock in *Bleking*, call'd *Harald's Rock*, because the Deeds of *Harald Hyldeland*, who liv'd about A. C. 270, and was contemporary with the Emperor *Galienus*, are engraven upon it. He says further, That *Hjarn*, who was chosen King for his Poetry, liv'd a few Years after the Birth of Christ. He concludes, That the true Inventor of their Letters and Poetry cannot be known at this Distance, because of the Want of Books, and because most of the Rocks, which were the Books of the ancient *Goths*, are demolished. He thinks it most probable, that Learning came thither with *Woden* from *Asia*; but that the Runick Letters are of a later Date. Their Pointed Letter were introduced by *Waldemar II.* King of *Denmark*, and are therefore called the *Waldemarian Runes*.

Spelman thinks the Word *Runes*, or *Rune*, comes from the *Saxon* Word *Ryne*, that signifies a Mystery, because the Poets of those Times conceal'd the Knowledge of them from the People, as the *Egyptian* Priests did their Hieroglyphicks, and because their Mysteries of Magick and Witchcraft were wrote in those Letters. *Hadrianus Junius*, and *Stephanus* the *Danish* King's Historiographer, are of the same Opinion; but *Wormius* thinks they are called *Runes* from *Run*, which signifies a Furrow, because the one Line began where the former ended.

He likewise says, They had 28 kinds of Runick Alphabets, and that the *Swedes* had the same Letters with the *Danes*, as appears from the Observations of *John* and *Olaus Magnus*, and *John Bureus*. He informs us, That the *Scythian*, *Massagetick* and *Getick* Characters, have a great Affinity with the Runick ones, which he proves from a Table, containing 72 kinds of different Characters, wrote by *James Bonaventura Hepburn*, a *Scots-man*. It was printed at *Rome* in 1617.

Saxo Grammaticus gives us many of those Inscriptions on Rocks, as does *Wormius* in his Learned Book, called *Monumenta Danica*. *Saxo* tells us also of an Epistle engraven on Wood, from *Fengo* King of *Denmark*, to the

King of Great Britain; and Wormius says, he had several Epistles of that sort of Love and Business in his *Museum*, with many Runick Kalendars, as he tells us in his *Fasti Danici*.

They engrav'd likewise on Bones, and on Horns, especially on those of the Elks and Rain-Deers, and sometimes they engrav'd their Kalendars on the Bones of Fishes. Wormius says, That *Christianus Frisius*, Chancellor of Denmark, has a Book consisting of 13 Leaves, made of thin Plates of Rain-Deer's Horn, about four Inches long, and one broad: The Festivals, Changes of the Moon, &c. are artfully engraven on it. Some of their old Bells have likewise Inscriptions on them. In the middle Times, they made use of Parchment; but all their ancient Books are lost, except that curious Book of Antiquity, call'd, *The Laws of Schonau*, which contains the Succession of the Danish Kings, their Marriages and Actions, and the Boundaries betwixt Denmark and Sweden. It is writ in Runick Characters: Every Word is separated from another by a Colon, and every new Law begins with a Red Letter.

Wormius tells us, That after they had engraven their Letters on Rocks, Wood, Horn, &c. they colour'd the Draughts with Ink made of Pitch, the Blood of Seals, and other Ingredients, which are not now known; and that this Ink was so durable, that neither Storms nor Time could efface the Characters.

They had 136 kinds of Rhimes; and Wormius says, the old Danish Poems were fram'd with great Art and Care, and that they exceeded those of all other Nations in the wonderful Effects they had upon the Hearers. He speaks of a certain Inspiration that those Poets were sometimes possessed with, and says, their Poetry never succeeded with any but such as were naturally endued with that Poetical Fire.

Those employed in converting the Danes abolish'd the Runick Inscriptions, because they did not understand them themselves, and would not take Pains to learn them. Upon this Account all their Prayers and Worship were performed in Latin, and they had Instructions to propagate the Roman Characters as more holy than the Runick, which they said were polluted with

Paganism and Magical Spells, and contrary to Christianity. The Runick Characters fell partly into Contempt on that Account, and also because the Roman Characters were more easily writ, and had more Books of Learning in 'em. The Runick Characters were not quite abolish'd however in 1319; for the Laws of *Schonau* were writ about that Time, tho' very few had then any Skill in them. *Alphonso* King of *Castile* and *Navarre* abolish'd them in Spain A. C. 1086. *Roderick of Toledo* tells us, That the Council of *Toledo* condemn'd them A. C. 1116. *Aventinus* in his *Annals*, Lib. 1, says, That after the Death of *Frederick II.* Emperor of Germany, the Germans diffus'd the Runick Letters, and instead of them brought in the Latin Characters.

Jornandes tells us, That *Zalmoxis*, *Zante*, and *Dicemus*, who were great Philosophers, instructed the Goths, their Countrymen, in Knowledge. Wormius speaks of two Books, call'd *Edda* and *Sagda*, which contain great Variety of Enigma's, Allegories, and Hieroglyphicks, that were Part of the ancient Learning of the Goths. Many Horns are still to be seen with Inscriptions and Figures of Animals, which give us some Taste of the Religion and Natural Philosophy of the ancient Danes. That found in the Diocese of *Rigen* is of this Sort.

Of the present State of Learning there.

THE late King *Christian V.* erected a Royal Academy for the Polite Education of young Gentlemen in 1690 at *Copenhagen*, committed the Government of it to *Mr. Van Schindel*, a Person of a Noble Family in *Sleswick*, settled Professors of most sorts of Learning under him, with Masters for all genteel Exercises, and gave them the House of the Counts of *Bijse*.

Mr. Madsforth says, That Learning runs low there at present; only Latin is more spoken by their Clergy than by ours in England. There are few Books printed there, and those only some dull Treatises against the Papists and Calvinists. The Belles Lettres are very much Strangers here, and can hardly be introduc'd, till a greater Affluence among the Gentry makes Way for them; for Necessity dulls and destroys

Men's

Men's Spirits. The Revenues and Buildings of the University at Copenhagen are mean. The Students wear black Cloaks, and live scattered about the Town. On the King's Birth-day, the Rector *Magnificus* harangues his Majesty in the University with a Latin Speech, full of gross Flattery.

In this King's Grandfather's Time, there was an University at *Sora*, where the Lodgings and Conveniencies for Study exceeded those of Copenhagen; but the King had Occasion for the Revenues, so that now it is desolate, and there's only a small Grammar-School in its stead. Mr. *Mildsworth* observes, That there's a certain Equality of Judgment among them, and that every one keeps the ordinary beaten Road of Sense, which in this Country is neither the fairest nor the foulest. They are not good at imitating the Inventions of other Countries; and for inventing themselves, he says none have ever pretended to it since the famous *Tycho Brahe*.

This Country has produc'd many Learned Men; as,

1. *Saxo Grammaticus*, who liv'd in the 12th Century, and wrote the History of Denmark in elegant Latin. *Erasmus* was amaz'd to find so much Eloquence and good Language in such a barbarous Age. He was the King of Denmark's Historiographer, died in 1500, and is buried at *Roskilde*, where his Latin Epitaph is still to be read.

2. *Erasmus Letus*, who was Professor of Divinity in the University of Copenhagen. He published many Learned Works, of which *Gesner* has given us the Catalogue.

3. *Nicolaus Hemingius*, remarkable for his judicious Commentaries on the Scripture. He died at *Roskilde* in 1600.

4. *Tycho Brahe*, born in *Schonen*: He was a rich Nobleman, and Baron of *Tettrup*. All Europe is oblig'd to him for the Improvements he made in Astronomy.

5. *Christianus Severinus Montanus*, who was *Tycho Brahe's* Scholar, and Professor of Astronomy at Copenhagen, where he wrote his *Astronomia Danica*. He lost much of his former Reputation by his Book *De Vera Circuli Mensura*, Printed at Amsterdam in 1644. This Work cost him 30 Years Study; but was confuted in one Page by Dr. *Pell*, then Professor of Mathematicks at Amsterdam.

6. *Arild Wisfield*, Lord of *Odersberch*, and Chancellor of Denmark. He reduced *Saxo's* History to a Chronological Method, and wrote in Danish a History of the Kings of Denmark and Norway. *Pontanus* gives a great Character of that Work.

7. *Stephanus Stephanus*, *Regius* Professor of History in the University of *Sora*. He wrote Accurate and Learned Notes on *Saxo Grammaticus*. He also wrote the History of Denmark, from 1550, to 1559, which was Printed at *Sora* in 1650.

8. *Olav Wormius*, *Regius* Professor of Physick at Copenhagen, a great Antiquary, who with incredible Diligence, and great Success, made wonderful Discoveries relating to the *Runic* Inscriptions, Learning, Poetry, &c. and has given an Exact and Learned Account of the Antiquities of his Country, which lay unregarded before his Time. He wrote upon those Parts of abstruse Learning, his *Literatura Runica*, *Monumenta Danica*, *Fasti Danici*, and *Museum Wormianum*. The last is the Catalogue of his Natural Curiosities and Rarities, of which he had a great Collection.

9. *Petrus Joannes Resenius*, Professor of Moral Philosophy, and Counsellor to the late King, has improv'd the Antiquities observ'd by *Wormius*, and made a greater Collection of *Runic* Monuments. He has also publish'd the *Edda Islandorum*, which shews his great Abilities in that Part of Learning.

We might also add *Petrus Severinus*, the two *Bansholms*, famous for Physick and Anatomy, and *Borrichius*, who left a great Legacy to the University of Copenhagen.

Their LANGUAGE.

Roderick of Toledo tells us, That the Teutonic, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Low-Dutch, and English, have the same Origin, tho' they differ in Dialects. *Justus Lipsius* says, That the Old Celtick was also an Idiom of the Teutonic. The *Edda Islandorum*, an ancient Piece, gives an Account of the Language of that Country, and calls it Danish: It informs us, That *Woden* brought that Language from Asia, and that the Colonies he planted in Denmark, Sweden, Norway and Saxony, left their Language there.

Wor-

Wormius observes, That the *Danish* is mightily chang'd within these last 400 Years, which is evident from their ancient Monuments. Of late they borrow many Words from the *High Dutch*, which the Court, Gentry, and Burghers, use in common Discourse, and the *French* when they talk to Strangers, to whom the *Danish* is disagreeable, because of its bad and languishing Tone.

The Division of Denmark:

Denmark is divided into the Peninsula of *Jutland*, and the *Isles*. We shall begin at the latter.

Z E E L A N D,

WAS anciently call'd *Codonania* by *Pomponius Mela*, and had its Name from its Situation in the Sea; and some say, this Island is the largest in the *Baltick*, is almost of a Circular Figure, and about 180 *English Miles* in Circumference. It has the *Sound* and *Schonen* on the E. the *Baltick* on the S. the *Great Belt* and the *Isle of Fuhnen* on the W. and the Entrance into the *Sound* on the N. It is tolerably fruitful in Corn, and has a great Trade by exporting Black Cattle. The Woods are full of Game. The Face of the Land is pleasant, and abounds with little Hills, Woods and Lakes. *Mr. Moldsworth* says, there are few Meadows here, yet they have Plenty of good Hay, from the Grass that grows by the Sides of Corn-Fields, and in some scatter'd Spots of Marshy Grounds. It has no Rivers, nor above half a Score Brooks, that are able to turn a Mill; but has a great Number of fine Lakes, well stor'd with Fish. In this Island there are 340 Parishes, and the principal City of *Denmark*.

Copenhagen, which lies 20 *English Miles* E. from *Roschild*, 16 S. from *Cronenburg*, 150 S. from *Gothenburg*, 225 S. W. from *Calmar*, and 350 from *Stockholm*. Its ancient Name was *Segelburg*. In the 12th Century, *Abso-lon* Archbishop of *Denmark*, as *Saxo Grammaticus* informs us, built a Citadel here to stop the Incursions of the Pirates, and cal-

led it *Axel-huis*. This encouraged several Fishermen and other Traders to settle here, from whence it was call'd *Kiopmans-Haven*, i. e. Merchants-Haven. *Christian IV.* King of *Denmark*, enlarged and beautified this City, and join'd it to the *Isle Amack* by a Bridge, in which he built a new Town of 4 or 500 Houses, and an Exchange, which is a large Building, with a great Vault below, where Merchants have their Ware-houses. He also built an Arsenal, which is now well provided with Artillery, and particularly with Cannon for Ships, many of which are 48 Pounds. Brass Guns are as plentiful here as Iron Guns elsewhere. Each Ship of the King's Navy has a distinct Chamber, with all manner of Rigging for it. In other Rooms they keep small Arms for Ships: And for the more convenient Embarkment of all of them, the Arsenal is built on the Brink of the Water. They have Plenty of Brass Mortars 100 and 200 Pounds, and a green Brass Culverine 22 Foot long. For Land Artillery, they have 30 Battering-Pieces from 12 to 48 Pounds, 20 Mortars from 100 to 200 Pounds, and 70 Field-Pieces, all of Brass. They have also 20000 Muskets, and 600 compleat Sets of Armour. The celebrated Globe of *Tycho Brahe*, 6 Foot Diameter, and the only Remains of all the Instruments that belong'd to him, is kept here. By the Observations of *Mr. Picard* and *Mr. Flamsted*, the Difference of Meridians betwixt *London* and *Copenhagen* is 51 Min. 40 Sec. so that the Long. is 32 Deg. and the Lat. 56½ Deg.

This City stands very low; but there is a Rising Ground within half a League of it, and two or three little Hills that cover it on the W. Side, from whence the City may easily be bombarded. This Town is large, and has a very regular Citadel on the N. and N. W. built on the Shore, with several fine Bastions, and Ravelins of Earth, well stor'd with Cannon; and palliado'd. They have a Battalion of Foot in Garrison. The other Sides are of more difficult Access, by reason of Marshes. There are several Royal Bastions with Ravelins before the Curtains, which reach from the Citadel to the S. Part, and continue beyond the Arm of the Sea, which separates Zealand from

from *Amack*. A Circuit of Fortifications, consisting of 8 Royal Bastions, and a Ravelin, incloses the New City and Port, with the Fleet, and faces the *Tollbooth* or Custom-House Battery, which secures the Entry into the Haven. Those Fortifications make the City of a round Form. The Houses, which are above 7000 in Number, don't take up above half the Ground inclos'd.

The Harbour is excellent, and would be the Staple of all the Trade in the *Baltick*, if it were a Free City. The Entrance into it is so narrow, that one Ship only can pass at a time; and this Entrance is shut up every Night with a strong Boom. The Citadel on one Side, and the Custom-House or Block-House, well stor'd with Cannon, on the other, command the Mouth of the Port; within which lies the Navy Royal. It is capacious enough to hold 500 Sail, where neither Wind nor Enemies can annoy them. The Road without is very good and safe, being fenced from the Sea by a large Sand-Bank, on the Point of which there's a couple of Buoys to direct all Ships that come in or go out. There are no Tides here, but always a sufficient Depth of Water; so that this Port may in all Respects be reckon'd one of the best in the World.

They have 10 Churches: *St. Mary's* is the Cathedral, wherein the greatest Solemnities, such as the Coronation of their Kings, &c. are celebrated. The Dome is fine, and the Steeple magnificent. The Church of the *Holy Ghost* is fine, and very ancient. That of *St. Nicholas* is not inferior to the other two in beautiful Structure: It has a stately Steeple, and was built after the Reformation. *St. Peter's* is also an ancient Church, where Worship is perform'd in *High Dutch* since 1574, by the Command of *Frederick II.* who then caus'd it to be new built. *Trinity Church* is also a fine Building, and was finished in 1656. The Publick Library is kept over this Church; a great Part of the Books were given by *Christian IV.* This Church joins to the Round Tower, built by Order of the same King, who laid the first Stone himself in 1637. It was finished in 1642, and called *Uraniburg*, being built instead of that of the same Name belonging to *Tycho Brahe* in the Isle of *Huen*, which was demolished in

his Reign. The Stairs are 15 Foot broad, and so easy, that a Coach may go up them. The *Danes* call it *Stelleburg*, because 'twas designed for Astronomical Observations: It is flat at Top, and has a Balcony with Iron Balisters round it. The Chamber of Curiosities here contains a great Number of Rarities of Nature and Art. *Jacobaeus*, a Physician at *Copenhagen*, has published a Catalogue of them in Folio.

The Academy here was founded by *Christian I.* about 1475; and *Sixtus Quartus* granted it all the Privileges of that of *Bologna*. King *John* enlarged and beautified it, and settled Salaries for the Professors. *Christian III.* built a Ward for the Maintenance of 20 poor Students. *Frederick II.* added 80 more to them, and increas'd the Pensions of the Professors. *Gaspar Thomae*, and *Erasmus Bartholomaei*, were Professors here.

The Streets are light enough in the Night by *Lanthorns*. They make use of no *Flambeaus* here, for fear of Fire, to which this City is liable, by reason of the many Timber Buildings. To prevent this, every Master of a House must have a large Tub full of Water at his Door. Coaches are much us'd here, because of the Dirtiness of the Streets in Winter. *Mr. Moldsworth* thinks this City is near as large as *Bristol*. In 1659, the *Swedes* besieged this Place, and were obliged to raise the Siege, after they had spent a whole Year in it.

Amagar or *Amack*, lies E. from the City, on the other Side of the Haven, and is called the Garden of *Copenhagen*. It is almost of an Oval Form, and about 6 Miles in Length. This Island was planted by *Hollanders*, sent thither by the Arch-Duchess of *Savoy*, and Governess of the *Low Countries*, at the Desire of *Christian II.* that his Queen, who was Sister to *Charles V.* Emperor of *Germany*, might have Pulse, and other Things planted there, that pleas'd her Taste. They still retain the *Dutch* Fashions, and supply *Copenhagen* with Milk, Butter and Cheese, of which they sell above the Value of 1000 Rix-Dollars every Week. Besides the Pulse and other Fruits which the Island produces, here is Plenty of Wheat, Barley, and Oats, and abundance of Hares. The Inhabitants are industrious, and their Houses neat and cleanly. That

Part

Part of *Copenhagen* called *Christians-Haven*, because built by *Christian IV.* lies in this Island. It was in this Isle that *Frederick III.* began to defeat the *Swedes*, who made a Descent here *October 9, 1658.* but the next Day they were so warmly attacked by the *Danes*, that *Charles Gustavus King of Sweden*, and *Wrangel* his General, were obliged to leave their Army engaged, and to make their Escape in a Fisher-Boat.

Roschild lies in Lat. $56^{\circ} \frac{1}{2}$, and Long. $31^{\circ} \frac{1}{2}$, at the Bottom of the Bay of *Isene*. It was anciently the most considerable Place of the Isle of *Zeland*; but since *Copenhagen* became the Residence of the Kings of *Denmark*, it has gone to Decay. It is most noted for being the Burying-Place of the Royal Family. *Harald*, the Father of *Sueno Otho*, is buried here, and his Epitaph still to be seen, as also that of *Sueno the Great*, and of *Margaret*, who united the 3 Northern Crowns; those of *Christian III.* *Frederick II.* *Christian IV.* *Christian V.* and *Frederick III.* *Sueno Otho* made this Place a Bishop's See in 1012. *Sueno Gratenbede* fortified it; and *Lysander* tells us, there was once 27 Churches in this Town. In the Old Cathedral, there's a fair Marble Pillar, that Queen *Margaret* erected to hang the Whetstone upon, which *Albert King of Sweden* sent her to sharpen her Needles, in Derision of her Sex. This Jest cost him dear, for she took and detain'd him Prisoner 7 Years, and obliged him to renounce his Right to the Crown of *Sweden*. There is a Convent of Lutheran Nuns here, who are all of good Families. They have no distinct Habit, are under no Vows, but may if they please leave the Cloyster and marry. The Situation of this Town brings it some small Trade. A Treaty was concluded here in 1658 betwixt the two Northern Crowns.

Elsinour lies in the Streight called the *Sound* or *Oresunds*, over against *Helsingburg* in *Schenen*, N. from *Copenhagen*. When the Court resided in the Castle of *Cronenburg*, the Town was larger than now, and had Walls. The Castle of *Cronenburg* is 4 or 500 Paces distant from it on the Shore. It makes a large square Court, and was adorn'd with fine Statues. The Pipes of the Cistern that supplied the Garrison with Water, and the Locks of the Doors, were all of fine Sil-

ver, before it was plunder'd by the *Swedes*. It was built in 1582, is all of Free-Stone, and has 4 little Towers at each Corner, cover'd with Copper; but this Castle, with the Chapel, Steeple, and Ornaments of it, are all going to Decay. It has a Ditch round it, and 4 Bastions, two of which are to the Seaward, surrounded with another Ditch, and the Land-side is secured by 5 more Bastions, and an half Bastion. They have fine Cannon upon them; but the Bastion that commands the Passage of the *Sound* has but two Cannon 36 Pounders each, and 11 more of a smaller Size. The Rampart is vaulted with Free-Stone. The *Danes* believe this Castle is able to defend the Passage of the *Sound*; upon which the King struck a Medal in 1691, on one Side of which there's a two-handed Key, with this Motto, *Clandit & Resludit*. In 1658, the *Swedes* made themselves Masters of this Castle, but were obliged to surrender it by the Treaty of *Copenhagen* in 1660.

Fredericksburg is a Royal Castle, 10 English Miles S. W. from *Cronenburg*: It belong'd to a private Gentleman; but *Frederick II.* purchas'd it, and began to enlarge it. His Son *Christian IV.* finish'd it. This is the *Versailles of Denmark*. The House is built on Piles in a Lake. The Body of the Castle consists of a very fair Front, with two great Wings. The Chapel is well adorn'd, and cover'd with gilt Copper. It had 12 Silver Statues of the Apostles, and all the Locks, Bolts, &c. were Silver, till it was plunder'd by the *Swedes*. The Hall is adorn'd with Painting, and has the Pictures of several of the Kings of *Denmark*; and of the Royal Family, as large as the Life, and a Frame of Paintings which represents the Sea and Land Battles of the Kings of *Denmark*. It is hung with rich Tapestry of Silk-Mohair, representing the Actions and Battles of *Christian IV.* There's a Gallery that leads from the Castle to the Hall of Audience, adorn'd with Pictures, most of which were bought in *Italy*. There's a Park here 19 Miles long, of a proportionable Breadth, and interspers'd with Pools and Fish-Ponds, with a Mixture of Green Plats, Hillocks, and small Vallies. It was stock'd with Fallow Deer from *England*. There's a pretty Flower-Garden behind the Castle on the other Side the Lake, in which, tho

tho deep, they have built a kind of Terras on Piles, which cost 100000 Crowns.

Sora stands near a Lake, which on one Side forms a kind of Morass, is pleasantly situated near a charming Wood of vast Extent, which is reserv'd for the King's Diversion and Game. *Absalom Vildus*, Archbishop of *Lunden*, founded a Church and Monastery, and settled a Seminary of Monks here, who were to write the History of *Denmark*. We owe *Saxo Grammaticus's* History to this Foundation. Many of this Bishop's Ornaments, with his Sword, were found in his Tomb here; for he went frequently to War, where he acquired great Reputation. He died in 1201. Many Historians call him *Absalom Hvide*. *Fredrick II.* erected an University here, which was called *Academia Equestris*, because design'd for the Education of young Gentlemen in Chivalry; and the Revenues of the Nunnery of *Mariæbo* in *Laland* were given to it in 1621. It became famous by the able Professors *Christian IV.* invited to come hither, among whom was the Learned *Murfsus*, Professor of History and Politicks here, from 1625 to 1639, when he died, and is buried in this Place. *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden* being educated here, when he invaded *Zeeland* he would not suffer his Soldiers to enter it: But the Revenues of this University were annexed to the Crown since, as we said before. The Ruins shew this to have been formerly a Place of great Note; but now the Town is very inconsiderable, having but one short Street, which consists of not above 50 Houses. It lies near the middle of the Isle, 30 Miles S. W. from *Copenhagen*, and 18 S. from *Roschild*.

Ringstede, N. E. from *Sora*, is a Town of great Antiquity, where many of the Danish Kings are buried in an old Church dedicated to *St. Canute*, particularly King *Waldemar*, and *Erick the Pious*. It decays daily, because of the Want of Trade. The Houses are low, because the Town is built on a high Ground; and the high Winds in Winter are very troublesome and dangerous here.

Korsør, was formerly a considerable Town, and had a great Trade, but is now poor: It stands on a Neck of Land, where the Sea forms a Gulph, the Entrance into

which is about a Musket-shot over; but the Bason is very deep, and Ships of great Burden may lie in it. At the Entrance of the Port, there's a square Fort with 9 Demi-Bastions, and some Iron Guns. The Foot of the Rampart is pallisado'd, and has a Ditch full of Water round it. There is also a Castle; but the Gates of it are ruinous. This Town lies over against *Nibourg* in *Fulnen*, from which 'tis separated by the Greater Belt, which is here about 30 English Miles over. When *Charles Gustavus* invaded *Zeeland* in 1658, he landed his Men here.

Holbeck is a considerable Town, 15 English Miles N. W. from *Roschild*, at the Bottom of a narrow Bay.

Kallenburg. *Saxo Grammaticus* calls it *Kallunden*, lies N. W. from *Holbeck*, at the Bottom of the most Westerly Bay of the Island. It was only a Fisher-Town till 1158, when *Absalom Hvides's* Brother made it a City, and beautified it with a Castle, Church, and other Publick Buildings. It has now a good Trade, by reason of its safe and convenient Harbour.

Other Towns are, 1. *Koge*, which is a little, but populous Town, on a small Bay of the Sound on the E. Side of the Island, 18 Miles S. from *Copenhagen*. It has a good Trade in Corn and Fish. 2. *Prestø*, S. W. from *Koge*, on the Bottom of a Bay of the *Baltick*, which has some Trade. 3. *Waringborg*, S. from *Prestø*, the most Southerly Town in the Island. It has also a Port, and a moderate Trade.

F U H N E N,

H A S the Great Belt on the E. the *Baltick* on the S. the Lesser Belt, which separates it from *Jutland*, on the W. and the Isle *Samsøe* on the N. It is about 48 Miles long from S. to N. and 40 Miles broad from W. to E. *Saxo Grammaticus*, *Lyfscander*, and all Travellers, make this the fruitfulest Place of the King of *Denmark's* Dominions; for the Soil is good and well manur'd. The Country consists of small, but very fruitful Hills, some of them covered with Woods: It is better Peopled than *Zeeland*. They export much Corn, and great Herds of Black Cattle, and have a good Breed

of Horfe, and Plenty of Hogs. It contains 4 Garifon Towns, 264 Villages, and 348 Parishes, 88 Fish-Ponds, 39 Rivulets, and is the Appanage of the King's eldest Son.

Odense, the chief Town of the Island, is called *Ottomia* by most Geographers. Some will have it called so from *Woden*; but it is more probable that its Name came from *Otho I.* for whose Honour it was built in 948, by *Harald King of Denmark*. It stands almost in the middle of the Island, 85 Miles W. S. W. from *Copenhagen*, 16 Miles W. from *Nybourg*, and as many E. from *Middlefor*. Before the Crown was made Hereditary in 1660, the General Assemblies of the States met here, and their Kings had their Residence in this Place. The Buildings are good, and the Streets regular. They have two fine Churches, one dedicated to *St. Canute*, in which his Body was found in 1582, in a Copper Coffin, gilt and adorn'd with Precious Stones; the other to *St. Francis*. The Town-House is a stately Building. It has been a Bishop's See since 950. *Harald Blastand* was killed here; and many of the Danish Kings, and particularly *Christian II.* are buried in this Town. Their Beer is extraordinary good, and their Linen not inferior to any in *Holland*.

Nybourg lies on the narrowest Passage of the Great Belt, betwixt *Fulmen* and *Zealand*. *Christian III.* first fortified it in 1546, and inclos'd the Castle within its Works. It was a strong Place; but the Breaches made in the Curtain and in the Castle during the last War with *Sweden*, are not yet repair'd. The Fortifications are better towards the Sea. It stands in a very fine Country, and has an excellent Port, which occasions some Trade. It was formerly the Residence of the Danish Kings, and is famous for a Victory the Danes gained near it over the *Swedes* in 1659.

Schwinnburg lies on the S. Side of the Island, over against the Isle of *Langeland*. It is a pleasant Town, and famous for the Passage of the Swedish Forces over the Ice to *Zealand* in 1658.

Afens lies S. W. from *Odense*, on the Streight of the Little Belt, near this Town. In 1535, King *Christian III.*'s Army, commanded by *John Rantzau*, routed that commanded by *Christopher Earl of Oldenburg*, and killed *Gustavus Troll* Archbishop of *Upsal*.

Rantzau afterwards levelled this Town to the Ground.

Middlefor or *Midlefor*, is a small but neat Town, in a Country abounding with all Necessaries: It lies on the Lesser Belt, which is frequently called the Streight of *Middlefor*, 24 English Miles W. from *Odense*. This is the narrowest Passage of the Belt, being no broader than the *Thames* at *Gravesend*. In 1658, *Charles Gustavus* led his Army over the Ice to this Place, routed the Danish Forces that oppos'd him, and made himself Master of the Island of *Fulmen*.

Geographers have plac'd an imaginary Town, called *Sophianode*, 7 Miles N. E. from *Middlefor*, on the Belt, over against *Friderichs odde*; but the Travels into *Denmark* in 1701, assure us, there never was any such Town.

Rohorg or *Wohorg*, on the S. Part of the Island, N. W. from *Schwinnburg*, at the Bottom of a Bay, was formerly burnt by the Army of *Christian III.*

Other ISLES are,

ARROE, which lies S. from *Fulmen*, is fertile in Corn, and abounds with Anise-Seed, with which they season their Meat and Bread. It produces Plenty of Black Cattle and Horses. It has 3 Parishes, and depended formerly on the Duchy of *Sleswick*; but was united to the Crown in the last Age. The only Town is *Koping*, on the S. of the Island, at the bottom of a Bay, and is a Place of some Trade, because of its Port.

LANGELAND, so called from its Length, which is about 30 English Miles. Its greatest Breadth is not above 12: It contains 16 Parishes, and abounds with Wheat, Rye, and Barley, of which it exports great Quantities Yearly. The most considerable Towns are, 1. *Rudkoping*, a large Town on the W. Side of the Isle, over against *Schwinnburg* in *Fulmen*. 2. *Thanneker*, N. from *Rudkoping*, is a good Fortrefs, where the King of *Denmark* keeps a strong Garifon.

LALAND, lies S. E. from *Langland*, S. from *Zealand*, and S. W. from *Fulster*: It is all low Ground, and from thence has its Name. 'Tis about 20 English Miles long, and 12 broad. It produces all sorts of Corn in abundance, and particularly Wheat, with which

which it supplies *Copenhagen*, and other Places of the Kingdom. The Dutch ship off great Quantities of Corn from hence every Year. It is a Principal Government, called a *Stifts-ampt*, and has several of the lesser Isles under its Jurisdiction. It consists of 4 Heriots or Lordships, and has the following Towns, viz. 1. *Naschow*, on the Bottom of a Bay on the W. Side of the Island, a large and well fortified Place. It was storm'd, burnt and taken by the *Lubeckers*, in 1510. 2. *Maribo*, in the middle of the Isle, on a Lake, and had formerly a famous Nunnery. 3. *Nysted*, on the S. of the Island, a large Town, once famous for a Noble Monastery built here in 1286. This Island is noted for being the Birth-place of *Nicholas Hemmingius*.

FALSTER, lies E. from *Laland*, from which it is separated by a narrow Streight called *Gulber-Sound*, and S. from *Zeeland*, from which 'tis separated by the *Grono-Sound*. It abounds with Barley, Wheat, &c. which Strangers export; is 16 English Miles in Length, and 8 in Breadth: The chief Towns are, 1. *Nykoping*, which has a strong Castle, and a well frequented Harbour, a pleasant Situation, and uniform Buildings. 2. *Stolecoping*, on the N. of the Isle, a Place of some Trade, being a Thorowfare betwixt *Zeeland* and *Germany*.

MONA, lies N. E. from *Falster*, from which it is separated by the *Grono-Sound*, and S. S. E. from *Zeeland*. It produces little Corn, but has good Pasture, The Soil is chalky and high, and a good Land-Mark to the German Vessels that trade in those Seas. It was formerly Part of the Danish Admirals Allowance, as being a Place the fittest of any in the King's Dominions for him to reside in. *Steg* or *Steka* is the only Town of Note here: It lies on the N. of the Island, on a little Rivulet, that falls a Mile below it into the Streight called *Grono-Sound*, which separates it from *Zeeland*. It made a brave Defence against the *Lubeckers* in 1510, and forc'd them to retreat. In 1659, they made a better Defence against the Swedes than greater Places had done.

SALTHOLM, lies E. from *Amack*, near the Coasts of *Schonen*, over against *Malmo*. The Author of the Travels into *Denmark* in 1702, observes, That *De Witt's* Maps and others make this Isle larger than

Huen; tho' the Inhabitants told him, it was but a sixth Part so big.

ALSEN, is a small Isle over against the Bay of *Hensburg*, in the Dutchy of *Sleswick*, of which it is a Part, and lies S. W. from *Fuhnen*. It has 13 Parishes, is exceeding fruitful, and so populous, that many Thousands of Fighting Men have been levied in a short Time here. *Rantzow*, a Danish Antiquary, is positive that the *Elisii*, *Arii*, and *Manimi* of *Tacitus*, were the Inhabitants of those 3 Islands, viz. *Alsen*, *Aaroe*, and *Moen* or *Meun*. The chief Town is *Sunderbourg*, a large City, with a strong Castle, on the Canal that separates *Alsen* from the Continent of *Jutland*. The Bailiwick of this Name is an Appanage of the Duke of *Holstein-Sunderbourg*. *Nordburg* lies on the N. of the Island, and belongs to the Duke of *Holstein-Nordburg*.

FEMEREN, is a small Island on the Coast of *Wagria*, N. from *Oldenburg*, and S. from *Laland*. It has always been looked upon as one of the Keys of *Denmark* with respect to the Empire: Therefore *Christian IV.* was more afraid of the Germans becoming Masters of this Island, than of their overrunning *Jutland*, which made him fortify all the old Castles, and put strong Garisons into every Place of Importance here. There are several Isles of less Note betwixt the most Northerly Promontory of *Jutland*, called *Cape Scagen*, and *Fuhnen*, viz. *Anholt* in the *Categate*, *Lessow*, E. of the Diocese of *Aalborg*; *Neding*, *Hertzholm*, *Katholm*, *Jordholm*, *Tune*, and *Samsoe*. The last lies N. of *Fuhnen*, has *Zeeland* on the S. and the Coasts of *Jutland* on the W. *Christian V.* made *Mote*, his Concubine, a Citizen's Daughter of *Copenhagen*, who bore him two natural Sons, Countess of this Island. It abounds with Cattle and Corn, and is so pleasant, that it is called the *Somos* of the North. *Wero* lies N. E. from *Samsoe*, and *Spro* lies in the Streight of the *Great Belt*, N. from *Laland*.

BORNHOLM, the most Easterly of all the Islands belonging to the King of *Denmark*, lies 20 English Miles E. S. E. of the Province of *Schonen*. It belong'd formerly to the Archbishops of *Lunden*; but in the beginning of the 16th Century, *Christian II.* took it from them, on Pretence that it was necessary for his Naval Preparations against

Sweden. The Swedes have frequently laid it waste; and in the War with *Frederick II.* they made themselves Masters of it, and design'd to keep it; but were obliged to restore it by the Treaty of *Copenhagen*, May 27, 1660. *Nex* is a large Town, on the S. W. of the Island, well fortified, and has a strong Castle. *Rattenby* lies N. N. E. from *Nex*, and has a good Fortrefs or Citadel, fortified after the modern Way, which commands the best Road in the Island. It was finished in 1689, and has good Bastions and Outworks. This Island is 28 *English* Miles long, and 8 broad.

CHRISTIAN'S-ØYE, are a Number of little Islands, which lie about 7 *English* Miles N. W. from *Bornholm*. They enclose a safe Harbour for 30 Sail. The largest Isle is in Form of a Crescent, and is well fortified. There are 90 Islands belonging to the Diocese of *Fuhnen*, most of which are habitable and fertile; but those we have describ'd are the most remarkable.

JUTLAND,

IS Part of the ancient *Cimbrica Chersonesus*, so called from the *Cimbri*, who settled here after their Defeat by *Mariss*, formerly mentioned; is the biggest and most considerable Part of the King of *Denmark's* Dominions, and amounts to about Two Thirds of the Whole. It is bounded on the W. and N. by the *German* Ocean, on the N. E. by the *Categat* or *Schager-Raak*, on the E. by the *Lesser Belt*, or *Middlest-Sound* and the *Baltick*, and on the S. by the River *Eyder*, which separates it from *Holslein*. *Beno* says, the Length of it from N. to S. is 212 *English* Miles, and the broadest Place is not above 90. Most Authors agree, That *Jutland* has about 950 Parishes, and the Duchy of *Sleswick* 280. This is a plentiful Country, and abounds with Cattle, but wants good Ports. The *Dutch* transport Yearly great Quantities of their lean Black Cattle to their own more fertile Soil, where they fatten in a short Time. The Horses and Hogs of this Country are good, and numerous. It affords enough of Corn for the Natives. The Land is most fertile near the Coasts; for the Inland is full of Heaths, Lakes and Woods.

This great Province is divided into *North* and *South Jutland*. The last is otherwise called the Duchy of *Sleswick*, and is separated from *North Jutland* by the River *Rips*.

NORTH JUTLAND is divided into 4 Dioceses, which are those of *Aalborg* or *Albourg*, *Wibourg*, *Arhusen*, and *Rypen*. This Country is larger and better Peopled than the Duchy of *Sleswick*.

AALBOURG, is so called from the Multitude of Eels taken in the Gulph of *Lymford*, which bounds this Diocese on the S. and S. W. It is otherwise called the Diocese of *Burglaw*. It ends in a small Point on the N. N. E. Its Length from N. W. to N. E. is about 100 *English* Miles. The N. Part of it is called *Wenfissel*, and by Latin Authors *Pandalia*, which makes some think that 'twas the Seat of the *Vandali*. The Inhabitants are the hardiest of the King of *Denmark's* Subjects. This Diocese has 13 High Courts of Judicature, 180 Parishes, 6 Cities, and 18 Noblemen's Houses. The chief Town is *Scagen*, which lies on the Promontory betwixt the *Norwegian* and *Baltick* Sea. It is more frequented by Merchants from all Parts of *Europe* than any other Town in *Jutland*, because they touch here in their Way thro' the *Sound*. Its Trade would be far greater, were it not for the dangerous Coast it lies on.

Wenfissel is 12 *English* Miles N. W. from *Alborg*, on a River, which some Miles below falls into the Bay or Gulph of *Limford*.

Albourg, called also *Elburgum*. The Bishoprick was founded here in 1065 by *Sueno Esthrith*, and the Bishops have resided in this Place since 1540. It stands 15 *English* Miles from the *Baltick*, on the Gulph of *Limford*, which runs more than 100 Miles W. from the *Baltick* towards the *German* Ocean, from which it is separated by a narrow Isthmus made by Sand-Hills on the W. Shore of *Jutland*, over against the great Shoal call'd *Jutsche Riff*.

Nikioping is situated in the Isle of *Mors*, which is made by the Gulph of *Limford*, and is a considerable Town.

Tysted lies on the S. W. Part of this Diocese, 45 *English* Miles W. from *Alborg*, in the middle of the Peninsula, made by the *German* Ocean, and the Gulph of *Limford*, which is the most fruitful Place of this District.

strict. It has a sort of an University, which was formerly a Free-School, founded by *Christian III.*

The Diocese of WIBOURG,

Has that of *Alborg* on the N. from which it is separated by the Gulph of *Limford*, the Diocese of *Ripen* on the W. S. W. and S. and that of *Arhusen* on the E. and S. E. Woods, Mountains and Lakes, abound here, so that it is not so fertile as the other two Dioceses. Its Length from W. to E. is 48 *English Miles*. It has 218 Parishes, 3 Castles, and as many Cities. It has 10 Rivulets, of which the most noted is *Guddem*. It has many Lakes, which communicate with the Gulph of *Limford*. This occasions some Trade in this Country. The chief City is

Wibourg, anciently the Capital of the *Gimbri*, and then called *Gimmersberg*, as was said before. It is not so certain why it changed its Name: Some think it was the Seat of Pyrates, who were then called *Wigju* in the old *Danish* Tongue. It stands in the middle of *Jutland*, near a Branch of the Gulph of *Limford*, 130 *English Miles* N. from *Sleswick*, 35 N. W. from *Aarhus*, and 35 S. from *Aalborg*. It is a Place of great Resort, being the Seat of a High Court of Judicature, to which Appeals are made from Inferior Courts; but none from it, except to the King. It has been the Seat of a Bishop for above 600 Years, and their Bishop debates Precedency with him of *Aalborg*.

Scheve or *Schiffhus*, on the same Gulph, W. from *Wibourg*, has the Reputation of breeding the best Horses in the North. The Peninsula of *Saling* is furrounded on all Sides by the same Gulph, except towards the S. and is the most noted Place in *Denmark* for fine Horses, which are exported by Foreigners. The Old *Salingi* of *Ptolomy* had their Seat here.

Nybe lies on the same Gulph, 8 *English Miles* W. from *Aalborg*, and is also noted for a good Breed of Horses.

The Diocese of RYPEN,

Contains 30 Bailiwicks, 282 Parishes, 10 Castles belonging to the King, 100 Noblemen's Seats, and 7 Cities. It has, accord-

ding to *Jonas Coldingensis*, a Part of the Diocese of *Alborg* on the N. that of *Wibourg* on the N. E. that of *Arhusen* on the E. the Dutchy of *Sleswick* on the S. and the German Ocean on the W. Its Length from the N. W. to S. E. is about 95 *English Miles*; the greatest Breadth not above 60, and in some Places towards the N. W. not 20. In this Diocese was found the famous Golden Vessel in Shape of a Horn, formerly mentioned. *Wormius* says, it was found on the 20th of July, 1639. by a poor Girl passing by *Osterby*, a Village near *Tunderap*, for which the King rewarded her. He says, it is 2 *Roman Feet* and 5 Inches long; The Diameter of the larger End is 4 Inches, and that of the lesser 1½. It contains 2 Quarts and a half, and weighs 99 Ounces and 2 Drams. The Gold of it is incomparably fine. There are many Hieroglyphical Figures engraven upon it, which *Wormius* undertook to explain at the Desire of the King, and thinks they are all significant, and contain Lessons of Morality. The Age of this precious Horn cannot be well determin'd; but he concludes, that it was made before Christianity was received in *Denmark*, and conjectures that it may be as old as the Reign of *Rothe the Great*, who Reign'd about the Time of our Saviour's Birth, because this King was vastly rich, and a great Enemy to Robbers, of whom he freed the Country, and us'd to lay valuable Things in the High-way, which if stole, the Governor of that District was obliged to make good. He thinks this Horn might be laid down on that Design, and in Time cover'd with Mud and Earth. *Fortunius Licetus* is of the same Opinion: But the Probability of this we leave to the Reader. *Wormius* says, this Province is not inferior to any other of *Jutland* for Corn and Pasture.

Rypen, the chief City, lies on the River *Nipsau*, which divides it into 3 Parts, and gives Occasion to the City's Arms, which are 3 Lions. The River falls into the German Ocean 3 *English Miles* below it, where it makes a good Port, more frequented than any in *Jutland*. This City is in the S. W. Part of the Diocese, 20 *English Miles* W. from *Häusersteden* in *Sleswick*, 40 N. W. from *Flensborg*, and 30 S. W. from *Colding*. The Bishoprick was founded in 980 by *Haraki* King of *Dinmark*; but the Church, which

is of hewn Stone, and an admirable Structure, was built in 848, by *Erick II.* whom *St. Ansgar* converted. The Steeple is of a great Height, and serves for a Land-mark to Ships that sail along this dangerous Coast. It has a sort of University, and a good Castle. The *Swedes* took it in 1645; but it was retaken by the *Danes*.

Colding is an old City, mentioned by *Protony*: It lies on a River that falls into the Gulph of *Colding*, which *De Ville*, Author of the Travels into *Denmark* in 1702, observes to be wrong laid down in Maps, for they make it too round at Bottom. *Erick Glipping* is said to have been the Founder of this City in 1268, and fortified it with strong Walls and good Ditches, because it was a Frontier Town; for the *Danish* Dominions reach'd no further S. at that Time. *Christian III.* was so taken with its pleasant Situation and healthful Air, that he usually resided here. He rebuilt the Castle of *Arnsburg*, which commands the Town, and died here Jan. 1. 1559. The Castle is a large Brick Building, consisting of 4 main Parts, plaister'd over without, and forms a Court, which is not very square. This Town has only 100 or 120 Houses, and is more considerable on the Account of its Bridge, called *Broherrit*, than any thing else, because a great Part of the King of *Denmark's* Revenue comes from the Toll paid for the Black Cattle and Horses that come from *Jutland*, and must pass this Bridge; each of which pays a Crown. The King has Stables for fine Horses on the other Side of the Bridge, and an Academy for riding the great Horse. Tho' this Town lies commodiously for Trade on the *Little Belt*, over against *Middlefor* in *Fuhnen*, yet they have none but in Cattle. They have good Fish, and excellent Eels, in that River, which runs by the Town, and separates *North-Jutland* from *Sleswick*. It is 15 *English* Miles S. W. from *Fredericks-Odde* or *Fredericia*, 30 N. E. from *Rygen*, and 60 N. from *Sleswick*.

Fredericks-Odde has been a well fortified Town, being a Pass over the *Little Belt* or *Middlefor-Sound*. It was built by *Frederick III.* of *Denmark*, and is well seated, on a Point of Land with an easie Descent to the Seaward. The Works are very high on the Land-side. On the other Side of the Point there are 8 Bastions. It has two Gates, and

before each a Ravelin, but ruinous. Towards the Sea the Fortifications are lower, and of a greater Extent, where there are Bastions, Platforms, and some Batteries on the Shore. Those Fortifications inclose a great deal of Ground; but the 5th Part of it is not inhabited, for there are many Corn-Fields and Orchards within the Walls. All the Fortifications are now going to Decay. This Place was formerly a Refuge to Bankrupts, Jews, and such People; but the present King has recall'd those Privileges. Here are two Churches; one *Danish*, and the other *German*; but they have no Steeple. In 1658, it was taken by *Charles Gustavus's* Troops, commanded by *Wrangel*; and the Garrison of 2000 Men were all kill'd or taken. This open'd a Way for the King of *Sweden* to undertake his Expedition over the Ice from this Place to *Fuhnen*, where the Passage over the *Belt* is about 3 *English* Miles. In 1659, the *Swedes* burnt and demolish'd this Town.

Well is 15 *English* Miles N. W. from *Fredericks-Odde*, as many N. from *Colding*, and is seated on a River which falls into a great Bay, that communicates with the *Little Belt*. It has a good Harbour, and the City is neat and well built, tho' not large.

Warde lies on a River that falls into the *German Ocean* 10 *English* Miles below the Town. It is commodiously seated for Trade, is 32 *English* Miles W. from *Well*, and 18 N. from *Rygen*.

Ringkoping, 32 *English* Miles N. from *Warde*, lies on a Bay of the *German Ocean*, made by a Tongue of Land 30 Miles in Length from N. to S. so that Ships ride safe in the Port from all Winds.

Lemwick lies on the Gulph of *Limsford*, from whence it is named, on the N. W. Borders of this Diocese, 10 *English* Miles E. from the *German Ocean*. *Hodsfelbro*, 15 *English* Miles S. E. from *Lemwick*, lies on a River which communicates with the *German Ocean* by a Lake, into which the River falls.

The Diocese of ARHUSEN.

The *Germans* call it *Das Stift Arhusen*: It has *Otto's-Sound*, or the *Little Belt*, on the S. E. and E. the *Categate* on the N. E. the Diocese of *Albourg* on the N. that of *Wiburg* on the W. and that of *Rygen* on the S. and

and S. W. *Jonas Coldingensis* says, it has 3 Bailiwicks, 304 Parishes, and 5 Castles. Its Length from S. to N. is 60 Miles; but 'tis not above 32 where broadest. It is fruitful in Corn, and has abundance of Game.

Arhusen, the chief Town, lies on the Mouth of the River *Gude*, which a little below falls into the Sea. *Jonas Coldingensis* says, it has been a Bishop's See since 1014. The Cathedral is a neat Building; but the Bishop's Palace is ruinous. In 1644, it was burnt by the Swedes. It has a good Trade, and lies over against the Isle *Samsø*, 45 English Miles N. E. from *Colding*, 34 S. E. from *Wiborg*, 50 S. from *Alborg*, and 25 N. from *Fubnen*.

Saundersborg is a good Fortress, near the Spring of the *Gudden*.

Horsens lies 20 Miles S. from *Arhusen*, on a River that falls into the *Lesser Belt*.

Randers, on the *Gudden* or *Gude*, 15 Miles N. from *Arhusen*, near a Bay that communicates with the *Categate*, is a Place of good Trade, and famous for the best Salmon in *Jutland*. Other Towns are, 1. *Hobø*, also on a Bay that communicates with the *Categate*, and N. from *Randers*. 2. *Maryøger*, on the S. Side of the same Bay. 3. *Grims*, a Castle on the *Categate*. 4. *Ebilstoft*, S. from it, on the Bottom of another Bay that also communicates with the *Categate*.

SOUTH JUTLAND, or the Dutchy of SLESWICK,

HAS on the N. E. the *Little Belt*, on the E. and S. E. the *Baltick*, on the S. the Dutchy of *Holstein*; from which it is separated by the *Eider*; on the W. the *German Ocean*, and on the N. the Diocese of *Rygen*. Its Length, from *Christiansburg* on the S. E. Part, to *Rygen* on the N. W. Borders, is about 70 English Miles; and its greatest Breadth not above 40.

This Dutchy is an ancient Dependence of the Crown of *Denmark*; for in 1128, *Nicolaus I.* gave it to his Nephew *Canute*, the Son of *Erick*; surnamed *Ejagade*. In 1338, *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* gave it to the Counts of *Holstein*, and their Successors, together with the Islands of *Rømø*, *Alsø*,

and *Arøe*; but their Posterity failing in 1459, *Christian I.* united it to the Crown of *Denmark*, and now it is divided betwixt the King of *Denmark* and the Dukes of *Holstein-Gottorp*, *Holstein-Glücksbourg*, *Holstein-Sunderbourg*, and *Holstein-Nordbourg*. The Interests and Jurisdictions of the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holstein-Gottorp* are so intermix'd, that in Time of War, the People know not which to obey. In some Towns and Bailiwicks, they divide the Revenues, and jointly elect the Magistrates. In others, the King and Duke elect by Turns every Year. This Province is divided into 12 Parts, viz. the Bailiwicks or Prefectures of *Gottorp*, *Christianspreis*, *Eiderside*, *Husum*, *Flensbourg*, *Glücksbourg*, *Sunderbourg*, *Nordbourg*, *Apnrade*, *Tonderen*, *Lohm*, and *Haderslebe*.

The Bailiwick of GOTTORP.

Sleswick, the chief Town, lies on the River *Sley*, which falls into the *Baltick* 6 Miles lower. *Adamus Bremenensis*, who liv'd about 1100, tells us, it was anciently called *Heirhobn*, and in his Time was a populous and rich City. The modern Name comes from the River upon which it lies. In the Infancy of Navigation, Goods were brought up the *Eider* by Boats to *Holmsted*, and from thence by Land to *Sleswick*; where they were ship'd and exported to *Zeland*, *Fubnen*, and other Places on the *Baltick*. This City was converted by means of *Erick* the *Bairn* about 800. In 1064, the *Slavonians* invaded this Country, re-establish'd Paganism, and built a Temple to their Idols, the Ruins of which are to be seen near this Place; but the *Danes* soon drove them out. The *Angles*, a powerful and trading People in those Bounds, built the Church of the *Holy Ghost*, with a Hospital near the Market-Place. *Orho I.* made this Place a Bishop's Sec. It belongs to the Duke of *Holstein-Gottorp*, lies 60 English Miles N. from *Lubeck*, and as many from *Hamburg*.

Geltingen is the principal Town of a small Country, anciently the Seat of the *Angles*, who came from the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg*. It lies 20 English Miles N. E. from *Sleswick*, near the *Baltick*. *Gottorp* lies also on the River *Sley*; and is the Residence of the Duke of that Name.

The

The Castle stands to the W. of the Gulph of *Sleswick*, in the middle of a little Lake; is built in a long Square Form, fortified with 4 Bastions of Earth; and the Bottom is pav'd with Free-stone; the Curtains are long, and the Sides stand N. and S. We approach the Castle by a Bridge which joins it to the S. Shore. The First is commanded by a Mountain that stands N. E. of it; from whence the *Danes* annoyed the Castle in 1675, when the Duke was treacherously surpris'd by the K. of *Denmark* at *Rensburg*. As we enter the Court, there's a Tennis-Court on the Left, and Stables on the Right. The Duke before his Death had design'd to rebuild the Castle; the Front is finish'd, and if the whole had been compleated, it had been one of the finest Palaces in the *Europe*. A Rampart encompasses the First Court; and the Castle-Gate is of very fine blue Stone as hard as Marble, with a Lanthorn over it that has 27 Lights. On the N. Side of the Castle there is a Bridge of 200 Paces over the Lake, and at the End of the Bridge there is a Walk between Rows of Trees that lead to the Garden, in which there are many fine Water-works and Cascades. On the Left there is a Basin or Fish-Pond 200 Paces square, with Rows of Trees on all Sides, except on the N. They have also fine Arbours on the Sides of the Pond, and in the middle a *Hercules* of a Monstrous Size, represented with his Club going to kill the *Lernean Hydra*, out of every Part of which the Water plays. In every Corner of the Pond there are Statues, which form Cascades. On the N. there's a Parterre in Form of a Crescent, divided into several Compartiments, with Niches round, containing the Busts of many Kings and modern Princes. There are also the Representations of many fabulous Animals that throw Water. At the End of the Walk there's a small Room, where there's a Globe made by the famous *Tycho Brahe*, so contriv'd, that by Mechanism it represents his System of the World. There is another admirable Globe of Copper, 10½ Foot in Diameter, so contriv'd, that by Wheels mov'd by Water, it represents the Motions of the Heavenly Bodies. Before this House, there is a Level Ground 50 Paces long, and three times as broad, divided into 3 Parts:

Those on the two Sides have fine Parterres; and that in the middle has a great Basin in the Center with Water-Works: The next Terras is higher; the whole is enclos'd with green Pales as high as each Terras, with Busts all round. On the highest Terras there is the finest Prospect in the World, viz. the Castle in the Front, in the middle of a Lake surrounded with a charming Country, and a fine Plain before it. On the Left there is a great Orangery, where they have also *Indian Trees*, Mirtles, Pomegranates, and others in Boxes. The Park is very fine, about 4 *English Miles* in Circumference, and full of Fallow Deer and Stags. *Gottorp* is well fortified, and a Toll is paid here for great Numbers of Black Cattle that pass from *Jutland* to *Germany*. It lies very near *Sleswick*, and 25 *English Miles* N. W. from *Kiel*.

Eiklenford, 14 Miles S. E. from *Sleswick*, is so nam'd from the abundance of Squirrels there, has a good Port in the bottom of a Bay on the *Baltick*, and a considerable Trade.

Christianpreiss is the Capital of a Bailiwick of that Name, which borders on the Dutchy of *Holstein*, and is divided betwixt the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holstein*. This City is situated on a Gulph of the *Baltick*, at the Entrance of the Haven of *Kiel*, which belongs to the Duke of *Holstein*, and is commanded by a Castle, that was built in 1637 by *Christian IV.* of *Denmark*. It has about 500 Houses, and two Gates, defended with strong Works. The *Eider* serves for a Ditch, and makes it unaccessibile; and where the River grows narrower, they have built a fine Half-Moon in the Water; with Port-holes for 16 Pieces of Cannon; but *Jaillet's* Map makes the *Eider* two Miles distant from it. *Christiansborg* is a Village belonging to the King, as also *Gottorp*.

The Bailiwick of *Eiderstete* lies on the *German Ocean*, and is so nam'd from the *Eider*. *Tonningen*, the chief Town, is small, lies on the *Eider*, and is 16 *English Miles* from the Ocean. The *Dutch* frequent it to buy Black Cattle. It is the strongest Town belonging to the Duke. The Fortifications consist of 5 Bastions, with Ravellins before the Curtains, a very large and deep

deep Ditch, and a fine Glacis. The *Eider* strengthens it much on one Side, and fills a large Canal, which makes a Port capable of receiving great Ships. The Ramparts of the Town are good. The Garison consists of 2000 Foot. The Houses are built with Brick, and very neat. The Inhabitants have one Church, and the Garison another. The Country about is fertile and populous.

The Bailiwick of *Husum* lies N. from that of *Eiderstette*, and belongs to the Duke. The chief Town, of the same Name, lies on a Gulph, at the Mouth of a small River that falls into the Ocean, where pretty large Vessels come up to the Bridge that joins the Town to the Bailiwick of *Eiderstette*. The Duke has a Palace here of Freestone. This Town is well Peopled, and has a good Trade, is 20 *English* Miles S. W. from *Flensburg*, and 10 N. E. from *Towningen*.

Frederickstadt was built by Duke *Frederick*. It lies on a small River call'd the *Tremm*, that falls near it into the *Eider*. The *Tremm*, at high Water, carries Barks of 50 Tuns. That Duke Peopled it with *Hollanders*, and granted them great Privileges. The Houses are built after the *Dutch* Way. All Sorts of Religions are tolerated here. The Town is square, surrounded with a large Canal, and planted with Rows of Trees. It is divided into two Parts by another Canal, with Trees on the Sides. The *Lutheran* Church is built of Brick, and neat. The Duke keeps 3 Companies of Foot in *Garison*. It lies 6 *English* Miles N. E. from *Towningen*.

The Bailiwick of *Flensburg* belongs to the King, and lies on the *Baltick* N. from that of *Gottorp*. The chief Town, of the same Name, is on the Bottom of a Bay of the *Baltick*, that makes a very fine Haven, where the greatest Ships may ride safe, and come up to their Houses. On the Land-side it is encompassed with Mountains, that shelter it from Winds, and supply it with Water.

There is a Mountain adjoining to one Part of the Suburbs, on which there is a Castle, which commands the Gulph on that Side. The *Danes* think this Town, next to *Copenhagen*, the biggest in the Kingdom; but *De Ville* says, that *Elfsingor* is larger. It is 36 *English* Miles S. from *Colding*, and 15 N. from *Sleswick*. The Country about *Flensburg* is called the District of *Angelen* or *Engeland*, which was the Country of the *English Saxons*, that conquer'd the S. Parts of *Britain*.

The Bailiwick of *Glucksburg* joins to the former, lies also on the *Baltick*, and belongs to the Duke of *Holstein-Glucksburg*. The chief Town is on the same Gulph with *Flensburg*, but not considerable.

The Bailiwick of *Apennade* lies W. from the Isle of *Alsen*, and belongs to the Duke of *Holstein-Gottorp*. The chief Town is of the same Name, has a Port on the Bottom of a Bay in the *Baltick*, and a great Trade with the *Danish* Isles.

The Bailiwick of *Tunder* is W. from *Apennade*, on the Ocean, and is compos'd of firm Land and Isles. *Tunder*, the chief Town, lies on the River *Bre*, belongs to the Duke of *Holstein*, is large, stands well for Trade, and has a fine Church, full of Pictures and Ornaments.

The Isle *Amrum*, on the Coast of that Bailiwick, belongs to the King. *Sylt*, another Isle N. from it, belongs to the Duke. *För*, a 3d Island; the E. Part of it belongs to the Duke, and the W. Part to the King.

The Bailiwick or Abbacy of *Lohm*, which is N. from *Tunderen*, belongs to the Duke, and has a small Town of the same Name N. N. E. from *Tunder*.

The Bailiwick of *Hardestebe*, the most Northerly of any in the Duchy of *Sleswick*, belongs to the King. *Hastersebe* is a small Town, but has a good Port on the *Little Belt*. The Isles of *Maroe* and *Rom* are N. W. from *Ripen*, and belong to the King. We refer the Description of the King of *Denmark's* Dominions in *Holstein*, *Stormar*, *Ditmarsh*, and *Oldenburg*, to *Germany*.

C H A P. XX.

O f N O R W A Y.

MOST of the *Danish* Antiquaries think this Country had its Name from *Norus*, the Founder of the Kingdom; but they are not agreed who he was, or when he liv'd. *Adamus Bremensis* calls it *Nordmannia*, thinks it to be the utmost Part of the World on that Side, and tells us, that it is bounded on the E. by the *Riphaean Mountains*. *Tandem in Riphaeis Montibus Limitem fecit ubi & lassus deficit Orbis*. Most think it is called *Norway*, *Northwege*, or *Norwege*, from its Northerly Situation.

It is bounded on the S. by the Entrance into the *Baltick*, call'd *Schagger-Raak*, and on the W. and N. by the Northern Ocean. It is separated from *Sweden* by a Ridge of unpassable Mountains, call'd by *Pliny*, *Serue*, now the Mountains of *Daarfjel*.

It lies between Lat. 57 and 72, and Long. 22 and 50. Their longest Day is two whole Months. The Length of this Country is computed at about 1600 Miles, and its greatest Breadth about 300.

O f the A I R, S O I L, &c.

THE Cold is very intense here. Those Mountains that divide it from *Sweden* are always cover'd with Snow, and violent cold Winds blow from 'em towards the Vallies, which makes 'em barren; but Southerly, and along the Western Coast, the Air is more temperate, yet corrupted by the Putrifaction of a kind of Rats they call *Lemmer*, by which the People are infested with the Jaundice, and a Giddiness in the Head that is dangerous to Strangers. Most of the Country is nothing but Rocks, Woods, and Mountains. In the Vallies they have a good Breed of Black Cattle,

and of little Horses, very swift, and capable of Fatigue.

Their Trade lies in Masts, Deal-Boards, Pitch, Tar, Copper, Furs, Dry'd Fish, Train-Oil, Filberds, Butter, Tallow, Hides, and Cheese.

Their only remarkable Rivers are, the *Teno* towards the N. and the *Glawe* in the S. of the Country, which carries Boats. The chief Mountains are those of *Daarfjel*, or the *Dofrine*, which the Natives divide into 4 Parts, viz. the *Filla-Fiel*, *Dofr-Fiel*, *Rumi-Fiel*, and *Skors-Fiel*.

T h e i r H I S T O R Y.

Jonas Ramus, their latest Historian, says, That the *Sitones* liv'd here without any Laws or Government, and were a kind of Giants, but civiliz'd by *Norus*, who liv'd, according to some, in the Year of the World 2910; but according to others, was contemporary with *David* King of *Israel*. They say, That about A. M. 2960, *Woden* came from *Asia*, and settled here. They alledge he was of *Trojan* Race, and succeeded by *Suibdager*, *Haquin*, and *Ole*, who was contemporary with *Helgo* K. of *Denmark*. *Godegnesius*, *Hognerus*, and *Hagnerus*, Reign'd at the same Time in other Parts of *Norway*; and *Gever*, *Helgo*, *Balder*, *Herlet*, and *Gerritus*, were afterwards King of *Norway* at one and the same Time. In the Time of *Rorick Stengebaand* King of *Denmark*, *Collerus* was King of *Norway*. In A. M. 3775, *Frogerus* Reign'd, and was succeeded by *Frotho*. A. M. 3911, *Gothorus* Reign'd. In 3960, *Frotho* was King, and succeeded by the following Kings one after another, viz. *Amundus*, *Alfus*, *Harldus*, *Agdensis*, *Vikarius*, *Haquinus*, *Helgo*, *Hagboitus*, *Hetherus*, *Olaus*, *Vegetus*, *Ormundus*.

Omundus, Sigwardus Ring, Sigwardus Ring Junior, Regnerus, and Lodbrog, who was contemporary with *Charlemagne*. *Sigwardus* Reign'd about A.C. 798, and, together with *Godefrid*, invaded *Holland*, the Sea-Coasts of *France*, and over-ran *Flanders*.

In 868, *Harold Harfager* was their sole King. *Ramus* owns, That the *Norwegian* History before this Epoch is fabulous, and not much to be relied upon. He thinks, that till then they were rul'd by many petty Princes, and that the Government was interrupted by frequent Anarchies, which makes the Chronology of those Times so dark. *Harfager's* Race continued Kings of *Norway* 500 Years, during which there was only one Interregnum of 4 Years betwixt the Reigns of *Gibbus* and *Magnus IV.* *Harfager* died in 931, and was succeeded by his Son *Erick Blodock*, who was banished because of his Cruelty in 933, and kill'd in a Battle in *England*.

Haquin Adolstone succeeded in 933, after the Expulsion of his Brother: He was educated by *Athelstan* the Dane, King of *England*, where he was converted, and essayed the Conversion of his Subjects, but in vain. He was killed by the Sons of *Erick Blodock*.

Harald Granfield, the Son of *Erick Blodock*, succeeded in 960. He kill'd *Sigward*, called *Lade Jarl*, whose Son *Haquin* kill'd him in 975, and succeeded to the Throne. In his Time the Emperor *Otho* sent 30 Ships, commanded by Counts, to *Norway*, by whose Means a considerable Part of the Southerly Provinces were converted. He was a bad King, and was kill'd in 995 by his own Servant, when he fled from *Olau Tryggonis*.

This *Tryggonis* was *Harfager's* Nephew, and began his Reign in 996. He undertook the Conversion of *Island* and *Norway*, and was killed in a Sea-Fight in the *Baltick* in 1000.

St. Olau succeeded him, and freed *Norway* from all Dependence on other Kingdoms. He propagated Christianity more generally than 'twas before; but by being too severe, he disobligh'd his Subjects, who being perswaded to rebel by *Canute* King of *Denmark*, he was forced to retire to *Sweden* in 1029. Next Year he levied Forces to regain his Kingdom; but was killed at *Stikbestad*.

Canute made his Son *Sueno* King, who upon the Return of *Magnus*, *St. Olau's*

Son, fled to *Denmark*, and died there in 1035.

St. Olau's Son, called *Magnus the Good*, was declared King in 1034, and in 1044 was also made King of *Denmark*, according to an Agreement betwixt him and *Canute*, and gave the Administration to *Sueno Ulfsonis*, who set up for himself; but was defeated in 3 Battles by *Magnus*, who died in 1047.

Harald Haardraude succeeded in 1049. He built the City *Anso*, had War with *Sueno* King of *Denmark*, and was killed in Battle in *England* in 1066.

His Son *Magnus* succeeded in 1067. His Brother *Harald Kyrrd* govern'd one half of the Kingdom during *Magnus's* Reign, and succeeded him in the whole when he died in 1069. *Harald* built the City of *Bergen*, finish'd the Church of *Dronthim*, which *Magnus the Good* and his Father had begun, and died in 1093.

Haquin, the Son of *Magnus*, succeeded to one Half of *Norway*, died the following Year, and was succeeded by

Magnus Barford, the Son of *Olau*, who upon the Death of his Father, and his Predecessor *Haquin*, was King of all *Norway*. He invaded the Western Isles of *Scotland*, and appointed a Governor over them. He had War with the King of *Sweden* about the Boundaries of his Kingdom, and conquer'd a Part of *Ireland*, where he died in 1103.

After his Death, his 3 Sons, *Olau*, *Sigwardus*, and *Ostenius*, Reign'd together. *Olau* died in 1116, and *Ostenius* in 1123. *Sigwardus* had many Wars abroad, and particularly in the Holy Land, from whence he returned, died in 1130, and was buried in *St. Halward's* Church in *Anso*.

Magnus Blinde and *Harald Gille* succeeded him. After they had Reign'd peaceably a long Time, a Civil War happen'd betwixt them, wherein *Harald* was put to flight; but recruiting his Army, he defeated and took *Magnus* near *Bergen*, gelded him, put out one of his Eyes, and cut off one of his Legs; after which *Harald* died in 1136.

His 3 Sons, *Sigward*, *Ingo*, and *Ostenus*, succeeded; at first they liv'd peaceably together, and made War upon their Enemies, whom having subdued, they began a Civil War among themselves, in which *Sigward* was killed.

killed at Bergen in 1155, and *Osfeus* in 1157. *Ingo* was killed at *Auslo* in 1161 by *Haquin*, *Sigward's* Son, who was also killed by *Ingo's* Party in a Sea-Fight in 1162.

Magnus, the Son of *Erling*, was made King, tho he was not of the Royal Family. During his Minority, his Father had the Administration. In his Time there arose a strong Faction, called the *Birkmærs*, whom *Magnus* defeated, with their Leader; but at length was routed twice, expelled the Kingdom by them, and at last killed in 1183.

Suerus, the Son of *Sigward*, was first made King of the *Birkmærs*, and after many Battles with *Erling* and *Magnus*, was at last made King of the whole, and died at Bergen in 1202.

His Son *Haquin* succeeded, and Reign'd only two Years, when *Guthormus*, the Nephew of *Suerus*, was made King, tho but 4 Years of Age, and died in 1205.

Hugo Baarsen succeeded him, had great Troubles from a Faction called the *Bagli*, was obliged to allow a Part of the Kingdom to *Philip* their Leader, to prevent a Civil War, and died in 1217.

Haquin succeeded when but 13 Years of Age, and quitted the 4th Part of the Kingdom to *Skulon*, his Father-in-Law, who rebelled, but was routed, which procured Quiet to the Kingdom. *Haquin* made War upon the Western Isles of *Scotland*, but died in the Expedition, and was buried at *Drontheim* in 1263.

His Son *Magnus* was declared King before his Father's Death: He was a peaceable and just Prince, and made good Laws, from whence he was call'd *Lagebetter*, or the Lawmender, and died in 1289.

Erick, his Son, succeeded: He had long Wars with the *Danes*, and died in 1299. His Brother *Haquin* continued the Danish War, and died in 1319. *Magnus*, *Erick's* Son, was declared King of *Norway* and *Sweden*, tho but 3 Years of Age. He added *Schonen* to his Dominions, and left the Administration of *Norway* to his Son *Haquin*. The *Swedes* rebelled, and imprison'd him. His Son *Haquin* ransom'd him in 1371, and he was drown'd in 1374.

Haquin, his Son, had a long War with the *Swedes*, married *Margaret*, Daughter to *Waldemar K.* of *Denmark*, and died in 1380.

His Son *Olaus* was declared King of *Denmark* in 1376, and after his Father's Death proclaimed also King of *Norway*. He died without Children in 1387. His Mother *Margaret*, by his Death, was left in Possession of *Denmark* and *Norway*, and upon her Victory over *Albert* King of *Sweden*, was made Queen of that Kingdom; and from that Time *Norway* has been united to *Denmark*.

Of the Inhabitants, their Manners, Customs, &c.

WE refer the Account of the *Normans* to *France*, and of the *Lombards* to *Italy*. The old Inhabitants were the *Sitons*. *Pliny* calls their Country *Nerignon*, which *Æthicus* mistakes for *Noricum*. The *Bergi*, who according to *Pliny* dwelt over against *Thule*, seem to have given Name to the Town *Bergen*. The *Markofimis* dwelt near the North Cape. *Paulus Diaconus* says, they liv'd on raw Fleish, and were cloath'd with Skins undress'd.

The present Inhabitants are a hardy, laborious, and honest sort of People, think themselves better than the *Danes*, whom they despise, and in Derision call *Juts*. They are strong and courageous, and endure Hardships better than the *Danes*, being more accustomed to them, by reason of their barren Soil and cold Climate. The *Danes* think it politick to keep them under, and give them no Opportunities to exert their Strength, or to learn the Art of War: For that Reason they have gradually removed all their ancient Nobility. They are said to be of a plain Temper, just in their Dealings, and civil to Strangers. They were anciently accounted great Pyrates, but not so now. They are good Seamen.

The Women are handsome, not so fat as their Men, and are reckon'd more witty.

The E. and N.E. Parts of this Country are but thinly Peopled, because of the inaccessible Rocks and craggy Mountains. They have no Towns, but generally live in Tents, and remove in Companies from one Place to another for hunting and fishing.

Their

Their Diet is Stock-Fish, with coarse Butter and Cheese. Most of their Corn is imported. They have some Barley of their own.

Their GOVERNMENT.

They had Kings of their own till 1387, as was said before; but now one of the King of Denmark's natural Sons is usually their Viceroy, to whom Appeals are made from their Courts of Justice.

Their RELIGION.

ST. Olav, in the 11th Century, introduced Christianity here, and drove out all the obstinate Pagans. In 1486, Pope Innocent VIII. gave Leave to the Priests of Norway, and others under the same Parallel, to celebrate the Communion in other Liquor than Wine, because they could not well have it. In 1523, this Country was reform'd from Popery, and Lutheranism introduc'd.

Their LANGUAGE

IS in most Places the same with that of *Island*, which proves them to be of the same Original; but the Language in the civiliz'd Parts of the Country differs little from that of Denmark.

The DIVISION of Norway.

IT is divided into the Governments of *Aggerhus*, *Bergen*, *Drontheim*, and *Wardhus*.

The Government of AGGERHUS,

HAS that of *Bergen* on the W. from which it is separated by vast Mountains, *Dalecarlia* on the E. the *Gategate* on the S. and that of *Drontheim* on the N. Its Length from N. to S. is 360 Miles, and its Breadth 180. *Aggerhus* is more fertile than

any of the other Governments. The chief Town is

Onslo, *Opsto*, or *Christiana*, so called from *Christian IV.* who rebuilt it in 1614. It lies on the Mouth of a River, that falls into a Bay which communicates with the *Baltick*, and is called the Bay of *Onslo*. It has a Castle, is a Bishop's See, and the Cathedral was dedicated to St. *Alward*. Here is kept the Sword of *Haquin*, one of their Kings: The Hilt is of Chrystal, finely polish'd, and the Sword is very large, and of great Antiquity. The Vice-Roy resides here. In 1589, King *James VI.* of Scotland, and I. of England, was married at this Place with *Anne*, Daughter to *Fredrick II.* of Denmark. It has a good Trade for Fir, Pitch, &c. Many Mackrels are caught here, and also much Pearl, of which *Henricus Arnoldi*, a Dane, gives the following Account: Their Shells are like those of Muscles, but larger, and the Fish like an Oyster, which produces a great Cluster of Eggs, like those of Craw-Fish, some white, and some black. These Eggs, when ripe, are cast out, and grow like the Shell from whence they came; but sometimes it happens that one or two of those Eggs stick fast to the Side of the Matrix, and is not voided with the rest; which being fed by the Fish, in Time they grow into Pearls of different Sizes, and imprint a Mark, both in the Fish and the Shell, of the same Figure with themselves. *Philosoph. Transact. N. 101. P. 11.* *Onslo* lies 120 English Miles E. from *Bergen*, and 150 N. from *Cape Scagen* in *Jutland*, in Lat. 60 $\frac{3}{4}$.

Aggerhus lies near *Onslo* to the W. on the Bottom of the same Bay, and gives Name to the whole Province. It has a strong Castle, and is memorable for the brave Defence it made against the Swedes in 1567, who were forced to retire from before it, after a Siege of 18 Months. It lies 60 English Miles N. W. from *Frederickstadt*.

Torsberg is a small Town, with a large Harbour, on the Bay of *Christiana*, 30 English Miles S. from *Onslo*. It has a good Trade, because of its Situation, and the neighbouring Mines of Copper and Iron. A Silver Mine was discovered here in the Reign of *Christian IV.* but turns to no great Account. Mr. *Moldsworth* observes, That the

the Ports of this Country are so deep, that there is no Anchorage for Ships, and therefore its Coasts are reckoned the most dangerous of any in *Europe* to fall in with by Night, or in a Storm; so that if a Ship be driven on them, there is no escaping, the Shore being all along high Rocks, at the very Foot of which there is 200 Fathom Water.

Frederickstadt, has its Name from *Frederick II.* who built it in the last Century. It lies on the *Categate*, where the River *Glammen* falls into it. This River has its Rise in the *Daarfel* Mountains, and takes its Course Southward through this Government.

Vleckeren is a small Town, but has a good Port.

Skeen lies in the *Categate*, on the Mouth of the Bay of *Christiana*, is famous for its Mines of Copper and Iron, and for one of Silver, discover'd in the Reign of *Christian IV.* but it lasted not long.

Salzberg lies on the River *Drammen*, which falls into the Bay of *Christiana*, 18 Miles N. W. from the Town of that Name. 'Tis also noted for Mines of Iron, Copper, and some of Silver, whence the Mountains in the Neighbourhood are called *Silverbergen*.

Hastmar lies in the N. of this Government, 130 English Miles N. from *Frederickstadt*, on the River *Glammen*. It gives Name to a District of this Government, was formerly a Bishop's See, but is now under the Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Christiana*.

Hollen, seated on the Lake *Nordsee*, which communicates with the River *Categate*, is 20 Miles N. W. from *Tonsberg*, and has a Church cut out of a Rock, with a Burying-place on the Top of it. *Wormius* thinks it was a Pagan Temple.

The Government of BERGEN,

HAS the Great Ocean on the W. and S. W. the Government of *Aggerhus* on the E. and that of *Drontheim* on the N. E. 'Tis 240 English Miles long from N. to S. and where broadest not above 90. It is divided into the Districts of *Bergen* in the North Part, and that of *Stavanger* in the South Part. The Chief Town is

Bergen, which the Natives call *Baern*. It lies on a Crooked Bay called *Feltra Fiord*, 12 Miles from the Ocean, 1330 English Miles S. W. from *Drontheim*, 200 from *Cape Seagen* in *Jutland*, and 300 E. from the nearest Place of *Scotland*. It is probably the *Berges* of *Pliny*. *Jornandes* calls it *Bergium*. The Name comes from its Situation among Hills. The Houses are mostly of Timber, and but forrily built. It has been five times burnt down; viz. twice in the 15th, and three times in the 16th Century. Its Port is large, and the most frequented of any in that Ocean. In the Dutch War, their Fleet was protected here from the English Navy. This City is the principal Mart of all Norway, to which the Product of the Country is brought and exported. The Particular Trade of this Town is in a Sort of Stock-fish called *Bergen-Visch*, which are caught ordinarily in January, and dried by the Cold Air. The Inhabitants, fearing too great a Concourse of Strangers who settled here might be prejudicial to them, order'd, That no Foreigner should have the Freedom of this Town, unless he consented either to be Whipt, roul'd in Mud, or hung in a Basket over some intolerable Smoak; but now this Custom is laid aside. The Foreign Merchants who resort here, as the Dutch, Hamburgers, Lubeckers, English, &c. have built a Stately Exchange. The Town has a strong Castle, which serves for a Citadel, and is the Bishop's Residence.

Stavanger, lies in Lat. 60, in a Peninsula, in a great Bay of the Ocean, full of small Islands. This Bay is guarded by the strong Castle of *Doeswick*, 2 English Miles from the Town, which is a Bishop's See, under the Bishop of *Drontheim*; and the Governor is Subject to him of *Bergen*. It has a good Port, and would have a greater Trade were it not for the Neighbourhood of *Bergen*, which is 70 English Miles N. from it on the same Coast, and about 60 N. from the *Categate*.

To the Bishoprick of *Stavanger* belongs *Tyle Marchia*, whose Name gave Rise to the Opinion of *Procopius*, that *Scandinavia* was the Ancient *Thule*.

The Bailiwicks of *Sudhornleen*, *Nordborn*, *Leensogne*, *Ludford*, *Norford*, and *Sundmerlen*, are subject to the Governor of *Bergen*.

The Government of DRONTHEIM,

IS of a vast Extent, and reaches beyond the Polar Circle. Some reckon, that along the Coasts from the S. W. Parts, to its Borders on the N. E. where it joins to that of *Wardhuis*, 'tis about 540 *English* Miles long; but its Breadth is not considerable. It is barren and ill Peopled, and subdivided into 21 Districts. It has the Government of *Aggerhus* and *Dalecarlia* on the S. *Muscovite Lapland* on the E. and the Government of *Wardhuis* on the N. E. It was given to the *Swedes* in 1658 by the Treaty of *Reschild*; but was restored to the *Danes* in 1660 by that of *Copenhagen*. *Harndal* and *Jempterland* belong'd to this Province; but were yielded to the *Swedes* by the Peace at *Bromsbroe* in 1645. This Country is Mountainous and Woody. The chief Town is

Drontheim, in Lat. 65½. It was built in 999 by *Olaus Trygen*, was the Seat of the old *Norwegian* Kings, and Capital of the Realm. It was made an Archbishoprick by *Eugen. III.* Its Latin Name is *Nidrosia*, from the River *Nidar*, on which it lies, where it falls into the Northern Ocean. This Town has no Walls, nor Fortifications. The Houses are mean; for it has not recover'd its Splendour since 1512, when it was burnt down, with its Cathedral, dedicated to *St. Olaus*, which was the most beautiful and stately of any in the N. The Ruins still shew its admirable Architecture. The Port would be more frequented, if the Entrance were not dangerous by Rocks. Near this Town there's a Lake, whose Waters never freeze in the coldest Winter. They have no Wood in the Neighbourhood, so that they are obliged to build their Houses of Fish-Bones, which they likewise use for Fuel. The Islands of *Iseland*, *Greenland*, and the *Orcades*, were subject formerly to the Archbishop of *Drontheim*.

Romsdal, or *Romsdalen*, a large Town, 160 *English* Miles S. S. W. from *Drontheim*, lies on the Bottom of a Bay on the Ocean, and has a tolerable Trade. Other Towns are, 1. *Leerstand*, 10 *English* Miles S. from *Drontheim*. 2. *Stronden*, 40 S. E. from *Drontheim*, on the River *Nidar*. 3. *Scoerdale*, on the

other Side of the same Bay, 28 Miles N. W. from *Drontheim*. 4. *Opdael*, at the Bottom of a Bay, 40 Miles from the Ocean, and 100 S. from *Drontheim*.

Lofoten, an Island, lies N. N. W. from *Drontheim*. *Samien*, a little Isle, lies N. E. of *Lofoten*. *Sallere*, another, is near *Samien*; and the Island *Trommes* lies N. N. E. from *Sallere*.

Maelfrom is a famous Gulph or Whirlpool, about Lat. 68. of 40000 Geometrical Paces in Circumference. Seamen call it the Navel of the Sea: It is fatal to Ships that approach too nigh in the Time of Flood, when the Sea for two Leagues round forms such a terrible Vortex, that it swallows up everything that comes near it; and during the 6 Hours of Ebb, it throws out the Water with such Violence, that the heaviest Bodies cannot then sink if thrown into it, but are cast back again by the impetuous Stream. During the Ebb, the Fishermen catch abundance of Fish on it, which being forced up to the Surface of the Water, cannot dive again.

Halgoland belongs to this Government, and lies N. of the Polar Circle. It is the Country of *Ohther*, King *Alfred's* Geographer, who told that King, That no inhabited Country lay further N. than this; but his Ignorance is sufficiently discover'd since. *Melanger* is a Town in Lat. 69½, upon a Bay of the Northern Ocean.

The Government of WARDHUIS.

THIS Country has *Muscovite Lapland* on the S. E. *Swedish Lapland* on the S. the Government of *Drontheim* on the S. W. and the Frozen Ocean on the W. and N. It is otherwise called *Finmark*, or *Norwegian Lapland*. The Cold here in Winter is extreme, so that it has very few Inhabitants, and no Trees except Pines and Firs. They have Plenty of Rain-Deer, Bears, White Hares, Squirrels, Black Foxes, Beavers, Otters, and other Furs, which is the greatest Part of their Trade. The Rivers abound with Fish. *Pitt's* Atlas makes the *Finni* of *Tasitus* the old Inhabitants; but 'tis more probable that those *Finni* inhabited the modern *Finland*, from whence *Lapland* was Peopled.

Their

Their Manners, Religion, &c. are much the same with those of the *Swedish Laplanders*, of which we gave an Account in the Description of that Kingdom; but they are of worse Dispositions, and said to be ugly, savage, revengeful, jealous, inclin'd to cheating, idle, and industrious in nothing save Fishing and Hunting. They are more addicted to Sorcery than the other *Laplanders*, make a Trade of selling favourable Winds to Sailors, and are said to raise Tempests, if they be not rewarded to their Content. Their Women have the same bad Qualities, and are of a low Size.

This Country extends about 240 Miles from W. to E. and 150 from S. to N. There is no Property or distinct Possessions here; but whoever settles in any Part first, it belongs to them while they stay.

The chief Place is *Wardhu*, which is the Seat of a Governor. *Moll* says, 'tis in Lat. $70\frac{1}{2}$, and Long. 49. It lies in an Isle called *Warda*, 8 English Miles from the main Land of *Finmark*, and about 15 in Compass. The Governor resides in the Castle, which is a Fort of 6 Bastions. The King of *Denmark* has always a good Garison here, to oblige the Ships bound for *Muscovy* to pay their Toll. The Town consists only of a few Cottages, inhabited by Seamen. The People of this and the neighbouring Islands live upon dry'd Stock-Fish, and have no

Bread or Beer, but what is brought from other Places. They have some small Black Cattle, which are also fed with dry'd Fish.

The other Places of this Province are Hamlets, of 10 or 12 Huts. All the Coast of *Norway*, but especially this Government, is cover'd with small Islands, which we don't name, because they are of little Consequence. In the Island *Maggers* lies the North Cape, well known to those who sail for *Russia*. It is the most Northerly Place in *Norway*. *Moll* places it in Lat. $71\frac{1}{2}$, and Long. $44\frac{1}{2}$.

Our English Writers give an Account of a very ancient Commerce betwixt our Ancestors and *Norway*, some of which are fabulous, especially what relates to King *Arthur's* Time; but since that called the *Norman* Conquest, our Histories are positive that we seldom wanted a considerable Fleet of *Norway* Merchantmen in this Kingdom, particularly in the Reign of King *Hen. IV.* as appears by his Agreement with the Merchants from the *Hans-Towns*, set down at large by *Haccluis*. In the 25th of King *Ch. II.* an Act was made for encouraging the *Greenland* and *Eastland* Trades, which took off a great Part of the Imposts on *Eastland* Commodities, and order'd, That any Subject should be admitted into the Company trading thither, for 40 s.



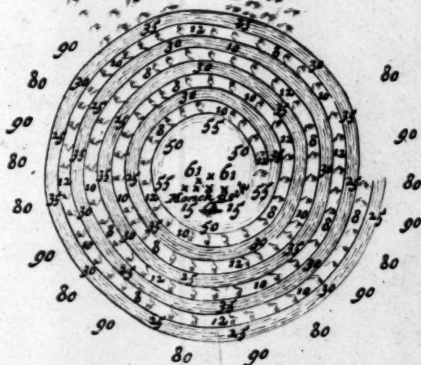
Part of Sundero Island.



Sumbae Rock



The Form of the
WHIRLPOOL
At the South East of
Sumbo with the Soundings.



0 30 60 120

British Miles

ICELAND

By
Herman Moll Geographer.

CHAP. XXI.

The ISLANDS of F E R O.

They are 17 in Number, and lie in Latitude 62 Deg. 10 Min. and in Longitude about 16 Deg. 20 Min. They stretch in Length about 60 Miles, and in Breadth about 40; have *Norway* on the East, *Schotland* and *Orkney* on the South-East, *Ireland* on the South, *Greenland* on the West, and *Iseland* on the North-West. Mr. *Jacobson Debes*, Provost of the Churches there, in his Book translated and printed in *London* in 1676, gives us the following Account of them: They are high Rocks in the Sea, cover'd with thin Earth, and divided from one another by deep and rapid Streams. In the Vallies, the Mould is about two Foot thick, and produces Plenty of Grass and Corn; but the People live most on the Shore, for the Conveniency of Fishing. They have many Creeks, Inlets and Havens, for their Vessels, and near their Habitations they inclose some Ground for Grass and Corn. Their Sheep feed in the Vallies and Hills all the Year; but their Black Cattle only in Summer. Part of those Islands is inhabited, and Part left for Pasturage. The most remarkable of them are as follow:

1. *Fugloe*, that is, Foul Island, lies furthest to the N. E. is pretty high, flattish on the Top, almost surrounded with Cliffs, is three *English* Miles long, and the greatest Breadth not above two. It has a Creek on the E. Side, but not fit for Anchorage.

2. *Swinoe*, two Miles S. of *Fugloe*, consists of two long high Hills, with a deep Valley betwixt them, which at a Distance makes it look like 2 Islands. The Mountain

on the S. is about a League in Length, and that on the N. about half a League. The Valley, by reason of the Inlets, is but a Mile long, and the Inhabitants have Boats on both Sides of it, that they make use of according as the Wind serves.

3. *Videroe*, or *Vidoe*, is 3 Miles W. of *Fugloe*, and a Mile from *Swinoe*, is 6 Miles long, and 3 broad, and has a Valley, where the People dwell; but is in general full of high Hills.

4. *Bordoe*, shap'd like a Crab, with many Points, resembling Claws, lies S. W. and W. of *Videroe* and *Swinoe*, about half a Mile in some Places, and in others not above a Musquet-shot. It in a manner encompasses *Videroe*; so that betwixt them there is a safe Harbour against all Weather and Tides, and 3 Entrances into it. There are Inlets in other Places, which are safe Harbours for Boats. This Island is about two *German* Leagues from S. to N. and about one and a half where 'tis broadest, from E. to W.

5. *Kunoe*, about six Miles long, and one broad, consists of a long sharp Hill, separated from *Bordoe* by a narrow Streight, in some Places half a Mile broad, and in others less. It lies S. and N. from *Mule* on *Bordoe* to the Harbour of *Klack*, on that same Island which it covers and makes safe.

6. *Kalsoe*, lies W. of *Kunoe*, from which 'tis divided by a Stream of two Miles broad, which opens from S. to N. and is a safe Passage for Ships, especially when the Stream is with them. This Island is somewhat longer and broader than *Kunoe*, runs S. and N. and has no Harbour or Creek.

7. *Ofteroe*, lies W. of *Kalsøe* and *Bordoe*, is 20 Miles long, in some Places two, and in others 6 Miles broad. It has many Inlets with good Harbours, one of them call'd the *King's-Haven*, because his Ships use to cruise there when in Search of Pyrates. The Stream betwixt this Island and *Kalsøe* is in some Places but a Mile and a half broad, and affords a safe Passage for Ships.

8. *Nelsøe*, lies two Miles S. from hence, is 4 Miles long, and a Mile and an half broad. It has a high Hill in the Middle, a Plain on the N. of it, and a Harbour on the S.

9. *Stromoe*, the largest of these Islands, is 24 Miles long, and where broadest 8 Miles. It lies W. of *Ofteroe* and *Nelsøe*, is full of high Hills; and there is one called *Skellingsfjels*, much higher than the rest, which is a good Direction for Sailors that are bound to the N. Entrance of *Thorshaven*, on the S. End of the Island, where their chief Commerce lies. This is a small, but a good Harbour, and has another Entrance from the S. There are several other Harbours and Creeks in this Island.

10. *Waagoe*, lies a Mile and an half W. from *Stromoe*, and the Passage is safe betwixt them. This Island is about 8 Miles in Diameter, and cut by two long Creeks, one of which, on the S. E. makes a good Summer Harbour. The Land abounds with Hills; and on the W. Side there are two little Islands, called *Tineholm* and *Gasholm*, with high Cliffs.

11. *Myggenefs*, lies two Miles W. from hence: 'Tis 3 Miles long, and one and a half broad. The Ground is high, surrounded with Promontories, and has but one Landing-place; and on the W. End there is a small Island, with a high Cliff round about, and sloping at Top like the Roof of a House.

12. *Kolter*, 3 Miles S. E. of *Waagoe*, and 2 W. of *Stromoe*, is a Mile and a half long, and half a Mile broad. It has a high Mountain on the N. End, which rises 200 Fathom above the Water. Yet 18 Years ago, in the middle of Summer, a great Quantity of Herrings was found spread on the Top of it, which our Author thinks were cast up there by a Whirlwind.

13. *Sandoe*, two Miles S. of *Stromoe*, is 8 Miles long, and 4 broad, with a Creek on the S. Side, and a little Isle on the N. W.

in which there are wild Black Cattle and Sheep.

14. *Skusoe*, two Miles further S. is three Miles long, one broad, a high Ground, and full of Cliffs.

15. *Store-Diemen*, or *Great Dam*, lies a Mile to the S. E. is round in Figure, a large Mile in Diameter, high and encompass'd with great Cliffs. It has no Passage to it but one, where 'tis difficult for a single Man to enter at a time; so that it might be fortified with little Expence, and made impregnable, since Ships cannot lie near it, because of the Strength of the Current; nor could they be famish'd, because there are Cows, Sheep, and Fowl, on it for 30 Men. Some Years ago, a Farmer's Wife of that Island having an Intrigue with her Servant-Man, they murder'd her Husband, and kept out the Island a long while, to avoid Punishment; but growing secure, at last they were surpris'd, and brought to Justice. Two Miles S. E. from this Place, is an Island called *Little Diemen*: It has some Inhabitants and wild Sheep upon it, and rises out of the Sea like a sharp and round Cliff.

Two Miles S. from hence lies *Suderoe*, almost 20 Miles long, and 8 broad where broadest: It is full of Hills, has many Cliffs on the W. Side, and but 4 Landing-places, which are difficult of Access. On the E. it has 4 Creeks, and one of them a good little Harbour; and on the S. Side there is one of the best Harbours in *Feroe*, called *Lebroe*.

These are the most remarkable Islands. There are others call'd *Holmes*, which are left for Pasturage; and there are several Rocks which rise out of the Sea near these Islands, two of which are necessary for Mariners to know; one N. of *Fugloa*, called the *Bishop*, is round and pretty high; the other S. E. of *Sumbøa*, on the S. of that Island is a round high Rock, called the *Monk*, near which there's a dangerous Whirlpool, which in calm Weather draws Ships towards it, and frequently sinks them; but sometimes they escape, by driving with the Stream. The Inhabitants talk of a floating Island, which has been frequently seen near this Place; but our Author takes it either to be a Fable, or an Illusion of the Devil.

When

When the Sun is in *Cancer*, there's no Night for a whole Month, and in the middle of Winter they have but little Day; but the Dawning and Twilight are longer than usual, especially when the Sun is in the S. or N. Signs. In the longest Day, the Sun rises at 2 a Clock 7 Min. and goes down at 9, 53. which makes the Day 19 Hours 46 Min. and from the Setting to the Rising of the Sun, 'tis but 4 Hours 14 Min. during which there's no Difference to be perceiv'd betwixt Day and Night, the Sun being then but 4 Deg. 29 Min. under the Horizon, and cannot make any Difference for a whole Month, there being then but little difference in the Sun's Declination; so that till the 17th of *August*, when the Sun first comes 18 Deg. under the Horizon, they have no considerable Night. In the middle of Winter, the Sun rises at 9 Hours 53 Minutes in the Morning, and sets at 2 Hours 7 Min. in the Afternoon; so that there is but 4 Hours 14 Min. Day; but the Dawning and Twilight add much to it; so that something of Day is to be perceiv'd at 8 in the Morning, and lasts till 4 at Night.

In these Islands Loadstones are found, on which, if a Compass be set, it will vary much in some Places to the E. and on others to the W. If a Compass be set on the Rocks near *Sumbœ-Monk*, formerly mention'd, it turns round, and is spoil'd for after-use, as happened to a Ship that was suck'd in by the Whirlpool there some Years ago. The ordinary Declination of the Loadstone on *Fero* is otherwise 13 Deg. 19 Min.

The Currents betwixt the Islands run very strong, and in several Manners, according to the Situation of the Land, or the Necks and Points of it. In the Winter, when the Wind blows against the Tide, it occasions a terrible and turbulent Sea, especially where there's any Ground near the Surface of the Water; for then the Sea beats so terribly against it, that scarce any Ship, tho' the Depth be sufficient, can get over those Breaks; and for ordinary Boats, they presently sink them. The Natives call those Grounds upon which the Waves break thus, *Boffvœt*, and observe, that in bad Weather they break 3 or 7 times suc-

cessively, and then rest; during which Time, the Inhabitants that must pass them row their Boats over as swift as they can. When they break, 'tis reckon'd to be a Sign of Frost and Snow, or else of warm Weather, and a N. Wind, according to the Season of the Year. The ignorant Inhabitants think they proceed from the Aversion of the Sea to the Iron in the Boats; and our Author is one of those Philosophers who ascribes them to occult Causes, which in plain *English* is, that he knows nothing of the Matter. He observes however, That when a warm Air raises Fog from the Sea, the Currents run swifter and stronger, and the Boffvœts break out; and the like happens in Winter before Frost and Snow. He observes also, That before Storms of Wind, every Nail in their Houses crack, tho' they be low built, and have thick Walls of Turf and Stone; yet they don't move when the Storm beats on them. All these Things he ascribes to Magnetical Sympathies and Antipathies.

He observes further of the Currents, That at New and Full Moon, they run very strong and swift; so that the poor Fishermen when at Sea, tho' surpris'd with a Storm, must stay till the Current turns towards the Land; so that they are many times lost. When the Current runs against the Wind, the Sea breaks almost every Winter with a Westerly Wind, over a Promontory in the Isle of *Kolter*, which is 30 Fathoms high, in such a Quantity as endangers the poor Inhabitants, tho' the Sea has 50 Fathoms to run without the Cliffs before it reach the Land; and some Years ago the Water broke over with such Force, as to tumble a great Stone of 6 Foot long, 4 Foot thick, and 4 Foot broad, that lay on the Top of the Promontory a considerable Way from the Place where it lay before. Tho' the Course of the ordinary Tides here be according to that of the Moon as elsewhere, yet their Course is different according as they beat against the Rocks and Points of Land, and according to the Situation of the Ground under Water, which occasions particular Streams to alter their Course, and run against the General Tides.

As to the General Currents, our Author gives us this Account: When the Streams run even betwixt the Land, there is a principal Current, but does not run with equal Rapidity during the 6 Hours; for the first 2 Hours, it runs pretty fast; the 2d 2 Hours, 'tis very rapid; and the 3d 2, it decreases by degrees. It is strongest in the New and Full of the Moon; but in Spring and Summer, when the Sun has most Force, 'tis stronger at every Change of the Moon, than in Autumn and Winter; from whence our Author infers, That the Sun and Moon, and inward Warmth of the Earth, occasion the Motion of the Tides. When Sailors cannot advance with their Ships in the middle of the Inlets, they take the Advantage of the Tides or contrary Streams, which sometimes reach a Mile from the Shore. He cannot exactly describe how high or low the Tides rise and fall, because there's a great Inequality in it, by the Changes of the Seasons of the Year and Moon; but they rise usually 7 Fathom at W. and but 3 at E. He says, an E. and W. Moon make the highest Water; but in particular Streams, 'tis High Water at different Hours; and sometimes in one Inlet, there are 5 different Currents that run against one another. There's a little Stream betwixt *Stromoe* and *Osteroe*, which, tho' it lie wholly still, and dead on both Sides, yet it runs forward and backward, according to the ordinary Changes of the Moon, so swiftly, that there's no rowing against it. The Cause he says is thus: There is no Ebb or Tide at the S. of the Stream; but at N. the Water rises and falls, tho' there be no Stream: Therefore when the Tide comes, the Water runs over to the S. Bay, and when it falls, it returns to the N. yet no Stream can be perceived, because the Inlet grows wider on both Sides, and is very deep. Before one comes to *Feroe*, there's no Stream discern'd; but when it comes to the Islands, it thrusts it self between Lands, as a River would do thro' a Sluice.

Besides those Streams, there are three others that turn round, and are called *Male-Stromme*, or Whirlpools, which are very dangerous, sink every thing that comes near them, and throw it up again at a certain Distance. Our Author thinks they pro-

ceed from round Grounds at Bottom, with Channels or Conduits in them. The most dangerous is that S. of *Suderoe*, about *Sumbue-Monk*, which has swallowed up several Ships, tho' others have escaped. The Sea round this Whirlpool is 80 or 90 Fathom deep, where the Stream runs quiet and still. A little further in, the Ground lies from 25 to 35 Fathom deep, where the Sea begins to rise and turn round. Further in, the Ground lies but from 8 to 10 and 12 Fathom deep, Snail-wise, in a Circle 4 times round. This high Ground has Points or Cliffs on the Top about 8 Fathom deep, and about 10 or 12 distant from one another; so that, when a Vessel comes upon this uneven Bank, 'tis turn'd round those Cliffs by the Stream with so much Swiftiness, that People who are not used to it lie down in the Boat, to avoid being giddy, and the Boat is turn'd round all the 4 Circles; between which there are three Channels or Conduits, where the Sea runs about slowly in small Turnings. On the E. Side there's a Gulph, where the Stream runs in as through a Sluice, and works but softly within. These Channels are from 25 to 35 Fathom deep. In the middle of the Pool, there's a deep Hole from 50 to 55 Fathom; and in the middle of all, 'tis 61 deep. The innermost Water runs about slowly; and on the S. Side of that Hole the Rock called *Sumbue-Monk* rises 10 Fathom above the Water, and the Depth about this Rock is 15; and N. of this there are 6 lesser Rocks, betwixt which and the *Monk*, the Water is from 3 to 4 Fathom deep. Our Author observes, That on the Top of those Rocks, the Compass runs round, as the Whirlpool does, and is thereby spoil'd. He takes Notice also, That on the Top of *Sumbue-Monk*, the Air is so extraordinary cold in the hottest Day of Summer, that the People who climb it for Fowl are scarce able to endure it; and the Fowl which haunt and breed there, have nothing almost but Feathers. And since the Saltness of the Water about *Feroe*, tho' in perpetual Motion, occasions for most part a temperate Winter, he thinks the Coldness of the Air upon this Rock does not proceed from the continual Motion of the Stream, but rather from a Magnetick Virtue in the Rocks;

Rocks; and this he takes also to be the Cause why Ships are so easily brought into that Danger: But for the better understanding of the Form and Nature of this Whirlpool, he annexes the Figure of it. One may justly wonder, after such a frightful Account of the Danger that Vessels run by coming near it, how so particular a Description of it could be taken; but our Author informs us, That when the Weather is calm, the Sea still, and the Stream in the Reflux, the Inhabitants venture to fish upon it, and to climb the Rock.

On this Occasion he enters into a Dissertation against several Authors as to the Cause of those Whirlpools, and explodes the Notion of such as ascribe them to Abysses or Bottomless Pits in the Sea, which they think to be also the Causes of Ebbs and Floods. He takes Notice of what *Athanasius Kircher* says, *Hydrog. Lib. 3.* of the famous Whirlpool under Norway, called *Moska-Stram*, viz. That it is a Gulph into which the Sea runs down under the Land of Norway, and comes out again in the *St. nu Bothnicus*, or Bay of *Bothen*; and *Herbinus*, in his publick Dissertation at Copenhagen, seems to be of the same Mind: But our Author says, they are misguided by uncertain and false Relations; for this Whirlpool lies under the Land, between two Islands, where the Bottom rises like that of the Whirlpool of *Feroe*, and does not descend in deep Cavities. He adds, That *Kircher*, in his *Tabula Geographica Hydrographica*, describes many such Gulphs or Whirlpools; all of which are found near the Continent, or between Islands, as those of *Seylla* and *Charybdis*, betwixt *Sicily* and the Point of *Calabria*, where there stands a high Rock in the middle of the Stream, like the *Monk of Sumbor*, which *Jacobson* says, are Beacons set up by God to warn Seamen of their Danger. He takes Notice also, That *Peter Clauson*, in his Description of this Whirlpool in Norway, says, the Water runs about in such a boisterous manner, that the Noise is heard at some Leagues distance, which he takes to be a Proof that there's no Abyss to swallow the Water, since the deepest Water makes the least Noise; therefore he takes the Noise, and turning round of the Water, to proceed

from its pressing through a streight Passage betwixt two Lands, and such a Ground at Bottom as that of *Feroe*, which he says is further prov'd by this, That when whole Trees come into that *Vorago*, they are thrown up again, with their Roots, Branches and Bark, tore, by being whirl'd about among such circular Rocks, and many such are thrown ashore on *Ferðe*, which could not be were there any pervious Gulph; for then the Hole would be large, the Water would still run round, and any Trees that were drawn in, would run hastily through without being tore. *Kircher*, to strengthen his Opinion, says, That in the middle of the Stream, near that high Rock, there's an Abyss by which the Water is swallowed, and comes out again in the Bay of *Bothnia*. *Jacobson* answers, That were it so, the 10th Part of what it swallows would not come out again; whereas the Whirlpool throws up whatever comes into it, and the Stream that drives it out, carries it into the Main, from whence it comes driving to *Feroe* and *Greenland*, as is very well known. In like manner, what comes up again in the Bay of *Bothen*, is drove by the Stream to one of those Sea-Coasts, or else out into the E. Sea; and if the latter, then many of those Wrecks would be seen in the E. Sea, where no such thing has yet been perceived. He is therefore of Opinion, That the *Vorago* in the Bay of *Bothen* is of the same Nature with that at *Feroe*, because *Olaus Magnus* mentions its making a boisterous Noise, which proceeds from such a Situation at Bottom, and the rapid Ebb and Flood thro' the long *Bothnick* or East Sea, which is not much perceiv'd, because of its Depth, and therefore it beats the harder upon the Circular Rocks at Bottom; and the like is perceiv'd in the Streight near the Isle of *Alland*, where the Ground lying shallow, it makes a terrible Noise, as is own'd by *Herbinus* in his Dissertation.

Their FOUNTAINS.

BUT to return to the Description of *Feroe*. Those Islands abound with Fountains of wholesome Water, of a good Taste; some of them on the Tops of the highest

highest Mountains, which run constantly in the greatest Drought; so that there's scarce a Cottage but what has the Convenience of a Spring or Brook, whose Water is generally cooler in Summer than Winter. They have one Medicinal Fountain in *Offeroe*, near *Gote*, but 'tis not much us'd, because hard to come at. Its Water is warmer in Winter than other Water, and keeps good a whole Year; from whence 'tis supposed to flow through a Vein of Brimstone.

On *Sadoroe*, near a Village called *Famioen*, there's a little Lake pretty high, on the Mountain that flows and ebbs with the Sea, and yet is fresh Water.

Their AIR.

IN Summer, 'tis temperately warm, not very hot at any time; yet the Heat is such sometimes, as to cleave their thin Mould to the very Rock. Their Winter is not excessive cold; and tho' the Land be under the 62^d Deg. N. Lat. it seldom freezes a Month together, nor does it produce any Ice in the open Inlets of the Sea; so that their Horse and Sheep go in the Fields all Winter. *Jacobson* thinks, this is occasion'd by the Saltness and constant Motion of the neighbouring Sea, which produces warm Vapours that temper the Air, and make it moist; so that melted Snow or melting Rain falls in the Vallies, when it freezes on the Mountains. Their moist Air and watery Clouds produce such stormy Winds, as sometimes tear up Stones from the Ground, and roll up the Earth on the Rocks like Sheets of Lead. Those Storms are variable, according to the Gaps between the Tops of the high Mountains, where the Winds gather and press themselves through with wonderful Force, when those in the Vallies underneath have so calm an Air, that they can carry lighted Candles from House to House. Sometimes the Blasts are so forcible, as if they would tear the Rocks, and contrary Winds meet betwixt them, being rebounded by the Rocks that jut out in the Passes, and occasion terrible Whirlwinds, which wheeling about among the Hills, come down

over the Inlets, and whirling round, run through them again a great way into the Sea, and endanger Mariners, who must presently furl their Sails, or be overturn'd, as they sometimes are tho' they do, especially if the Vessels be large; and they frequently bear down both Men and Horses in the Vallies: But the Inhabitants being forewarned by a terrible Noise betwixt the Rocks, alight from their Horses, lie down flat, and catch hold of Grass or Stones, till the Blast be over; but these Things happen seldom. *Jacobson* tells a strange Story of a Clergyman there, who, together with his Horse, was blown over the Edge of a Promontory near *Sumbae* by such a Whirlwind, but met by another stronger contrary Wind immediately, which blew him up again without any Hurt: Of this he is positive, tho' it seems incredible; but he ascribes it partly to the Nature of those Winds, and partly to a Miracle; yet he does not tell us what became of the Horse. The ordinary Winds here are for most part W. and S. W. especially in Spring and Harvest; and those Winds being very moist, 'tis usually Rain and bad Weather on the Side of the Land where the Wind blows, while on the other Side 'tis fair and clear, which he ascribes to the great Height of the Land.

The Summer not being hot, they have no Thunder then, but in Winter, when they have great Storms and Rain, which is the more terrible, because all of them are turbulent in that Season.

Their DISTEMPERS.

THEIR Air being thus purged in Autumn, Winter and Spring, by strong Winds and Thunder, they are seldom troubled with contagious Distempers, except they be brought in by Foreigners. They have no Agues, and such as could not be cur'd of 'em elsewhere, have been freed of 'em as soon as they came hither. They never have the Small-Pox but when brought by Strangers, and then it infects whole Families, who are thereby reduced to a miserable Condition, because not able to help one another, and every body else avoids them.

as if they had the Plague, refuse to bury the Dead, or to come near the infected Village. He gives an Instance of his own Knowledge in 1651. A young Man from Denmark, who had lately had the Small-Pox, arriving there, gave his Shirt to wash, which infected the Woman that wash'd it. Others, that did not know the Disease at first, were infected by her; so that notwithstanding all their Precautions, the whole Islands were infected.

The Diseases proper to the Country are, a strong Rheum in Spring and Autumn, attended with a violent Cough and Spitting; a Head-ach, and Pain in the Limbs, that keeps 'em a long time in Bed, and some die of it. Their Medicine sour is Whey, as hot as they can drink it; and this Distemper does generally purge 'em of all the Flegm, and other Impurities contracted by their cold and moist Air.

A 2d Distemper, proceeding from the same Cause, is what they call the Hot Sickness, much like that which affects Soldiers in cold and moist Camps during the Winter. The Patient is hot, with acute Pains in the Head, that occasion Distraction and a Flux of the Belly in Summer. It consumes the Marrow of the Bones of such as die of it; but the greatest Part escape by the Providence of God, for they know no Remedy against it, nor is it so frequent as the other.

The 3d is the Scurvy, which affects Flegmatick People that don't stir much; nor are others easily preserv'd from it, because of the Moistness of their Air, and living so near the Sea. Their Medicine is New Milk alone, or with Scurvy-Grass boil'd in it.

Their 4th Distemper is the Leprosy, which *Jacobson* reckons near a kin to the former.

The PRODUCT of their Land.

HE thinks some Mines of Copper and Iron might be found here, because the Rivulets which run down from the Hills in Summer are green in dry Weather, like Verdegrees. They have a small Quantity of Talk in the Northern Islands.

They have two Sorts of Salt-Petre Stones, but not enough to yield any great Quantity of that Commodity. On the Shore there are found transparent Stones, so hard, that one may write upon Glass with them: They are white, or of a white mix'd with blue, and some of them yellow, and so well polish'd, that they serve to put in Rings. They grow in the Cliffs, and are wash'd off by the Waves, but are not esteem'd by Jewellers. 'Tis thought they are a sort of Jasper. They lose their Colour when transported. Pearl Muscles, like those in Denmark, and Molucca Beans, are also found here. The ignorant People took them to be Stones, and thought the Kernel was another bred within them. They have also some Chrystal, but so brittle, that it cannot be wrought.

They have no Trees but some low Juniper Shrubs and Willows, and when they planted Fruit Trees, they did not succeed. Their Firing is Turf, some of which is so good, that it serves Smiths instead of Coal, of which they have some small Quantity, but in Places hard to come at. No Corn but Barly comes to Maturity here, but this yields 20 or 30 fold, so that they need none from abroad. They have abundance of fat Pastures, so that one of their small Oxen yields 100 Pounds of Tallow. Their best Pastures lie N. E. and N. and *Jacobson* thinks those Vallies are impregnated by the Nitre which the said Winds bring with the Rain and Snow, being also cover'd from the scorching Beams of the Sun by the neighbouring Hills. He observes, that in the two Months when there is almost no Night, the Corn and Grass grows but little here; but afterwards, when the Nights begin to lengthen, they grow more in a Night and Day than in 14 before, when so much expos'd to the Sun, tho' there be Rain at the same Time.

Their Herbs and Roots are such as are common to Gardens, viz Lettice, Cresses, Pennyroyal, Coleworts, Turnips, Carrots, &c. They have 4 wild Herbs, which they esteem much, viz 1. Plenty of Scurvy, besides Cresses, Beccabunge, and Sorrel, are all good against Scorbutick Distempers. 2. Great Quantities of Tormen-til which, having no Bark, serves 'em in-

stead

stead of it to tan their Skins. 3. *Angelica*, which grows wild every where; and the Inhabitants eat the hollow Stalks before they grow to Seed, after taking off the outward Rind, and the long Filaments, as other People do Fruit; and in Time of Dearth they eat the Roots. 4. *Radix Rhodii*, which they call Hielpe Rod, from whence they distil a Water in Smell and Taste like that of Roses, and serves for the same Use.

Their Cattle are Kine, Horses, and Sheep. He is thought a great Farmer that has 20 of the former. They go in the Fields all the Winter, except the Snow be very great. They are of a small Size, and fat in Proportion to their Pasture. Their Horses are little, but strong, swift, and sure Footed, tho' without Shoes; so that the People think themselves more secure upon the Rocks and Hills on Horseback, tho' they ride a good Pace, than on Foot. They breed them to hunt wild Sheep, which they sometimes grasp with their fore Feet when they come up with them, and run without Fear over Rocks, and Hills after them, with their Masters on their Backs. They keep their tame Sheep in separate Inclosures, divided by Ditches. Their Flocks are from 100 to 150, and some Farmers have from 200 to 500, divided into smaller Flocks, that feed always in the same Ground. They lose many of them in hard Winters, and have no other Fence but Earthen Dikes to shelter them from the N. Wind. Sometimes in a great Snow they gather themselves close in the open Fields, where they are cover'd quite over, and if not found out by a Damp which rises from the Snow above them, they are lost for a Month together sometimes, and eat the Earth about them, and the Wool off one another; but this seldom happens, for the Danger of it makes the Inhabitants look after them carefully, and when they find them under the Snow, they open a Passage for them, or have Weathers with every Flock, which being stronger than the rest, break a Passage for else; but they have no Hay, or any thing else to relieve them, than the Grass and Roots they dig from under the Snow. Their Pastures are not so good as formerly, which proceeds, says

our Author, from the Decay of Nature; but he ought rather to ascribe it to their being over-stock'd, and not cultivated. If they be not carefully look'd after, they fall many times in great Numbers from the Cliffs, cover'd with Snow, into the Sea, as they seek their Food.

They shear their Sheep in the Spring, take their Lambs from them in the Autumn, and inclose them in Fields near the Sea with Stone Fences. They breed their Dogs to hunt the Sheep and Lambs so dexterously, that they will catch any they point out to them without biting them, but keep them down till their Masters come. These Dogs are shaped much like Greyhounds, and when well trained, yield as much as a Cow. Most of their Sheep are white in the N. Parts, and black in the S. *Jacobson* ascribes this to the Vapours of the Sea, to which those Islands lie most exposed on the S. or rather to the Nature of the Soil, which he thinks is full of Brimstone or Salt-Petre. The chief Riches of the Inhabitants consist in their Sheep.

Their FOWL.

They have great Numbers both of Land and Sea Fowl, which serve them for Food. Some of them stay all the Year, and others fly away in the Winter. Those that stay are Doves, Hares, Grellings, and Snow-Fowls. They have also Owls, Sparrow-Hawks, Crows, and Ravens. The latter are so destructive to the young Lambs, that they have a Law, obliging every Man who does not bring one of their Beaks to the Session-House at a certain Season of the Year, to pay 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ d. They have White Ravens, and some half white, half black, which they teach to speak after cutting their Tongue-string. They have a Fowl called a *Teale*, that lives both by Land and Water, and being a great Enemy to the Ravens, is upon that Account cherish'd by the Natives.

The Water-Fowl which stay constantly here, are several sorts of Ducks, Plovers, Eiders, Maws, and Teisters. The latter is good Meat, changes its Colour in Winter, and affords good Down. They have another

ther called *Imbrim*, larger than a Goose: It is never found on Land, for its Wings are so small, that it cannot fly, and its Feet are only made for swimming. It has a Hole under each Wing, capable of holding an Egg, where they suppose it hatches its Young, which are easily allured to come near the Land, by waving a Piece of white Linen to them, and then the People shoot them. *Liomen*, another Water-Fowl, much like the *Imbrim*, comes hither in Summer, and is easily caught when on Shore, because they can neither run nor fly well: It builds on the Banks of Fresh-Water, so as its Bill may reach it without moving from its Nest, where it continues till it hatches its Eggs, tho' the Water sometimes overflows them. *Garfugell*, another Water-Fowl, has little Wings, so that it cannot fly, but walks upright: His Colour is a shining Black, except a little White under the Belly, and a white Circle round its Eyes, which look like Spectacles. They have also three sorts of Wild-Geese, one Reddish, and the other two Grey; but the one sort less than the other. They come hither in great Numbers in the Summer, and keep in Fresh-Water Lakes, where the Inhabitants hunt them in Boats, and take many. Swans come hither in the Spring, make no great stay, but proceed to other Countries. Great Numbers of other Birds come at the same time, of which the Inhabitants make much Profit. The chief of them is the *Sule*, or *Gentleman*: They come only to one little Island, and are very good Food. They have other eatable Sea-Fowls in great Quantities, such as the *Skrabe*, *Lunde*, *Lumwisse*, the *Sea-Dam*, &c. which come and go at certain Seasons; and tho' each of them breed but one *per Annum*, and are more sought for than any other, so that 100000 of them are taken in a Year, yet they are so numerous, that they darken the Sun like a Cloud, and make such a Noise with their Wings, that they resemble Thunder. The *Skrabe* digs its Nest with its Beak and Claws under Ground, with several Turnings, where it hatches its Young, stays with 'em all Night, goes out to Sea in the Morning, and returns with Food in the Evening. The Inhabitants pull out the young ones with Hooks made on purpose, salt them up for Winter-Provision, and use their Fat for Lamps.

They never kill the Dam, except she be in the Nest unknown to them, and she returns to the same Nest next Year, except they spoil it in seeking for the Young, which they avoid if possible. The *Lunde* are very numerous here: 'Tis something bigger than a Pigeon, and has a strong crooked Beak, and sharp Claws. When a Raven comes to take them or their Young, it catches him under the Throat with its Beak, and grasps him about the Breast with its Claws, which makes the Raven fly away crying, till they come to the Sea, where he drops and drowns him; but sometimes it is surpris'd in its Hole by the Raven, who devours it and its Young. This Bird builds its Nest under Ground like the *Skrabe*, or under Stones, where it may be secure. The Inhabitants hunt them with little Dogs, or pull them out with Hooks, and sometimes take them with Nets as they fly to or from their Nests. They have another large Bird called a *Lumwisse*, black on the Back, and white under the Belly: They lay their Eggs on the bare Cliffs by one at a time, and sit so close, that they touch one another. The Cocks bring them Meat till the young ones be hatch'd, and fit to be carried to Sea on the Dam's Back. The Inhabitants climb the Rocks where they build, with Ropes and Poles with Hooks on them, or are let down with Ropes by others; but frequently lose their Lives in the Attempt. Sometimes the Fowlers, when the Weather is fair, stay 7 or 8 Days in the Rocks, where they shelter themselves in Holes by Night, and have Meat let down to them by Ropes. They throw the Fowls into Boats, which lie beneath on purpose. Their Ropes are sometimes 80 or 100 Fathom long, and 3 Inches thick: The Fowler makes the End of it fast about his Waste, and between his Legs; and 6 Men holding the Rope with a Piece of Wood on the Brink of the Rock, to prevent its being cut as it slides, let him down. There is another Line fasten'd to his Body, which he pulls, so as to let them know when to stop, or to let him down faster or slower. He has a thick Seaman's Cap on his Head, to defend him from Stones that fall from the Rocks by the Motion of the Rope, which sometimes are so big, that they kill him; so that knowing the Danger, they always

recommend themselves to the Protection of God when they go about that Work. Their chief Danger is from those Stones, but otherwise they think it a Diversion; and those who are expert, can swing themselves from one Place of the Rock to another, where the Fowls sit, which he kills with his Fowling-Staff; and when he meets with Cavities or other Places that are easy to be climb'd, he unties himself, and fastens his Rope to the Rock till he have occasion for it again. Their Manner of climbing up the Rocks is more dangerous, and is perform'd thus; They come in a Boat to the Foot of the Rock, and tying a Rope round the middle of one of their Number, they take a Pole of 5 or 6 Ells long, with an Iron Hook at the End of it, and putting the Hook under his Girdle, lift him up to some Place of the Rock where he can get footing; then they help up another in the same Manner, with each a Fowling-Staff in his Hand, and with a long Rope fasten'd about their Middles, they climb up as high as they can; and where they find Difficulty, the one helps the other up, by thrusting the Pole under him, and when he has got footing, he hales the other up by the Rope. Thus they proceed till they come to the Birds-Nests, when one of them seeks a convenient Place where he can stand sure, and holds the Rope while the other climbs about after the Birds, who if he chance to slip, the other, if strong enough, hales him up again; but if otherwise, they fall together, and are killed. The Birds they catch they either throw into the Boat below, or tie them in a Bundle to the End of a Line, let down by some above, who hale them up; but fasten them to their own Girdles till they have a sufficient Number to convey either one Way or t'other. When the Fowls are brought home, they eat Part of them fresh, salt up the rest for Winter, and sell their Feathers. Sometimes a single Man will let himself down by a Rope fasten'd to a Stake, and climb up again in the same Manner, with the Fowls hanging at his Girdle; and in less difficult Places, they climb without Ropes, where one, not accustomed to it, would think they could find no manner of footing.

Besides the Birds of Prey formerly mention'd, they have others called the *Swarth-*

bagg, the *True*, and the *Skue*. The *Swarth-bagg* is as large as a Kite, black on the Back, and white every where else: He feeds upon other lesser Birds. The *True* is also called Thief, because he pursues other Birds, strikes them till they drop the Meat from their Beaks, and catches it dexterously ere it fall to the Ground. The *Skue* is of the same Species, but as large as a Raven: It is very fierce in Defence of its Eggs or Young, flies directly at the Head of such as pass by its Nest, and strikes their Faces severely; but the Inhabitants fasten a Knife upright on their Heads through their Caps, by which the *Skue* is killed when it falls down upon them with such Vehemence.

Their FISHERY.

THEIR Fishery was formerly so good, that the Inhabitants maintained themselves by it alone; but it is now so much decayed, because of the Peoples Wickedness, says *Jacobson*, that they have not enough to supply their Necessities; so that the poorer Sort, who have no Arable Land, are frequently reduced to great Want; yet sometimes they have abundance of Fish, especially when Corn and Cattle fail. Their Sorts of Fish are Whales, Seals, Codd, Whittings, large Flounders, Place, Trouts, Sand-Flounders, and a small Fish called Murt, resembling our Filchards, which sometimes in Autumn fill their Creeks, where the poor Children take as many as serve themselves and their Parents from Meal to Meal; for having no Salt to cure them, they provide no further. Their Codd are found in Places of the Sea call'd Meads, which lie off at certain Points of the Land, where the Fishermen suppose there are Fresh-Water Springs at Bottom. Their Seals haunt the Inlets, and are of different Sizes; some of them as big as Cows: They sleep on Out-Rocks, under Promontories, where Boats cannot reach them; and in *September*, when they bring forth their Young, they retire into Caves under the Rocks. The Natives sometimes shoot them, and at other Times catch them with Nets and Dogs, who being trained to it, swim to them against the Wind, that the Seals may not smell them, and catching

them fast by the Throat, hold them till their Masters come up and kill them. The other Way of taking them, is by going in with Boats to the Mouth of the Caves, where they bring forth their Young, and rowing in as far as they can, leap out, some carrying Candles to see where they lie, and others with Clubs kill Hundreds of old and young, but not without Danger from the old He-ones, and likewise from the Waves. When they kill them, they hale them out, eat their Flesh, melt Part of their Fat into Train-Oil, salt up Part of it for Food, and make Shoes, &c. of their Skins.

Their Whales are of several Sorts; one is called a *Grind-Whale*, because of Marks upon them resembling Grates. The biggest is not above 5 Ells long, and the young ones an Ell and a half: They come in great Numbers under the Land when the Weather is dark or foggy. When any Fishermen see them, they make Signs to all the other Boats, who come presently together, and drive them in towards the Land, by shouting and throwing Stones at them. They send a Man ashore at the same time, to give Notice to the People by making a Fire, who come with their Boats from all the Islands to the Place where they see the Fire or Smoak; and bringing their Whale-Spears with them, drive the Whales to an Inlet or Creek, where there are good Whale-Banks or Flat-Sands, and there kill them. The Boats divide themselves into two Companies, one of which attacks them, and the other draws up in Form of a Half-Moon, to prevent their Escape to Sea; and other People with Whale-Spears on the Shore wade in as far as they can, and help to kill them. Sometimes they break or overturn the Boats with their Tails, by which Men are now and then lost, and many of the Whales escape. When they have killed as many as they can, they hale them on Shore. The Tythe is first taken, then one is allow'd to him that first saw them, and the rest is divided into two Parts, one for those that took them, and the other for the Owner of the Land where they are taken. Sometimes they are brought in with the Tide, and run on the Sands in a dark Night, where the People find 'em in the Morning.

The Inhabitants melt Part of the Fat in, to Train-Oil, and salt up the rest for Bacon, with a black Salt made of the Ashes of burnt Sea-Weeds, which preserves it very well, so that it is scarce to be discerned from Bacon. Other Part of the Fat they use instead of Butter. The Flesh, when dry and fresh, resembles Beef; Part of it they cut into long Pieces, and dry in the Wind. Foreigners pickle part of the Tail, which tastes like Neats-Feet, and therefore the Inhabitants call those Whales *Sea-Knee*. *Jacobson* mentions a Creature called a *Sea-Dog*, which sometimes drives those Whales ashore. His upper Parts above Water resemble those of a large rough Spaniel. There is another Sort called *Doglines*, about 7 or 8 Ells long, and 2 Ells broad where thickest. A small Number of them come every Year into a Haven in *Suderoe*, where the Fishermen drive them into an Inlet if the Weather be boisterous; but if it be calm, they are so tame, that they suffer the Fishermen to come up to them, and fasten a Rope through the Fat of one of their Eye-lids, by which they hale them ashore, and kill them with Whale-Spears. They are not so good Meat as the other, and if one eat of their Fat, it not only pierces the Pores of their Body, but their Cloaths, makes 'em look yellow, and to smell strong. They have other Whales, called the *Roar* and *Witch* Whale, which being large and dangerous, the Inhabitants dare not meddle with them, for they play about the Boats, and sometimes rise under and overturn 'em: To prevent which, the Natives bore a Hole in the Head of their Boat, put *Castoreum* into it, and stop it up. Others inclose it in a Piece of Wood fasten'd to a Fish-Bone, and if they throw that Piece of Wood upon any of those Whales, or if they do but smell the *Castoreum*, they sink immediately. Our Author says, he knows by Experience, that Men, who could swim very well, have immediately sunk when they had *Castoreum* about them, and quotes *Bartolinus's Centuries of Anatomical History*, Cent. 2. *Hist.* 17. to confirm it. He adds, That the Inhabitants say Juniper Wood performs the same thing; and he is of Opinion, That *Assa-Fetida*, and other Things made use of to expel the dead *Fetus*, will have the same Effect. But the Truth of these

these Things, and of the Appearance of a Mermaid on those Coasts, in such a Form as we usually paint 'em, must be submitted to the Readers Judgment; for tho' our Author writes with an Air of Probity, he seems in many Things to be too credulous.

Of the Time of Peopling those Islands.

Jacobson says, from *Sturleson's Chronicle of Norway*, That they were first inhabited about 868, by People that fled from Norway in the Time of *Harald Pulchricomus*, who first reduced all the little Princes of Norway, and brought that Country under one Monarch. He thinks that *Jemteland*, *Island*, *Orkney*, and *Schetland*, were planted about that Time by others who fled on the same Account. These Islands were said to have been first discover'd by a Pirat of Norway, but there is no certain Account to be had of those Things, because their Publick Papers were carried away by Pirates above a hundred Years ago. Authors differ about the Etymology of the Name; but *Jacobson* thinks they were called *Feroese*, from the Word *Ferrier*, which, in their Language, signifies Ferries: This is not improbable, because of the many Streams betwixt the Islands, which they are constantly oblig'd to ferry over.

He says, That the chief Men from Norway divided the Islands betwixt themselves and their Followers, who became their Tenants. Their Government was at first a Sort of Aristocracy, under their Leaders and their Successors. Many of the People say their Fore-Fathers had great Estates, but there is no such Thing now; for some were afterwards divided among the Children of the Chief Men, others were forfeited when the Islands were reduc'd by the Kings of Norway, and Part were given to Churchmen, according to the Superstition of the Times, for Pardons and Dispensations to eat Flesh in Lent; from which the People could not well abstain, because their other Provisions were short; and all those at the Reformation were annex'd to the Crown, so that now the King of Denmark is Proprietor of most of the Country. And

the Lands reserv'd by the Owners are divided into such small Parcels by their Heirs, that the Freeholders are much poorer than the King's Farmers.

There's no History of the Succession of their first Chiefs; but 3 or 4 of them seem to have been the principal Rulers, and contending for the Superiority, were guilty of many Oppressions, which made it easy for the King of Norway to reduce them. The first was *Oluf Haraldson*, call'd the Holy, who by fair Promises procur'd their Submission; but taxing them high afterwards, they revolted. He brought the Chief of them again to Submission by Presents; yet they killed those who came to demand his Tribute. Thus they liv'd independent till about A. C. 1100, in the Time of King *Sigurd*, called the *Hierosolomite*, when they had Bishops and Governors planted amongst them. Since that Time, some of the chief Men of *Feroe* have been employed by the Kings of Norway, and called to their Assemblies of States. When Norway came under the Crown of Denmark, those Isles did the like. Their Records being lost, as before mention'd, there's no History of any remarkable Actions perform'd by the Inhabitants, except a few, of which *Jacobson* gives a Romantic Account. The chief, of whom there is any Certainty, is, *Magnus Heinsson*, a great Sea-Captain, who performed many brave Exploits in the Reigns of *Frederick II.* and *Christian IV.* of Denmark. In the Time of the latter he was executed, upon a false Accusation by some that envy'd him; but his Innocence appearing afterwards, he had Justice done to his Memory, and in 1590 his Corps was taken up, buried with great State, and a pompous Epitaph put on his Tomb.

These Islands are frequently invaded by Pirates of all Nations; but *Christian IV.* built a Fort at *Thorshaven* for the Defence of that, which is their chief Town.

Their Manners and Customs.

Jacobson says, They are humble, civil, courteous to Strangers, whom they entertain gratis, and allow 'em Carriages from Place to Place; but are troubled with few of them. They are charitable to the Poor, tho'

tho there is no great Inequality among 'em as to Riches, which consist chiefly in Cattle. They generally make no further Provision than for their present Necessities, and think that every Year will bring Provision for it self. There's scarcely any Theft among 'em, but when the poorer Sort steal now and then some Food, or a Pewter Spoon, which they melt down into Iller-Rings for Women's Bodice; but they will not meddle with Silver or Gold, because they know not how to alter the Form of it.

They are temperate in their Diet, and keep their Beer to treat their Guests and their Ministers; but at *Christmas* they are pretty jovial. None but the poorer Sort are given to Excess in Brandy. Their Diet is frugal, without Bread, Beer, or Salt, for most part; but according to the Season of the Year, they live upon Flesh, Milk, Fish, and Gruel. They dry their Flesh and Fish by hanging them in Wind-houses, made up of Half-Dales, 2 Inches from one another, that the Wind may go through 'em; and their Fish thus prepared are transported to other Countries. They salt some Flesh which they dry in the same manner, and eat when 'tis a Year old: 'Tis pretty savory, but hard of Digestion. They are not very nice in their Cookery, for they boil their dry'd Meat in Water, and put a little Barley-Meal in the Broth, with some of the Fat that drops from the Flesh as it dries, which makes it when cold like Pease-Pottage, in which they put a little Vinegar; or when they have not Flesh enough, a little preserv'd Tallow, which they boil in the Pottage.

They preserve their Tallow thus: When 'tis fresh, they roll it in little Pieces, and let it rot a little; then they cut it small, half melt it, and cast it out afterwards into great Pieces of 36 Pound each, which they put in Holes dug in the Ground, to keep it moist, where the longer 'tis kept, 'tis the better; and when 'tis old, it cuts and tastes like old Cheese. They prepare this every Year, and use it instead of Butter. The Quantities of it are according to their Number of Cattle. This they call their hidden Treasure, because the Pyrates do not know where to find it. The poorer sort use the Fat of Whales instead of it.

They are frugal in House-keeping, give certain Portions of Meat to their Servants. Their Men have twice as much as their Maids, and they prescribe them their Work accordingly. Every Morning they weigh out 2 Pound of Wool for them to spin and knit that same Day into a Pair of coarse Stockings, and weigh their Work against Night. This is Part of the Goods they export. Their Clothes are always of coarse Flannel, and of one Fashion; but they have a finer Sort for Church and Market. Their Coats are short and wide, and they seldom wear Linen. The Women's Clothes are all of one Fashion for Rich and Poor, being Bodice and Petticoats sewed together without Skirts; but their Petticoats are plaited. They have Cloth for Holidays, and chiefly affect a dark blue Colour, and some red. They have Fringes at the Ends of their Sleeves, and the richer Sort have black Velvet sew'd on red Cloth for their Trimming. They wear large Stomachers, adorn'd with Silk Fringes, Ribbons or Lace, on the upper Part, and under their Chin. Through the Stomacher they thrust a little Piece of Silver-gilt, of an oblong square Form, with Buckles and gilt thin glingling Plates hanging at it. The poorer Sort have 'em of Copper, and Girdles of the same. The Maids go bare-headed, with their Hair plaited, and the married Women wear red knit round Caps, much like the Scots Bonnets. The Women's Shoes are of Sheep's Skins, and the Men's of Neats-Leather tann'd. They have but one Sole, are a little sew'd together about the Toes and Heels, which they fasten with Strings behind, and tie them above the Ankle.

Their Bedding is Hay, with a little Flannel spread over it. They all make their own Clothes, are fit enough for such Handycrafts as they need, and make Boats much better than those of *Norway*. The Women, besides coarse Flannels, weave much fine Bed-Clothes of several Colours, fine Stockings, and Woollen Waistcoats, and dye all themselves. They have a sort of Red which they call a Cork Colour, that none else can imitate. They are not inclin'd to unprofitable Pastimes; but at their Weddings, and at *Christmas*, use plain Dances, holding one another by the Hand, and singing Ballads in Praise of their Champions.

pions. On Holidays they sing Psalms, and at vacant Hours play at Chels, where in both Sexes are expert. They are naturally inclin'd to observe the Stars, especially *Bootes*, by which they know the Hours in Winter Mornings to direct them in their Work. They know the Course of the Moon by the Increase and Decrease of the Sea, and by this compute their Fix'd and Moveable Feasts very exactly. Their Language is that of *Norway*, mix'd with *Danish*; but the S. and N. Isles differ in Dialect. They live long, viz. to 80, 90, and some of them to above 100 Years of Age. *Jacobson* instances in one *Erasmus Magnusen*, who at 90 married a young Woman, by whom he had 5 Children, and liv'd till 110. To obviate Suspicion of her being unchast, he tells us she had always a good Reputation, and that the Man was of a vigorous Constitution.

Of their GOVERNMENT.

IT relates chiefly to the Administration of Justice, Regulation of Trade, and Provision for the Poor. Their chief Governors were the King's Bayliffs; but now some Person of Honour from *Denmark* has usually that Trust, and appoints a Deputy, with Sheriffs under him, to take Care of Justice and Trade. The Islands are divided into 6 Districts, with a Sheriff in each, who determines small Causes; but great ones are referred to the Court called the *Session*, which is kept at *Thorshaven* in *Streymoe* once a Year, where the Governor's Deputy presides. They have also a Yearly Synod of the Clergy, who, with their Provost, meet at the same Place, and determine Church-Causes. The Deputy also presides in this Court. They have also a Spring Session in every District once a Year, where the Deputy also presides, assisted by the 6 Sheriffs, and a Sworn Recorder. Causes are determin'd here by the Provincial Judge, with 6 Sworn Men for every Division, and a Recorder, who registers what's done. The Clergy do also attend, for they preach and sing Psalms in the Forenoon, and keep the Court in the Afternoon. The first Day of the Session the Clergy are called in, because what relates to the Pub-

lick is then consider'd. Private Causes are determined the following Days, and at the End of the Session the Clergy is call'd again, to know if any publick Matter remain to be consider'd, and if not, the Court is dissolv'd; the Provincial Judge assuring the People of his Majesty's Protection, if they pay their Tribute, to which they give Consent by clapping their Hands; and in the Evening the Court and the Clergy make merry in the Sessions-House, by drinking the King's Health, &c. with a set Speech, sing a short Latin Hymn alternately, drink one anothers Health, and then break up.

They have a particular Law, called *The Sheep Ordinance*, consisting of 9 Articles, relating to the Management of their Sheep, and ascertaining their Property in them, and the Inclosures where they feed. 'Tis very ancient and equitable, and shews the Simplicity of those Times: It bears Date in 1040, was granted by *Hagen Duke of Norway*, Son to King *Magnus*, and renewed by *Christian IV. of Denmark*.

Their TRADE, and POOR.

THEY formerly had trading Vessels of their own; but being unskilful in Commerce, *K. Frederick II.* appointed a Company to furnish them with Necessaries, and the *Feroe Men* were only to trade with them. The *Hamburgers*, and those of *Bergen* in *Norway*, were formerly allow'd to trade thither. Their Commerce is by bartering one Commodity for another; theirs are Skins, Feathers, Tallow, Train-Oyl, Fish, and Stockings, of which they transport annually 60000 Pair. The King's Revenue is paid in Skins, Butter, and Tallow, and his Farmers have an Inventory of so many Sheep and Kine, which are called the King's, and they pay him a certain Rate besides for their own. The Lands of the other People are divided into such small Parcels, that they can hardly live on them. Their Poor and their Lepers are provided for by a 4th Part of the Tythes, and the Charity of the other Inhabitants; and their Lepers have a particular Place assigned 'em to live in, with Ground for their Cattle. This Distemper is occasion'd by the moist

Air,

Air, and ill Diet of the poorer Sort, which is Flesh or Fish half rotten in the Winter, and Milk and Fresh Fish, without any Salt, in the Summer. The Infection is long before it discovers it self; so that the Unclean frequently marry with those that are not, without knowing themselves to be so. *Jacobson* observes, That some of the Children of those who marry, so are infected, and others not; and they seldom separate, till the Magistrates oblige them to it. The sound Person frequently escapes; whereas others of the same Constitution are soon infected by them, after a little Conversation.

Their RELIGION.

Christianity was planted here by King *Oluf Trygeson* about the Year 1000, but made no great Progress for some time; so that they had no Bishops till about 1200, who had then too large Revenues for the Time and Place, and bought the Office of the King of *Norway*. But since the Reformation, they have only had a Provost. Their Congregations are divided into 7 Districts, from 4 to 7 Parishes each; under the Care of one Priest; some of them at 4 Leagues distance one from another. The Parishes are 39 in all. The Churches are small, built with Dales, and cover'd with Stones on the outside. Their largest Church is at *Thorshaven*, which is built of whole Beams, and has a Steeple. The great distance of the Churches makes it difficult and dangerous for the Priests to perform their Function in the Winter; and those on the remote and little Islands are but ill serv'd, because of the Danger of passing the Streams, and the Clergy's being frequently detained in them by stormy Weather. Their Benefices are from 15 to 30 Gilders each, with a Proportion of Corn, Wool, Butter, and Fish, and a Free House, and one for their Widows. Their best Benefice, with all their Perquisites, is scarce above 100 Gilders *per Annum*; but they make it out with their Glebe and Cattle, and by knitting of Hosiery, in which they assist their Wives and Servants; and sometimes they have Presents from their Parishioners. They

observe, besides the Sabbath, ordinary Holidays, and New Moons, 3 Days in *Ascension Week*, and 3 Days in *Michaelmas Week*. Since the Priests cannot always attend their Parishes, they appoint their Hearers to read Homilies, and sing Psalms on Holidays; and one that can read best, to do it in the Church on *Sundays*, for which they have a small Allowance. Tho' Popery prevail'd there as in other Places, yet they still kept the Fundamentals; as appears by a very ancient Hymn in their own Language, which treats of the Fall of Man, of the Corruption of Nature, of Redemption by Christ, of Regeneration, and of our Saviour's Birth, Life and Passion. They seem to have had it from *Island*, because there are many Words of that Language in it. By their Diligence in reading the Scriptures, and good Practical Books, they understand Religion better in general than the common People of *Denmark*; and have many of the Psalms and *Luther's* Catechism, with a short Explanation of it, by Heart. The Business of the Provost is to visit the Churches, and preach in 'em by Turns. They have but one School, which is at *Thorshaven*, where they learn to read and write; and those design'd for the Ministry, are taught Latin. The Priest of that Place is their Master, for which he has 70 Gilders *per Annum* from the King; and some of their Students are allow'd their Diet *gratis* in the University of *Copenhagen*, where they are bred up for Clergymen. *Jacobson* says, they were formerly much troubled with Spectres and Apparitions of several Sorts, from which they are not yet free. He gives an Account of several Persons who have been carried away for some Time by Evil Spirits to inaccessible Places, from whence they have come down again without any Hurt, and others of them have been killed. In such Cases their Relations have Recourse to Prayer, by which they are frequently recover'd. These Things he relates on his own Knowledge. He gives one remarkable Instance which happen'd in 1667, to one *Jacob Olufson*, in the 24th Year of his Age, who being sick a Bed, there appear'd one to him in shining Clothes, which filled the Room full of Light. He saluted the young Man, stroak'd him with his Hand, remov'd his Pains, and taught

taught him a certain Prayer, which he enjoined him to say 3 times a Day, and to teach the Country-People to do the like, in order to remove the Judgments which threaten'd them. He commanded him the first time he came to Church to kneel down on the Threshold, turn his Face from the Church, say that Prayer, and to teach the People to do the same with join'd Hands, and bow'd Knees, and to admonish them to forbear Curling, Swearing, &c. and then vanish'd through the Roof. Upon this the young Man recover'd; and in 5 Days after it appear'd to him again, as coming down from the Sky in a Priest's Habit, red and white, with a red Cross on his Back, bid him not doubt but he came from God, and vanish'd. He appear'd to him a 3d time as he was a Bed, ask'd him, If he had spread abroad what he commanded him, and if he had seen any Signs in the Heavens? The young Man answer'd, No: But that others had seen two Suns, which the Apparition told him was a Sign they should begin to keep the *Sabbath* from *Saturday* at 12 in the Afternoon; and that when they went to Sea, they should sing the 23d *Psalms*, and vanish'd again. He appear'd to him a 4th time, told him he was *St. John*, who lay on our Saviour's Bosom at the Lord's Supper, and then vanish'd. He appear'd to him a 5th time: And these Things becoming pub-

lick, and the young Man being of a good Conversation, many People were seduc'd, gave out that they had seen the like Visions, were disobedient to their Ministers, and not at all reform'd in their Lives. Upon this *Jacobson*, the Provost, examin'd the young Man, sent Copies of his Confession about the Country, and order'd the Clergy to read it from their Pulpits, with his Censure upon it, and to exhort the People to seek no other Way of Worship but what was contained in the Word of God, and according to the Direction of the Civil Magistrate. The Provost, in his Explanation of the Catechism, did likewise take Care to fortify the People against such Delusions; and the next Year, that young Man being tempted to Fornication by the unclean Spirit, the Provost gave Notice of it, and of the Disturbances he had rais'd, to the Archbishop of *Zeeland*, who, according to the King's Order, commanded the said Person to be admonish'd, from the Word of God, of his Errors, and to be absolved from Censure if penitent; which was accordingly done: And thus an End was put to those Delusions. We have been the more particular in this, because of the Resemblance it bears to what has lately happened to those called *Camisars*, or *French Prophets*, here in *England*.

CHAP. XXII.

ICELAND.

WE gave a brief Account of this Country before, among other Places that lie near the North Pole; but since 'tis Part of the *Danish* Dominions, we shall give a further Account of it here.

As to its Situation, the Masters of the Royal Fishery discovered *Fournier's* Mistake, who plac'd it from Lat. 64. to Lat. 68. and found by Observations, That its true Lat. is from 64 Deg. 25 Min. to 66 Deg. 5 Min. This they prove by Experience; for they found, that on the 11th of December, the Sun was above the Horizon in the most Northerly Places, which could not be, if the Lat. were 66 and $\frac{1}{2}$. for the Sun is then in the Tropic of *Capricorn*, 90 Deg. from the Zenith of those in that Lat. and must by Consequence be under their Horizon that Day.

In the N. Part of this Island, while the Sun is in *Gemini* and *Cancer*, it never goes entirely below the Horizon for two Months, and one half remains above the same during the longest Days, from 10 at Night till 2 in the Morning, when it rises quite above the Horizon; and about the Winter Solstice, while the Sun is in *Sagittary* and *Capricorn*, the Nights are as long as the Days are in Summer. M. *De la Mothe de Vayer*, in his Letter from *Copenhagen*, December 18, 1644. to M. *la Peyrere*, from the Authority of *Angrim Jonas*; Dr. *Wormius* and *Bleskenius* gives this following Account: That 'twas formerly reputed fertile in Wheat, but now has none: That 'twas said to be well stor'd with Wood for building Ships; whereas now there is nothing but low Shrubs; tho

Roots of a vast Bulk are still dug up in the Places where those Forrests are said to have been, and the Timber of 'em is as black as Ebony. Their Firing is Turf, and vast Trunks of Trees are frequently brought thither on Shoals of Ice from the North, which helps them both for Building and Fuel; and when that Season of the Year comes, the Inhabitants flock to the Shore in quest of those Shoals, which bring 'em not only Trees, but Stags, Foxes of several sorts, Bears, Wolves, and what they call Unicorns. The Country is strong and Mountainous, and their Grass of such an agreeable Scent; that Foreigners transport and dry it to lay among their Clothes; yet their Beef is not good, and their Mutton rank; but they dry them in the Sun and Wind, which takes off the ill Taste. They have abundance of clear and wholesome Springs, some of which are nourishing like Beer. They have also Ponds and Lakes full of Fish, many Brooks and navigable Rivers. *Bleskenius* mentions a Lake in the W. Part, which always smoaks, and yet is so cold, that it petrifies every thing put into it. What's stuck in the Ground, turns into Iron, so far as 'tis under Ground: That Part which is in the Water, turns into Stone; and the Part above Water, continues Wood. *Bleskenius* says, he saw this tried, and that the Part which seemed to be Iron, when put into the Fire, burnt like Charcoal. He adds, That there's a Lake in the middle of the Island, the Exhalations of which kill Birds that fly over it. They have Springs so hot, that the Water burns one's Skin, and when set to cool, has a Sulphur

on its Surface. Near some of those hot Fountains, there are very cold Springs, the Water of which being mix'd together in one Basin by means of Pipes, make excellent Baths. *Bleskenius* mentions another Spring, the Water of which tastes like Wheat, and is excellent against the Venereal Distemper. They have no Minerals but Brimstone, with which they abound, especially in Mount *Hecla*, which not only sends forth Flames, but also Torrents of Sulphureous Liquor that burn like Spirit of Wine, and those Eruptions are commonly followed by vast Quantities of black Ashes and Stones. The Islanders fancy they see Troops of Infernal Spirits carrying damn'd Souls thither, especially after a Battle any where; and they take the Noise of the Shoals of Ice dash'd against the Shore to be the Groans of Souls damn'd to excessive Cold, as those carried to Mount *Hecla* are condemn'd to excessive Heat.

Their TRADE

Consists in bartering one Commodity for another, viz. their own Product, which is Dry'd Fish, Butter, Tallow, Coarse Woollen Cloth, Brimstone, Foxes, Bears, Stags, and Wolves Skins, for Flower, Beer, Wine, Strong-Waters, Iron, Woollen and Linen Cloths. The *Germans*, when they arrive, set up their Tents, wherein they exchange Cloths and Toys for the *Island* Commodities. *Bleskenius* reflects upon their young Women, and says, they prostitute themselves to Strangers for Tribes; but *Angrim Jonas* contradicts him in this, and also in the Story of their Sorcery and selling of Wind, which, according to him, is only their fore-knowledge of the Weather from the Disposition of the Air, which if they find suitable to Strangers that are ready to sail, they pretend to sell to 'em, by tying Knots in their Handkerchiefs, and muttering certain Words; but they fail in their Conjectures that Way more frequently than they hit.

Their ancient Religion, Government, Learning, &c.

Every Division of the Country had three chief Temples for Administration of Justice and Devotion, and a Bayliff called *Godorp*, i. e. Divine, to take Care of the Poor, and hinder their going into other Districts, or being Licentious. They had Power to kill or geld them, to prevent their Multiplication, and to banish such as married, and had not wherewith to maintain them. It was formerly divided into 4 Provinces, and each Province into several Districts. They had once *per Annum* an Assembly of the Bailiwicks of each Province, which were summoned together by the Governor, who sent small Crosses of Wood to every Bailiff, which he distributed to the Judges, and they to the Masters of Families; or the President sent a Wooden Hatch to each of the Governors of the 4 Provinces, as a Sign to call a General Meeting of the States. Their Chief Gods, while Pagans, were *Thor* and *Odin*, their *Jupiter* and *Mercury*, to whom they erected Temples and Altars, and sacrific'd Men, by throwing them down from Rocks, or into deep Pits near their Temples, of which they had two chief ones at *Hole* and *Schalhold*, two Villages, where now they have their Bishopricks. They decided all Controversies by Duels, wherein the Vanquish'd, or he that refus'd the Challenge, lost his Claim, and the Heirs of the Conquer'd had no other Remedy but to bring a large Bull or Ox to the Conqueror, which he was to kill with one Stroke; and if he fail'd, he lost his Pretensions.

They were so careful in their Annals, that they not only preserv'd their own History, but that of other Nations, according to *Angrim Jonas* and Dr. *Wormius*. They wrote their Histories in Verse, and their Poets were accounted Inspired; or, in plain English, Sorcerers. Dr. *Wormius* gives us a strange Instance of it, thus; When he was Vice-

Vice-Chancellor of the University of Copenhagen, an Iceland Student complain'd to him against one of his Countrymen, for writing a Satyr upon him that would ruin him, who being examin'd by the Doctor, and threaten'd to be punish'd as a Sorcerer, confessed that there was Witchcraft in it, tore it, and was reconcil'd to his Fellow-Student.

This People was anciently much addicted to Fables, of which they have a Mythology, called *Edda Islandorum*, that gives an Account of their foolish Opinions about the Creation, their ancient History, &c.

They have no Towns, and indeed scarce Villages, for they build their Houses at a great Distance from one another, for fear of Fire; and having no Roads, they travel by the Compaſs. Their Houses are low built of Wood, and sometimes half under Ground, because of the high Winds. They have no Window, but a Hole at Top, and are cover'd with Turf or Bark. They generally dwell near the Shore or Rivers, for the Convenience of Fishing and Pasture; so that the Inland Country is almost desert.

They have a Grammar-School, and a Press at *Hole*, where they print the Bible; but Paper is very dear there. The Inhabitants are great Players at Cheſs, and make their Men very curiously of Fish-Bones. Their Language is the purest Dialect of the *Runic* now extant. In their Chronicles, they deduce their Origine from the *Asiatick* Prince *Odin*, formerly mentioned, and are as Romantick in the Accounts of their Antiquities as other Northern People. By some it has been accounted the *Thule* of the Ancients.

Dr. *Paul Biornimi*, who resided here, says, Their Air is healthful, but soon rusts Iron; That their Chronical Diseases are the Cholic and Leprosy; and that they have no Physicians, but some Chirurgeons.

Their Weather is uncertain, and not always according to the Season; for sometimes they have Hail and Snow in the middle of Summer, with furious Winds. The Frost does not penetrate above 4 Foot into the Earth in the Winter; so that Oil and Spirits of Wine don't freeze here.

The Doctor says, The Meteors he observ'd in this Country were the *Drain-Volans*, and two Mock-Suns, with three Rainbows passing through them, and the true Sun.

The Sea flows about the Rising and Setting of the Moon, and ebbs when she is S. or N. In Autumn, the Tides rise 20 Foot; but at other Times not above 16; and the greatest Depth about the Coasts is 80 Fathom. The Declination of the Compaſs here is to the N. W.

The Soil, as we find in our *Philosoph. Transactions*, N^o 3. is for most part Clay, and in some Places Sandy; but they have no Tillage. They have many sorts of Birds in Summer, and in Winter Ravens, Wild-Ducks, and Swans. Their Horse and Sheep live in Winter upon what Grass they can scrape from under the Snow, and the Coraline Moss, called *Muscus Marinus*.

The Bread of the Inhabitants is Cod-Fish ground into Powder, and bak'd. Of this Fish they have two Sorts, one called *Stock-Fish*, or *Haberdine*, which they dry in the Wind, and heap up in great Poles; the other is *Hocketile*, a very large Fish, that yields abundance of Livers, of which the Inhabitants make Oil for their Lamps.

The chief Employment of the Inhabitants is Fishing, and making a coarse sort of Cloth of their Sheeps-Wool, or rather Hair. They make their Breeches, Boots, and Stockings, of Sheep-Skins, and their Shoes of Seal-Skins. They are infested with Eagles, that sometimes carry off their Children; to prevent which, they put Collars of Bells about their Necks, the Noise of which frightens the Eagles, or gives them Notice when the Children are attack'd.

The King's Revenue is rais'd in Flesh, Oil, Fish, Coarse Cloth, and Brimstone, for which he sends about 8 Ships every Year, who carry them Necessaries in Exchange for their Commodities. They are not allow'd to trade with any other People; yet the Dutch fish in their Harbours for Grampusses and *Du Barta's*, a Bastard-kind of Whale.

What we have to add concerning Mount *Hecla*, is, That it sometimes throws out scalding Water, and Pumice-Stones so big, that 10 Men are not able to move them. *Angrim Jonas* says, That it throws out Ashes some Hundreds of Miles, and

that they are found sometimes in *Norway*. The Springs that rise in those Sulphureous Grounds are so hot, that (according to those Authors) the Stream of them will boil Beef hung over them in Kettles full of cold Water.

C H A P. XXIII.

G E R M A N Y.

C*laudian*, in the *Proemium* to his *Germania Antiqua*, gives us an Account how much of this Country was known to the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*. He vindicates *Tacitus*, who is charg'd by some *Germans* to have writ many false Things concerning it, and owns, that they are obliged to him alone for the best Account of their Antiquity; without which, little of the ancient Writers could be understood. He takes Notice, That *Livy*, *Asinius Quadratus*, and *Caius Plinius*, wrote much of *Germany*; but their Books are lost, and tho' they were not, *Tacitus* being later, is much more exact.

He confutes those who in their Commentaries on *Tacitus* think that he serv'd in *Germany* under *Flavius Vespasian*, and that he had seen the East Sea; and shews, that what he speaks in the Places they quote, is meant of the *Romans* in general.

He afterwards shews from good Authorities, That the *Romans* might have a very exact Knowledge of all *Germany* in *Tacitus's* Time, for they had carried their Arms thro' all the Country betwixt the *Rhine*, the *Elb*, the *Sale*, and the *Danube*; and for what was beyond the *Elb*, they might easily know it from the Inhabitants, among whom they

had Garisons; and they had the like Opportunity to know the Country by their Garisons as far as the Confines of the *Daci* and *Sarmatae*; and for that Part betwixt the *Elb*, the *Danube*, and the *Weissel*, and the *Sinus Codanus*, now the East Sea, they might know it from *Maroboduus*, the King of those Parts in the Time of *Augustus* and *Tiberius*, who was 18 Years an Exile at *Ravenna* in *Italy*. He mentions other Opportunities that the *Romans* had to know those Countries, by the Ambassadors which came to *Augustus* from the *Chersonesus Cimbrica*, &c. In *Nero's* Reign, a German Knight was sent for *Amber* to the Mouth of the *Weissel*, and the Shores of the *Æstii*, now called the *Prussians*; the People of which Country, and the *Gothones*, not only used to bring *Amber* to *Pannonia*, and the Borders of *Italy*, in the Time of *Pliny* and *Tacitus*, but much more anciently, viz. in the Time of *Herodotus*. As to the Countries further N. in *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Einmark*, *Lapland*, and *Finland*, they were not only described by *Polybius*, *Xenophon*, *Lampiscenus*, and others of the oldest *Greek* Writers, but discovered by the *Romans* in the Time of their first Emperors, as appears by *Tacitus* and *Pliny*. From all which he infers, That *Tacitus* had a very exact Knowledge of *Germany*, and justifies

Nova Totius
GERMANIE
DESCRPTIO

OCEANI
GERMA

NICI
PARS

PICA RDIE

COMITAT

BURGUNDIA

PARS

FRANCH

COMTE

PARS

SABAUDIE

PARS

FRANKE INLAND

WER THEIM

COM

PARS

WIR ENBUR

DUOD

PARS

WIR ENBUR

DUOD

PARS

WIR ENBUR

DUOD

PARS

WIR ENBUR

DUOD

PARS

WIR ENBUR

DUOD

PARS

WIR ENBUR

DUOD

PARS

WIR ENBUR

DUOD

PARS



justifies the Description given of it in his Book. This he says is the peculiar Glory of the *Germans*, That they have an Account of their Antiquity and Progenitors by one who was a *Roman Knight*, had been honoured with many great Posts, and was a grave, learned, and careful Author, who wrote his Book in the beginning of *Trajan's* Reign, about 100 Years after our Saviour's Birth.

Cluverius divides his Work into 3 Parts. The first gives an Account of the Situation of ancient *Germany*, with the Origine and Manners of the People: The 2d treats of *Germany* on this Side the *Rhine*; and the 3d of that Part beyond it. He makes use of the *Roman Miles* for his Dimensions, and reduces the *Greek Stadia* into that Measure; upon which he has a Learned Dissertation.

For the better understanding of what he says, he tells us, that he follows the *Roman Custom*, who call'd that Part of the Country on our Left Hand as we come down the *Rhine*, *Cis-Rhenana*, and that on the Right *Trans-Rhenana*.

In his 2d Chapter, he informs us, That the Ancients called the *Germans*, *Gauls*, *Spaniards*, and *Britains*, by the Name of *Celts*, and some extended the Name as far as the River *Oby*, which separates *Asia* and *Europe*.

In his 3d Chapter, he confutes *Bodin*, who alleges, That the Name of *Celtica* was peculiar to *Gaul*; That the *Gauls* came from the *Greeks*, and the *Germans* from the *Gauls*. He takes Notice likewise of other false Opinions about the Origine of the *Germans*.

In his 4th Chapter, he alleges, That *Aschenaz*, *Noah's* Grandson, with his Posterity, Peopled *Celtica* after the Deluge, viz. *Ilyricum*, *Germany*, *Gaul*, *Spain*, and the *British Islands*; and this he endeavours to prove from *Genesis*, and the Authority of *Josephus*, and other *Jews*: But this is justly exploded by the Learned Dr. *Nicholson*, now Lord Bishop of *Carlisle*, in his Account of *Germany* in *Pitt's Atlas*; and he thinks this Mistake proceeded from the Misunderstanding of an ancient Tradition in the Northern Countries, That these Parts of the World were Peopled by *As* and his Posterity; by which the Doctor thinks the Ancients meant no more, but that their An-

cestors were brought into *Europe* by some great *Asian Captain*.

Cluverius, in his 5th Chapter, says, The *Ilyrians*, *Germans*, *Gauls*, *Spaniards*, and *Britains*, had all one Language, and differ'd only in Dialect, which he urges as an Argument that they were all of the same Origine! We refer the Curious to the Book it self for his Authorities.

In his 6th Chapter, he endeavours to prove the Identity of their Language by the Names of the People, and the proper Names of Persons.

In his 7th Chapter, he attempts the same from their Agreement in the Names of their Towns and Villages.

In the 8th Chapter, he urges it further from their Agreement in the Names of Things, which are still retained in the *German Tongue*; and on this Occasion he treats of the Antiquity of the *German* or *Celtick* Language, which he thinks to be one of those that had their Origine at the Confusion of *Babel*, and explodes the Opinion of such as would derive this and all other Languages from the *Hebrew*.

In his 9th Chapter, he treats of the Name of *Celta*, and of the Division of ancient *Celtica* into the Names of *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, *Britains*, *Ilyrians*, and *Thentisci*, and likewise of the true Origine of the Nation, and of the Name of the *Thentisci*, where he shews that *Germans* is a Foreign Word, and was not used by the ancient Natives, but invented by the *Gauls*, and given to such of the *Celta* as first passed the *Rhine* into their Country.

He next enquires into the Origine of the Name of *Deutschen*, or *Teutschen*, which some derive from their ancient God called *Twisto*, mentioned by *Tacitus*, whom the ancient *Germans* fancied to have sprung from the Ground, and with his Son *Man* to have founded their Nation. He confutes the Opinion of those who think that *Twisto* is derived from *Aschenaz*, and takes Notice, That most of his Countrymen derive the Name from *Teuto*, a King or great Man, who commanded their Ancestors; and after a long and learned Dissertation, he thinks that by *Teut* they meant GOD, the first Creator of all Things, because of the Affinity it has with the Word *ΘΕΟ*, which

was made use of by the *Egyptians*, and the ancient *Celte*, who derive their Origine from them, and call their God *Mercury* by this Name. Here he takes Notice, That ΘΕ'OC was the common Name which all Nations gave to the Creator, but was differently pronounc'd according to their several Idioms; some calling it ΘΕ'OC, others ΣΕ'OC, Ζεύς, and Δεός, from whence the Latin *Deus*; and the ancient *Germans* having some Knowledge of the Creation by Tradition, and of the Formation of *Adam* from the Earth, who in their Language, as well as in that of the *Egyptians*, was called *Man*. He takes him to be meant by the old *German* God *Mannus*, whom the Ignorance of Posterity confounded with the Creator. He is not without Suspicion however, that *Tacitus* may have misunderstood the old *German* Songs and Traditions about those Things. He is in doubt about the Origine of the Word *Celta*, and thinks it might signify the same Thing after the Dispersion at *Babylon*, as *Aschenaz* did before it; but Dr. *Nicholson* well observes, That *Vershegan* derives it from the Greek Word ΚΗΛΥΤΗΣ, Light Horsemen; and that *Celi* in *Welch*, a Dialect of the *Celtic*, signifies God, which he thinks as good a Derivation as that of *Cluverius*, who derives *Goth* from God, and *Teutisch* from *Teut* or *Theut*; so that nothing can be determined from those Etymologies.

In his 10th Chapter, he says, those People were by the *Gauls* first called *Germans*, when they passed the *Rhine* about the Year of the World 3624 into *Gaul*; that the *Romans* learned this Name from the *Gauls*, and the *Greeks* had it from the *Romans*. He confutes those, who say the *Germans* in general were anciently called *Gauls*, and the *Gauls* *Germans*; but owns, that those who inhabited that Side of the *Rhine* next to *France*, were promiscuously called *Germans* and *Gauls*.

In his 11th Chapter, he treats of the Extent of ancient *Germany*, and of its Boundaries; and asserts, that it was larger than all the other Parts of *Celtica* together. He confutes the Error of those, who, following *Ptolomy*, think the Name of *Germany* is much further extended now than 'twas anciently; and prefers the Authority of *Tacitus*, who knew it much better than the *Egyptian* Geographer; and says, *Germany* was separated

from the *Gauls*, *Rhetii*, and *Pannonii*, by the *Rhine* and *Danube*; from the *Sarmatae* and *Daci*, by mutual Fear or Mountains; and that the rest was encompassed by the Ocean with great Bays, and vast Islands: That is, says *Cluverius*, *Germany* was separated from the *Gauls* by the *Rhine*; from *Rhatia*, *Noricum*, and *Pannonia*, by the *Danube*; from the *Sarmatae*, who inhabited *Masovia*, *Lithuania*, and *Russia Minor*, by mutual Fear, because on that Side it had no certain Boundaries by Rivers or Mountains; but from the *Sarmatae* *Jazyges*, who dwelt betwixt the *Danube* and the *Theysse*, 'twas separated by those Mountains which *Ptolomy* calls *Sarmatici*, that reach from *Vacia*, a Town in *Hungary* on the Banks of the *Danube*, to the Heads of the Rivers *Granus* and *Vagus*; and from the *Daci*, who dwelt beyond the *Theysse*, on the Left Side of the *Danube* in *Transilvania*, Part of *Hungary*, and other Countries towards *Pontus*, by the Mountains of *Crapack*; yet *Cluverius* says, the *Germans* formerly dwelt beyond those Mountains to the N. and E. as far as the Mouths of the *Danube* and *Pontus*; and towards the N. the Boundary was the Ocean, which encompasses *Norway*, *Sweden*, *Finmark*, *Sveetofinnia*, *Biarmia*, *Lapland*, and *Finland*, which he undertakes to prove were all Part of ancient *Germany*, and by Consequence that modern *Germany* is not a third Part so large. He supports his Opinion by the Authority of *Solinus*, *Casar*, *Strabo*, and *Pliny*. He takes Notice, That tho' the *Rhine* was accounted the Western Boundary of *Germany* by most Authors, yet *Mela* extends it to the *Alps*, and *Agrippa* the like; but they fell into this Mistake because those Parts were inhabited by some of the *Celte*, who were of the same Language and Origine with the *Germans*. He takes Notice, That *Agrippa*, when he makes the Length of *Germany* from the Ocean to the *Alps*, including *Rhatia* and *Noricum*, to be only 686 Miles, he understands it only of the Continent from Cape *Scagen*; for the rest of the Country beyond the *Sinus Codanus*, he reckon'd among the Isles. He adds, That *Ptolomy* might very well call this vast Tract of Ground, *Great Germany*, since 'twas the largest of all the Countries in *Europe*, except *Sarmatia*; but he observes, That *Ptolomy* seems to have called it so, to distinguish it from

from *Lesser Germany*, on the Side of the Rhine next *Gaul*.

The CLIMATE and SOIL.

IN his 11th Chapter, he gives us an Account of their Climate and Soil; and in Answer to *Tacitus's* Character of it, That the Soil was rugged, the Air sharp, and the Country uncultivated, and of an unpleasant Aspect; he says, That 'twas so compar'd with *Greece*, *Italy*, *Spain*, and other Countries under a milder Climate; yet in the more Southerly Parts about the *Danube*, the Climate is as mild as that of *Italy* about the *Po*. He thinks that *Tacitus* meant it chiefly of those Parts about the Mouth of the *Rhine*, *Ems*, *Weser*, *Elb*, &c. where the *Romans* had long Wars.

For the Soil, *Tacitus* says, That tho' the Face of it differ now and then, yet in general 'tis either cover'd with Woods, or filled with Lakes and Marshes, is lower towards *Gaul*, and higher (*Verticoflor*, and not *Ventoſior*) towards *Noricum* and *Pannonia*. *Mela* gives much the same Account. The Country, says he, is full of Rivers, abounds with rugged Mountains, and is for most part unpassable, because of Woods and Marshes. *Cluverius* corrects *Tacitus* here, and says, according to Truth, That the Country towards *France*, from the Source of the *Danube*, or the Lake of *Constance*, to the River *Rora*, is Mountainous enough; and there are likewise high Mountains lower towards *Mentz* and *Bonn*, and the Country is more Mountainous where the *Trebochi*, *Sequani*, and *Rauraci*, formerly People of *Gaul*, inhabited, than it is towards *Noricum*. Therefore the Country may more properly be said to be low in *Cleves*, *Gelderland*, those Parts of *Holland* beyond the *Rhine*, *Freezland*, *Westphalia*, the Dutchies of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, the Bishoprick of *Bremen* and *Magdeburg*, *Holstein*, *Jutland*, *Meklenbourg*, *Pomerania*, *Brandenburg*, and the *Lesser Poland* on this Side the *Vistula*. From hence Southward it grows Hilly by degrees, and then rises into high Mountains. 'Tis not easie to find in what Countries the Lakes *Sueſia*, *Mefia*, and *Melfagus*, spoke of by *Mela*, are to be found; but *Cluverius* supposes it must be in *Freezland* and *Westphalia*,

where there are great Lakes and Marshes. He thinks at the same time, That *Tacitus* and *Mela* did not speak of all *Germany*, but only of that Part betwixt the *Danube*, the *Rhine* and the *Weissel*, the *German Sea*, and the *Sinus Codanus*, now the *Baltick*.

What *Tacitus* says as to its being *Satis ferax*, he takes his Meaning to be, That it was fruitful in Corn, or Things sow'd; *Satis*, not *Sat ferax*. He also corrects the reading in these Words, *Ut Pomaria conferant*, & *Prata ſepiant*, & *Hortos rigent*, thus; *Nec enim cum ubertate Soli Labore contendunt, ut Pomaria conferant Hortos ſepiant, & Prata rigent*. The Meaning of which he takes to be, That the Country was fruitful enough, had the People understood or taken Care to manure it; and when *Tacitus* says, it would bear no Fruit-Trees, because of the Coldness of the Climate; he proves from his own Words, that it was not meant of Apples, Pears, Nuts, or other Glandiferous Trees, with which the vast *Hercinian* Forest abounded, but of Olives, Almonds, Vines, Figs, Peaches, Prunes, &c. that were plentiful in *Italy*: And even as to Vines, the Industry of the modern *Germans* has fully proved the Mistake; for half that Part of the Country described by *Ptolomy*, towards the S. produces Wine of several sorts, particularly *Rhenish*, which is not only equal to, but preferable to some of the Wines of *Italy*; and the like Mistake is now plain as to other Fruit-Trees which abound in *Germany*. 'Tis evident, that *Tacitus* was in the same Mistake as to their Mines of Gold and Silver; for 'tis commonly known now, that they have many Silver Mines, and Gold was anciently found in the *Rhine*, of which the Pieces called *Rhenish*, *Rhenani*, are a sufficient Proof; and 'tis known, that there's Gold now found in *Bohemia*, with several sorts of Jewels: And whereas *Tacitus* says, their Cattle were small, and look'd ill; he owns it to be true as to those Northern Parts in *Westphalia*, &c. which were best known to the *Roman* Arms; but in the S. Parts it is otherwise. And whereas in *Cæſar's* Time, the *Germans* us'd to buy Horses from the *Gauls*, the *Germans* in many Countries do now make a great deal of Money by selling Horses to the *French*: And *Cluverius* takes Notice of the Wild-Beasts and Fowls in their Forests, of
their

their Lakes and Rivers full of Fish, and of their Medicinal Springs and Baths, omitted by *Tacitus*. From all which together, 'tis apparent, That *Germany* abounds with many Things for Luxury, wants nothing that is necessary; and for Towns and Buildings, may compare with any other Country in *Europe*, except *Italy*.

Their Habitations, and Way of Removing Annually.

C *Cluverius*, in his 13th Chapter, takes Notice of *Tacitus's* Mistake, in saying the *Germans* had no Towns, and did not love to dwell contiguous; for *Cæsar* in his Commentaries expressly mentions their Towns, and 'tis very improbable that they were all destroyed after his Death; but he owns, from the Authority of *Velleius Paterculus*, *Dio*, and others, that those Towns were nothing but Villages, and that the first great Towns were built there by the *Romans*. He confutes those who, from the Authority of *Ptolemy*, that wrote about 60 Years after *Tacitus*, and mentions 90 Places in *Germany* beyond the *Rhine*, which he calls *Plades*, or Towns, think they had great Cities in those Days, for *Ammianus Marcellinus* frequently mentions the Wars beyond the *Rhine*; but says nothing of any Town, Castle or Fort, built by the *Germans*. Upon the whole, he ridicules the Vanity of those who, from *Ptolemy's* Authority, would maintain the Antiquity of this or that City beyond the *Rhine*; and says, there can be nothing in it, except they will own that where were Villages of the same Name with those that are now Wall'd Towns. He proves next from *Tacitus* and *Seneca*, That the ancient *Germans* had at first no Houses, but liv'd upon Herbs, and by Hunting, were clad with Skins, lay on the Ground, and hunted with Darts or Spears pointed with Bone for want of Iron, and were accompanied with their Women and Children, who shar'd in their Prey. At that Time they had no other Houses, but under Thickets of Trees, or Boughs twisted together. Afterwards they form'd a sort of Villages by such Fountains, Fields and Woods, as they thought fit, where their Habitations were not contiguous, but each

House had a separate Space; and hence he observes, That the Names of most of the *German* Villages and Towns do still end with *Wald*, *Feld*, *Brun*: In *English*, *Wood*, *Field*, *Burn*, or *Brook*; and to the Names of their Habitations, either the Name of the Proprietor, or the *German* Termination *Haim*, *Haus* or *Hausen*, was added; in *English*, *Home* or *House*; and this was common to all the Nations of the *Celta*, as appears by the Names of many Towns in *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, and *Great Britain*, tho' the Inflections be now varied according to the Custom of the Times, as *Bergamo* in *Italy*, *Bergusia* in *Spain*, &c.

Those Houses were not built with Stone, Mortar, or Brick, but made of Stakes twisted with Branches, cover'd with Bark or Leaves, and of a square Form: Of these, according to *Herodian*, were their Towns compos'd. The same Custom is still observ'd by such as live in the Woods of *Bohemia* and *Thuringia*. In *Cæsar's* Time, we find those Houses were cover'd with Straw.

Cluverius takes Notice afterwards from *Cæsar*, That they used suddenly to change their Habitations for want of Provision, because they did not till their Ground, nor lay up Corn, but liv'd mostly upon Cattle, and their Product of Milk and Cheese, and laying what Moveables they had in Carts, removed with them easily as they pleased. They had no Property or fix'd Portions of Land; but their Magistrates and Princes appointed every Year, in what Places and Proportions they thought fit, Lands for such Tribes as dwelt together, and made them remove to another Place next Year. Their Reasons were, That Part of the Ground should always be fallow, and that the People should be inur'd to Hardships, that they might be fit for War; whereas had they continued always in one Place, they would have built better Houses, and by degrees have fallen into Luxury: For *Tacitus* says, That in some Places they plaister'd their Cottages with fine shining Earth, so as it resembled Painting. *Cluverius* says, they did it with Clay of different Colours. Thus they liv'd in *Tacitus's* Time. But about 130 Years after, when *Alexander Mavroica* and *Maximinus* were Emperors, it appears from *Herodian*, That near the *Rhine* they began to build with Stone and Brick; and

Nar-

Marcellinus says, That in the Reign of the Emperor *Constantinus*, their Houses were built more nicely after the *Roman* Way. Besides those Cottages, *Tacitus* says, they had Caves or Dens under Ground, cover'd with Dung, where they liv'd, and laid up their Corn in Winter, and many times escap'd the Fury of their Enemies. They were so hardy, that most Part of 'em went naked, especially their Youth; and their Men and Women, in the coldest Winters, had nothing but short Mantles or Cassocks of the Skins of Beasts, or Rinds of Trees.

When they came to build Villages, we have heard already their Houses were not contiguous, but built at a great Distance from one another, either because they would avoid the Danger of Fire, or because they did not understand the Way of Building. Here *Cluverius* has a curious Dissertation upon the Word *Burgus*, the Name given to such Villages by *Orosius*, *Luithprandus*, &c. and he thinks it to be originally a *German* Word, signifying an Inclosure, because those Places were Hedg'd about with Gardens, which is expressed by another *German* Word, *Taun* or *Thyn*; from whence comes the *English* Word *Town*; but in Time this Word *Burg* came to be applied to such only as were inclos'd with Walls.

He comes next to the Description of their *Pagi*, which he says were not Villages, as appears by that Sentence of *Tacitus*, *Eliguntur Principes qui jura per Pagos Vicosque reddunt*; i. e. Princes were chosen to administer Justice in the Districts and Villages; and from *Plutarch*, in the Life of *Numa*, who says, He divided the Land among his People into Parts, called *Pagi*. It appears also by *Cæsar's* Commentaries, That large Countries or Districts were called *Pagi*; for *Helvetia* is said to be divided into 4 *Pagi*; but those ancient *Pagi* were not so large; for *Tacitus* in several Places mentions many of them as belonging to inconsiderable People, particularly that the *Semnones*, a People of *Suevia*, had 100. *Cluverius* observes, That what the Ancients call'd *Pagi*, the modern *Germans* call *Gaw*, *Gow*. Hence *Brisgaw*, *Rhingaw*, &c.

Those *Pagi* were subdivided, as *Tacitus* informs us, into what we now call Hundreds; *Eliguntur Principes qui jura per Pagos*

Vicosq; reddunt, Centeni singulis ex plebe Comites, Consilium scilicet & Auctoritas adjunt; i. e. Princes were chosen to administer Justice in the Districts and Villages, and had 100 of the People join'd with them to give them Advice, and to add to their Authority. And from the Latin Word *Centum*, the *Germans* derive their *Centem*, and *Centengerichte*, which is the same with the *English* Hundred. And it appears by *Tacitus*, That they were summoned to War according to those Hundreds.

Their STATURE and CONSTITUTION.

Cluverius, in his 14th Chapter, observes, That *Tacitus* thought the *Germans* to be an unmix'd People, because their Habits of Body was much alike, being of a large Stature, with blue Eyes, and red or fair colour'd Hair. Their Courage was equal to their Stature, and their Language fierce and harsh. *Cæsar* in his Commentaries takes Notice, That they were much taller, and more robust, than the *Gauls*, and looked so fierce, that the *Roman* Soldiers at first were seized with so much Fear, that they could scarce endure their Looks. Here *Cluverius* obviates a common Mistake, as if in those Times the *Germans* had all been Giants, which arose from their being of a much larger Size than the *Gauls* and *Italians*, and much the same with the *Britains*; of whom *Strabo* says, he saw some at *Rome* who were half a Foot higher than the tallest *Romans*; which by the Description that *Tacitus* gives of the *Caledonians* or ancient *Scots*, *Cluverius* thinks to have been some of that Nation. He takes likewise Notice, That 'tis the Opinion of Natural Philosophers, that the Northern People are so much larger and stronger than the Southern, because the Heat of the Sun dries up the Moisture of the latter; and this he takes also to be the Cause why the People of the North have a greater inward Heat than those of the South: And he observes, That such of the *Germans* as inhabit the moist Countries betwixt the *Scheld* and the *Elb*, are larger than the rest. And whereas *Hippocrates* says, the People of the North look ill, because they are

are pale and lean ; he says, 'tis true of Part of the *Swedes* and *Norwegians*, who are as much dry'd up by excessive Cold, as those of the South are by excessive Heat. The fair Complexion of the *Germans*, *Goths*, and *Britains*, mentioned by the Ancients, is ascribed to their Climate. But all this is only to be understood of the People in general ; for there are Exceptions in every Country, and the *Romans* spoke only of those Parts that were best known to them.

As to the Terribleness of their Voice and Countenance, taken Notice of by the Ancients, he says, 'tis still observable in those who live on the *Baltick*.

For their inward Disposition, he quotes many of the Ancients, who say, They could endure a great deal of Hunger and Cold, but could not bear Thirst or Heat, which made them not so good Soldiers when they came into warmer Climates.

To what *Tacitus* and other Authors say, That their huge Bodies were only fit for a short Attack, and that they could not endure Fatigue or Wounds ; *Cluverius* opposes *Cæsar*, *Mela*, and *Seneca*, who say, That from their Infancy they were accustomed to Fatigue and Hardship ; That the Men were very strong and swift, and spar'd neither Man or Beast that came in their Way ; That the young Men harden'd themselves by Hunting, and the more Horns of the Wild-Beasts they had killed they brought to the Publick, the more they were esteem'd ; says *Cæsar* in his Commentaries. *Mela* adds, That they exercised their Strength and Courage by War and Hunting ; That before they came to the Age of Puberty, they went naked in the greatest Cold : And *Seneca*, in his Book *De Ira*, says, There was nothing more courageous than the *Germans* ; no People more fierce in an Attack ; and no Nation delighted more in Arms, in which they were bred up, and neglected almost every thing else : That no People could better endure Fatigue, most of 'em being without Clothes or Houses ; so that the greatest Advantage other Nations had of them, was their too great Fury, and want of Discipline.

Their DEGREES, and different RANKS.

C *Ludewicus*, in his 15th Chapter, says, Ancient and Modern Authors agree, That they were divided into 4 Ranks, viz. Nobles, Freemen, *Liberti*, or those that had been manumitted, among whom were reckoned their Children, called *Libertini* ; and the 4th Sort was Servants : For this he quotes *Tacitus*, and *Adamus Bremenfis*, who adds, That 'twas Death for any of them to marry but with those of their own Rank. *Cluverius* owns, That this Custom was much observ'd in *Germany* in his own Time, not by Vertue of any such Law, but because the Nobility reckon'd 'twas a Disgrace for them to marry with those of a lower Rank. He is of Opinion, That the Nobility were first raised to that Dignity for their Valour in War, which he supports by the Saying of *Tacitus*, That they chose their Kings from among their Nobility, and their Captains from among their Valiant Men : Therefore he thinks, that when any of the common Sort signaliz'd their Valour, so as to be made Commanders, they were made Noble at the same time. He takes Notice, That in his Time, Princes conferr'd the Order of Nobility upon People for Money ; but they were so much despised by the ancient Families, that they scorn'd to converse with them. He says, The ancient *German* Nobility had their Seats generally apart from Villages and Towns, because they reckon'd it a Degradation to live in Towns, and be subject to their Laws. They were called by the general Name of *Adel*, and by modern Latin Authors *Adelingi*.

The next Order was the *Ingenui* or *Liberti*, in their Language *Friling*, i. e. Freemen, so called, because they were not subject to the Nobles, but liv'd according to their own Customs, as Citizens do now ; and because they liv'd in Burgs or Towns, they were called *Burgers* : Out of them those Councils were chosen from the several Hundreds, that assisted the Princes in administering Justice.

That

That we may the better understand what their *Liberti* or manumitted People were, he first gives us an Account of their Servants, from whence they had their Rise; and those he informs us, from *Tacitus*, were of two Sorts: The first were either taken in War, or such as were oblig'd to serve when they lost their Liberty at Game; for he observes, That the *Germans* were so much addicted to play at Dice, that when they had lost all, they would play away their own Liberty, and the Conqueror being asham'd of such a Victory, commonly sold that Sort of Servants to others. The 2d sort were not appointed to their several Stations in the Families of their Masters, as now; but every one had his own House, and his Proportion of Corn and Cattle assigned by his Master to manage for his Use, and the Household-Service was perform'd by their Wives and Children. *Seneca* takes Notice in his 47th Epistle, where he speaks of *Varus's* Defeat by the *Germans*, That they made many of the Noble *Romans* whom they took, Shepherds, or such kind of Servants as last mentioned, who in the *German* Language are called Boors or Husbandmen: And he observes, That the *German* Nobles, especially such as live on the *Baltick*, make an Estimate of their Wealth according to the Number of such Boors, whom they use like Slaves.

From these sorts of Servants came their *Liberti*, or manumitted People, whose Condition was not much better than that of Servants, because they were still obliged to serve their Masters, and look after their Household Affairs; so that 'twas only a Step towards Freedom, which their Children called *Libertini*, obtained as the Reward of the Valour, or some other remarkable Service of their Parents.

Their Way of Dressing, Apparel and Bedding.

Cluverius, in his 16th Chapter, gives an Account from *Tacitus*, That as soon as they awak'd, which was generally by Break of Day, they wash'd themselves all over, and in Winter-time in hot Water; after which they eat: But tho' this was their daily Practice, *Pliny* says, they were very nasty, because they anointed themselves

with Butter. It has been mentioned before, that their Hair was generally fair or red; and they made use of Art to make it more so, and particularly of a Lye of Lime and Soap, or with the Ashes of Beech and Goats-Dung, which sometimes they made up in a Liquor, and sometimes into Balls; to which *Martial* alludes when he mentions the *Spuma Batava*, the *Spuma Caustica*, and the *Mattiaca Pila*. He observes, That the Men practis'd this more than the Women, because they thought their red Hair made them terrible to their Enemies: For the same Reason they delighted in long Hair, which they sometimes ty'd backward in their Necks; and such as were Leaders in War, ty'd it in a Bundle on the Top of their Heads, that they might be the more conspicuous. By these Methods they made their Hair so thick, that it resembled the Manes of Horses; for sometimes they cover'd their Shoulders with it, curl'd up in Locks. *Diodorus* says, some of them shav'd their Beards, others let them grow; but the Nobles shav'd their Cheeks, and kept long Mustachoes, which mix'd with their Meat and Drink, and they comb'd them with a great deal of Care; but they did not tie up their Hair, or shave their Faces, till they had given Proofs of their Valour; so that those who wore it otherwise, were reckon'd mean and cowardly.

As to their Clothes, they went naked till they arrived at the Age of Puberty, which they reckon'd about 20; after this their Habit was a Cloak or Mantle, fasten'd with a Buckle, for which the poorer Sort made use of a Skewer; but in the House they went for most part naked. The better Sort wore Skins of Wild-Beasts, with the Hair outward, which cover'd only their Shoulders, and the Heads and Horns they wore upon their own Heads. The Men and Women wash'd promiscuously in the Rivers. They reckon'd Venery very disgraceful before the 20th Year of their Age; but after that they were not accounted very modest. Those who liv'd next the *Rhine*, were more nice in their Habits; but such as liv'd in remoter Parts, were more negligent. The richer Sort painted or dy'd those Skins of Wild-Beasts, and sometimes sew'd Pieces upon them of several Colours, resembling Spots. Their Women

had Mantles of Linnen, with Purple Stripes. *Cluverius* says, That in his Time those who liv'd on the *Baltick* had still some of those ancient sorts of Vestments of various Colours, compos'd of the Skins of wild Beasts and Sea-Monsters, being a sort of a Cloak that came as low as their Ankles, which they wore at Festivals. The Poor had a meaner sort, and the Rich a finer, with a kind of Silver Buttons down their Breasts, and some of them adorn'd with Pearl. Their Habit call'd *Rhenones*, *Cluverius* thinks to have been a sort of Coat without Sleeves, which cover'd them before and behind as low as their Navel and Buttocks. It was made of the Skins of Beasts, with the Hair outward, and could turn Rain.

Their *Saga*, *Cluverius* takes to have been a sort of Rugs or Plades of a square Form, much like those wore by the Highlanders and native *Irish*, but shorter; so that they came no lower than their Middle. These were also of different Colours, so as to resemble Skins of Lions, Tygers, Leopards, and other wild Beasts; and they wore the rough Side outward. He thinks they were of two sorts, one rough and heavy, and the other smooth and light: The latter was strip'd and flower'd, and made use of in Summer, or in War. He distinguishes betwixt those of the Freemen and Nobles; those of the former were only strip'd, or had Spots of divers Colours, as the Weaver pleas'd; but those of the latter had the Arms of the Nobles, such as they carried in their Shields, not such as are now in use, which frequently represent entire Beasts or Fowls, and sometimes Landscips, but only Colours distinguish'd by Squares; and those Coats which have nothing but plain Colours, are now reckon'd the most ancient. The Colours were generally of two sorts, plac'd alternately, and they chose them so as they thought suited best. *Herodian* says, That such of 'em as liv'd next the *Roman* Provinces had Gold and Silver interwoven in their Garments.

They had another sort made of the inner Rinds of Trees, which were most used by those who liv'd in Woods, Servants, and poor People. This Kind seems to be that we call *Bass*.

Tacitus says, the rich were distinguish'd by their Habit, which was not a loose Gar-

ment like that of the *Sarmatae* and *Parti*, but so close as to shew all the Lineaments of their Bodies, so that he thinks they resembled close Doublets and Breeches, and were made of Linnen or Skins, but not long enough to cover their Nakedness. He says, That in his Time the common People of *Franconia* wore their Garments so close, that they seem'd to be sew'd to their Skins. The Shoes of the ancient *Germans* were made of Hides, with the Hair outward, and tie about their Ankles, such as are still us'd by some of the Northern People. They were wore only by the richer Sort; but the poor went bare-foot, or made Shoes of Bark.

For Ornaments, they wore Chains about their Necks like the *Gauls*, Bracelets about their Arms, and Rings upon their Fingers; but their Rings were of Iron until they had kill'd an Enemy: So much for the Habits of their Men.

The Women's Apparel was much the same, but more loose, and most of Linnen, which *Cluverius* thinks to be what we call Smocks: They were very short, and had Purple Stripes: They were not so careful of their Hair as the Men, but wore it loose about their Shoulders, or sometimes ty'd behind. He adds, That the People in general were very nasty; and that there was no Difference, as to their Education, betwixt Master and Servant; and that they and their Cattle lodg'd under the same Roof, and lay upon the same Floor, till Age made a Distinction betwixt the Freemen and Slaves. They had no Seats, but sometimes Skins, Rugs, or Grass, under them; and their Bedding was Bear-Skins, Leaves of Trees, or Grass, and their Covering was what they wore by Day, which was very slovenly, because they anointed themselves with Butter, and in cold Weather sat frying all Day by the Fire.

Their Diet and Banquets.

Cluverius, in his 17th Chapter, says from *Cæsar*, That they had not much Corn; and the greatest Part of their Provision was Milk, Cheese, and Flesh. *Tacitus* adds, That they had Venison, wild Apples, and curdled Milk, which *Cluverius* thinks

thinks to have been Butter, their choicest Dainty. *Pliny* says, Their chief Corn was Barley and Oats, of which they made Bread and Portage. 'Tis observ'd of the *Fenni*, who liv'd in the most Easterly Parts of *Germany*, That they were a very barbarous People, miserably poor, had neither Arms, Horſes, nor Houſhold-Goods, but liv'd upon Herbs and Wild-Apples. They made their Butter of all ſorts of Milk; but the fatteſt was that of Sheeps-Milk; and when they took the Butter from it, they boil'd it, and that which ſwimm'd on the Top they call'd a Syllabub. They ſometimes eat their Fleſh raw, and preſs'd it in the Hide or Skin with their Hands and Feet when 'twas cold, in order to heat it again; and *Posidonius* ſays, they ſometimes roasted or boil'd it. *Cluverius* is of Opinion, That the ancient *Germans* made uſe of Hogs-Fleſh ſalted, as they do now in *Weſtphalia*, which is famous for Hams. *Tacitus* mentions a great Battle betwixt the *Catti* and *Hermunduri*, People of *Germany*, about a River in their Conſines, whoſe Water poured upon burning Wood produced Salt.

Their Drink was Milk; and a ſort of Ale or Beer made of Barley or Wheat, which *Tacitus* ſays had ſome Reſemblance of Wine: And *Posidonius* ſays, they had alſo Wine, which muſt be underſtood of thoſe Parts on the *Rhine*, and that border'd on *France*.

Their Way of Eating, according to *Tacitus*, was ſeparately, each in their own Place, ſitting on the Ground upon the Skins of Wolves or Dogs, Graſs or Hay, round the Fire, and every one had their Joint; which is no Wonder, ſays *Cluverius*, ſince, beſides Bread, they had nothing elſe for Dinner and Supper; and what remained, they eat cold afterwards. The Veſſels they drank out of were of Wood, or Earthen-Ware made like Pots; but their Princes, and ſuch as had been Ambaſſadors, had Veſſels of Plate, which had been preſented them; and ſome of them had Horns of Beaſts tipp'd with Silver, which they made uſe of at their Banquets. *Posidonius* ſays, When they were invited to a Feaſt, they ſat in a Circle, which *Cluverius* rather thinks was a Semi-Circle: The chief Perſon ſat in the middle, and next to him the Maſter of the Feaſt. Every one had his

Table, (which, according to *Cluverius*, was a Three-footed Stool) brought in cover'd with Viſuals; and if they were People of Note, thoſe who bore their Targets, ſtood behind and ſerv'd them; but ſuch as carried their Spears, ſat down at the ſame time over againſt them, for they always had their Arms with them: But in their own Families, the Children of both Sexes ſerv'd them naked: The beſt Meſſes they gave to the chief Gueſts. He thinks from thoſe Words of *Tacitus*, *Septa padicitia agunt*, &c. That the Women were alſo invited to thoſe Feaſts, and behav'd themſelves modeſtly. He obſerves in general, That they were very much addicted to Eating and Sleeping, and prodigal in their Entertainments.

Their Employments, Riches, Manufactures, and Navigation:

Tacitus ſays, That moſt of their Employment was in Hunting, and Military Affairs; and at other times their ſtoutest Men left the Management of their Buſineſs to Women, old Men, and the weakeſt of the Family, and ſpent their Time in Eating, Sleeping, and Gaming. They had little Trade in *Cæſar's* Time, except among thoſe who liv'd upon the *Rhine*, and that conſiſted rather in ſelling what had been given them in Preſents, as Horſes, Arms, Trappings, and Chains, or what they had taken from their Enemies, than in buying any thing. A few of them however traded in Wine. *Tacitus* ſays, They had no Silver or Gold Coin but what was *Roman*, and that was only in the bordering Countries; for the innermoſt Provinces dealt in the old Way of Bärter. They lov'd Money however, eſpecially thoſe Pièces call'd *Serrati* and *Bigati*, and would ſell Peace at any time to the *Romans*; but thoſe beyond the *Rhine* would ſuffer Merchants to bring no Wine or other Commodities among 'em, that might nourish Luxury, or make them effeminate.

All ſorts of 'em lov'd to ſwim, and they taught it their Horſes, ſo that they would croſs the *Rhine* in Troops together. This prov'd fatal to them when they invaded *Italy*, where the Rivers being more rapid than in *Germany*, Multitudes of them were drown'd

drown'd in attempting to swim them on Horseback. We have heard already, That they had but little Tillage, and this, with their other Domestick Labour, they follow'd by Turns; for those who stay'd at home one Year, went to War the next. *Tacitus* says of them in general, That they hated Peace abroad, and lov'd Sluggishness at home.

Cluverius is of Opinion, That they had such Trades among 'em as were necessary for building Houses, making Chariots and Cars for War, Clothes and Arms, and particularly Swords, Spears, Bucklers, and Helms; the latter of which they made very artfully, to resemble the Heads of Wild-Beasts.

As to Navigation, *Tacitus* says, the *Suiones*, now the *Swedes*, and such as liv'd on the *Baltick*, understood Sailing, and had many Ships, with which they sail'd in the Northern Ocean as far as *Iceland*. Those who liv'd about the Mouth of the *Rhine*, and *Elb* had likewise Vessels, with which they infested the Coasts of *France* and *Britain*. This *Cluverius* ascribes chiefly to the *Saxons*, who he says came first from *Holstein*, drove those People that were newly call'd *Franks* from the Countries betwixt the *Elb* and the *Rhine*, and with the Remains of 'em, that still liv'd about the Mouth of the latter, invaded the neighbouring Coasts of *France*, viz. the *Franks* by Land, and the *Saxons* by Sea, as he proves from *Marcellinus*, *Claudian*, the *Notitia Imperii*, &c.

Sidonius says, The *Saxons* were very expert Seamen, so that every one of 'em that rugg'd at the Oar, look'd like an Arch-Pyrate; for they commanded, obey'd, taught, and learn'd to play the Pyrate all together. He adds, That they were well acquainted with the Sea, despis'd the Dangers of it, and would venture among the Rocks and raging Waves. *Cluverius* says, The *English*, *Dutch*, *French* and *Spaniards*, learn'd Navigation from the *Saxons*: And hence it is, That most of the Sea-Terms are still *German*. He thinks their Vessels were made of Withs or Twigs cover'd with Skins. They us'd no Sails, but Oars; and the Ships of the *Suiones*, according to *Tacitus*, had Sterns at both Ends, and their Oars so dispos'd, that they could row either Way upon Occasion.

Their VIRTUES and VICES.

They had no Learning, yet administred Justice according to their own Customs, rewarded the Good, and punish'd the Bad, by the Light of Nature; so that *Tacitus* says, Good Manners were of more Force with them, than good Laws with others: But *Cesar* in his Commentaries says, That their Cities or Communities glory'd most in having large Wastes about 'em, and reckon'd it true Valour to drive out their Neighbours. Depredations without their own Boundaries were not accounted dishonourable, but valued as proper to improve their Youth, and to prevent Sluggishness; and all of the same Community were reckoned a-kin, and would be sure to have the same Friends and Enemies with their Kindred, and liv'd together in Tribes, which *Tacitus* reckons was a great Incitement to their Valour. They were so much esteem'd for their Fidelity, that *Cluverius* says, most of the *Roman* Emperors, from the Time of *Augustus*, prefer'd them for their Guards to all other People: And *Tacitus* gives this as an Instance of their Fidelity to their Promises and Trust, That when they had play'd away their own Liberty, they would willingly submit to Servitude; and those who were young and strong, would suffer themselves to be bound and sold by those who were old and weak. Here *Cluverius* answers an Objection from *Strabo*, That they betray'd and annoy'd those who trusted them, and broke their Contracts, by alledging, That they were very faithful in observing such Contracts as they made voluntarily with their Friends; but did not think themselves obliged to keep such Promises as were extorted from them by such as endeavour'd to subdue them. And whereas many Authors call 'em Cruel, Fierce, Unmerciful, and Proud, he proves from *Mela* and *Tacitus*, That they were civil to their Guests, merciful to such as submitted, or fled to them for Refuge, and reckon'd it the greatest of Crimes to betray them, or suffer them to be injur'd.

He comes next to their Bounty, Civility, and Hospitality, and says with *Diodorus* and

Taci-

Tacitus, That Strangers were liberally entertain'd by them, according to their Ability. They would invite them kindly to their Feasts, attend them from one Place to another, and reckon'd it a Crime to deny Lodging to any body. *Julianus Caesar*, in *Misopogone*, commends them much for their Friendship, and says, they know nothing of Flattery, but were free, just, and plain.

Their Gravity he ascribes to their Martial Temper, and being constantly in War; which is represented thus by *Diodorus*, That their Aspect was terrible, their Language harsh, their Words few, and their Way of Speaking obscure.

For their Temperance, it was not so much in Eating and Drinking, as in Venery. *Cluverius* owns, That in his Time their Excess of Drinking was still too much in use; and that Lasciviousness had also gain'd Ground upon them; Yet in the Inland Parts of the Country they were rather more chaste than neighbouring Nations, and hated obscene Discourse. He is at some Pains to vindicate them from being addicted to unnatural Lust, which he charges home upon the *Gauls* and *Romans*. And though he owns, That some of the ancient *Germans* might be infected with it, yet he shews from *Tacitus*, That they punish'd it as a capital Crime; and that as they hang'd Traitors and Deserters, they drown'd Cowards, and such as abus'd their Bodies, *Corpore infames*.

On this Occasion, *Cluverius* rejects *Lipsius's* putting *Torpora* instead of *Corpore*, because that Crime is charg'd upon the *Celtæ* in general, by many great Authors; but he imputes it chiefly to that Part of them call'd the *Gauls*, who learn'd it, together with the Use of Letters, from the *Greek* Colony that settled at *Marseilles*; and as a Proof that the *Germans* abhorred this Crime, he instances in the *Bastarnæ*, who rebell'd because the *Romans* abus'd their Youth in that Manner.

For the Vices of the ancient *Germans*, we have heard before, That they accounted Robbery without their own Bounds no Crime: And *Cluverius* owns, That they reckon Drunkenness to be no Reproach. *Pliny* says, they would drink two Days and two Nights together, without stammering in their Speech, vomiting, or easing Nature any other way; and that they drank

large Bumpers without Breathing: But *Cluverius* endeavours to extenuate this Fault, by charging it also upon other Nations.

We have heard already, That they were given to Idleness, when they were not at War; which *Cluverius* says was the Fault of most Warlike Nations, and instances in the *Thracians*, quoted by *Herodotus*, who looked upon idle Men to be the most honourable, and upon Husbandmen to be the most contemptible People of the World.

Tacitus and *Diodorus* charge the *Germans* with Pride, Boasting, Vanity, Passion, and being apt to quarrel. *Cluverius* ascribes those Things to their Valour and Stoutness; and says, that 'tis common to all Nations to over-value themselves: That most People of *Europe* have learn'd to outdo the *Germans* in Boasting; and that his Country-men don't keep Malice, but love to decide their Quarrels off hand.

Their Marriages and Conjugal Love.

Tacitus says, they were almost the only Barbarians who contented themselves with one Wife apiece, except a few, who had more; and those they had rather as a Mark of Nobility, than to satisfy their Lust. He also observes, That amongst some of them, Virgins were only allow'd to marry; and that no Woman married a second time. We have heard before, That they reckon'd it base to lie with Women till they were 20 Years of Age; and that this Abstinence contributed to the Strength and Tallness of themselves and their Children. *Cluverius* says, the same was observ'd in his Time; and that young Men generally liv'd unmarried till above 20. It was not their Custom for Women to bring Portions to their Husbands, but, on the contrary, the Husbands gave Portions or Gifts to their Wives, which were approv'd by the Parents and Kindred that were present at making the Match; and those Gifts were not accommodated to please the Women's Vanity, being Cattle, Horses, with their Furniture, Bucklers, Swords, and Spears; and on the other hand, the Women gave something of Arms to their Husbands. These were their Mar-

Marriage-Ties, their Sacred *Arcana*, and their Conjugal Gods, that the Women might also be inspired with Courage, and reckon themselves obliged to share with their Husbands in their Dangers and Labours, and be their Companions in War and Peace. This was the Meaning of the Yoke of Oxen, their Horses, and Arms, they presented to one another, as a Token that they must live and die together; and those Arms they accounted honourable to transmit to Posterity. This was a great Incitement to their Valour, for their Families accompanied them in War; so that their Troops were not form'd by Chance, but of their Tribes and Kindred; and their Wives and Children were so near when they fought, as they could hear their Cries. These they reckon'd the best Witnesses of their Valour, and Publishers of their Praise; and their Mothers and Wives number'd and suck'd their Wounds without Fear. Their Women did sometimes behave themselves gallantly in Sieges and Battles, and by their Intreaties and Tears, and representing to 'em the Shame and Misery of having them and their Children led Captive, did many times oblige them to renew the Battle, when they were ready to fly; for the Thoughts of that was more terrible to 'em than their own Danger; and the Courage of those Communities was generally greatest, among whom Noble young Women commanded. *Tacitus* gives an Instance of their Conjugal Love in *Arminius*, whose Wife being taken, he went about like a Madman, inciting the People to take Arms against *Cæsar*; for he could not endure to think of his Wife's Captivity. *Cluverius* takes Notice also from *Tacitus* of the Modesty of their Women; that they were not debauch'd by Feasting, Plays and Shews; the latter of which the ancient Germans valued so little, that when two Princes of the *Brissi* went on an Embassy to *Rome*, and were brought into *Pompey's* Theatre, they took no Delight in the Play or Shews, but enquir'd who were the Knights and Senators. *Cluverius* thinks, the Women's Ignorance of Letters contributed much to their Modesty, and gives this for his Reason, but how solid, let the Reader judge, That a Letter will not blush; and that by this Means young Women and Matrons

have been frequently debauch'd, by those who would otherwise scarce have had the Confidence to speak to them.

Their Child-bearing, Education, Kindred, and Way of Inheriting.

Cluverius thinks, what *Strabo* says of the other *Celtick* Nations was common to the Germans, viz. That the Women made no great Account of the Pains of Child-bearing, and that the common Sort went about their Business as soon almost as they brought forth; That they wash'd their Infants immediately in some Fountain or Stream, cover'd them but slightly, and inur'd them to Cold and Hardship from their very Birth, which they thought contributed to their Health and Strength. He gives several Instances of poor Women, who, being taken with their Pains while at Day-Labour, retir'd to a Bush, brought forth their Young, wrapped them up, and return'd to their Labour again, lest they should lose their Day's Wages. *Galen*, in his Book *De Tuenda Sanitate*, expressly mentions the Germans as treating their Infants, thus. *Julianus Cæsar*, in his Epistle to *Maximus*, says, The *Celts* threw their New-born Infants into the *Rhine*; That the Men could not be with-held from doing this by the Tears and Intreaties of their Wives, or their other Relations, who pretended the Danger of the Child, or were afraid for the Reputation of the Women, because they fancied, that if the Child were spurious, the River would carry it down; but if otherwise, it would swim, and then they delivered it again to the Mother. *Cluverius* thinks, that this, if true, was only practis'd by the *Gauls*, who liv'd on the *Rhine*, because *Tacitus* makes no Mention of it in his Description of the Germans; and he is not without Suspicion, that *Julian* may have been impos'd upon in this, because he says he had it only by Report; and that it proceeded from their Custom above-mention'd, of dipping their Children in cold Water as soon as born. When *Tacitus* says, That they thought it a Crime to limit the Number of their Children,

dren, or to kill any of them, he takes his Meaning to be, That they did not abstain from the Marriage-Bed, or destroy them, as was practis'd by some of the Eastern Nations, when they had more than they could maintain: And when he says, That they did not trust them to their Maids, or to Nurses, he takes it to be meant of those of Quality, for others had no Servants. As to their Education, they made no Distinction betwixt Servants and Children, till the latter came to the Age of Puberty, which *Cluverius* says was observed in his own Time in the Northern Parts of Germany, where 'twas reckon'd a Disgrace to carry their Children with them to Banquets, &c. till that Age; and this hard Way of Education, and breeding 'em to work in their Domestick Affairs, contributed to their Strength, Stature, and Virtue. They did not allow them to go to War till the Age of Manhood; but taught 'em the Use of Arms, to swim, and to ride, from their Youths.

Then as to their Kindred, and Way of Inheriting, *Tacitus* says, Uncles shew'd the same Respect to the Children of their Sisters, as if they had been their own; That some of them looked upon this as a more sacred and strict Tye of Blood, and therefore would rather have such for Hostages than others, because they looked upon 'em to be under a double Obligation to the Family. *Cluverius* thinks the Reason was, because they reckon'd the Kindred by the Mother's Side. As to their Way of Inheritance, every one was succeeded by his own Children, without a Will, which *Cluverius* says was needless among a People so ignorant of Fraud. They had a Regard however to Primogeniture in every thing but Horses and Arms, which fell not to the eldest, but to the bravest of the Sons. If they had no Children, the next of Kin succeeded, as Brothers and Uncles of both Sides. The ancient People valued themselves on the Number of their Posterity and Kindred; the Want of which was reckon'd a Disgrace. Their being thus link'd in Affinity, and living in Tribes and Kindreds together, was the Reason of their having the same Friends and Enemies, and their espousing one another's Quarrels, in which 'twas accounted a Crime to desert

their Friends; and the Chiefs of each Tribe or Rank of People were their Captains.

Their RELIGION and WORSHIP.

Cluverius contradicts *Caesar*, who says, they had no Druids to preside in their Worship, or offer Sacrifice; and thinks the contrary plain from what he himself says afterwards, viz. That they only reckon 'em to be Gods whom they see, and of whose Help they are sensible, viz. the Sun, *Pulcan*, and the Moon; and that they had not so much as heard of the rest. He supports his Opinion by the Authority of *Cicero* and *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*, who say, There was no Nation or People but what had some Knowledge of the Gods without being taught it; and since the *Celts* had their Religion from the *Egyptians*, and that the *Germans* were the far greater Part of the *Celts*; and since *Caesar* owns, that the *Gauls* worshipp'd *Mercury*, *Apollo*, the Moon, and *Minerva*; he doubts not but the *Germans* did the like. This he ascribes to *Caesar's* Ignorance of Germany, of which he knew very little; but that Part on the French Side the Rhine. *Tacitus* says plainly, That they chiefly worshipp'd *Mercury*, and on certain Days offered him Humane Sacrifices. They also sacrific'd to *Mars*, *Hercules*, and *Isis*; and the *Naharvals*, a German People, sacrific'd to *Castor* and *Pollux* in a Grove, where a Priest in Woman's Habit presided. *Cluverius* adds, That 'tis evident they did not learn this from the *Gauls* after *Julius Caesar's* Time, because they were in continual War with them: And *Tacitus* says, That after the Defeat of *Varus*, the *Germans* beyond the Rhine sacrific'd many of the Roman Officers to their Gods in the neighbouring Groves; and that the *Hermundur* sacrific'd the Captive *Gatti* to *Mars* and *Mercury*, the ancient Custom of the *Celts* and the *Gauls*, as *Caesar* himself observ'd; and he thinks the Antiquity of the German Worship; and that they had it from the Jews or other Eastern Nations, to be very well prov'd by that Saying of *Tacitus*, That they held it unlawful to draw the Images of any of their Gods upon their Walls, or to resemble 'em

to any thing of a Humane Shape; and if they did not name their Gods, it was common to them with others: And *Lucan* observes the same of the *Jews*, ---- *Dedita Sacris Inferis Judea Dei*; i. e. The *Jews* were addicted to the Worship of an uncertain or unknown God.

Their Priests, Orders of Wise Men, with their Discipline and Names.

Cluverius proves from *Tacitus*, That they had Priests, without whose Order it was not lawful to punish any Man; and that they had white Horses in their Woods, which they never put to any Labour, but when they were yok'd to the Sacred Chariot: The Kings, Princes and Priests, follow'd them, and observ'd their Neighing and other Noise as Omens. They thought the Priests to be the Servants of the Gods, and to know their Mind. Their Authority was great in making Peace or War, and they assisted in Publick Councils as Interpreters of the Law.

Besides those Priests who explained their Omens, they had Women whom they consulted as Oracles; tho' they did not flatter or worship 'em as Goddesses, says *Tacitus*; among whom *Velleda*, *Aucimia*, and *Ganna*, were famous, and had Presents made them both by the *Germans* and their Enemies, and therefore are mentioned by some *Roman* Authors to have commanded many People, which *Cluverius* understands to be meant only of their consulting them, because the Princes and People were at Liberty to make Decrees in Publick Councils without their Advice; yet the Priests and they both attended their Armies, and had greater Respect paid them than the Princes, because of the Opinion they had of their knowing the Mind of the Gods. *Cesar* likewise makes Mention of *German* Matrons who attended their Armies, and enquir'd by Lots and Divinations whether their Expeditions would be successful; but *Cluverius* thinks it to be meant only of those Prophetesses. He says, there's no Certainty by what Name the *Germans* call'd their Priests; but since *Dry* in the *Saxon* Tongue

signifies a Magician or Wise-Man, he fancies *Druids*, the Name of the *Gaulish* and *British* Priests may be derived from it; and that the *German* Priests had the same Freedom from Taxes and War: that they had, and Lands, &c. allow'd them for a Maintenance; That their Disciples were those of the first Rank; and that they taught 'em their Philosophy and Religion in Dens and Groves; viz. The Immortality of the Soul, and Transmigration, &c. with something of Astronomy, History, and Geography; and exhorted 'em to Virtue, and a Contempt of Death. Their Instructions were contained in Verse, and never committed to Writing; so that they were 20 Years or more in learning it. He adds, That there was one Chief Druid among them, who presided over the rest. When he died, they chose another in his Place, and sometimes fought for the Post. He thinks the Priest of the *Chatti*, mentioned by *Strabo* in *Germanicus's* Triumph, was of this Sort.

In the following Chapters, he endeavours to prove from the Authority of *Macrobius*, in his *Saturnal*; That all the several Names of the Heathen Gods referred to the Sun, and of their Goddesses to the Moon; That *Vulcan* was the same with *Mars* and *Hercules*; and that the ancient *Germans* worshipp'd one God, and three Persons, under the Names of *Sun*, *Moon*, and *Fire*: But his Arguments to prove it, seem to have more of Reading and Speculation, than Solidity. The like may be said of his Endeavours to prove, that they had some Knowledge of the Creation of the World, and of Angels, of their Fall, of the Creation and Fall of Man, of the Flood, and the End of the World; or if they had, it seems to have been nothing more but such dark Hints of those Things as we find in the Heathen Poets. He thinks, that till the Time of the *Romans*, they had no other Temples than Groves, with Fountains, which they accounted Sacred; but built some afterwards by their Perswasion and Example. *Tacitus* says, they worshipp'd a Goddess called *Hertha*, (which *Cluverius* takes to be the Earth, as their common Mother:) She had a Grove dedicated to her in an Island, with a Chariot drawn by two Cows, and cover'd with Cloth, which none but the Priest had Leave to touch. They fancied her to be

in this Chariot, followed her with great Veneration; and while she was carried about the Country, they abstain'd from War and Labour, and kept a Festival, till the Priest told them she was weary of Humane Converse, and return'd her to her Temple and Grove, when they fancied the Chariot and all sunk into a secret Lake.

Adamus Bremensis says, The *Saxons* and *Swedes* worshipp'd God by Trees, and great Trunks, which they call'd *Irmisul*; i. e. a Column, that supported all Things, which agrees with what *Cicero* says in his First Book *De Divinatione*, That Images were first made use of by the Advice of Wise Men, which, when the People worshipp'd, they thought the Gods themselves to be present; and this Superstition was afterwards augmented by Painters, Poets, and Carvers.

In his 35th Chapter, he treats of the Habit, Worship, and Rites made use of by their Priests. We have heard before, that they us'd to sacrifice their Captive Enemies, from whence those Sacrifices were call'd *Hostia* & *Vistima*, as *Ovid* tells us, *Est. Lib. 1.*

Vistima qua cecidit dextra victrice, vocatur:
Hostibus à dextra Hostia nomen habet:

Strabo says, their Habits were white, according to the Custom of other Heathen Priests, as we find in *Ovid*, *Virgil*, *Diogenes Laertius*, *Silius Italicus*, &c. *Cluverius* says, they also sacrific'd all sorts of Beasts, which, as well as the Priests, were crown'd with Garlands; and that they erected Altars of green Turf in the consecrated Places of their Woods, which were hedg'd about; and those were their *Sacra* *Penetralia*, and Temples. The Priests pour'd Wine, or some other Liqueur, betwixt the Horns of the Sacrifice, and taking hold of the Hair of its Head with his Left Hand, call'd upon their Gods while he pour'd out the Liqueur; and the People bowing down their Heads, begg'd Pardon for their Sins in the mean time. *Cluverius* says, The *Germani*, as well as *Gauls*, us'd to sacrifice Malefactors, which they thought was very grateful to the Gods; and those who were in Danger by grievous Distempers, or in Battle, us'd to offer such Sacrifices, or to make Vows that they would; and if Cri-

minals could not be found, they would offer up innocent Persons. The Priests told 'em, That nothing else would prevail with the Gods to save the Life of a Man. When they made such Sacrifices, they us'd to look into the Intrails of the Person sacrific'd, in order to know what was to come, or judg'd of it by the Convulsion of the Members, or the Flowing of the Blood of the Person sacrific'd. Those were the Sacrifices they offer'd when they consult'd their Gods; and they had others of the like Nature when they made Vows for obtaining what they desir'd, which they call'd *Sacrificia Votiva*, and in these they offer'd up whatever Animal they took in War, and us'd either to hang them upon such Trees as were next to their Altars, or throw them into Ditches, and among Brambles, adding broken Weapons, or the Limbs of Horses. Thus when *Varus* was defeated, they sacrific'd the *Roman* Tribunes and Centurions; and the *Saxon* Pyrates us'd to sacrifice the Tenth of their Captives in the same manner by Lot, and put them to Death by cruel Torments, which they prefer'd to Ransoms. *Cluverius* is of Opinion, That when they sacrific'd the Blood only, which they call'd the Soul, they eat the Bodies both of Men and Beasts. Wherever the *Romans* prevail'd, they abolish'd the Order of those bloody Priests, and their barbarous Sacrifices.

In his 36th Chapter, he gives an Account of their Divinations by Auspices, Lots, &c. from *Tacitus*: They us'd to break off Twigs of Fruit-Trees, cut them in small Pieces, and distinguishing them by Marks, throw them at random upon a white Cloth; and praying to their Gods, and looking up to Heaven, took them up three times, and made their Conjectures according to the Marks they had put upon them before. If they thought their Designs forbid, they consult'd no more that Day; but if allow'd, they consult'd again, and observ'd likewise the Chirping and Flying of Birds; and we have heard before, that they also observ'd the Neighing of Horses, which they kept in the Woods on purpose. They had also another Way of Divination, which was, to make the first Captive they took from their Enemies fight with his own Country-Weapons against one

of their own Men, whom they chose on purpose, and determin'd of the Event according as either of them happen'd to be Conqueror.

Their Forms of GOVERNMENT.

Cluverius, Cap. 38. gives us an Account of their Democratical Form, with a Prince at the Head of the Administration; and shews us from Tacitus and Caesar, That they chose their Kings on Account of their Nobility, and their Generals on Account of their Valour; That their Kings had no unlimited or absolute Power, and their Generals commanded rather by Example, than in a Despotical Manner; and if they were Expeditionary, Brave, and appear'd undauntedly at the Head of the Army, they admir'd 'em. The usual Time of their publick Assemblies was at New or Full-Moon; but they had so much Liberty, that sometimes they would be 3 Days in coming together. When they met, they sat down with their Arms, and Silence being enjoin'd by the Priests, who at that Time had a Power to force them to it, the King or Prince, and such as were most noted for their Age, Nobility, Valour, or Eloquence, were heard; but rather by Way of Argument and Persuasion, than by Way of Command. If what was propos'd displeas'd them, they reject'd it with a Noise; but if it pleas'd them, they clasp'd their Arms together.

Caesar says, That *Ambiorix*, one of the German Kings on this Side the Rhine, told the Romans, That he attack'd their Camp not of his own Accord or Judgment, but by the Order of the Community; and that the Nature of his Government was such, that they had as much Power over him, as he had over them: From whence Cluverius infers, That the principal Authority lay in the Democracy; and that the Power of the King consist'd rather in Persuading, than Commanding. Their Kingdoms or Principalities were generally confin'd to narrow Limits, and some of them had more Power than others, especially those of the *Suiones*, now the *Swedes*. In their Councils, tho' they had distinct Orders, yet they had all a like Authority in Things which concern'd the whole Community. In those Councils

they determin'd Matters of Life and Death, and chose the Princes who administr'd Justice in the Districts and Villages, and their Kings could do nothing of Moment without them in Peace or War. The Government of the *Belge*, or People of *Lower Germany*, was, according to *Strabo*, Aristocratical for most part; and 'tis to be observ'd, That he extends the Limits of this People as far as *Britany* in *France*. He says, the *Eburones*, a German People, chose a Prince and a General every Year. Cluverius observes, That Caesar calls those Princes, whom Tacitus calls Senators. Their Revenues consist in Corn and Cattle, given them by the People for supporting their Dignity, and entertaining those who attended them; for they had no Guards, but Volunteers, to whom they gave Part of the Spoil that they took in War. Cluverius says, the Name of King was very improperly given to those Princes by the Romans, since they were no other but the First or Chief of the Community, in the German Language call'd *Fursten*, to which the Latin Word *Princeps* answers better than *Rex*; and it appears from Tacitus, and other Authors, that they were Elective, and not Hereditary.

Cluverius, in his 39th Chapter, gives an Account of their Democracies, which were without Princes. These, he says, consist'd not of Nobles, but of the Common People, call'd Burgers or Freemen. This he supports by the Authority of Tacitus and Caesar, who say, That in Time of Peace they had no Common Magistrate; but the Princes or Senators, who were chosen in their Councils, administr'd Justice, and determin'd Controversies by the Consent and Authority of a Council chosen from the Hundreds; but were not attended by Volunteers instead of Guards, as the Princes formerly mention'd.

In his 40th Chapter, he gives an Account of the Monarchies and mix'd Governments among the Germans. The first Instance he gives is among the *Suiones*, formerly spoke of, who he said honour'd Riches, and were govern'd by one Person, not in a precarious Manner; nor did he trust the People promiscuously with Arms, like the rest of the German Princes, but kept them shut up in an Arsenal, under the Guard of a Servant, because the Sea defend'd his Coun-

try from sudden Incurſions by Enemies; and he did not think it his Intereſt, according to *Tacitus*, to truſt any of a higher Rank with the keeping of the Arms. *Cluverius* obſerves, That theſe People were neither ſo famous for Valour nor Probity as the reſt of the *Germans*, which he imputes to their Slavery, that was ſo much the more abominable, as 'twas voluntary; and that they made Riches the Qualification in the Perſon whom they choſe to be their Monarch. He informs us from *Adamus Bremenſis*, That they grew weary of this ſort of Government at laſt, reſum'd their Liberty, and choſe themſelves Kings, who govern'd by the Advice of the People, and were obliged to confirm what they agreed upon; but in Time of War, they were very obedient to their Kings, or to him whom he appointed General. The 2d Inſtance is that of *Maroboduus*, from *Velleius Paterculus*, who deſcribes his Power to have been much the ſame with that of the abſolute Kings of the *Swedes*; ſo that he ſubdu'd moſt of his Neighbours, and enlarg'd his Empire betwixt the *Danube*, the *Elb*, and the *Weiſſel*, and became not only terrible to his Neighbours, but formidable to the *Romans*; yet at laſt growing hateful to his own People for his Tyranny, they drove him from his Throne.

Cluverius's Inſtance of a mix'd Government is in the *Gothans*, who liv'd betwixt the *Oder*, the *Weiſſel*, and the Eaſt Sea. Their Kings had more Power than was common to thoſe of the other *Germans*, but were under Reſtrictions by Laws; ſo that their Government was a Mixture of Democracy and Monarchy, like that ſet up by the *Swedes*, when they grew weary of the abſolute Power of their Princes.

In his 41ſt Chapter, he treats of the Leagues of thoſe Democratical Governments among themſelves for mutual Defence, againſt powerful Factions at home, or Enemies from abroad. They generally choſe ſome Man of Eminency to whom they gave Authority to determine Controverſies, and to defend the Poor againſt the Rich, and their Enemies abroad; but if they ſuffer'd the People to be oppreſſed or circumvented by others, they loſt their Authority; *Cæſar* calls ſuch of thoſe leſſer

Governments as put themſelves under the Protection of the greater, *Clientela*, and *Cluverius* explains this by the Inſtance of *Hamburg*, which put it ſelf under the Protection of the King of *Denmark*, and of *Aix la Chapelle* under that of the Duke of *Juſliers*; which he ſays is the ſame with being in *Clientela*, in *Amicitia*, or in *Fide*, in the Latin Dialect.

Their Councils, Judicatures, and Punishments.

Cluverius obſerves from *Tacitus*, That their Councils were of two Sorts; one for greater, the other for leſſer Affairs. The latter were determin'd by the Princes, with the Councils of the Hundred; the greater by the General Council of the People, and Princes, the Method of which we have heard before. He obſerves from the ſame Author, That during thoſe great Councils they had large Entertainments, wherein they diſcourſ'd of reconciling Differences, of making Alliances, of chuſing Princes, and of making Peace and War, becauſe they thought People were apteſt then to tell their Minds freely, or to be animated to great Undertakings; and what was treated of then, they conſider'd again next Day. On this Occaſion, *Cluverius* corrects the Reading of that Place of *Tacitus* where he ſays, *Genua aſſuta, nec collida, aperte adhuc ſacraſta Poſterior, Libertas Loci. Ergo detecta & nuda omnium mens poſtero die retractatur*, &c. Thus for *aperis adhuc*, he puts *aperis tunc*; and the Word *Ergo* he explains by *Ceterum, Cæterò, or Porro*, and gives ſeveral Inſtances in the ſame Author where it muſt be underſtood in that Senſe. Then for their Punishments, they were diſtinguiſhed into Civil and Criminal; the former were puniſh'd by Fines, that were divided betwixt the Prince and the Community, and the latter by Death; Traitors and Deſerters they hang'd; Cowards, and ſuch as were guilty of unnatural Luſt, they drown'd in Lakes or Marſhes, and threw a Hurdle over them. Adultereſſes were puniſh'd at the Diſcretion of their Husbands, who cut off their Hair, ſtrip'd them naked, drove them

them out of the House before their Kindred, and whipp'd them through the Village. For this Crime there was no Remission; and how young, beautiful, or rich soever such Criminals might be, no body would ever marry them after.

Their Way of making War, and Military Discipline.

Tacitus says, if they had Peace at home, their Youth of Quality went to Armies abroad, and would rather spend their Blood in War, than their Sweat in Labour. They were bred to the Use of Arms from their Infancy, and never went about any publick or private Business without them. We have heard before, that their Communities reckon'd it honourable to have as much wast Ground about them as they could, and to drive their Neighbours at as great a Distance from them as possible; and the more any Man signaliz'd his Valour, the more Respect he had in their Councils and Publick Entertainments; so that all their Nobility ow'd their Rise to their Valour. When Enemies invaded their Country, they used to withdraw to Woods and Mountains, sally out upon them, and surprize them in Passes; but afterwards, as we find in *Velius Paterculus*, and *Tacitus*, they became almost equal to the *Romans* in Discipline, especially the *Catti*; but their chief Strength consisted in Foot, for their Horse were better at Attacks than a Standing-Battle.

Their Arms of Defence were few: Coats of Mail and Helmets were scarce to be found but among their Leaders; so that at first they fought either naked, or with a short light Garment, as formerly described; but their Horsemen in general had no Clothes. Such Coats of Mail as they had were made of raw Skins, and chiefly to cover their Breasts, which they afterwards fortified with Iron Rings. When they came to wear Helmets, they had them of Iron, resembling the Heads of Wild-Beasts with Horns, or of Birds, to which *Austasib* says they affix'd Crests of Feathers.

Their Arms of Offence were a Buckler, Sword, Spear, or Dart. *Tacitus* says, their

Bucklers were very long; and *Diodorus*, that they were as tall as themselves; so that when the *Romans* fought them, they endeavour'd to get their Bucklers from 'em, after which they were soon put to flight. *Tacitus* says, those Bucklers were made of Withs twisted together, or of thin painted Boards, and of no great Breadth; but the *Gothones* had round Bucklers finely painted, and some had them of Brass, in Form of Wild-Beasts; but *Cluverius* thinks these were only the Princes, who thereby represented the Arms of their Families, as sometimes they did by the Painting upon 'em; and when they were used with their Consent by Men of less Quality, they had only the Half, or some Part of a Beast, in Colours different from those of the Princes, that the latter might not be depriv'd of their Dignity; but Time has now made those Things common.

At first, few of them had Swords, except the Nobles, but made use of Spears and Darts; and when they came to use Swords, they had them very large, with two Edges, but without Points, and wore them by their Right Side: Some hang'd them upon their Shoulders, and others girded them to their Thighs in Scabbards of Leather. Their Girdles and Belts were of Leather, and very broad; the better Sort had them set with Iron Studs, and the Princes with Silver or Gold, after they made Incursions into *Italy* and *France*. Their other Arms were Lances of various Forms; the chief of which *Cluverius* thinks to have been like our Partisans, Spears or Pikes both short and long, Darts, Bows, and Arrows pointed with Horn or Bone, and some of them had great Clubs.

Their Way of fighting.

Cluverius thinks, they used Chariots in War, as well as the *Gauls* and *Britains*; tho' *Roman* Authors say nothing of it. *Caesar* says, they used to fight on Horseback, tho' their Horses were not good. They alighted very often to fight on Foot, and their Horses were so train'd, that they would stay where they left them, but were not manag'd for Battle like the *Roman* Horse;

Horse; yet sometimes they lin'd their Horse with Footmen, who were so nimble, that they would catch hold of the Horses Manes, and charge or retire as swift as they; and at other times they took the Foot behind them; for their greatest Confidence was in their Infantry, who would catch hold of their Enemies Spears, and pull them off their Horses, or get in with them, and wound them so, as to make them throw their Riders. They despis'd Saddles and Stirrups; but adorn'd their Horses with fine Trappings.

Their Way of Declaring War, Choosing their General and other Officers, and their Authority.

Those who had absolute Kings, War was made by their Authority, and they either led them themselves, or appointed a General. How Peace and War was made in mix'd Governments and Democracies, we have heard already. In the former their Prince was General, and in the latter they chose one; and when elected, he was set upon a Buckler, carried betwixt Men's Shoulders, and turn'd three Times round; and from the Nature of his Office, was call'd *Hierzog*, i. e. Leader of the Army, which answers the Latin Word *Dux*, and our Duke. The rest of the Commanders were the Princes of the Districts, who formed a Council of War, and assisted him in governing the Army. The General and each of them had their Companions, *Comites*, the chief Men of the Districts; and when they came to fight, it was reckon'd dishonourable for a Prince to be exceeded in Valour, and for them not to equal him; so that the Prince fought for Victory, and they for the Prince. *Tacitus* says, these Princes had Embassies and Presents sent them, and frequently put an end to the War merely by their Fame. This was their Way of making War; but when they went upon Depredations out of their own Boundaries, if any of the Princes in Council offer'd to be their Leader, the Multitude, if they lik'd him, follow'd him; and such as did not, were look'd upon as Traitors or Cowards.

Their Way of Levying Men, and their Pay.

Cæsar says, That all who were of Age were summoned to the Armed Council, which *Cluverius* thinks to be understood only of Democratical Governments; for the *Suevi*, or *Catti*, the most Warlike People in Germany, who had 100 Districts under them, sent every Year some Thousands of Men out of their own Country to War, and they return'd next Year to manure the Ground, when others went in their room; by which, 'tis plain there must have been a Levy.

We heard before, That none were reckon'd fit for Arms or publick Conversation till they were 20 Years of Age, and approved of by the Community in Council, when the Prince, some of the Leaders, the young Man's Father, or some Kinsman, gave him a Buckler and Spear: After which, they were not discharged from Military Service till Age made them incapable of it.

As to their Pay, *Cluverius* thinks, That in Democracies they had none, all being equally obliged to arm for the Defence of their Country; but such as serv'd under Princes, and attended them, had their Maintenance allow'd them.

Their Generals and Princes prefer'd such of their Companions, *Comites*, as were most noted for their Valour; and he that had the greatest Retinue of such was most valued, and had Embassies and Presents sent him by his Neighbours who had any War. Those *Comites* who deserted their Prince in Battle, or surviv'd him in it, except they obtain'd the Victory, were reckon'd infamous for ever; therefore their greatest Oath was to defend him, and to ascribe the Glory of their bravest Actions to him. *Mæcellinus* says, That when *Cleodonomarius*, one of the German Kings, surrendered himself to the Romans, 200 of those *Comites* who attended him did the like, and offer'd themselves to be bound, accounting it dishonourable to outlive their King, or not to die for him if Occasion required. *Cluverius* says, That those *Comites* were next in Dignity to the Generals or Princes, and were the same with

with those now call'd *Graves*, or *Greves*, and much the same with the *French Counts*, and our *Earls* or *Peers*: But he observes, That the Title of *Duke* is higher in *Germany* than that of *Prince*, contrary to the Custom of most other Countries. Those *Comites* were instead of *Guards* to *Princes*; and they themselves had Numbers of *Freemen* who attended them in *Battle*, serv'd them also instead of *Guards*, and were those whom the *Romans* call'd *Ambassi*. They were the Persons mention'd by *Possidennius*, who at publick Entertainments carried their *Lords Spears*, and sat down to *Dinner* at the same Time with their *Masters* in an opposite Circle.

Their Military Ensigns, and Musick.

Tacitus says, they brought their Military Ensigns out of the *Groves* when they came to fight; for at other Times they laid them up as sacred in those consecrated Places. They were the Images of *Wild Beasts*: And *Cluverius* thinks some of them did also represent *Birds*, like those on the Crests of their *Helmets*; and that they were not painted, but made of *Wood* or *Iron*, as those of the *Persians* and *Romans* were of solid *Gold* or *Silver*. He thinks they had also large *Standards* or *Banners*, which he takes to be meant of the *signa*, which *Thecius* distinguishes from the *Effigies*.

They had also *Trumpets* of *Brass*, which *Tacitus* says made a *Thrill* and warlike *Noise*. They were of a crooked Form; and they seem likewise to have had something like a *Bagpipe*: But *Cluverius* says, there's nothing certain concerning their Military Instruments of *Musick*.

Their Way of Encamping, Times of Fighting, and Order of Battle.

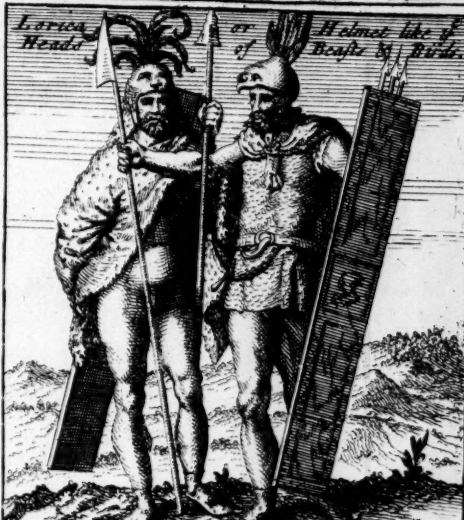
Cluverius thinks, from what *Nels* and *Pliny* say of the Encampments of

the *Cimbri* on the *Baltick*, That the ancient *Germans* used to fortify their Camps with *Intrenchments* and *Ditches*; but is certain, that they used to intrench themselves with their *Carts* and *Waggons*, in which they plac'd their *Women* and *Children*, behind their *Army* when they came to engage, and retir'd to them on occasion; when their *Women* would assist in defending them with as great *Bravery* as the *Men*, and would sometimes cut off those who fled too easily; and animate the *Meno* to renew the *Battle*, as has been mention'd already. The *Roman* Authors give Instances of the *Women's* defending those *Intrenchments*, after the *Army's* being defeated; and that, rather than expose their *Chastity*, they have kill'd themselves and their *Children* in those *Intrenchments*. *Cluverius* says, the *Germans* still use such *Intrenchments* on *Occasion*. And we find them mention'd in the *Rebellion* of the *Boors*, excited about the Time of the *Reformation*, by *John of Leyden*, *Thomas of Munster*, and other *Enthusiasts*.

We have formerly heard, That they chose the *Full* and *New Moon* as the most auspicious Time to fight in, which is mention'd by *Tacitus* and others; but in case of *Necessity*, or when they were invaded, they would fight at any Time, without consulting their *Soothsayers*.

They us'd to draw up their *Troops* in Form of a *Wedge*, their *Front* resembling the sharp Point of a *Greek Δ*, which they themselves call'd a *Swine's-Head*, by which they threw so many *Darts* at once upon their *Enemies*, as frequently put them into great *Disorder*.

The *Main* of their *Army* was drawn up in such *Bodies* at equal *Distances*; but their *Wings* were drawn out in *Length*, something of an oblong Form; and they us'd to fight *Back* to *Back*, that they might face their *Enemy* on all *Sides*, covering themselves with their *Targets*. These *Wedges* were generally composed of different *Tribes* or *Principalities*, which *Tacitus* says was a great *Incitement* to their *Courage*, because they strove to outy one another.



*A Leader with his Hair and
in his Crown & a
Coat of Mail.*



*A Horseman returning in Triumph
with his Enemies Head.*



Horsemen in Armour.



*Elevation of their
K. when chosen.*



*A Champion in Armour at y^e Head of
y^e Army to brave y^e
Enemy.*



Camp & Manner of Battle.



*White and Arms of the Ancient Germans both Horse and Foot their Way of carrying their King about upon mens Shoulders when chosen. Their Entrenchments of Waggon and
of drawing up their Armies in Order of Battle according to Chæron, mention'd in our Account of Ancient Germany.*

It has been formerly observ'd, that they put more Confidence in their Foot than their Horse, and therefore interlin'd them, and posted the chosen Men of each Hundred before their Horse by Hundreds at a time, who, if they were worsted, retired to their Horse. These Hundreds generally led the Van; but in great Battles, such as that fought by *Ariovistus*, they were chosen out of all the Army, and their Troops of Horse were equal in Number to those Bodies of Foot. The first Ranks made use of Spears, and the others of short Darts. The first Lines consisted of the Nobles, and other Chief Men, who wore Chains and Bracelets of Gold; and to prevent the breaking the Ranks of their Foot, those on the Van were fasten'd to one another by their Belts; and every Body of Horse and Foot had their own Ensigns and Standards, as *Tacitus* mentions in the Battle with *Civilis*, and his *Batavi*, the Ancestors of the *Dutch*. The Battle being thus drawn up, their Rear was cover'd with their Carts and Waggon; that they might not think of flying; and the Women, as the Troops marched out, stood weeping upon those Waggon, with their Hair dishevell'd, exhorting the Soldiers to acquit themselves bravely, and not to suffer them and their Children to be Slaves to the *Romans*. The Women carried likewise Refreshments to the Army on Occasion, and never fail'd to renew their Exhortations, that they would fight it bravely; and being likewise arm'd, would fall upon those who fled, without sparing 'em, tho' their own nearest Relations.

When all was ready for an Engagement, the General and other Commanders rode about to the several Bodies, made Speeches to them suitable to the Occasion, put them in mind of the Bravery of their Ancestors, and of their own Victories against their Enemies, as Arguments to raise their Courage, and to make them despise their Adversaries. Some of their bravest Men used to march out of their Ranks, and provoke some of their Enemies to single Combats, and according to the Success of those Men, they looked for Victory or otherwise. *Cluverius* says, That before they engaged, they used to sing Songs in Praise of valiant

Men, and to dance; and when they fell on, they gave a great Shout, which was answered by their Women from the Carts, who continued shouting during the Battle to encourage the Men. The younger Sort, who had not been allowed to shave their Beards, were sure to acquit themselves bravely, that they might have that Privilege; and 'twas accounted a great Honour for them to return besmear'd with their Enemies Blood, or with any of their Arms.

Their Way of Besieging Towns, and their Behaviour to those they conquer'd.

Cluverius says, the ancient Germans knew nothing at first of besieging Towns, by casting up Intrenchments, or making use of Engines; but only surrounded them to starve them out, or made their Attacks upon those on the Walls, by throwing Stones and Darts, &c. They made their Approaches under that call'd a *Testudo*, a sort of an Arch, to cover their Heads when they design'd to scale the Walls, which they used to do with great Fierceness, after having filled up the Ditches with Timber and Branches of Trees.

When they had defeated their Enemies, they were very intent upon the Plunder; for that, next to their own Defence, was the chief Cause of their making War, which frequently gave their Enemies Opportunity to escape, and sometimes to rally. *Tacitus* says, they did not divide the Spoil equally, but every one catch'd what he could, and they feasted for a Day or two together in the Field of Battle. We have heard before, that they us'd to sacrifice their Captives and their Horses to *Mars* and *Mercury*, and made Servants or Slaves of such as they sav'd. The Chief of their Prisoners they sacrific'd on Altars of green Turf; but the rest they hang'd, or threw into Holes dug in the Ground. The Heads of such as were killed in Battle they fix'd upon Trees, and their Horses and Arms they used to burn on vast Piles of Wood. When they returned home after Victory, they marched

in great Pomp, carrying the Heads of some of their Enemies hung about their Horses Necks, and gave the Spoils, cover'd with Blood, to be carried in Triumph by their Servants. The Heads they hung up at their Doors; but those of Quality they anointed with the Rosin of Cedar, kept them in Chests, and would show them with great Ostentation to their Guests or Strangers, and boast that they had refused so much Money for them. Some of them were so fond of such Monuments of their own or their Ancestor Valour, that they refused their Weight in Gold for them; and this they accounted Greatness of Mind, as *Diodorus* informs us.

Their FUNERALS.

Tacitus and *Diodorus* say, they used to burn the Corps of the Deceased on Piles of Wood; but those of the Nobles, and of such as had distinguished themselves by their Valour, were burnt with an uncommon or choice sort of Wood. *Pliny* alleges the Cause of this to have been to prevent their Corps being taken up out of the Ground, as a Mark of Disgrace by their Enemies; as *Sylla*, the Roman Dictator, order'd his to be burnt, lest it should have been taken up by way of Reprisal for what was done to the Corps of *Marius*. *Diodorus* says, the Germans being of *Pythagoras's* Opinion, That their Souls were immortal, enser'd into other Bodies, and after some Time

came to Life again, they used to throw Letters to their deceased Relations into the Funeral-Pile, having a Fancy they would read them; but this, if true, must be after they learn'd the Use of Letters from the Romans or the Gauls, for anciently they had no Learning, as we have heard already. *Tacitus* adds, That their Arms, and sometimes the Horses they made use of in War, were burnt with them: And *Procopius Goth. Lib. 2.* says, the *Heruli*, a People of Germany, were so barbarous, that such of them as grew old or sickly, were compelled by their Relations to desire they might be sent out of the World; upon which they were placed on the Top of a Pile, where one that was no Relation to them was order'd to kill them; then their Relations set Fire to the Pile, and such of their Bones, &c. as remained unburnt, they buried; and if their Wives did not afterwards hang themselves near their Husbands Grave, they were held infamous, and hated by his Relations. *Tacitus* says, their Sepulchres were made of Turf, for they despised pompous Tombs of Stone, &c. and reckon'd them burdensome to the Deceased. *Cluverius* thinks, from what *Tacitus* says of *Arminius*, that the *Bards* compos'd Verses, which were sung at their Funerals, and afterwards in Remembrance of them; but the Mourning and Tears of the Men were soon over, says *Tacitus*, tho' their Sorrow continued long; it being reckon'd honourable in Women to mourn for their deceased Friends, and for Men only to remember them.





C H A P. XXIV.

Ancient GERMANY on this Side the Rhine.

CLuverius begins with this Part of the Country, because it was first possessed by the Romans, and therefore first described by their Historians. He informs us from *Cæsar*, *Tacitus*, and *Strabo*, That the *Tribocci*, *Nemetes*, and *Vangiones*, three German Nations, passed the *Rhine*, and expelled the *Mediomatrici*, who possessed the Country on this Side that River; but says, there's no Certainty as to the Time when this hap-

pen'd; but it appears they were in this Country before the Time that *Ariovistus* was defeated by *Cæsar*, and that they were not subject to *Ariovistus*, but either in League with him, or under his Protection.

In order to our better understanding what Parts of the Country they possessed, he gives us from the *Notitia Provinciarum* the following Account of the Disposition of the Roman Garisons in those Parts.

Under the Government of the Commander of *Mentz*.

The Garisons of the	{	<i>Pacensum.</i>	<i>Saletione,</i>	now <i>Seltz.</i>
		<i>Menapiorum.</i>	<i>Tabernis,</i>	now <i>Rhein-Zabern.</i>
		<i>Anderecianorum.</i>	<i>Vico Julio,</i>	now <i>Germerstheim.</i>
		<i>Vindicum.</i>	<i>Nemetes,</i>	now <i>Spires.</i>
		<i>Martensum.</i>	<i>Alta-Ripa,</i>	now <i>Altrip.</i>
		<i>Secunda Flavie.</i>	<i>Vangiones,</i>	now <i>Worms.</i>
		<i>Armigerorum.</i>	<i>Mogontiaco,</i>	now <i>Mentz.</i>
		<i>Bingenium.</i>	<i>Bringio,</i>	now <i>Bingen.</i>
		<i>Ballistiariorum.</i>	<i>Boadobriga,</i>	now <i>Bopart.</i>
		<i>Defensorum.</i>	<i>Confluentibus,</i>	now <i>Coblentz.</i>
		<i>Acincensum.</i>	<i>Antonaco,</i>	now <i>Andernach.</i>

By which it appears, that *Worms* was the chief Town of the *Vangiones*; therefore *Tacitus* is in the Right when he places them next to the *Truviri*. He adds, that *Spires* was the chief Town of the *Nemetes*, and *Straßburg* that of the *Tribocci*, and describes the Boundaries of all of them together thus: On the E. they had the *Rhine*, from the ancient Boundaries of the *Mediomatrici* and *Sequani*, which was from *Burchem*, on the

other Side the *Rhine*, to where the *Nava* falls into it at *Bingen*. On the S. they had the same Boundaries that divided the *Sequani* from the *Mediomatrici*; and from thence Westward the Ridge of Mountains, now called *Hondsruck*, which divide *Alsace* from *Lorraine*; and Northward, their Boundaries extended to *Keyserlauteren*, and from thence to the Place where the *Nava* falls into the *Rhine*. They were divided from one ano-

ther thus; the *Tribocci* were divided from the *Nemetes* by the River *Motra*, and the *Nemetes* from the *Vangiones* by the River *Lauter*.

The *TRIBOCCI*, he says, derived their Name from the Village of *Elface*, now called *Zun-Dregen-Buchen*; in the old *Celtick* Tongue, *Thri-Buche*; i. e. Three Beach-Trees. They possessed half of *Upper Alsace* towards the N. and that half of *Lower Alsace* which lies next to it. The first Place of this Country from the Borders of the *Sequani*, taken Notice of in the *Itinerary*, is *Helethum*, now the Village *Elle*, so called from the River *Al* or *Ell*; from whence comes the Name of *Elface*, because that River runs thro' the Country. The next Place is *Strasburg Argentoratum*. Here *Cluverius* takes Notice of *Mercator's* Mistake, in making *Spires Argentoratum*; and of *Scaliger's* Error, who says, that *Strasburg* was only a Village in the Emperor *Valentinian's* Time, since it was certainly a considerable Town long before *Ptolomy* wrote, who places the 8th Legion, called *Augusta*, here; and 'tis evident, that it was a Town of great Note, from *Antonin's Itinerary*, and the Author of the *Tabula Itinervaria*, who bound their Roads at it, and mark it as a great City.

The *NEMETES* lay N. from the *Tribocci*; and *Cluverius* proves by many Arguments, that *Nemetum*, by some called *Noviomagus*, now *Spires*, was their chief Town.

The *VANGIONES* were by the ancient Germans called *Thi-Wangen*, and their chief Town called *Borbetomagus* by *Ptolomy*; by others, *Borgetomagos*, *Bormitomagus*, and *Bromitomagus*; and by the Romans, *Vormitomagum*, was *Worms*.

The next Town of Note observed here is *Bouconia* or *Bonconia*, now *Oppenheim*, then *Magintiacum*, now *Mentz*, one of the ancientest on this Side the *Rhine*, built, as *Cluverius* thinks, many Years before our Saviour's Birth. He says, it was enlarged and made a Town by *C. Drusus Nero*, but was a Village long before. It was afterwards made the Head Quarter of the Roman Generals in those Parts, who was therefore called *Dux Magentiacensis*.

Next to them lay the *TREVERI*, by some called *Trioviri*, who, according to *Tacitus*, boasted of their being originally Germans, and not sluggish Gauls. Here *Cluverius*

takes Notice of the many gross Errors that Geographers and Historians have been led into by the Account *Caesar* gives in his Commentaries, of the Battle betwixt himself and the Germans at the Confluence of the *Mosa* and the *Rhine*, because they mistook *Mosa* for the *Maese*; whereas it is the *Mozelle* which falls into the *Rhine* at *Coblentz*; Therefore *Cluverius* says, it ought to be read *Mosella*. This he proves from *Florus*, who, speaking of the same Action, says, *Caesar* passed the *Rhine* beyond the *Mosella* on a Bridge of Boats, which he takes to have been writ for *Mosella* by the Mistake of the Transcriber. But however that is, it appears plain from the Thing it self, that it must have been the *Moselle*. The chief Town of those *Treviri* was that called by *Ptolomy* *Augusta Trevirorum*, now *Treves* or *Trier* on the *Moselle*. Some call it *Treveri*, others *Trioviri*. *Tacitus* calls it *Colonia Treverorum*; and *Vespasian's* Coin has it *Colonia Aug. Treveror*; by which 'tis probable, a Colony was settled there by *Augustus*. *Mela*, in the Reign of *Claudius*, calls it *Augusta*, and says, it was the richest Town of all *Belgica*. *Zosimus*, in the Reign of *Constantius*, informs us, 'twas the largest Town on this Side the Alps; and *Ammianus Marcellinus* says, it was the Seat of the Emperors. According to *Cluverius*, the *Treviri* possessed those Countries now called *Lower Wetteraw*, betwixt the *Nava* and the *Moselle*, all the Bishoprick of *Treves*, the Duchy of *Bullew*, the Jurisdiction of *Sedan*, the Land of *Masfere*, the greater Part of the Duchy of *Luxemburg*, and Part of the Bishoprick of *Cologne*. The next remarkable Town of this Country is that which the Romans called *Confluentes*, now *Coblentz*, because the *Moselle* falls into the *Rhine* there; and the last Town of the *Treviri* on the *Rhine* is *Antunnaco*, *Antonaco*, or *Antennacum*, now *Andernach*, where the Romans had a Camp. *Caesar* takes Notice, that the *Treviri* were a very powerful People; that they exceeded all the rest of Gaul in Horse, (for he reckon'd their Country Part of *Gallia Belgica*;) and that they were very strong in Foot. *Mela* says, they were the most famous of the Belgae.

Cluverius, German. Antiq. Lib. 2. Cap. 15. mentions the *Eburones*, *Condrusi*, *Segni*, *Ceraesi*, and *Paemani*, who were the first that

by

by one general Name were called *Germans*, according to *Cæsar*. The greatest Part of the *EBURONES* dwelt betwixt the *Mæse* and the *Rhine*. *Cluverius* fixes their Boundaries thus: They had the *Rhine* on the E. by which they were divided from the *Ubi* above *Cologne*, and from the *Sigambri* below *Cologne*. On the S. they had the *Condrusi*, *Segni*, *Cerafi*, and *Pamani*, from whom he divides them by a Line from *Bonne* to the Confluence of the Rivers *Mæse* and *Urt*; and then from the *Mæse* as far as *Namure*, they were bounded on the W. by the *Aduatici*, as appears by *Cæsar*; from whom *Cluverius* separates 'em by a Line from *Namure* to the Source of the River *Gete*, and then by that River till it fall into the *Demer* above *Diest*. On the N. they had the *Menapii*, from whom they were separated by a Line, that we must suppose to be drawn from the Confluence of the *Gete*, to the Confluence of the *Roer* at *Ordingen* on the *Rhine*: By all which it appears, that the *Eburones* possessed the greatest Part of the Country betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Mæse*, and that the rest of their Boundaries lay betwixt the *Mæse* and the *Gete*; so that their Country contained Part of the County of *Namure* betwixt that City and *Hannaw*; likewise Part of *Brabant*, in which are now the Towns of *Tunen*, *Hannuy*, *Landen*, *Leewe*, and *Hall*, and Part of the Diocese of *Liege*, which lie on the Right of the *Albia* and *Urt*, the greatest Part of the Dutchy of *Limburg* towards the N. the Territory of *Aix la Chapelle*, and the whole Dutchy of *Juliers*, except that Part where the Town of *Brug en* lies towards the N. and that where *Monjou* is towards the S. Here *Cluverius* corrects a Mistake of *Hubert* of *Liege*, who alledges, there was a Town called *Eburra* in the Neighbourhood of *Liege*, where *Ambiorix* had his Palace, and reign'd over all those 5 People; for 'tis plain by *Cæsar*, that he only reign'd over half the *Eburones*, betwixt the *Aduatici* and the *Mæse*; and that *Cativolus* govern'd the rest betwixt the *Mæse* and the *Rhine*. *Ortelius*, in *Theſaur. Geograph.* falls into as great a Mistake, who will have *Eburonia*, mentioned by *Dio*, to be their chief Town; whereas it was their Country. He also refutes the *Annals* of *Liege*, writ by some fabulous Monks, who will have *Ambiorix* to be King of the *Tungri*, since their

Name was not known in his Days. 'Tis plain from *Cæsar*, that the Castle *Atuatica* was the chief Place of the *Eburones*, which *Cluverius* says is that now called *Tongeren*. Upon the whole, *Cluverius* adds, That the *Condrusi*, *Segni*, *Cerafi*, and *Pamani*, who, with the *Eburones*, promis'd 40000 Men against the *Romans*, liv'd betwixt the *Eburones* and *Treviri*, in Part of the Diocese of *Cologne*, where are now the Towns of *Cronenburg*, *Blankenheim*, *Arenberg*, *Hilnen*, *Königsfeld*, *Brisich*, *Zinsich*, *Meckum*, *Rheinbach*, Part of the Dutchy of *Juliers* about *Manstereifel*, *Gemund*, and *Monjou*, Half the Dutchy of *Limburg*, where the Town so called lies, Part of the Dutchy of *Luxemburg* about *Durbuy*, *Marché Rochfort*, *Huy* and *Chinay* in the Diocese of *Liege*, the *Spaw*, famous for its Medicinal Waters, and Half the County of *Namure* on the Right of the *Mæse* about *Dinant*.

N. from the *Eburones* lay the *MENAPII*, who were likewise of *German* Origine, because they liv'd betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Scheld*: For *Pliny* says, the Counties betwixt the Promontory of the *Cimbri* and the *Scheld* were possessed by *Germans*. Their Boundary on the S. was *Diest*: They were separated from the *Auatici* by the *Demer* and *Rupelle* to the Confluence of the *Scheld*; so that they inhabited a great Part of *Brabant* betwixt the *Mæse*, the *Demer*, and the *Scheld* and *Zealand*, Part of the Borders of *Holland* about *Sevenbergen* and *Gertrudenberg*, Part of *Gelderland* and *Cleve* on this Side the *Rhine*, Part of the Diocese of *Cologne* about *Ordingen*, *Nuys*, and *Suns*; and Part of the Dutchy of *Juliers*: But a great deal of their Country being barren, we are not to wonder that, tho' it was large, they offer'd no more than 17000 Men against the *Romans*; whereas lesser Countries, that were better inhabited, offer'd greater Numbers.

Cluverius is of Opinion, That the *AMBI- VARITI*, mention'd by *Cæsar* and others, who by some are placed about *Antwerp*, from whence they would derive its Name, are the same with the *Aduatici*, but their Name mistaken by Copiers. 'Tis plain from *Cæsar's* Commentaries, that the Borders of the *Menapii* were full of Woods and Marshes. The Woods he takes to be Part of that called the Forrest of *Arduenna*, and the Marshes to be those on the Confines of *Gelderland*.

derland and Brabant, commonly called the *Peelo*. He corrects *Strabo's* Mistake, who thought they were near *Drusus's* Ditch on the River *Iffel*; for that Part of the Country was possessed by the *Batavi*. He likewise corrects the Error of a Dutch Geographer, who, by mistaking *Strabo*, places *Amsterdam* in the Country of the *Menapii*.

The U B I I.

IN *Cæsar's* Time, they liv'd beyond the *Rhine*; but in *Augustus's* Reign, they were brought to this Side, and inhabited that Country betwixt *Mentz* and *Cologne*. 'Tis not very clear for what Reasons they were transported; but *Cluverius* thinks, that being subdued by the *Romans*, they at last took them into their Friendship, because they were a mighty and a flourishing Nation, and transported them for the Defence of their Dominions on this Side, and to deliver them from the Incursions of the *Suevi*, the most powerful People of *Germany*, with whom they had constant War. Their Boundaries were the *Rhine* on the E. On the N. a Line from the Mouths of the *Roer* and *Maeſe* to the *Rhine*, and the Town of *Ordingen*. On the W. the *Roer*, from its Mouth to the Town called *Niderheimbach*; from thence a Line to the Town of *Kerpent*; and on the S. the River *Obrinwa*, by which they were separated from the *Treveri*, as by the Boundaries above-mentioned they were from the *Menapii* and *Eburones*, into Part of whose Dominions they were transported; so that they possessed most of the Bishoprick of *Cologne*, and of the Dutchy of *Juliers* on the Right Side of the *Roer*. Their chief Town was that called *Ubiurum Oppidum*, now *Co'ogne*, which *Cluverius* thinks was built in the Time of *Augustus*, 35 Years before our Saviour's Birth, and called *Colonia Agrippinensis*, from *Julia Agrippina*, Daughter to *Germanicus*, and Wife to *Claudius*, about 15 Years after our Saviour's Birth. She planted a Colony, and settled *Veterans* there; and though they were *Germans*, having put themselves under the Protection of the *Romans*, they chose the Name of *Agrippinensis*, according to *Tacitus*. Their next Town for Antiquity and Note was that called *Ara Ubiurum*, which *Cluverius*

proves to be *Bonn*. The Reason of the Name he knows not; but rejects their Opinion, who, from a Coin of *Augustus*, think it was called *Julia Bonna*; for he looks upon that Coin to be counterfeit. Their other Towns were, *Novesium*, now *Nuys*; *Durnomagus* and *Burnungum*, now *Darfmagen* and *Wuringen*; *Gelduba*, now *Gelder*; *Juliacum*, now *Juliers*; *Tiberiacum*, now *Berchem*.

The G U G E R N I,

BEFORE they came on this Side the *Rhine*, were called *Sicambri*; and when they were transported, possessed great Part of that now called the Dutchy of *Cleve*, Part of the Dutchy of *Gelder* beyond the *Maeſe*, and of the Dutchy of *Juliers* about *Brugge*. *Cluverius* thinks, they came hither in the Time of *Augustus*, because *Sueton* says, that he brought over the *Suevi* and *Sicambri*, who submitted to him, and planted them on the next Banks of the *Rhine* about the 35th Year of his Reign, and 8 before our Saviour's Birth. The oldest Place mentioned in their Country by *Tacitus*, is that called *Vetera Castra*, which, by *Antonin's Itinerary*, *Cluverius* takes to be *Santen* in the Dutchy of *Cleve*. The next Town is *Calonem*, now the Village of *Kalenhusen*, two Miles below *Ordingen*; so that *Simler* was mistaken, in saying it was *Gelder*; and *Lazius* yet more, who would have it to be *Cleve*, since the contrary appears from the *Itinerary*. *Ascburgium*, mention'd by *Tacitus*, is a small Village now called *Asburg*, betwixt *Nuys* and *Santen*. *Colonia Trajana* he takes to be *Kellen*, within a Mile of *Cleve*, and not *Keiſerſward*, as *Ortelius* would have it: And he thinks, from the Ruins of this Colony, the Town of *Cleve* in the Neighbourhood had its Original, which seems to be plain from the *Itinerary*.

The S U N I C I,

BEFORE they came over the *Rhine*, were called *Chatti*; and *Cluverius* thinks, they were transported much about the same time with the *Gugerni* into the Country betwixt the *Maeſe* and the *Roer*. The noted Places in their Country, mentioned by the An-

Ancients, are *Theudurum*, now *Tudder*, in the Dutchy of *Juliers*. *Coriovallum*, now *Falkenburg*, betwixt *Tongerren* and *Cologne*.

The TUNGRI

WERE at first divided into the *Eburones*, *Condrusi*, *Segni*, *Cerafi*, and *Pannani*, spoke of before; but afterwards call'd by the common Name of *Germani*. There's much Debate among the Learned about that Place of *Tacitus*, where he says, *That the Name of Germany was New, and given to those who first passed the Rhine, drove out the Gauls, and were sometimes called Tungri, and sometimes Germani*; but in the Copy printed at *Bamberg* and *Bononia* in 1472, 'tis said, *They are now called Tungri, but then Germani*; so that the Name of the Nation, but not of the People, began to gain Ground by degrees, and they were all called by the new Name at first by the Victor or Conqueror out of Fear, and then by themselves. *Cluverius*, after a Learned Dissertation upon this Period, which has so much puzzled Interpreters, rejects the Amendments and Commentaries of *Lipsius* and others, and says, it ought to be read thus; *Ut omnes primum Victores à victis ob metum; mox à seipsis invento nomine vocarentur*; i. e. That all the Conquerors, when they had expelled the *Gauls*, were out of Fear by those *Gauls* called *Germani*; but afterwards, by a new invented Name, they called themselves *Tungri*. Here he observes, That the Name of *Germanus* was older than that of the *Tungri*, and mentioned by *Cæsar*, who takes no Notice of the latter; and 'tis probable, that he learn'd this Name of *Germanus* from the *Gauls*; whereas the *Germani* called themselves in general *Teutisci*: So that *Tacitus's* Meaning is, That the Name *Germani* was neither the ancient nor the true Name of the People beyond the *Rhine*, but was given them by the *Gauls*, when that Part of them, afterwards called the *Tungri*, passed the *Rhine*. Therefore *Cluverius* rejects the Opinion of *Strabo*, who thinks, this Name was given them as if they had been *Germani* or Brothers to the *Gauls*, because they were like them in Fierceness, S stature and Complexion, and derives the Name from the ancient *German* Words

War and *Man*, importing that they were a Warlike People, as the *Gauls* found to their Cost; but because they could not pronounce the *W*, they chang'd it into a *G*, and so pronounc'd it *German*. He adds, That the *Tungri*, after they had this new Name, and were form'd into a new Community, possessed the same Countries as they did when called by the 5 distinct Names formerly mentioned, until they were mix'd with the other People that were afterwards brought over the *Rhine*, as we just now heard, and were obliged by the *Romans* to give Way to them. Their chief Town was *Tongerren*, as has been already said, which was second in Dignity to *Cologne*, as appears by *Marcellinus*.

The ADUATICI,

AFTERWARDS called *Bethasii*, border'd upon the *Menapii*, and are said by *Cæsar* to be of German Extract: They were the same with those called *Aduatici*; and *Cluverius* thinks, they derived their Name from the German Word *Afwack*, which signifies to take off or diminish, as they did the Dominions of their Neighbours when they seized them. He fixes their Boundaries thus; On the E. they had the *Eburones*, and extended in a Line from *Namure* to the Fountains of the *Gete*, and from thence along the River till it fall into the *Demer*. On the N. they had the *Menapii*, and the Rivers *Demer* and *Rupel*, till they fall into the *Scheld*. On the W. the *Scheld* to the Mouth of the *Dender*, from thence the *Dender* as far as *Aeth*; and from hence on the S. a Line to the *Sambre*, and the Town called *Fontaines*, which now contain a great Part of *Brabant* betwixt the *Gete*, *Demer*, and *Dender*, Part of *Flanders* as far as *Dendermond*, Part of *Hainault* about *Engghien*, *Hall*, *Soignies*, *Braine le Comte*, &c. and Part of the County of *Namure* on the Left of the *Sambre*. *Cæsar* says, they had many Towns and Castles, and mentions one Town he took from them which had 53000 People in it, and was very well fortified by Nature, being surrounded by high Rocks, and had but one Passage to it of about 200 Foot broad; but *Cluverius* owns, he cannot find where

where it stood, nor why these People were afterwards called *Bethasii*. He finds two Towns mentioned in their Country, *viz.* *Geminia-cum*, now *Gemblours*; and *Pervicia-cum*, now *Pervus*.

The NERVII

HAD the *Bethasii* on the N. and are called *Germans* by *Strabo*. *Cluverius* says, their Boundaries were from the *Maese* and the Monastery of *Dellain* to the Town of *Permins*, from the Fountains of the *Sambre* to *Crevencour* on the *Scheld*. On the W. they had the *Scheld* as far as *Cambray*, and from thence they extended as far as the Mouth of the *Scarp*; so that they possessed Part of the County of *Namure* betwixt the *Maese* and the *Sambre* with *Namure* it self; the Country called *Lower Burgundy* betwixt those Rivers, the greatest Part of *Hainault*, Part of *Picardy*, and the Town of *Cambray*, with Part of that Diocese. Their chief Town was *Bagacum*, now *Bavay* in *Hainault*.

The Centrones, Grudii, Levaci, Pleumosii, and Gorduni, all afterwards called Sueconi.

THEY were, according to *Cluverius*, of German Original, subject to the *Nervii*, and liv'd in that Part of *Flanders* where are now the Towns of *Armentiers*, *Lisle*, *Tournay*, *Andenard*, Part of the Towns of *Aelft* and *Ghent*, and Part of *Hainault* betwixt *Aeth* and the *Scheld*. They are mentioned by no Author after *Cesar*, nor are any of their Towns mentioned by *Antonin* and the *Notitia Imperii*, but *Twinnacum* or *Tornacum*, now *Tournay*.

The Toxandri, or Taxandri.

CLUVERIUS says, they were *Germans*, and inhabited the Country now called *Zealand*. He maintains this by many Arguments against *Ortelius*, and the other Dutch Geographer formerly mention'd; and thinks it plain, because *Pliny* says, the *Tox-*

andri inhabited the Places beyond the *Scheld*. *Cluverius* fixes their Boundaries thus: On the W. they had the Ocean; On the N. the old Channel of the *Maese*, by which they were separated from the *Bethasii*; And on the E. and S. the Rivers and Currents of the Sea, by which they were separated from the Continent. He thinks from *Cesar's* saying, That the People hid themselves in those Islands, *Quas Estus effigere consueverunt*; that *Zealand* was formerly join'd to the Continent, but separated from it by the Tides. He observes, That the Roman Authors mention no Towns in those Islands, because they had none in their Time; for *Middleburg* and *Flushing* were built long after.

The BATAVI

LA Y N. from the *Toxandri* and *Mena-pii*, in that Part of the Country towards the W. and E. where the Sea and the Rhine end the Boundary of *Gallia Belgica*. *Cluverius* says, the *Batavi* were the noblest and the stoutest of all the *Germans* on this Side the *Rhine*; and that the Learned are very much divided about the Place where they liv'd, wherein the *Netherlanders* and the *Hollanders* themselves have been much mistaken. As to their Origin, *Pliny* and *Tacitus* say, they were *Germans*, and the latter derives 'em from the *Catti*, being driven from home by a Domestick Sedition. When this happened, is not certain, no more than the Reason of their Name. *Dio* thinks, 'tis derived from the Island *Batava* or *Batavia* on the *Rhine*, now called the *Betuwe*. The Situation of this Island, according to *Zosimus*, was from the Division of the *Rhine* to the Sea. *Tacitus* says, the *Rhine* continues in one Channel, except that it makes some small Islands, till it come to the beginning of the Country of the *Batavi*, where 'tis divided into two; but keeps its Name and its rapid Course in that which is next to *Germany*, till it fall into the Ocean; but that which is next to *France* is broader, runs more slow, changes its Name into the *Vohalis*, and a little after into that of the *Maese*, and falls with it into the Sea by a vast Mouth. This makes it plain, that the Island of the *Batavi* begins not far from
Cleve,

Cluv. at the Port commonly called *Schem-
kistshans*; and that *Tacitus's* Description is
more exact than that of *Cæsar*. The Length
of this Island, to the Village called *Grave-
sande* at the Mouth of the *Maese*, is 83 Miles.
He takes Notice of *Strabo's* Mistake, who
said, That the Foreland of *Kent* might be
seen from the Mouth of the *Rhine*; and of
those who would support his Authority, by
alleging, That a great Part of the Coun-
try has been overflowed since that Time,
which must be no less than 40 Miles, if it
be allowed that *Cæsar* measured the Length
of the Island from the Confluence of the
Maese and the *Vahalis*; and yet even in that
Case, it had been impossible to see *Kent* from
the Mouth of the *Rhine*; so that *Strabo's*
Mistake proceeded from his apprehending
that *Itium* or *Gesoriacum*, from whence Ships
us'd to sail from *France* to *Britain*, was near
the Mouth of the *Rhine*. Besides, 'tis
plain, that the Islands on the Coast of
Friesland are the same as they were in *Aug-
ustus's* Age; so that 'tis no way probable
that so much of the Country has been over-
flowed at the Mouth of the *Rhine*. *Clu-
verius* in the next place takes Notice of both
Sides of the Island of the *Batavi*, of which
the one is bounded by the *Vahalis* and the
Mouth of the *Maese*, and the other by the
middle Channel of the *Rhine*; and on this
Occasion describes the old Channels of those
Rivers, and how they came to be chang'd
by Inundations, &c. He afterwards con-
futes the Mistake of those who extend the
Island of the *Batavi* to the River *Iffel*, and
the Lake *Flevis*; and then gives an Account
of the Land possessed by the *Batavi* be-
twixt the *Vahalis* and the *Maese*, and of the
People called *Caninefates*, who inhabited Part
of the Island of the *Batavi*. He thinks
them to be of the same Origine, and that
they came thither much about the same
Time. He afterwards proves against *Ju-
nius*, that the *Batavi*, tho' of German Ex-
tract, were reckon'd to belong to *Gallia Bel-
gica*; and that the middle Channel of the
Rhine was the Boundary between *Germany*
and *Gaul*. Their remarkable Places were,
that called *Bataworum Oppidum*, now *Baten-
burg*; according to *Cluverius*, *Noviomagum*,
now *Nimmeguen*, first mentioned by *Antonin*,
and the *Tabula Itineraria*; *Arenacum*, now

Arnhem; *Batawodurum*, now *Duerstede*; *Gri-
nes*, now *Rhinén*; *Vada*, now *Wageningen*.
But he thinks all of them, except *Batawo-
durum*, have chang'd their Situation to the
other Side of the River.

Cluverius having thus accounted for the
Germans who dwell on this Side the *Rhine*,
and their Boundaries; he tells us, that this
Country was divided into *Germania Superior*
and *Inferior*, afterwards called *Germania Pri-
ma* and *Secunda*; and the Inhabitants of both
are called sometimes *Germans*, and some-
times *Gauls*, by the *Roman* Authors, which
is plain both in *Cæsar* and *Tacitus*.

He comes next to treat of their Woods,
Mountains and Rivers. The Forrest of *Ar-
duenna* is frequently mentioned by *Cæsar*
and others. In the Sixth Book of his Com-
mentaries, he says, 'tis above 500 Miles in
Length; but this does not agree with the
Boundaries he assigns it betwixt the *Rhine*
and the *Maese*, from the middle Borders of
the *Treviri* to the Confines of the *Rhemi*,
which *Cluverius* says is not above 120
Miles. He takes Notice, that *Cæsar* after-
wards extends it further to the *Scheld*, and
the Borders of the *Morini*; from which to
Coblentz, and the utmost Boundaries of the
Treviri, is about 160 Miles. *Strabo* makes
it much longer and broader; for he says, it
reach'd in Length from the Borders of the
Treviri as far as the *Arrebatæ* and the *British*
Ocean, and in Breadth as far as *Zealand* and
the *German Ocean*; but *Cluverius* corrects
both their Mistakes, and says, that from E.
to W. from *Coblentz* to the *British Ocean*, it
was 240 Miles in Length; and the Breadth
from S. to N. from the Borders of the *Me-
diomatrici* to that Branch of the *Rhine* called
the *Vahalis*, is 150. He says, there were
many Remains of it in his own Time, espe-
cially in *Wetteravia*, the Bishopricks of
Treves and *Liege*, the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*,
and on this Side the *Maese*; and that in part
it retained its old Name, being called *L'Ar-
denne* by the *Picards* and *Walloons*; and he
observes, that among the old Geographers
and Historians, it pass'd by different Names,
according to the several Countries through
which it went.

He gives us an Account next of the For-
rest *Vosega* or *Vasaga*, and of the Mountain
Vosego, from whence it had its Name: It

lay S. from *Ardennum*, and reached from the Fountain of the *Maese* to beyond *Strasbourg*. He thinks the Country called *Wosgam* in Germany has its Name from it. Part of the Ridge of Mountains on which it lay, and separate *Burgundy* from *Lorraine*, are now called the Mountains of *Burgundy*. The remarkable Rivers taken Notice of by the Ancients, who treat of Germany on this Side the *Rhine*, are, the *Rhine* it self; *Hellanus*, now the *Ill*, which runs through *Alsace*;

Nemus, now the *Nube*; *Mosella*, now the *Moselle*; *Sura*, now the *Saar*; *Pruen*, now the *Pruin*; *Nomesa*, now the *Niems*; and *Alisonia*, now *Alstz*; *Gelbia*, now the *Kiel*; *Lesura*, now the *Lesur*; *Salmona*, now the *Salm*; *Drachonus*, now the *Train*; *Erubrus* or *Erubris*, now the *Rober*; *Savratius*, now the *Saar*; *Abrinca*, now the *Are*; *Mosa*, now the *Maese*, into which on the Left Side falls *Sabis*, now the *Sambre*. The last of them is *Scaldes* or *Scaldis*, now the *Scheld*.

CHAP. XXV.

Ancient GERMANY beyond the Rhine.

Cluverius, German. *Antiq. Lib. 3.* comes next to describe that which the Romans called *Germania Transiberana*, which he says was the Mother of all the German Nations. The ancient Authors which give any Light into this Matter, are, *Strabo*, *Pliny*, *Tacitus*, and *Ptolomy*. He observes, the two former are very confus'd; therefore he chuses rather to follow the latter, especially *Tacitus*, who divides Germany into 3 Principal Parts. The first is that which lies betwixt the Rivers *Rhine*, *Sale*, and *Elb*, the German Ocean, and the East Sea, which he calls *Mare Suevicum*. The 2d is betwixt the *Sale*, the *Elb*, the *Weissel*, the *Danube*, and the North Sea; all which he calls by the Name of *Suevia*. The 3d is beyond the *Weissel* and the *Baltick*, to the Borders of the *Sarmatae*. Cluverius follows his Order, for the better understanding of his Book, which, as was said before, is much the best Account that any of the Ancients gave of Germany.

The HELVETII.

TAcitus and Dio say, That the *Helvetii*, a People of *Gaul*, did formerly inhabit that Part of Germany betwixt the *Harcinian* Forrest, the *Rhine*, and the *Main*; and that the further Parts were possess'd by the *Boii*, who were likewise *Gauls*; so that Cluverius says, the *Helvetii* had the *Rhine* on the W. the *Main* on the N. the Mountains and Woods of *Bohemia* on the E. and the *Danube* on the S. *Ptolomy* mentions the Desert of the *Helvetii* about the Fountains of the *Neckar* and *Danube*. The Time when they came into Germany, *Livy* tells us was about the 150th Year of *Rome*, which is 600 before our Saviour's Birth. Cluverius observes, That the *Alpium Jugo*, mention'd by *Ptolomy*, near which the *Helvetian* Desert lay, is not the *Alps*, properly so call'd, but those Mountains which lie E of the Fountains of the said Rivers. 'Tis not certain how long the *Helvetians* kept that Country,





try, nor who expelled them; but he thinks it was the following People.

The Marcomanni, Sedusii, and Harudes.

Cluverius says, they first possessed the Banks of the Rhine, and afterwards, according to *Velleius Paterculus*, remov'd to Bohemia, under the Conduct of their Prince *Maroboduus*. He thinks, the Marcomanni inhabited first the Dutchy of Wirtemberg, that Part of the Palatinate betwixt the Neckar and the Rhine, Brissgaw, and that Part of the Dutchy of Swabia betwixt the Fountains of the Danube and the Town of Gundelfing: That the Sedusii liv'd betwixt the Cokar, and the Neckar on the S. the Rhine on the W. the Main on the N. as far as Bamberg, &c. and in Part of the Palatinate and Franconia; and the Harudes dwelt in the upper Parts of the Palatinate and Franconia; the Country of Nuremberg, and Part of Swabia. *Aridovistus* was King of all those People, and defeated by *Cæsar* before *Maroboduus's* Time.

The Gauls who possessed the Agri-Decumani, betwixt the Rhine and the Danube, and afterwards called Alemanni, and Alamanni.

Tacitus says, the poorest and boldest of the Gauls passed the Rhine, and possessed those Lands which *Cluverius* thinks to be the same where the Marcomanni, &c. dwelt, before they removed to Bohemia; but does not agree with *Lippius*, that those Lands were called Decumani, because they were obliged to pay the Tenth of the Profits; yet he gives no Reason why they were so call'd himself, tho' it be plain, that the Romans did lay such a Tribute upon their People, and perhaps might have demanded it of the Marcomanni, &c. before they removed under *Maroboduus*, who, as *Velleius Paterculus* says, carried off his People at a great Distance from the Romans, because they were more powerful in Arms. As to

the *Alamanni*, *Papiscus* and *Eustathius* distinguish them from the Germans; but make them their Neighbours; and *Cluverius* is of Opinion, that *Tacitus* gives a very good Reason for the Name, when he says, *Levis-simus quisque Gallorum, & inopia audax, dubia possessionis solum occupare*. By which it appears, they were not any one sort of the Gauls, but a Mixture of the poorest and boldest People of that Name, who seiz'd those Lands, and therefore were called *Alemanni* by the Germans, as if they would say they were a Mixture of all sorts of People: And since *Strabo* mentions the *Alemanni* from *Assinus Quadratus*, who liv'd much about the Time of this Transmigration, 'tis a strong Presumption, that these were the People who were first called by that Name. This happened about 15 Years before our Saviour's Birth, and in Process of Time they came to be accounted real Germans. This then, says *Cluverius*, is the ancient *Alemannia*, and these the old *Alemanni*, who being subject at first to the Romans, turn'd afterwards their fiercest Enemies, and join'd with the rest of the Germans to recover their Liberty.

The Catti, Chatti, Chasli, and Hassli, falsely called by Cæsar, and the Authors of that Time, Suevi.

Cluverius proves by many Arguments, that *Cæsar* mistook in calling those People by that Name. His chief Reasons are from their Situation, as being Neighbours to the *Ubi*; whereas *Tacitus* places the Suevi on the *Weissel*, the Danube, and the Borders of the *Sarmata*, as we heard before; and the Catti are placed afterwards in the Time of *Augustus*, *Tiberius*, &c. in the same Part of the Country where *Cæsar* places his Suevi. It likewise appears, that the Catti were one of the greatest and most Warlike People in Germany, from the Character that *Tacitus* gives of them. Upon the whole, *Cluverius* assigns the ancient Catti, the Country now called *Thuringia*, all *Hesse*, the whole Dutchy of *Grubbenhag*, half the Bishoprick of *Paderborn*, which lies upon the *Weisser*, the Abbey of *Fulda*,

and Part of the Dutchies of *Francia* and *Coburg*. He easily accounts for the Change of the Name of *Chatti* into *Hassi* and *Hassen*, by the several Dialects of the German Tongue. The chief Town of *Hesse*, now called *Hesse-Cassel*, he takes to be the ancient *Casselum Chattorum*, one of those built by *Drusus Germanicus*, on the Left Bank of the *Fulda*.

The UBI I

WERE Neighbours to the *Catti*, as appears from what is said above; and before they were drove over the *Rhine* by them, possessed the Countries now called *Wetteraw* and *Westerwald*, with that Part of *Hesse* where now lie the Towns of *Marpurg* and *Gießen*. They were allow'd to fix themselves in the Diocese of *Cologne* by *Augustus*, 37 Years before our Saviour's Birth.

The MATTIACI.

Cluverius takes Notice, That this People are said by some modern Geographers to have inhabited *Zaaland* and the neighbouring Isles, and others place them upon the River *Issel*; but he shows their Mistake from *Tacitus*, who says, the *Mattiaci* liv'd beyond the *Rhine*. He adds, That they were Part of the *Catti*; and that the *Mattium Cattorum*, mention'd by *Tacitus* and *Pliny* to be beyond the *Rhine*, is now *Marpurg* in *Hesse*, *quasi* *Matburg*; so that their Country was *Wetteravia*, and Part of *Hesse*. This appears yet more plain from the *Aque Mattiaca*, and Warm Baths, mention'd to be beyond the *Rhine* by *Tacitus*, now called *Wishaden*, in the Country of *Hesse*, not far from *Marpurg*: And *Cluverius* thinks, the *Eucinobantes*, mentioned by *Marcellinus* to lie over against *Mantz*, had their Name from *Wishaden*, it being usual for the Romans to change the German *W* into *B*, and to give Latin Inflections to German Words.

The JUHONES.

THEY are mentioned by *Tacitus* in his Annals on a remarkable Occasion, viz. That a Fire broke out from the Ground,

and destroyed great Part of their Country. *Cluverius* refutes those who would place them in *West-Friesland*, or about *Huy* on the *Maeſe*; for it appears, that they were Neighbours to the *Catti*, and probably Part of them, but had submitted to the Romans when *Tacitus* wrote. Their Country, he says, was half the S. Part of the Dutchy of *Bergen*, and that now called *Westerwald*.

The SIGAMBRI.

Cæsar says, they lay N. of the *Ubi*: They are sometimes called *Sicambri*, and *Sugambri*. *Cluverius* takes Notice of *Strabo's* Mistake, in extending their Country to the Ocean, and assigns their Boundaries thus; That they dwelt in a Line from the Division of the *Rhine* at *Schenken-shaus*, to the Fountain of the River *Bercola*, and in another from thence to the River *Luppia*, as far as the Town called *Lamen*, and from thence to the Head of that River; so that their Country was a great Part of *Westphalia* betwixt the River *Luppia* and the Borders of *Hesse*, half the Dutchy of *Bergen*, all the County of *Mark*, and that Part of *Globo* which lay beyond the *Rhine*. Their chief Places taken Notice of by Roman Authors, are, *Castellum Aliso*, which *Cluverius* says is the Village now called *Elſen*; and *Luppia*, now *Lippe*.

The Tencteri, Uſipites, or Uſipii.

Cluverius says, they succeeded the *Sigambri*, being expelled by the *Catti*, as *Cæsar* informs us, and were received by the *Sigambri*, who removed afterwards to the other Side the *Rhine*; but the *Tencteri*, &c. submitted to the Romans.

The Marſi and Marſaci, or Marſatii.

THEY had the *Sigambri* on the N. and *Cluverius* says, liv'd in that Part of *Westphalia* which lies betwixt the Towns of *Münſter* and *Paderborn*, in the Time of *Augustus* and *Tiberius*. They assisted in destroying

ing *Varus's* Legions, for which they were afterwards invaded by *Tiberius*, who laid waſt their Country, with the famous Temple of *Tanſana*, at that Time the moſt noted in thoſe Parts of *Germany*. *Cluverius* thinks, the *Marſci* were Part of the *Marſi*, but ſtaid in the Country when the reſt fled before the *Romans*. The *Marſi* were one of the moſt conſiderable and ancient of the *German* Nations; and upon their retiring before the *Romans*, extended their Limits from *Coeſfeld* Southward to the *Rhine*, where the *Vahalis* ſeparates from it, and along the *Rhine* to *Batavodurum*, now *Durſede*; then Weſtward to *Hattem*, and from thence Eaſtward to *Bercola*, where it falls into the *Iſſel*, and along *Bercola* to *Coeſfeld*.

The TUBANTES.

They were a ſmall People, and therefore ſeldom mentioned by the Ancients. *Cluverius* corrects their Miſtake who place them in that Part of *Over-Iſſel* called *Twente*, and rather thinks they liv'd in that Part of the Country now called *Benthem*.

The BRUCTERI

Were Neighbours to the *Marſi* and *Tencteri*, according to *Tacitus*. *Cluverius* thinks they inhabited the Countries of *Zutphen* and *Benthem*, *Saland* and *Twente*, Part of *Drent*, and of the Dutchy of *Clève*, and ſome Part of *Weſtphalia*. Moſt of 'em were deſtroyed by the *Romans* under *Trajan*; but the Remainders of 'em recover'd, and grew formidable to the *Romans*. *Cluverius* is not poſitive where they inhabited then, but thinks it was in the *Wetteram*.

The Chamavi and Angrivarii.

They are mentioned by *Tacitus* in the Reign of *Nero*, before *Cæſar's* Expedition into *Gaul*: They liv'd on the Bank of the *Rhine*, and in *Tacitus's* Time did, together with the *Angrivarii*, poſſeſs the Country of the *Bructeri*. The *Angrivarii* aſſiſted *Arminius* in his famous Battle againſt *Cæſar*, which *Cluverius* thinks was betwixt *Minden*

and *Oldendorp*, and that their Country was Part of the County *Schwemburg* on the Right of the *Weſer*, half the S. Part of the Biſhoprick of *Minden*, the greateſt Part of the Biſhoprick of *Oſnabrug*, the N. Part of the County of *Tekelburg*, and Part of the County of *Ravensberg* about the Caſtle of *Lemburg*. He likewiſe thinks, that Part of them reached into the old Dominions of the *Tubantes*, as far as the Town called *Engeren*, which he thinks keeps ſome Remembrance of their Name. He is of Opinion, that the *Chamavi* liv'd betwixt the Rivers *Loeda* and *Ems*, and Part of the County of *Lingen*, and the N. Part of the Biſhoprick of *Oſnabrug*.

The Dulgibini or Dulgumnii, and the Chaſvari or Caſſavarii, Chattuarii, and Cattuarii.

They are mentioned by *Tacitus*. *Cluverius* thinks, they liv'd in Part of the Country of *Lemgow*, and that the Limits of both theſe People were, on the S. the Confluence of the *Weſer* near *Remen*, and then a Line from the Town of *Abbe* to *Bentlage* and the *Ems*; on the W. the Confluence of the *Ems* and *Loeda*; on the E. the *Loeda* to the Head of that River, and a Line from thence to *Remen*. *Cluverius* thinks they were in the Battle againſt *Varus*, being then Subjects to the *Cheruſci*.

The Anſibarii, Ampſibarii, or Amſivarii.

They are mentioned by *Tacitus* to have been expelled by the *Chauci*, and to have removed near the *Rhine*; and that their ancient Country was half the N. Part of the Biſhoprick of *Minden*, the Country of *Deephole*, moſt of the County of *Hoy* on the Left of the *Weſer*, and the little Country called *Stading*. When they were drove out by the *Chauci*, they ſeized the Country formerly poſſeſſed by the *Wifſi*, and ſubmitted to the *Romans*; but demanding more Land from them to inhabit, it was deny'd them; upon which they rebell'd, and moſt of them were cut off. On this Occaſion,

Taci-

Tacitus mentions a noble Saying of their General *Bojocalus*, who had serv'd long under the *Romans*, and deserv'd better Treatment, That if they would not allow them a Place to live in, they could not refuse them a Place to die in; and joining Battle, was defeated. The Remainders of them are mentioned afterwards with great Fame. *Cluverius* thinks they succeeded the *Angri-varii* and *Dulgibini* in their Possessions.

The FRISI.

They are mentioned by *Tacitus* as a great People, divided into *Majores* and *Minores*. They were bounded by the *Batavi* on the S. by the *Marsi* on the N. E. by the *Ems* on the S. E. and by the Ocean on the W. and N. so that they possessed the greatest Part of *Holland*, and the Province of *Utrecht*. *Cluverius* says, half the Towns of *Leiden*, *Woerden*, and *Utrecht*, are in the ancient Country of the *Frissi*, as is Part of *Gelderland* about *Harderwick* and *Elburg*, Part of *Over-Isel* about *Campen*, &c. and all *West-Friesland* as far as the *Ems*: And hence it comes, that *North-Holland* goes still under the Name of *Friesland*, and the Towns there carry the Arms of that Country. *Cluverius* thinks, that the *Frissi Majores* liv'd in the E. Part of the Country, and the *Minores* in the W. and that the Boundary betwixt them was the River *Vesla*, which falls into the *Suyder Sea*. On this Occasion *Cluverius* takes Notice of the *Fossa Drusiana*, so famous in History, now call'd *Drusus's Ditch*. The Reason why he dug it, was, That he might thereby bring his Fleet with his Army from the upper Part of the *Rhine* into the Lake and Ocean, to attack the *Frissi* and *Cauchi*, as we are inform'd by *Tacitus*. *Cluverius* corrects *Suetonius* here, for calling this Ditch a new and vast Work in the Time of *Germanicus*, since it was begun by his Father *Drusus*, and reached only 8 Miles, viz. from the Village of *Iseloort* to the Town of *Doerburg*. For our Author's Learned Dissertation on this Ditch, the several Channels of the *Rhine*, and the Lake *Flevo*, &c. with the Corrections of Geographers on that Head, we refer to the Book it self.

The Chaufsi, Cauchi, and Cauci.

Tacitus says, they border'd on the *Frissi*, liv'd along the Coast, and were bounded by several other People. *Cluverius* says, they possessed the Bishoprick of *Bremen*, *East-Friesland*, the Counties of *Oudenburg*, *Delmenhorst*, *Diepholt*, and *Hoy*, on this Side the *Weisser*, with the North Part of the Bishoprick of *Minden*. They were divided into *Majores* and *Minores* by *Pliny*. *Ptolomy* says, the *Minores* liv'd betwixt the *Ems* and the *Weisser*, and the *Majores* betwixt that River and the *Elb*; and *Tacitus* the quite contrary, which *Cluverius* approves. *Tacitus* says, they were a very great and valiant People. Here *Cluverius* corrects *Paterculus's* Mistake in extolling *Tiberius's* Expedition too much, and alledging, that he carried his Fleet 400 Miles from the *Rhine* to the *Elb*, up almost to its Fountains, which, if it were true, is no more than 300 Miles, and the greatest Distance between the *Rhine* and the *Elb* is no more than 240; so that he thinks *Tiberius's* Fleet came no further than the Town of *Stade*: So that if *Tiberius* marched 400 Miles, he must have taken vast Circuits, which *Strabo* and others not observing, make Countries much larger than they are; for if one go the nearest Way by Land from the *Rhine* to the *Elb*, 'tis not above 180 Miles.

The Cherusci, and their Dependants, the Campsani, Cathulci, or Cathulcones.

Tacitus says, they lay N. E. from the *Chaufsi*, were a great and valiant People, and join'd with *Arminius* against the *Romans*. *Cluverius* says, they possessed all the Bishoprick of *Erden*, the Dutchies of *Lunenber*g and *Brunswick*, the two Bishopricks of *Hildesheim* and *Halberstat*, the County of *Schonenberg*, that Part of the Bishoprick of *Magdeburg* on this Side the *Elb*, the Old Mark, the County of *Daneberg*, and Part of the Duchy of *Lauenberg* on this Side the *Elb*.
The

The remarkable Places in this Country mentioned by Roman Authors, are, the *Teutoburgiensis Saltus*, and *Tentoburgium*, now *Dietmelle*, near which *Varus* and his Army were surpris'd and cut off; *Mons Melibocus*, now *Der Harz*; *Silva Herculi Sacra*, now the Wood betwixt *Minde-Strathagen* and *Bokenburg*. The *Compsani* particularly liv'd betwixt *Brunswick* and *Wernigeroe*; the *Cathulones* betwixt the Towns of *Lunenburg* and *Daneburg*.

The Franci, and Francia.

Cluverius, before he come to describe the German Nations beyond the *Elb*, thinks it proper to give an Account of the *Franci* and *Francia*, and produces very good Authorities to prove, that most of those People already mentioned to have liv'd betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Elb* towards the Ocean, were afterwards called by the general Name of *Franci*. 'Tis plain from *Gregory of Tours*, *Lib. 1. Cap. 9.* that the *Bructeri*, *Chamarvi*, *Ansvarii*, and *Chatti*, were by *Sulpitius Alexander* call'd *Franci*; and in the *Tabula Itineraria*, the *Chanci*, *Amptvarii*, *Cherusci*, and *Chamarvi*, are call'd *Franci*, and their Country *Francia*. It appears also by *Claudian*, that that Part of Germany betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Elb* was call'd *Francia*, and the People *Franci*. The Boundaries of this Country were, on the W. the *Rhine* and the Ocean; on the N. the Ocean; on the E. the *Elb* and *Sala*; but their Boundaries on the S. and how they were divided from the *Alemanni*, are not so plain. *Freherus* is of Opinion, that the Boundary betwixt *Francia* and *Suevia*, in the Emperor *Gratian's* Time, was the *Neckar*; but *Cluverius* corrects his Mistake, and proves it to have been the River *Lone*, and the Mountains call'd *Fogelsberg*.

He comes next to enquire into the Reason of the Name, and thinks it proceeded from their uniting together against the *Romans*, in order to recover their Liberty, according to the Example of *Alemanni*, formerly mentioned; and that the Word *Franci* signifies *Free*. The Remembrance of the Name is still continued in Germany beyond the *Main*, where the People are called *Franken*,

which signifies *Freemän*, and the Country *Frankenlant* or *Franconia*. They have still a Proverb in Germany, *As free as Franks*, or, *The Free Franks*, which *Cluverius* says had its Rise from this Confederacy to recover their Freedom. The Time he takes to have been soon after the *Alemanni* rebelled against the *Romans*; for the Emperor *Probus*, who liv'd about 58 Years after *Caracalla*, is said by several Writers to have made War against the *Franks*. This *Cluverius* says is the true and ancient *France*, and these the ancient *French*, who entering that Part of *Gaul* now called the *Isle of France*, at last gave the Name to the whole Country. Here *Cluverius* corrects the Mistakes of *Paulus Emilius*, *Sigibertus* and *Adrianus Junius*; the former, because he says the Emperor *Valentinian* first called them *Francs*, which in the *Attick* Dialect signifies *Fierce*; and the latter, because he alledges, that the *Franci* were the Inhabitants of *Batavia*, and peculiarly called by the Name of *Germani*, from a Place in *Strabo*, which he mistakes. He adds, that *Ausonius* and *Martial* make use of Poetical Licence, when the former distinguishes betwixt the *Franci* and other *Germani*; and the latter, when he distinguishes betwixt them and the *Catti*.

The Fosi, or Saxons, and Two Countries called Saxony.

Tacitus is the only Author who mentions the *Fosi*, and says, they were Neighbours to the *Cherusci* and *Cimbri*, and liv'd betwixt them. *Cluverius* is of Opinion, that instead of the *Fosi* mentioned by *Tacitus*, we should read *Saxoni*; but his Arguments for it seem not to be conclusive enough. *Gesippus* mentions *Saxonici*, and says it was inaccessible, by reason of Marshes, &c. but *Cluverius* has no great Opinion of that Author. He is positive however, that the *Fosi* were the same whom *Ptolemy* and other Authors did afterwards call *Saxones*, and says, they inhabited *Holstein*, and Part of the Dutchy of *Sleswick*. *Tacitus* says, most of them were destroyed in their War with the *Catti*; yet they recover'd again, and became a formidable People, which must be own'd to be true, if they were the same

same with the *Fassi*. They afterwards passed the *Elb*, and drove out the *Franks* who liv'd on this Side of it: After which the Country as far as the *Rhine* was, according to *Cluverius*, called *Saxony*.

The CIMBRI.

T *Acitius* says, the *Cimbri* lay next to the *Saxons*; and *Ptolemy* says, they possessed that called *Chersonesus Cimbrica*. *Cluverius* says, modern Geographers mistook this Peninsula for the Country betwixt *Lubeck* and *Hamburg*. *Strabo* mistook by placing the *Cimbri* on this Side the *Elb*, because the Roman Writers confounded the Accounts of their Actions with the People on this Side that River. *Cluverius* takes Notice, that some of the ancientest Writers related many fabulous Things of the *Cimbri*, as, that it was a Name the *Germans* gave to Robbers, as *Plutarch* says; and *Nicephorus*, *Gregoras*, and others, fancied they came from *Asia* into *Seythia*, and from thence into *Germany*, &c. and confounded them with the *Cimmerii* near *Pontus*, of whom the *Greeks* talk so much. In *Tacitus's* Time they were inconsiderable, tho' formerly he says they had been great and famous, and had War with the *Romans* when *Cecilius Metellus* and *Papirius* were *Consuls*. *Cluverius* rejects their Opinion who think the great Camp of the *Cimbri*, mentioned by *Tacitus*, was that in the Peninsula, now called *Danen-Werk*, and says it was either in *Italy* or *Gaul*. He thinks, the Country which *Ptolemy* places betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Cimbri*, is that now called *Jutland*. *Ptolemy's* Six People that he places in the Peninsula, *Cluverius* fixes thus; the *Sigulones* in that now called *Wansuffel*; and he says, they were the most Northerly of the Remainers of the *Cimbri*. The *Fundusi* had a Lake on the N. and the Isthmus between that Lake and the Sea, where the Village *Silkerk* now stands. On the W. they had the Sea as far as the Village of *Hemberg*, and from thence they reached in a Line Southward to the Village *Hald*. On the E. they had a River and a Lake. The *Chali* had the *Fundusi* on the N. on the E. the *Baltick*; on the W. the Ocean; on the S. the River which falls into the Sea

near *Holm*; and then lay on a Line from the Head of that River to the Town called *Horsens*, from whence a Bay of the *Baltick* was their Boundary. The *Cobanidi* had the *Chali* on the N. the Rivers *Nipisa* and *Tobesket* on the S. the two Seas above-mention'd on the W. and E. The *Sabalingii* had those two Rivers on the N. the same Seas on the W. and E. and the Isthmus on the N. and *Cluverius* says, that at this Day the Country lying on the Lake is called *Salling*, which he thinks comes from the *Sabalingii*.

The Islands on the Coasts of the Cimbri Saxons, Chaufi, and Frisii.

P *Linus* takes Notice of 23 Islands on those Coasts that were known to the *Roman Arms*; the chief of which mentioned by him are, *Burchana*, now *Borchum*, before the Mouth of the *Emis*; *Fakaria*, now *Boenhuy*; *Gleffaria*, by some thought to be *Ameren*; but *Cluverius* thinks 'tis that called the *Strand*, which he takes to be derived from *Austrania*, one of its Latin Names; *Atania*, now *Silt*. *Cluverius* supposes that those Islands were made by Irruptions of the Ocean, and that more of them were known to the *Romans*, because *Tacitus* says, the *Roman Fleet* suffered great Loss among 'em as they set Sail from the *Emis*, being overtaken by a Storm.

The Ancient Suevia.

C *Luverius* observes, that 'twas easy to find out the Boundaries of the other *German Nations* mentioned by *Tacitus*; but that it would be difficult to find out those of the *Suevi*. *Tacitus* says, they possessed the greater Part of *Germany*, and were divided into several Nations of different Names; but *Su-ve* was their general Name. *Ethicus* agrees with *Tacitus*, says they were possessed of the greatest Part of *Germany*, and divided into 54 several People. *Cluverius* says, they possessed the Countries following, viz. Part of modern *Suevia* or *Swabia*, where are the Towns of *Diink-l-Spittel*

Spittel and *Nordlingen*, the *Upper Palatinate*, *Mecklenburg*, *Upper Saxony*, *Bohemia*, Part of *Austria* beyond the *Danube*, Part of *Hungary* as far as the *Sarmatian Mountains*, *Moravia*, *Silesia*, *Lusatia*, *Poland* on this Side the *Weissel*, the *Marquissate of Brandenburg*, excepting that Part on this Side the *Elb*, *Pomerania*, *Pomerania*, the *Dutchy of Mecklenburg*, Part of *Denmark*, called now *Blasien*, *Skane* and *Holland*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Westerland*, *Finland*, *Scythia*, *Lapland*, and *Biscania*. *Cluverius* says, the Names of the different Nations that inhabited *Scania*, as he finds them in *Tacitus* and other Authors, are as follow: On this Side the *Baltick*, the *Sarmatians*, *Norici*, *Atacantini*, *Quadi*, *Misugi*, *Burii*, *Semnoni*, *Lygi*, *Burgundiones*, *Gothoni*, *Lemni* *fine* *Heruli*, *Rugii*, *Carii*, *Langobardi*, *Deuringi*, *Caviones*, *Angli*, *Varini*, *Eudofes*, *Suardones*, *Nuthones*, to whom were added the *Osii* and *Gothini*, that were Strangers. Beyond the *Baltick*, liv'd the *Sitones* and *Suiones*, a great People, all divided into several Nations. These were their Boundaries in the Time of *Tacitus*, as they were before in the Time of *Augustus Caesar*; so that *Strabo* is in the wrong to think that they called themselves by that Name when they came into *Bohemia*, for as plain they were call'd so long before. *Cluverius* thinks there's little Certainty as to the Reason of the Name, or why so many People should call themselves by it. He takes Notice, that the vast Mountains which separate *Sweden* from *Denmark*, are call'd so by *Latin* Authors, and that the ancientest of them mentioned the *Suiones* or *Suones*, a great People that dwelt about them; and *Pliny* mentions a River call'd *Suony*, which falls into the *Baltick*; but whether the People gave Name to them, or they to the People, is not certain. He takes Notice, that *Strabo* calls them *Ensbai*, and describes their particular Countries as follows.

The Semnonnes.

Tacitus says, they accounted themselves the noblest and most ancient of the *Scythi*. *Cluverius* refutes those who would have them call'd *Semnoni*, because they are since sound by that Name in *Elbe* *Pomerania*, which he thinks happen'd merely by

the Neglect of the Copies, who was better acquainted with the *Galli Semnoni*. *Tacitus* says, they had 100 *Pagi* or *Districts*; so that their Country was large, comprehending Part of *Lesser Poland* between the *Vistula* and the *Oder*, the *Dutchy of Gessia*, the Country of *Sternberg*, Part of *Silesia* about *Glagow*, *Lusatia*, Part of the *Marquissate of Brandenburg* about *Frankfurt* on the *Oder*, the *Principality of Anhalt*, and Part of *Upper Saxony* and *Misnia* beyond the *Elb*. He thinks, that *Semnoni* liv'd in the Country of *Sternberg*, and *Semnonberg* on the *Vistula*, were anciently call'd *Semnoni* and *Semnoni* from those People.

The Langobardi

Liv'd N. of the *Semnoni*, were desc. by *Cluverius* takes Notice, that *Proper*, *Sigebertus*, *Diapontus*, and other Writers of the middle Age, say many fabulous Things of them, particularly that they liv'd in *Norway* and *Sweden*, and were call'd *Wendli*; but coming into *Germany* in the Time of the Emperor *Maximilian*, were call'd *Langobardi*, from their long Beards; but *Strabo* mentions them long before that Time. Their Country was the old *Marquissate of Brandenburg*, which was the Country of *Danneberg*.

The Deuringi, Caviones, Angli, Varini, Eudofes, Suardones, and Nuthones, were join'd in one Body.

Separately they were not very significant; but altogether were very considerable, and went continually arm'd; except on *Holidays*, when they worship'd their Gods as *Hertha*. They all liv'd near the Sea.

The *Deuringi* are also call'd *Reudigni* and *Reudigni*, and by later Authors *Thuringi*, *Thuringi*, *Thuringi*, and *Thuringi*, and are now call'd *Deringer* and *Thuringi* by themselves. They came into *Thuringia* in the Time of *Procopius*; but their ancient Country was between the *Elb* and the *Baltick* and they were Neighbours to the *Angli* and *Varini*, in that Part of the *Marquissate of Brandenburg* where

are now the Towns of *Havelberg*, *Rappin*, and *Prutzwalk*.

o The *Cavines* or *Aviones*, and by some called *Chabones*, liv'd in Part of the Marquisate of *Brandenburg* about *Dalmin*, and Part of the County of *Daniberg*, and the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg*.

o The *Angli*, the Predecessors of the *Engliſh*, poſſeſſed half the Dutchy of *Lunenbury* on the right Side of the *Elb*, and the Weſtern Part of the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg*. *Ptolomy* miſtakes when he places them on this Side the *Elb*, and makes them Neighbours to the *Sannones*. *Cluverius* thinks, that *Ptolomy* wrote the Name wrong when he calls them *Αγγελοι*. The Germans call them the *Angelen*. Their Name is ſtill retained in the *Cherſoneſus Cimbrica* in that Country called *Angelen* or *Anglen*, betwixt *Sleſwick* and *Hemſberg*, whither they remov'd after *Tacitus's* Time by Force; as his ſuppoſ'd. *Cluverius* ſays, they were either Part of the *Saxons*, or under their Protection; from whence in latter Ages they were called *Anglo-Saxones*.

o The *Warini*, *Werini*, or *Varni*, and by ſome called *Varnini* and *Varinna*, liv'd in Part of the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg* about *Ruſſock* and *Gutſtrun*, and Part of *Pomerania*. *Cluverius* thinks, the River *Warna*, and the Town of *Warna*, ſtill retain their Name.

The *Eudofes* liv'd in Part of *Pomerania*, about *Baart*, *Straleſunde*, *Gripeſwalde*, &c. and the Iſle of *Uthman*.

o The *Silindones*, by *Strabo* commonly called *Saxones*, liv'd in Part of *Pomerania* about *Stertin*, and Part of the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg* betwixt the Lake *Tully* and the River *Havel*.

o The *Marithones* liv'd in Part of the Marquisate of *Brandenburg* about *Potzdam*, *Cunegund*, &c. Part of the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg* about *Faſſinſey*, and Part of *Pomerania* about *Gartze*. *Cluverius* thinks, the Iſle of *Rügen* in the *Baltick* contain'd the Sacred Wood, dedicated to *Hertha*. In that Part of the Iſland call'd *Jaschund*, near the Cape call'd *Strubbenkamen*, there is a very thick Wood, in which there is a mighty deep Lake of black Water, which abounds with Fiſh; but the Inhabitants ſay, 'twill neither bear Boats or Nets. *Cluverius* ſpeaks of an odd

Paſſage, that happen'd there in his own Time, viz. Some People carried a Boat to that Lake, and return'd next Day with Nets, in order to have fiſhed; but, to their great Amazement, miſſed their Boat, which at laſt they ſaw on the Top of a tall Beach-Tree; and asking which of all the Devils had hung it there, they heard a Voice, but ſaw no body, which ſaid, *It was not all the Devils, but only I and my Brother Nicholas*: Upon which *Cluverius* makes this Remark, That the unclean Spirit, being angry that his Worſhip ſhould be abolish'd where Idolatry was perform'd of old, does ſtill love to play his Tricks there: But this, with the Story at ſelf, we ſubmit to the Reader's Judgment. *Helmoldus* ſays, That long after Chriſtianity took Footing there, the People paid a Superſtitious Veneration to that Wood. The barbarous Inhabitants uſed to conſult the Devil in this Place, and to ſacrifice Chriſtians to him.

The Hermunduri, and later Suevia.

HAVING given an Account of the *Suevi* who dwelt beyond the *Elb*, *Tacitus* comes to deſcribe thoſe who liv'd on this Side as far as the *Danube*. *Cluverius* ſays, their Country was the Principality of *Anhalt*, Part of the Dutchy of *Saxony* betwixt the *Saale* and the *Elb*, all *Mifnia* on this Side the *Elb*, all *Voigtland*, Part of the Dutchy of *Coburg*, and about *Culmbach*, *Cronach*, &c. now ſubject to the Elektor of *Brandenburg*, Part of *Pranconia* on the Left Side of the *Main* about *Bamberg* and *Forchheim*, Part of the *Upper Palatinate* about *Nürnberg*, and Part of the Dutchy of *Swabia* about *Nordlingen*. He differs with *Tacitus* as to the Extent of the *Hermunduri*, and does not think their Country reach'd to the Head of the *Elb*, whoſe Riſe is from a Mountain in the Confines of *Sileſia*, in the furtheſt Part of *Bohemia*, to the South-Eaſt, near the Town of *Smidberg*, which is ſituated in a Valley commonly call'd the *Devil's Ground*. He infers from the Account *Tacitus* gives of the Retreat of *Maroboduſus*, after his Deſeat by *Arminius*, over the Hills into the Country of the *Marcomanni*, the Battle

Battle to have been fought on the Borders of the *Hermunduri* and *Marcomanni*, near the Towns of *Zuriche* and *Chemnitz* in *Misnia*. Therefore if the Borders of the *Marcomanni* were the Hills near the Towns of *Annsberg* and *Marienberg*, it cannot be that the Borders of the *Hermunduri* were extended beyond those to the true Fountain of the *Elb*: Nor is it to be supposed that the Battle was fought on the Right Side of the *Elb*, in the Borders of the *Semnones*, for they were Enemies to *Maroboduus*; and 'tis plain from *Tacitus*, that the War he managed was Defensive, and not Offensive: Therefore he thinks *Tacitus*'s Mistake proceeded from taking the Fountain of the *Moldau* to be that of the *Elb*; and *Ptolemy*'s Error seems to have proceeded from the same Cause. *Cluverius* takes Notice, that the Name of these People is also mistaken by *Strabo* and *Ptolemy*: the former calls them *Fugiorhesti*, instead of *Equiorhesti*, and *Ptolemy* calls them *Δαριδοι*; whereas the Situation shews 'em to be the *Hermunduri*: But an Age or two after *Tacitus*'s Time, when the *Alemanni*, *Franci*, *Saxons*, and the Nations of the *Suevi* beyond the *Saal* and the *Elb*, the *Gothi*, *Burgundiones*, *Vandali*, *Quadi*, and *Marcomanni*, began to be famous by their different Names, the *Hermunduri* alone were called *Suevi* by the *Romans*, and their Country *Suevia*; because, as *Cluverius* thinks, that, next to the *Alemanni* and *Franci*, who liv'd on the French Side the *Rhine*, they lay nearest to the *Romans*; and at last, when all the *Almanni* left *Germany*, the *Suevi* succeeded into their Dominions, which from them was called *Suevia*, and now *Swabia*, and by the *Germans* *Schwabenland*.

The *Narisci*, *Naristi*, or *Naristæ*, afterwards called *Armalaufti*.

Tacitus says, the *Narisci* liv'd on the Banks of the *Danube*, betwixt the *Hermunduri* and *Marcomanni*, in that Part of the Country, says *Cluverius*, now called the *Upper Palatinat*, and the *Landgraviate of Leuchtenberg*, and in the *Tabula Itineraria* were afterwards called *Armalaufti*; but why, is not said.

Boiohamum, and its Inhabitants the *Boii* and *Marcomanni*.

IT is not certain what *German* People first inhabited this Country; but *Tacitus* says, the *Boii*, a *Reneb* Nation, removed thither, which, according to *Livy*, was when *Tarquinius Priscus* reign'd at *Rome*, and from them the Country was called *Boiohamum*, now *Bohemia*. Here *Cluverius* takes Notice of *Cæsar*'s Mistake in placing the *Volca Tetsage* in the *Hercynian* Forrest, since *Livy* places them in *Gallia Braccata*, of the Province of *Narbon*; and says, 'twas the *Celtick Gauls* who sent a Colony to the *Hercynian* Forrest, which surrounds *Bohemia*; and the *Boii* were afterwards expelled by the *Marcomanni*, as *Tacitus* informs us, but came in Time to be called *Bohemi* from their new Country. *Cluverius* thinks, that *Ptolemy*'s *Marobudum* is what we now call *Prague*. The *Marcomanni* are much applauded for their Valour by *Tacitus*, and other *Roman* Authors.

The QUADI

Modern Geographers place them in *Silesia*; but *Cluverius* proves that it was *Moravia*, because the River *Marus*, said to be in that Country by *Pliny*, is what the *Germans* call *Maran*, and the Natives *Morawa*. Their Towns mentioned by *Ptolemy* are, *Eborodunum*, now *Brin* or *Brun* in *Moravia*; *Eburum*, now *Olomucz* or *Ulmitz*; *Médostanum*, now *Znaim*; *Cilemuntia*, now *Kalmintz*.

The *Gothini*, *Marsingi*, *Osi*, and *Burii*,

ARE mentioned by *Tacitus* to be bounded by the *Quadi* and *Marcomanni* on one Side, and by a Ridge of Mountains on the other. The *Gothini*, according to *Cluverius*, liv'd in Part of *Poland* about *Twardosyn*, *Jablakow*, &c. in Part of *Silesia* about *Teschin*, *Griffas*, *Frieditz*, &c. and Part of *Bohemia*.

They had the same People which were the same People which

the *Goths* passed, was the River *Oli* betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*, since 'tis plain *Jornandes* takes it to be the *Vistula* or *Weissel*, which he makes the Boundary betwixt *Scythia* and *Germany*; and owns, that Part of the *Goths* who stay'd on this Side that River made War upon their Neighbours the *Burgundiones*, &c. As for their Expedition to the *Palus Martis* and *Black Sea*, 'tis mentioned by *Ablabius* and *Stephanus*; but he takes Notice, that they no where say they were formerly called *Geta* or *Daci*; therefore he thinks it credible, that after *Tacitus's* Time they marched towards the S. E. to the Lake of *Mentis*, and that they returned towards the S. W. to the *Boristhenes* and *Pontus*, and the Borders of the *Geta*, where they settled; and being distinguished into two Nations, those who liv'd Eastward towards *Pontus* were call'd the *Eastern Goths*, *Osro-Goths* or *Osro-Gothi*; and those who liv'd towards *Germany* Westward, were called the *Western Goths*, *Wise-Goths*, *Wise-Gothi* or *Vise-Gothi*; and *Sidenius* only calls them *Vassi*. How they came afterwards to make their Irruptions into *Thracia*, *Illyricum*, *Italy*, *France* and *Spain*, and Part of them likewise into *Bithynia*, *Phrygia*, and other neighbouring Countries, is accounted for at large by *Jornandes* and others. We leave the Reader to his own Judgment, whether *Clovesius*, or the *Swedish* and *Danish* Historians, who pretend the *Goths* came from their Countries, be in the right. 'Tis certain, that if the Names of Places which have some Resemblance to that of the *Goths* be a good Argument, the *Danes* and *Swedes* have more to say for their Opinion than he has for his; nor is it any way improbable that the *Gothenus*, whom he places on the Coast of the *Baltick* about the Mouth of the *Weissel*, might first come from the *Geta* on the other Side the *Baltick*; but it must be own'd that the *Goths*, who afterwards made so great a Noise and Figure in the World, seem'd to be more immediately descended from the *Gothenus* on this Side the *Baltick*.

Jornandes says, the *Gepida* were originally *Goths*, which *Clovesius* does not contradict, tho' he looks upon his Original of the Name to be fabulous.

The Northern *Eridanus* mentioned by the Ancients, *Clovesius* takes to be the River

Radanum, which falls into the *Weissel* near *Dantzick*, and by Mistake was given to the *Weissel* it self; and he proves that *Dantzick* is the Place which was famous for the Trade of *Amber* in the Time of *Herodotus*, &c. He thinks the Latin Name *Gythunium* or *Gedanum* to be derived from the Word *Thaenium*, and says, 'tis mentioned by the Name of *Gedanum* in an ancient Charter granted in the Year 1209 by the Duke of *Cassubia*, and that it is more ancient than any other Town in the North; but this must be taken with some Grains of Allowance, because 'twas the Place of his Birth.

The *Lemovii*, call'd also *Heruli*, with the *Rugii*, *Sidini*, and *Carini*.

Tacitus says, the *Lemovii* dwelt W. from the *Gothenus*, and beyond them the *Rugii*. *Clovesius* says, the latter inhabited a great Part of *Pomerania* from *Steinward* to *Cashu*, and a small Part of the Marquisate from *Tramborg* to *Schoffelsberg*. The Isle of *Rugel* derives its Name from them. The Town *Rugium*, mentioned here by *Prohm*, is now call'd *Rogewald*. *Prohm* calls them by Mistake *Rutilli*, and later Writers *Rugii* and *Rogi*. They were divided into two People, and Part of them afterwards removed to the Banks of the *Danube*, from whom the Country call'd *Rugiland*, betwixt *Transylvania* and the *Danube*, had its Name.

The *Lemovii* were separated from them by the River *Vipet*, possessed a great Part of that Country now call'd *Cassubia*, in the middle of which stands the Town of *Lamberg*; from thence they reach'd to the Sea call'd *Puntcke* and *Hel*, and into Part of *Pomerania* about *Silpa*. Later Writers join the *Heruli* with them in their Wars; so that 'tis probable they were their Neighbours. Some call them *Eruli*. *Clovesius* thinks they might derive their Name from the Peninsula call'd *Hel*, at the Western Mouth of the *Weissel*, from whence, according to the German Dialect, they were call'd *Helr*, by the Greeks *Heluri*, and by Transposition of the Letters *Heruli*.

The *Sidini* liv'd S. of the *Rugii*, in Part of the Marquisate and *Pomerania*. *Ptolmy* mentions the Town *Viritium* here, betwixt the *Saeva* and the *Weissel*, now called *Perritz*.

The *Carini* had the *Rugii* on the N. and liv'd in Part of the Marquisate and *Poland*, betwixt the River *Tragus* and *Guda*.

The Burgundiones, Burgundii, or Burgundi.

Cluverius thinks they were not mentioned by *Tacitus*, because they were then inconsiderable; yet they were mentioned by *Pliny* before him, and became afterwards famous among Writers of the latter Ages. *Cluverius* says, their ancient Country was, in Part of *Poland*, from *Gniezno* to the Lake *Goplo*; but in the Time of the Emperor *Probus*, *Zosimus* mentions them to be seated on the *Rhine*. *Ptolomy* commits many Mistakes, says *Cluverius*, both as to their Name and Situation; for he places them in *Sarmatia*, and calls them sometimes *Frugundiones*, and at other times *Burguntai*, and *Buguntai*. *Marcellinus* says, they were an Offspring of the *Romans*, left in *Germany* by *Drusus* and *Tiberius*, and is followed in this by *Orosius* and *Isidorus*; but *Cluverius* rejects this, and thinks, that after they came to the *Rhine* in the Time of *Probus*, they enlarged their Habitations into that now called *Burgundy*. He informs us from *Marcellinus*, that they first came into the Country of the *Catti*; and *Procopius* says, they liv'd S. of the *Thuringi*. *Marcellinus* mentions the Boundaries of the *Alemanni* and *Burgundi* to have been distinguished from one another by Stones set up in the Country called *Capellatium* or *Palas*, which some will have to be the *Palatinate*; but *Cluverius* thinks it was about the Town of *Stras* in the Borders of the *Catti*; and when the *Alemanni* went into *Rhetia* and *Helvetia*, the *Burgundiones* succeeded them, and from thence removed into *Gaul* upon the Irruption of the *Goths*, who destroyed many of them, as *Emmenius* informs in his *Genethliacōn* of *Maximianus*.

The Northern Ocean, which bounds Germany on the North, and its great Bay called *Codanus* by *Mela* and *Pliny*, and *Mare Suevicum* by *Tacitus*, and that Part of it called *Venedicus Sinus* by *Ptolomy*.

Tacitus seems to have known but little of this Part of *Germany* beyond what he calls the *Mare Suevicum*, and mentions only two Sorts of People in it. *Pliny* calls that Part of the Ocean from the Mouth of the *Rhine* to the Promontory *Rubeis*, now *Norwiche*, the *German Ocean*. The large Bay of that Ocean mentioned by *Tacitus*, and other *Roman* Authors, is that now called the *Baltick* or *East Sea*. It was by some of those Authors called *Germania Sinus*, and by others *Mare Suevicum*, from the *Suevi*, who inhabited the Peninsula of this Sea, and Part of the Continent of *Germany*. In this Peninsula they plac'd the huge Mountain *Sevo*, the Ridge of Mountains that separate *Norway* from *Sweden*, and are now called by several Names, viz. the *Skars*, the *Sula*, and *Doffrafel*, which are 306 Miles in Length from the Mouth of the *White Sea* to the Promontory of the *Cimbri*. The Form of this Bay was not known to those ancient Writers, as it now appears to be; for they thought it had a Communication with the *White Sea*, and that *Scandinavia* was an Island; nor was it possible for them to know it better, since the *Roman Navy* fail'd no further N. than the Promontory *Cimbrium*, now called *Cape Scagen*. The *Sinus Venedicus*, *Cluverius* takes to be that Part of the Bay betwixt the Mouths of the *Weissel* and the *Narva*.

Of Scandinavia, Scandia, or Scanzia, called by the old Greek Authors *Baltia*, and *Basilia*, and likewise of *Finnia*.

Those vast Islands mentioned by *Tacitus* to be in this Part of the World, were the same which *Pliny* call'd *Scandinavia* and *Finnia*.

Finnigia; but he took *Baltia* or *Basilia* to have been a distinct Island from *Scandinavia*, by not adverting to the Greek Authors, and therefore is very confus'd in his Account of them. Upon the whole, *Cluverius* says, That by those Islands they meant that vast Tract of Ground which lies now betwixt the *White Sea* and the *Baltick*, that includes *Lapland*, *Biarma*, *Finnomarchia*, *Norway* and *Sweden*, with Part of *Bothnia* and *Denmark*; and the many Islands they mention without Names, are those which lie all along that Coast. He thinks the whole Country was called *Scandia* and *Scandinavia*, from that Part of *Denmark* which the Natives call *Scaane*, and the Latins *Scania*. He takes Notice of a great Error in *Ptolomy*, who reckon'd that nothing belong'd to *Germany* beyond the *Sinus Codanus* or the *Baltick*; and this led many others into the same Error, as *Pliny*, *Solinus*, and *Dionysius*.

Before the Names of *Scandia* and *Scandinavia* were known to the Romans, the Greeks called the Country *Baltia* and *Basilia*, as we find by *Pliny* and *Solinus*; and from hence the *Belt* and *Baltick* Sea derived their Names.

As to *Finnigia*, *Cluverius* takes it to be that now called *Finnia*, *East-Bothnia*, and *Corellia*, the Country of the *Fenni* and *Finni*, now the *Finlanders*.

Here *Cluverius* has a Dissertation concerning the *Thule* of the Ancients, and offers many Arguments to prove it to be what we now call *Island*. He confutes *Orelinus*, who will have it to be the Coast of *Norway* that lies over against *Scotland*, by very solid Arguments; but since *Pytheas* and *Pliny* reckon it to be one of the *British* Islands; and *Tacitus*, when speaking of the Romans sailing round *Britain*, and having first discovered the *Orkney* Islands, immediately adds, that they discovered *Thule*, which was hid from them before by the Winter and the Snow, it can scarce be possible that *Island* can be what the Romans called *Thule*, for it lies at too great a Distance from the *Orkneys*; and those Seas were too dangerous and too little known for the Romans, who, as appears by *Tacitus*, made more use of Oars than of Sails in this Expedition to have ventur'd into. But we refer the Reader to what *Cluverius* himself says, and to our former Dissertation on

Thule, and leave him to his own Judgment, with this one Caution, That as the Ancients called the utmost of their Discoveries in the Northern Seas *Thule* wherever it was, and removed it further N. according as their Discoveries extended that Way, 'tis probable that *Solinus* and others, upon whom *Cluverius* builds so much, might afterwards give the Name to *Island*, or other Isles which they then had an Account of to lie further N. But 'tis plain that by *Mela's* Description of it, as lying opposite to the Coast of the *Belga*, from the Length of the Days there in Summer, the Largeness of the Country, and the People's Way of living, that Dr. *Wallace* seems to have Reason for making it the N. E. Coast of *Scotland*, or that at least *Schetland* bids fairer for it than *Island*, since either of those Places might have been seen by the Roman Navy when they were in the Neighbourhood of the *Orcaades*; whereas 'twas impossible for them to see *Island*, or any Thing near it at that Distance.

The lesser Isles betwixt *Thule* and *Germany*, and those in the *Baltick*.

Cluverius supposes those called the Isles of *Fero* to be the *Glesaria* or the *Electrides Insulae* of the Ancients; but with how little Reason, will appear by our Description of those Islands, and by comparing it with his own Description of the Coast of the *Baltick*, and his positive Assertion, that *Dantzick* was the chief Place from whence the Ancients fetch'd their Amber: But he justly corrects *Mela's* Mistake in placing the *Amodea*, *Amodes* or *Hemodes*, in the *Baltick*, since 'tis very probable they are those now called the Islands of *Fero*. *Mela's* *Codanonia* he takes to be *Danish Zealand*, which was possessed by the *Teutoni*, and the most fruitful Island in those Parts. He thinks they were called promiscuously *Teutones* and *Dani*, from the Words *Θεοῦ* and *Δαν*, the Name by which he says those People called God: But we have observed before, that this seems to have more of Fancy than Solidity, and that they rather derived their Name from the *Sinus Codanus*, upon which they

they inhabited, from whence they were at first called *Codani*, and afterwards *Dani*; and since *Cluverius* owns that they call themselves *Danike*, 'tis not improbable that the Town of *Danzick*, which lies on this Side the same Bay, may also derive its Name from thence.

Of the Suiones, Helleviones, Scanii, Guta, Lappiones, Scritofinni, Marchiofinni, and Sitones or Nortmanni, who inhabited Scandinavia or Scandia.

Tacitus mentions the *Suiones* and the *Sitones* as the Inhabitants of *Scandinavia*. *Cluverius* assigns the Mountain *Sveo* as the Boundary betwixt them; so that the *Suiones* inhabited *Norway*, *Finmark*, and *Scritofinnia*; and the *Sitones*, *Lapland*, *Biermia*, *West-Bohemia*, *Swedeland*, *Gutia*, with *Bleking*, *Skane* and *Hollant*, and Part of *Danmark*. He is of Opinion, that the *Swedes* derive their Name from the *Suiones*. The *Helleviones* he thinks inhabited the Country now called *Holland*, from whence he supposes it derived its Name. The *Gute* or *Guti* liv'd in *Goethland*, which the *Latins* call *Gotbia*. The *Scanii* some take to have been Part of the *Helleviones*; but he rather thinks they liv'd S. of them, and were so great a People, that the whole Country was from them called *Scandia*. The *Lappiones* are those called the *Laplanders*, and the *Scritofinni* seem to be those now called the *Finns* or *Fislanders*, and that the *Marchiofinni* were of the same People. The *Nortmanni* inhabited that now called *Norway*. All of 'em comprehended by *Roman* Authors under the Names of *Suiones* and *Sitones*.

The East Side or Boundary of Ancient Germany.

Tacitus says, the *Germani* were separated from the *Sarmatae* and *Daci* by mutual Fear and high Mountains, and calls those

German Nations who dwell beyond the *Rai- rick*, the *Weissel*, and the Mountains of the *Daci* Eastwards, the *Fenni*, the *Esii*, and the *Peucini* or *Bastarna*.

Cluverius begins with the latter. He says, *Bastarna* was the Name of the People in general, *Peucini* only of a Part, from a Mountain called *Peuce* in *Sarmatia*, according to *Ptolemy*. *Cluverius* fixes the Boundaries of those People thus: On the N. they had the River *Aper*, now *Wipera*, that falls into the *Weissel*: From the Head of that River they reached in a Line to the Lake *Amudocce*, near *Kiew* in *Poland*; from thence they had the River which rises out of that Lake near the Town *Korwa*, till it falls into the *Dniester*; then that River: On the E. they had the *Mare Ponticum*, now the *Black Sea*, and the Mouth of the *Ister* or *Danube*. On the S. they had that River, till some of them, according to *Strabo*, liv'd beyond it to the Mouth of *Hicrasus*, now *Dnub*; and along that River to the *Carpathian* Mountains, as far as the Head of the *Weissel*. On the W. they had the Mountain *Alburgium*, now *Tarni* in *Poland*, as far as the Town *Ofwieczyn*; and from hence they were bounded by the *Weissel* till the *Wipera* falls into it.

The *Peucini*, properly so call'd, were those who inhabited the Isle of *Peuce*, now call'd the Isle of *Serpents*, and the neighbouring Borders of the *Traballi* and *Getae*. *Cluverius* takes Notice, that those two People were divided into others of different Names, as the *Siduri*, who liv'd near the *Weissel*; the *Burgiones* or *Viburgii*, who liv'd near them towards *Polonia*; and the *Carpiini*, who liv'd near the *Carpathian* Mountains. *Cluverius* thinks they were afterwards drove into *Transylvania* by the *Sarmatae*, because the *Transylvanians* do now speak *German*, and that the Remainder of them might accompany the *Goths* into *Italy* and *Gaul*. They are spoke of by all Authors as a Warlike People. The chief Towns mentioned by *Ptolemy* in their Dominions are, *Caradunum*, now *Lemberg* in *Russia* Minor; *Mesastum*, now *Caminia* in *Podolia*; *Vibantovarium*, now *Bar* in the same Country; *Brudum*, now *Rov* in *Moravia*.

The Venedi and Æstii.

Tacitus doubts whether the *Venedi* were Germans; but *Cluverius* thinks it plain from *Ptolomy* they were, and that they liv'd at first on the River *Weissel* in Part of *Courland*; but afterwards extended their Dominions further, because they are said to have had the *Finni* on the N. and the *Bastarna* on the S.

The *Æstii*, *Cluverius* places in *Livonia*, *Prussia*, and *Samogitia*, Part of *Lithuania* on the Left of the *Memel* as far as *Nur*, and Half of *Massovia* on the Right of the *Weissel*. They were divided into several People, *Seyri*, now the *Prussians*, and the *Hirri*, now the *Lieflanders*.

Having thus gone through the several Nations that inhabited ancient *Germany*, *Cluverius* in the next Place gives an Account of the Five People into which *Pliny* divides the *Germani* in general, viz. the *Vindali* or *Vandali*, by some called *Vandalii*, *Vindelici*, *Winili*, *Vindili*, *Vinduli*, *Vinuli*, *Winuli*, *Vanduli*, *Vindoli*. *Pliny* mentions only the *Burgundiones*, *Varini*, *Carini*, and *Guttones*, to be Part of the *Vandals*. *Cluverius* adds the *Lemovii*, *Heruli*, *Rugii*, *Sidini*, *Suardones*, *Eudoses*, the *Angli*, *Caviones*, *Theuringi*, *Nuithones*, and *Langobardi*, as belonging to them.

The 2d are the *Ingevones*, to whom *Pliny* reckons the *Cimbri*, *Teutoni*, and the Nations of the *Chauci*, to have belong'd. *Cluverius* adds from other Authors the *Fosi* or *Saxons*, and in *Scandinavia* the *Scandii*, *Hilleviones*, *Gute*, *Sueones*, *Sitones*, *Marchiofinni*, *Scritofinni*, and *Luppiones*.

The 3d are the *Istævones*, to whom belong'd the *Sicambri*, the *Hermiones*, who dwelt in the Inland Countries, of whom the *Suevi*, *Hermunduri*, *Chatti*, and *Cherusci*, were Part, according to *Pliny*; but *Cluverius* reckons the *Frisii*, *Bructeri*, *Angriuarii*, *Ansbarii*, *Chammarvi*, *Dulgibini*, *Marsi*, *Tubantes*, *Marsatii*, *Sicambri*, *Ubii*, and who succeeded them, the *Usipii*, *Tencteri*, *Jubones*, *Mattiaci*, besides in ancient Times the *Marcomanni*, *Harudes*, and *Sedusi*.

The 4th were the *Hermiones* or *Hermiones*, to whom *Pliny* says belong'd the *Suevi*, *Hermunduri*, *Chatti*, and *Cherusci*. *Cluverius* says,

That under the Name of *Suevi* must be comprehended the *Semnones*, *Marcomanni*, *Quadi*, *Marlingi*, *Burii*, and *Lugii*.

The 5th were the *Peucini*, called also *Bastarna*, whose several Divisions we mention'd before. *Cluverius* thinks, the *Æstii* are not to be reckon'd to any of these Five Sorts.

Of the Hercinian, and other Forests in Germany beyond the Rhine.

THE *Hercynia Sylva*, or *Hercynius Saltus*, is famous among the ancient *Roman* and other Authors. *Cæsar* says, it was 9 Day's Journey in Breadth, and 60 in Length, according to the then Computation of the Inhabitants; and that it began at the *Rhine*, in the Borders of *Helvetia*, went along the *Danube* to the Borders of the *Dezi*, and then by Turnings and Windings went thro' many Countries. *Cluverius* says, That in his Time there went one continued Forrest thro' most Part of the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, *Cassubia*, *Prussia*, *Poland*, *Lithuania*, and *Moscow*; but whether it was called by that Name as far as the River *Oby*, the utmost Boundary of *Europe*, he doubts, any more than the Forrests *Ardenne* and *Falga*, which bounded upon the *Hercynian* Forrest, the *Rhine* coming between them; therefore he thinks the Name *Hercynia* was proper only to that Part of it in *Germany*.

It was branched out into several Forrests, as those called *Sylva Martiana*, now the *Black Forrest*. *Tacitus* and *Claudian* mention Woods near the *Rhine*, near the *Bructeri*, now *Speßard* and *Westerwald*; the *Cassia Sylva*, now *Heserwaldt* in the Dutchy of *Cleve*, near the Borders of *Münster*; the *Lucus Tanfane*, near *Bentheimberg* in *Westphalia*; the *Lucus Baduhenna* in *Westfriesland*; the *Lucus Herculis* about *Mindau* on the *Weisser*; the *Sylva Cambreta* in *Thuringia* and *Vostland*, now called the *Doringenwald*; the *Hercynius Saltus*, that which encompasses *Bohemia*, now called the *Bohmerwald*, and was properly the *Hercynia Sylva*; the *Luna Sylva*, upon the Mountains towards the Head of the River *Morava* in *Moravia*; the *Lucus Castoris & Pollucis* in *Silesia*; and the *Lucus Sacer*, formerly men-

tioned in the Country of the *Semnonēs* upon the *Oder*.

The Parts of this Forrest remaining in *Cluverius's* Time, were, that called the *Black Forrest*, betwixt the Fountains of the *Danube* and the Lake of *Constance*; the Forrest of *Anspach*, betwixt *Nuremberg* and the Head of the *Tauber*; *Steyger Forrest*, betwixt *Wirtsberg* and *Bamberg*; the *Othonia Sylva*, or *Odenwald*, betwixt *Heidelberg* and *Frankfort*; the Forrest of *Speffard*, betwixt the *Main* and the River *Bint*; that called the *Westerwald*, betwixt the *Lene* and the *Siga*; that called the *Harz*, in the Dutchy of *Brunswick*; that called the *Thuringer Forrest* in *Thuringia*; and that above-mentioned, which encompasses *Babernia*; besides abundance of large Forrests in *Westphalia*, the Dutchy of *Lunen- burg*, *Pomerania*, the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, and *Cassubia*.

Vindelicia, and Noricum, Part of the ancient Illyricum.

Cluverius gives likewise a Description of those Countries, because the present Inhabitants are descended of the ancient *Germani*. On this Occasion he shews, that all the Inhabitants of the *Alps*, the greatest Part of whom are *Vindelici* and *Norici*, were once called *Taurisci*. He likewise observes, that tho' the *Vindelici* were a different People from the *Rhati*, yet all their Country, after the *Romans* had subdued the People, betwixt the *Danube* and *Italy*, was called *Rhatia*, from the *Rhine* or Lake of *Constance* to the River *Inn*, which was the Boundary betwixt the *Vindelici* and *Norici*, as the River *Lech* was that betwixt the *Vindelici* and *Rhati*, who came originally from *Italy*; and tho' the Country from thence to the Lake of *Constance* was called *Rhatia Prima*, yet the *Vindelici* inhabited the Country from the Head of the *Danube* all along the River, till the *Inn* falls into it, as appears by *Strabo*. The *Vindelici* then had the Lake of *Constance* on the W. the *Danube* on the N. the *Inn* on the E. but how they were divided from the *Rhati* on the S. is not so certain. They were divided into several People: Those called the *Licetes* or *Licatii* liv'd on the River *Lech*; the *Brigantii* reach'd

from the Town of *Bregenz*, from thence called *Brigantium*, to *Ratisbon* and *Pfullendorf*. The *Estiones* liv'd betwixt the *Lecatii* and the *Brigantii*, in the Vallies on the River *Il- lar*; so that their Boundary on the S. seems to have been the River *Bregenz*, and the Mountains which lie betwixt the *Lech* and the *Inn*, as far as the Head of the *Iser* and the Town of *Innsbruck*. The Towns mentioned by ancient Authors in this Country are, *Augusta Vindelicorum*, now *Augsburg*; *Brigantium*, now *Bregenz*; *Campodunum*, now *Kempten*; *Celivs Mons*, now *Kelmuntz*; *Guntia*, now *Guntisberg*; *Roftrum Nemovia*, now *Memmingen*; *Juvavum*, now *Salzburg*; *Is- nica*, now *Munichen*; *Reginum*, or *Castra Regina*, now *Ratisbon*; *Castra Batavorum*, now *Passau*.

NORICUM.

THE *Norici* were also divided into several People, viz. the *Alauni*, *Ambisuntii*, *Ambidrani*, and *Ambilici*; but nothing certain can be determined as to their Situation, nor indeed of the Boundaries of *Noricum*, any otherwise than from the noted Towns observ'd in it by the Ancients, from whence *Cluverius* fixes its Boundaries thus: The Rivers *Inn* and *Danube*, the Mountain *Cetius*, now *Calenberg*, as far as the Town of *Geleia*, now *Gilkey*, and the Confluence of the *Sava* and *Sana*; then the Mountains from the said Confluence, which run W. to the Head of the *Sana*; then betwixt the *Sava* and the *Drave* to the Head of the River *Natisson*; then N. towards the Head of the River *Fell*; from thence W. to the Valley *Inchiara*, and by a Line through the middle of that Valley Westward to Mount *Setiu*, and from thence to the Head of *Rient*; then by that River to the Village of *St. Lawrence*, and the Confluence of the River *Aich*; and from thence by another Tract of Mountains, Part of the *Alps*, as far as *Innsbruck*. The most remarkable Towns taken Notice of by the Ancients in this Country are, *Vindobona* in *Pannonia*, on the Frontiers of it, now *Vienna*; *Boiodurum*, now *Innsat*; *Juvavum*, now *Salzburg*; *Bradavum*, now *Bamberg*: So that upon the whole, *Noricum* comprehended a great Part of *Austria*, the W. Part of *Stiria*, *Crimbia*,
Upper





Upper Carinthia, the Archbishoprick of Salzburg, Part of Upper Bavaria, and Part of Tyrol.

We have insisted more at large upon Ancient Germany, than some perhaps may think consistent with our Design; but hope it will easily be pardon'd, when our Reasons are known, which are, 1. That the ancient Geography and History of this Country is done in Folio, with a great deal of Judgment and Care, by the famous *Claudian, Strabo, Ptolemy*, and other ancient and modern Historians and Geographers, have said on those Subjects by his own Reading, and curious Observations, wherein he has corrected the Mistakes of the *Romans* and others in History and Geography, and illustrated many difficult Passages, which have puzzled the ablest Critics. 2. Because 'twas a Country of vast Extent, and a Scene of many and great Actions. 3. Because 'twas the Seat of many People of dif-

ferent Denominations, and under various Forms of Government; therefore 'twas necessary to fix the Boundaries of each of those People, in order to understand the Roman History, and the Seat of their War from Time to Time with those many different Nations; without which, those valuable Pieces of ancient History were neither so pleasant nor intelligible as now they may be, not only to Youth who read them in Schools, but even to those of riper Years, whose Time and other Circumstances have not allowed them to attain a sufficient Knowledge of Geography for understanding those Authors. 4. Because most Nations in Europe, and particularly we in Great Britain, have either been Peopled from thence, or subdued by their Armies, and subjected to their Form of Government, as happened to this Island by the *Saxons*, to Gaul by the *Franks*, and to Spain, Italy, &c. by the *Goths* and *Vandals*; so that the Antiquities of Germany illustrate those of most Parts of Europe.

CHAP. XXVI.

Modern G E R M A N Y.

Their HUMOURS, MANNERS, &c.

DOCTOR *Nicholson*, in his Elaborate Account of this Country, in his Second Volume of *Pitt's Atlas*, takes Notice of *Seneca's* Observation, That Men of an extraordinary Size have commonly narrow Souls; and gives this as his Reason, *Because great Abilities of Body and Soul are too much for one Man*: Tho' every one may know from

his own Observation, that this Rule is false; yet 'tis very probable, as the Doctor says, that this Consideration prevailed with some old Historians to represent the *Germans* as a dull Phlegmatick People; and even some of the Moderns, particularly our own *Heylin*, *Joseph Scaliger*, and others, have been guilty of this Mistake, when they alledge, That in order to bring the *Germans* to a good Temperament, *their Lead must be mix'd with the Quicksilver of France*, without considering, that the *French* stand in as much need of German Lead, as the *Germans* do of French Quicksilver. But as

all those National Reflections are invidious, and generally founded on Prejudice, 'tis plain by the Writings and Inventions of the *Germans*, that their Genius is very good when duly cultivated.

Some Writers charge them in general with being given to Drink, from whence they have formed a Proverb, *Germanorum libens est vivere*; i. e. That the chief Delight of a *German* is to drink. This Fault is perhaps too common there, as well as in some other Countries: Nor does *Cluverius*, their Countryman and Advocate, altogether excuse them from it; yet this Charge admits of a Restriction, for there are many sober People in that Country; tho' the Sharpness of their Air, and the Largeness of their Size, which they commonly alledge in their Defence, makes more Liquor necessary for them than for other People, who differ in Climate and Stature. *Melanthius* us'd to complain of their Excess in Eating, and said, *We Germans eat our selves sick and to Hell*; tho' Gluttony be not so common there as Drunkenness. They are much given to drinking Healths, and 'tis usual for them to present Strangers at Table with a large Vessel of Drink, which they are oblig'd in Civility to take off at one or more Draughts to the Health of their Landlord; and they frequently spend some Hours at Dinner and Supper, but not so much in eating as drinking Healths. Those that have created an Intimacy by being drunk together, they call *Trinck-brüder*; but we wish there were no Pot-Companions elsewhere.

Their Diet is Beef, Mutton, Venison, Bacon, Fowls, Fish, &c. as with us; but not generally serv'd up in such large Quantities. From *Michaelmas* almost to *Easter*, they eat abundance of Snails boil'd in the Shells, and People of Quality have Snail-Banquets on purpose in their Orchards or Gardens. Their Drink is Beer of several Sorts, some very bitter, and some very sweet, according to the Customs of several Countries. They have also abundance of Wine of different Sorts, of which *Rhenish* is the chief.

They are still valued for their Integrity, for which *Tacitus* commended them of Old; inasmuch that a modern French Writer says,

A German's Word is as good as another Man's.

Bond; And when the *Germans* would express one among themselves that hates Flattery and Dissimulation, they say, *He is German-hearted*.

They likewise retain the Hospitality of their Ancestors, are very free in entertaining Strangers; and except in Time of War, their Roads are not much pester'd by Highwaymen.

Their Valour is unquestionable, which makes *Willichius* give them this Character, That they are only to be overcome by their own Countrymen. And 'tis observ'd, That *Gustavus Adolphus* could never have made such a Progress in *Germany*, had he not been join'd by the *Saxons* and *Brandenburgers*. The greatest Impressions the *French* have made upon them has been by the Conjunction of *German* Princes, who fell in with the Interest of *France*, or by *German* Soldiers who chose that Service, because the Pay was better than their own. Their common People are bred hard, which enables them to bear the Fatigues of War; but there have been frequent Instances of their being apt to mutiny for want of Pay, which makes some Authors charge them with being mercenary. *Frederick* Elector Palatine, King of *Bohemia*, and Father to the Electress *Sophia* of *Hanover*, had a fatal Instance of this, when the greatest Part of his Army at the Battle of *Prague* threw down their Arms, and cry'd out for Money, which lost him the Battle and his Crown. Dr. *Nicholson* urges as a very good Proof of their Valour, that none of their potent Neighbours have hitherto been able to wrest the Imperial Crown from them. They were about an Age or two ago reckoned to have fallen under a Decay as to Martial Discipline; but the many great Generals they have bred within these last Hundred Years, Princes, as well as others, have sufficiently taken off that Imputation.

The chief Recreation among those of Quality in Summer, is hunting the Deer and Wild-Boars, with which their Forests abound; and 'tis customary in the Courts of Princes to hang up the Pictures of such great Boats as they have killed. In Winter, when the Snow is thick, they have a Custom of riding round the Streets in Sledges, form'd much like the *Roman* Triumphant Chariots, drawn by a Horse with rich

rich Trappings, set off with great Numbers of little Bells, and Feathers of several Colours. At home they are much given to play at Chess, and are very expert at it. In their Language they call it *Schachspiel*, which Dr. Nicholson observes, signifies the same with the *Latuncularum Ludus* of the Latins. The Learned Prince *Augustus*, late Duke of *Brunswick Wolfembuttel*, who publish'd an accurate Explication of *Trithemius's* Cryptography, under the borrow'd Name of *Gustavus Selenus*, wrote an incomparable Treatise concerning this Game in *German*, with an Account of its Original, Progress and Laws.

The *Germans* are so much addicted to Travel, and their Nobility affect so much to appear at Foreign Courts with Retinues answerable to their Qualities, that their Writers complain it does very much impoverish their Nation, and carries out Annually more Money than is produced by their Silver Mines. On this Account the Author of a late Book, Entituled, *Itinerarium Germaniae Politicum*, advises his Countrymen not to travel out of their own Country except on Publick Occasions; and indeed, considering the many Princes Courts, the great Number of large Cities, their numerous Universities, and the many Rarities they have at home, there seems to be but little Occasion for their travelling, either to learn good Breeding, or to satisfy their Curiosity. Except in great Towns, and on the chief Rivers, their Accommodations for Travellers are not extraordinary, especially for Lodging; for in many Places they have nothing to lie on but Straw, and that in a common Room altogether; tho' in other Places they lie commonly betwixt two Feather-Beds, with the Sheets stitch'd to them. The Vulgar seldom have any Chimnies but in their Kitchen, and in Winter commonly live in their Stove-Rooms, which they heat to what Degree they please; but the Smell and the Heat of those Stoves is frequently very troublesome to Strangers, and apt to make their Heads ache. Their common Way of Travelling is in open Post Waggons, which are neither Expeditionous, nor a Fence against ill Weather. Their cover'd Waggons are better for that, but slow.

Their Women in general are of a tolerable Complexion, but more corpulent than most of their Neighbours, except the *Netherlanders*. They are very obsequious to their Husbands, have less Command in their Houses than *English* and *French* Women, and are not allow'd the upper End of the Table. They account it rude here to salute any Woman with a Kiss, except they have been bred in such Countries where 'tis practis'd; so that their Way of Greeting is by a mutual-Touch of the Hand.

Their Marriages and Funerals are very expensive, so that sometimes an ordinary Man is scarce able to recover the Charge of his Father's Funeral, or of his own Wedding, in 7 Years. The Entertainment frequently lasts a Month, during which they keep open House, and send the Bell-man about to invite all their Neighbours, who usually send in Wine, or some other Provisions.

Brietius gives this Character of the *Germans*, That they are generally believ'd to be too much addicted to Drunkenness and Gluttony, and that the latter was the Fault of those who liv'd in the Northerly Places of that Country; but he is far from *Heylin's* Satyr, who alleges, That during their Feasts, they think it no Disgrace to empty their over-charg'd Stomachs in one another's Laps, or to piss under the Table; and that even their greatest Princes, besides what Excess they are guilty of themselves, have Drinking-Champions to answer all Challenges, and to challenge all Comers; and that they look upon it as a Point of State to contend who shall have the largest Vessels in their Cellars. But we return to *Brietius*, who, tho' a *French* Jesuit, has so much Justice as to own their Hospitality and Civility to Strangers, and that their common Innkeepers are very faithful to their Guests; That their Women are very chaste, and Adultery severely punish'd among them; That they carefully observe keeping to their own Ranks when they marry, and will not readily stoop to a Match below their Quality. Dr. *Heylin* is more just in taxing their Vanity, than in other Parts of their Character; for 'tis certain, that by deriving the Father's Title to all the Children, so that if he be a Duke,

all the Sons are Dukes, and all the Daughters Dutcheſſes, together with dividing the Eſtate among the Males, does very much increaſe and impoveriſh their Nobility; ſo that at one time there were no leſs than 17 Princes of *Anhalt*, and 27 Counts of *Mansfield*, who had little elſe to live on but their Sword: Yet none of this poor Nobility will ſuffer their Children to match below their Degree; and if they do, think it a juſt Cauſe to diſinherit them: Yet it has this Conveniency, That it preſerves their Blood from baſe Alloys, and keeps up a Greatneſs of Mind and Spirit. *Brietiſius* obſerves, That they are much inclin'd to Muſick, and have a native Genius for it; That they are better in the Field, than in defending of Towns, being eaſily overcome in the latter by the Tears of their Wives and Children; whereas in the Field they frequently fight till one of the Armies be deſtroyed; but are impatient under want of Proviſions and Pay, which makes their Armies to moulder away very ſpeedily.

Their LANGUAGE.

Foreigners who are too lazy or too dull to learn it, eſpecially ſuch as are accuſtomed to a ſofter Pronunciation, do generally cenſure it as rough and barbarous; ſo that the *French* ſay, 'tis fitter for Mechanicks than Gentlemen; and a *Spaniſh* Miſtiſter once told a *German* Ambaſſador, That his Language reſembled Thunder, and he fancy'd that God forbid *Paradiſe* to our firſt Parents in that Dialeſt; to which the *German* reply'd, That was true; but the Devil tempt'd *Eve* in *Spaniſh*. *Pomponius Mela* obſerv'd long ago, That *German* Names were not fit for *Roman* Mouths; from whence 'tis that we meet with ſuch monſtrous Words in *Roman* Authors, when they attempt to give *German* Names Latin Inflexions; and the ſame is the Cauſe why 'tis ſo hard for *French*, *Italians*, or *Spaniards*, to learn *High Dutch*. It muſt be own'd however, that 'tis a noble and manly Language, but fitter for War than Courtſhip. *Dr. Nicholſon* thinks *Tacitus* was miſtaken in aſſerting, That the ancient *Germans* had not

the Uſe of Letters, becauſe *Runic* Inſcriptions have been lately found in the *Daniſh* Dominions upon Monuments erected there before *Tacitus's* Days. For this, we refer to our Account of *Denmark*, and ſhall only ſay, That tho' *Wormius* thinks the Uſe of Letters to be very ancient there, he is poſitive they were not common. *Dr. Nicholſon* thinks the *Latins* borrowed the Word *Litera*, as they did many others, from the ancient *Germans*; and that it was derived from the old *Teutonic* Word *Lett* or *List*, which ſignifies a Member or Part, as a Letter is of a Word. *Duret* thinks, the *Gothick* Alphabet is the oldeſt in the World, and a Copy of the firſt that ever was invented. He does not mean that made uſe of by *Wulphilaſ*, Biſhop of the *Goths*, in his Verſion of the Goſpels, but the *Runic* Character in Form of a Staff, which they made as the Foundation of whatever they were to write, and croſs'd and turn'd it as Occaſion requir'd; and hence the *Germans* uſually call a Letter a *Buchſtab*; i. e. a Staff, made uſe of in Books; but thoſe Characters were laid aſide, as has been formerly mentioned, by the *Germans*, when they turn'd Chriſtians, becauſe they had been abuſ'd in Sorceries and Inchantments; and *Mr. Scheerlingham* thinks with Reaſon, that the *Engliſh-Saxon* Character was invented on the like Occaſion.

Here *Dr. Nicholſon* takes Notice of the Queſtion among Philoſophers, Whether Words have their Signification from their natural Import, or from the Will of the firſt Author? *Plato* thought, That he that gave every Being its diſtinct Name, ſuited the Word to the Nature of the Thing; and *Bibliander* fancies, that *Adam* obſerv'd this Rule, when he gave every Thing its Name. The Learned have obſerv'd a great Analogy betwixt the *Greek* and *Latin* Words, which expreſs the Voices of Birds and Beaſts, and the Words themſelves, as *Morgiana*, *Oryzæus*, &c. in *Greek*; and *Boare*, *Mugire*, &c. in *Latin*; but no Language is more obſervable for this than the *German*, who ſay, the Ox, *Beelke*; the Bear, *Brummet*; the Sheep, *Bleeket*; the Swine, *Grunſet*; and this is alſo obſerv'd of the *Engliſh* by the famous *Dr. Wallis* in his Grammar.

Dr. Ni-

Dr. *Nicholson* says with Reason, That a multitude of Monosyllables is one of the greatest Arguments of the Antiquity of a Language, because we cannot imagine them to be derived from any Primitive further off, or to be a Corruption of so many Words in Foreign Languages. *Stevin*, an ingenious Dutchman, has reckon'd 2170 primitive Monosyllables in the Dutch, tho' the Number, says Dr. *Nicholson*, might be carried much higher; whereas he can find not above 163 in Latin, and 265 in Greek. The Dr. observes further, That many of the High-Dutch Primitives are turn'd into Dissyllables, that formerly were but one, as *Vater*, *Mutter*, &c. that were anciently writ *Kaer*, *Muel*, &c. and that there are 23 principal Terminations in the German, which, tho' they signify nothing of themselves, yet when added to another Word, do very much alter its Signification, of which the English has retained many, as *Er* in *Buyer*, *En* in *Golden*, &c. by which the German Tongue is made very copious, and, as Doctor *Nicholson* thinks, exceeds the Greek. Some of the Germans have of late much corrupted their Language, by giving French, Italian, and Latin Words, German Inflections; yet they pay so much Respect to their own Language, that they always write and print foreign Words in different Characters.

'Tis difficult to reckon up the several Dialects of the German Tongue, if it be consider'd that the old British, English, Danish, Swedish, Norwegian, Islandic, and Low-Dutch, with their inferior Dialects, as well as those of Upper Germany, are all derived from it. Besides the Remainders of it left in those Countries further E. where they formerly inhabited, *Busbequius* found a great deal of it in the *Chersonesus Taurica*, now *Crim Tary*; and others say, there are Fragments of it in *Persia*. Dr. *Nicholson* says, 'tis usually divided into two principal Dialects, called the *Saxon* and *Francic*. *Brietius* says, 'tis divided into three, viz. the *Teutonic*, *Saxon*, and *Danish*. The *Saxon* is subdivided into Upper and Lower, viz. that which is spoke on this Side and beyond the *Main*. The *Saxon* is reckon'd to come nearest the ancient *Celtick*, and the Inhabitants have always valued themselves on that Account, and say, 'tis better than what is spoke in

Misia and *Austria*. 'Tis generally agreed on, that the best German is now spoke at *Hall* in *Saxony*, and its Neighbourhood; and the Germans themselves always write in the High-Dutch Dialect, which is an Argument that they esteem it the best. *Aventinus* says, *Charles the Great* compos'd a High Dutch Grammar out of Rules he collected from old Genealogical Ballads; but *Trithemius* says, he found the Undertaking too great, and never finish'd it. In 1273, the Emperor *Rudolph I.* publish'd a Decree, ordering the Lawyers to draw up their Instruments and Pleadings in that Language; which being confirmed by *Maximilian I.* in 1512, brought this Tongue into Repute, not only in the Empire, but in the Northern Kingdoms; so that their best Scholars have since been at Pains to cultivate the Language. Several other Grammars were writ by Learned Germans, which are now all lost. *Sleidan* says, *Luther* was a great Master of the German, which makes his Translation of the Bible into that Language still highly valuable. *Schottelius*, formerly Counsellor to the late Duke of *Brunswick Wolfenbuttel*, has given the best Account of this Language in several Tracts writ on this Subject, which were printed at *Brunswick* in 4° in 1663. *Duesius*, in the Preface to his German Grammar, says, few of their Nobility are able to write it right, which is supposed to proceed from their want of a good Dictionary in their own Tongue, tho' several Attempts of this Nature have been made. Dr. *Nicholson* says, with very much Reason, That a competent Knowledge of this Language is very necessary for an English Antiquary.

Their LEARNING.

THO' *Tacitus* says, the Germans were utterly ignorant of Letters, the *Runic* Monuments and Inscriptions formerly mentioned prove the contrary; yet the Histories and Lives of their great Men were not then committed to Writing, but only repeated in *Dogrel-Verse* by their Bards. Their Priests, as was said before, conceal'd their Letters and Principles of Learning from the Commons. Thus Affairs continued till they were acquainted with the

Romans.

Romans, especially in the Time of the Emperor *Adrian*, when many Schools were erected in *Germany*, in which their young Gentlemen were taught to speak and write *Latin*; and even the *German* Soldiers ordinarily return'd from the *Roman* Camp Masters of their Language and Manners; but most of those Schools were about the *Rhine*, so that the Northerly Parts had not this Education. *Dagobert* and *Charles the Great* founded many Schools in this Country, where the *High-Dutch* Tongue was first reduc'd to Writing and Rules. It was long before they could effect this, so that for many Years they were obliged to write their Proceedings at Law, and even the Rudiments taught in Schools, in *Latin*. As soon as the *Germans* got their Language regulated, they applied themselves to study the Liberal Arts, so that in a short Time many Universities were founded there. *Charles the Great* built 24 *Gymnasias*, or great publick Schools, many of which afterwards became Universities. *Justus Lipsius* affirm'd, That in his Days, there were more Universities in *Germany* than in all *Europe* besides. There are above 30 Universities, besides *Gymnasias*, in this Country, most of which have great Numbers of Students. When the Emperor *Charles IV.* who was also King of *Bohemia*, had founded an University at *Prague*, and gave the same Privileges to Foreigners that he gave to the *Germans*, the City was so over-stock'd with Students, that it oblig'd him to retrench his Favours to Strangers by a Decree: So a Week after it was put in Execution, 24000 Scholars left *Prague*, and 16000 more soon followed them; so that this one University had then more Students than all *Europe* besides. In 1409, *John Huss* had 44000 Scholars under his Rectorship.

Before the Reformation, the Priests found that Ignorance was more their Interest than Learning; upon which they discouraged it by all possible Means; so that when Learning began to revive in *Europe*, those Monks and Priests did all the Mischief they could to those concern'd in it, and accus'd those of Heresy that were more Learned than themselves. On this Account the ignorant Monks pick'd a Quarrel with the Learned *John Reuchlin*, and brand'd him for a Heretick. When the Reforma-

tion began, those Monks made it their Business to bring the Learned into that Quarrel against *Luther*, which had the contrary Effect, and occasioned most of them to side with him.

They have many Learned Societies in *Germany*, as we are inform'd by the Book, called, *The Present State of that Country*. The first is that called the *Fruitful Society*, or Order of the *Palm*, instituted by *Ludovicus* Prince of *Anhalt*, and 3 Brothers of the *Saxe-Weimar* Family, in 1617, for the Advancement of the *High-Dutch* Language. The Prince himself was chosen President of the Society, and made an Order. That its Protector should always be a Prince. The Emblem of this Society is an *Indian Palm* or *Coco-Tree*, with this Motto, *All for Improvement*.

2. The *Collegium Naturæ Curiosum* was establish'd in 1670, in Imitation of the Royal Society of *England*. Dr. *Johannes Laurentius Bauschius*, a Learned Physician, engaged several Learned Men in it for the Improvement of Natural Philosophy and Physick. He was the first President; and his Successor Dr. *Johannes Michaelis Febr*, by a publick Epistle, invited the most Learned Physicians in *Europe* to be Members of it, and publish'd their Orders. The first Annual Volume of their Observations and Improvements was publish'd under the Title of *Annus Primus Ephemeridum Medico Physicarum Germanicarum Curiosarum*. This College was taken into the Emperor's particular Protection, had several Privileges granted 'em, and was permitted to take the Name of *Societas Leopoldina*. The *Præses* and Directors of those Ephemerides are generally some of the Emperor's Body-Physicians, Counts Palatine and Nobles of the Empire.

3. The Imperial Historical College was first projected by the Learned Physician Dr. *Christianus Franciscus Paulinus* at *Isenach*, his native City, after he had been long engag'd in Historical Studies by *Christophorus Bernardus*, Bishop of *Munster*, who oblig'd him to compleat the *Chronicon Corbejense* from Authentick Monastical Antiquities. He acquainted the Publick with his Design in a short Essay, call'd, *Delineatio Collegii Imperialis Historici*. The End of this Society is to form a compleat History of *Germany*,
from

from the scatter'd and obscure Monuments of Antiquity; in order to which, each Member is to collect and impart the History of his own Country. Many of the Learned have already enter'd themselves Members of this Society. The famous *Job Ludolphus*, Counsellor to the Emperor and Elector of *Saxony*, and Resident at *Frankfurt on the Main*, was chosen President, and *Mr. Von Nessel* or *Nisselius*, the Imperial Library-Keeper, who died in 1700, was Vice-President. *Ludolphus* began a *Prodrumus Animalium Germanicorum*. The Professor *Dr. Joannes Ubrius Pregitzer*, Counsellor to the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, and Judge of *Tubingen*, hath undertaken the First Century; and *Dr. Jacob Otto*, Counsellor of *Ulm*, and of several Free Cities, has promised the Second.

4. The College of Masters of Arts was first propos'd by *Erhardus Weigelius*, Imperial Counsellor and Professor at *Jena*, in order to adjust the Differences betwixt the Old and New Stile, and to find out speedy Remedies against all the Inconveniencies resulting from thence. *Weigelius* died in *March*, 1699.

5. Several Learned Men at *Leipsick* form'd a Society by the Encouragement of the Elector of *Saxony*. They observ'd, That the Transactions of the *Royal Society of England* were only about Mathematical Subjects, Natural Philosophy, Anatomy, and Medicine; and that the *Societas Naturæ Curiosorum* design'd only the Improvement of Natural Philosophy, and Physick. Upon this they agreed, That their *Acta* and Observations should be more general, and not confin'd to particular Parts of Learning. They also resolv'd, That their *Acta* should be writ in Latin. In *January*, 1682, they publish'd their first Essay, under the Title of, *Acta Eruditorum Lipsiæ Publicata*, and still continue to oblige the Publick with it.

The *Germans* study hard, and the Hebrew is no where so generally understood as in this Country; so that many of them attain to a great Perfection in that Language. The *Germans* are accus'd by Foreigners of Printing too much, and sometimes Trifles, as the State of a Question, or a few common Places collected out of the Writings of their Cotemporaries. They likewise publish Millions of Suppositions and Dis-

putations, which over-stock the Fairs at *Frankfurt* and *Leipsick*. One Reason why they publish those Philosophical Pamphlets, is, to hinder every poor Fellow from taking Degrees, since no Man can be a Graduate in *Germany*, who has not publish'd one such Disputation at least; and another Reason is, to maintain their numerous Presses.

The Inventions of the Germans, and their Skill in Mechanicks.

IT must be own'd, that the *Germans* are great Masters at Mechanicks, Chymistry, Natural Philosophy, Physick, and Mathematicks; and they claim the Honour of inventing Printing and Gunpowder.

The latter thus: *Albertus Magnus*, a *Dominican* Friar, having first practis'd Chymistry in *Germany*, many of the Religious Orders there addicted themselves to that Study; among the rest, one *Berthold Schwartz*, a *Franciscan* Friar, made great Advances in this Art; and having one time mix'd some dry'd Earth, Sulphur, Salt-Petre, with other Ingredients, in an Earthen Crucible, and plac'd it over a Fire, in order to some Preparation, the Crucible soon broke in Pieces with a great Noise. This surpris'd him at first; but having repeated it frequently after, he began to think that it might be improv'd to a greater Advantage; upon which he caus'd a long Iron Pipe to be made, with a Touch-hole, fill'd it with this Mixture, put small Stones above it, and setting Fire to the Touch-hole, the Stones were thrown out with a great Noise and Violence. This happened about 1330. Some Time after the *Germans* communicated this Secret to the *Venetians*, when they were besieged by the *Genoese*; and the *Venetians* afterwards, by the Help of Guns, took from the *Germans* the Cities of *Verona*, *Padua*, &c. which they still retain. Some Time after, the *Jews*, who were always numerous in *Germany*, out of Spight to Christianity, communicated this Secret to the *Turks*, for which the *Muscovites* hated the *Jews*, and prohibited them to trade in their Dominions. The Merchants on the *Baltick* were the first that us'd Guns at Sea. In 1347, the *English* took *Calais* from the *French* by the Help of Guns. Dr. *Plat*, in his *Natural*

stural History of Oxfordshire, thinks that Roger Bacon, a Franciscan Friar, sometime Fellow of Merton College in Oxford, invented Gunpowder before Schwartz, because of an Epistle directed by this Friar *ad Parisensem*, in which he speaks of a Mixture of Salt-Petre, Sulphur, and Coal-Dust, by which he could make a Fire that would burn at what Distance he pleas'd, and cause Thunder and Lightning in the Air, more terrible than that produc'd by Nature: That this kind of Fire could destroy a City or an Army; and that the Flame burst out with unspeakable Noise. Dr. Dee, in his Annotations on that Epistle, is of the same Opinion, and thinks that he conceal'd the Invention, because he knew how destructive it would prove to Mankind; and that his Skill in Mathematicks had made some of his ignorant Acquaintance take him for a Conjuror, and commit him to Prison; so that had he discover'd this Invention, their Jealousy had been heighten'd. This was 100 Years before Schwartz's Invention.

Dr. Nichelson thinks, the Germans have no good Claim to the Invention of Clock-work; tho' he acknowledges, that none have improv'd it more. Severinus Boetius, a famous Roman Philosopher, is the first mentioned by Latin Authors as the Contriver of an Engine of this kind. Theodorick, King of the Goths, wrote a Letter to this Boetius, to beg a Clock of him for his Brother-in-Law, Gundibald King of Burgundy; in which Letter he calls his Contrivance, *Machinam Munda gravidam, Calum Gestabile, Rerum Compendium*; i. e. a Machine that contain'd the Universe within it, a Portable Heaven, a Compendium of the whole World.

The Emperor Charles V. and King James I. had both Watches in the Jewels of their Rings, which were made in Germany. In the Town-Hall of Prague, there is a Clock that shows the Annual and Periodical Motions of the Sun and Moon, the Names and Numbers of the Months, Days, and Festivals of the whole Year, the Time of the Sun's Rising and Setting, the Rising and Setting of the Signs of the Zodiac, and the Moon's Age, with its several Aspects. In the Elector of Saxony's Stable at Dresden, there is a Saddle with a gilded Head in the Pommel, with Eyes continual-

ly moving, and in the hinder Part a Clock, that shows exactly the Hour of the Day; but the most famous in its kind is the great Clock of Strasburg, of which we shall speak when we come to the Description of that City. Tycho Brahe tells us, That William Landgrave of Hesse spent much Time to contrive a Way to regulate the Motions of Clocks and Watches; but we have no Account of his Success.

The Germans have far outdone the rest of Europe in ingenious Knacks of Art. A German not long ago presented the Landgrave of Hesse with a Bear and a Lion of pure Gold, hollow within, each of the Length of a Man's middle Finger; every Part of them was proportionable, and both together weigh'd no more than a French Crown. The most curious Man in this kind that ever Germany bred, was Johannes Regiomontanus, who made a Wooden Eagle, which flew an English Mile out of Town to meet the Emperor Maximilian when coming to the City of Nuremberg, and return'd back with him to his Lodgings. This is related by Kercherman, and Peter Ramus. The latter also tells us, That Regiomontanus having invited some Friends to an Entertainment, he threw an Iron Fly from his Hand to divert them, which flew round the Room, and return'd to him again. The High-Dutch are generally well skill'd in Engraving, Painting, Cutting of Seals, Iron-work, and Joiners-work.

The Germans challenge the Invention of Printing, and say, this Noble Art was invented at Strasburg in 1440, by John Gottenburg, an Alderman of that City, and afterwards perfected by him at Mentz. In the Publick Library at Basil, they show several Books printed with the first Characters, invented by Gottenburg, such as are now us'd, but not so exact. The strongest Argument the Germans have, is from the Character in which the first Latin Books were printed, which is much the same now us'd by the Germans in their ordinary Writing; for it is probable, say they, if any other People had invented Printing, that they would have us'd the Characters of their own Country. The Hollanders dispute this Invention with the Germans, and ascribe it to one Lawrence Coster, a Citizen of Haerlem, who walking one Night in an adjoining Wood,

cut

cut some Pieces of the Bark of a Tree into Letters, and printing some Characters upon Paper with 'em, taught his Grand-Children their Alphabet by this new Contrivance; but observing it to be capable of further Improvement, he advanc'd, and within a few Days printed off several Sentences from divers Authors. *Hadrian Junius* says, he saw the first Book that *Coster* printed, in which 'twas observable, that the Paper was not printed on both Sides, but two Leaves were glued together, to avoid the Deformity of vacant Pages; then he changed his Beechen Letters to Leaden ones, and those afterwards into Tin. This done, he contriv'd the glutinous Ink, now made use of in all Presses. The House where he liv'd is still to be seen near the Market-place in *Haërlem*. On the Front of his House there was formerly engraven his Picture, with some Verses in Commendation of him. The Magistrates have in their Custody a Specimen of his first Essay. *Angelus Rocha*, who publish'd an Account of the *Vatican* Library in the Days of *Sixtus Quintus*, tells us, That *Aldus Junior*, a Learned Antiquary, shew'd him a Copy of *Donatus's* Grammar printed on Vellum, in the first Page of which were these Words; *Johannes Faustus Civis Moguntinus, Avus Maternus Johannis Scheffer, primus excogitavit Artem imprimendi, Typis Aëreis quos deinde Plumbeos invenit, multaque ad poliendam Artem adjecit Filius ejus Petrus Scheffer, impressus autem est hic Donatus & confessionalia primo omnium, A. D. 1450. Admonitus certe fuit ex Donato, prius Hollandia impresso in Tabula Incisâ*: In which Words *Mariangelus Accursius* assures us, (for the same Author says 'twas his Hand) That the first Man who printed Books in *Germany* with Molten Types, had the first Hint of it from *Holland*. The old Chronicle of *Cologne*, writ in 1496, confirms this, That the first Hint was from *Holland*, where *Donatus* was printed before *Gottenburg* printed any at *Mentz*; and most of the *German* Historians grant, That the first Printing with Wooden Cuts was by this *Coster* of *Haërlem*; but alledge, that composing from different Letters was the Contrivance of *Gottenburg*.

The *Hollanders* say further, That after *Coster* had improv'd his new Art so far as to print with Tin Letters, he took more Servants into the House, and among them one

John, whom *Junius* thinks to be the *Johannes Faustus* before mentioned, who had the Mystery of this Art communicated to him, upon his taking an Oath of Secrecy. This *John* applied himself so much to the Business, that he understood it as well as *Coster* himself; and on *Christmas-Eve*, when most of the Family were at a Procession, he carried off, with the Assistance of another that he had suborn'd, as many Cases of Letter as they were able, and going to *Amsterdam*, printed small Books and Pamphlets privately; from thence they removed to *Strasburg*, and communicated their Art to *Gottenburg*, who carrying on the Work at his own Charge, had the Honour to be accounted the first Printer in the World: At last they settled at *Mentz*, where they kept open Shop, being out of Danger of being prosecuted by *Coster*. The first Book they printed in this City, was *Alexander Gallus's* Grammar, with *Peter Hispanus's* small Grammatical Tracts annexed. There is in the Library of *Oxford* a Copy of *Tully's Offices*, printed by this *Faustus* on Vellum, and at the End of it these Words in Red Letters, *Præsent Marci Tullii clarissimum Opus, Johannes Faust, Moguntinus Civis, non astrumento, non plumali canna, neque area, sed Arte quadam perpulchra. Petri manu Pueri feliciter effeci finitum* in 1465. *Janus* says, he has often heard his Master *Nicholas Gale* say, That an old Bookfeller, who had been Servant to *Coster*, and Chamber-fellow with this *Faustus* that cheated him, told him the Story often with such a Vehemency of Passion, as commonly brought Tears from his Eyes; and that he was resolv'd to undeceive the World, but did not live to perform his Promise. These are the Arguments on both Sides; the Reader may determine as he pleases.

The *French* likewise pretend to the Honour of this Invention; but upon no better Foundation, as *Wimpeling* informs us, than that this Art was first made publick at *Rome* by one *Uldaric Hahn*, a *German*, who by Latin Writers is called *Uldaricus Gallus*; *Hahn* being the *German* Name for a Cock, which gave the *French* Occasion to apply the Appellative *Gallus*, as if he had been one of their Country; tho' if it were so, it will imply no more, than that he was the first who publish'd that Art in *Italy*.

Boterus, who is followed by some modern Authors, alledges, the *Chinese* had this Art above 1000 Years before us in *Europe*, and communicated the same to one *Marcus Penitus*; but had it been so, that Gentleman would in all probability have brought it into *Italy*, that his own Country might have had the Honour of being the first Teachers of the Art in *Christendom*; but there is so little Foundation for this Story, that *Boterus* himself confesses, that this Invention, as well as that of Guns and Clocks, is owing to the *Germans*.

This Art was brought over to *England*, according to *Stow*, in 1471, by one *Caxton*, and Printing was first us'd in *Westminster-Abbey*; but it appears, that it was practis'd before that Time, by a Copy of *St. Jerome's Exposition of the Apostles Creed*, preserved among the Archives of the University of *Oxford*. It is printed on Paper, and ends thus; *Explicit Expositio Sancti Jeronimi in Symbolo Apostolorum ad Papam Laurentium. Impressa Oxonia & finita in 1468, 17 die Decemb.* *Mr. Wood*, in his *Antiquities of the University of Oxford*, informs us, That *Robert Tournayr* Master of the Wardrobe to King *Henry VI.* first brought over Printing to *England* from *Havrem*. The King furnish'd him with Money, by which he brib'd *Frederick Corfellus*, who wrought at the Press, to come over with him to *England*, which he did, and set up a Printing-Press at *Oxford*, where they guarded him, lest he should make his Escape before he had perform'd his Promise. Not long after, Presses were set up at *Worcester*, *Westminster*, and *St. Albans*. The oldest Book printed at *Westminster* is *Caxton's Chronicle*, publish'd in 1486.

The RELIGION of the Modern Germans.

THIS Country was converted at several Times; as *Dr. Nicholson* informs us; so that almost every Province had their different Apostle. *Theodoret* thinks our Saviour's Apostles preached here, and some name the Apostle *St. Thomas* in particular. *Irenaeus* and *Tertullian* mention the *German Church*; so that 'tis probable; that what Part of *Germany* was subject to the *Romans*, may have had Christianity in the Second

Century. The *Papists* are now ashamed of the Legend of *St. Ursula*, and her 11000 Virgins; therefore in their Kalendar they only mention *Ursula cum Sociis*. 'Tis said, there were two *German Bishops* present at a Council held by *Constantine the Great*, in 314.

Bleau, in his Volume of the *Atlas* which contains *Scotland* and *Ireland*, gives an Account, That several Men from *Scotland* converted many Parts of *Germany*: The first was *St. Rupert*, Son to a King of *Scots*, who in the 6th Century converted *Theode*, Duke of *Bavaria*, with his Nobles, and baptiz'd them at *Ratisbon*; after which he converted the neighbouring Countries, founded the City of *Salzburg*, and was the first Bishop there, as appears by the Records of that City, printed by *Hen. Canisius*, Tom. 4. *Antiq. Lession*. Much about the same Time *Columbanus* and *Gallus*, two *Scots*, converted *Swabia*; after which *Columbanus* went to *Italy*, and *Gallus* stay'd in *Switzerland*, and founded the Monastery of *St. Gall*, which gave Rise to the Town of that Name, as is mentioned by *Jonas*, in the Life of *Columbanus*, *Bede*, *Wallafridus Strabo*, and *Canisius*.

Soon after *Kilianus*, with two other *Scotsmen* sent by the Pope, converted *Gosbert* Duke of *Franconia*, with his Court and Country, and was the first Bishop of *Wurtzburg*; but afterwards martyr'd with his Companions, for reproving the Duke for his Incest, as appears by the Coin of the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, which has still *St. Kilian's* Effigies stamp'd on it, as *Canisius* and *Surius* tell us.

Not long after this, in the Time of *Pipin* and *Charlemain*, *Bonifacius*, a *Scotsman*, as *Marianus* and *Trithemius* tell us, converted *Hesse*, *Thuringia*, *Westphalia*, and *Saxony*: After which he was made Archbishop of *Mentz*, and founded the Bishoprick of *Aichstadt*, and several others, with the Monastery of *Fulda*, of which *Scotsmen* and *Germans* were indifferently made Abbots till very lately. This *Boniface* is generally reckoned to be the chief Apostle of the *Germans*, as *Willibald* his Disciple says in his Life, which we have an Account in *Canisius*, *Surius*, *Serrarius*, and others.

In that same Century, *Pastor*, a *Scotsman*, planted Religion further in *Saxony*, was made Bishop of *Verden* in *Westphalia*, as

Kant-

Krantzius tells us, wherein he was succeeded by several of his Countrymen, being himself a Martyr: And that same Author informs us, That one *John Scot* was made Bishop of *Mecklenburg*, and afterwards a Martyr.

In the Year 1000, *Colomannus*, said to be Son to a King of *Scots*, converted *Austria*, where he was martyr'd. His Relicks were kept in the Monastery of *Melch*, about 12 Leagues from *Vienna*, as *Surius* tells us in his Life; and *Baronius* says the same in his Annals.

Argobastus, a *Scots-man*, converted *Straßburg*, where he was succeeded by *Florence*, one of his Countrymen, who was Bishop there, as *Surius* and others inform us. *William*, Brother to *Achaius* King of *Scots*, founded the Monastery of *St. James* at *Ratubon*, *St. Martin* at *Cologne*, *St. Giles* at *Norimberg*, another at *Aix la Chapelle*, and *St. Peter's* at *Ratubon*, which were mostly possessed by his own Countrymen, who were in great Esteem with *Charlemain*. The last of those they possessed was that of *St. James* at *Ratubon*, whose Abbot was Inspector of all the rest, till the Time of the late German Civil Wars. The *Scots* also founded the Monastery of *St. James* at *Wurtzburg*, and another at *Erfurd*. They had also a Monastery at *Vienna*, founded by *Henry* Duke of *Austria* in 1167, which continued in their Hands till the Time of the Emperor *Ferdinand H.* They had likewise one at *Constance*, one at *Memmingen* in *Bavaria*, another at *Eichstat*, one at *Kelham*, all in that Country; and another at *Paderborn*, which was founded about the Year 900, besides many others, as appears by a Letter from *Robert Strachan*, a Native of *Dundee*, and a Benedictine Monk, writ from *Vienna* the 10th of November, 1641. to the Lord *Scots Tarbat*, who publish'd the Account of *Scotland* in *Bleau's Atlas*, to whom he promis'd a larger Account in a Book, Entitled, *Germania Christiana*; but whether he liv'd to perform it, we know not.

Buchanan and *Leffy* say, *Charlemain* desired *Achaius* K. of *Scotland*, with whom he had a League, to send many Learned Men to instruct the French and Germans in Religion and Learning, their own Priests being then so ignorant, that they us'd these Words in Baptism, *Ego baptizo te in Nomina Patrua, &*

Filia, & Spiritus Sancta; and that in Gratitude to the *Scots*, who founded so many Monasteries in Germany, it was order'd, That none but *Scots-men* should be Abbots of those Monasteries. The same is confirmed by *Marianus*, *Scotus*, *Trithemius*, &c.

Dr. Nicholson informs us, That in the 8th Century, *Egbert* Archbishop of *York* sent English Missionaries to convert the Germans; but many of them are the same claimed by *Mr. Strachan*, as above, for *Scots-men*; so that it is very probable there was a Mixture of both. *Charles the Great* by this Means brought the Saxons at last to embrace Christianity, tho' not without much Bloodshed.

The Reformation began in 1517. Upon this Occasion, the Archbishop of *Mentz*, being to pay the Court of *Rome* a greater Sum than he could raise in his own Territories, got Leave from the Pope to make it up, by selling Indulgences thro' the Empire for a Pardon of Sins past, present, and to come, and employed one *Friar Tekelius* as his Agent. *Luther* protested against this, and afterwards publicly oppos'd 'em, tho' *Tekelius* threaten'd him with Excommunication; but those Threats were so far from making any Impression on *Luther*, that in *Wittenberg* and *Leipsick* he publicly impugned the Pope's Power to grant such Indulgences, and maintain'd many Disputes in the University of *Leipsick* against the Popish Party, who, when they could not answer his Arguments, call'd him a Heretick, and forbid any to hear him under Pain of Excommunication; but the Elector of *Saxony's* declaring for him, counterpois'd their Threats. The Elector's Example was followed by the Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, *Wurtemberg*, *Mecklenburg*, and *Pomerania*, the Marquis of *Brandenburg*, Landgrave of *Hesse*, and most of the Imperial Cities, who in 1529 gave in a joint Protestation to the Imperial Chamber at *Spire*, containing the Heads in which they dissented from the Church of *Rome*; from whence they had the Name of Protestants. In 1530, they gave in a Confession sign'd by them at *Augsburg*, which was from thence called the *Augsburg Confession*. After this, the Emperor *Charles V.* made War upon them; but after much Loss of Blood and Treasure, he was at last obliged to grant them a Toleration,

ration, and to authorize their Confession at *Passau* in 1552, and in 1555 confirm'd it at *Augsburg*. In the beginning of the Reformation, *Luther* translated the Bible into *High-Dutch*, and publish'd it all over *Germany*. He compiled also New Catechisms for the Children.

About 1519, *Zuinglius*, a Canon at *Zurich* in *Switzerland*, was the first who in those Parts dissented from the Errors of the Church of *Rome*; and his Success was such, that his Doctrine spread as wide as *Luther's*; and in 1526, the Mass was abolish'd at *Zurich* by Order of the Senate; and in 1528, Images were destroy'd at *Bern*. The Differences betwixt *Luther* and *Zuinglius* about Consubstantiation, much hinder'd the Progress of the Reformation; they met at *Marpurg* in *Hesse* to compose those Differences, but in vain: So *Zuinglius's* Party was call'd *Sacramentarians*, and that of *Luther*, *Ubiquitarians*, whose Party still maintain their Credit in *Saxony*, as *Zuinglius* did in *Switzerland*. *Calvin* succeeded the latter, and to the Doctrines preach'd by his Predecessor, he added those about Predestination, Free Will, Final Perseverance, &c. which widen'd the Breach betwixt the *Lutherans* and *Calvinists*. *Calvin's* Doctrine prevail'd in *France*, *England*, *Scotland*, the *Netherlands*, a great Part of *Poland*, and many Provinces of *Germany*; whereas the *Lutheran* never reach'd much further than it was spread by *Luther* himself. The *Lutherans* at *Leipsick*, where they are very rigid, hate the *Calvinists* as much as the *Turks*, in so much, that in the great Church there they have the Picture of the Devil, *Ignatius Loyola*, and *John Calvin*, in one Frame, with this Subscription, *The Three great Enemies of Christ and the Christian Religion*. In *Wittenberg*, *Abraham Calovius* was a great Supporter of *Luther's* Doctrine; but many of the University were for the Opinions of *Calixtus Junior*, a Professor of the University of *Helmstadt*, who was eager for a Comprehension.

In the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, Arch-Duke-doms of *Bavaria*, *Austria*, and the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, the Territories of the Three Spiritual Electors, and other Bishopricks which still remain in the Hands of the Clergy, the Popish Religion is profess'd. There are still some of the old *Hussites* in

Bohemia, but they are forc'd to conceal their Principles. *Lutheranism* abates daily in the Dominions of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, or *Prussia*, where *Calvinism* obtains in its stead.

Puffendorf gives us the following Account of the Reformation, and Affairs of Religion, in *Germany*. In 1517, the Pope caused Indulgences to be sold here in so scandalous a Manner, that the wiser Sort began to be ashamed of it. Wherefore *Martin Luther*, Doctor of Divinity, and Professor in the University of *Wittenbergh*, had held a publick Disputation against it, and being oppos'd by others, it alarm'd all the neighbouring Countries. *Luther* at first submitted to the Pope's Decision; but being condemned by him, he appeal'd to a free General Council: And entering further into an Examination of the Pope's Authority, and having laid open some Errors and Abuses which were crept in among them, his Doctrine was so much approved by some of the Princes and free Imperial Cities, that they began to banish the Priests and Monks out of several Places, and to reduce their Revenues. And though the Emperor declar'd *Luther* an Out-law at the Diet of *Worms*, and endeavour'd by several Proclamations to put a stop to those Proceedings; yet being engag'd in a War with *France*, and therefore not in a Capacity to apply himself in good earnest to the suppressing of those Things, *Luther's* Party grew daily stronger.

Perhaps he was afterwards not very sorry to see the Wound increase, that he might make the better Benefit of the Cure. A Proclamation being publish'd at the Diet of *Spier*, which was in no ways agreeable to the *Lutheran* Princes, they protested against the same; from whence they were called Protestants. Next Year they delivered a Confession of their Faith to the Emperor at *Augsburg*, and entred into a Defensive Alliance at *Smalkald*. *Luther* was against their taking Arms at first, as *Sleidan* informs us; but the Lawyers and Princes having satisfy'd him, that the Constitution of the Empire allow'd it in Case of Oppression, he agreed to it. This League was renewed in the Year 1535, when a great many Princes and free Imperial Cities were received into it. This League

League being a great Eye-sore to the Emperor, he us'd all Means to dissolve it: But the Protestants trusting to their own Strength, and standing by one another, the Hostilities began on both Sides, and the Protestants brought into the Field 100000 Men, under the Conduct of *John Frederick* Elector of *Saxony*, and *Philip* Landgrave of *Hesse*. Had they fallen immediately upon the Emperor, whose Forces were not then join'd, they might in all probability have worsted him; but having lost the first Opportunity, the Emperor so strengthen'd himself, that he forced the Protestants to quit the Field, and to disband their Forces. He also caused a Diversion to be given the Elector at home by his Kinsman *Maurice*; which had such Influence upon the free Imperial Cities, that they were oblig'd to submit, and pay considerable Fines. Next Year the Emperor fell into *Saxony*, and having defeated and taken the Elector near *Muhlberg*, he pronounc'd Sentence of Death upon him; which he chang'd to Imprisonment. *Philip*, Landgrave of *Hesse*, having submitted himself, was, contrary to Agreement with the Emperor, made Prisoner, whereby the Protestants in *Germany* were reduced to great Extremities. The Electorate of *Saxony* was given to *Maurice*, Duke of *Saxony*, who at last being resolv'd, not to permit any longer that both Religion and Liberty should be quite destroy'd, nor that his Wife's Father, the Landgrave of *Hesse*, who upon his Parole had surrender'd himself to the Emperor, should be detain'd a Prisoner; he fell so suddenly with his Forces upon the Emperor, that he was very near having surprized his Person at *Innsbruck*. *Henry II.* King of *France*, having also made an Inroad on the other side of *Germany*; surprized *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*. Upon which, King *Ferdinand*, the Emperor's Brother, interposing his Authority, a Peace was concluded at *Passau*, where the free Exercise of Religion was secured to the Protestants, till Matters could be better settled at the next Diet. The Landgrave was released, as likewise *John Frederick*, the Elector, who had been dismissed out of Prison a little before by the Emperor. At last the Religious Peace in *Germany* was established at the Diet at *Augsburg*, where it

was provided, That neither Party should annoy one another under the Pretext of Religion, and that such of the Church-Lands and Revenues, as the Protestants had been possess'd of before the Peace concluded at *Passau*, should remain in their Possession.

But under the Reign of *Matthias*, the Ferment did so increas by degrees in *Germany*, that towards his latter Days they caus'd violent Convulsions. The Origin of this War, which lasted 30 Years, was this: In the Religious Peace formerly concluded at *Passau*, two Parties were only included, viz. the *Roman* Catholics, and those who adhered to the *Augsburg* Confession, the free Exercise of Religion being forbidden to all others. But some of the States of the Empire, among whom the Chief were the Elector *Palatine* and the Landgrave of *Hesse-Cassel*, having since that time receiv'd the Reform'd Religion, commonly call'd the *Calvinist*, the *Roman* Catholics were against their enjoying the Benefit of the Religious Peace. These on the other hand alledg'd, That they, as well as the rest, did belong to the *Augsburg* Confession, and that the whole Difference did only consist in some few Heads: But the *Lutherans*, who strictly adher'd to the Words of the *Augsburg* Confession, were not for receiving them into the same Communion; though it was their Opinion, That they ought not to be prosecuted for the Differences that were betwixt them. But afterwards these controverted Articles were, by the Heat of some *Lutheran* Priests, explain'd in so different a manner, that the Name of a *Calvinist* became as Odious to some of the *Lutherans*, as that of a *Roman* Catholic. The Papists taking hold of this Opportunity, caressed the *Lutherans*, especially those in the Electorate of *Saxony*, unto whom they represented the *Calvinists* as a People equally destructive to both Parties; whereby they hop'd to disjoin the *Calvinists* from the rest, and after they had destroy'd them; to make the easier Work with the *Lutherans*. Those therefore of the Reform'd Religion, entered into a Confederacy for their Common Security; into which they receiv'd a great many other Protestant Princes, and so it was call'd the *Evangelical Union*. *Opposition*

Opposition to this Confederacy, the *Roman Catholicks* made an Alliance among themselves, which they called the *Catholick League*, whose Head was the Duke of *Bavaria*, a constant Rival of the *Electoꝛ Palatine*. There happen'd also some other Matters which had exasperated both Parties, *viz.* That the Protestants had reduc'd a great many Church-Revenues after the Peace at *Passau*; That the Cities of *Aix la Chapelle* and *Donawert*, had been very hardly dealt with; besides several other Things, which were manifest Proofs of the Animosities of both Parties against one another.

Both of 'em being thus exasperated and prepared for War, the Flame quickly after broke out in the Kingdom of *Bohemia*. The *Bohemians* pretended, that the Emperor *Matthias* had taken from them their Privileges, and having rais'd a Tumult, threw three Persons of Quality, who spoke in the Emperor's Behalf at *Prague*, out of the Castle Windows, and immediately after enter'd with an Army into *Austria*. In the mean while *Matthias* died, whose Nephew *Ferdinand* (who also succeeded him in the Empire) the *Bohemians* had before his Death received for their King; but now alledging that he had broken the Contract made betwixt him and the Estates, they renounc'd him, and offer'd the Crown to *Frederick Electoꝛ Palatine*. This young Prince was perswaded by some of his Friends, who were of an unsettled Spirit, and had not div'd deep enough into a Business of such Consequence to accept this Offer, before he had laid a Foundation sufficient for such an Undertaking: For the *Bohemians* themselves were fickle and unfaithful; *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Transilvania*, was unconstant; *England* was not for meddling in the Matter; *Holland* was very backward in giving Assistance; and the Union which they chiefly rely'd upon, was a Body with a great many Heads, without Vigour, or any fix'd Resolution. Besides, *France* endeavour'd to dissolve that League, as being not willing that the *Electoꝛ Palatine*, and the rest of the Reform'd Religion, should grow too potent, for fear, that in Time they might afford their Assistance to the *Huguenots*, whose Destruction was then in Agitation at the *French Court*. In the beginning of this War, the Affairs of *Fer-*

dinand looked with an ill Aspect, because *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Transilvania*, fell into *Hungary*, in Hopes to become Master of that Kingdom; and there were also great Discontents among his Subjects in *Austria*: But he having recover'd himself by his Alliance with the Duke of *Bavaria*, the *Electoꝛ Palatine*, in that unfortunate Battle fought on the *White-Hill* near *Prague*, lost at once all his former Advantages; for *Ferdinand* soon after reduc'd *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and *Silesia*, to Obedience. *Spinola* made an Inroad into the *Lower Palatinate*, which was deserted by the Forces of the League, and the Duke of *Bavaria* obtain'd the *Upper Palatinate* and the *Electoꝛal Dignity*. The *Electoꝛ of Saxony*, who had been very instrumental in reducing *Silesia*, had for his Reward *Lusatia*, as a Fief of the Kingdom of *Bohemia*.

In the mean time the Marquis of *Durlach*, *Christian Duke of Brunswick*, Count *Mansfeld*, and some others, who were of the *Electoꝛ Palatine's* Party, marched with their Armies up and down the Country; and the Emperor, under Pretence of pursuing them, sent his Forces into all Parts of the Empire. Against these the Circle of *Lower Saxony* arm'd it self, having made *Christian IV. King of Denmark*, General of that Circle: But he having received a great Overthrow near *King's-Lutter* from *Tilly* the Imperial General, the Emperor over-run all *Lower Saxony*; and having obliged King *Christian* to make Peace with him at *Lubeck*, he began to get Footing near the Coast of the *Baltick*.

The Emperor was so elevated with Success, that he did not question but for the future to be absolute in *Germany*, and with that View publish'd a Proclamation, enjoining the Protestants to restore to the Catholicks all such Church-Lands or Revenues as were taken from them since the Peace made at *Passau*. Under this Pretence he hop'd quickly to subdue the rest of the Protestant Princes, not questioning but, after that, the Catholick Estates would easily be forced to submit themselves to his Pleasure.

The Protestants, 'tis true, enter'd into a Defensive Alliance at *Lipsick*, but without any great Prospect of Success, if *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, had not come

come to their Assistance. This King was induced to enter Germany, partly because the Preservation of his own State seem'd to depend on the Emperor's not getting firm Footing on the *Baltick*; partly because several of the German Princes had craved his Assistance; partly also because the Emperor had assisted the *Poles* against him in *Prussia*; and he stood in a good Correspondence with *France* and *Holland*, who were very jealous of the Greatness of the House of *Austria*. This King came with an Army into Germany, and drove the Imperial Forces out of *Pomerania*, and the neighbouring Countries.

In the mean time the Imperial General *Tilly* had quite destroyed the City of *Magdeburg*, and was upon his March against the Elector of *Saxony*, whom he did not question but to rout quickly: But King *Gustavus* having join'd his Forces with those of the Elector of *Saxony*, defeated *Tilly* in that memorable Battle near *Leipzick*, where the Emperor, at one Stroke, lost all the Hopes he had conceiv'd from the happy Success of his Arms during the Space of 12 Years before. From thence he march'd on to the *Rhine*, where he made almost miraculous Progresses: But in Regard the Elector of *Saxony* had not so vigorously attacked the Hereditary Countries of the Emperor, the Emperor had thereby left him to raise another Army, under the Conduct of *Wallenstein*, against whom the King lay encamped for a considerable Time near *Nuremberg*; and afterwards in the Battle of *Lutzen*, tho his Army had gain'd the Victory, he himself lost his Life.

After his Death, his Generals and Confederates carried on the War, under the Conduct of *Axel Oxenstern*, Chancellor of *Sweden*, with indifferent good Success; but having received an entire Defeat in the Battle near *Norlingen*, which they rashly engaged in, they lost all the Fruit of so many Victories. The Elector of *Saxony* having also concluded a Peace with the Emperor at *Prague*, which was extremely dislike'd by the Protestant Party, the Emperor was now again in Hopes to drive the *Swedes* by Force out of Germany: But by the Valour and Conduct of their Generals, the Swedish Affairs began to look with a

better Face; for they carried the War again into the Hereditary Countries of the Emperor. At last all Parties began to incline to a Peace; for the Emperor and the Princes of Germany were tired out with the War; *France* began to be divided at home by Commotions; *Holland* had made a separate Peace with *Spain*; and the *Swedes* feared that the Germans, of whom was compos'd the greatest Part of their Army, might at last grow weary of being instrumental in the Ruin of their native Country, or that one unfortunate Blow might chance to rob them of the Fruits of their former Victories: A Peace was therefore concluded at *Osnabrug* with *Sweden*, and at *Munster* with *France*; by Vertue of which the *Swedes* got a Part of *Pomerania*, *Bremen*, and *Wismar*, and Five Millions of Crowns for the Payment of their Forces. *France* kept *Brissac*, *Suntgaw*, a Part of *Alsace*, and *Philipsburg*. By this Peace, the Authority of the States of Germany, and the Protestant Religion, were established at once, and the Emperor's Power confin'd within such Bounds, that he could not easily hereafter attempt any thing against either of them, especially since both *Sweden* and *France* had a free Passage left them, from whence they might easily oppose him, if he design'd to transgress those Limits.

The Religion of the Lutherans.

This is best to be understood, by their Confession of Faith, commonly called that of *Augsburg*, because it was presented in the Diet there to the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1530, by *John Duke of Saxony*, Elector; *George Marquis of Brandenburg*, *Ernest Duke of Lunenburg*, *Philip Landgrave of Hesse*, *John Frederick Duke of Saxony*, *Francis Duke of Lunenburg*, *Wolfgang Prince of Anhalt*, the Senate and Magistrates of *Nuremberg*, and the Senate of *Reutlingen*.

It was writ in haste by *Philip Melancthon*, as he himself confesses in his Apology; and therefore to explain it, there was added, 1. The Saxon Confession, writ in 1551, in the Synod of *Wittemberg*, where the Ministers of the Churches of *Saxony* and *Mis-*

nia, and the Doctors of the Academies met, and subscrib'd it, as the Confession of *Augsburg*, repeated to be proposed to the Council of *Trent*. It was approved by the most Illustrious Princes of the House of *Brandenburg*, by the most Noble Counts of *Mansfeldt*, the Ministers of *Strasburg*, and the Ministers and Doctors of the Churches of *Pomerania*, who all of 'em sign'd it. It was likewise approv'd by other Churches, and particularly commended by those of *Poland*, in that call'd their Consent or Reconciliation. 2. The Confession of *Wurtemberg*, which was proposed to the same Council of *Trent* in 1552, by the Ambassadors of the most Illustrious *Christopher Duke of Wurtemberg*, &c. Its excellent Preface gives an Account of the whole Matter. 3. The Confession of the most Illustrious Prince *Frederic*, Count *Palatine*, Elector of the Holy Empire. 4. The Confession of *Bohemia*, which is also call'd the Confession of the *Waldenses*, compos'd out of far more ancient Confessions, approv'd by *Luther* and *Melancthon* in 1532, and by the famous University of *Wittemberg*, and at last by the Free Barons and other Noblemen of the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, offer'd in 1535 to the most Serene King *Ferdinand V.* The Reconciliation of the Article of the Lord's Supper, between the Ministers, who in both *Poland*, *Lithuania*, and *Samogitia*, profess the Gospel, both according to the *Augsburg* Confession, and the Confession of the *Waldenses* and *Helvetian* Churches, made in the General Assembly of *Sandomir* in 1570.

In the Preface to the *Augsburg* Confession, directed to the Emperor *Charles V.* they declare to his Imperial Majesty, That according to his Command, they gave it as the Confession of their Preachers and themselves, according as it had been preached in their respective Dominions from the pure Word of God; and that if the rest of the Electors, Princes and States, would likewise, in Obedience to his Imperial Majesty's Command, lay before him in their Diet their Opinions in Matters of Religion; they were ready to confer with them amicably, in order to an Agreement without Contention, that all Things may be regulated according to the Word of God: But if Matters could not be adjust'd in the Diet, they were willing

to appear in a Free General Council, to be call'd by the just Suffrages of the Empire, according to Custom; to which General Council, and his Imperial Majesty, they solemnly appeal'd in due Form of Law; and did likewise solemnly and publicly protest, That they neither intended, nor could desert their Cause contained in the said Confession, except Matters could be amicably settled and reduced to Christian Concord, in such a General Council to be summoned by his Imperial Majesty: After which they exhibited their Confession, consisting of 21 Articles.

In the First, they agree to what the Council of *Nice* had declared concerning the Trinity, as to the Unity of the Divine Essence and the three Persons, viz. That it is one Divine Essence, which is call'd and is God, Eternal, Incorporeal, Indivisible, Infinite in Power, Wisdom and Goodness, the Creator and Preserver of all Things visible and invisible; and that nevertheless they were three Persons of the same Essence, Power, and Coeternal, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost; and they declar'd, that they us'd the Word Person in the Sense it was made use of by Ecclesiastical Writers, not as signifying a Part or Quality in another, but which properly subsisted in it self. They condemn'd all the Heresies contrary to this Article, as the *Manichees*, who held two Beginnings, Good and Evil: Likewise the *Valentinians*, *Arrians*, *Eunomians*, *Mathemetians*, and all such. Likewise the New and Old *Samosatenians*, who holding but one Person, disputed fraudently and impiously concerning the Word and Spirit, as if they were not distinct Persons; but that the Word signified the Vocal Word, and that the Spirit signified the Motion created in Things.

In the 2d they held, That since *Adam's* Fall, all Men descending from him by natural Propagation, were born with Original Sin, which they understood with the Holy Fathers, and Orthodox and Learned Men of the Church, to be that Guilt by which all Men for *Adam's* Fall were made liable to the Wrath of God, and eternal Death; and that it was the very Corruption of Humane Nature propagated from *Adam*; which Corruption contains the Want of Original Right.

Righteousness or Obedience, and Concupiscence. And after a further Description of Original Sin, wherein they agree with other Protestants, they condemn the *Palestians* who deny Original Sin, and look upon the want of Original Righteousness or Concupiscence to be only indifferent Things, or at least not condemn'd in their own Nature, and think that Man can satisfy the Law of God, and be justifi'd for his own Obedience.

In the 3d, they treat of our Saviour's Incarnation, and assert his Two Natures, the Divine and Humane in One Person, That he is true God and Man, Born of the Virgin, and did really Suffer, was Crucifi'd, Dead and Buried; that he might reconcile the Father to us, and be a Sacrifice for the Original and Actual Sins of Men; and conclude with his Descent, Resurrection, &c. according to the Apostle's Creed.

In the 4th they assert, That in order to our obtaining these Benefits by Christ, viz. Remission of Sin, Justification and Eternal Life, he gave us the Gospel, which proposes those Benefits in the last Chapter of *Luke*, convinces us of Sin, and leads us to Christ as a Mediator, for whose Sake Pardon is given us freely; and Justification by Faith, by which we ought to believe and confess, that those Things are given us for Christ's Sake who was made a Sacrifice for us, and pacifi'd the Father. Therefore, though the Gospel requires Repentance, yet that forgiveness of Sin may be certain, it teaches, That 'tis given to us freely, and does not depend on the Condition of our Worthiness; nor is given for the Sake of any of our preceding or following Works, for by that Means it would be uncertain.

When our Conscience is under Terror, we can find no Work to pacify God's Wrath, but Christ is given to us, and propos'd as a Sacrifice of Propitiation; therefore this Honour must not be transferr'd to our own Works; for *Paul* says, *By Grace ye are saved*. Likewise, Therefore 'tis of Faith that it might be by Grace, to the end the Promise might be sure, i. e. so the Forgiveness will be sure when we know that it does not depend upon our

own Worthiness, but is given us for Christ's Sake, &c. Then they say, That Faith does not only signify the knowledge of the History of Christ, but also the believing and assenting to this Promise, &c.

In the 5th they say, That Christ for this End appointed the Preaching of the Gospel, because it teaches Repentance and Remission of Sins, &c. and condemn those who say nothing of this Faith by which Forgiveness is receiv'd, but command Men to doubt whether it can be obtain'd, and say that this Doubt is no Sin, and that Men may obtain Forgiveness for their own Worthiness: They likewise condemn those Enthusiasts who fancy, That the Holy Spirit may be given, and be effectual without the Word of God; for which Cause they despise the Ministry and Sacraments, and seek for Illumination without the Word of God, and betake themselves to their own Fancies, as the *Manichæans* did of old, and the *German Anabaptists* did then.

In the 6th they assert, That when we are reconcil'd by Faith, that Righteousness of good Works which God and Christ has commanded must necessarily follow. *If thou wilt enter into Life, keep the Commandments*; but since the Weakness of Humane Nature is such that no Man can satisfy the Law, 'tis necessary to teach Men, that they must not only obey the Law, but how this Obedience pleases, lest they fall into Despair when they understand that they cannot satisfy the same, viz. That this Obedience pleases not as it satisfies the Law, but because the Person is reconcil'd in Christ by Faith, and believes that the Remains of Sin are pardon'd to him; but we are always to conceive that we obtain Remission of Sins, and are pronounced Righteous, i. e. that we are freely accepted for Christ's Sake by Faith, and that afterwards, our Obedience to the Law is pleasing, and reputed a sort of Righteousness, and deserves Reward; but our Conscience cannot oppose our own Purity or Works to the Judgment of God, as the *Psalmist* testifies, *Do not enter into Judgment with thy Servant, for in thy sight shall no Man living be justified*. And Christ says, *When ye have done all, say that ye are unprofitable Servants*; yet after Faith, Obedience pleases, and is reckon'd

reckon'd a sort of Righteousness, as *John* says, *Whoever abideth in him, sineth not*, 2 Cor. 13. 12. *For our rejoicing is this, the Testimony of our Conscience.* But this Obedience ought to resist our wicked Desires, and to be made more Pure by Spiritual Exercises; and we are to beware, that we do nothing against our Consciences, for they who do so, and obey their corrupt Affections, St. Paul says, *Shall not inherit the Kingdom of God.*

In the 7th they teach, That there is one Holy Church to remain to the end of the World, and that this Church, properly speaking, is an Assembly of those who truly Believe and Obey him, although in this Life there will be mix'd with them many ill Men and Hypocrites till the Day of Judgment. The Signs of the Church are the pure and sound Doctrine of the Gospel, and the right Use of the Sacraments; and a Consent in the Doctrine of the Gospel, and the Administration of the Sacraments, is enough for the true Unity of the Church. Nor is it necessary that Humane Traditions or Rites should be every where the same, as Paul teaches us when he says, *One Lord, one Faith, one Baptism, and one God, the Father of all.*

In the 8th, they assert against the *Donatists* and such, That the Word and Sacraments may be effectual, by reason of God's Institution; and our Saviour's Command; though administer'd by ill Men.

In the 9th Article they say, That Baptism is necessary to Salvation, as a Ceremony instituted by Christ, that Grace is offer'd by it, that Infants are to be baptiz'd, by which they are receiv'd into the Favour of God, and become his Children, as our Saviour testifies, *Matth. 18. 14. 'Tis not the Will of your Father which is in Heaven, that one of these little ones should perish.* On this Head they condemn the *Anabaptists*, who do not allow Infant Baptism, and think that Infants may be sav'd without it, and out of the Church.

In the 10th they teach concerning the Lord's Supper, That with the Bread and Wine, the Body and Blood of Christ are truly exhibited to those who partake of the Lord's Supper; but the Edition of the Harmony of Confessions at Geneva in 1612,

which we make use of, says, that in another Edition of the *Augsburg Confession* 'tis express'd thus; That the Body and Blood of Christ are truly present, and distributed to those who partake of the Lord's Supper; and they disapprove those who teach other-
wise.

In the 11th, concerning Repentance, they hold, That Remission of Sins is given to those who fall after Baptism at whatever time they are converted, and that the Church ought to give Absolution to such Penitents. Repentance, they say, consists of Two Parts. The First is, Contrition or Terror of Conscience; Acknowledgment of the Sin, of the Wrath of God, Grief for Sin, with an Abhorrence of it, and flying from it, according to *Jos. 2. 13.* The Second is, Faith which is conceiv'd by the Gospel of Absolution; by which we believe that Sins are certainly remitted for Christ's Sake, which comforts our Conscience; and frees us from Terror; of which Paul speaks, when he says, *Being justified by Faith, we have Peace with God*, Rom. 5. 1. This ought to be follow'd by Obedience towards God, according to *Romans 8. 12, 13.* Therefore they condemn the *Negotians*, who would not absolve such as having fallen after Baptism, repented. They likewise condemn those who say, That Remission of Sins is not given freely for Christ's Sake, but for the Sake of our Contrition, Love, and other Works; and teach Men to doubt during Repentance, whether they may attain Remission, and say this Doubt is no Sin. They also condemn those who say, That Canonical Satisfactions are necessary to avoid Eternal Punishments, and those of Purgatory, though they own that present Calamities may be alleviated by good Works, according to *Isaiah 58. 7, 8, 9.* They also reject Indulgences, which are only Pardons of fictitious Satisfactions. They condemn the *Anabaptists*, who deny, That Men once justifi'd may again lose the Holy Spirit; and those who assert, That Men may attain such a Perfection in this Life, as not to sin any more.

In the 12th, they are for retaining private Absolution in the Church, though a particular Enumeration of our Faults be not necessary,

necessary, since that is impossible according to the *Psalmist*, *Who can understand his Errors.*

In the 13th they say, The Sacraments are instituted not meely to be Marks of Profession among Men; but rather to be Signs and Testimonies of the good Will of God towards us, and are propos'd to stir up and confirm our Faith; so that in the Use of the Sacraments 'tis necessary we should believe the Promises exhibited by them, by which we receive the promis'd Grace which the Sacraments signify; and on this Head they condemn that Pharisaical Opinion which overturns the Doctrine of Faith, and alledges, That Men are justify'd in the Use of the Sacraments, *ex opere operato*; and that without any good Motions or Inclinations of those that partake of them.

In the 14th, they teach concerning Men in Ecclesiastical Orders, That none ought publicly to Preach or Administer the Sacraments, except he be duly call'd, as *Paul* commanded *Titus* to appoint Elders in every City.

In the 15th they say, That such Ecclesiastical Rites as have been appointed by Humane Authority, and may be observ'd without Sin, ought to be kept if they conduce to the Peace and good Order of the Church, as some Holy-Days, pious Hymns, and the like; but they say, That in these Matters the Peoples Consciences are not to be burdened with superstitious Opinions; as if those Humane Ordinances made us Righteous before God, deserve Remission of Sin, or are necessary towards Gospel Righteousness; but they are to be look'd upon as Things indifferent, and may be omitted when it can be done without Scandal; but they are faulty, who violate them so as to give Scandal, and rashly disturb the Peace of their Churches; but they reject Traditions which cannot be observ'd without Sin, as the Celibacy of the Clergy, and that wicked Opinion concerning Traditions and Vows, and other Parts of Worship devis'd by Humane Authority, as if they were Satisfactory for Sin, and deserv'd Remission, as unlearn'd Men have said concerning Vows, and certain Fasts, &c.

In the 16th they say, concerning Civil Affairs, That lawful Civil Constitutions are good Works, and are the Ordinances of God, according to *Paul*, *Rom. 13. 1. The Powers that be, are ordain'd of God*; and therefore hold that Christians may lawfully be Magistrates, exercise Judgment, determine Controversies according to the Imperial and other Present Laws; punish Offenders according to Law, may make lawful War, legal Contracts, keep their Property, give Oath when required by the Magistrate, contract lawful Marriages, and follow lawful Trades: Therefore they condemn the *Anabaptists*, who forbid those Civil Offices to Christians, and such as maintain that Evangelical Perfection consists in abandoning Civil Offices, since that Perfection lies in the Motions of the Heart, the Fear of God, Faith, Love, and Obedience; for the Gospel does not abolish Policy or Oeconomy, but commands them to be preserv'd as the Ordinances of God, and that in such Ordinances we ought to use Charity; therefore Christians are necessarily oblig'd to obey present Laws, and Magistrates, except when they command what is sinful, in which Case they are to obey God rather than Man, *Acts 4.*

In the 17th, they assert their Belief of Christ's Coming to judge the World at the last Day, That he will raise all the Dead, give Eternal Life to the Godly, and condemn Devils and wicked Men to Eternal Punishment. On this Head they condemn the *Jewish* Opinion of the *Anabaptists*, who fancied that before the Resurrection the Godly shall possess the Kingdoms of the World, and the Ungodly be every where destroy'd or suppress'd: For we know, say they, we ought to obey the present Magistrates, and not violently deprive them of their Authority, or dissolve Governments by Sedition, because *Paul* commands every Soul to be subject to their own Magistrate; for we know, that in this Life the Church is to be subject to the Cross, and is not to be glorify'd in this World; as *Paul* says, *It becomes us in all Things to be conform to the Image of his Son*; therefore they condemn, and hold in Execration the diabolical Fury of the *Anabaptists*;

baptists, meaning *John of Leyden*, *Muncer*, and other *German* Enthusiasts at that time; they likewise condemn the *Originists*, who thought there would be an end of the Torments of Devils and damn'd Souls.

In the 18th they deliver their Opinion about Free Will, wherein they say, That Man's Will has some freedom as to Civil Justice, and loving Things subject to Reason, but has no Power without the Assistance of the Holy Spirit, as to Spiritual Righteousness, because *Paul* says, 1 Cor. 2. 14. *The natural Man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: And Christ says, Without me ye can do nothing.* But Spiritual Righteousness is effected by the Holy Spirit, and we receive that Spirit when we assent to the Word of God, to comfort our selves with it under Terror, as *Paul* says, *That ye may receive the Promise of the Spirit by Faith:* They own however, that Men who have the use of Reason, have the freedom of Will in Things relating to the present Life, whether Good or Evil, but still subject to the Divine Government; but in Spiritual Things there is a necessity of the Spirit's Assistance; as *Paul* says, *The Spirit helps our Infirmities.* Therefore they condemn the *Pelagians* and others, who teach, That without the Holy Spirit, and by the mere Strength of Nature, we are able to love God above all Things, and to fulfil the Law as to the substance of the Acts, because *Paul* says in the 8th of the *Romans*, *The carnal Mind is enmity against God, for 'tis not subject to the Law of God, neither indeed can be:* For tho' Humane Nature may in some Sense govern it self as to external Acts, as in abstaining from Theft, Murder, &c. yet it cannot govern the inward Motions of the Mind, as to the true Fear of God, Confidence in him, Patience, Chastity, &c. without the Assistance of the Holy Spirit; yet they own it to be the Command of God, that we ought to restrain our carnal Inclinations by Reason and the Law, because *Paul* says, *The Law is a School-Master to bring us unto Christ;* and also, *the Law was made for the Unjust.*

In the 19th, as to the Cause of Sin, they say, That tho' God creates and preserves Nature, yet the Cause of Sin is the Will of

the Devil and wicked Men, which turns it self away from God to other Things against his Commandment; therefore Christ says of the Devil, *When he speaks a Lie, he speaks of his own.*

In the 20th, they Appeal to their Books to convict their Enemies of Slander, when they charge them with the Neglect of the Doctrine of Good Works: But take notice, That whereas for a long time there had been a great Silence in the Church about the principal Works, viz. the Exercise of Faith, and the Commendation of Civil Actions; and that most of their Sermons were taken up in the Praise of Humane Traditions, Holy-Days, Fasts; the Monkish Life, Friaries or Fraternities, Pilgrimages, the Worship of Saints, Rosaries, and other useless Parts of Worship. Now, by the Goodness of God, the Church was call'd back to that true and useful Worship which he approv'd himself, and requir'd they quote several Places of Scripture, where the Prophets bewail the calamitous State of the Church, wherein true Worship should be extinguish'd, and that, in its stead, Humane Ceremonies and an Impious Confidence in them should obtain; from which Error they call upon the Church to return to true Worship, and such as are truly Good Works. They add, That it was very well known, that long before their Time, many good and learned Men did complain of the want of better Doctrine for the Comfort of People's Consciences, and to make a better Distinction betwixt Works; and hereupon they condemn the Papists for placing Evangelical Perfection in a Monastick Life and Superstition, and preferring Humane Traditions to the Commands of God; whereas they spoke so coldly of the Duties of Mens Vocation, Magistracy, Marriages, &c. that many grave Men began to doubt whether those Things were pleasing to God; therefore the Protestant Preachers did zealously teach both Faith and Good Works.

Of FAITH.

Concerning Faith and Justification, they teach, That our Saviour gave us the Sum of the Gospel in the last of *Luke*, where

where he commands Repentance and Forgiveness of Sins to be taught in his Name; and as the Command is universal, so is the Promise; for all Men are commanded to believe and come to Christ, and he will ease them of their Burdens: But thò Repentance be necessary, we are not to think that we are forgiven and justified for the Sake of that, or of any Works that go before or come after it, but freely for Christ's Sake; and this Benefit is to be receiv'd by Faith. This affords solid Comfort to our Minds under Terror, and has nothing of Sophism, Perplexity, or Absurdity; nor is there any need of Disputes in this Case about Predestination, or the like, for the Promise is universal; nor does it take away the Necessity of good Works, but excites us to them, as well as to Faith; for Remission of Sins is not ascrib'd to our good Works, but to Mercy; not that we should do nothing, but rather that we may know how our Obedience pleases God, thò attended with so much Weakness. For want of this Knowledge, which nothing but Pharisaical Ignorance can condemn, formerly People, to ease their Consciences, had Recourse to the Monastick Life, and other Works, for Remission of Sins; and Justification. To prove this Doctrine, they bring *Rom. 3. 20. Or. Rom. 4. throughout. Ephes. 2. 8. Or.*

When therefore we say, That we are justified by Faith, we do not understand that we are made Righteous for the Worth of the Act it self; but that we receive Forgiveness of Sins, and the Imputation of Righteousness by Mercy through Christ, by Faith; and this Faith is not only a Knowledge of the History, but a Belief of the Promise of the Mercy shew'd to us for Christ's Sake. They add, That by understanding Faith thus, *Paul* and *James* are reconciled; for when *James* says, *The Devils believe and tremble*; he means Historical Faith, which is common to them with wicked Men; but when *Paul* says, *Faith is imputed for Righteousness*, he speaks of our Confidence in the Mercy which is promised to us for Christ's Sake. They add, That this is no new Doctrine, but was taught by the Fathers, particularly by *Ambrose*, *Augustine*, and the *Millevitan Council*.

Of GOOD WORKS.

1. WE join, say they, with the Doctrine of Faith, that of Good Works, viz. That in such as are reconciled to God, Obedience to his Law is necessary; for the Gospel teaches a new Life and Repentance; nor can Faith exist but with Repentance, because it comforts us under our Sorrow and Terror for Sin; as *Paul* says, *Being justified by Faith, we have Peace with God*: And of Repentance, he says, *That our old Man is crucified with him, that the Body of Sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve Sin*.

2. Among Good Works, the chief and highest Worship of God is Faith, which brings forth many other good Works, that cannot exist without it; for *Paul* says, *How shall they call upon him in whom they have not believed. Rom. 10. 14.* While we are in doubt whether God will hear us, and think God will reject us, we do not truly call upon him; but when we believe in his Mercy, we fly to him, love him, call upon him, hope in him, expect Help from him, and obey him in Afflictions, because we know we are his Children, &c. These Things are produced by Faith; whereas our Adversaries would seem to magnify the Doctrine of Good Works, but say nothing of those Spiritual Works, of Faith, of the Exercise of Faith in calling upon God in all the Affairs of our Life, our Councils and Dangers.

3. By this Faith, which comforts us in Repentance, we receive the Holy Spirit to govern and help us to resist Sin and the Devil; and that we may more and more acknowledge our own Weakness; and that the Knowledge of God, his Fear and Faith, may grow in us, as *Paul* says, *That we are to be renewed in the Knowledge of God, after the Image of him that created us*.

4. This new Obedience pleases God, not by satisfying the Law, but because they are reconciled to him thro' Christ; for there's no Condemnation to them that are in Christ, and we are not now under the Law, but under Grace. Our own Works

cannot

cannot appeale the Wrath of God ; but the Terrors of Sin and Death are to be overcome by Faith in Christ, the Mediator. On this Occasion they reject the Preteritions of the Monks to Perfection and Supererogation ; their saying nothing of apprehending Christ by Faith, and reaching us to trust in our own Works. They add, That they themselves taught, that such as commit mortal Sins, are not just, because God requires that we should resist our corrupt Affections.

5. We teach how Men may do good Works, viz. by believing and calling upon God for the Assistance of his holy Spirit to comfort and govern us, and to help us to persevere in Truth and new Obedience ; for thō Men may do Things that are outwardly good by their own Strength, yet without Faith they are in the Power of the Devil, who tempts them to Uncleaness, and fills their Minds with impious and blasphemous Opinions. True Virtues are the Gift of God, Faith, Clearness of Judgment to discern Doctrines, such Greatness of Mind as is necessary for those who preach and profess the Gospel, true Diligence in Governing the Church, true Humility not to covet Power, or be byassed by popular Love or Hatred, true Chastity, &c. Those Heroical Virtues, *Paul* calls the Gifts of God, *Rom.* 12. To these Gifts, we must add our own Exercise of 'em for their Preservation, and to deserve an Increase. Thus, say they, it appears, that the Doctrine of Good Works is duly taught in our Churches ; but how much Darknness and Confusion there was formerly in this Doctrine, honest Men know well enough. People were not taught the Difference betwixt Humane Traditions and Divine Laws ; how good Works please, accompanied with so much Weakness ; and nothing was heard of that Faith which is necessary for Remission of Sins : But these Things being thus explain'd, the Consciences of good Men are comforted ; they have a certain Hope of Salvation ; they understand what true Worship is, how it pleases God, and in what Sense 'tis meritorious.

In the 21st Article they say, That Invocation is due only to the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit ; That God has pro-

pos'd his Son for our Mediator, and Priests to intercede for us ; for his Sake alone our Prayers are heard, according to that of our Saviour, *John* 16. 23. *Whatsoever you ask in my Name, he (the Father) will give it you.* Likewise, *There is but one Mediator betwixt God and Man.* 1 *Tim.* 2. 5. On this Head they condemn the Invocation of Saints, thō they approve the reading of their Lives, provided the Instances be prudently chosen.

This, they said, was the Sum of their Doctrine, which they judged to be according to the Prophets, Apostles, and the Catholick Church, and likewise to the *Roman* Church, as far as she was known to approved Writers. They hop'd, that all good and learned Men would concur with them ; for they did in no wise reject the Consent of the Catholick Church, nor innovate any thing : That they did not pertronize any Impious or Seditious Opinions, which had been condemned by the Catholick Church ; nor embraced this Doctrine out of any ill Design, but merely by the Authority of the Scripture, and the ancient Church : That it was evident a great many Abuses had crept into the Church, which needed Reformation. To this End they earnestly desir'd a General Council, that had long been wish'd for by good Men, and which the Emperor had put them in Hopes of ; and they intreated it might be made up of pious and good Men, who would consult the Glory of Christ, and the Safety of the whole Church ; for that was the customary and lawful Way of determining Ecclesiastical Differences, to refer them to Synods. This Custom the Church had observ'd from the Time of the Apostles ; and the excellent Emperors *Constantine* and *Theodosius* made use of it, not only in Things that were not very doubtful, but even in the Case of absurd Opinions ; so that they would determine nothing without a Synod, that the Liberty of the Church in determining Opinions might be preserved, which was an Example fit to be followed by the present Emperor, since they had changed nothing but according to the Pattern of the Primitive Church. They hop'd God had put such an Opportunity into the Emperor's Hands, for the Reformation and Safety of the Church ; and told him, That certainly

rainly God required it of him, that he should make use of his Power for the Glory of our Saviour, and the Peace of the Church, to put a Stop to the barbarous and most unjust Cruelty, that was exercis'd every where with a wonderful Rage against pious and innocent Men, the Members of Christ. God had charged Princes with this as their chief Care, and therefore rais'd up *Cyrus* to deliver the *Jews* from Captivity, and *Constantine* to put an End to that extream Cruelty which was then exercis'd against Christians; and they wish'd the Emperor would do the like.

For the Articles which they had exhibited were a manifest Evidence, that they taught nothing contrary to the Catholick Church, or that was Impious or Seditious: That they had indeed reform'd some Abuses in External Traditions, wherein tho there was a Difference, yet if the Doctrine and Faith continued pure, no Man ought to be accounted an Heretick, or Deserter of the Catholick Church, for a Difference in Humane Traditions; because the Unity of the Catholick Church consisted in an Agreement of Doctrine and Faith, and not in Humane Traditions, as to which there was always a great Difference among all the Churches in the World: Therefore they pray'd the Emperor not to listen to the Slanders of their Enemies, for they had only reform'd such Abuses as were contrary to the Scripture, the ancient Canons, and the Example of the ancient Church, and desir'd a fair Hearing. After which, they deliver'd in the Articles concerning the Abuses, which they had reform'd in External Rites, as follows.

Of the M A S S.

THEY say, they were falsly charged with having abolish'd it, since they still retain'd it with most of the usual Ceremonies, except that they had mix'd some *German* Songs with those in Latin, for the Instruction of the People; for Ceremonies were necessary to instruct the Unlearned, and that the handling of the Word of God might excite People to true Faith, Fear, and calling upon his Name; for *Pen*

not only commanded to make use of a Language known to the People, but it had likewise been so appointed by Humane Law. They also assembled such of their People, as were fit to receive the Sacrament, together, for that increas'd the Reverence and Religion of publick Ceremonies; and they admitted none till they were first examined. They also instructed their People in the Dignity and Use of the Sacrament, and what Comfort it propos'd to Penitents; that Men might learn both to fear and believe in God, to call upon his Name, and to expect good Things from him; which was the true Christian Worship, and pleasing to God, when they worship'd him thus in the Use of the Ceremonies. Hence they conclude, That the Mass, by which they understood the Lord's Supper, was duly observ'd among them, and with greater Reverence and Gravity than formerly.

On this Occasion they say, That for many Ages, good Men had complain'd of the Abuse and Prophanation of the Mass; for it could not be denied how much those Abuses had spread through all Churches, by what wicked Men it was celebrated, meerly for the Sake of their Belly, for it was too notorious to be dissimble: That never any thing had been so much prostituted for filthy Lucre, as the Mass had been; tho *Paul* had dreadfully threaten'd those who us'd the Sacrament unworthily, when he says, *He that eats this Bread, and drinks this Cup unworthily, is guilty of the Lord's Blood.* And 'tis writ in the Decalogue, That he who takes the Name of the Lord in vain, shall not pass unpunish'd. And as God had formerly punish'd the World for Idolatry, he would certainly revenge this horrid Abuse of the Mass with terrible Punishments: And perhaps it was for that Cause chiefly, that the Church in these latter Ages was so much punish'd with Blindness, Discords, Wars, and other Calamities; yet the Bishops not only had suffered those Abuses, which they knew well enough, but were pleas'd with them, and laugh'd at them: Whereas now they begin too late to complain of the Calamities of the Church, tho nothing else had occasion'd such Tumults but those Abuses, which were so open, that moderate Men

M m m

could

could no longer bear with them. Therefore they with the Bishops had before then, according to their Duty, restrain'd the Avarice and Impudence of the Monks and others, who having perverted the ancient Custom of the Church, said Masses only for Money.

They say, those Abuses proceeded from an Opinion, That the Lord's Supper was a Work, which being celebrated by a Priest, deserv'd Remission of Sins and Punishment, both to themselves, and to those who took it with them, and that merely by the Act it self, without any good Disposition of Mind; and likewise, that being said for the Dead, it deserv'd Deliverance from the Pains of Purgatory. Thus they explain a Sacrifice, when they call the Mass by that Name, viz. That it is a Work, which being done for others, deserv'd a Remission of Sin and Punishment; and thus they alledge an Oblation is made by the Priest for the Living and the Dead. This Opinion being receiv'd, they taught Men to seek thus for Remission of Sins, and all sorts of good Things; nor was it of any Importance by what sort of Men those Masses were said, because they taught that they were efficacious enough, without the good Disposition of those who us'd them. Then it came to be disputed, Whether one Mass said for many, was as profitable as if every one had a Mass said for him? This increas'd both the Number and Gain of the Masses.

Therefore their Churches taught, That this Opinion of the Application and Merit of the Mass was false and impious, by the following Arguments:

1. As they had shew'd above, because Men obtain'd Forgiveness freely by Faith for Christ's Sake, and therefore it could not be obtained by the Work of another.

2. That Christ's Passion was a Sacrifice and Satisfaction for Original and Actual Sin, as appears by *Heb. 10. 10. &c. We are sanctified by the Offering of Christ once for all*: A great Part of that Epistle is taken up in confirming this Doctrine, That it was only the Sacrifice of Christ which deserv'd Remission, and Reconciliation for others.

3. In the Institution of the Supper,

Christ does not command that the Priest should offer for other Men alive and dead; By what Authority then could the Church appoint this as a Sacrifice for Sin, without God's Command.

'Tis still more absurd to apply the Mass for delivering the Souls of the Dead, for 'twas appointed for a Remembrance; that is, that those who took the Lord's Supper in Remembrance of the Benefits purchased by Christ, may be comforted, and have their Faith confirmed; so that 'tis not a Satisfaction for Punishment, but was instituted for the Remission of Sins, viz. That by using it, we might be instructed in the Benefits we receive, and particularly of the Remission of Sins by the Death of Christ. Therefore they condemn the Application of the Lord's Supper for the Deliverance of the Dead as a new and impious Piece of Worship, contrary to the Scripture.

4. A Ceremony without Faith in the New Testament deserves nothing, neither to him that performs it, or to others; according to that of our Saviour: True Worshipers shall worship the Father in Spirit and Truth. This is likewise prov'd by the 11th Chapter of the Hebrews, *That by Faith, Abel offer'd a more excellent Sacrifice than Cain*: Likewise, without Faith 'tis impossible to please God; which at once destroys the Doctrine of Merit *ex opere operato*, or by the Act it self.

5. The Application of the Benefits of Christ is made by our own Faith, as appears by *Rom. 3. 24, 25. Being justified freely by his Grace, through the Redemption that is in Jesus Christ, whom God hath set forth to be a Propitiation through Faith in his Blood, to declare his Righteousness for the Remission of Sins that are past, through the Forbearance of God*; and *v. 28. Therefore we conclude, that a Man is justified by Faith, without the Deeds of the Law*. So that when we take the Sacraments, the Application is made by our own Faith and Deed, and not by the Work of another; for if we had no Remission but by the Mass, our Faith must be transferred from Christ to the Act of the Priest, and so we could be at no Certainty.

These Arguments, and many others, confute the Opinion of the Merit and Application of the Mass for the Living and Dead; there-

therefore they apply to the Emperor, to deliver the Church from such a dreadful Profanation and horrid Abuse of the Lord's Supper.

6. The Institution of the Sacrament is against this Abuse, for there is no command there to offer up Sacrifice for the Sins of the Living and Dead; but we are commanded to take this Body and Blood in Remembrance of Christ's Benefits: And this Remembrance does not imply a meer Historical Representation as on a Stage, as those Men fancy, who defend the Merit *ex opere operato*; but implies, That by Faith we remember the Promise and Benefit comfort our Consciences, and give thanks for it; for the principal End of the Institution is, that our Faith may be rais'd and exercis'd, when we receive that Pledge of Grace; besides the Institution orders, that the Ministers should give or stretch out the Body and Blood of the Lord to others: This was the Custom of the Primitive Church, 1 Cor. 11. 33. where the Apostle enjoins, that when they com together to eat, they should tarry for one another, that there may be a Participation of the Communion; therefore, they say, we have laid aside private Masses as contrary to Christ's Institution; but we Administer on Holy-Days, and others, to such as are found fit upon Examination, and the Ceremony is accompanied with Pious Sermons, as our Saviour appointed, wherein we instruct them of the Nature and Use of the Sacrament; whereas formerly nothing of that was done, nor any thing taught but the *Opus operatum*, nor was there any thing said of Faith, or of the Comfort that redounds from it, but the Peoples Consciences were tortur'd with extravagant Confessions. Thus our Administration appears to be agreeable to our Saviour's Institution; and the Custom of the Ancient Church, where the Sacrament was common, as *Chrysostome* informs us, when he says, That the Priest stood at the Altar, where he call'd some to the Communion, and kept off others; and by the Council of *Nice* 'tis evident, That one certain Person celebrated the Liturgy, as the *Greeks* call it, and stretch'd out to all the rest the Body and Blood of the Lord. The

Words of the Decree are thus, Let the Deacons receive according to order, after the Presbyters, the Holy Communion from a Bilhop or Presbyter, nor is there any mention of private Masses till *Gregory's* Time; but whenever the Ancients speak of a Mass, 'tis plain they speak of one that was Common: Therefore say they, we hope the Practice of our Churches cannot be condemned. As to the rest of the indifferent Rites we observe most of them, though we differ as to the frequency of the Mass; and we find by the Tripartite History, that in the most numerous Churches they had not Mass every Day.

Of taking the SACRAMENT in both Kinds.

THIS they justify by our Saviour's Command, in *Matth. 26*. That of the Apostle, 1 Cor. 11. by the Authority of *Cyprian* and *Jerome*, and the Decrees of Pope *Gelasius*, who condemn'd it as Superstition not to take the Cup, and order'd that they should either receive both or none, for it was a great Sacrilege to make a Division of one and the same Mystery. They make this Reflection upon withholding the Cup from the People, and not teaching them the true Use of the Sacrament; that the Mutilation of the Ceremony did perhaps signify, that the Gospel concerning the Blood of Christ, *viz.* that the Benefit of his Death was thereby obscur'd.

Of CONFESSION.

THEY Complain, That the Doctrine of Repentance was obscur'd by Divines and Canons, who tortur'd Peoples Consciences with their perplex'd Disputes, numberless Traditions and Injunctions, to tell all their Faults, and with their feign'd Satisfactions, which left them in perpetual Doubt, and obscur'd the Benefits of Christ's Death; most of what they enjoin'd not being Worship commanded by God, but vain Repetitions of Prayers, Invocations of Saints, Pilgrimages, and other Things of this Nature, by which they

overturn'd the true Doctrine of Repentance; as to which, good Men for many Ages have desir'd a Reformation; whereas without Sophistication we preach the Truth of the Gospel concerning Repentance, that Men may understand how they are to return to Christ; how they may obtain Forgiveness, and what Works and Worship are pleasing to God: Here they repeat what they had said before, as to the Nature of Repentance and Faith, and their retaining the true Use of Confession and Absolution, which their Enemies had obscur'd, and made dubious, by taking away from the Church the Ministry of the Gospel, or the Power of the Keys; whereas they taught, that an Enumeration of all our Sins to the Priest was impossible, and not commanded of God, as *Chrysostome* says on the *Hebrews*, "Let us not only be persuaded that we have sin'd, and confess with our Mouths, but from the bottom of our Heart; and let us not only say, That we are Sinners in general, but reckon up our special Faults, not to betray our selves to the Publick, or to accuse our selves to others; but according to the Prophet, to lay open our Lives before God, and to confess our Sins to him. They add, That the Gloss in the Decrees concerning Repentance, *Distin.* 5. owns, That Confession was appointed by the Church, but not by the Scripture; and that most of the Doctors were of that Opinion. Then, as to Canonical Satisfactions, they condemn them as what we are not oblig'd to, and as Things of no Efficacy for obtaining Forgiveness. In the Ancient Church they say, It was the Custom to impose a Mule't upon those who return'd to the Church after having fallen; from whence those Canonical Satisfactions took their Rise; not that the Ancients thought that Ceremony an Expiation of the Fault, but only made use of it to deter others from offending; but the Unlearn'd did afterwards alledge, That those Satisfactions absolv'd Men from the Sin, and deliver'd them from the Pains of Hell and Purgatory: But we teach, say they, That the necessary Fruits of Repentance, are Obedience, the Fear of God, Faith, Love, Chastity, and an intire Renovation of the Mind.

Likewise, that Sins are frequently punish'd in this Life with Temporal Judgments, as in *David*, *Manasseh*, &c. and that those Punishments are mitigated by Good Works, and an Universal Repentance, as *Paul* teaches us, *If we judge our selves, we shall not be judged*; and thus God chang'd his Sentence against *Nimrod*, because of their Repentance.

Of the Difference of Meats, and other such Popish Traditions.

They say, in this Life there is need of Traditions, *i. e.* a Distinction of Places and Times, that all Things may be done with Order and Decency in the Church: Therefore the Church appoints the Times and Places for the Peoples assembling, and in those Civil Things has a Power of Tradition; but to this, Ignorant Men added superstitious Opinions without number, as *Augustine* and *Gerſon* formerly complain'd; therefore they found it necessary to teach the People what they should think of Humane Traditions, for it was not in vain that our Saviour, and the Apostles, spoke so frequently of such Traditions, and admonish'd the Church to be prudent in their Determinations about 'em; whereas of late Ignorant Men had taught, that Ecclesiastical Traditions deserv'd Forgiveness of Sin, and were necessary for Gospel Righteousness, and like, the *Levitical* Ceremonies under the Law, could not be omitted without Sin, even when such Omission occasion'd no Scandal, by which they ascrib'd the Benefits of Christ's Death to Men's own Works, though *Paul* cautions us against it with so much Severity.

2. By those Traditions they obscur'd the Commands of God, to which they prefer'd them, and made Christianity wholly to consist in the Observation of certain Holy-Days, Rites, Fasts, Habits, &c. to which they ascribe Christian Perfection, without insisting upon the Relative Duties of People of all sorts, by which they brought Men to doubt whether their Civil Vocations, Marriage, Magistracy, &c. were pleasing to God, and occasion'd many to desert their Civil Duties with the Stations

tions that God had plac'd them in, and to retire into Monasteries, because they thought that was more pleasing to God, and deserv'd Remission of Sins. 3. They tortur'd Men's Consciences, by urging the Necessity of those Traditions, which were so innumerable, that the most diligent Man alive could not observe them; which *Gerson* says occasioned many Men to despair, and to kill themselves. Thus the Priests and Divines spent their Time in collecting those Traditions, and making Commentaries upon them, wherein they could not agree, which more and more perplex'd Men's Consciences; whereas at the same time they did not teach them one Word concerning Free Grace, Faith, Hope, of the Cross of Christ, and of Comfort of Conscience under Temptations; and totally laid aside the Scripture, and useful Doctrine, which have frequently been complain'd of by good Men, who found themselves hinder'd by such Brawls about Traditions, in seeking after a more useful Knowledge. Therefore, say they, we found it necessary to teach the People what they ought to think of Humane Traditions; not that they had any Design to destroy Ecclesiastical Authority, to detract from the Dignity of Bishops, or to dissolve the good Order of the Church, but to reprehend the Jewish Opinions; for our Opinion concerning Humane Ceremonies is, 1. That if they be such as contradict the Command of God, they are not to be observ'd, as that concerning Celibacy, &c. 2. For other Ceremonies which are in their own Nature indifferent, as Fasts, Holidays, Difference of Habits, and the like, that they do not deserve Forgiveness of Sins, nor constitute Righteousness or Christian Perfection, but may be omitted, except in Case of Scandal: For this, they quote *Rom. 14. 17. For the Kingdom of God is not Meat and Drink, but Righteousness and Peace, and Joy in the Holy Ghost: Col. 2. 16. Let no Man therefore judge you in Meat or Drink, or in respect of a Holy Day, or in the New Moon, or of the Sabbath Day: Mart. 15. 11. Not that which goeth into the Mouth defileth a Man; where our Saviour excuses the Apostles for breaking the usual Tradition, and adds this memorable Sentence, In Vain do they worship me, teaching for Doctrines the Com-*

mandments of Men. Acts 15. 10, 11. Why do ye tempt God, to put a Yoke upon the Neck of the Disciples, which neither our Fathers nor we were able to bear; but we believe, that through the Grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, we shall be saved, even as they. So that the Apostle sharply rebukes them who burden Men's Consciences with such Observations, and calls it a tempting of God; and *1 Tim. 4. 3.* the Apostle calls forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from Meats, the Doctrines of Devils, because the Benefit of Christ's Death was ascrib'd to them, and they were enjoin'd as necessary; so that they wonder that Men were not mov'd with those Scriptures, but would still defend Superstitious Traditions: And here they say, That even Traditions concerning Things in their own Nature indifferent, as Meat, Clothes, &c. become impious, when they are enjoin'd as deserving Remission of Sin, as Things necessary, and as Parts of Worship or Duties; the immediate End of which is, that by them God may be honour'd: Therefore they thought it necessary, that such pestilent Opinions should be condemned by the Church; and for this Reason, unnecessary Humane Rites, as Difference of Meats, Monastical Habits, and such Superstitious Customs, were to be thrown off, as *Hezekiah* burnt the Brazen Serpent, when he saw it was worshipped by the People. But because Humane Society stands in need of Order, to that Political End some useful Ceremonies may be retained without Superstitious Opinions; i. e. That they be not looked upon as Worship, or necessary Things; That the People may know when they are to assemble in the Church, to Sermon, and Sacrament; and we likewise observe the Lord's Day, and other Holidays, and the usual Difference of Histories in our singing on the Day of our Lord's Birth, Easter, Ascension, Pentecost, &c. And our People love those Ceremonies the better, since their Consciences are deliver'd from Danger, and those unjust Impositions with which they were burden'd by the Monks and Canonists; and we teach them, that the End of those Institutions is Political, which right Interpretation makes 'em more grateful to moderate Minds: Therefore we say, That those Men are faulty who proudly

proudly and scandalously violate those Ceremonies, *i. e.* who hinder the Ministry of the Gospel.

This Liberty, say they, was not unknown to the Fathers; for which they quote *Irenæus*, who says, That Difference in Fast-Days did not dissolve Agreement in Faith. The *Tripartite History* gives many Instances of Difference in Rites, and adds this excellent *Epiphonema*, *It was not the Mind of the Apostles to establish any thing about Holidays, but to preach Godliness and a good Life.*

As to the Charge upon them, That they reject good Works, and the Mortification of the Flesh; they complain of it as a Slander, for they taught the Necessity of good Works, as we have heard before: And as to true Mortification of the Flesh, that consists in bearing the Cross, Dangers, Calamities, and Afflictions; and that Christians are to mortify the Flesh by Labour, Temperance, Meditation on Divine Things, and other suitable Exercises, lest by Sloth or Fulness of Bread they be tempted to Sin, and that their Minds may be the more fit for Spiritual Exercise; but they are not to look upon those Things to deserve Remission of Sin, or to be Satisfactory for it; and this Discipline ought to be perpetual, and not to be enjoin'd on all Men at certain Times. Concerning this Discipline, our Saviour says, *Luke 21. 34. And take heed to your selves, lest at any time your Hearts be over-charged with Surfeiting and Drunkenness, and the Cares of this Life. Likewise, This kind of Devil goeth not out but by Prayer and Fasting, Mark 9. 29. And Paul says, 1 Cor. 9. 27. I keep under my Body, and bring it into Subjection.* Therefore we do not condemn Fasting, but only Superstitious Opinions and Impositions on Men's Consciences about it.

Of Priests Marriage.

They say, That the Pope's Law about the Celibacy of the Clergy, has been the Fountain of greater Villany, Wickedness and Impurity, than can be expressed by Man; and being contrary to the Law of God, Nature, and the Gospel, as also to the Constitutions of ancient Synods, there is no need of much Dispute about it; and

therefore they request the Emperor to abolish that Tyrannical Law, by which the Clergy are more severely and cruelly punished for marrying, than for the greatest Crime, tho' this Doctrine be censur'd by the Apostle as the Doctrine of Devils; and therefore neither the Pope's Laws, or the Vows of Celibacy, are to be pleaded against it, since it hath given Occasion to such lustful Impurities, and other Villanies, as are enough to bring Judgments on the World; and that 'tis a miserable Spectacle when Princes, who ought to be the Representatives of God upon Earth, do not serve him, but the Fury of the Devil, by confirming horrid Sins, Idolatry, Lust, and unjust Cruelty.

Of Monastical Vows.

THEIR Doctrine concerning this, they say, will be better understood if the State of the Monasteries be consider'd, and how many Things are every Day committed in them against the Canons. In *Augustine's* Time, the Monasteries were Free Colleges; but when the Discipline was corrupted, Vows were added, and many other Observations and Impositions, contrary to the Canons, as if Discipline could have been restored by a Prison, which proved a Snare to People's Consciences, especially to Nuns, who being the weaker Sex, ought to have been more gently dealt with; and even tho' the Canons would have allow'd them a Liberty, both Sexes were compelled to stay in the Monasteries, tho' they were sensible that they could not keep their Vows. This has been complain'd of many Ages ago by good Men, when they saw Youth of both Sexes thrust into Monasteries meerly for a Livelihood, which occasioned many Scandals. Unto this, contrary to the Opinion of the first Monks, they added a superstitious Conceit, That those Vows oblig'd them as much as the Vow of Baptism; That this sort of Life deserv'd Remission of Sins, and Justification before God, more than observing his Commands, or the Rules of the Gospel; and at last came to say, That the Monastick Profession was better than Baptism, and deserv'd

serv'd more than the Office of Magistrates, Pastors, and others, who follow their lawful Vocations, as appears by their Books. Monasteries were formerly Schools of Religion, where the Scriptures and good Discipline was taught, and from whence Pastors and Bishops were chosen; but now 'tis known to be so much otherwise, that there was no need to insist upon it: Nor can we be charg'd, say they, with aggravating any thing, but only say this, that our Doctrine may the better be understood; which is, 1. That 'tis lawful to all Men, who have not the Gift of Continence, to marry, because Vows cannot annul the Commands and Ordinances of God; which is, that to avoid Fornication every Man should have his own Wife. 'Tis in vain for them to object their Vows; for the Canons teach, That in every Vow the Right of the Superior is excepted; therefore much less can those Vows bind against the Law of God; and 'tis known that the Popes have several times dispens'd with Vows, which proves that they judg'd there was an Equity necessary to be us'd in this Case: And the Canons rescinded all Vows made before 15 Years of Age, and some of them forbid them before Eighteen: And *Augustine* says plainly, That Marriage cannot be dissolv'd for such Causes. We likewise teach, say they, That those Vows are void, because all sorts of Worship chosen and appointed by Men, without the Command of God to deserve Remission of Sins and Justification, is Impious; as our Saviour says, *In vain do they Worship me by the Commandments of Men*; and Paul says, *Gal 5. 4. Whosoever of you are justified by the Law, ye are fallen from Grace, and Christ is become of none Effect to you.* They add many other Things, and particularly, That the Opinions of the Monks obscure the Precepts and true Worship of God, by teaching, That they are only in a State of Perfection, since Christian Perfection is to fear God, to believe that he is reconcil'd to us through Christ, to beg his Assistance in all the Duties of our Vocation, and to do good; but does not consist in Celibacy, Begging, or a sordid Habit; the teaching of which by the Monks, has occasion'd many People to forsake their Wives and

Children, their lawful Vocations, Possessions, and Publick Employments, as if those Things did not become Christians. So that *Gerson*, long ago, reprehended the Error of the Monks, and upbraided them with introducing a new Opinion; when in his Days they asserted, That the Monastical Life was a State of Perfection.

Of the Power of the Church.

There have been great Disputes, say they, concerning the Power of Bishops, in which some have very improperly join'd the Ecclesiastical Power with that of the Sword. From this confounding of the Two Powers, have proceeded many Wars and Commotions; while the Pope's relying on the Powers of the Keys, not only appointed new sorts of Worship, and impos'd on Mens Consciences by reserving of Cases and violent Excommunications, but also took upon them to dispose of Kingdoms and Empires, which was complain'd of long ago by pious learned Men. We, say they, for the Ease of Mens Consciences, found our selves oblig'd to show the Difference betwixt Temporal and Ecclesiastical Power, and to teach, That both of them are by the Command of God to be reverenc'd and honour'd, as the greatest Benefits which God has given to Men on Earth. We believe, that the Power of the Keys, or the Power of Bishops, is according to the Gospel, the Command of God, to preach the Gospel, remit and retain Sins, and Administer the Sacraments; for Christ sent out his Apostles with this Command, *Mark 16. 15. and John 20. 21, 22, 23.* This Power is only exercis'd in preaching the Gospel, and administering the Sacraments; therefore since the Ecclesiastical Power gives only Spiritual Things, and is exercis'd by the Ministry of the Word, it no more hinders the Political Administration than it does the Art of Singing, or any other Art; for the Political Administration has another Object than the Gospel. Magistracy does not defend our Minds; but our Bodies and Estates against Injuries; and restrains Men by the Sword and bodily Punishments, so as they may observe Civil Justice;

Justice; therefore the Two Power are not to be confounded, Church-men have nothing to do with the Magistrate's Office, to dispose of Kingdoms, to abrogate Laws, to deprive the Magistrate of Obedience, to hinder their Judgments in Civil Matters, or to prescribe Laws to Magistrates, as to Forms of Civil Government; as our Saviour say, *My Kingdom is not of this World, who made me a Judge, or a Divider over you?* And Paul says, Phil. 3. 20. *Our Conversation is in Heaven: And 2 Cor. 10. 4. The Weapons of our Warfare are not Carnal, but Mighty through God, to the pulling down of strong Holds, &c.*

If Bishops have Power of the Sword, they have it not as Bishops by the Command of the Gospel, but by Humane Law from Emperors and Kings, for the Administration of the Temporal Estates, which is quite different from their Ministerial Function. For according to the Gospel, Bishops have no Jurisdiction as Bishops; that is, those to whom is committed the Ministry of the Word and Sacraments; but to remit Sins, to examine the Doctrine, to reject such as is contrary to the Gospel, and to exclude Persons, who are openly wicked, from the Communion of the Church, without any Humane Power, but by the Word: And in that Case the Churches are to give Obedience according to the Divine Command, according to that of our Saviour, *He that hears you, hears me*; but if they command any thing contrary to the Gospel, they are not to obey, as we find, *Matth. 7. Gal. 1. 2 Cor. 13.* If they have any other Power or Jurisdiction in determining Causes of Matrimony or Tithes, &c. 'tis only by Humane Law: 'Tis also controverted, whether Bishops have any Right to appoint any Ceremonies in the Church, and of making Laws about Meats, Holy-days, Degrees or Orders of Ministers: Those who ascribe that Power to them, alledge that Scripture, *I have still many things to say to you, which now you cannot bear; but when the Spirit shall come, he will guide you into all Truth, John 16. 12, 13.* They alledge also the Example of the Apostles, who commanded to abstain from Blood and Things strangled, and the change of Sabbath into the Lord's Day; and of this

they boast much, because it was the Change of One of the Ten Commandments. But, as to the Question, we teach, That Bishops have no Power to appoint any thing contrary to the Gospel, as has been said already, and the Canons, *Distinct. 9.* say the same. Moreover, 'tis contrary to the Scripture to appoint or command Traditions, by the Observation of which we may deserve Remission of Sins, or make Satisfaction for them, for that is Derogatory to the Merits of our Saviour; for by this Means such a multitude of Traditions were brought into the Church, as overwhelm'd the Doctrine of Faith, &c.

Many Writers do likewise urge now-a-days, That the Worship of the *New Testament* ought to be like the *Levitical Service*, and that God has committed the ordering of this to the Apostles and Bishops; but they are deceiv'd by thinking that the Righteousness of the *New Testament* consists in the Observation of certain Rites, as it was under the Law; and hence they will have it, that such and such Meats defile us; that the not observing Canonical Hours is a mortal Sin, &c. That Sins in reserv'd Cases cannot be remitted, but by the Authority of him that reserv'd them; whereas the Canons speak only of the Reservation of Canonical Punishment, but not of the Reservation of the Fault: But whence have Bishops that Right of imposing Traditions upon the Churches to burden Mens Consciences? For we have clear Scripture against such Traditions, as are appointed either to deserve Remission of Sins, or as necessary for *New Testament* Righteousness, or to Salvation; for this they quote *Cor. 2. 16. Let no Man judge you in Meat, or in Drink, &c. And V. 20, 21, 22, 23. If you be dead with Christ from the Rudiments of the World, why, as though living in the World, are you subject to Ordinances? Touch not, taste not, handle not. Which are all to perish with the using, after the Commandments and Doctrines of Men. Which things indeed have a shew of Worship in Will-Worship and Humility, and neglecting of the Body, not in any Honour to the satisfying of the Flesh.* Titus likewise plainly forbids Traditions, and our giving any heed to Jewish Fables, and Commandments of Men, that turn from the Truth: And Christ, in the 15th of

of *Matthew*, says of those who insist on Traditions, *Let them alone, they are blind Leaders of the Blind*: And he disapproves such kind of Worship, when he says, *Every Plant that my Heavenly Father hath not planted, shall be rooted up.*

As to the Lord's Day, and such Rites, they say, That 'tis lawful to Bishops or Pastors to make such Orders, that Things may be done orderly in the Church, as *Paul* ordered Women to be cover'd in the Church; and that the Prophets or Interpreters should be heard in Order. Such Orders are necessary in the Church for the Preservation of Love and Peace, that all Things may be done in Order, and without Tumult; but so as People's Consciences be not burden'd with an Opinion, That such Things are necessary to Salvation, and that they sin when they act contrary, without Offence to others; for no Man will say, That it was a Sin for a Woman to appear in Publick with her Head uncover'd, if it did not give Offence to others.

Such, say they, is the Observation of the Lord's Day, *Easter*, *Pentecost*, and such Holidays and Rites; for they who judge that, by the Authority of the Church, the Lord's Day was instituted for the Sabbath as necessary, are deceived. The Scripture grants, That the Observation of the Sabbath is now at Liberty; for it teaches, That the *Mosaic* Ceremonies, after the Gospel was revealed, were not necessary: And yet, because it was needful to appoint a certain Day, that the People might know when to meet, it appears that the Church appointed the Lord's Day for that purpose, which for this Cause seems, to have been the more pleasing, that Men might have an Example of Christian Liberty, and know, that neither the Observation of the Sabbath, nor of another Day, was necessary.

There are prodigious Disputes concerning the Change of the Law, the Ceremonies of the New Law, the Change of the Sabbath; all which arise from a false Perswasion, That the Gospel-Worship must be like the *Levitical*; and that Christ committed to the Apostles and Bishops a Power to invent new Ceremonies necessary to Salvation. These Errors crept into the Church when the Righteousness of Faith was not clearly enough taught. Some alledge, That the

Observation of the Lord's Day is not positively of Divine Right, but in a certain Manner; and they appoint Holidays, so as it may be lawful to work on them: But these Disputes, say they, are nothing else but Snares to People's Consciences; and the Equity or Moderation of those Traditions can never be maintained, so long as the Opinion of their Necessity is inculcated. The Apostles commanded to abstain from Blood; yet those who do not observe that Command now, are not guilty of Sin, because the Apostles themselves were not willing to burden Men's Consciences with such a Servitude, but only forbid it for a Time, for avoiding of Scandal.

They add, That the Bishops might easily retain the People in lawful Obedience, did they not press them to observe such Traditions as they cannot in Conscience do. They say, they do not require that the Bishops, for the Sake of Concord, should sacrifice their own Honour, which yet were the Duty of good Pastors to do: They only require them to forbear their unjust Impositions, which are new, and contrary to the Custom of the Catholick Church; for many Humane Traditions have been chang'd in Time, as is plain from the Canons, without endangering the Unity of the Church: But if those Things cannot be obtained, they must rather obey God than Man. *Peter* forbids Bishops to Lord it over the Church; but they do not desire to take away their Power, but only request them to suffer the Gospel to be duly preached, and to release a few Observations that cannot be follow'd without Sin; but if they will not do it, they must be answerable to God for the Schism, which they occasion by their Obstinacy.

In the Conclusion, they say, these were the chief controverted Articles; and they could have mentioned many other Abuses, which for Brevity's Sake they omitted, and only insisted upon what they thought necessary, that it might be seen there was nothing received as to Doctrine or Ceremonies among them, which was contrary to Scripture, or the Catholick Church: And if any thing was wanting, they were ready to give the Emperor and the Diet a larger Information, God willing, according to the Scriptures.

We have been the larger in this Extract of the *Augsburg* Confession, to satisfy the Desires of some Gentlemen, who wanted a true Account of the Religion of the *Lutherans*, than which there is none more Authentick than this Confession, to which they still profess an Adherence; tho' it be generally known, that many of 'em now are of another Opinion as to Free-will. 'Tis likewise valuable as being the first Confession exhibited to the Emperor and Diet, with a Protestation by those who were first called *Protestants* in the Empire, which afterwards became a general Name to all those who separated from the Church of *Rome*: And tho' since they have come under different Denominations, yet their Doctrine is the same in the main with what's laid down in this Confession. It may also be of Use to shew the Opinion of those Noble Reformers as to several Points of Ceremonies and Government, about which we in these Nations have been so long and unhappily divided; which, tho' it cannot be decisive, as being humane, yet has its own Use, and if duly weigh'd, might be conducive to Moderation: But since, as we observ'd in the beginning of this Extract, that *Melancthon*, who wrote it, confess'd he did it in haste; and that the Publisher of this Edition of the *Harmony of Confessions* thought fit to add, for explaining it, the *Saxon*, *Wittenberg*, *Palatine*, and *Schismatic* Confessions, with the Reconciliation of those in *Poland* about the Supper of the Lord, who adher'd both to this and the *Helvetic* Confession: We shall afterwards give a brief Account of those Confessions, when we come to the respective Countries to which they belong, especially as to such Points wherein they differ from this, or explain it.

THEIR HISTORY.

THE *Germans* having no ancient Records of their own, the earliest Accounts we have of them is from the *Romans*, who inform us, That when they were over-stock'd with Inhabitants, they sent away their supernumerary People. The Invasion the *Cimbri* and *Eutones* made upon the *Romans* in the Days of *Marius* is very remarkable: They were reckoned to

be 500000 armed Men, with a proportionable Number of Women and Children. This vast Multitude carried Desolation along with 'em, and the *Romans* were afraid they would put an End to their Republick, which probably they might have done, their Numbers and Valour consider'd; but by dividing their Army into two Bodies, *Marius* had a more easy Victory over them; so that they say, in one Battle he kill'd 100000, and took 60000.

We have little remarkable of them in the *Roman* History till *Julius Caesar*, who, after he had subdued *Gaul*, thought it would be impossible to preserve his Conquests, unless he also subdued *Germany*. He was the first *Roman* General that pass'd the *Rhine*, and his Pretext was, That they refus'd to deliver up some *German* Cavalry that had escap'd from him in one of his Victories over the *Gauls*. The *Germans* told him, The *Rhine* was the Boundary of the *Roman* Empire, and that he had no Business in *Germany*; upon which *Caesar* made a Bridge over the *Rhine* in 10 Days, but found them so well intrench'd, that he thought not fit to attack them, repass'd the *Rhine*, and broke his Bridge, lest the *Germans* should follow him. In another Expedition he defeated them, and oblig'd some of them to be his Subjects and Allies, tho' the Victory was dear bought.

Augustus continued the Design of conquering *Germany*, and *Tiberius* his General made some Progress in it; but the *Roman* Glory was considerably obscured by *Arminius*, a mortal Enemy to the *Romans*, and a zealous Defender of the Liberty of his Country, who surpris'd 3 *Roman* Legions under *Varus*, and cut them in Pieces; which Disgrace touch'd *Augustus* so sensibly, that he was often heard to cry out like a Mad-Man, *Varus, Restore me my Legions*. The famous *Germanicus* reveng'd this Loss by a complete Victory over the *Germans*, and made so great a Progress in *Germany*, that the Emperor *Tiberius*, who was suspicious, thought it not safe to continue him as General in this War, for the Governors of this Province always made a great Figure; so that *Lentulus* *Genulicus*, who commanded in *Germany* after *Germanicus*, when *Tiberius* recall'd him, because he was a Creature of *Sejanus*, then in Disgrace, wrote to the Emperor,

peror, That the *Roman Empire* might content him; but as for himself, he would subsist for no other General to come in his room.

After the Death of the brave *Arminius*, who was murder'd by his own Confidants for affecting a Monarchy, the *Romans* made greater Advances in *Germany*; but every Victory cost them dear; they were forc'd to dispute every Advantage they gain'd, and found it more difficult to keep their old Conquests, than to make new ones; for this Nation was so fond of Liberty, that they always revolted upon the least Opportunity. This made many of the Emperors take it for a Maxim, with Regard to *Germany*, Never to extend their Conquests beyond the *Danube*, and to hinder them from becoming too powerful on the S. of that River. The *Germans* were formerly very numerous, as appears by the vast Numbers of them cut off in Battles; for the Emperor *Probus* kill'd in several Encounters above 400000 of them, and oblig'd Nine of their Kings to come and beg Peace of him on very disadvantageous Terms. He was a great Enemy to the *Germans*, design'd to make that Country a Consular Province, and to build Forts every where to curb 'em, as he had already done upon the *Rhine*, the *Main*, and the *Neckar*; but Death prevented him.

The Emperor *Valentinian* resolv'd to subdue the *Quadi*, and to this End order'd a Citadel to be built in their Country. They complain'd of it; upon which the Work was discontinued for some time. Another Governor, who was entrusted with this Work, invited *Gabinus*, the Leading-Man of that Country, to an Entertainment, and kill'd him. The *Quadi*, enrag'd at this treacherous Action, made Reprisals upon the *Romans*, pass'd the *Danube*, and committed great Ravages in their Dominions. *Valentinian*, to revenge this, enter'd their Country, destroy'd all wherever he came with Fire and Sword, and swore he would exterminate them. After this, they sent Deputies to propose a Peace; but *Valentinian* was so enrag'd at the Sight of them, that by the Violence of his Passion he broke a Vein, which occasion'd such an Effusion of Blood, that it chok'd him.

After this, the *Romans* laid aside all Thoughts of conquering *Germany*; but the

Goths, with other *German Nations*, and Northern People, invaded *Italy* in their Turn, ruin'd the *Roman Empire*, settled themselves in the several Parts of it, (which we shall give an Account of, when we come to treat of the *Roman Emperors*) where they establish'd Limited Governments, with such Regulations as were proper to hinder Oppression and Arbitrary Power; for the *Roman Arms* had never prevailed so much among them, as to unsettle their former Methods of Government. Their being divided however into so many Governments, made it easier for the *Franks*, under the Kings of the *Merovingian Family*, to invade and reduce several of them; and at last *Charlemain* reduc'd all *Germany*.

This *Charles* was Son to *Pipin*, K. of *France*, and anointed and crown'd Emperor by Pope *Leo III.* on *Christmas-Day*, A. C. 800. He had before this rescued *Italy* from the Tyranny of the *Lombards*, took their King *Desiderius*, and annex'd his Dominions to the Kingdom of the *Franks*. Much about this Time ended his 30 Years War with the *Saxons*, then the most powerful People of *Germany*. His Pretence was, to oblige them to embrace Christianity; for wherever his Arms reach'd, he establish'd it, and erected Schools for that purpose. He had the Title of *Great*, both on Account of his Valour and Piety. He was at the same time Master of *Germany*, *France*, *Italy*, and Part of *Spain*. Most of the Provinces he committed to the Care of Governors, called *Marc-Graves*; but the *Saxons* were allow'd a greater Share of their ancient Liberty than the rest; and to keep them in Obedience, he founded many Episcopal Sees among 'em, that by their Influence they might be civiliz'd. *Charles* died in 814, in the 72d Year of his Age, and was buried at *Aix la Chapelle*, the chief Place of his Residence. He was succeeded by his Son

Lewis, surnam'd the *Godly*, who was crown'd by Pope *Stephen IV.* at *Rheims* in *France*. He order'd the Bible to be translated into the *Saxon*, and Copies of it to be distributed among the Commonalty. He drove the *Saracens* from *Italy*, and worsted his Nephew *Bernard*, who design'd to make himself King of that Country: put out his Eyes, with those of some of his Followers, and condemn'd

tcondemn'd 'em to a Monastery. *Lewis* had three Sons by his Wife *Irmengarde*, viz. *Lotharius*, *Lewis*, and *Charles*. They rebell'd against their Father, took him Prisoner, and shut him up in a Monastery; but most of his Subjects taking Arms to rescue him, *Lewis* submitted to his Father, and begg'd Pardon. When the Emperor had got his Liberty, he marched with his own and his Son *Lewis's* Forces against *Lotharius*, who had been deepest in the Rebellion, and died on his Way at *Mentz*, in the 27th Year of his Reign, and 64th of his Age, in 840.

He was succeeded by *Lotharius*, his eldest Son, in the whole Empire; for he turn'd his Brethren out of the Shares left them by their Father. *Lewis*, his Second Brother, had *Germany* for his Share, as far as it extends on this Side the *Rhine*; as also some Countries on the other Side, where the Vineyards were; so that he was the first that had *Germany* as an Independent Kingdom, says *Puffendorff*. *Lewis*, the youngest Brother, had *France*. *Lotharius* annex'd *Austrasia* to the German Empire, which from him was called in *High-Dutch*, *Loth-Reich*; and by the *French*, *Lot-Regne*, i. e. *Lotharius's* Kingdom, now *Lorraine*. After he reign'd 15 Years, he abdicated the Government, and retir'd to a Monastery at *Treves*. In his Reign was the Female Pope *Joan*, under the Name of *John VIII.* as is evident from the concurring Testimonies of the Historians of that Age.

Lewis II. succeeded in 855, upon his Father's Resignation: He was a Prince of wonderful Learning and Piety. He conquer'd and converted the *Slavonians*: He defended *Italy* from the Inroads of the *Saracens*, and made good Provision for poor Widows and Orphans. He had a great Quarrel with the Court of *Rome* for electing a Pope without his Consent. He reign'd 19 Years and 10 Months.

Charles the Bald, his Nephew, succeeded in 875. He was also King of *France*, but so mean Spirited, that he was cajol'd by the Promises and Money of Pope *John IX.* to come to *Rome* for his Coronation, and receive the Imperial Scepter from his Hand. He reign'd two Years, and was poison'd by one *Zedeckias*, a Jewish Physician.

In 878, *Ludovicus Balbus* succeeded his

Father *Charles*; but died in a Year and half after, and left the Crown to

Charles III. surnam'd the *Good*, from his Bulk and Fatness. By the Death of his two Brothers, all *Germany*, *France* and *Italy*, fell to him. He was the first that added the Year of our Lord to that of his Reign in publick Deeds. He became odious to his Subjects upon many Accounts, but chiefly because he made a dishonourable Peace with the *Normans*, and quitted to 'em that Part of *France* still called *Normandy*. His Nobles depos'd him, and he died miserably in a poor Village in *Swabia*.

In 888, *Arnulph*, natural Son to *Carloman* Duke of *Carinthia*, and King of *Bavaria*, was elected instead of *Charles*. In the beginning of his Reign, he had great Struggles for the Imperial Title with *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuli*, and *Guido* Duke of *Spoleto*, whom he defeated. He also stormed and took *Rome*; but was poison'd there by *Guido's* Wife, and died in great Misery, being eat up of Lice which the Poison bred in his Body.

In 900, his Son *Lewis IV.* a Child, was elected. He had constant War with the *Hungarians*, and was frequently defeated by 'em; so that a great Part of the German Nobility was cut off, which was chiefly owing to their own Divisions. He died unfortunate, and with him the Family of *Charles the Great* was extinguish'd. During his Reign, the Pope set up one *Lewis* for Emperor in *Italy*, whom *Berengarius* King of *Lombardy* took Prisoner, and put out his Eyes.

In 912, after the Death of *Lewis IV.* the Princes of *Germany* proffer'd the Imperial Crown to *Otto D.* of *Saxony*, the wisest Prince and best Soldier of his Time; but he declin'd it, because of his Age, and gave his Interest to *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, who was chosen. In his Time the *Hungarians* ravag'd *Saxony*, *Thuringia*, *Franconia*, *Lorraine*, and *Alsace*, and forc'd him to a dishonourable Peace. This Conduct having disoblig'd many of the Princes, they made War upon him, and the Heir of *Saxony*, Duke *Otto's* Son, was his greatest and most successful Enemy; yet by his Last Will he left the Empire to him for his Merit; and thus it was translated from the *Carolingian* Family

mily to the Saxons. In his Reign the Dukes of Lorraine, Swabia, and Bavaria, endeavour'd to make their Possessions Hereditary, which he could not prevent.

In 919, Henry of Saxony, surnam'd the *Faulconer*, because he delighted in Fowling, was proclaimed Emperor. The Pope profess'd to anoint and consecrate him; but he refus'd it, saying, *He was Emperor by the Providence of God, and the Consent of his People, which gave him a sufficient Title; and they that thought that not good enough, might go to Rome for a better.* He bravely defended his Subjects from the Hungarians, who made a great Inroad, and demanded a Yearly Tribute, for which he sent them, by way of Ridicule, a mangy Dog, defeated them near *Mersburg*, and slew 80000 of them, for which he was called *Pater Patrie*, the Father of his Country. In his Reign, the greatest Part of the Cities on the *Rhine* were either built or wall'd. He conquer'd the Serbes and Vandals, a Sarmatick Nation, who were possess'd of a great Tract of Land on the River *Elbe*. He drove them out of *Misnia*, *Lusatia*, and the Marquitate of *Brandenburg*. He was the first that instituted Sports and Turnaments; and order'd, that every 9th Boor should remove his Family into a City, which should be maintained by the Third of the Corn and Hay round it. He died of an Apoplexy in his Journey to *Italy*, after he had reign'd 7 Years and 6 Months.

In 936, his Son *Otho*, surnam'd the *Great*, succeeded. He had all the Princely Qualifications of his Father, compell'd *Harald* King of *Denmark* to own his Supremacy, and embrace Christianity, subdued the *Sclavonians* and *Bohemians*, and forc'd *Boleslaw*, the Prince of the latter, to turn Christian. He was engaged in Civil Wars with many Princes, especially with those who pretended to be of the Race of *Charles the Great*, and laid Claim to the Imperial Crown. He defeated the Hungarians near *Augsburg*; after which they never attempt'd any more IncurSIONS. There had been great Confusions in *Italy* for a long time; for sometimes one, sometimes another, usurp'd the Sovereignty there, which oblig'd *Otho* to march his Troops thither, and possess himself of that Country. He married the Widow of *Lotharius* King of *Lom-*

bardy, says the *Atlas Historique*, and brought the Tyrant *Berengarius* to submit; but he revolted again during the Civil Wars of *Germany*, over-run *Italy*, and distressed Pope *John XII.* and the City of *Rome* so, as they sent to *Otho* for Relief, who having deliver'd them from the Tyrant, they crown'd *Otho* King of *Italy* with the Iron Crown at *Milan*, proclaim'd him Emperor at *Rome*, forfeited *Berengarius* and his Posterity, and the Pope and Senate swore Fealty to the Emperor, on Condition of his preserving the Rights of the Holy See: After which Time, the Imperial Dignity and Crown of *Italy* were reckon'd Consequences of being Kings of *Germany*. But the Pope soon after conspired with *Albert*, Son to *Berengarius*, against him; and the Emperor marching again into *Italy*, the Pope and *Albert* fled to *Ostia*; the Romans renew'd their Oath of Fealty, and promis'd never to elect a Pope without the Consent of him and his Son. The Clergy and People pray'd him to call a Council, where *John XII.* was deposed, and *Leo VIII.* chose, who in the *Lateral* Council, where *Bonnet*, whom the Romans had perfidiously chosen afterwards, was deposed, confirmed to *Otho*, King of the Germans, and his Successors, the Right of choosing the Pope, as *Adrian* had granted to *Charlemain*, and to invest the Bishops in his Dominions. *Otho* returning to *Germany*, was obliged to a new Expedition to punish the *Italians* for their Revolt, restor'd Pope *John XIII.* chas'd the Greeks out of *Italy*, for the Treachery of *Nicephorus Phocas* their Emperor; and retiring to *Germany*, died at *Mersburg*, May 7. 974. in the 37th Year of his Reign, and 12th of his Empire. *Puffendorf* observes, That the frequent Revolts of the *Italians* was occasioned by his having no Strengths in *Italy*, and little Revenues there, except Free Quarters for his Army. Christening of Bells began in this Emperor's Reign.

His Son *Otho II.* with whom he shar'd his Government, succeeded. The Duke of *Bavaria*, his Cousin, instigated by some Bishops, was proclaimed Emperor at *Ratisbon*; but soon reduced: After which, *Otho* made War on *Lotharius* King of *France*, who invaded *Lorraine*, and defeated him near *Aix la Chapelle*. *Otho* afterwards enter'd *France*, and ravag'd the Neighbourhood of *Paris* with

with a potent Army; but was defeated in his Return, and had Advice at the same time, that the *Greeks* and *Saracens* had subdued Part of *Italy*, on which he made a Peace with *Lotharius*, by which he recover'd *Lorraine*. *Otho* march'd into *Italy*, and enter'd *Rome*; but having murder'd their Chief Men and Magistrates, whom he invited to a Feast in the *Vatican*, the *Italians* abhorring this Cruelty and Treachery, abandon'd him at the Battle of *Basentelle*; so that his Army was routed, and he himself escaping in a Vessel, was taken by Pyrates, from whom he got away by meer Chance; and as he was assembling an Army to retrieve his Disgrace, he died at *Rome*, either of Grief, or by the Wound of a poison'd Arrow, that had never been well cur'd, the 8th of December, 983. in the 10th Year of his Reign.

His Son *Otho III.* succeeded at 10 Years of Age, tho his Uncle the Duke of *Bavaria* was his Rival. The Archbishops of *Mentz* and *Cologne* were his Tutors, and *Gerbert*, afterwards Pope *Silvester II.* his Preceptor. *Crescentius*, Consul of *Rome*, made *Italy* to revolt some time after; upon which the Emperor march'd against him, reduced the Country, and took him in *Adrian's* Tower, now the Castle of *St. Angelo*; and Pope *John XV.* dying, made his Cousin *Bruno* of *Saxony* Pope, by the Name of *Gregory V.* at whose Request he pardon'd *Crescentius*, who, after his Return to *Germany*, design'd to make himself absolute at *Rome*, under Pretence of assisting the *Romans* to recover their Liberty. This oblig'd *Otho* to march thither with an Army: He besieg'd *Rome*, which surrender'd, and *Crescentius* was thrown Head-long from a Rampart. *Gregory XV.* being dead, *Otho* set up his Preceptor *Gerbert* in his room, and renew'd the Privileges which *Charlemain* had granted to the See. After this, *Otho* return'd to *Germany*, went in Pilgrimage to *Poland* to see the Corps of *St. Adalbert*, and erected the Duchy of *Poland* into a Kingdom. In his Return the Pope sent him Word, That the *Saracens* had taken *Capua*, in Correspondence with the *Romans*, who were grown weary of the *German* Government. This oblig'd him to repass into *Italy*, where he soon reduced the *Saracens*; but trusting too much to the *Romans*, who

had again submitted, and entering the City with a small Retinue, they besieg'd him in his Palace, from whence the Duke of *Bavaria* and Marquis of *Herraria* contriv'd his Escape, while they amus'd the People with Terms of Accommodation. Upon this he re-enter'd the City with his Army, and punish'd the Mutineers severely: After which, as he was returning to *Germany* to quell a Party that was forming against him, he died of Convulsions, occasion'd by Poison, in *January* 1002, in the 32d Year of his Age, and 19th of his Reign, without Issue. *Payfendorff* says, he was poison'd by a Pair of Gloves presented him by *Crescentius's* Widow, whom *Dr. Nicholson* thinks he had us'd as a Concubine, and flatter'd her with Hopes of Marriage; but being disappointed, she took that Way of Revenge. Some say, he was the first who appointed the Emperor to be chosen by the Majority of Seven Electors.

His Cousin *Henry II. D* of *Bavaria*, was chosen in his Place, according to his dying Request. The Marquis of *Turen*, perswaded the *Italians* to revolt, and defeated *Henry's* Army, commanded by the Duke of *Saxony*, at the Foot of the *Alps*; but *Henry* defeated him next Year, and was crown'd at *Pavia*. The *Poles* enter'd *Germany* during his Absence; but upon his Return, he forc'd 'em home. After this, he applied himself to make good Laws, to reform Abuses, to establish Bishopricks, and other Religious Foundations, and to enrich the Clergy. His Friends were angry at this, alledging, he gave his Riches to those who would make no good Use of them; and the Duke of *Bavaria* taking Arms against him, was subdued; but pardon'd and restor'd. Pope *Benet VIII.* implor'd his Assistance against those who had chosen the Anti-Pope *Gregory VI.* whose Party abandon'd him, and recall'd *Benet*, upon the Emperor's defeating the Rebels. Near *Verona* he obtain'd a second Victory over *Arduin*, and went to *Rome*, where he was crown'd by the Pope, confirm'd all the Privileges of his See, reserving only the Sovereignty of *Rome*, and the Power of sending Deputies thither to receive the Complaints of the People. He restored them the Privilege of choosing the Popes, allow'd them the Liberty to be consecrated before they swore Fealty to the

Impe-

Imperial Officers, and return'd to Germany; but was soon recall'd, defeated the Greeks, who had invaded Italy, chas'd them out of the Country, and in his Return had an Interview with Robert King of France, at the Confluence of the *Chier* and the *Maese*, where they made a League. He died the 17th of July, 1024. in the 52d Year of his Age, and 22d of his Reign, without Issue. Dr. *Nicholson* says, he agreed with his Empress *Gunegonda*, that both of them should preserve their Chastity; and upon Suspicion of her Fidelity, made her purge herself by the Fiery Ordell, which she passed without Hurt, if we may believe the Legendaries. *Puffendorf* tells us, That *Echert* Landgrave of *Hesse* contended with him for the Crown, but lost his Life in the Quarrel: That he subdued *Boleslaus* K. of Poland; and for his Munificence to the Clergy, was made a Saint. He is also called the Apostle of Hungary, because he thoroughly converted that Nation; and he defeated the *Wendish* Armies, who over-ran much of Germany.

The Duke of *Francia* *Conrad* the *Salique*, so call'd, either because his Mother was a French Woman of *Chamfermain's* Posterity, or because he liv'd according to the *Salique* Law, being recommended by Henry on his Death-bed, succeeded, tho' oppos'd by his Cousin *Conrad* the Younger. The Saxon Princes being angry that the Empire went from their Family, rais'd a War, which issued at last in the Ruin of both the Families. *Conrad* however subdued the Malecontents, went into Italy, accompanied by Prince Henry his Son, *Rodolph* King of *Burgundy*, and *Canute* the Great King of *Denmark*. He defeated the Rebels who oppos'd his Passage through the *Alps*; was crown'd King of Italy at Milan; and Emperor at Rome. While he was there, several Princes of the Empire took Arms to depose him. Upon his Return, he defeated them, pardoned some, and forfeited others. He also routed the *Frisians*, who had invaded his Country; and he acquir'd the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which *Rodolph* III. Uncle to the Empress, had left to her Son Prince Henry, and defeated and kill'd *Endis* Count of *Champagne*; Nephew to *Rodolph* by his Sister, who claim'd it as nearest of Kin. He routed the *Lombards*, who had rebelled, quieted all

Italy, turn'd out *Pandolph* the Tyrant of *Capua*, and gave it the Prince of *Salerno*. He died at *Utrecht* the 4th of June, 1039. in the 15th Year of his Reign. *Puffendorf* says, he was also very successful against the *Poles* and *Sclavonians*. Other Historians give him this Character, That he was quick in Council, bold in Execution, belov'd by the Princes, the Darling of the People, and the Welfare of the Commonwealth. He made a Law, That no Prince of the Empire should invade any Province of it on Pain of Death.

His Son Henry III. surnamed the Black, succeeded, being Crown'd King of Germany 10 Years before by Consent of the States. He defeated and took the King of *Bohemia*, who refus'd to own the Sovereignty of the Empire, and releas'd him upon swearing Fealty, and paying his Arrears of Tribute. He routed the *Hungarians*, who assisted the *Bohemians*, restor'd their King *Peter*, and dethron'd the Usurper they had set up in his stead. Having Peace at home, he endeavour'd to procure the like to the Church, then plagu'd with three Anti-Popes, *Benedict*, who resided at *St. John de Lateran*; *Silvester*, at *St. Peter's*; and *John*, at *St. Mary Major*. *Gratian*, a Priest, got them all three to renounce for Money, and was chosen himself by the Name of *Gregory VI.* but his Election not being Canonical, the Emperor prevail'd with him to resign voluntarily at the Council of *Sutri*, having a Mind to recover the Right of Election himself. He thereupon assembled the Clergy, Senate, and People, in *St. Peter's* Church, and nam'd his own Chancellor *Suidger*, Bishop of *Bamberg*, whom they approved, and he was consecrated by the Name of *Clement II.* He afterwards Crown'd the Emperor, who assisted in a Council for abolishing Simony, the common Plague of the Church; and *Clement* died at *Bamberg* 9 Months after *Benedict IX.* who repented his having dispos'd himself, invaded the Chair; but was oblig'd to give Way to *Popo* Bishop of *Brescia*, whom the Emperor got elected by the Name of *Damianus II.* *Popo* reign'd but 24 Days, and *Benedict* resum'd the Chair; but being odious for his scandalous Life, the Clergy and People sent Deputies to the Emperor, who in an Assembly at *Worms* nam'd *Brando* of *Alsace*, Bishop of *Toul*, his Cousin, to be Pope in *Brando*'s Way to Rome, being per-

swaded by *Hildebrand*, Prior of *Cusi*, that his Election was not Canonical, because it did not belong to the Emperor, but to the Clergy, Senate and People, to chuse him freely, he went to *Rome* without any Marks of his Dignity; which Humility pleas'd the *Romans* so much, that they chose him unanimously. In the mean time the Emperor made War on *Godfrey the Bold*, Duke of *Neher-Lorraine*, who took Arms against him, for depriving him of *Upper-Lorraine*, in which his Father was invested by *Conrad the Salique*; but the Pope reconcil'd them. *Godfrey* dissembled on his Part; therefore to spite the Emperor, and to make him jealous, he married his Sister *Beatrice*, who was the Marquis of *Hebruria's* Widow, without his Consent: Upon this, *Henry* went with an Army, and took her from him, lest she should have conspired with her Husband to deprive him of the Crown of *Italy*; which so much enraged *Godfrey*, that he engaged his Cousin *Baldwin* of *Lisfe*, Count of *Flanders*, to join with him against the Emperor, who died some Time after in *Saxony*, the 9th of *October*, 1056. in the 31st Year of his Age, and 18th of his Reign, leaving several Children by his second Wife *Agnes*, Daughter to *William* Duke of *Aquitain*. Dr. *Nicholson* says, he renewed the old Law, That no Pope should be created without the Consent of the Emperor.

Henry IV. his Son, succeeded. His Reign was long and unfortunate. He was but Six Years of Age when he came to the Crown, and those entrusted with his Education neglected it. In his Minority, says *Puffendorf*, Church-men purchas'd Benefices at Under-Rates, and without Regard to Merit, which did the Empire much Mischief. When he came of Age, he resolv'd to make them give up those Purchases, which brought upon him the Hatred of the Clergy. The *Saxons* were his great Enemies, because he built Forts to bridle them, and seldom employ'd them in Offices. He communicated his Resolutions to the Princes of the Empire but rarely, and was managed by Favourites of mean Birth. On this Account the *Saxons* made a long War upon him; but he vanquish'd them at last. Pope *Hildebrand* or *Gregory VII.* gave him more Trouble than all his other Enemies. This Pope and his Predecessors were vex'd that they and the

Clergy should be subject to the Emperor; and *Hildebrand* thought it the fittest Time to embroil his Affairs when he was in War with the *Saxons*, and hated by most of his Princes. Upon this the Pope made a Decree, That it was not in the Power of the Emperor, or of any Secular Prince, to dispose of Church Benefices, nor give Investiture of Bishopricks; and that it belong'd only to the Pope. He also summon'd the Emperor to appear at *Rome*, to answer for his Male-Administrations, on Pain of Excommunication. On the other hand, the Emperor declar'd the Pope unworthy of that Post, and design'd to depose him. Upon this, the Pope excommunicated him, and freed his Subjects from their Allegiance, which in those Times of Ignorance and Bigotry prov'd fatal to the Emperor, destroy'd his Authority at once, and reduc'd him to great Extremities; for the greatest Part of the Princes assembled at *Treves*, where they depos'd *Henry*; but left the Execution of the Sentence to the Pope's Pleasure. So that to procure the Pope's Pardon, the Emperor made a Journey to *Italy* in the midst of Winter; and when he arriv'd at *Canusio*, he consented to the Penance of staying there 3 Days in a sharp Winter bare-footed, with his Wife and Son in the like Posture, in a coarse Woollen Habit, in the outer Court, and in an humble Manner to beg the Pope's Pardon and Absolution, which at last he obtain'd: But this mean Behaviour made him despicable to his Subjects; upon which he endeavour'd to recover his Reputation, and reduce the Rebels in *Italy* to Obedience. To prevent this, many of the Princes of *Germany*, by the Pope's Instigation, elected *Rudolph* Duke of *Schwaben* Emperor, to whom the Pope sent an Imperial Crown, with this Inscription:

Petra dedit Petro, Petrus Diadema Rudolpho.

*The Rock this Crown to Peter gave,
And Peter gives it Ralph his Slave.*

But the *Bavarians*, *Franconians*, and the Countries adjacent to the *Rhine*, remained faithful to *Henry*. Thus a bloody War ensued, wherein *Rudolph* and the *Saxons* were vanquish'd in two Battles, and in the third *Rudolph* lost his Life. After this, *Henry* conven'd

ven'd an Assembly of Bishops, in which *Hildebrand* was depos'd, and the Anti-Pope *Clement III.* was elected. The Emperor took *Rome*, and banish'd *Hildebrand*: But the *Saxons* continued in their Rebellion, and *Hildebrand* a second time excommunicated the Emperor, set up *Herman* Duke of *Luxemburg* in his stead, and after his Death *Ecbert* Marquis of *Saxony*. At last he stirr'd up the Emperor's Son *Henry* against his Father, whom he met, and deceitfully begg'd his Pardon; upon which the Emperor disbanded his Forces, and was treacherously made Prisoner and depos'd, in his Journey to the Diet at *Mentz*, with a small Retinue. He died soon after in great Misery, and so poor, that he begg'd a Prebendary of the Bishop of *Spires*, in the Church which he himself had built and endow'd, which was deny'd him. He reign'd 50 Years, during which he is said to have fought 66 great Battles, and generally obtain'd the Victory; which is more, as *Dr. Nicholson* observes, than *Marcius* *Marcellus*, *Julius* *Cæsar*, or any other Roman General, could boast of.

In 1106, he was succeeded by his Son *Henry V.* who imitated his Father, in maintaining the Imperial Power against the Incroachments of the Pope. After he had settled Affairs in *Germany*, he marched an Army to *Rome*, to recover the Emperor's Right in nominating the Popes, and also to be crown'd there. Upon this, Pope *Paschal II.* rais'd a great Tumult at *Rome*, in which the Emperor was so closely beset, that he was obliged to fight for his own Safety; and having dispers'd the Mob, made the Pope Prisoner, forc'd him to grant his Demands, and to confirm the Agreement with solemn Oaths and Excommunications; but as soon as the Emperor retir'd, the Pope declar'd the Agreement void, and stirr'd up the *Saxons* and Bishops of *Germany* against him, with whom he had a tedious War; and seeing at last that there was no other Way to end those Broils, he renounc'd his Right to the Investiture of Bishops in a Diet at *Worms*. This very much lessen'd the Emperor's Power, and exalted that of the Pope. Some Historians observe, That at his Coronation, Part of his Sword was melted with a Flash of Lightning, tho' the Scabbard was untouch'd. He reign'd 19

Years, died without Issue, and was buried at *Spires*.

Lotharius Duke of *Saxony* succeeded in 1125. He had *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, and *Frederick* Duke of *Swabia*, for his Rivals; but oblig'd them to submit after a long War. The *Atlas Historique* says, This War was concluded by the Prudence of *St. Bernard*; after which the Emperor carried Pope *Innocent II.* with him, establish'd him in the Chair, and was crown'd by him. He return'd to *Germany*, suppress'd a Rebellion in *Bohemia*, and defeated *Magnus* King of *Denmark*. He marched again into *Italy*, and restor'd Pope *Innocent*, who had been chased from *Rome* by the Anti-Pope *Anaclet*, with the Assistance of *Roger* of *Sicily* and the *Normans*; and having quieted that Country, he died in a Village on the *Alps* as he returned, the 30th of *September*, 1137, in the 13th Year of his Reign, leaving two Daughters, who were married to the Duke of *Bavaria* and the Landgrave of *Thuringia*. *Dr. Nicholson* says, he restor'd the Civil Law in *Germany*, after it had been banish'd from thence 500 Years.

Conrad III. Duke of *Schwaben*, *Lotharius's* Sister's Son, was chosen about 4 Months after at *Coblentz*. His Election was oppos'd by *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, and his Brother *Wulff*, which occasioned great Confusion and Blood; but they being at last subdued, and Peace establish'd, he undertook a Croisade into the *Holy Land*, where he was in great Dangers; for he was obliged to fight his Way through the *Saracens* before he could reach *Jerusalem*, where he lost the greatest Part of his Army, by the Treachery of the *Greeks*, without doing any thing considerable. This obliged him to return home. He died the 15th of *February*, 1152, in the 13th Year of his Reign, as he designed to march into *Italy*. He is said to have been the first Emperor that was elected by the Seven Electors. In his Reign, *Gratian*, a *Benedictine* Monk, made a Collection of the Canon Law, which was afterwards taught in the Universities of *Germany*.

Frederick I. Duke of *Swabia*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, because of his Red Beard, succeeded. His Election was chiefly promoted because a *Gibelin* by his Father, and a *Guelf*

by his Mother, that he might reunite those two potent Families, which had so long disturbed the Peace of Germany. He was one of the greatest Princes ever Germany had, and bravely maintain'd the Rights and Grandeur of the Empire. He supported the Archbishop of *Magdebourg* against Pope *Eugene III.* and reduc'd the Towns of *Lombardy* that endeavoured to form themselves into Republicks in the Reign of *Lotharius*. He went to *Rome*, and was crown'd by Pope *Adrian IV.* whom he carried thither. The Romans being angry that they had no Share in the Ceremony, they besieged the Pope in the *Vatican*, because they thought he occasioned it; but the Emperor rescued and carried him to *Tivoli*. On his Return, he agreed the Quarrel betwixt the Archbishop of *Mentz* and *Herman* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, who being the Aggressor, was sentenced to carry a Dog on his Shoulders from County to County; for Grief of which he died. *Frederick* assembled the States of the Empire at *Besancon*, where he received a haughty Letter from the Pope, intimating as if he had received the Sovereignty from him; upon which the Emperor and the States were so offended, that they commanded the Legates immediately to depart the Empire. The Pope dreading the Consequences, wrote another Letter, explaining the former, viz. That by the Word *Benefice*, he did not mean that the Emperor received the Crown from him as a Fief, but only that he reckoned his crowning him as a good Deed, which pleased the Emperor; but he soon had a greater Quarrel with the Pope, who could not bear that the Emperor should demand an Oath and Homage from all the Feudatories of the Empire, Ecclesiasticks as well as Seculars, and confirm'd them in their Possessions. The Pope sent 4 Cardinals to complain of it; but the Emperor maintain'd his Right, and offered to refer the Matter to Arbitrators, or otherwise to treat with the Senate of *Rome* about it. This provok'd the Pope, who look'd upon it as an Impachment of his Authority, and design'd to have excommunicated the Emperor for it; but his Death prevented it. Most of the Cardinals following *William the Wicked*, K. of *Sicily*, chose the Cardinal of *St. Mark*,

by the Name of *Alexander III.* but the Emperor's Party chose the Cardinal of *St. Cecilia*, by the Name of *Victor IV.* and the Emperor got his Election confirmed by the Council of *Pavia*. The Kings of *France*, *England*, *Sicily*, *Jerusalem*, *Hungary*, and *Denmark*, adhered to the former; but *Germany* and Part of *Italy* to the latter. The Emperor got him recogniz'd in a Diet at *Wurtzburg*, and passed the Alps to chastise the Romans, who called in Pope *Alexander*. He chased the Greeks out of *Ancona*, and taking *Rome*, got the Empress crown'd there. His Army being afflicted with the Plague, the opposite Party said it was a Judgment upon him. When he returned to *Germany*, most of the Towns of *Italy* made a League against him, repaired the Ruins of *Milan*; and to spite the Emperor, built a new Town, which they called *Alexandria*, in Honour of the Pope. The Emperor marched again to *Italy* to punish the Rebels; but was obliged to raise the Siege of *Milan*, and his Army was defeated, which was looked upon as a Punishment from Heaven for his continuing a Schism in the Church; so that he made Peace with Pope *Alexander*, promis'd him Obedience, and restored what belong'd to the See of *Rome*. Having ratified this Treaty at *Venice*, and married his Son to *Constance*, the only Daughter of *William* King of *Sicily*, he made an Expedition into the *Holy Land*, with the Kings of *England* and *France* (as some say) and most of the Princes of *Germany*, marched through *Hungary* and *Bulgaria*, enter'd *Asia*, defeated the Sultan of *Lycaonia*, chased the Sultan of *Egypt's* Troops out of *Little Armenia*; but died, as he was pursuing his Conquests, of a Pleurisy he got by washing himself in the River of *Serre*, where some say he was drown'd, the 10th of *June*, 1190. in the 37th Year of his Reign. So far the *Atlas Historique*. *Puffendorf* says, That during the War of *Italy*, he levelled *Milan* with the Ground; but his Son *Osbo* being taken by the *Venetians*, he was forced to make Peace. *Fox*, in his *Book of Martyrs*, Vol. 1. gives the Story of this Emperor at large, and of his Controversy with Pope *Alexander*, who at the Peace of *Venice* is said to have set his Foot upon the Emperor's Neck, when he kneeled to receive Absolution,

tion, abusing those Words of the Psalmist, Psalm 91. 13. said, *Thou shalt tread upon the Lion and Adder, the young Lion and the Dragon shalt thou trample under Feet*: To which the Emperor answer'd, *Not to thee, but to Peter*; and the Pope reply'd, *Both to me, and to Peter*: But Puffendorf says, many take this to be fabulous; yet 'tis mention'd by several Popish Authors. Dr. Nicholson gives him the Character of a Wife, Valiant, and Successful Prince.

Henry VI. his Son, succeeded, being crown'd King of Germany at *Aix la Chapelle*, in his Father's Life-time. He receiv'd the Imperial Crown from Pope *Celestin III.* who, as Puffendorf says, when the Emperor was on his Knees to receive it, the Pope struck it off again with his Foot, to denote his Power of giving the Crown, or taking it away. He defeated *Tancred*, natural Son to *Roger* King of *Sicily*, who disputed that and the Crown of *Naples* with him, which fell to him in Right of his Empress, King *Roger's* Daughter. Henry however recover'd both; but the Cruelty of the Germans made them revolt, and proclaim *Tancred's* Son *William*. Henry went again into *Italy*, and amusing *William* with sharing the Dominions betwixt them, he had him seiz'd, put out his Eyes, gelded him, and put him to Death. Henry rais'd Men with the Money that *Richard* King of *England* was oblig'd to pay him when taken Prisoner in his Dominions, on his Return from the *Holy Land*, and conquer'd *Apulia* and *Calabria*. He also oblig'd *Alexis Angelus*, Emperor of the *Greeks*, who had not an Army to oppose him, to pay a Tribute for the Outrages done to his Father and the Emperor *Conrad* in their March to the *Holy Land*. Historians say, he was so cruel, that for small Crimes he would condemn Men to be thrown into the Sea, impal'd, roasted, or to have a burning Crown of Fire fasten'd to their Heads with Nails. While he was preparing for an Expedition to the *Holy Land*, he died at *Messina* in *Sicily* of Poison, given him, as some think, by his Empress *Constance*, in the 8th Year of his Reign.

After Henry's Death, there were great Divisions in Germany, because *Frederick II.* Henry's Son, being only two Years old, his Uncle *Philip* pretended that the Administration was his Right, according to the Will of

the deceased Emperor; but because he would not submit to the Pope, he was excommunicated, and the Pope perswaded some of the Princes to elect *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*. Thus the Country was torn in Pieces; but most sided with *Philip*. After a long War, an Agreement was propos'd, by which *Otho* was to marry the Daughter of *Philip*, and to succeed after his Death. The *Atlas Historique* says, *Philip* defeated *Otho* in two Battles, and was crown'd at *Aix la Chapelle* before this Agreement: But *Otho* having afterwards murder'd a Friend of *Philip's*, he revok'd his Promise of giving him his Daughter; but promis'd to assist him in his Pretensions to a Princess of *Poland*, wherein having also fail'd him, he surpris'd *Philip* in his Chamber after he had been let Blood, and murder'd him the 12th of June, 1208. Others say, he was assassinated by *Otho* Count of *Wittelsbach*.

Otho Duke of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg* succeeded, according to the Treaty with *Philip*, and put *Otho* of *Wittelsbach*, says the *Atlas Historique*, into the Ban of the Empire for murdering him. He deliver'd *Swabia* from the Tyrants that oppress'd it, and order'd Justice to be done according to the Laws of *Charlemain*: But possessing himself of the Estates of Bishops and Abbots who died, conferring the Publick Posts of the Empire on Foreigners, and treating the Princes haughtily, he was universally hated. Pope *Innocent III.* excommunicated him for seizing the Lands of the Church, absolv'd his Subjects from their Allegiance, and urg'd the German Princes to depose him: Upon which the King of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Austria* and *Bavaria*, the Landgrave of *Thuringia*, and others, assembling at *Bamberg*, chose *Frederick K.* of *Sicily*, Son to *Henry VI.* who was proclaimed King of the Romans in his Infancy. He march'd through *Italy* and Part of *Germany* without Resistance, was crown'd at *Aix la Chapelle*, and confirm'd in the Diet at *Francfort*, which cast the Balance on his Side; and *Otho* retir'd to *Brunswick*, designing to have liv'd in Peace. But *Renaud* Count of *Bologna* went to him in Name of the Princes in League against *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, and engag'd him to take Part with them, on Condition that when they had made an End with *Philip*, they should join him against *Frederick*. John

King of England, *William* Duke of *Brabant*, *Ferdinand* Count of *Flanders*, *Otho* Duke of *Limbourg*, *Philip* Count of *Namure*, *Henry* Duke of *Lorraine*, *Renaud* Count of *Bologna* and *Dammartin*, with other Princes, were in this League. The King of England gave 'em a great deal of Money, and they were to attack *France* on the Side of the *Netherlands*, while the *English* landed in *Guienne*. King *Philip* sent his Son to make Head against the *English*, and he himself enter'd *Flanders*, took *Tournay*, and defeated the Allies, who had 120000 Men, near *Bovines*, and took the Counts of *Flanders* and *Dammartin*. *Otho* narrowly escap'd to *Brunswick*, whence he sent the Marks of the Imperial Dignity by his Brother *Henry* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine* to *Frederick*, and died of Grief the 27th of *April*, 1218. without Issue; according to the *Atlas Historique*.

Frederick being thus peaceably possessed of the Empire, he granted in Favour of Pope *Innocent III.* who had been his Tutor, all the Lands taken from the See of *Rome* by his Predecessors, with the Sovereignty of them, reserving only Provisions and Forage for the Emperor's Troops when he came to *Italy* to be crown'd, or to assist the Pope. He called a Diet, where his eldest Son *Henry* was chosen King of the *Romans*; and making the Duke of *Bavaria* Governor in his Absence, he went to *Italy*, and was crown'd by Pope *Honorius*, having first renounc'd the Duchy of *Spoleto* and *Tuscany* to the See of *Rome*, to whom, at the same time, he gave the Country of *Eundi*. He drove the *Saracens* out of *Sicily*, depriv'd Count *Agnani*, and the Bishops who had revolted, and put others in their room. Pope *Honorius* pretended, that being his Vassal, he could not deprive the Bishops without his Consent, and commanded him to restore them immediately, on Pain of Excommunication. The Emperor answer'd, That as Emperor and King of *Sicily*, he was Sovereign Judge of his own Subjects, and even of Clergymen in Secular Affairs; and that he had rather lose the Empire, than make himself unworthy of it by such Meanness of Spirit. The Pope was provok'd with this Answer; but *Frederick* continued firm, got his eldest Son crown'd King of the *Romans*, and prepared to make War upon the Towns of *Lombardy*, who had leagu'd toge-

ther to recover their Liberty. *John de Brienne*, King of *Jerusalem*, perceiving that this War would be prejudicial to him, mediated a Peace. The Emperor was absolv'd; and promis'd to go in a Year or two with all his Forces to the *Holy Land*. He call'd the States of the Empire together at *Cremena*, to exhort them to follow him; the Towns of *Lombardy* laid down their Arms at Pope *Gregory IXth's* Request, and contributed to the Expedition: The Croisado was preach'd every where; the Princes began to assemble; and when all was ready, the Emperor alledg'd, he was not prepar'd, or did so on purpose, because he apprehended *Sicily* would revolt; that Count *Agnani* would seize *Naples*; and his Enemies in *Germany* would take Advantage by his Absence: But the Pope pressed him so much, that he embark'd at *Brindisium* with the Landgrave of *Turingia*; but falling sick after 4 Days Sail, he landed at *Otranto*, from whence above 40000 *Germans* went home. Upon this the Pope excommunicated him. The Emperor returning to *Naples*, wrote to all the Princes of *Europe* to justify himself, and to be aveng'd on the Pope, made the Counts de *Frangipani*, the Chief of the *Roman* Lords, Princes of the Empire, and enter'd the Territories of the Church to support the *Romans*, who had chased away Pope *Gregory*. He brought the Troops of the Towns of *Lombardy* against the Emperor; but the War was laid aside on the Emperor's sudden Resolve to go into the *Holy Land*, according to his Promise. He assembled the States of the Empire and *Sicily* at *Balette*, appointed Vicars of the Empire in *Germany* and *Italy*, sail'd the 11th of *August*, and arriv'd at *Acra* the beginning of *November*. The Pope, who had solicited him to it before, now condemned the Enterprize, traversed him in every thing, forbade the Military Orders of *Palestine* to obey him, solicited his Son the King of the *Romans* to rebel, and declare himself Emperor; reduc'd most Part of *Italy*, made the Towns of *Lombardy* to revolt, disbanded those who had taken the Cross to follow the Emperor, and wrote to the Sultan of *Babylon* to attack him. *Frederick*, notwithstanding all this traiterous Opposition, brought that Sultan to a Truce of 10 Years, restor'd several Towns to the Christians, was crown'd King.

of Jerusalem, embark'd the 1st of May, 1229. and arrived at Naples the 30th. He forfeited the Knights Hospitallers and Templars of Sicily, chased John de Brienne out of Apulia, seiz'd Part of the Dominions of the Church, invested Rome to frighten the Pope, and retired to Capua. Some Princes of the Empire effected a Reconciliation betwixt them; the Pope absolv'd him, and promis'd to restore him to all his Rights in Sicily. The Emperor gave him a great Sum of Money, assisted him to subdue the revolted Romans, and return'd to Germany, where he found such Disorders, that he deprived his eldest Son of being King of the Romans, sentenc'd him to perpetual Prison, and put the Duke of Austria into the Ban of the Empire. The Pope having enter'd into a League with the Towns of Lombardy, the Emperor repass'd the Alps with 100000 Men, defeated the Milanais in Battle, conquer'd Sardinia, defeated the Forces of Venice and Genoa, seiz'd Tuscany, and besieged Rome, without valuing the Pope's Excommunication. Then began the Factions of the Guelphs and Gibelins, the latter being for the Emperor, and the former for the Pope, says the *Atlas Historique*; tho' he mention'd them before in the Reign of Frederick I. *Blondo* and *Sigonius* say, these Factions rose in the Empire of Conrad III. who favouring Pope *Anaclet I.* against *Innocent II.* his Son marched with his Army to a Place in Italy called Gibelin, from whence his Party were called Gibelins; and Guelph Duke of *Bavaria* being one of the Generals on the other Side, the other Faction were called Guelphs, which seems to agree best with the former Story of Frederick I's Mother being a Guelph of the House of *Bavaria*. Mr. Fox, in his *Book of Martyrs*, Vol. 1. is also of this Opinion. But to return to Frederick, Pope Gregory implor'd the Help of all Christian Princes; but died of Grief a few Days after the Defeat of his Fleet. *Celestin IV.* succeeded; but died in 18 Days. *Innocent IV.* came in his Place; and not thinking himself safe in Italy, fled to France, called a General Council at *Lions*, cited the Emperor to appear at it; and on his Refusal, excommunicated him, and absolv'd his Subjects from their Allegiance; tho' most of the Princes of Germany held that the Pope had only the Right of crowning, but

not of chusing or deposing the Emperor. Yet the Archbishop of *Mentz*, *Treves*, and *Cologne*, assembled at *Wurtzburg*, and elected *Henry Landgrave of Thuringia*, call'd the King of the Priests, who having defeated the Troops of *Swabia* and *Bavaria* that came to hinder his Election, was kill'd by an Arrow at the Siege of *Ulm*, and his Party chose *William Count of Holland*, who taking *Aix-la-Chapelle*, by the Assistance of his Father-in-Law *Orto Duke of Brunswick*, was crown'd there, while *Frederick* was employ'd in Italy against the Guelphs; and Fortune beginning to abandon him, those of *Parma*, after two Years Siege, defeated his Army, and plunder'd his Camp; and the Pope's Legate having defeated his Son *Entius* in the *Bolognese*, he retired to *Apulia*, where he died of Poison, given him by *Mainfroi* Prince of *Tarentum*, his natural Son, the 13th of December, 1250. in the 54th Year of his Age, and the 32d of his Reign. Dr. *Nicholson* says, he was Master of Greek, Latin, German, Italian, and the Turkish Languages, and understood most Arts and Sciences; was a Wise, Learned, and Brave Prince, and stood over 5 Excommunications. The Story of this Noble Emperor, and of his Controversy with the Pope, whom he describ'd to be the Anti-Christ, is at large in the First Volume of the *Book of Martyrs*.

Conrad his Son was chosen King of the Romans at 8 Years of Age; but that Election not being every way formal, he was elected again 3 Years after at *Spires*. He govern'd the Empire with great Prudence in his Father's Absence, and when he heard of his Death, he resolv'd to defend his Rights against *William Earl of Holland*; but perceiving that his Rival had the Favour of the Great Men, and being unwilling to risk all, he thought best to secure himself of *Naples* and *Sicily*, his own Inheritance, march'd with an Army thither, oblig'd his Bastard Brother *Mainfroi* to retire to *Tarentum*, and took *Naples* and *Capua*; but as he was preparing to reduce the rest, he was poison'd by the said *Mainfroi*, the 19th of May, 1254. in the 29th Year of his Age, and the 4th of his Reign. *Puffendorf* observes, That the Authority of the German Emperors in Italy was quite extinguish'd with *Frederick II.* and that it might not recover, the Pope gave the Kingdom of *Naples* to *Charles Duke*

of Anjou, who, at his Instigation, caus'd young Conrad, Son to Conrad, who was taken in a Battle as attempting to recover his Right, to be cut off by the Hands of an Hangman, which put an End to the Race of the Dukes of Swabia.

William Count of Holland, after the Death of Conrad, having no Rival, receiv'd those who had follow'd Frederick and Conrad into Favour, by which he established Peace in the Empire. He design'd to have gone into Italy to be crown'd by the Pope, and to restore Peace also there: But the Freelanders having revolted, and ravaged Holland, he march'd against them, and having engaged too far, after some Advantage over them, he receiv'd a Blow on the Head with a Stone; and being entangled in a frozen Marsh, was kill'd with Spears, and buried in the same Place, in 1255.

After his Death, Richard Duke of Cornwall, Son to John King of England, was chosen by some of the Princes at Frankfurt. He arriv'd in Germany the 13th of January, 1257, and was crown'd at Aix la Chapelle the 2d of May following; but others of the Princes chose Alphonso King of Castile; and Richard having shew'd more Resentment against those who were not for him, than against his open Enemies, lost his Interest, which, together with his want of Money, oblig'd him to return home, where he was killed before a Town which the Rebels had fortified against his Brother Henry, the 12th of April, 1271.

Alphonso, surnamed the Wise, and the Astrologer, Son to Ferdinand III. of Spain, agreed to the Election, at the Pope's Instigation; but being slow in his Resolves, he never enjoy'd the Empire. He is said to have read the Bible 14 times, and spent 400000 Crowns upon Learned Men to compose the Alphonso Tables, of which the Jews say, Rabbi Isaac Hazar was the Chief. Historians give him the Character of a Prodigal, Cruel, Opinionative Man, and alledge, he was so blasphemous, as to say, That had he been present at the Creation, he would have dispos'd Things in better Order than they are. He died in 1284. in the 32d Year of his Reign, and was buried at Sevil.

Rodolph Count of Habsburg, a Castle, as some say, in the Country of Argow, or, as others, in the Bersgaw, was chosen Empe-

ror in 1273, according to Puffendorf. Dr. Nicholson and he observe, That from the Death of Frederick II. to this Time, which was 23 Years, there was scarce any thing but an Interregnum; during which, the Empire suffer'd extremely by the several Competitors, and became a Theatre of Bloodshed, Confusion, and Robbery. In those Wars, the great Families of Swabia, Austria, and Thuringia, were extinguish'd, and scarce any thing of Justice was administred. To put a Stop to those Disorders, several Princes and Cities on the Rhine leagu'd together, and chose Rodolph, who was a Person of high Birth, descended from the Family of Alsace, which, says the *Atlas Historique*, was one of the most ancient and illustrious in Europe. He aggrandiz'd his Family, by giving them the vacant Fiefs of the Empire. By Consent of the States, he made his youngest Son Rodolph Duke of Swabia, and gave his eldest Son Albert, Austria, Stiria, Carinthia, and Carniola. He made excellent Laws for administring Justice, order'd all the Publick Acts and Pleadings, formerly writ in Latin, to be writ in German. He reduc'd Ottocair King of Bohemia, and all the other Rebels, with whom he fought 40 Set-Battles. He oblig'd all the Towns that held out against him to surrender, and demolish'd above 60 Castles in Thuringia, that serv'd for a Retreat to the Rebels. He refus'd to go and be crown'd at Rome, because of the ill Consequence it had to his Predecessors, alluding to that Saying of the Fox in the Fable, *Quia me Vestigia terrent*, i. e. That he saw the Footsteps of many Beasts that had enter'd the Lion's Den, but of none that had come out again; yet he manag'd Matters so, as not to break with the Pope. Some are of Opinion, that he might have restor'd the Empire to a more flourishing State, had he preserv'd the Rights of it in Italy, as he did in Germany: But whether he look'd upon Italy as a foreign Country, whose Customs and Manners did not suit the Germans, or that he had a mind to make Money of it, for he is charg'd with Covetousness, he sold the chief Towns there, their Liberty, for considerable Sums, as Florence, Genoa, Lucca, Bologna, &c. reserving only the Sovereignty to himself. To establish his Interest in the Empire, he married his three Daughters to Lewis Count Pala-

Palatine of the Rhine, Albert Duke of Saxony, and Otto Marquis of Brandenburg. A Grandson of Albert brought Tirol afterwards to the Family. Puffendorf and the Atlas Historique differ as to his Sons, for the latter makes Albert the youngest; tho' 'tis more probable he was the eldest, both because of the larger Dominions given him by his Father, and that he himself places him so in the Genealogical Chart or Tree of the present Imperial Family, who are descended from him. That same Author says also, That Rodolph propos'd his Son Albert to be chosen King of the Romans, which is a plain Proof that he was his eldest; but the States would not agree to it. Rodolph died in 1291. in the 70th Year of his Age, and the 18th of his Reign, and was buried at Spires.

Adolph Count of Nassau, Son to Adolph, Grand Marshal to Rodolph, was elected at Frankfurt Six Months after Rodolph's Death, tho' Albert laid Claim to the Crown; but the Electors being divided in their Votes, they left it to Gerard Archbishop of Mentz to name whom he pleas'd, and he chose Adolph his Cousin against their Mind. He was a very brave Prince, and gain'd 5 Battles against the Duke of Brabant, which rais'd his Fame. He took Part with Guy Count of Flanders, who married Philippine, Daughter to Edward King of England, and on his Account declar'd War against Philip IV. of France. He took Pay of the King of England, and serv'd in his Army, which some thought below his Dignity; but Puffendorf says, he enter'd into a League with him against France for a Sum of Money, and on Promise that the English should assist him to recover the Kingdom of Arles, which the French had seiz'd during the Troubles of Germany. On the other hand, the French sided with Albert, and upon their Approach to the Rhine, the Archbishop of Mentz, who turn'd Adolph's Enemy, because he would not let him be Chief in the Management next to himself, assembled some of the Electors, depos'd Adolph, and chose Albert in his stead. The Atlas Historique says, he bought Thuringia with the Money sent him from England to raise Troops; but the People being unwilling to submit to him, he oppress'd them, which heighten'd the Discontents against him. He was defeated and

kill'd by Albert himself in a Battle near Spires in 1298.

Albert's Election being thus confirmed, he reduced the Ecclesiastical Electors who had leagu'd against him, and a solid Peace might have been made betwixt them, had it not been for the Arrogance of the Archbishop of Mentz, who said, He had that in his Pocket by which he could chuse another Emperor when he pleas'd. The Pope offer'd him France, and to depose Philip the Fair: But Albert knowing the Pope had no Right to do so, was so far from accepting it, that, as a Proof of the Friendship they had contracted at an Interview, he quitted Philip the Kingdom of Arles. Albert embroil'd himself with the Swissers, which was of ill Consequence to him. He began with abolishing the Jurisdiction of their Clergy, who were very rich, and obliged the Nobles to do him Homage for their Estates; but the People being more jealous of their Liberty, and refusing to follow the Example, he built Citadels to curb them, and order'd his Judges to punish little Faults with the utmost Severity: Upon which the People took Arms, demolished his Castles, and in 1308 enter'd into a League for 10 Years. The Emperor prepar'd to reduce them with an Army; but was assassinated in the 10th Year of his Reign by John Duke of Swabia, his Nephew, whom he had covetously robb'd of his Dominions, on Pretence of being his Tutor. His Widow Elizabeth of Carinthia did afterwards build the Abbey of Konigsberg, in the Place where he was murder'd. He was said to be a Prince of quick Parts, liberal to those of Merit, and severe to Criminals. He made his Son Rodolph King of Bohemia, and endeavour'd in vain to subdue Hungary.

After his Death, Philip King of France aspir'd to the Imperial Crown; but the Pope and Archbishop of Treves got Henry VII. Duke of Luxemburg chosen, a Prince Devout, Valiant, Wise, and of so even a Temper, that neither Prosperity nor Adversity could change it. He married his Son to the Heiress of Wenceslaus King of Bohemia, redress'd the Disorders of the Empire, appointed his Son King John to govern there in his Absence, and march'd into Italy to re-establish the Imperial Authority in that Country. He was crown'd at Milan, where

where he restor'd the *Visconti*, and banish'd the *Turriani*. He reduc'd the other Towns, where he settled Lieutenants, who rais'd great Contributions to recruit his Army, which was lessen'd by Diseases. He design'd to have laid Siege to *Bologna*, *Florence*, and *Lucca*; but was obliged to march directly to *Rome*, where the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* being of equal Strength, committed terrible Disorders, and had bloody Contests; so that which Side soever got the Victory, bought it dear. *Henry* defeated those who oppos'd his passing the *Tiber*, enter'd *Rome* at the Head of the *Gibelines*, the Chief of whom were the *Colonna's*, and the *Guelphs* retired to the *Vatican*, and *Castle St. Angelo*, where not being able to force them, he was crown'd in the Church of *St. John de Lateran* by a Deputation from *Clement V.* who had removed the See to *Avignon*. He afterwards block'd up *Florence*, but could not take it, the Citizens being assisted by the K. of *Naples*. The Pope endeavour'd to prevent a Rupture betwixt that K. and *Henry*; but offended the Emperor by his arrogant Letter, wherein he alledg'd, That both of them ought to submit to him, because of their Oaths. Upon this the Emperor broke with the Pope, declared War against *Robert of Naples*, forfeited him as a Vassal of the Empire, and gave the Kingdom to *Frederick of Sicily*, who promis'd to harrahs the Coasts with his Fleet, while the Emperor march'd to *Rome* by Land: But as he was in a fair Way to subdue his Enemies, a Monk poison'd him with a consecrated Wafer. The Emperor perceiv'd it as soon as he had taken it, and advis'd the Monk to make his Escape; but Heaven would not suffer it; so that he was taken, flea'd alive, and put to Death in 1313. The Emperor was universally regretted. 'Twas thought the *Florentines* hir'd the Monk to poison him.

After his Death, there was an Interregnum for a Year, when some of the Princes chose *Lewis Duke of Bavaria*, and others chose *Frederick the Fair*, Duke of *Austria*, eldest Son to the Emperor *Albert I.* This Rivalship continued 7 Years, *Lewis* governing in Upper Germany, and *Frederick* in the Lower. They fought two Battles, one near *Eslingen* on the *Neckar*, where Night parted them; the other near *Muldorf* in Lower *Bavaria*, where *Frederick* was taken and impris-

son'd. He refus'd to make his Escape by the Help of Magick, but was set at Liberty after three Years, on his renouncing the Empire, and died in 1330. During this Controversy, viz. in 1315, there happen'd such a terrible Famine in *Germany*, *Poland*, and *Bohemia*, that many People eat their nearest Relations, and the Wolves and other Beasts of Prey could scarce be kept off by Weapons from setting upon Men to satisfy their Hunger. *Lewis* soon after this Victory was engaged in a new War with Pope *John XXII.* who disput'd his Election, because made without his Consent. The Emperor despis'd his Claim, sent Assistance to the *Gibelines* in *Italy*, who forced the *Guelphs* to raise the Siege of *Milan*. Being willing to convince the Pope of his Error, he sent Ambassadors to shew him the Vanity of his Pretensions, and to desire him to suspend his Excommunication; but the Pope was obstinate; and the Emperor, resolute to defend his Title, publish'd a Manifesto, to shew that he held the Empire of God alone. Having settled Peace in *Germany*, he march'd to *Italy* in 1327, adjust'd Matters with the Chief of the *Gibelines*, was crown'd at *Milan*, reduc'd the *Tuscans*, and was receiv'd at *Rome* with great Acclamations. The Pope was at *Avignon*, and could not perform the Coronation; therefore the Senate, Clergy and People, did it by Deputies, of whom *Sciarras Colonna* was the Chief. The Emperor, to revenge himself for *John XXII's* Excommunication, got him depos'd for Heresy, sentenc'd him to Death, and made an Order, That the Pope, as well as other Bishops, should reside on his Cure, on Pain of Deprivation. *Peter Raynalouci*, a *Franciscan*, was chosen instead of *John*, by the Name of *Nicholas V.* which brought Things to an Extremity, and, together with his heavy Exactions, lost him the *Romans*, who curs'd him when he march'd from thence to besiege *Florence*; but he was obliged to raise the Siege, to prevent *Pisa's* falling into the Hands of his Enemies; and having settled Affairs there and at *Lucca*, to whom he recommended Pope *Nicholas*, he return'd to *Germany*, from whence he sent Ambassadors to Pope *John* for a Reconciliation, and promis'd to satisfy him in every thing that was not against the Rights of the Empire; but the Pope gave a haughty Answer, and

con-

continued inflexible. He died soon after; and *Lewis* in vain endeavour'd an Accommodation with *Bennet XII.* upon which the Princes of the Empire in a Diet declared the Empire Independent, and resolv'd to maintain the Rights of it. This was afterwards confirmed in a Diet at *Francfort*, made a perpetual Law, the Pope's Coronation declared unnecessary, and that it was Treason to say the contrary. *Bennet* continued obstinate, (tho' he was for a Reconciliation himself) because he durst not disoblige his Party, and died soon after. *Roger* Archbishop of *Roan* succeeded, by the Name of *Clement VI.* and being a Creature of *Philip de Valois* King of *France*, he rais'd the Princes of *Italy* against the Emperor, excommunicated and depos'd him. *Lewis* offer'd to submit to any reasonable Terms for a Reconciliation; but the Pope propos'd such extravagant Conditions, that they were universally rejected; and the Diet sent him Word, That if he did not change his Measures, they would oppose him to the utmost. Upon this the Pope again excommunicated *Lewis* and his Adherents, and order'd the Electors to chuse the King of *Bohemia's* Son, otherwise he would dispose of the Empire as he thought fit. Having gain'd the three Ecclesiastical Electors, and the Duke of *Saxony*, they chose *Charles* Marquis of *Moravia*, the King of *Bohemia's* Son; but the Majority of the Princes declared the Election void; so that *Lewis* reign'd in Peace till the 11th of October, 1347. that he died of an Apoplexy as he was a Hunting; in the 63d Year of his Age, and 33d of his Empire. Some thought he was poison'd by *Isabel* of *Arragon*, Dutches of *Austria*, because he carried the Empire from her Husband *Frederick*; but this was not believed. *Puffendorf* says, *Lewis* was the first who kept his Court always in his Hereditary Country out of his own Revenue; which Example was followed by succeeding Emperors, because the Revenues of the Empire, on which the Emperors us'd to maintain their Courts when they made their Progress as usual through the Empire, were much diminished by the Civil Wars. *Dr. Nicholson* says, That *Occam*, a Learned English Friar, told *Lewis*, That if he were protected, he could easily by his Writings overthrow all the Pope's Pretensions of

Power over Princes, which animated the Emperor to oppose the See of *Rome*.

After *Lewis's* Death, Part of the Electors chose *Edward* King of *England*, who had acquir'd great Fame by his glorious Actions in *France*; but he refusing to accept it, they chose *Frederick* Marquis of *Misnia*, who sold his Pretensions to *Charles IV.* at which, being justly offended, they chose *Gunter* Count of *Schwartzenburg*, noted for Virtue and Bravery, the 2d of February, 1349. but *Charles* having corrupted some of the Princes, and *Gunter* falling sick of Poison, given him by *Charles's* Means, as was suspected, he resign'd the Empire, by the Advice of those who chose him, for 22000 Marks, and two Towns in *Thuringia*, and died at *Francfort* that same Year.

After his Death, *Charles* was confirm'd by all the Electors, married his only Daughter to the Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, went to *Italy* to be crown'd by the Pope, and in a cowardly manner ruin'd the Authority of the Empire, which made the *Italians* despise and insult him, and refuse to let him into their Towns. He returned to *Germany*, where his Management was no better. He quitted the Kingdom of *Arles* to *France*, dismembred several other Parts of the Empire, corrupted the Electors to chuse *Wenceslaus* his Son King of the *Romans*, and sold the Towns of *Swabia* to the neighbouring Princes; so that 'twas said of him, *That in order to make the Imperial Eagle contemptible to all the World, he pluck'd off her best Feathers.* He is said to have established the Golden Bull, which regulates the Precedency and Prerogatives of the Electors. He united *Lusatia* and *Silesia* to *Bohemia*, his own Patrimony. He understood many Languages, had a charming Eloquence, and a great deal of Wit, but no Courage. He died at *Prague* in 1368. in the 32d Year of his Reign. *Puffendorf* says, he was depos'd by the Electors for his brutish Carelessness of the Empire; upon which he retired to *Bohemia* a considerable Time before his Death.

Wenceslaus King of *Bohemia*, his Son, succeeded; but being a weak Prince, he left the Management to his Ministers, and plung'd himself in all sorts of Vice, so that he became odious and contemptible, the Government was dissolv'd, and every one liv'd as he pleas'd; the Princes inroach'd upon

their Neighbours and the Free Towns, which they obliged to submit to them. *Wenceslaus* was the German *Sardanapalus*; and that he might not be interrupted in his Debauches, retir'd often to Forrests, where he spent Days and Nights in Sensuality. He sold *Genoa* to the French, *Milan* to *Galeacius* their Viscount, and would have sold the whole Empire, had he found a Purchaser. He thought every Hour lost that was not spent in Drinking; so that he was judged unworthy the Name of Emperor. He was twice taken Prisoner, but escaped; and *Robert the Debonnaire*, Count *Palatine*, was chosen in his stead. Most of the Towns submitted to him but *Nuremberg*, who offer'd 20000 Crowns of Gold to *Wenceslaus* for their Freedom. He refus'd the Money, and, like a Brute, demanded only *Bacharach* Wine. He died of an Apoplexy and Grief, occasion'd by the Revolt of the *Hussites* at *Prague*, where they kill'd his barbarous Senators in 1418.

Upon his Death, *Robert Count Palatine* was confirm'd. He put *Aix la Chapelle* into the Ban of the Empire, because they would not submit to him. It was some Time after his first Election e're all the Princes of *Europe* own'd him; so that *Wenceslaus's* Ambassadors were received at the Council of *Pisa* after he himself was depos'd; but after *Robert* oblig'd the Council to absolve the Empire from their Oath to *Wenceslaus*, he was universally acknowledg'd. He refus'd the Crown of *Bohemia*, tho' offer'd him by the States. He marched into *Italy*, to reduce *John Galias* Duke of *Milan*, who revolted; but being abandon'd by the Pope and *Florentines*, he was defeated near the Lake de *Garda*, retir'd into *Trent*; and tho' forsaken by the Arch-Duke of *Austria*, and the Archbishop of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, he march'd again as far as *Padua*; but the *Venetians* refusing to join him, and the Troops sent him by the *Florentines* not being enough to retrain his Army, he return'd to *Germany*, to make War on the Archbishop of *Mentz*, who broke all his Measures, died at *Oppenheim* in 1410, and was buried at *Heidelberg* in the Church of the Holy Ghost, which he founded.

After his Death, or, as some say, after the Abdication of *Wenceslaus*, *Indocus* or *Josse*, Marquis of *Moravia*, Brother to *Charles IV.*

was chosen, but never crown'd. He was unfit for Government, and the only remarkable Thing he did, was to make a Law, That the States of the Empire might without Treason oppose the Emperor, if he did any thing against the Laws. *Puffendorf* says, That *Frederick* Duke of *Brunswick* was chosen in his stead, before *Robert Count Palatine* above-mentioned; but in his Journey to *Francfort* was murder'd by Count *Waldeck*, at the Instigation of the Archbishop of *Mentz*.

Sigismund King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* was chosen after *Indocus*, says the *Atlas Historique*, in 1411. He endeavour'd to extinguish the Schism which had divided the Church for 38 Years. He reform'd the Government of the Empire, regulated their Taxes, and in 1415 made *Frederick* of *Zollern*, Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, Hereditary Elector of *Brandenburg*, for 40000 Florins of Gold, if the Emperor died without Male-Issue. He erected the County of *Savoy* into a Dutchy, in Favour of *Amedee VIII.* in 1416. and 7 Years after made *Frederick the Warlike*, Marquis of *Misnia*, Elector of *Saxony*, vacant by the Death of *Albert IV.* the last of the House of *Ascanie*. He was an implacable Enemy to the *Hussites*, but always defeated by them; so that at last he made Peace with them, as the only Way to establish his Authority in *Bohemia*. He excited the Christian Princes to arm against the *Turks*, who made a great Progress in *Europe*; but was defeated by them at *Nigeboth* in *Hungary*, thro' the Jealousy and Forwardness of the French Auxiliaries, most of whom were cut off there, under the Conduct of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, eldest Son to *Charles VI.* of *France*. In his Time, *John Huss* and *Jerome* of *Prague* were burnt at the Council of *Constance*, contrary to the Publick Faith given them by his Passport, which made the *Hussites* take Arms under *Zisca*, who cut off all that adher'd to the perfidious Council of *Constance*. *Sigismund* went thither to suppress them; but his Cruelty to those of *Bresslaw* made the Citizens of *Prague* refuse him Entrance; and *Zisca's* Reputation was such, that the Emperor's Forces always fled at the Sight of his Troops, so that he defeated *Sigismund* in 14 Battles; and when *Zisca* died, his Soldiers made a Drum of his Skin, thinking

the very Sound of it would terrify their Enemies. *Sigismund* called the Council of *Basle* to settle the Peace of the Church, went to *Italy*, and was crown'd at *Milan* and *Rome*; and the Success of the *Hussites* being on the Declension, he was crown'd at *Prague* in 1436, but died in 1438, in the 26th Year of his Reign.

Albert the Magnanimous, Duke of *Austria*, who was his Son-in-Law, succeeded first to the Kingdoms of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, on a Treaty with the States, That he should not accept the Empire, because the *Hussites* were afraid he would annul their Privileges, if he grew too powerful. He afterwards drove *Uladislaus* King of *Poland* out of *Bohemia*, which he had seiz'd, suppress'd the *Hussites*, and depriv'd the *Bohemians* of the Right of electing their Kings. He obliged Sultan *Amurath*, the Grand Signior, to raise the Siege of *Belgrade*, which had lasted a Year; and defeated the Barons of *Bohemia*, who took Part with *Barba*, *Sigismund's* Widow, and call'd *Casimir* King of *Poland* to their Assistance. His being elected Emperor, over-aw'd those who would have rebell'd in *Bohemia* and *Hungary*. He confirm'd the Council of *Basle*, and endeavour'd to make Peace in the Church; but was diverted by a War against the *Turks*, who invaded *Hungary*; and as he marched against them, died of a Bloody Flux, occasioned by his eating of Melons, in 1439, in the 2d Year of his Reign: Since which, the Empire has continued in the House of *Austria*.

In 1440, *Frederick III.* called the *Pacifick*, eldest Son to his Kinsman *Ernest* Duke of *Austria*, Chief of the Branch of *Stiria*, was elected Emperor. He dealt with the Council of *Basle* to remove the Schism of the Church, and make Peace in *Christendom*; and he made the *German Concordat* in Favour of the Church of *Germany*, which was ratified by Pope *Nicholas V.* in 1448. He published a new Edition of the Code about Fiefs, and made a good Use of Printing, which was invented during his Reign. He established the Empire much as 'tis at present; but was attacked by Enemies in several Parts. He defeated the Duke of *Armagnac*, and drove him out of *Alsace* in 1444. but in 1452 was besieged by *Hunniades* in *Neustadt* in *Hungary*, because he would not deliver to them *Ladislaus*, whom

they had chosen to be King according to their Laws; so that he was forced to agree, that *Hunniades* should be Regent of *Hungary*, *George Podiebrad* of *Bohemia*, and *Ulric* Count de *Cilly* of *Austria*; but the latter becoming odious to the People, was chased from his Government the Year after. *Ladislaus* King of *Hungary* being dead, he seiz'd *Austria* against the Will of *Albert the Prodigal*, his Brother, with whom he had Ten Years War, and proscrib'd him at the Diet of *Ratisbon* in 1463. *Matthias Corvin*, King of *Hungary*, took *Vienna* from him in 1485. He formed the League of *Swabia* against the *Swissers*, which was called the *Buckler of St. George*, and demolished such Castles as serv'd for a Retreat to Robbers. He was accus'd of being so silent, that it pass'd for a Question, Whether he was alive or dead? He was so dilatory in reforming Abuses, that he us'd to say it was not yet Time to attempt it. He lost *Bohemia* and *Hungary* by his Avarice, in not laying out the Money that was necessary to secure his Possession, and died Aug. 14, 1493. He married *Leonora*, Daughter to *Alphonso* King of *Portugal*; from whence came the Union of the Houses of *Spain* and *Austria*.

Maximilian I. his Son, elected King of the *Romans* in 1486, succeeded. He was dumb 'till almost 10 Years of Age; but then spoke so quick, that he could scarce be understood. He acquir'd the *Netherlands* by his Wife *Mary*, the only Daughter of *Charles the Terrible*, Duke of *Burgundy*, whom he married in 1478. He endeavour'd in vain to recover the Towns on the *Somme*, and the Duchy of *Burgundy*, that *Lewis XI.* of *France* re-united to his Crown. He was taken by the Inhabitants of *Bruges*, but rescued by the Valour of *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*. *Mary* of *Burgundy* dying, he courted *Anne* of *Brittany*; but was supplanted by *Cha. VIII.* of *France*, and married for second Wife, *Blanche* Daughter to *Philip* Duke of *Milan*, whose Money he employ'd in retaking Part of the Towns of *Austria* that had been seiz'd by *Mat. Corvin*, King of *Hungary*. In 1495, he made the famous Constitution at *Worms*, called the *Publick Peace*, to prevent the Decision of Controversies in the Empire by the Sword, as formerly. At the same Time he instituted the Imperial Chamber, to put in force the Regulation his Father had made.

for Administration of Justice. He pursued the War against the *Swissers* in Execution of the Buckler of St. George; but being worsted in 8 Battles, made Peace with 'em at *Basle* in 1499. He instituted at *Augsburg* in 1500 the Council called the *Regency*, to govern the Empire with him. He divided *Germany* that same Year into 10 Circles, and made a sort of perpetual Alliance with the *Swissers*, call'd the *Hereditary Agreement*, with relation to the Dominions that came to him from the Arch-Duke *Sigismund*, his Cousin. The *Venetians* refusing him Passage through their Territories to be crown'd at *Rome*, he engaged the Pope and the King of *France* against them by the League of *Cambray*, that had well nigh ruin'd the Republick, which must have happened by their losing all they had in *Terra-firma* after the Battle of *Agnadelle*, had it not been for the Difference that fell out betwixt the Heads of the League. The *Imperialists* took *Padua*, but lost it again by Neglect in 1509; and the *Venetians* having prevailed with *Lewis XII.* of *France* to break off from the League, began to resume Courage. The Emperor defeated the *French* Troops near *Novara*, by the Help of the *Swissers*, in 1513, and those of the *Venetians* near *Vicenza*; but lost the Advantage of those Victories by the Revolt of the *Swissers* for want of Pay. He could not recover *Milan*, and the *Venetians* retook *Brescia* and *Verona*, which put an End to that War. The Count of *Goritz* dying, he incorporated that County with his other Dominions in 1515. Hereceived with great Magnificence *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, and *Uladislaus* King of *Hungary*, at *Vienna*, and renewed with the latter the Contract of mutual Succession on the Failure of either of their Issue. He promised the Great Duke of *Moscovy*, for the Sake of the common Peace, not to protect the Great Master of *Prussia*. He died at *Wells* in *Austria* the 24th of *January*, 1519. in the 25th Year of his Reign. Dr. *Nicholson* says, he never passed a Gibbet without making a reverend Salute, in these Words, *Salve sancta Justitia*, in Honour of Justice; and that 5 Years before his Death, he had his Coffin always carried about with him. He was reckon'd one of the most Eloquent and Learned Emperors that ever *Germany* had. His only Child *Philip* married *Jean*, Daugh-

ter to *Ferdinand* King of *Aragon*, and *Isabel* Queen of *Castile*, which brought him the Succession of *Spain*. He died at *Bruges* in 1506, leaving two Sons and four Daughters; *Charles*, born the 24th of *Febr.* 1500; *Ferdinand*, the 10th of *March*, 1503; *Eleanor*, who first married *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, and then *Francis I.* of *France*; *Isabel*, who married *Christian II.* of *Denmark*; *Mary*, who espoused *Lewis* King of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*; and *Catherine*, promis'd to *John Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, but married to *John III.* of *Portugal*. The Arch-Duke *Philip* contracted with *Lewis XII.* of *France* the Treaty of *Blois*, for dividing the Kingdom of *Naples*; and being dangerously ill, recommended to him by his Will his eldest Son, praying him to place such an one about him, as he should think most capable of giving him good Education; and accordingly *Lewis* chose *William* of *Croi*, of the Branch of *Chievres*, one of the wisest and ablest Men of his Time.

Charles V. eldest Son to Arch-Duke *Philip*, and Grandson to *Maximilian*, who could not get him chosen King of the *Romans* during his Life, was chosen Emperor after his Death, and crown'd with great Pomp at *Aix la Chapelle*. He was at the same Time King of *Spain*, and Sovereign of the *Netherlands*; and Pope *Paul III.* gave him the Title of *Great*. He was chosen chiefly by the Interest of the Electors of *Ments* and *Saxony*. He quitted to Arch-Duke *Ferdinand* his Brother all his Dominions in *Germany*, reserving only those which came to him by the King of *Spain* and Duke of *Burgundy*. He added to the *Netherlands* the Lordships of *Utrecht* and *Overissel*, which *Henry* Bishop of *Utrecht* had given him. He afterwards acquir'd the Dutchy of *Gelderland*, the Country of *Groningen*, and the Towns of *Cambray* and *Lingen*; and to assure the *Netherlands* of a speedy Relief against any who should attack them, he incorporated them with the Empire by the Name of the Circle of *Burgundy*. He had several Wars, and was for most part successful. He made a League with Pope *Leo X.* in 1521, and speedily took *Parma*, *Placentia*, and *Milan*, and restor'd the latter to Duke *Francis Sforca*. He advanced *Adrian IV.* his Preceptor, to the Papacy; and the Constable of *Bourbon* having left the Service of *France* in Discontent, and join'd him;

him, he enter'd *Provence* with a great Army, took *Aix* and *Toulon*, and besieg'd *Marseilles*; but was obliged to raise it by the Valour of the Inhabitants, and repass'd the *Alps* in haste, before the Army of *Francis I.* of *France*, who thereupon enter'd the *Milanese*, and besieg'd *Parva*, which gave the *Germans* Time to augment their Army, and march to its Relief. *Francis* thought it would be disgraceful not to fight them, engaged contrary to the Mind of his Generals, was defeated, and taken. This Advantage made the Princes of *Italy* jealous of the Emperor, and particularly *Pope Clement VIII.* *Francis* was carried to *Spain*, and strictly kept in a Castle, and was set at Liberty after three Years on hard Conditions, that he could not fulfil, because against the Fundamental Laws of *France*. He left his Sons for Hostages, but in Revenge join'd with the *Pope* and *Venetians*. Upon this *Charles* enter'd *Italy*, and the Constable de *Bourbon* took *Rome*, and besieg'd the *Pope* in the Castle of *St. Angelo*, where he was reduc'd to great Want, while in the mean time Processions were made in *Spain* for his Deliverance. He was made Prisoner however, and obliged to ransom himself after 7 Months Confinement.

In 1529, *Charles* concluded a Peace with *France* at *Cambrai*, which did not last long; for *Sforza* Duke of *Milan* having caused the *French* Ambassador *Mirabeau* to be murder'd (going through *Italy* to the *Turks*) by Order of the Court of *Spain* as 'twas suppos'd, the *French* King, to revenge it, design'd to march into *Italy*; but being deny'd Passage by the Duke of *Savoy*, he made War upon him, and chas'd him out of his Dominions. *Sforza* dying without Issue, *Charles* seiz'd *Milan* as a Fief of the Empire, which re-kindled the War in *Italy* and the *Netherlands*, till a Truce of 10 Months was agreed on in 1537, which was afterwards prolong'd for 10 Years. During this Truce, *Charles* pass'd through *France* from *Spain*, to suppress those of *Ghent*, who had revolted. The *French* King receiv'd him with extraordinary Honour, and *Charles* pretended to desire a good Correspondence with him; but fearing to be detained, promis'd to restore *Milan*; which failing to perform, the War was again renewed. The *English* join'd with *Charles*; but that

League came to nothing. The *French* defeated the *Imperialists* at *Carignan* in *Italy*; and the Emperor being then embroil'd with the Protestants, made Peace with *France* in 1544. The Emperor being crown'd by the *Pope*, advis'd him to call a General Council, to settle the Affairs of Religion; but the *Pope* being unwilling to that, lest it should have turn'd to the Advantage of the Protestants, he put the Emperor upon reducing them by Force; but 'tis needless to repeat what we said of that War, in the Chapter of *The Religion of the Modern Germans*. The Protestants being in some measure supported by *France*, and having obliged the Emperor to Peace by the Treaty of *Passau*, and narrowly miss'd taking him at *Innsbruck*, he resolv'd to revenge it on *France*, and besieg'd *Metz* with 100000 Men; but the Duke of *Guise* defended it so well, that he was obliged to retire from before it in 1553; at which he was, so mortified, says the *Atlas Historique*, that 'twas probable he would then have retir'd to a private Way of Living, but for the Differences that happen'd betwixt the Electors of *Brandenburg* and *Saxony*, which gave him an Advantage over the Protestants. He afterwards came to the *Netherlands* against the *French*, took *Terouanne* and *Hesdin*, and design'd to have attack'd *Dourlans*, but the Defeat of his Cavalry prevented it, and made him retire to cover *Cambrai*, which the Constable of *France*, *Montmorency*, threatn'd to besiege. He join'd with the Duke of *Tuscany* to drive the *French* from *Sienna*, prevail'd with *Mary* Queen of *England* to marry his Son *Philip* Prince of *Spain*, and stopp'd Cardinal *Pool*, her Kinsman, in the Palatinate, lest he should have hinder'd it. The War betwixt him and *France* being renew'd in the *Netherlands*, the *French* took some Towns; and his Army having suffer'd much in a Battle there the 13th of *August*, 1554. the Queen of *England* mediated a Peace; but because the Emperor would not restore *Milan*, the Treaty broke off in 1556.

Guicciardin and *Thuanus* say, That in *October*, 1529, he drove *Soliman* the Grand Signior from before *Vienna*, which he besieg'd; and carried 50000 Men into *Africa*, where he took the Port of *Goulette*, and re-establish'd *Muley Hassan* in *Tunis*, after he subdued that Kingdom. In 1541, he went into *Africa* again.

against *Barberousse*; but return'd with great Loss into *Spain*.

After breaking off the Treaty with *France* in 1556, he grew weary of the Government, resign'd the Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand* King of the *Romans*; and the very Night he resign'd it, was so entirely abandon'd by his Court, that to shew the Instability of Humane Affairs, having no Servant near him, he would needs light a Person of Quality that was with him out of his own Chamber himself. He afterwards retir'd to the Monastery of *St. Just*, of the Order of *St. Jerome* in *Spain*, where he spent his Time in Devotion, and died *Sept. 21. 1558*. His Son *Philip II.* was so weak a Bigot, that he suffer'd the Inquisition to seize the Archbishop of *Toledo* his Confessor, and his Preacher, and to condemn his Will to be burnt, on Suspicion of his dying a Protestant; but it was afterwards pretended, that the Suspicion was groundless, and that secret Ways were taken to prevent the Effect of the Sentence, in order to save the Honour of the Inquisition: But some alledge, it was rather to prevent a dangerous Objection by the bigotted *Spaniards* against himself, as being the Son of a Heretic.

Charles V. say Thuanus and Guicciardin, was a Prince of great Parts and Courage, but a Dissembler, and one that sacrific'd all to his Ambition. He had the Pope and the King of *France* his Prisoners at one time, made 40 different Voyages and Journeys, 9 into *Germany*, 6 into *Spain*, 7 into *Italy*, 4 into *France*, 2 into *England*, 2 into *Africa*, 8 Voyages upon the *Mediterranean*, and two on the Ocean. Other Historians say, That he obtain'd 40 great Victories, came off Conqueror in 70 Battles, and was once 40 Hours altogether on Horseback. He left 3 Children by *Isabel of Portugal*, viz. *Philip II. of Spain*; *Mary*, Wife to the Emperor *Maximilian II.* and *Jean*, Wife to the Prince of *Portugal*. Before his Marriage, he had by a Concubine, *Margaret*, first married to *Alexander de Medicis* of *Florence*, and afterwards to *Ottavio Farnese* of *Parma*; and after the Empress's Death, he had *Don John of Austria* by a young Woman of *Ratisbon*, whose Name was never publick.

Puffendorf blames him for following the *Spanish* Maxims too far; for seeking to make

himself absolute, and neglecting to free the Empire from the Tyranny of the Popes, who had trampled upon it; and that he did not aggrandize his Family by the superfluous Church-Lands, which he might easily have done, by countenancing the Reformation, and suffering the Bishops to marry without quitting their Benefices; which, by the way, seems to contradict his having been a Protestant; or if he were, that he had not Courage enough to own it, or was not thoroughly convinc'd of the Falseness of Popery till after his Retirement.

Ferdinand I. youngest Son to *Philip*, was elected King of the *Romans* at *Cologne* in 1531, tho' the Elector of *Saxony* oppos'd him. *John* Count of *Scapno*, his Rival for the Kingdom of *Hungary*, dying in 1540; his Widow, that she might advance her Son, put her self and him under Protection of *Soliman II.* who entering *Hungary* with a great Army, took *Buda*, and most of the Kingdom, on Pretence of defending it against *Ferdinand*, and was successful in his War for some Years. *Ferdinand* invaded the Elector of *Saxony*, who had the chief Hand in the League of *Smalcald*. The *Bohemians* revolted; but he pardon'd them, and took away their Privileges; so that the Protestants went into *Poland* and *Prussia*, where they built new Churches. The Dukes of *Saxony* yielded him the Dutchy of *Sagan* in *Silesia*, which they had bought. *Charles V.* would have obliged *Ferdinand* in 1550 to quit the Dignity of the King of the *Romans* to *Philip II.* his Son, which he procured him with that View; but he would not, nor yet create that Prince, Perpetual Vicar of the Empire in *Italy* and the *Netherlands*. The War began again in *Hungary* in 1551; and after the concluding of the Peace at *Passau* in 1552, *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* marched thither with an Army; and the Need that *Ferdinand* had of the Protestants, made him agree to a Peace about Religion at *Augsburg* in 1555. That same Year he succeeded to the Empire, by the Abdication of *Charles V.* and was crown'd; but the Pope refus'd to own him a long time, because 'twas done without his Consent; and that *Ferdinand* had granted a Toleration to the *Lutherans*. He was mild and temperate, was Master of the Latin, and heard the Complaints of his meanest Subjects.

jects, saying, *That he could not expect Favour at the Throne of God, if even Beggars were denied Access to him.* He died in 1564, in the 62d Year of his Age, and the 9th of his Reign.

Maximilian II. was Viceroy of Spain, when he heard that *Charles V.* endeavour'd to have his Son *Philip II.* chose King of the Romans. Upon this, *Maximilian* went to Germany with the Infanta *Mary* his Wife; and tho' mightily urg'd to agree to *Philip's* being chosen, he got himself elected in 1562, and that same Year was crown'd King of the Romans, *Bohemia*, and *Hungary*. He was made Emperor in 1564, and govern'd with much Wildom and Equity. He deprived the Elector of *Saxony* for protecting the Rebels, and invaded the Province of *Transilvania*, which brought the *Turks* upon him, who took *Zigeth*, after a brave Defence by Count *Nich. Serini*. *Maximilian* retook several other Towns, made a Truce with the *Turks*, and refus'd to join the *Venetians* against 'em in 1570 and 1571. He had a Difference with Pope *Pius* for conferring the Title of Grand Duke on the Count *de Medicis*, alleging, that it belong'd only to himself to confer Titles of Honour. He demanded of the Pope to allow Communion in both Kinds, and Priests Marriage; and allow'd the Nobility of *Austria* the free Exercise of the Protestant Religion. He was chosen King of *Poland*; but *Stephen Batori* prevented him. He demanded Assistance of several Princes to recover that Crown, but in vain. He died at *Ratubon* in 1576, in the 40th Year of his Age, and the 13th of his Reign. His natural Goodness, and his Favour to his Protestant Subjects, made several Protestant Authors say, he was of their Religion; and the Papists call'd him the *Lutheran Emperor*.

Rodolph II. his Son, succeeded, being chosen King of the Romans before. He was crown'd King of *Hungary* in 1572, and of *Bohemia* in 1575. He came to the Empire in a very difficult Time, because of the Differences about Religion. He forc'd *Gebhard Trusches*, Archbishop of *Cologne*, who turn'd Protestant, and married *Agnes* Countess of *Mansfield*, to quit his Dignity. By a Truce of 15 Years, he prevented the Consequences of the Quarrel betwixt the Cardinal of *Lorraine* and *John George Marquis*

of *Brandenburg*, who were both chosen Bishops of *Straßburg*, the former by the Popish Canons, and the latter by the Protestants, after the Death of Count *John Manderscheid*. To prevent the War that might have been occasion'd by the Succession of *Juliers*, he would have sequestred that Dutchy; but the Pretenders oppos'd it. The Protestants made a League, which they call'd the *Union*, in 1609, of which *Frederick V.* Elector *Palatine*, was Chief. The Papists made an Alliance of 9 Years among themselves at *Wurtzburg*, which they call'd the *League*. The Imperialists had War with the *Turks* from 1594 to 1606, when they took several Towns, and committed great Ravages. *Rodolph* demanded Assistance of the Princes, and made a League with the Prince of *Transilvania*, which had bad Consequences. This Army fought the *Turks*, who had taken *Agria*, and defeated them; but being too intent upon the Plunder, the *Turks* rallied, and cut many of them off. During this War, *Philip Emanuel* of *Lorrain*, Duke of *Mercuur*, General of the Imperial Army, made the famous Retreat of *Canisá*. Arch-Duke *Matthias* took from *Rodolph*, *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and *Austria*, which he was obliged to quit to him in 1611, after having demanded from the Electors wherewith to maintain his Imperial Dignity. He died in 1612, without Issue. He was a Learned Prince, much given to Mathematicks, Painting, Chymistry, and Astrology; so that his Court was full of Men who profess'd those Sciences. He brought the *Gregorian Account* first into Germany.

In 1612, *Matthias* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* succeeded, but not without much Opposition. Cardinal *Klesel* was his chief Minister and Favourite. He disputed the Right of naming the Prince of *Transilvania* with *Amurat* the Great *Turk*; but at last made a 20 Years Peace with him. He prefer'd Arch-Duke *Ferdinand* his Cousin to *Philip III.* of Spain; his Nephew, to be his Heir, out of his natural Aversion to the *Spaniards*. He regulated the Succession at *Prague* in 1617, by the Advice of Arch-Duke *Maximilian* his Brother: And at the same Time a secret Treaty was made betwixt *Philip III.* of Spain and the Arch-Duke *Ferdinand*, by which *Philip* quitted to *Ferdinand*, and his Heirs-Male, the Heredi-

tary

tary Countries that should fall to him by the Emperor's Death, on Condition, That the Daughters of the Branch of *Spain* should be prefer'd to those of the Branch of *Germany*. At this Time happen'd the Revolt of *Bohemia*, because the Emperor's Ministers invaded their Laws and Privileges, granted them by *Rodolphus* the Second, for their Religion and Liberty. The Emperor assembled the States at *Prague*, where his Ministers did so provoke the People, that they threw them out at the Windows of the Castle, by which they receiv'd no great Hurt. After which, they chose new Magistrates, took Arms, and publish'd a Manifesto to justify their Proceedings. The Emperor publish'd another; and his Council, in order to accommodate Matters, were for turning out his Favourite *Klesel*, who was hated by the *Bohemians*; but the Emperor being against it, the Archdukes *Maximilian* and *Ferdinand* sent him Prisoner to *Tirol* of their own accord. The Emperor however went on with the War; but the *Bohemians* being more diligent, rais'd 30000 Men under Count *Mansfeld*, took several Towns. Upon which the Emperor's Troops enter'd the Country, and committed such Cruelties, as mov'd several neighbouring Princes and States to pity the *Bohemians*, and intercede for them in the Name of all the Protestants of the Empire; who also laid their Grievances before him, and complain'd, That he gave the Command of his Armies to Strangers, sworn Enemies to their Religion; which shew'd there was a Design rather to destroy them, than to redress their Complaints. They made Application to several of the Electors to endeavour an Accommodation; but the Duke of *Bavaria*, who lov'd to fish in troubled Waters, prevented it. The Emperor begun at last to grow weary of the War and Fatigue, and resign'd the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* to his Brother *Ferdinand*: And by his Grief for the Death of Archduke *Maximilian* and the Empress, he fell into a Distemper, and died the 20th of *March* 1619. leaving his Successor embroil'd in a War of 30 Years continuance, which some thought was foretold by a terrible Comet, with a long Tail, in form of a crooked Sword, which appear'd in the End of 1618. to most Nations of *Europe*.

In 1619. *Ferdinand* II. King of *Bohemia*, succeeded, and was hated for his Severity by all his Subjects, especially the Protestants. The reformed Nobility of *Austria* protested against his Persecution, and threatened, if he did not forbear, to call in the *Turks* to their Assistance; yet he would not desist. He made War with the *Venetians* on account of the *Groats*, who invaded their Dominions, and was successful against them. The *Bohemians* perceiving him to be irreconcilable to their Religion, depos'd him, and offer'd their Crown to the King of *Denmark*, the Duke of *Savoy*, and the Elector of *Saxe*, one after another, who all refus'd it; but the Elector *Palatine* accepted it; the Issue of which, we gave an Account of in the Chapter of Religion. After that Prince was defeated, the Protestants made a League with the Kings of *France* and *Denmark*, the Duke of *Savoy*, the *Venetians* and *Dutch*; and afterwards another with the King of *Denmark*, and several Princes and States of the Empire, they forc'd Count *Tilly* the Imperial General, &c. to retire; but having also given an Account of the Issue of this War in the Chapter above-mention'd, we shall not repeat it. *Ferdinand* died the 5th of *February* 1637. in the 59th Year of his Age, and the 18th of his Reign.

Ferdinand III. his Son succeeded, being chosen King of the *Romans* 3 Years before. His Troops under *Gallas* had some Advantage over the *Swedes* at first, but were defeated near *Rhinfeld* by the Duke of *Sax Weimar*; and another of his Armies was defeated in *Misnia* by General *Bannier* and the *Swedes*, who laid Siege to *Ratisbon*, where the Emperor had called a Diet. After this, *Tortenson* the *Swedish* General defeated Archduke *Leopold* near *Leipsick*, and invaded the Hereditary Countries; while on the other hand the Duke of *Anguien* took *Philipsburg*, defeated the Imperialists near *Friburg*, and obtain'd a famous Victory at *Norlingen* over the *Bavarians*; which would have ruin'd the Emperor intirely, had not the King of *Denmark* declar'd War against the *Swedes*, whose Power he dreaded, which gave their Arms a Diversion, and the Emperor a time to breath: Yet *Tortenson* chas'd *Gallas* into *Bavaria*, and defeated *Hasfeld* in *Bohemia*. General *Wrangel*, who succeeded *Tortenson* in the

the Command of the Swedish Army, defeated the Imperialists in the bloody Battle of *Sigmershusen* in 1634. And both Branches of the House of *Austria* being worsted in *Germany*, *Spain*, and the *Netherlands*, it brought on the Treaty of *Munster*, which was concluded in 1648, as above-mention'd. *Ferdinand* got his Son of the same Name chosen King of the *Romans* in 1653; but he died the next Year, to the great Grief of his Father, for he was a Prince of mighty Expectation. The Emperor, after this, sent Assistance to *Casimir* King of *Poland* against the *Swedes*, who had seiz'd most of his Country; He likewise procur'd the *Danes* to give the *Swedes* a Diversion on that side, and died the second of April 1657, of the Grief he conceiv'd for the Loss of his Eldest Son.

Leopold his Second Son, succeeded, after 8 Months, and was crown'd at *Frankfort*. In the beginning of his Reign, the War betwixt the *Swedes* and *Brandenburgers* was concluded by the Treaty of *Oliva* in 1660. A War broke out betwixt the Emperor and the *Hungarians*, who complain'd that their Privileges were invaded; that the *German* Troops maintain'd there on Pretence of defending them, which they were able to do themselves, committed all Sorts of Violence and Cruelty; that the *Hungarians* in Offices were not suffer'd to discharge them; that the Liberty of Religion allow'd them by several Diets was denied, their Churches taken from them, and their Ministers banish'd, because they were not of the Religion of their Prince: That the Nobility, who ought to be tried by their own Judges, were tried by *Germans*; that tho' the Revenue was more than sufficient to maintain the Troops, yet they were not paid, but liv'd by Extortion, or invading the *Turks*, who made severe Reprisals on the Country. The Grand Seignior improv'd this Difference, and the Emperor's taking part with the Prince of *Transylvania*, set up without his Consent; therefore he gave that Title to Prince *Abassi*. The *Turks* defeated the Imperialists at *Clausenburg*, and took *Newhausen* in 1663; but were routed at *Leventis*, where they lost 6000 Men, 4000 Wagons of Ammunition, 1000 Horse, and 140 Camels: And afterwards at *St. Gotthard*, where they lost above 6000 Men, and many General

Officers, by the Assistance of the *French*; which brought on a Peace. The *Hungarians*, finding that their Privileges were not restor'd according to Promise, being oppress'd by *German* Troops, and the Office of their Palatine being abolish'd, which had continued some hundreds of Years, they join'd with the *Transylvanians* to obtain help from the *Turks*; the very Monks preach'd, That their Yoke was easier than that of the *Germans*; for which the Counts of *Serini*, *Frangipani* and *Nadasti*, were put to Death, which hinder'd Prince *Ragotzki's* taking Arms: And Count *Teckely* dying in his Castle, just as the Imperialists had invested it, they were left without a Head, till young Count *Teckely*, who was then but 15 Years of Age, and escap'd to *Transylvania*, came to Espouse their Cause. In 1672, the *French* invaded *Lower Germany*, and over-ran great Part of the *United Provinces*. The Elector of *Treves* having no Force to oppose the *French*, was obliged to allow them a Passage through his Dominions; and the Archbishop of *Cologne*, and the Bishop of *Munster*, join'd with them against their Country. The Elector of *Brandenburg* demanded Assistance of the Emperor to protect his Dutchy of *Cleves*, but the *French* over-ran it before he could have any. The *French*, in 1673, entred *Alsace*, where they took several Towns, and laid Part of the *Palatinate* under Contribution. The Duke of *Lorraine*, who commanded the Emperor's Army, would have join'd *Caprara*, but was prevented by *M. Turenne*, which occasion'd the Battle of *Sinsheim*. The Elector *Palatine* was so much provok'd at the ravaging of his Country, that he sent *M. de Turenne* a Challenge; which he would not accept, without Allowance from the *French* King. These Things, with the taking of *Treves*, oblig'd the Empire to declare War, and assemble more Troops; upon which, *M. Turenne* repass'd the *Rhine*, and entrench'd near *Philipsburg*. In 1674, the *Germans* fought *Turenne* near *Molsheim*, where both Sides claim'd the Victory. In 1675, the *French* defeated the *Germans* near *Colmar*; but *Mentacuculi* succeeding the Duke of *Bourbonville* in the Command of the *Germans*, he was a more equal Match for *Turenne*; who being encamp'd near him, and going to a Heights to view his Army, was kill'd by a Cannon

Ball, which put an End to his Glory, that was tarnish'd before by his turning Papist. After the Battle of *Altenheim*, the *French* repuls'd the *Rhine*, where the Duke *de Du-ras*, Nephew to *Turenne*, acquir'd much Reputation by retiring so bravely from a disadvantageous Camp. The Emperor about this time establish'd in *Hungary* a Viceroy and Sovereign Council, in order to extirpate the Protestant Religion, and the *Hungarian* Liberties: They forfeited the Protestants, and sent their Ministers, and others, to the Gallies, upon every frivolous Pretext. The *Hungarians* rais'd 12000 Men to defend themselves, and took some Towns. The Barbarity of the Imperial General *Kop* exasperated them so far, that Prisoners on both Sides were put to the most cruel Deaths. In 1675, the Imperialists propos'd an Amnesty and Redress of Grievances; but their Promises not being credited by the *Hungarians*, it did not take. Prince *Abassi* took Part with the Malecontents; and the *Turks*, who had assisted them underhand before, did then invade the Emperor's Dominions. Young *Teckely* began about this time to signalize his Courage and Conduct, which inclin'd him to Prince *Abassi*. In 1677, the Emperor's Affairs being on the Declension, a new Accommodation was propos'd to the Malecontents, to which some submitted, and others did not. In 1678, a Diet was held at *Odemburg*, where the Protestants were promis'd their Churches, the Papists complain'd of Abuses in the Civil Government, and demanded their Liberties to be restor'd; but the Court would not. Count *Wesselini*, Brother to the Palatine of *Hungary*, who commanded the Malecontents, died; and *Teckely*, tho' but 22 Years of Age, had acquir'd so much Reputation, that he carried the Post from *Wesselini's* Brother. Having reviewed his Troops, he approach'd the Castle of *Mongatz*, in order to confer with Count *Serini's* Widow, Daughter to Prince *Ragotzki*; but her Mother-in-Law hinder'd it, and sent some Troops to beat up Count *Teckely's* Quarters; where a Son of Count *Serini* being taken, he carried on a Correspondence betwixt Count *Teckely* and his Sister. The Count afterwards defeated the Imperialists under Count *Lesly*, took most of the Towns of *Hungary*, and those of the Mountains in *Transilvania*: The

Emperor's Army being in no Condition to resist him, the Court of *Vienna* propos'd an Accommodation; but the Malecontents, tho' they wanted both Discipline and Money, insisting on a full Redress of all Grievances, it came to nothing.

In 1679, the War betwixt the Empire, the *French*, and the *Dutch*, was concluded by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, where the King of *Sweden* was Mediator; by which *France* got *Eriburg* and *Brisgau* in lieu of *Philipsburg*, and the *Swedes* recover'd the Provinces they had lost in the War. That Year the Plague hindred the Proceedings of the Armies in *Hungary*. *Tecke'y* being in *Transilvania*, *Wesselini*, who had got the Command of the *Hungarians* in his Absence, would not restore it upon his Return; so that they fought, wherein *Wesselini* was worsted, and taken. The Emperor offer'd an Accommodation again; but *Teckely* would do nothing without Consent of the *Turks*, who had promised to make him Sovereign of *Transilvania*. Princess *Ragotzki's* Mother-in-Law dying, the Princess married *Teckely*, by which he got all the Places which depended on that Family.

After the Peace of *Nimeguen*, the *French* began to erect Chambers of Reunion at *Metz* and *Brisack*; where, by the Sentence of his own Judges, several Princes were summoned to surrender those Provinces and Cities that were alledged to be Dependant on his new Acquisitions; and such as would not comply, were compell'd by force, particularly the Elector *Palatine*, and the Elector of *Treves*: The *French* still kept Possession of those Places they were obliged to surrender to the Empire by the Peace. The Emperor's Minister gave in a Memorial to the Diet at *Ratisbon*, of those Proceedings; and the States unanimously resolved, That they were contrary to the Treaties; but *Holland* and *Brandenburg* were not inclin'd to a Rupture with *France*. In 1680, the *French* surpris'd *Strasburg*, by the Treachery of some of their new Magistrates: The King of *France* did likewise Project to get the Dauphin elected King of the *Romans*, but miscarried in it. In 1681, he made a Treaty with Count *Teckely*, who had a strong Army of the Malecontents in *Hungary*, was in great Esteem with the Grand Signior, and engag'd the *Turks* to invade:

Hun.

Hungary before the Emperor was aware of it. In 1683, the Duke of *Lorraine* besieg'd *Newbenfel*; but was obliged to break up on the Grand Visier's marching against him. At the same Time 3000 *Tartars* harrafs'd the Country, and the *Germans* with great Difficulty retired towards *Vienna*; for 3000 *Turks* and *Tartars* fell upon their Baggage, took it, and kill'd most of the Convoy; but Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* rescued Part of the Baggage. The News of this occasion'd an incredible Consternation at *Vienna*; the Emperor removed to *Liniz*, and most of the Citizens were for leaving the City; but the Approach of the Duke of *Lorraine* next Day encourag'd them, so that they began to repair the Fortifications, and the Garison was reinforc'd, there not being above 200 regular Troops in the City before. The *Turks* open'd their Trenches the 15th of *July*: The Garison, under Count *Staremburg*, disputed every Inch of Ground, and by frequent Sallies cut off great Numbers of 'em. In the mean time the Duke of *Lorraine* defeated *Teckely*, took his Baggage, and relieved *Presburg*, that was ready to have fallen into his Hands. The Duke engaged him a second time on the Borders of *Moravia*, and forc'd him to retire. The Siege continued to the 12th of *September*, with all the Fury imaginable, and the Besieged behav'd themselves to Admiration, till they were reliev'd by the Christian Army of 80000 Men, consisting of *Imperialists* and *Poles*: The Right Wing was commanded by *John Sobieski*, King of *Poland*; the Left by the Elector of *Bavaria* and the Duke of *Lorraine*; and the Main by the Elector of *Saxony* and Prince *Waldeck*. They forc'd the Enemy's Intrenchments; and during the Engagement, the Duke of *Lorraine* detached Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* with a Body of Horse, Foot and Dragoons, to relieve the City, which he did, and killed all the *Turks* that were employ'd in the Assault. Upon this, the *Turkish* Horse fled, and left their Camp and Foot to the Mercy of the Christians, who gain'd a signal Victory, with the Loss only of 1000 Men. The *Turks* lost about 75000, with their Baggage, and 120 Cannon; and the Garison lost about 6000 Men during the Siege.

The Elector of *Saxony* return'd home with his Troops after the Relief of the

Town, because the Emperor disobligh'd him; but the *Imperial* and *Polish* Army march'd after the *Turks*, fell in with 14000 of them, routed them, took the Fort of *Barkan* by Storm, and soon after the Duke of *Lorraine* took *Gran*, after a Siege of 3 Days. 'Tis probable their whole Army must have been dispers'd, had not the King of *Poland* been likewise disgusted, which made him not so eager in the Pursuit as otherwise he would have been. He was not pleas'd with the Emperor's Coldness to him upon the Interview, after the considerable Service he had done him by raising the Siege. The *Atlas Historique* says, the Malecontents prevail'd twice with that King to mediate for a Redress of their Grievances; which being refus'd, he declar'd he would assist the Emperor no more. The Progress of the Emperor's Arms however made the *Turks* abandon *Essee*; and the Grand Visier being charged to have occasioned all those Misfortunes by his Imprudence, he was strangled at *Belgrade* by the Grand Signior's Orders.

In 1684, the *Imperialists* took *Pecgrade*, a strong Fortrefs on a Mountain near the *Danube*. The Duke of *Lorraine* defeated the *Turkish* Army near *Weissen*, took that Town, and worsted the *Turks* also near *Buda*. On the 18th of *July*, the Duke of *Lorraine* sat down before that Town. Twenty Thousand *Turks* came and encamped within 4 Miles of it: Upon which the Duke marched and routed them, took their General's rich Tent, and killed 4000 on the Spot, besides those slain in the Pursuit; yet the Besieged held out, and concerted with the *Seraski*, that on the 25th of *September* they should make a great Sally, and that he should send a strong Detachment to enter the Place, which he did; and tho' they met with great Opposition, yet 600 of 'em got in. The *Imperial* Army being much weakened, could not push on the Siege with Vigour; and on the 20th the *Turks* made three great Sallies, kill'd many of the *Imperialists*, and ruin'd most of their Works, which, together with the Approach of the *Seraski* with a great Army to the Relief of the Town, and the Badness of the Weather, obliged the Duke to raise the Siege.

Count *Lesly* besieged *Verovitzza*, the Capital of *Sclavonia*; and having sent a Detachment who defeated 2500 *Turks* near *Flatina*,

Verovitz surrender'd. He had like to have been surpris'd afterwards by 20000 *Turks*, commanded by the *Serafquier*; but he fortified his Camp, and obliged the *Turks* to retire with considerable Loss. In *Upper Hungary*, the *Imperialists* defeated *Teckely*, killed 4000 of his Men, and took two Towns.

In 1685, the Duke of *Lorrain* besieged *Newhausel*: The *Turks*, to give him a Diversion, besieged *Gran*; upon which he left Troops to carry on the Siege, marched against them with the Main of his Army, killed above 6000 of them, besides 3000 they lost in the Siege, took their Camp and Baggage, with the Loss only of 1000 Men, and relieved *Gran*, while his Troops before *Newhausel* took that Place by Storm.

Count *Lesly* took *Michalowitz* in *Croatia*, defeated 10000 *Turkish* Horse and Foot near *Essec*, scal'd the Town, put the Garison to the Sword, and burnt Part of the famous Bridge of that Place. About that same Time, General *Schultz* took *Especies* in *Upper Hungary*; upon which several other Places there surrender'd; and General *Caprara* took *Cashaw*.

About this Time, Count *Teckely* was seiz'd by Order of the Grand Signior, which was a Blunder in Politicks, and dishearten'd the Malecontents; so that the Port being sensible of their Error, set him at Liberty; upon which the *Imperialists* removed from before *Mongatz*, where they had block'd up his Lady Princess *Ragotiki*.

In 1686, the Duke of *Lorrain* laid Siege again to *Buda*, and open'd his Trenches the 21st of *June*. The Besieged made furious Sallies; in one they killed 1000 Men, and in another nail'd up a Battery of Cannon, and two Mortars; but their Magazine near the Castle was blown up, which demolish'd a great Part of the Wall. On the 12th of *August*, the Grand Visier came with 10000 chosen Men to force the *Imperial* Lines on the Right, and throw Supplies into the Town, and design'd with his whole Army of 70000 to attack the Main of the *Imperialists*; but the Duke of *Lorrain* sent 7 Regiments of Horse, and some *Hungarians*, who attacked the 10000 *Turks*, killed above 3000 *Janizaries*, took 8 Pieces of Cannon, and rejoin'd the Duke, who return'd to the Siege, and push'd it on with great Vigour.

Three Thousand *Janizaries* forc'd the Out-Guards, and threw 150 Men into the Town; but the rest were repulsed. The *Imperialists* took the Castle by Storm on the 29th of *August*, and 3000 *Janizaries*, who design'd to get into the Town, were repulsed, and 400 of them killed.

In the beginning of *September*, the Duke was reinforced by 10000 Men, under General *Seberffenberg*; the Assault was made, and the Town taken by Storm. The *Turks* fought with incredible Bravery, the *Basha* was killed in the Breach, 4000 *Turks* slain in the Assault, and the *Christians* got an incredible Booty. When the Grand Visier heard the Town was taken, he burnt his Camp, and retired to *Alba Regalis*.

Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* being join'd by a Body of *Groats*, besieg'd *Five Churches*, a strong Place, of difficult Access, where there were 2000 *Turks* in Garison. He made a Breach in three Days, and began to work on his Mines; upon which the Garison, who wanted Ammunition, surrender'd at Discretion; and *Syolos* did the like. Prince *Lewis* destroy'd the Bridge of *Essec* from *Darda* to the *Drave*, and likewise the Bridge of Boats which the *Turks* had laid over that River. Count *Caraffa* attack'd *Segedin*, and the Grand Visier sent 2000 *Turks* and 4000 *Tartars* to relieve it; but General *Veterani*, with 5000 Men, surpris'd the *Tartars*, and forc'd them to abandon their Camp with great Slaughter; but the Remainders of that Detachment joining with others, made up a Body of 10000 Men, and design'd to surprise *Veterani* in his March; but he forc'd them to retire with the Loss of 2000 Men, and their Baggage; upon which *Segedin* surrender'd the 23d of *October*.

In 1687, the Duke of *Lorrain* made a feign'd Retreat near *Mohatz*; upon which the Grand Visier order'd 15000 Men to attack his Left, commanded by the Elestor of *Bavaria* and Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*; but they stood their Ground till the Duke came up, when the *Turks* were put to flight, and many of them kill'd on the Spot, besides great Numbers drown'd in Morasses and in the River as they fled. General *Dunewald* pass'd the *Drave*, and took the Castle of *Burszew*, and design'd to attack the Castle of *Essec*; but the *Turks* abandon'd it, with *Posen* in *Sclavonia*, and other Places.

About

About this Time, the *Hungarians* finding themselves treated like a Conquer'd People, many of their Towns design'd a Revolt; but not being able to effect it, their Misery was heighten'd, abundance of Persons of Note executed on that Account, and multitudes of innocent People taken up, that were forced to redeem their Liberty.

After the taking of *Buda*, Prince *Abaffi* began to Temporize with the Emperor: But the Duke of *Lorraine* enter'd *Transilvania*, as Count *Tekely* foretold him would happen, and oblig'd that Prince and the States to a Submission, to surrender their Strengths, and conclude a Treaty very advantageous to the Emperor; upon which the Prince retired to *Fergatz*. About this Time, the strong Fortrefs of *Agria* surrender'd to the *Imperialists*, and *Mahomet IV.* Emperor of the *Turks*, was depos'd, and his Brother set up in his stead.

The Emperor's good Success put him upon getting his Son the Arch-Duke *Joseph* crown'd King of *Hungary*. He went himself to *Presburg*, where he assembled the States, and told 'em, He would have the Crown made Hereditary. The States took it into Consideration, represented their Grievances, as usual, and said, They were willing to elect the Arch-Duke; but desir'd their Freedom of Election might be continued, and that the Crown should not be Hereditary; That the *German* Troops might be recalled when Peace was made with the *Turks*; and all their Grievances redress'd before the Coronation. The Emperor allow'd them 14 Days to deliberate and draw up their Grievances; but told 'em, He had been at more Charge to defend that Kingdom against the *Turks*, than it was worth, and therefore had Right to look upon it as one of his Hereditary Countries. There were great Debates about this in the Diet; and the Count *de Drafcowitz*, the Chief Judge of the Kingdom, having represented the Consequences of it, they pray'd the Emperor not to make such an Alteration in their Constitution; but the Count being found dead a-Bed (says the *Atlas Historique*) some Days after, no body knows how, those of his Sentiments durst not after that talk any more of it. Some desir'd that they might be at Liberty to chuse any such Prince of the House of *Austria* as they thought fit; but

this was also rejected. There were Two other Things which retarded the Coronation; the First was, That according to an Article of King *Andreas's* Declaration, any of the three Estates had a Right to oppose the King, when he acted against the Laws of the Kingdom, without being guilty of Treason; but the Emperor would not allow of that. The Second was, That the Protestants, who had join'd with the Court to get the Crown made Hereditary, thought it a proper Season to demand, That they should be maintain'd in their ancient Privileges; That the Churches and Estates which had been taken from 'em since 1667, should be restored; That they should have Deputies in every Diet; That the Jesuits should not meddle in Affairs of State, or what related to the Protestant Religion; That they should not be allow'd to settle in any other Place than where they then were; And that Count *Caraffa*, who had got many innocent People cut off on Pretence of Plots, should be turn'd out: But the States did not think it a seasonable Time for the Protestants to insist on those Things; and thus, on the 29th of *December*, the Kingdom was made Hereditary, and the Power of the Prince in a manner absolute; so that the People could do nothing but groan and sigh for the Loss of their Liberty; for Count *Tekely*, who had acquir'd so much Glory, had fail'd of late in most of his Attempts, and was not able to keep up their Spirits.

In 1688, Princess *Ragotski*, who had been block'd up in *Münster* a long Time, being in want of Necessaries, and hearing that her Husband Count *Tekely* was sent for to *Constantinople*, where she was afraid he might be strangled, as he was every where given out to be, was forc'd to surrender. The Count being informed of this, as he was on his Journey to *Constantinople*, thought fit to return, lest his Friends should be quite dispirited. Some accus'd him for this to the Grand Signior; but it made no Impression to the Count's Prejudice.

Three thousand Five hundred Infidels attempted to surprise *Czernick*; but the Garrison sallied, killed 700 of them, and took most of the rest. The 27th of *May*, the *Imperialists* oblig'd *Alba Regalis*, where the Kings of *Hungary* were formerly crown'd, to surrender, and found 84 Pieces of Canon

non in it: They also took *Lippa* by Storm; and the *Turks* abandoned *Illock* and *Peter Waradin*.

In *August*, the *Elect* of *Bavaria* invested *Belgrade*, where the *Turks* made a brave Defence; yet he took it by Storm on the 6th of *September*, enter'd the Castle after the *Turks*, who fled thither, and kill'd 500 of them, with the Governor: The *Christians* lost 1250 Men; of whom there were 12 great Lords; but the *Turks* lost above 4000 Men in this Action.

Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, with a flying Camp in *Bosnia*, was surrounded by 15000 *Turks*, but routed them, and took 1200 Prisoners, near *Brods*.

In 1689, the *Grand Signior* finding a Way open'd to *Constantinople* by the taking of *Belgrade*, offer'd Peace upon very advantageous Terms, which were rejected. The *Elect* of *Bavaria* and *Duke* of *Lorraine* went to Command the Army on the *Rhine* against *France*; and the *Prince* of *Baden* commanded in *Hungary*. The *Imperialists* block'd up *Canissa*, *Themiswaer* and *Waradin*; but having too few Troops, they could not hinder Convoys to enter those Places, which with some Losses by *Sallies*, oblig'd them to rise from before 'em. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* having Advice, That the *Turkish Army* was above 50000; he reinforced his Army from the *Garisons*, and march'd towards the *Turks*, who were intrench'd before *Nissa*; but the badness of the Way, and want of Provisions, oblig'd him to march back to *Passerovitz*, to secure the Bridges over the *Morave*, and prevent the *Turks* from invading *Scavonia*. The *Turks* hearing of his Retreat, sent a strong Detachment to harra'ss him in his March, and to take the *Imperial Magazine* at *Semendria*; but he defeated this Detachment, and another that was sent to cut off his Retreat: After which, he march'd against their Army near *Patoschin*, defeated 'em, oblig'd 'em to retire to *Nissa*, took their Camp and Baggage, and 100 Pieces of Cannon. Some Days after he march'd to *Nissa*, forced their Camp, routed them, and took the Town. *Tekely* was on his Way to relieve it; but coming too late, he join'd the *Grand Signior* at *Sophia*, who entertain'd him with all possible Marks of Honour and Affection. The *Prince* of *Baden* march'd from *Nissa* to *Widdin*, a Place

of Importance on the *Danube*; defeated two *Bassa's* who lay near that Place, and took it in four Days; *Piccolomini* defeated the *Turks* also in several Skirmishes; But these continued Victories made the *Imperialists* too bold, which cost 'em some Regiments that attacked four times their Number of *Turks*. Upon this, *Veterani* was obliged to draw out his Troops from *Nissa*, and other Places, and march towards *Belgrade*. The *Prince* of *Baden* quartered part of his Army in *Wallachia* and *Transilvania*, fortified several Posts to secure them from the *Turks* and *Tartars*, and return'd to *Vienna*.

In 1689, the *French* invaded the *Palatinate*, committed great Barbarities there, took *Philipsburg* and other Places, having formerly burnt the Cities of *Spire*, *Oppenheim*, *Worms* and *Frankendale*. This Year they laid waste the Country about *Montroyal* and *Luxemburg*, to prevent the Confederates sitting down before these Places. The *Imperialists* under the *Duke* of *Lorraine* took *Keiserwaert* and *Ments*, after a brave Defence by the *French*; wherein the *German* lost above 6000 Men: And the *Elect* of *Brandenburg* being reinforced by Troops from the *Duke* of *Lorraine*, oblig'd *Bonne* to Surrender after a vigorous Resistance.

In 1690, the *Turks* desired a Peace; but the *Emperor's* Terms appearing too high, the War began again. *Abassi* *Prince* of *Transilvania* being dead, the *Emperor* made his eldest Son *Prince* of that Country, and the *Grand Signior* conferr'd that Honour on Count *Tekely*; who defeated and took General *Heuster* in *Transilvania*, which oblig'd Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* to pass the *Danube* at *Semendria*. The *Turks* also besieg'd *Nissa*: Count *Guido* of *Staremburg* wanting Provisions, was oblig'd to surrender it upon honourable Terms, after a brave Defence, but many of their *Garison* were perfidiously kill'd by the *Infidels*. The *Garison* of *Widdin* capitulated with the *Turks*, and were convoyed to *Orfiva*. Upon this, the *Turks* march'd towards *Belgrade*, the Breaches of which had not been sufficiently repaired; and General *Aspremont*, and the *Duke* of *Croy*, who had thrown himself into it, had not time to fortify it. The *Garison* made a brave Defence, but a Bomb blew up their great Magazine of Powder; it kill'd 1200 Men, wounded a greater Number, and threw

throw down part of the Walls. Several other Magazines were also set on fire, which occasion'd the burning down of a great part of the City: The *Turks* taking the Advantage of this Confusion, after several Repulses, carried it by Storm, and killed all those that oppos'd them; so that only 600 of the 6000 that were in Garrison escaped with the Duke of *Croy*, and the Counts of *Alpremont* and *Archinto*, over the *Danube* in Boats. The *Turks* after this march'd towards *Esse*, sat down before it; and would have taken it, if the Duke of *Croy* had not order'd 300 Men to Sally out in the Night, to sound a great many Trumpets, and beat Drums, first more faintly, and then more loud: Upon which, the *Turks* thinking it to be a strong Body of *Germans* come to the Relief of the Place, they broke up in Confusion, and left their Cannon and heavy Baggage. Count *Teckely* took *Lippa*, and put Garrisons into *Giula*, *Themiswar*, and *Great Waradin*, which harra's'd *Hungary*. Prince *Augustus* of *Hanover*, with 1000 Men, rashly attack'd 1500 *Turks* strongly intrench'd in *Transylvania*, was routed, and himself kill'd on the Spot. This Year the Emperor and the King of *Spain* made a new Alliance with the Duke of *Savoy*, who was threaten'd by the *French* King; and the Emperor got his Son Archduke *Joseph* King of *Hungary*, elected King of the *Romans*. *Canissa*, a strong Fortrefs in *Lower Hungary*, was surrendered to the *Imperialists*, while the *Turks* were busie with the Sieges of *Nissa*, *Widin*, *Esse*, and other Places. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* march'd with so great Secrecy, that he surrounded *Teckely's* Army, forc'd him to retire into *Wallachia*, and to leave most of his Baggage, with 4 or 500 Men behind, by which *Transylvania* was clear'd of the *Turks*.

In the beginning of 1691, died the Duke of *Lorraine*, who had gain'd so much glory in the *Turkish War*, &c. a little time before; and design'd to have invaded *France* with 40000 Men, by the Way of *Lorraine*. The Command of the Army on the *Rhine* was given to the Electors of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*, but they did nothing memorable on that side. The Prince of *Baden*, about the middle of this Campaign, march'd with 40000 Men along the *Danube* to *Peter Waradin*, to oppose 60000 *Turks*, who design'd to pass the *Save*; but their Fleet on the *Danube* being

stronger than that of the *Imperialists*, hinder'd the Provisions to come any farther than *Salankemen*; and the *Turks* march'd thither to cut off their Communication with *Peter Waradin*, where their Provisions lay. This alarm'd Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, who wanted both Provisions and Ammunition, and made him resolve to fight, tho' with great Disadvantage. He attack'd the *Turks* in their Trenches near *Salankemen*: His Right Wing was worsted; but the Left coming up, they routed the *Turks*, and gave Time to the Right to rally, by which they had a compleat Victory, with the Loss only of 2000 Men; and the *Turks* lost about 16000, with the Grand Visier *Cuperli*, the Aga of the *Janizaries*, and several great Bassas. After this they retok *Lippa*, pass'd the *Danube*, and took *Great Waradin*; but the Citadel held out, and was block'd up.

In 1692, General *Haußer* was exchange'd for Count *Teckely's* Wife. He besieged *Great Waradin* on the 28th of April, and took it the 2d of June, together with Store of Ammunition, 77 Pieces of Cannon, and 4 Mortars. This Year the Duke of *Hanover* was made an Elector of the Empire. The Prince of *Baden* having represented to the Emperor the Necessity of Naval Preparations on the *Danube*, because the *Turks* had a stronger Fleet, and frequently stop'd their Convoys: By Consent of the *Dutch*, many Seamen were list'd in their Country for that Service, and several Vessels fitted out. This little Fleet was commanded by the Marquis of *Fleuri*. The *French*, under the Mareschal de *Lorge*, committed some Barbarities on the *Rhine*; surpriz'd and took the Duke of *Wurtemberg*, and kill'd and took 2000 of the Detachment he commanded. The Landgrave of *Hesse Cassel* oblig'd the *French* to rise from before *Rhinfeld*.

In 1693, my Lord *Paget* Ambassador from *England*, and Monsieur *Hemskerque* Ambassador from the *States General*, came to *Constantinople*, to mediate a Peace betwixt the Emperor and the Grand Signior; but the *French* Ambassador dissuaded the Port from it. The Duke of *Croy* commanded in *Hungary*, and the Prince of *Baden* on the *Upper Rhine*. The *French* under the Mareschal de *Lorge* attempted twice to force the *German* Camp, but were repuls'd with Loss. Mareschal de *Lorge*, who commanded the

French

French under the Dauphin, put the Dutchy of *Wirttemberg* under Contribution, and took *Heidelberg*, by the Treachery or Cowardice of the Governr, where they committed great Barbarities, as in other Places of the *Palatinate*, burning wherever they came. The *Imperialists* besieg'd *Belgrade*; but the Grand Visier with an Army of 80000 Men obliged them to raise the Siege. General *Heidenstein* routed a strong Body of *Turks* and *Tartars* near *Giula*, and took that Town. In 1694, the *Turks* besieg'd *Titul*, without Success: The Garison intercepted 10 *Turkish* Vessels with Provisions, which occasion'd a great Scarcity in their Camp. They also besieged *Great Waradin*; but in vain. Two Thousand *Tartars* were detached over the *Danube*; but were cut off. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* passed the *Rhine*, made *Mons Lorge* retire, laid the Country under Contribution, destroy'd several *French* Magazines, and carried off 14000 Head of Cattle.

In 1695, the Elector of *Saxony* commanded in *Hungary*, and the Grand Signior *Mahmud* headed his own Army, retook *Lippa* and *Titul* from the *Imperialists*, defeated a Body commanded by Count *Peterani*, who was killed, and 3000 of his Men, with the Loss of 6000 *Turks*. The Elector of *Saxony* hinder'd them from making any Advantage of this Victory in *Transylvania*.

In 1696, the Elector of *Saxony* besieg'd *Themiswar*, which brought the Grand Signior to a Battle. The *Turks* had the Advantage of Number and Ground, and the Loss on both Sides was near equal; so that both challeng'd the Victory; but the Elector lost 5 great Cannon, and 16 Field-Pieces; and the *Turks* retook many small Places on the *Sava*, which they demolished.

In 1697, Count *Tetshy*, who had lost his former Reputation with the *Turks* since the Battle of *Salankemen*, retir'd to *Constantinople*. One of his Followers, called *Tukani*, form'd a Conspiracy in *Hungary*, assembled a Body of Troops, seiz'd *Kallo* and *Poack*, cut off the *Imperial* Garisons, and publish'd a Manifesto, inviting the *Hungarians* to shake off the *German* Yoke; but this Conspiracy was soon crush'd. This Year the Elector of *Saxony* being Competitor for the Crown of *Poland*, after *John Sobieski's* Death, with the Prince of *Conti*, carried it, which was a great Mortification to the

French. Prince *Eugens* of *Savoy* commanded in Chief in *Hungary*; and the *Turks*, encourag'd by their former Advantages, resolv'd to hazard a Battle at *Zenta*, where that Prince obtain'd a compleat Victory: About 25000 *Turks* were kill'd in the Field or drown'd in the *Theisse*, 6000 were wounded, and they lost 83 Pieces of Cannon, 5000 Waggon with Provisions, 17000 Oxen, 6000 Horses, as many Camels, a vast Number of Sheep, the Grand Signior's Tent, 7 Standards, and 500 Colours. This Year a Peace betwixt the Emperor, the rest of the Allies, and *France*, was concluded at *Ryswick*, upon the Basis of those of *Westphalia* and *Nimeguen*. The *French* quitted all their Reunions in *Alsace*; but Popery was to remain where they had settled it; The Elector *Palatine* was restor'd to his Territories, on paying 200000 *Livres per Annum* to the Dutchess of *Orleans*, till her Pretensions were decided; *Dinant* was restor'd to *Liege*; *Strauburg* resign'd to *France*; and *Fort-Kiel*, *Friburg*, *Star-Port*, *Old Brisac*, and *Philippburg*, restor'd to the Empire; The *French* were to demolish the Fortifications over against *Hunningen* and *Fort-Lewis*; The Castles of *Traerbach*, *Ehrenburg*, *Kirnburg*, and the Fortress of *Mont-Royal*, were to be demolish'd, and restor'd to their right Owners; The Duke of *Lorraine* was restor'd to his own Country, and to *Nancy*; and the Castles of *Bischo* and *Homburg* were to be raz'd. The Protestant Princes of the Empire gave in a Memorial against establishing Popery in *Alsacia*, because contrary to the Fundamental Laws of the Empire; i. e. to the Peace of Religion made in 1588, and to that of *Westphalia* and *Nimeguen*, which were the Basis of this Treaty; and that this Article was likewise contrary to the Capitulations of the Emperor and the King of the *Romans*, by which the said Peace of Religion was secured. They declar'd, That this Clause would prove a great Hindrance to the Union of the Estates of the Empire, which happen'd accordingly; for after the Peace was concluded, many Violences were offer'd to the Protestants in the *Palatinate*, and other Places, upon the Account of Religion.

In 1698, the Defeat of the *Turks* at the Battle of *Zenta* terrified them so much, that publick Prayers and Acts of Devotion were com-

commanded throughout their Empire, in order to obtain a Peace by the Favour of God and their Prophet. The Emperor and the Grand Signior consented that his Majesty of Great Britain and the States General should be Mediators of the Peace. They were represented by my Lord Paget and Monsieur Coliere, who met at Carlowitz, betwixt Peter Waradin and Salankemen. Prince Eugene commanded this Year in Hungary; but the Expectation of a Peace made both Sides act only on the Defensive. The Regiments of Herbeville and Saxe-Gotha conspired to revolt from the Emperor; but the Formers of this Design being seiz'd and punish'd, the rest return'd to their Duty. There happen'd Differences this Year about the French King's delaying to restore Rhinsfeld, Philipsburg, and Brisas, according to the Peace at Ryswick. The Czar of Muscovy, after he had visited Holland, and King William in England, went to Vienna, where he was splendidly entertain'd by the Emperor, and from thence return'd home.

January the 26th, 1699. a Treaty was sign'd for 15 Years betwixt the Emperor and the Turks at Carlowitz: The chief Articles were, "That Transilvania should remain entire to the Emperor; but the Province of Themiswarer to the Turks: That the Emperor should demolish Caransebes, Lippa, Zerweck, Bershe, and Sabla, and never re-fortify them. The Islands of the Rivers Save and Marosch were to belong to the Emperor; but the Use of those Rivers to both. All Prisoners taken during the War to be exchanged or ransomed. No Protection on either Side to be given to Rebels and Malecontents. The Papists were to have the free Exercise of their Religion." The Czar, the King of Poland, and the Republick of Venice, were comprehended in this Treaty; but Count Tockely was excluded. The Grand Signior made him, by way of Compensation, Prince of Wedd'n, Caransebes, and Lugos, with their Dependencies. This Year Joseph King of the Romans was married to Wilhelmina Amelia, youngest Daughter of John Frederick Duke of Hanover.

In 1700, the Emperor disbanded some of his Troops, and offer'd his Mediation betwixt the K. of Sweden and the K. of Poland; but without Effect. M. Villars, the French

Ambassador, acquainted his Imperial Majesty with the Treaty of Partition agreed on betwixt England, Holland, and France, and desir'd the Emperor to accept it, since the Preservation of the Peace of Europe was the sole End of it; but his Imperial Majesty refus'd it, because it was contrary to his own Right and Interest.

The Death of King Charles II. of Spain, on Nov. 1. 1700. and his suppos'd Will, by which he made the Duke of Anjou his Successor, contrary to the Treaty of Partition, oblig'd most of the Princes of Europe to side with the Houses of Bourbon or Austria, according to their different Interests. The Emperor made a new Alliance with England, Holland, and the Princes of the Empire, and sent Prince Eugene of Savoy to Italy with 30 or 40000 Men, who, after a surprizing and unexpected March over the Rocks and Mountains of the Alps with his Artillery, let down from Precipices by Engines, publish'd a Manifesto there, asserting the Rights of the House of Austria to the Milanese, and the Monarchy of Spain. About this Time a new Conspiracy was form'd against the Emperor in Hungary; upon which Prince Ragotski and Count Schirmer were imprison'd: Ragotski escap'd, and the Emperor imprison'd his Lady. This Year the Elector of Brandenburg erected the Dutchy of Prussia into a Kingdom, with the Emperor's Consent; and he and his Wife were crown'd at Koningsberg, the Metropolis of that Country. On this Occasion he was congratulated by the Emperor, and most Princes of the Empire. The Duke of Mantua declar'd for the French King, and received a French Garison into that City. Prince Eugene began his glorious Actions in Italy, by forcing the Pass at Carpi, and passing the Mincio, notwithstanding the Vigilance of the French Generals, which occasion'd a Misunderstanding among them, and oblig'd the French King to recall M. Catinat, and send M. Villeroy in his stead, who being defeated by Prince Eugene at Chiari, had 4000 Men killed, by which the French lost all the Dutchy of Mantua, except the Capital, and Goito.

In 1702, the Elector of Cologne suffer'd French Troops to enter his Territories; but the Chapter declar'd for the Emperor, and received a Dutch Garison into Cologne: Prince

Eugene surpris'd *Cremona*, where *M. de Villeroi* had his Head Quarters, with 12 Battalions of Foot, and 5 Regiments of Horse. He made *Villeroi* Prisoner; but the Badness of the Ways having hinder'd Prince *Vaudemont* to come up in Time to his Assistance, he was oblig'd to retire, being out-number'd by the Garison; but carried off *M. Villeroi*. He block'd up *Mantua*; but the Place being naturally strong, and his Army not large, he was oblig'd to rise from before it. The Duke of *Anjou* commanding his own Army in *Italy*, marched to surprise an Imperial Magazine at *Luzara*, which occasion'd a Battle, where the Loss was great, and almost equal on both Sides: Yet Prince *Eugene*, tho' inferior in Number, made a further Progress in *Italy*. About this Time, the King of the *Romans* and Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* took *Landau*, after a vigorous Defence; and the Elector of *Bavaria* declar'd for *France*, and surpris'd *Ulm* by Treachery.

The Emperor and the States of *Swabia* and *Franconia* assembled Forces against the Elector of *Bavaria*, and took many Towns. *M. Villars* pass'd the *Rhine*, and attempted to force the Lines of *Stolhoffen*, and open a Passage that Way to join the Elector of *Bavaria*; but being repuls'd, he join'd him by Way of the *Black Forrest*; and they took *Ratisbon*, while the Imperial Diet was sitting there. After this, *M. Villars* march'd to *Tirol*, took many Places there, and design'd to force his Way from thence into *Italy*; but fail'd in the Attempt, and was forced to abandon all his Conquests there. The Confederates took *Bonn* on the *Lower Rhine*, and *Traerbach*; but were oblig'd to quit the latter on the Approach of Count *Tallard*, who took *Landau*, after he had defeated the Confederate Army that came to relieve it, under Count *Nassau-Weilbourg* and the Prince of *Hesse-Cassel*. On the *Upper Rhine*, the Duke of *Burgundy* took *Brisac*. The Duke of *Vendosme* mistrusting the Duke of *Savoy*, disarm'd all the *Savoyard* Auxiliaries in his Army, made them Prisoners of War, and sent a strong Detachment to the Frontiers of *Piedmont*, to force the Duke to a Neutrality, upon dishonourable Terms; which the Duke resented so much, that notwithstanding his two Daughters were married to the Duke of *Burgundy* and to the

Duke of *Anjou*, he declar'd for the Allies. The Arch-Duke *Charles* being acknowledg'd as King of *Spain* by the Allies, came from *Vienna* to *Holland*, and from thence into *England*, where he embarked for *Portugal*, the King of that Country having enter'd into the Grand Confederacy, and arriv'd safely there.

This Year Prince *Ragotski* was condemn'd by the *Aulick Council* at *Vienna*, and all his Possessions confiscated, (except an Yearly Allowance of 6000 Livres to his Wife, and 15000 to each of his two Daughters) for Rebellion and Treason against his Imperial Majesty and the King of the *Romans*, by endeavouring to subject *Hungary* to a Foreign Power, by alienating the Affections of the *Hungarians*, and by writing several Letters to *France*, to put *Hungary* under the Protection of that Crown; for which, and other Crimes, he was sentenc'd to lose his Head whenever he could be seized.

In 1704, the Malecontents invaded the Emperor's Hereditary Dominions. Prince *Eugene* was sent to *Presburg*, to endeavour an Accommodation; to which they would not agree, except on the Terms contain'd in their Manifesto, which was in Substance as follows: That they have no Design to throw off the Emperor their Sovereign; but shall always be ready to sacrifice their Fortunes for his Glory, if he treat them as a good Prince ought to do; and since they believ'd him to be naturally bountiful and merciful, they demanded, 1. To be allow'd their ancient Privileges, which they enjoy'd when they became his Subjects. 2. That the Blood of their Martyrs, whose Consciences had been oppress'd, cry'd so loud, that they could not but insist on demanding the Restitution of their Churches for Divine Worship. 3. That the Revenues of their Churches, possessed by the *Jesuits*, should be restored. 4. That their Records should likewise be returned. 5. That they be restor'd to their Offices and Dignities, as formerly. 6. That the *Jesuits* should be banish'd *Hungary* and *Transylvania*. 7. That their Colleges and Revenues should be likewise restored. 8. That those who had been forced to change their Religion, should be left at Liberty to return to it. 9. That the Books and other Papers concerning their Grievances, which were taken from them, should

should be restor'd. 10. That such Estates as Protestants had been forc'd by Persecution to grant to the Popish Clergy, should be restor'd to the Protestant Clergy for the Relief of their Poor. 11. That all the Popish Clergy, except Natives, be oblig'd to depart *Hungary* and *Transilvania*. 12. That if the Emperor will name Commissioners, to Treat of a firm and durable Peace, and agree to a Suspension of Arms, and Time and Place for a Treaty, they will do the like. 13. That some Potentates be made Guarantees of the Treaty. 14. That without Degradation to the Emperor's Sovereignty, they may have Leave to send Deputies to the Diet of the Empire, merely to take Care that they be not inroach'd upon in Matters of Religion. 15. That as a Compensation for the Cruelties committed upon their Families, and other Losses, they may be exempted from all Taxes for 15 Years. 16. That they may have Liberty to Trade every where but with the Emperor's Enemies. 17. That Princess *Ragotzki*, and her Family, be set at Liberty, and her Jewels restor'd, without any Default. 18. That the Castle of *Mongatz*, with all its Dependencies and Privileges belonging to it, be restor'd to her and her Heirs. 19. That the Sentence against Prince *Ragotzki* be ras'd out and annull'd, his Honour restor'd, and that he be own'd as a Prince of the Empire, and put in Possession of all his Rights. 20. That the Estates taken from that Prince, and given to the Jesuits, be restor'd, as at present, without any Allowance for Improvements made on them. 21. That there be a general Amnesty for all who have any way assisted that Prince. 22. That they be restor'd to their Employments, Offices and Dignities, and the Confiscation of their Estates and Goods be made void. 23. That Protestant Commissioners may have liberty to take out of the Nunneries all such Protestant Women as have been forc'd into them, whether Married or Unmarried. 24. That the Protestants shall be allow'd Schools every where as formerly. 25. That those of the *Augsburg* Confession may have Leave to settle in *Hungary* and *Transilvania*, to repeople the Country that has been laid waste by War and Persecution. 26. That half the Courts of Judicature may be compos'd of Protestants as formerly. 27. That

the like shall be allow'd in all Corporations. 28. That the Protestants of such Bodies or Corporations be not oblig'd to attend at any Functions contrary to their Consciences. 29. That they be not oblig'd to put any Ornaments before their Gates, or in their Windows, on that Holiday, call'd the *Fest of God*. 30. That when they meet the Host, they shall not be oblig'd to kneel or retire, but only to salute the Priest by taking off their Hat.

Her Majesty of *Great Britain*, and the *States General*, employed their Ministers to mediate a Peace betwix the Emperor and the *Hungarians*, but in vain; the Imperial Court being stiff. *Mareschal Villars* with the *French* made a great Progress upon the *Danube*; and General *Visconti* and Count *Staremberg* forc'd their Way with admirable Conduct to join the Duke of *Savoy* in *Piedmont*, where he was very much press'd by the *French*. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* not being able to make Head against the *French* and *Bavarians* on the *Danube*, the Duke of *Marlborough*, with a great Body of *British* and *Dutch* Troops, march'd from *Boisleduc* in *Brabant* the 12th of *May* 1704, and join'd him in *Swabia* the 15th of *June*; when being inform'd, That the Elector of *Bavaria* had order'd his Troops to intrench the Hill of *Schellenburg* near *Donawert*, a very strong Post, to hinder the Allies from passing the *Danube*; the Duke and the Prince attack'd them on the 2d of *July*, forced their Intrenchments, which reach'd as far as *Donawert*, defeated 18000 *French* and *Bavarians*, commanded by the Count *d'Arco* the *Bavarian* Field-Marshal, a *Bavarian* Lieutenant General, and two *French* Lieutenant Generals; kill'd about 5000 on the Spot, took 15 Cannon, all their Baggage, Ammunition, and Tents, 13 Colours, and Count *d'Arco's* Plate. The Attack was begun by the *British* Troops; wherein the Regiments of *Orkney* and *Ingoldshy*, and Lord *John Hay's* Dragoons, did Wonders, and suffer'd most; so that the Loss on the Confederate Side was almost equal to that of the Enemy: But the former gain'd the Pass and the Town, with the Enemies Stores; entred the Elector's Country, forc'd him to retire under the Cannon of *Augsburg*, took several Garisons, and sent a strong Reinforcement to Prince *Eugene*, who observ'd the

R r r 2

French

French on the *Rhine*; but notwithstanding all his Precautions, they march'd thro' the *Black Forest*, and join'd the *Electors* near *Augsburg*. Prince *Eugene* followed 'em with his little Army as fast as was convenient; but the *French* and *Bavarians* having repass'd the *Danube*, in order to attack him, the Duke of *Marlborough* made haste to join him near *Münster* on the *Danube*. In the mean time the Enemy march'd to a rising Ground, betwixt *Hochstet* and *Lutzingen*, where the Duke design'd to have encamp'd: Upon which, his Grace and the Prince resolved to attack the Enemy, tho' strongly encamp'd. Accordingly they march'd towards them on the 2d of *August* in the morning; the *Imperialists* under Prince *Eugene* on the Right, and the *Britains* and *Dutch* on the Left. The Allies, tho' they had the Disadvantage of the Ground, and several Brooks to pass, march'd on boldly till they came within Cannon-shot; when the *French* play'd upon them from their Line for about 4 Hours, till the *Imperialists* came up, after many Difficulties in their March. The Allies in the mean time cannonaded the *French*, with considerable Damage on both Sides. When the *Imperialists* came up, the *French* sent a strong Body of Foot, and Dragoons dismounted, to the Village of *Blenheim*, which they fortified with a Trench and Barricades. The Lord *Cutts* being commanded to attack the Village with 20 Battalions, perform'd it with the utmost Bravery; but was beat off with great Loss, 15 Squadrons of Dragoons, who were order'd to sustain him, being at too great a Distance: Upon this, some Squadrons of *French* Gens d'Arms attack'd him, and put some of his Regiments into Disorder; but were oblig'd to retire by the coming up of some *Hessians*. The *British* Horse were sent from the first Column to sustain my Lord, and Colonel *Palms* with four Squadrons beat off the Gens d'Arms; but advancing too far, suffer'd by the fire of a *French* Battalion from the Hedges, which oblig'd 'em to wheel and form themselves. At the same time, the rest of the *English* Horse, with 10 Squadrons of Foreigners, advanced before the Foot, and pass'd the River, but were forced to repass it by the *French*. The Duke of *Marlborough* perceiving this, came up, and rallied them with great Presence of Mind;

upon which they pass'd the River again, join'd the other 4 Squadrons, and beat the *French* back a considerable Way. The rest of the Confederates Left pass'd the River, the Foot of the First Line under General *Churchill* and Lieutenant General *Ingoldsby*; and the Horse charg'd the *French* with Advantage, till a Brigade of their Foot oblig'd them to retire. The Earl of *Orkney* coming up with the rest of the Second Line of Foot, sustain'd the Confederate Horse, who were push'd by the Gens d'Arms, and interlin'd 'em with some Battalions; upon which, the Horse form'd themselves, charg'd the *French*, and beat them from the high Ground. The Duke of *Holstein Beck*, with 10 Battalions, attack'd the *French* in a Village, where he suffer'd much; and the *French* Fire from that Village gauling the Flank of our Horse, the Duke of *Marlborough* brought three Battalions to cover them. The Earl of *Orkney* ordered some Guns, with Cartouch-shot, to play on the *French* Battalions, interlin'd with their Horse, which did great Execution among 'em; and their Horse advancing, were beat off, by which eight of the Enemies Battalions were expos'd, and cut off almost in Rank and File. Upon this, the whole Wing of the *French* Horse retir'd a little; and *Marschal Tallard* form'd them in a Line to bring his Foot and Dragoons out of the Village of *Hochstet*: Upon which, the Confederate Horse charg'd them, put 'em in Confusion, and drove many of 'em into the *Danube*, while the rest retired towards *Hochstet*: And in the mean time, Count *Tallard* was taken in a Village, as endeavouring to get to *Blenheim*. Part of the Confederate Horse pursued the *French*, and the rest fronted to the Village of *Blenheim*, which was surrounded by the Confederate Foot under the Earl of *Orkney* and Lieutenant General *Ingoldsby*; and General *Churchill* having cut off the Communication betwixt two *French* Brigades, and the rest of their Troops in the Village, the Confederates followed them into the Village, where they suffer'd much by the Fire of the *French* from the Houses, as well as from that in the Streets; and having a great Body of Troops in the Church-yard, they rallied and beat out those commanded by the Earl of *Orkney* twice with considerable Loss.

The

The 10 Battalions commanded by the Lord *Custis*, had also sustained great Loss by their Attacks on the other Side of the Village. While the Earl of *Orkney* was rallying some of his Battalions on the Plain, a Body of *French* marched towards him from that Part of the Village which he had order'd to be set on Fire; upon which having put his Men in Order to receive them, with great Presence of Mind, he order'd a Parley to be beat, and sent his Aid de Camp, Captain *Abercromby*, to offer them Quarter, if they would surrender. They proved to be Part of the *French* Brigade Royal commanded by *M. de Denonville*, their Brigadier, who, after some Difficulty, accepted the Terms, and surrender'd to the Earl. Another *French* Battalion perceiving this, surrender'd to Lieutenant-General *Ingoltsby* at his Attack. It being near Night, and the Confederate Troops much fatigued, and not in a Condition to attack without a further Reinforcement, the Earl sent his Aid de Camp with *M. Denonville* into the Village, where there were still 20 Battalions of Foot, and 12 Squadrons of Dragoons, to inform 'em, That their Horse were routed, and Count *Tallard* taken; and to offer them the same Terms that had been given to the rest. *M. Blanzac*, who commanded in Chief, demanded Leave to march out, and join the rest of their Troops, which the Earl refused; so that 26 entire Battalions, and 12 Squadrons, surrender'd, with the General, and several other Chief Officers, to the Earl. On the Right, commanded by Prince *Eugene*, the Ways being bad, and the *French* superior in Number, the Confederate Horse and Foot were several times beat back, and suffered much; but at last the *Danish* and *Prussian* Foot charged the *French* with so much Fury, that they retir'd, and the Remainders of their scatter'd Army join'd with the *Bavarians* that Night at *Lawingen*. The Duke of *Marlborough* pursued them to *Hochstet*, where he lay that Night, as Prince *Eugene* did at *Moncheligen*. In this Battle the *French* and *Bavarians* had about 14000 Men killed in the Field, 4000 drown'd in the *Danube*; their Commander in Chief, with 40 General Officers, 1200 Inferior Officers, 12000 Common Soldiers, 49 Cannon, 163 Colours, Standards and Kettle-Drums, taken. The Confederates had 4485 killed,

and 7523 wounded. This Victory saved the Empire from imminent Ruine, restored the Affairs of the Confederates, and was such a Check to the growing Power of *France*, as she is not like to recover. It establish'd the Duke of *Marlborough's* Glory, who was thereupon made a Prince of the Empire, and allow'd a Vote in the Diet as Prince of *Mindelheim*, which was erected into a Principality to him and his Heirs. After this Victory, *Augsburg* and *Memmingen* were abandon'd by the *French* and *Bavarians*, *Ulm* surrender'd in September, and *Landau* in November; the *French* abandon'd *Triers*; and that same Month *Traerbach* surrender'd to the Hereditary Prince of *Hessi-Cassel*.

In 1705, Prince *Eugene* went to command the Imperial Army in *Italy*, where the *French* being Masters of the Passes of the *Mincio*, he embarked his Troops on the Lake de *Garda*, and landed in the *Brescian*, to stop the Progress of the *French* against the Duke of *Salvoey*. This occasioned the Battle of *Cassano* in August 1705, where the *French* were defeated, and many of them kill'd, besides what were drown'd in the *Adda*, and a great Number taken. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* forc'd the Lines of *Haguensau*, and oblig'd *M. Villars* to retire under the Cannon of *Strasburg*. The Peasants of *Bavaria* took Arms; but were soon reduced. The Emperor *Leopold* died on the 5th of September. He was born the 14th of September, 1640. was three times married, but left no Children except by his last Empress *Magdalena Theresa*, Daughter to Prince *Philip William* of *Newbourg*, by whom he had the present Emperor *Joseph*, King *Charles III.* of *Spain*, and three Arch-Duchesses, *Mary Elizabeth*, *Mary Anna*, and *Mary Magdalen*. He was a good Prince, zealous in his Religion, regular in his Manners, charitable to the Poor, much addicted to raise the Grandeur of his Family, and a good Master. He spoke *Latin*, *Spanish*, *Italian*, and *German*, perfectly well; was well vers'd in Arts and Sciences, and particularly in Musick. His greatest Weakness was, his being too much influenc'd by the *Jesuits*, who rais'd a Persecution in *Hungary*, which laid the Foundation of the long and ruinous War, which still continues there.

His Son *Joseph* succeeded. This Year died the D. of *Zell*, by which that Dutchy, with

its Dependencies, fell to the Illustrious Family of *Hanover*.

In 1706, the Malecontents made Incursions to the Gates of *Vienna*, and the *Imperialists* reduc'd *Transilvania*. Count *Tzekely* died this Year at *Nicomedia* in the *Turkish* Dominions, and made Prince *Ragotski* his Heir. The *Bavarian* Peasants, who had again revolted, were defeated near *Munich*, and that Town was taken by the *Imperialists*. In *Italy*, the Duke of *Vendosme* defeated Part of the *Imperial* Army, from whence he went to command in *Flanders*. Prince *Eugene*, by his admirable Conduct, overcame all Difficulties in his March to join the Duke of *Savoy*, who was reduc'd to such Streights, that he was forc'd to send away his Court to *Genoa*, upon the Approach of a great *French* Army, which laid Siege to his Capital of *Turin*.

They open'd their Trenches before it the 3d of *June*, 1706. and continued the Siege till the 5th of *September*, when they were attacked by the D. of *Savoy* and Pr. *Eugene* with the *Imperialists*, who, after a bloody Battle, defeated the *French*, forc'd them to abandon their Approaches, Cannon, Mortars, and Ammunition; and in their flight, the *French* let Fire to several Magazines of Powder, Bombs, and Grenadoes. The Marshal *de Marfin* was taken, and died of his Wounds; besides whom, there were taken 2 Generals, 2 Marshals de Camp, a Brigadier, 8 Colonels, 12 Lieutenant-Colonels, 6 Majors, 98 Captains, 111 Lieutenants, 34 Cornets or Ensigns, 13 Engineers and Commissaries of the Artillery, 7640 private Soldiers, including those taken in *Ghivas*; which, together with 4706 killed in the Battle, made their Loss 12634, besides those lost in the Siege, and in their Retreat for want of Provisions and Medicines, and such as were killed by the *Vandois*; and there was found in their Works 225 Cannon, 108 Mortars, 7800 Bombs, 32000 Royal Grenadoes, 48000 Cannon-Ball, besides a great Number in the Ditches, 4000 Chests of Musket-shot, and 86 Barrels of Powder, containing 100 Weight each, all their Tents and Baggage, great Numbers of Standards, Colours, and Kettle-Drums, 5000 Horses, Mules, and Oxen, 27 large Boats with Ammunition, all their Pontons, 4 Pictures of the *French* King set with Diamonds, valued at 4000

Pistoles, 3000 Sacks of Corn and Meal, and 2000 of Bisket; and their Commissary-General was also taken with all his Mules, so richly laden, that it was valued at 3 Millions of Livres: To which must be added, 10000 Horses belonging to 13 Regiments of *French* Dragoons. The Allies had about 4000 Men killed and wounded; among the former, were the Prince of *Beveren*, a Colonel, and a Lieutenant-Colonel; among the latter, 2 Major-Generals, and 3 Colonels, besides many Inferior Officers. The *French*, according to their usual way, diminish'd their own Loss, and magnify'd that of the Confederates; but the Falshood of their Accounts appeared, by the Letters sent from the Duke of *Savoy* and Prince *Eugene* to the States General and others. Much about the same Time, the Prince of *Hesse* took *Göta* upon Terms; but had afterwards some Loss at the Battle of *Castiglione*. After the Battle of *Turin*, the *French* surrender'd *Ghivas* in the *Milanese*; the Garison of 1482 Men was made Prisoners of War; and the Allies found in it 12 Battering Cannon, 26000 Barrels of Powder, 7000 Casks of Bullets, &c. *Novara*, *Crescentino*, *Milan*, and *Como*, did also surrender; and in short, all *Lombardy* was reduced. The King of *Sweden*'s entering *Saxony* this Year with his Army, alarm'd all *Germany*; and the *French* gave out every where, that he would declare for them; but his Majesty assur'd the Allies, That he had no Intention to disturb the Peace of the Empire, but came only to have Satisfaction of *Augustus* King of *Poland*, Elector of *Saxony*, whom he afterwards obliged by Treaty to resign the Crown of *Poland*. This Year the Electors of *Bavaria* and *Cologne* were put into the Ban of the Empire, and proscribed. A Detachment from M. de *Villars* attacked *Haguenau*, which was surrender'd to the *French*, who made the Garison of 2200 Men Prisoners of War, and found in it 800 Barrels of Powder, 26000 Cannon-Ball, 8000 Sacks of Corn, 15000 of Meal, 60 Waggon with 6 Horses each, 80 Cannon, 4000 Bombs, and 16 Mortars.

In 1707, a Marriage was concluded betwixt King *Charles* III. of *Spain*, and the Princess of *Brunswick Wolfembüttel*. Count *Thaun*, with a Detachment of *Imperialists*, reduced the Kingdom of *Naples* without much

much Difficulty, most of the Inhabitants being for the House of *Austria*. However, the Absence of those Troops, with the other Deficiencies, occasioned the Miscarriage of the Siege of *Toulon*, which was carried on by the Duke of *Savoy* and Prince *Eugene*, with the Assistance of a Squadron of the Confederate Fleet.

M. de *Villars* forc'd the Lines of *Stolhoffen*, invaded the Empire, and laid the Duchy of *Wurtemberg*, &c. under Contribution as far almost as *Ulm*. The King of *Sweden* enter'd *Silesia*, and obliged the Emperor by a Treaty to restore to those of the *Augsburg* Confession their Churches, the free Exercise of their Religion, and other Privileges, according to the Treaty of *Westphalia*, which he reckon'd himself oblig'd in Point of Honour to see perform'd. He likewise insisted upon the same Liberty to the *Calvinists* in that Country, as being included in the above mention'd Treaty of *Westphalia*, wherein he was seconded by *Great Britain* and *Holland*; but that Matter is not yet determin'd. Count *Zohor*, one of the Imperial Court, having spoke disrespectfully of the King of *Sweden* to his own Ambassador, the King resented it so much, that the Emperor was obliged, after passing a Sentence of Banishment from Court upon the said Count, to send him to *Saxony* to beg the King of *Sweden*'s Pardon. After this, the King of *Sweden* having stay'd a Year in *Saxony*, which he obliged to furnish him with Money and Provisions for his Army, marched from thence into *Poland*.

In 1708, Prince *Eugene* went from *Italy* to *Vienna*, to concert Measures for the next Campaign. The Elector *Palatine* was invested in the *Upper Palatinate*, upon the Prescription of the Elector of *Bavaria*. Prince *Eugene*, with a Body of Imperial Troops, came to *Flanders*, where he join'd the Duke of *Marlborough*, who fought the Battle of *Audenard*, and defeated the *French*, when, according to the Accounts publish'd by Authority, there were taken between 7 and 8000 of the *French*, with 70 or 80 Colours and Standards; and amongst their Prisoners, there were 2 Lieutenant-Generals, 2 Major-Generals, 5 Brigadiers, 30 Colonels, 100 Field-Officers, and 400 other Officers; and

among their Slain, of whose Number we never had any certain Account, there were the Prince of *Egmont*, the Count de *Dreux*, and the Chevalier de *Luxemburg*. The Loss on the Confederate Side was very small in Proportion to the Victory, and they had no General Officer kill'd. In this Action, the Electoral Prince of *Hanover* signaliz'd himself at the Head of a Squadron of his Father's Dragoons, had a Horse shot under him, and the Colonel of Dragoons shot by his Side. We refer the further Particulars till we come to *Flanders*, as we do likewise the Battle of *Ramellies*, because it does not relate to the History of the Empire, the Imperialists having no Hand in it. After the Battle of *Audenard*, Prince *Eugene* was chiefly employ'd in reducing of *Lisfe*, after a long Siege, and assisted afterwards in reducing *Ghent* and *Bruges*: The Particulars of all which, we refer to the Account of *Flanders*. This Year the Prince of *Brunswick Wolfenbittel* went to *Spain*, where he was married to King *Charles III.* and the Arch-Duchess *Mary Anne* came from *Vienna* to *Holland*, from whence she was sent on board a Confederate Squadron to *Portugal*, and married to the King of that Country.

Their GOVERNMENT,

IS in General by the Emperor and Diet of the Empire.

The Emperor's TITLES at present.

Joseph, by the Grace of God, Emperor of the *Romans*, always *Augustus*, &c. King of *Germany*, *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, *Dalmatia*, *Croatia*, *Sclavonia*, *Bulgaria*, *Bosnia*, *Servia*, and *Ressia*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, *Brabant*, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Luxemburg*, *Wittenberg*, together with the *Higher* and *Lower Silesia*, Marquis of the *Holy Empire*, *Burgaw*, *Moravia*, with the *Higher* and *Farther Lusatia*, Sovereign Count of *Habsburg*, *Tirol*, *Ferrette*, *Kiburg*, *Goritia*, &c. Landgrave of *Alsace*, Lord of *Windischmarch*, *Portnaw*, and *Salins*.

His A R M S.

HE bears Quarterly for Armorial Ensigns; 1. For Hungary, Bar-wise Argent, and Gules of 8 Pieces. 2. For Bohemia, Argent, a Lion-Gules, the Tail nov'd, and pass'd in Saltire, Crown'd, Langued, and Arm'd. 3. For Austria, Gules, a Fesse-Argent; and for Ancient Burgundy, Party and Bend-wise, Argent and Azure, a Border Gules. 4. For Castile, Quarterly, in the first and last Gules, a Castle triple tower'd Or, purpled Sable; and for Leon, in the 2d and 3d Argent, a Lion-Purple: The Shield crested with an Imperial Crown, clos'd and rais'd in Shape of a Mitre, having betwixt the two Points two Diadems, surmounted with a Globe and Cross Or: The Shield, environ'd with a Collar of the Order of the Golden Fleece, is plac'd on the Breast of an Eagle, display'd Sable in a Field-Or, Diadem'd, Member'd, and Beak'd Gules, holding a naked Sword in the Right Talon, and a Scepter in the Left: The two Heads signify the Eastern and Western Empire; and for the Motto are these Words; *Uno avulso, non deficit alter*; i. e. Tho' one be taken away, the other does not cease. But the Emperor's peculiar Device is, *Pax & Salus Europe*; i. e. The Peace and Safety of Europe.

EMPEROR: What it signifies.

Imperator, or Emperor, was first made use of by the Romans, as Selden in his Titles of Honour proves by unquestionable Authority, to denote only the General of their Army. But Julius Caesar, after he had bereft his Country of their Liberty, assum'd it, had it allow'd him as a perpetual Title, and it has been so continued to his Successors; yet so as not to be peculiar to them only, for Brutus and Cassius, who attempted the Recovery of the Roman Liberties, have it ascrib'd to them in their Coins. Here Selden corrects Suetonius's Mistake, in saying, That in and after Caesar's Time, it was always us'd as a *Prenomem* or Forename; for 'tis plain, that in his Time, Caesar was oft put before Imperator, as may be seen by some of his Coins; and in Augustus's Reign, it is us'd both ways: But Selden observes,

That the using of it as a subsequent Name, denoted only, or at least chiefly, some great Performance by Arms; and where 'tis us'd as a Forename by Caesar and other Emperors, it denotes their Supremacy.

Selden likewise observes, That some Time after, the Title of Emperor was thus settled at Rome; and tho' they had all that's comprehended in Royal Majesty, yet they abstained from the Name of Rex or King, because that Title was odious to the Romans, from the Time that Brutus had thrown out their Kings for invading their Liberty: And Cicero De Divinitate tells us, That tho' Caesar was really a King, yet neither the Gods nor Men would suffer that Title at Rome; and Caesar, to palliate his Ambition when the People saluted him by that Name, finding it distastful to the State by the Tribune's pulling off the white Fillet from his Laurel, answer'd, That he was Caesar, and not a King; but they made use of the Name *Princeps*, because *Princeps Senatus* was a familiar Title in Rome, and might be us'd without Envy. It was long after before any of the Emperors us'd the Title of King, tho' they wore Diadems, and other Regalia; but in their Letters, Commissions, and Embassies, call'd themselves Emperors. This appears by Synesius, in his Book *Περὶ Βασιλείας*, which was writ about 400 Years after Christ; when, tho' the Greeks wrote to them by that Name, yet they seem'd to dislike so swelling a Title; but in Time that Dislike grew out of Fashion; so that *Regnum* was made use of to signify the State of Rome; and *Sedile Regni*, the Emperor's Throne: And Ulpian, a great Lawyer in Severus's Time, calls that *Lex Regia*, which transfer'd the People's Power to the Emperor. The Constantinopolitan Emperors affected the Title of *Βασιλεύς*, as the loftiest Name they could take.

But after the Empires were divided, they affected Differences in the Use of those Names. The Western Emperors, because those Parts of the Empire which were overrun by the Goths, Lombards, and Franks, were called Kingdoms, and their Heads, Kings, affected the Title of Emperor, as importing a greater Majesty than that of King, which was not much disputed by the Eastern Emperors, as appears by their Embassies: But when Basilus Macedo, Emperor of

Constantinople

Constantinople, received Letters from Pope *Adrian II.* wherein *Lewis*, then Emperor of the West, was called *Basilides*, which then imported Emperor, he raz'd it out of the Letters, and challeng'd *Lewis* for using that Title, which he alledg'd was proper only to himself: To which *Lewis* answer'd, That the Title was peculiar to neither of them, but common to both; and in sacred and prophane Writings, given to the Princes of other Countries. He added, That the Empire was translated from the *Greeks* to the *Franks*, because the former were not able to defend the Church.

Tho' in later Times the Emperors of the East and West contended for this Title as peculiar to themselves, yet other Kings, and particularly those of *France*, *Spain*, *England*, *Scotland*, &c. made use of it.

Selden takes Notice, That the flattering Civilians of *Italy* and *Germany* do alledge, that the Emperor is Lord of the whole Earth, but unjustly; and shews from good Reason, that no such Title is due to them; and that several other Princes, as the Kings of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, *Spain*, &c. acknowledge no Superior but God himself, and may every way as justly as the Emperor of *Rome* be stil'd Emperors, or by any other Name which expresses the Height of Honour and Dignity. This Pretension is also confuted by Sir *George Mackenzie*, in his Book of *Precedency*, Cap. 1. where he asserts, That *Scotland* was never conquer'd by the *Romans*, and by consequence not subject to their Empire.

Dr. *Nicholson* observes justly, That the Consent of Nations has for many Years distinguish'd between an Emperor and a King, and given the former the Pre-eminence; That all the Monarchs of *Europe* do readily give Place to the Emperor, and his Ambassadors are admitted to the first Audience in all Courts; and even in that of the Grand Signior, are allow'd the Precedency of the *Persian* Ambassadors. But as to his Precedency of Christian Princes, it seems to be allow'd him more out of Civility than Right; for according to Sir *George Mackenzie*, in his Book of *Precedency*, the Kings of *Great Britain* and *France* may debate it with

him, and particularly the former, as descended of the Kings of *Scotland*; it being (as he says) an uncontroverted Maxim in Law, That amongst those of equal Dignity, he who first attain'd to that Dignity, is to be preferr'd. The Curious may see more on this Head in his Cap. 1. and 2. Besides, he insists upon this Argument, That the Emperor is but Elective; whereas those Kings are Hereditary. The *German* Emperors, says Dr. *Nicholson*, founded their Claim on *Charlemaign's* being unexpectedly saluted in the Year 800, when he came to *Rome*, by Pope *Leo* and the Citizens, by the Title of, *Romanorum Imperator Augustus*; but what a sorry Empire the *Romans* could then pretend to, is well enough known, since *Germany*, *France*, and most of *Lombardy*, were in his Possession before: Whence it will appear, that some other Considerations, and particularly the vast Extent of the *German* Empire, mov'd the Western Monarchs to give Place to the Emperor, rather than any Claim he had to it by Right. To which we may add what Sir *George Mackenzie* says in his 2d Chapter of *Precedency*, That the Rule of Precedency in General Councils was according to the Time their Ancestors received the Christian Faith, as appears by *Gothofred de Jure Præced.* Cap. 3. N^o 23. and *Grotius de Jure Belli*, Lib. 2. Cap. 5. And if this Rule were observ'd, whatever become of the Story of *Lucius*, the Queen of *Great Britain* has an undoubted Claim to it from *Donald* King of *Scots*; but this Rule has not always been observ'd even by the Church of *Rome*, which usually preferr'd them who were most capable to do them Service. The *German* Emperors, besides the Title of *Cæsar*, us'd that of *Augustus*, which in their Language is *Mehrer des Reichs*; i. e. The Increaser of Kingdoms, because, as *Paulus Diaconus* informs us, *Octavius* had that Title on the Account of his enlarging the Commonwealth. They are also call'd Defenders of the Church, because formerly, when they were crown'd at *Rome*, they took an Oath to defend that Church; and *Charlemaign* was particularly dignified with that Title, because of his Bounty to the Church; and that he deliver'd the Pope and the *Romans* from the Oppression of the *Lombards*.

The Power of the Emperor.

DR. *Nicholson* says it surpasses that of all other Princes, because he challenges a Power to create Kings, which none else pretends to but the Pope, who claims a Power of creating and deposing the Emperor himself; but how unjustly, we have heard already in the History of the Emperors: For instead of that, the Bishops of *Rome* did Homage to *Pepin* and *Charles the Great*, for the Dominions they gave to the See of *Rome*; and the then Pope made over to *Charles the Great* for ever, the Right of choosing Popes; and when *Pius V.* attempted to create *Cosmo di Medicis*, Great Duke of *Tuscany*, the Emp. *Maximilian II.* oppos'd it, made *Cosmo* receive the Title from him, and oblig'd the Pope to confess, That he had exceeded his Bounds in pretending to it.

The Emperor at his Coronation is sworn not to violate the Privileges and Properties of any free Prince or State in the Empire, and cannot meddle with the Taxes they lay upon their own Subjects; nor can he punish any Criminal, raise Money in their Territories, or advance any of their Subjects to an Honour inconsistent with the Allegiance which they owe them. In Time of War, he cannot command any free Prince or State to assist him with Men or Money, without Consent of the Diet. If any Prince disturb the Peace of the Empire, he cannot Degrade or Banish him without Consent of the Electors, who are to judge of the Crime, and give their Opinions to the Imperial Chamber, where the States of the Empire determine it, and order Execution.

Of the ELECTION of the Emperor.

TIS now commonly known, that the Emperors are chosen by the Electors; but 'tis controverted among the Learned, Whether this Dignity was always Elective since *Charlemagne's* Time? A Resident of *Brandenburgh*, in a Treatise bound up with a Book, Intituled, *L'Ambassadeur & ses Fonctions*, writ by *M. de Wicquefort*, Privy Coun-

sellor to the late Duke of *Zell*, says, That the Dignity continu'd Hereditary in the Family of *Charlemagne*, who in 813, associated his Son *Lewis* into the Empire with him, by laying down the Imperial Crown upon the Altar, and ordering him to take it up, and put it on his own Head, as a Mark that he held the Empire only of God, and by Hereditary Right, and not by the Choice of the Princes, whose Dignities were not Hereditary at that time; and this Way of Succession continued in that Family till *Lewis III.* or as some call him the IV. died without Issue in 912, when the States were obliged to meet and chuse a Successor. The Reader may compare this with what has been said before in the History of the Emperors, and in the Account of Ancient *Germany*, and make his own Judgment. Our Author insists upon it, That this Election did not make the Empire absolutely Elective, because there was always great regard had to the Nomination of the deceased Emperor, and to Kindred. Upon which he asserts, That the Empire was not absolutely Elective till after the Death of the Emperor *Frederick II.* He quotes *Aimon*, the Annals of *Fulda*, the Annals of the *Franks*, *Lindenbravius*, *Jorden*, and *Spangenberg*, for what he says.

The ORIGIN of the Electors.

Authors are not agreed as to the Time when the Electors were first instituted: Some ascribe it to *Charlemagne*; but our Author brings many Reasons to disprove this. *Baronius*, *Bellarmin*, and others, say, they were appointed by *Otto III.* *Sleidan*, *Thuanus*, and the *Centuriators of Magdeburg*, think it was Pope *Sylvester II.* and *Goldastus* is of Opinion, That they were agreed on by a Diet at *Frankfort* in 1208; but our Author says, That *Martinus Polonus*, who wrote above 250 Years after the Death of *Otto III.* is the first who mentions any Elector; and that 'tis evident from History, that in *Otto III.*'s Time, of all the modern Secular Electors there was none known, but the Duke of *Saxony*; *Bohemia* was not then a Kingdom: Therefore *Dubravius*, who writes the History of it, and is of Opinion, That *Otto III.* instituted the Electors, says, He

He only named Six, and that *Rodolph I.* made the King of *Bohemia* an Elector 300 Years after. The Resident adds, There was at that Time no Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, nor Marquis of *Brandenburg*; and therefore he is of Opinion, That the Election in those Times was made by all the Princes, or rather, that they determin'd and confirm'd the Pretensions of those who laid Claim to it till after the Death of *Frederic II.* as appears by the Continuator of *Sigibert*, *Otto of Frisingen*, *Albert Crantzius*, and other Historians; and this *Dr. Nicholson* falls in with. Upon the whole, our Author concludes, That the Institution of Seven Electors was not till above 200 Years after *Gregory* and *Otto*; and that the Number was not fix'd to the Seven till the Reign of *Charles IV.* who establish'd them by the Golden Bull the 10th of *January* 1356; but that there were Electors before, is plain from the Bull it self, which was agreed on in a Diet at *Nuremberg*, where all the Electors Ecclesiastick and Secular, and many other Princes, Counts, Barons, Lords, Gentlemen, and Deputies of Free-Towns, gave their Consent, for preventing such Disorders in the Election as had formerly broke the Peace of the Empire, and order'd all Princes, Counts, free Cities, and other Subjects whatever, to grant them free Passage and safe Conduct, in going and coming to the Election, on pain of Rebellion; and that they should seal their Passports, and swear to act nothing contrary to them; and they were to furnish them, and their Retinues, with Provisions, and other Necessaries, at a reasonable Price; and this was not to be refus'd, tho' any Elector, Prince or State, should have any Quarrel with one another: The Bull likewise appoints by whom each of the Seven Electors shall be conducted to *Francfort* on the *Maine*, the Place of Election; And the Archbishop of *Ments* for the time being, was to send Letters to the rest of the Electors, to acquaint them with the Day, that they might come in Person, or send their Deputies with full Powers, sign'd and seal'd with their own Hand, for the Election of a King of the *Romans*; And in a Month after Notice of the Death of the Emperor, he should send to them in like manner to come to the Election within three Months; and no

Electer, or his Ambassador, was to enter *Francfort* with above 200 Horse in his Retinue, 50 of whom, and no more, might be Men at Arms; and those who fail'd to come or send, were to lose their Vote for that Time. It also orders the Magistrates and Inhabitants to take the Electors, and their Retinues into their Protection, and to prevent the ill Consequences of any Differences that might happen among them; and in case the Archbishop of *Ments* fail'd to give Notice, the Electors are to come or send notwithstanding.

Dr. Nicholson, and our Author, observes, That after the Death of *Frederick II.* there being a deplorable *Interregnum*, Seven of the chief Princes taking upon them the Administration, did probably lay the Foundation of the Electoral Dignity; and that they were made 7 in Number, that in case Six should be equally divided, the Seventh might have the casting Vote; and another thing which contributed towards it, was, That many great Families being ruin'd by the Wars, their Estates became united to the Families of those who were afterwards Electors; and that the falling off of *Lorraine*, *Gelderland*, *Brabant*, *Luxemburg*, *Poland*, and *Italy*, from the Empire, made those Princes the most considerable, among such as still adher'd to it. The Seven Electors appointed by this Bull, were; the Elector of *Mentz*, the King of *Bohemia*, the Elector of *Cologne*, the Elector of *Treves*, the Elector Palatine of the *Rhine*, the Elector of *Saxony*, and the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

The ELECTION of a King of the Romans.

AS soon as the Electors or their Deputies arrive at *Francfort*, they were according to the Bull to go next Morning to *St. Bartholomew's Church*; and after hearing the Mass of the Holy Ghost, that they might have his Assistance in chusing a just and good Prince, worthy to be King of the *Romans*, and future Emperor, for the good of all *Christendom*, they were to approach the Altar with their Retinues, but without Arms, and swear upon the Gospel of *St. John*, the Ecclesiasticks laying their Hands upon their Hearts, and the Seculars

Stt 2

touching

touching the Gospel, the following Oath, tender'd by the Archbishop of *Mentz*, or his Deputy: "I, &c. Prince Elector, swear upon the Holy Gospels now laid before me, That by the Faith which I owe to God, and by the Oath I have taken to the Holy Empire, that with the Assistance of God, to the best of my Judgment and Knowledge, I shall elect for a Temporal Head to *Christendom*, i. e. for King of the *Romans*, and future Emperor, he whom in my Conscience I shall judge to be most worthy of it; and promise by the same Faith, That I shall give my Suffrage and Vote in the said Election without any Hope of Profit, Pension, Promise, or particular Interest. So help me God, and all his Saints."

Since the Reformation, the Protestant Electors are not oblig'd to comply with what's Popish in this Ceremony. Any of the Secular Electors may set up for themselves, but the Ecclesiasticks are deny'd that Privilege; yet they are thought to be a good Balance upon any of the Seculars who should pretend to it without Merit. Tho' *Frankfort* be the Place appointed, Elections have been made elsewhere; which being objected against, as the want of a legal Formality, they generally made there. The Electors are not to leave the Town till they have made a Choice; and if they do it not in a Month after taking the Oath, they are to have nothing but Bread and Water till they make the Choice. 'Tis carried by the Plurality of the Votes of those present; and if any come after the Election begins, their Vote is not admitted. He that is chosen, is obliged to confirm to the Electors, as the principal Members of the Empire, all the Rights, Privileges, Dignities, &c. that they enjoy, and hold of the Empire, before he meddle with the Administration; and he is obliged to confirm the same to each of them by Letters-Patents after he is crown'd Emperor: And if any three of the Electors, or their Deputies, give the Right of Suffrage to one of the Electors present, or his Deputy, if absent, his Vote, with theirs, shall be reckoned a good Plurality.

The Archbishop of *Treves* is to sit over against the Emperor; the Archbishop of *Mentz* in his own Province, and likewise

through the whole Bounds of his Chancelorship, shall sit on the Emperor's Right Hand, except in the Province of *Cologne*, where the Archbishop of that Name is to sit on the Emperor's Right Hand; and likewise in *Italy* and *Gaul*, and on all other Occasions where they meet in those Places for the Affairs of the Empire.

The Precedency of the Secular Electors was thus; Whenever the Emperor or King of the *Romans* are present in an Assembly, Council, or at Table, the King of *Bohemia*, as a Crown'd Head, sits next the Archbishop of *Mentz*; behind him, on the same Side, is the Elector *Palatine*; on the Emperor's Left is the Elector of *Saxony*; and next to him the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

As the Elector of *Mentz* only has Power to summon the rest to the Election when the Empire is vacant, he is also to demand and collect their Votes thus: 1. Of the Archbishop of *Trier*. 2. Of the Archbishop of *Cologne*, who has also the Honour to crown the King of the *Romans*. 3. Of the King of *Bohemia*, who takes Place of all the Secular Electors. 4. Of the Elector *Palatine*. 5. Of the Elector of *Saxony*. 6. Of the Elector of *Brandenburg*: Then the other Electors in their Turns demand the Vote of the Archbishop of *Mentz*.

As to the Ceremonies of the Imperial Court, the Elector of *Brandenburg* gives Water to the Emperor or the King of the *Romans* to wash; the King of *Bohemia* gives him the first Cup, with his Royal Crown on if he pleases; the Elector *Palatine* sets the first Dish on the Table; and the Elector of *Saxony* acts as High-Marshal of the Empire.

The Elector *Palatine*, Great Master of the Empire, during the Vacancy of the Imperial Throne, is Vicar of the Empire: In *Swabia*, *Franconia*, and on the *Rhine*, may administer Justice, grant Benefices, receive the Revenues of the Empire, confer Fiefs, and receive Fealty and Homage in the Name of the Empire, except such as the Investiture of 'em is given with a Standard, which are reserv'd to the Emperor or King of the *Romans*, to whom the Fealty and Homage paid to the Vicar during the Vacancy must be renew'd. The Elector *Palatine* is not to alienate or mortgage any Thing belonging to the Empire while he is Vicar. The Elector

Elector of Saxony has the same Privileges in all Places where the *Saxon Law* is observ'd, on the like Conditions. And since by a very ancient Custom of the Empire, the Emperor or King of the *Romans* may be sued at Law, and are obliged to answer before the Count *Palatine*, 'tis only when the Emperor or King of the *Romans* are present in a Diet or Imperial Court.

The Succession of the Secular Electors is thus; The Lawful Sons, and their Heirs Male, if Laics, are to succeed according to Seniority; and if the Heir be Minor, during his Minority the eldest Brother of the deceas'd Father is to administer for him till he be of Age, and then to surrender to the Heir; but if any Electorate become vacant by want of Heirs, or otherwise, the Electorate is at the Disposal of the Emperor, as devolving to him and the Empire, without Prejudice to the Rights of the Subjects of *Bohemia*, who then had a Right to elect their own Kings. The Privileges of the Kings of *Bohemia*, and their Subjects, granted them by former Emperors, were also reserv'd, by which no Subject of *Bohemia* could be cited to be tried out of his own Country, or otherwise, than according to their own Laws, without any Appeal but to their own Government.

All Electors, Secular and Ecclesiastical, were to possess all Salt-Springs and Mines of whatever Sort, discover'd or to be discover'd in their Electorates, without paying any Tax for them; and had Power to receive *Jews* into their Dominions, and raise Taxes and Customs, as in Times past. They had also Power to coin Gold and Silver, to purchase Lands, Castles, and take Mortgages, &c. on Condition that the Tenure of those Lands be not alter'd, and pay the usual Duties to the Empire.

The Subjects of none of the other Electors were to be cited to any Court without the said Electorates; but in case of denial of Justice, the Subjects of any of the Electors, except the King of *Bohemia*, might appeal to the Imperial Court, and the Judge who presided in it; but no where else.

For the better Government of the Empire, all the Electors may meet once a Year in one of the Imperial Cities, about 30

Days after *Easter*, to reform Abuses and Disorders in their Dominions, or in their Neighbourhood, by common Consent, and appoint the Place for their next Year's Meeting. During the Time of their Deliberations, they were under the Emperor's Protection; but they were to make no publick Feasts, so as to hinder the Dispatch of Affairs: And all Privileges granted to any other Person or Community, inconsistent with these of the Electors, were revoked.

All Verbal Resignations by Vassals or Feudatories, made maliciously and unseasonably to deprive their Superiors of their Rights, or make War upon them, and possess their Fiefs, were to be void, and no Resignation to be good, except with the free Consent of their Superiors, on Pain of being put in the Ban of the Empire; and those who attack'd their Superiors, or maliciously deny'd them their Service, without a regular Defiance and Renunciation, were to incur the like Penalty.

All Leagues betwixt Towns, or betwixt Towns and private Persons, on Pretext of Kindred, or Protection of Burghers and Inhabitants, &c. or betwixt the Subjects of particular Princes or Lords, Town or Community, without the Consent of the Lords, were declared void, except such as were made betwixt Princes and Towns for preserving the publick Peace, on Pain of Infamy, and 23 Marks of Gold to every particular Person; and the Loss of Liberty, and 200 Marks of Gold to every Town, half to the Emperor, and half to the Lord.

The 17th Article of the *Golden Bull* orders, That no Man shall send a Defiance or Challenge to any Lord or other Person with whom he has liv'd in Amity, on any Pretence whatever, except to the Place of his Residence, and shall not commence Hostilities against him till 3 Days after the said Challenge or Defiance, on Pain of Infamy and Treason; and forbids all unjust Quarrels, Wars and Violence. The 18th contains the Form of summoning Electors to attend at Elections. The 19th contains the Form of the Proxy of any Elector who does not attend in Person. The 20th annexes the Right of Election to the several Electorates, and the peaceable Possession of them.

The 21st settles the Order and Rank the Archbishops are to observe in all publick Occasions, whenever the Emperor, as King of the *Romans*, walks in State, at Diets, &c. The Archbishop of *Triers* walks immediately before the Emperor, or the King of the *Romans*, none walking betwixt them but the Princes, who carry the Imperial Regalia; but when the Emperor walks without those Regalia, then the said Archbishop shall go immediately before the Emperor, or King of the *Romans*; and the other two Ecclesiastical Electors shall take Place as formerly, according to the Provinces in which they are at the Time.

The Secular Electors are to walk thus: The Duke of *Saxony*, carrying the Imperial Sword, walks immediately before the Emperor, or the King, betwixt him and the Archbishop of *Triers*; and on his Right Hand the Elector *Palatine* bearing the Globe; and on his Left the Elector of *Brandenburg* bearing the Scepter; all three in Front: The King of *Bohemia* walks immediately after the Emperor.

The 23d orders, That when the Archbishops of *Ments*, *Triers*, or *Cologne*, say Mass, or Grace, before the Emperor, or King of the *Romans*; he that was first Consecrated shall do it the first Day, the second the second Day, and the third the third Day; but whoever does it, must first make offer to the other Two.

The following Laws were publish'd in the Diet of *Ments* on *Christmas-Day* 1536, as an Appendix to the Golden Bull, by the Emperor *Charles IV.* with the Consent of the Electors and Princes of the Empire.

Those who conspire with Prince or People, against the Life of any of the Electors, shall be put to Death; and all his Goods forfeited, as being guilty of Treason: The Sons of such Traytor shall also lose their Maternal Inheritance, and what ever they may expect from other Relations, that being thus impoverish'd, they may always think on the Infamy of their Father; and such as intercede for them shall be infamous; And the Daughters of such Traitors are only to have a bare Maintenance out of their Mother's Estate; and all fraudulent Conveyances to prevent this are made void, only Wives may enjoy their Dowries: The Accomplices of such Traytor, and their Sons,

shall be liable to the same Punishment; but if they make a timely Discovery, they shall be rewarded, and tho late, shall be pardon'd. Enquiry shall be made if the Criminal die before the Discovery, and the Servants and Domesticks of such Traytors, alive or dead, may be examin'd by Torture. The Memory of the Deceas'd shall be condemn'd, and his Estate forfeited; and from the Time any one is found Guilty, he shall be incapable to buy, sell, or assign any Estate, or to demand any Debts.

The 25th forbids the dividing or dismembring the Principalities and Estates of any Elector; the Possession and Honour are to descend intire to the Eldest Son; but if he be a Fool, or incapable to Govern, the Second shall succeed, or the next Heir Male if there be no Sons.

The 26th is, That when the Emperor, or King of the *Romans*, designs to hold an Imperial Court, all the Electors must attend at the Palace; whence the Emperor and King ride on Horseback to the Court, in Order as above-mentioned: The Arch-Chancellor is to carry the Imperial Seals on the Top of his Silver Battoon; And the other Electors are to carry the Imperial Regalia in the same Order: The Emperor, according to Pleasure, names the Princes who shall carry the Crowns of *Aix la Chapelle* and *Milan*; and they must go immediately before the Archbishop of *Triers*. This Ceremony is only to be performed before the Emperor when he wears the Imperial Crown, and not to the King of the *Romans*. The Empress, attended by her Officers, and Maids of Honour, is to go after the Emperor, the King of the *Romans*, and the King of *Bohemia*.

The 27th appoints the Offices of the Electors, during their Attendance at the Imperial Court. When the Emperor holds a Solemn Court, and is upon his Throne, the Elector of *Saxony* comes on Horseback before the Palace-Gate, where a Heap of Oats shall be made as high as his Horses Breast, and the Elector, having a Silver Battoon, and a Measure of Silver, each weighing 12 Marks, shall fill the Measure with Oats, and give it to the next Groom of the Stables; and then planting his Staff in the Oats, retires; and Count *Pappenheim*, the Vice-Marshal, or the Marshal of the Court, approaching, they

they leave the Oats to any that can take them.

When the Emperor or King of the *Romans* sit at Table, the Ecclesiastical Electors, and other Prelates standing before it, shall say Grace, as above. One of the Archbishops bearing the Seals at the top of his Silver Staff, shall lay them on the Table before the Emperor, who gives them to the Archbishop in whose Diocese the Court is held, who hangs the broadest about his Neck during the Time of Dinner.

The Elector of *Brandenburg*, on Horseback, is to carry a Silver Basin and Ewer with Water, and a Napkin, must alight, and pour out Water to the Emperor. The Elector *Palatine*, on Horseback, brings in 4 Silver Dishes of Meat, and alighting, sets them on the Table. After them, the King of *Bohemia*, on Horseback, with a Silver Cup of Wine and Water cover'd, is to alight and kneel, and present it to the Emperor or King of the *Romans*.

The 28th Chapter orders, That the Imperial Table shall be 6 Foot higher than those of the Electors, and none to sit with him at any Solemnity but the King of the *Romans*. The Empress's Table is to be on one Side, and 3 Foot lower than that of the Emperor. The Tables of the Electors are to be of the same Height, 3 of them on the Right, and as many on the Left of the Emperor; and the 7th is to be over against the Emperor. No Elector is to sit down till they have all perform'd their Office, and then sit down all together. After the Ceremonies are over, the Scaffolding and Tables belong to the Master of the Household.

The Election is to be made at *Frankfurt*, the Coronation at *Aix la Chapelle*, and the first Court at *Nuremberg*. If any Elector send a Deputy, he is not to sit at the Elector's Table.

The last Article orders, That the Successors of the Electors shall, at 7 Years of Age, learn the *Latin*, *Italian*, and *Sclavonian* Tongues; all which are us'd in the Empire.

The PRIVILEGES of the Electors.

THE Electoral College is the most Powerful and Honourable Court of the

Empire. They have Power to chuse and dethrone Emperors, when they judge it necessary for the Good of the Empire; so that 'tis the only Body in *Europe* that can be compar'd with the old *Roman* Senate. Their Precedency before any other Prince at all publick Assemblies of the Empire, is secur'd by the *Golden Bull*; and the Electors have maintain'd it on several Occasions. On this Account *Joachim II.* Elector of *Brandenburg*, refus'd to give Place to *Rodolphus* of *Austria*, tho' he was the Emperor's Son, and crown'd King of *Hungary*. The Elector of *Cologne* would not give the Precedency to Cardinal *Moron*, the Pope's Legate at the Diet of *Ratisbon* in 1556. The *English* Ambassador and the Pope's Nuncio knowing that the Electors would not give Place to them at the Coronation of the Emperor, refus'd to be present at it; but it was provided by the Capitulations of *Ferdinand II.* that the Ambassadors of Electors should give Place to those of Crown'd Heads. Duke *Charles Emanuel* of *Savoy*, tho' that Family has the Title of Kings of *Cyprus*, respect'd the Electors as his Masters and Superiors.

The Electors have Power, 1. To make and annul Laws for the Empire without the Emperor's Consent; so that the Chamber of *Spires* is obliged to submit to their Decisions, tho' against Common Law. 2. Their Subjects swear Allegiance to them, and are obliged more strictly to them than to the Emperor, to whom the Electors pay only the Acknowledgment of Vassals, as the first Person of the Empire. 3. They have all the Officers of State that other Sovereigns have. 4. They make War and Leagues with Foreign Powers without the Emperor. They treat with the Emperor as their Equal, and never ask Pardon of him for Acts of Hostility; but in such Cases, an Amnesty is agreed on by both. 5. They judge decisively in all Cases without Appeal. 6. They protect *Jews*. 7. They grant Pardons. 8. They appoint Fairs and Markets. 9. They lay on Taxes, &c. 10. They coin Money. 11. They have the Tenth of all Mines discovered in their Territories. 12. They send Ambassadors to Kings and States. 13. They give Dispen-sations for Marriage within the Degrees prohibited by Canon-Law. 14. They make what

what Change in Religion they please within their Territories.

By the Capitulation of *Ferdinand III.* the Emperor cannot assemble a Diet of the Empire without Consent of the Electors, under Hand and Seal. He cannot make Leagues or War, make a Prince of the Empire, put any Person into the Ban of the Empire, or declare 'em Infamous, without Consent of the Electors. They have also this Privilege, That they pay nothing for Investitures; whereas other Princes are obliged to pay Fees to the Officers of the Court, and the Horse they ride on to the Grand Marshal of the Empire, or his Vicar.

The Electors use the Words, *By the Grace of God*, in their Titles, which is only us'd by Sovereigns; and Foreign Princes give them the same Honour they do to Crown'd Heads.

Preliminaries to the Election of the Emperor.

WHen Arch-Duke *Charles*, afterwards *Charles V.* was chosen, the Electors found it necessary, in regard of the great Power of *Spain*, and the Time he must spend in his Hereditary Dominions, to limit his Power, which they have practis'd at all Elections since; and those Limitations are call'd by the Name of *Capitulation*, which, together with the *Golden Bull*, is the Fundamental Law of the Empire; and the Electors make such Additions and Explanations to the Bull as they think fit, because they represent the States and Sovereignty of the Empire. Of this sort, the Capitulation made with *Ferdinand III.* was one of the most Remarkable, and consisted of 51 Articles, which the Emperor swore to, and that he himself and his Imperial Council would govern themselves by it. The First Article was, "That as Advocate of the Christian Church, he should take the Church and See of *Rome*, and the Person of the Pope, into his Protection." But by the Capitulation of *Maximilian II.* the Protestant Electors were not obliged to stand to that Article, nor to demand it of the Emperor: And in that same Capitulation 'tis own'd, that the Emperor was call'd to that Dignity by the Providence of

God, and the Choice of the Election; and that he took it upon him for the Glory of God, the universal Good of *Christendom*, and the particular Good of *Germany*, with whom he enter'd into a Contract, and Reciprocal Obligation.

The Way of Electing the Emperor.

TO avoid the Penalty of being reduced to Bread and Water, if they don't finish the Election in a Month after taking the Oath, the Electors have found out a Way to distinguish betwixt their Deliberations about it and the Election it self; and therefore never pretend to meet about the Election till they have agreed on the Person, and then they appoint a Day, which is rather to publish whom they have elected, than to elect. In the Morning they come to the Town-House, without any Order, with their ordinary Habits and Retinues, where each of them enter a Chamber, and put on their Electoral Habits. The Ecclesiasticks have Scarlet Robes, and Caps lin'd with Ermine; and the Seculars have theirs of Crimson Velvet, lin'd also with Ermine. There they take Horse, and go to *St. Bartholomew's Church*, but without any fix'd Order in the Cavalcade. They are all attended by their Hereditary Marshals, who carry the Swords before them, the Scabbards of the Ecclesiasticks being adorned with Silver-gilt, and those of the Seculars in Scabbards of Crimson Velvet, adorn'd with Silver. The Deputies of Electors are allowed none of those Ceremonies; but the Administrators of young Electors are. The Elector of *Saxony* has this Pre-eminence, That the Count *de Papenheim*, and not his own Marshal, carries the Sword before him. When the Electors come to the Church, they alight at the Gate, and go each to their own Seat in the Quire; and several other Princes and Counts, with the Counsellors of the Electors, being called in, Count *Papenheim* shuts the Door, and takes the Keys; and the Sword-Bearers stand before the Electors with their Swords drawn, and laid over their Shoulders. When the Hymn of *Veni Creator* is sung, the Protestant Electors retire till Mass be over, when they return, and take the Oath before-mentioned, with
the

the rest, at the Altar, which is marked down by two Notaries, or the Archbishop of *Ments's* Secretaries, and attested by the other Princes and Lords that are present. The Hymn being again sung, they go to the Conclave for the Election, being a small Vaulted Gallery that goes out of the Quire, and perform every thing according to the Order of the *Golden Bull*. Count *Papenheim* shuts them up; but lays the Keys so as they may find them. The Election is carried by Plurality of Votes; and if the Person chosen be an Elector, he may give his own Vote. They send for their Chancellors and Chief Counsellors a little, merely for Form, to consult them on Difficulties that may happen; after which they retire. The Election is usually dispatched in an Hour; and when 'tis over, they send again for their Principal Counsellors, the Chancellor of the Elector of *Ments*, and the Chancellor of a Secular Elector, who cast up the Suffrages, mark them down, and draw up the Form, which the Electors sign and seal with their Great Seals: Then they come out of the Conclave to the great Altar, upon which they place the Emperor Elect. The Archbishop of *Ments* recommends to him the Interests of the Empire, makes him sign the Conditions on which he is chosen, and confirm the Electors in all their Privileges: After which, the Election is publish'd, and the Emperor proclaim'd by a Herald at Arms. Without this Confirmation given to each of the Electors under the Great Seal, he cannot meddle with the Administration.

When the Electors have agreed upon the Place of Coronation, the Elector of *Ments* orders the Magistrates of *Nuremberg*, who keep the *Regalia*, to send them to the Place. The Electors, or their Ambassadors, attend the Emperor from his Palace to the Church, in their Electoral Robes: The Elector *Palatine* carries the Crown, the Elector of *Bavaria* the Globe, the Elector of *Brandenburg* the Scepter, and march in a-Breast; the Elector of *Saxony* carries the Sword, and the Elector of *Hanover* the Standard. After them comes the Emperor alone, with his Retinue following. At the Door of the Church he is received by the Ecclesiastical Electors also in their Robes, who conduct him to the Altar; and the Archbishop that

officiates being in his Pontificals, anoints his Head, betwixt his Shoulders, his Neck, Breast, and right Arm, and the middle of his right Hand. This they call his Consecration. Then he is carried to another Altar to be crown'd, where he is cloath'd with the ancient Imperial Robes; and after the ordinary Ceremonies, he is plac'd on the Throne, where the Archbishop bids him take and keep the Pledge that was design'd for him by Providence, and the Choice of the Electors. After which, *Te Deum* is sung, Trumpets and Kettle-Drums playing the mean while. The Archbishops of *Ments* and *Cologne* contend for the Privilege of putting the Crown on his Head. After the Coronation, the Emperor creates Knights and Gentlemen.

Of the King of the Romans.

THIS Title is now given to those who are to succeed to the Empire, and are chosen in the same Manner as the Emperors, as appears by the *Golden Bull*. After the Western Empire was translated from the *Greeks* to the *French* in *Charlemagne's* Time, the Successor was first called King of *Italy*, as *Selden* in his Titles of Honour proves from unquestionable Authority; but when *Italy* became tumultuous, and to break off from the Empire, he was called King of *Germany*, and sometimes had both Titles. Lawyers dispute whether he be subject to the Emperor. 'Tis plain, that at first he was; for *Bernard* King of the *Romans* was condemned to Death for Treason against the Emperor *Ludovicus Pius*: Yet some great *German* Lawyers affirm, That if he be chosen in the Emperor's Life-time, he is not subject to his Jurisdiction, but consider'd as the second Head of the Empire: This seems however to depend upon the Nature of his Election, and the Design of the Electors when they chuse him. Thus *Ferdinand* King of the *Romans*, in the Time of *Charles V.* made Edicts as well as he: Yet those who carry his Power highest, say, he is obliged to reverence the Emperor, tho' he be not subject to his Jurisdiction: For some of those who were chosen by that Name after the Emperor's Death, they had the same Power with an Emperor; But in the Times

of Superstition, or when the Pope's Power was formidable, they abstain'd from the Title of Emperor, till they were crown'd at Rome; but since the Coronation at Rome has not been thought necessary, they take the Title of Emperor as soon as chosen. At present, the Kings of the Romans have for their Arms, an Eagle with one Head only; whereas the Emperor's Eagle has two, since the House of Austria succeeded to Spain. The King is only call'd *Augustus*, but the Emperor *Semper Augustus*. The Emperor in his Letters Patents calls the King *Our Beloved*, but the King gives him the Title of *Majesty*. In the Absence of the Emperor, the King has the Administration of the Government. The Emperors have now for many Years procur'd their Eldest Sons to be chosen King of the Romans. The Duke of Saxony, and others, at the League of *Smalkald* protested against this, as contrary to the Golden Bull, and their Freedom of Election: And afterwards it was agreed, That no King of the Romans should be chosen during the Emperor's Life, except the Electors agreed on it beforehand as Necessary; and they may also chuse a King of the Romans without the Emperor's Consent.

Their Nobility, and Titles of Honour, from Selden, &c.

WHence Feuds had their Original, is not certain; some derive them from the Roman Empire, as *Lampridius*, who says, That *Alexander Severus* gave such Territories as were gain'd on the Frontiers, to his Soldiers and their Children to defend their own Lands, and the Empire from Incur-sions; so that they were held by a Military Tenure: Some of those Men had the Title of *Dux*, but not Hereditary, in which they differ'd from the Feudal Titles of Honour now in use. Some ascribe the Origine of 'em to those Northern Nations that over-ran Europe, those Titles being only Official before; but those Nations continued the Roman Names, as they us'd their Language in their Charters, Laws, &c. The Lombards finding that the Title of *Comes* and *Dux* were of equal Honour, and that *Comes*, as it had a relation to the Court, was frequently prefer'd, tho' the *Dux* did more

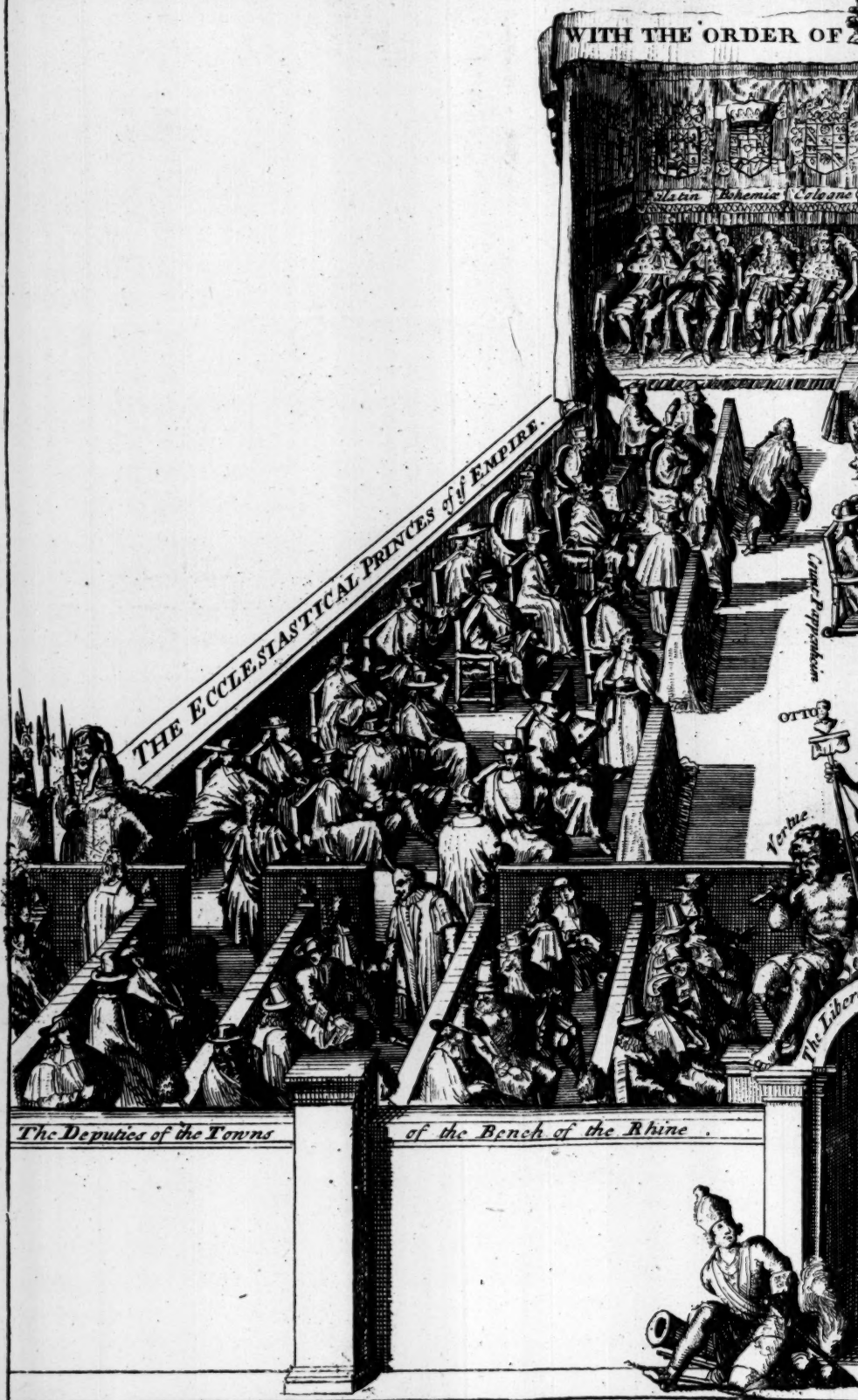
Service to the State; they gave the greater Honour to the Title of *Dux*, in which they have been imitated by most Nations of Europe. *Sigonius* says, The first Hereditary Duke was *Gisulfus*, Nephew to *Alboinus* the first King of the Lombards, who erected *Friuli*, and the Province about it, into a Dutchy, and gave it him. Some Counts had then a Duke over them, and others were only subject to that King or Emperor who created them. Sir *Thomas Craig*, *De Feudis*, Lib. 1. *Dieges*. 4. ascribes the Origine of the Feudal Law to the *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Huns*, and *Lombards*, who having over-run the Empire, divided the Lands among 'em in a Military manner, according to the Number of their Followers; to whom the Great Officers soddid them for a certain quantity of the Product, to maintain themselves, and the bravest of their Followers, whom they called *Comites* or *Companions*. This he reckons to have been the Infancy of the Feudal Law; for those Possessions were not Hereditary, but conferr'd and taken away at the Pleasure of the Lord or Superior. The Feudal Law, he says, was in its Childhood, when the Proprietors suffer'd those Lands to be enjoy'd by such of the Sons of the present Possessors as they thought fittest for that Service. This Law came to a State of Youth in the Time of the Emperor *Conrad II.* who allow'd Grand-Children, and likewise Collaterals, as Fathers Brothers, to succeed, in order to encourage his great Army he had then levied against *Italy*, because the Popes then began to contend with the Emperor for Preheminence. In *Charlemaign's* Time, Feudal Titles began to be Hereditary, whereas before they were only for Life, except the Lords thought fit it should be otherwise; but in the Time of the *Capets*, that Line, in order to oblige the Nobility, allow'd the Succession to be Hereditary; and then Sir *Thomas* says, the Feudal Law arriv'd to the State of a Man. In the 5th *Diegesis*, he answers those who derive the Feudal Law from that of the Roman; and confutes the Pretensions of the Germans, Gauls, Spaniards, and Greeks, as to the Antiquity of that Law in their respective Countries.

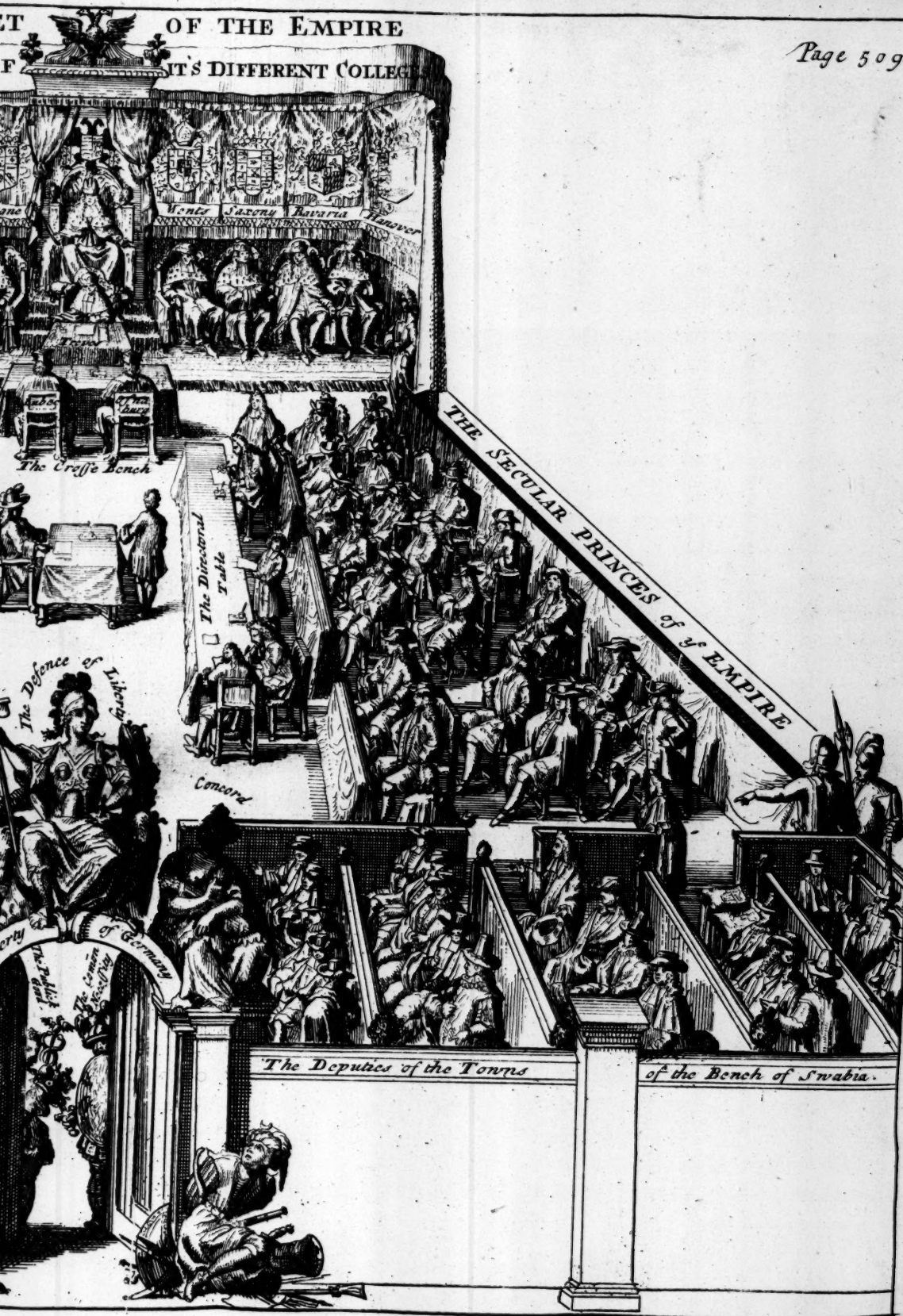
As to the German Titles of Archduke, Dukes, Counts Palatine, and others, Mar-graves, Landgraves, Burg-raves, Barons, &c.

the

THE GENERAL DIET

WITH THE ORDER OF





the Curious may find an Account of them, with their Origine, Investiture and Power, in *Selden's Titles of Honour, Part II.* and we shall give a brief Description of the most remarkable of 'em when we come to the particular Governments in the Geographical Account of the Countries to which they belong.

Their KNIGHTS.

THE only remarkable Order of Knighthood in the Empire, and which properly belongs to it, is that of the *Teutonic* Order, of whom we gave an Account in *Prussia*. Their present Great Master is *Francis Lewis*, Palatine of the *Rhine*: His Residence is at *Mergentheim* in *Franconia*. They have Eleven Bailiwicks or Commanderies in the Empire, under so many Companions of the Order, call'd Commanders: The First in *Alsace*, which the *French* King was oblig'd to restore by the Peace of *Ryswick*; the Second in *Austria*; the Third in *Coblentz*; the Fourth in *Tirol*; the Fifth in *Franconia*; the Sixth in *Hesse*, a Protestant; the Seventh in *Bresen*; the Eighth in *Thuringia*, now a Papist, but to revert to a Protestant; the Ninth in *Westphalia*; the Tenth in *Lorraine*; the Eleventh in *Saxony*, a Protestant.

There's a Branch of the Knights of *Malta* in the Emperor's Hereditary Dominions, who have Possessions in *Bohemia*, *Austria*, *Silesia*, and *Tyrol*. Their present Grand Prior is the Count of *Potting*.

The common Order of Knights in *Germany*, are call'd *Ritter G'schlagen*, or Dubb'd Knights, who are created by the Emperor with the Stroke of a Sword, kneeling before him, but the Title descends not to their Heirs. The Curious may see the Ancient Ceremonies in creating those Knights, with their Qualifications and Privileges, in *Selden's Titles of Honour*.

There are some particular Orders made by Princes of the Empire, which we shall treat of in their Place.

The Empress-Dowager *Eleonora*, in 1662, founded two Orders of Ladies, who are a sort of Knights. The First is call'd,

the Order of the Slaves of Virtue, because they profess a more severe Virtue than others. They are Thirty in Number, part Protestants and part Papists. Their Badge is a golden Medal, representing a Sun encompass'd with a Lawrel Garland, and their Motto, *Sola ubique triumphat*. The Empress is Great Mistress of the Order. The Second is, That of the United Cross-Bearers, founded by the same Empress in 1668, because, when the Palace was burnt, a Golden Crucifix, in which they pretend there's a Piece of the Cross, was found in the Ruins untouch'd by the Flames. They are all Papists, and wear on their Left Side a four-corner'd Cross fasten'd to a black Ribbon, at the End of which there's a sparkling Star; in the Middle, there are two Wood-colour'd Lines; there are four Eagles about it, and the Motto round it is, *Salus & Gloria*. Their Patrons are the Mother of God and St. *Joseph*. It was confirm'd by Pope *Clement*; the Bishop of *Vienna* is their Spiritual Inspector, and the Empress their Protectress. She made Seventeen Ladies of the Order, in May 1698.

The Diet, Colleges, Councils, and Courts of the Empire.

FOR the Diet, the Manner of their Sitting is easily understood by the Cut of it; but the Description of the several Colleges that compose it, we refer to the Account of *Ratisbon*, their usual Place of Meeting. For the Chief Councils of the Empire; as the Aulic Council, the Council of State, the Council of War, and the Council of Finances; we refer them to the Description of *Vienna*, where they Sit, as we do the Chamber of *Spies* to *Spies*, and the College of the *Hans Towns* to *Lubec*.

Their LAWS

ARE, 1. The *Golden Bull*, which we have accounted for already. 'Tis call'd *Golden*, because of the Gold Seal affix'd to it,

it, to denote its Importance, as the Fundamental Law of the Empire; and *Bull*, from the *Bulla*, or little gilt Picture, which the young *Romans* during their Commonwealth hung about their Necks till they were 14 Years of Age, and then consecrated them to their *Lares*; so that it's now become a common Name for the Seals of Emperors and Popes, says Dr. *Nicholson*. It has on the Face the Picture of the Emperor *Charles IV.* on his Throne, with the Imperial Crown on his Head, the Scepter in one Hand, and Globe in t'other; the Arms of the Empire on the Right, and those of *Bohemia* on the Left. The Inscription is, *Carolus Quartus, Divina Favente Clementia Romanorum Imperator, semper Augustus & Bohemia Rex.* On the Reverse it has a Castle, with two Figures, and the Words *Aurea Roma* under them; and in the Circumference this Inscription, *Roma Caput Mundi, Regit Orbis frons Rotundi.* This *Bull* is writ on 24 Leaves of Parchment, and contains 30 Chapters. 2. The *Capitulatio Casarea*, or Imperial Capitulation, which we have also mention'd already, that the Emperor is sworn to observe at his Election. Dr. *Nicholson* says, it consists only of 41 Articles; but that sworn by *Ferdinand III.* consisted of 51; so that the Electors add or alter as they see Occasion.

3. The *Recessus Imperii*, or Acts of the Diets.
 4. The *Pragmatic Sanction*, or Laws made in the Diets for preserving the Publick Peace.
 5. *Justinian's* Collection of the *Roman* Laws; for *Maximilian I.* order'd the Civil Law to be us'd in the Chamber of *Spire* in 1495, and it has since been taught in their Universities; but the General Laws made by the Diet, and those of the particular Princes and States, who have Power to make their own Laws, provided they be not prejudicial to the other States, take Place of the Civil Law; but where there is no Provision otherwise, Causes are determin'd according to that. They also make use of the Canon Law. M. *Raphel*, Plenipotentiary for the Duke of *Holstein-Gottorp* at *Nimeguen*, publish'd an Account of the Common Law through the whole Empire, Entituled, *Introductio ad Jus Publicum Germanicum.*

Their MILITARY Government.

THIS is best to be understood by the following *Matricula*, which regulates the Quota of Men and Money that each Prince and State is to furnish for Defence of the Empire, for what they call a *Roman Month*.

The Matricula of the Empire, or Repartition of the States and Cities, according to the Constitution of Charles V.

The Circle of *Austria.*

<i>The Dutchies of</i>	<i>Horse.</i>	<i>Foot.</i>	<i>Florins.</i>
Austria —————	120	554	3654
Tirol —————			
Stiria —————			
Carniola —————			
Carinthia —————			
<i>The Bishopricks of</i>			
Trent —————	42	273	1596
Brixen —————			
Constance —————			
<i>The City of Constance</i> —	3	50	236
<i>The Princes of</i>			
Eghenberg —————	3	10	76
Diedrichstein —————	3	10	76
Aursberg —————	3	10	76
Total of the Circle is	174	907	5714

The Circle of the *Lower Rhine.*

<i>The Archbishopricks of</i>	<i>Horse.</i>	<i>Foot.</i>	<i>Florins.</i>
Mentz —————	60	277	1828
Treves —————	26 $\frac{2}{3}$	122 $\frac{2}{3}$	806
Cologne —————	60	277	1828
<i>The Commander of the</i>			
Teutonic Order —————	4	20	128
<i>The Electors.</i>			
Treves, for the Abbey	1	13	64
of Prum —————			
<i>The Abbey of St. Maximin</i>	3	22	124
near Treves —————			
<i>Seculars.</i>			
<i>The Elector Palatine</i> —	30	138 $\frac{1}{2}$	914
<i>The Prince of Arenberg,</i>	2	6	48
for his Territories —			
<i>The Counts of</i>			
Nassau Beilstein ———	1	2	20
Lower Henburg ———	2	8	56
<i>The Lordship of</i>			
Rheineck —————	1	0	12
Total of the Circle is	190 $\frac{2}{3}$	885 $\frac{1}{6}$	5828

The Circle of *Upper Saxony.*

<i>The Bishopricks of</i>	<i>Horse.</i>	<i>Foot.</i>	<i>Flor.</i>
Meissen —————	6	6	96
Mersburg —————	6	6	96
Naumberg —————	6	6	96
Camin, by the K. of Prussia	6	28	184
<i>The Abbeyes of</i>			
Quedlimburg —————	1	10	32
Gerentode, by Anhalt —	1	6	36
Walkenriet, by Schwartz-	2	6	48
zenburg —————			
Salfelt —————	2	13	76
<i>Seculars.</i>			
<i>Electors of Saxony for himself</i>	65	301	1984
<i>For Weida —————</i>	5	20	140
Sachsenburg ————			
Amshang —————			
Zutgenruck —————			
<i>For the Lands of Voigtland</i>	10	46	304
<i>The King of Prussia</i> —	60	277	1828
<i>The D. of Saxe-Altenburg</i>	10	32	248
and Saxe-Coburg ———			
Saxe-Weimar —————	9	28	220
Saxe-Gotha —————	9	28	220
<i>The Duchy of Pomerania</i> —	34	200	1208
<i>The Princes of Anhalt</i> —	9	20	188
<i>The Counts and Princes of</i>			
Schwartzenburg ———	7	29	200
Counts of Mansfield —	10	45	300
Stolberg —————	3	12	84
Barby and Millingen —	1	2	20
<i>The Counts of</i>			
Hohenstein —————	2	8	56
Gleichen —————	3	13	88
Beuchlingen —————	2	0	24
<i>The Barons of</i>			
Reussen, Plave ————	2	12	72
Gerau, — Scheltz ———			
<i>The Counts of</i>			
Graitz and Granisfeld —	1	3	24
Schombourg —————	2	4	40
Leisnickz —————	1	2	20
<i>Barons of</i>			
Wildenfelt —————	2	2	20
Schenken & Teutenberg —	1	2	20
The Total is	278	1167	7972

The

The Circle of Swabia.

	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.		Brought over	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.
<i>The Bishops of</i>				<i>Barons of Scheer—</i>		209	996	6425
Constance ———	7	30	204	Waldburg } ———	11	45	312	
Augsburg ———	21	100	652	Prince of				
<i>The Provostship of</i>				Mindelheim ———	3	10	76	
Elwangen ———	5	18	132	<i>Barons of</i>				
<i>The Abbies of</i>				Graveneg ———				
Kempten ———	6	20	125	Eglingen ——— } ———	1	2	20	
Salmanweiler ———	4	64	316	Gerolsek ———	1	2	20	
Weingarten ———	4	18	120	Hohenregberg ———	1	2	20	
Ochsenhausen ———	4	20	128	<i>The Counts of</i>				
Gengenbach ———	1	3	24	Fugger ———				
Elchingen ———	3	13	88	Kirchberg ——— } ———	4	15	108	
Urfa or Urfin ———	0	14	56	Weiffenhorn ———				
Ursberg ———	0	10	14	Hohenems ———	2	0	24	
Rockemburg ———	2	20	64	Eberstein ———	0	4	16	
Munchrot ———	1	8	44	<i>The Cities of</i>				
Schussenriet ———	2	14	80	Augsburg ———	25	150	900	
Weiffinau ———	2	14	80	Ulm ———	25	150	900	
Marchtal ———	2	5	44	Ellingen ———	2	30 ¹	146	
Petershausen ———	0	6	24	Reutlingen ———	3	38	188	
Wottenhausen ———	1	3	24	Nordlingen ———	5	50	260	
<i>The Abbeffes of</i>				Überlingen ———	6	20	312	
Lindau ———	0	5	20	Rotweil ———	3	61	280	
Buchau ———	2	6	48	Hailbrön ———	4	40	208	
Baindt ———	0	3	12	Gemund ———	3	35	176	
Heppach ———	0	3	20	Memmingen ———	4	50	248	
Guttenzell ———	0	5	20	Lindau ———	3	40	196	
Rotenmunster ———	1	4	28	Dunkelspihel ———	4	40	208	
<i>The Commander Bailly</i>				Biberach ———	3	40	196	
<i>of Allace and Bur-</i>				Ravenspourg ———	3	40	196	
<i>gundy ———</i>	3	31	160	Kempten ———	3	30	156	
<i>Seculars.</i>				Kaufbeuren ———	2	34	160	
<i>The Dukes of</i>				Weil ———	1	12	60	
Wurtemberg ———	60	277	1828	Wangen ———	2	14	80	
Marq. of Baden, Baden, } ———	38	103	868	Illy ———	2	14	80	
Baden-Durlach ———				Leutkirch ———	0	10	40	
<i>The Prince of</i>				Wimpfen ———	2	14	80	
Hohenzollern ———	6	20	152	Gingen ———	1	12	60	
<i>The Counts of</i>				Aalen ———	1	12	60	
Montfort ———	3	20	116	Bepfingen ———	0	6	24	
Furstenberg Prince ———	16	72	482	Pfulendorf ———	2	20	140	
Of Oetingen ———	8	45	276	Buchorn ———	0	5	20	
Wicsensteig, belonging to				Buchau ———	0	2	8	
the Elector of Bavaria ———	2	0	24	Offenburg ———	0	30	120	
Sultz, for their Lands in				Gengenbach ———	0	15	60	
that Circle ———	4	15	108	Zell ———	0	10	40	
Koningsek, for Aulem-								
burg and Eckersberg ———	1	8	44					
	209	996	6425	Total of the Circle is	341	2100 ¹	12623	

The

The Circle of Bavaria.

	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.
<i>The Archbishoprick of</i>			
Saltzburg —————	60	277	1828
<i>The Bishopricks of</i>			
Passau —————	18	78	528
Freisingen —————	12	80	464
Ratisbonne —————	8	30	218
<i>The Provostship of</i>			
Berchtrölgaden —————	8	20	104
<i>The Abbeyes of</i>			
Walt Saxen —————	4	18	120
St. Emeran —————	2	18	96
Kaifersheim —————	4	60	280
<i>The Abbesses of</i>			
Nider Munster —————	2	6	48
Ober Munster —————	2	6	48
<i>Seculars.</i>			
<i>The Elector of Bavaria —</i>	60	277	1828
<i>The Landgraviate of</i>			
Leuchtenberg —————	6	14	128
<i>The County of</i>			
Haag by Bavaria —————	4	10	88
<i>The Duke of</i>			
Neuburg, for him, and } Sultzbach ————— }	20	100	640
<i>The same Duke, for Slauf, } or for Ehrenfels ————— }</i>	3	0	36
<i>The Prince of</i>			
Lobkowitz, or the Coun- } ty of Sternstein ————— }	3	10	76
<i>The County of Ortemburg</i>	2	0	24
<i>The Barony of</i>			
Machfelrain —————	1	2	20
Sultzberg —————	2	4	40
<i>The City of Ratisbonne —</i>	10	50	320
Total of the Circle is	231	1060	6934

The Circle of Franconia.

	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.
<i>The Bishops of</i>			
Bamberg —————	30	128	1088
Wurtemberg —————	45	208	1372
Aichstet —————	20	132	768
<i>The Great Master of the } Teutonic Order ————— }</i>	19	50	448
<i>Seculars.</i>			
<i>The Marquisses of</i>			
Brandenburg —————			
Culmbach, for Bareyt, } Anspach, and the Bour- }	34	156	1032
<i>graviat of Nuremberg</i>			
<i>The Bishop of Wurtzburg for } the County of Henneberg }</i>	15	44	356
Total of the Circle is	163	718	5064

Brought over

	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.
<i>The Counties of</i>	163	718	5064
Hohenloe —————	8	40	256
Castel —————	1	4	28
Wertheim —————	5	25	160
Rheineck —————	2	10	64
Erpach —————	2	8	56
Limburg —————	4	17	116
Schwartzenberg —————	1	3	24
Seinheim —————	1	4	28
<i>The Bishop of</i>			
Wurtzburg, for the Lord } ship of Reigersberg ————— }	1	4	28
<i>The Chapter of</i>			
Wurtzburg, for the City } of Schewemfurt ————— }	4	25	148
<i>The City of</i>			
Nuremberg —————	40	250	1480
Rotemburg —————	10	65	380
Winheim —————	4	30	168
Weissenburg —————	3	16	100
Total of the Circle is	249	1219	8100

The Circle of the Upper Rhine.

	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.
<i>The Archbishoprick of</i>			
Belançon, formerly —————	20	50	440
<i>The Bishopricks of</i>			
Worms —————	2	13	76
Spires —————	18	60	456
Strasburg —————	18	100	616
Balle —————	2	15	84
<i>The Great Master of Malta.</i>	10	30	240
<i>The Abbeyes of</i>			
Fulden —————	17	50	404
Murbach —————			
Luders ————— }	6	19	148
Hirschfeld —————	2	9	60
Prum —————	1	13	64
<i>Munster in St. Grego- } ry's Valley ————— }</i>	1	4	28
<i>The Provostship of</i>			
Weissenburg —————	2	14	80
<i>Seculars.</i>			
<i>The Dukes of</i>			
Simmeren —————	3	10	76
Deuxponts —————	10	30	240
Savoy —————	60	277	1828
Lorrain —————	40	184	1216
<i>The Princes Palatines of</i>			
Lautereck, ————— }	2	4	40
or Veldens ————— }			
Total of the Circle is	214	882	6096

Ths

Brought over	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.
<i>The Prince Palatine of</i>	214	882	6096
Salm —————	1	2	20
<i>The Landgraviates of</i>			
Hesse Cassel —————	50	260	1640
Hesse Darmstad —————			
<i>The Counts of</i>			
Nassau Sarbruc —————	6	30	192
Weilburg —————	6	30	192
Wisbaden —————	2	10	64
Idestein —————	4	12	96
Ryn-Grafen, together ———	10	30	240
Hanau, and Prince —————	5	13	112
Leiningen —————	6	24	168
Ober Hienburg —————	8	42	264
Budingen —————	1	4	28
Solms —————	4	18	120
Witgenstein —————	4	13	100
Waldeck —————	3	8	68
Koningstein, belonging } to the Elector of Ments, and others —————	2	4	40
Falkenstein —————	2	0	24
Ripelbarch —————	1	1	16
Creange —————			
Plefs, by the Landgrave } of Hesse Cassel —————	25	150	900
<i>The Baronies of</i>			
Fleckenstein —————	9	42	276
Dochful —————	9	42	276
<i>The Cities of</i>			
Strasburg —————	20	140	300
Worms —————	6	30	192
Spires —————	4	30	168
Francfort —————	4	24	144
Hagenau —————	2	22	112
Colmar —————	2	18	96
Schlestat —————	20	14	80
Crown Weissenbourg ———	2	15	84
Landau —————	0	12	48
Oberehenheim —————	1	3	24
Kaisersberg —————	0	5	20
Munster in the Valley of } St. George —————	0	12	48
Rolheim —————	0	5	20
Turcheim —————	0	12	48
Friedberg —————	0	8	32
Wetzlar —————			
Total of the Circle is	433	1950	12280

The Circle of Burgundy.	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.
French County, or ———	180	831	5484
Upper-Burgundy, and } the Netherlands ———			
Total of the Circle is	180	831	5484

The Circle of Westphalia.	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.
<i>The Bishopricks of</i>			
Paderborn —————	18	34	352
Liege —————	50	870	1280
Munster —————	30	118	832
Osnabrug —————	6	36	216
The King of Sweden, for } the Bishoprick of Verden }	5	15	120
Elect. of Brandenb. for } the Bishoprick of Minden }	10	16	184
<i>The Abbeyes of</i>			
Stablo —————	2	22	112
St. C. of Munster —————	0	12	48
Corvey —————	3	9	72
<i>The Abbeffes of</i>			
Herforden, Protestants ———	0	6	24
Essen —————	2	13	76
<i>Seculars.</i>			
The Elect. of Brand. and } Palatine, for Cleves, }	70	323	2134
Juliers and Berg ———			
<i>The Counts of</i>			
Nassau Dillenburg —————	10½	43	300
Osfrise —————	6	30	192
Sayn —————	4	16	112
Bentheim —————	11	34	268
Ritberg —————	6	0	72
Lippe —————	4	18	120
Oldenburg —————	10	44	296
Delmenhorst —————	1	4	28
Pyrmont —————	2	8	56
Hoye —————	3	4	28
Diepholt —————	6	26	176
Schawenburg by Hesse } Cassel —————	1	0	12
Bronehorst and Gronsfelt }	1	0	12
Winneberg and Beylstein }	4	12	96
Wied and Runkel —————	2	10	64
Blankenheim —————	2	21	32
Reifferscheit —————			
<i>The Cities of</i>			
Cologn —————	25	200	1100
Aix la Chapelle —————	7	30	240
Dertmundt —————	7	30	240
Herford —————	1	15	72
Total of the Circle is	309½	2019	8964

G E R M A N Y.

515

The Circle of Lower Saxony.

	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.
<i>The Dutchies of</i>			
Magdeburg	43	196	1300
Bremen	24	100	688
<i>The Bishopricks of</i>			
Halberstadt	14	66	432
Hildesheim	18	80	536
Lubeck	5	0	60
Swerin	8	0	96
Ratsburg	5	15	120
<i>Seculars.</i>			
<i>The Dutchies of</i>			
Brunswick and Lu- nenburg	70	128	2152
Holstein	40	80	800
Mecklenburg, Swe- rin and Gustrou	40	67	748
Saxe-Lawenburg	6	6	216
<i>The County of</i>			
Blankenburg	2	0	24
<i>The Cities of</i>			
Lubeck	10½	88½	480
Mulhausen	0	40	160
Gollar	0	15	60
	285½	881½	7872

	Horse.	Foot.	Flor.
Brought over	285½	881½	7872
Cities of Northauién	0	20	80
Bremen	16	32	320
Hamburg	20	120	720
The Total is	321½	1053½	8992

The Total of the Matricula.

	Horse.	Foot.	Florins.
<i>The Circle of Austria</i>	174	907	5714
<i>The Lower Rhine</i>	190½	885½	5828
<i>Upper Saxony</i>	278	1167	7972
Swabia	341	2100½	12623
Bavaria	231	1060	6934
Franconia	249	1219	8100
<i>The Upper Rhine</i>	433	1950	12280
Westphalia	309½	2019	8964
Lower Saxony	321½	1053½	8992
Burgundy	180	831	5484
	2707½	13192½	82891

Note, That the German Florin is 40 Pence.

The Matricula above does not regulate the Precedency of the Circles or Princes; but serves only to shew the respective Quota's that each of them pay: Much less is it a Determination of the Military Strength of the Empire, or a Limitation what each Prince and State shall raise, but only as to

this particular Occasion; for each Sovereign Prince and State have a Power of Peace and War, and Alliances within themselves, so that they may raise what Force they please, if it be not to disturb the Peace of the Empire.

The *Atlas Historique* gives the following Scheme of the Military Force of the Empire.

The Ecclesiastical Princes are able to raise	Men.	Brought from the other Column	Men.
Mentz	6000	The Bishop of Paderborn	3000
Treves	6000	of Osnabruck	2500
Cologne	6000	The Abbot of Fulda	6000
Salzburg	8000	The other Bishopricks of the	6000
The Bishop of Munster	8000	Empire together	6000
of Liege	8000	The Abbies and Provostships	8000
of Wurzburg	2000	of the Empire	8000
of Bamberg	5000	Total of the Ecclesiastical Princes	74500
	49000		

The Secular Princes are able to raise		Men.	Brought from the other Column—		Men.
The Emperor, for	Hungary	30000	The Duke of Holstein	12000	
	Bohemia, Silesia, and	30000	The Duke of Mecklenburg	15000	
	Moravia	30000	The Princes of Anhalt	6000	
	Austria, and his other	30000	The Prince of Lawenburg	6000	
	Dominions		The Elector of Bavaria	30000	
The King of Prussia		40000	The Dukes of Saxony	10000	
The Elector of Saxony		25000	The Princes of Nassau	10000	
The Elector Palatine		15000	The other Princes and Imperial		
The Duke of Wirtemberg		15000	Towns of the Empire	50000	
The Landgrave of Hesse-Cassel		15000	Total of the Secular Princes	379000	
The Prince of Baden		10000	Total of the Ecclesiastical Princes	74500	
The Prince of Brunswick Lunen-		30000	Total of the Forces of the Empire	453500	
burg, or Elector of Hanover					
		240000			

By which it appears, That the Emperor and Empire make the most potent Government of Europe, when they have a good Understanding with one another.

Besides the Tax before-mentioned, there is another that each State is obliged to pay to the Chamber of the Officers of *Weizlar*, amounting to 48925 Florins.

'Twas *Maximilian I.* who began to divide the Empire into Circles in 1500, and appointed those of *Franconia, Bavaria, Swabia, the Upper Rhine, Westphalia, and Lower Saxony*; Twelve Years after, he added those of *Austria, Burgundy, of the Lower Rhine, and Upper Saxony*. *Charles V.* confirmed this in the Diet at *Nuremberg* in 1522, and appointed the *Matricula* as above, which is kept in the Archbishop of *Mentz's* Chancery. It was order'd, instead of 2000 Foot and 4000 Horse that the Empire was obliged to furnish to attend the Emperor when he went to *Rome* to be crown'd, That those that could not raise Troops, were to pay 12 Florins for each Horseman, and 4 for a Footman; but the Prices of Things increasing, they were to pay 60 for a Horseman, and 12 for a Footman, which made one of the new *Roman* Months equal to five of the old ones. The Tax not being alter'd since, the States augment the Number of *Roman* Months as Occasion requires, and appoint the Time of Payment.

Every Circle has one or two Directors, who summon the States of the Circle to meet, acquaint them with the Cause, and give the necessary Orders for the Publick

Welfare, and good Administration. They chuse a General for the Troops they raise, either of their own Number, or otherwise, as they think meet; but if he be one of themselves, he has no Salary. He is to take Care, that all Things relating to War be managed for the Good of the Circle. He lists their Men, regulates their Quarters and March, and puts the Ban of the Empire in Execution. They chuse 5 Assistants at least, who are as his Lieutenants, and perform his Office, if either he neglect it, or be necessarily absent; and they may either be of their own Circle, or any other; for this Dignity is not annex'd to any particular Family or State; nor are they oblig'd always to serve in that Station. Every Circle has three Publick Ministers or Counsellors, viz. a Treasurer, who superintends the Money; another who receives what the States pay towards the Imperial Chamber, and gives Quittances for it; and a Secretary, who attends the Directors. Sometimes all the Circles meet together, which they call a General Assembly. The Circles that lie nearest one another meet every Year, to regulate the Affairs of Money, Correspondence and Commerce; whence they are call'd the Corresponding Circles. There are three Classes of them: The first are, the *Upper Rhine, Lower Rhine, and Westphalia*: The 2d, *Upper*

and *Lower Saxony*: And the 3d, *Franconia*, *Bavaria*, *Swabia*, and *Austria*. Some of the Circles are fix'd, and always assembled: Others meet only once a Year; and some are only call'd to meet when Necessity requires. The General Assemblies of a Circle appoint the Particular Assemblies; and the Directors give Notice of the Time and Place 6 Weeks before. That of *Upper Saxony* usually meets at *Leipsick*; *Franconia* at *Nuremberg* or *Bamberg*; and *Swabia* at *Ulm*.

They treat about the Goodness or Badness of the Coin, about the Preservation of their Peace, their Publick Defence, about rectifying the *Matricula*, putting the Emperor's Orders in Execution, and appointing Counsellors for the Chamber of *Wetzlar*. They also make Laws; but must take Care they be consistent with the Constitution of the Empire. They take Order about their Records, their Treasury, Arsenals, Magazines, Fortifications, and Frontiers.

The Division of the Empire according to M. Sanfon, the French King's Geographer.

GERMANY, belonging to the Imperial Branch of the House of AUSTRIA.

The Arch-Duchy of	Austria
The Kingdom & Electorate of	Bohemia
The Duchy of	Silesia
The Marquisate of	Moravia
The Duchies of	Stiria
	Carinthia
The County of	Carinthia
	Carniola
The County of	Tirol
Part of	Swabia
Part of the	Catholick Netherlands
	Mentz
Ecclesiastical Electorates of	Treves
	Cologne
Seculars of	Bavaria
	Palatinate
The States of	Saxony
	Brandenburg
	Hanover added since.
	Swabia
	Franconia
	Upper Rhine
	Hesse
	Westphalia
	Upper Saxony
	Pomerania
	Lower Saxony
	The United Provinces of Switzerland

The Archd. of AUSTRIA, divided into

UPPER AUSTRIA.

LOWER AUSTRIA.

The Kingdom of BOHEMIA.

The Lordships of

Towns.

Lintz
Enns
Steyr
Wells
Freistat
Grein
Steireck
Mathausen
Vienna
Neustat
Cremis
Stain
Baden
Tulen
Ips
Vaidhouen
Prague
Cuttenberg
Coninggratz
Budweis
Pilsen
Boleslaw
Letomeritz
Caurzim
Chrudin
Czaflaw
Piseck
Bern
Rakonick
Sclany
Satz
Tetschen
Tabor
Egra
Elenbogen
Glatz

	<i>Towns.</i>		<i>Towns.</i>
<i>The Dutchy of SILESIA,</i> <i>divided into</i>	Oppelen	<i>The County of Gorice.</i>	Gorice
	Ratibor	<i>Part of ISTRIA.</i>	Trieste.
	Teschén		S. Voit
UPPER SILESIA.	Trappau		Inspruck
	Jegerndorf	<i>The County of TIROL,</i> <i>containing</i>	Kuffstain
	Neiffa	TIROL.	Feldkirck
	Grotkau		Pludentz
	Monsterberg.		Bregentz
	Brellau		Ems
	Glogau		Montfort
LOWER SILESIA.	Crossen	<i>The Bishoppicks of</i>	Trente
	Lignitz	TRENT.	Bolzano
	Wolau	BRIXEN.	Brixen
	Olffe		Constance
	Jawer		Rheinfelden
	Schweidnitz		Seckingen
	Olmütz		Lauffenburg
	Brin		Waldshutt
	Znaym		Erieburg
<i>The Marg. of MORAVIA.</i>	Harliffé	<i>Part of SWABIA.</i>	Offenburg
	Iglan		Gengenbach
	Newstat		Zeel
	Krumlow		Ehing
	Niklasburg		Burgau
	Polna		Guntzburg
<i>The Dutchy of STIRIA,</i> <i>divided into</i>	Judenburg		Hohenberg
UPPER STIRIA.	Pruck		Nellenburg
	Seckau		
	Gracz	<i>The Spanish Branch of the</i>	Brussels
LOWER STIRIA.	Murck	<i>H. of Austria has in the</i>	Louvain
	Rakelsburg	<i>Re Cath. Netherlands part</i>	Tillement
	Zakathurn	<i>of the Dutchies of</i>	Nivelle
	Pettau	BRABANT.	
		LIMBOURG.	Limbouurg
<i>The D. of CARINTHIA,</i> <i>divided into</i>	Villach	LUXEMBOURG.	Luxembourg
UPPER CARINTHIA.	St. Veit		Arlon
	Ponteba		Guelldre
	Clagenfurt	GUELDERLAND:	Ruremond
	Gurck		Venloe
LOWER CARINTHIA.	Lauamynd		Ghent
	Volck la Mark		Bruges.
	Griffen		Ostend
	Draburg	<i>Part of the Counties of</i>	Courtray
	Wolffsberg	FLANDERS.	Audenard
			Alost
<i>The D. of CARNIOLA,</i> <i>divided into</i>	Laubach		Dendermond
UPPER CARNIOLA.	Craiburg		Dixmuyde
	Czirnicz		Newport
LOWER CARNIOLA.	Oberlaubach		Mons
	Igg	HAYNAULT.	Aeth
	Neideck		Binche
<i>Windifmarck, or the Marg.</i>	Rudolfswerd		S. Gittslain
<i>of the Windes.</i>	Mething	NAMURE.	Namure
			Charleroy
<i>The County of Cilley.</i>	Cilley	<i>Marg. of the Holy EMPIRE.</i>	Antwerp
	Rain	<i>The Lordship of MALINES.</i>	Malines

The Ecclesiastical Electorates ;

containing,		Towns.
The Archbishoprick of MENTZ, in which are	On the Rhine	Mentz; Bingen.
	On the Mayn	Alschaffenburg. Milteneburg.
	In Hesse	Omeneburg. Neustat.
	In Saxony	Fritzlar. Heyligenstar. Duderstat.
		Treves. Coblentz
	On this side the Rhine	Oberwefel Munster Meyen Welschbillych.
	Beyond the Rhine	Freudenberg Hermanstein Montabaur Limpurg Cologne.
	About the Rhine	Bonne Nuys Keyferswaent Rheinberg. Dorsten
	In the Dutchy of WESTPHALIA	Arensberg Stadberg Fredeborg

The Secular Electorates.

1. BAVARIA ; containing,

The Electorates of BAVARIA,	In the Dutchy of BAVARIA	Munick Ingolstat Landshut Burckhausen Landspurg Fridberg Paffenhoven Scrabenhouse. Straubing Amberg.
		Newmarck Alverbach Chamb Waltmunchen

In BAVARIA, there are besides	Several Branches of the Palatine Fa- mily	Towns. Newburg Laugingen Sultzbach Hipolstein Heideck Saltzburg
		The Archbishoprick of SALTZBURG
		Ditmaning Lauffen Windischmatray.
		Ratisbone Paffaw Freising
	The Provostship of The Landgraviate of	Berchtellgaden. Leuchtenberg

2. The Electorate of the Palatinate on the
RHINE ; containing,

On the East of the Rhine	Heidelberg Mosbach Lindenfels Manheim
On the Rhine	Oppenheim Germersheim Altzheim Creutznach Caseloutre Wolfstein Frankendal Neustat Rheinzaubern
On the West of the Rhine	

3. The Electorate of SAXONY ; containing,

The Electoral Dutchy of SAXONY	The Margisates of	Wittenberg Torgaw Dresden Mifnia Leipzig Plawen Zwickaw Chemnitz Mitwerda Koningstein Graitz Baudiffen Gorlitz Sorow Guben

4. The Electorate and Marquisate of BRANDENBURG; containing,

	Towns.
Between the Elbe and the Oder	Berlin
	Coln
	Spandaw
	Francfort
	Brandenburg
	Havelberg
	Rapin
	Brentzlow
	Angermund
	Lebus
On the West of the Elbe	Gutterback
	Ratenow
	Botzow
	Lebewalddt
	Stendel
On the East of the Elbe	Gardeleben
	Soltwedel
	Tangermunde
	Werben
	Osterburg
	Landsberg
	Kustrin
	Sternberg
	Driessen
	Traveburg
	Arenswalde
	Zantock
	Soldin

SWABIA, whose Principal States are,

The Counties of The Bishopricks of	AUGSBURG	Dillingen
		Fueffen
	CONSTANCE	Mersburg
		Arbon
	KEMPTEN	Kempton
	BUCHAW	Buchaw
	LINDAW	Lindaw
		Stutgard
		Tubingen
	WURTEMBERG	Neustat
		Haidenheim
		Blawbeuren
	FURSTENBERG	Furstenberg
		Stutlingen
	HOHENZOLLER	Hohenzollern
	OETING	Oeting
	PAPPENHEIM	Pappenheim
	KONINGSECK	Koningseck
	HOHEN RECHB.	Hohen Rechbeig
	The Bar of WALDBURG	Waldburg

SWABIA,

Towns.

The Imperial Towns of	Augsburg
	Ulm
	Hall
	Rottweil
	Norlingen
	Dinckespuhel
	Hailbron
FRANCONIA; in which are,	Memmingen
	Wurtzburg
	Ochsenfurt
	Roting
	Konigshofen
	Bamberg
	Forcheim
WURTZBURG	Cronach
	Aichster
	Ornbaw
BAMBERG	
AICHSTET	

The Dominions of the Great Master of the Teutonic Order.

The Marquisate of	CULEMBACH	Mergentheim
		Culembach
		Bareut
	OHNSPACH	Ohnspach
		Kregling
The Counties of	HOLAC	Ingetfing
	CASTEL	Castel
	SCHWARTZENB.	Schwartzenberg
	SENSHEIM	Sensheim
	LIMPURG	Limpurg
	LEWENSTEIN	Lewenstein
	WERTHEIM	Wertheim
	ERPACH	Erpach
	RHEINECK	Rheineck
		Nuremberg

The Imperial Towns of

On the UPPER RHINE, are,	STRASBURG	Strasbourg
		Savern
		Benfels
	SPIRE	Spire
		Philipsburg
The Bishoprick of	WORMS	Worms
		Ladenburg
	ZWEYB. belonging to the K of Sweden	Zweybruck
		Landsperg
	SIMMEREN	Simmeren
To several Br. of the Palatine Family		Spanheim
	BIRCKENFELD	Birckenfeld
	LAUTERECK	Lautereck

G E R M A N Y.

521

On the **UPPER RHINE**, are *Towns.*

<i>The Counties of</i>	Linange	Linange
	Rheingra-	Rheingraven-
	venstein	stein
	Reipolz-	Reipolzkirck
	kirck	

HESSE contains

<i>The Landgra-</i>	Cassel	Cassel
	Efchwege	Efchwege
	Marpurg	Marpurg
<i>viates of</i>	Zigenhim	Zigenhim
	Darmstat	Darmstat
	Gieffen	Gieffen
<i>The Abbacies of</i>	Fulda	Fulda
	Newenhoff	Newenhoff
	Thann	Thann
	Hirchfeld	Hirchfeld

<i>The Counties of</i>	Naffaw	Naffaw
	Dillenburg	Dillenburg
	Sigen	Sigen
	Waldeck	Waldeck
	Corbach	Corbach
	Hanaw	Hanaw
	Solms	Solms
	Licha	Licha
	Ifenburg	Ifenburg
<i>The Imperial Towns of</i>	Budingen	Budingen
	Francfort	Francfort
	Westflar	Westflar
	Fridberg	Fridberg

WESTPHALIA contains

<i>The Bishopricks of</i>	Munfter	Munfter
	Coesfelt	Coesfelt
	Osnabrug	Osnabrug
	Iborg	Iborg
	Paderborn	Paderborn
	Liege	Liege
	Fongres	Fongres
	Dinant	Dinant
	Huy	Huy
<i>The Dutchies of</i>	Juliers	Juliers
	Dalen	Dalen
	Cleves	Cleves
	Wefel	Wefel
	Orfoy	Orfoy
	Duffeldorf	Duffeldorf
<i>Principality of</i>	Siegburg	Siegburg
	Ferden	Ferden
	Minden	Minden
<i>The Counties of</i>	Marck	Marck
	Ham	Ham
	Ravensburg	Ravensburg
	Lippe	Lippe
	Schawen-	Schawen-
	burg	burg

<i>The Counties of</i>	Hoye	Hoye
	Diepholt	Diepholt
	Oldenburg	Oldenburg
	Embden	Embden
	Aurick	Aurick
	Benthem	Benthem
	Tecklen-	Tecklenburg
	burg	
<i>The Imperial Towns of</i>	Cologne	Cologne
	Aix la Cha-	Aix la Cha-
	pelle	pelle
	Dortmund	Dortmund
	Duysburg	Duysburg
	Zoeft	Zoeft

In **UPPER SAXONY**, besides the Dominions of the Elefcor, there is further, and for most part in Thuringia,

<i>Belonging to several Branches of the H. of Saxony.</i>	Hall, now the K of Prussia's	Hall
	Mersburg	Mersburg
	Naumburg	Naumburg
	Weimar	Weimar
	Gotha	Gotha
	Eysenach	Eysenach
<i>Principality of</i>	Altenburg	Altenburg
	Deflau	Deflau
	Zerbft	Zerbft

<i>The Counties of</i>	Mansfelt	Mansfelt
	Eisleben	Eisleben
	Schwartz-	Schwartz-
	burg	burg
	Arnftet	Arnftet
	Hohenstein	Hohenstein
<i>The Town of</i>	Erfurd	Erfurd
	Stettin	Stettin
	Stralfund	Stralfund

POMERANIA.

<i>The Terra-firma, divided into</i>	ROYAL.	ROYAL.
	Wolgast	Wolgast
	Gripfwalde	Gripfwalde
	Bard	Bard
	Andam	Andam
	Colberg	Colberg
<i>The Ducal.</i>	Cammin	Cammin
	Rungenwald	Rungenwald
	Stargard	Stargard
<i>The Isles of</i>	Berg	Berg
	Ufedom	Ufedom
	Vollin	Vollin

In **LOWER SAXONY**, are

<i>Bishopricks of</i>	Hildesheim	Hildesheim
	Magdelurg	Magdelurg
	Borch	Borch

In LOWER SAXONY, *Towns.*
The Bishoprick of BREMEN { Bremen
 Staden
 Bremerfurd
 5. *The Electorate of* BRUNSWICK-HA-
 NOVER; *containing,*

The Dutchies of
 { BRUNSWICK { Brunfwick
 Wolfenbittel
 Hanover
 LUNENBURG { Lunenburg
 Zell
 Harborg
 MECKLENBURG { Schwerin
 Gustraw
 Rostock
 Weifmar
 Kiell
 HOLSTEIN { Glucftat
 Ploen
 LAWENBURG { Lawenburg
 Princip. of ALBERSTAT { Alberftat
The Imperial Towns of { Hamburg
 Lubeck

Under SWISSERLAND, are comprehended

The Thirteen Cantons,
 { ZURICK { Zurick
 Kyburg
 BERNE { Berne
 Laufaane
 BASLE { Balle
 Lucerne
 LUCERNE { Soleure
 Soleure
 FRIBURG { Friburg
 Schaffhoufe
 SCHAFFHOUSE { Suiife
 Zug
 SUISSE { Zug
 Appenzell
 APPENZELL { Appenzell
 Glaris
 GLARIS { Glaris
 Stantz
 UNDERWALD { Stantz
 Altorf
 URI { Altorf

SWISSERLAND, *Towns.*
The Bishoprick of BASLE { Porentru
The Bishoprick of SYON { Syon
The Abbot of St. GAL St. Gal
The GRISONS Coire

The United Provinces of the NETHERLANDS,
contain,

The Provinces of
 { HOLLAND { Amsterdam
 Dort
 Leyden
 Hague
 Rotterdam
 Delft
 Haerlem
 ZEELAND { Middelburg
 Flushing
 UTRECHT { Utrecht
 Amersfoort
 Nimeguen
 GELDERLAND { Zutphen
 Arnheim
 Doesburg
 Deventer
 OVER-ISSEL { Coworden
 Zwol
 GRONINGEN { Groningen
 Leewarden
 W. FRISELAND { Francker
 Boifleduc
 Breda
 Bergenopzoom
 Sluys
 And part of
 { BRABANT {
 { FLANDERS {



The North west Part of **GERMANY**;
 Containing y^e Dominions of y^e Arch: and El: of
COLOGNE . WESTPHALIA (vizt the
 D^{ies} of Juliers, Cleves, &c. y^e B^{ishopricks} of Mun-
 ster, Osnabrug, &c. y^e C^{ounty} of Emden, &c)
 y^e D^{uchies} of Holstein and Bremen, the
 D. and Elec: of **HANNOVER** with all y^e
 Ter. of y^e House of Lunenburg & Bruns-
 wick, &c. And y^e Ter. of y^e Landgr. of **HESSE**
CASSEL. By H. Moll Geographer.



CHAP. XXVII.

The GEOGRAPHY of Modern GERMANY.

GERMANY is bounded on the N. by Denmark and the Baltic, on the N. E. by Prussia, on the E. by Poland, on the S. E. by Hungary, on the S. by the Dominions of the State of Venice, on the S. W. by the Alps, which divides it from Italy; on the W. by Switzerland, France, and the Spanish Netherlands; and on the N. W. by the German Ocean, and the United Provinces.

The Extent of Germany, according to Brietius, is 562 English Miles from W. to E. viz. from Lorrain to the Frontiers of Poland; and the Breadth from the Borders of Switzerland in Lat. 45. 12 Min. to the most Northerly Places of the Isle of Rugen in Lat. 54. 50 Min. is 588 English Miles. La Forrest makes its Breadth from Lat. 45. to Lat. 55. but Moll places the most Southerly Places of Germany in Lat. 46½. La Forrest joins Transilvania to Germany, and makes the Length of it, from the Frontiers of French Flanders to the utmost Parts of Transilvania, 900 English Miles.

We begin with Saxony, according to the Method of Pitt's Atlas.

SAXONY in General.

THE Learned have great Debates about the Origine of the Name *Saxon*, which, since they were Ancestors to a great Part of the People of this Island, we may be allow'd a little to insist upon. Some derive it, with *Isidore Hispalensis*, from the Latin Word *Saxum*, because they were a hardy and valiant People, and bolder Pirates than any

of their Neighbours: But since they were possessed of their Country long before *Rome* was built, we cannot think them obliged to the *Romans* for their Name. Others derive them from the *Saxones* or *Saca*, a People of *Asia*; but this is rejected by *Cluverius*, as wanting Authority. He himself thinks they were the *Fisi*, mentioned by *Tacitus*, which was writ by Mistake instead of *Saxoni*; but this seems to be much strain'd, as well as the Opinion of those who would derive their Name from *Askenaz*, the great Leader of the *Asiatick* Colony into Germany. Therefore most Writers think they take their Name from a short Sword or Dagger, which was peculiar to them, and in their Language called *seax*. This they support by the ancient Arms of Saxony, which were two Cross Hangers or Daggers. But the *Brandenburg* Resident, formerly mentioned, says, the Elector of Saxony bears those Arms merely because he is Hereditary Marshal of the Empire; and therefore no other Prince of his Family bears them: So that upon the whole, the Name seems to be so ancient, that there is but little Hopes of coming at the true Knowledge of the Original.

Their ancient Government, as *Dr. Nicholson* informs us, was like that of most of the other Germans, viz. by 12 of the chief Nobles, chosen by the People during a War, and one of them was appointed to be King; but return'd to a Level with the rest when the War was over; and some will have our Juries to derive their Beginning from this Form of Government.

How far the ancient Saxons extended their Limits, we have heard before in the

Description of Ancient *Germany*; and for what Countries are contained in the Circles of *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, we refer to the *Matricula* of the Empire, and *Sanson's* Division of *Germany*.

LOWER SAXONY,

IS bounded on the N. by the *German Ocean*, *Denmark*, and the *Baltick*; on the S. by *Hessia*, and *Upper Saxony*; on the E. by *Pomerania*, and the *Marquitate of Brandenburg*; and on the W. by *Westphalia*. It reaches from N. to S. about 200 Miles, and from E. to W. about 220.

The Air of this Country in general is very cold in the Winter; but the Soil is very fruitful in Corn.

The chief Rivers are, the *Elb*, the *Weser*, the *Aller*, the *Hamma*, the *Ilmenow*, the *Lerne*, the *Ocker*, and the *Elder*.

The People in general are tall, well built, strong, Lovers of good Cheer, and pretty much addicted to Drink.

The first considerable Town in this Part, is

HAMBURG.

Historians differ about the Rise of its Name; some derive it from its being a Mart for Hams; others from the Statue of *Jupiter Ammon*, which was worship'd there till destroyed by *Charles the Great*. *Crantzius* derives it from *Hama*, a *Saxon* Champion, slain there by a *Danish* Giant; but it is most probably, says *Dr. Nicholson*, derived from *Ham*, i. e. a Forreſt, that formerly lay between the *Bille* and the *Aller*, and gave Title to the Lords of *Ham*, who first built a Castle there, which they called *Hamburg*. They differ likewise about its Situation: Some will have it to be in the Province of *Stormar*; but the *German*s say, it is in the uttermost Bounds of *Saxony*, and that the greatest Part of it is still divided from *Stormar* by Branches of the *Elb*. Some Antiquaries say, it was a considerable Village in the Days of *Albion*, the great Captain of the *Albingi*; after whose Death, it was enlarged in 789 by *Orbo*, to whom *Charles the Great* gave the adjacent Country; but the *Vandals* ruin'd

it soon after. In 811, the Emperor recover'd the Country, and rebuilt the Town. It was afterwards enlarged by *Ludovicus Pius*, who made it an Archbishoprick, under *Anſgar*, about 833; but the Archbishoprick was translated afterwards to *Bremen*. In 1227, *Waldemar II.* of *Denmark*, took that City, and gave it to *Albert* Count of *Orlemund*, and his Heirs; but he sold his Pretensions to the Citizens 7 Years after for 150000 Marks of Silver. In 1240, *Adolph IV.* Count of *Holſtein*, confirm'd their Liberties, as did his Successors, till 1459, that *Holſtein* was annex'd to the Kingdom of *Denmark*, upon the Death of the last Earl of that Family. At this Time *Hamburg* promis'd their Friendship to the Crown of *Denmark*, as long as those Kings continued their Privileges; to which *Christian* agreed, without desiring any Homage or Mark of Subjection; but his Successors frequently attempted to subdue it. From 1570, to 1621, the Dukes of *Holſtein* pretended to be Masters of this City; but this Controversy was ended, by their paying Homage and swearing Fealty to the King of *Denmark*, and the Duke of *Holſtein Gottorp*, with a Salvo for the Rights of the Emperor and Empire, and of their own Liberties and Privileges. This hinder'd them at that Time from having a Vote in the College of the Free Towns; but in 1510, the Emperor, in a Diet at *Augsburg*, declar'd 'em a Free City; and the Duke of *Holſtein* was summon'd to make good or renounce his Pretensions: Since which they have been made a Member of the Empire, and invested with a Sovereign Power in their own Jurisdiction, like other Imperial Cities, by a Grant of *Frederick I.* which was confirmed by *Ferdinand II.* They are exempted from all Tolls upon the *Elb* betwixt their own City and the Ocean; but the King of *Denmark* has compell'd them several Times since to pay at his Castle of *Gluckstadt*, which commands the *Elb*; particularly in 1645, they paid 120000 Crowns to be free of his Demands: In 1679, they paid 200000 to take them again into his Favour, as the Treaty words it; and in 1686, the *Danes* besieg'd it, but were bought off. The continual Jealousies betwixt *Sweden* and *Denmark* is their chief Security; for when the *Danes* attack their

their Ships from *Gluckstadt*, the Swedes protect them from *Stade* on the other Side the River.

This City is one of the richest in the Empire, and has for a long Time been the greatest Mart of *Germany*, the Haven being crowded with Ships, and their Exchange with Merchants. It lies in a Plain on the N. of the *Elb*, Long 30. Lat. 53 $\frac{1}{2}$. according to *Moll* and *Oznam*, 50 English Miles N. E. from *Bremen*, 30 S. W. from *Lubeck*, 30 S. from *Gluckstadt*, 140 N. E. from *Munster*, and about 330 W. from *Danwick*. 'Tis naturally strong, great Part of it lying in an Island. The Tide runs in Canals through most of the chief Streets, and runs four Leagues higher, viz. 22 Leagues from the Mouth of the River, wherein it exceeds all the Rivers of *Europe*. The *Thames* comes next to it. The City is well fortified after the modern Way; but their Works are not fac'd with Stone. It consists of two Parts, called the Old and New Town, separated by a Wall well fortified. From the Tops of the Towers and Walls, there's a pleasant Prospect every way. It has only 4 great Gates, viz. 1. That which leads to *Altena*, on the W. of the Old Town, commonly called the *Millers Gate*. 2. One which leads to the great Trenches, N. of the Town. 3. The Stone Gate, which leads to the E. 4. The South Gate, which leads to the Islands on the *Elb*. The Streets are generally crooked, but otherwise out-strip any in *Germany*. The *Alster* on the N. Side drives all the Mills, which supply them with Meal. They have strong Ramparts and Outworks, which were cast up for fear of the *Danes*, and finish'd in 4 Years, which is a sufficient Testimony of the Riches of the Inhabitants.

The Town is exceeding populous, consists of a great many little Islands in the *Elb* and the *Alster*, join'd almost by as many Bridges as there are at *Amsterdam*. About the Change of the Moon, the Spring Tides, or in Tempestuous Weather the Sea flows up the small Channels, and sometimes ruins many Houses and Families. The Town suffer'd much this way in 1651. Their Houses are most of Brick, exceeding high and stately. Many of them have fine Frontispieces, and large Halls. The Senate-House is a noble Structure, beautified with

the Statues of the 9 Worthies. They have a fine Exchange, but much short of ours in *London*. Their chief Church is that of *St. Peter*, formerly a Cathedral, while they had an Archbishop. They have still a sort of Dean and Chapter, from whose Court there lies no Appeal but to the Imperial Chamber. It was built, some say, in 801, and others in 830. Many of the Earls of *Schomburg* and *Holstein* are buried here, whose Names, after those of *Charles the Great*, and his Son *Lewis the Pious*, are writ in a fair Catalogue with their other Benefactors, and hung up in the Body of the Church, which some take as an Argument, tho' the Citizens deny it, that those Princes had more than a Titular Power over this City. The Town is noted in general for its fair Churches, and noble Steeples cover'd with Copper. That of *St. Catherine's* has a stately Front, and on the Top of the Steeple a Crown richly gilt: The Pulpit is of white Marble, curiously carv'd, and adorn'd with Figures of Alabaster, and Ornaments of Gold. The Organ is reckon'd one of the best in *Europe*, and plays, as some say, above 6000 Notes. The Church of *St. Nicholas* has a Steeple supported by large gilded Globes. The other Churches of Note are, *St. Jacob's*, *St. Catherine's the Less*, *St. Michael's*, whose Steeple is 400 Foot high; *St. Gertrude's*, *St. John's*, *St. Mary Magdalen's*, that of the *Holy Ghost*, the *Bluecoat-Hospital Church*, *St. George's*, and the New Church in the New Town. In each of these they keep a Register of the Poor and Distressed, who have a Weekly Allowance of Money, and an Annual Allowance for Clothes and Fuel. Their Hospitals are, 1. That call'd the *Oldest*, near the Church of the *Holy Ghost*, where 114 poor, old, blind, dumb, &c. are maintain'd. 2. The Hospital of *St. George*, which was built about 150, and endow'd with a Maintenance for a great Number of Poor, with Servants, and a Minister, and is made use of by such as dwell in the Suburbs, and adjacent Villages. 3. *St. Job's Hospital*, built in 1509, for those who had the Plague, and is now made use of for the Maintenance and Cure of such Poor as have the French Disease. 4. The Orphans Hospital, where abundance of poor Citizens Children are bred up, with Nurses to look after Infants, and a School with 5 Masters for keeping

those who are capable, to Prayer, Reading, Writing, and Accounts. Its Annual Revenue is 210000 Crowns. Sometimes they have near 310 Infants abroad at Nurse, who are taken into the House as soon as able to dress themselves. Such of the Boys as have Parts, are fitted for the University, and maintain'd there at the Charge of the House, till they be able to maintain themselves. The rest are put out to Trades; and the Girls, after they can read, spin, knit, &c. are sent to Service. 5. They have a common Pest-House, where such as have the Plague, or other Infectious Distempers, are taken Care of; and the Attendance and Skill of those belonging to that Hospital is such, that People of the best Rank come thither for Cure of such Distempers. 6. They have a large and sumptuous Hospital, which was built in 1632, where there is a Physician and Surgeon, with necessary Medicines, for poor Strangers and Travellers that fall sick. In 1556, they built a large Hospital, which has been much augmented since both in Revenues and Buildings, for maim'd, ancient, and decay'd Mariners, and the poor Widows and Orphans of such as have lost their Parents or Husbands at Sea. Besides these, they have many lesser Hospitals for certain Numbers of poor Widows, Widowers, Orphans, &c. with a great Number of Free Schools, where the Children of poor Burghers have their Education, Books, and Clothes, till they be fit for the University, or Trades. They have likewise a Work-house for such as want Employment, and are willing to work, and for obliging sturdy Vagrants, or loose Persons of both Sexes, to labour, or give them Correction. The Motto writ over the Door of the Work-house is, *Labore nutrior*; i. e. I am maintain'd by my Labour. And that over the House of Correction is, *Labore plector*; i. e. I am punish'd by Labour.

Their Government is by 4 Burgomasters, and 20 *Schepins* or Aldermen. They us'd formerly to be Civilians, or other Men of Learning; but now they are chosen out of the Merchants or Tradesmen. They have also 12 Common-Council Men, whom they call *Obersalten*, i. e. Chief Elders, who consult about, and take Care of their Publick Affairs; but in extraordinary Cases, they

join with 60 more grave Citizens, called *Burgeralten*, or the Elders of the City; and if they cannot determine the Matter, 'tis refer'd to a general Meeting of the Free-men: But in case of intestine Broils, which they are not able to compose themselves, the Emperor and Empire take Care of their Peace, by sending Troops of the neighbouring Circle to suppress the Seditious, as they did lately.

For speedy Reparation of Loss by Fire, they have a Custom of entring into Societies to repair one another's Losses; and any Man being at Liberty to enter into all the Societies if he pleases, they frequently get more than their Damages.

Their Territories is a small Part of *Stor-mar*, which has several considerable Villages, and Noblemen's fine Seats. They have likewise many little Islands in the *Elb*, which were formerly subject to neighbouring Princes. They have also the strong Castle of *Ritzembüttel*, betwixt the Mouths of the *Elb* and *Wefer*. Below this to the N. W. they have a considerable Fortrefs, call'd the *New-Work*, which is a convenient Harbour for Merchant-men. They have also the Custom-House of *Tollenspucker*, where all Passengers pay a certain Toll for themselves and their Carriages. There are other Places of less Note equally subject to this City and *Lubeck*. Their Harbour is so commodious, and the River up to the Wall so deep, that large Merchant-men come up to the Town; but those of an extraordinary Size anchor at the *New Mills*, 4 English Miles below the Town, and unload in smaller Vessels.

Their chief Home-Commodity is Beer, which is the best in *Germany*, and employs vast Numbers of their People in brewing it. 'Tis exported to many Places in *Germany*, particularly to *Lubeck*, where 'tis much valued; and to *Francfort* on the *Main*, where it sells dearer than the best *Rhenish*.

They have Plenty of Sea and Fresh-Water Fish, which, with the Fruit and Herbs from their Gardens without the Walls, furnishes good Entertainment. The Trade they have with English Merchants, is more considerable than that with any other Nation: Therefore they allow our *Hamburg* Company greater Privileges than they do any others; for all Suits wherein they are more

immediately concern'd, are try'd before the *English* Resident, who judges them in a stately Hall built by the Company. They have also the Freedom of Religion in the City; whereas others that are not *Lutherans* must go to *Altena*.

By means of the *Elb*, this City has a great Trade with a great Part of the Empire. Dr. Brown says, they vend Annually 100000 Pounds worth of *English* Woollen Manufactury. The *General Course of Commerce* says, they have a great Trade with *Holland*, *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and most other Parts of *Europe*; and Merchant-Ships come hither from most considerable Parts of the known World, so that they furnish the Empire with the richest Merchandize of other Nations.

Their Current Money is that of the Empire, *Sweden* and *Denmark*; and the Coin of most Trading Nations in *Europe* goes here at a good Value. They coin some small Pieces of their own. Their Mark is worth 16 Stivers, 10 $\frac{1}{8}$ d. of *Amsterdam*, and their Rix-Dollar worth 54 Stivers. Their *Gulden* Ducats, old Value, 7 s. 2 d. new Value, 8 s. 9 d. Their Shilling, 9 d. $\frac{1}{2}$. The *Map of Commerce* says, they measure their Corn by the *Schepel*, 83 of which are equal to 10 Quarters *English*. 100 of their Ells make 48 $\frac{1}{2}$ in *London*.

In Consideration that they pay no Tolls to the Emperor on the *Elb*; they are oblig'd to preserve that River from Pirates, of whom they have taken abundance at several Times. *Monconys*, in his Travels, says, the Senators and Burgomasters are during Life. That when a Citizen dies, he must leave the 10th Part of his Estate to the City; and that Foreigners not naturaliz'd, must pay Annually a certain Sum for Liberty to trade there.

This City is by some reckon'd as large as *Rotterdam*, is able to arm 15000 Men, and has a constant Garison of 1800.

Albertus Krantzius, the famous Historian, and *Petrus Lambecius*, who wrote their Antiquities, were born here.

The Dutchy and City of BREMEN.

THE Dutchy has that of *Lunenburg*; on the E. the *Weser* on the S. the German Ocean on the W. and the *Elb* on the N. It

is divided as follows; 1. Into the Bishoprick of *Verden*, on the Borders of *Lunenburg*. 2. The Land of *Bremen*, properly so call'd, which lies some Miles round the City. 3. *Wursterland*, on the Coast from the *Weser* to the Mouth of the *Elb*. 4. *Hadeland*, upon the Mouth of the *Elb*. Part of it is now subject to *Hamburg*, and Part of it under the Duke of *Saxe-Lawenburg*, whose Castle of *Atterndorf* commands most of the Province, in which those of *Bremen* have little but the Village and Castle of *Nyen-busse*, on the Mouth of the *Oste*. 5. *Kedingerland*, in which lies the City of *Stade*. 6. *Alt-Land*, a pleasant and fruitful Country, about 14 *English* Miles long. The People in general are as good Soldiers as any in the Empire; and it is said of the *Wursterlanders* in particular, That they will fight and drink with any in *Germany*. They formerly relied so much on their own Valour, that they despis'd building Cities and Forts. They frequently rebell'd against the Archbishops, and have ever since delighted in War. Those of *Hadeland* are reckon'd ignorant and proud, and delight so much in gay Clothes, that their Neighbours, by way of Jest, say, there are no Peasants in *Hadeland*. Betwixt *Bremen* and *Stade*, the Country is desert and sandy; but the other Parts towards the Rivers are as pleasant as any of the Empire, and abound with Fields, Meadows, and fruitful Orchards. This Country was subject to its Archbishop till 1644, that being conquer'd by the *Swedes*, 'twas by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, with the Bishoprick of *Verden*, annex'd to that Crown, and made a Dutchy, to satisfy the King of *Sweden*, as it is worded in the said Treaty, for the Places taken in the War, which he restor'd, together with the Publick Peace of the Empire.

Dr. *Nicholson* says, they were converted by *Willibaldus*, an *English* Man, sent over by the Archbishop of *Tork*, upon the Desire of *Charles the Great*, was made Bishop of *Bremen*, and died there in 790, where they pretend to shew his Tomb, and, as some say, was succeeded by *Willeric*, another *English* Man, who left it to *Lenderic*, a *German*, that was depos'd for his Pride and Insolence by *Ludovicus Pius*, who gave it to *Ansgarius*, the first Archbishop of *Bremen* and *Hamburg*, and died in 865. During his Life, he

he enjoy'd both Titles; but was oppos'd by the Archbishop of Cologne, who alledg'd the Archbishoprick of Bremen depended on his See; but the Emperor, without regarding that, order'd all the Bishops of Denmark, Sweden, Norway, Greenland, Helsingland, Island, and the other Northern Countries, to be subject to the Archbishop of Bremen and Hamburg. Afterwards, at the Desire of Erick King of Denmark, the Pope erected an Archbishop's See at Lunden; to which, since that Time, the Bishops of Denmark and Sweden were subject. The History of their Archbishops is full of Legends; yet the Commons revere their Memory, and value St. Ansgar's Day as much as Christmas. Their 48th and last Archbishop was Frederick Duke of Holstein, Son to Christian IV. of Denmark; but he lost it by the Swedish War, as above mentioned.

The City of BREMEN.

SOME think its Name comes from the Flat-bottom'd Vessels call'd *Pramen*, they us'd as a Ferry, where now their Bridge stands. Others derive it from *Brame*, i. e. Broom, which abounds in this Country. *Martinus* derives it from *Brame*, a Border, as being the utmost Bounds of the German Empire on that Side. *Cluverius* and others think it was the *Βασιλειαν* of *Ptolomy*, to which the present Name has still some Analogy. 'Tis not certain when 'twas built; but 'tis plain, that a great Part of it, call'd *St. Stephen's-Stadt*, was built long since the main Body of the Town. That call'd the *New-Stadt*, was built within these 100 Years; and the Suburbs of *St. Nicholas*, which make so considerable Part of the City, and the *New-Stadt* on the other Side the *Weser*, were not Wall'd till 1623. The *Old Town* was probably Wall'd in the Time of *Henry the Fowler*, about 1000, when he order'd other Towns to be fortified against the *Vandals*. Their first great Privileges were granted by *Henry V.* in 1111, for their brave Achievements in the Holy War by Sea and Land, as appears by their Charter; but before his Time it was reckon'd to have been a Free City, as is evident from the *Status Rolandi* in the Market-place, with an old Saxon Inscription in Rhime to this Effect; I am a

Testimony of the Liberty which Charles the Great, and many other Emperors, have granted this City, for which I advise you to return God Thanks. Dr. *Nicholson* gives an Account of the Tradition among the Saxons for erecting those monstrous Statues. They say, That this *Roland* was a Man of Gigantick Stature, Nephew to *Charles the Great*, and one of his Generals, thro' whose Assistance he conquer'd much of that Country, and therefore order'd his Statue to be set up in many of those noted Towns he subdued, and granted them larger Privileges than others, so long as they kept up those Statues: But among other Arguments, the Doctor brings against this the Opinion of *Gulastus*, who thinks that *Roland* or *Rugenland* is not a Proper Name, but an Appellative, denoting Cities or great Towns on the Borders of the Empire, where Courts of Justice were established; and that this Authority given to their Magistrates was represented, as now in *Bremen*, *Magdeburg*, &c. by a Gigantick Statue, representing the Emperor, and bearing the Arms of the Empire. He adds, That the People of Towns, when they were deprived of that Privilege, did usually pull down those Statues, as the *Hamburgers* did when *Charles IV.* oblig'd them to submit to the Duke of *Holstein*.

Bremen is now a Free Imperial City, and the Third in Order of the Hans-Towns: It is divided by the *Weser* into two Parts; that on the N. is call'd the *Old Town*, and that on the S. the *New*. They are join'd by Wooden Bridges, and on the largest there is an Engine that raises Water, and distributes it all over the City. The Streets of the *Old Town* are large, and center in the Market-place, where that call'd *Roland's Statue* stands. In this Town stands also the Town-House, a fine late Building, with spacious Rooms; in the first is the Picture of *Willibaldus*, their Apostle, with an old Saxon Inscription above it, not understood now by the Inhabitants; but some will have him to have been a *Holsteiner*. The Front of this House is very handsome, and faces the Market-place. The Senate or Council Chamber is very stately, and has the Picture of 12 Emperors, in which that of the last is included. Here also stands the ancient Cathedral, dedicated to *St. John*, in which they pretend to shew *Willibald's Tomb*.

Tomb. In the *New Town* are the Arsenal, and the University, which was first a Free-School, built soon after the Reformation in 1552; afterwards, advanced to a *Schola Illustri*, where Divinity, Law and Physick, were taught; but has been since so much endow'd by the Citizens, that it is become one of the most noted Universities in Germany, and produc'd several Great Men, among whom were *Chytræus*, *Pezelius*, *Pierius*, *Martinius*, *Lampadius*, *Grocius*, *Combachius*, and the famous *Cocceius*. They had formerly many Struggles with their Archbishops for their Liberties, and bravely defended the Reformation against one of them, for which *Charles V.* order'd the Duke of *Brunswick* to lay Siege to it, which he was obliged to raise after a Year's continuance. They have since had a Controversy with the *Swedes*, and denied that, by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, the Crown of *Sweden* had any more Power over them, than their former Archbishops, in whose Time they were own'd to be a Free Imperial City; and that by the 10th Article of *Osnabrug* it was provided, They should enjoy their present and ancient Liberties; one of which was, That if any of the Citizens appeal'd from their Magistrates to the Imperial Chamber, the Appeller should pay 50 Gilders; but in 1666, the *Swedes* besieg'd it, and, by the Mediation of neighbouring Princes, the City was obliged to agree to a Treaty, by which their Privileges were lessen'd, and they were not to enjoy their Freedom as an Imperial City till 1700, when they should be restored to them, as *De Ville* informs us.

Their Magistracy consists of 4 Burgomasters, and 24 Common-Council Men, divided into a Burgomaster, and 6 Common-Council Men for each Quarter of the City. If any of those die, or grow unable to perform, they are oblig'd to chuse another within 24 Hours after, thus; out of each Class, one Elector is chosen by Lot, and obliged to swear to chuse one of the most considerable Freemen, whom they think fittest for the Place; then they are shut up in a Chamber, and not suffer'd to speak to any Man till the Election is over. This City is strong by Nature and Art; and tho' it had no Walls, it would be hard to take it, if well defended; for they can drown the

neighbouring Plain with the *Weser*, which once a Year overflows its Banks, and much improves the adjacent Fields. Their Ramparts are of Earth, the Ditch large and deep, and the Counterscarp in good Repair. They have a Garison of 600 Men, Detachments of which lie without the City, and 200 of the Citizens keep Guard Day and Night. There are abundance of Gardens and Pleasure-Houses about this City. Their Territory extends 8 or 10 Miles round, and abounds with good Pasture, well stock'd with Cattle; which, with their Trade by Shipping, makes the City rich and populous. Great Floods do many times fill the River with Sand Banks, as puts the City to great Expence to clear it. Ships of great Burden can scarcely come within 6 Miles of their Bridge, and there they unload at the Custom-House, whence Foreign Commodities are brought up in small or Flat-bottom'd Vessels. By this River they transport Commodities to several Parts of the Empire, as well as import them. They are excellent at dressing Leather and Cloth, which are frequently brought for that End from other Parts. They abound also with Fish taken in the Sea and *Weser*, have every Month several Sorts of Fish in Season, and many Thousands of Salmon and Lampries are taken Annually within the Town; which being pickl'd or dry'd, are exported with other Commodities.

All the Magistrates, and most of the Inhabitants, are *Calvinists*; but out of Complaisance to the King of *Sweden*, the *Lutherans* are allow'd the Cathedral, under which there is a Vault, where dead Bodies keep uncorrupted 60 or 70 Years.

Their chief Commodities are Corn, Minerals, Wool, Timber, Leather, and Linen, brought hither from *Osnabrug*: 163 of their Yards make 100 of *English*. The Custom of swearing New-comers by Bread and Salt, and of making them free on paying a Fine of good Liquor to the Company, is said first to have begun here, and is since become general in the other *Hans-Towns*. Their Current Money is that of the Empire and *Sweden*. They have a little Coin of their own, worth about a Halfpenny, which they call a *Gros*. They have a Rix-Dollar of 48 Stivers, 120 of which are equal to 100 Rix-Dollars of *Amsterdam*.

Their

Their Arms are in a *Field-Gules*, a *Key-Argent*, to denote that they can open or shut the Passage of the *Wefer*. This City lies in Long. 29. Lat. 53. 27 *English Miles N. W.* from *Verden*, and 5 from the Sea.

Other Places of Note in the Dutchy of *Bremen* are,

1. *Verden*, formerly a distinct Bishoprick, but united to this Dutchy, and given to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Westphalia*. *Bruschius*, in his History of *Germ. Bish.* says, *Charles the Great* established a Bishoprick at *Konende on the Wefer*, or, as others say, at *Bardewick*, about 776, when soon after it was removed to *Verden*, then a strong and populous City. *Crantius* says, the first Bishop was *Swibert*, an *English-man*, who died in 708, and was succeeded by *Patto*, a *Scotts-man*; but *Bruschius* and *Ennmius* contradict this, and say, *Swibert* was a *Friselander*. This City, which gives Name to the Principality, lies on the *Aller*, by which Goods are brought to it from *Bremen*. 'Tis a pretty large Town, was formerly an Imperial City, but afterwards subject to its own Bishop. *Count Tilly*, the Imperial General, took it in 1626 by Storm. The Imperialists took it again in 1631; since which, it has never recover'd its ancient State. The *Swedes* took it in 1634, and kept it till 1678, that the Duke of *Brunswick* seiz'd it; but restor'd it again to the *Swedes* in 1679, for which he had the Bayliwick of *Teddinghouse*, betwixt the *Aller* and *Wefer*. It lies 40 *English Miles S.* from *Stade*, and about 40 *N.* from *Zell*.

2. *Ottersberg*, a small fortified Town, 16 Miles *E.* from *Bremen*, with a strong Castle, formerly the Archbishop's Residence. *Chytraeus* says, it join'd with *Bremen* for many Years against their Archbishop; but submitted on Conditions in 1547. 'Twas taken twice by the Imperialists, and once by the *Swedes*, in the German Civil Wars.

3. *Rottenberg* or *Rotterberg*, a small Town on the *Wein*, 4 Miles from *Ottersberg*, 20 *E.* from *Bremen*, and 15 *N.* from *Verden*, at first a Bishop's Palace, which was fortified, and the Village Walled in by *Berthold*, their 49th Bishop, about 1500. It has become pretty populous, and a Place of Trade.

4. *Buxtehude* on the *Essa*, near the *Elb*, in as pleasant and fruitful a Country as any

in *Germany*; so that 'tis one of the *Granaries of Hamburg*. The Town is pretty large, with broad Streets: 'Tis surrounded with a Ditch, defended with old Towers, now ruinous, and has a Company of Foot in Garrison. The Duke of *Brunswick* seiz'd it in 1676; but restor'd it to the *Swedes* in 1679. It lies 15 Miles *W.* from *Stade*, and 15 *E.* from *Hamburg*.

5. *Stade*, the second City of Note in the Dutchy. It lies on the Mouth of the *Zwhega*, and Banks of the *Elb*, in a fruitful Country, and wholesome Air, 50 Miles *N.* from *Bremen*, and 25 *W.* from *Hamburg*. In the Time of the *Romans*, 'twas called *Statio*, because part of their Fleet was posted there to guard the *Elb*. *Bertius* and others will have it to be the *Στατάριδα* of *Ptolomy*, in Long. 29. and Lat. 51. Deg. 20 Min. which *Dr. Nicholson* observes does not agree to its Situation. It was formerly subject to its own Earls and Marquisses, and the People of the Town and neighbouring Country were called by the Latins *Stadenses*, *Stadingi*, or *Stedingii*. In 1234, they revolted, by the Influence of their Clergy, from their Archbishop, and after a long and bloody War, in which they engaged several of their Neighbours, they were forc'd to submit by the Pope's Excommunication, without much Advantage to the Archbishop's Title; for *Philip* Duke of *Swabia*, their Earl, tho' he annex'd the County to the Archbishoprick about 1240, kept the City, and allow'd them their Privileges as an Imperial City, it having been one of the first that enter'd into the League of the *Hans-Towns*. And thus it continued till 1645, that it was taken, tho' very strong, by the *Swedes* in one Day, and since continued in their Hands till 1676, that it was surpris'd by the Duke of *Brunswick*; but restor'd to the *Swedes* in 1679, and that same Year was most of it burnt down. It was endowed by former Emperors with large Privileges, and particularly to be an *Asylum* for Malefactors who could escape thither. They pretend to a Right of Toll from every Merchant-Ship that goes up to *Hamburg*, which occasioned a Quarrel betwixt the two Cities, that was afterwards compos'd; since which, both enjoy their own Privileges. The great Trade of *Hamburg* did so much drain it, that they were forc'd to sell their Publick Stock,

Stock, and submit to the Archbishop of *Bremen*: But the *Hamburgers* having affronted the *English* Merchants, they removed their Trade hither, by which of a sudden it recover'd its Riches and Grandeur; and tho' the *English* did again settle at *Hamburg*, continues in a flourishing Condition. The Burgers are accounted the most courteous of this Part of the Empire, have good Orchards and Gardens without the Walls, and a large and commodious Haven, capable of larger Ships than go to *Hamburg*. They have a strong Fort at the Mouth of the *Zwinge*, and the Town it self is well fortified. Their Market-place, Town-house, and Churches, are well built, and worth a Traveller's View.

6. *Bremen-Verden*, a Wall'd Town betwixt *Bremen* and *Stade*, 12 *English* Miles from the latter, and 28 from the former. It was built by *Luder* Duke of *Saxony*, and had a Palace, where the Archbishop of *Bremen* did frequently reside. The *Suedes* have a strong Garison in the Castle, which commands the Plain, and was the usual Residence of the Governor of the Dutchy. Their chief Trade is by Passengers betwixt *Bremen* and *Stade*. 'Twas seiz'd by the *Danes*, but restor'd to the *Suedes* by the Treaty of *Reschild*.

In this Country lies also *Rutzenbittel*, a strong Fort on the Mouth of the *Elb*, 32 Miles N. W. from *Stade*, belonging to the *Hamburgers*, who have also another called *Newwerck* near it.

The Dutchy of LUNENBURG.

Buno, in his Notes on *Cluverius*, says, it has the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg*, the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, and Part of the Archbishoprick of *Magdeburg*, on the E. the Dutchy of *Brunswick*, the Bishoprick of *Hildesheim*, and the Dutchy of *Calenberg*, on the S. the County of *Hoy*, and the Dutchies of *Bremen* and *Verden*, on the W. the County of *Pennyberg*, the Territories of *Lubeck* and *Hamburg*, and the Dutchy of *Sax-Lawenburg*, on the N. Its Rivers are, the *Elb*, the *Alster*, *Elmenow*, formerly called *Linaw*, now the *Aw*, and *Jetze*.

The chief Town, called *Lunenburg*, is thought by some to derive its Name from

Luna, the Moon, worship'd there by the Inhabitants; by others from the River *Linaw*, on which it stands; and this they say, was formerly called *Luno*, from *Isis* the *Egyptian* Goddess, who was worship'd here when she came to see her Kinsman that was Lord of *Hamburg*, and the neighbouring Country. But to pass over this Fable, 'tis certain the Inhabitants did formerly worship the Image of the Moon; and several Rivers and Towns in this and the neighbouring Countries derive their Name from *Luna*. The Annals of the Cathedral of *Verden* say, this Idol stood on the Top of Mount *Calkberg*, and was destroy'd by *Egistus*, one of the 70 Disciples, whom they alledge to have been one of the *German* Apostles; but was set up again by the Inhabitants when they relaps'd, and at last removed by *Swibert*, the first Bishop of *Verden*, who built *St. Mary's* Monastery in its Place about 780.

This Country abounds with Woods and Forrests, with all sorts of Deer, Wild Swine, and other Venison; and a great Part of it is vast Heaths and Wastes, the largest of which lies W. of the City, and is desert for several Leagues.

The Inhabitants are reckon'd by the other *Germans* to be the most rustical both in Habit and Language of any in the Empire; but whatever they were before, it will not appear to be so now, especially as to their Cloathing. The *Cherusci*, part of whom inhabited this Country, contributed much to the Defeat of *Varius*, and the *Roman* Legions. The present Inhabitants are accounted good Soldiers, being bred in a cold Climate, and with a spare Diet.

Historians differ as to the Origine of the present Form of Government here. *Dr. Nicholfsen* is of Opinion, That after the Country was converted in the Reign of *Charlemagne*, they had no other Governors but their Bishops. *Wittikind*, an Author of Credit, says, the Emperor *Orto I.* when he went to *Italy*, left one *Herman*, of Noble Descent, to govern North *Saxony*, which contained *Lunenburg*, and the adjacent Countries; and being well satisfied with his Government, did upon his Return make him Duke of North *Saxony*. By this means the Great Dutchy of *Saxony* was divided; but the Princes of North *Saxony* still assum'd

the Title of the whole. *Herman* is said to have had 4 Successors; but *Magnus*, the last of them, dying without Heirs-Male about 1106, the Emperor *Henry V.* gave the Dutchy of *Lower Saxony* to *Lotharius*, Baron of *Querfurt*. After his Death, *Henry the Proud*, Duke of *Bavaria*, got the Dutchy, having married *Lotharius's* Daughter; and being likewise Son to the Daughter of *Magnus* above mention'd. His Title was opposed by *Albert*, surnam'd the *Bear*, Marquis of *Brandenburg*; but *Lotharius* prevail'd, and left the Dutchy to his Son *Henry*, surnam'd the *Lion*, famous in the *German History*, who enlarged his Dominions from the *Rhine* to a great Part of *Denmark*; and some say, from the *Adriatick* to the *Baltick*; but he was afterwards reduc'd by the Emperor to *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*. *Henry* died in 1195, when his Dominions were divided betwixt his three Sons, *Henry*, afterwards Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*; *Otho*, afterwards Emperor; and *William*, who succeeded to *Lunenburg* only by the Name of *Lord*; for *Otho* had the City and County of *Brunswick*, and *Henry* had *Zell*, *Bremen*, and *Stade*.

William died in 1213, and was succeeded by his only Son *Otho*, who in 1235 was made Duke of *Brunswick* by the Emperor *Frederick II.* whose *Diploma* is still in the Archives of *Zell*.

William died in 1252, and left two Sons, *Albert* and *John*. *Albert* resign'd *Lunenburg* to his Brother; after which they were reckon'd distinct Principalities, and were for most part subject to two Princes.

John died in 1276, and was succeeded by his Son *Otho*. Here *Dr. Nicholson* observes a Mistake in *Dr. Heylin*, who reckoning only the 8 Years of *John's* Government, without taking Notice that *Albert* kept both Dutchies 15 Years, brings *Otho II.* to the Government 15 Years before his Father's Death.

Otho reign'd 53 Years, and dying in 1330, left two Sons, who govern'd jointly 24 Years. *Otho* the eldest dying without Heirs-Male, *William* the youngest govern'd alone for some Years: After which, he resign'd the Dutchy to *Lodowick* Duke of *Brunswick*, who married his eldest Daughter.

Lodowick died without Issue in 1358, and was succeeded by his Brother *Magnus*, surnam'd *Torquatius*, as the *Atlas Historique* says,

in 1368, on Condition that he should protect the *Lunenburgers* against the Emperor *Charles IV.* and the Duke of *Saxony*: Upon which *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg* were again united; but *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*, assisted by the Emperor, and claiming the Title as descended from the eldest Brother's Daughter, recover'd *Lunenburg* by Force in 1372, and held it 14 Years. After his Death, the War continued betwixt the Houses of *Saxony* and *Brunswick* for the Dutchy: But in 1388, *Bernard*, Duke *Magnus's* Son, prevail'd. Soon after this, *Frederick* Duke of *Brunswick* being slain in his Return from *Frankfort*, where he was chosen Emperor, *Bernard* succeeded to *Brunswick*, and gave *Lunenburg* to his Nephew *Henry*, who shar'd the Government with him before. *Henry* reign'd 16 Years, died in 1416, and was succeeded by his Son *William*, who made War on his Kinsman *Otho* of *Brunswick*, Duke *Bernard's* Son, and took several Places in that Dutchy; but a Peace was afterwards concluded, on Condition that they should change Dominions, in 1428.

Otho's Brother *Frederick*, whom *Heylin* makes his Predecessor, succeeded him in *Lunenburg*; but retir'd to a Monastery at *Zell* in 1459, 14 Years after.

Upon this, his two Sons *Bernard* and *Otho* had the Government. The former died within 5 Years; and the latter surviving 7 after, left his Son *Henry*, then but three Years old. Upon this, old Duke *Frederick* came out of his Monastery in his advanc'd Age, govern'd for his Grandson 7 Years, and died in 1476. the *Atlas* says 1478.

Duke *Henry* being then but 10 Years of Age, was assisted by his Mother for some Time; and 10 Years before his Death, which was in 1532, he settled the Dutchy on his three Sons, *Otho*, *Ernest*, and *Francis*. The first loving Retirement, resign'd to the second during his Father's Life for an Annual Maintenance. *Ernest* shar'd the Government with *Francis* till 1539, when the latter accepted the Lordship of *Gifhorn*, and the Monastery of *Isenhagen*. *Ernest* brought in the Protestant Religion in 1530, died in 1546, and was succeeded by his Son *Francis Otho*, who died 13 Years after without Issue-Male, and left the Dutchy to his Brothers *Henry* and *William*, who rul'd together for 10 Years; but afterwards separated, and agred,

agreed, That *William* should have *Lunenbourg*, and *Henry* the Lordships of *Dannenberg*, *Hitzaker*, *Luchaw*, and *Warbke*, and the Monastery of *Scharnbeck*.

In 1592, *William* died, and was succeeded by his Son *Ernest*, who in 1611 left it to his Brother *Christian*, Elected Bishop of *Minden*, who had a prosperous Reign of 22 Years, and added the Principality of *Grubenhagen* to his Dominions. He died in 1633, and was succeeded by his Brother *Augustus*, Elected Bishop of *Ratzeburg*, who succeeded afterwards to *Brunswick*, upon the Death of *Frederick Ulrick*. We shall speak more of him when we come to *Brunswick*.

Upon this, *Lunenbourg* was given to *George*, Lieutenant-General of the Forces of *Saxony*, and Son to *William* above-mentioned, in 1636. He had 4 Sons. *Christian Lodowick*, the eldest, govern'd alone, allowing Pensions to his Brothers. He died in 1665.

George William, his second Brother, succeeded, and died without Heirs-Male in 1705.

By the Treaty of *Hildesheim*, the Dutchies of *Calenberg* and *Grubbenhage* were made over to the third Brother *John Frederick*, who kept his Court at *Hanover*, and died in 1679 without Issue-Male. His Daughter *Wilhelma Amelie*, born in 1673, is married to the present Emperor *Joseph*.

Ernest Augustus, the youngest Brother, succeeded his Brother *John Frederick* Bishop of *Osnabrug*, and in 1692 was created Elector. He married one of the most accomplish'd Princesses in Europe, *Sophia*, Daughter to *Frederick V.* Elector *Palatine*, King of *Bohemia*, by Princess *Elizabeth*, Daughter to King *James I.* of *Great Britain*.

This Prince was a great General, a good Patriot of the Empire against the Designs of *France*, made a great Figure in the Confederate Army on the *Upper Rhine*, and gave likewise a powerful Assistance to the Allies in the *Netherlands*. In Consideration of which, the late King *William*, by the Influence and Assistance of most of the Protestant Princes of the Empire, got him created a Ninth Elector, which the Emperor agreed to, because of his own great Merit, and upon the Solicitation of those Protestant Princes and States of the Empire; who considering the Danger that might arise to their Interest by the extinguishing

of the Protestant Branch of the *Palatine* Family, after which the Duke of *Neuburg*, a Papist, succeeded to that Electorate, they press'd it with the more Vigour. Upon this Prince *Ernest* was declared Elector, and Standard-bearer of the Empire, tho' several Princes, both Protestants and Papists, oppos'd it.

He was succeeded by his Son *George Lewis*, the present Elector, born in 1660. He married *Sophia Dorothy*, the only Daughter of his Uncle *George William D.* of *Lunenbourg-Zell*; by whose Death, in 1705, the Dutchy of *Zell* fell to him. This Prince is likewise a great General; and in Consideration of the Service he has done the Empire, has commanded their Army in Chief for most part since the Death of Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, and has been introduc'd into the Electoral College, which his Father could never obtain: His Mother the Electress Dowager, being the next of the Royal *British* Protestant Line, has the Reversion of the Crowns of *Great Britain* and *Ireland* settled upon her and her Heirs, if her present Majesty Queen *Anne* die without Issue.

The Curious, who have a mind to know more of the Genealogy of this Illustrious Family, may find a Tree of it in the *Atlas Historique*. Some derive it from *Atim*, King of *Alba* in *Italy*, from whom the Emperor *Augustus* descended by the Mother's Side; but this being uncertain, others derive it from *Hugo* Marquis of *Ferrara*, Father to *Azo* Count of *Esse*, who was Vicar of the Empire in *Italy* in 970; and another *Azo* the 4th from him, came with the Emperor *Conrad II.* into *Germany*, and married *Cunigunda*, the only Daughter to *Guelph* Duke of *Bavaria*. He was succeeded by his Nephew *Guelph the Valiant*; he by another *Guelph*; he by *Henry the Proud*, Duke of *Bavaria*; and he by *Henry the Lion*, who married *Maud*, Daughter to King *Richard II.* of *England*, as we mentioned before, from whom the present Family is descended. It had several other Branches, which are now extinguisht: The remaining Branches are, that of *Brunswick Wolfembuttel*, the present Prince of which is *Anthony Ulrick*; and the Branch of *Bevern*, the present Prince of which is *Ferdinand Albert*.

The chief Places of Note in this Dutchy are,

1. *Lunenburg*, the Metropolis. Some ascribe the Foundation of it to *Julius Caesar*; but this is rejected as fabulous. It is mentioned in the Reign of the Emperor *Henry II.* and afterwards as the greatest City belonging to *Ordo Duke of Saxony* about 1073. It was said to have been first fortified by *Henry the Lion* in 1189; but had a Castle on the Mountain of *Calkberg*, which lies near it, since 1076. It was formerly an Imperial City, but is now subject to its own Prince, and allowed great Privileges. 'Tis about two English Miles in Compass, of an oblong Form, the Streets broad, and most of the Houses well built. The Town-House is a neat Structure, and over against it stands the Duke's Palace. It has also a fine University, formerly a Monastery, and a stately Bridge over the River *Elminow*, which here is navigable. Their chief Trade is in Salt, which is made from Salt-Springs that rise within the Walls. Their Salt-Houses are fenced, and constantly guarded, as being the main Support of the City, a considerable Branch of the Duke's Revenue, and a constant Employment for a great many Poor. It lies in Long. 30 $\frac{1}{4}$. and Lat. 53. 28 Miles S. E. of *Hamburg*, 46 N. of *Zell*, 14 S. W. of *Lawenburg*, and 65 N. of *Brunswick*.

2. *Bardowick*, a Mile from *Lunenburg*, now a Village, but formerly a strong and populous City. Some reckon it to have been the first City in *Saxony*, and built 990 Years before Christ. It had 9 Churches, of which the Cathedral only is left. Over the Gate, there are some barbarous Latin Verses, in an old *Gothick* Character, which alledge it was built 235 Years before *Rome*, and that it was destroyed by *Henry the Lion* in 1189. Some derive the Name from *Bardo*, an ancient Knight-Errant; but *Meibomius* derives it from an ancient People in that Country called *Bardi*: But 'tis more probable, that it was a College of the ancient Poets called *Bards*. In the Cathedral, there are 8 Residuary Canons, and a few Vicars.

3. *Ultzen*, a neat little Town, mid-way betwixt *Lunenburg* and *Zell*. It was formerly called *Lawenwald*, i. e. *Lion-Forrest*, as appears by their Records, and an Inscription on the Town-Hall. It had its present Name

from the neighbouring Monastery of *Oldenstadt*, formerly called *Old-Ulsen*. In 1646, most of the City was burnt down, and never since wholly rebuilt; but the Streets are larger, and the Houses more splendid and regular, than before. They pretend, that the first English *Saxons* went from hence to *Britain*; and those who returned, hung up a gilt Tin Ship in the Market-place, as a Memorial of their Success, which continued there till the above-mentioned Fire.

4. *Zell*, on a Sandy Plain, near the Conflux of the *Alter* and *Fulfe*, which fall into the *Weser* below *Verden*. It lies in Long. 30. and Lat. 52 $\frac{1}{2}$. 30 Miles S. from *Lunenburg*, 60 S. W. from *Hamburg*, 28 N. from *Hannover*, and 29 N. E. from *Brunswick*. Some derive the Name from its having been a Cellar, which is the Signification of the German Word; but in a Charter of 1203, in the Duke's Archives, 'tis called *Tsellé*. It consists of three Streets, which lie parallel, and is well fortified; the Ramparts large, and well mounted with Cannon. The D. has a Palace here, which stands near the Gate of *Hannover*: 'Tis a square Building, moated round, and has 4 Platforms. In the lower Court, beyond the Ditch, there is a very fine Riding-House; and there are many fine Gardens, Orchards, and Grotto's, near the Palace. It was built in 1485 by Duke *Henry*. The chief Courts of Judicature are held here.

5. *Walfred*, i. e. *Walo's-Cross*, formerly a Monastery, built by *Walo*, a Prince of *Anhalt*, in 986, as appears by an Inscription on his Statue in the Church. It is now a considerable Town, seated in a pleasant Valley, encompassed with Woods and Mountains. Their chief Trade consists in Honey, Wax, Wool, and Beer.

6. *Harburg*, on the *Elb*, over against *Hamburg*, with a strong Castle. The Town is fortified, and is the strongest Frontier of the Country on this Side, tho' the Fortifications be not very good. 'Tis populous however, because the Inhabitants have great Privileges.

7. *Danneberg*, on the *Jetze*, a League above where it falls into the *Elb*, is the chief Town of the County of that Name, which was given to *Ordo D. of Brunswick* in 1462, by *Nicholas Count of Danneberg*.

8. *Snack*.

8. *Snackemburg*, belonging to this County, a large Trading Town, on the Confluence of the *Elb* and the *Wecker*.

The Counties of *Hoya*, *Diepholt*, and *Schawenburg*, in *Westphalia*, belong also to the Duke of *Lunsburg*: But we refer the Description of them to our Account of *Westphalia*.

The Dutchy of MECKLENBURG.

BUO on *Cluverius* lays, it has *Pomerania*, and Part of the Marquifate of *Brandenburg*, on the E. the Dutchie of *Lawenburg* and *Holstein* on the W. the Marquifate of *Brandenburg* on the S. and the *Baltick* on the N. Its Rivers are, the *Elb* and the *Warnaw*.

Geographers can scarce tell where the Place lies which gave Name to this Dutchy; but Historians say, there's a small Village so called near *Wisnar*, and was formerly a large and populous City. *Cluverius* and *Berrius* reprove those who render the Name of *Mecklenburg* by *Megalopolis* or *Megapolis*, as if it had taken its Name from its Largeness, since in German it signifies only a Town of Factors or Brokers, being a Place of great Trade while the *Vandal* Princes resided there; and *Lindeburgius* alledges, but without good Authority, that it was 8 English Miles long, and 20 in Circumference.

This Country is divided betwixt the two Dukes of *Gustrow* and *Swerin*. It has more of Profit than Pleasure, abounds with Corn, Fruit, Fish, and Fowl; but the Air is unwholesome in Summer, and very cold in Winter. It has the Advantage of the *Baltick*, many Rivers and large Lakes, which abound with Fish: One Instance of which is, That at the Marriage of *Helen*, Daughter to the Elector *Palatine*, with the Duke of *Mecklenburg Swerin*, 5000 fresh Breems, newly taken out of the great Lake near *Swerin*, were serv'd up at Table.

Some derive the Dukes of *Mecklenburg* from *Anthonyrius*, one of *Alexander the Great's* Generals, because they bear a Horse's Head in their Arms, which they will have to be that of *Bucephalus*. They say, he was the first Duke of the *Heruli* who inhabited this Country, and founded the City of *Mecklenburg* 300 Years before Christ, from whom,

after several Generations, descended *Biliengus*, a Potent King of the *Vandals*, whose Mother, they say, was Sister to *Charlemain*. They add, That he brought in Christianity; but afterwards he and his Subjects apostatiz'd. Their next famous Prince was *Godeschalk the Pious*, who preach'd to his People, and was murder'd by them in 1066. From him, among others, descended *Henry II.* who died in 1228, and left two Sons, *Nicholas* and *John*: From *Nicholas* came the succeeding Princes of the *Vandals*, till *William*, the last of the Line, died in 1430. From the latter, called *John*, are descended the present Dukes of *Mecklenburg*. His Son *Henry*, who was 26 Years Prisoner among the *Turks*, was Father to *Henry the Lion*, whose Sons *Albert* and *John* were made Princes of the Empire by *Charles IV.* in 1349, on Condition of submitting to its Laws, and assisting him. *Albert's* eldest Son, *Albert II.* was chosen King of *Sweden*, and afterwards taken by *Margaret* of *Denmark*; but releas'd, on paying a great Ransom. His Brother *Magnus*, whom *Chytræus* calls a great Prince, in Deed as well as Name, was advanced to the Government, and succeeded by his Son *John*, who founded the University of *Rostock* in 1469. His Successors, *Henry the Fat*, and *Magnus II.* after the Death of *William*, the last Prince of the *Vandals*, seiz'd the whole Dutchy. *John Albert*, Grandson to this *Magnus*, brought in *Lutheranism* in 1547, and gave the Revenues of the Abbies to the University of *Rostock*. His Son *John III.* succeeded, and left two Sons; the eldest, *Adolph Frederick*, married *Anne Mary* Countess of *East-Friesland*, by whom he had *Christian Lodowick*, the Duke of *Mecklenburg Swerin*; and the youngest, *Gustavus Adolphus*, seated himself at *Gustrow*.

The *Atlas Historique* has a Tree of this Family; but reckons nothing of the Genealogy certain till the Time of *Udo K.* of the *Heruli*, who inhabited Part of this Dutchy, from whom the present Line is descended. They enjoyed the Title of Kings of the *Heruli* or *Odrisites* till about 1150, that the Duke of *Saxony* and Marquis of *Brandenburg* forc'd *Pribislaw* to renounce the Title of King, and take that of Duke. The Branch of the Princes of the *Vandals*, and of the Branch of *Sturgard*, were united in the Branch of *Mecklenburg* about 1429. The Branch

Branch of *Gustrow* issued about 1558, and was extinguish'd last Year. The Branch of *Swerin* issued about the same Time, of whom *Frederick William*, born in 1655, is the present Prince. The Branch of *Strelitz* issued about 1658, and the present Prince is *Adolph Frederick*, born in 1686.

The same Author says, this Dutchy was anciently inhabited partly by the *Varini*, and partly by the *Angli*, who were chas'd thence by the *Heruli*. The Country he says is about 45 German Leagues in Length, and 30 in Breadth. The Dukes, who formerly govern'd independently, have had a Seat in the Diet of the Empire since 1349. It makes Part of the Circle of *Lower Saxony*, where they have a double Suffrage; and *Strelitz* has also a Voice. Their Titles are, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Prince of *Wenden*, *Schwerin*, and *Ratzeburg*, Count of *Swerin*, Lord of *Rostock* and *Stargard*. The Principality of *Gustrow*, and the Dominion of *Strelitz*, do also depend upon it.

Dr. *Nicholson* observes, That these Princes had Strength enough to secure themselves, and over-awe their Neighbours, had they kept a good Correspondence. *Christian Lewis* turn'd Papist in 1663, which heighten'd the Difference with the House of *Gustrow*. He died without Issue in 1695, as *Gustavus Adolphus*, the Chief of the House of *Gustrow*, did in 1696, which has occasioned the present Differences about the Succession betwixt the Sons of *Frederick* late Duke of *Mecklenburg* *Krabro*, and *Adolphus Augustus* Duke of *Strelitz*, of the same Line.

The chief Places in this Dutchy are,

1. *Lubeck*, an Imperial City, and Chief of the *Hans-Towns*. Some derive the Name from *Luba*, a Fisherman, who first settled here; but the most probable Opinion is, that 'tis so called from *Lob-eck*, which in *High-Dutch* signifies a Point of Land, which agrees with its Situation. The *Polish* Historians say, their Princes having conquer'd this Part of *Germany*, first built a Fort, and then a Wall'd Town here; but the *Germans* say, That *Godefrich*, a K. of the *Vandals*, founded it in 1040; but was a considerable City when taken by *Crito*, a Pr. of *Rugen*, some say in the 11th, and others in the beginning of the 12th Century: But Dr. *Nicholson* says, it never had a Charter till after

it was ruin'd by *Ratzo*, a Prince of *Rugen*, in 1134, and rebuilt by *Adolph II.* of *Holstein* in 1140; but was afterwards obliged to surrender to *Henry* of *Saxony* and *Barvaria*, surnam'd the *Lion*, who being swelled with Success, join'd with the Pope against the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*: Upon which he was proscrib'd, and despoil'd of most of his Dominions; and the Emperor took *Lubeck*, which was restored to *Henry* after the Emperor's Death. It was afterwards taken by *Waldemar* of *Sleswick*, Brother to *Canutus* of *Denmark*; but not being able to bear the Severity of the *Danes*, they submitted to the Emperor *Frederick II.* who restor'd their Privileges, which it has enjoy'd ever since. The Bishoprick of *Oudenburg* in *Wagerland* was removed hither in 1163; and since 1596, has for most part been possessed by a Son of *Holstein*. There is no City in the N. of *Germany* equal to this for Beauty, Uniformity of Buildings, and pleasant Gardens and Groves: The Streets are straight and even, the Houses of Brick, cover'd with Tiles, are generally high, and adorn'd with Sculpture. Most of it was burnt in 1238: Since which, the Senate made an Order, That no Houses should be built of Timber, or cover'd with Thatch. They have a publick Conduit, from whence Water is convey'd by Pipes into every private House; which Example has since been followed by *London*, and other great Cities of *Europe*. Several of the Streets are adorn'd with Rows of Tile-Trees on each Side. They have about 20 Churches well built, and adorn'd with high Steeples or Spires. The Cathedral, dedicated to *St. Mary*, is of as good Architecture as most in *Germany*. The City is large, but more long than broad; the Fortifications are strong, and consist of good Bastions and Faussebrays, with a deep and large Ditch. They have no Counterscarp or Half-Moon, but one at the Gate of *Hamburg*. The Haven is defended by Ramparts, and capable of great Merchant-Ships, which come up to *Trave*, 8 or 10 *English* Miles from the Sea, which occasions a great Trade here; so that with *Hamburg*, they continually employ almost 600 Vessels of their own. The Reformation was brought hither in 1561: Since which, their Bishops have been Protestants. The Chapter has only a Shadow of Election; for,

for, as we have heard before, the See is devolved as an Appennage upon a Son of Holstein, who is called Duke of Eutin, from the Place of his Residence, about 16 Miles from the City: But the Chapter resides in the Town. His Revenue is about 10000 Crowns *per Annum*; but he is the only Protestant Bishop in Germany who has the Power of a Diocesan, and Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction. This City defended it self bravely against the Danes in 1500, and 1519. Before the Time of *Gustavus Erickson* of Sweden, it held the Ballance betwixt the two N. Crowns; but since that Time, the Cities of *Hamburg* and *Wisnar* have got much of its Trade. Their Beer is extream good, transported to other Parts, and is us'd medicinally for Wounds and Bruises: 'Tis sold by the Barrel, which contains about 44 *English* Gallons: 160 of their Ells make 100 of ours; Their Corn is measur'd by the Last, which makes 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ *English* Quarters. Their Government is by 12 Burgomasters, and 16 Senators, whose Office is for Life. The former are either Doctors of the Law, or grave Gentlemen of the City. The latter are half Lawyers, half Gentlemen. Their Territory is about 60 *English* Miles, in which there are some small Towns. They have a Garison of 7 or 800 Men, and take Place in the Diet alternately with *Worms*. A remarkable Treaty of Peace was concluded here in 1629 betwixt the Emperor and King of *Denmark*.

The Colledge of the Hans-Towns is kept here. The League betwixt them began in 1164, for mutual Defence, and carrying on their Commerce, and was made up of 70 or 80 in several Countries. The 4 Towns in which they first establish'd their Factories, were, *London*, *Bruges*, *Norwege*, and *Novosorod*. In 1428, they set out 250 Ships of War against *Erick X.* of *Denmark*; but *France*, *Spain*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *England*, having broke off the Towns of their Dependance from the League, those of the Empire continued in it; since which, *Lubeck* has been the chief, keeps their common Stock rais'd by Contribution, with their Records and Alliances: *Lubeck*, *Cologne*, *Brunswick*, and *Dantzick*, are the chief; and when they think fit to call an Assembly, they give Notice to the rest. They meet once in three Years. The Towns of

the first League were, *Antwerp*, *Dort*, *Amsterdam*, *Rotterdam*, *Bruges*, *Ostend*, *Dunkirk*, *Calais*, *Rouen*, *St. Malo*, *Bourdeaux*, *Bayonne*, *Marseilles*, *Barcelona*, *Sevil*, *Cadix*, *Lisbon*, *Leghorn*, *Messina*, *Naples*, *London*, and others of less Note. The chief Towns of the present League are, *Lubeck*, *Cologne*, *Brunswick*, *Dantzick*, *Hamburg*, *Rostock*, *Weimar*, *Lunenburg*, *Stettin*, *Gripswalde*, *Wesel*, *Osnabrug*, *Dortmund*, *Paderborn*, *Norhausen*, *Ruremond*, *Bremen*, *Magdeburg*, *Hildesheim*, *Goslar*, *Minden*, *Emmerick*, *Cohn*, *Thorn*, *Coningberg*, *Riga*, and several others.

2. *Wisnar*, betwixt *Lubeck* and *Rostock*, about 21 *English* Miles from each. Some derive the Name, according to *Saxo Grammaticus* and *Crantzius*, from *Wissmir*, a Polish or Vandal Prince, who, after defeating the Danes, built this Town: But this is contrary both to History and Chronology; so that the Name comes probably from *Wismeer*, which signifies a secure Part of the Sea, such as this Town is built on, as *Dr. Nicholson* observes; and adds, That it was probably built about 1238, or 1250, by *Gunceline II.* of *Swerin*, out of the Ruins of *Mecklenburg*. Afterwards *Henry* of *Mecklenburg*, called *Hierosolymitanus*, because of his Exploits in the Holy Land, modelled this City about 1266, after the Government of *Lubeck*; so that in a little Time it became one of the chief Hans-Towns, was the Harbour for their Men of War, and fortified at their Expence, which made it almost impregnable. It was taken in 1629 by *Wallenstein*, the Imperial General, but retaken in 1632 by the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, with the Assistance of the Swedes, to whom, by the Treaty of *Munster*, it was given up, with other Places; but was since taken by *Christian V.* of *Denmark*, and agreed to be re-deliver'd to the Swedes by the Treaty of *Fountainbleau* in 1679; and by a posterior Treaty that same Year in *Denmark*, it was left in the Hands of the Danes for Arrears due by the Swedes, and continues still in their Hands. It is a Hans-Town, and its Harbour reckon'd the best in Germany. It lies among Fens, in Long. 32 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 54. 40 *English* Miles S. W. from *Rostock*; 12 N. from *Swerin*, and 60 N. E. from *Hamburg*: 'Tis well fortified, and has a strong Citadel, with 5 regular Bastions.

3. *Rostock*, which the German Antiquaries say is the *Lacinium*, *Laciburgium*, and *Rhodopolis* of the *Romans*; but with little probability. Some derive it from *Rostogz*, which in the *Wendish* Language signifies the Conflux of two Rivers; but *Lindeburgium*, which is more probable, derives it from *Rotz-Rock*, a red Pillar, worship'd by the Pagan Inhabitants. Dr. *Nicholson* says, That in 329, it was only a small Village of Fishermen on the Banks of the *Warna*, and advanced to a City by *Godeschalk* King of the *Heruli*, and enlarged by his Successors about 1160. *Burcwinus*, one of his Successors, wall'd and modell'd it by the Laws of *Lubeck*, as appears by his Charter, dated 1218. 'Tis a Hans-Town, and divided into 3 Parts, called the *Old*, *New*, and *Middle* City, consisting of 14 Streets, and many Thousands of stately Houses. The Citizens value themselves on 7 times 7 remarkable Things, viz. 7 Doors in *St. Mary's* Church, 7 large Streets which center in the great Market-place, 7 Gates out to the Country, 7 Bridges over the *Warna*, 7 Towers on the Town-Hall, 7 great Bells belonging to the Town-Clock, which chime at certain Hours, and 7 vast Tile-Trees in the common Garden.

Their chief Commodity is Beer, which they export in great Quantities. They have 150 Priviledg'd Brewers, who they say brew as many Thousand Tuns every Year, besides what particular Persons brew for their own Use.

Their University, now one of the largest and best in *Germany*, was founded in 1419. The City was at half the Charge, and have the Choice of half the Professors, who are 18 in all; and their Rector *Magnificus*, or Chief Magistrate of the University, is chosen ever Half-Year by Turns out of those Professors. He appoints their Meetings, takes Care of collecting and disbursing their Money; and in great Matters, is assisted by a Promotor, chosen from among the eldest of the Professors. They had their Charter from Pope *Martin V.* The Bishop of *Swerin* is their perpetual Chancellor, and deputes a Vice-Chancellor from among the elder Professors. Among other Learned Men bred here, were the famous Historians, *Crantzius*, *Posselius*, and *Chytraeus*. The Government of the City is by 24 Aldermen, chosen out of the Nobility, Scho-

lars, or Merchants: 4 of these are Burgo-masters, 2 Chamberlains, 2 Stewards for the River, and 2 Judges. The Chamberlain collects and pays the Money for repairing the Publick Buildings. The Stewards over-see the Haven at *Warnemund*, and take Care of cleaning the River; and the Judges determine all Causes Civil and Criminal. These 24, call'd the Upper House, determine all Controversies, coin Money, and chuse Officers; but there is besides a Lower House of 100 Common-Council Men, chosen out of the inferior Tradesmen, who are summon'd, and give their Opinions in extraordinary Matters of common Concernment. The River is navigable to the Walls; but their large Ships come no further than *Warnemund*, a little Town 7 Miles distant, at the Mouth of the River. The *Swedes* built a Fort here after the Treaty of *Munster*, and by their Garison demanded a Toll of all Ships, which very much lessen'd the Trade of the Town. The *Mecklenburg* Ministers endeavour'd to have this redress'd at the Treaty of *Nimwegen*; but without Effect. This City and Dutchy was seiz'd by the Imperialists in 1649; but retaken by the *Swedes* in 1651. Most of the Town was burnt in 1677, but is since rebuilt.

4. *Swerin*, on a great Lake, which takes its Name from the Town, about 50 English Miles S. W. from *Rostock*, 28 W. from *Gustrow*, and 12 S. from *Wismar*, in Long. 31¹/₂. Lat. 53³/₄. and is the Capital of the Principality of that Name. It was fortified by *Henry the Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*, soon after its first Foundation, in 1163, and bestow'd, with its Territories, on *Gunceline*, one of his Generals, whom he made Earl of *Swerin*. He was succeeded by his Son *Henry*, Favourite to the Emperor *Oslo IV.* He took *Waldemar* King of *Denmark* in his own Kingdom, brought him bound to *Saxony*, and kept him in the Castle of *Danneburg*, till his Subjects had almost beggar'd themselves by paying his Ransom. *Oslo*, the last Earl of this Family, died in 1355, and his only Child being married to *Albert Duke of Mecklenburg*, brought the Earldom to that Duke. The Bishoprick was removed from *Mecklenburg* to this City about 1062; and *Joannes Scotus*, their first Bishop, was murder'd by the *Wendish* Apostates in 1066, who cut off his Hands and Feet, and left him in that

Misery;

Misery; so that he died some Days after. The See was vacant for 84 Years, till the Emperor *Conrad III.* sent *Eberhard* thither. He was succeeded by one *Benno* or *Bruno*, when *Henry the Lion* built and endowed a new Cathedral, and drove the Pagan *Mecklenburgers* by Thousands into a Place of the Lake of *Swerin*, where they were baptiz'd by *Benno*, from whence that Part of the Lake is still called the *Fons*. The following Bishops had their Residence at *Butzow*, a Fort and considerable Town near *Gustrow*, till by the Treaty of *Munster* it was seculariz'd, and given to the Duke of *Mecklenburg*. It is the usual Residence of the Duke of *Mecklenburg Swerin*. The Religion of this Country is *Lutheranism*.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Domitz*, in an Island made by the Conflux of the *Elb* and *Elda*, with a strong Castle on the *Elb*, where the Duke of *Mecklenburg Swerin* obliges Ships to pay Toll. 2. *Rutzow*, near *Gustrow*, where the Bishop of *Swerin* ordinarily resided. 3. *Travemund*, on the Mouth of the *Trave*, which is broader than the *Sein* at *Paris*, 8 English Miles from *Lubeck*, on which it depends. The Town is small, but fortified with 4 good Bastions. 4. *Mecklenburg*, formerly mentioned, once a great Town, that gave Name to the whole Dutchy.

5. *Gustrow*, a well fortified Town, with a Castle, about 20 English Miles S. from *Rostock*, and is remarkable for little but being the Residence of the Duke of *Mecklenburg Gustrow*, whose Line was extinguish'd in 1688. The Prince *Gustavus Adolphus*, who was born in 1633, and died in 1695, was a Prince of great Learning and Bravery. His Son *Charles* died in 1688, without Issue. His Sister *Louisa*, born in 1667, married *Frederick IV.* the present King of *Denmark*, in 1695.

Other Towns of less Note in this Division are, 1. *Ribnitz*, on the bottom of a Gulph, form'd by the *Baltick*, N. E. from *Rostock*. 2. *Storgarde*, a small Fisher-Town on the same Gulph. 3. *Woren*, an ancient Town on a Lake towards the Frontiers of *Brandenburg*. 4. *Plawen*, on a Lake of the same Name, from whence the River *Elda* rises.

The Arms of *Mecklenburg* are, Or, a Buffalo's Head, the Front Sable, the Curls and Horns Argent, for *Mecklenburg*. Azure, a

Griffin Or, for *Rostock*. Cut in the first Azure, a Griffin Or, in the 2d Argent, fill'd up with Sinople or Green, for *Swerin*. Gules, a-crofs Parre, for *Ratzenburg*. Gules, a naked Arm Carnation, clad above the Elbow with a Sleeve of Silver, ty'd with a Ribbon of the same, issuing from a Cloud, moving from the sinister superior Point of the Chief, holding in the Hand a Black Ring, for *Swerin*. Or, a Buffle of Sable, Langued-Gules, Horn'd and Crown'd the same, for *Vandalia*. Over the whole, cut Gules on Or, for the Lordship of *Storgard*.

The Dutchy of BRUNSWICK.

THE Country, properly so called, comprehends only the Territories subject to the Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Hanover*, or *Calenberg*; but the Principality of *Grubenhagen*, and the Counties of *Blankenburg* and *Reinfein*, are compris'd under the Name, because subject to the Dukes of *Zell* and *Wolfenbittel*, who have both the Title of Dukes of *Brunswick*. This Country has *Hesse* on the S. *Lunenbourg* on the N. *Magdeburg* on the E. and the River *Weser* on the W.

The Dutchies of *Brunswick* and *Hanover* are populous and fruitful. Wheat and Rye grow sometimes to such a Height here, as to exceed the tallest Man on Horseback. A great Part of the *Hercynian* Forrest did formerly run through this Country, and is now divided into smaller Woods and Parks, which afford Timber, Fewel, store of Deer, Wild Swine, Hares, &c. and Fowl of all sorts. They have also rich Mines of Iron, Salt and Coal. Their chief Rivers are, the *Weser*, by which Goods are brought from *Bremen* to *Brunswick*, with the *Leina*, *Innerste*, *Ocker*, and some of less Note, all abounding with Fish. The Ruins of many old Castles and Forts are found on the Tops of Hills and ragged Mountains in this Country, which some take to have been built by the *Romans*, and others by the *Saxons*, during their Wars with *Charles the Great*. The Inhabitants are now, as of old, a stout and warlike People, and of a larger Size than most other *Germans*. They are us'd to cold Lodgings, and coarse Diet, which is usually dry'd Swine's-Flesh, and Sausages, whence

their Neighbours call them Bacon-Guts. Their Bread is black, and made of coarse Rye and Wheat. They have no Wine of their own, but abundance of good Beer. They are not so complaisant as many other *Germans*, but hospitable and sincere.

In the Description of *Lunenbourg*, we gave an Account of the Origine of the Princes of this Family, and how the Families came to be united. They are said to be the only Remains of the Family of the *Guelphs*, formerly Dukes of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*; of which some Historians give this Romantick Account, viz. That *Germtrudis*, Countess of *Altorf* in *Swabia*, having accus'd a poor Woman of Adultery, and caus'd her to be punish'd for having 12 Children at a Birth, was soon after deliver'd of 12 Sons her self: Her Husband, Count *Ißenberd*, being absent at the Time, she, to avoid the same Scandal, order'd the Midwife to carry out 11 of them, in order to kill them. The Count coming home at the same Time, and asking the Midwife, What she carried in her Apron? She answer'd him, *Whelpen*, i. e. Whelps; but he insisting upon it to see them, she confessed the Matter; upon which he enjoin'd her Secrecy, and put them out to Nurse. Six Years after, he invited most of his own and his Lady's Relations to a Feast, and in the midst of their Jollity brought out his 11 Sons, all cloath'd alike. Upon this the Countess own'd her Fault, and was pardon'd. The Count order'd them, in Remembrance of this, to be called *Guelphs* or Whelps. From the eldest of these descended *Henry Guelph* Count of *Altorf*, whom the Emperor *Conrad II.* made afterwards Duke of *Bavaria*.

The Reformation, according to *Luther's* Doctrine, was brought into this Country by *D. Julius*, who died in 1599. Since which Time, they have been zealous *Lutherans*; but those named *Calixti* about *Heimstad*, who are moderate, and have a better Opinion of the *Calvinists*, are much increas'd of late.

The chief Towns are,

1. *Brunswick*. In the Cathedral, among other Monuments, there is an old Parchment Writing, with a brief Account of the most considerable Persons buried here: The first of which is *Dankwarth* Duke of

Saxony, who is said first to have Wall'd this Town, and call'd it *Dankwarth's-Cross*; but that was properly the Name of the Castle, for the Town derives its Name from *Bruno*, his Brother. It was augmented by succeeding Princes, and became one of the most considerable *Hans-Towns*. The Emperor *Frederick II.* erected the Country into a Duchy; and *Ordo* of *Brunswick*, surnam'd the *Courageous*, granted Liberty to the City to chuse their own Magistrates, and to govern according to their own Laws. After which, they pretended to be independent, which occasioned it to be besieged by the Dukes in 1492, 1550, 1553, 1605, 1606, 1616, &c. and at last it was taken by Duke *Rudolphus Augustus* in 1671. After which, he frequently resided in the Town, and kept a strong Guard in it. It lies on the *Ocker*, in Long. 32. Lat. 52 $\frac{1}{2}$. 8 English Miles N. from *Wolfenbüttel*, 85 S. from *Hamburg*, 85 S. E. from *Bremen*, 55 N. W. from *Magdeburg*, 32 S. E. from *Hanover*, and 56 from *Lunenbourg*. The *Ocker* runs through it, and the Town is divided into 5 distinct Corporations, govern'd by several Magistrates of their own, and 5 different Courts of Judicature; but sometimes they unite on extraordinary Occasions. The City is rich and populous, and their Houses well built. The Town-House is very magnificent, and the Palace a stately ancient Building. It has many fine Churches; and glories in having been the first Town of Note which embrac'd the Doctrine of *Luther*. 'Tis well fortified, and surrounded with two Walls, and two Ditches.

Their chief Trade is Hides and Mum: The former they have from other Nations, and return them dress'd, being extraordinary good Tanners. Their Mum is of two Sorts; one thin and weak, which is their ordinary Drink; the other they call *Ship-Mum*, which is very thick, transported into other Nations, and scarce drinkable till purified at Sea. It is brewed with Barley and Hops, and a small Mixture of Wheat. There's a set Number of Brewers, that have the only Power to make it from the beginning of *October* to the end of *March*. They have also another sort of sweet Malt-Liquor in this Country, which they call *Brew-hane*. The City lies in Long. 30. 34. Lat. 52. 36.

2. *Wolfenbüttel*, the ancient Seat of the Dukes of *Brunswick*, famous for its strong Fortifications, being accounted one of the most impregnable Towns in *Germany*: It consists of two Parts; the first called *Arx-Guelphica*, which is the Duke's Palace, and had its Name from Duke *Ebert*, of the Family of the *Guelphs*: The second is called *Henrick-Stadt*, from Duke *Henry* the younger, who founded it. The new Church in this Part of the Town is reckon'd an admirable Piece of Architecture. In a Vault under the Quire, there lie buried 21 Dukes and Dutchessees of *Brunswick* in Coffins of Lead, with Inscriptions. In the Palace, which is the strongest and most stately that belongs to the Family, the Apartments have rich Furniture, and costly Paintings: The Library, founded by their late learned and brave *D. Augustus*, is admir'd by all Strangers, and reckon'd one of the best in *Europe*. In 1604, Mr. *Hanfsius*, the Library-Keeper, gave an Account, That it contain'd 124000 Volumes, which *Dr. Nicholas* questions, since by an Account of it publish'd in 1660, as is suppos'd by *Comringius*, it contain'd only 27666 Volumes, and 115504 Treatises by 56393 Authors. Among the Manuscripts, which are about 2000, those of the greatest Rarity are, 1. 438 Folio's of *French* Embassies, transcrib'd out of the *French* King's Library at the Charge of the Founder. 2. A Latin Psalter, in *Notis Ciceronianis*. 3. The Four Evangelists in *Syriac*, given by *A. Kircher* in 1666. 4. An ancient Copy of the *Edda Islandorum*, with the *Skjaldi* annex'd, much better than that publish'd by *Resenius* in 1665. Besides these, and the like Works of others, there are 41 Volumes writ by the Duke himself, whereof 12 are Musick-Books. He gave also a short Account of the most considerable Authors in his Library, in 4 large Volumes; and in a 5th, an Alphabetical Catalogue of the Authors. He wrote also a Commentary on *Trithemius's* Cryptography, with other Works upon the like Subject, under the covert Name of *Gustavus Selenus*; and writ another call'd *Schachspiel*, with a Learned Account of the Antiquity and Mystery of the Chess; which altogether shew how well he deserved the Character that a Learned Gentleman gave of him in the following

Distich, writ under his Picture in the Library:

*Tota tuos Europa Duces regesque recense:
Hic Senio Cunctos vicit & Ingenio.*

He died in 1666, aged 88. Duke *Rudolphus Augustus*, his Son, succeeded, who is a Mild, Learned, and Religious Prince.

3. *Helmstadt*, reckon'd the oldest Town in *Saxony* next to *Bardewick*. It was built by *Charles the Great* in 782, and had its Name from the abundance of Elms about it. *St. Ludger* was sent by the Emperor to convert this Country, and the Citizens pretend to shew the Church where he first preached. Their chief Ornament is the *Academia Julia*, or University, founded by *D. Julius* in 1566. Among other Privileges granted to it by the Emperor *Maximilian II.* one was, That he should have the Title and Dignity of a Count Palatine: Upon which his eldest Son, *Henry Julius*, then Bishop of *Halberstadt*, was made the first Rector, and founded the fair College called *Julium Novum*. These two Dukes furnished the University with a considerable Library. Among some Hundreds of other Manuscripts, they have two old Volumes in Vellum, containing the *Pentateuch* in Hebrew, in a very fair Character, for which some Jewish Rabbies, well vers'd in Antiquity, offer'd some Hundreds of Rix-Dollars. After the Death of Duke *Frederick Ulrich*, the last Prince of the ancient House of *Wolfenbüttel*, the Dukes of *Lunenburg* agreed, That each of the Dukes Regent should be Rector in their Turns Year about, and so it has continued since. No University in the Empire has bred more Learned Men in one Century than this, nor had more famous Professors; witness, *Casellius*, *Horstius*, *Forsterius*, *Reineccius*, *Meibomius*, *Stukius*, *Lampadius*, *Horneius*, *Calixti*, *Comringius*, *Cellarius*, &c. This Town lies 24 Miles E. of *Brunswick* and *Wolfenbüttel*, in Long. 31. 16. Lat. 52. 32.

4. *Hanover*, the Metropolis of the Duchy of *Calenberg*, whence the Duke's Palace was removed hither by *George Duke of Brunswick Calenberg*, upon the Death of the said *Frederick Ulrich*. The ancient Name of the Town was *Lawenwoda*, from a neigh-

bouring Castle, subject to the Counts of that Name. About *Henry the Lion's* Time, it was called *Hanover*, being at that Time a Ferry over the *Lina*, and the Word signifying *Have over*. The River divides it into two Parts: The City is handsome, and well built, and is the ordinary Residence of the Elector. Most of the Houses are of Timber, interlay'd with Brick or Plaster; but they have many that are likewise of Brick and Stone. The Streets are regular and broad, and well furnish'd with Lanterns every where, to give Light in the Winter. The Fortifications are in good Order, and Ravelins before the Gate well mounted with Cannon. The Elector's Palace or Castle is at one End of the City, near the Ramparts is a large Building of Free-Stone, with several square Courts, and fine Stair-Cases. The Furniture within is very rich, and his Court is one of the most splendid in the Empire. His Troop of Horse-Guards consists of 150 proper Men, with good Horses, and fine Equipage. He has two Regiments of Foot-Guards, of one Battalion each, cloath'd in Red lin'd with Blue; and in Time of Peace he usually kept 6000 Foot and 6000 Horse in Pay, before the Dutchy of *Zell* fell to him. The most remarkable Churches are, 1. That dedicated to *St. James*, in which there are two Crucifixes with the Pictures of the Apostles, and many Saints. 2. That dedicated to the *Holy Cross*, built of Stone, and much finer and neater than the other: It has a double Row of Galleries round from the Altar, and before the first the History of the Gospel, divided into 53 Parts, and painted by the best Masters. This City is enrich'd by the Elector's Court, and 4 Fairs Annually kept here, to which abundance of Foreigners, as well as others, resort; and they have also a considerable Trade from *Breuhane*, of which they export considerable Quantities. This Town lies about Long. 29. Lat. 52. 20.

5. *Hamel*, an ancient City on the Mouth of the *Hamel*, and the Banks of the *Weser*, on the Borders of the Dutchy of *Calenberg*. 'Tis the Key of the Country, and therefore the best fortified and garison'd of any in the Dutchy. The Records of this City give an Account of a strange Accident which befel them the 26th of *June*, 1284.

Being at that Time much pester'd with Rats, which they could by no means destroy, a Stranger at last undertook it, on Promise of Reward; and immediately taking a Tabrel and Pipe, the Rats follow'd his Musick to the River, where they were all drown'd; but being deny'd his Reward, he left the Town in a Rage, and threaten'd Revenge: Accordingly he return'd next Year, and by the same Musick entic'd most of the Children of the Town after him to the Mouth of a great Cave on the Top of a neighbouring Hill called *Koppelberg*, where he and they enter'd; but were never more heard of. In Remembrance of this sad Accident, the Citizens for many Years after dated all their publick Writings from the Day they lost their Children, as appears by many old Deeds and Records. They still call the Street through which the Children pass'd, *Tabret Street*; and at the Mouth of the Cave there is a Monument of Stone, with an Inscription in barbarous Latin Verse, giving an Account of this Tragical Story, by which the Citizens lost 130 Boys. In 1633, the *Swedes* gain'd a great Victory over the Imperialists near this Town; and that same Year *George Duke of Brunswick* retook it. It lies 35 Miles N. from *Gottin-gen*, and 28 S. from *Hanover*, in Long. 28. 10. Lat. 52.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Northeim*, on the *Lein*, a pretty small Town. 2. *Gottin-gen*, on the same River, suppos'd to be the *Munition* of the Ancients. The Imperialists besieg'd it in vain in 1641. 3. *Munden*, on the Confluence of the *Fulda* and *Weser*. It was almost entirely destroy'd by the Imperialists under Count *Tilly* in 1625. 4. *Lavenstein*, where there are Salt-Pits. 5. *Calenberg*, with a strong Castle, 12 Miles S. from *Hanover*.

The Principality of Grubbenhagen.

IT signifies a Wood or Forrest belonging to the Family of the *Grubes*, who built a Castle there, that gave Name to the Country. 'Tis most overgrown with Woods of Fir and Pine, formerly Part of the *Herz-niam* Forrest, now called *Hartz*, because of the great Quantity of Rosin and Pitch distill'd from the Trees. In this Country are most

most of the Mines of Silver, Copper, and Lead, belonging to the Elector. The chief of 'em are, *Rammelsberg*, *Wildman*, and *Zellerfeld*. *Rammelsberg* is a high Mountain near the City of *Goslar*. The Mines here were discover'd by one *Ramme*, a Hunter, whose Horse's Foot struck up a Piece of Ore in 972. Upon which the Emperor *Otto I.* got a Company of *Franks*, who understood Minerals, to refine the Metal, from whom the Town of *Frankenburg*, near this Place, had its Name. The Miners increasing, they found out that of *Wildman* in 1045; and that of *Zellerfeld*, which is the chief, in 1070. The Overseer of the Mines keeps his Court here, and pays the Workmen every *Saturday*. The chief Minerals in those Mines are Silver, Litharge, Lead, and two Sorts of Copper, one melted from the Ore, and the other made by Vitriol-Water, in which they steep great Plates of Iron in Troughs made on purpose. They find many other Minerals here, which yield much Money; but frequently kill the Workmen by their nauseous Smells. The chief of these are, 1. Grey Vitriol. 2. The Ink-Stone, of many Colours; from which two, bray'd and boil'd together, is made Green Vitriol. 3. Another Vitriol, which grows like Icecicles, and is us'd without any further cleansing. 4. Blue Vitriol, from Copper-Ore. 5. White Vitriol, from Lead-Ore. 6. Misy, of the Nature and Colour of Brimstone. 7. Brimstone, from a peculiar Sort of Ore, from whence the *Floris Sulphuris* drop like Icecicles. The chief Town is *Eymbeske*, so called from the Confluence of a great many Rivulets. 'Tis pretty well fortified, and the neighbouring Country abounds with Corn. 'Twas formerly an Imperial Town, but submitted to the Duke of *Brunswick*, to be freed from the Oppression of the Counts of *Welen*. It had formerly a considerable Trade in *Bruhan*. 2. *Grubbenhagen*; the Castle, formerly mentioned, on the *Line*. 3. *Lutterberg*, with the Title of a County towards the Head of that River. 4. *Andreasberg*, a little Town, with rich Iron Mines. 5. *Clausthal*. 6. *Altenau*. 7. *Osterod*; all inhabited by Miners, who live so much under Ground, that they do not much affect good Houses above it.

The County of Blankenburg and Reinstein.

ITS ancient Name was *Hartsow*, i. e. the *Hercynian* County; but the present Name is derived from the Forts of *Blankenburg* and *Reinstein*, and is much contracted in its Boundaries. It lies S. from *Brunswick*, S. W. from *Magdeburg*, W. from *Halberstadt*, N. from *Thuringia*, and E. from *Hildesheim*.

The Air is very sharp, especially in the Winter, being much exposed to the North Winds; so that the Snow lies on the Mountains till Midsummer. The Inhabitants are strong and vigorous, and many of them live to 100 or 110 Years of Age. The highest Mountain in this Country, and perhaps in *Germany*, is the *Bructerus* of the *Latins*, now called *Brockberg*; concerning which, the common People tell many fabulous Things.

They have little Corn; but the Vallies abound with Cattle, and their Forrests with Venisons of all sorts, and have abundance of Iron Mines.

The greatest Curiosity of Nature here, is a huge Cave betwixt *Blankenburg* and *Elbingeroode*, called *Bumanshole*, from *Buman*, the Discoverer. The Mouth is so narrow, that one must creep in, where soon after they come to a dark high Gallery, the End of which was never yet found; tho' some of the Miners have confidently asserted, they have gone as far as *Goslar* under Ground, which is 20 Miles. They say, That a young venturous Fellow going into it alone, his Light went out, and he wander'd 8 Days before he found his Way back. At his Return, his Hair was perfectly grey, and he told many frightful Stories of Spirits, some of whom condemn'd him to be hang'd, and put a Rope about his Neck; but let him go. Others pretend also to have met with Spirits there, but more civil ones. In this Cave are frequently found large Bones of strange Creatures, which the neighbouring Gentry keep for Rarities; and among others, they found the Skeleton of a Man of a monstrous Size.

Near the Monastery of *Michaelstein*, not far from *Blankenburg*, there are two high Rocks

Rocks fronting one another, which represent Monks in their proper Habits, as if they had been form'd by Art, and therefore are call'd the *Monks Craig*. The Country abounds with high and inaccessible Rocks, on the Tops of which there are old Forts and Castles; but the only habitable one almost remaining is that of *Blaikenburg*, where the Duke of *Wolfenbittel* resides when he hunts. Many of them have been hewn out of entire Rocks. The most remarkable of those ruinous Castles is that of *Hartzburg*, near the *Bruckberg*, which they say was built by the *Chauci*, a Branch of the *Saxons*, 300 Years before Christ. Here they had also a Temple for *Saturn*, represented like an old Man, standing bare-foot on the prickled Back of a Ruff, to denote the Security of his Adorers (says *Pomarius*) in their hardest Undertakings. In his Right Hand he had a Bucket of Water, strowed over with Flowers and Fruits, to signify that he would send them Rain and Plenty. In his Left he had a Wheel, to signify that his Worshipers ought to live in Unity. *Mechuilde*, Daughter to the Emperor *Henry the Fowler*, writ the History of this Idol in a rich Silk Coat of Needle-work, which the *Swedes* took out of the Cathedral of *Goslar* during the *German Civil Wars*, and carried to *Sweden*. This Idol and his Temple were destroyed by Command of *Charlemagne*, and the Name of the Place called *Hartzburg*. In the Time of *D. Julius*, a Salt Fountain was found at the bottom of this Hill: Upon which a small Town was built for the Workmen, called *Julius-Hall*, now grown rich and large by their Trade in Salt, Copper-Kettles, Pots, Wire, &c.

Goslar, an Imperial Town, is situate in this Country, on the River *Gose*, but independent on the Dutchy of *Brunswick*, and has the same Privilege with other Imperial Cities, besides an Exemption from Tolls in all the Markets of the Empire but three. In all Imperial Writs, 'tis called, *Nobile Membrum Imperii*, and is supposed to have been built by the Emperor *Henry I.* who had a Palace here. The Houses are cover'd with a glittering Slate, very ornamental, which in a clear Day dazzles one's Eyes. Most of the Inhabitants are Miners, and their Trade consists in digging and cleaning, and tempering Minerals. It lies 25

Miles S. of *Brunswick*, in Long 29 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 51. 47 $\frac{1}{2}$.

The Arms of the Elector of *Hanover* and the Duke of *Wolfenbittel*; Gules, two Leopards Or, Langued, for *Brunswick*. Gules, a Horse-Argent, for *Lower Saxony*. Or, a Lion-Azure, strow'd with Harts-Gules, for *Lunen-burg*. Azure, a Lion-Argent Crown'd, for *Eberstein*. Gules, a Lion-Or, with a Border Campone, Argent and Azure, for *Hamburg*. Azure, a Lion-Argent, for *Diep-Holtz*: Argent, an Eagle-Gules, for *Diep-Holtz*. A Scutcheon-Argent for the Electoral Dignity. Gules, a Lion-Argent, for *Lauterburg*: Or, 3 Fesses-Gules, for *Lauterburg*. Argent, a Hart-Sable, for *Clettenberg*. Quarter'd in the 1st and 4th Or, two Bears Feet in Pale, in the 2d cut in the upper Part Or and Gules, and in the lower Part Girones, Argent and Azure, for *Hoye* and *Bruckhausen*. Chequer, Argent and Gules, for *Hunstein*. Argent, a Branch of Deers-Horns Gules, for *Reinstein*. The like Sable for *Blankenberg*. The Helmets Or, a Peacock's Tail, with Branches of Deers-Horns on the Sides, for *Hunstein-Lauterburg* Or, two Bears-Fect, for *Hoye*. Or, a Beam-Argent, with a Horse a-crofs it Argent, for *Brunswick*. Or, two Horns-Argent, charg'd with 6 Red Ensigns, for *Bruckhausen*. Or, two Buffs-Horns, with two Branches of Deers-Horns on the Sides, for *Reinstein-Blankenstein*.

M A G D E B U R G.

Historians say, this is as ancient a City as most in *Germany*. Some think, it was founded by *Drusus*, and his Son *Germanicus*, in the Time of *Augustus*; but *Pyrrhamer* thinks it older, and to be *Protony's Vesovium*. They who ascribe its Original to *Drusus*, say, it was called *Magdeburg*; in *German*, the Maids Town, the same with the Greek *Parthenopolis*, because the Image of *Venus* was there worship'd; which, together with its Temple, was destroyed by Order of *Charlemagne*, who built *St. Stephen's Church* there, with its Treasure. An ancient Chronicle of *Brunswick* describes this Image thus: She was represented by a naked Woman, with bright shining Eyes, and long yellow Hair, in a gilt Chariot drawn by two white Swans and two white Tur-tles, a Garland of Mirtle on her Head, a flaming

flaming Torch on her Breast, a Globe in her Right Hand, and three Golden Apples in her Left. She was attended by three *Graces*, who cover'd one another's Faces with a Veil. The Dutchy of *Magdeburg* takes its Name from this City, and is 60 Miles long from E. to W. and in some Parts 30 from N. to S. It has *Brunswick* on the W. Part of *Brandenburg* and *Saxony* on the E. Part of *Mecklenburg* and *Brandenburg* on the N. *Anhalt* and *Halberstadt* on the S. and the *Elb* runs through the Country.

The Town lies about Long. 31. 25. Lat. 52 3/4. 70 English Miles W. from *Berlin*, 45 N.W. of *Wittenberg*, 6 E. from *Brunswick*, and 60 N. from *Leipzick*. It was first Wall'd about 940, and enlarged by *Edgisha*, Daughter to the English Saxon King *Edmund*, (Wife to the Emperor *Otho* I.) who some say founded it. This is confirmed as to the Cathedral Church at least, by Dr. *Brown's* Observations, who says, 'tis a very fair Structure, built after the English Model, which has the Effigies of that Empress in Stone, with a Representation of 18 Casks of Gold by her, which she gave to it. That Emperor prevail'd with the Pope to make *Magdeburg* an Archbishoprick, who should be subject to none in Spirituals but the See of *Rome*; so that he was called Primate of *Germany*; but *Cromwell* says, the three Spiritual Electors, and the Archbishop of *Salzburg*, refused to own him as such. In 1566, the Chapter embrac'd *Luther's* Reformation, and chose *Joachim Frederick*, Son to *John George* Elector of *Brandenburg*, their Administrator, on certain Conditions; for which, and refusing the *Interim*, it lost the Title of Archbishoprick. *Joachim* succeeding to the Electorate after his Father's Death, the Chapter chose his Brother *Christian William*, who continued till 1631, that Count *Tilly* and the Imperialists took the Town after a long Siege, put about 36000 Persons to the Sword, and carried *Christian William* to *Austria*, where he turn'd Papist. After this the Chapter elected *Augustus* II. Son to *John George* I. Elector of *Saxony*, to be Coadjutor: After whose Death, it was agreed by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, That the Archbishoprick of *Magdeburg* should be annexed for ever to the Electorate of *Brandenburg*, by the Name of a Dutchy; and *Augustus* dying in 1686, it was accordingly annex'd,

and adds to the Revenues of that Family 600000 Crowns per Annum. Dr. *Nicholson* gives this Account of the above-mention'd Siege in 1631: After a long and brave Defence, and rejecting of all Proposals, without Security for their Religion and Liberties, Count *Tilly* storm'd the Town the 10th of May, order'd his Men to spare neither Age nor Sex, to burn all the Churches and private Houses, and extirpate their Name. Accordingly they ripp'd up Women with Child, murder'd sucking Infants before their Mothers Eyes, ravish'd the Virgins in the open Street; to prevent which, some of them drown'd themselves, and others went into the Fire before *Tilly's* Face; 16 Churches and Chapels, many of them cover'd with Lead, and one with Copper, were burnt down; and all the Houses destroy'd, except a few Fishermen's Cottages, which the Imperialists did not think worth while. So that of 40000 Citizens, scarce 400 escaped, and those destitute of all Support. The brutish General us'd afterwards to boast of this Cruelty in his Cups, and call'd it the Marriage-Feast of *Magdeburg*. He spar'd the Cathedral, which is very magnificent: It has 49 Altars, and the high Altar in the Quire is of one Stone, of divers Colours, curiously wrought, 9 *Hamburg* Ells long, 4 broad, and one thick, and is valued at two Tun of Gold. Tho' the Elector of *Brandenburg* has been very liberal to this City, yet it never recover'd its ancient Glory. They have rebuilt one stately Church; and Dr. *Brown* says, that of the Jesuits is very fine. In the Cathedral of *St. Maurice*, he saw the Statue of the 5 wise Virgins smiling, and of the 5 foolish ones lamenting, both very well done. They pretend, among other Relicks, to show the Basen in which *Pilate* washed his Hands, and the Ladder on which the Cock crow'd after *St. Peter* denied his Master. In the Ruins of the Cloyster of the *Austrian* Fryars, there's *Luther's* Chamber, Bedstead and Table, with German Verses over the Door, expressing so much. Dr. *Brown* observes, That the first Tournaments in *Germany* were appointed here by the Emperor *Henry the Fowler* in 638, where none were admitted but the ancient Nobility. All Bastards, Usurpers, Traitors, Oppressors of Widows and Orphans, Hereticks, Murderers, Cowards,

ards, such as were of ignoble Extraction by one Side, or had offended Ladies in Word or Deed, were excluded. None but one of a Family were admitted at a time. Princes were allow'd four Squires, Counts and Barons three, Knights two, and Gentlemen one. Such as enter'd the Lifts, gave in their Names and Quality at the President's Lodging, in Presence of three Heralds, to whom he gave his Helmet and Sword, and, after Confession, enter'd the Lift. Their Horses were to be without Defect, their Furniture according to Rule, their Saddles without rising before or behind; and after Performance, the Judges gave Sentence, and the Conqueror had the Prize given him by some Lady, or the Prince who furnish'd it; but these Pastimes were abolish'd afterwards, because of the Emulation they occasion'd among the Nobility; for at the 23d Tournament held at *Darmstadt* in 1473, the Animosity arose so high, that 17 *Franconian* Gentlemen, and 9 *Hessians*, were kill'd on the Spot. This Town had formerly the supreme Jurisdiction in Spirituals and Temporals over all *Saxony*. The Emperor *Otho I.* made it an Imperial Town; but now 'tis subje& to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, who is Condi-rector, with the King of *Sweden*, of the Circle of *Lower Saxony*. Their Archbishop was formerly a Count *Palatine*, and determin'd all Causes; but now they have no other Court but what is kept by their Burgomasters and Magistrates. That Part of the Dutchy on the W. of the *Elb* abounds in Corn, but has no Wood; and that on the E. has Plenty of Wood, but no Corn. There are 28 other Towns in the Dutchy, but merit no particular Description. The City is still of considerable Extent, has a good Trade, and is well fortified.

The Principality of Halberstat,

HAS Part of the Dutchy of *Brunswick* and *Magdeburg* on the N. and *Anhalt* on the S. the Bishoprick of *Hildesheim* on the W. and the Electorate of *Saxony* on the E. is about 36 *English* Miles long from E. to W. and 25 broad. The Name comes from the principal Town, which some will have to be the *ἡλύαγορ* of *Ptolomy*; but

without Reason. Authors are not agreed as to the Reason of the Name; but the most probable is *Halbestat*, because the first Foundations seem'd to have been twice as large as the Town now is; so that the Word signifies half a City. The Country is fruitful in Corn, and exceeds its Neighbours in pleasant Forrests, and Plenty of Venison. Their largest Park is the *Hackel*, in the middle of the Country, which gives Name to the ancient Barony of *Hackelborn*. On the N. W. there is nothing but Fens and Marshes, through which there are Ways cast up to *Helmstat*, *Brunswick*, &c. It was made a Bishoprick by *Charlemagne* about 780. We have still some Commentaries on the Scripture by *Heymo*, their 3d Bishop, who died in 827. Their 15th Bishop, *Rainhard*, routed the Emperor *Henry V.* in the Woods of *Welfo*. Their 18th, *Ulrick*, was routed by *Henry the Lion*, Duke of *Brunswick*, who took and burnt the Town, with the Citizens and Clergy, who fled to the Cathedral. Their 29th was *Albert* Duke of *Brunswick*, who, as the History of *Brunswick* says, fought about 20 Battles, and was in most of them a Conqueror. Their 31st was *Albert*, a great Philosopher, who was routed by *Gerard the Eloquent*, Bishop of *Hildesheim*; in Remembrance of which, those of *Halberstat* have a Saying, *That Rhetorick was too hard for Logick*. Their 44th was *Henry Julius*, Son to *Julius* Duke of *Brunswick*, chosen when he was two Years old, on Condition that the Dean and Chapter should have the Government for 12 Years, and pay an Annual Maintenance to their Infant Bishop. In 1591, he establish'd *Luther's* Reformation here. He was succeeded by his Son *Henry Charles*, who died at 6 Years of Age: He by his Brother *Rudolph*, who died the next Year, and was succeeded by his Brother *Christian*, a great, but unfortunate Warrior, in the Civil Wars of *Germany*. Their 48th and last Bishop was *Leopold William* of *Austria*, who restor'd Popery; but the *Swedes* afterwards retaking the Town, did again settle *Lutheranism* there, and kept the City and Diocese till it was seculariz'd, and given to the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Treaty of *Westphalia*.

The Town is well built, the Streets straight and uniform, and many of the Buildings fair and stately. The most remarkable

markable Thing here is an Inn, called the *Commisr*, reckon'd the largest in *Europe*, and has the best and most Accommodation of the Sort for Strangers; so that in the Time of the Civil War, *Wallenstein*, the Emperor's General, kept his Court in it for some Months, and found Lodgings in it for all his Attendants and Guards. It lies about Long. $30\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 52. upon the little River *Hoteim*, about 30 Miles S. W. from *Magdeburg*, and 30 S. from *Brunswick*.

Other Towns of Note here are, 1. *Grünningen*, formerly the Residence of their Bishops, with an ancient Castle, built by *Brunno*, and rebuilt by *Henry Julius* above-mention'd: It has a curious gilt Chapel, with a fine large gilt Organ, built by the said *Henry Julius*, and a great Tun, in Imitation of that at *Heidelberg*, but much less; yet it contains 966 Hogheads of Wine. 2. *Oschersleben*, a small Town on the Borders of *Magdeburg*. 3. *Osterwick*, a strong little Town on the W. of this Country, from whence the Bishoprick was removed to *Halberstat* about 819. 4. *Quedlimburg*, lies also in this Principality; but since 'tis reckoned to belong to *Saxony*, we refer the Description to that Country.

The Bishoprick of Hildesheim.

WE return now towards the N. E. to this Bishoprick, which has *Halberstat* on the N. W. the Dutchy of *Lunenbourg* on the N. and is encompassed with the Dominions of *Brunswick*. The Bishoprick was founded by the Emperor *Lewis the Pious*, and, as some think, had its Name from his Mother *Hilda*, the Abbreviation of *Hildegard*. *Gunther*, a poor Priest of *Eltz*, was their first Bishop, about 822, when the Diocese was of small Extent; but afterwards had several Counties added, which were taken away by the Duke of *Brunswick* in 1553, during his War with their Bishop; and what he took, was confirmed to him by the Emperor *Charles V.* so that 'tis not now above 40 *English* Miles from E. to W. It was formerly in the Possession of the Duke of *Brunswick* for many Years; but by the Treaty of *Brunswick* in 1653, it was restor'd to the Elector of *Cologne*, as Administrator, who has a Suffragan that is the

immediate Governor of it, and is the only Popish Bishop in *Lower Saxony*; but the greatest Part of the Diocese are *Lutherans*. The Reformation was introduc'd in 1552 by the Citizens, in Opposition to the Canons, and made a great Progress. By the Treaty of *Brunswick*, *Lutheranism* was confin'd only to some Places; but by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, they were left at Liberty. The Buildings of the Town are old fashion'd, but neat. In their Cathedral, there are the Relicks of the old *Saxon* Idol *Irmensewel*, formerly mention'd. The Jesuits have a fine College here. Their chief Trade is in Corn; and being a *Hans-Town*, they are govern'd by their own Laws. The Imperialists took and sack'd it in 1632, and *George Duke of Brunswick* retook it next Year. The Bishop is a Prince of the Empire. The Town lies in Long. $28\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $52\frac{1}{2}$. 15 Miles S. E. from *Hanover*, and 25 S. W. from *Brunswick*.

They have had 56 Bishops, of which the present Elector of *Cologne* is the last. There is little remarkable said of them by *Dr. Nischolson*, only that *Gerard*, Baron of *Berge*, their 38th Bishop, is said to have cover'd the Tower of the Cathedral with Gold instead of Lead, as *Bunsingus* reports. *John*, their 46th, lost most of the Diocese in his War with the Duke of *Brunswick*; and *Valentin*, their 49th, recover'd most of it by Law in the Emperor's Court.

Other Places of Note here are, 1. *Peyna*, a Bishoprick, 15 Miles W. from *Brunswick*, the *Castrum Poynum* of the Latins, a little Town with a strong Castle, on a Hill, the chief Strength of the Bishoprick. In 1553, a Battle was fought here between *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* and *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, wherein the latter gain'd the Battle, and the former lost his Life. 2. *Marienburg*, a Fort near *Hildesheim*, built by Bishop *Henry III.* when he was press'd by the Dukes of *Brunswick*. 3. *Popenburg*. 4. *Dassel*. 5. *Bokenem*. 6. *Woldenburg*, with others; all of them chief Towns of Counties of the same Names, but of little Note otherwise, except 1. *Eltz*, on the Borders of the Dutchy of *Calenburg*, called *Aulica*, because *Charlemagne* sojourn'd here during his War with the *Saxons*, and founded a Bishoprick, which was afterwards transferred to *Hildesheim*. 2. *Sarstede*, on

the Conflux of the *Immerste* and the *Peysn*, famous for a Battle gain'd there by the Duke of *Brunswick-Lunenbourg* over the Imperialists, as *La Forest* informs us.

The Abbey of *Gonsersheim* lies on the Borders of this Bishoprick: It was founded in the 9th Century for Ladies of a Noble Family, and embrac'd the Reformation in the 16th Century.

The Dutchy of Sax-Lawenburg.

WE come further N. to this Dutchy, which lies on the N. and S. Banks of the *Elb*, between *Holstein* on the W. and N. *Mecklenburg* on the E. and *Lunenbourg* on the S. 'Tis divided by the *Elb*, and is subject to its own Duke, of the ancient Family of the Dukes of *Saxony*: It was comprehended within that Dutchy till about 1260, when *John*, the youngest Son of *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*, had it for his Share; and his Successors call'd themselves Dukes of *Angria* and *Westphalia*; but Duke *Erick V.* missing of his Pretensions to the Electorate after the Death of *Albert*, added the Name of *Sax*, to keep up his Pretensions. *Julius Francis*, their last Duke, dying without Heirs-Male in 1689, the Claims of the Elector of *Saxony*, the Prince of *Anhalt*, and the Duke of *Lunenbourg-Zell*, to it, are not yet determin'd; but the latter seiz'd it, and kept Possession; so that 'tis now in the House of *Hanover*.

The chief Town, *Lawenburg*, lies in Long. 29. 47. Lat. 53. 28. on the Conflux of the *Steckenitz* and *Elb*, with a strong Castle, built on a Hill, over against the Fortrefs of *Ertemberg* on the other Side the River. 'Tis a small Town, but populous, and has a good Trade. 'Tis said to have been built by *Henry the Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*, and from him called *Leoburgum*; but being much damaged by War, it was rebuilt and enlarged by *Bernard* of *Anhalt*. It lies about 35 Miles S. E. from *Hamburg*, and about 20 N. E. from *Lunenbourg*.

Other Places of Note here are, 1. *Mollen*, famous for the Quarrels it has occasion'd betwixt the Dukes of *Sax-Lawenburg* and the Town of *Lubeck*. 2. *Wittenberg*, a pretty little Town, with a Castle, on the *Elb*. 3. *Ratzburg*, on a Lake of that Name, 15

Miles N. of *Lawenburg*, and about 10 N. of *Lubeck*, made a Bishop's See under the Archbishop of *Bremen*, by *Henry the Lion*, and continued subject to its Bishop till by the Treaty of *Munster* it was seculariz'd, and given to the Duke of *Mecklenburg*; but the Castle and Town to the Duke of *Lawenburg*. The Duke of *Lunenbourg* seiz'd and fortified it in 1689, and the King of *Denmark* took it in 1693, and demolished the Fortifications before he restor'd it. 'Tis the chief Town of a small Principality of the same Name, and embrac'd *Lutheranism* in 1566. The Dukes of *Lawenburg* were anciently buried here. Part of the Dutchy of *Bremen* is subject to this Country, as has been formerly mention'd, with the Towns of *Frankenhause*, *Saxenhausen*, and some others on the *Elb*.

H O L S T E I N.

THIS Country was anciently Part of the *Cheronesus Cimbrica*, and now lies in that which was the S. Part of it, where it joins to *Germany*. It has the Dutchy of *Sleswick* and the River *Eyder* on the N. the German Ocean on the W. the Dutchy of *Bremen* on the S. W. the Territory of *Hamburg* and *Lawenburg* on the S. *Mecklenburg* on the S. E. and the *Baltick* on the E. 'Tis divided into *Holstein Proper*, *Wagria*, *Stormar*, and *Dithmarsh*.

Holstein Proper is again divided into the E. and W. Parts; the first belongs to the Duke, and the second to the King of *Denmark*.

Some think the Country derives its Name from the German Word *Holt*, which signifies a Forrest.

The *Atlas Historique* has a large Tree of the Family of *Holstein*, and its different Branches. Most Authors derive it from *Wittikind the Great*, from whom descended *Adolph I.* Earl of *Schawenburg*, to whom *Lotharius* the Emperor gave *Holstein Proper*, and *Stormar*, for his Service in the Wars, with the Title of Earl of *Holstein*, about 1133 according to the *Atlas*, but 1114 according to *Heylin*. He was succeeded by *Adolph II.* who having made a full Conquest of the Country, planted it with other Colonies of *Germans*, that in Time wore out the ancient Inhabitants, call'd the *eslavi*. His Successor *Adolph*

Adolph III. was expell'd his Dominions by *Cannus K. of Denmark*. *Adolph IV.* his Successor, recover'd the Country; after which he retir'd into a Monastery, and died in 1260. He was succeeded by *Gerard I.* who died in 1281. His Son, *Henry I.* shared *Holstein* with his Brother, and died in 1310. His Son *Gerard II.* surnam'd *The Great*, was slain in his Bed by a Dane in 1340. His Son *Henry II.* chas'd the King of Sweden out of his Country, and died in 1381. His Son *Gerard III.* join'd *Kiel* to his Dominions; and this Line fail'd in *Adolph* his Son, who died in 1459, having declared *Christian I.* of Denmark his Successor, being Son to *Theodorick the Fortunate*, by *Hedwige of Holstein Schawenburg*. *Christian I.* was chosen King of Sweden, and got *Holstein* erected into a Dutchy by the Emperor *Frederick III.* and died in 1481. He was succeeded by his Son *John*, who was also King of Norway and Sweden, and died in 1521. He was succeeded by *Christian II.* who was dethron'd, and died in Prison, as we mentioned in the History of Denmark. He was succeeded by *Frederick I.* Son to *Christian I.* who establish'd the *Augsburg* Confession in his Dominions in 1523. From him are descended the present Branch of *Holstein Gottorp*, and the Royal Family of Denmark. His second Son *Adolph* succeeded to the Dutchy of *Holstein*, was made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Elizabeth* in 1560, conquer'd *Ditmarsh*, and oblig'd the *Hamburgers* to do him Homage. He died in 1586, and was succeeded by his Son *Adolph*, who first succeeded his Brother *Philip* in the Archbishoprick of *Bremen*, and Bishoprick of *Lubeck*, which he afterwards resign'd, married the Daughter to *Frederick II.* of Denmark, and died in 1616. His Son *Frederick* succeeded, and was famous for his Learning, and Embassy, through *Moscow*, to the King of *Persia* in 1633, and died in 1659. He was succeeded by *Christian Albert*, who was expell'd his Dominions by the K. of Denmark in 1641, who demolish'd his strong Towns; but was oblig'd to restore him to his Dominions by the neighbouring Princes, but chiefly by the Emperor and King *William of Great-Britain's* Mediation in 1689, by a Treaty sign'd the 30th of June that Year, when a General Amnesty was agreed on to the Subjects on both Sides. The other Branches of this

Family are, that of *Sonderburg*, descended from *Christian III.* the present Prince of which is *Ernest Augustus*: From *John*, Son to *Christian III.* descended the Branch of *Holstein-Ploen*, the present Prince of which is *John Ernest Ferdinand*: From *Joachim Ernest* of this Branch, who died in 1671, descended the Branch of *Ploen and Nortburg*: From the same *John* descended the Branch of *Glucksburg*, of which *Philip Ernest* is Prince: From *John's* Son *Alexander* came the Branch of *Holstein-Beck*, whose present Prince is *Frederick William*: The Branch of *Wisenburg*, whose present Prince is *Frederick*: The Branch of *Frantzshagen*, whose present Prince is *Leopold Christian*; and the Branch of *Silesia*, whose present Prince is *Frederick Leopold*. The extinguish'd Branches we do not mention.

This Country in general is fruitful, and well seated for Trade: It abounds with Corn and Orchards, Black Cattle and Hogs, which are very numerous in their Woods. Its Extent from E. to W. is about 100 Miles, and from N. to S. about 50. The Inhabitants are of a strong Constitution, Courageous, and Just; so that *Holstein Glauke*, or the *Faithful Holsteiner*, is become a Proverb in these Parts.

The Towns in *Holstein Proper* are, 1. *Kiel*, a Town of good Trade on the *Baltick*, about Long. 29. Lat. 54. 17. It derives its Name from a Neck of Land on which 'tis situated, about 45 Miles N. of *Hamburg*, and 40 N. W. from *Lubeck*. It has a good Harbour, well frequented, which, with the Town, is defended by a Castle on a neighbouring Hill. 'Tis populous and wealthy, is the Place where the States meet, and adorn'd with a stately Palace, and a *Franciscan* Monastery, turn'd to an Hospital since the Reformation. An University was establish'd here in 1669, which has had many Learned Professors, and particularly *Marevisus*. 'Tis divided into the New and Old Town: The New is large, and the Streets planted with Rows of Trees: The Old Town is a *Peninsula*, join'd to the Continent on the N. where 'tis fortified by deep Ditches, and has fine Walks of Trees on the Haven. Its Trade was more considerable in the Time of Duke *Frederick*, who sent the Embassy above-mention'd into *Persia*, in order to settle a Trade with that Country. 2. *Rensburg*, the chief Town of

West Holstein, a small Place, but well built, and accounted the greatest Strength of the Country. It has good Ramparts, and is defended by Morasses on the Side of *Flensburg*. It has also a neat Castle, built by *Gerard II.* Earl of *Holstein*. It lies 20 Miles W. from *Kiel*. 3. *Wilster*, a neat Town, on a River of that Name, about 27 Miles S. W. from *Rensburg*. 4. *Itzehoe*, on the *Stor*, about 25 Miles S. W. from *Rensburg*. It is a small Town, at the Foot of a Mountain, and has some Trade by the River: 'Tis defended by an old Castle. 5. *New Munster*, about 20 Miles further E. near the Head of the *Stor*.

N. from *Segeberg*, and 25 N. W. from *Edbeck*. The valiant Prince who bears that Title has signaliz'd himself in the Confederate Armies. 4. *Oldenburg*, an ancient Town in a *Peninsula* upon the *Baltick*, about 20 Miles N. E. from *Ploen*. It gives Name to a Bailiwick, and was formerly the Metropolis of the *Wagrii* and *Venedi*. *Otho the Great*; or, as some say, *Charlemagne*, founded a Bishoprick here in 788, which was transported to *Lubeck* in 1162: It had formerly a great Trade, which is decay'd since *Margaret of Denmark* stopt up the Port. It likewise suffer'd much by Fire; so that 'tis now inconsiderable.

The Province of Wagria or Wagerland,

HAS *Holstein* on the W. and is almost encompassed by the *Baltick*, and the two Rivers *Trave* on the S. and *Swentin* on the W. It extends about 50 Miles from N. to S. and 30 from E. to W. The greatest Part of this Country belongs to the Duke of *Holstein*. It had its Name from the *Wagrii*, said to be *Sclavonians*, who conquer'd it. Within this Province stands *Lubeck*, which we have already describ'd.

The other Places of Note here are, 1. *Oldeslo*, on the *Trave*, formerly the Capital of the Country. It is a fair little Town, about 17 Miles W. from *Lubeck*, and 7 S. from *Segeberg*. *John* Earl of *Wagria* bought it for 10000 Marks in 1338, and it was long a flourishing Town; but it suffered much by the Wars betwixt the Princes of *Pomerania* and *Sweden*; so that 'tis now ruinous, and inhabited mostly by Peasants. 2. *Segeberg*, on the *Trave*, about 20 Miles N. W. from *Lubeck*, and 30 E. from *Gluckstat*. It took its Name from the Castle, built on a neighbouring Hill by the Emperor *Lotharius*, about 1134, to check the *Sclavonians*. 3. *Ploen*, upon the Front of a Hill, and the Banks of the Lake of *Ploen*, encompassed by a Wood. This is a Place of Antiquity, and gives Title of Prince to that Branch of the Family of *Holstein*. The Lake, and a neighbouring Marsh, make it very strong, and 'tis likewise defended by a good Castle, built by *Joachim Ernest* of *Holstein*. It lies about 10 Miles

The Province of Ditmarsh,

HAS *Holstein* Proper on the E. the *German* Ocean on the W. *Denmark* on the N. and the *Elb* on the S. Some write it *Teutish-marsh*, from the ancient *Tentones*, Part of whom inhabited here, whose Valour they retain'd so much, that they would not submit to the Family of *Holstein*, till they succeeded to the Crown of *Denmark*, and then became too powerful for them. 'Tis divided into N. and S. the former belongs to the King of *Denmark*, and the latter to the Duke of *Holstein*, who shar'd it betwixt them, after having totally subdued it in 1559. This Country is fruitful, well water'd, and populous.

The chief Places are, 1. *Meldorp*, the chief Town of the Province, and a Place of good Trade. It lies on the *German* Ocean, about 20 Miles N. W. from *Gluckstat*. The Courts of Justice sit here. Their Church is large and ancient, being built when Christianity was first establish'd here. They have a neat Altar, adorn'd with Paintings, and a Crucifix. 2. *Heyde*, a large, but poor City, on the Brink of a great barren Sand, which over-spreads the middle of the Country. 3. *Lunden*, near the Mouth of the *Eyder*, about 15 Miles N. of *Meldorp*, in the most Northerly Part of the Province. 'Tis a large Town, and belongs to the Duke of *Holstein*. 'Tis famous for Beer, which is exported to other Places. 4. *Brunsbittel*, a Sea-Town on the *Elb*, 12 Miles S. from *Meldorp*. 5. *Westingburn*, upon the Coast, mid-way betwixt *Meldorp* and *Lunden*.

Stor-

Stormar, or Stormarsh.

THis Province is full of Morasses, along the Banks of the *Stor*. It has *Holstein* Proper on the N. and *Hamburg* and *Lunenburg* on the S. The Soil is rich, resembles *Holland* in its manner of Improvement, and Banks and Dikes to keep out the Sea, which sometimes however overflows the low Grounds. The People have a good Trade by the Neighbourhood of *Hamburg* and the *Elb*. Most of this Province, except *Tritow*, and some small Places on the E. is subject to the King of *Denmark*.

Places of Note here are, 1. *Altena*, a small City, remarkable for the Treaty betwixt the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holstein-Gottorp*. It lies on the *Elb*, within a Mile or two of *Hamburg*; the *Calvinists* of which City have their Worship here. 2. *Gluckstadt*, a little City on the *Elb*, about 27 Miles below *Hamburg*, on that same Side of the River. It is well fortified, and has fine Walks of Trees on the Ramparts. The King of *Denmark* has 2000 Foot in Garrison. It was fortified by *Christian IV.* of *Denmark* about 1620, and was made so strong, that it held out a Siege of two Years against the Emperor *Ferdinand II.* and *Christian V.* has since made it one of the most considerable Towns in *Germany*, by the great Privileges allow'd the Inhabitants. It can't be taken without a Fleet by Sea, which made the Imperialists miscarry before it. There are several Canals in the Town, one of which divides it into two Parts: 'Tis crossed by another at the End of the Market-place, which is very magnificent: At one Corner of it stands the great Church, where the *German Calvinists* and *Papists* are each of them allow'd a Chapel. The Harbour is large and deep, and at the End of the Canal, which runs into it from the Town, there is a Tower built on Piles of Wood, round which there are Platforms with Batteries of Cannon, which command the *Elb*. 3. *Cremper*, on a small River of the same Name, falls into the *Stor* about 5 or 6 Miles N. from *Gluckstadt*. 'Tis a strong Place, and reckon'd one of the Keys of *Denmark*. The Fortifications were begun by *Christian IV.* and finished in 1628. It held out a

Siege of 13 Months against Count *Wallenstein*, and the Imperial Army; but at last submitted upon honourable Terms. 4. *Pinnenberg*, about 10 Miles N. W. from *Hamburg*, noted only for giving Name to that County, which fell to the Crown of *Denmark* by the Death of *Otto*, last Earl of *Schaumburg* and *Pinnenberg*, in 1640. 5. *Brædenberg*, one of the fairest little Towns in *Denmark*, the ancient Seat of the Noble Family of *Rentzow*. It made a stout Opposition against Count *Wallenstein*, who took it at last, and put all the Garrison to the Sword. 6. *Tritow*, a large Town, with a Bailiwick of the same Name, E. from *Hamburg*, and belongs to the Duke of *Holstein*.

All the Difference betwixt the Royal Arms of *Denmark*, and the Ducal of *Holstein*, is, That the Arms of *Denmark*, *Gothland*, *Slavia*, and *Sweden*, are not in the Ducal Arms; which, instead of a Royal Crown, have over them the three Helmets of *Norway*, *Silesia*, and *Holstein*. We gave an Account of the Arms of *Denmark* in the Description of that Country; so that 'tis needless to repeat any thing here but the Difference.

UPPER SAXONY.

THis Country has on the N. the Principalities of *Magdeburg* and *Halberstat*, and the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*; on the S. *Franconia* and *Bohemia*; on the E. *Silesia*; and on the W. *Hesse* and *Brunswick*; and is in Length, according to *Mr. Moll*, 220 Miles; and in Breadth, from N. to S. where broadest, 130: But if we include the Electorate of *Brandenburg* and the Duchy of *Pomerania*, belonging to the King of *Prussia*, as the *Matricula* does, 'tis of a much larger Extent, and reaches from Lat. 50. 15. to Lat. 55. the most N. Part of *Pomerania*: So that from the Frontiers of *Bohemia* to the *Baltick*, 'tis above 190 Miles in Breadth; and from the Borders of *Franconia* on the S. W. to the further Part of *Pomerania* on the N. E. it extends about 385 Miles. *Dr. Nicholson* takes Notice, That the Limits of the Saxons are differently describ'd by Historians and Geographers, because the ancient Saxons being a Warlike People, other Germans were ambitious to call themselves

selves by their Name: Thus *Albinus* says, the ancient Saxons had the *Elb* on the E. the *Ems* on the W. *Bohemia* and *Franconia* on the S. and *Denmark* on the N. But *Ptolemy* confines them within narrower Bounds, and the Dr. says, *Henry the Lion's* Territories reach'd from the *Elb* to the *Rhine*, and from the *Baltick* to the utmost Bounds of the *Hercynian* Forrest; and by the Name of *Upper Saxony*, he understands only that small Province, which gives the Elector Title of Duke, and alone only retain'd the Name of Saxony, when *Henry the Lion's* Territories were taken from him by *Frederick Barbarossa*, and *Bernard* Prince of *Anhalt* made Duke and Elector of Saxony in his stead. For the several Principalities and other Governments contain'd in this Circle, we refer to the *Matricula*.

The Dutchy of SAXONY,

HAS *Nether Lusatia*, and Part of the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, on the E. the County of *Manfeld*, and Landgraviate of *Thuringia*, on the W. the Principality of *Anhalt* on the N. and the Marquisate of *Misnia* on the S. The Country is pretty fruitful in Corn, but short of its neighbouring Provinces: Their Hills have Mines of Silver, and other Metals; but scarce Wood enough to refine them. The Air is cold, but wholesome. Their chief Corn is Wheat, and they have some Vines. The Inhabitants are strict Observers, says Dr. *Nicholson*, of the ancient Municipal Laws of their Pagan Ancestors, which, some say, *Charles the Great* suffer'd them to retain, because they could not be better'd; but others, that he did it to please them; and they are still excepted when General Laws are made by the Diet: The best of them are collected into two Bodies; 1. Called *Sachsen-Spiegel*, or, *Speculum Saxonicum*. 2. *Sachsen-Weichbild*, or, *Statuta Civitatum Saxonicarum*. 'Tis properly an Abridgment of the former. The first contains three Books; the first of which consists of 71 Articles, the 2d of 72, and the 3d of 91; with a Glossary, explaining the antiquated Terms. There have been two Editions of it, the first by *Burchard* Lord of *Mangelfeld*, and the last printed by *Zobelius* at *Leipsick* in 1569. The *Weichbild*

has had several Editions, and contains 137 of the choicest Articles of the former, with Observations upon them.

The chief Places are, 1. *Wittenberg*, on the *Elb*, the Capital of the Dutchy. Some derive its Name from *Wittikind*; and others say, that it only signifies a white Rock, of which there are many in the Neighbourhood; from whence the Students fancying it also to be built upon one, call it *Leucoris*. It lies on the *Elb*, near Long. 32. Lat. 52. about 37 Miles N. E. from *Leipsick*, 37 S. from *Brandenburg*, and 70 E. from *Halberstadt*. 'Tis a fair large City, of an oblong Square, with one great Street in the middle. The Elector *Frederick* built a strong Castle to defend it in the beginning of the 16th Century, and founded the University in 1502, which was made famous by *Lutber's* preaching there, and is now, says *La Foreß*, one of the most flourishing *Lutheran* Universities, and has large Privileges. The Town is well Peopled, and fortified by Marshes on the N. and a Canal to the *Elb*. It has a deep Ditch, a good Rampart, and 5 large Bastions on the Side where 'tis most exposed. It was the Elector's Seat till the Government came into the Family of *Misnia*; since which, it has been at *Dresden*. Dr. *Nicholson* says, it has bred few great Scholars of late, tho' *Abraham Calovius* has writ much to little Purpose; and another Professor, called *Teuchmannus*, has writ much against the *Calvinists*; but so weakly, as will rather confirm than confute them. One gave this waggish Account of the Town, which the Dr. thinks may be pertinent enough.

Leucorin intranti tibi qua sunt obuia quaris?
Sus, Miles, Meretrix, aut Studiosus eris.

At Wittenberg a Man is sure to meet,
Hogs, Soldiers, Whores, or Scholars, in each Street.

2. *Halle*, tho' depending on the Dutchy of *Magdeburg*, and subject to the King of *Prussia*, is within the Confines of this Dutchy. It lies on the Banks of the *Sala*, near Long. 31. Lat. 51. 35. about 40 Miles S. W. from *Wittenberg*, and about 35 S. of *Magdeburg*. Some derive the Name from the Greek Word *Αλς*; or *Αλς*, Salt, because of the

the many Salt-Pits in this Place; but give no Reason why a German Town should have a Greek Name. These Pits were first discovered by the *Hermunduri*, a Branch of the *Sveui*, before our Saviour's Birth, who valued them as much as Mines of Gold. Their Value may be guess'd at by the Weekly Toll of 5 or 600 Crowns, which they pay to the Administrator of *Magdeburg*. The Town is neatly built, on the Side of a pleasant Hill; the Inhabitants are genteel, and are reckon'd to speak the best German. 'Tis called *Halla Saxonum*, to distinguish it from others of that Name elsewhere. *La Forest* places it in the Circle of *Leipsick*, tho' now 'tis in *Misnia*. He says, it was built by the Emperor *Otho II.* in 981, and made an Imperial Town, as it continued to be till 1308, that it was united to *Misnia*, and gave Title of *Sax-Halle* to a Branch of the Family of *Saxony*. It has also a noted University, and has been famous of late for an Hospital built there by *Dr. Franks*, without any certain Fund either for building or supporting it; but has been hitherto maintain'd, and made very considerable both for the Buildings, and Number of Scholars, Mechanicks, and Poor, by a wonderful Chain of Providential Charities, as we have an Account in a Book lately translated and printed here, called *Pietas Hallensis*.

3. *Quedlinburg*, a small City, about 8 Miles S. E. of *Halberstadt*, and about 37 N. W. of *Halle*. It had formerly a Castle on the Top of a neighbouring Hill, but now demolished. It was formerly a Hans-Town; but the Citizens rebelling against their Abbess in 1475, they were made subject to the Elector of *Saxony*. Since the Reformation, the Abbess has been a *Lutheran*, and, as *Dr. Nicholson* says, either a Princess or Countess of the Family of *Saxony*, and is supreme of the City and Territory. *La Forest* says, it lies on the River *Bode*; That the Abbey was founded in the 10th Century by the Emperor *Henry the Fowler*, and his Daughter *Maud* was the first Abbess. The Countess of *Stolberg* brought in *Lutheranism* in 1539. It depends immediately on the Empire, and the Abbess has her Deputy in the Diet among the Prelates of the *Rhine*. It receives no Nuns but of Noble Extract, for 8 Descents. 'Tis under the Protection of the Elector of *Saxony*.

4. *Sweinitz*, a little Town on the *Elster*, which falls into the *Elb* a little above *Wittenberg*.

5. *Hertzberg*, a little Town, very ancient, on the same River.

6. *Torgaw*, on the *Elb*, about 17 Miles above *Wittenberg*, a large fortified Town, which has a great Trade in Beer. It was taken by the Swedes in 1637. It was built by the Elector *John Frederick* in 1535, and beautified with a stately Castle.

7. *Bitterfeld*, on the *Mulda*, which was taken by the Swedes in 1637.

8. *Wiesenburg*, on the Confines of *Anhalt*, then also taken by the Swedes.

The Principality of ANHALT.

THE greatest Part of this Country lies betwixt the *Sala* and the *Elb*, has *Magdeburg* on the N. *Thuringia* on the S. *Quedlinburg* on the W. and the Electorate of *Saxony* on the E. It lies from E. to W. about 90 Miles; but is of an unequal Breadth.

Dr. Nicholson says, some German Antiquaries derive the Pedigree of those Princes from *Aschenaz*, *Noah's* Grandson, which Fable was founded upon their Title of *Principes Ascanii*, but they have a Genealogical Table in their Palace at *Pleskaw*, which affirms, that their Ancestors were Kings, Dukes, and Generals of the Saxons, long before the coming of our Saviour. The *Atlas Historique*, with whom *La Forest* agrees, carries their Origine no higher than *Berentobaldus*, who made War on the *Thuringians* in the 6th Century. *Dr. Nicholson* says, he was a King, and that this War began in 524; when he took some Towns, and adjoining Territories. He was succeeded by *Berenger*, who, the *Atlas* says, was made a Count by *Charlemagne*. The Doctor observes further, That credible Historians say, *Berentobald II.* and *III.* were above 1000 Years ago Generals of the Saxons against *Clovis II.* and *Dagobert*, Kings of *France*; and that *Clovis III.* married *Batildis*, a Princess of this Family; but the *Atlas* mentions only one *Berentobald*. *Otho the Great* succeeded *Berenger*; and *Albert*, call'd the Bear, his Successor, was made Marquis of *Southweld* by the Emperor *Henry V.* and others say, he was made Margrave of

of Brandenburg in 1152 by the Emperor Conrad III. His Son Bernard was made Elector of Saxony instead of Henry the Lion, and likewise possessed Anhalt. He and his Brother Otto, says Dr. Nicholson, divided the Ascanian Family into two Branches, from whence came the great Families of Saxony and Brandenburg. Henry the Young succeeded his Father Bernard; and notwithstanding the great Promotion of his Father and Uncle, says the Doctor, was the first created Prince of Anhalt by Frederick II. But the Atlas says, it was his Son and Successor Henry the Old. He was succeeded by Henry the Fat: He by Sigfried. The next Successors were, Albert the Old, Albert the Young, John, Albert the Lame, Adolphus Sigismund, George the Old, Waldemar John, a very brave Prince, who died in 1551; Joachim Ernest, who died in 1586; John George, the first of Dessau, who died in 1628; John Casimir, who died in 1660; John George II. who married Henrietta Catharine of Orange, and was Statholder of the Marquissate of Brandenburg for the Elector. He died in 1693. The present Prince Leopold of Dessau was born in 1676, and is Lieutenant-General to the King of Prussia. From Joachim Ernest, came the Branch of Anhalt-Zerbst, whose present Prince is Charles William. From John II. of this Branch, came that of Darnburg, whose present Prince is John Lewis. From the same Joachim, proceeded the Branch of Cothen, which was extinguished in 1665; and the Branch of Plotskaw, which came from the same Joachim, succeeded to their Dominions. The present Prince is Augustus Lebrecht. From Joachim, also proceeded the Branch of Anhalt-Bernburg, whose present Prince is Victor Amedeus, who has a numerous Issue. The Branch of Hatzgerode came from Christian I. of Bernburg. The present Prince is William. Dr. Nicholson observes, That Joachim, from whom all these Branches are come, was the only Person left of the Family; but when he died in 1566, he left 5 Sons, and 11 Daughters. The Sons divided the Principality into 4 equal Shares, because the eldest, Augustus, resolv'd not to marry, and to be content with a Pension during Life; but marrying afterwards, they allow'd him the 5th of the Dominions; whereupon John George had Dessau, Christian resided at Bernburg, Augustus at Pleskaw, Rho-

dolph at Zerbst, and Lewis at Cothen. Having all Children, and being of equal Authority, they agreed unanimously to submit to the eldest of the Family, who has the supreme Government, and the only Power to assemble the rest upon Matters of Consequence. They have but one Vote in the Diet, and generally depute one of their own Number to represent them.

Prince Lewis of Cothen founded that called the *Frustrifying Society*, on this Occasion: Having travelled over Europe, and observing the Advantages which the Nobility had elsewhere by excellent Books in their own Language, he persuaded his Countrymen to translate the best Latin and Greek Authors into a good German Style. In pursuance of which, he founded the Society, and was their first President. In a little Time, above 20 Princes and 600 Noblemen enter'd into the Society, which has very much advanced Learning in Germany, and improved their own Language.

The Titles of the Princes of Anhalt Dessau are, Prince of Anhalt, Count of Ascania, Lord of Zerbst, Bernburg, &c. Those of Zerbst add Jevern, Kniphausen, &c. Their Dominions are thus: The Branch of Dessau, has the Principality of Dessau: That of Bernburg, the Lordships of Bernburg and Ballensted, Old-Anhalt, and the Provostship of Geroderode: The Branch of Hatzgerode, the Bailiwick of that Name: The Branch of Cothen, Cothen and its District, Plotskaw, the upper County of Warrendorf, Nieubourg, Wulsen, and Gutsen. The Branch of Zerbst, Zerbst and its District, the Bailiwicks of Lindau, Roswick, Rosla, the Lordships of Jevern, Kniphausen, and Walternenbourg.

Their Arms are, *Argent*, a *Demi-Eagle*, *Gules*, Part of Saxony for Anhalt. *Argent*, a *Bear-Sable* Collar'd and Crown'd *Or*, *Passant*, on a Wall *Gules*, in which there's a Gate *Or*, for Berengen. *Or*, 5 *Fesses-Sable*, for Ballensted. *Checkee*, *Argent* and *Sable*, for Ascania. *Quarter'd Or* and *Gules* for Waldirsee. *Azure*, two Bars-*Or*, for Wansdorf. *Azure*, an *Eagle-Argent*, for Mullingen. *Argent*, a *Bear-Sable*, Crown'd *Or*, *Passant*, on a Wall *Gules*, in which there is a *Port-Or*, for Bernburg. *Gules* plain for the Regalia. The Helmets are those of Anhalt, Berengen, and Ascania. Those of Zerbst add 3 *Quarters* and a *Helmet* as follows; *Azure*, a *Lion-Or*, for Jevern.

Orn. Or, a Lion-Sable, with a fork'd Tail, Azure, a Dog's-Head Argent, supported with an Angle of two Wings, turn'd up-side down, for *Walter-Newburg*. The Helmet of *Jevern*.

The chief Places of this Principality are,

1. *Zerbst*, on a small River about a Mile from the E. Side of the *Elb*, about 20 Miles S. W. from *Magdeburg*, and 40 N. of *Leipfick*. *Dressius* thinks, 'tis a Town of great Antiquity, and that it had its Name from the *Servetii*; but others say, it signified a Fort in the old *Wendish* Dialect. 'Tis remarkable for little but being the Residence of the Prince, and brewing strong Beer, which is sent about into the neighbouring Countries.

2. *Bernburg*, a fortified Town, on the Banks of the *Sala*, about 8 Miles from the *Elb*. The Prince has another Palace here, separated from the Town by the River. It was taken by the Elector of *Saxony's* Troops in 1636, when they put all the Garison and Inhabitants to the Sword, except a few that belong'd to the Prince's Court.

3. *Dessau*, a well fortified Town on the *Elb*, about 30 Miles N. W. from *Magdeburg*, and 15 W. from *Wittenberg*. It lies in a pleasant and fruitful Country, and had its Name, as some think, from the *Jews*, who in their Dialect call'd it *Desse*, from the Fatness of the Soil. The Prince has a Palace here, which, by an Inscription over the Gate, appears to have been built by *Albert* and *Waldemar*, two Princes of this Family, in 1341. In one of the Chapels, there is the Tomb of one *Rehebeck*, an old Miller, who having followed *Waldemar* Marquis of *Brandenburg* in the Wars, counterfeited the said Marquis so artificially after he was slain, that a great many believ'd him to be that Prince, and respected him accordingly. He died about 1350.

4. *Ascherleben*, or *Ascania*, from whence the Princes of *Anhalt* had that Title. 'Tis an ancient Town, on the Borders of the Bishoprick of *Halberstat*, and was seiz'd on by the Canons of that Church after the Death of Prince *Orto's* Widow in 1315; since which, the Princes of *Anhalt* could never recover it, and are not like to do it now, since that Bishoprick is fallen to the House of *Prussia*.

5. *Worlitz*, or *Coswick*, a little Town of good Trade on the *Elb*.

6. *Anhalt*, on the S. of *Halberstat*, remarkable only for an ancient Castle, which gives Name to the Principality.

7. *Koten*, within a League of *Mulsa*, a small Town with a Castle. It's the Chief of a County of the same Name.

8. *Gernrode*, an Abbey founded in 965 by *D. Geron*: It depends on the Empire, and has a Deputy in the Diet among the Prelates of *Westphalia*. The Reformation was introduc'd here in 1531. The Princes of *Anhalt* have the Advouson of it.

The Landgraviate of Thuringia.

THIS Country took its Name from the *Thuringi*, a Branch of the *Vandals*, mentioned by *Tacitus*. *Muralius* is of Opinion, from the Names of several Towns here, as *Gosha*, *Gosleben*, *Altengosben*, &c. That they were a Branch of the *Goths*, and not of the *Vandals*, as *Cluverius* would have them. But *Dr. Nicholson* justly observes, That this Argument will prove no more than that the *Goths* mix'd with them.

This Province has the River *Sala* on the E. the *Werra* on the W. the *Hercynian* Forest on the N. and the Woods of *Franconia* on the S. The Country abounds with Corn, and large Vineyards in some Places, which afford better Wine than is to be had in other Places of *Saxony*, and the Marquissate of *Brandenburg*; and in their Fields and Gardens, they have abundance of Wild Saffron, and Woad us'd by Dyers for their best Blues and Sky-Colours. In other Places, as about *Sangerhausen*, they have Mines of Copper and Silver; and about *Frankenhausen*, rich Salt-Pits. Their chief Rivers are, the *Sala*, *Werra*, *Unstrut*, *Hiera*, *Ilm*, the *Laina*, *Schwertze*, *Wipper*, *Helbe*, *Rabna*, *Helme*, *Lessa*, and *Gissel*. They have also many great Lakes, the most considerable of which are, *Wissensee*, and *Swansee*.

The Boors here are very rough and clownish, and the only People in *Germany* noted to be uncivil to Strangers. Upon their first settling here, they chose themselves a King, under which Government they continued till they were over-run by the *Franks* about 1122. When *Charlemagne* abolish'd Paganism.

nism here, they were for most part govern'd by the Archbishop of *Mentz*, or his Deputies, and were divided into many Counties and Lordships, viz. *Schartzburg*, *Kirchberg*, *Kefernburg*, *Schoneberg*, *Gleichen*, *Sangerhausen*, *Frankenstein*, *Salza*, *Heldrungen*, *Dreßert*, *Apolda*, *Vargila*, &c. as Dr. *Nicholson* informs us. *Conrad II.* made *Ludowick* Count of *Schoneberg* Count of *Thuringia*; and *Lotharius II.* made *Ludowick's* Grandson Landgrave. It continued in this Line till the Death of Landgrave *Herman* in 1226, when *Henry Duke of Brabant* got *Hessia*; and *Thuringia* fell to *Henry Marquis of Misnia*: Since which, it has been under the House of *Saxony*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Erfurt*, the Metropolis, one of the largest Cities in *Germany*. Dr. *Nicholson* thinks, it took its Name from a Ford or Ferry over the *Hiera*, on which it stands. There are 3 Baronies and 72 fair Villages subject to it, and 'tis about as large and beautiful as *Cologne*. 'Tis not certain when it was first built; but it was reckon'd an ancient City in the Days of *Boniface* Archbishop of *Mentz*, when Pope *Zachary*, as appears by his Letter to that Archbishop, made it a Bishoprick. It lies in a pleasant and fruitful Plain, about 60 Miles S. W. from *Leipsick*, and 60 S. from *Halberstat*, about Long. 30. 27. Lat. 51. The neighbouring Country abounds with all sorts of Corn and good Vines; and the Inhabitants get much Money by selling their Corn, Wine, and Woad, at their two great Fairs, the one in *Trinity Week*, and the other at *Martinmas*. Their publick Edifices, especially their Churches and Abbies, are very beautiful. They have also a stately Castle called *Giriburg*, and a famous University. When they embrac'd the Reformation, they put themselves under the Elector of *Saxony*, which occasioned many Contests betwixt that Prince and the Elector of *Mentz*. They afterwards attempted to make themselves an Imperial City; but in 1664, the Archbishop reduc'd it by the Assistance of the *French*: But by the Treaty of *Leipsick*, 17 of the Villages, with their Dependencies, were given to the Elector of *Saxony*. They have the largest Bell here in *Germany*, called *Susanna*.

2. *Weimar*: 'Tis a large, neat, and well built City, mid-way betwixt *Erfurt* and *Jena*,

which gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Saxony*, and is famous for the Birth of Duke *Bernard of Sax-Weimar*, one of the greatest Captains of the last Century. 'Tis supposed to derive its Name from *Winemark*, because it has a great Trade in Wine. 'Tis very ancient; for the Emperor *Ordo II.* held a General Diet here in 975. It has a stately Palace, where the Landgrave us'd to reside. It lies about 50 Miles S. W. from *Leipsick*, and about 15 E. from *Erfurt*.

3. *Jena*, on the Banks of the *Sala*, about Long. 30. 55. near Lat. 51. about 23 Miles E. of *Erfurt*. 'Tis famous for an University, and a great Concourse of Learned Men. It was founded by *John Frederick* Elector of *Saxony*, and had many Privileges from the Emperors *Charles V.* and *Ferdinand*. The great Philologer *J. Lipsius* was bred here. Some derive the Name from the Hebrew Word *Jain*, Wine, and think that the *Jews* founded the Town. Others bring it from the Heathen God *Janus*; but neither of the Conjectures seem to be well founded. The Town is well fortified with Walls and Towers, and stands in a pleasant Vale, which abounds with Vines. The Dukes of *Saxony* gave the University a Library, which increases every Day.

4. *Gotha*, on the *Leina*, about 18 Miles S. W. from *Erfurt*. Some derive the Name from the *Gothick* Troops, who founded it in their March to *Italy*. It was only a mean Village, till fortified by *William* Archbishop of *Mentz* in 964. Their chief Trade is in Woad, of which they have three Sorts: The first they sow about *Christmas*; the next in the Spring, Summer, and Harvest, of which they have three Crops: The third grows wild. This Herb is a sovereign Balsamick, and cures Wounds almost with a Touch, if taken in time. It resembles *Plantain*, but has a longer Leaf. The Roots fatten and improve barren Ground exceedingly; and being brought over to *England* with Clover, Cinquefoil, &c. grows with good Success in *Northamptonshire*, and other Places of *England*. This Town is Capital of a Dutchy, and gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Saxony*, where they have a good Castle, that was demolished by the Emperor *Maximilian II.* in 1567; but since rebuilt by *Ernest Duke of Sax-Gotha*.

3. *Orlamund*, or *Erlamund*, on the same River, a small Town, which gives Title to a County, 8 Miles E. from *Jena*.

6. *Tonnenberg*, a little Town, about 15 Miles W. from *Gotha*. It was sack'd by the Imperialists in 1567.

7. *Eisenach*, about 20 Miles W. from *Gotha*, on the River *Nesse*, the Capital of a Dutchy of the same Name, which gives Title to a Prince of *Saxony*. The University here was founded in 1555. The Inhabitants have a considerable Trade in Iron.

8. *Mulhausen*, an Imperial Town, under the Protection of the Elector of *Saxony*, at the Foot of a Mountain, about 20 Miles N. W. from *Gotha*, and 30 from *Erfurt*.

9. *Marchsul*, some Leagues from *Eisenach*, noted only for a fine Castle, the usual Residence of the Dukes of *Sax-Gotha*.

The County of Schwartzburg,

IS about 40 Miles long, and 25 broad, has *Thuringia* on the S. *Naumburg*, *Mersburg*, and *Halle*, on the W. It takes its Name from the Castle of *Schwartzburg*, on the River *Schwartza*, which gives Title to an ancient Family, divided into the two Branches of *Arnstadt* and *Rudolstadt*. This Castle lies in the upper Part of the County. The chief Town is *Sunderhausen*, a large open Town in the lower Part of the County. The other Towns are, *Frankenhäusen*, *Herfingen*, *Kirderbruch*, and *Keula*; but have nothing of Note.

To this Country belongs *Gleichen*, on the River *On*, an ancient Castle, which gives Name to a County, and formerly Title to a Branch of the Family of *Schwartzburg*, extinguish'd in 1639. The Elector of *Menz* invested the Counts of *Haisfeld*, who possessed Part of this County, with the Castle of *Gleichen*, as a Fief depending on his Church. The other Part consisting of some Bailiwicks, was given to the Counts of *Hohenlo* by the Dukes of *Saxony*, upon the Failure of the Family of *Gleichen*, as *La Forest* informs us.

The County of Hohenstein,

LIES N. of *Schwartzburg*, is about 25 Miles in Length, and 10 in Breadth. The chief Town is *Northhausen*, an Imperial City,

about 40 Miles N. W. of *Erfurt*. It said to have been built by the Emp. *Theodosius II.* or *Merovius* King of *France*, about 447. 'Tis noted for some Diets of the Empire that have been held here, but otherwise not remarkable. 'Tis under the Protection of the Elector of *Saxony*.

The County of Stolberg,

LIES N. of *Schwartzburg*, is about 20 Miles long, and 10 broad. The chief Town is of the same Name, and has a large Castle, said to be built by a *Roman*, the Founder of the Family of *Stolberg*, divided into the two chief Branches of *Isenburg* and *Gudern*, and the latter into those of *Stolberg* and *Ortenberg*. They are Sovereign Counts, and have also the County of *Vernigerode* in the Principality of *Halberstat*. The Castle of *Stolberg* lies near the Borders of *Halberstat*.

The County of Mansfeld.

SOME derive the Name from *Mannus*, Son to *Twisco*, the Father of the *Germani*; but this seems to be fabulous. Others say, That *Heger* Count of *Mansfeld* was one of the Commoners at the British King *Arthur's* round Table, and built *Mansfeld* in *Nottinghamshire*; which is as improbable as the former. Dr. *Nicholson* says, 'tis one of the four *Hercynian* Counties, the other three being *Stolberg*, *Hohenstein*, and *Regenstein*. It has the River *Sala* on the E. *Schwartzburg* on the W. Part of *Anhalt* on the N. and *Thuringia* on the S. 'Tis about 30 Miles long from E. to W. and about 18 where broadest from S. to N. It abounds with Mines of several sorts, which bring great Profit to the Inhabitants. Among the rest, there is that called the *Scheiffersstein*, peculiar to this and the neighbouring Provinces. 'Tis a blackish glittering kind of Salt, which melted and bray'd, yields a vast Quantity of Copper, and much Silver. *Hambesak*, who comments on Part of *Munster's* Geography, says, there is scarce the like of it in the World. Out of this Stone, says he, the Inhabitants melt Copper, each Hundred of which contains 10 or 12 Ounces of pure

pure Silver; and this Stone abounds so much in the Country, that 'tis dug up every where. He adds, That in these Stones, there are the lively Representations, by fair Copper Strokes, of Fishes of several Sorts, Frogs, Water-Rats, and other Animals, that abound in a neighbouring Lake; and the like is asserted by others.

Dr. *Nicholson* says, the more sober Genealogies derive the Pedigree of the Counts of *Mansfeld* from *Burchard V.* Count of *Quernfort*, on whom *Frederick Barbarossa* bestowed this County, for his great Service in the Holy Land. His Great Grandchild *Burchard* was the first who took the Title of Count about 1250, and his Successors have enjoy'd that Honour ever since; but do some sort of Homage to the Elector of *Saxony*. The most remarkable among them have been, 1. *Walerad*, Privy-Counsellor to the Emperor *Sigismund*, to whom he did great Service, and improv'd his own Estate. 2. *John George*, who was Deputy-Governor of *Saxony* under Duke *Augustus*. 3. *Peter Ernest*, Governor of *Luxemburg* under *Charles V.* and *Philip II.* who employ'd him in their Wars against *France* and the *Netherlands*. 4. *Albert*, a great Friend to *Luther*, and to *John Frederick*, the depos'd Elector of *Saxony*, in whose Quarrel he lost his Country, and afterwards defended *Magdeburg* bravely against the Imperialists. 5. *Ernest*, who perform'd great Things in the Wars of *Germany* against *Ferdinand II.* in behalf of the Elector *Palatine*, who was chosen King of *Bohemia*. He was observ'd to be very happy in raising Armies, but unfortunate in Battle. This Family is now divided into 4 or 5 Branches, which has made them less considerable than formerly. The two chief Branches are those of *Bornstet* and *Eysleben*. The latter stays in the County, where they have nothing but the Hunting, Fishery, and Patronage, the rest being sequestered into the Hands of the Elector of *Saxony*. *La Forest* says, That some of the young Counts in the 16th Century oppos'd several Points of the *Lutheran* Doctrine, which gave Rise to a Sect called *Mansfeldians*.

The Metropolis of the Country, and the Seat of the Governing Counts, is *Eysleben*, which derives its Name from the great Quantity of Iron Ore, by the Natives call'd *Eysen*, found in those Parts, and not from

the *Egyptian* Goddeß *Isis*, whom some fabulous Historians alledge to have wander'd into these Parts. 'Tis chiefly remarkable for the Birth and Death of *Luther*; the former in 1483, and the latter in 1564. The Citizens set up his Statue of Stone over the Door of the House where he was born, with this Inscription:

*Hæstis eram Papa, Sociorum pestis & hujus:
Vox mea, cum Scriptis, nil nisi Christus erat.*

'Gainst Pope, and Popelings, I did War declare:
But Christ I preach'd, and wrote, with utmost Care.

Forster, Superintendent of this Church, says, a great Fire in 1601 burnt the Count's Palace, and 250 Houses; but the Church where *Luther* was baptiz'd, the House where he was born, and that where he died, escap'd the Flames, tho' those about 'em were consumed. The Imperialists, in the late Civil Wars, destroy'd his Monument, and defaced the Inscription. The Town is but small, and lies about 8 Miles from *Mansfeld* S. E. and 15 N. W. from *Halle*. This Town suffer'd much in the 11th Century, during the Wars betwixt the Emperor *Henry IV.* and the *Saxons*, and likewise during the Civil Wars of *Germany*. 'Tis fortified with a good Citadel, and reaps considerable Profit from its Quarries of black Stone, and two Annual Fairs.

2. *Mansfeld*, about 5 Miles N. W. from *Eysleben*, an old ruinous City on the River *Vipren*: 'Tis defended by a strong Castle on the top of a Hill, which lay desolate many Years; but was repaired and fortified in 1547.

3. *Wipren*, a Town of good Trade, 8 Miles W. from *Mansfeld*.

The other Towns are, *Arnstein* and *Quernfurt*, noted for little, but giving Names to little Counties belonging to the Branches of this Family.

The Prince of this Country being an Hereditary Count of the Empire, we shall here once for all give an Account of that Dignity: The Learned *Cambden*, in his Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, speaking of *Thomas Arundel* of *Wardour*, who was made a Count of the Empire by the Emperor *Rudolph II.* takes Notice of his Patent given to him and his

Heirs

Heirs of both Sexes for ever; and adds, That those Counts have a Voice in the Imperial Diet, may purchase Estates in any Part of the Emperor's Dominions, may list Volunteers, and cannot be sued in the Empire, but only in the Imperial Chamber. The Curious many find an Account of the Rise of this Title, and of the several Sorts of Counts, in *Selden's* Titles of Honour, Part II. But that which properly relates to Counts of Territories, such as those of *Mansfeld*, is, That they were anciently created and invested by the Delivery of one or more Banners for Seisin of their Territories, as Dukes were invested, and the Surrender of 'em was made by re-delivering those Banners to the Emperor; but of late, they are sometimes made by Charter, or Word of Mouth, kneeling before the Emperor. They have Caps as the Dukes, and their Coronets are only distinguished by their Richness; those of the Dukes having Precious Stones and Gems in them. There are other Counts who are not invested with any Territory, and yet bear the Titles of some Castles or small Territories they possess, and are conceived to be the Posterity of the Counts of the Old Empire, before Feuds were annexed to this Dignity, as *Selden* informs us.

Sax-Naumburg.

IT gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Saxony*, and is Capital of the Bishoprick of that Name, founded in 952 by the Emperor *Otho I.* at *Zeitz*, and transferred hither in 981. *Nicholas Amstorf* brought in *Lutheranism* in the 16th Century, and after his Death the Elector of *Saxony* took the Administration of it, and it was yielded to him by the Treaty of *Passau* in 1552. His Successors did afterwards appropriate it, and it gives Title to a Prince of *Saxony*, of the *Ernestine* Line, who is called Administrator. The Town lies on the *Sala*, 25 Miles S.W. from *Leipsick*, and 15 S. of *Mersburg*. It was formerly under the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, and has a Territory about 25 Miles long, and 15 broad.

Sax-Mersburg,

WAS formerly a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Magdeburg*, and likewise an Imperial Town. The Bishoprick was founded here in 952 by the Emperor *Otho I.* The Duke of *Saxony* introduc'd *Lutheranism* about 1562, when he was Administrator; and 'tis now apply'd as a Portion for one of the younger Sons, to whom it gives the Title of Duke. The Town lies upon the River *Sala*, and, as *La Forest* says, pretty large, and well Peopled, about 18 Miles N. W. of *Leipsick*. Dr. *Nicholson* says, That some derive the Name from *Mars*, and that the *Saxon* Idol *Irmenscul*, under which Name they worhip'd *Mars*, is by some Antiquaries supposed to have stood here. The Cathedral is the only Thing worth Notice in the Town, and near it there's a Library of many ancient Manuscripts, but ill kept; among which there is the Books of *Samuel* and *Kings* in Latin, in a fair ancient *English* *Saxon* Character.

Sax-Altenburg,

HAS *Thuringia* on the N. Part of *Francia* on the W. and S. and *Voitland* on the E. The Town of *Altenburg*, from whence it takes its Name, lies on the River *Pleiss*, 24 Miles S. of *Leipsick*, and 46 W. of *Dresden*. It was an Imperial City, till *Frederick* Marquis of *Misnia* took it in 1308, and united it to that Country. It has a fine Castle, where the Dukes of *Saxony* sometimes kept their Court. The Town is pretty, and was formerly called *Osterland*. *La Forest* says, That it has been possessed by the Duke of *Sax-Gotha* since 1672. Some reckon it a Part of *Misnia*; but *Moll* places it as a Duchy by it self.

Misnia, or Meissen.

THIS Country is so called from a City of the same Name, formerly a Bishop's See, but now inconsiderable. It has the Title of a Marquissate, has *Lusatia* on the E.

Thu-

Thuringia on the W. the Dutchy of *Saxony* on the N. and *Bohemia* on the S. 'Tis a large Country, and is usually divided into 4 Parts: 1. *Misnia*, properly so called, and sometimes named *Osterland*, which contains the Cities of *Dresden*, *Königsstein*, *Pirna*, the old Fort of *Sonnenstein*. 2. The *Erzgebirgischehecreys*, a Mountainous Country, comprehending the Mine-Towns, with some others. 3. The Circle of *Leipsick*, which, besides that City and its Dependencies, has the Counties of *Rechlitz*, *Waldheim*, and *Geringwald*, with other Places of Note. 4. *Voitland*, formerly reckon'd a distinct Principality. Besides these Provinces, it has the Bishopricks of *Naumburg* and *Mersburg*, which we have already describ'd, because *Moll's* Map makes them separate, and the Bishoprick of *Meissen*. Part of the Revenues of those Bishopricks are applied to maintain a Number of Canons in every Cathedral; but the greatest Share is made use of to maintain the younger Sons of the Elector, and give Titles to them, as *Dr. Nicholson* informs us. According to *Baudrand*, *Sax-Halle*, and the Dutchy of *Sax-Gotha*, which we have already describ'd, were reckon'd Part of this Country.

The Plains of *Misnia* are very fruitful in all sorts of Corn, and their Hills abound with rich Minerals. On the Banks of the *Elb*, about *Dresden* and *Meissen*, there are large Vineyards, but the Wine not very good. They have also Salt-Pits in the Bishoprick of *Mersburg*, which were so much outdone by those of *Halle*, formerly mentioned, that they came to be neglected. The Country abounds with Forests, which have Plenty of Venison, and some of them Bears. Their chief Rivers are, the *Elb*, *Mulda*, *Pleiss*, and the *White* and *Black Elbers*. They have also some lesser ones, and all of them abound with Fish, especially Carps, as large and numerous as any Part of *Europe*.

Historians derive their Original from the *Misii*, a People of *Asia*, who in *Cicero's* Time, as appears by his Oration for *Flaccus*, was so contemptible, that it was reckon'd the greatest Reproach to call a Man *Misforum ultimus*; but the present *Misnians* are so much improv'd, that they are noted for their Courtesy, Affability, neat Apparel, and good Shape; so that it has become a

Proverb, *That the Misnians make the best Figure of any Germans*; and *Albinus* commends them for their Chastity, to which their severe Laws against Adultery has probably contributed.

Their chief Cities are, 1. *Dresden*, the usual Seat of the Elector. *Dr. Brown* gives the following Description of it: 'Tis one of the most remarkable Places in *Germany*: The Fortifications are very strong and modern, the Bastions fac'd with Stone, and in some Places defended by a double Ditch. The *Elb* runs through the Town, and divides it into Old and New by a stately Bridge of 17 Arches. The New Town, where stands the Elector's Palace, is the most beautiful and best fortified, and as well worth a Traveller's View as any Place in *Germany*. *Dr. Nicholson* thinks, it derives its Name from three Lakes near it, which in the Language of the Country they call *Dreyen Seen*. *Dr. Brown* says, the Palace is very large and spacious, and, besides the noble and splendid Apartments for the Court, is remarkable for a House for Wild Beasts, the Arsenal, and Stables. The Hall of the Palace is very spacious, and remarkable for the many Draughts of Cities, Pictures of Giants, and the Habits of Nations, very well done. But the most remarkable, and indeed surprizing, Thing, is the Collection of Rarities, divided into several large Chambers: The first contains all sorts of Mechanical Instruments, made with great Art; and in the other Chambers, among many other Things, these following are most taken Notice of; A Tube-Glass 4 Ells long; a large Blue Turkish Glass; many Artificial Works of Coral; Fowls and Cups made out of Mother of Pearl; Drinking-Cups in the Shape of Dragons, Elephants, &c. Castles of Gold, and of Mother of Pearl; Cups and Fowls made of *Nautilus*, and other Shells; a fine Ostrich made out of its own Shell, with Feathers of Gold; a Cup about a Foot long, richly set, made of a Stone or Ball taken out of an Ox's Stomach; a Stone as big as one's Fist, resembling a Bezoar, taken out of a Horse; a Purse of *Linum Incombustibile*; Silver Ore almost pure, in Strings and Shoots, from the Mines of *Freyberg*; a natural Crofs of Silver Ore; 120 Heads carv'd on the outside of a Cherry-Stone.

Stone; a Chryſtal Cabinet fold by *Oliver Cromwel*, in which is kept a Ring with Stones, in Shape of a Caſtle; *K. Charles II.* of Great Britain carved in Iron; the Head of *K. Charles I.* a Glaſs Organ; ſeveral uni- poliſh'd Topazes, 10 Inches in Diameter; a Cup of Topaz; Emeralds an Inch in Dia- meter, as they grow in the Rock, reſem- bling *Vitriolum Marinum*; Thunder-Stones, which ſmell of Fire; Rocks of all ſorts of Ore, with the Names of the Mines whence they were dug upon them; Figures of Fiſhes in Stones out of *Mauſfeld*, formerly mentioned; all Sorts of Stones found in *Saxony* and *Miſnia* poliſh'd; Two large Pie- ces of pure Virgin-Gold out of the Mine; a Hart with a Cabinet in his Side, con- taining all Medicines which that Creature affords; a White Hart as big as the Life, made of the Filings and Shavings of Hart- horn, which reſembles Plaiſter; Figures printed in Trees; a Spur in Part of a Tree; Horns in Trees, &c. In another Chamber, there is all ſorts of Mathemati- cal Instruments and Books, with Maps, and a Horn, which they alledge to be that of a Land-Unicorn, becauſe 'tis neither wreath'd nor hollow. Among other re- markable Pictures and Draughts, there is the Siege of *Jeruſalem*, done by *Collier*, va- lued at a high Rate; one of *Luther*, &c. and a rolling Bullet, to demonſtrate a per- petual Motion. Of Clock-works, there is vaſt Variety; among others, a Cuckow ſinging, a Horſeman riding, a Ship under Sail, an old Woman walking, a Centaur running and ſhooting, and a Crab crawl- ing on a Table; which at once divert and amaze the Spectators. In the Stables, which are very ſtately and large, there are many fine Horſes, with an Iron Rack and a Copper Manger for each. Near the Sta- bles, there's a curious Fountain and Pond, ſurrounded with Balliſters, for watering and waſhing the Horſes, and a long Arch'd Walk, painted with curious Horſes. Over this Walk, there is a Gallery with the Pi- ctures of all the Dukes and Electors of *Saxony* in their Robes and Military Habits. Among the reſt, there are the Pictures at large of *Hengiſt* and *Horſus*, two *Saxon* Dukes or Generals, under whom the *Saxons* inva- ded *England*, drawn according to the De- ſcriptions given of them by ſome of our

English Roman tick Hiſtorians. In other Chambers over the Stables, there are two Beds of Marble, a Horſeman of Silver, mov'd by a Spring, carrying a Cup of Wine in his Hand; a Pair of very fine Pi- ſtols, with the Stories of the Old and New Teſtament upon them; a Glaſs Gun; and- ther which diſcharges 40 times at once, &c. In another Chamber, there are many rich Sleds, with Accountrements for Cavalcades on the Ice and Snow in Winter; a white Bear's-Skin ſtuff'd, ſitting in a Chair, from whence, by a Spring, it riſes up when the Spectators come near it, with the Skins of Tigers and Lions; a Caſſowary's Skin; very fine Armour for Men and Horſes; a Picture of a *Laplander*, with one of their Magick Drums; and a Chamber full of curious Hunting-Tackle and Arms. The Arsenal is an oblong ſquare Building, containing near 400 Braſs Pieces of Ordnance, with a great Quantity of Muſkets, and other Arms, with ſeveral Suits of Armour, and Coats of Mail of Silver, &c. Here alſo there is the Representation of *Hungarian* and other Horſe and Foot, drawn up in Parties, with their Commanders at their Heads, made ſo as to turn round.

In the Hunting-Houſe in the Old Town, there are kept 15 Bears, with Fountains and Ponds, in which they waſh, with rag- ged Poſts ſet up round them, by which the Bears climb to the Scaffolds on the top, where they ſun and dry themſelves after waſhing. The *Horn-Gallery* here does like- wiſe deſerve Notice, into which we paſs through three Chambers, painted with all ſorts of hunting of Fowls and Wild-Beaſts. In the Houſe where the Wild-Beaſts are kept, there is a Four-leg'd Beaſt called a *Marian*, which hangs on the Boughs of Trees by the Tail; a Wild Mountain Cat of extraordinary Size; 10 young and old Bears, Black and White; 2 Lions, and 10 Lioneſſes. The *Italian* Garden and Sum- mer-Houſe in the Suburbs has two noble Obeliſks, two very fine Fountains, a Thea- tre, and a good Landſkip.

This City lies about Long. 32. 45. Lat. 51. 5. 55 Miles S. E. of *Wittenberg*, about 40 S. E. of *Leipſich*, and 20 N. from the Borders of *Bohemia*.

La Foreſt ſays, the City is large, and well Peopled, and in the Old Town, beſides the Caſtle,

Castle, which is very large, is still to be seen the Fortifications made by *Charlemagne*. Its Arsenal is one of the best furnish'd in *Germany*. This City was possess'd by the Bishops of *Misnia* from 952 till 1274, that one of the Bishops agreed to yield it to *Henry the Illustrious*, Marquis of *Misnia*. The chief Church of *Dresden* is a very fair Structure, and the Citizens contend with those of *Halle* for speaking the best *High-Dutch*.

The *Atlas Historique* has a very large Tree of the Family of *Saxony*. Some pretend to derive their Original from *Harterick*, the most ancient K. of the *Saxons*, who reign'd before our Saviour, and defeated *Borbista* K. of the *Goths*: That he was succeeded by *Anserick* his Son, about the Time of our Saviour, and he by *Wilkin*; but as to these, Authors differ. Some of his three next Successors took the Title of Dukes, and others of Kings. *Luder*, the 4th from *Wilkin*, is said to have carried his Armsth rough *France* into *Spain*. His Successor *Wigisfle* is said to have invaded *Gaul*. *Hengist*, who invaded *England*, is said to have been the 4th from *Luder*. *Sigbricht*, the 3d from *Hengist*, is said to have founded the Family of *Friesland*. *Sighard*, the 6th from *Sigbricht*, made War on *Gallia Belgica*, and he and his immediate Predecessors had great Wars with the *Saxons*. *Witkind*, the 5th from him, was that Prince so famous in History for making War against *Charles the Great*, who, after having conquer'd *Saxony*, made him Duke of *Angria*. *Wigbert* his Brother succeeded; and from the Sons of his Successor *Ludolph*, proceeded other Branches, particularly *Bruno's*, from whom came the Imperial Branch. This *Ludolph* is said to have been the first Hereditary Duke of *Saxony*. His Son *Otho* was Father to the Emperor *Henry the Fowler*; and *Otho's* eldest Son, *Lutolph* Duke of *Swabia*, founded the Branch of the Marq. of *Saxony*. *Rixa*, the 3d from him, married *Lotharius* of *Supplenburg*, who was chosen Emperor after the Death of *Henry V.* by whom her Daughter *Gertrude* brought *Saxony* to *Henry the Proud*. His Son *Henry the Lion*, formerly mention'd, was dispossest'd of his Dominions by *Frederick I.* and succeeded, some say, by Force, and others by Agreement, by *Bernard*, the youngest Son of *Albert the Bear* of *Brandenburg*, who was succeeded by *Albert I.* from whom, in a direct Line, came the Branch

of *Sax-Lawenburg*, which was extinguish'd, as formerly mention'd, in 1689, after having produc'd several great Princes. From *Albert I.* after 8 Descents, came *Frederick the Pacifick* in 1411; from whom sprung the *Albertin* and *Ernestin* Branches. From him, after 7 Descents, came *John George I.* who was born in 1585, and died in 1656. From him, after 4 Descents, came *Frederick Augustus*, the present Elector, who was chosen King of *Poland* in 1700, and renounc'd it by Treaty with the King of *Sweden* in 1706. He was born in 1670, and his Son the Prince Electoral, *Frederick Augustus*, was born in 1696. From *John George I.* above-mention'd, came the Branches of *Sax-Meriburg*, and *Sax-Zeitz*. The Prince of the former is *Maurice William*, born in 1688. The Prince of the latter is also *Maurice William*, born in 1664; and by a Daughter of *Brandenburg*, has *Frederick Augustus*, born in 1700. From *Christian* of *Meriburg* came the Branch of *Zorbich*, the present Prince is *Augustus*, who was born in 1655. From him also proceeded the Branch of *Lauchstet*, of whom there remains only *Charlotta Augustina*, who was born in 1691. From him came likewise the Branch of *Spremburg*, whose Prince *Henry* was born in 1661. From *Maurice* of *Zeitz* came the Branch of *Pegaw*, whose Prince is *Frederick Henry*. From *Maurice* also came *Christian Augustus*, Bishop of *Raab*, and Cardinal of *Sax-Zeitz*, who was made use of to persuade the present Elector of *Saxony* to turn Papist, and has labour'd much to bring the *Hungarians* to an Accommodation. We have mention'd before, that the *Ernestin* Branch proceeded from *Frederick the Pacifick*; and from *John Frederick*, the first of this Line, proceeded that of *Altenburg*, which was extinguish'd in 1672. From *John II.* of this Line came the Branch of *Sax-Gotha*, whose Prince is *Frederick*, born in 1676, whose eldest Son *Frederick* was born in 1699. From *Ernest I.* of this Branch came the Line of *Meinungen* and *Coburg*, whose Prince is *Bernard*; and his eldest Son *Ernest Louis*, born in 1672, is one of the Emperor's Generals. From *Ernest* came likewise the Branch of *Eysenberg*, whose Prince *Christian* was born in 1653. From *Ernest* likewise came the Branch of *Saalfeld*, whose Prince is *John Ernest*, whose eldest Son *Charles Ernest* was born in 1692. From the

the first *Ernest* likewise came the Branch of *Hilburgshausen*, whose eldest Son *Ernest Frederick* was born in 1681. From *William* of *Weimar*, the 7th of the *Ernestin* Line, came the Branch of *Sax-Weimar*, whose Prince *William Ernest* was born in 1664. From *John George I.* of the *Albertine* Line, did also proceed the Branch of *Sax-Weissenfels*, or of *Hall*, whose Prince is *John George*, born in 1677. From *Augustus*, the first of this Branch, came also that of *Barby*, whose Prince is *Henry*, born in 1657. His eldest Son is *Frederick Henry*, born in 1692.

The Elector, as Great Marshal of the Empire, commands the Garison where the Diet of the Empire sits: Accordingly the Elector in *Charles Vth's* Time, when the Emperor posted his Guards at the Gates of *Augsburg* in 1530, protested against it, obliged the Emperor to remove them, and to give Security never to invade his Privileges any more. He has also the Right to appoint the Meeting of all Diets, except the Collegial Diets, which are conven'd by the Elector of *Mentz*; but he is obliged to give Notice of it to the Elector of *Saxony*, who orders Count *Pappenheim* to acquaint the Members with it; and if the Elector of *Saxony* be not present, the Archbishop gives Notice to the Count. The Elector of *Saxony* is also Vicar of the Empire during an *Interregnum*, in all Places not subject to the Vicariate of the Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, as the Resident of *Brandenburg*, formerly mentioned, informs us.

The Titles of the Elector of *Saxony* are; By the Grace of God, Duke of *Saxony*, *Juliers*, *Cleve*, *Berg*, *Engers*, *Westphalia*, Arch-Marshal, Elector of the Empire, Landgrave of *Thuringia*, Margrave of *Misnia*, of the *Upper* and *Lower Lusatia*, Count and Prince of *Henneberg*, Count of *La Marck*, *Ravensberg*, and *Barby*, Lord of *Ravensstein*, &c.

The Pretensions of the Elector of *Saxony* are, 1. To the Dutchies of *Juliers*, *Cleve*, and *Berg*, the Counties of *Marck* and *Ravensberg*, and the Lordship of *Ravensstein*, because *Maximilian* invested the Elector of *Saxony* with it, which was confirmed by the Marriage of the Elector *John Frederick* with *Sibylla*, Daughter to *John Duke of Cleve*, in 1526. But after *John William*, the last Duke, died in 1573, *John Sigismund*, the Elector of *Brandenburg*, took Possession of it, and that

Family has still kept it. 2. To *Erfurt*, because 'tis the Capital of *Thuringia*, and is under their Protection; but this is always disputed with him by the Elector of *Mentz*. 3. To the Dutchy of *Engers* and *Westphalia*, especially *Sax-Lawenburg*, which *John*, the first Duke of *Sax-Lawenburg*, inherited from *Bernard*, Son to *Albert the Bear*, whose Successors possess'd it till the Line was extinguish'd, as above-mention'd, which has occasion'd Debates betwixt several Princes, but chiefly betwixt the Elector of *Saxony* and the Duke of *Brunswick-Lunenbourg*; and it was left to the Emperor's Arbitration, tho' the Elector has quitted his Pretensions to the House of *Brunswick* for 11 Tun of Gold.

The Pretensions of the Dukes of *Saxony* are the same with those of the Electors; but the latter pretend also to the Counties of *Eysenburg* and *Budengen*, in case that Branch fail.

The Dominions of the Elector of *Saxony* are, 1. The Electoral Circle. 2. That of *Misnia*. 3. That of *Leipsick*. 4. That of the Mountains. 5. The Bishopricks of *Misnia* and *Wurtzen*. 6, and 7. The Marquises of *Upper* and *Nether Lusatia*. 8. The Towns of *Tennistat* and *Tersfurt*. 9. The Bailiwick of *Ploen*. 10. Of *Vorgtsberg*. 11. Of *Newstat* on the *Orla*. 12. Of *Arnshaus*. 13. Of *Ziegenruck*. 14. The Burgraviate of *Magdeburg*, the Countries of *Weissenfels*, *Mersburg*, and *Naumburg*, the Lordship of *Schemburg*, the Abbey of *Quedlinburg*, the Towns of *Mulhausen*, and *Northhausen*; but all those under Number 14, belong at present to the Family of *Brandenburg*.

The Titles of the Dukes of *Sax-Eysnach* are, Dukes of *Saxony*, *Juliers*, *Cleve*, *Engers*, and *Westphalia*, Landgraves of *Thuringia*, Margraves of *Misnia*, Counts and Princes of *Henneberg*, Counts of *La Marck* and *Ravensberg*, Lords of *Ravensstein*, &c.

Their Dominions are, the 8 Bailiwicks of *Eysenach*, *Lichtenberg*, *Gerstingen*, *Ringolthen*, *Kalten*, *Nordheim*, *Kreinburg*, *Alsted*, and *Zilbach*. 9. The Town of *Osheim*. 10. The Bailiwick and Town of *Creutzberg*. 11. Of *Jena*.

The Titles of the Dukes of *Sax-Gotha* are the same with the former, only they add the Lordship of *Tenna*; and the other Branches

Branches of this Family have the same Titles, but without *Tonna*.

Their Dominions are those of *Gotha*, the three Lordships of *Tonna*, *Wachsenburg*, and *Ichtershausen*. 4. The Bailiwick and Town of *Kranichfeld*. 5. The Bishoprick of *Valckenrad*, and several Towns.

The Titles of the Prince of *Weissenfels* are the same with those of *Gotha*, only they add Count of *Barby*, and leave out *Tonna*.

Their Dominions are, 1. *Weissenfels*. 2. The Principality of *Querfurt*. 3. The Counties of *Barby*, *Eybra*, *Thomasbruck*, *Roblingen*, *Lauscha*, and *Micheln*. 4. The Bailiwicks of *Langensalza*, *Sangershausen*, *Eckersburg*, and *Sachsenburg*.

The Title of the Prince of *Mersburg* is, Administrator of that Bishoprick, with the rest of the Titles of *Gotha*, except *Tonna*.

Their Dominions are, 1. The Bishoprick of *Mersburg*. 2. The Bailiwicks of *Lutzen*, *Lauchshet*, *Bitterfeld*, *Zorbig*, *Brene*, and some Towns in *Nether Lusatia*.

The Titles of the Prince of *Sax-Weitz* are, Administrator of the Bishoprick of *Naumburg*, with all those of *Gotha*, except *Tonna*.

Their Dominions are, 1. *Weitz*, *Naumburg*, and *Pegau*. 2. *Sula*, with its District. 3. *Schleusigen*, and its District. 4. *Plawen*, *Knigsberg*, *Oelsnitz*, *Weida*, *Newkirchen*, *Schonneck*, *Adorff*, and *Pausa*.

The Dominions of the Branch of *Coburg* are, 1. The Town of *Coburg*. 2. *Sonneberg*. 3. *Neuhaus*, and several Cloisters.

The Dominions of *Meinungen* are, 1. The County of *Henneberg* and *Meinungen*. 2. Of *Masfeld*, and *Wassungen*. 3. of *Salzungen*, and *Sand*.

The Dominions of *Romhild* are, 1. *Romhild* and *Konigsberg*. 2. The Bailiwicks of *Thiermar* and *Beringen*.

The Dominions of *Eissenberg* are, 1. The Bailiwick and Town of *Rheda*. 2. Of *Chamberg* and *Ronneburg*. 3. The Town of *Eissenberg*.

The Dominions of *Helburshausen* are, 1. The Bailiwick and Town of *Eisfeld*. 2. Of *Veisdorf*, and some Towns.

The Dominions of *Saalfeld* are, 1. *Saalfeld*, and its Territory. 2. The Bailiwicks of *Grassenthal* and *Zell*.

The Arms of the Elector and Dukes of *Saxony* are, *Azure*, a *Lion* Crown'd, fac'd *Argent* and *Gules*, for *Thuringia*. Fac'd *Or* and

Sable, with *Vert* through the whole, for *Saxony*. *Or*, a *Lion-Sable*, for *Misnia*. *Or*, a *Lion-Sable*, encompass'd and langued *Gules*, for *Juliers*. *Gules*, a *Scutcheon-Argent*, flower'd *Or*, for *Cleves*. *Argent*, a *Lion-Gules*, Crown'd *Azure*, for *Berg*. *Azure*, an *Eagle* Crown'd *Or*, for *Engers*: *Argent*, 3 Chapes of a *Hanger*, for *Engers*. *Coupee-Sable* on *Argent*, two *Swords-Gules*, for the Dignity of *Electo*r, and *Arch-Marsh*al of the *Empire*. *Azure*, an *Eagle Or*, for the County *Palatine* of *Saxony*. *Sable*, an *Eagle Or*, for the County *Palatine* of *Thuringia*. *Argent*, a *Beeve Gules*, and a *Wall Or*, for *Lusatia*. *Or*, two *Pales Azure*, for *Lansberg*. *Azure*, a *Lion Coupe Or Argent*, for *Plaisi*. *Or*, strow'd with *Harts*, a *Lion Sable*, for *Orlamund*. *Parti*, the first *Gules*, one half on the *Dexter* of an *Eagle-Argent*; the 2d, 4 *Fesses-Gules*, for *Magdeburg*. *Argent*, 3 Chapes of *Hangers Azure*, for *Brene*. *Argent*, a *Rose Azure*, for *Eissenberg*. *Argent*, 3 *Cheverons Gules*, for *Ravensburg*. *Or*, the *Front Cheeke Argent* and *Gules* of 3 *Lines*, for *March*. *Gules* plain for the *Rights of Regalia*. *Or*, a *Chicken Sable*, barb'd *Gules*, upon a green *Hill*, for *Henneberg*. *Azure*, two *Bars endors'd Or*, encompass'd with *Roses*, for *Barby* and *Rosenberg*. The *Helmets* are *Or*, surmounted with two blue *Wings*, for *Lusatia*. *Or*, surmounted with an *Eagle* Crown'd, for the *Palatinate* of *Saxony*. *Or*, surmounted with a *Beeve's-Head*, *Gules*, Crown'd *Or*, for *Cleves* and *March*. *Or*, surmounted with two *Horns Argent*, for *Thuringia*. *Or*, two *Crowns Azure* and *Argent*, for *Saxony*. *Or*, surmounted with a *Demiman Azure* and *Argent*, for *Misnia*. *Or*, surmounted with an *Eagle Or*, for *Juliers*. *Or*, surmounted with a *Peacock's-Tail*, for *Berg*. *Or*, surmounted with two *Peacocks-Feathers*, for *Engers*. *Or*, surmounted with an *Eagle Argent*, for *Nether Lusatia*.

Dr. *Nicholson* observes, That upon the Failure of the Line of *Bernard* of *Anhalt* in *Albert III.* and the Neglect of the Princes of *Lauenburg* to lay Claim to the Electorate, *Frederick* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, and *Marquis* of *Misnia*, was created Duke and Elector of *Saxony* by the Emperor *Sigismund*; by which the Title return'd again to the Family of *Wittkind*, K. of the ancient *Saxons*, after it had been out of it 200 Years; and from this *Frederick*, the present Elector is descended. The Elector *John Frederick*, the

the 6th of that Line, protested against that Decree of the Diet of *Spires*, was the Author of the League at *Smalcald*, and was a great Promoter of the Reformation. His Cousin and Successor *John* drove the Emperor *Charles V.* out of *Germany*, and was slain in the Battle of *Siffridkuse* against *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburg*. *John George*, one of his Successors, first join'd with the Emperor *Ferdinand* against the Elector *Palatine*, and afterwards with the King of *Sweden* against the Emperor.

The Doctor says, The Revenues of this Elector are thought to be as great as those of any Prince of the Empire, except the Arch-Duke of *Austria*, and are modestly computed at 400000 *l.* Sterling per Annum. The Doctor adds, That what he has from his Imposts upon Beer and other Commodities, his Taxes, Mines, &c. will amount to a much greater Sum; for his Revenues from the Silver Mines at *Freydberg*, and other Places, was computed at 130000 *l.* per Annum. And the Impost on Beer at *Leipsick* at 20000 *l.* per Annum. Besides which, and other like Customs, he has the Tenths of all Corn, Fruit, Wine, &c. in his Country, besides a great standing Tax granted at first against the *Turks* in a Time of War, but since continued. Answerable to his Revenues, is the Pomp and Splendour of his Court, wherein it exceeds those of his Neighbours. *Christian II.* is said to have had 3 Foreign Dukes, 3 Earls, and 5 Barons, besides a multitude of his own Nobility, that were Pensioners to him all at once: And at the Funeral of *John George I.* in 1657, there were 24 Horses of State cover'd with Black, with the Electoral Arms embroider'd upon them, led by two Gentlemen each: After which followed 3500 Persons in Mourning. This Court has always been reckon'd the greatest Drinkers in *Germany*; and some of their own Historians say, That a red Nose is an inseparable Badge from the Princes of that Family.

The 2d remarkable City in this Country is *Leipsick*, supposed to have been built by the *Pandals* about the Year 700, and to have derived its Name from *Lipzke*, which in their Language signifies a Tile-Tree, which sort of Wood did then abound in those Parts; and hence some Latin Authors call

it *Philurea*, from *Φίλουργε*, a Tile-Tree. It stands on the Confluence of 3 small Rivers, the *Elster*, *Ploissa*, and *Parda*, about Long. 31. 57. Lat. 51. 22. about 42 Miles N. W. of *Dresden*, and 38 S. W. from *Wittemberg*, in a pleasant and fruitful Plain, abounding with all Necessaries and Pleasures, particularly large and rich Meadows, mow'd constantly twice, and sometimes thrice a Year, besides pleasant Woods, and many fine Orchards with all sorts of Fruit. Within the Walls they have no Orchards or Gardens. The City is large and populous, and the Houses stately, especially about the Market-place, where they are commonly 7 and 9 Stories high. *St. Nicholas's* Church is very fine, and the best adorn'd within of any *Lutheran* Church in *Germany*. The Town is famous, 1. For the Purity of the *German* Tongue. 2. For the Concourse of Merchants from most noted Places in *Europe* to their three Annual Fairs at *Christmas*, *Easter*, and *Michaelmas*. 3. For their High Court of Judicature, to which the Elector himself is oblig'd to answer when summon'd. Their Way of Proceeding is describ'd by *Zobelius*, in his Book called, *Differentia Juris Civilis & Saxonici*, and by the Author of the *Chronicon Lipsiense*. 4. For their University, founded in 1408, upon a Quarrel betwixt the *Hussites* and *Papists* at *Prague*, whence 2000 Students are said to have come hither in one Day. It has 4 Colleges, and 24 Professors. Their Chief Professor of Divinity some Time ago, called *Adam Schertzer*, publish'd a Learned Book, called, *Collegium Anti Socinianum*, wherein he confuted the *Socinian* *Carpsenius*, Son to the famous Lawyer of that Name, was much admir'd for his Learning in the Eastern Languages, and explaining the Mysteries of the *Jewish* Rabbies. *Thomasius*, a Schoolmaster there, was also noted for his Skill in *Philology*. In their Library, they have abundance of Manuscripts taken out of the demolish'd Monasteries, but of no great Value. *Dr. Nicholson* says, the only Rarity in it, is *Tretzer's* Greek Commentary on *Homer's Iliads*, (perhaps not to be met with elsewhere) in a fair and legible Character. Near this Place was the chief Seat of the *German* War; so that in two Years, it was taken 5 several times, and at last by the Imperialists in 1633, but restor'd by the Treaty of *Prague*

in 1635. 'Tis also noted for 3 Victories obtained near it by the *Swedes* over the Imperialists in 1631, 1641, and 1642. 'Tis defended by the Castle of *Pleissenburg*, on the River *Pleisse*, which is very strong, and has a good Garison. In 1520, *Luther* disputed in this City with *Eckius* against the Pope's Supremacy; and soon after, it embrac'd the Reformation.

3. *Freiberg*, or *Freidberg*, a famous and pleasant Town near the Banks of the *Mulda*, about Lat. 51. Long. 32. 43. about 8 Miles S.W. from *Dresden*. Dr. *Nicholson* thinks, it derives its Name from the rich Hills on which it stands. The Town is fortified with strong Walls, and held out against the *Swedes* in the Civil War. St. *Peter's* Church here is the usual Burial-place of the Electors, where many of them lie entomb'd in fair Monuments, particularly the Elector *Maurice*, whose Monument is reckon'd one of the noblest in *Germany*. When this City was surrender'd to the Imperialists in 1632, the Elector of *Saxony* gave 80000 Rix-Dollars to save those Monuments from being rifled, because it being the Fashion to bury the *German* Princes in their Robes, with their Ensigns of Honour, Rings, Jewels, &c. the Soldiers would otherwise have ransack'd the Sepulchres. This City is chiefly noted for the rich Mines in and about it, which were discover'd accidentally in 1180, by a Fellow who was carrying Salt, and found in a Cart-Road a Piece of rich Ore. Since that Time, those Mines have been so much dug, that the greatest Part of the Town is undermin'd, and stands upon Vaults and Caverns. Besides those Mines in the Town, there are a great many more within a Mile or two of it; of which, Dr. *Brown* in his Travels gives the following Account:

The Chief of them is that upon the high Hill, which, he says, is deeper than any of those he saw in *Hungary*, being 77 of their Fathoms, which is 208 of ours.

The 2d Mine is that called the *Prince of Heaven*, which not many Years ago produc'd an Ore so rich, that 100 Pound Weight afforded 130 Marks of Silver, or 65 Pounds in the Hundred: But it is a constant Observation among the Miners, That where the Veins are richest and purest, they are thinnest, and generally not above the Breadth of two Inches. The Ore, as

it generally runs, affords not one Ounce and a half of Silver in the Pound, and they work it, tho' it holds not above half an Ounce; which may seem strange to those who know not, that even in the Silver Mines of *Peru* and *Chili*, they work the Silver Ore which affords not above 4 or 5 Ounces; and the rich Ore in the celebrated Mines of *Potosi*, don't commonly produce above 10 or 12 Ounces of Silver; tho' this Hill alone, if we may credit *Alberto Alonso*, has produc'd in Silver since it was dug, betwixt 4 and 500 Millions of Pieces of Eight.

They have here several Ways of opening the Ore to prepare it for melting, as by Lead, and a kind of Silver Ore which holds Lead.

The Sulphur Ore, which is found here, does, after Calcination, prove no small Addition towards the melting of Metals; as likewise the *Schlich*, or Pounded and Wash'd Ore; and the *Slacken*, being the Dross Sediment, or Scum, taken out of the *Vortiegel* (Pan) which received the melted Minerals, let out into it at the bottom of the melting Furnace.

Their *Treibsheath*, or Furnace for separating where the Litharge is driven, is more like that described in *Agricola*, than those in *Hungary*. Some of the Litharge is green. They wash the purest Ore, and such as is mix'd with Stones or Spars; and they have this peculiar here, that before they melt the Ore in the melting Furnace, they burn the Pounded and Wash'd Ore on the *Roasting-Hearth*, as they term it.

The 3d Mine was called the *Neckbreaker*, about 80 *English* Fathoms deep. The Ore it produces is either Copper and Silver, or Silver and Lead, and sometimes all three; but they work only for Silver. The Mines are cold as far as the Air can penetrate, but otherwise warm enough. Where they are at the deepest, they are full of Damps, that sometimes kill the Workmen; but that which troubles them most, is the Dust which settles upon the Lungs and Stomachs of the Miners, and throws them into Consumptions. They have excellent Engines to prevent the Inconveniencies arising from the Water, and sometimes use large Vizards with Glass Eyes, under which they have room enough to breath a considerable while.

Here:

Here is also a rich Sulphur Ore, hard and stony, that with red Spots being deemed the best. This is melted in a peculiar Furnace, to separate it from the Ore, some of which yields 3 Pound of Sulphur from 100 Weight of Ore, which, as it melts, runs out of the Furnace into Water, or the Exhalations of the Ore are condensed into Brimstone by the Coldness of the Surface of the Water, placed to receive it. It is purified again, by melting it once more. Some of this Brimstone Ore holds Silver, and some Copper, but in small Quantities.

The Remnant, after the Sulphur is separated from the Ore, is reserved for a double Use, either for the melting of Silver, or making of Vitriol. In the first Case, a certain Proportion of it is cast into the melting Furnace of the Silver, which, as the Miners term it, renders it more fluid.

In the making of Vitriol or Copperose, they take the Ore from which the Brimstone has been separated, and burn it over again, or let it continue to burn in the open Air; then putting it into a large Vessel, pour as much Water upon it as is requisite to imbibe the Vitriol; which Water being afterwards boil'd to a certain Consistency, is let out into Coolers, where the purest Part of the Vitriol cleaves to Sticks set in on purpose, and the rest sticks to the Sides and Bottom. It is observable, That the Ore, after it is deprived of its Vitriol, has not the least Virtue left to open the Metals, and make them fluid.

Dr. *Nicholson* gives this Account of their discovering Mines by what they call the *Virgula Divina*, which some reckon to be Conjurat. The Discoverer takes a forked Piece of Hazel, holds the two Horns of it in his Hands, with the Forks upright, and traverses the Ground, muttering a Form of unintelligible Words; and when the forked Stick turns in his Hand, (which they ascribe to an occult Impulse) and points to the Ground, he takes it for an infallible Sign of a rich Silver Mine in the Place pointed at; upon which they fall a digging, and seldom fail of Success.

At *Freyberg*, there's a Yearly Coinage of Rix-Dollars, and other Money, which is commonly true Sterling, and reckon'd the best in *Germany*.

The Resident of *Brandenburg* gives this Account of the Mines, That the richest are those of *Sneberg*, discovered in 1471; from which Time to 1501, which was 30 Years, the Elector had for his Tenths 510 Millions of Gold, and 900000 Crowns; and from thence to 1537, 393 Millions of Gold, and 800000 Crowns; but they have not yielded in the same Proportion since that, (tho' they be still very rich) being in Part ruin'd by the War.

4. *Meissen*, formerly the Metropolis of *Misnia*, but now inconsiderable. It takes its Name from the River *Meissen*, on which it stands. It had formerly the best Wooden Bridge in *Germany*; but was destroy'd by the Civil War, and a worse built in its stead. The most remarkable Thing in it now is, a Palace belonging to the Elector, in Form of a Castle, which defends the Town. 'Twas formerly a Bishoprick, founded by the Emperor *Otho* about the middle of the 10th Century; but since 1581, has been in Possession of the Electors. It lies about 10 Miles N. W. of *Dresden*.

5. *Pirn*, on the *Elb*, about 4 Miles S. E. from *Dresden*, a small Town, noted for the Treaty of Peace made there betwixt the Emperor *Ferdinand II.* the Elector of *Saxony*, and other Princes of the Empire, in 1636, which by others is called the Peace of *Prague*. This Town was taken and pillaged by the *Swedes* in 1640.

6. *Mulberg*, on the *Elb*, somewhat above two German Leagues S. from *Torgau*, and about 7 N. W. from *Dresden*, a Village, famous for the Victory of *Charles V.* over the Protestants there in 1547, where *Frederick* of *Saxony* was taken, the *Spaniards* under the Duke of *Alva* having swum over the River, and brought the Boats from the other Side to pass the same, and attack the Protestants, says *La Forest*.

7. *Chemnitz*, on a small River of that Name, the Capital of the Circle of the Mountains, or *Erzgebirgsche-Creys*. It is defended by a good Castle, called *Augustburg*. 'Twas an Imperial Town till 1308, that *Frederick* Marquis of *Misnia* united it to his Dominions. 'Tis famous for Mines of Lead and Tin in the Neighbourhood. It lies 30 English Miles S. W. of *Dresden*.

8. *Frauenstein*, a little Town among the Mountains, noted for a Lead Mine.

9. *Königsstein*, on the *Elb*, 15 Miles S. from *Dresden*, a Fortress with an Arsenal, where the Electors keep their Treasure.

10. *Marienberg*, on the Frontiers of *Bohemia*, a small Town, built in the 16th Century, for working on the Mines then discover'd there.

11. *Aunaberg*, a League from thence, on the Mountain of *Schneberg*, built in the end of the 15th Century.

12. *Zwickau*, on the *Mulda*, 15 Miles S.W. from *Chemnitz*, the chief Town of *Voigt-Land*, so called from the *Voigts* or Provosts the Emperor sent to govern the Country. It was formerly one of the Theatres of the War betwixt *Charlemagne* and the Saxons, and an Imperial Town till 1308, that *Frederick* Marquis of *Misnia* reduc'd it.

13. *Sneberg*, on the same River, 7 Miles further N. noted for its Silver Mines discover'd in 1471, as mention'd before.

14. *Plauen*, a pretty little City on the River *Elster*.

15. *Werda*, a little City, on a River of that Name, which formerly had its own Lords.

Other Towns reckon'd by *La Forest* in this Country are, 1. *Weissfels*, on the *Sale*, anciently called *Leucopetra*, which gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Saxony*. 2. *Colditz*, a little City of good Trade, on the Conflux of the *Mulda* and *Mulca*. 3. *Leisnau*, on the latter, noted for the Birth of *Appian* the Geographer. 4. *Lutzen*, on the *Elster*, famous for the great Victory of the *Swedes* over the Imperialists in 1632, where the Great *Gustavus* triumph'd over his Enemies in the Arms of Death, which hinder'd his reaping the Fruits of that Victory, chiefly owing to his Valour and Conduct. 5. *Zeitz*, anciently call'd *Mamilla*, a little City on the *Mulca*, sack'd in 982 by the *Vandals*. It gives Title to a Prince of the *Saxon* Family.

The Marquisate of Lusatia, or Lausnitz,

HAS *Bohemia* on the S. *Brandenburg* on the N. *Misnia* and *Saxony* on the W. and *Lower Lusatia* on the E. 'Twas formerly Part of *Bohemia*, and described as such by Geographers; but having rebelled against the Emperor in 1620,

John George of *Saxony* reduc'd them, had it mortgag'd to him for his Service, and at last 'twas settled upon him and his Heirs by the Treaty of *Prague* in 1635; and so it continues, except some Parts of *Lower Lusatia*, which belong to the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

'Tis divided into *Upper* and *Lower*: The former is by some Geographers called *Hexapolis*, because of the 6 Confederate Cities in it, *Lobau*, *Budissen*, *Camnitz*, *Gorlitz*, *Lauben*, and *Zittau*. In the *Lower*, the Towns subject to the Elector of *Saxony* are, *Lubben* on the *Spree*, *Guben*, *Lucken*, and *Calow*; but *Cothus*, *Peytze*, *Sommerfeld*, and others of less Note, are subject to *Brandenburg*. The Length of this Country from E. to W. is about 65 Miles, and the Breadth from S. to N. is 90.

The Country is for most part sandy or boggy, so that it has scarce Corn enough for the Inhabitants; but they have such Plenty of Wood, Venison, and Fish, as might enrich them, had they any Commerce. Their chief Rivers are, the *Spree* and the *Neisse*. By their Mixture of *Wendish* with *German*, they would seem to be of *Slavonick* Extract; but the Citizens speak good *German*. Some derive them from the ancient *Lusici* or *Lutitii*; others from the *Ilingi*, *Elysi*, or *Ligii*. The People are of as quick Parts as their Neighbours, but Penurious. They breed no Horse; but *Buter* says, they can raise 20000 hardy Footmen. They observe the *Saxon* Laws better than ever they did the *Bohemian*. *La Forest* says, it was anciently called the *Eastern Mark*, and had its own Princes, till the End of the 9th Century. *Christian*, descended from *Wittikind the Young*, was their first. The Emperor *Henry IV.* made it a Marquisate for *Otto*, the last of that Line, who died Childless about 1060. *Henry IV.* gave *Upper Lusatia* to *Ladislav* Duke of *Bohemia*, and left the *Lower* to *Dedon*, *Otto's* Cousin, whose Issue failing in 1125, the Emperor *Lotharius II.* gave it to *Conrad the Pious*, Marquis of *Misnia*, whose Successors held it till 1317, that *Waldemar* of *Brandenburg* seiz'd it. Two Years after, the Emperor *Louis* of *Bavaria* gave it to King *John* of *Bohemia*. It fell to the House of *Austria* by *Anne*, Daughter of *Louis* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, who married the Emperor *Ferdinand*; and who

how it came to the House of *Saxony*, we have heard already.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Bautzen*, or *Baudiffina*, their Metropolis, on the *Spree*, about 30 Miles E. from *Dresden*. 'Twas built by a *Bohemian* Duke of the same Name about 800, and was an Imperial City; but lost its Privileges in the 13th Century, when reduced by the K. of *Bohemia*. The Elector of *Saxony* besieg'd it in 1634, and the Imperialists set Fire to the Suburbs, to dislodge the *Saxons*; which being driven into the Town by a strong Wind, consumed all but the Walls and Castle, which obliged it to surrender. The Remainder was afterwards demolish'd by the *Swedes*; since which, this large Town has never recover'd its Lustre. They have a Church, where both Papists and Lutherans have their Worship.

2. *Gorlitz*, on the W. Side of the *Neisse*, about 25 Miles E. of *Bautzen*. Some say, it was founded by *Sobieslaus* of *Poland* about 1131; others, by *Boleslaus* III. in 1139; but soon after it was burnt, and called *Gorlitz*, which in the *Slavonick* signifies a burnt Town. It has several neat Churches, and many stately Houses. Their chief Trade is in Beer, and dressing and dying Linen and Woollen. It is well fortified, and the Approach difficult, because it stands in a Morass. 'Tis the Seat of Justice, and the Residence of the Governor.

3. *Zittaw*, on the *Neisse*, 20 Miles S. E. from *Gorlitz*, so called from a Lady that founded it, in the beginning of the 11th Century, as some say; tho' others think it was by *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, in the middle of the 13th. They have a good Trade in Beer, and an old *Franciscan* Monastery, turn'd into an Hospital since the Reformation.

4. *Leiba* or *Lobau*, *Liben*, *Loben*, or *Luben*, one of the oldest Towns in those Parts. The other Confederate Towns send their Deputies hither, to consult in Cases of Importance. It lies on a small Rivulet midway betwixt *Gorlitz* and *Bautzen*, surrounded with pleasant Meadows. In 1639, the *Swedes* found 70000 Crowns of Cash, besides other Booty, here.

5. *Luben*, on the *Spree*, the Capital of *Nether Lusatia*, 55 Miles N. from *Baudiffina*. The Elector has a Palace here, where he some-

times resides. It has the chief Place in the Diets.

6. *Guben*, a well fortified little Town in *Nether Lusatia*, about 24 Miles E. from *Luben*, on the *Neisse*, which contributes much to its Strength. In 1631, the Imperialists took it after the Battle of *Leipsick*; but 'twas not long after taken again by the Marquis of *Hamilton*, afterwards Duke, then a General in the *Swedish* Army, who put most of the Garrison to the Sword. In 1642, it held out 3 Weeks against the *Swedes*; but was obliged to surrender on Discretion for want of Necessaries.

7. *Soraw*, on the Borders of *Silesia*, 20 Miles S. E. from *Guben*, by some reckon'd the Capital of *Nether Lusatia*. 'Twas often taken and retaken during the Civil Wars of *Germany*.

8. *Cothus*, or *Cotuitz*, on the *Spree*, 20 Miles S. from *Luben*. 'Tis a fair Town, subject to the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

9. *Camitz*, or *Caments*, a little City, well built and fortified, on the Frontiers of *Misnia*, about 15 Miles N. W. from *Baudiffina*.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Friedland*, a small City, on a Canal that falls into the *Spree*. 2. *Sprehenberg*, on a Mountain, upon the *Spree*. 3. *Konigswart*, a pretty little City on the *Weiss Elster*. 4. *Zobellitz* on the *Schops*, in the best Part of *Lusatia*.

The Marquisate of Brandenburg.

HAS *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania* on the N. *Anhalt*, *Upper Saxony*, *Lusatia*, and *Silesia*, on the S. the Dominions of the House of *Brunswick* and *Magdeburg* on the W. *Prussia* and *Poland* on the E. *Dresser* says, it is 7 great Days Journey in Breadth, and 7 in Length. According to *Moll*, 'tis but 190 Miles from E. to W. and about 90 where broadest from S. to N. *Samson* makes it about 225 long, and scarce 90 where broadest; so that *Dresser* must be mistaken, or else mean it, of all the Elector's Dominions, which may be true.

The Country in general is sandy and woody, abounds with Corn; but is not plentiful in other Provisions. They have great Flocks of Sheep, but not of Black Cattle; and tho' in some Parts they boast of their Wine, the *Saxons* despise it to a Proverb.

They

They have few Silver Mines, but some of Brass, Iron and Copper; so that their Money is generally worse than in Saxony and the Dominions of Brunswick. They have many Forreſts, which abound with Veniſon. The ancient Inhabitants were the *Varini* and *Naitbones*, Branches of the *Swevi*, ſucceeded by the *Helvoldi*, *Wilini*, *Beirami*, and other *Slavonians*. Henry I. conquer'd this Country about 620, expelled moſt of thoſe People, and gave the Country to *Siegefrid* Earl of *Rengenheim*, who, with his Succeſſors, new Planted and Peopled it from the *Netherlands*, *Weſtphalia*, *Fraconia*, and *Saxony*, which occaſioned that Confuſion which is ſtill obſervable in their Dialect. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, the Country People are generally ſo poor, that a Bed of clean Straw is a Character of one of the better Sort. Their Northerly Situation makes the Winter cold, and 7 or 8 Months long; but they have Plenty of Wood for Fuel, and might make great Profit of their Cattle, were they as much given to Trade, as to Drinking and good Cheer, ſays *La Foreſt*. Their principal Rivers are, the *Elb*, the *Oder*, the *Hawell*, the *Spree*, and the *Warte*. The two firſt have a Communication by means of a Canal, which ſaves their paying the Tolls in the *Sound*, and facilitates the Exportation of their own Commodities. There are abundance of Lakes in this Country, the chief of which is *Uckersee*. The Elector's Dominions in general are called *Mark*, and he himſelf *Mark-Graſ*, for which we uſe the French Word *Marquis*.

Selden, in his Titles of Honour, gives this Account of that Dignity, viz. That they had the Name from being Governors of Frontier Provinces at firſt; but it was afterwards given to thoſe who had the Government of Inland Countries, as *Miſnia*, *Lufatia*, *Brandenburg*, &c. In the Time of the French Empire, they were alſo called *Duces* and *Comites Limitanei*; but the Title of *Marchio*, he ſays, was not found in the Empire till the Time of *Charles the Great*, but 'twas only Officiary, and not Hereditary, till the Time of Henry I. who made one in *Sleſwick* againſt the *Danes*, and another in *Brandenburg* againſt the *Vandals*. In later Times, there were 4 more eminent than the reſt, called the High Margraves, viz. *Brandenburg*, *Moravia*, and *Baden*; and be-

ſides Robes of State, had a Cap of State, ſuch as Dukes.

The *Atlas Historique* has a very large Tree of this Family, which he derives from the Family of *Aſcania*, mention'd formerly in the Families of *Saxony* and *Anhalt*. The firſt is *Bernthobaldus* I. Son to a Lord of *Aſcania* and *Ballenſted*, who liv'd about 524. Others derive them from *Adalgerius*, choſen King of *Bavaria* in 456, whoſe Succeſſors contented themſelves with the Title of Dukes. His Succeſſor *Theodo* I. conquer'd Lower *Bavaria* from the *Romans*. *Theodo* II. carried on the War againſt them with much Glory. From him came the Branch of the *Lombard* Kings; and from *Thaſilo* II. the 6th in Deſcent from *Theodo* II. came the Branches of *Brandenburg* and *Bavaria*, and likewiſe the Branch of *Charlemagne*, and the Branch of *Zollern*. The *Atlas* gives the Origin of the Margraves of *Brandenburg*, who have poſſeſſed this Country, thus: *Sigfrid*, young-eſt Grandſon to *Wittikind* Earl of *Rengenheim*, was firſt created Marquis of *Brandenburg* by Henry I. in 927, being Brother to the Emperſs, and famous for his Wars againſt the *Slavonians*. He was ſucceeded by *Gero*, who built the Monastery of *Gerrenrod*; but our Room allowing us only to make mention of ſuch as were remarkable by their Actions, we proceed to *Hugh*, the 4th Marquis, who built 7 ſtately Monasteries in *Italy*, and died in 1001. The 6th, *Theodorick*, was a great Enemy to the *Veneſi*, and others of the neighbouring *Slawi* and *Vandals*, two of whoſe Princes he perſwaded the Emperor *Henry* II. to hang up. He was at laſt overpower'd by them, beat out of his Dominions by *Miſtiwoius* Prince of the *Obotriti*, and ended his Days miſerably in a Monastery at *Magdeburg*. The 7th, *Udo* Earl of *Soltwedel*, aſſiſted by *Conrad* II. defeated the *Slawi*, drove them out of the Country, and was made Marquis himſelf. His Son *Udo* II. rebelling againſt the Emperor *Henry* IV. was proſcribed, and ſucceeded by *Primiflaus* King of the *Obotriti*, Anceſtor to the Family of *Mecklenburg*; after whoſe Death, *Frederick* I. gave the Country to *Albert the Bear*, Prince of *Anhalt*, and Marquis of *Soltwedel*; after whom came the ſecond Catalogue of the Marquiſſes: The firſt of whom, *Albert*, Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, *Brunſwick*, &c. ſucceeded Henry the

Lion.

Lion. The 6th of this Line, *Otho III.* built *Brandenburg* and *Prussia*; and during the 15 Years of his Reign, had a constant War with the Archbishop of *Magdeburg* and the Bishop of *Halberstat*. The 10th, *Waldemar*, annexed great Part of *Lusatia*, which he won from the Marquis of *Misnia*. The 12th was *John IV.* the last of the House of *Anhalt*, who dying without Heirs, the Emperor gave the Marquifate to the 12th, who was *Louis* of *Bavaria*, Son to *Louis* the Emperor. He resign'd it to his Brother *Louis II.* who was succeeded by the Emperor's 3d Son, *Otho* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*. He sold it to the Emperor *Charles IV.* who gave it to his own Son *Wenceslaw*, who being elected Emperor, gave the Marquifate to his Brother *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, who was the 17th Marquis of this Catalogue; and succeeding to the Empire, gave the Marquifate to *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nuremberg* in 1417, who was the first of the present Line and Catalogue.

The *Atlas Historique*, before he comes to the History of the Princes of this Line, makes the following Remarks; That the Electorate was possessed 170 Years by the Posterity of *Albert* of *Anhalt*; which failing, the Marquifate return'd as a Fief of the Empire to the Emperor *Louis* of *Bavaria* above-mention'd, who, without any Regard to the Pretensions of the Family of *Anhalt*, from whom the extinguish'd Branch descended, gave it to his own Son *Louis*, who for 26 Years was engaged in War with an Impostor, who, some say, was Son to a Miller; and others, of a Baker, and pretended to be *Waldemar* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, who died in Wars abroad. This Impostor was supported by the King of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Brunswick*, *Pomerania*, *Mecklenburg*, and the Princes of *Anhalt*, who were Enemies to *Louis* on the Account above-mentioned. But the Imposture being discovered, the Emperor *Charles IV.* confirmed *Louis* above-mentioned; After whom it came to *Wenceslaw* and *Sigismund*, as above, who not being able to restore the Peace of the Electorate, it was given to *Frederick V.* Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, as has been said already, who undertook to pacify the Troubles, for which he was to have 100000 Gold Crowns of *Hungary*, and to restore the Electorate to *Sigismund* and *Wences-*

slaw; but *Frederick* having reduc'd the Country, was by *Sigismund* and the Diet made Elector, on Condition, That if the Emperor paid him 400000 Crowns, the Country should again return to *Sigismund* and his Heirs; and if they fail'd, to *Wenceslaw* and his: And after this Treaty, the *Atlas* says, That by Letters Patents in 1415, the Electorate was discharged from their Oath to *Sigismund* and *Wenceslaw*; and two Years after, *Frederick* was solemnly proclaim'd Elector in the Council of *Constance*, with the following Ceremonies, which shew the Form of creating an Elector.

Some Barons and Gentlemen rode three times thro' the Streets, with two Standards, and Trumpets playing: After which all the Princes came to the Burgrave's House with little Colours, bearing the Elector's Arms, and conducted him to the Market-place, where a Scaffold was erected. Upon which the Emperor mounted with his Crown on his Head, and sitting down on his Throne, with the Electors in their Robes on both Sides, the Burgrave came up, attended by two Officers with the Standards of the Marquifate, and of the Burgraviate; the Burgrave kneeling, desir'd the Emperor to create him Margrave, and to invest him with the Marquifate, which, after the Burgrave took the Oath, was done accordingly, by putting into his Hands the Standard of the Marquifate, the Gold Apple or Globe, and the Scepter, and by girding a Sword to his Side: After which he was proclaim'd Elector of *Brandenburg*, and Arch-Chamberlain of the Empire. And thus the Family of *Anhalt*, which had acquir'd two Electorates, viz. that of *Brandenburg* in 1142, and that of *Saxony* in 1180, had the Misfortune to lose both in less than one Age. *Frederick*, after his Investiture, reduc'd several Towns belonging to the Electorate; and while he was thus engaged, *Louis* of *Bavaria* invaded his ancient Dominions of *Nuremberg*, which he reveng'd by a War upon him, in which he acquir'd great Reputation. During this Expedition, the Emperor made *Frederick* Marquis of *Misnia*, Elector of *Saxony*, to whom *Frederick* quitted *Wirtemberg*, and all the Electoral Territory of *Saxony*, on Condition that he should pay him a certain Sum for having defended it. In 1426, the War with the

Hussites began, wherein *Frederick* was declared General. This War proved ruinous to *Bohemia*, and to Part of the Elector's Dominions, which they invaded. The Duke of *Saxony* taking this Opportunity, did also make War upon *Frederick*, but was worsted. Those of *Magdeburg* and *Halle* having rebelled against their Bishops, and being proscribed by the Emperor, were afterwards reconciled by *Frederick* in 1435. The Elector being advanced in Years, resolved to settle his Affairs by his Will, and calling for his Sons, spoke to *John* his eldest thus: *I have observed that you love Peace and Ease, which you cannot enjoy if you possess the Electorate; therefore, if you agree to it, I will leave the Electorate to Frederick, your second Brother, who is more active and strong than you. I will leave you Voiland, Albert shall have what belongs to me in Franconia, and young Frederick a Part of the Marquisate.* *John* willingly agreed to it, thank'd his Father for taking Care that he should enjoy Peace and Quiet, and for laying the Weight and Burden of the Government on his Brother *Frederick*.

The Elector dying in 1440, *Frederick* II. succeeded, and was some Time after chosen King of *Poland*, upon the Death of *Ladislaus* their King at the Battle of *Warha* without Issue; but *Frederick* refus'd it, because *Ladislaus* had a Brother, who was Duke of *Lithuania*. After this the *Poles* besieged *Frankfort* on the *Oder*, where *Frederick* defeated them, and killed 3000 on the Spot. Soon after, *Podiebrat* King of *Bohemia*, and *Louis* Duke of *Bavaria*, made War upon him for *Lusatia*, which he possessed as a Fief of *Poland*; but this War was concluded by dividing the Country betwixt them. *Otto* III. Duke of *Stettin*, dying, *Frederick*, by Vertue of a former Agreement betwixt their Ancestors, demanded the Investiture of the Duchy of *Pomerania* from the Emperor *Frederick* III. but his Title was controverted by the Dukes of *Wolgast* as nearer of Kin. *Frederick* however took Possession by the Emperor's Consent: This occasion'd a troublesome War, which laid waste that Part of his Dominions called the *New Marg.* But a Peace was concluded at last by the Mediation of *Casimir* King of *Poland*. *Podiebrat* King of *Bohemia* being accus'd of Heresy, the Pope offer'd his Crown to *Frederick*, who

refus'd it. Being advanc'd in Years, and not able to bear the Fatigues of Government, he resign'd the Electorate, with the Emperor's Consent, to his Brother *Albert* and his Heirs, whom the Emperor did also invest with the Dutchies of *Pomerania* and *Stettin*, the Burgraviate of *Nuremberg*, the Principality of *Rugen*, and the Right to the Succession of *Mecklenburg*. *Frederick*, after his Resignation, went to *Franconia*, where he died, in the 58th Year of his Age, and was succeeded by his Brother *Albert* I. Dr. *Nicholson* says, That *Frederick* II. was, because of his peevish and cruel Temper, called the Marquis with Iron Teeth; but this does not agree with the Character given him by the *Atlas*, and seems rather to have proceeded from his Success in War.

Albert succeeded him in 1442, and was made General of the Empire at 24 Years of Age against the *Bohemians* and *Poles*, with whom he made a successful War. He gain'd also great Honour in a Tournament at *Augsburg*, being the only Man who was not dismounted. *Louis* the *Hump-back*, Son to *Louis* of *Bavaria*, being disinherited by his Father, courted *Frederick's* Alliance, by which he fought and took his Father, and would not release him till he paid him a considerable Ransom. In 1448, *Albert* had War with those of *Nuremberg*. Most of the Princes of the Empire took Part with him, and all the Imperial Towns sided with *Nuremberg*. In two Years, they fought 9 Battles, of which *Albert* gain'd 8; but both Parties were forc'd to give over for want of Money and Provisions. One of the *Nuremberg* Party being ask'd, Why so many made War upon one Man? He answer'd, That *Albert* alone possessed all the Riches and Strength of the Empire. He acquir'd such Reputation in this War, that he was afterwards made Arbitrator of all the Differences of the Empire. In 1461, he had War with *Louis* the *Rith*, D. of *Lower Bavaria*, for two Years, to support *Adolph* Count of *Nassau*, whom Pope *Pius* II. had made Archbishop of *Mentz*, and deprived *Theodorick* of *Uffenburg* of that Dignity; but the Cardinal of *Augsburg* did afterwards make up the Difference. He did all this, while his Brother was Elector. When he came to the Electorate, he apply'd himself to aggrandise his Family, and would

would have annex'd the Dutchy of *Stettin* to his Dominions; but by the Mediation of the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, he contented himself with what he had taken by Arms, and with the Dukes of *Pomerania* doing him Homage for the Dutchy of *Stettin*. For the better Support of his Family, he perswaded the Houses of *Hesse* and *Saxony* to enter into a Contract of mutual Succession betwixt the three Families, in case any of their Posterities happen'd to fail. After the Death of *Erick* Duke of *Wolgast*, his Son *Bogislas* refus'd Homage to *Albert*, and took Arms; but the Difference was made up, on Condition, That if the Male-Issue of the Dukes of *Pomerania* fail'd, *Albert's* should succeed. Soon after this he was made General by *Frederick III.* against *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, who besieg'd *Nuis*; but could not oblige him to raise the Siege. During this Expedition, he left the Government to his eldest Son, and afterwards confirmed him in it; and being advanc'd in Age, reserving only the Title of Elector, he retir'd to his Dominions in *Franconia*. The Emperor *Frederick III.* dying in 1486, *Albert*, notwithstanding his great Age, went to assist at the Election of a new Emperor; but died suddenly in a Bath. The Pope call'd him the *Achilles* of *Germany*, and others the *German Ulysses*. He had all the Qualities of a great General, and was admir'd by every body for his noble Mien, and great Eloquence, as well as for his Wisdom and Valour, having fought more Battles than any General of his Time. *Dr. Nicholson* says, he died at *Frankfort* in 1494; which is more like to be true, since the Emperor *Frederick III.* died, according to the *Atlas*, in 1493; and the Tree of the House of *Austria* says the same.

John I. succeeded his Father *Albert*. He was bred at the Court of his Uncle the Elector *Frederick II.* where there was great Care taken to teach him the Art of Government and War. His Uncle took him with him to the Wars of *Pomerania*; and when he was but 15 Years of Age, he was entrusted with the Administration of the Marquisate. A War happening betwixt *Casimir* King of *Poland*, his Son *Ladislaus*, and *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, *John*, by his Eloquence, brought them to an Accommodation. He was so remarkable for this Qua-

lity, that he was called the *German Cicero*. He likewise obliged the Duke of *Sagan* and the King of *Hungary* to raise the Siege of *Crossen*, and to leave the Dutchy of *Crossen*, and other Countries, as a Mortgage for the Dowry of his Sister, Widow to the Duke of *Glogau* in *Silesia*. After this, *John* contributed much to the Election of the Emperor *Maximilian*. His Money being exhausted by War, he laid an Excise upon Beer in his Dominions. This made the People of the *Old Marq* rebel, and kill some of his Officers, for which he depriv'd them of their Privileges. He became so extraordinary fat, that he was not able to bear it, and endanger'd his Life by attempting to make himself lean. He design'd to establish an University at *Frankfort*; but not being able to accomplish it, order'd his Successor *Joachim* to do it; and finding Death to approach, he sent for him, gave him pious Advice, recommended to him to take Care of his People, to do them Justice, and not to suffer his great Men to oppress them. He died in 1499. His Son *Joachim* succeeded, being scarce 16 Years of Age; and since, according to the *Golden Bull*, he could not take the Government upon him, he consulted the Elector of *Mentz*, who advis'd him to assume the Electoral Dignity notwithstanding. His Father took great Care of his Education, so that he was well instructed in all the Liberal Arts, and very well vers'd in the Art of Government. He establish'd the University of *Frankfort* according to his Father's Order in 1506. *Conrad Wimpia* was their first Rector, and form'd their Statutes. Above 1000 Scholars enter'd to it the first half Year. *Joachim's* Wisdom and Probity gain'd him the Esteem and Affection of all his Neighbours; and the *Hamburgers* trusted him with the Defence of their City. He severely punish'd some *Jews* for prophaning a Consecrated Host. *Louis* of *Erlikhausen*, Great Master of the *Tentonick* Order, sold to the Elector *Frederick II.* the *New Marq*; and *Albert the Great*, his Brother, when Master of that Order, made that Province Hereditary to *Joachim* and his Successors, because of the great Sums the Margraves of *Brandenburg* had laid out in Defence of the Order. In his Time, *Luther* began to preach in *Germany*; and the Emperor *Maximilian* dy-

ing, *Joachim*, and his Brother *Albert* Archbishop of *Mentz*, contributed much to the Election of *Charles V.* He likewise made Peace betwixt the Bishop of *Hildesheim* and the Dukes of *Brunswick*. At the Diet of *Worms*, he and the Elector of *Treves* endeavour'd to perswade *Luther* to retract what he had writ against the Pope, Cardinals, and the rest of the Clergy; which *Luther* refusing, he ask'd him, If he could advise him to any better Method for restoring the Peace of the Church? To which *Luther* answer'd, That he must go and consult at the Feet of *Gamaelel*, which very much disoblig'd the Elector. *Joachim* was so great a Justiciary, that a Merchant being robb'd near *Berlin*, ty'd and thrown into a Pit, whence the Robber thought he could never escape, got out however, and hearing much of the Elector's Justice, complain'd to him, and charg'd it on one of the Courtiers: Upon which, *Joachim* order'd 'em all to be brought before the Merchant, who discovering the Criminal, demanded Justice, and the Courtier confessing it, was put to Death. He had some Difference with the Duke of *Pomerania*, which was accommodated by renewing the Treaty, That his Heirs should succeed, if the Male-Issue of *Pomerania* fail'd. At the Diet of *Augsburg* in 1530, he was chose to speak to the Emperor in the Name both of the Papists and Protestants, because of his Eloquence and Learning; which, with the Solidity of his Advice, was very much admir'd on that Occasion: And *Dr. Nicholson* says, he was the first who authoriz'd the Reformation in his Dominions. At his return from the Diet, he punish'd the Citizens of *Stendal*, who had abus'd the Deputies which the Princes his Sons had sent to accommodate some Differences, which had happen'd among them about Religion; but being stir'd up by a Monk, they assaulted the Deputies and Magistrates, who narrowly escap'd: For this, the Elector depriv'd the City of their Tolls, fin'd them in 10000 Crowns, and oblig'd them to repair the Damage they had done to Houses, &c. in the Tumult, abolish'd the Annual Feast of *Pantheleon*, which the Tradesmen had made use of to raise this Tumult, and condemned the Ringleaders to die; but at the Request of his Sons, he contented himself to banish

them and their Families. After which, he had no more Troubles during his Reign. To prevent any Difference among his Sons, he divided his Dominions betwixt them before his Death: *John* had the *New Mark*, and his eldest Son *Joachim* succeeded to the Electorate, and his other Dominions, after his Death, which happen'd in the 51st Year of his Age, and the 36th of his Reign.

Joachim II. succeeded in 1536. His Father took great Care to breed him up in Learning and Virtue. He acquir'd great Knowledge in the Languages and in the Scriptures, and surpass'd all the young Princes of the Empire in civil and pleasant Behaviour. Having thus accomplish'd himself, he went to the Court of the Emperor *Maximilian I.* who being the perfect Model of a good Sovereign, *Joachim* profited much by his Example. The Emperor, charm'd with his good Qualities, which were so like his own, betroth'd to him the *Infanta* of *Spain*, his Grand-Daughter, and promis'd himself a happy Posterity by this Match; but the Death of the Princess before the Consummation of the Marriage prevented it. This young Prince having always attended his Father at the Diets, and frequently acted as his Deputy, was a perfect Master of Government, and of all the Affairs of the Empire, which procur'd him universal Respect. *Soliman I.* Emperor of the *Turks*, having invaded and over-run most of *Austria*, *Joachim*, with 1000 of his own Horse, join'd the Army of *Philip* Prince *Palatine*, and charged the *Turks* with so much Courage at the Battle of *Leopold*, that he kill'd one of their Basha's, and put them to flight. This did so much advance him in the Esteem of *Charles V.* that he made him a Knight of the *Golden Fleece*, an Honour in those Days conferred upon none but such as had distinguish'd themselves in Battle. He married first *Magdalen* of *Saxony*, who dying in 1534, 2 Years after he married *Hedwige*, Daughter to *Sigismund* King of *Poland*; but the Death of his Father, happening at the same Time, prevented the Solemnities of the Marriage. As soon as he came to the Government, he join'd with those of the *Augsburg* Confession, *Elizabeth* of *Denmark*, his Mother, being a *Lutheran*. *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, and the Elector of *Saxony*, his Fathers-in-Law, and his

his Uncle *Albert* the Elector of *Mentz*; did all they could to hinder his doing so, but in vain. He enrich'd the University of *Francfort* with the Possessions of the Monks and Popish Clergy, and took Care, that those who were bred for the Church or State Employments, should be taught good Principles. His own Example polish'd his Subjects, and inspir'd them with Virtue. He reform'd the Corruptions of the Courts of Justice, and his Subjects liv'd in perfect Peace during his Reign. He preserv'd the Empire from the Invasion of the *Turks*; but was hinder'd by those who envy'd his Glory from doing any thing considerable against them, being kept short of Money and Provisions. He prevented the Execution of the Elector of *Saxony*, who was taken Prisoner, and condemn'd by *Charles V.* and interceded for the Landgrave of *Hesse*, who was made Prisoner by the Duke of *Alva*, contrary to Promise. He bravely oppos'd the *Interim* that was agreed upon at the Diet of *Augsburg* to be the Religion of the Empire, till a General Council should determine the Religious Differences. He and his Electress were sav'd by a special Providence, when the Floor of a Chamber fell under them at *Grimnitz* in 1549; when the Elector went thither to hunt. He hung by a Plank till his Officers rescued him; and the Electress catch'd hold of the Horns of a Deer that hung against the Wall, till she was also rescued. The Emperor refusing to set the Landgrave of *Hesse* at Liberty, *Joachim* join'd with *Maurice* of *Saxony*, and defeated the Emperor's Army commanded by *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, so famous in History, which obliged the Emperor to set the Landgrave at Liberty. He renewed the Treaty of mutual Succession betwixt his own Family and those of *Saxony* and *Hesse*. *Ferdinand I.* having assembled the Electors at *Francfort*, to have his Son *Maximilian II.* chosen King of the *Romans*, he honour'd *Joachim* so far, as to go out of the City with the rest of the Princes to meet him. *Ferdinand* dying in 1564, *Joachim* wept for Grief at the Troubles he foresaw would attend the Death of that peaceable Prince. He was reckon'd to have something of a Spirit of Prophecy, and his Predictions are observ'd by Historians to have come justly to pass. He procur'd the Title of Duke of

Crossen in *Silesia*, and the Right of Succession to the Dutchy of *Prussia*. He was a very Religious Prince, and a little before his Death did meditate much on our Saviour's Passion, and form'd a Draught of it with his own Hand. He died suddenly of Poison given by a Jew in a Glass of Sack, in the 66th Year of his Age, and 36th of his Reign. The Emperor *Frederick* esteem'd him so highly, that at his Death, he order'd his Sons to take his Advice as that of a Father.

His Son *John George I.* succeeded in 1561. He had a very good Education, and made his first Campaign in the Army of *Charles V.* against the Protestant Princes, who enter'd into the League of *Smalcald*. He signaliz'd himself on several Occasions, particularly at the Siege of *Wirtemberg* in 1546. He had a numerous Family, which made him look carefully after his private Affairs, but without neglecting those of the Publick. *Philip II.* of *Spain* made him one of his Privy-Council, and General of his Army, both which Posts he enjoyed under *Maximilian II.* till he came to the Electorate upon the Death of his Father, when he banish'd the Jews out of his Dominions, and order'd him that poison'd his Father to be put to a cruel Death. Finding himself in great Debt, he obtain'd Money to pay them from a Meeting of his States. He renewed all the Constitutions that were for the Good of his Subjects, of whom he took great Care, and preserved their Religious and Civil Liberties. He was so much esteem'd for his Probity, that the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, the Duke of *Anhalt*, and the Elector of *Saxony*, appointed him by their Wills to be Tutors to their Sons, which he executed with great Justice. He endeavour'd to obtain Freedom for the Protestants in the Electorate of *Cologne*, after the Pope had excommunicated their Elector for turning Protestant. He took great Care to have Religion and Justice flourish in his own Dominions, and supported his Grandson *John George*, who was chosen Administrator of the Bishoprick of *Strasburg*, and died piously in 1598, in the 72d Year of his Age, and the 27th of his Reign. He was a Mild, Industrious, Eloquent, Judicious, and Bountiful Prince, had excellent Parts, a noble Mien, and good Face.

He was succeeded by his Son *Joachim Frederick*, whose Preceptor was the Learned *Hübner*, whom he afterwards made one of his Counsellors. During his Minority, he was chosen Bishop of *Havelberg* and *Lubeck*; but his Father took Care of the Administration. At 19 Years of Age, he went to the Court of the Emperor *Maximilian II.* follow'd him in his Wars in *Hungary*; and upon the Death of the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, was made Administrator of that Archbishoprick, and brought in the Reformation there, where his Government was pleasing to all his Subjects. He liv'd in perfect Amity with his neighbouring Princes, and frequently reconcil'd their Differences. He assisted *Henry IV. of France* against those of the League. After his Father's Death, his Subjects receiv'd him with as great Joy as those of *Magdeburg*, whom he had govern'd so happily for 30 Years, had Grief at his Departure, and out of Love to him, chose his youngest Son in his stead. The Emperor *Redolphus*, who esteem'd him highly, readily invested him, and granted his other Demands. He govern'd his Subjects with great Mildness and Justice; and being taken ill as he was singing Psalms in his Coach, he died suddenly, recommending himself devoutly to God, in the 62d Year of his Age, and 11th of his Reign, in 1609; and was succeeded by

John Sigismund, who was bred up in Learning at *Strasburg*; and in the 19th Year of his Age, was married to *Ann* Dutchess of *Prussia*, Presumptive Heiress of the Dutchy of *Juliers*. He was confirm'd in the Dutchy of *Prussia* by the King and Diet of *Poland*; but not without Opposition by some of the *Polish* Grandees: And the Duke of *Juliers* and *Cleves*, Uncle to his Electress, dying, he took Possession of those Dutchies in her Right; but was opposed by the Duke of *Neuburg*, and at length came to an Agreement to govern jointly. He enter'd into the Union of the Protestant Princes, against the League made by the *Papish* Princes in the Empire, and died in 1619, in the 48th Year of his Age, and 12th of his Reign; and was succeeded by his Son

George William, who was born in 1595, and bred in the University of *Frankfort*. During his Father's Life, he had the Administration of *Juliers* and *Cleves*. He

was very zealous for the Protestant Religion; and in an Assembly held at *Leipsick*, endeavour'd an Union betwixt the *Lutherans* and *Calvinists*, which came to nothing, because of the Peevishness and Stubbornness of some Churchmen. After the Battle of *Prague*, where *Frederick IV.* Elector *Palatine*, was defeated, *George William*, and the Elector of *Saxony*, procur'd Peace in the Empire for some Time: But the Success of the House of *Austria* having made them attempt the Liberties of the Empire, and the Ruin of the Protestants, it brought on the War betwixt *Gustavus Adolphus* and the Emperor; during which, the Dominions of *Brandenburg* suffer'd very much; and all the Elector could do, was to defend his best Places. He dy'd in 1640, and was succeeded by his Son

Frederick William, who provided for the Ease of his Subjects by a Treaty of Neutrality with the *Swedes*, who by the Peace of *Münster* were obliged forthwith to evacuate *Pomerania*, and the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*; but the *Swedish* Deputies delayed it by Tricks till 1653; nor could it then be procured but by the Elector's quitting that now called *Swedish Pomerania*, and several Bailiwicks, with the Isle of *Rügen*, to the *Swedes*; for which he had, but much short of an Equivalent, the Archbishoprick of *Magdeburg*, the Bishopricks of *Halberstadt* and *Camin*, and the Principality of *Minden*, with their Dependencies. He offer'd 2000000 Crowns, and all those Dominions, for that Part of *Pomerania* he was obliged to yield; but in vain. He bravely maintain'd the Prerogatives of the Electors as to the Ceremonial in the Diet of *Frankfort*, and was very zealous in supporting the Interest of Religion, and particularly of the *Calvinists*. In 1656, he was oblig'd, for the Preservation of *Prussia*, to join with the *Swedes* against the *Poles*. But the King of *Denmark* having declared War against *Charles Gustavus* of *Sweden*, he was forced to leave *Poland* to defend his own Country; so that the Burden of the *Polish* War falling upon the Elector, he made it up by a Treaty with the *Poles*, by which they acquitted him from the Homage due to their Crown for *Prussia*, and quitted him the Fiefs of *Lauenburg*, *Botow*, and the Town of *Elbing*, on Condition that he should restore the latter on their paying him 400000 Crowns. After

ter the Death of *Ferdinand III.* in 1657, the *French* were for advancing the Elector of *Bavaria* to the Imperial Throne; but the Elector of *Brandenburg* adhering to the House of *Austria*, the last Emperor *Leopold* was chosen, tho the Elector of *Bavaria* had before-hand gained 3 Votes. He afterwards took Part with the *Poles*, the H. of *Austria*, and the *Danes*, against *Sweden*, after having first endeavour'd to accommodate Matters betwixt the *Swedes* and *Poles*; but not being seconded by the *Dutch*, as he expected, a Treaty was concluded at *Oliva* in 1660. After this he apply'd himself to the Affairs of Peace, to reconcile himself with the Princes at variance with him, and made an Alliance with *France* and *England* for his own Security. The *French* King having seiz'd the Principality of *Orange*, the Elector being Tutor of the young Prince, sent an Embassy to plead for its Restoration. In 1666, he made a perpetual Treaty with the Prince of *Nenburg* about the Succession of *Juliers* and *Cleves*, and afterwards got the latter perpetually annexed to his own Family. He assisted the Emperor against the *Turks*, made Peace betwixt the Dukes of *Lunenbourg*, who had fallen out amongst themselves, and likewise betwixt the *English*, the *Dutch*, and the Bishop of *Munster*. In 1672, the *French* having declared War against the *Dutch*, he sent Assistance to the latter, and his Troops join'd those of the Emperor under General *Montecuculi*, who disagreeing from the Elector's Measures, they did little more than give a bare Diversion to the *French*. On some Discontents by the Emperor and States, he made a Treaty with *France* in 1673; but in 1674, renewed his Alliance with the States against *France*, and went into *Alsace* with 20000 Men; but the Imperial General *Bournoville* thwarting his Measures, little was done that Campaign. In the mean time the *Swedes*, at the Solicitation of *France*, invaded *Pomerania* and the *Marq.* Upon which the Elector return'd from *Alsace* against the *Swedes*, over whom he gain'd a compleat Victory at *Faght-Berlin*, and took from them the Isle of *Wollin*, *Wolgast*, and *Anclam*, one of the strongest Forts of *Pomerania*. He also took *Stettin*, after a famous Siege; of which, in its Place. In 1678, he made himself Master of the

Isle of *Rugen*, took *Stralsund* and *Gripwald*, and chas'd the *Swedes* out of all *Pomerania*. They, to divert him, invaded *Prussia*; but the Elector, in the middle of the Winter, passed the Lake or Bay of *Courland*, which falls into the *Baltick*, with his Army and Artillery upon the Ice, where it was 3 Miles broad, surpris'd and defeated them; so that of 16000, scarce 5000 escaped to *Livonia*. After the War of 1672, he was left out of the Treaty of *Nimeguen*; and Peace being concluded among the other Princes, and the *French* joining with the *Swedes*, he was obliged by the Treaty of *St. Germain* to quit all his Conquests to them, for which the *French* King, by a secret Article, paid him 300000 Crowns towards his Charge of the War. The King of *Spain* refusing to pay him his Arrears, he put out 8 Vessels, that took a rich Merchant-Ship on the Coast of *Spain*, by which he did himself Justice. In order to enlarge the Trade of his Subjects, he built a Fortress in *Guinea*, called *Grand Fredericksburg*, and made a Canal betwixt the *Sprae* and the *Oder*, by which he facilitated the Commerce of the Merchants of *Silesia* with those of *Hamburg* and his own Dominions. He imbelish'd the Town of *Berlin* with fine Buildings, erected an Arsenal there, built a new Town, put his Dominions in a better Condition than ever they had been, abolish'd the Subsidies on Estates; and in lieu of it, laid a Tax on Consumption, which had a very good Effect. He acquir'd greater Authority than any of his Predecessors, was lov'd by his Subjects, and dreaded by his Enemies, by keeping always a good Army on foot. He likewise distinguish'd himself by his Piety, and endeavour'd a Reconciliation betwixt the *Lutherans* and *Calvinists*; but in vain. He was very charitable and bountiful to the *French* Refugees, employ'd their Nobility and Officers in his Court, and establish'd great Numbers of 'em in his Dominions; and had so much Compassion on those Sufferers, that he said, He would rather sell his Plate, than they should want Subsistence. He was so affable, that all People had ready Access to him to demand Justice; for his chief Care was to prevent his Subjects being oppress'd. He applied himself so much to the Affairs of Government, that he would

would spend Hours together in reading Letters from all Parts of his Dominions. His Courage was signaliz'd on many Occasions at the Head of his Armies; and tho' he liv'd in great Splendour, was an Enemy to Luxury and Superfluity; but was very generous in rewarding Services done him. He was very exemplary in his Life, and died April 29, 1688. in the 68th Year of his Age, and 48th of his Reign.

His Son *Frederick* succeeded, and soon after had an Interview with the Elector of Saxony, the Duke of Hanover, and the Landgrave of Hesse-Cassel, about their own Interests, and the Prince of Orange's Expedition to England, which had been concerted with his Father before. At the same Time the French King, to traverse that Design, made War upon the Empire, contrary to his Truce, wherein the Dauphin took *Philipsburg*, and other Places of the *Palatinate*. Next Year the Elector form'd the Siege of *Bonn*, and took it, having narrowly escap'd being surpris'd by a French Detachment, wherein he gave great Proofs of his Valour. In 1690, King *William* having succeeded in his Expedition, sent him the Order of the Garter by *James Johnson Esq*; afterwards Secretary of State for Scotland. In 1693, his Troops distinguish'd themselves at the Battle of *Landen*, under the Conduct of his Brother Prince *Charles*, of which King *William* sent him an Account under his own Hand. In 1694, he sent Assistance to the Duke of *Savoy*, under his two Brothers Prince *Charles* and Prince *Albert*. In 1695, his Troops contributed much to the taking of *Namure*, of which King *William* gave him an Account again with his own Hand: Upon which the Elector came to the *Hague* to congratulate his Majesty, whom, with the Duke of *Zell*, he entertain'd splendidly at *Cleves*. After King *Augustus* was chosen King of *Poland*, the Elector seiz'd the Town of *Elbing* for the Security of the Money due to his Father, as above-mentioned. In 1700, the Elector considering the Antiquity and Dignity of his House, from whence many Crown'd Heads in several Parts of Europe had proceeded, and being himself able to support his Splendour of a Crown, took upon him the Royal Dignity the 17th of December that Year, with extraordinary Ce-

remony. The *Swedes* having enter'd *Poland*, his Majesty found himself obliged to increase his Army to 40000 Men. King *William* dying in 1702, his *Prussian* Majesty, as descended from *Rene of Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, claim'd Part of his Inheritance; as to which, the Controversy betwixt his *Prussian* Majesty, and the Prince of *Nassau* of *Friseland*, whom King *William* left his Heir, is not yet determin'd. This occasioned the King of *Prussia* to take a Journey to the Dutchy of *Cleves*, to keep the States of *Holland* from being too much discouraged by the Death of King *William*; and he encouraged the Allies to besiege *Koyserswaert*. The French King having seiz'd *Orange* after King *William's* Death, his *Prussian* Majesty kindly received the Protestants who fled from thence into his Dominions. In 1704, his Troops having contributed much to the glorious Victory of *Hochstet* under the Prince of *Anhalt*, Prince *Eugene* gave his Majesty an Account of it by a Letter. In 1705, his Majesty erected an Academy at *Berlin* for the Education of his Youth of Quality, in suitable Exercises, and Learning. That same Year he lost his Queen, Sister to the Elector of *Hanover*. In 1706, he had an Account of the Victory of *Turin*, where his Troops, under the Prince of *Anhalt*, distinguish'd themselves with great Bravery. In 1707, he succeeded the Dutchess of *Nemours* in the Principality of *Neuchassel*, and County of *Vallengin*, by the Interposition of the Queen of *Great Britain* and the Allies, notwithstanding the French King's Opposition. That same Year, the Prince Royal his Son married the Princess of *Hanover*; and in November following, he had a Son by her, whom his Grandfather created Knight and Prince of *Orange*.

His Titles are, *Frederick*, by the Grace of God, King of *Prussia*, Margrave of *Brandenburg*, Arch-Chamberlain and Elector of the Empire, Prince of *Orange*, of *Magdeburg*, *Cleves*, *Juliers*, *Bergen*, *Stettin*, *Pomerania*, *Cassubia*, of the *Vandals* and *Crossen* in *Silesia*, Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, Prince of *Halberstat*, *Minden*, and *Camin*, Count of *Hohenzollern*, *Marc*, *Ravensberg*, *Lawenburg*, *Botow*, *Arley* and *Breda*, and Count of *Neuchassel*.

His Pretensions are, 1. To all Pomerania, of which he has only the lower Part. 2. To the Succession of the late King William, as Prince of Orange. 3. To the Succession of the last Duke of Juliers, Cleves, and Mons. 4. To the Dutchy of Gelderland, and County of Zutphen, which belong'd to the Dukes of Juliers. 5. To the Burgraviate of Nuremberg. 6. To the Town and Territory of Kizingen in Franconia, seiz'd by the Bishop of Wurtzburg in 1626. 7. To the Principality of Lignitz in Silesia, by a Contract of Succession made with Prince Frederick in 1549. 8. Some Rights to the Abbies of Quedlinburg and Erfurt.

The principal Branches of this Family are, those of Bareith-Culmbach, and Anspach. They both came from the Elector John George, who died in 1598. The present Prince of Culmbach is Christian Henry, born in 1661. From Christian I. of this Family, came the Branch of Bareith, the Prince of which is Christian Ernest.

The Branch of Anspach came from the same John George; the present Prince is William Frederick, born in 1703.

There were several other Branches; but they are extinguished.

The present Branches have the same Titles and Pretensions with the Royal Family, except that of King; and there is a Right of Succession among them.

Another of the Branches is that of Hohen-zollern, which is as old as Charlemagne's Time; the present Prince is Frederick William, born in 1663. From this Branch came the Burgraves of Nuremberg, from whence the Royal Family is descended; and from it proceeded also that of Sigmaringen, whose present Prince is Francis Anthony.

The Arms of the Royal Family are, *Argent*, an *Eagle Spread Sable*, Crown'd with a Royal Crown, for Prussia. *Gules*, 1. 4. *fac'd* Or; Or, 2. 3. with a *Cornet Azure*, the whole surmounted with an *Escutcheon Chequee*, Or and *Azure*, for Orange. *Azure*, a *Scepter Or*, for the Dignity of Elector. *Argent*, an *Eagle Gules*, for Brandenburg. Or, a *Lion Sable*, for Juliers. *Argent*, a *Lion Gules*, Crown'd Or, for Berg. *Coupe*, *Argent* and *Gules*, for Magdeburg. *Gules*, an *Escutcheon Argent*, in Form of a Heart, with Rays of a Carbuncle knotted and flower'd Or, illuminated

with *Vert*, for Cleves. Or, a *Lion Sable*, with a Border *Campone*, *Gules* and *Argent*, for Nuremberg. *Azure*, a *Griphin Gules*, for Stettin. Or, a *Griphin Gules*, for Cassubia. *Argent*, a *Griphin Gules*, for Pomerania. *Argent*, a *Griphin Sable*, for Wenden. *Argent*, a *Griphin Azure*, for Stargard. *Argent*, an *Eagle Sable*, for Crossen. Part *Argent* and *Gules*, for Halberstat. Or, *Pale-Chequee*, *Argent* and *Gules*, for March. *Argent*, a *Griphin Sable*, for Schwibussen. *Gules*, two *Cross-Keys Argent*, for Minden. *Argent*, 3 *Cheverons Gules*, for Ravensberg. *Gules*, a *Cross Argent*, for Camin. *Gules*, a *Griphin Argent*, for Wolgast. *Coupe*, in the first *Gules*, a *Griphin Argent*, and in the 2d *Chequee*, Or and *Gules*, for Usedom. Quarter'd *Argent* and *Sable*, for Hohenzollern. Or, a *Griphin Azure*, for Bareith. Or, two Trunks of Branches of Trees, *Saltyre-wise*, for Gatzkow. *Azure*, an *Eagle Argent*, for Rupin. *Azure*, an *Anchor Or*, for Lingen. Or, a *Front Sable*, for Meurs. *Gules*, a *Front indented Argent*, for Buren. *Gules* plain for the Regalia.

The Arms of the Branches of Bareith-Culmbach and Anspach, are the same for Brandenburg, Magdeburg, Prussia, Stettin, Pomerania, Cassubia, Wenden, Crossen, Schwibussen, Nuremberg, Halberstat, Minden, Zollern, Camin, and for the Regalia.

The Arms of Hohenzollern are, *Gules*, two *Scepters Or*, *Saltyre-wise*, for the Dignity of Arch-Chamberlain of the Empire. Quarter'd *Argent* and *Sable*, for Hohenzollern. *Azure*, a *Hart Or* *Passant*, upon 3 Clods of Earth *Vert*, for Sigmaringen.

The Religion of the Country is Lutheran; but since the present King of Prussia's Grandfather turn'd Calvinist, those of that Perswasion have increas'd in the Country, to which they are encourag'd by the Court; and many of their Chief Men are bred that Way in the Universities of Francfort and Coningsberg. The Elector George William having married a Calvinist Lady of the Palatine Family, Daughter to Frederick V. Dr. Nicholsson says, he publish'd an Edict to suppress *Lutheranism*; but was obliged to revoke it, for fear of a Rebellion, and content to have his own Worship in the Chapel of his Family; but now the Calvinists have many Churches in his Dominions. The Country is divided into the Old, Middle, and New Marks, or Marquisates.

The Alt-Marck,

HAS Mecklenburg on the N. Magdeburg on the S. Sax-Lauenburg, and Part of Lauenburg, on the W. and the Middle-Marck on the E. being about 30 English Miles in Length and Breadth. Some Authors call it the *Galiles of Germany*, because it abounds in Herbs and Fruit. 'Tis divided into 4 Petty Provinces; that on the E. called *Ostland*; that on the S. called *Angerland*, from the River *Anger*; that on the W. *Zerwandland*; and that on the N. *Zenland*.

The chief Towns in this Marck are, 1. *Stendal*, the Metropolis, on the River *Ucht*, by a large Forrest, in a pleasant Plain. It was built by the Emperor *Henry I.* in 920, and fortified by *Albert the Bear* in 1150. 'Tis a Hans-Town, neat and well built. Their Trade is in Corn and Linen; and being on the Road from *Hamburg* and *Lubeck* to *Magdeburg* and *Erfurt*, the Inhabitants receive a great Advantage by Travellers, and likewise from the Court of Judicature for the whole Country, which is kept here. It lies about 37 Miles N. W. of *Brandenburg*, and about 20 S. W. of *Havelberg*.

2. *Soltwedel*, a great Town on the Banks of the *Jetze*, half-way betwixt *Lunenbourg* and *Stendal*. Some derive its Name from a Temple dedicated to the Sun in the Times of Paganism. This City, with the neighbouring Territory, had formerly Princes of their own, who, as Historians say, did great Things against the *Huns*; but it has been long annexed to *Brandenburg*. The Town is divided into *Old* and *New*; the former is said to have been built by *Claudius Drusus*, and the latter by the Emperor *Henry I.* Their chief Trade is in *Beer*, which they transport to the neighbouring Country.

3. *Gardaleben* Dr. *Nicholson* thinks, it derives its Name from the many pleasant Gardens near it. Their chief Trade is *Beer* and *Hops*, both reckon'd as good as any in *Germany*, and are bought up by *Danish* and other Merchants. The City has 3 Hop-Poles laden with *Hops* for its Arms. It lies about 20 Miles S. W. of *Stendal*, and has an old Fort in the Neighbourhood, called in their Language *Iron Jaws*.

4. *Angermund*, or *Tangermund*, on the Mouth of the *Anger*, about 22 English Miles E. from *Gardaleben*. The Emperor *Charles IV.* built the Castle here when he bought the Marck in 1376, and resided in it some Years after. They have a considerable Trade for Corn, &c. by the *Elb* with *Hamburg*, and other Places.

5. *Osterburg*, on the *Vecht*, a small Town, which suffered much by Fire in 1491. 'Tis noted for a great Corn-Market.

Other Places of less Note are, 1. *Seehusen*, on the River *Alant*. 2. *Werben*, on the Conflux of the *Elb* and *Havel*, built by *Henry the Fowler*, from the Ruins of the old *Castellum Vari*. *Gustavus Adolphus* fancied it might be made the strongest Fortrefs in *Germany*, and order'd that Castle to be built, which now commands the Town. 3. *Havelburg*, upon the *Havel*, about 8 Miles from the *Elb*, formerly a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Magdeburg*; but since 1555, they have been *Lutherans*. 4. *Perleberg*, the chief Town of the County of *Prignitz*, in a fruitful and pleasant Plain. *Arneburg*, *Wittenberg*, *Bismarck*, *Smakenburg*, and others, which are rather Villages than Towns.

Middle-Marck,

Lies in the middle of the Marck, and is the largest of the 3 Divisions, being about 100 English Miles from the Banks of the *Elb* to the *Oder*.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Brandenburg*, which gives Name to the Marquisate, and was formerly the Metropolis. Some German Historians alledge it to have been built by one *Brenno*, 416 Years before our Saviour. Others say, 'twas built by one *Brando*, A.C. 230. 'Tis now considerable for little but its Antiquity. It stands in the middle of Marshes on the River *Havel*, which divides it into the *Old* and *New Town*. They are well supplied with Fish by a neighbouring Lake, 10 Miles long. It was made a Bishoprick by the Emperor *Otho I.* in 946; but has been Protestant since 1563. The Elector *George William* appropriated it to himself in 1628. The Streets of the upper Town are built cross-wise, and center in a fine Market-place; where there is a *Satana Rolandina*. In their great Church, there are many

many Monuments and Sepulchres of Princes and Bishops. It lies about 28 Miles W. from *Berlin*, and about 45 N. E. of *Magdeburg*.

2. *Berlin*. *Angelius a Werdenhagen*, a good Author, who has given us the Description of the *Hans-Towns*, derives its Name, as he does those of *Bernau*, *Beerwald*, *Bernstein*, and other Places of the *Marq*, from *Albert the Bear*. 'Tis pleasantly seated on the Banks of the *Spree*, which several Geographers have mistaken for *Ptolemy's Suvva*. On the other Side the River stands *Cohn*, on the *Spree*, so called to distinguish it from *Berlin*. Here the Elector has his Palace in the Castle built by *Joachim II.* but much enlarged and beautified by his Successors, so that 'tis now very stately, and, with the Grandeur of the Court, the Largeness of the Streets, and the regular Architecture of the Houses, makes the City very magnificent. The Elector *Frederick William* enlarged it one Third, by building the Town called *Dorothystat*, from the Name of his second Wife *Dorothy of Holstein-Glücksburg*. The Canals from this Town to the *Oder* and the *Elb*, make it one of the best Trading Towns in *Germany*, as 'tis one of the finest. It was built by *Albert the Bear* in 1152, and fortified by *John the Prudent* in 1222. The Works are very regular, and 'tis capable of holding out a long Siege. It lies about Lat. 52. 33. Long. 31. 58. about 73 Miles N. E. of *Magdeburg*, and 28 E. of *Brandenburg*, in a fruitful Country, with Vineyards on one Side, Marshes on another, and Woods full of Game on the third. The most remarkable Things in and about the Elector's Palace are, the Armory, Chambers of Rarities, Galleries with Multitudes of rare Pictures, many of them by the famous *Luke Kranach*, Gardens, and Water-Works. The present State of *Germany* says, the Palace is built of Free-Stone, and wash'd on one Side by the River *Spree*; and on the other, there's a great Gate into a large Piece of Ground where the Stables are. On the Front, there's the great Street which comes from *Frederickstat*; and behind it lie the Gardens, which are in good Order, and spacious. The Palace contains two great Courts, the first square, where the Officers of the Guard lodge: From thence there are great Stairs, by which one may ride on Horse-

back up to the Court, which is oval; and there are 4 other Stairs which lead to the several Parts of the Court. In the Palace, there are 10 great Apartments for the Royal Family, with great Numbers of Chambers for the Courtiers, all magnificently furnish'd, besides many Halls, Chambers, Closets, and Galleries, with whatever can be wish'd for Conveniency or Grandeur. In the Elector's Apartment, there's extraordinary rich Furniture of massy Plate, Pictures, and other great Curiosities, especially a large Cabinet, full of ancient, rare, and valuable Medals, with abundance of other curious Pieces. The Electress's Apartment abounds with Pictures of the best Masters. There is one great Chamber full of Pictures, done by *Van Dyke*; among which, that of the Holy Supper is reckon'd to be the best ever he did; and the unailing our Saviour from the Cross, done so to the Life, as to move Compassion in all that see it. There's another of the Wise Men that came to worship our Saviour, and a Picture of all the Royal Family of *England*. The Gallery, which is above Fifty Paces long, is full of Pictures by the best *Italian* Masters, one of them the Head of our Lord by the famous *Raphel de Urbino*, valued at Fifty Thousand Crowns. Joining to the Palace on the Side of the Garden, is the Elector's Library, dispos'd in excellent Order, and said to be equal to the best in *Europe*. The great Stables have room for 400 Horses, of which the Elector has above 3000 of his own, having Querries in all his Dominions to breed and take care of them. His Arsenal here is reckon'd one of the best furnish'd in *Europe*, besides what he has elsewhere. In short, his Court is reckon'd one of the most magnificent in *Christendom*, and Strangers are entertain'd there with great Civility, according to their Quality. He is reckon'd to have 2500 Gentlemen belonging to his Court, fit for Command in the Field; and the Troops of his Household are above 8000. He has 6 or 7 supreme Courts of Judicature for trying all Causes in his Dominions, well supplied with Judges; and his Countries are well furnish'd with an able and learned Clergy. He presides in Council himself, and in his Absence the Electoral Prince; next to whom sits the Prince of *Anhalt*. His Father's Annual Revenues

were computed at 15000000 of Livres; and he left his Successors in a Way of augmenting 'em. His Dominions are reckon'd 300 French Leagues in Length; and his Father, in 4 Months time, arm'd 20000 Foot, and 4000 Horse, in his own Dominions, without dreining his Garisons: So that upon the whole, it may be reasonably concluded, That, next to the House of Austria, he is the most powerful Prince of the Empire.

3. *Francfort* on the *Oder*. 'Tis said to have been built about 146, by *Sumno*, a Prince of the *Franks*, who pursued the *Vandals* hither, and planted a Colony of his own People here. In 1253, the Elector *John I.* and his Brother *Otto*, rebuilt and enlarged the Town above a Third. In 1379, the Elector *Sigismund* granted them large Privileges, upon their entering into the Society of the *Hans-Towns*. We have mention'd already, That *Joachim I.* founded their University, and supplied them with Professors from *Leipsick*; since which, they have had several Learned Men. 'Tis divided into two by the *Oder*, over which they have a large Wooden Bridge. The Streets are large and well built; The Market-place spacious and stately; and they have three Annual great Fairs. The Protestant Religion was establish'd here in 1538. It lies about 45 Miles S. of *Berlin*, about Long. 34. Lat. 52. 37. Without the Gates, there's the Ruins of an ancient *Carthusian* Monastery, of which *Joannes ab Indagine*, reckon'd to be Author of 300 Treatises on different Subjects, was Prior.

4. *Spandaw*, on the Conflux of the *Havel* and *Spree*, which makes it very strong; but of no great Note otherwise.

5. *Oranienburg*, about 20 Miles N. E. from *Berlin*, where the Elector has a Country-House. This Place affords the greatest Variety of Pleasures of any in his Dominions, being encompassed on every Side with pleasant Parks and Forrests, well stock'd with all manner of Game.

6. *Ruppin*, on the little River called *Rhine*, which divides it into the Old and New Towns. 'Tis the Chief of the County of that Name, and had formerly Lords of its own, who dying without Issue in 1524, *Joachim I.* purchas'd it.

7. *Potzdam*, about 12 Miles S. W. of *Ber-*

lin, where the Elector has a Country-House, that he makes use of in Summer.

8. *Lebus*, on the *Oder*, formerly a Bishoprick, founded by *Miceflaus*, the first Christian Prince of *Poland*, about 965. It embrac'd the Reformation in 1555, and the Elector of *Brandenburg* united it to his Dominions in 1628, and, as Bishop of *Lebus*, is Chancellor of the University of *Francfort*.

9. *Furstenwalt*, a little pleasant City on the *Spree*.

10. *Prenslow*. 11. *Strasburg*. 12. *Templin*. Three well fortified Towns in that called the *Ucker Marck*. The first is well supplied with Fish from that called the *Ucker Sea*. They belong'd formerly to the Dukes of *Pomerania*; but were seiz'd by the Elector *Frederick I.* in 1424.

The New-Marck,

Lies betwixt the River *Warta* and *Pomerania*, and is divided from the *Middle-Marck* by the *Oder*. 'Tis about 100 Miles in Circuit, and belong'd formerly to the *Teutonic* Knights, from whom it was purchas'd by the Family of *Brandenburg* in the 13th Century; but they had not peaceable Possession of it till the 16th. The Country abounds with Corn and Pasture, more than any other Place of the *Marq.* On the Banks of the *Oder* they have Vineyards, but of no great Account; and the Boors find now and then Quantities of Corn and Precious Stones, which they sell for little.

The chief Towns of this Country are, 1. *Custrin*, on the *Oder*, 18 Miles N. of *Francfort*. It was only a Fishing-Village till the Elector *John*, after returning from the Wars under *Charles V.* fortified it in 1537; so that 'tis now the Key of the *New-Marck*. *Gustavus Adolphus* besieg'd it in vain in 1631, being the first Design of that sort on which he miscarried. 'Tis strong by Nature as well as Art, being situated in a Marsh on the Conflux of the *Oder* and *Warta*. It has an Arsenal well furnish'd, and a Citadel, the strongest of the Country; so that 'tis reckon'd impregnable. The Burghers have neat and well furnish'd Houses, and the Market-place is the best in the *Marq.*

2. *Falkenburg*, a Town with a strong Castle, on the Frontiers of *Pomerania*.

3. *Dresen*,

3. *Dreyfen*, a Town on the Conflux of the *Notex* and the *Trage*, near the Frontiers of *Poland*.

4. *Lansberg*, on the *Warta*, above 30 Miles N. E. from *Francfort*. 'Tis conveniently situated for Trade, which consists much in casting of Iron Ordnance. It was twice taken by the *Swedes* during the *German War*.

5. *Sunneberg*, on the same River, formerly the Residence of the Bailiffs of the Order of *Malta*, till the Electors seiz'd it in the 16th Century, and assum'd the Power to present the Bailiffs, and dispose of their Commanderies.

6. *Sternberg*, Capital of a County on the Frontiers of *Poland*, about 25 Miles E. of *Francfort*.

Buno, in his Notes on *Cluverius*, says from *Aventinus*, That most of this Marq was fold to the Emperor *Charles IV.* by *Otho* of *Bavaria*, for 200000 Pieces of Gold, which *Otho* afterwards spent in the Castle of *Wolfstein* on a Baker's Wife, whom he debauch'd.

P O M E R A N I A.

DR. Nicholson says, the Name comes from its Situation on the Sea-shore, both in the *Sclavonick* and *High-Dutch* Tongues; the first calling it *Pomer*, and the latter *Pomerce*. The common Name is *Pomeran*. Historians say, it was formerly subject to *Poland*, but annexed to the Empire by *Frederick Barbarossa*. It was anciently of a much larger Extent, including *Pomerellia* and *Cassubia*; called *Back Pomerland*, which has been for a long Time in Possession of the *Poles*; and the present Dutchy is that which was then called *Fore Pomerland*. The Dukes of *Pomeran* did likewise possess that Part of *Brandenburg* now called *Uckermark*; and the greatest Share of the *New Mark*. Their Dominions reach'd further also into the *Baltick*, which, with Part of the Isle of *Rugen*, has been swallow'd up by the Sea.

This Country, according to *Moll's Map*, is about 192 Miles from E. to W. and about 70, where broadest, from N. to S. *Sanfon* makes it 210, and much about the same Breadth as the former. *Buno* on *Cluverius* says, it has *Poland* on the E. the Dut-

chy of *Mecklenburg* on the W. the *Baltick* on the N. and the Marq. of *Brandenburg* on the S. The principal Rivers are, the *Oder*, which falls by three Mouths into the *Baltick*, the *Pen*, *Rega*, *Perfant*, *Wiper*, and the *Stolp*. *Cluverius* divides it into 7 Parts or Dutchies, viz. *Wenden*, *Stettin*, *Gutschkow*, *Wolgast*, *Usedom*, *Rugen*, and *Bart*.

Their Air is reckon'd the coldest in *Germany*. Their Soil in most Parts is sandy and barren, and their Corn-Fields near the Shore are frequently overwhelm'd with Sand: Yet the Valley near the City *Piritz* abounds so much in Corn, that it not only supplies the Country, but in fruitful Years furnishes great Quantities for Export. They have few high Mountains, but many large Woods and Forrests, well stock'd with Game, as Deer, Wild-Boars, Hares, Foxes, Wolves, Wild-Horses, Bulls, and Beavers: Their Woods and Lakes furnish them with Plenty of Land and Water Fowl, so that they reckon 20 Sorts of Wild-Ducks; and their Towns of *Stettin*, *Stralsund*, and other Ports, bring them all Sorts of Foreign Commodities. They have such Plenty of Fresh and Salt-Water Fish, that some of their Historians say, the Duke of *Pomeran* had 5000 Rix-Dollars in one Year from Customs on Fish caught in the great *Haff* or Bay below *Stettin*, and the Lake of *Lassan*; and that 30000 Crowns worth are taken Annually at those two Places. The Fish in the *Haff* are Salmon and Lampries; some of 'em of an incredible Bulk. About *Gripswald* and *Rugen*, they have a good Herring-fishing, but in no other Place of the Country; and in the Lake *Maddüje* near *Colbatz*, they have a large broad Fish, called *Musen*, that's found no where else in the Empire.

Dr. Nicholson mentions several other Rivers, and abundance of Lakes; the chief of which are, *Rekenitz*, that separates this Country from *Mecklenburg*, forms a kind of Sea near *Damgarten*, and falls into the *Baltick* at *Dars*. He adds, That there are many large and fair Meadows betwixt the Branches of the *Oder*, which, after it passes by *Zege-north* and *Shwantwitz*, forms a vast Fresh-Water Ocean, 16 Miles broad, and 16 long, called by the Natives the *Great Fresh Haff*, from whence it falls into the Sea in 3 Currents, which make as many safe Harbours: The *Divenow*, *Swine*, and *Pencmund*. He adds,

adds, That *Pomeran* affords as great Quantities of Fruit, and as many Sorts, as any Province in *Germany*. They have no Wine of their own Growth, but excellent Beer of several Sorts, as the Bitter Beer of *Stettin*, the Mum of *Gripswald*, and the Stout of *Wollin*, which Mariners transport to other Nations. They have no Mines, but some of Iron in *Upper Pomeran*. The Sea casts up Amber in some Places, that every one is allow'd to gather and sell as they please, which the Nobility of *Prussia* do not allow to the common People of that Country.

The People are reckon'd as quick and stout as any in *Germany*; but are charg'd on the other hand with being credulous, prodigal, and intemperate in Drink, says *Dr. Nicholson*. *Cromer* gives this Character of the ancient Inhabitants; That they were Strangers to Deceit, Theft, or Robbery, lock'd up nothing, were hospitable to all Strangers according to their Ability, and so kind to one another, that there were no Beggars among them: But during the Times of Paganism, they allow'd Fathers to kill their Daughters, if they had more Children than they could maintain; but would by no means do so by their Males. This seems inconsistent however with the other Part of their Character of being so charitable to one another.

The ancient Inhabitants, among whom were the *Rugii*, *Rendigni*, and *Longideduni*, had for many Centuries their own Princes; but we have little of their History. The first we meet with upon any good Record is *Barnimus*, of the ancient Family of the *Gryphones*, frequently mention'd in their Annals, and the Country bears still a Gryphon for their Arms; but whether they had their Name from that Coat, or they assum'd it because of the Resemblance it had to their Name, is not certain. He is said to have govern'd about 933. His Grandson *Suantibor* is mention'd to have divided his Principality betwixt his Sons *Bogislaus* and *Wartislaus*: The former had *Pomerellia*, and retain'd the Language and Customs of his Countrymen the *Slavonians*: The latter had *Lower Pomerania*, and soon after conform'd himself to the Laws and Customs of the *Saxons*: Upon which it was reckon'd a Part of the Empire, and his Sons *Casimir* and *Wartislaus* were made Dukes of *Pome-*

ren, and Princes of the Empire, by *Frederick Barbarossa*. *La Forest* says, they received Christianity in the 12th Century, and *Luther's* Reformation in the 16th. The two Dutchies were united in 1470, says that same Author, in *Bogislaus X.* surnam'd the Great, who had long Wars with *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, which were concluded by the Treaty of *Wolgast*. *Dr. Nicholson* says, That *Lower Pomerania* was divided in 1217 betwixt *Bogislaus* and *Orko*, two Brothers, from whom came the Houses of *Wolgast* and *Stettin*, which lasted about 200 Years; but that of *Stettin* failing in 1464, his Dominions were given by the Emperor *Frederick III.* to *Frederick II.* of *Brandenburg*, which occasioned a Difference betwixt the Elector and the House of *Wolgast*, that was compos'd by the Treaty above-mention'd, on Condition that both should retain the Arms and Title, but the Possession should be given to the Duke of *Wolgast*; and upon the Failure of his Issue-Male, it should come to the Family of *Brandenburg*. Accordingly *Bogislaus XIV.* dying in 1637 without Issue, *George William* of *Brandenburg* put in his Claim; but the *Swedes* having assisted *Bogislaus* against the Imperialists during the Civil Wars of *Germany*, *La Forest* says, That by his Will he left the King of *Sweden* his Heir; and the *Swedes* being possessed of the Country, would not part with it; and at the Treaty of *Munster* it was agreed, That *Lower Pomerania*, with the Isles of *Rugen* and *Wollin*, should be annexed to the Crown of *Sweden*; and that *Upper Pomerania* should be added likewise, upon Failure of the Male-Issue of the House of *Brandenburg*. In the mean time both Princes were to enjoy the Title and Arms. In Consideration of which, the Family of *Brandenburg* had *Halberstat*, *Minden*, &c. as formerly mention'd; which, tho' the Revenues may be as large, yet the Elector would rather have had *Lower Pomerania*, by which he might have been considerable at Sea, and deliver'd from the Jealousies of such a potent Neighbour as the King of *Sweden*: Tho' the Empire allow'd the Elector 4 more Voices in the Diet for his new Principalities.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Stettin*, always reckon'd the Metropolis of the whole Country. 'Tis so ancient, that its Origine

is not known ; but about 400 Years ago, it appears to have had a quite different Situation ; for the Church of *St. Peter*, now without the Walls, was then in the middle of the Town. The *Saxons* were allow'd to come hither by the Dukes of *Stettin*, to reform the Language and Manners of their *Wendish* Subjects, and contributed much to its Order, Beauty, Strength, and Trade. It's a Hans-Town, stands on the Rising of a small Hill, and is one of the most Trading Places in *Germany* ; tho' *La Forest* says, their Trade is decreas'd since the Settlement of the Republick of *Holland*. The Town is still so populous, that, according to some modern Writers, abundance of the Inhabitants are forc'd to live in Cellars and Vaults. The Castle, formerly the Palace of the Dukes, and now the Residence of the *Swedish* Governor, is one of the best Pieces of Architecture in that Part of *Europe*, and may vie with most of its kind in *Italy*. They have a great Trade in all kind of Merchandize, particularly all sorts of Salt and Fresh Fish, Wood for Fuel and Building, Corn, &c. and 'tis a proper Center for exchanging the Commodities of *Poland*, *Germany*, and the *Baltick*, by the Convenience of the River *Oder*. It falls into the Sea 40 Miles below it, and is navigable a great way above it by lesser Vessels. The Citizens are noted for their Civility to Strangers, and their Courage in defending themselves when attack'd. The Imperialists besieg'd it in vain 4 Months in 1659 ; and in 1677, it held out a long Siege against *Frederick William the Great*, the late Elector of *Brandenburg* ; which being one of the most remarkable Sieges that has happen'd in *Europe*, we shall give some of the chief Particulars, from an Account of it printed at *London* in 1678.

The Elector had the Year before attempted this City ; but finding his Forces too weak, he withdrew them, and provided for a second Attack the following Summer. Accordingly he set out from *Berlin* the 5th of *July*, 1677, with 9 Regiments of Horse, 10 of Foot, 5 of Dragoons, and his Foot-Guards : 4000 *Lunenburgers* did also come to his Assistance, with some Men of War from the King of *Denmark*. On the 7th of *July*, he came before it with 20000 Men, took some Posts, and rais'd Bat-

teries on the *Oder*, which gall'd their Shipping in the River. The Town, who had long expected a Siege, sent out all their useless People, and gave a resolute Defiance to the Elector's Summons. Upon this the Elector push'd on, and took several Forts, wherein the Troops on both Sides shew'd wonderful Courage. The slow March of the *Lunenburgers* retarded the Siege for some time ; but upon their Arrival, it was carried on with more Vigour. The *Danish* and *Swedish* Ships engaged one another in the River ; but the Elector's Forts did so gall the latter, that when they obtained an Advantage over the *Danes*, they could not pursue it. In the mean time the Elector's Artillery did great Execution in the City ; yet the Garison made a brave Defence, sallied out, and attacked his Intrenchments with wonderful Gallantry ; but were always over-power'd and repuls'd. The 14th of *August*, the Elector's Cannon sunk, and shatter'd most of the Ships in the River ; and on the 15th, his Granado's set Fire to the Town in several Places, and burnt down the great Church. The Elector being griev'd at this, sent and offer'd them honourable Terms, which they still refused. The Town having suffer'd much, the Elector sent a new Summons on the 22d, expressing his Pity for them ; but they continued obstinate, made it Death for any one to talk of a Surrender, and secur'd such of their Wives and Children as remained in the Town in Places prepared on purpose under Ground. The Garison continued to make vigorous Sallies, with various Success ; but were always repuls'd at last. On the 6th of *September*, the Elector sent a Trumpet to forewarn them of their Danger, and to offer them larger Privileges than before ; but still they refused. The Winter approaching, the Elector push'd on the Siege with more Vigour ; and to encourage his Soldiers, who suffer'd much by the Rains, promis'd them the Plunder of the Town if he took it by Assault. The 22d of *September*, 8000 *Danes* landed on the Isle of *Rugen* to assist the Elector, of which he gave the City Notice, and summon'd them again to surrender, which they still refused. The 27th, the *Lunenburgers* took a Half-Moon ; and the Elector perceiving that there was no likelihood of the Town's being

being relieved, he forbore pushing on the Siege with Vigour, both to spare his own Men, and the City. The 3d of *October*, he took the Counterscarp; upon which the Burgers writ to Count *Coningsberg*, the *Swedish* General, expressing their Resolution to hold out to the last, and desiring Relief: To which he return'd an Answer in the King's Name, and his own, assuring them they should have it. The Garison in the mean time made vigorous Sallies, drove the *Lunenburgers* out of their Trenches, and took one of their Generals, with two Cannon, and about 40 Officers. The Elector undermin'd the Wall of the Town, fill'd up the Ditch, took a Half-Bastion, and sent them their new Proffers the first of *November*, threat'ning them with Ruin if they refus'd. They return'd a softer Answer than before; but said, They would defend the Town till the end of the Year, and hop'd he would grant them the same Terms then. The 7th, the Elector review'd his Army, and found he had lost near 7000 Men, besides his Sick and Wounded; and thò the Town was in Ruins, and that they had lost 1400 Citizens, besides Soldiers, they continued resolute, and made vigorous Sallies, with great Loss on both Sides, the Townsmen being in Hopes that the cold Weather would oblige him to raise the Siege. On the 20th, a Quarrel happen'd betwixt the Garison and the Burgers, wherein several fell on both Sides, the former being for a Capitulation, but the latter against it; and one of 'em being a Chief Officer, and at his Post on the Walls, when News was brought him that his Wife and Children were killed in his House by the Enemy's Fire, he order'd his Servant to bury them; but would not quit his Post, and said, He could meet his own Death with as little Concern as he had heard of theirs. The 30th, the Garison made a Sally, and carried off a small Man of War in the River; so that every one thought the Elector would be obliged to raise the Siege, his Foot being reduced to 10000, and his Horse in a bad Condition, by the Rigour of the Season. On the 30th, the Garison despairing of Relief, a new Mutiny began betwixt them and the Citizens, which the Governor appeased, by promising to capitulate before it came to Extremity. *December*

the 4th, the Elector took several Posts, and the Citizens prepared against a general Assault, by casting up Intrenchments within, having received a new Charter from the King of *Sweden*, enlarging their Privileges, and exempting them from Taxes for many Years to come. They made several furious Sallies, retook part of the Bastion, and ruin'd some of the Works; but were repuls'd by the *Danes* with great Loss. The 16th, the Elector attacked a Post near that called the *Holy Ghost* Gate, which the Garison defended with great Bravery, and charged their Cannon with small Shot, which did great Execution; but the Elector took the Post at last, after several Repulses, and rais'd a Battery upon it; but very much admir'd the Constancy and Bravery of the Inhabitants. On the 18th, he sprung two Mines, which made a Breach in both their Walls; yet they repuls'd his Men who attacked the Breaches, and fill'd them up by Night. Next Day the Elector made a new Attack, summon'd them again to surrender, and offer'd to confirm all the Terms granted them by the King of *Sweden*, and to add more, which they rejected. Next Day the Garison took two Gallies with Guns and Powder, of which they were in want. They continued obstinate, thò the Garison was reduced to 400 serviceable Men, and distrusted by the Citizens, because they had frequently declared for a Surrender. But on the 20th, finding there was no Hopes of Relief, they propos'd a Capitulation upon honourable Terms, and said, That if they could not obtain them, they would die with their Swords in their Hands, and be buried in the Ruins of the City. The Elector return'd an Answer, That thò their Obstinacy had been enough to harden him, yet his Willingness to spare their Lives, and those of his own Men, which must be lost in a general Assault, he would capitulate with them, if they intreated for it, and sent out Hostages quickly; otherwise they must expect nothing but Fire and Sword.

Upon the Receipt of this Letter, they sent out Hostages, and the Elector, out of Generosity and Pity, granted them an honourable Capitulation, thò he had lost about 8000 Men, and that it had cost him 6000 Crowns every Day and Night in Powder and Shot. He not only ratified all the

King

King of Sweden had promis'd, but granted them more Privileges, and sent the Articles that Night to the Governor; who insisting that the Garison should be conducted to *Stralsund*, and that Major-General *Ludeque* should continue Prisoner till Colonel *Wangelin* was set at Liberty, the Elector refus'd it, which broke off the Treaty, and the Hostilities were renewed on both Sides with great Vigour till the 26th of December, when they sent out again to renew the Treaty. The Capitulation, according to the former Articles, was ratified, and one of the Gates deliver'd to the Elector. All the Churches, and vast Numbers of Houses, were laid in Ruins; their Garison of 3000 Men reduced to 700, and not 400 of them serviceable. They had a fine Train of Artillery in the Place; but they wanted Powder, Salt and Wood. They were allow'd the usual Terms of Honour; but the German Officers and Soldiers were to quit the Swedish Service. Deserters were pardon'd on both Sides, and the Garison had their Choice of two Pieces of Cannon. The Swedish Officers were pardon'd, and receiv'd into the Elector's Protection, on taking an Oath of Fidelity. There was no Change to be made in their Religion, University, or Schools. The Magistrates, and Privileges of the City, were confirm'd, and they were freed from Plunder, Contributions, or ransoming their Bells. He exempted their Fishery for 10 Years from all Taxes of his own Accord, on Condition they would rebuild their Churches; and he promis'd to rebuild their great Church at his own Charge. On the 6th of January, he made a solemn Entrance, when he was received with loud Acclamations. When he enter'd the New Gate, two Boys in Mourning presented him, the one with a Silver Key, with these Words engraven on it in Golden Letters, *Accipe, serva, & conserva*; i. e. Receive, keep, and preserve: The other with a Ducal Hat, with these Words, *Quod Deus dat*, Which God gives. Then 6 Virgins met him in Mourning, who, after Homage, the first presented him with a Cypress Wreath, and this Motto wrought in Threads of Gold, *Victori Cruentatam Virginitatem*; i. e. A Bloody Virginity to the Conqueror. The 2d presented 3 Garlands in a gilt Scale, with this Motto, *Preces pro*

Benevolentia, Prayers for your good Will. The 3d presented a Hat of Orange-Leaves, with this Motto, *Paterna Virtute auctam augendam*; i. e. Your Valour, increas'd by that of your Father, shall still increase more. The 4th presented his Son Prince *Lodowick* with an Apple, in which was writ with gilded Cloves, *Natura Etatem*; i. e. Nature brings Age. The 5th presented his other Son Prince *Philip* with a Griphyn's Claw, and this Motto, *Perge sine mora, & habes*; i. e. Pursue without Delay, and you have it. The 6th presented the Duke of *Lunenburg* with a Nolegay, and this Motto, *Deo Gratias*, Thanks to God. Then all of them repeated these Words, *Happiness and long Life to the Elector, and to all the Princes and Princesses of Stettin*. After this, he was conducted by the Magistrates and Chief Burgers in Mourning to the ancient Palace of their Dukes, where, wishing him Happiness and long Life, they deliver'd him up the Regalia, and swore Fealty. Then he was conducted to the great Church. He was attended by the Judges and Ministers, who swore Fealty to him; and as he went back to the Court, 12 of the chief young Women of the Town strew'd green Herbs before him, till he came to the Banqueting-House, where he had a splendid Entertainment at the Charge of the City. Then the Elector having settled all Things, and given Orders to repair the Fortifications, he return'd to *Berlin* the 10th of January. Doctor *Nicholson* says, he spent in this Siege 30000 Granado's, 24000 Hand-Granado's, 150000 Cannon-shot, and 98000 Pound of Powder. By the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, the Town was restor'd to the Swedes.

The other Towns in Swedish *Pomerania* are, 1. *Stralsund*, the largest and wealthiest in the Country. Its Origine is uncertain; but Historians say 'twas founded about 145, by *Sunno II.* King of the *Franks*; but it derives its Name more probably from the narrow Sea on which it stands, betwixt it and the Isle of *Rugen*. It lies about 75 Miles N. W. of *Stettin*, and 35 N. W. of *Rostock*, in Long. 32. 30. Lat. 54. 31. 'Tis an Imperial City, and enjoys great Privileges, which they have maintain'd against several Princes that design'd to subdue them, and at once are said to have opposed the united Force of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, and 10 other

Princes, when they took *Erick D. of Saxony* Prisoner. After which it became terrible, as it had formerly been accounted impregnable. The first certain Account we have of it, is, That after it had been spoil'd or utterly destroy'd, it was magnificently rebuilt, enlarged, and re-peopled with *Germans*, by *Jaremar* Prince of *Rugen*, about 1209. His Son alter'd the Situation a little, and fortified it about 1230, because the *Danes* and *Pomeranians* had burnt most of that which his Father built; so that the Citizens reckon the Age of the Town from that Time, as appears by a Latin Distich in barbarous Rhyming Verse, engraven in several Places of the Town in Golden Letters. The chief of their Privileges are,

1. That they have a Power to determine all Causes among themselves, without an Appeal.
2. To coin Money, and raise Troops for Sea and Land Service.
3. In case of a Naval War by the Empire, they are not obliged to venture further abroad than is convenient for the Defence of their City.
4. They have a Power to make Leagues and Confederacies for advancing their Trade, and to chuse their Protectors among all the Princes of the Empire.

In the Civil Wars of *Germany*, Count *Wallenstein*, the Imperial General, besieg'd it in vain, and was forc'd to a shameful Retreat. A little after, they put themselves under the Protection of *Gustavus Adolphus*. In 1678, the late Elector of *Brandenburg* took it, after having destroy'd above 1500 Houses with his Bombs, and was the only Prince that could justly boast of ever having taken it by Force; but he was obliged to restore it to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *St. Germain en Laye* in 1679. 'Tis now a flourishing City, but suffer'd much by Fire in 1680. The Sea betwixt it and *Rugen* is about a Mile broad, and there are 6 Gates, with as many Bridges, leading to it from the City, to which the Merchant-Ships that ride in the Harbour are fasten'd. Towards the Land, 'tis fortified with regular Bulwarks, and Fish-Ponds, two Musket-shots in Breadth, over which there are 4 Dams and Bridges, leading from 4 Gates; which Dams and Bridges are fortified, and make the Approaches very difficult. Their chief Trade is in Corn, which they transport in great Quantities to other Countries.

2. *Bardt*, formerly reckon'd the Metropolis of *Upper Pomerania*, and gave Name to the adjacent Country. It lies about 15 M. W. from *Stralsund*, upon a Bay of the Sea, but so shallow, that 'tis not capable of being made a good Harbour. Some derive its Name from the *Longobardi*; but it has it more probably from the Mouth of the River *Bardt*, on which it stands; tho' the Arms of the Town be a Man's Head with a long Beard. The Fields about it are exceeding Fruitful in all Sorts of Corn, and the Town is well Peopled, and defended by a good Castle. The late Elector of *Brandenburg* took it in 1677; but restor'd it to the *Swedes* by the afore-mentioned Treaty in 1679.

3. *Gripswald*, about 30 English Miles S. E. of *Stralsund*. 'Tis a Hans-Town, within half a League of the *Baltick*, on a small Gulph, with a good Harbour. It was Wall'd in 1233, and is well fortified. *Wartislaus IX.* Duke of *Pomerania*, founded an University here about 1456, which has bred many Learned Men. It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1631, and left to them by the Treaty of *Westphalia*. The late Elector of *Brandenburg* took it in 1678, but restor'd it by Treaty in 1679. It had a great Trade by the excellent Salt which they formerly made; but for want of Wood to supply their Furnaces, 'tis decay'd. The adjacent Fields and Meadows abound so much with wild Garlick, which the Natives call *Rammes*, that when it flowers about *Whitsuntide*, Strangers are hardly able to bear the Smell of it, and all their Butter and Flesh taste of it.

4. *Treplow*, a pretty Town on the *Tollow* Sea, defended by a strong Castle.

5. *Anclam*, on the *Pene*, well fortified. It was taken by the late Elector of *Brandenburg* in 1676, together with *Demmin*, on the same River; but both restored by the Treaty of *St. Germain*.

6. *Damgarten*, and *Tribsee*, two Towns on the Frontiers of *Mecklenburg*, where the *Swedish* Officers exact Toll from Travellers. The Dukes of *Mecklenburg* claim'd those Towns at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, but did not obtain them. The first is very strong, and situated on a Gulph.

7. *Wolgast*, on that Branch of the *Oder* called the *Fin*, about 15 Miles S. E. of *Gripswald*.



- P. Principality
- D. Dutchy
- M. Marquisate
- B. Bishoprick
- C. County
- Bar. Barony
- T. Territory

PART OF
LUNEBURG

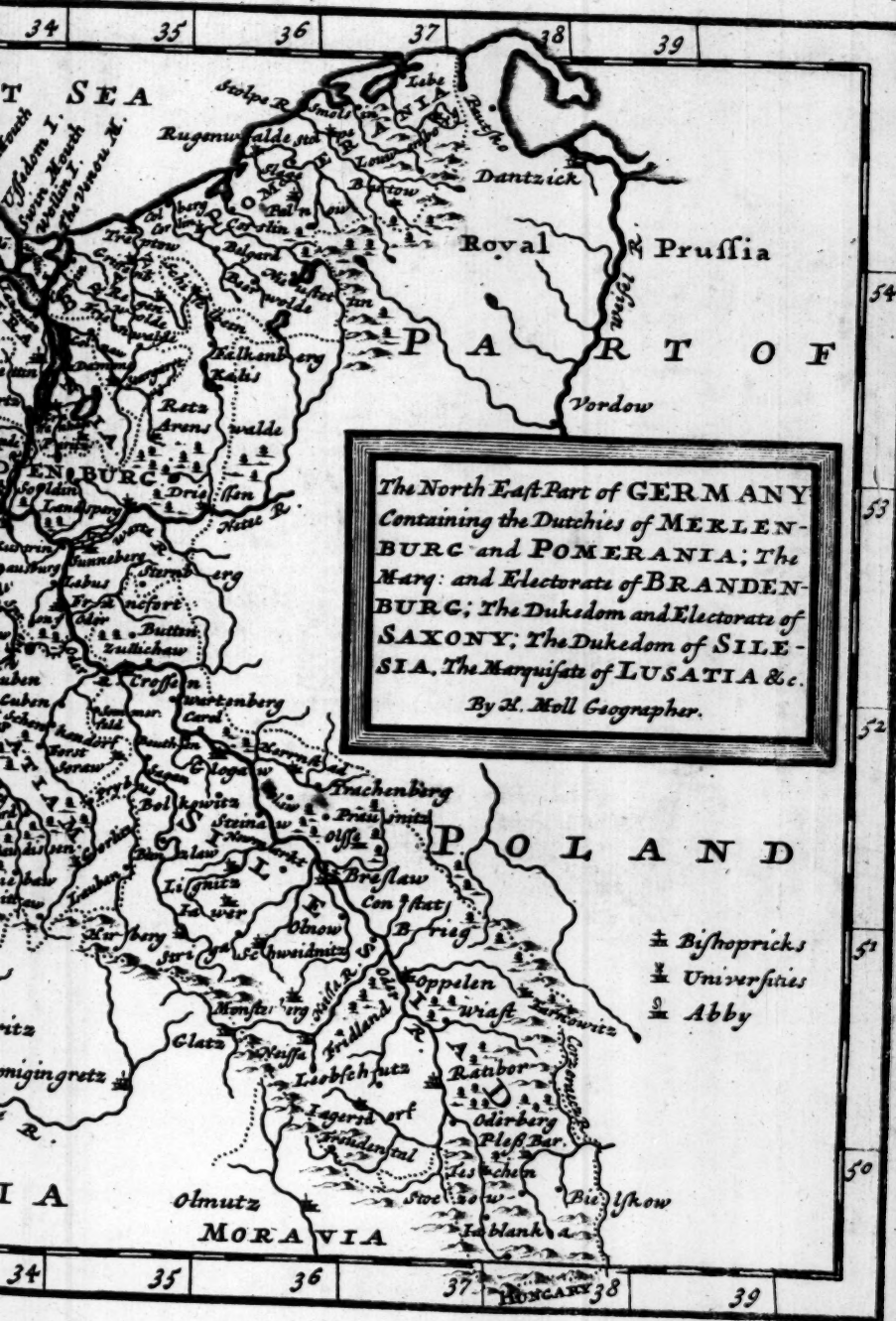
P. OF BRUNSWICK

PART OF
FRANCONIA

BALTICK or EAST RUGEN

BOHEMIA

English Miles
0 10 20 30 60 90



Wald, formerly Capital of a Dutchy, and gave Title of Duke to a Branch of the House of *Pomerania*. It has the best Harbour in the Country, except *Stralsund*; and the Castle, built here by Duke *Barnimus IV.* in 1352, makes it one of the strongest Towns of the Province. *Gustavus Adolphus* took it in 1630, and the late Elector of *Brandenburg* took it in 1679; but restor'd it that same Year to the *Swedes* by Treaty.

Brandenburg Pomerania,

IS about 132 Miles long, and 50 where broadest.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Camin*, formerly a Bishop's See, whose Prelates were invested and confirmed by the Pope himself; but by the Treaty of *Munster*, it was, after the Death of the then Canons, decreed to be converted into a small Principality, to descend on the Family of *Brandenburg*. It lies on the E. Side of the Mouth of the *Oder*, called *Divewow*, about 28 Miles N. of *Stettin*, and about 8 from the Coast of the *Baltick*. *La Forest* says, it was built from the Ruins of a Town called *Julin*, within two Miles of it, and was made a Bishoprick by *Bogislaw II.* of *Pomerania* in 1178. Their Bishop embrac'd *Lutheranism* in 1534. The Bishoprick was given to the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Treaty of *Munster* in 1648.

2. *Griffenberg*, a pretty Town on the River *Rege*.

3. *Polberg*, a strong Town on the Mouth of the River *Perfant*, about 18 Miles E. from *Camin*. 'Tis the Capital of a little Country called *Cassubia*, has a good Harbour, defended by a strong Citadel, and has a great Trade in good Salt, made here, and transported to other Countries, which has made the Town rich. The *Swedes* took it in 1631, after 5 Months Siege. It was given to the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Treaty of *Munster*, and he has a great Revenue from its Salt-Pits.

4. *Coslin*, about 10 Miles S. E. from *Colberg*, a City where the Bishop of *Camin* usually resided, because of its good Air.

5. *Coslin*, about 12 Miles N. E. from *Coslin*, on the *Perfant*, a very pleasant City.

6. *Belgarden*, a little Town of good Trade on the same River.

7. *Rugen*, a Wall'd Town, on the Mouth of the *Wiper*, the Capital of the Country called *Vandalia*, about 18 Miles N. E. from *Coslin*. 'Tis supposed to take its Name from the *Rugii*, who founded it.

8. *Stolpe*, a Town fortified with an ancient Castle, about 22 Miles N. E. from *Rugenwald*.

The Towns of *Slage* and *Polnow* lie also in this Country.

La Forest does likewise mention a Division of this Country, which he names *Pomerania*, properly so called; and in this he reckons, 1. *Stargard*, the Capital, about 22 Miles S. E. from *Stettin*. 'Tis but small, and ill Peopled; yet the Courts of Justice for the Country are held here, and 'tis one of the Hans-Towns. 2. *Dam*, a small Town on the *Oder*, opposite to *Stettin*, and was formerly Part of that Dutchy, but mortgaged to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, together with *Golnow*, about 12 Miles N. of it, for 50000 Crowns, in 1679; but redeemable. That same Author calls the most Easterly Part of *Brandenburg Pomerania*, by the Name of *Pomerellia*, in which are the Towns of *Lawenburg*, on the River *Lobo*, 50 Miles N. E. from *Rugenwald*, the Chief of the Country, and *Butow*, 27 Miles S. E. from *Stolpe*, which gives Name to the Lordship of *Butow*.

We come now to the Islands of *Pomerania* on the Coast of the *Baltick*: The First of which is

R U G E N.

THIS is one of the chief Islands in the *Baltick*, and famous for the Courage of its ancient Inhabitants the *Rugii*, to whom all Historians give the Character of a Brave and Warlike People. It was formerly much larger than at present, and reach'd as far E. as *Ruden*, 3 Leagues from it; but formerly a Part of it. The Separation was occasion'd by a great Tempest in the beginning of the 14th Century, when the Sea drown'd a great Part of the Island, and form'd this Channel, which is now passable by the greatest Ships. The Island is about 30 Eng-
l f f f 2 lish

hish Miles in Breadth, and as much in Length; but full of Creeks and Peninsula's. Their chief Forts were *Arcona* and *Camerantz*, both reckon'd impregnable, till *Waldemar* of *Denmark* took them, with the whole Island, in 1368. The former was on a high Rock by the Shore; and not to be taken in those Days but by being starv'd. The Island has so many Inlets, that there is scarce any Part of it above 3 *English* Miles from the Shore; but all the Peninsula's are so well guarded by Rocks, that they fear no Inundation. 'Tis so rich in Corn, that 'tis call'd the Granary of *Stralsund*, and is well Rock'd with Horses, Black Cattle, Sheep, and the largest Geese in *Europe*. They say, That formerly they had no Wolves or Rats, but are now as much pester'd with them as their Neighbours. The Forrest of *Jaswant* furnishes them with Fuel and Timber, and the Sea and Lakes with Plenty of Fish for Consumption and Export. Among other Lakes here, there is one near *Burchwall*, upon which the Inhabitants superstitiously believe no Boat will fail, nor any Net be suffer'd to catch Fish, as we mention'd before in the Account of Ancient *Germany*, under the Head of the *Deuringii*, &c. Near this Lake, there's an exceeding high Promontory, which hangs over the Sea, and was formerly a Shelter for the Pirates who haunted those Coasts. The chief Trade of the Inhabitants is with *Stralsund*, from which 'tis only separated by a narrow Sea, as formerly mention'd; and this City has a sort of Jurisdiction over the Island, for their High Court of Admiralty determines all sorts of Controversies that happen in the Port Towns of *Rugen*, from whence the People in those Cases come to *Stralsund* for Justice. They can erect no Court, nor give any definitive Sentence, nor export any Commodities, without Leave of that City, which is the Key and Fortrefs of the Island.

The ancient Language here was the *Sclavonick*, which was abolish'd, and the *Saxon* introduc'd, when the Dukes of *Pomerania* made themselves Masters of the Island. The Inhabitants were the last of all the Northern People who embrac'd Christianity, which was about 813, by the Preaching of some Monks; but they quickly apostatiz'd; and after having idoliz'd St. *Vite*, a poor

Monk, their Apostle, by the Name of *Swant*, they transferred the Worship they paid to him to a monstrous Idol with 4 Heads, to which they repaired, as to an Oracle; and Merchants who had made a good Voyage, were obliged to pay him a Tribute. They constantly kept 300 Horses for this Idol's Service, one of them white, and never rid but by the Chief Priest, who would now and then shew him in a Morning besmear'd all over with Sweat and Dirt, and told the foolish People, That *Swant* had brought him into that Condition, by pursuing their Enemies in the Night. This Idol was kept at *Arcona*, then their chief City. He had a Horn in his Hand, which had been filled the Year before with precious Liquor; and the Priest looking into it, according to the remaining Quantity of the Liquor, he prognosticated Dearth or Plenty for the succeeding Year; which being done, keeping his Lips shut, lest his Breath should hurt the Idol, he took the Horn, pour'd out the remaining Liquor at the Idol's Foot, fill'd it anew, and put it again with great Reverence into his Right Hand. They continued thus, till by Conversation with the *Pomeranians* they threw off that Heathenish Idolatry, above 500 Years ago, and are now zealous *Lutherans*.

They had formerly Princes of their own, who likewise rul'd Part of *Pomerania* about *Stralsund*, *Gripswald*, &c. 11 of them are mention'd in History: The first is *Wislau*, who liv'd about 938. The 4th is *Raze*, a great Warrior, who took *Lubeck*, and died about 1141. The 5th is *Tessau*, who had great Wars with the *Danes*, with various Success; but at last was conquer'd by *Waldemar* of *Denmark*. The 6th was *Jarimar*, their first Prince who embrac'd Christianity. Their 9th was *Jarimar* II. who, after many Battles, shook off the *Danish* Yoke in 1259. The 10th was *Witzlau* III. a great Promoter of Christianity in *Liefland*, where he frequently preach'd in Person to the poor Infidels. The 11th was *Witzlau* IV. from whom those of *Stralsund* revolted: Upon which, with the Assistance of neighbouring Princes, he besieg'd them; but being kill'd in a Sally, an End was put to the Controversy and his Lineage in 1325.

After this, *Rugen* came to the Dukes of *Pomerania*, and by Contract should have been

been annexed to the Family of *Brandenburg*, on the Failure of that Line; but by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, it was given, with *Lower Pomerania*, to the Crown of *Sweden*. *Frederick III.* of *Denmark* pretended to it; but resign'd his Title to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Roschild* in 1658. During the War betwixt the late Elector of *Brandenburg* and the *Swedes*, *Christian*, the late King of *Denmark*, with 6000 Men, attempted to reduce it; but was defeated by Count *Koeningmark*, the *Swedish* General, 600 of his Men killed on the Spot, 2500 taken, with 26 Standards, 16 Cannon, 5 Mortars, and 30000 Rix-Dollars. He attempted it the second time in 1658, and conquer'd the Island; but by the Interposition of the present *French* King, he was obliged to resign it again to the *Swedes* in 1679, who have since put strong Garisons into it. This Island suffer'd much during the Civil Wars of *Germany*. They have many Noble Families, who pretend to derive their Pedigree from the ancient *Rugii* or *Rani*, and fancy this to be what was called the *Insula Rannorum*; but *Wormius* thinks, the *Rani* liv'd further E. near the Coast of *Liesland*. Doctor *Nicholson* observes, That by little Expence in building Forts and Harbours, it might be made independent of *Stralsund*; but their Interest in Commerce keeps them together. The Island, he says, is capable to raise 7000 stout Fighting Men.

The only Town of Note is *Bergen*, about the middle of the Island: It had formerly the Name of a City; but is now only an open Village of about 400 Houses. The Ruins of *Arcona*, formerly their Capital, but destroy'd by *Waldemar I.* of *Denmark* in 1168, are still to be seen in the N. Part of the Island. The Rusticks pay easier Rents here than in most other Places, which makes them pay all the Respect to their Landlords, which they claim as due to their Antiquity. The Island is honour'd with the Title of a Duchy. They have another Village or Town of good Trade, called *Puthus*, which lies S. from *Bergen*.

The 2d Island on this Coast is *WOLLIN*, in the Mouth of the *Oder*, and has a Town of the same Name on that Branch of the *Oder* called *Diveow*. *Adam Bremensis* says, That it was formerly the largest City in *Europe*, and anciently called *Tulinum*; that it

maintain'd War against the Kingdom of *Denmark*, and took their King *Suinotto* three times Prisoner. It was extraordinary strong and populous, and the greatest Mart in *Europe* next unto *Constantinople*. The *Danes*, *Swedes*, *Russians*, *Jews*, and several other People, had their separate Streets and Houses of Exchange here; but by the just Judgment of God for their Apostacy from Christianity, most of it was destroy'd by Lightning, and the rest by *Waldemar* of *Denmark*; who surpris'd it in 1170; since which it has never been remarkable; for *Lubeck* and *Dantzick* have got all its ancient Trade. The Island is about 14 Miles long, and 10 broad.

The 3d Island is *USEDOM*, in the Mouth of the same River, W. from *Wollin*; and separated from it by that Branch of the *Oder* called the *Swine*. After the Destruction of *Wollin*, it had a great Trade; but most of it being burnt down in 1473, it never recover'd its ancient Lustre. It has a good Castle; which the Elector of *Brandenburg* took in 1676; but restor'd it to the *Swedes* by a succeeding Treaty. The Island is about 20 Miles long, and 12 broad:

Having finish'd the Circles of *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, we shall, according to Promise, in our Account of the Religion of the *Lutherans*, take Notice of that called the *Saxon* Confession, which was one of those added for explaining that of *Augsburg*.

The Saxon Confession.

IT was offer'd to the Council of *Trent* in 1551, and sign'd by the Superintendants, Doctors of Divinity, and Pastors of *Saxony*; among whom, those of most Note were, *Alexander Alesius*, a *Scotts-man*, Doctor of Divinity, and Deacon of the College of Divines in the University of *Leipsick*; *Joachim Camerarius*, Professor of the Liberal Arts at *Leipsick*; *George Major*, Doctor of Divinity, and Professor in the University of *Wittenberg*; and *Philip Melancton*, Professor in the same University.

It was also approved by the Ambassadors of *John* and *George Frederick*, Marquisses of *Brandenburg*; and of *Gebhard* Count of *Mansfeld*, and the other Counts of that Family, with

with the Superintendants and Pastors of their Countries; by the Ministers of *Straßburg*, and those of *Lower Pomerania*, by Order of their Duke, in their Provincial Synod at *Gripßwald*.

In Point of Doctrine, they agree with that of *Augsburg*, which in some Places they explain more at large.

We shall only take Notice, 1. That in the Article of the Church, they describe the visible Church to be a Society of those who in this Life embrace the Gospel of Christ, and use the Sacraments right; in which however there are many who are not Saints, tho' they agree to the true Doctrine. Therefore who, what, and where the true Church is, must be known from the Scripture, since the Church is join'd to the Gospel, as *Paul* says, *If any Man teach another Gospel, let him be accursed*, &c. So that tho' Sadducees, Pharisees, Popes, and others, who teach another Doctrine different from the Gospel, and obstinately establish Idolatry, claim the Title and Government of the Church, they are not Members of it.

They add, That tho' the Church be a Society which may be seen and heard, yet 'tis to be distinguished from Political Governments, or such as carry the Sword; for Bishops have not by Divine Right a Power to punish the Disobedient, or to seize Worldly Governments: Yet there is an Order in the Church, according to that Saying, *Eph. 4. 8. &c. He hath ascended up on high, and gave Gifts unto Men. Verse 11. Some Apostles, some Prophets, some Evangelists, and some Pastors and Teachers. Verse 12. For the Perfecting of the Saints, for the Work of the Ministry, for the Edifying the Body of Christ.* The Son of God is the High Priest, appointed by his Eternal Father, who, that the Church should not perish, gave Ministers of the Gospel to her; some of them call'd immediately by himself, as the Prophets and Apostles, and some of 'em call'd by Humane Election; for he approves her Election. Therefore we retain in our Churches the publick Rite of Ordination, by which the Ministry of the Gospel is recommended to those who are duly chosen, after Trial of their Learning and Manners. Unto this Ministry belongs the Preaching of the Gospel, the Administration of the Sacraments, the Absolution of Penitents,

the Ordination of Ministers lawfully call'd, the putting in Execution the Censures of the Church in a lawful Manner against those who are found guilty in Manners or Doctrine, the Excommunication of the Obstinate, and the absolving and receiving again those who repent. And that these Things may be done in an orderly Manner, Consistories are settled in our Churches.

2. As to the Lord's Supper, they declare against External Sacrifices, Christ having put an End to them once for all; and say, That the ancient Church, by the Words *Sacrifice* and *Oblation*, understood the whole Action, viz. Prayer, the Receiving of the Sacrament, the Remembrance of our Saviour, Faith, Hope, Confession, and Thanksgiving. This whole Action, as 'tis External and Internal, is in every Convert, and in the whole Church, a true Sacrifice of Praise, or *ευχαριστία*, and *λογικὴ λατρεία*, *Rom. 12. 1.*

3. As to Confirmation, they say, The ancient Church understood nothing by it, but a Trial whether their young Members understood their Doctrine, and obliged every one of 'em to repeat a Summary of it, and to profess their Dislike of Paganism and Heresie; that they would continue Members of the true Church, and not depart from the true Doctrine which they themselves profess'd: This they approve as useful for instructing Men, and retaining them in the true Knowledge of God: And this, they say, they did in the Catechising of their Youth, and in private Confession, when the Pastors try'd the Knowledge of their People. But by private Confession, they meant only a private Conference, without requiring a particular Enumeration of the Penitents Faults, which they say is neither commanded by God, nor possible; as they express themselves under the Article *de Penitentia*. And as to the Method of Confirmation then us'd by the Bishops, they reject it as a vain Shadow.

4. As to Rites appointed by Humane Authority in the Church, they lay down several Rules to be observed for the Sake of Decency and Order; but take Notice how readily Humane Rites degenerate into Superstition, and therefore confine all to the general Rules of the Scripture; and confute those who alledge, That Princes, Bishops,

shops, Angels, or any Creature, have Power to appoint Rites contrary to the Scripture; and lay down this Conclusion, That εἰδωλολατρικαὶ, or Will-Worships, invented by Men without God's Command, neither are, nor were, the Worship of God; and take Notice, That the Opinion of the Necessity of such Rites, had always occasioned great Discords in the Church, as of old; the Controversy about *Easter*, Leaven'd Bread, and many such Things, have done of late, which increase Ceremonies, and were Burdens to the Church, and Men's Consciences; for which they quote Col. 2. 16. *Let no Man judge you in Meat or Drink, or in respect of an Holy Day, or of the New Moon, or of the Sabbath-Day, &c.* And Gal. 5. 1. *Stand fast therefore in the Liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free, and be not entangled again with the Yoke of Bondage.*

As to the Power and Office of Superintendants, and their Method of Government and Discipline, we shall have Occasion to mention it when we come to the *Bohemian* and *Wirtemberg* Confessions, &c.

Brandenburg Prussia.

WE formerly gave the Description and History of *Prussia* in General, and of that called *Polish Prussia* in Particular. We come now to this Country, which was formerly called *Ducal*, to distinguish it from the other *Prussia*.

This Country has *Polish Prussia* on the W. *Lithuania* on the E. the *Dutchy of Warsaw* on the S. and the Bay of *Courland* and *Samogitia* on the N. 'Tis the larger Part of *Prussia*, and is now, as formerly mention'd, call'd the Kingdom of *Prussia*, and gives the Title of King to the Elector of *Brandenburg*. According to *Moll's Map*, from *Memel* on the *Baltick*, to the Frontiers of *Poland*, 'tis about 150 Miles from N. to S. and above 120 where broadest from E. to W.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Cönigsberg*, the Capital, on the Mouth of the *Pregel*, in Long. 39. 38. Lat. 54. 44. about 80 Miles N. E. from *Dantzick*. 'Tis a Hans-Town, and a Place of great Trade, large, well built, and divided into 3 Towns. That properly call'd the *Old Town* was built about 1260, by the *Teutonic* Knights, and has the

Ducal Palace in it, a large and splendid Structure, with a famous Library, from whence *Chemnitius* compos'd his Examination of the Council of *Trent*. This Palace was built by *George Frederick* Marquis of *Brandenburg*. The 2d Town stands in an Island, and is call'd *Kniphoff*, from an Officer who join'd it to *Cönigsberg* in 1380, where stands the Cathedral of the Bishoprick of *Samland*, and an University, founded by Duke *Albert* of *Brandenburg* in 1544, which has bred many Learned Men. The 3d Town is call'd *Libenicht*, and was added to the other by *Berthold* of *Austria*. 'Tis fortified by a strong Castle, that commands the Harbour, which is convenient, and makes it a Place of good Trade. Their principal Commerce is in yellow Amber, which grows on that Coast, Oak, Fir, Honey, and Wax. It has been subject to the Elector of *Brandenburg* since 1525.

2. *Memel*, 70 Miles N. E. from *Cönigsberg*. It lies upon the Bay of *Courland*, and has a good Harbour, defended with a strong Citadel. 'Twas built by the *Teutonic* Knights about 1328. 'Twas afterwards subject to the Knights call'd the *Cross-Bearers*, then to the *Poles*, but now to the *Brandenburgers*. It suffered much by War, but more by Fire, being almost quite burnt down in 1545, and 1648. 'Tis seated among Lakes, which makes it naturally strong, and the Key of this Part of the Country.

3. *Pilaw*, on the same Bay, about 20 Miles W. from *Cönigsberg*, noted for Sturgeon-Fishing, and defended by two Fortresses on the Mouth of the *Pregel*, where Criminals of State are imprison'd. The *Swedes* took them in 1625; but restor'd them to the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Treaty of *Oliva* in 1660.

4. *Brandenburg*, a small Town betwixt *Elbing* and *Cönigsberg*, on the Mouth of the *Pregel*, the Capital of the Country of *Natania*.

5. *Holland*, on the River of *Elbing*, the Capital of *Hockerland*, a barren Country, betwixt *Polish Prussia* and *Masovia*.

Lukaw and *Heiligpeil* are also in this Country, but of no great Note.

Calvinism is now the prevailing Religion in *Prussia*, by means of the University of *Cönigsberg*. Some Places of this Country

try are barren; but others fruitful and well inhabited.

S I L E S I A.

Authors differ about the Name. Some derive it from the *Elisi*, part of its ancient Inhabitants: Others from the River *Schlesi*, which falls into the *Oder*, and seems to be supported by the German Name *Schlesien*. *Cluverius* mentions the *Semnones*, *Osi*, and *Burii*, to have been part of its ancient Inhabitants. *Adam Bremenfis* and *Helmoldus* say, most of this Country was subject to the *Poles* in the Days of their first Prince *Lechus*; but frequently invaded by the ancient *Germans*. *Cureus* proves, that it was subdued by *Charles the Great*; that some Time after they revolted from him and his Sons, but was reduc'd again by *Lewis the Pious*. In 1042, the Emperor *Henry III.* gave *Silesia* to *Bretislau* Duke of *Bohemia*, who resign'd it to the *Poles*, on their paying a Yearly Tribute to him and his Successors. *Henry IV.* in 1086, by Consent of the Diet, as *Cosmas Pragensis*, who was present at it, informs us, empower'd *Wratislau* King of *Bohemia* to invade and reduce this Country, *Lusatia*, and *Poland*, which occasion'd Wars betwixt the *Bohemians* and the *Poles*, wherein 'tis probable, says *Dr. Nicholson*, the latter had the Advantage, since *Silesia* continued subject to them. But *Uladislau II.* Son to *Bolislau III.* of *Poland*, being banish'd by his Brothers, who were left Co-heirs with him by his Father, the Emperor *Frederick I.* forc'd the *Poles* to resign *Silesia* to *Uladislau* and his Heirs for ever. *Uladislau* left 3 Sons, who were joint Dukes of *Silesia*; but paid some Homage to the Crown of *Poland*. But the *Poles* were so angry at the coming in of the *Germans* to that Country, that they seldom call'd those Dukes to the Diet, and never admitted them to their Crown; tho' before it became Elective, they had frequently the greatest Right to it. *John* King of *Bohemia*, Son to the Emperor *Henry VII.* managed those Differences so well, that he obtained most of *Silesia*, by Agreement from *Casimir the Great* of *Poland*; but Part of it still paid Homage to the Polish Crown. Yet *Casimir*, contrary to this Agreement, subdued it again in 1343;

and afterwards the *Poles* invaded other Parts of the Country, where they still retain some Tracts of Land, which belong to *Abbies*, &c. in *Poland*; but now most of the Provinces, except the Dutchy of *Crossen*, belong to the Crown of *Bohemia*. Upon which, the Emperor has the Title of Duke of *Silesia*.

Cluverius divides this Dutchy, which *La Forest* says is one of the largest in *Europe*, and one of the best Countries in *Germany*, into 16 Principalities, viz. *Breslaw*, *Glogaw*, *Sagan*, *Schweinitz*, *Lignitz*, *Brige*, *Neisse*, *Crossen*, *Tesch*, *Oppelen*, *Ratibor*, *Munsterberg*, *Troppe*, *Jaur*, *Olffe*, and *Jagerendorff*. The Length from N. W. to S. E. according to *Moll's* Map, is 235 Miles; and where broadest, 'tis about 76. 'Tis separated from *Bohemia* and *Moravia* on the S. W. and S. by the Mountains called *Rissenbergen*; of which in their Place: From *Poland* on the E. *Lusatia* and Part of *Bohemia* on the W. *Brandenburg* on the N. and *Hungary* on the S. The 4 chief Mountains in this Country are, 1. *Zottenberg*, called by Latin Authors *Mons Zotenfis*, *Zabothus*, and sometimes *Silenfis*, or *Silenius*, called the *Silesian* Weather-cock, because, by the Top of it, those of the Neighbourhood pretend to guess what Weather they shall have next Day. On the Summit, there's the Ruins of an old Castle, demolish'd by the Citizens of *Br. law*, because it was a Shelter for Robbers. From this Hill they dig a fine dark greenish Marble. 2. *Gratzberg*, or *Grodzberg*, on which Duke *Frederick* built a fair Castle, now a Watch Tower. 3. *Spitzberg*, with a Beacon, near the former. 4. *Georgenberg*, in the Dutchy of *Schweidnitz*, famous for the *Terra Sigillata*, first discover'd by *Montan*, an eminent Chymist and Physician. 'Tis a sort of hard Earth, with white, yellow, and red Veins; was by him made use of as an Antidote against all sorts of Poisons, and a sovereign Remedy for many other Diseases. He kept this Secret for some Years; but at last, for the publick Benefit, wrote a Tract in Latin, with an Account of its Virtues.

The chief Rivers in this Country are, the *Oder*, so called from a Town near which it rises on the Borders of *Moravia*; the *Vistula* or *Weissel*, and the *Elb*, have likewise their Rise in this Country. Their other Rivers

are,

are, the *Bobor*, *Neisse*, *Ohla*, and *Queiss*. They abound also with Ponds and Lakes, that have Plenty of all Fresh-Water Fish, especially Lampries, which are taken in vast Quantities in the *Neissish Lake*, &c.

The principal Commodities of the Country are, Madder, Flax, Sweet Cane or Galengal, Wine, (especially in the Dutchy of *Sagan* and *Crossen*) Silver, Copper, Lead, Iron, Chalk, Plenty of Salt-Petre, and some good Salt; but not enough for their own Use, which makes 'em import it from *Poland*, &c. They have all the Wild and Tame Beasts found in the Empire, with Plenty of Butter and Cheese, some of it made of Ewe's Milk; but their chief Trading Commodities are Wool and Flax. They have abundance of Fowl, and Plenty of Game, in their Forrests.

They have had several good Scholars, and brisk Wits; but the Boors are accounted dull and weak. Their Neighbours call 'em *Ass-eaters*, because they say a *Silesian Boor*, who had never seen an Ass before, shot one as travelling in the Country for an overgrown Hare, and he and his Neighbours eat it as such: But to take off this, they frame another Story themselves, That having discover'd a Gold Mine, which they design'd no body else should share with them; to conceal it while they work'd at it privately, they call'd it by the Name of the *Golden Ass*. They reckon the Hours of the Day from the Setting of the Sun, as the *Bohemians*, and some of the *Italians*, do; but those of Quality follow the usual Method.

Matthæus Corvinus, King of Hungary, was for some Time Lieutenant of *Silesia*; but that Post was afterwards conferr'd on the Bishops of *Breslaw*, till the Emperor *Rodolph II.* order'd that some Temporal Prince of the Country, with the Officers under him for determining all Law-Suits, should be appointed by the Council at *Prague*.

Christianity was planted here, as in *Poland*, about the End of the 9th, or the Beginning of the 10th Century; but at first, the Christians worship'd in private, for fear of their Magistrates, till the Court turn'd Christian about 965, when 9 Bishopricks were erected in the Country. Soon after *Luther's* Appearance, they embrac'd the *Augsburg* Confession, which was confirmed

by the Emperor *Rodolph II.* in 1609. But *Ferdinand II.* repeal'd their Charter, and very much restrain'd the Exercise of their Religion, which was restor'd by the Treaty of *Westphalia*; but taken from them since, till the present King of *Sweden* oblig'd the Emperor to allow it them again: But the Controversy, whether the *Calvinists* there shall have the same Privilege, is not yet determin'd.

The Dutchy and City of Crossen.

THE Name in German signifies a Border, because it lies on the Frontiers of *Brandenburg*. It has had several Masters, having been mortgaged to the Archbishop of *Magdeburg* in 1272; but redeemed within two Years by the Duke of *Breslaw*. It was afterwards mortgaged to *John* Marquis of *Brandenburg* for 4000 Crowns towards their Duke's Ransom, and again redeemed. *John* of *Brandenburg*, called the *German Cicero*, had it again for his Wife's Portion of 50000 Crowns; and it was afterwards deliver'd to *John III.* of *Brandenburg* in 1391, by *Uladi-slaw* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; and the full Possession of it was given to the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Emperor *Frederick I.* King of *Bohemia*: Since which, the Electors have always call'd themselves Dukes of *Crossen*.

The City of that Name is ancient, stands in a pleasant Plain, and good Air, upon the *Oder*. The Duke's Palace, the Town-House, and some of the Citizens Houses, are of neat polish'd Stone. The neighbouring Hills are cover'd with Fruit-Trees of several Sorts; and they have likewise some Wine, but not very good. The City, tho' little, has a considerable Trade, by reason of its Situation on the Conflux of the *Oder* and *Bobor*. It lies about 25 Miles S. E. from *Francfort* on the *Oder*, and about 35 N. W. from *Glogaw*, about Long. 34. 37. Lat. 52. 3.

The City and Dutchy of Glogaw.

THE Name is derived from the *Waldish* Word, which signifies Copses or Thickets, amongst which 'tis situated. Duke *Conrad* Wall'd it, and built the Cathedral,

G g g g

the

the only Strength and Ornament of the Town, about 1260, and stock'd it with *Germans*, who brought in their own Laws. 'Tis called *Glogaw the Great*, because there is a lesser of the same Name in the Dutchy of *Oppelen*. 'Twas formerly subject to its own Princes, but now to the Emperor, as King of *Bohemia*. It lies in Long. 35. 12. Lat. 51. 45. on the *Oder*, 35 Miles S. E. from *Crossen*, and about 45 N. W. from *Breslaw*. It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1647, but restor'd to the Empire afterwards, is regularly fortified, and has a strong Castle. The *Palsie*, Gravel and Stone, are Epidemical Distempers here, ascrib'd to their intemperate drinking of bitter, muddy, strong Beer, and eating too much Pork and Cheese. There are several other petty Towns in this Dutchy, but not worth insisting on. The People of this Dutchy have a Law, by which a Daughter, upon Failure of Issue-Male, inherits her Father's Estate before any of his other Male Relations, which is contrary to the Custom of most other Places in *Germany*.

The City and Dutchy of Sagan.

THIS City is one of the largest and most populous in *Silesia*. It was several times taken and retaken by the *Swedes* and Imperialists during the Civil Wars of *Germany*. The Castle, St. Mary's Church, and two old Monasteries, are the Things of most Note here. It lies about 20 Miles W. from *Glogaw*, on the River *Bobor*. This Dutchy is but of small Extent, was formerly Part of that of *Glogaw*, but afterwards had three or four Princes of its own at a time. There are several large Corn-Fields in this Province, which is well water'd by Rivers; and there are three other small Cities, called *Prius*, *Naumburg*, and *Friwald*, belonging to the Dutchy.

The Town and Dutchy of Wolaw.

THIS Dutchy was formerly Part of that of *Lignitz*. 'Tis divided into 6 Circles or Hundreds, denominated from their chief Towns, *Wolaw*, *Hernst*, *Winzing*, *Ruten*, *Raude*, and *Steinaw*. *Wolaw* it self is but

a small inconsiderable Town, of little Trade. They are furnish'd with Fish from a neighbouring Lake, otherwise they could scarcely subsist. 'Twas however for some Time the Seat of War betwixt the *Swedes* and *Germans*, and a *Swedish* Lieutenant-General kept it with a Garrison. It lies about two Miles S. E. from *Glogaw*.

The Dukedom and City of Oelfe.

THIS City is neat and regularly built, has a fair Church, College, and Town-Hall, and a handsome square Market-place. The Gates, Walls, and Turrets, were handsome and noble before the late *Swedish* War, when most of them were demolish'd by the *Swedes* about 1648. 'Tis seated in a pleasant Country, and wholesome Air, was first made a City by the Emperor *Henry I.* about 936, and afterwards had Dukes of their own; but since 1492, has been subject to the Dukes of *Munsterberg*. There are 7 other small Cities in this Principality. The Town lies about 42 *English* Miles S. E. from *Glogaw*.

The City and Dutchy of Breslaw.

THIS City is called *Uratistawia*, and by some Latin Authors *Budorgis*, and *Butorigum*. It has the first Name from *Wlatistaw*, a *Bohemian* Prince, who founded it, and on that Account the Citizens bear a W in their Coat of Arms. It stands on the Conflux of the *Oder* and *Ohla*, in a rich and pleasant Country, in Long. 36. 7. Lat. 51. 7. about 43 Miles S. E. from *Glogaw*. 'Tis the Metropolis of *Silesia*, very populous, and much resorted to by *Hungarian*, *Bohemian*, *Polish*, and other Foreign Merchants. The Citizens are neat and genteel in their Clothes, and live as handsomely as any others in the Empire; upon which they affect to have been thought to have had an immediate Dependence, and do not love to be reckon'd any Part of the Kingdom of *Bohemia*; tho' it be plain from *Goldastus*, that they formerly were. To support their Pretensions, they obtained Leave of the Emperors to bear the Spread-Eagle in their Escutcheons; and *Charles V.* confirmed their Privileges. Their

Their Buildings are generally fair and stately; and on the Banks of the Oder, there are 4 old fashion'd Piles of Building, with Turrets on the Top, which they say were the Palaces of so many *Swabian* Princes, formerly Lords of this City. The Town is the See of a Bishop, who is put in by the King of *Bohemia*. They were anciently called *Golden Bishops*, because of their large Revenues; and they say, he must always be a *Silesian*; yet others have enjoy'd this Post. They have also an University, which has bred many learned Men, and some eminent Writers. *La Forest* says, it has been a sort of an independant City since 1348. That the Emperor *Charles IV.* enlarg'd and endow'd it with great Privileges; so that their Government is a sort of Commonwealth. Most of the Inhabitants, according to this Author, were *Calvinists*, and had their Liberty ratified by the Treaty of *Munster*. He adds, That in the 13th Century, it was burnt by the *Tartars*, and suffered much by the Civil Wars of *Germany*. 'Tis one of the largest and richest Towns of the Empire; and their stately Churches, and other Buildings, with their fine Squares, make it one of the finest. The Inhabitants have made it very strong, and guard it themselves. Their Government is by 15 Senators, 11 of which are of the Nobility, and the other 4 are chosen out of the Corporations of Drapers, Mercers, Brewers, and Butchers. *Hekelius* gives a mighty Character of this City, and of the Inhabitants, for their Religion, Civility, Liberality, and mentions many learned Men who have been bred there.

The first Duke of this Province was *Bolisslaus*, a *Polish* Prince, who had that Dignity conferr'd on him by the Emperor *Frederick I.* in 1163; but the following Princes not being able to defend themselves against the *Tartars* and *Poles*, they were forced to put themselves under the Protection of the King of *Bohemia*, to whom, *Burno* says, the Emperor *Frederick II.* gave it as a Fief of the Empire; but 'tis now subject immediately to the Emperor.

The City and Dutchy of Lignitz.

THIS is a fair City, on a small River, and is thought to derive its Name from

the ancient *Lugii*, about 25 Miles W. from *Breslaw*, and 30 S. from *Glogaw*. *Bolisslaus*, their first Duke, enlarg'd and fortify'd it about 1170; and Duke *Frederick* did so much improve it in 1532, that it was the best fortified Town in *Silesia*, except *Breslaw*. They have a noble and strong Castle, and a stately Hospital and Town-House. 'Tis famous for the Victory which the *Swedes* obtained near it over the *Germans* in 1635.

This Dutchy is the best Corn-Country in *Silesia*, and abounds with the white sort of *Terra Sigillata*. 'Tis commonly divided into 7 Circles, 4 of which take Name from their principal Towns, *Luben*, *Parchweitz*, *Hayn*, and *Goldberg*, which are not worth insisting upon. The other 3 Divisions are in the barren Part of the Country.

The Dutchie and Cities of Jawer, Schweidnitz, Brieg, Monsterberg, and Oppelen.

Jawer stands in a pleasant Valley, near the rocky Mountains which divide *Silesia* from *Bohemia*. It has no River near it, but is fortified with high Ramparts and deep Ditches. It lies about 10 Miles S. from *Lignitz*. It suffered much by the Civil War in 1648, when their Church was burnt down; but is now rebuilt more stately. It came to *Charles IV.* King of *Bohemia* by Marriage, and is subject to the Emperor as King of that Country. They have a Castle, where the Governor of this Dutchy and *Schweidnitz* resides. There are 11 other Towns in this Dutchy, but of no great Note.

Schweidnitz takes its Name from the great Herds of Swine kept there before the Forest was cut down in 1070, and has a Wild-Boar for its Arms. It was enlarged, fortified, and beautified, by *Bolisslaus I.* and is one of the finest Towns in *Silesia*. They have fine Churches, and Publick Buildings; and in their Armory, there is a great Gun which carries a Bullet of 320 Pound Weight. The Town of *Strigaw* in this Dutchy is noted for great Store of the *Terra Sigillata*. There are 9 other Towns in this Dutchy, but not worth describing. This City lies about 20 Miles S. E. from *Lignitz*, near the Conflux of two small Rivers.

Brieg, is so call'd from the *Polish* Word, signifying the high Bank upon which it stands on the River *Oder*, about 20 Miles S. E. from *Breslaw*. The Streets are uniform, the Houses generally are of Stone, and *St. Nicholas's* Church is a high and stately old Fabrick, with two Towers, after the *Frankish* Mode. Most of it, except the Publick Buildings, was burnt by the *Hussites* in 1428. There are 9 other Towns in this Dutchy, two of which, *Reichenstein* and *Silberberg*, are noted for their Mines, and are jointly subject to the Dukes of *Brieg* and *Lignitz*, who are both of one Family, descended from the ancient Hereditary Kings of *Poland*. This is one of the chief Dutchies of the Country.

Monsterberg stands in a fruitful Plain, about 32 Miles S. from *Breslaw*, and 20 S. E. from *Schweidnitz*, at the Head of a small River which falls into the *Oder* at *Breslaw*. It takes its Name from a Monastery built here by the Emperor *Henry I.* who founded the City. 'Tis but small, and not well fortified, and has nothing of Note but an old Castle, which is a strong Fortrefs; the School, and a fair Town-House. There are 5 other Towns in this Dutchy, but of no great Note.

Oppelen stands on the N. of the *Oder*, over which it has a Bridge. It lies about 37 Miles S. E. from *Breslaw*, is fortified with thick Walls, and strong Gates. 'Tis subject to the *Poles*, and about 36 M. from the Frontiers of that Country. The Emperor was prevailed with by the K. of *Poland*, to whom 'twas mortgaged, to withdraw his Troops from thence in 1647. There are 12 other Towns in this Country, where most of the People speak *Polish*.

The Cities and Dutchies of Grotkaw, Jagerndorf, Troppaw, Ratibor, and Teschen.

Grotkaw is small, and most of the Houses of Wood, except the Church, the Bishop's Palace, and Town-Hall, which are of Stone. There is such Plenty of Wood and Corn in the Neighbourhood, that it is become a Proverb, 'Tis impossible for a *Grotkawer* to starve or freeze. It is subject to the

King of *Bohemia*, and stands about 10 Miles E. from *Monsterberg*. *Neissa*, 10 Miles S. from it, is noted for a great Trade in Ticking. There are 11 other Towns in this Dutchy, but not considerable.

Jagerndorf takes its Name from the great Number of Huntsmen that formerly liv'd in it, where they had Plenty of Game in the neighbouring Woods. Latin Authors call this Dutchy *Carnoviensis*, or rather *Cornoviensis*, from its Arms, which are a Pair of Horns betwixt two Stones. This City and Dutchy was given by *Lewis* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* to *George* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, who built a Castle and Fortifications, that defend this little Town. It lies above 30 Miles S. E. from *Monsterberg*.

Troppaw, is so call'd from the River *Oppaw*, on which it stands, about 12 Miles S. E. from *Jagerndorf*. Latin Writers call the Dutchy, *Oppaviensis*. In 1405, it was swallowed up by a Deluge, occasioned by a sudden Thaw of Snow from the neighbouring Mountains. This City has Plenty of all Necessaries, and is noted for good Beer, but of no great Trade. There are 8 other Towns in this Dutchy, where they observe the Customs of *Moravia*, and on that Account have frequently attempted to join themselves to that Marquisate; but have always been hinder'd by those of *Troppaw*. 'Tis a very old Town, and has a Fortrefs built after the Antick Manner.

Ratibor stands in a pleasant Plain, on the W. of the *Oder*, 30 Miles E. from *Oppelen*. 'Tis suppos'd to have been built about 1164. Some Latin Authors call it *Ratibonia*. Most of the Houses are of Wood; but the Duke's Palace, the Cathedral, and some Publick Buildings, are Stone. It has still one Popish Monastery; but the Jesuits were drove from hence at the Reformation. It had formerly Dukes of its own; but their Issue failing in 1516, it became subject to the King of *Bohemia*. The Dutchy has 5 other Towns, but not considerable.

Teschen is one of the oldest Cities of *Silesia*, and is said to have been built by a *Polish* Prince about 810. It stands on the *Oder*, about 28 Miles S. E. from *Ratibor*, on the Confines of *Silesia*, *Moravia*, *Hungary*, and *Poland*; whence it comes, that the Inhabitants have a medly of Language, scarce understood by any but themselves. They have

have Store of Venison, Wild-Fowl, and Fish, and have a great Trade in Wine and Fruit from *Hungary*. They have two Churches, where their Worship is perform'd in *Bohemian* and *High-Dutch*, most of the Inhabitants being of those Countries. They have two Sorts of Beer, one of Wheat, and the other of Barley-Malt; the latter very pleasant and strong, with which the Country People frequently make themselves drunk. In this Dutchy, there are many high Mountains; but there are two Ridges most remarkable, the first the *Carpathian* Mountains, which separate this Country from *Hungary* and *Poland*, and are by the Natives called *Jablunka*; among them are many Mines of Silver and Lead, which make the chief Riches of *Silesia*. The Miners are by the Natives called *Wallachians*, and are a much rougher sort of People than the other *Silesians*: A vast Number of 'em revolted from the Imperialists to the *Swedes* in 1643. The other Mountains are on the S. and divide this Country from *Moravia*. Latin Authors make them part of the *Sudetes*, and call them *Montes Maraviici*. They are well stock'd with Mines, and great Flocks of Sheep; but their Mines do not yield so much Ore as those of the *Carpathian* Mountains. They have 8 or 9 other Towns in this Country, but of no great Note. *La Forge* mentions a little City called *Biczina*, memorable for the Defeat of *Maximilian* of *Austria*, who was taken here by *Sigismund* of *Poland* in 1588; and another called *Plesz* near the *Weissel*, a pretty little City, with the Title of a Barony. He mentions also *Sprottau* in the Dutchy of *Glogaw*, famous for a Salt Mine; and *Freyssas* in that same Dutchy, noted for its Iron Mines.

The County and City of Glatz.

THE County lies among the Mountains of *Moravia*, has the Dutchy of *Silesia* on the E. *Bohemia* on the W. *Moravia* on the S. and Part of *Bohemia* on the N. which *Dr. Nicholson* observes has puzzled Geographers to which of those Countries to assign it; but it most probably belongs to *Silesia*. The ancient Inhabitants are thought to have been the *Marigni*; and after them, the *Hun-*

garians possess'd it, with some neighbouring Countries, till routed by the Emperor *Henry I.* who hang'd their Chief Commander *Gloxar*, from whence this City is said to have taken its Name. The Nobility say, That before this Conquest by *Henry I.* who also planted Christianity here, it was immediately subject to the Emperors, and afterwards subdued by the *Poles* and *Bohemians*, who, by their Records, appear to be Masters of it in the 11th Century. After this, it was some time possessed by the Duke of *Silesia*, till the Reign of *Charles IV.* who subjected it again to *Bohemia*; and thus it continued, till *K. George* of *Bohemia* gave it, with *Monsterberg* and *Frankenstein*, to some of his own Sons, who were called Dukes of *Monsterberg*, and Earls of *Glatz*. It was afterwards sold to several other Princes; but is now subject to the Kingdom of *Bohemia*. Their Commodities are, Iron, Coal, Silver Ore, Timber, Venison of all sorts, Tame Cattel, Butter and Cheese; and the Country is so rich, that it brings some Years 40000 Crowns into the Treasury of *Bohemia*.

The City is neat and compact, stands in a pleasant Plain on the Banks of the *Neissa*, about 22 Miles S. W. from *Monsterberg*. 'Tis defended by a strong Castle on the top of a neighbouring Hill. Their great Church was said to have been formerly the Temple of an Idol, worship'd by the ancient Inhabitants, in which, *Aelurius* says, the young Maids nail'd up their Hair against the Walls; and not long ago, some of these *Tabulae Votive* were to be seen there. The Magistrates have a Power to coin Money in their own Names; but seldom coin any other than Halfpennies and Farthings. There are 9 other large Towns in this County, of which we have no Description, and above 100 fair Villages.

The Marquisate of Moravia.

THE *Bohemians* usually give the Precedency to this Country before *Silesia*, either because 'twas anciently a Kingdom of it self, or was sooner subject to the Kings of *Bohemia*. Some Authors derive the Name from *Mahron*, a Mare, because 'tis noted for breeding of Horses; but it comes
more

more probably from the great River *March*, which runs through the middle of the Country; was formerly the Border of the German Empire on that Side, and gave the Name of *Marchomanni* to the ancient Inhabitants. It has *Silesia* on the N. *Austria* on the S. *Bohemia* on the W. and Part of *Silesia* on the E. is about 110 Miles long, and 80 broad, according to Dr. *Nicholson*. *Mall* makes the Length 120, and the Breadth 80. The greatest Part of the Country towards the N. and W. consists of uninhabitable huge Mountains and Forests; but towards *Austria* and *Hungary*, it abounds as much with fair Fields, Towns and Villages, as most Parts of the Empire. The Water, especially what's found in Pits, is in many Places poisonous and pestilential, because of a mix'd Mineral made up chiefly of Lime and Nitre in the Soil, which not only infects the Water, but gives a Tincture to their Corn, Vines, Fruit-Trees, and other Vegetables, which occasions the Stone, Gout, Cholick, Falling-Sickness, and Hypochondriack Distempers, to be epidemical in this Country; but Providence has furnish'd them with several rich Medicinal Fountains, which are not only a present Remedy against those Distempers, but against most others with which Mankind is afflicted. *Thomas Jordan*, a Physician, and Native, has given a good Account of 'em, and of their Virtues, in a Book Entitled, *Commentarius de Aquis Medicatis Moraviae*. Since which, other Medicinal Waters and Baths have been discover'd there, which *Herdot*, another of their Physicians, has describ'd in a Book, call'd, *Tartaro Mastix Moraviae*. They have likewise other Fountains of a salt and acid Taste, very pleasant and wholesome.

Their two chief Rivers are, 1. *Moraw*, which gives Name to the Country. It rises in the County of *Glatz*, runs through the middle of the Marq. and most of their chief Cities stand on its Banks. 2. *Teya*, which springs from two Fountains, one in *Bohemia*, the other in *Austria*; and after receiving several other Rivers, falls into the *Moraw* on the Borders of *Austria*. These Rivers have Store of Trouts, Crevisses, Barbels, Eels, Jack, Perch, and many other Sorts of Fresh Fish.

The Country abounds with Corn of all Sorts for their own Consumption and Ex-

port, and they have Store of Red and White Wine. They have good Breeds of Horses, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats; but no Asses, Camels, or Mules, which some ascribe to the Sharpness of the Air. They have one kind of Beast peculiar to their Forests, which they call *Rysowe*, somewhat like a Panther. 'Tis about as high as an ordinary Cur, but much thicker; its Belly and Feet are spotted, and it preys upon Deer and other Beasts, whom it surprises, by leaping suddenly upon them from the top of a Rock or Tree. *Dambrevius*, in his History of *Bohemia*, speaks of Frankincense and Myrrh dug out of the Earth here, which he says resembles the Privities of Men and Women, and on that Account is distinguish'd into Male and Female; and he tells us of his own Knowledge, That one of their Noblemen, when his Servants were digging a Fish-Pond, found a Piece of this Myrrh, perfectly resembling an entire Man; part of which, resembling half of a Man's Arm, that Lord gave to himself, which he made use of for Fumigation: And *Herod* above-mention'd assures us likewise, That another Piece, resembling an Infant, was found in the Allum Mines near *Czerua*, which the Miners sold for 30 Crowns to some *Carthusian* Monks, who sent it to their great Monastery in *France*, where the Abbot made a Present of it to the French King. The Country People, among other Virtues, fancy that it drives away Serpents and ill Spirits. *Aeneas Sylvius* says, the Inhabitants, in his Time, were a thievish barbarous People; and that there was no travelling among 'em without Arms. The *Moravians* themselves own, that the Boors on the River *Hanak* are guilty of this Crime; but the Inhabitants in general are of a free Conversation, not easily provoked, and hard to be appeased. They are exemplary for Obedience to their Magistrates, brave in the Field, faithful to their Promises, but credulous of old Prophecies, and addicted to Drink; but not such Drunkards and Bigots as some Geographers represent them.

Their common Language is a Dialect of the *Sclavonick*; but the Nobility and Citizens speak *High-Dutch*.

They are said to have been first converted by *St. Cyril* and *Meludius*, &c. When *John Huss* began to appear in *Bohemia*, many of the

the *Moravians* embrac'd his Doctrine, which was much opposed by *John de Praga*, Bishop of *Olmutz*, afterwards a Cardinal; but soon after, most of their Cities and great Towns threw off Popery. The Synod of *Brin*, in 1608, having given Leave for every Man to believe as God had given him Knowledge, the People abusing their Liberty, abundance of unlearn'd Men, and Mechanics, set up for Preachers, which divided them into 14 Sects, who all rejected Communion with one another. These unhappy Divisions made it easy for the Emperor *Ferdinand II.* after the Defeat of the Elector *Palatine* near *Prague* in 1620, to re-introduce Popery; so that the Protestants were dispersed among the Rocks and Mountains on the Borders of *Silesia*, and durst not meet in publick, as *Dr. Nicholson* informs us.

That same Author says, *Moravia* was anciently a Kingdom, and their Kings the greatest Potentates in this Part of *Europe*, having under them *Bohemia*, *Poland*, and *Silesia*. About 700, *Zuantacop*, King of *Moravia*, refusing Tribute and Homage to the Emperor, the latter invaded him; but was forc'd to a dishonourable Retreat: To revenge which, the Emperor call'd in the Infidel *Hungarians*, by whose Assistance he routed *Zuantacop*, who thereupon became an Hermit; and his Country being divided into Provinces, was annexed to the Empire, and now most of it is subject to *Bohemia*, or broke into a few Petty Baronies. *La Forreſt* says, 'twas united to *Bohemia* about 1048 by *Brzetislas* Duke of *Bohemia*, called the *Bohemian Achilles*. This Country suffer'd much by the Ravages of the *Tartars* during the Siege of *Vienna* in 1683.

Their chief Cities and Towns are,

1. *Olmuts*, their Metropolis, in Latin *Olmotium*, supposed by some to be *Ptolomy's Eburum*. 'Tis a small City, neat, and well built, on the Banks of the *Moraw*, by which it has a Trade with *Bohemia*, *Hungary*, *Poland*, *Silesia*, and *Austria*. It lies about 20 Miles W. from the Borders of *Silesia*, in Long. 35. 53. Lat. 49. 35. Their Antiquaries fancy the Name to be a Corruption of *Julio Montium*, and therefore think it to have been built by *Julius Caesar*; but without any Ground. *St. Cyril*, their Apostle, who liv'd

about 880, was their first Bishop. *Aventinus* says, he was the Author of the old *Wendish* or *Croatian* Alphabet, in which he wrote the Bible that he translated into the *Moravian* Tongue; of which, some Antiquaries take the *Muscovian* Bible, printed in 1581, to be a Transcript. In 1346, the Bishop of *Olmuts* was removed from being subject to the Elector of *Mentz*, and made Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Prague*; yet some of their late Bishops have deny'd Subjection to any but the Pope.

2. *Brin*, in Latin *Bruna*, about 18 Miles S. E. from *Olmuts*. The Courts of Judicature for the Country are held here and at *Olmuts* by Turns. It stands on the Conflux of two small Rivers, and is defended by a strong Castle on the top of a neighbouring Hill. It held out bravely against the *Swedes* in 1645, whereas *Olmuts* surrender'd at first Summons; on which Account, the Inhabitants dispute the Precedency with that Town. 'Tis very well fortified; and is noted for the *Unicornu Minerale* found near it, of which Authors give different Accounts; some representing it like the Trunk of a Walnut-Tree, and others to the Bones of unknown Animals. *Dr. Nicholson* supposes it to be a Petrification of Timber, such as is found in many other Places, and particularly in *Oxfordshire*.

3. *Iglaw*, on the Frontiers of *Bohemia*, about 40 Miles W. from *Brin*. 'Tis said to have been built in 799, and to have taken its Name from *Igle*, the German Word for an Hedgehog, because those Creatures abounded in that Place; but *La Forreſt* derives it from the *Igla*, on which it stands. 'Tis a large, well built, and strong Town, and a great Thororoughfare betwixt *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, which makes the Inhabitants more civil to Strangers than the rest of their Countrymen. It held out obstinately against the Doctrine of *Huss*; but was the first Town of *Moravia*, subject to the King of *Bohemia*, that embrac'd the *Augsburg* Confession. In 1645, it surrender'd to the *Swedes*, who, to make it more tenable, burnt down the large Suburbs, and defended it against the Imperialists, whom they repulsed after a Twelvemonth's Siege. The Jesuits College, with the *Gymnasium* annex'd, one Monastery of *Dominicans*, and another of *Franciscans*, are worth a Traveller's View.

Their

Their greatest Trade is in Beer, and a coarse Woollen Cloth, which they make and dress themselves.

4. *Znaim*, in Latin *Znagma*, on the *Teya*, about 25 Miles S. W. from *Brin*, in a pleasant Soil, and good Air. *Cluverius* thinks it to be *Ptolomy's Medostanium*, which comes pretty near the Longitude, but not his Latitude. The *Moravian Annals* say, 'Twas built where it now stands about 1242, having been formerly destroy'd in 1145 by *Uladislaus* of *Bohemia*. 'Tis defended by a strong Castle; but is over-look'd by an adjacent Mountain within Cannon-shot, which makes it incapable of holding out a Siege. They have many Vineyards in the Neighbourhood, which afford a palatable Wine. Their chief Trade is by Passengers betwixt *Vienna* and *Prague*. 'Tis famous for being frequently taken and retaken during the German Civil War, especially when taken by the *Swedes* in 1645. 'Tis also noted for the Death of the Emperor *Sigismund* in 1437.

5. *Cremser*, on the River *Moraw*, mid-way betwixt *Olmütz* and *Hradib*, was lately a poor Village, but now one of the fairest Cities in *Moravia*, occasioned by being the Residence of the Bishops of *Olmütz*, who, because of its convenient Situation, bought it from the Marq. of *Moravia*, and built a Palace there, which occasioning the Inhabitants to increase, they wall'd and fortify'd the Town. 'Twas taken by the *Swedes* in 1645.

6. *Ewancitz*, on the Conflux of the *Igla* and *Oslaw*, which here lose their Names, and are called *Schwartza*. 'Twas formerly noted for more different Sects in Religion than almost any other Town in *Europe*. The *Hussites* and *Lutherans* had their Worship in the Parish-Church at one and the same time. The *Jews* had one of the Streets, with a Synagogue and School, without the Gates: The *Catholics* had two Churches, one for the *Bohemians*, and another for the *Germans*, who, with the *Lutherans* and *Hussites*, shar'd the Government of the City. In another Part of the Suburbs, dwelt those call'd the *Holy Brethren of Swisserland*, who deny'd Baptism, thought it damnable to wear a Sword, and had a Communion only at *Whitsun-tide*. The *Photinians*, who deny'd the Resurrection, and, as *Dr. Nicholson* thinks, were *Atheists*

and *Quakers*, had their Meeting near a Fountain in a neighbouring Field. At a small Village called *Olekwitz*, about half a Mile from the Town, lived 400 *Anabaptists*. These Differences gave the *Papists* an Opportunity to drive them all from thence; so that no Liberty is granted now to any but *Papists* and *Jews*. *La Forrest* mentions *Austerlitz*, a Town almost ruin'd by the *Swedes* in the Civil War. *Dr. Nicholson* takes Notice of the *Romantick Account* of *Casspar Lowdisman*, who, in his Directions for speedy understanding Foreign Languages, says, there are 100 Cities, 410 Towns, 500 Castles, and 30360 Villages, in this Marq. And since the learned Annotators on *Cluverius* say nothing of this Number, and that those who travel the Country must needs know it to be false, it must be own'd the Doctor's Reflexion is just.

BOHEMIA.

Its Extent.

THIS Kingdom has *Moravia*, and Part of *Silesia*, on the E. *Voitland* and the *Upper Palatinat* on the W. *Austria*, and Part of *Bavaria*, on the S. Part of *Silesia*, *Upper Lusatia*, and *Misnia*, on the N. According to *Moll's* Map, the greatest Length from E. to W. is 160 Miles, and the greatest Breadth from S. to N. about 150. *Goldastus*, from its Situation, urges very reasonably, That it must needs have anciently been a Branch of the German Nation.

Their ancient Inhabitants, with their Manners and Religion.

Goldastus thinks, the *Hermiones* were the ancient Inhabitants, and makes the *Hermunduri* a Branch of 'em. They were drove out by the *Boii*, commanded by their General *Sigovefus*, a *Celtick* Prince. *Micralius*, a learned *Pomeran*, thinks they were not the *Galli Senones*, as most late Antiquaries do, but the ancient *Semnonnes* of *Pomerania*. The Reader may consult what we have said concerning those People in our Account of Ancient Germany. *Micralius* supposes, the *Boii* settled

PART OF

FRANCONIA

P. of S W A =

SUISSE.

Grifons

PART OF

ITALY.

G. of Venice

Is



settled here about the Year 690 of Rome, when *Tarquinius Priscus* was King, and gave Name to the Country, from whence they were drove by the *Marcomanni*, and removed to that Place now called *Bavaria*, which from them was anciently, according to some Authors, called *Boisparia*. The modern *Bohemians* call their Country *Czechome*, and themselves *Czechowsky*. Such of them as allow the Name of *Bohemia*, derive it from *Boy* and *Muz*, which, they say, signifies a Valiant and Pious Man, which agrees well enough with their Character. They are tax'd with being so apt to imitate the Fashions of other Nations, that a Painter, who drew other People in their proper Habits, painted a *Bohemian* naked, with a Web at his Foot, and all other Necessaries for making a Suit, according to the next Mode he should fancy. Some Authors say, That *Zechur*, a *Slavonian* Commander, with a small Number of his Countrymen, from whom the *Bohemians* love to derive their Pedigree, settled here; but they cannot tell whether in the 4th, 5th, or 6th Century; That they were a harmless People, liv'd in a sociable Community, and distributed what they had according to every one's Necessity, (which looks somewhat like *Sir Thomas More's Utopia*.) They add, That after *Zechur's* Death, being disturb'd by their Neighbours, they chose one *Crocus*, an ancient Gentleman, to be their Chief Magistrate, and appointed a certain Number of Men to assist him in determining Controversies. Under this sort of Government they continued, till *Libussa*, *Crocus's* Grand-Daughter, took one *Primislaus*, a Countryman, from the Plough to be her Husband, and he assum'd a more absolute Government, under the Title of a Duke; and they say, their Successors kept the Government about 450 Years. *Hoffman* gives this further Account of 'em, That *Charles the Great* fortified *Dresden* against the *Bohemians* about 808, and his Son made them Tributaries to the Empire. *Lewis* King of the *Romans* made War upon them with various Success, and brought 12 of their Dukes to be Christians in 862. Their Duke *Bozizui* conquer'd *Moravia*, and converted the whole Kingdom. Their Prince *Wencislaus* was brought to a Peace by the Emperor *Henry the Fowler* about 930; and their King *Bolislau* was subdued by *Otto*

the Great, and became his Vassal in 954. *Otto II.* reduc'd them in 976, and their Bishop *Adalbert* forsook them, because of their bad Lives, about 999; and going to *Hungary*, converted many of that People. *Dr. Nicholson* says, The Emperor *Henry IV.* in a Diet of the Empire at *Mentz*, created *Wratislau* D. of *Bohemia* a King, and set a Crown of Gold on his Head; some say in 1072, and others about 1082; from which Time the Emperors always claim'd a Right of investing their Kings, and perswaded the People to rebel from Time to Time against such as did not receive the Investiture at their Hands. The *Brandenburg* Resident gives much the same Account of the Settlement of the *Slavi* here, who he thinks came from *Scythia*; and because they were originally Strangers, their own Authors and others have from Time to Time pleaded an Exemption from their being subject to the Laws or Diets of the Empire. These *Slavi* extended their Boundaries into *Pomerania*, *Macklenburg*, and *Brandenburg*. It has also been debated, whether they be a Circle of the Empire, because when *Maximilian I.* first appointed the Circles to be Six, he did not include *Bohemia*; but the same Author says, That the Emperor *Wencislaus* did long before that Time make it the first of the Four Circles which he appointed: And he makes it plain from History. That since the Time of *Charlemagne*, they have done Homage to the Emperor and Empire.

Dr. Nicholson says, When the *Slavi* came first hither, they brought many Idols with them; their Chief was *Pron*, which in their Language is the same with *Jupiter the Thunderer*, and they gave him the same Reverence as the *Saxons* did to *Thor*; but at last rejected him, and honour'd *Squanto-Wit*, an Idol, whose Temple was at *Wollin* in *Pomerania*; and the Doctor says, they still retain some Remembrance of this Idol; for when they shake Hands with one another, they make use of this Compellation, *Witeg, Witeg*, or *Witamte*. The first that converted them to Christianity was *Methodius*, a Greek Prelate; so that 'twas long before the *Bohemian* Clergy would own the Pope's Supremacy. The Doctor observes, That the Catalogues of their Kings are so contradictory, that 'tis hard to reconcile them.

The HISTORY of their Kings.

THE *Atlas Historique* gives us the following History of their Dukes and Kings.

1. *Zechus* or *Zecco*, said to be descended of a Noble Family, and flying hither with his Brother *Lechus* for killing a Person of Quality in their own Country, they took up their Abode on Mount *Chezup*, where finding none but a few People that look'd after their Flocks, and liv'd on their Milk, they taught them Husbandry: Upon which those Peasants honouring them as their Masters, the rest of the Inhabitants follow'd their Example, and chose *Zechus* for their Governor, because he was the eldest: Upon this, *Lechus* went to Poland, to which he gave Name, and founded the Government there. This is said to have happen'd about the Year of Christ 550. *Zechus* govern'd a long Time; but the Time of his Death is uncertain.

2. *Craco* or *Cracius* succeeded: Some call him *Zechus's* Son, and others make him a Bohemian, and say, he govern'd with so much Prudence, that the Poles chose him also to be their Governor after *Lechus*; and some say, he founded and gave Name to the City *Cracow* in that Country.

3. After his Death, the youngest of his three Daughters, called *Libussa*, had the Government of *Bohemia* about 619, which she managed well; but many of her Subjects thinking it unreasonable that a Woman should govern Men, they revolted; but she pacify'd them, by pretending to the Art of Divination, and telling, That the Gods had order'd them to let a Horse loose, and that she was to marry the Man to whose House the Horse should first betake himself, and that he was to be their Prince. A Horse being let loose accordingly, he stop'd at the House of *Primislaus*, a Peasant, who understanding the Matter, threw down his Stick with which he drove his Cattle at Plough, which the fabulous Pagans said became immediately a Nut-Tree; in Remembrance of which, he distributed a certain Quantity of Nuts every Year to the People. He govern'd with great Success while *Libussa* liv'd; and after her Death, married one *Va-*

lasea, who form'd a Conspiracy to banish all the Men, and set up a Government like that of the Amazons. She and her Women defended themselves bravely for some Time; but being overcome, and put to Death, *Primislaus* died soon after.

4. *Nimislaus* his Son succeeded about 676. He cultivated the Country, and wall'd the Town of *Prague*. He is said to have acquir'd great Glory in his War with the Romans, and died about 715.

5. *Mnatba* his Son succeeded, govern'd the Men himself, as they say, and left the Government of the Women to his Wife *Trefslaw*, had War with the *Alamanni* and *Moravians*, and died about 735.

6. He was succeeded by *Vogenius*, whom some call *Vorinius*. He had War with the Saxons and *Misnians*, and with Rebels of his own Country, whom having subdued, he liv'd peaceably ever after, and died in 763.

7. He was succeeded by *Wancislaus* I. of whom there is nothing remarkable, but that he reign'd 22 Years, and died about 785.

8. He was succeeded by his Brother *Czefzowislaus*, who being ambitious, got himself chosen Prince at *Prague*. He was unsuccessful in his War with *Charlemagne*, and died in 803.

9. He was succeeded by his Son *Belam*, or, as some call him, *Necklam*, who being a cowardly Prince, his Uncle *Vladislaus* usurp'd the Government; but was defeated and kill'd by *Belam's* General, and is said to have been so cruel, that he would allow his Soldiers no Provisions but the dead Bodies of their Enemies, which rais'd all the Country against him. *Belam* died in 839, and was succeeded by his Son *Nossivitus*, whom some call *Nossritius*. He shar'd the Government with his Brother *Misfbogen*, and governing happily, it contributed much to the Peopling of the Country. He had War with *Lewis de Debonnaire*; but made Peace with him a little before his Death, which happen'd in 856.

10. His Son *Borsswojus* I. succeeded, was their first Christian Prince, and converted by *Cyrillus* and *Methodius* in 894. This occasion'd his Subjects to dethrone him; but he subdued the Rebels, establish'd Christianity, left the Government to his Son *Epi-*

signus I. and retir'd with his Queen to a Monastery, where he died piously.

11. *Spitignus* began his Reign in 904, govern'd well at first; but abandoning himself to Ambition, and other Vices, and despising the Threatnings of his Father and Mother, he was cut off by Heaven 4 Days after their Reproof, in 906.

12. His Brother *Uladislaus* or *Wratisslaw* I. succeeded, was an excellent Prince, victorious against the *Hungarians*, and married a Pagan Lady, on her Promise to turn Christian; but soon after she endeavour'd to suppress Christianity, tho' without Success. *Uladislaus* died in 916.

13. *Wencisslaw* I. his Son, succeeded; and during his Minority, his Grandmother *Ludmilla* was chosen to govern, because her Husband would not quit his Monastery. His own Pagan Mother being incens'd at this, got her murder'd, and usurp'd the Government, for which, when he came of Age, he took Arms against her, which brought her to a feign'd Submission; but she perswaded his Brother *Boleslaw* to murder him in 938.

14. *Boleslaw* succeeded; but the Emperor *Otho the Great* made War upon him for murdering his Brother; and after 14 Years Time, brought him to a Peace, to pay Tribute, to do publick Penance for his Crime, and to restore Christianity. After which, *Boleslaw* died in 967.

15. His Son *Boleslaw* II. succeeded, and was an excellent Prince. He founded the Bishoprick of *Prague*, sent for several Clergymen from *Germany* to promote Christianity, made War upon the *Russians* and *Poles*, defeated the Emperor *Otho* II.'s Army, made Peace with his Son *Otho* III. and died, after a good Reign, in 999.

16. His Son *Boleslaw* III. succeeded, was a covetous and negligent Prince, and lost what his Father had conquer'd from his Neighbours: Upon which, his Uncle *Musca* seiz'd him, put out his Eyes, and banish'd him; but by the Help of the *Sclavonians* and *Saxons*, he recover'd Part of his Dominions, and died at *Budowitz* in the 80th Year of his Age.

17. *Jaromir*, his Son, who was made Regent during his Banishment, succeeded; but being incapable of Issue, the People, with the Assistance of his Brother *Ulric* or

Udalric, depos'd him. His Brother, who had been chosen Governor some Time before, put out his Eyes.

18. *Ulric* succeeded in 1035, govern'd for two Years with great Glory, defeated *Gero* Marquis of *Brandenburg* in *Lusatia*, taught the *Bohemians* the Art of War, and dy'd with the Reputation of a great General in 1037.

19. *Bretisslaw* I. his Son, succeeded; and for his Valour, obtain'd the Sirname of the *Bohemian Achilles*. His taking by Force *Judith*, a Daughter to the Elector *Palatine*, occasion'd a War betwixt him and the Emperor *Conrad* II. The first Campaign was successful to neither; but the Emperor coming with a greater Army, that Princess, by her Mediation, and throwing her self at the Emperor's Feet, hinder'd the Battle, and brought on a Peace. He was very successful against the *Poles* and *Hungarians*, and in one Campaign took from the *Poles*, *Breslaw*, *Cracow*, *Gnesna*, and *Posen*: After which he made Peace, and died in 1055.

20. *Spitignus* II. succeeded, who, tho' surnam'd *The Just*, banish'd his Mother-in-Law and some of the Grandees, and seiz'd those Parts of the Country allotted to his Brothers; upon which one of them, called *Uladislaw*, retir'd to *Hungary*, where he married the King's Daughter: After which, he and the rest of his Brothers re-possest'd themselves of their Dominions, and *Spitignus* died in 1061.

21. *Uladislaw* II. his Brother, succeeded, and was by the Emperor crown'd King of *Bohemia* for his Merit. His Brothers rebelled against him; but were subdued. After this, his eldest Son *Brzetisslaw*, being provok'd by a witty Raillery of a Courtier, he got him murder'd, and declar'd War against his Father; but his Uncle *Conrad* hinder'd their coming to a Battle, and *Brzetisslaw* retir'd to *Hungary*. *Uladislaw* died in 1093, having before-hand declared his Brother *Conrad* Successor.

22. *Conrad* would not take the Title of King, but satisfy'd himself with that of Duke, did nothing remarkable, and died in less than 7 Months after.

23. *Brzetisslaw*, Son to *Uladislaw*, being call'd by the People, succeeded. He reduc'd the *Poles*, who had revolted, oblig'd their Prince *Uladislaw* to pay him
H h h h 2 Tri.

Tribute, and was kill'd as a Hunting in 1106.

24. *Borziwoius* II. his Brother, succeeded, by the Interest of the Emperor *Henry* IV. without Consent of the Princes; so that he was thrice dethron'd; and at last, finding that he could not hold the Government, retir'd to *Germany* in 1107.

25. *Suatoplook*, Nephew to *Borziwoius* I. succeeded, being chosen Governor before. He procur'd by Money the Confirmation of the Emperor *Henry* V. and pillaged the Churches to pay him. He ravaged *Hungary*, and made War upon the *Poles*, who favour'd his Uncle; during which he was kill'd in 1109.

26. *Otho* succeeded; but was dethron'd, because of his Incapacity to govern.

27. *Uladislaus* II. Brother to *Borziwoius*, succeeded, subdued his own Brother *Sobieflaw*, and others, who rebelled against him, and died in 1125.

28. *Sobieflaw* I. his Brother, succeeded, He was successful in his War against the *Moravian*s, kill'd *Otho* their Marquis in Battle, and at the same Time defeated the Emperor *Lotharius* II. who assisted him. The Emperor afterwards contracted a Friendship with him, and employ'd him as General against *Conrad* and *Frederick*, whom he defeated. Some of his own Subjects envying his Glory, conspir'd against him; but were discover'd and punish'd. He died in 1140.

29. *Uladislaus* III. succeeded, by the Interest of the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, who gave him the Title of King in a Diet, because he govern'd the Empire well, while the Emperor himself was in *Italy*. He afterwards commanded the Emperor's Armies with Success, and restor'd *Stephen Geissa* to the Dutchy of *Milan*; and, as a Mark of his Valour, had assign'd him for his Arms, *Azure*, a *Lion Argent*, which is still the Arms of *Bohemia*. After a glorious Reign, he died in 1174.

30. *Sobieflaw* II. Son to *Sobieflaw* I. succeeded. He was a wicked tyrannical Prince. During his Time, *Andrew* disputed the Kingdom of *Hungary* with his Brother *Emerrick*, who being worsted, retired to *Bohemia*, in his way to *Germany*; but was deliver'd up to *Andrew* by *Sobieflaw*. The Emperor being incens'd at it, summon'd *Sobieflaw* to answer it, who declining it, a War ensu'd;

but the first Battle decided the Difference, the King of *Hungary* dying of a Wound he receiv'd in it. *Sobieflaw* died in 1178.

31. *Frederick*, Son to *Uladislaus* III. succeeded, by the Assistance of the Emperor *Frederick*. He did nothing remarkable, and died in 1190.

32. *Conrad* II. Cousin to *Frederick*, succeeded, by the Assistance of the Emperor *Henry*, whom he attended in his Expedition against the Pope, wherein he died in 1192.

33. *Wenceslaus* I. another Son of *Sobieflaw* I. succeeded; but was taken and dethroned by *Albert* Marquis of *Lusatia* in 1193.

34. *Bretislaus*, whom some call *Henry* Bishop of *Prague*, Nephew to *Uladislaus* III. succeeded, govern'd with much Glory for 3 Years, and died in 1196.

35. *Uladislaus* IV. Son to *Uladislaus* III. succeeded; but in 5 Months, surrender'd to his Brother.

36. *Premislaus*, who took Part with the Emperor *Otho* against *Philip*. He govern'd 32 Years, and died in 1231.

37. *Wenceslaus* II. succeeded. He was successful in his War before that Time against *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, and his Brother *Primislaus*. His Subjects revolted; and declared for his Son *Ottocarus*, which occasion'd much Bloodshed; but at last they agreed. After which *Wenceslaus*, who had before lost an Eye as a Hunting, did afterwards lose his Life in that Exercise in 1255.

38. *Ottocarus* II. by some called *Primislaus* III. succeeded. He conquer'd *Austria* from the Emperor *Rodolph* I. who at last drove him out again. The Pope call'd him the Apostle of *Prussia*, because he defeated the Pagans, and founded the Bishoprick of *Sambick* in that Country. He was so potent, that he govern'd from the *Adriatick* Sea to the *Baltick*. But in a second War with *Rodolph*, was kill'd at the Battle of *Murkfeld* in 1278.

39. His Son *Wenceslaus* III. succeeded at 8 Years of Age, under the Care of *Otho the Long*, Marquis of *Brandenburg*, during his Minority. His Mother-in-Law gave him the Provinces of *Cracow* and *Sandomir*, of which he never had peaceable Possession, till he obtain'd it by War, when the *Poles*, for the Esteem they had to his Merit, chose him their King, and crown'd him at *Prague*, where

where he founded the University. The Hungarians did also offer him their Crown, which he resign'd to his Son, and died soon after in 1305.

40. His Son *Wenceslaus IV.* succeeded, was a wicked and lustful Prince; and by forcing the Wives of his Subjects, became so odious, that he was assassinated as he passed by a Gentleman's House at *Olmütz* in 1306.

41. *Henry Duke of Corinthia*, Brother-in-Law to *Wenceslaus III.* arriving at *Prague*, was chosen King by the Interest of the Hungarians; but the Emperor *Albert I.* rais'd an Army, dethron'd him, and set up his own Son *Rodolph*, who, after a short and prudent Reign, died suddenly in 1307. Upon which *Henry* return'd to *Bohemia*, and defeated those who oppos'd him. *Albert* enter'd *Bohemia* against him with an Army; but dying in the Expedition, the Emperor *Henry VII.* expelled *Henry*, and set up

42. *John of Luxemburg*, his own Son, then 14 Years of Age, in 1310. Soon after he was declared Vicar of the Empire, during his Father's Absence, when he conquer'd *Silesia* in 1332. Before this time, he was invited to *Poland*, defeated the *Lithuanian* Pagans, and was, as some say, declared King of *Poland*; but Historians differ in this Matter. He was made blind of one Eye in this Expedition, and went *incognito* to *Montpellier* for Cure, where a Jewish Physician made him lose the other. This did not hinder him however to go to War, says the *Atlas Historique*; for he carried Troops to assist *Philip de Valois* of *France* against the English, and was kill'd in the Battle of *Cressy*, fighting valiantly, in 1346.

43. His Son *Charles* succeeded, and was chosen Emperor a Year before the Death of *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, by the Interest of Pope *Clement VI.* and *Philip de Valois* of *France*. Some Princes of the Empire rais'd up three Competitors against him, whom he vanquish'd, and continued in peaceable Possession. He was present at the Battle where his Father was kill'd. It was he who instituted the *Golden Bull*, and purchas'd from *Orto* of *Bavaria* the Marq. of *Brandenburg*; which he gave to his Son *Wenceslaus*, and died in 1378.

44. His Son *Wenceslaus V.* succeeded, who being a careless ambitious Prince, the Electors

depos'd him, and chose another in 1400; when *Wenceslaus* retir'd to *Prague*, and liv'd there in Debauches for 19 Years.

45. *Sigismund King of Hungary*, and afterwards Emperor, succeeded to the Crown of *Bohemia* in 1418, after the Death of Prince *Robert*, Palatine of the *Rhine*, who succeeded his Brother *Wenceslaus V.* He was oppos'd by the *Hussites*, and was the Occasion of burning *John Hus* and *Jerome* of *Prague* at the Council of *Constance*, contrary to his own safe Conduct, which so provok'd the *Hussites*, that they offer'd their Crown to *Jagelon King of Poland*, who resign'd it to his Son-in-Law *Coributh Duke of Lithuania*; but *Sigismund* overcame him. The Reader may find more of this *Sigismund* in our former Account of the Emperors. He died in 1436, or, as some say, in 1438.

46. *Albert II.* succeeded; for whose History, we likewise refer to our Account of the Emperors. He died in 1439.

47. His Son *Uladislaus V.* succeeded to *Hungary* and *Bohemia* at 5 Years of Age. The famous *Huniades* was chosen Governor during his Minority; and after his Death; *George Podebrache*. When *Uladislaus* came of Age, he persecuted the *Hussites*, and oblig'd the *Turks* to raise the Siege of *Belgrade* in 1451; but died in 1457 of Poison, which the Enemies of the *Hussites* charged upon them.

48. *George Podebrache*, who govern'd during his Minority, was chosen after his Death in 1459. He subdued the *Moravians*; but being a Favourer of the *Hussites*, and casting off the Pope's Yoke, the Court of *Rome* excommunicated him, and rais'd a Rebellion against him; but he kept the Government till he died, in 1471, notwithstanding the Endeavours of *Uladislaus*, and *Matthew Corvin* of *Hungary*, against him.

49. *Uladislaus VI.* Son to *Casimir*, succeeded, and obtain'd also the Crown of *Hungary* in 1490. and vanquish'd his three Competitors, of whom his Brother *Albert*, supported by his Father, was one. He was successful against the Infidels, who did very much Damage to his Country, and died in 1516.

50. He was succeeded by his Son *Louis*, who was crown'd King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* at 12 Years of Age, under the Protection of the Emperor *Maximilian I.* and

Sigis-

Sigismund King of Poland. When he came of Age, he govern'd with a great deal of Conduct. *Soliman*, Emperor of the *Turks*, made War upon him, and took *Belgrade* in 1521. In 1526, the *Turks* defeated him at the famous Battle of *Mahatz*, when, in his Retreat, he was unhappily drown'd in a Morals.

51. The Emperor *Frederick I.* succeeded; for whose History, we refer to that of the Emperors. Since his Time, the House of *Austria* have been possessed of *Bohemia*, except a small while that the Elector *Palatine* enjoy'd it, till defeated at the Battle of *Prague*; of which, we have already given an Account.

The RELIGION of the Modern Bohemians.

WE have formerly given an Account of their Conversion to Christianity; but their early and remarkable Opposition to the Errors of Popery, under the Name of *Hussites*, deserves to be a little insisted on.

Mr. Fox, in his Book of Martyrs, Vol. I. says, That Queen *Anne*, Wife to *Richard II.* of England, being a *Bohemian*, some of her Countrymen, who came with her, having seen some of *Wickliff's* Works, which Dr. *Nicholson* says was at Oxford, they carried home some Copies of them to *John Huss* and *Jerome* of *Prague*, who, upon reading them, set effectually about reforming the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*. For such Errors as they objected against, and how they were treacherously burnt at the Council of *Constance*, we refer to the Book of Martyrs, where the Reader may find it at large. The Learned *Spanheim*, in his Epitome of Ecclesiastical History, gives this brief Account of them: In the 15th Century, King *Wenceslaus* reign'd in *Bohemia*, being deprived of the Empire, because of his Defence of the *Hussites*, and refusing to put the Pope's Bulls in Execution against them; for which, the *Papists* load his Memory with Reproaches. After the Murder of *John Huss* and *Jerome* of *Prague*, against which the *Bohemians* protested, most of 'em embrac'd their Doctrine; so that they be-

came formidable to the King, and were persecuted. But their Dispersion tended to the Propagation of the Gospel elsewhere; and one of them, called *Paul Craw*, was burnt in Scotland for opposing the Errors of Popery in 1432, which laid the Foundation of a Reformation there. The *Bohemians* reveng'd the Death of their two Martyrs, *Huss* and *Prague*, on the Popish Clergy; and the University of *Prague* asserted Communion in both Kinds. After the Death of *Wenceslaus* in 1319, Pope *Martin V.* excommunicated the *Hussites*, and stir'd up the Emperor, with other Kings and Princes, to rout them out; Upon which the Emperor *Sigismund* began a terrible Persecution against them, that issued in a 14 Years War, which terribly afflicted *Bohemia*, and most of the Empire. The *Hussites* chose *Zisca*, a valiant Lord, for their General, who became terrible to the Emperor and his *Papists*. He rais'd 40000 Protestants, as we are told in his Life. His first Appearance was in the Reign of *Wenceslaus*, who purposing to disarm the Citizens of *Prague*, *Zisca* presently order'd them to take Arms, and marching to the Castle on a sudden, to the King's great Surprise, said to him, Sir! where are your Enemies that you are so much afraid of? for here your loyal Citizens of *Prague* are come to offer their Lives in your Service. By this Stratagem, he appeased the King, and preserved the Privileges of the City. After the Death of *Huss* and *Prague*, *Zisca*, with his Army above-mention'd, destroy'd the Popish Monasteries, and Idolatrous Temples, and dispers'd the Priests and Monks, whom he compar'd to Swine that were kept in a Sty to be fatted. He afterwards took the Castle of *Wisgrad*, and the Town of *Pelzina*, which he fortified. The Queen Dowager sent to the Emperor and neighbouring Princes for Assistance, and in the mean time retir'd with her Treasury and best Moveables to the Castle of *Prague*, and fortified the Bridge, to keep the Protestants from entering the upper Town. *Zisca* won the Bridge, and the nether Part of the City, and fought with the *Papists* for 5 Days and Nights together; during which, Ambassadors came from the Emperor *Sigismund*, who brought them to a Truce, and afterwards to a Peace, on Promise of settling the Differences among them; but fraudulently en-

deca-

deavour'd afterwards the Subversion of their Religion and Liberty, and began a Persecution at *Breslaw* in *Silesia*, where he put many *Hussites* to cruel Deaths. Upon this, *Zisca* took Arms again, and having gain'd the Governor of the Castle of *Prague*, he sent Letters through the Kingdom, advising the People to arm against the Emperor, who design'd the Destruction of their Country, as was plain from his Letters they had intercepted; had set aside the Marq. of *Brandenburg*, whom they had chosen King, and procur'd the Death of their two Martyrs at *Constance*, contrary to his own Safe-Conduct. The Emperor advanc'd against him with a great Army of Horse, and *Zisca's* Men being all Foot, he encamp'd on a rough Ground, where the Imperial Horse were forced to alight; and *Zisca* having order'd the Women that followed his Army to throw their Handkerchiefs, and other loose Clothes, on the Ground, and his Men to do the like, the Imperial Horsemen being entangled with them by their Spurs when they alighted on the Place, he suddenly attack'd them, and obtain'd a great Victory. After this he took a Town by Storm, from whence the Governor had drove out all the Protestants, burnt it down, and built another called *Tabor*, on a Mountain of that Name, which was strong by Nature, and encompassed by two Rivers, the Entrance to it being scarce 30 Foot broad. He fortified it with a deep Trench, and a triple Wall; and from hence his Followers were called *Taborites*. At this Time *Zisca* had no Horse, but surpris'd by Night 1000 of the Emperor's, who were sent against him, by which, with the Horsemen's Armour, he mounted 1000 of his own Men, that did him great Service afterwards. *Sigismund* enter'd *Bohemia*, and laid Siege to the Castle of *Prague*, which the Governor basely deliver'd to him. Upon this, *Zisca* came to the City, and block'd up the Castle; but the Emperor coming again with his Army, reliev'd it, and besieg'd the Town for 6 Weeks; but after the Defeat of several strong Detachments by *Zisca*, the Emperor was forced to raise the Siege, and *Zisca* return'd to *Tabor*. After this, he reveng'd himself on the Popish Clergy, who excited the Emperor against him, and had put great Numbers of Pro-

testants to terrible Deaths, by destroying 300 of their Monasteries, and driving out all the Monks. The Castle of *Wisgrad* having been surrendr'd to the Imperialists, *Zisca* laid Siege to it, defeated the Emperor, who came to relieve it, and forced it to yield. Next he laid Siege to the strong Monastery of *St. Clare*, and forc'd the Emperor, who came with a strong Army to relieve it, to a shameful Retreat out of *Bohemia*. *Zisca* afterwards took the strong City of *Commotavia* by Storm, and burnt all the Priests, as they had formerly done the Protestants. At the Siege of *Raby*, *Zisca* lost his Eyes; but when cur'd of his Wounds, continued to command his Army, and took many of the Emperor's Garisons. Upon this, the Emperor enter'd the Country with an Army of *Hungarians* on the E. and appointed the Electors to enter it on the W. but *Zisca* defeated them both when join'd, forc'd the Emperor to fly, pursu'd him a whole Day; and 15000 *Hungarian* Horse, whom the Emperor brought to his Assistance, fled with so much Precipitation, that most of 'em were drown'd by venturing to pass a great River on the Ice. After this Victory, wherein many of the *Hungarian* Nobility were cut off, *Zisca* order'd all the Popish Idols in the Country to be destroy'd, and forbade the Priests to wear any superstitious Vestments. He built another strong Town on a Mountain called *Horeb*, from whence many of his Followers were called *Horebites*. The Papists finding there was no other Way of subduing the *Hussites*, they sow'd Divisions betwixt them; of which, more anon. In the meantime *Zisca* laid Siege to the Town of *Asca* on the *Elb*, where there was a strong Garison, and defeated the Marq. of *Mishia*, who came with a strong Army to relieve it. He slew many of the Nobles, and 9000 of the Popish Soldiers; upon which *Asca* surrendr'd, and was raz'd. After this, the Divisions being fomented by the Papists betwixt *Zisca* and the Citizens of *Prague*, they rais'd a great Army against him, which oblig'd him to retire into a narrow Plain, where they not being able to extend their Front any larger than his, he fought and defeated 'em, kill'd 3000 on the Spot, took and burnt the City of *Cuthna*, which they had fortified, and marched to besiege *Prague*, when his Army

Army began to murmur, and said, It was unreasonable to destroy their Chief City, especially since the Citizens were of the same Religion, and that the Emperor fomented their Divisions in order to destroy both. Upon this, *Zisca* made a Speech to his Army, wherein he told them, That he fought for their Sakes, and not for his own; That he never led them on, but where they came off Conquerors; That they were become famous and rich; whereas he had got nothing but Blindness, and an empty Name; That he did not fight against those of *Prague* for his own Sake, but for theirs; whose Blood they fought; That he had no other Design but to banish the seditious Citizens of the Emperor's Faction; but for his Part, he was willing to do what they pleas'd, provided they took Care that they themselves were not betray'd; and that for his own Part, it signify'd little what became of him, a blind old Man. Upon which his Soldiers were so much inflam'd, that they prepared to attack the City; but this Difference was happily concluded by *Rokizana*, a famous Minister of the City, who reconcil'd *Zisca* and the Town.

The Emperor being astonish'd at *Zisca's* Success, sent to promise him the Government of the Kingdom, and many other Advantages, if he would come to him, which *Zisca* agreed to; and some say, was in Danger of being flatter'd by the Emperor to join with the *Calixtines*, who only demanded the Use of the Cup, but in most other Things agreed with the Papists, against his own Followers the *Taborites*, the true Disciples of *Husi*, who insisted on a full Reformation: But these Fears, if there were any Ground for them, *Spanheim* tells us were prevented by *Zisca's* dying of the Plague at the Castle of *Priscovia*, in his Way to the Emperor, in 1424. *Aeneas Sylvius*, afterwards Pope, makes a heavy Complaint, That the Emperor, who was terrible to all *Christendom*, and to the *Turks*, should have so far disgrac'd himself, and the Church of *Rome*, to have truckled so to a blind old Man. *Zisca* was honourably buried by his *Taborites* at *Castavia*, where his Tomb continu'd till 1623, that the Popish Army under the Emperor *Frederick* broke it in Pieces, dug up his Grave, and barbarously threw his

Dust in the Air. When he was on his Death-Bed, he advis'd his Followers to make a Drum of his Skin, the Sound of which would terrify their Enemies, which proved so in effect for a considerable Time, which must be ascribed to the Pannick Fear that God, in his Justice, spread among those cruel Persecutors.

Spanheim informs us, That after his Death, a new Division happen'd among the *Hussites*, when those of *Zisca's* Followers, who call'd themselves *Orphans*, because of his Death, proposed a middle Way betwixt the *Calixtines* and the *Taborites*. Their chief Leader was *Rokizanus*, whom the Pope flatter'd with Hopes of the Archbishoprick of *Prague*; but afterwards refus'd it him, because he would not renounce the Cup. Upon this the Emperor and Pope had recourse to Fraud, and invited the *Bohemians* to send Deputies to the Council of *Basil* in 1431; when being deceived with false Promises, and having Hostages given for their Safety, they went thither with 300 Horse. The *Calixtines*, headed by *Rokizanus*, demanded the Restitution of the Cup. The *Taborites*, led by the invincible *Procopius*, insisted on a Reformation of Manners, and of all Corruptions in the Church. The *Orphans* demanded free Liberty for preaching the Word of God. *Peter Payne*, an English *Wickliffite*, who join'd the *Hussites*, demanded that the Clergy should be forbid all Secular Dominion. These were the Articles call'd the *Compactata*, so famous in the *Bohemian* History, as agreed upon by the *Hussites* among themselves before they went to the Council. When they came thither, these Things were debated 50 Days, when the *Bohemians*, finding themselves impos'd upon, prepar'd to depart; but were circumvented by a new Fraud. The Council sent Messengers to *Bohemia*, who deceived the *Hussites* with School Subtilties; and thus the good *Taborites* were disappointed of their Hopes, and obtained nothing else but the Use of the Cup, which *Rokizanus* and his Party alledg'd was sufficient: And so a Peace was concluded with the *Hussites* for a Time, which proved more fatal to them than the War. *Orthecinus Gracius in fasciculo rerum expetendarum* gives a large Account of all those Transactions.

This Agreement was oppos'd by *Procopius* and his Party, who maintain'd themselves bravely by the Sword against their Enemies; but *Rokizanus*, push'd on with the Hopes of the Archbishoprick, persecuted them severely, and stir'd up *Mainard*, a valiant *Bohemian* Lord and General, against them, who envying the Honour *Procopius* had obtain'd, attack'd him with the *Tabarites* and *Orphans* that join'd him; and being much superior in Force, *Procopius* fell in the Battle, being not so much conquer'd, as weary with conquering, says *Aeneas Sylvius*. Thus the *Tabarites* were almost extinguish'd in a barbarous manner, the Papiests and *Calistines*, tho' they hated one another, joining together to persecute them. The Remainers of them continued some Time in the City of *Tabor*, and declined the Communion of the other *Bohemians*; but they were betray'd at last by *Rokizanus* to submit to a Decree of the States: After which their Town was besieg'd, and taken by the Viceroy *Podiebrachius*, and the poor People condemn'd to perpetual Imprisonment. *Rokizanus* being wearied at last with the just Reproaches of the *Tabarites*, obtained Leave of the Viceroy that they might retire into the Mountainous Country next to *Silesia*, where they were join'd by the sincerer *Calistines*, and the *Waldenses*, who were expelled from *Austria* about 1467, and form'd, as *Hoffman* says, about 200 Congregations in *Bohemia* and *Moravia*. But *Rokizanus* and the Viceroy rais'd a new Persecution against them, loaded 'em with the same Reproaches that the Heathens rais'd against the Primitive Christians, and forc'd them to retire to Caves and Dens. *Rokizanus* being deny'd the Archbishoprick, because he would not part with the Cup, he and his Followers exclaim'd against the Pope as Antichrist, and declar'd they would not stand to the Agreement they made at *Basil*, but have the Word of God for their only Rule. At last, falling sick in 1461, he was struck with Remorse of Conscience, and told the Viceroy when he came to see him, That both of them must answer in a little Time at the Tribunal of God for their Cruelty to their Brethren. Accordingly they both died the same Year, and *Rokizanus* ended his Days in Despair. The *Hussites* having join'd with the *Waldenses*, that Name swallow'd up the

former. In 1500, they were cruelly persecuted; and in 1536, when *Luther* began to appear, there was found to be a great Harmony betwixt him and them in Doctrine and Discipline. The Emperor *Maximilian* gave them their Liberty in 1564; but next Year they were persecuted again by the Chancellor of *Bohemia*, who was drown'd in the *Danube* on his Return from *Vienna* with bloody Orders against them. In 1574, the the *Waldenses* being expell'd from *Prussia*, retir'd to *Bohemia*, in which, together with *Moravia*, there were 17 Barons and 146 Knights of their Communion. To confute the Reproaches of their Enemies, they drew up their Confession, and presented it to the Emperor *Maximilian* in 1575, which had a good Effect, and procur'd 'em Peace. They were afterwards call'd, *The United Brethren of the Bohemian Confession*, and their Liberty was confirmed by the Emperor *Rodolph II.* in 1611. During the Reign of *Matthias*, the Persecution gave Rise to the *Bohemian War* in 1618. But the Elektor *Palatine*, whom they had chosen King, being defeated in 1620, they were brought under, and at last banish'd the Kingdom in 1639, and dispers'd into *Silesia*, *Poland*, &c. Since which, the Protestants have been allow'd no Publick Worship in *Bohemia*.

Their Confession presented to the Emperor at *Vienna* in 1535, agrees in Point of Doctrine with those of other Protestants. It was afterwards approved by *Vergarius*, *Luther*, *Melancthon*, *Bucer*, and *Masculus*, who highly applauded it. In the Preface to their Confession, they take Notice of their Sufferings and Reproaches, and of their Struggles with the Papiests from the Time of *John Huss*; and mention a Prophecy of his, printed in *Matthew Paris's History*, foretelling that a new People should arise, fram'd according to the new Man, from whom should proceed a new Clergy and Priesthood, that hated Avarice and Worldly Glory, and had their Conversation in Heaven. To this there is added a Preface of their Nobility and Gentry, wherein they take Notice, that they were called *Picards* and *Waldenses* by way of Derision.

In their Article of the Church, they say, The true Church is to be known by the Preaching of the Word, and the Administration of the Sacraments according to

Christ's Prescription. In that concerning the Governors and Ministers of the Church, they declare for Ordination by Imposition of Hands, and the Authority of Ministers; That they allow no Man to take that Office upon him, but such as are duly called, whose Business is to take Care of the People committed to their Charge, faithfully to preach the Word, and administer the Sacraments; That they have no Power to compel any Man to embrace the Faith by Punishment, Violence, or Threats, by themselves or others; That they are not to Lord it over the Church or the People's Faith, and quote the 20th of St. Matthew, *Ye know that the Lords of the Gentiles exercise Dominion over them, &c. but it shall not be so among you, &c.* They declare against Priests meddling with Secular Affairs, and think it convenient they should be unmarried; but not that 'tis of it self unlawful, since the Apostles approv'd it; and say, the People ought to be subject to them, obey them, and be directed by them in Things relating to Salvation, according to those Scriptures, *Heb. 13. 17. Obey them that have the Rule over you, and submit your selves, for they watch for your Souls. And the Elders that rule well, are worthy of double Honour, especially they that labour in the Word and Doctrine.* They add, That the People are oblig'd to provide for them; but that such as are able to work with their own Hands, ought to get their own Livelihood, if it do not hinder their Work of the Ministry, according to the Example of the Apostle; and that such Priests or Ministers as are guilty of Crimes or Errors, or negligent in their Office, are first to have a Fatherly Admonition; but if they despise the Advice of the Brethren, and of the whole Church, they are first to be deprived of their Office, and then to be thrown out of the Church.

In the Article of Baptism, they own, That they formerly re-baptiz'd those who were converted to them from Popery, as the Papists did such as they perverted from them; but upon better Information, they had laid that aside. As to the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper, they taught, That no Man ought to add any Thing to our Saviour's own Words in the Institution, nor detract any Thing from them; but is plainly to believe what our

Saviour has said, without going to the Right or Left; for which, they take Notice they had undergone many Reproaches.

In the Article about the Power of the Church, or the Keys, they say, That when Christ gave them to Peter, he gave them to the Church and her Ministers, to continue to the End of the World; That this Authority is to be used according to our Saviour's Command, not at our own Will and Pleasure, but as Stewards of the Mysteries of God, and Ministers and Servants of Christ; That this Power is first given to the Governors and Ministers of the Church in general, and to every Christian Congregation in particular, how small soever, according to that of our Saviour; *Whosoever two or three are gathered together in my Name, there am I in the midst of them.*

They declare themselves for such Rites and Customs as are not contrary to Piety; but are against obtruding such as may prejudice Religion, or make Differences among Christians, who ought to bear charitably with one another, as Members of the same Body.

In the Conclusion, they acquaint the Emperor, That these were the Articles, which all their Elders did unanimously agree to.

In April, 1570, they came to an Agreement with their Brethren of the Augsburg Confession at the Synods of Sendomir and Posen in Poland, which consisted of 20 Articles: The chief of which were, That the Ministers of both Sides should use their own Methods and Forms of Worship, without Offence, either separately or together; That none should be employed by the Patron to preach or administer the Sacraments in the Congregations of another, without his Consent; That the Ministers of neither Side should withdraw one another's Hearers, but confirm them in their Obedience to their own Pastors; That none of the Ministers or People should speak or write ill of those of either of the Confessions, or condemn their Doctrine and Rites, but think and speak well of one another; That Elders should be appointed on both Sides to promote this Union, and to take Care of other Affairs of the Churches, and to meet for that End twice or thrice a Year at a Place appointed; That no particular Societies or Ministers should meddle to change any Thing

Thing in Doctrine, Rites, or Benefices, without the Consent of the Ministers of their own Confession; That they should all agree to preach up Piety against Idolatry, and all manner of Vice, and that Discipline should be exercised against faulty Ministers, and others, without respect of Persons; That none of them should admit the Members of other Congregations to the Sacrament, without a Certificate from their own Ministers, except at Diets, Synods, or on a Journey; That none of them should receive excommunicated Ministers or People into Communion; That Patrons should not make any Innovation in their Worship, without Consent of the Senior Ministers; That they should reject all Popish Rites, Idolatrous Images, Relicks, Crosses of Silver and Gold, &c. lest they should seem to support Antichrist, and prophane the Word of God; That in case of any Controversy about Doctrine or Ceremonies, they were to endeavour peaceably to compromise them among themselves; and if they could not do that, should submit to the General Synods of *Greater and Lesser Poland*.

This was sign'd by the Superintendents, Ministers and Elders, of the several Churches; many of the Elders being Counts, and other Persons of great Quality.

The *Bohemian* Brethren did afterwards, in their Agreement with the Churches of *Poland, Switzerland*, and those of the *Augsburg* Confession, declare themselves more expressly against Transubstantiation.

The Government of those Churches,

WAS managed by Superintendents, Ministers, and Elders.

Their Superintendant, as we find in that Part of the Harmony of Confessions, Intituled, *Polonia Consensus*, was called a Spiritual Elder or Superintendant. He was chosen from among the Ministers of the District by the Ministers and Elders of that District in a Synod; and when they could have it so, the Superintendant of the neighbouring District was to preside at his Inauguration.

His Office was, to perform the Ministerial Function in a certain Cure; to breed up a Catechist at the publick Expence, to per-

form the Work of the Ministry in his Absence, when visiting the Churches, or attending Synods. He was to appoint Ministers where it was necessary in his District. He was once a Year at least, with one or two Elders or Deacons, to visit the Ministers and People in his District, and to take Care that no False or Heretical Doctrine was preached among them. He was to attend when call'd to the Synods of other Districts, at the publick Charge. He was, at stated Times, to call Synods in his own District for necessary Causes, and to direct them in their Proceedings. He was to determine Differences among Brethren in the Consistory, and to reconcile them; but with a Salvo to the Laws of the Country. He was to examine and to take Care of Catechists, and young Men that were fit for the Ministry. He was to receive Letters from other Churches, &c. directed to those of his Diocese; and in difficult Cases, was to return an Answer, by the Advice of the Ministers and Elders, and the rest of the Brethren. His Office was to last from Synod to Synod, and to be continu'd or discharg'd, or succeeded by another, as they should determine.

The Ministers were not to enter upon that Office but when ordain'd, and sent by the Superintendant and Ministers of the District; nor were they to leave their Charge, without the Consent of the Synod, and their Patrons. No Patron, by his private Authority, was to receive or discharge a Minister, but was to propose it to the Consistory of Elders; and none were to publish Books in Writing or Print, without Consent of the Synod.

The Elders, whom they call'd Secular, were for most part Persons of Quality, and were chosen two or three in a District by the free Suffrage of all the Ministers and Patrons, and afterwards inaugurated by the Superintendant and some Ministers. The Synod and Church charg'd them upon their Conscience, That they should carefully look after the Ministers, that they preach'd orthodoxly, faithfully, and diligently; That they liv'd piously and modestly; That if any of them were guilty of Error or Scandal, they should admonish them; and in case of enormous Crimes, were to suspend them from the Ministry, with the Consent

of the Superintendant, till the next Synod. They were likewise to observe the same Method towards every one of the Brethren that was guilty of any Fault, according to the Rules of their Ecclesiastical Discipline. They were to attend at Synods, and to join with the Superintendant in visiting Churches. They were likewise to take Care, by diligent Admonitions, That the Revenues of the Church should be restored; That the Ministers should have a convenient Maintenance and Dwelling, and to defend him from Injury and Oppression. They were likewise to see the Acts of Synods put in Execution, to accommodate Differences among the Brethren, and to continue in Office from one Synod to another, and be discharged or continued, as the Synod thought fit. The Synods were of two Sorts; one of them, call'd a Particular Synod, was held four times a Year; and that call'd the Synod of the District, once a Year. At several of these Synods, we find many of the great Officers of the Crown, and Senators of the Kingdom, attended as Elders.

The Description of the Country.

THE Soil is generally fat and arable, and in few Places barren or sandy. They have many Woods and Forrests, but none so large as to make any considerable Part of the Country uninhabitable. Their Orchards and Gardens are so well stock'd with Fruit, that they export great Quantities to neighbouring Countries, as they do also Saffron. *La Forrest* says, their Grapes do not come to Maturity, which is a Mistake; for they might have enough of Wine for their own Use, stronger than that of *Moravia*, and equal in Taste to that of *Austria*, were the Inhabitants industrious; but it does not keep so long; therefore they buy much from their Neighbours at a reasonable Price. They have abundance of good Meadows and Pasture, and Cattle, especially Horses, of more than ordinary Courage and Bulk. Their Hop-Gardens produce more plentifully than in many other Countries; and their White and Brown Beer is so much valued, that 'tis exported into other Parts of the Empire. They have some Salt-Pits; but the Pro-

duct not answering the Charge, they are supplied from *Misnia* and other Places. They have rich Mines of Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, Sulphur, Nitre, &c. and make great Quantities of Glass and Allum, Carbuncles, Amethysts, Jasper, Sapphire: And other Precious Stones are found in their Mines and other Places; of which *Anselm Boetius* has given an Account, call'd, *Historia Lapidum & Gemmarum Bohemiae*. *La Forrest* says, tho' the Air of this Country be very cold, yet in some Places 'tis so bad as to occasion contagious Distempers. His Character of the Inhabitants is, That they are large, well made, subtle, and courageous, true to their Word, but much addicted to Gluttony, Drunkenness, and Robbery; which, tho' it may be true of many, must not be charged on them in general, being inconsistent with his former Part of their Character.

Their Language is a Dialect of the ancient *Slavonick*, which was so copious and sweet, that their old Law-givers commanded its true Orthography and Pronunciation to be kept up; but now most People of Fashion speak the *High-Dutch*, with which the Country People have mix'd their own Language.

Their chief Towns are;

1. *Prague*, their Metropolis, pleasantly situated on the great River *Muldaw*, in a fruitful Country, encompassed with stately Courts, and pleasant Palaces, as if it were in the middle of an Amphitheatre. The ancient Name of it, before the *Bohemians* settled here, is not certainly known; but they call'd it *Boisheim*, as being their Capital. It had the modern Name from the *Slavonians*. 'Tis divided into 3 Parts, call'd the *Old*, *New*, and *Little City*. *Enas Sylvius* compares it to *Florence* in *Italy*; but *Dr. Brown* says, 'tis more large and populous. The *Old Town*, on the E. of the *Muldaw*, is very populous, and full of fair, but old-fashion'd Houses. Here stands the University, frequented by vast Numbers of Students, but not comparable to what it was in former Ages; for if we may believe *Lewis de May*, Counsellor to the Duke of *Wirttemberg*, and Author of the Dialogue concerning the State of the *German Empire*, there were above 40000 Students there.

there in 1409, when *John Hus* was Rector: And when the Emperor *Charles IV.* would have retrench'd their Privileges, 24000 are said to have left it in one Week, and 16000 more soon after. Here are also several Colleges and Monasteries, one belonging to the Jesuits, which is very magnificent and stately. This is the only University in *Bohemia*, and still one of the most famous in Europe. Great Numbers of Jews inhabit this Part of the City, and give it the Name of the *Jews Town*. They are very rich, and trade in all Sorts of Commodities, especially in Jewels, and other Precious Stones, found in the *Bohemian Mines*. The Doctor says, he bought some *Bohemian* Topazes from them, very well cut, at 7 or 8 Crowns a-piece. He takes Notice, That the *Bohemians* do still keep Silver Medals, in Remembrance of those great Men, *John Hus* and *Jerome of Prague*. Others observe, That on one of *Hus's* Medals, there is engraven his Prophecy at the Stake, in these Words; *Cantum revolutis Annis Deo respondebitis & mihi*; i. e. 100 Years hence, ye shall answer for this to God and me; which was reckoned to be fulfilled upon the Church of Rome by *Luther's* Reformation. *Aeneas Sylvius*, afterwards Pope *Pius II.* says, That *Hus* was elder, and of greater Authority; but *Jerome* more learned and eloquent; That they fac'd Death with unparallel'd Constancy, beyond any of the ancient Philosophers, and sung Hymns in the midst of the Flames.

The New Town was formerly separated from the Old by a Wall, but now only by a Ditch, into which they can let the River at Pleasure. Here are the Ruins of the ancient Palace of their Kings, the Walls of which are so cemented, that they can scarce be demolished by any Engine. The Jesuits have built a College here, which much exceeds what they had in the Old Town. Dr. *Brown* says, this Town is of a very large Extent, and that they were building a Citadel and some Bastions for the Defence of it. *Monsieur* says, the Jesuits College and Church is of excellent Architecture; and over the Gate, there are 13 Statues of Men as large as the Life, of a Stone which resembles Brass.

The Lesser Town lies on the W. of the *Muldau*, and much exceeds the Old in Plea-

santness and Building. 'Tis joined to the Old Town by a Bridge of 16 Arches, being in all 1700 Foot long, and 35 broad, with two high Gates, under two large Towers at each End. Part of this Town is built on a rising Ground, at the Top of which stands *Upper Prague*, where the Emperor has a Summer-House, and a very magnificent Palace, where he keeps his Court when he comes to *Prague*. Here stands also the Cathedral of *St. Veit*, which has many ancient Monuments of great Persons. Here are likewise most of the Houses of the Nobility; among which, the Palace of *Colorado* and its Gardens excel for Neatness; but are not very large. The Palace of Count *Wallenstein*, afterwards Duke of *Fridland*, but cut off for his Treason when General of the Emperor's Army, is a very magnificent Structure, above 100 Houses being pulled down to make room for it: The Hall is very lofty and spacious, and the Garden exceeding beautiful; on one Side of which, there's the Place where they us'd to manage his Horses, with a noble Fish-Pond: On the other Side, his Aviary, beautified with Trees, and a Garden, after the Model of that of Prince *Doria* at *Genoa*. The most surprising Thing, is his large Stable for 36 Horses, of fine Architecture, with a Marble Pillar betwixt each Horse, a Rack of Steel and a Marble Manger for each of them; and over their Head, the Picture of every Horse, as large as the Life, and his Name under it. In the Town-House, there is a famous Clock with several Motions, like that of *St. John* at *Lyon*; and in the Market-place, there is a great Stone Column, with a Statue of the Virgin on the Top of gilt Brass, and 4 Angels at the Corners, holding 4 Devils in Chains. Near it, there is a great Fountain with 12 Fronts, but ruinous; the Basin is of red Marble, which resembles Porphyry at a distance: The 12 Signs of the Zodiac are engraven round it, and in the middle there's a Figure on a Pedestal. *Monsieur* says, *Prague* is about as large as *Lyon*; That the Women of Quality dress much after the French Mode: The other Women of the better Sort wear Furr'd Caps, like the *Grecian* Women, long Clokes with large Necks, some of them of Sattin lin'd with Taffata, and Petticoats of the same, but short.

short, because the Streets are dirty. The Jewish Women have a distinct Habit; the Shops are very ill furnish'd, and the Town looks poor. In the Palace, he says, there's a multitude of Apartments, with a large Hall for Comedies, supported in the middle by Columns, plaister'd in Imitation of Marble, with two long Galleries, and another great Hall, besides several Closets full of Pictures by the best Masters; and adjoining to it, there's a large Stable, where are 60 fine Led-Horses, belonging to the Burgrave of the City, who is the Governor of the Kingdom. The Jesuits College in the Old Town near the Bridge was founded by the Emperor Ferdinand, for 100 of that Order; from the Belfrey of which, there is the best View of the City.

Baudrand says, This Town was taken several times during the Civil Wars of Germany; and Dr. Brown says, That the Lesser Town was surpris'd by the Swedes, who carried off from it an incredible Booty. It was formerly an Imperial Town, but is now subject to the Emperor as King of Bohemia. The Castle on the Hill above it is very strong. The Emperor's Deputies were thrown out of its Windows by the enraged States of the Kingdom, whom they had deprived of their Privileges, and received but little Hurt, tho' they fell very high: In Remembrance of which, there is a Pyramid erected on the Place.

On the white Hill near this City, the 8th of November, 1620. was fought the famous Battle betwixt Maximilian Duke of Bavaria, and Frederick V. Elector Palatine, formerly mention'd, wherein the Elector being defeated, lost the Kingdom of Bohemia, and his own Electorate: After which, this City suffer'd much, and many Bohemian Protestants of Quality, who took Part with him, were executed, and Thousands of Families left the Country. This City lies in Long. 33. 17. Lat. 50. 7. about 45 Miles S. E. from the Frontiers of Saxony, about 63 N. W. from the Frontiers of Silesia, near 80 N. from the Frontiers of Austria, and about 130 Miles N. W. from Vienna.

2. Egra, on a River of the same Name, on the Borders of the Palatinate, about 77 Miles W. from Prague. The Bohemians call it Schebbe. Frederick I. made it an Imperial Town in 1179, for their Faithfulness to

him against the Duke of Bavaria. 'Tis fortified with a double, and in some Parts with a treble Wall, and a very strong Castle. The Market-place is encompass'd with fair Buildings, and has fine Churches. Here the Emperor Frederick II.'s treacherous General, Count Wallenstein, was kill'd in 1634. This Town is Capital of its Circle, and formerly belong'd to the Upper Palatinate. About 2 Miles from the Town, there is a Fountain, whose Water is very cool and clear, but salt and brinish, famous for Distempers in the Eyes, Ears, or other Parts of the Head, and many other Cures by Purging.

3. Badweis, or Budweis, near the Mulda, 62 Miles S. from Prague. 'Tis one of the strongest Towns in Bohemia, Capital of its Circle, a fair large Town, continu'd faithful to the House of Austria during the Bohemian Troubles, and lies about 17 Miles N. from Austria.

4. Kuttenberg, or Hora, about 30 Miles E. from Prague, according to Sanjon, a considerable Town, chief of its Circle, and noted for the Silver and Copper Mines in its Neighbourhood. Dr. Brown says, 'tis but 12 Miles from Prague. It lies near the Elb, and has 30 several Mines in the Neighbourhood, which were discovered by a Monk, who found a Silver Tree there. The first is that call'd the Cutenhill, which is 19 Fathom deep. The chief Vein is about a Foot broad, and contains both Silver and Copper: Of the first, 100 Weight yields about an Ounce; and of the latter, 8, 9, 10, or more; and 100 of some Ore, he says, yields 8 or 9 Ounces of Silver; and when they meet with a blue Earth, they take it for a Sign of good Ore.

5. Czaflaw, the Chief of its Circle, about 37 Miles S. E. from Prague. Here the famous Zisca was buried.

6. Janikaw, a Town famous for the Defeat of the Imperialists by the Swedes in 1643. The former had the Advantage at first; but lost it by falling a plundering too soon. It lies about 12 Miles S. E. from Czaflaw, and 48 from Prague.

7. Koningratz, about 45 Miles N. E. from Prague, on the Elb, a Bishop's See, Suffragan to Prague, erected in 1664. 'Tis the Chief of its Circle, and a pretty large Town. 'Tis called in Latin Authors, *Gradium Regina*, or *Regina Graditum*.

8. Glatz,

8. *Glatz*, about 80 Miles N. E. from *Prague*. We have mention'd the Town already in the Description of *Silesia*, of which some Authors make it a Part. We shall only add, That 'tis Capital of its Circle, is defended by a good Castle; and the Country to which it gives Name, contains 9 great Towns, and 100 Villages.

9. *Elnebogen*, a strong Town on the River *Eger*, 5 Miles N. E. from *Egra*, and 65 W. from *Prague*, near the Frontiers of *Misnia*, and reckon'd one of the Keys of *Bohemia*, which opens their Passage into the Empire. About 5 Miles E. from this Town lies *Carlsbad*, noted for its Baths and Medicinal Waters.

10. *Pilsen*, about 40 Miles S. W. from *Prague*, a large, strong, and well fortified City, on the Conflux of two small Rivers. It is the Chief of its Circle, was besieged in vain by the *Hussites* in the 15th Century; but was taken by Count *Mansfeld* in the Civil Wars of *Germany*, and was the last that yielded to the Imperialists. Some reckon it the second Town of the Kingdom. The Market-place is spacious, has 4 or 5 Streets that center in it; the Houses are well built, and they have two fine Churches. The Country belonging to it is one of the most fruitful in *Bohemia*.

11. *Tabor*, on the River *Lasnick*. It was built and fortified by the *Hussites*, lies 42 Miles E. from *Prague*, is very strong, by its Situation on the Conflux of two Rivers; but is now only a small Town with a Castle.

12. *Kaurfsen*, or *Kartstin*, about 14 Miles S. W. from *Prague*, and the Chief of its Circle.

13. *Bohimishbroda*, a small Town, ruin'd by the Civil Wars of *Germany*, 20 Miles S. E. from *Prague*.

14. *Leitomeritz*, on the *Elb*, about 31 Miles N. W. from *Prague*, a very rich Town, erected into a Bishoprick, Suffragan of *Prague* in 1655.

15. *Satz*, or *Ziateck*, on the *Eger*, 37 Miles N. W. from *Prague*, a strong and populous Town, and Chief of its Circle.

16. *Codan*, a small City on the same River, noted for its excellent Beer.

17. *Carlstein*, a Fortress, so call'd from the Emperor *Charles IV.* who founded it. Here the *Regalia* of the Kingdom are kept.

It lies about 8 Miles S. W. from *Prague*, and seems to be the same with *Kaurfsen*, formerly mention'd, the Chief of its Circle; so that *La Forrest* is in a Mistake to make them two.

Other Towns in this Country are, *Eutawissel*, a Bishop's See; *Bechyn*, on the *Laufnick*, a very ancient Town; *Chrudin*, near the Fountains of the *Elb*; *Boleslaw* the Ancient, on the *Gizer*; *Schlany*, *Rakonick*, *Berawn*, *Sedlezany*, *Piseck*; all Chief of their Circles, but noted for little else.

The Circle of A U S T R I A.

FOR the Countries included in this Circle, we refer to the *Matricula*, and begin with

The Arch-Dutchy of A U S T R I A.

THE *Germans* call it *Oestereich*, and *Latin* Authors *Austria* or *Austrasia*, so called by the *Franconians* and *Bavarians*, because of its Easterly Situation from them. It was anciently Part of *Pannonia Superior*, and supposed to have been inhabited by the *Terachatrie* and *Rachate* of *Ptolomy*; and hence the *Poles* and *Bohemians* call them still *Rakauffi*. *Lazius* supposes the *Boii* liv'd here before they were drove out by the *Marcomanni*. It appears by good Authors to have been Part of the large Dukedom of *Boisavia* or *Bavaria*, and was first made a Marquisate before it came to be a Dutchy.

'Tis divided into *Upper* and *Lower* by the River *Ens*. It has *Hungary* on the E. *Bavaria* on the W. *Bohemia* on the N. and *Stiria* on the S. 'Tis in Length from E. to W. according to *Moll's* Map, 172 Miles; and in Breadth from N. to S. about 65.

The Country abounds with all Necessaries for Human Life, as will appear more at large in the Description of its Cities and Towns. The *Danube*, *Erlaph*, *Trafen*, *Yps*, *Melck*, *March*, *Teyn*, *Kampff*, *Ens*, and other Rivers, afford them Plenty of Fish; and their Fields abound with Corn and Saffron. They have Plenty of Wine for Consumption and Export, and are supplied with other rich Wines from *Hungary* and *Italy*; so that there are 30 several Sorts sold at *Vienna*.

Haßled.

Halstadt furnishes them with Salt, which is made by letting in Water into the hollow Parts of a Mountain, where it drinks in the Salt of the Earth, and is afterwards let out and boil'd. They have not such Plenty of Black Cattle as of others, and therefore are supplied with great Part of their Beef from *Hungary*. At *Vienna*, they have a peculiar sort of Bird, called *Hafenhendel*, or *Gallina Corilorum*, which they reckon a choice Dainty. The *Danube* and other Rivers have two Sorts of Fish, unknown to us, one called *Scheiden*, and, by *Gesner Silurus*, larger than a Pike or Salmon; the other called *Haisons*, much larger than the former, some of 'em being 20 Foot long. 'Tis thought to be the *Anacetus* of *Alian*, who gives an Account of fishing for them in the *Ister*, is a grisly Fish, with a hollow Nervous Chord down the Back, which they dry and make into Whips. The Fishermen blow a Trumpet or Horn, the Noise of which brings great Shoals of 'em about their Boats. The Inhabitants having such Plenty of all Necessaries, are more brisk and jovial than their Neighbours, who from hence call them Ranters and Flaggoners. Their unhealthful Air makes it necessary for them to take a larger Glass than ordinary; for in *Lower Austria* especially, except brisk Winds carry off the Vapours, they are much troubled with Agues. This Country abounds so with People of Quality, because of the Emperor's Court at *Vienna*, that some have reckon'd in it 100 Families of Counts and Barons, and 180 Knights, who had Votes in their Diet. *Cluverius* observes, That this is the only Arch-Dutchy in *Europe*.

The Family of Austria.

SOME German Heralds derive it in a direct Line from *Julius Caesar*: Others from one of the *Roman Scipio's*. *Seisfried*, an *Austrian* Abbot, publish'd a Folio Book in 1613, wherein he pretends to derive them from the *Anici*, *Probi*, *Colybri*, and other *Roman* Families which came from *Troy* with *Aeneas*. *Aventinus* derives them from *Ostrin* King of *Egypt*. *Trithemius*, and most ancient Authors of Credit, bring them from *Sigebert* King of *France*; and this has been

approved by *Lazius* and *Reusnerus*, two learned modern Writers; but *Guillimannus*, in a Book printed in 1605, dedicated to the Emperor *Rudolph II.* derives them from *Vindonissa*, an ancient City in *Switzerland*, of which they were Lords, afterwards made Counts of *Altenburg* and *Hapsburg*. This *Vindonissa* is mention'd by *Tacitus*; and other Historians say, it was besieged in the Reigns of *Dioclesian* and *Maximilian*. *Rhenanus* fancies, the true German Name of it was *Wendish*.

The *Atlas Historique* derives them in like manner from *Kanselin* Count of *Altenburg*, Son to *Gentram*, surnam'd *The Rich*, who liv'd in the latter End of the 9th Century. He was succeeded by *Radeboton*; he by *Wernin* Count of *Altenburg* and *Vindonissa*, and he by *Orto* Count of *Hapsburg*, from whom *Rudolph* Count of *Hapsburg*, who was elected Emperor in 1273, was the 5th. The Emperor *Albert I.* succeeded him. *Albert II.* Duke of *Austria*, succeeded him, but not as Emperor. *Leopold I.* surnam'd *The Hammer of War*, and *The Glory of Knights*, was his Son. *Ernest*, the first of the Name, Duke of *Austria*, succeeded him. *Frederick*, surnam'd *The Pacifick*, his Son, was the first who had the Title of Arch-Duke, which the *Atlas* says, signifies Duke of the Dukes of *Germany*. He died in 1493, and was succeeded by his Son *Maximilian*, who married *Mary* of *Burgundy*, the Heiress of that Country, by whom it came to the Family of *Austria* in 1519. His Son Arch-Duke *Philip* married *Jane* of *Aragon*, Daughter to *Ferdinand II.* and *Isabel* Queen of *Castile*, from whom proceeded the present Imperial Family, and the Branch of *Spain*, whose Male-Issue fail'd in the last King *Charles II.* The Founder of the *Spanish* Branch was *Charles V.* and the Founder of the Imperial Branch was his Brother *Ferdinand*, who married *Anne* Queen of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, which brought those Countries to that Family. From *Charles V.* by his Daughter *Margaret*, came the present Family of *Parma*. From Arch-Duke *Philip*, came the Arch-Dukes of *Ispruck*, which was united to the Imperial Family by the Marriage of the Heiress to the late Emperor *Leopold*. From a Daughter of *Charles* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, comes likewise the present Family of *Tuscany*; and from *Charles V.*'s Branch, comes also *Philip* Duke

Duke of *Anjou*, at present possessed of the Crown of *Spain*. The *Atlas* likewise derives the Kings of *France*, the ancient Kings of *Arragon* and *Castile*, and the Kings of *Portugal*, from the Family of *Hapsburg*; but he is not distinct as to the Manner how.

The *Atlas Historique* has also a large Tree, by which he shews, That most of the Sovereigns of *Europe* are issued from the Emperor *Rodolph*, viz. the Emperor, the King of *Spain*, the King of *France*, the Queen of *England* by the Family of *Denmark*, a Daughter of which was married to *James I.* the K. of *Denmark*, the K. of *Sweden*, the ancient Kings of *Portugal*, the King of *Prussia*, with all the Branches of the Family of *Brandenburg*; the Duke of *Savoy*, the Elector of *Hannover*, with the Branches of the House of *Brunswick*; the Elector of *Saxony*, with all the Branches of that Family; the Elector *Palatine*, the Elector of *Bavaria*, the Duke of *Lorraine*, the Landgrave of *Hesse*, with the Branches of that Family; the Duke of *Wirttemberg*, with the Branches of that Family; the Duke of *Holstein*, and his Branches; the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, the Prince of *Baden*, with the Branches of that Family; the Prince of *Anhalt*, the Counts of *Oettingen* and *Schwartzburg*, and the ancient Kings of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*.

He reckons in all 21 Illustrious Families which proceeded from *Rodolph*; among whom, there have been 19 Emperors, 46 Kings, 31 Electors and Electresses, and 190 Dukes, Dutcheffes, Princes, Princesses, Counts and Countesses, besides more that might be added.

He has also a Tree which shews, That there are issued from *Ferdinand I.* besides the Emperor and King of *Spain*, the Queen of *Great Britain*, by *Mary of Medicis*, Queen to *Henry IV.* of *France*; the King of *France*, the King of *Portugal*, the King of *Sweden*, the King of *Denmark*, the King of *Poland*, the King of *Prussia*, the Electors of *Bavaria*, *Saxony*, and *Palatine*, the Dukes of *Savoy*, *Florence*, and *Lorraine*, the Landgraves of *Hesse*, the Dukes of *Mantua*, *Parma*, and *Courland*, and the Princes of *Baden*.

He has also a Genealogical Tree of the Imperial Families, and Kings of *Spain*, that have issued from the House of *Austria* since *Charlemagne*; among whom, he reckens the

Emperors of the Family of *Saxony*, those of the Family of *Franconia*, those of the Family of *Luxemburg*, those of the Family of *Swabia*, and those of the present Imperial and *Spanish* Families. By all which together it appears, That the House of *Austria* is now the most Illustrious Family in the World.

The Privileges which they have receiv'd from the many Emperors of that Family, are very many and great, as Arch-Dukes of *Austria*; for as such they can create Gentlemen, Barons, and Counts, throughout the whole Empire. The Emperor cannot take from them the Lands they are possessed of. The Arch-Duke is the first and most intimate Privy-Counsellor of the Empire, and his Principality not subject to Contributions. When he receives the Lands he holds in Fee, he pays nothing for the Investiture, wears a Royal Habit, and an Arch-Duke's Cap, and is exempted from the Jurisdiction of the Empire. In Assemblies and Diets, they take Place on the Emperor's Right Hand, after the Electors, and before the Ecclesiastical Princes; and if they be challeng'd to a Duel, they may send a Champion, tho' that Privilege be deny'd their Adversary; and if all their Male-Issues should fail, the eldest Daughter inherits all their Estates, Titles and Privileges, and brings them to her Husband.

The ancient Arms of the Family were in a Field Azure, 5 Larks Or; but upon *Leopold* of *Austria*'s gallant Behaviour at the Siege of *Ptolemais*, where he was cover'd all over with Blood, and nothing appear'd with any White but his Belt, the then Emperor gave him a new Coat, being a Field-Gules, with a Fess-Argent, which they bear to this Day. Their other Arms we have accounted for under the Head of, *The Government of Germany*, Page 498.

The chief Cities and Towns of Austria.

1. *Vienna*, anciently called *Vendurn*, *Vindomina*, and *Vindobona*; and because of a Roman Colony there under their General *Fabianus*, was likewise called *Colonia Fabiana*; and here their *Classis Istrica*, or Navy on the *Danube*, lay, under Protection of the 10th German Legion. Some fancy, that 'tis *Ptolomy's Juliobona*. The Curious may

K k k k

see

See more of this in *Cluverius's Pindelicis & Noricum*, join'd to his *Germania Antiqua*, Page 22. By which it appears, that it was then one of the chief Towns in *Pannonia*. The present Name *Wien*, as 'tis call'd by the *Germans*, seems most probably to come from a small River of that Name, which falls there into the *Danube*. 'Tis situate on the S. Side of that great River, and was anciently famous for the Actions of several *Roman* Emperors against the *Marcomanni* and *Quadi*, particularly for the Wars of *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus Philosophus*, who defeated those Nations, and, according to *Aurelius Victor*, died here. Whether 'twas afterwards totally destroy'd, we know not. *Ptolemy* is the first who mentions it; but there is no certain Account when 'twas founded. In *Tiberius's* Time, it seems not to have been very remarkable, because *Velleius Paterculus* mentions *Carnuntum* or *Carnutum* to be the next Town of Note in Possession of the *Romans* to the Kingdom of *Noricum*; so that it seems first to have been made considerable and enlarged by being the Station of the 10th *German* Legion, as *Cellarius* thinks. We hear little more of it till *Henry I.* of *Austria* is said to have rebuilt it in 1158; and it was afterwards beautified and wall'd in 1192, by the Ransom which the Marquis of *Austria* obliged *Richard I.* of *England* to pay, when he took him Prisoner in his Return from the *Holy Land*, because he took down the *Austrian* Banner at *Joppa*, and threw it into a House of Office. The Ransom he forc'd from King *Richard*, was 140000 Marks of Silver, in *Cologne* Weight, a prodigious Sum in those Days, for which the *English* were oblig'd to sell their Church-Plate; and the Marquis of *Austria* not only fortified and enlarged *Vienna* with it, but wall'd the Towns of *Ens*, *Haimburg*, and *Newstar*. The City lies in Long. 35. 30. Lat. 48. 25. about 130 Miles S. E. from *Prague*, and about 48 W. from *Prasburg*, on a Branch of the *Danube*, which here divides it self into several Streams; and the River *Wien* separates the Town from some of the Suburbs. The City is fortified after the modern Way, with 10 Bastions towards the Land, and a very deep Ditch, into which they can let the River; but generally keep it dry, for fear of incommoding their Cellars. It has two other Bastions towards the

River. Taking in the Suburbs, 'tis of a very large Circuit; but the City it self is not above 3 *English* Miles round. 'Tis very populous; and here we may see some of most Nations in *Europe* in their proper Habits, which is very entertaining to Strangers. *Aeneas Sylvius*, above 200 Years ago, says, This City abounded with Palaces fit for Kings, and had Churches that might vie with those of *Italy*; a Character which it much better deserves now. Most of their Houses are well built of Stone, 6 Stories high, with flat Roofs, after the *Italian* Mode; and those which are otherwise, are cover'd with Pieces of Timber shap'd like Tiles. The Streets are of a middling Size, and many of their Houses have 4 Cellars one under another, with an open Space in the middle of each arch'd Roof for a Communication of Air; and from the lowermost, there's a Tube to the top to let in Air from the Streets. The Cathedral of *St. Stephen's* is a fair stately Fabrick, but something dark, because of the painted Glass in the Windows. It was founded by *Henry I.* of *Austria*, and finished by *Henry II.* The Steeple and Spire is one of the finest in *Germany*, and much stronger than that of *Strasburg*, tho' not so lightly: Under the Cross on the top, there was a Star and Half-Moon set up on this Occasion. When *Seliman the Magnificent* besieged the Town, he design'd to batter down the Steeple; but was dissuaded by his Bassa's, who flatter'd him, that he would soon be Master of it, and it were Pity to destroy so noble a Pyramid. Upon this he sent Word to the Citizens, That if they would set a Half-Moon and Star, the *Turkish* Arms, on the top of it, he would spare it, which was accordingly done; but being repuls'd with great Loss, though he attack'd them with 200000 Men, he was oblig'd to march off; but his Arms continued there till the *Turks* besieg'd it again in 1683. After which, because they fir'd at the Steeple, the Arms were taken down. This Steeple is 480 Foot high; and in the Tower, there hangs a Case of Wooden Hammers, with which they call the People to Church from *Good-Friday* till *Easter-Day*, because they will not suffer the Bells to ring out during the Time that our Saviour lay in the Grave. At the Entrance into this Church, there's a Stone plac'd in the

the Wall, which they fancy to be one of those with which St. Stephen was ston'd to Death: It looks like a Pebble, and is worn very smooth by the superstitious People, who think they merit by touching it as they go in and out. In this Church, there are many sumptuous Monuments of Princes, and other great Persons. Dr. Brown says, the Spire of this Steeple has the largest Crockets that ever he saw, being above a Yard long, and adorn'd with Foliage-work. From the Steeple, there is a noble Prospect of the City, of the adjacent Country, and of the Course of the Danube through most of Austria to near Presburg in Hungary. He adds, there are many other noble Churches and rich Convents in this City. The Convent of the Dominicans is a very fair Structure. The Church of the Austin Fryars is very large, and has a Chapel in the middle, resembling that called the Virgin's-House in Loretto in Italy; upon the top of which, there are many Colours taken from the Turks and Tartars. The Jesuits have several very large and spacious Colleges. The Front of that which faces the Piazza, has a Column of Copper in the Center of the Marketplace before it, on a Pedestal of White Stone, with a Statue of the Virgin on the top, and 4 Angels with Escutcheons round her; on which there are Inscriptions, dedicating Austria to her Patronage. There is likewise a Scots Convent here, founded for the Reception of Scots-men, in their Pilgrimages to the Holy Land. St. Colman, one of their Country-men, (of the Blood Royal) was murder'd by the Peasants near this City, where his Body is said to have remain'd a long time uncorrupted, and to have worked many Miracles: Upon which Account he was reckon'd the Patron of Austria. It was afterwards carried to Alba Regalis in Hungary. The Church of St. Peter is much esteem'd for its Antiquity, being the oldest in the City, and built in the same Place where formerly stood the Ara Flavianus, dedicated to Domitian.

The University of Vienna is also very noble: It was founded by Albert III. of Austria above 300 Years ago, according to the Statutes of that of Paris; or, as some say, it was founded by the Emperor Frederick II. in 1237, long before that, when he endow'd it with great Revenues and Privile-

ges; being afterwards enlarged by Ottocar King of Bohemia, and compleated by Albert, who distinguish'd the Students into 4 Classes or Nations, each of which, besides the general Constitutions, had their peculiar Rules and Privileges. The first Class is the Austrian, which takes in the Students of Austria, Italy, and other Provinces beyond the Mountains. The 2d is that of the Rhine, which takes in the W. of the Empire, France, Spain, and the Netherlands. The 3d is that of the Hungarians, which takes in Hungary, Bohemia, and all the rest of the Countries who speak Sclavonick, with other Parts of Germany. The 4th is that of the Saxons, taking in Saxony, the Northern Kingdoms, the N. Parts of Germany, Great Britain, and Ireland. Hence it comes, that there are Students of many Nations here, who sometimes quarrel about their own Divisions; but are sure to unite upon any Difference with the Citizens or Jews. Dr. Brown says, they had but little Knowledge when he was there of Natural and Experimental Philosophy, tho' they were enquiring after it; but they were well vers'd in Languages, History, Antiquity, and Anatomy, having a Theatre capable of 100 Persons to see the Operations of the latter. The Emperor Ferdinand II. in 1622, made an Order, That none should be Professors of Divinity and Philosophy there but the Jesuits; yet sometimes at Disputations, those of other Orders are allow'd the Chair; but the Civilians and Physicians were govern'd by a Rector of their own choosing, and admit Lutherans and Calvinists, which are excluded from the other. The Rector, with the other Masters of the University, have Power of Life and Death over their own Members.

No Religion is here publicly tolerated but the Romish, and therefore the Protestants go as far as Presburg, about 40 English Miles from hence, to receive the Sacrament. This would be an insupportable Trouble, had they not the Convenience of the Danube, and of Coaches, which daily pass betwixt Vienna and Presburg. Maximilian II. allow'd the Lutherans the Exercise of Religion in the Church of the Holy Cross; but that Privilege was afterwards taken from them by Rodolph II. The Emperor Matthias, not long after, gave them Leave to meet at

Herals, a little more than an *English* Mile from *Vienna*, and allow'd their Ministers to come into the City, and there to marry, baptize, and visit the Sick. This Toleration gave them an Opportunity of promoting their Principles, and of gaining daily great Numbers of Profelytes. But *Ferdinand II.* returning from the Battle of *Prague*, banish'd their Teachers out of *Vienna* and *Arnols*, committing *Baron Jorger*, their Grand Patron, close Prisoner at *Lintz*; and not ceasing, till he had taken away their Privileges of meeting in any Part of the *Lower Austria*.

Formerly the *Jews*, who swarm more in *Germany* than in any other Part of the Christian World, had Freedom of Trade allow'd them in this City; but for many Years past have been exceedingly distast'd by the Citizens and Tradesmen, who look'd upon them as Fellows that robb'd them of their Trafficks and Employments; and upon a Quarrel betwixt them and the Scholars, were wholly banish'd the Town. The Students having received an Affront from 'em, assaulted the *Juden-Stadt*, or *Jews* Town, which is a Part of the Suburbs beyond the River, whither they were always forc'd to retire in the Night-time, tho' permitted to traffick within the Walls in the Day, beat and wounded many of them, and threw several into the River; some of themselves being also killed, and divers wounded. Upon this, a good Number of the *Jews*, who first occasion'd the Uproar, were immediately banish'd the Town; and not long after, the whole Nation of 'em prohibited from living not only at *Vienna*, but in any other Part of *Austria*. 'Tis hard to judge whether a Toleration or Exclusion of 'em conduc'd most to the publick Good of the Town; for tho' they would most readily accommodate you with all manner of Necessaries, either upon Sale, or Exchange for other Commodities, yet the Magistrates of the City, and the Emperor's Ministers of State, were usually jealous of their holding a Correspondence with the *Turks*, and betraying the Secrets they could learn to the *Ottoman* Ministers.

The Imperial Palace is a noble Structure, but not answerable in Bulk to the Grandeur of its Master: It consists chiefly of two Courts; in the outer, which is largest, the

Guards and Courtiers are lodg'd; and in the inner, the Court it self. Over the Gate of the Palace, there are the 5 Vowels, A, E, I, O, U, in Capitals over the Gate; to which some have given this Explanation, *Austria est imperare orbi universo*; i. e. 'Tis the Part of *Austria* to govern the World; but 'tis not certain that this was the Meaning of the Architect.

In the Palace, the Emperor has a Library, which, for the Number and Value of Books, is inferior to none in *Europe*. The worst is, that the Receiptacle is not suitable to so vast a Treasure; for tho' 'tis divided into 8 spacious Rooms, in which the Shelves stand so close, that there is scarce an easy Passage left betwixt them, yet many lie upon the Ground.

The Manuscripts have their peculiar Places distinct from the Printed Books, and are divided into 6 different Classes, viz. Theological, Juridical, Medicinal, Philosophical, Historical, and Philological. The MSS. of *Hebrew*, *Syriac*, *Arabic*, *Turkish*, *Armenian*, *Aethiopic*, and *Chinese* Books, are, without Comparison, the best Collection that is to be found.

The choicest Books of which this Library is compos'd, (which has been collecting ever since the Time of *Maximilian I.*) are,

The famous Library of *Buda*, of *Matthias Corvinus*, Son to *Humniades*.

The choice Library of *Wolfgangus Lazius*: As also 3000 Books of *Johannes Sambucus*.

Augerius Busbequius made a considerable Addition to the rest; and in his two *Turky* Embassies, bought a great many choice Greek MSS. at *Constantinople*, which are mark'd thus with his own Hand, *Aug. de Busbeck. emit. Constantinopoli*.

There was also a considerable Number added out of the Library of the learned *Johannes Cuspinianus*, the Emperor's Library-Keeper: And the noted Libraries and Mathematical Instruments of *Tycho Brache*, *Kepler*, and *Gassendus*, were purchas'd for it.

But the greatest Addition of all, was made by that noble Library of Count *Fugger*, which consisting of 16000 Volumes, was purchas'd by *Ferdinand III.* Besides which, the learned *Peter Lambecius*, the present Library-Keeper, Historiographer, and Counsellor of the Emperor, has brought hither the choicest Books out of the Li-

brary

brary of *Inspruck*; and he himself is Master of a most excellent Library of his own, which will in Time be added to the Imperial Library. Dr. *Brown* says, he had it from his own Mouth, That there were then at least 80000 Volumes in this Library, which are increas'd by the Accession of other Books that are purchas'd since, especially in the *Turkish* Dominions, where the Emperor keeping a constant Resident, no Opportunity is let slip to buy up any good Greek MSS. in their Convents. Dr. *Brown* says, when he was at *Larissa* in *Thessaly*, the Resident, Seignior de *Casa Nova*, was continually enquiring after Greek Books in their Monasteries, the Emperor sparing no Cost to purchase them; and were it only for the Number of *German* Books, 'tis certain, that by the Right the Emperor has of having two Books of whatever is printed in *Germany*, this Library might soon increase to a vast Number.

The chief Things taken Notice of in this Library by Dr. *Brown*, are,

A Letter in the *Chinese* and *Tartarian* Language from the Emperor of *China* to the Emperor *Leopold*, weaved in a very fine Roll.

Another Roll written in an unknown Character, but most resembling the Greek.

A Book in the *Runick* Language.

A very fair MSS. of *Ptolemy*, the Maps colour'd.

A true Copy of *Livy*, the most ancient MSS. extant, 1000 Years old, in very large Letters, without Distinction of Words or Sentences, brought from the *Inspruck* Library.

A very fair MSS. in Greek of *Dioscorides*, 1100 Years old; in large Characters, without Distinction of Words or Accents; the Plants finely painted, with the Pictures of *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, and some other noted Physicians.

Two Books of Geometrical Propositions demonstrated, in the *Chinese* Language, whereof one with Pictures.

An old Greek MSS. in great Letters, without Distinction of Words or Accents.

A Greek MSS. 1300 Years old, of the Book of *Genesis*, without Stops or Accents: It contains 48 Draughts in Miniature or Water-Colours, relating to the Habits of

the Ancients, to the Manner of their Feasting, as their Postures at Meals, Attendance of Servants, and Musick. Among other Things, the Execution of *Pharaoh's* Baker is worth Observation, his Head being thrust thro' a forked Piece of Wood, and his Hands ty'd behind him.

A Book of Painting in Miniature, by *Albert Durer*, and a Sphere with a Globe within it, carved and painted by the same Hand.

A Book of *Michael Angeli*, wherein, besides many Rarities in Architecture, all the Paintings and Designs of the *Belvedere* are seen in Little.

A very fair Alcoran in *Arabic*, with the *Turkish* Explication interlin'd betwixt it.

A Bible in the *Coptic* and *Persian* Languages.

Luther's Bible, with many Notes, written by his own Hand.

A fair Greek MSS. of the New Testament, written with Golden Letters upon Purple 1500 Years ago.

A Magical Glass of the Emperor *Rudolphus*, whereby to see Apparitions of Spirits.

Sixteen Thousand Pieces of ancient Greek, Roman, and *Gothick* Medals and Coins, in Gold, Silver, and Copper. They pretend to have two Copper Coins of the Emperor *Marcus-Otho*.

Dr. *Brown* gives the following Account of the Emperor's Repository or Collection of Rarities.

The whole is divided into 14 Cases or Cupboards.

The first contains many curious Vessels, turn'd out of Ivory, Cups of Amber, Spoons and other Vessels of Mother of Pearl, divers fine Works of Coral, a Gallery of Ivory, and two Cups, one turn'd by the Emperor *Leopold*, and the other by *Ferdinand III.* several Cups of the *Rhinoceros* Horn.

In the 2d, an Elephant with a Castle, and many other Rarities of Workmanship on his Back; two fine Pillars, all of Ivory, with Variety of *Bass-Relievo*, and other Varieties in Ivory; a Picture in Oil of *Gany-mede*, by *Corregio*.

In the 3d, an old Man's Head in Oil, by *Albert Durer*; vast Variety of Watches and

and Clock-work; a fine Centaur in Silver.

The 4th also contains Watches and Clocks; a Triumphant Chariot; a Turk of Quality with his Attendance; a Landskip and a Cupid by *Corregio*.

In the 5th, are divers curious Works of Filegrane, brought from *Spain* and the *Indies*; and a Basen of Agate finely wrought.

The 6th contains an excellent Collection of *Intaglia*, and old Roman Stones, of inestimable Value, for their Workmanship and Bigness; a large Agate, on which is wrought the Victory of *Augustus Caesar* over the *Dalmatians* and *Pannonians*; It is 5 Inches long, and 4 broad, of a very high Value; besides several Heads and Figures cut in Onyxes, Shells, and Sardonyxes; and a Chain, with the Heads of the whole *Austrian* Family.

In the 7th, divers Pieces of Mother of Pearl, curiously wrought; the Head of *Maximilian I.* in Plaster-work, with a Lock of his own Hair, and the 12 *Cesars* Heads; another Head excellently well done in Oil, by *Hans van Aib*.

In the 8th, a Vessel made of one Piece of Chrystal, of a Yard and half high; an Urn; several Hands, with several Chrystal Works.

The 9th has a very noble Ewer of Chrystal, and another noble Vessel; many curious Crosses, and other Varieties.

The 10th contains 5 rich Crowns; the Imperial Crown, adorn'd with Precious Jewels, and a large blue Sapphire on the top; a Model of the Crown wherewith the Emperors are crown'd, much exceeding in Value the Original; a Paragon Diamond, weighing $17\frac{1}{2}$ Carats; divers very large Rubies; a Scepter made of Unicorn's Horn, set with Precious Stone; a Locket made of very large Diamonds; a most magnificent Scepter, Globe, Cross, and Crown, valued at 200000 Crowns; an Opal as big as a Hand, as it came out of the Mine; with many other very fine Opals, and a very large Emerald.

In the 11th, a Golden Basen, us'd at the Baptism of the *Austrian* Family; divers Golden Scepters, Scimiters, Knives, and other Presents, from the *Ottoman* Court; three rich Dog-Collars, sent from *England*, with this Mark, CC CC; a great Piece of pure Gold, of the Bigness of a Hand, as

it came out of the Mine; another Piece of Gold Ore, where you see the pure Gold shooting forth upon a white Stone; besides divers other Basens of Gold, and Vessels of Coral.

In the 12th, great store of Vessels of Jaspis, Agate, *Lapis Lazuli*, Oriental Granates, Cups of Onyx and Sardonyx, one very great, one of an Amethyst, and divers very large ones of *Lapis Nephriticus*.

In the 13th, are divers Flowers made out of Precious Stones; a large high Vessel of *Bohemian* Topaz; a Cup made of an *Hungarian* Diamond; a Piece of Amber-grease of the Bigness of a Man's Hand; a very fine Jaspis Stone; a large Agate Stone on the outside, and a Bed of large Amethysts naturally in it in the middle, which is look'd upon as a great Rarity.

In the 14th, are many noble Chrysolites, Jacinths, Oriental Granates, Beryls or Aquamarines; a very rich Smaragdus or Emerald, or a Cup out of that Stone, three great ones having been already taken out, valued at 300000 Crowns; great store of Gold Vessels, and rare Figures in Coral; *Turkish* Knives, Gauntlets, &c. fine Wax-Works, large Bezoar Stones; a Golden Medal of the Emperor's Arms, worth 1000 l. Sterling; a Cup said to be taken out of *Salomon's* Temple; a most curious Basen and Ewer of carv'd Ivory; King *Philip II.* of *Spain* in Diamond Armour, set in Gold; a curious Picture of an old Man courting a young Woman, with this Motto;

Arctum Annulum ne gestato.

Don't wear too strait a Ring.

A very fine Crucifix of Pearl; the Buff-Coat of *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in which he was kill'd near *Lutzen*; all the Gospel written and painted; the Head of *Charles I.* King of *England*, in Marble; Priests Garments set all over with Priests; an inestimable Agate Dish, betwixt three and four Spans Diameter, in which you see in natural Characters $\chi\rho\iota\varsigma$: Unto which may be subjoin'd, that most magnificent Chain of Pearl taken from Count *Tekely* in the late *Hungarian* War.

Near the Palace, the Emperor has a fine Stable, fill'd with manag'd Horses from most

most Parts of Europe. He has also the best Arsenal of the Empire; and in one of the Bastions of the City, there's a great Magazine of Naval Stores for his Gallies, which are made use of in the *Danube* against the *Turks*. They carry Guns, and have a great Number of Soldiers and Seamen belonging to them. Dr. *Brown* takes Notice, That the City is divided from the Suburbs by an Esplanade, descending in an open Ground for 300 Paces; That the Bastions are very large and broad, fac'd with Brick, and edg'd with Free-stone, besides the old inward Wall which was built with the Ransom of our *Richard I.* The Town has 6 Gates: The first call'd the *Stuben Gate*, to the E. 2. The *Carinthian Gate*, to the S. 3. The *Castle Gate*. 4. The *Scotts Gate*. 5. The *New Gate*. 6. The *Red-Tower Gate*. Besides which, there's another Gate near the Emperor's Palace towards the River. The 5 first Gates are vaulted through the Wall, with Draw-Bridges over the Ditch. The 6th is a Passage under a Tower towards the Bridge of the *Danube*, which is here divided into 7 Channels, join'd by as many Bridges, made of many Thousands of Trees, laid close to one another. There is one very remarkable Bridge here, call'd the *High Bridge*, made by the crossing of two Streets by equal Angles; but the Ground in one Street being equal in Height to the Tops of the Houses of the other, they have built a Bridge or Arch in the lowermost Street, to let the upper pass over it. In one of the Market-places, there's upon a Pedestal a very gross Representation of the Trinity, representing the Father like an old venerable Man, with our Saviour on the Cross in his Arms, and the Holy Ghost like a Dove hovering over both. 'Tis fence'd in with Iron Rails, and a Centinel always by it; and the superstitious People bow to it as they pass. This was set up in Remembrance of that City's being deliver'd from the Plague in the last Century. The principal Suburb is that call'd *Leopoldstadt*, divided from the City by a Branch of the *Danube*, and a fair Plain. Before the last Siege, it was almost as considerable as the Town, and abounded with magnificent Houses of the Nobility and Gentry; but was destroy'd during the Siege, and is in part rebuilt since. Among the Islands form'd by the

Danube here, there's one call'd *St. Peter's*, which lies before the Town, and is capable of lodging a considerable Army for their Defence. This City is a Bishop's See, and the Bishop, says *La Forrest*, depends immediately on the Pope. The most memorable Sieges which this City has sustain'd, was that by *Matthew Corvin* King of *Hungary*, who took it in 1490, and died here in 1495; that by *Soliman the Magnificent* in 1529, with 300000 Men, when he made 20 Attacks upon it; but it was bravely defended by *Philip* Elector *Palatine*; and the Emperor *Charles V.* coming to relieve it with 90000 Men, the *Turks* were obliged to retire. 'Twas again besieg'd by the Grand Visier in 1683 with 100000 Men, from the 14th of July, to the beginning of September, and reduc'd to great Streights; but bravely defended by Count *Staremberg*, until relieved by the King of *Poland*, and the Electors of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*. *Baudrand* says, it was made an Imperial Town by *Frederick II.* in 1236; but 4 Years after, made subject to the House of *Austria*.

'Tis very rich and populous, and the Inhabitants live plentifully, and are generally well Apparel'd, it being the Residence of the Emperor's Court, and the Place of Meeting for the States of the Country.

The Emperor's Court, tho' some others may exceed it for outward Pomp, yet for real Grandeur exceeds all the Courts in *Christendom*. He has many great Officers of State, and of the Household, who are all Persons of great Quality. The Lord High Steward, Dr. *Brown* says, was a Prince, the Lord Marshal a Count, the Lord Chamberlain also a Count, with 100 Gentlemen of the Bed-Chamber under him, all Counts and Barons, who wear Golden Keys on their Breasts, as the Grooms of the Bed-Chamber wear one of Steel, and two of each attend every Night. The Master of the Horse, and the Chief Huntsman, were both Counts, as was the Chief Falconer, who had 12 other Falconers under him. The Postmaster-General was a Count; and the Captain of the 100 Horse-Guards, who lodge without the City, was a Prince: The Captain of the 100 Foot-Guards, who attend the Emperor's Person within the City with Lances and Javelins with broad Points, was a Count; and the Emperor had

had 60 Pages, most of whom were Counts and Barons: And besides vast Numbers of Persons of Quality of the Hereditary Dominions who are frequently at Court, there are generally 30 Ambassadors and Ministers from Foreign Kings, Princes and States, and from the Princes of the Empire, residing at *Vienna*. The Emperor has likewise, according to the *Present State of Europe*, belonging to himself, 36 Colonels of Foot, 18 of Horse, and 23 of Dragoons and Hussars, most of 'em Persons of Quality, with an Admiral and Vice-Admiral of his Gallies, and a Colonel of the Troops belonging to them.

The *Present State of Europe* says, The Emperor himself presides in the Cabinet-Council; next to him sits the King of the *Romans*, if there be one of Age; and the other Members are about 10 in Number, all Persons of the First Rank.

The *Atlas Historique* gives us the following Account of the other Courts and Councils held here. The first is the Council of State or Privy-Council, which consults about Affairs of the greatest Importance: It consists of a President, who is generally the Emperor's Chief Minister, and 24 Counsellors, who are for most part Princes, Counts, and the great Officers of the Household. They have 10 Secretaries, the first of whom signs the Emperor's chief Letters, and the rest dispatch the Affairs belonging to the Secretary's Office. But according to the *Present State of Europe*, the Number of the Privy-Counsellors is much greater.

The 3d Council is that of War, which consists of 2 Presidents, who are Generals; 7 Counsellors, who are Marshals de Camp; and several Secretaries. They treat of Affairs of Peace and War.

The 4th is that call'd the *Aulick*, or principal Court of the Empire, the Officers of which are nam'd by the Emperor. It consists of 18 Counsellors, half of which are Protestants, according to the Treaty of *Munster*. 'Tis divided into two Benches, one of which consists of Noblemen, and the other of able Lawyers. It is like the Chamber of *Spire*, and is equal to it in Power for administering Sovereign Justice; so that there lies no Appeal from the one to the other. The Emperor himself can-

not suspend or hinder their Decisions; tho' as supreme Judge, he is President of both: And tho' all those who are immediate Princes of the Empire have a Sovereign Power in Causes Civil and Criminal; yet in Civil Affairs of Importance, there lies an Appeal from them to one of those two Chambers. The *Present State of Europe* makes this *Aulick* Council, and the Council of War, much more numerous.

He mentions also, 1. The Court of *Chancery* of the Empire, of which the Elector of *Mentz* is always Chief Chancellor. The Vice-Chancellor presides in his Absence, and has an Assistant, with an Assessor, two Secretaries, and a Referendary, for dispatching *German* Affairs.

2. The Imperial Council or Chamber, which has a President, consists of many Lords and Gentlemen, among whom are the Governors of the *Hungarian* Cities, where the Mines lie, with the Chief Officers for the Civil Affairs of *Hungary*, *Moravia*, *Bohemia*, and *Silesia*.

He gives the following Account of the most considerable Posts of the Emperor's Hereditary Dominions.

1. In *Hungary*, the Palatine of that Kingdom, who takes Place next the King; the Deputy-Palatine, the High-Chancellor of the Kingdom, the Chancellor, the President of the Chamber, Steward of the Crown, the High-Chamberlain of the Crown, the Keeper of the Crown, the Great Judge or President of the Cities, the Ban and Vice-Ban of *Croatia*. The Royal Chanceries of *Hungary* and *Transylvania*, with the Officers and Councils belonging to them, are kept at *Vienna*.

2. In *Bohemia*, during the Absence of the King, their Administration is in 18 Lieutenants, among whom are the Vice-Chancellor, the High-Steward, High-Marshal, the High-Chamberlain, two Judges, the Grand Prior of the Order of *Malta*, the Chief President of Appeals, the President of the Royal Chamber, the Chief Secretary, and the Deputy-Chamberlain, &c. The Chief Chancery of *Bohemia*, with the Officers, &c. belonging to it, always attend the Imperial Court. There are in that Country 3 Sovereign Courts of Justice; and the 14 Circles are under the Government

ment of two Captains, one Counsellor of State, and one Nobleman each.

3. In the Marq. of *Moravia*, there is a Governor, who presides in the Court of Justice, assisted by three Lawyers and one Secretary. *Moravia* is divided into 5 Circles, under particular Governors, from whom there lies an Appeal. The Governor is assisted by a Chief Chamberlain, the Chief Steward, Deputy Chamberlain, Chief Judge, Chief Secretary, Vice Chamberlain, Under-Secretary, Clerk of Records, and Vice-Chancellor.

4. *Silesia* is always govern'd by a Prince of the Empire, with a Council, High Chancellor, some of the Nobility and Secretaries, with an Imperial Chamber, under the Direction of a President and Council. 'Tis divided into 6 Principalities, and 6 Free States: Some of them are subject to their own Dukes, and they are all call'd Hereditary Principalities, over which the Emperor and the respective Prince appoint Governors.

5. The Arch-Dutchy of *Austria* is divided into 3 Governments: The first is *Lower Austria*, under the Direction of the Emperor and Privy-Council, the Regent Council, and the Chancery. The 2d is *Inner Austria*, which takes in *Styria*, *Carinthia*, and *Carniola*, with several lesser Governments. The Tribunals are held at *Graz*, and the Government is by a Privy-Council, a Regent Council, a Chief Chamber, Council of War, and Martial Court. The 3d Government is that of *Upper Austria*, including *Tirol*, the Hereditary Countries in *Swabia*, that Part of *Switzerland* subject to the House of *Austria*, and several little Governments. The Privy Council is held at *Innsbruck*. There is besides a Regent Council, and one called the Chamber Council.

By all this together, with the Courts of the Empress, and of the King and Queen of the *Romans*, when there is one, 'tis easy to perceive, that the Imperial Court exceeds all those of *Christendom* in real Grandeur.

Dr. Brown says, That two *English* Miles E. from *Vienna*, lie the large Gardens of *Rodolphus II.* The inner Garden is 200 Paces square, and has a Cloister, supported by 40 Pillars of white Stone, on each Side cover'd with Copper, as are also the Pa-

vilions. They have Houses here, where they breed Lions, Tygers, and other Wild-Beasts. Three Miles from *Vienna* lies *Annals*, a Place of Devotion, whither the People go in Pilgrimage, with heavy Crosses on their Shoulders; and the Emperor and Empress, with the Court, perform this Pilgrimage on Foot. Here they have a Model of the Holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*, with a curious Picture of our Saviour and the Virgin at full Length, the first exactly 6 Foot high, and the second an Inch or two lower. Nearer the City, there is another Place of Devotion, called *Itzing*, marked out with 12 Stations of the Cross, like the *Via Dolorosa* at *Jerusalem*, in Remembrance of our Saviour's going to Moun *Calvary*. The Emperor has a fine Park near *Vienna*, with abundance of Game, and a House of Pleasure. That called *Luxemburg* is an old Structure, not very large, with a Summer-House in the middle of a Pond, and a neat square Building in the Marsh, from whence they shoot at the Wild-Beasts. They have good Beer, and abundance of Wild-Boars in the Neighbourhood, which are extraordinary good Meat. The Emperor has great Numbers of expert Huntsmen, who always attend the Court when they hunt; for since Count *Serini* was kill'd by a Boar, they seldom attack them singly.

Criminals are usually executed here by cutting off their Heads, which the Executioner performs with one Blow. The Traitors have for most part their Hands first cut off. The Climate is healthful; yet they have an Epidemical Distemper, called the *Austrian Cholick*, which is hard to be cur'd. The Winters are sharp; therefore they sleep between two Feather-Beds, make use of Stoves, and wear much Fur, with which the Women line and face their Bonnets. In the City, they speak good *German*; but in the Country, the People have a different Tone, odd Words, and speak quick.

Dr. Brown says, he saw a surprizing Trick perform'd here, which was, That a middle siz'd Man lay down on his Back, with a heavy Anvil on his Breast, upon which two lusty Fellows with great Hammers gave at least 200 Blows, till they cut an Iron Horse-shoe, about half an Inch thick, asunder.

2. *Baden*, about 15 Miles S. W. from *Vienna*, is a neat little Wall'd Town, seated on a Plain, but nigh to a Ridge of Hills, which are the Excursions of Mount *Cetius*. 'Tis much resorted to, by reason of the natural Baths of that Place, wherein the Springs are so numerous, as to supply two convenient Baths within the Town, & without the Wall, and two beyond a Rivulet, called *Swechet*.

The Duke's Bath is the largest, about 20 Foot square, in the middle of an House of the same Figure built over it. The Vapour passes through a Tunnel of Wood at the Top, and the Water is convey'd into the Bottom of the Bath, at one Corner, thro' Wooden Pipes and Trees under the Town-Wall from the Spring-head; which rises at a little Distance Westward. The Springs of the rest of the Baths rise under them, and are let in through Holes in the *Plancher*. The Water, for the most part, is clear and transparent, yet somewhat bluish, and makes the Skin appear pale in it. It turns all sorts of Metals (except Gold, whose Colour it also heightens) black in a few Minutes.

The Coin of this Country consisting of a Mixture of Copper and Silver, is in a Minute's Time turn'd from a white into a dark yellow, and soon after becomes black. It gives a fine green Colour to the Moss and Plants, which it washes, and leaves often a Scum upon them of purple mix'd with white. *Oleum Sulphuris per Campanum* dropt into the Water of this Bath, newly taken up at the Spring-head, is received into it quickly; but *Oleum Tartari per Deliquium* causes an Ebullition, as in the making of *Tartarum Vitriolatum*. None of the other Baths are very considerable, except the *Sour Bath*, which is set about with Stone Ballasters, and cover'd with an handsome Cupulo and Lantern. The Water of this Bath is very clear, and its Steam colours Silver black, or gilds it at least at a good Distance; and yet the Water it self, once cold, will not change the Colour of any Metal, tho' boil'd in it. The hottest Baths in this Town have not the Heat of the King's or Queen's at Bath in England. They that bathe use no Guides, as with us; but direct themselves with a short Staff.

The German Physicians commend these

Waters for curing most Distempers incident to the Head, as Head-aches, Dimness of Sight, Deafness, &c. They are also good against the Gout, (if drunk in Time) the Dropsie, and other Chronical Distempers. The best Times for Bathing are reckon'd the 4 Months of *June, July, August,* and *September*.

3. *Haimburg*, or *Haynburg*, called by Latin Authors, for Distinction-sake, *Hamburg Austria*, about 33 Miles from *Vienna*. Some have thought it to be the same with *Ptolomy's Carantum*, or *Carnuntum*; tho' that Opinion has since been confuted by the learned *Lazius*, who proves from undeniable Testimonies of Antiquity, and several Medals and Coins lately found, That *Petranel* (now a small Village betwixt *Vienna* and *Haimburg*, about two German Miles from the latter) is the true *Carantum*. However, the Ruins of strong Walls and Fortifications round this Town, sufficiently demonstrate it a Place of great Antiquity; and shew, that 'twas heretofore much more considerable and large than at this Day.

This was anciently the Metropolis of *Austria*, and Seat of the Dukes; during which Time, 'twas one of the greatest Mart-Towns in this Part of Europe, being much frequented and throng'd with the *Schwabians*, and other Nations, who traffick'd this Way into *Hungary* down the *Danube*. But as soon as Duke *Leopold VI.* removed his Court from hence to *Vienna*, the Trade began to decay; and the frequent Incurfions of the *Hungarian* Rebels since have daily render'd it less considerable. The greatest Trade of the Town is in Wine and Corn, of each whereof they have good Plenty. They have also a Bath, but not much regarded, because they make use of an artificial Heat to warm it. In the Clefts of the Rocks, in a craggy Hill adjoining, are bred the best Falcons in the Empire.

4. *Tuln*, an ancient Town, about 16 M. W. from *Vienna*, not far from the Banks of the *Danube*, derives its Name from a small Rivulet whereon 'tis seated. From this Town, a good Part of the adjoining Country has got the Name of *Turnelsfeldt*, which is reckon'd one of the richest and healthiest Parts of *Austria*. Through the middle of this Country runs the River *Trafam*, (whence *Trafamaur*, a Market-Town not far from *Tuln*,

Tuln, has its Name) which, says *Lazius*, is nothing but a Corruption of the Latin Words *Terrasana*, a Name the ancient Romans thought fit to bestow on this healthy Country. But notwithstanding the Compliment usually passed upon this Place, as plentifully stock'd with all manner of Provisions, a Traveller will hardly meet with worse Usage in any Part of the Emperor's Dominions, than at an Inn in *Tuln*. Near this Place, 40000 *Huns* perish'd in a Battle against the Roman Lieutenant *Matrinus*, who himself was slain in the Conflict; which being ended, *Attila* was chosen King of the *Huns*.

5. *Krems*, *Cremesia*, about 30 Miles W. from *Vienna*, has its Name from the small River *Krems*, which (not far from this Town) empties it self into the *Danube*. 'Tis a well built and neat Town, thought to be larger than *Presburg* in *Hungary*. The Citizens have a great Trade, especially at two Fairs, whereof the one begins on St. James's Day, and the other on St. Simon and Jude's; each of them lasts 14 Days; during which Time, the Streets are continually crowded with Merchants and Tradesmen out of all Parts of *Germany*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Hungary* and *Poland*. It suffered much during the Civil Wars of *Germany*.

6. *Melck*, a pleasant Town on the Banks of the *Danube*, above *Krems*, about 48 Miles W. from *Vienna*. Some think it to have been an ancient Roman Colony, formerly named *Claudianum*. But *Lazius* says, That *Julius Caesar* being in Love with the pleasant Situation of this Town, call'd it *mea Dilecta*, which was afterwards corrupted into *Medelick*. And to make the Story formal, he further tells us, That the said Emperor built 3 Forts in this Country, the first whereof was this *Medelick*; the 2d he named *Turris Mirabilis*, or *Wunderburg*; and the 3d, *Castrum Ferreum*, *Eysenburg*. And one main Argument whereby they endeavour to prove this to be a Roman Colony, is founded on the Pictures of *Romulus* and *Remus* sucking a Wolf, cut in the Wall of the great Church.

In the Monastery, are preserved several Relicks of St. Colman, descended of the Royal Blood of *Scotland*, who, in his Passage through this Country towards *Jerusa-*

lem, was barbarously murder'd by the Boors of *Stockerau*, 4 German Miles from *Vienna*, in the Year 1012. His Body was hung on a Tree; but having for the Space of a Year and half endur'd the Weather uncorrupted, was at last taken Notice of as attended by an extraordinary Providence, and conceived able to cure Diseases, and work other Miracles. The first that try'd the Experiment, was one *Rumaldus*, who having a Son tormented with the Gout, cut a Piece of St. Colman's Flesh from the Tree, (whereupon a fresh Stream of Blood is said to have issued) and applying it to the Place, found present Remedy. The Noise of this Cure immediately retriev'd the Saint's Reputation, who, some say, had been executed as a Vagabond and Spy, and procur'd an honourable Interment for his Corps near *Stockerau*. About a Year after this, the *Danube* (they say) overflow'd its Banks, and destroyed most of the Churches in this Country; only this small Church was miraculously preserved in the midst of the Inundation. Upon this, the Body was translated by *Meginhard* Bishop of *Eichstadt* to *Melck*, from whence 'twas afterwards conveyed into *Hungary*, his Head being kept for some time at *Stutweissenburg* or *Alba Regalis*. Upon a Hill near *Melck* stands a Benedictine Monastery, which challenges the Pre-eminence of all the rest in *Austria*. 'Tis richly endow'd; and besides that of St. Colman, has the Monuments of many other great Persons.

7. *Neustadt*, or *Neapolis Austria*, is another principal Town of this Country, about 27 English Miles S. from *Vienna*, on the Road to *Styria*, in a Bog near the middle of a large Plain; so that it may be seen every Way at a good Distance. 'Tis encompass'd with a Ditch, and two Walls, which render the Place so impregnable, that the *Turks* having long besieg'd it with the main Force of their Army, offer'd to retire, provided the Town would give them some false Trophy to carry to *Constantinople*: Upon which they sent them a Whipping-Post. Over the chief Gate, they have the 5 Capital Vowels, as over the Palace at *Vienna*, which they interpret thus, *Aquila Elefca juste omnia vincit*; i. e. The Eagle being chosen justly, overcomes all. 'Tis a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Salzburg*, the ordinary

dinary Prison for Criminals of State, and suffer'd much by the *Turks* in 1683.

8. *St. Polten*, on the River *Drafsam*, about 32 Miles W. from *Vienna*, a pretty compact Town. It has its Name from the Monastery and Church of *St. Hippolitus*, which gave Occasion to building this City. The Monastery was built in the Reign of King *Peppin*, and enriched by Pope *Zachary* with the Relicks of *St. Hippolitus* and *St. Quirinus*, for the Assistance they gave him against the *Saracens*. It was first wall'd in 1266, by the Bishop of *Passau*. The only Thing remarkable in it, is the Abbey, the Church, and the Town-Hall.

9. *Pachlarn*, the Remains of an ancient Town and Fort on the *Danube*, about 40 Miles W. from *Vienna*. *Cluverius* says, 'twas anciently call'd *Arlape*, or *Ara Lapidea*, from whence the little River on which it stands retains the Name of *Erlaph*. It appears by old Monuments and Inscriptions found near it, that it was one of the Harbours of the *Roman* Navy, and once the greatest Strength in the Country, for which the *Romans* call'd it *Præclara*; and hence comes the modern Name, by the Corruption of the Word. 'Twas formerly the Residence of the Princes of *Austria*, but now only noted for making Earthen Ware.

Other Places of Note in this Country are, 1. *Bruck*, a neat Town on the Borders of *Hungary*, noted for a Yearly Fair of Cattle. 2. *Horn*, a strong Fort near the Borders of *Moravia*, about 39 Miles N. W. from *Vienna*. 3. *Ips* on the *Danube*, about 52 Miles W. from *Vienna*. *Cluverius* takes it to be the *Pens Iſis* of *Ptolemy*. 4. *Tyrnſtein*, where our *Richard I.* was kept Prisoner.

The Cities and Towns in Upper Austria.

1. *Linz*, by the Latins called *Lentia*, *Linacium*, and *Aurelianum*, is the chief Town of *Upper Austria*, and lies on the *Danube*, about 95 Miles W. from *Vienna*. 'Tis situated in one of the most pleasant Places of the Emperor's Dominions; so that many of the Nobility have Country-Houses near it, where they hunt, hawk, fish, &c. in the Summer. The Suburbs on

the other Side of the River consist chiefly of the Houses of the Nobility and Gentry, and are join'd to the Town by a large Wooden Bridge. Most of the Suburbs were destroyed by the *Swedes* during the Civil War; but the Town had no great Damage. The Emperor *Matthias*, in his Return from the Diet at *Ratisben* in 1614, was so much pleas'd with the Situation of this Place, that he kept his Court here a whole Year: During which Time, all the Branches of the House of *Austria* had a Meeting at this Place, in order to make a League Offensive and Defensive against all Potentates that should offer to oppose them, which had no other Effect but the Ruin of a *Lutheran* Church and University, where, as *Crusius* says, there had in 20 Years Space been educated 3000 Counts, Barons, and other Persons of Quality. Near this Place the *Jesuits* have now a College, plentifully endow'd with a good Library. There are two Fairs Annually held here, at *Easter* and *Bartholomewtide*, when 'tis much frequented by Strangers. *La Forrest* says, the States of *Upper Austria* assemble here, and that the Town is defended by a good Castle. The late Emperor retir'd hither during the Siege of *Vienna*, and the Elector of *Bavaria* took this Town in 1703. Dr. *Brown* says, this City is not large, but neat, all the Houses being of a white Free-stone, the Marketplace spacious and handsome, and a Castle on a Hill, fortified after the modern Way. The Emperor's Army rendezvous'd here when *Soliman* the Magnificent besieg'd *Vienna*. It was besieg'd by 40000 Peasants in *Ferdinand II.*'s Time; but reliev'd by Count *Pappenheim*. Mr. *Ray* says, the City is built after the *Italian* Fashion, with a large square Piazza, adorn'd with two noble Fountains; and that from the Emperor's Palace, which stands on a rising Ground, there's a noble Prospect of the *Danube*, and of the neighbouring Country. 'Tis noted for the excellent Gun-Barrels made here.

2. *Enz*, by the Latins called *Anasum*, *Anasianum*, and sometimes *Ensum Civitas*. 'Tis a fair, strong, and well built City, on the River *Enz*, which separates *Upper* and *Lower Austria*, and lies 85 Miles W. from *Vienna*, near the Mouth of the *Enz*, where it falls into the *Danube*. 'Tis the Remains of a large and famous City, formerly called *Lauriacum*.

riatum, according to *Antonin*, and the *Notitia Imperii*. Some call it *Colonia Aureliana Lauriacensis*; and *Lazius* thinks it was the Metropolis of *Noricum Ripense*, and built by the Emperor *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus* in his Expedition against the *Marcomanni*. Part of the ancient Name continues in the Village of *Laurich*, now called *Lorch*, a small Village on the Banks of the *Danube*, and formerly Part of this City, which was about 2000 Paces in Length, and reached from the *Danube* as far as *St. Florian's* Monastery, which is now quite without the S. Wall of this City. About 903, it was destroyed by the *Huns*, being at that Time the Seat of the Roman Emperors. From its Ruins sprung the present City. It was formerly an Archbishop's See, and, according to some German Authors, was founded by *St. Peter* or *St. Mark*; which Conjecture has occasion'd an old Inscription on the Market-place, the two last Lines of which are as follow;

*Hec de Laureaco reliqua est: Hic Marcus in Oris.
Cum Luca Christi dogma professus erat.*

Some will have it, that *St. Lawrence* was their Apostle, and founded their Cathedral, which was dedicated to him. Here they will also have our King *Lucius* to have been educated in Christianity, but without any good Authority. 'Twas formerly govern'd by Counts of its own; but was bought from their last Count by *Rudolph I.* and, together with *St. Florian's* Monastery, pays Annually a Gold Ring of 5 Ducats Value, as a Token of Homage to the Duke of *Austria*, and was added to their Hereditary Dominions: The Elector of *Bavaria* took this City in 1703.

3. *Steyer*, a neat and compact Town, on the Conflux of the *Steyer* and *Enns*, from whence its Suburbs, *Steyerdorff* and *Ensdorff*, have their Names. It lies about 10 Miles S. from *Enns*. 'Tis chiefly inhabited by Cutlers, Smiths, and other Ironmongers, who, by the Conveniency of the *Danube*, have a great Trade with the neighbouring Countries. *Lazius* says, the *Gefata* were the ancient Inhabitants of this Country, and supposes the Town to be *Ptolomy's Gesodunum*, whence the pleasant Valley on which it stands is

called *Gastenthal*; but it seems rather to derive its Name from the Monastery of *Garsen*, that stands near this City, and is well worth a Traveller's Notice.

4. *Wels*, on the *Draun*, about 10 Miles S. from *Lintz*. *Cluverius* says, That it was the *Colonia Aureliana Antoniana Ovil*. The *Norici*, the ancient Inhabitants, call'd it *Willabr*, from whence the Romans call'd it *Ovilaba*, or *Ovilara*. *La Forrest* says, the Emperor *Aurelian* built it after his Expedition against the *Scythians* in *Pannonia*.

5. *Everding* or *Efferding*, about 3 Leagues W. from *Lintz*, near the *Danube*. 'Tis a strong Town, defended by two Castles, one within the Walls, and another without, called *Schawmburg*, which gave Title to the Counts of that Name, a Branch of the Family of *Julbach*. In 1367, it was sold, with its Dependencies, to the Bishop of *Passau*, but fell afterwards to the Counts of *Schawmburg*; by one of whose Daughters, married to the Count of *Staremburg*, about 1551, it came to that Family.

6. *Gemund*, so called, because it lies on the Mouth of the *Draun*, where it falls into the *Gemunder Lake*. It has a considerable Trade in Salt, which is made here, and exported as far as *Vienna*. It lies about 22 Miles S. W. from *Enns*.

7. *Freystatt*, on the Borders of *Bohemia*, about 22 Miles N. from *Enns*. The Town is well built, but not strong, being taken by a handful of Boors, and soon lost by them during the Civil Wars of *Germany*. 'Tis famous for a palatable Beer, which is exported into the neighbouring Country. They have an Annual Fair, which begins at the Conversion of *St. Paul*, lasts 14 Days, and is very much frequented, which brings them a great Trade. The adjacent Country is called *Machland*, and gave Title to the Counts of *Burckhausen* and *Machland*, who being extinguish'd about 1186, it fell to a Branch of the *Austrian* Family, called Counts of *Hardegg*. *La Forrest* mentions a Town called *Lichtenstein* in *Lower Austria*, near the River *Wien*, which gives Name to a Principality; but we do not find it in any of our Maps.

Stain is also a small City on the N. Side of the *Danube*, a little above *Krems* to the W. with a Bridge over the *Danube*; and

Cloister-

Gloisternewburg is another small City, about 5 Miles W. from *Vienna*, which has escap'd the Description of our Geographers.

The Dutchy of Styria.

THIS Province, with *Croatia*, *Windismark*, *Carniola*, and *Carinthia*, are now reckon'd Parts of *Germany*, they were formerly accounted Part of *Pannonia*; but lost that Denomination by falling to the House of *Austria*. *Styria*, in *German* *Steyr-march*, is by *Marcellinus* and *Aurelius Victor* thought to be the *Roman* Province called *Valeria*, in Honour of *Discelesian's* Daughter; but *Volateranus* thinks it was *Japidia*, and that *Croatia* was *Valeria*. The ancient Inhabitants were the *Styri*, a Branch of the *Taurisci* or *Norici*. 'Tis bounded by *Austria* on the N. with *Carniola* and *Sclavonia* on the S. *Salzburg* and *Carinthia* on the W. and *Hungary* on the E. The Length from E. to W. according to *Moll's* Map, is about 120 Miles; and the greatest Breadth from N. to S. is about 85. 'Tis commonly divided into *Upper* and *Lower*: In the *Lower*, they have store of Wine, Fruit, Fish, Venison, Mines, especially of Iron, Salt-Springs, &c. They have now and then such Plenty of Corn, that they complain of want of Vent for it; yet one bad Harvest puts them in Danger of a general Famine. *Upper Styria* is more mountainous: Their principal Trade is in Wool and Sheep. They have also Plenty of Black Cattle in their Vallies, and exchange their Butter and Cheese for Bread and Wine with their Neighbours; for they have no Wine of their own Growth. The Air is wholesomer than in *Lower Styria*, where the *Hungarian* Fever and Pestilence are too common. Their ordinary Drink is sorry small Beer; but the better Sort have a sharp thin Wine from *Styria*; yet Travellers are better pleas'd with their Entertainment here, than in most other Parts of the Empire. The People of this and the neighbouring Countries are troubled with extraordinary Swellings in their Throat, which frequently make them lose their Voice and Senses; so that in most great Towns, they have Hospitals for those who are afflicted with such Distempers. *Ortelius* says, he saw a

Man in this Country, who had a Swelling of that sort of such a Bulk, that from his Ears down to his Breast, it was as broad as his Shoulders; and the poor Women are so much troubled with those Swellings, that some of them are forc'd to throw them over their Shoulders when they suckle their Young. This is supposed to proceed from their drinking of Snow-Water, which falls down from the Mountains; because those who live well, and drink good Wine and Beer, are seldom troubled with it. Their common Language is *Sclavonick*; but in Cities and Towns, they speak *High-Dutch*, which is made use of in their Courts of Judicature, and Papers of State, and is the common Language in *Upper Styria*, where they speak it better than in the Circle of *Bavaria*. We have given an Account of their Government in the Description of the Emperor's Court. 'Twas formerly a Marquisate, because a Frontier Country, which divided the Empire from *Sclavonia*. The Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* made it a Dutchy. It came to the House of *Austria* by Marriage; but that Branch being extinguished, they chose a noble *Hungarian* for their Prince; but depos'd him because of his Tyranny, and chose *Ottacar*, Son to the King of *Hungary*, in his stead, who being slain in War with the Emperor *Rodolph*, they have since been subject to the House of *Austria*.

The chief Towns in Lower Styria.

1. **G**ratz, or *Gratz*, in Latin *Gracium*, the Metropolis of the Dutchy, lies on the River *Mur*, in Long. 35. Lat. 47. 17. 60 Miles towards the S. E. from *Vienna*, and 35 W. from the Borders of *Hungary*. 'Tis a neat City, in a pleasant and fruitful Country, fortified with a Wall and Ramparts, and almost impregnable, by reason of a Castle on a high Hill, which commands the neighbouring Country. *Cluverius* thinks it to be *Ptolemy's* *Muroela*; but *Lazius* differs from him, and places *Muroela* above 3 German Leagues further E. on the same River. In the Duke's Palace, there's a good Library in two Rooms, pretty well stock'd with printed Books, and some MSS. In the Gallery, among other Rarities, there's a fine Draught

Draught of *Charles the Great's* Wars, and a Repository of Curiosities, with a good Collection of *American* and *Indian* Idols. The *Jesuits* have a College here richly endow'd with large Privileges, where they give Degrees in all Faculties, and have abundance of Scholars. This Town is the Residence of the Governor, as it was formerly of some Arch-Dukes, who call'd themselves by its Name; particularly *Ferdinand II.* before he was chosen Emperor.

2. *Marchburg*, a well built Town on the Banks of the *Drave*, about 15 Miles W. from *Tettau*, according to *Sanfon*, and 28 S. from *Gratz*. *Lazius* says, There are many old Roman Monuments found here, and supposes it to be the ancient *Castra Marcana*, or *Mariana* of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. This Town and its District was formerly a County; but their Counts failing, it came to the Lords of *Scherfensberg*, and afterwards with some other Counties to the House of *Austria*.

3. *Pettau*, an ancient Roman Town, on the Banks of the *Drave*, then the Boundaries of their Empire on that side, and by them call'd *Petawium*. The Country People call it *Duis*; 'tis not large or well built, but is noted for having been a Bishoprick above 1300 Years. The Bishop is Suffragan of *Salzburg*, the Archbishop of which is Lord of the greatest Part of the Town. Some ancient Geographers place it in the Territories of the old *Norici*; but *Ptolomy* places it in *Upper Pannonia*. It lies 30 Miles S. E. of *Gratz*.

4. *Rakersburg* or *Rakelsburg*, a strong Fort on the Banks of the *Muer*, and a great Bulwark against the *Turks*. The *Latins* call it *Raeltanum*, and the *Slavonians* *Radslony*. The adjacent Country is stock'd with all kinds of Fruit, especially Grapes. The Burghers have the sole Privilege to buy all the New Wines from *Michaelmas* to *St. Catherine's*, afterwards the Rusticks are at liberty to sell to whom they please. There's an Office here, where Toll is paid for Goods brought hither from *Hungary*, and exported from hence. It lies according to *Sanfon*, about 32 Miles S. E. from *Gratz*.

5. *Windisch-Gratz*, so call'd to distinguish it from *Bavarian Gratz*. It was the ancient Boundary of the *Slavonians*. *Lazius* thinks it to be *Ptolomy's Vinudria*, because

of the ancient Monuments found here. Others say it was *Vendum*, and built by the *Japyges*, the old Inhabitants of *Carniola*; 'tis only noted for its Antiquity, which is also disputed by some. It lies about 38 Miles S. W. from *Gratz*.

6. *Leibnitz*, a fair Market-Town near the *Muer*, and the usual Residence of the Bishop of *Seccau*, hence call'd Bishop of *Leibnitz*. The Bishoprick was founded by the Archbishop of *Salzburg* in 1218, and is part of his Province. The Manor of *Seccau*, whence the Bishop has his Title and Revenue, lies in *Upper Styria*, two or three German Leagues from *Judenburg*. It lies according to *Lazius* on the Conflux of two Rivers which fall into the *Muer*, about five German Leagues S. E. of *Gratz*.

7. *Luttenberg*, a Market-Town on the *Muer* and Borders of *Hungary*, famous for the best Wine in those Parts. There are several good Baths in the Neighbourhood of a temperate Heat, much resorted to by Foreigners. Near this Town lie the Borders of *Hungary* on the E. of the County of *Gilly* on the W. of *Slavonia* on the S. and of the Dutchy of *Styria* on the N. According to *Lazius*, it lies near 2½ German Leagues S. E. from *Rakelsburg*, and 9 from *Gratz*.

Other Market-Towns of less Note are,
1. *Furstenfeld* on the Borders of *Hungary*, supposed to be the Roman *Aqua*, about 42 Miles S. from *Gratz*. 2. *Friburg*, supposed to be the Roman *Cordobianca*, about 37 N. E. from *Gratz*. 3. *Rain*, on the Borders of *Carniola*.

Towns of Note in Upper Styria.

1. *Judenburg*, a fair and well built Town on the Bank of the *Muer*, noted for Two great Annual Fairs for Cattle, and other Marchandise. The Duke of *Styria* has a Palace here, little inferior to that of *Gratz*, where his Deputy resides. The *Jesuits* have a College here, endow'd with the Revenues of a *Dominican* Monastery. The Country, for two German Leagues down the River, is very pleasant and fruitful. It lies near 40 Miles W. from *Gratz*.

2. *Bruck* on the *Muer*, Lat. *Muripons*, or *Bruga ad Murum*, an ancient Town, 25 Miles N. W.

N. W. from *Gratz*. The Convenience of the Situation occasions the Emperor to call here a General Diet of the States of *Styria* and *Carinthia*. There's little of Note in it, except two Monasteries of *Franciscans* and *Capuchins*.

3. *Leoben*, Lat. *Lubenum*, a neat and pleasant City on the *Muer*, about 27 Miles N. W. from *Gratz*. This Town has a large Barony formerly subject to the Counts of *Schrobenhausen*, a *Bavarian* Family, then to the Duke of *Carinthia*, but now to the Arch-Dukes of *Austria*. In 1292, it was taken and plunder'd by the Archbishop of *Salzburg* and Duke of *Bavaria*, while at War with *Albert* of *Austria*. Within a Mile of this Town lies the rich Nunnery of *Gosf*.

4. *Eisenartz*, so call'd from the Mines and Forges of Iron, with which it supplies the neighbouring Country. They pretend to have Steel enough to furnish the whole Empire. In the Parish Church dedicated to *St. Oswald*, a *British* Saint, they have a *German* Inscription, implying, That the Mines were discover'd in 712, and have continu'd since without any sensible Decay, tho' vast Numbers of Men are constantly employ'd in them, which occasions a yearly Fair for Hemp, Line, Tallow, Leather, and other Necessaries for the Miners, in exchange for Iron and Steel. They have 19 Mills on 2 small Rivers for their Works, which were formerly manag'd by 19 Officers; but the Emperor *Ferdinand* II. has incorporated these Mines of *Styria*, and those of *Austria*, under a Lieutenant. It lies 40 Miles N. W. from *Gratz*.

5. *Rotenmann*, on the Borders of *Salzburg*, about 8 *German* M. above *Lewben* to the W. and about 62 Miles N. W. from *Gratz*. *Laxius* thinks it to be *Anthony's Montana Castra*, which is supported by a *Roman* Inscription on a Mountain near this Place. There are abundance of red Hills and Rocks in the Neighbourhood. The *Lutherans* had formerly a Church near this Place, which in 1599 was destroyed in a Quarrel with the *Calvinists*.

6. *Knitelfeld*, on the *Muer*, 2 *German* M. from *Judenburg*. 'Tis a fair and neat Town in a pleasant Country, has a handsome Parish Church and Hospital, and other public Buildings. It lies about 36 *English* Miles

N. W. from *Gratz*. The principal Rivers of *Styria*, are the *Drave* and the *Muer*.

The Town and County of Cilley.

THIS being part of *Styria*, according to *Moll* and *Sanfon*, we shall describe it here. This noble and ancient City is by *Pliny* call'd *Celeia*, and by other *Latins* *Celia*, *Celia*, *Zelia* and *Cilia*: It stands on the River *Saan*, about 46 Miles S. from *Gratz*, and 30 W. from the Frontiers of *Sclavonia*, in a pleasant and fruitful Country. The great number of *Roman* Coins, Medals, and other Antiquities daily found in and about this Place, proves it to have been a considerable Town in their Time. They have one remarkable Monument, being the Ruins of a vast Marble Pillar, each Stone of which is above a Waggon Load; there are several fair Monasteries in the Town, the chief of which is that of the *Minorits*, which contains the Monuments of the ancient Counts of *Cilley*. The City is defended by regular Fortifications, an ancient Fort without, and a Castle within the Town. It held out a Siege against the *Turks* in 1492, and repulsed them under the Conduct of *George Baron* of *Herberstein*. The Country is large, and reaches as far as the *Trojan* Hill from the Bridge of *Pettau*, and includes several *Sclavonian* Forts. It was formerly subject to Counts of its own, who were also Barons of *Sanneck*. Their First Count was created by the Emperor *Lewis* IV. in 1339, with the Consent of the Arch-Duke of *Austria*; and the Emperor *Sigismund* made them afterwards Independent Princes of the Empire, and call'd them to the Diers without Consent of the House of *Austria*, who before that time were always accounted the Supreme Lords of the Place. Upon which *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, declar'd War against Count *Ulrich*, their Second Prince, and being afterwards chosen Emperor, was too strong an Enemy for *Ulrich*, who by the Assistance of *Albert* of *Austria*, *Frederick's* Brother, not only defended his Territories for a time, but over-ran most of *Styria* and *Carinthia*. At last he was kill'd in Battle by *Ladislaus*, Son to *Hunades*, in 1456, when *Frederick* IV. seized the Country; and it has ever since been subject to the House of *Austria*.

Other

Other Places of Note here are,

1. *Troia*, now a small Village not far from *Gilley*, but anciently a famous City, built by the *Matulli*, a Branch of the *Japides*. In the 31st Year of our Saviour, this City was taken and destroyed by the Emperor *Augustus*. In Remembrance of which, says *Laxius*, the Country People to this Day call all waste and desolate Places *Troia's*. He adds, That abundance of Antiquities are found here and in the neighbouring Towns.

2. *Sachsenfeld*, a Market-Town on the *Saan*, about a German League from *Gilley*, on the Road to *Laubach*. Some think it had its Name from a Colony of *Saxons* sent hither by *Charlemagne*, who dispers'd that People into several Colonies of the Empire in order to prevent their Rebellion; but if it were so, they have now lost the *Saxon* Language; for in this Town, and in the neighbouring Country, they speak *Slavonic*, with a Mixture of the *Austrian* Dialect.

3. *Saaneck*, so call'd from the *Saan*, on which it stands. It was formerly so considerable as to give Title to Barons and Counts, but now only a small Village.

4. *Robitsch*, a fair Market-Town on the Borders of *Croatia*: It has a Fort of the same Name near it, and is mortgag'd to Counts, but the Barons of *Wetz*.

5. *Warassin*, or *Warasdin*, on the Borders of *Styria*, *Hungary* and *Slavonia*, supposed to be *Antonin's Varianna Castra*, which *Laxius* supports by divers Arguments from several Monuments of Antiquity found about it. Being a Frontier Town, 'tis regularly and well fortified. It lies about 40 English Miles N. E. from *Gilley*, and 35 S. E. from *Gratz*.

6. *Copreinitz*, Lat. *Capronia*; 'tis stronger than *Warassin*, but noted for little else. *Globitzer* their Governor got himself and the Town great Reputation, by repulsing the Turkish Army; but was afterwards, in 1581, the chief Instrument of its Overthrow.

The Dutchy of Carniola,

BY the Germans called *Crain*, has *Carinthia*, and Part of *Styria*, on the N. *Styria*, and the Gulf of *Triest*, on the S.

Part of *Carinthia*, with the *Alps* and Dominions of *Venice*, on the W. and *Slavonia* and *Croatia* on the E. The greatest Length from N. W. to S. E. is about 105 English M. and the Breadth from N. to S. according to *Moll*, is about 58. But Dr. *Nicholson* observes, That our Modern Geographers usually Contract it more than they ought. It takes its Name from the ancient *Carni*, a Branch of the *Scythians*, who had for Neighbours the *Japides*; whence this and other adjacent Provinces were call'd by the general Name of *Japidia*. In the Time of *Augustus*, the Romans subdued this Country; but were expell'd by the Princes of *Bavaria*, who were then Lords of this Country, under the Title of *Creinburg*. It was afterwards subdued by the Dukes of *Carinthia*, who erected it into a Marquisate depending on the House of *Carnden*. Thus it continu'd till the Emperor *Frederick II.* made it Independent. Afterwards, the Family of *Engelbrecht*, their Marquisses, failing, it came to the Branch of *Austria Bannberg*, whose Line also failing, it came to *Ottocar* King of *Bohemia*, who being slain in Battle against the Emperor *Rudolph I.* he gave *Carniola* to *Mainhart* Duke of *Carinthia*, and Count of *Tyrol*; after whose Death, the Emperor *Ludowic IV.* made it a Dukedom, and gave it to the Dukes of *Austria Habsburg*, in whose Right the Emperor enjoys it.

The Country is mountainous; but has many large and pleasant Vallies, which abound with Wine, Oil and Corn. It has many great Rivers; the Chief of which are, the *Save*, *Laubach*, and *Gurck*.

The modern Inhabitants are a mixture of *Germans*, *Italians* and *Slavonians*. In Cities, they generally speak *High Dutch*, except in *Laubach*, where they speak a broken *Italian*. The Country People speak *Slavonic*; but in their Courts of Judicature, and Papers of State, they use the *German*.

'Tis divided into Higher and Lower.

The Chief Towns in Upper Carniola,

1. *Lack*, or *Bischofsack*, so call'd, because 'tis the Residence of the Governor, who is Deputy to the Bishop of *Freyzing* in *Bavaria*,
M. m m m

Bavaria, to whom the Emperor *Henry III.* gave this Town, with its District, which reaches 10 *German Leagues* round, and contains 200 Villages. In 1451, this Town was plunder'd and burnt by the Count of *Gilleys* General, but has since been more splendidly Rebuilt, and better Fortify'd. *Conrad* Bishop of *Gurck*, who was set up by the Pope in Opposition to One whom the Emperor had named Bishop of *Freyding*, was murder'd here by his Pages, who robb'd him of 5000 Ducats of Gold, and buried him in his own Garden; where the Corps was found at last, and the Murderers put to Death in 1433. The Town lies in Long. 33. 22. Lat. 46. 30. 30 Miles from the Frontiers of *Vepice*, and 12 S. of the Frontiers of *Carinthia*.

2. *Crainburg*, on the Banks of the *Save*, 7 Miles N. from *Bischofslack*, on the Top of a small Hill fortified with a strong Castle: It has Three Churches, and in the Suburbs a fair Monastery of *Capuchins*. *Lazius* thinks it to be *Japodum Noriodunum*, because it answers *Antonin's* Latitude, that in their ancient Records 'tis call'd *Noriodunum*, the Lat. for *Newburg*; and because there are Roman Coins and Medals dug up every Day in and about the Town, which, with other Monuments, shew it to have been a Roman Colony. It gave Title to the Marquisses of *Crainburg*, formerly mention'd. There is a good Bridge here over the *Save*.

3. *Ratmansdorff*, on the N. Banks of the *Save*, a little above *Crainburg*. *Lazius* says, a great many Roman Antiquities are found near this Place; and that the Noble *Styrian* Family of *Ratmansdorff* have their Title from hence, tho' none of 'em have been Lords of this Place for a great while.

4. *Stain*, on the River *Stretz*, noted for a large and rich Monastery of *Franciscans*.

The Chief Towns of Lower Car-niola.

1. *Laubach*, or *Labach*, which lies on a River of the same Name, and is the Metropolis of the Dutchy. It lies about 15 Miles E. from *Bischofslack*. *Cluverius*, in his *Italia Antiqua*, contradicts some modern Geographers, who fancy this to be the ancient *Nauportus*, where *Jason* and his *Ar-*

gonauts landed, and alledges this Town rose from the Ruins of the ancient *Himona*; but *Lazius*, whose Authority prevails with most late Writers, endeavours to prove this to be the true *Nauportus*, where *Jason* landed; who, as Historians inform us, set out from *Argos Peloponicum* in *Thefaly*, and sail'd to *Colchus*, on the E. side of the *Euxine*: But being pursued by the K. of *Colchus's* Fleet, they bore Northward, and entering the Mouth of the *Danube* they sail'd up to the Conflux of the *Danube* and *Save*; and then taking up the latter, they came to the Mouth of the *Laubach*, and landed at this Town; from whence they travell'd by Land to the *Adriatic* Sea, and then return'd to *Greece*. But we leave the Reader to judge, how *Jason* and his Companions came to be so well acquainted in those Days with Navigation and Geography, as to perform such a Voyage. *Lazius* adds, That the *Latabici*, a Branch of the *Japides*, chang'd the Name of this Port into *Labacum*. Tho' the Air about it be unwholsom, the Town is well built, and very populous. They have a large Castle, with a good Garison; but being commanded by a neighbouring Hill, is not very serviceable; nor is the Town very strong, especially towards the River. It held out a memorable Siege, when *Albert*, Brother to the Emperor *Fredrick*, and Count *Utrie*, attack'd it, while he was at *Aix la Chapelle* receiving the Crown of the Empire; from whence he return'd, defeated them, and rais'd the Siege. 'Tis a Bishops/See, formerly Suffragan to the Patriarch of *Aquileia*, but now depends immediately on the Pope.

2. *Zirchnitz*, a Town and a Lake of the same Name, call'd in Latin, *Lacus Circovicensis*. It lies 20 Miles S. E. from *Laubach*. The Town is inconsiderable, either for Fortifications or Bulk, as not containing above 300 Houses; but is chiefly remarkable for this famous Lake, which is about 4 *German M.* in Length, and 2 in Breadth, encompass'd with Mountains and Forests at some distance, and on the S. has a Forest of Pear-Trees. Every Year in *June* the Water sinks under Ground, through a great many large Holes in the bottom, and returns in *September* with such violence, that it rises to the height of a Pike, and covers all the Ground again. When the

Water

Water retires, it speedily yields Grass, which affords good Pasturage to the Cattle and Deer from the neighbouring Hills and Forests; that retire again before the Water returns. There's great store of Carps, Eels, Tench, and other Fish, in the Lake, which none dare Catch without a Licence from the Prince of *Bickenburg*, who is Lord of the Place, till the Water retire; and then every Man has liberty to take what he can; and the Peasants improving the Opportunity, catch abundance as they retire with the Water. The Neighbours say, The Lake constantly observes this Course, but can give no Account of the Reason: Some fancy this to be *Strabo's Laguna Palus*. But Dr. *Nicholson* justly observes, That if it had been so, 'tis strange that the Ancient Philosophers should take no Notice of this strange Phenomenon in Nature. *Bawdrand* says, That this Lake produces Corn upon the Reeds of the Waters, and affords good Hunting to the Neighbourhood.

3. *Lana*, which lies near this Lake upon a small River that runs into it, about 20 Miles S. E. from *Zirchnitz*, according to *Sansón*. 'Tis noted for a Breed of well-shap'd Horses, tho' much inferior for Service to those bred in *Karstia*. Count *Gilley* attack'd this Town in 1435, but was shamefully repulsed.

4. *Upper Laubach*, alias *Werdick*, about 10 Miles S. W. from the other *Laubach*, on the same River. 'Tis a great Mart for *Italian* Goods brought hither over the Mountains from *Gritz*, and ship'd off for several Parts of Germany.

The Province of Windischmarch;

IN *Latin*, *Vindorum Marchia*. Some reckon it a *Slavonian* Province, and subject to the Emperor as King of *Hungary*, but not as Part of *Carniola* to which it adjoins; yet 'tis made Part of it both by *Moll* and *Sansón*. Dr. *Nicholson* observes, That the present Inhabitants comprehend under this Name all *Dalmatia* and *Liburnia*, and the Country betwixt the *Save* and *Drave*; but most Geographers understand only that Country which has the County of *Gilley* on the N. *Carniola* on the S. and W. and *Croatia* on the E. And so 'tis bounded by *Sansón*, who

makes it from N. W. to S. E. about 33 Miles long, and the greatest Breadth about 30. The Country is mountainous and barren, inhabited, says Dr. *Nicholson*, by the Offspring of the Antient *Venedi*, the most considerable Branch of the *Slavonians*, whose Language they retain, with a small mixture of *German*.

The chief Towns.

1. *Gotsche*, which gives Name to the neighbouring Country: The Inhabitants pretend 'tis a distinct Province; and that their Ancestors were a Colony of *Germans* brought hither from *Swabia*, which their Language seems to justify. The Town is large, stands in the middle of a Wood, but is not strong.

2. *Seisenburg*, a Market-Town of Note on the Banks of the *Gurck*, which supplies them with Plenty of Fish, and is famous for the best Crevises in that Country; 'tis subject to the Counts of *Aversperg*.

3. *Newstut*, or *Rudolphsworth*, a little below *Seisenburg*, on the same River, 18 Miles E. from *Gilley*. 'Tis a Place of great Antiquity, and was a *Roman* Colony, but subdued by the *Goths* under the Empire of *Decius*. *Dieterich* King of the *Goths* resided here; and it had large Privileges from *Frederick IV.* for holding out against *Albert* of *Austria*, and *Ulric* of *Gilley*, in 1435. It has the best Wine in those Parts, a large *Franciscan* Monastery, and a good Bath at 4 Miles distance, much frequented by Foreigners. The Town is well fortified.

4. *Landstrass*, a strong little Town encompassed with the *Gurck*; it was formerly deliver'd with another Town by the House of *Austria* to the Counts of *Gilley*, as a Security for the Peace betwixt them. Near it there's a long Ridge of Hills, the Vallies among which were formerly a Wilderness for some *German* Leagues; but within these few Ages, they are well inhabited, and improved into good Pasturage and Meadows, by a Company of *Wallachians* who settled here; they call themselves *Uffoken*, and are of the Greek Church; they pay the Emperor no Tribute, but acknowledge him for their Sovereign, and furnish him with Men on occasion in Proportion to their Numbers. It lies about 8 Miles N. E. from *Rudolphsworth*.

M m m m 2

5. Met-

5. *Metling*, on the River *Culp*, about 10 Miles S. E. from *Rudolphsworth*, on the Road from *Laubach* to *Croatia*, the Wood through which this Road lies is Rough and Stony, but the rest of the Country pleasant and fruitful. There are two large Forests belonging to the Town, one of Chestnut-Trees, and the other of Oaks, from which the Inhabitants reap much Profit by feeding great Herds of Swine. In 1431, the *Turks* surpriz'd this Town, and cut off most of the Inhabitants. In 1578, they storm'd and plunder'd it again, but returning with their Booty, were all cut off by an Ambuscade of *Croats* and *Sclavonians*. Some make it the chief Town of the Country.

6. *Reifnitz*, a noted Town on the Borders of *Carniola*, near the *Zirlicher* Sea; 'tis the chief Town of a Barony of the same Name, and the Place where the Imperial Trained-Bands in this Country muster. The *Turks* burnt most of it down in 1480.

The Province of Friuli,

WAS anciently call'd *Forum Julii*, of which *Friuli* is a Corruption, or rather Corruption. *Julius Caesar*, when he led his Armies this way, built the Town which gives Name to the Province; and hence also the neighbouring Hills were call'd *Alpes Juliae*. Latin Writers of the middle Centuries call it *Regio Aquilegensis*, because most of it was given by the Emperors, *Orso* and *Conrad*, to the Patriarchate of *Aquileia*. The *Venetians* call it usually *Patria*, because the Republick had its Original here. *D. Nicholson* says, This Province has *Gorizia* on the E. the *Mauckia Trevisana*, and part of the *Alps*, on the W. the great *Alps* which separate it from *Germany* on the N. and the Gulph of *Venice* on the S. *Sanfon* and *Moll* take no Notice of the Name, nor are their Maps exact in the Division of this Province, though they have the principal Towns. *Moll* reckons it in the Dominions of *Venice*; and both he and *Sanfon* make *Goritz* a distinct County, which *Dr. Nicholson* makes a Part of *Friuli*. The Country is pleasant and fruitful, and famous of old for a rich Wine, which *Pliny* prefer'd to the best in *Italy*: 'Tis water'd with many Rivers, the chief of which

is *Tisamento*, which is navigable towards the Mouth, but too rapid for Navigation further up.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Euganei*, who possessed also Part of *Marchia Trevisana*, but were expell'd by the *Veneti*, and they by the *Galli-Cisalpine*; then it fell to the *Romans*, and on the Decay of the Empire became One of the Four Dukedom founded by the *Lombards*. The *Beringarii* were long Dukes of this Country, but subdu'd by the Emperor *Orso*, who gave great Part of it to the Patriarch of *Aquileia*, after which *Conrad* gave most of it to the same Patriarchate: But there were many Noble Families who retain'd large Estates, paying a small Acknowledgment to the Patriarch; yet it still retain'd the Name of a Duchy, and their Princes pretended to as much Grandeur as ever, which at last prov'd their Ruin: For Duke *Lairprandus* being Jealous of the Growth of the Republick of *Venice*, made War upon them about 1020, but was vanquish'd, and lost his Dominions; since which, the *Venetians* have possessed them. In 1420, The Patriarch of *Aquileia* being over-ballanc'd by the Power of the *Venetians*, he surrender'd his Interest to them as most able to defend it, yet still he retains large Possessions, and good Revenues here, and has full Jurisdiction over all the Prelates in this Country, except those in the Isles of *Venice*, who are subject to the Patriarch of *Grada*. The Reason why *Dr. Nicholson* reckons this Country, &c. Part of the *Austrian* Dominions, though some of 'em be subject to the *Venetians*, is, because the Emperor was once the sole, and is still the chief, Proprietor of them: It appears by *Baudrand*, and others, that a considerable Part of it is still subject to the Emperor, particularly the County of *Goritz*, *Aquileia* with its Territories, and *Gradisca*.

The chief Cities and Towns.

1. **A** *Quileia*, or *Aquileja*; 'twas made the Metropolis of *Istria* and *Venetia*, by *Antoninus*; and afterwards of *Italy*, by the Western Emperors. Authors are not agreed as to its Founder; some ascribe it to one *Aquileius*, who came from *Troy* with *Aeneas*; and

and others say, that the *Romans* having encamp'd a long time on the Place where it stands, were the first who built it, and gave it this Name from the *Eagle* which was their Standard. *Livy* says, 'twas built in the Year 565 of *Rome*, during the Consulship of *Marcus Philippus* and *Sept. Posthum. Albinus*, or as *Berkeley* says in his Notes on *Steph.* of *Byzantium*, because an *Eagle* came flying towards it when they were building. Many Years after the Seat of the *Præfectus Prætoris*, *Augustus* kept his Court here, and gave it the Name of *Roma Altera*. *Tiberius* liv'd here with his Wife *Julia Augustus's* Daughter, before he came to the Empire; and those Two Princes did all they could to Imbellish it. They acquir'd great Honour by holding out a famous Siege against *Maximinus* the Tyrant, in Defence of the Emperors *Maximus* and *Valerianus*, when the Women were so resolute, that they parted with their Hair to make Bow-strings for the Garrison. In remembrance of which, the Senate dedicated a Temple here to *Venus the Bold*. *Maximinus* was kill'd under the Walls, and all his Children put to the Sword; for which the Soldiers gave this Reason, *Pessimi canis catulus, non est relinquendus, i. e.* That all the Whelps of so bad a Litter ought to be destroy'd. It was afterwards ruin'd by *Attila* and his *Huns* in 452, after three Years Siege, wherein 37000 Citizens fell, and the rest narrowly escaped to the Mountains. *La Forrest* says, The Seat of the Patriarch was remov'd, upon the Destruction of it by the *Lombards* in 590, to *Grada*, whence the Bishop of that Place has still the Name of Patriarch; and at last it was remov'd to *Udina*, the Capital of *Friuli*, in the *Venetian* Dominions. Since which, *Aquileia* is become only a poor Fisher Village. *La Forrest* says, the Town lies on the Conflux of the *Ansa* and *Torre*, near the Shoar of the *Adriatick*, but according to *Moll* and *Sanfon*, it lies in a sort of an Island form'd by two Rivers. Long. 32. 34. Lat. 46. about 50 Miles N. E. from *Venice*.

2. *Palma Nova*, a Town built by the *Venetians* in 1594. 'Tis thought to be the largest regular Fortification in *Europe*. 'Tis encompassed with a Wall, and a Ditch 30 Paces broad and 12 deep, which they keep dry, to hinder the Air from putrifying, to which 'tis very subject in this Place; but

they can let in the Water at pleasure. In the Center of the Town, there's fix'd a Standard over a Triple-Well, in the middle of a Sexangular Piazza, whence there's a good Prospect of the Three Gates, and Six chief Streets of the City. In the middle of the great Bridge, cross the River which runs by the Town, there's a Draw-bridge so artfully made, that a Centinel, by a single Touch of a small Piece of Iron with his Foot, can draw it as he sees occasion; so that this Town is now the great Bulwark of the *Venetian* State, and of all *Italy* on this side, it being the Road by which the *Huns* formerly, and the *Turks* since, have made their Incurfions as far as *Trevifo*. From this Town to the Sea, the *Venetians* have cut a large Canal, by which Vessels can supply the Town upon occasion. It lies about 12 Miles N. W. from *Aquileia*.

3. *Udene*, or *Udina*, the largest and best Peopl'd Town in *Friuli*, being about five Miles in Compass, and containing above 15000 Inhabitants. It was formerly the Seat of the *Venetian* Procurator or Lieutenant, but comes short of *Palma Nova* for Strength and Beauty. It lies, according to *Sanfon*, 12 Miles N. W. from *Palma Nova* on the same River.

4. *Ciudad de Friuli*, Lat. *Forum Julii*, an ancient Colony belonging to the *Carli*, according to *Protony* and *Tacitus*. *Paulus Diaconus* calls it *Castrum Julienne*. *Sanfon* places it 12 Miles N. from *Palma Nova* on the River *Natisone*: 'Tis subject to the *Venetians*.

5. *Gortz*, or *Goritz*, Lat. *Goritia*, Capital of a County of the same Name in *Friuli*, which has several lesser Towns and Villages under its Jurisdiction; 'tis supposed to have been anciently call'd *Noritia*, and is one of those Places from whence the ancient *Taurisci* are supposed to have changed their Name into *Norici*, as *Laxius* thinks; who is also of Opinion, that the Counts of *Tyrol* had their Origin from the Counts of this Place. 'Tis an ancient Town, and remarkable for the Defeat of *Dieterich*, King of the *Goths*, by *Odoacrus* the King of the *Heruli* near it. 'Tis divided into the Upper and Lower: The former was built for Defence of the latter, in which the Governor, and others of Quality, have their Houses. Dr. *Nicholson* observes, That the

the *Wendish* or *Sclavonian* Tongue reaches no further W. than this Place; that the Citizens speak a corrupt *Latin*, which comes nearer the *French* than the *Italian* Dialect, so that the other *Italians* can scarce understand them; but in their Courts of Judicature, and Papers of State, they use the *German*, because they are subject to the Emperor. The *Venetians* took this Town in 1508, but were forc'd to surrender it next Year to the Emperor *Maximilian I.* They attempted it again in vain in 1616. It lies about 12 Miles N. E. from *Palma Nova*.

6. *Gradisca*, a small Town, about 6 Miles S. W. from *Goritz*, upon a River of the same Name. It was built in the Fifteenth Century, to put a stop to the IncurSIONS of the *Turks*, who had several times landed in the Neighbourhood. *Culverius* supposes it to be that which the *Romans* call'd, *Ad Undecimum lapidem*.

7. *Idria*, a famous Town among the Mountains of this County on the Borders of *Carniola*, about 18 Miles N. E. from *Goritz*, on a small River of the same Name, which after a great Rain swells so considerably, as to convey great Quantities of Fir-Trees, and other Fuel for the Mines, from the neighbouring Mountains. 'Tis chiefly noted for Mines of Quicksilver; the Entrance to which is in the Town, and their deepest Pit is above 120 Fathoms. In those Mines they have Virgin Quick-silver, which discovers it self without help of Fire, and is plainly to be seen in the Earth and Ore, or falls down in small Drops, and sometimes Streams out in good Quantities. They have another sort not so fine, which is separated from the Earth by Water in a Sieve, and needs no Extraction by Fire. Their plain Quicksilver is not at first perceiv'd by the Eye, but forc'd out of the *Mercury* by the Furnace. This Ore is of a dark Colour mix'd with red, which is beaten to pieces, and so refin'd, of which the Curious may find an Account in the Transactions of our Royal Society, Vol. I. Page 21.

8. *Pontafel*, or *Pont a fel*, so call'd from a Bridge over the *Fels* or *Vellach*, on which it stands. The Middle of the Bridge is the Boundary betwixt the Duke of *Carinthia*,

and the *Venetian* Territories in *Friuli*. The Citizens speak good *Italian* and *High Dutch*. *Lanzi* observes, that the Banks of the *Fels* are subject to Three different Potentates. The House of *Austria* has Part as far as the Fort *Clusum*, another Part belongs to the *Diocece of Bamberg*, and the Third belongs to the *Venetians*, of which this Town is Part. The rich Valley in which this Town stands, is by the *Latins* call'd, *Belvis Vallis*. In 1667, the *Austrians* storm'd this Town, and made a great Slaughter among the *Venetians*, who soon after recover'd the Town, took a bloody Revenge, and invaded *Carinthia*. *Sanfon* places it 22 Miles N. W. from *Ciudad de Friuli*, and puts another Town of the same Name on the N. side of the Bridge, which belongs to the Imperialists. Dr. *Nicholson* mentions *Concordia*, another Town in this Country, about 32 Miles W. from *Aquileia*, formerly a noble City that was ruin'd by *Attila*, King of the *Huns*, and is now only a Village: And *Grada*, the Seat of the Patriarch over the neighbouring Isles, with some others of less Note on the Coasts.

Karstia.

THIS is a small Province betwixt *Friuli* and *Istria*, and is commonly reckon'd Part of the former. 'Tis little taken Notice of by Geographers or Historians, being remarkable for little, except a Breed of good Horses, whence most of the Princes and Nobles of *Italy* furnish their Stables. 'Tis a *Peninsula* almost incircled with the Rivers *Alben* and *Lisonzo*, and according to *Mercator's* Map, is about 35 Miles in Length, and above 20 in Breadth. *La Forrest* says, 'Twas dismembred from *Friuli* and *Istria* in 1500, and is divided into Upper and Lower, and the County of *Gwitz*. In this Province is the famous River *Timavus*, mention'd by *Virgil* in the First Book of his *Æneids*. It rises in the *Alps*, as some say, is call'd by the Name of *Recca* for some Space, runs afterwards under Ground for 41 $\frac{1}{2}$ Miles, and where it breaks out again is call'd *Timavus*, and falls into the Gulph of *Trieste* by 12 small Channels.

The

The chief Towns.

1. **Trieſte**, Lat. *Tergetum*, whence the adjoining Bay was call'd *Sinus Tergetinus*, now the Gulph of *Trieſte*. 'Twas first a Roman Colony, then fell to the *Venetians*, and at last to the House of *Austria*, to whom 'tis still subject. *La Forreſt* ſays, it was built out of the Ruins of the ancient *Tergetum* of the *Carnians*; the Ruins of which are still to be ſeen on a neighbouring Mountain. The chief Trade of the Town is in Salt that is made here, of which they export great Quantities. 'Tis the only Harbour that belongs to the House of *Austria*, but neither ſafe nor large, ſays *Baudrand*. 'Tis defended by two Caſtles, and lies upon the Frontiers of the *Venetians*, by whom 'twas taken in 1507; but afterwards reſtor'd to the Emperor. *Moll* places it 20 Miles E. from *Aquileia*. The Town is little, but well fortified and inhabited, and is a Biſhop's See, Suffragan to *Aquileia*. The adjacent Country produces that Wine which the *Germans* call *Reiſſal*.

2. *Heydſbena*, on the River *Kobel*, near the Borders of *Carniola*, within the Country of *Goritz*, anciently a noted City, but now a ſmall Market-Town.

3. *Proſeg*, or *Proſeck*, 7 Miles N.W. from *Trieſte*, ſubject to the House of *Austria*, who have a noble Revenue hence out of the Wine made and ſold here; for which it was ſo famous in the Days of *Augustus*, that his Wife *Livia* made uſe of no other Cordial when ſhe was above 70 Years of Age. 'Tis ſo ſtrong, that 'twill keep for a Man's Lifetime. *Pliny* deſcribes its excellent Qualities in the 4th Book of his *Nat. Hiſt.* Cap. 6. The *Romans* call'd this Town and the neighbouring Country *Peucinum*.

4. *Wipack*, ſo call'd from a River of the ſame Name, on which it ſtands. 'Tis alſo famous for rich Wine, from which, and the Horſe-Fairs kept there, the H. of *Austria* have a great Revenue. The Wine is carried on Horſeback over the Mountains to *Carniola*, and from thence conveyed into the Empire. The Town lies about 25 Miles E. from *Goritz*.

Iſtria, or Hiſtria,

IS a Peninſula, having the *Adriatick* on the E. W. and S. and is ſeparated on the N. from *Carniola* by the *German Alps*. The Country is Woody and Mountainous, and the Air ſo unwholeſome, that when the *Venetians* firſt ſubdu'd it, they were forc'd to hire People to dwell here. From that Part which is ſtill ſubject to 'em, they have Timber and Stone for building Houſes and Ships. Some reckon the ancient Inhabitants to have been thoſe of *Colchor*, who being ſent to purſue *Jafon* and his *Argonauts*, dar'd not to return home, becauſe they miſs'd 'em, and therefore ſettled here; but the *Iſtri*, from whence the Country has its Name, were brought hither long after by *Japis*, an *Aetolian*, from the Banks of the *Iſter*; and from this *Japis*, ſome Latin Writers call the Country *Japigia*. While the Roman Empire flouriſh'd, *Iſtria* was one of its Provinces; but when it decay'd, recover'd its Liberty, and continued free till about 938, that the *Venetians* being incens'd with their Piracies, took ſeveral of their Towns; and in 1190, laid moſt of the Country under Tribute, and in this State it continues ſtill.

The only City in this Country ſubject to the House of *Austria*, *Dr. Niſholſon* ſays is *St. Veit*, on the Shore of the *Adriatick*, at the Mouth of the River *Flaum*, betwixt the Iſlands of *Cherſo* and *Vegia*, about 68 Miles S. E. from *Aquileia*, and 40 from *Trieſte*. On the top of Mount *Terſtat*, near this City, there's a fair *Franciſcan* Monastery, from which one goes down to the River by a great Number of Steps. In the Suburbs, there's a *Capuchin* Monastery, where a memorable Peace was concluded in 1618, betwixt the Emperor and the *Turks*. Hither the *Auſtrians* of Quality ſend their Children to be taught *Italian*, which is here ſpoke in its Purity. The Town is well fortified, and defended by a Caſtle on a Hill. *Baudrand* ſays, it has a ſmall Harbour, but not very ſafe. For ſuch Towns here as belong to the *Venetians*, we refer them to the Deſcription of that Republick.

The Dutchy of Carinthia.

THE Germans call it *Karnäuten*. It lies in *Norico Mediterraneo*, and was formerly called *Louvirana*, and *Patria Sclavorum*; but in *Charlemagne's* Time, was called *Carinthia*, from the *Carni*, a Branch of the *Venedi*. It has *Salzburg* and *Styria* on the N. *Carniola* and *Friuli* on the S. the Bishoprick of *Brixen* and Part of *Salzburg* on the W. and Part of *Styria* on the E.

The Country is somewhat cold and barren, and every where Mountainous. They have enough of Corn, but have their Wine from their Neighbours. Their most remarkable Mountains for Height are, *St. Ulrich's*, *St. Heilen's*, and *St. Lawrence's*. On the latter, the Peasants have Annual Foot-Races, and other Diversions, on the Three Holy-Nails Day, the 3d Friday after *Easter*, in Remembrance of the 3 Nails on which they suppose our Saviour to have been nail'd to the Cross. They have large Lakes in this Country, which they call by the Name of Seas: The largest of them is about two German M. long, of a considerable Breadth, and best stock'd with Fish. The largest River here is the *Drave*, into which fall abundance of lesser Streams, as it runs through the Country. This Dutchy is subject to the Emperor, and the Clergy own the Archbishop of *Salzburg* as their Metropolitan. *Moll* makes it 120 Miles from E. to W. and about 32 Miles broad from N. to S. 'Tis divided into *Upper* and *Lower*. *La Forrest* says, it lies in *Upper Panmania*, was anciently Part of the Dutchy of *Bavaria*, and given by *Charlemagne* to *Ingeroon*, whose Succession is hard to determine. *Ottocarius* King of *Bohemia* seiz'd it; but was drove out by the Emperor *Rodolph I.* who gave it in 1282 to *Mainard* Count of *Tyrol*, on Condition, That when his Male-Issue fail'd, it should return to the House of *Austria*, which happen'd in 1381. *Cluverius* says, the ancient Inhabitants were Part of the *Ambisontii*. The Peasants pretend to a Right of investing their Duke, thus; He must be clad like a Countryman, with a Shepherd's Hook in his Hand, and go into a Meadow; a Peasant gets up on a Marble Stone, and

presents him with two Beeves, one fat, and the other lean; or, as some say, with a black Cow and a Mare, and asks him, If he be a Judge? If he seeks the Good of the Country? If he be Noble, a Person of Merit, a Christian, and Defender of the Faith? The Prince answering, Yes; the Peasant gives him a gentle Blow on the Cheek, and recommends Justice to him; then the Duke gets upon the Stone, lays aside his Shepherd's Hook, and with a drawn Sword in his Hand, promises Justice to the People, and then goes to our Lady's Church at *St. Veit*, which lies near the Place; and putting on his Princely Habits, he returns to the Meadow, where he receives the Homage of his Subjects. The Peasants had this Privilege, because they embrac'd Christianity long before their Nobles, who were prevail'd with to do the like by *Charlemagne*. *La Forrest* says, That *Lower Carinthia* belongs to the House of *Austria*, and the *Upper* is divided betwixt the Archbishop of *Salzburg* and the Bishop of *Bamberg*.

Their chief Towns.

1. *Clagenfurt*, on the *Glan*, their Metropolis, and the Residence of their ancient Dukes, about 10 Miles from the Frontiers of *Carniola*, in Long. 32. 12. Lat. 47. 'Tis the neatest Town in the Country, of a square Figure, and defended by a good Wall. In the middle of the Piazza, there's a noble Fountain, over which there is a prodigious Dragon made of one Stone, and *Hercules* standing before it with his Club. The Country-People fancy it to be the Statue of a Peasant, who kill'd a great Dragon; but *Dr. Nicholson* says, 'tis one of the Roman Monuments brought from *Saal*, that were plac'd in the neighbouring Towns. *Aeneas Sylvius* relates a very strange old Custom, which he says the Citizens of *Clagenfurt* observ'd in his Time, That if a Man were shrewdly suspected of Theft, they hang'd him, and 3 Days after judg'd of the Fact: If he were found guilty, they let his Body hang till it rotted away; if otherwise, they took down the Corps, bury'd it upon the publick Stock, and said Prayers for his Soul.

2. *St. Veit*,

2. *St. Veit*, about 8 Miles N. from *Clagenfurt*: 'Twas so call'd from one of that Name, who was their Apostle, in the Time of *Dioctesian*. It was formerly their Metropolis, and a Bishop's See; but now only noted for its Antiquity. The *Latins* call it *Fanum Sancti Viti*. It stands on the Conflux of two Rivers, in a fruitful Valley. About a German Mile from hence, stand the Ruins of the ancient City *Salis* or *Saal*, called by *Lazius*, *Colonia Salvensis*. 'Twas destroy'd by *Attila* the Hun in 451, 823 Years after its Foundation. Store of Roman Coins, Medals, and other Antiquities, are found in the Field or Meadow near it, where stand Four-squar'd Stones, resembling two Elbow-Chairs, Back to Back, in which the Dukes of *Carinthia* were invested, as mention'd above; when, *Dr. Nicholson* says, the Duke or his Deputy is obliged to accept the lean Ox, and return the fat one, which are presented him. Upon these Stones there are old Roman Inscriptions, which bear a greater Face of Antiquity than the Stones themselves. The Church of *Saal* is still standing, and in it the Tomb of *Modestus*, *St. Vite's* Companion.

3. *Friesach*, on the Borders of *Styria*, 15 Miles N. E. from *St. Veit*. 'Tis reckon'd the oldest Town in the Country, stands in a fruitful Soil amongst Hills and Mountains, and is defended by a strong Castle on a Rock. Some derive its Name from the ancient *Frifi*. 'Twas called *Verunum* by the Romans, from its old Name *Veruan*, which in the Language of the Country signified Boars, that abounded in those Parts. There were Gold Mines in the neighbouring Mountains, which were exhausted long ago. The Town is encompassed with good Walls, and a broad Ditch.

4. *Strasburg*, on the River *Gurck*, at the bottom of a high Mountain, the Residence of the Bishop of *Gurck*, who swears Fealty to the Emperor for his Temporals, and Canonical Obedience to the Archbishop of *Salzburg* in Spirituals. *Hieronymus Baldus*, the famous Italian Poet, was Bishop of this Place.

5. *Gurck*, 12 Miles N. W. from *St. Veit*, a Market-Town, where the Ruins of an old Monastery was turn'd into a Cathedral, and made a Bishop's See in 1073 by the Archbishop of *Salzburg*, who has a Right

to chuse one Bishop in three, the Emperor chusing the other two.

6. *Villach*, on the *Drave*, thought by some to be the old *Julium Carnicum*, or *Colonia Julia*; but *Lazius* thinks it to be *Antonin's Belva*. *Sanfon* places it about 18 Miles W. from *Clagenfurt*, near the Conflux of three Rivers. They have a Bridge over the *Drave*, which brings them a good Trade by Passengers betwixt Italy and Germany. 'Tis noted for its fine Paintings, and belongs to the Bishop of *Bamberg*, who appoints their Governor once in three Years. The Emperor *Charles V.* fled hither from *Innsbruck*, where he was almost surpris'd by the Protestants in 1552. An English Mile from the Town, there are several good Baths; two of them are sulphureous, moderately hot, of an acid, but of no unpleasant Taste. They are large, and have Stairs to go down to them, with little Rooms of Wood about them, for the Convenience of those who bathe.

7. *Gemund*, on the Mouth of the *Malentein*, according to *Sanfon*, 40 Miles W. from *Gurck*; but *Moll* places it about 17 from thence. This Town and its Territory was bought from *Maximilian I.* by the Archbishop of *Salzburg* for 30000 Crowns, who repair'd the Castle and Fortifications, and endow'd the Hospital; so that 'tis under his Jurisdiction.

8. *St. Andrew's*, a neat Town on the Banks of the *Lavant*. *Lazius* takes it to be *Pliny's Colonia Flaviana*, and the Bishop who resides here calls himself *Flaventinensis*. This Bishoprick was founded in 1221 by the Archbishop of *Salzburg*, to whom, with the adjacent Country, 'tis subject. *Sanfon* places it 22 Miles S. E. from *Gurck*.

9. *Lavamund*, at the Mouth of the *Lavant*, 13 Miles S. E. from *St. Andrew's*, is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Salzburg*, and stands in the pleasant Valley of *Lavanttal*.

10. *Volkelmark*, on the *Drave*. *Wolfsperg*, *Pontasela*, and some other Market-Towns in this Country, are not describ'd by Geographers. *Dr. Nicholson* mentions *Mulstat* in this Country, formerly called *Ad Mille Statuas*, because, as some Historians say, there was a Temple here in the Time of Paganism with 1000 Statues. *Mercator* places it in a Lake above two German Leagues S. E. from *Gemund*. *La Ferrest* says, That Word

N n n and

and *Folkmark*, in *Lower Carinthia*, are Towns of good Trade; and that *Pontafel* is an important Pass on the Road from *Vienna* to *Venice*.

The Bishoprick of Brixen.

IT has *Tirol* on the N. and W. *Salzburg* and Part of *Carinthia* on the E. Part of *Trent*, and of the Dominions of *Venice*, on the S. Dr. *Nicholson* makes it Part of the County of *Tirol*; but *Moll* and *Sanson* make it distinct; and the *Matricula* of the Empire makes it Part of the Circle of *Austria*.

Brixen, from whence it has its Name, lies in a pleasant Valley, at the Conflux of the *Eysach* and *Rientz*, about 12 Miles from the Frontiers of *Venice*, in Long. 30. 45. Lat. 46. 45. 'Tis supposed to be *Antonin's Sublacione*; but Dr. *Nicholson* thinks it ought to have been writ *Subsaviione*, because there's a Place not far from it called *Seven* or *Savio*, from whence the Bishoprick was translated to *Brixen*, *Savio*, and some of the neighbouring Towns, having been destroy'd by the *Huns*. *La Forrest* says, the Town lies at the Foot of Mount *Brener*; that the Bishoprick was founded in 370, and is Suffragan to *Salzburg*; yet the Bishop is Lord of the Place, and a Prince of the Empire. The Houses are well built, almost all of the same Size, and curiously painted on the outside. There are Vaults which go from one Side of the Street to the other, and in these Vaults their best Shops are kept. They have three very fine Churches, which join to one another; over against which there's a fine Square, having on one Side the Bishop's Palace, which is a square Building, encompassed with a Ditch, and the Entry is defended by 4 Brass Cannon. Tho' the Bishop be a Prince of the Empire, Dr. *Nicholson* says, there lies an Appeal from him to the Count of *Tyrol's* Court. The Mineral Wells in and about this City occasion a great Concourse of Strangers. That called the *Virgin-Well* is of the greatest Note. They have likewise a considerable Income from the Red Wine which is exported from hence to the neighbouring Countries. *Moll* makes this Bishoprick about 50 Miles long, and 32 broad. We find no other Place of this Bishoprick describ'd except *Braneck*,

or *Bruneck*, which *La Forrest* says is a considerable Fortrefs belonging to the Bishoprick. It lies on the River *Adige*, 15 Miles N. E. from *Brixen*. The Lordship of *Veldes* in *Carniola* belongs to this Bishoprick.

The Bishoprick of Trent,

HA S *Tirol* and Part of *Brixen* on the N. and the Dominions of *Venice* on the S. and E. *Moll* makes it 62 Miles long from E. to W. and about 40 Miles broad from N. to S.

Strabo, *Pliny*, and *Ptolemy*, call the Inhabitants of this Country *Tridentini*, and the Town *Tridentum*, from whence the present Name *Trent* is contracted. Some derive the Name *Tridentum* from the Trident of *Nep-tune*, who, among other Idols, is said to have been worship'd here. Others derive it à *tribus Torrentibus*, three small Rivers which fall into the *Adige* at this City; and others derive it, with very much Probability, from three sharp Peaks or Rocks of the *Alps*, resembling three Teeth, which hang over this City. *Leander Alberti* says, the Town was first built by a Prince of *Tuscany*; but afterwards demolish'd, and then rebuilt by the *Centumani*, and wall'd about with a strong Stone Wall by *Theodoric King of Berne*. After the Invasion of the *Goths*, 'twas subject to the Princes of *Lombardy*, then to the Emperors of *Rome*, and afterwards to a Count of its own, who was Vassal to the Duke of *Bavaria*. At last 'twas made an Imperial Town; but is now subject to its own Bishop, a Vassal to the Emperor, who, as Count of *Tirol*, has the Superiority of this Bishoprick. The City lies in a pleasant Valley, in Long. 30. 2. Lat. 46. 7 $\frac{1}{2}$. 17 Miles from the Frontiers of *Venice*, and 50 S. W. from *Brixen*. 'Tis encompassed with steep and unpassable Hills, so that there is scarce any coming to it but from *Verona* on the S. and from *Tirol* on the N. In Summer, the Rays of the Sun, reflected from the Flinty Rocks which encompass it, make the Heat almost intolerable, as the Cold reflected from them is in the Winter: But in the Spring and Autumn, their Air is wholesome and temperate. They have Plenty of Wine, Oil, and Fruit, in their Fields and Vineyards; but little Corn. Their

Their Wine has a good Taste, is strong, and of a pale red Colour. The Inhabitants, by reason of their Situation on the Borders of Germany and Italy, speak both *High-Dutch* and *Italian* very well. Some Geographers have reproach'd them with the Character of *Germanorum Sentina*, and *Italarum Refugium*, as if it were a Place of Rendezvous of the worst sort of People of both Countries. But Dr. *Nicholson* observes, That they are extreme obliging to Strangers, very faithful to their Promise, and tender of doing any thing inconsistent with Humanity or Friendship. The Bishoprick was founded by St. *Hermagoras*, who made one *Jovinus* their first Bishop. The Diocese was afterwards much enlarged by the Emperor *Conrad II.* and confirm'd by succeeding Emperors, who made the Count of *Tirol* Protector of the Bishop, and obliged him to assist him in case of Invasion. Since the Time of *Frederick II.* the Bishops have been reckon'd Princes of the Empire. Several Princes of which, and of *Italy*, pay Fealty and Homage to this See, for some Part of their Estates they hold of it. The chief of 'em are, the Duke of *Mantua*, and the Count of *Tirol*, who pay them Annually a certain Quit-Rent, and many Earls and Barons do the like. In Temporal Matters, the Bishop acknowledges the Supremacy of the Emperor, as Count of *Tirol*, who, during the Vacancy of the See, sends a Governor, who presides there till a new Bishop be chosen. The Chapter is compos'd of People of the First Quality, who chuse a Bishop from among themselves. Dr. *Nicholson* and *Baudrand* say, the Bishop is Suffragan to the Patron of *Aquileia*; but *La Forreſt* says, he is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salzburg*, which is more probable, since by the Treaty of *Munster* he was made Primate of Germany; and that *Trent* is included in the Circle of *Austria*. The Town is most remarkable for its Antiquity. 'Tis pretty populous, tho' not very large, and is defended by an old Castle. There are many stately Palaces in it, and several beautiful Churches. The Cathedral, dedicated to St. *Vigil*, is a fine Piece of Architecture, with Marble Pillars of an extraordinary Height and Thickness. The Church of St. *Mary Major* is noted for the Council of *Trent's* being held in it, and the History of that Council

is finely painted on its Walls. 'Tis noted also for its Organ, which counterfeits all sorts of Instruments, and the singing of Birds so naturally, that 'tis hard to distinguish them. This Town was bombarded from the 3d of September, 1703. to the 8th, by the Duke of *Vendosme*, after he had made himself Master of the adjacent Country.

But that which makes it most famous, is the Council which was held here, being open'd the 4th of January, 1545, and continued till 1563; during which Time, there are said to have been here no less than 4000 Persons of a Publick Character, with their Attendants, who were all accommodated in this City; among whom were 7 Cardinals, 3 Patriarchs, 33 Archbishops, 235 Bishops, 7 Abbots, 7 Vicars-General, and 146 Divines, besides a great Number of Ambassadors. During the first 18 Years they sat, they were several times assembled, and suspended without doing any thing material; but in 1562, it was managed with so much Artifice by the Court of *Rome*, that nothing was determin'd by the Council, but what was first resolv'd on by the Cardinals in their Conclave at *Rome*, which gave just Ground for the bitter Sarcasm of the *Hungarian* Bishops present at the Council, *That the Holy Ghost was sent thither in a Cloak-Bag from Rome*. The Curious may find an Account of their Proceedings in the famous History of this Council by Father *Paul*, and in the Review of it by *Du Ranchin*, a French Courtier, whose Work was translated into English by Dr. *Langbain*, and printed at Oxford in 1638. But since this Council is the Standard of modern Popery in *Italy*, and all the other Popish Countries that submit to its Decisions, we shall, for the Satisfaction of the Publick, give a brief Account of it as follows:

Father *Paul*, in the 2d Page of his History of the Council of *Trent*, says, "This Council was desir'd and procur'd by Godly Men, to re-unite the Church, which began to be divided; but hath so established the Schism, and made the Party so obstinate, that the Discords are become irreconcilable; and being managed by Princes for Reformation of the Ecclesiastical Discipline, has occasioned the greatest Deformation that ever was since Christianity began. And the Council being

hop'd for by the Bishops, to regain the Episcopal Authority, which was for most part usurp'd by the Pope, has made them lose it altogether, and brought them into greater Servitude: And whereas on the contrary, it was fear'd and avoided by the See of *Rome*, as that which might moderate their exorbitant Power, which, from small Beginnings, has by several Degrees come to an unlimited Excess; it has so establish'd and confirm'd the same over that Part of it which remains subject unto it, that it was never so great, and so firmly rooted.

There can be no better Proof of what Father *Paul* says, than the Review of that Council by *M. Ranchin* above-mention'd, who tells us, *Page 1.* " That this Council was call'd on purpose to reform those Abuses of the Pope, and Court of *Rome*, that were the Occasion of the Schism, which had rais'd all *Christendom* in Arms, and had bred Disturbances for 200 Years and upwards in sundry Councils, which Pope *Hadrian* confess'd in the Diet at *Nuremberg*, that some of the Reformers of Pope *Paul III.* could not deny; but the Popes turn'd Cat in Pan, and carried the Matter so, that instead of a natural Birth, the Council was deliver'd of a Monster; and instead of a Synodical Decree, had brought forth a Papal Bull; instead of an Extirpation of Abuses, had brought forth a Nursery of Errors; a Depravation, instead of a Reformation; a Source of Injustice, and a Legitimation of all the Pope's Usurpations upon the Authority of the Church, Emperors, Kings, and Commonwealths; and, in a Word, upon all *Christendom*, with all the Estates therein, as well Temporal as Spiritual. That the Pope and the Court of *Rome* were in a manner compelled by Violence to the holding this Council for excepting honest *Hadrian*, who went about it with an upright Intention; all the rest would have gladly been quit of it. *Clement VII.* did openly contradict the Proposal of it, which *Charles V.* at his Coronation caus'd to be made by his Chancellor at *Bononia*: But the Emperor pursuing his Instances with the Successors of *Clement*, they were forc'd to make a Shew of an Inclination to it; yet so as they stood a consulting 25 Years about calling it,

from 1522, that *Hadrian*, by his Legate at the Diet of *Nuremberg*, promis'd it, till 1546, still giving out fair Pretences, and studying new Occasions to delay it, posting it from one to another, and passing it over as a Debt to their Successors. And after they had set about it, they manag'd it so, that they kept it betwixt living and dying for 18 Years, taking their Time on purpose, that they might level their Stroke right. Many of their Predecessors had left their Weapons in Councils; *Germany* was fatal to them; and the Remembrance of the Councils of *Constance* and *Basle* madd'd them, when they thought upon the Deposal of so many Popes, the Discipline to which they had been made subject, and the cutting short of their Power by the Councils. They had observ'd the Saying of Pope *John XXIII.* *The Place of the Council is all in all*; and that he would not have it in a Place where the Emperor had the upper Hand; so that it necessarily concern'd them to save themselves by Slight, to shuffle on the Time, to spin out Delays, to pump for Pretences; and at last, when they could no longer shift it, 'twas necessary for them to pitch upon such a City as would be sure to them, as depended on them, and where they had absolute Authority; and such at that Time was *Trent*. In the next Place, they would admit none for Members, but such as they had engag'd before-hand, that they might make it more firm for them, and make them proceed slow or quick, as they saw Cause. Then they broke off and defer'd it; and when they found their Party uneasy, they adjourn'd it to another Place, particularly to *Bononia*, on Pretence of the Badness of the Air. Then they sollicit'd all Catholic Princes utterly to extirpate the Protestants; and when that would not do, they scatter'd Reports among the Catholic Princes to set them together by the Ears, and enter'd into Leagues with the stronger Side to support their Greatness, and raise it higher. They us'd all possible Means to win the Bishops, and the rest that had Votes; and the Council gave 'em great Promises, and made them Presents, till they could give them Dignities and Benefices, on Condition, That they should determine nothing but according to the Plea.

' Pleasure of the Holy See; to anathematize
 ' all the Opinions of the *Lutherans* and
 ' *Calvinists*, without Exception; to make
 ' good Decrees in Appearance for the Re-
 ' formation of Manners, and Ecclesiastical
 ' Discipline; about Points unnecessary, or
 ' such as never came in Question; and,
 ' under-hand, to forge others to confirm
 ' the groundless Usurpations of the Pope
 ' over Christian Princes, and to make his
 ' Power truly Monarchical; so as he would
 ' make all the Kings and Princes of the
 ' Earth to tremble at his Voice. They were al-
 ' so to disannul such Decrees of the Councils
 ' of *Constance* and *Basse* that were any way
 ' prejudicial to the Pope, and either covert-
 ' ly repeal them, or take such oblique Me-
 ' thods as might avoid the Force of them.
 ' And in the last Place, they were not to
 ' meddle with the Power of the Pope, with
 ' the Abuses and Misdemeanors of his Court,
 ' nor to suffer him to be charg'd with Neg-
 ' lect of his Spiritual Charge, and the Good
 ' of Souls, or with any unjust Attempts.

This Author gives us a further Account,
 ' That the Kings of *France* did always re-
 ' ject the Instances made by the Pope, and
 ' other Princes, and the Provincial Coun-
 ' cils of *France* by the Pope's Instigation;
 ' That the Pope was a Party, and therefore
 ' could not call the Council, nor be Judge
 ' in his own Cause, according to his own
 ' Canon Law, because of the several Ap-
 ' peals put up against him by Prote-
 ' stants and Papists. That the Papacy stood
 ' in need of Reformation, as had been
 ' confessed by Pope *Hadrian VI.* by the
 ' Councils of *Constance*, *Basse*, and *Pisa*:
 ' Therefore the Pope could not be Judge.
 ' That he had condemn'd the Protestants
 ' before they were called to Council;
 ' therefore they were not obliged to obey
 ' his Summons, nor submit to the Judgment
 ' of their known Enemy. That the Pope
 ' had stir'd up several Wars in the Time of
 ' the Council, and particularly in *France*,
 ' which hinder'd many that ought to have
 ' been present. That the *Germans*, *English*,
 ' and *French*, had demanded that the Coun-
 ' cil should be kept in a free Place, which
 ' *Trent* was not, being subject to the Pope,
 ' and the Passes stop'd and guarded, which
 ' was a just Objection, as had been own'd
 ' in the like Case by the Council of *Pisa*;

' and therefore they protested against the
 ' Council's meeting at the *Lateran*; that
 ' where the Place of Judgment is not safe,
 ' there may be an Appeal. He adds, That
 ' all were not call'd to this Council who
 ' ought to have been call'd, not all the
 ' Clergy, nor yet all the Laity, which was
 ' contrary to ancient Custom: That the
 ' Members of *Trent* were the Pope's Crea-
 ' tures, as was complain'd by the Emperor,
 ' the *French* King, and the *German* Prote-
 ' stants, and as good as confessed by the
 ' Popes: That the Number of Bishops was
 ' so few, it could not be call'd a General
 ' Council: That the Emperor and *French*
 ' King complain'd of the indirect Dealings
 ' in the Council: That the *Germans*, the
 ' *English* and *French*, protested against this
 ' Council: And that Justice was deny'd in
 ' Things demanded by the Emperor, the
 ' K. of *France*, the Catholick Princes of *Ger-*
 ' *many*, and the Duke of *Bavaria*; tho' ma-
 ' ny of the Abuses they desir'd to be re-
 ' form'd, were confessed by the Deputies
 ' of Pope *Paul III.*"

The Curious may see these, and many
 other Things to prove the Nullity of this
 Council, in those Two Authors, who being
 both Papists, cannot be justly suspected of
 Partiality.

Dr. *Nicholson* gives us this summary Ac-
 count of their Proceedings.

At their first Meeting, the Pope's Legate
 declar'd the Causes of the Calamities of the
 Church. In their second Session, they read
 and confirm'd the Articles of Faith pro-
 fess'd by all Members of the Catholick
 Church, according as 'tis in the Missal.
 The *Summa Conciliorum*, by *Corranzani*, says,
 they likewise confirm'd the Books of the
 Old and New Testament, with those of the
 Apocrypha, and Traditions. They also or-
 der'd the old vulgar Latin Translation to
 be used as Authentick in Churches and
 Schools; and that the Rule of Interpreta-
 tion should be the Church, and the ancient
 Fathers. In the 4th Session, they decreed,
 That all Men ought to believe Original Sin
 was utterly taken away in Baptism, inso-
 much, that the Concupiscence which re-
 mains in our Natures after Baptism, is not
 to be accounted a Sin, until we give the
 Consent of our Minds to it. They decreed,
 That

That the Virgin *Mary* was without Original Sin; and that before Regeneration, Man has a free Will to do Good, which being rous'd up and awak'd by God, is an Assistant to his Grace. In the 6th Session, they resolv'd, That Man is justified partly by Faith, and partly by Works; and Justification does by no means consist in a free Forgiveness of Sins; and the Free Imputation of the Righteousness of Christ to all Believers. In the 7th Session, That all Men who would be reputed Members of the Catholick Church, ought to believe that there are 7 Sacraments. These Decrees being pass'd, the Pope's Physician declar'd the Air of *Trent* to be corrupted, on which most of the Bishops were perswaded to remove to *Bononia*; but the *Spanish* Bishops refus'd to go thither. The Emperor's Minister protested against this Translation of the Council, and, in his Master's Name, declar'd, That what was done at *Bononia* should be void. Thus, after two Years, their Meeting was broke up in a Huff.

Their second Meeting was again at *Trent*, in the Time of Pope *Julius III.* September 1551, when the *French* Ambassador declar'd, That his Master was so perplex'd with Rebellions, he could not send his Bishops; and that the Council of *Trent* was not a General Council, but a Synod assembled for the Views of a few private Men, and therefore protested against it. In their 2d Session at this Meeting, they confirmed Transubstantiation: And in the 3d Session, That Penance and Extreme Unction were Sacraments of the New Testament. The Protestant Ambassadors offer'd to exhibit a Confession of their Faith; but the Pope's Legate did not receive it, because in the Title they did not signify their Willingness to submit to the Determination of the Council in all Matters of Faith. During this Time, the Elector of *Saxony* and the Emperor came to an open Rupture; and the Elector having taken *Augsburgh*, the *Italian* Bishops retired from *Trent* in Precipitation.

The *Spanish* Prelates assembled however, and adjourned the Council for two Years; but did not meet again till *January* 1562, in the Time of Pope *Pius IV.* when they condemn'd *Luther's* Books, and order'd several Books that had been writ since the springing up of Heresy, as they call'd it,

to be revis'd and reported. They decreed, That the Laity were not bound to communicate in both Kinds; That the Church had Power to order the outward Administrations of the Sacraments as she thought most convenient for the Good of the Receivers; That the Mass was a Propitiatory Sacrifice for the Quick and Dead; and anathematiz'd such as should dare to affirm, That there was no more than a Sacrifice of Thanksgiving, and a Commemoration of Christ and his Sufferings. They likewise declar'd Ordination to be a Sacrament, and made certain Canons for the Administration of it, and anathematiz'd those who should say, That there was not a Hierarchy in the Church of Divine Institution, consisting of Bishops, Presbyters, and Ministers; or such as should say, That the Bishops were not superior to Presbyters, or that the Power of the one and the other was the same. They likewise decreed, That the Church of *Rome*, or her Representative the Pope, had a Power to dispense with the 18th Chapter of *Leviticus*, not only in allowing Persons to marry who are there forbidden, but also to forbid Marriage betwixt such as the Law of God and Nature had allow'd it. In the 9th and last Session held the 3d of *December*, 1563, they confirmed the Doctrine of Purgatory, the Invocation of Saints, the Worshipping of Images and Relicks, granting of Indulgences, Superstitious Fasts, &c. and then put an End to the Council. Here 'tis fit to observe, That there was as little Regard shew'd to the Demands of the Emperor, the King of *France*, and the Catholick Princes of the Empire assembled in the Diet, as to the Demands of the Protestants.

The Emperor, as *Natalis Comes*, in the History of those Times, informs us, demanded a Reformation both of the Pope and Court of *Rome*; That the Number of Cardinals should be reduc'd; That scandalous Dispensations should be abrogated; That Monasteries should be brought under the Jurisdiction of the Bishops of the Diocese; That the Multitude of Canons and Decrees should be lessen'd, and Superstitious ones repeal'd; That Ecclesiastical Constitutions should be reduc'd to the Rules of God's Law; That none should be excommunicated but for publick Scandal; That

the

the Breviaries and Mass Books should be purged of all that was not taken out of the Scripture; That Prayers should be allowed in the Vulgar Tongue; That Communion should be in both Kinds; That the Rigour of Fasting should be mitigated; That eating of Flesh might be licens'd, Priests Marriage allow'd, and several Glosses upon the Gospels raz'd out. The French Court demanded the like, and also that Psalms might be sung, the Sacraments administred, and a Catechism made in the Vulgar Tongue, that the People might be instructed what they ought to believe concerning the Worship of Images, Indulgences, Pilgrimages, Relicks of Saints, Fraternities; and that all Superstitious Errors might be removed from them; That Publick Penance might be restored for heinous Offences, Publick Fasts appointed for appeasing God's Wrath, and General Councils held once in 10 Years; That holding of Benefices in Trust and Commendams might be abolish'd, and confer'd upon none but Persons of Merit, with Consent of the Bishops and People.

The Catholick Princes of Germany complain'd of these and many other Things, as forbidding of Meats, Marriages, the Abuse of Indulgences, against the excessive Number of Holidays, and against the Usurpation of the Clergy. The Duke of Bavaria's Minister pressed earnestly for the Marriage of Priests, alledging for it, That in the last General Visitation of Bavaria, 'twas found, that there were not 3 in 100 Priests but what were either common Whoremongers, or privately married. He pressed also for Communion in both Kinds, and Reformation in Doctrine. But all these Demands were to no purpose; nor are we to wonder at it, since *M. Ranchin* tells us, That Pope *Paul III.* in 1538, appointed 9 Cardinals, and other Clergymen, to consider and advise him what was best to be done for Reforming the Church, and to tell him upon their Oaths the Truth, on Pain of Excommunication; and tho' they did it, and pointed at many Things that wanted Reformation, yet he had no Regard to what they said.

Mr. Ray, in his Travels, says, That on the Front of the Quire of the Cathedral Church at *Trent*, there's a Latin Inscription, giving a short Account of the Council; by

which it appears, that there were at this Council 13 Cardinal-Legates, 9 that were not Legates, 29 Ministers from Princes, 3 Patriarchs, 33 Archbishops, 233 Bishops, 18 Abbots, 12 Generals of Orders, 148 Doctors of Divinity, 18 Proctors or Deputies, 3 Officials of the Council, 9 Chantors, 4 Notaries, and 2 Couriers from the Pope.

Misson, in his Travels to Italy, says, the City stands on a flat Rock, of a sort of Red and White Marble, which furnishes Materials for Building; and that the City is subject to dangerous Inundations from the overflowing of the River, and some neighbouring Brooks, which fall down sometimes with such Impetuosity from the Mountains, that they roll great Rocks along with them into the Town, which is fortified only with a single Wall. In one of the Chapels of the Cathedral, they have a Crucifix as large as the Life, which the fabulous Priests say bow'd its Head, in Token of its Approbation of the Councils Decrees when they were proclaim'd under it. They add, That this Crucifix was made without Hands, and that no body knows the Materials it is composed of. The Church of *St. Mary Major*, where the Council sat, is built of a base sort of Marble; and the Organ in it, besides counterfeiting the Singing of Birds, resembles the Cries of several Beasts, and the beating of Drums. In *St. Peter's Church*, they have a Chapel for *St. Simonin*, a Shoemaker's Son, who in the 28th Month of his Age was stole and murder'd by the Jews, who drank his Blood at one of their Feasts, and throw his Carcass into a Water-Pipe, where their Synagogue stood; and being thence carried into the River, it was found by Fishermen: Upon which the Murder was discover'd, 39 Jews executed, and the rest for ever banish'd the City. Pope *Sixtus IV.* canoniz'd this Child, which being embalmed, is kept in a Case on the Altar of his Chapel, with the Knife, Pincers, and 4 great Needles, they made use of to torment him, and two Silver Goblets in which they drank his Blood.

The 2d Town in this Bishoprick is *Pozzen*, by the Italians called *Bolzano*, 18 Miles N. E. from *Trent*, on the Banks of the *Adelph*. The Town is more considerable for

its

its Trade than Strength; for it has no other Fortifications but the River, and rocky Hills about it. They have 4 Annual Fairs, of 15 Days each, which are much frequented by Merchants from *Illyricum*, *Dalmatia*, and *Germany*: During which Time, they have a proper Magistracy, and Courts of Judicature of their own, distinct from those of the Town; and none are allowed to trade without being enter'd in their Judges Book, and receiving a Certificate from him, sealed with the Arms of their Corporation, which is a Globe of the Earth, surrounded with abundance of all sorts of Merchandize pack'd up, and this Motto, *Ex Merce pulchrior*; i. e. It becomes more beautiful by Trade. These Privileges were granted them by *Claudia* Arch-Duchess of *Austria*. This Place was taken from the Bishop of *Trent* by *Minard* II. Count of *Tirol*, in 1295, and is now subject to the House of *Austria*.

3. *Roveredo*, or *Roveretum*, on the Banks of the *Adige*, and Frontiers of *Venice*, is a Town of good Note, was formerly subject to *Trent*; but by the Treaty of *Noyon*, was made over to the Emperor *Maximilian* II. It lies about 10 Miles S. from *Trent*, and has a strong Castle.

There are several other Market-Towns and small Cities within this Bishoprick; but are remarkable for little, except that all of them have good Wine. *La Forrest* mentions *Tubino*, *Madrizzo*, *Arco*, *Nago*, and *Torbolo*, which are all fortified Places in this Bishoprick, and were taken by the *French* under the Duke of *Vendosme* during the last War in *Italy*.

The Circle of B A V A R I A.

The Bishoprick of Saltzburg.

THE City of that Name was anciently called *Colonia Hadriana Juvavina*, because the Emperor *Hadrian* plac'd a Colony here on the River *Juvavus*. The Inhabitants say, That the Emperors *Augustus* and *Tiberius* having subdued the *Salassii* and *Rhaeti*, with other Inhabitants of the *Alps*, they invaded the *Vindelici*, the *Norici*, and *Pannoni*; and to secure their Conquests, built a

Fort here, which is frequently mention'd by *Antonin*; but 'tis sometimes corruptly writ *Jovavum*, *Ivavum*, *Ivarum*, and *Vivavum*. *Bertius* and *Cluverius* think it to be *Ptolemy's Gavanodurum*. The present Name of the Town, and the River *Salza*, on which it stands, is derived from the many Salt-Pits on its Banks. This Archbishoprick has Part of the Dutchy of *Bavaria* on the N. and W. *Carinthia* on the S. and E. with Part of *Stiria* and *Austria*; and on the W. it has Part of *Bavaria* and *Tirol*. Its greatest Length from S. W. to N. E. is about 100 Miles; and the greatest Breadth from N. to S. is 65. The Country affords, besides Plenty of Salt, Mines of Copper, Iron, Silver, &c. A little above the Town of *Saltzburg*, springs the famous Bath of *Gastein*; the Water is hot, tastes strong of several Minerals, and by Bathing and Washing cures the Stone, Cholick, Pox, and other Malignant Distempers; but is never taken inwardly. The chief Mines in this Country are at *Gastein*, *Raurist*, *Briental*, &c. They have also many Stone Quarries, with Variety of Stones of different Forms. The large rough Jasper, which lies unregarded in the Court of the Emperor's Palace at *Vienna*, came from hence. The Archbishop is by his Place Legate of the Papal See, which has occasioned Quarrels betwixt him and the Archbishop of *Magdeburg* for Precedency, which the Imperial Court has not yet determin'd. Within this Province, there are reckon'd the Bishopricks of *Chiemsee*, *Gurck*, *Seccaw*, *Lavant*, *Freisingen*, *Passau*, and *Brixen*. Some add *Ratisbon*. The first 3 are not Princes of the Empire, and therefore have no Vote in the Diet. There are 8 Cities in this Province, viz. *Saltzburg*, *Hallein*, *Lawfen*, *Tittmoning*, *Muldorf*, *Frisach*, and *St. Andrew's*. The two last in *Carinthia*, formerly *Pettau* and *Stiria*, and *Gemund* in *Carinthia*, were reckon'd in this Province; but they are not so now.

Towns of Note here.

1. *Saltzburg*, the Metropolis. *Aventinus* thinks it changed its Name of *Juvavina*, when *St. Rupert* began to preach here. The old Name being lost by the Irruptions of

of the *Goths*, *Huns*, &c. about 476. *La Bériss* says, the *Goths* sack'd it in the first Century, and kill'd the Bishop and all the Christians; so that they had no Bishop for 200 Years. After that the Salt-Springs were discover'd, and then it was rebuilt by the Princes of *Bavaria*. *Charlemagne* transferred hither the Title of Metropolitan of all *Bavaria* from *Passau* in 798. The Cathedral was built by *St. Virgilius* in 773, and by him dedicated to *St. Rupert*, who, according to *Strachan's* Account in *Blom's* Atlas, was Son to a King of *Scots*, and the Apostle of *Bavaria*, as appears by *Camisius*, in the Monuments of *Salzburg*, *Antiq. Lect. Tom. 4.* Some say, *Virgilius* was also a *Scotts-man*. Pope *Gregory VII.* made the Archbishop of *Salzburg* perpetual Legate for *Germany* in 1073, and he was made Primate of *Germany* by the Treaty of *Munster* in 1648. He is a Prince of the Empire, Codirector with the Elector of *Bavaria* of that Circle, has the first Voice in the Diet of any of the Ecclesiastical Princes after the Electors, and is chosen by a Chapter of 28 Canons, who must all prove their Nobility before they are admitted. The Town is very strong, and well built; and tho' it has suffered much both by Fire and Water, 'tis now one of the fairest and strongest Cities of the Empire. It was formerly an Imperial Town, but is now subject to its Archbishop. His Palace is a very magnificent Structure, stands upon a Hill, is well fortified, and called *Mirabel*. The great Hall, the Galleries, the Tapestry, and the Chamber of Rarities, are well worth a Traveller's seeing. The Gardens and Orchards are well order'd, and abound with Figs, Pomegranates, and other choice Fruits; but the Archbishop's chief Garden of Pleasure is at *Hellenbrun*, a Mile distant, where there are noble Water-Works of various Shapes, with abundance of strange Beasts, Fowls, Fishes, &c. of all Sorts; and at the further End of it, two curious Prospects from Houses of Pleasure. The publick Inns of the City are so large, that they are capable to entertain the greatest Princes of the Empire, with their Attendants. The Inhabitants have a good Trade from the Salt produc'd in the neighbouring Pits. The Cathedral was new

built in 1618, and is reckon'd one of the most magnificent in *Europe*. In *St. Sebastian's* Church, lies buried the famous Physician *Theophrastus Paracelsus*, who died the 24th of September, 1541. Some will have him to be a *Swiss*; but *Quade*, in his Gallantry of the German Nation, says, he was Bastard to one of the German Lords of *Brembach*, who order'd him to be made an Eunuch, and sent him to a Monastery to study. It lies in Long. 32. 12. Lat. 47. 30. on the Borders of *Bavaria*, at the Conflux of the *Salz*, and two other Rivers, 67 Miles S. E. from *Munich*, and about 50 S. W. from *Passau*. The University here is one of the most considerable in the Empire.

2. *Hallein*, two German Leagues, S. from *Salzburg*, on the Banks of the *Salza*. The Latins call'd it *Halliola* and *Hallula*. 'Tis famous for employing multitudes of People in its Salt-Works, from whence it had its Name. *Dr. Nicholson* says, That in 1563, there was found here in a Salt-Pit, 6300 Foot deep, in the midst of a hard Rock of Salt, a Humane Body, with its Limbs, Hair, and Clothes, uncorrupted; which, by its Antick Dress, seem'd to have lain there some Ages. This is attested by *Megister* in his Chronicle of *Carinthia*, and by the Author of *Metrop. Salisb. Tom. 1. Fol. 35.*

3. *Lauffen*, a small Town betwixt *Salzburg* and *Titmoning*, on the *Salz*, about 15 Miles N. W. from *Salzburg*. In 1147, *Frederick I.* held a General Diet of the Empire here. 'Tis a pleasant Town, and has a good Trade. *Lazius* fancies it to be the Remains of *Antonin's Laviacum*, because of an old Roman Inscription found near this Place.

4. *Titmoning*, a small Town betwixt *Burckhausen* and *Lauffen*, supposed to be *Antonin's Bidaum*. 'Twas almost wholly destroyed by Wild-Fire in 1571, and taken by *Maximilian of Bavaria* in one Day in 1611. 'Tis still fortified, but not strong.

5. *Rudstätt*, a considerable Market-Town on the *Enz*. Several Geographers make it the ancient *Taurina* or *Turnia* of the *Norici Mediterranei*. *Lazius* approves this, because the Names of several Mountains near this City end in *Taurn*, and in ancient Records 'tis call'd *Taurachstätt*. *Albert Duke of Austria*,

Austria, before he was Emperor, besieg'd it two Months, but in vain, being obliged to a shameful Retreat.

6. *Muldorf*, famous for a Battle betwixt the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* and *Frederick* of *Austria*, in 1322. It lies on the *Imn*, a *German* League from *Oettingen*.

The Archbishop of *Salzburg* has a Power of creating Knights of the Order of *St. Rupert*, who wear a Medal with the Effigies of that Saint, and the Red Cross of the Order on the Reverse.

The County of Tirol.

W *Armand Igle*, a *German* Lord, in his Description of this Country, says, 'twas the *Rhetia Superior* of the *Latins*, which, with *Rhetia Inferior*, was by the *Romans* accounted Part of *Italy*; for this, he quotes *Pliny*, who makes *Trent* to be the *Urbs Rhetica*. He adds, That the *Rhetian*, a Dialect of the old *Tuscan*, is still spoke in many Parts of this Country.

Tirol has *Swabia* and *Bavaria* on the N. Part of *Switzerland* and the *Grisons* Country on the W. *Brinzen* and *Salzburg* on the E. and *Trent* on the S. *Mell* makes it 125 Miles from E. to W. and the greatest Breadth about 52 from N. to S. *Dr. Nicholson* says, for Riches, Number of Inhabitants, and Plenty of Provisions, it is equal to most Duchies in the Empire. They have store of Silver and Copper Mines in their Mountains, especially at *Braunegg*, *Kutznabel*, and *Schwatz*. The Mines at the last were found in 1448; and before 1560, were so much improved, that they employed 30000 People; but in 1600, they were diminished to 2000, and are now fewer; so that the Revenues of the Count of *Tirol* from those Mines fall now much short of 300000 *Gilders per Annum*, which *Cuspinian* says they yielded in his Days. The Country is well stock'd with Wine, Fish, Venison, Wood, and other Necessaries for Life; so that the Emperor *Maximilian* said, It was like a Countryman's Coat, coarse, but warm. The Rocky Mountains, almost perpetually cover'd with Snow, make no good Appearance to the Eye; but the Vallies about *Innsbruck* are as fruitful as elsewhere. The Populousness of the Country may be guess'd at from

Grasser's Account of the small Province of *Namsberg*, which, tho' but 12 *German* Miles long, and 3 broad, he says contains 350 Parishes, and 32 strong Castles.

The whole is divided into many lesser Provinces; the chief of which are, 1. *Essthal*, so called from the River *Essthal*. 2. *Imthal*, or the Valley along the *Imn*, the pleasantest Part of the Country. 3. *Finstertal*. 4. *Pasertal*. 5. *Munstertal*. 6. *Kunstal*. 7. *Wallerthod*. 8. *Namsberg*, besides several others of less Note, and 3 or 4 Lordships, taken from the *Bavarians* by the House of *Austria*.

While this Country was subject to the *Romans*, 'twas governed by a Lieutenant sent from *Rome*; but on the Fall of the Empire, was seized by the Princes of *Bavaria*, whose Deputies govern'd it under the Name of Marquisses, when 'twas joined to the Empire. *Frederick I.* when he proscribed *Henry the Lion*, Duke of *Bavaria*, divided his Dominions among other Princes, and *Tirol* was divided among others, and subjected to several; the chief of 'em was the D. of *Meran*; but that Duchy and City fell at last into the Hands of the Counts of *Tirol*; the last of whom, of the *Bavarian* Line, was *Albrecht*, whose eldest Daughter was married to *Henry*, Son to the Emperor *Frederick II.* and the Country was divided betwixt the Posterity of her and her Sister. And in 1289, *Elizabeth* of *Tirol* marrying *Albert* of *Austria*, brought that Country to his Family; and by Advice of her Council, *Margaret* of *Tirol* having no Issue, settled it again upon the Family of *Austria* in 1363. Since which, it has always continued in their Hands.

The chief Towns.

1. **I** *Innsprug* or *Innsbruck*, Lat. *Oenipons*, so call'd because of its Bridge over the River *Imn*, is the Metropolis of the Country. It lies in Long. 30. 33. Lat. 47. 12. about 12 Miles S. from the Frontiers of *Bavaria*, 28 N. W. from *Brinzen*, and 66 N. E. from *Trent*. It appears by an old Inscription, That *Otto I. D.* of *Meran*, wall'd this Town in 1234; but nothing of these Fortifications remain now, except three Gates. The Princes of *Tirol* thought it not worth while

to make the Fortifications strong, because it lies in the Heart of their Territories, and was defended at some distance by the strong Castle of *Ombraz*, and the Town of *Hall*; so that on the E. Side, it neither has nor needs any Fortifications; but the other Part is defended by Walls and Ditches, which seem rather to be designed for Ornament than Strength. Besides, the Entrance of the Country is so well guarded by strong Castles, that 'twas thought strange *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* should have been able to march an Army hither, as he did, when he almost surpris'd *Charles V.* The Town is well built, especially the Suburbs, where there are many stately Houses. The Cathedral or chief Church at the *Franciscan* Monastery is a stately Fabrick of hewn Stone, built by the Emperor *Ferdinand I.* who erected a noble Monument here for his Grandfather *Maximilian I.* on the Top of which stands a vast Statue of that Emperor in Alabaſter, guarded by 28 Statues of Brass, of exquisite Workmanship, larger than the Life, which make a noble Appearance; 14 of 'em represent Emperors and Princes of that Family, and 8 of 'em Emperresses and Princesses, and the rest several other Princes. Under the Emperor's Statue, there's a Character of that great Prince in Golden Letters, upon black Marble. The chief Ornament of the Town is the Palace of their ancient Counts, which has since been the Residence of the Princes of the House of *Austria*. 'Tis beautified with many fair Gardens, Groves, Walks, &c. The Palace is convenient and large, but not regular or beautiful, having been built at several times. *M. Miſſon* says, the Roofs of the Houses are flat on the Top, and the Rafters, instead of rising to a Point, are revers'd; so that the Rain is gather'd in the middle of them. In the City, there's a House called the *Chancery*, the Porch of which the Inhabitants pretend to have been cover'd with Plates of Gold by Arch-Duke *Frederick*, when he return'd from his Exile; but *M. Miſſon* having view'd them narrowly, found the Plates, which resembled Tiles, to be of Brass, cover'd with a thin Plate of Gold, or at least of other Metals gilded; and being about 15 Foot square, he supposes it might cost about 200000 Crowns. The Citizens have a good Armory, well

furnish'd for Horse and Foot, as they pretend for 30000 Men. They have two Cannon of a vast wide Bore, and each Barrel 16 Foot long. They have 50 more of a considerable Size, one of which has 7 Barrels, that may be discharged severally. *Dr. Nicholson* says, That in the Palace, there's a vast Collection of Rarities, such as Agates, Chrystals, Corals, Jaspers, Jacynths, *Turkey* Stones, &c. Several Lumps of Virgin Gold and Silver dug out of the Mines in *Germany*, and a vast Number of Medals, with ancient and modern Coins; a compleat *Persian* Suit of Armour, richly adorn'd with *Turkey* Stones and Rubies; the Arms of the House of *Austria*, exactly represented in Diamonds and Rubies; a large Crucifix of Coral; the Sword of an ancient *Swiss*, with an Almanack cut on the Hilt; a large Dish of Chrystal set in Gold, beautified with Pictures in lively Colours, and adorn'd with many different Precious Stones, with abundance of other Rarities, too tedious to insist upon. In the City, there are many curious Fountains, and spacious Market-Places.

About an *English* Mile E. from the City, stands the pleasant and strong Fort called *Ombraz*. They derive its Name from the Design of it, which was to be a shady Summer-House. A large Book was printed here in 1601, with an Account of the Pleasures and Rarities of this Place. In their Armory, the most considerable Things are, the Armour of *Charles IX.* King of *France*, and of the Duke of *Parma*; the Statue of King *Francis I.* on Horseback in Plaister-work, exactly representing him in his Armour, and his Horse in his Trappings, as he was taken at the Battle of *Pavia*. They have likewise the Armour of several Emperors, Kings and Princes of other Nations, with the Picture of each Prince drawn to the Life by his Armour. In another Room, there's a Collection of Rarities, among which, the chief are, Part of the Trunk of an Oak, in the Body of which there's a Deer quite enclos'd with Wood, of which their Philosophers give this Account, That this Deer did probably perish in the Snow; and upon a Thaw, was hurl'd down by a Torrent from the neighbouring Hills a considerable Depth into the Ground, where 'twas first incircled by the Roots, and af-

terwards by the Body of the Tree: Several Drawers of *Roman* and other ancient Coins in Gold and Silver; many Pieces of ancient Armour; a Log of Wood and Wedges petrify'd, because, say the superstitious People, the Carpenter ventur'd to work on a Holy-Day; several fair Copies writ by a *German* with his Feet; a Piece of Wood growing out of a small Lump of Ore, which the Miners call a Farewel, because, when they meet such a Twig as this, they reckon the Ore holds no further. *M. Misson* says, there's a large Hall with all Sorts of Arms more curious than useful, among others a Lance us'd by Arch-Duke *Ferdinand* in Tournaments. They say, he was so strong, that he could stop a Coach and Six by taking hold of a Spoke of the Wheel, and would break two Crown-Pieces join'd together. In an adjacent Gallery, there's the Effigies of many Princes on Horseback in Armour, with all the Ornaments used at Tournaments; and the Skin of a Serpent, 15 Foot long, taken near *Ulm*. At the End of the Gallery, there's an Apartment fill'd with the Spoils and Arms taken from the *Turks*, with a Bassa and Aga of the Janizaries, represented on Horseback, with the same magnificent Habits and Harness, imbelish'd with Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones, they had when taken. In another Gallery, there are the Rarities mention'd by *Dr. Nicholson*; among which, there are 7 large Volumes bound in black Velvet, with Edges and Claps of Silver, which, instead of Leaves, contain small Boxes fill'd with Medals. There's a Cross-Bow, with 34 lesser Bows within its Compass, discharging so many Arrows at a time. There are also abundance of MSS. and rare Books, and Stones naturally representing Trees, Fruits, Shells, and Animals. They have many Sepulchre-Lamps, Urns, Idols, &c. and a Piece of Rope, which they pretend to be Part of that with which *Judas* hang'd himself. On the Walls and Sieling, there are admirable Paintings, among which, *Noah's* Rain-Bow is so extraordinary, that they say, the Great Duke of *Tuscany* offer'd 100000 Crowns for it. They have a Library, which is not in very good Order, and a Gallery full of Busts, and other Pieces of Antiquity; besides many other Apartments adorn'd with Pictures of great Value.

On the S. Side of the Town, cross a pleasant Field, stands the famous Monastery of *Wilhelm* or *Wilden*, called by *Antonin* in his *Itinerary*, *Veldidena*, from which the City of *Insprug* took its Original. The Monks are of the Order of *St. Northbert*, and pretend to great Antiquity. They say, their Founder was *Haymon*, a Gigantick Prince of this Country, of 12 Foot and a half long; and what they still call his Grave, is above 15. They alledge, That he killed a monstrous Dragon, which threw down as much of the Monastery by Night, as his Men built by Day; and they pretend to shew his Tongue, of 3 Span and a half long, which they keep as a valuable Relick. They have a Gallery with the Pictures of all the Abbots since the Foundation. The Monastery is encompassed with a Wall 16 Foot high, which they say was leap'd over by a Hart, when closely pursued by Dogs some Years ago. Before the Gates, there's a Pillar with an Inscription, giving an Account, That the Road from *Italy* towards *Augsburg* lay cross the Field where this Monastery stands; and that it was repaired near 100 Miles together in the Time of the Emperor *Septimius Severus*.

2. *Hall*, 8 Miles N. E. from *Inspruck*, famous for its Salt-Pits, and great Trade in Salt. Their chief Pits are 4 Miles from the Town, in the Mountains, where they dig the Salt like Ore out of Mines, throw it into great Trenches, which they fill with sweet Water, and let it stand a Month, till the Salt be dissolved, and the earthy Part sunk to the bottom: After which they carry it to be boil'd in the City. In their great Salt-House, they have 4 huge Iron Pans, each of which is 48 Foot long, 34 broad, and 3 deep; 3 of 'em are continually boiling, and one of 'em rests a Week by Turns. About 1000 Men are constantly employed in those Mines, and cutting Fuel for them. They have very odd Habits, and Hats of all Colours; and they carry their Salt in little Carts with Wheels, which they draw themselves. This Town, and that of *Trent*, were taken by the Elector of *Baravia* in 1703; but he was soon obliged to quit them.

3. *Meran*, on the Frontiers of *Trent*, 33 Miles S. from *Inspruck*, formerly the Metropolis of the Country, and the Residence of

a Duke. In 1419, a great Flood broke in upon this Town, which destroyed 400 People; and they say, That a Child in a Cradle, with a Cat sitting by it, were carried down the River 12 English Miles, and taken out alive. *La Forrest* says, That 'tis a pretty Town, and a Place of good Trade. Near this Town, stands the ancient and fair Castle of *Tirol*, with a small Market-Town of the same Name, whence the whole Country had its Denomination. 'Tis remarkable for little now but its Situation. *La Forrest* mentions *Glurens*, a small City, in one of the finest Countries of *Tirol*; *Pludentz*, Capital of a County of the same Name; *Sonnenberg* and *Feldkireck* the like.

4. *Stertzigen*, 17 Miles S. from *Innsbruck*, near the Mountains called *Brenner*, noted by ancient Geographers for being almost continually cover'd with Snow; and are by some ancient Authors falsely called the *Pyrenean* Mountains, from whence they make the *Danube* to spring, which is another gross Mistake.

BAVARIA.

THIS Country contains a great Part of the ancient *Rhætia*, *Vindelicia*, and *Noricum*; but chang'd its Name, as we formerly mention'd, when the *Bois* seiz'd it about 472, as *Jornandus* tells us.

The Country abounds with Corn of all Sorts, Fruit, Venison, Metals, Marble, Salt, Baths, &c. and some Wine, which would very much enrich the Inhabitants, were they allowed the same Freedom of Trade with other Parts of the Empire. But their Electors have for many Years monopoliz'd their three chief Commodities: For, 1. They are forbid, on great Penalties, to import Salt from any other Dominions, or to buy any, that is imported; and the Elector's Agents are only allow'd to sell their own Salt they dig at *Dravestein* and *Obenhall*; which being coarse, they mix it with the purer Salt brought from *Salzburg*, and sell it again to those who want it. 2. He engrosses all the Corn, so that none is permitted to sell it but his Agents. 3. He monopolizes all the strong Beer, which is so much valued, that 'tis exported to other Countries of the Empire, and sold only by his

own Servants; but the People are allow'd to brew a sorry small Beer for their own Use. The Bishop of *Passau* has lately followed the same Method; by which he fills his own Treasures, but impoverishes his Subjects; so that the chief Subsistence of the Peasants is from the great Herds of Swine fed in their Woods by Acorns and Crabs. They have also great Numbers of Bears, Wild-Bears, and other Sorts of Venison, in their Forests, which they frequently make bold with, tho' they are forbid it without the Elector's special Commission. Their Deer are generally of an extraordinary Size; and their Historians say, That in 1562, there was a Hart caught which weigh'd 625 Pounds.

This Country has *Misnia* on the N. *Salzburg* and *Tirol* on the S. *Swabia* and *Francia* on the W. and *Bohemia* and *Austria* on the E. From S. to N. is 155 Miles, and from E. to W. about 125.

Some Foreign Authors, and even several of their Neighbours, reckon them a rude and barbarous People in comparison of other Germans, and commonly call 'em Hog-drivers; but those who have travelled the Country of late find it otherwise, and that they are as hospitable and courteous as others; tho' it must be own'd, that the absolute Government of their Prince very much hinders their growing rich, as the Impositions of their Clergy keep 'em grossly ignorant in Matters of Religion; so that most of their Worship is paid to Images and Saints.

Their ancient Government was like that of the other Germans; tho' there is little of their History that can be depended on before *Charlemagne*.

The *Atlas Historique*, and Dr. *Nicholson*, give the following Account of the Genealogy of the *Palatine* Family, and of that of *Bavaria*.

Aldigerus is said to have made himself King of *Bavaria* in 456, and died in 504. He was succeeded by his Son *Theodo I.* who had War with the *Romans*, and, according to Dr. *Nicholson*, was the first who had the Title of Duke in that Country, because the *Franks* having made him their Tributary, that Title was more suitable to his Cir-

cumstances. His Son *Theodo II.* succeeded, who was surnam'd, *The Great*, because he drove the *Romans* out of his Country beyond the *Alps*. The *Atlas* places his Reign in 512. He was succeeded by *Theodo III.* who, Dr. *Nicholson* says, was their first Christian Prince, being converted, with his Country, by *St. Rupert* the *Scotts-man*, formerly mention'd. We have nothing remarkable of their other Princes till *Odilo* or *Willo*, whom the *Atlas* makes their 13th Prince, but Dr. *Nicholson* their 14th; who being encourag'd by the Success of some of his Predecessors, re-assum'd the Title of King; but was defeated near *Augsburg* by *Carloman* and *Pepin*, and forc'd to content himself with his old Title of Duke. He was succeeded by *Tassilo II.* the last Duke of *Aldiger's* Race, who was deposed by *Charles the Great*, and *Tassilo* and his Son *Theodo* were shut up in the Monastery of *Laurefheim* or *Lorsch*, within 4 German Miles of *Heydelberg*, where his Monument is still to be seen, with an Inscription in Rhiming Latin Verse, giving a short Account of his Story. Dr. *Nicholson* says, That *Charlemagne* having thus seiz'd *Bavaria*, he enlarg'd its Boundaries a great way into *Hungary*, and made it once more a Kingdom. After this Emperor's Death, his Son *Lewis the Pious* gave his own Son *Lotharius* the Title of King, tho' he rul'd only as his Father's Deputy. He was succeeded by his Brother *Lewis*, whose Kingdom, says *Aventinus*, reached from the River *Lech*, which runs by *Augsburg*, as far as the *Saave* and the *Teiffe* in *Hungary*. *Lewis* died in 876, and was succeeded by his eldest Son *Carloman*, who being slain in a Battle near *Oettingen*, his Brother *Lewis* succeeded, who being chosen Emperor, *Arnolf*, his Brother *Carloman's* Bastard, Prince of *Stiria* and *Carinthia*, succeeded to *Bavaria*. He also being chosen Emperor after his Uncle's Death, made his own Son *Lewis* King of *Bavaria*, who dying without Issue, and his Brother *Conrad* being Emperor, the *Bavarians* chose *Arnolf II.* called *The Wicked*, a Prince of *Charlemagne's* Lineage, to be their King; who revolting against *Conrad*, was by him and the Emperor *Henry I.* forc'd to lay aside the Title of King, and to re-assume that of Duke. The *Atlas* says, That this *Arnolf* is by some accounted the Founder or Origine

of the present Families of *Bavaria* and the *Palatinate*, and was Son, as some Historians inform us, says Dr. *Nicholson*, to *Leopold* Marquis of *Austria*. He walled *Ratisbon*, and died about 937. From him descended the Counts of *Schiren*, who were for some Time depriv'd of their Succession; but *Werner*, one of those Counts, recover'd it again, and from him the present Family proceeds. *Henry III.* one of his Successors, is observ'd by some to have been the first Emperor who came in by Election, according to the Order made by Pope *Gregory V.* After which, *Bavaria*, since this Emperor died without Issue, was transferred to several Families, according as the Emperors thought fit. But *Conrad II.* *Henry III.* and *Henry IV.* who succeeded him in the Empire, kept it in their own Hands, and their Deputies had the Title of Dukes: At last, the Dukedom was given by the Emperor *Henry IV.* to *Guelph* Count of *Raribon* in *Swabia*, who died in 1101, and was succeeded by *Guelph II.* He by *Henry V.* and he by *Henry VI.* surnam'd *The Proud*, who married the only Daughter of *Lotharius* the Emperor, and was made D. of *Saxony*. After the Emperor's Death, he disput'd the Title of the Empire with *Conrad* Duke of *Swabia*, who was elected Emperor, for which he was proscribed. After this, *Bavaria* was given to his Half Brother *Leopold* of *Austria*; who dying in 1141, he was succeeded by his Brother *Henry VII.* who, at the Emperor's Command, resign'd it to *Henry VIII.* Son to *Henry VII.* who, for his great Performances in the *Holy Land*, had a Lion given him for his Coat of Arms, and on that Account was call'd *Henry the Lion*. But rebelling against the Emperor *Frederick I.* he was proscribed, and succeeded by *Otho* Landgrave of *Witelsbach*, who was descended from *Arnolf* of *Shiren*, formerly mention'd: And thus *Bavaria* return'd to the Family of its ancient Masters. He died in 1183, and was succeeded by his Son *Lewis*, who, as *Aventinus* says, was made Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine* by *Frederick II.* Others say, this Honour was confer'd first on his Son. This Prince being murder'd by a Russian, was succeeded by *Otho the Illustrious*, who married the only Daughter of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, and Count *Palatine*; whereupon the Electoral Dignity was first brought into the Family of *Bavaria*, as is

confirmed by an ancient Rhime under the Picture of this Prince in the Electoral Prince's Gallery at *Heydelberg*, where he died, and was succeeded by his Son *Lewis the Constant*, or *the Severe*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*. He died in 1294, and from his Son *Rodolph I.* came the present *Palatine* Family; and from his Son *Lewis*, came that of *Bavaria*. Here *Dr. Nicholson* and the *Atlas* differ; for the former makes *Lewis* and *Rodolph* the Sons of *Otho the Illustrious*, and the latter makes them Sons to *Lewis the Constant*. *Dr. Nicholson* adds, That *Lewis*, called by Historians *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, was chosen Emperor, and maintain'd his Title against *Frederick of Austria*, and his Brother *Rodolph*, whom he banish'd; but confirm'd the Title of the *Lower Palatinate* and *Amberg* to his Children, and order'd, that the Electoral Dignity should remain by Turns in his own and his Brother's Posterity. The Emperor *Charles IV.* and his Successors refused to observe this Edict, and gave the Electoral Dignity to *Rodolph's* Branch, against which the Dukes of *Bavaria* always protested at the Election of the Emperor; and many Treatises, pro and con have been writ on this Subject, which were printed at *Munichen* and *Heydelberg* about 1612, and 1644. *Stephen* succeeded his Father the Emperor in the Dukedom of *Bavaria*, and died in 1237, leaving three Sons, who for some Time were joint Governors; but at last the greatest Share fell to *Frederick*, the 2d Brother. But here *Dr. Nicholson* and the *Atlas* differ in the Succession; for the latter says nothing of *Frederick*, or of his Son *Henry*, his Grandson *Lodowick*, or *George the Rich*, whom the Doctor makes Successors one after another to *Stephen*. The Doctor says, That *Lewis*, Grandson to *Frederick*, banish'd the Jews, seiz'd their Goods, and died in 1479. That *George the Rich*, who succeeded him, founded the University of *Ingolstat*, and died in 1503, without Issue-Male, having married his only Daughter to *Rupert* Elector *Palatine*, who expected the Dutchy of *Bavaria* as her Dowry; but *Maximilian I.* being unwilling that the *Palatine* Family should rise so high, he encouraged the Princes of the House of *Bavaria*, who resided at *Munichen*, to dispute the Elector *Palatine's* Pretensions by War; so that at last the Dutchy of *Bavaria* came to

Albert, who was lineally descended from Duke *Stephen*; and he dying in 1577, was succeeded by his Son *Albert II.* or, as some call him, *Albert V.* who was so zealous a Papist, that he built and endowed several Colleges for Jesuits in *Lantzberg*, *Ingolstat*, and *Munichen*. He was succeeded by his Son *William*, as zealous a Papist as his Father, who dying in 1626, was succeeded by his Son *Maximilian*, who having join'd with *Ferdinand II.* against *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, that was chosen King of *Bohemia*, he was invested in the *Upper Palatinate*, and the Electoral Dignity at first for Life, when several Electors protested against it; but afterwards, in a Diet at *Prague* in 1628, it was confirmed to him and his Heirs, and ratified by the Treaty of *Munster*. He died in 1651, and was succeeded by his Son *Ferdinand*, who was noted for Reservedness and Piety, but not much for Valour or Learning. He died in 1679, and was succeeded by the present Elector *Maximilian Emanuel*, who was born in 1662; and declaring against the Emperor in Favour of *France*, and his Sister's Son the D. of *Anjou*, did, with the *French* Forces, raise War in the Empire, subdued Part of *Tirol*, and pushed his Conquests to the Frontiers of *Austria*; but his Army, and that of *France*, being routed at the famous Battle of *Hochstet*, he is dispossest of his Dominions, as is also his Brother the Elector of *Cologne*, and he was put into the Ban of the Empire in 1704. His eldest Son, *Albert Cajetanus John Joseph George*, was born in 1697. From the Branch of *Bavaria* came that of *Wartenberg*, by a Son of *Albert V.* The present Prince is *Francis Marquardus*, Count of *Wartenberg*, who is a Knight of the *Golden Fleece*.

The Elector's Titles are, - By the Grace of God, Duke of *Upper* and *Lower Bavaria*, and of the *Upper Palatinate*, Duke and Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, Elector and Grand Master of the Household to the Empire, Governor and Captain-General for his Catholic Majesty in the *Netherlands*, Landgrave of *Luchtenberg*, &c.

His Pretensions are, to the County of *Tirol*, to the Towns of *Ratisbon* and *Dona-wert*, to the Marq. of *Burgaw*, to the Viceriate of the Empire, and to some neighbouring Countries.

The Dominions belonging to him are, the *Upper* and *Lower Bavaria*, the *Upper Palatinate*, the County of *Cham*, the Landgraviate of *Luchtenberg*, the County of *Hag*, the Lordships of *Wisenberg*, and of *Mindelheim*, and the Town of *Donawert*.

His Arms are, *Lozange-wise*, *Argent* and *Azure*, of 2 1 Pieces Bend-wise, for *Bavaria*; 1. and 4. 1 *Sable*, a *Lion Or*, Crown'd *Langued*, and Arm'd *Gules*, for the *Palatinate*; 2. and 3. *Gules*, with an Imperial *Globe Or*, as *Electo*r, and *Grand Master* of the Household of the Empire.

The Elector of *Bavaria* was reckoned one of the powerfulest Princes in the Empire. His Territories are very populous; but his Subjects are not commonly reckon'd such good Soldiers as those in the neighbouring Countries, says Dr. *Nisbolsen*. He adds; That his Monopolies before-mention'd, with the great Imposts on all Commodities carried along the *Danube*, and other Navigable Rivers in his Country, with his own particular Domains, are sufficient to keep as great an Army as any of the other Electors.

His Court was very splendid, and his Great Officers and Ministers were generally Counts and Barons. His principal Councils were, 1. That call'd the *Court-Council*. 2. The *Privy-Council*. 3. Another call'd the *Chamber*. The Chief Lieutenants or Governors under him were, the Governor of the *Upper Palatinate*, the Administrators of *Birgshausen Landshut*, and *Straubingen*, with the Governors of *Munichen*, *Ingolstat*, and *Rodenberg*. His Standing Troops consisted of 14 Regiments of Foot, whereof 2 were of 2400 Men each, 5 of 2100 each, 2 of 1800 each, and 5 of 1200 each. His Cavalry were 10 Regiments, *viz.* the *Partizan*, *Carrabinier* and *Horse-Granadier* Guards, of 130 Men each; 3 Regiments of 940 Men each, 2 of 900 each, and 1 of 940; 7 of 'em being *Horse*, and 3 *Dragoons*.

The Country is divided into *Upper* and *Lower*: The former, which lies under the *Alps*, is cold and barren, affords but little Corn, and no Wine; but the latter, which lies on the Banks of the *Danube*, is scarce inferior to any Province of the Empire in Fruitfulness, Riches, and Pleasantness. There was formerly a strict Alliance betwixt the Family of *Bavaria* and those of *Brandenburg* and *Brunswick*; but since the

Reformation, that good Understanding betwixt them is broke off.

The chief Rivers are, the *Danube*, which runs through it, and divides the *Palatinate* from the *Dutchy*; the *Lech*, which divides it from the *Bishoprick* of *Augsburg*; the *Im*, the *Amber*, the *Iller*, the *Salz*, the *Nab*, and the *Regen*.

The chief Towns in Upper Bavaria.

1. *Munich* or *Munchen*, Lat. *Monachium*, supposed to be the *Kauβόρυον* of *Ptolemy*. *Aventinus* says, Duke *Henry XII* founded this City out of the Ruins of a Monastery; whence it had the Name of *Munichen*, and has the Picture of a Monk for its Arms. 'Tis the Metropolis of *Bavaria*, and the Seat of the Duke. It stands on the River *Isar*, in Long. 30. 30. Lat. 48. 3. 40 Miles S. from *Ingolstat*, about 60 N. from *Innsbruck*, and about 100 Miles W. from *Limtz*. 'Tis esteem'd one of the most pleasant, rich, and populous Cities of *Germany*. The *Isar* runs in Channels thro' many of the Streets; so that the richer Citizens have fair Fountains and Water-Works in their Houses, and the whole Town the Convenience of Mills within their Walls. This City has quarter'd 18000 Soldiers for a considerable Time. Most of its Inhabitants are Glasiors and Silk-Weavers, intermix'd with Nobility and Gentry that attend the Court. The adjacent Country hardly affords Corn to supply the Town. Great Quantities of Salt and Wine are vend'd here, especially at their two Fairs at *St. James-Tide*, and the Week after the Feast of the Three Kings. 'Tis govern'd by a Common-Council of 36, whereof 24 are call'd the Outer-House, and 12 the Inner; all superintended by 6 Aldermen, usually Persons of good Extraction.

The most remarkable Buildings are, The Elector's Palace, a stately and Royal Structure, fit to receive the greatest Monarch in *Europe*, with his Attendants and Guards. 'Twere endless to give a particular Description of all the Curiosities in it. The chief of 'em are, the Long Gallery; the *Antiquarium* or *Statuarium*, containing a vast Number of old and new Pieces in Marble, Wood, Stone, &c. The noble Foun-

Fountain in the middle of the Garden, on the Top of which stands *Perseus*, holding *Medusa's* Head in his Left Hand, and a drawn Sword in his Right, and her Body at his Feet; the Water gushing out of the Head and Neck in small Streams, as out of the Veins of a Body newly dissected: The several rare Water-Works and Grotto's: The Old Palace, wherein are reserv'd the Sword, and several other Relicks of Duke *Christopher*: The Library, wherein, besides a vast Collection of printed Books in all Languages, Ancient and Modern, there are a great many MSS. of good Note; amongst which, are these that follow: A Latin Treatise in Folio, in an old Square Character, pretended to be written by Pope *Clement I.* to *St. James* the Apostle: The New Testament in the *Indian*, *Armenian*, and *Wendish* Tongues: Three noble Volumes in Royal Paper, Folio, of Musical Compositions, by *Orlandi di Lasso*, and other famous Artists: A large Book of Medicinal Preparations, by that famous Italian Physician *Gratiano di Francolino*, &c. In the Chamber of Rarities, Things most observable are, A neat Perspective Globe, in the Circumference whereof you have the whole History of our Saviour's Passion; which being inverted, shews the Elevation of the Serpent in the Wilderness on one Side, and the Crucifixion of our Saviour on the other: A Landskip in Coral: The Figure of *Parnassus* in the same Substance, with the 9 Muses plac'd round it: Flowers and Plants cast in Gold: Several Drawers full of ancient and modern Coins and Medals: A Landskip lively representing Buildings, Fields, Woods, &c. in their proper Colours, made of Stones of different Colours, laid in Wood: Idols, and Heathenish Gods and Goddesses, of various Sorts: The Picture of *Christopher Proschammer*, a notorious Murderer, who is said to have committed 345 Murders with his own Hand, and to have been privy to 400 more, committed by other Persons: With many other Curiosities in Art and Nature.

The next Place worth seeing is the Jesuits College, a Princely Fabrick, by some reckoned the stateliest Piece of new Building (next to the *Escorial* in Spain) that Europe affords. It consists of two large Quadrangles, besides Cloisters, wherein are a vast Number of Lodging and Dining-

Rooms, Schools, &c. and 800 Cross-Windows. The Church, built after the Italian Manner, and dedicated to *St. Michael* the Archangel, is now the usual Burying-place for the Electors and Princes of *Bavaria*. The first of that Race here entomb'd was *Renata*, a Daughter of *Lorraine*, and Wife of *William*, the Founder of this Church and College, who died May 23, 1602. Behind the Quire they have their Treasury, where there's a vast deal of Wealth, besides Golden and Silver Crucifixes, Candlesticks, Chalices, rich Tapestry, and other Church Ornaments.

The *Dom Kirch*, or chief Church in the City, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is beautified with two delicate Towers, each of 'em 333 Foot high, and enrich'd with the Relicks of *St. Benno*. 'Twas at first only a Chapel of Ease to *St. Peter's* Church; but in 1271, was made a Parish-Church. 'Tis govern'd by a Provost, Dean, and 13 Canons.

The *Franciscan* Monastery is worth an *Englishman's* View; 1. Because of the neat Piece of Clock-Work, which represents the Postures of two *English* Cavaliers, to whom an Angel blows a Trumpet. 2. For our Countryman *William Occam's* Sake, who having for some Years stoutly maintain'd Duke *Ludowick's IV's* Cause against the Pope, was here buried in 1347. This City was built in 962, and walled round in 1156. *Gustavus Adolphus* took it in 1632; but would not suffer the Palace or Town to be sack'd, saying, It were pity to deprive the World of such a City, and to ruine such a Palace, that ought to stand to the End of Time. Most of the Houses are well built, and finely painted on the Outside. The Market-place is extreme fine, and the Houses round it uniform, with Piazza's under them, in which there are many rich Shops. Mr. Ray, in his Travels, says, 'tis the fairest City in *Germany* for its Bigness: The Streets are broad and regular; and in the Elector's Gardens, there's a vast Number of Aloe-Trees: He thinks *Europe* cannot produce the like in Number, both for their Stalk and Flowers. There's an *English* Nursery in this City, with Pews after the *English* Fashion, which is not customary in *Papish* Countries, where they have generally moveable Chairs and Benches. M, Missen,

in his Voyage to *Italy*, says, Tho' the City be beautiful, 'tis but indifferently fortified, scarce half so big as *Augsburg*, and has little Trade; but we suppose he excepts the Time of their Fairs. He says, the Jesuits shew'd him a Joint as big as that of an Elephant, which they pretended to be one of St. *Christopher's* Back-Bones. He says, the Outside of the Electoral Palace does not answer the Inside; for tho' it be a vast Structure, 'tis not very regular, because built at several Times. The great Hall of the Elector's Apartment is 118 Foot long, and 52 broad, full of curious Historical Pictures, the Sacred on the one Side, and the Prophane on the other; and each of 'em has a Latin Inscription in Verse annex'd. In the little Chapel belonging to the Electress's Apartment, there's nothing almost to be seen but Gold, Pearls, and Gems. The Parlour of Perspectives is extreme fine; but the Hall of Antiquities brought hither from *Rome* exceeds all the rest, there being no less than 192 Busts, and 400 other Pieces here, much esteemed for their Workmanship and Antiquity. The Furniture of the Palace is rich, beyond Imagination; and besides the Tapestry in Use, they reckon'd in the Wardrobe to the Value of some Millions of Crowns. In the Treasury, there are whole Services of Gold, and many other Precious Vessels, vast Numbers of Pearls, Diamonds, Rubies, and other Precious Stones, with a vast Number of rare Pictures, curious Works, Medals, and such like Rarities; and among the rest, a Cherry-stone, with 140 Heads distinctly engraven upon it, and a Boat of Palm-Tree Wood turn'd into Stone. Wherever one turns their Eye in this Palace, there's nothing to be seen but Marble, which Mr. *Misson* says is an artificial Composition, but so well harden'd and polish'd, that it looks like natural Marble.

2. *Freyding*, which for its Antiquity deserves the next Place. 'Tis supposed to have been founded by the *Romans*, when they subdued *Noricum*, &c. and by them to have been called *Fruxinum*, *Fruxinium*, or *Fruinia*, from whence comes its present Name. The neighbouring Hill, on which stands St. *Stephen's* Monastery, was formerly called *Teutonia Mons*, because of an Altar there to their Idol *Teut*. Others call it *Theo-*

donis Mons, from the Palace of *Theodo*, one of their Princes, where he and his Successors kept their Court, and among others King *Pepin*, whose Name, *Pepinhausen*, and some other neighbouring Villages, still retain. The Town and Bishop's Palace, with its Dependencies, lies pleasantly on the Bank of the *Mosack*, 20 Miles N. E. from *Munichen*, where there's abundance of fair Fields and Parks. Christianity was planted here about 444, when there was a Chapel dedicated to the Virgin, where their Cathedral now stands. Pope *Gregory II.* made it a Bishop's See about 716, and his Successors continued there till most of the Town was destroyed by the *Swedes* in 1632. The See was restor'd in 1639, and is commonly enjoy'd by a *Bavarian* Prince, who owns the Archbishop of *Salzburg* for Metropolitan. The famous Bishop of this See was Otto I. Son to *Leopold* Marquis of *Austria*. He founded the large Monastery of *Newstift* near this Town, with several others. He attended *Conrad II.* to the *Holy Land*, and died in 1158. His Memory is still famous for his Work, called, *Ottonis Frisingensis Chronologia*, which gives a Judicious Account of the most remarkable Revolutions of all the chief Governments of the World, from the Creation to his own Time. *Waldo*, their 9th Bishop, is famous for having translated the Four Evangelists into old *Frankish* Rhimes, for the Use of the common People. Bishop *Rhenanus* concludes from this Book, That the *French* had their Origine from this Country, and that their ancient Language was *High-Dutch*.

3. *Ingolstadt*, near the *Danube*, about 27 Miles N. W. from *Freyfingen*. This, with other Towns in *Germany*, and *Angleria* in *Italy*, are thought by *Cambden* to have deriv'd their Names from the *Angli*, who sent Colonies into these Countries. Hence some Historians call it *Anglopolis*. Others call it *Ortopolis*, and *Oreantum*. *Bertius* says, the Emperor *Ludowick IV.* first made it a City, and wall'd it about 1412, it being a large Town before. *George the Rich* founded a strong Castle, which is still its chief Defence; and Duke *William* compleated the Fortifications about 1537. It stands in a plain and fruitful Country: The Houses are generally well built, and the Streets uniform and fair. 'Tis famous for 3 Things;

1. The

8. The *Gymnasium*, which has the same Privileges with the Universities of *Bonnania* and *Vienna*; and here the great *Beharmin*, *Obertus*, *Gifanius*, and *Petrus Sapiamus*, were educated. 2. For the great Siege it held out against the Protestants in 1545; of which, *Slidan* and others give an Account. It likewise held out against *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1632. 3. For its impregnable Castle, mention'd before; to which *Dr. Nicholson* adds a 4th, viz. the Image of the Virgin in their great Church, which, with its Workmanship and Jewels, cost 50000 Crowns: 'Tis of pure Gold, and a considerable Bulk. Before it, there kneels a French King of the same Metal, but of a less Size, with a long Purple Robe, enamell'd with yellow Flower-de-Luces; and near it, stands another small Image of *St. Michael*, compos'd of Jewels and Precious Stones, with a Pair of Scales in his Hand. This is reckoned the strongest Place of *Bavaria*, and has one of the finest Arsenals in Germany. 'Twas surrender'd to the Confederates after the Battle of *Mochsted*.

4. *Donawert*, has its Name from the *Danube*, on which it stands, about 25 Miles W. from *Ingolstat*. All Travellers who go up or down the River are obliged to land here, and pay a small Toll, which brings the Town a great deal of Money; as does likewise the Passage of their Bridge over the *Danube*, because it stands near so many great Towns, viz. about 14 German Miles from *Munichen*, 12 from *Nuremberg*, 3 from *Nordlingen*, 5 from *Weissenburg*, and 6 from *Augsburg*. 'Tis a strong Town, revolted from the Duke of *Bavaria* in 1420, was made an Imperial Town by the Emperor *Sigismund*, and continu'd so till 1607, that it was proscrib'd by *Rodolph II.* for embracing the Protestant Religion, and afterwards taken by the Duke of *Bavaria*. The *Swedes* took it twice in the Civil Wars of Germany; but 'twas restor'd to *Bavaria* by the Treaty of *Munster* in 1648. Near this Town lies *Schellenberg*, a fortified Mountain, which serves instead of a Castle to the Town, famous for the Defeat given to the French and *Bavarians* there in July, 1704. chiefly by the English and Scots, when they forc'd the Enemy's Trenches with incredible Bravery, and soon after made themselves Masters of *Donawert*.

5. *Rain*, on the *Lech*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Donawert*, a very well fortified Town, and one of the Keys of *Bavaria*.

6. *Landsparg*, on the River *Lech*, 6 German Miles from *Augsburg*. The Jesuits have a College here, which is one of the first they had in the Empire, from whence there's a fine Prospect of the neighbouring Country.

7. *Oettingen*, Old and New, in a Plain, betwixt the River *Imm* and the Mountains, about 50 Miles E. from *Munichen*. These Towns were formerly one, and much larger than now. Some fancy it to have been the *Oenipons* of the Romans. *Otto* Duke of *Bavaria*, and his Brother *Theodo*, had their Palace here, and were baptiz'd by *St. Rupert* about 616, as some would prove from an old Inscription found here. These Princes founded the two ancientest Churches in the Empire, dedicated to the Virgin, the one at *Ratisbon*, where *Theodo* usually kept his Court, and the other at *Osten*. In the latter, there's a fair Image of the Virgin, curiously done in Wood, which is said to have been presented to *Theodo* by *St. Rupert*. In 910, all the Town was destroy'd by the Huns, except the Virgin's Chapel. 'Tis the *Loretto* of Germany, and much enrich'd by the Presents of superstitious People, whom the Jesuits persuade that many Miracles have been done by this Image, *St. Philip's Arm*, and other Relicks they keep here.

8. *Tegernsee*, so called from the *Lacus Tegurinus*, on which it stands. It has a famous Monastery betwixt the *Iser* and *Imm*, about 30 Miles S. E. from *Munichen*, near the Foot of the *Alps*. 'Twas founded by *Albert* and *Oskar*, two *Bavarian* Princes, is well fortified with a Wall and Ditch, and the Abbot takes Place in publick Convocations before all the Abbots and Priors of the Country.

9. *Scheyren*, in Latin *Schyrum*, formerly a Town of good Note, and the Residence of the Dukes; but now remarkable only for a Monastery of *Benedictines*, where 120 Dukes and Dutcheffes of *Bavaria* lie entomb'd.

10. *Wasserburg*, on the River *Imm*, about 32 Miles S. from *Munichen*, a pretty little Town, strong by its Situation, at the Conflux of another River into the *Imm*, and Capital of a County of the same Name, which

was united to *Bavaria* by *Otho the Illustrious*, in 1247.

11. *Hag*, a little Town near the *Inn*, about 5 Miles N. from *Wasserburg*, Capital of a County united to *Bavaria* in 1567. 'Tis govern'd by its own Laws.

12. *Muldorf*, on the *Inn*, about 12 Miles N. E. from *Hag*. 'Tis a small Town, but famous for a Victory gain'd here by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* over *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, whom he took Prisoner in 1322.

13. *Burkhausen*, a strong Town on the River *Salzach*, the *Bedacum* of the Ancients, 10 Miles S. E. from *Muldorf*.

14. *Branaw*, on the *Inn*, 12 Miles E. from *Muldorf*, a Town very well fortified, which held out a strong Siege against the *Swedes* in 1632.

15. *Scharding*, a very pretty Town, on the Conflux of the Rivers *Inn* and *Rott*, 17 Miles N. E. from *Branaw*.

The chief Cities and Towns in Lower Bavaria.

1. **R** *Ariobon*, by the Germans called *Rugenfurg*, the chief City in the Circle of *Bavaria*, and the only Imperial Town in the Elector's Dominions. It lies on the S. Side of the *Danube*, in Long. 31. Lat. 49. near 60 Miles N. E. from *Munichen*, and 60 from *Augsburg*. There are two old Inscriptions here, the one over the outermost Gate upon the great Stone-Bridge, the other in a Tower near St. Peter's Gate, which say, That *Tiberius*, Son-in-Law to *Augustus*, pitch'd his Tents here, and called the Place *Augusta Tiberii*, or *Augusta Colonia Tiberii*; but this is not taken Notice of in *Antonin's* Tables, or in the *Notitia Imperii*, and seems to be contradicted by *Tacitus*, who says, the Romans had but one Colony in *Rætia*, which was the *Augusta Vindelicorum*, now *Augsburg* in *Swabia*. The modern Name comes from the River *Regen*, which runs by one Side of the Town into the *Danube*; and the Name of *Ratisbona* was given it, because of its being a Harbour for Vessels on the *Danube*. *La Forge* says, the Dukes of *Bavaria* possess'd it till 1180, that the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* made it an Imperial Town. It has still the Remains of

the Palaces and Houses of the chief Nobility of the old Dukes of *Bavaria*, which are venerable Pieces of Architecture; and there's yet a Place in the Corn-Market called the Duke's Palace, tho' there are scarce any Remains of it now to be seen. The Elector *Palatine* had formerly two other fair Palaces here, one of 'em sold to St. *Emmeran's* Monastery, and the other by the Wooden Bridge which leads to the *Under Werth* of the *Danube*; but he was forced to quit his Pretensions to any Thing in this City, by reason of his Quarrel with the Citizens about the Royalty of the *Danube*, which still occasions Controversies betwixt them and the House of *Bavaria*. The City is large, populous, and well fortified, with a double Wall, Ditches, and Rampires; and the Situation is such, as affords every Thing for the Pleasure and Profit of the Inhabitants. The neighbouring Fields abound with all sorts of Corn and Pasturage, besides Vineyards, which produce a strong and palatable Wine, scarce inferior to the best *Rhenish*. They have a large Trade, by reason of the *Danube*; and the *Regen* and other neighbouring Rivers supply them with Plenty of Fish. The Houses are generally well built, and the Streets large. In one of the old-fashion'd Houses over against the Town-Hall, there's a famous Monument, representing the Emperor *Henry the Fowler*, and a Duel betwixt a Turk and a Nobleman of this City in 913, with the exact Figure of the Launces, Armour, and Habit of those Times. The Turk's Armour continued above 600 Years in the Church of the Monastery of *Nider Munster*, till *Charles V.* begg'd it of the Abbess. His Helmet was of cast Brass, and weigh'd 20 Pound. His Harness was a long Coat of an Elephant's Skin, almost cover'd over with thick Bosses of Iron nail'd upon it. His Shield was of well polish'd Steel, upon which was engrav'd the Picture of a Devil, with a Spear in his Hand. His Sword was two Yards and a half long, and near 5 Inches broad. 'Tis the See of a Bishop, who, *Goldsastus* says, is not subject to the Archbishop of *Salzburg*, but depends immediately on the Pope. They embrac'd the *Augsburg* Confession in 1442; but the Bishop, who is Lord of the neighbouring Territory, has Maß said in the Cathedral every

every Week. The most remarkable Thing in this Cathedral is *St. Emeran* or *Hemeran's* Monastery, who came hither from *Poitiers* in *France* to preach about 640. During his Stay, *Duke Theodo's* Daughter being got with Child by a *Bavarian* Knight, he persuaded her to lay the Bastard to *Emeran*, who being then on his Journey to *Rome*, was pursued and killed by her Brother. But his Innocency being afterwards discover'd, his Corps was brought hither, and buried in *St. George's Church*, where *Duke Theodo* immediately founded a *Benedictine* Monastery, and enjoin'd them to own *St. Peter* and *St. Emeran* for their Patrons. In this Monastery, they pretend to shew the Tomb of *Diomysius* the *Arcopagite*, whose Bones they alledge were brought hither by the Emperor *Arnulf*, their great Benefactor. This occasioned a great Dispute betwixt the Monks of this Place, and those of *St. Dennis* in *France*; for both of them pretended to his Body, as they do still; tho' Pope *Leo IX.* who was a *German*, forbid those of *St. Dennis* to lay Claim to it. The Monks here boast also of some of the Virgin's Hair, a Piece of the Crown of Thorns, and a Part of the Cross. They have three Books of great Antiquity and Value; the first, a Latin Copy of the Four Evangelists, writ in Gold Letters, and in an old *Lombard* Character, by two of this Fraternity, in 870. 'Tis adorned with Bosses of Pearl, and Clasps of Gold, and was presented to the Emperor *Charles the Bald*, whose Picture is before it, and was given to this Monastery by the Emperor *Arnulf*. The 2d is another MSS. of the Gospels, writ in 754, by an Anonymous Bishop of 90 Years of Age, in a delicate ancient Character; but not so richly embellish'd as the other. The 3d is a curious Register of the Exploits of *Attila* the *Hun*. The Abbot depends immediately on the Pope, to whom he pays an Annual Tribute. *Apollonius* studied the Greek, of which he was so great a Master, in this Monastery about 697. The Bishops of *Ratisbon* did usually make their Residence here. The Stone Bridge over the *Danube* is worth a Traveller's Observation: It was built at the equal Charge of *Henry X.* of *Bavaria*, and the City, was begun in 1135, and finished in 1156. It consists of 15 large Arches, supported by square Pillars, defend-

ded from the Violence of the Water, and the Shoals of Ice in Winter, by sharp three-corner'd Buttresses. 'Tis 23 Foot broad, and 1091 long. There are 3 fair Towers built upon it, and they shew Travellers the greatest Stone used at the Building of it, with the least of the same Figure inclos'd in it; by which they are enigmatically given to understand, that all the Stones used in this Structure are cut exactly into one and the same Figure. The *Germans* will not believe that any Traveller has been here, whatever Account you give him of the Town, except you give them an Account of those Stones, and their Meaning. *La Ferret* says, the Papists here have the Cathedral, and 90 other Churches; but the Lutherans are most numerous, and have the Government. He alledges, the Burgers have a Privilege to throw their Children into the *Danube* if they be incorrigible, without being call'd to an Account for it.

That which makes this City most famous, is the Diet of the Empire held here. For their Manner of Sitting, we refer to the Cut of the Diet, *Page 509.* *Dr. Nicholson* and the *Atlas Historique* give us the following Account of the Colleges which compose the Diet, and of their Manner of Proceeding.

'Tis a General Assembly of all the Estates of the Empire, and may properly be called its Parliament. 'Tis summoned by the Emperor, with Advice of the Electors, after they have agreed upon the Time, Place, and Occasion. Upon which the Emperor sends Letters sign'd with his own Hand, and counter-sign'd by the Vice-Chancellor of the Empire, to each of the Princes and States 6 Months before it be open'd, to come thither in Person, or to send their Deputies, which they are obliged to obey upon their Allegiance. He does not write to such Abbots and Bishops as are not Princes, but only to their Directors, who give them Notice of it.

While the Empire was in the Hands of the *French*, the Princes were all obliged to appear in Person, except they were excused by the Emperor and Electors; but now most of 'em send their Deputies, to save Charges, which makes their Proceedings much slower, because their Deputies are

frequently obliged to send to them for Instructions in Cases of Importance: And since the Time of *Maximilian*, many of 'em have even forborn to send Deputies; yet they are as much obliged to submit to the Resolves of the Diet as if they did: But sometimes, in Cases of great Importance, the Emperor not only sends Letters, but Ambassadors, to require their Presence; and in such Cases as require Dispatch, those who do not send, make their Ambassadors Plenipotentiaries. The Emperor has Power, with Advice of the Electors, to call the Diet at what Place he pleases, provided it be within the Bounds of the Empire; but 'tis now generally held here, because of the Conveniency of its Situation, and of the easy Passage which many of the Members have by the *Danube*; and all the Princes bear their own Charge, or that of their Deputies. When they arrive, they give Notice to Count *Papenheim*, Hereditary Marshal of the Empire under the Elector of *Saxony*, who assigns each of 'em their Lodgings according to their Quality, and writes down their Names. If the Emperor be present, they beg Audience of him, shew him their Summons, thank him for calling the Diet, and promise Concurrence for the Good of the Empire. If the Emperor be not there, the Princes send Gentlemen to acquaint the Director of *Mentz* with their Arrival; but if they be Deputies, they send their Secretaries with their full Powers; and the Deputies of Towns do the same. When they are all arrived, the Marshal of the Empire acquaints them with the Time and Place, where the Emperor or his Commissary is to tell them what he has to propose. If the Emperor be there, he goes in his Robes to the Place, and sits down on his Throne, to which he ascends by three Steps. The Electors sit on a Bench, to which they ascend by two, and the Princes upon other Benches not raised so high. If the Emperor be absent, his Commissary, or a Prince whom he chuses, acquaints them with the Occasion of their Meeting. If the Emperor be there before they proceed to Business, they attend him to Church, where publick Prayers are made for a Blessing upon their Consultations. Then they return to the Place of Diet, and having heard the Proposals, the Elector of

Trent, in the Name of the States, thanks the Emperor for calling a Diet; and the Secretary of the Empire receiving the Proposals from the Vice-Chancellor, reads them. After which, each of the Colleges retire to their particular Apartments to deliberate upon them; and after having maturely consider'd them, they agree upon a Day when they are to meet, and to communicate their Thoughts to one another, in order to agree on a Resolve; which being done, they send it to the Emperor; and if it be approved by him, it becomes a Law or Constitution of the Empire. The Princes of the Empire are divided into two Benches, called the Spiritual and Secular. The first Reason of which was, as Dr. *Nicholson* says, because formerly the Secular Princes did not meddle with the Affairs of the Church, nor the Ecclesiasticks with those of the State; but when the Popes brought all Ecclesiastical Affairs to their own Tribunals, such of the Prelates as had no Temporal Jurisdiction were excluded from the Diet. The Arch-Dukes of *Austria* and the Dukes of *Burgundy* sit on the Ecclesiastical Bench, because they are Princes of more than ordinary Eminence; and the Master of the *Teutonic* Order is allow'd the same Privilege. The *Lutheran* Prelates were formerly excluded from the Diet; but could have no Redress, notwithstanding their frequent Protestations, till by the Treaty of *Westphalia* they were allow'd a Place by themselves. All the Ecclesiastical and Secular Members have not equal Votes; for such of both as have Princely Dignities, are allow'd single Votes; but those who have not, give their Votes by Companies, as the Deputies of the Towns of the Bench of the *Rhine*, and of the Bench of *Swabia*. Formerly the Counts and Barons were also divided into two Benches, called those of *Wetteravia* and *Swabia*, when each Bench was allowed but one Vote; but now the Counts of *Franconia* and *Westphalia*, which includes those of *Saxony*, are allow'd two Benches and two Votes; the former since 1641, and the latter since 1654.

The Deputies of the Imperial Towns make up the Third Rank of Members; but when they came to that Privilege, is not certain; tho' the Chronicle of *Spire* says, That several of 'em had this Privilege in the

the 13th Century, which Dr. *Nicholson* thinks to have been only the Cities of *Italy*; and that those called Imperial in the Empire, were not allowed a Vote till the 14th Century. The Deputies of the City where the Diet is held sit at a Table by themselves, and there take an Account of the Voices of the other Delegates which are brought to them, and register'd by the two Registers of *Ulm* and *Spires*; the former representing the Cities in the Circle of the *Rhine*, and the latter those of *Swabia*.

Historians tell us, That the greatest Disputes in the Diet happen about Precedency, in which they spend more Time than in debating the Emperor's Proposals. Another Part of their Time they say is too frequently spent in Drinking-Matches, for which the Emperor *Ferdinand* did sharply reprehend them. A third Part of their Time is spent about the Power of the Diet, shewing in what Cases they may or may not be controlled or curbed by the Emperor: And the last Part of their Time is spent on the Emperor's Proposals about Peace or War, making or annulling of Laws, regulating the Coin, or raising Taxes, and such other Affairs of State.

They sit in a large and stately upper Room in the Town-Hall, richly hung with curious Tapestry and Needle-work. The Emperor's Throne is cover'd with Cloth of Gold, and the Chairs and Benches of the other Princes and States are cover'd with Cloth of Silver, Velvet, Satin, Silk, &c. according to their several Qualities.

The Order of their Sitting is thus: The Way how the Electors sit, may be seen in the Cut, Page 509. The Ecclesiastical Princes sit on the Right Hand thus:

The Arch-Duke of Austria.

The Duke of Burgundy.

The Archbishop of Saltzburg.

The Grand Master of the

Teutonic Order.

The Bishops of

Lubeck.

Osnabrug.

N.B. Those marked with A, have the Precedency of one another alternatively. Those marked with C, contend for Precedency.

The Abbesses who are Princesses send Deputies.

The Bishops of

Bamberg.

Wurtzburg.

Aichstet.

Spires.

Strasburg.

Constance.

Augsburg.

Hildesheim.

Paderborn.

Freisengen.

Ratisbon.

Passaw.

Trent.

Brixen.

Balle.

Liege.

Osnabrug.

Munster.

Chur or Choire.

The Abbots of

Fulden.

Kempten.

Elwangen.

Luders.

Mourbach.

Great Master of Malta.

Bergtholsgaden.

Weissenburg.

Prume.

Stablo.

Corveii.

The Prelates of

Swabia and the Rhine.

The Secular Princes sit on the Left Hand thus:

The Dukes of

Bavaria.

Lawteren.

Simmeren.

Neuburg.

Magdeburg.

Bremen.

Deux-Ponts.

Saxe-Altenburg.

..... Coburg.

..... Weimar.

..... Gotha.

..... Eissenach.

..... Simmeren.

The Dukes of

Brand. Culmbach.

..... Anspach.

Brunfw. Wolfenbittel.

..... Zell.

..... Grubenhagen.

..... Calemberg.

Halberstadt.

Verden.

Pomerania Ult.

Pomerania Post.

Mecklenburg Swerin.

..... Gustrow.

Wirtemberg.

Hesse-Cassel.

Darmstadt.

Baden Baden.

..... Durlach.

..... Hochberg.

Saxe-Lawenburg.

Minden.

Holstein-Gluckstat.

..... Gottorf.

Savoy.

Luchtemberg.

Anhalt.

Henneberg.

Swerin.

Ratzburg.

Hirshfeld.

Lorrain.

Nomeni.

Montbelliard.

Aremberg.

Hohenzöllern.

Eggenberg.

Lobkowits.

Salms.

Dietrichstein.

Piedlomini.

Nassau Hademar.

..... Siegen.

..... Dillenberg.

Aversberg.

Oostfrize.

Fürstemberg.

Oetingen.

Schwartzenburg.

Mindelheim.

The Counts of

Swabia.

Wetteravia.

Franconia.

Westphalia.

The Imperial Cities of the Bench of the Rhine are,

Cologne.

Aix la Chapelle.

Strasburg.

Lubeck.

Worms.

Spires.

Francfort am Main.

Wetzlar.

Gelnhausen.

Haguenaw.

Colmar.

Homburg.

Bremen.

Goslar.

Mulhausen.

Northausen.

Schlestat.

Weissenburg.

Landaw.

Obernheim.

Keiſſersberg.

Munster au Val de

St. Gregorie.

Rosheim.

Turchein.

Dortmont.

Friedberg.

The Imperial Towns of the Bench of Swabia are,

Ratisbon.

Augsburg.

Nuremberg.

Ulm.

Memmingen.

Kaufburen.

Esslingen.

Revelingen.

Nortlingen.

Dinkelspiel.

Bibrach.

Alen.

Bopfingen.

Gingen.

Rotemburg.

Burchaw on the Te-

der-See.

Lentkerch.

Swinfort.

Hall in Swabia.

Rotweil.

Überlingen.

Pfulendorf.

Weil.

Hailbron.

Buchorn.

Wangen.

Gemond.

Lindau.

Ravensburg.

Winheim.

Wempfen.

Offenburg.

Zell à Namersbach.

Kempten.

Weissenburg.

Gengenbach.

The *Atlas Historique* says, That the Princes who have a Right to sit in the College of Princes, are those who have a deliberative and decisive Voice, and who contribute to the Support of the Empire, according to the *Matricula*. The Directors of this College are, the Archbishop of *Salzburg*, the Arch-Duke of *Austria*, and the Duke of *Burgundy*, who preside by Turns, as every new Matter comes to be debated; and the Votes are alternately taken of the Secular and Ecclesiastical Bench. They are gathered

ther'd by Count *Papenheim*: After which, the Archbishop of *Salzburg* and the Arch-Duke draw up the Result, to report it to the Diet. Such Princes as possess several Dominions, which have a Right of Voting, have so many Votes accordingly. Thus the Elector of *Bavaria* has two, as Duke of *Bavaria*, and Prince of *Lichtenberg*: The Elector of *Saxony* has five, and the Elector of *Brandenburg* four. We have mention'd already, That in the College of the Towns, the Magistrates of the City where the Diet is held are the Directors of that College; and in the Electoral College, the Elector of *Mentz* is Director.

The *Atlas* informs us, That there is another Assembly of the States of the Empire, called the *Assembly of Deputations*, where the Deputies chosen for that End determine Things that have been referred to them by a Diet; or when the Elector of *Mentz*, in the Emperor's Name, summons the Deputies, at the Request of the Directors or Captains of one or more Circles, to take Order about their Affairs, or to appease Controversies, which they are not able to do of themselves.

2. *Straubingen*, on the *Danube*, 20 Miles E. from *Ratisbon*, a Town of good Trade, well fortified, and has a Bridge over the *Danube*.

3. *Landshut*, the chief Town in *Lower Bavaria*, and the Seat of the Elector's Lieutenant, who has a Court here, and several Officers for the Government of the Country, which consists of 6 Bailiwicks, 32 Market-Towns, 14 Monasteries, and 74 Noblemen's Seats, with their Dependencies. 'Twas built by *Otho* of *Bavaria*, the first of that Name of the Line of *Wittelsbach*, when *Ratisbon* threw off his Yoke, and became an Imperial Town; and being in the middle of his Territories, and a pleasant Country, he built a Palace here, fortified the Town as much as he could, and call'd it by this Name, which signifies the Bulwark of the Country. His Son Duke *Ladomick* enlarged it, and added the Castle about 1204. The Town is generally well built, being formerly much frequented by the Nobility, who attended the Court, and now by the Elector's Officers above-mention'd. *St. Martin's Church*, the Chief in the Town, has a Tower, which is thought to be the highest

in the Empire. The new Buildings in the Duke's Palace are a neat Piece of Architecture, after the *Italian Manner*.

4. *Passaw*, in Latin *Passavia*, or *Patavia*. Some derive the Name from its being a Passage over the River, which the two German Monosyllables, *Pas* and *Aw*, seem to import. Others say, That it comes from the Word *Battavia*, because it formerly held out a great Siege against the *Dutch*; but this seems too much strain'd, *Clauversius*, *Bertius*, and other Learned Men, think, that the Part of the Town called *Instadt*, on the S. Side of the *Danube*, and the E. Side of the *Inn*, is the ancientest, and was the *Bodojurnum* of the Ancients. That properly called *Passaw*, lies on the S. Side of the *Danube*, and on the W. Side of the *Inn*; and that called *Ilst*, lies on the N. Side of the *Danube*, and on the E. Side of the *Ilz*. The River *Inn*, which gives Name to that Part of the Town called *Instadt*, empties it self into the *Danube* with such Force, that it keeps its Stream unmix'd for a long way, which is easy to be seen from the different Colours, tho' in the same Channel. The *Ilz* or *Ilx*, which gives Name to that Part of the Town on the N. Side of the *Danube*, is also discernable for several Furlongs, tho' in the same Channel with the *Danube*. This City is fortified on all Sides by Rocks or Rivers, and therefore is as strong by Nature almost, as any Town in *Bavaria* is by Art. This City is large, is an Imperial Town, but under the Protection of its Bishop, who is a Prince of the Empire, and the Magistrates act by his Commission, tho' the City pays some Acknowledgment to the Elector of *Bavaria*. The Bishop, who is Lord of the City, and of the Country about 20 Miles in Extent on the N. Side of the *Danube*, has a stately Palace here, and is Suffragan of *Salzburg*. Most of the Houses are of Timber; but the Bishop's Palace, and the Castle on a Mountain near *Ilstadt*, are handsome Stone Buildings. Their Churches are likewise fair and stately, especially the Cathedral dedicated to *St. Stephen*, which is a neat and sumptuous Fabrick, adorn'd with a great many fair Tombs and Monuments. This City is famous for the Treaty of Peace betwixt the Emperor *Charles V.* and *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* in 1552, by which the

Lutherans had the free Exercise of their Religion granted them in the Empire. It was taken by the Elector of *Bavaria* in 1793; but he was soon after obliged to abandon it. It lies 52 Miles E. from *Landshut*, and 60 S. E. from *Ratisbon*. The Bishoprick has *Bohemia* on the N. *Bavaria* on the S. and W. and *Austria* on the E. Several Towns in *Austria*, and Lordships in *Bavaria*, are Parts of the Diocese, which of late has commonly been govern'd by an *Austrian* Prince, and has 80000 Crowns of Annual Revenue. The River *Ilz* produces Pearls, which belong to the Emperor and the Elector of *Bavaria*, each of whom have an Officer here to take Care of their Interests. Dr. Brown says, That most of the City was not many Years ago consum'd by Fire; so that 'tis now rebuilt after the *Italian* Manner, and reckon'd one of the 10 considerable Cities on the *Danube*. There is a Bridge over the *Im* betwixt *Passau* and the Town called *Innsbruck*.

In this Diocese there's likewise *Obernberg*, a small City, with a good Castle, which has a Privilege to exact a Toll of all those that pass by the River *Im*, and is the usual Residence of the Bishop of *Passau*. It lies about 15 Miles S. W. from *Passau*. *Reichenberg*, a small City near *Obernberg*, is likewise a Place of the Bishop's Residence.

5. *Mosburg*, a Town and County betwixt *Landshut* and *Freyung*, betwixt the Conflux of the *Isar* and *Amber*, and mid-way betwixt *Freyung* and *Landshut*. Some reckon it, next to *Ratisbon*, the oldest Town in *Bavaria*, but without any Reason. 'Tis a fair and pleasant Town, was annexed to *Bavaria* by Duke *Ludowick*, and has 28 Towns of good Rank, besides a great many Villages, which come to a Court held there for Justice. 'Twas formerly govern'd by Counts of its own.

6. The great and famous Monasteries of *Upper* and *Lower Altaich*, about 5 German Leagues from one another, on the Banks of the *Danube*. Latin Authors call them *Altaka*, from two great old Oaks under which the Heathen Priests used to sacrifice; but the *Bavarians*, when converted, built Churches here, that were afterwards turn'd into Monasteries. The Counts of *Pogen* were formerly Protectors of those Monasteries; but now they are immediately subject to

the Elector of *Bavaria*, who disposes of the Revenues and the Government as he pleases.

7. *Abach*, a fair Market-Town on the *Danube*, about 8 Miles S. W. from *Ratisbon*, noted for the Birth of *Henry II.* and for several Pieces of *Roman* Antiquities which have been dug up in the Neighbourhood. It has likewise a good Bath, which being artificially heated, is a ready Cure for Melancholy, Apoplexies, Dropsies, &c.

The Upper Palatinate of Bavaria or Nortgow.

IT has the latter Name, because 'tis the most Northerly Part of the Dutchy of *Bavaria*. It has *Bohemia* on the E. *Franconia* on the W. *Misia* on the N. and the *Danube* on the S. which separates it from the rest of *Bavaria*. *Molt* makes it about 77 Miles long from N. to S. and where 'tis broadest, 'tis much of the same Extent. The Country is rocky and rough, but pleasant to the Eye. They have Plenty of a harsh sort of Wine, and in some Parts store of Corn and Grass; but their chief Riches come from Mines of Silver, Copper, and Iron. They export great Quantities of the latter to neighbouring Countries. In 1664, there were found at *Freyung* in this Country two remarkable Sorts of Lead-Ore, which were sent, with some Specimens of other Metals, to our Royal Society. One of 'em is a kind of Chrystalline Stone, almost all good Lead; the other not so rich; but both of singular Use for Essays upon the Coppel. On the S. W. Corner of this Province there are two small Rivers, *Altmühl* and *Regnitz*; the first falls into the *Danube*, and the latter into the *Main*, and by consequence into the *Rhine*. Betwixt the Heads of those two Rivers, which are at no great distance, *Charles the Great* began a Canal; with a Design to make a Passage betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Danube*. Part of this Canal is still to be seen near *Weissenburg*, towards the Head of the *Regnitz*; but Dr. *Nicholson* informs us, That the Men employ'd in it were obliged to desist by the Fall of excessive Rains, and the Appearance of strange Specters; of which, we leave the Reader to make his own Judgment.

This

This Country was, upon the Partition of the Dutchy by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperor betwixt him and his eldest Brother *Rudolph*, left for ever to the Family of the *Lower Palatinate*; but *Rudolph* having forfeited the same, by opposing his Brother the Emperor, 'twas confirmed to *Rudolph's* Sons by the Decree of *Pavia* in 1329, and enjoyed by that Branch afterwards, till *Frederick V.* Elector *Palatine*, was proscribed in 1623, when 'twas restored to the Family of *Bavaria*; but the Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, the Landgrave of *Lichtenburg*, and the City of *Nuremberg*, have laid Claim to it since.

Cities and Towns of Note here.

1. *Amberg*, the Metropolis of the *Upper Palatinate*, subject to the Elector of *Bavaria*. It lies on the Banks of the *Vils*, 30 Miles N. from *Ratisbon*, and is so well fortified, that 'tis reputed one of the strongest Towns in *Upper Germany*. Some say, 'twas built by the Emperor *Henry I.* but others, by the Bishop of *Aichstat* about 1297, and wall'd round in 1326. 'Twas formerly subject to the Dukes of *Swabia*; but the last Duke gave it to the House of *Bavaria*. Its chief Ornaments are the Castle and Armory, which are both curious Structures. The greatest Trade of the Town is from their Iron Mines, and the Iron-Works made from 'em, which are sent down the *Nab* to *Ratisbon* and other Cities. *La Forrest* says, this is the *Contiebis* of the Ancients, the Metropolis of the *Armanloufi*. The Town has great Privileges, which were granted 'em by the Emperor *Robert*, and lies conveniently for Trade, being almost in the Center betwixt *Ratisbon*, *Ingolstat*, and *Nuremberg*.

2. *Salzbach*, on the top of a Hill near the River *Vils*, about 7 Miles N. W. from *Amberg*. It had formerly Counts of its own, who were so considerable, that *Ernest*, who liv'd in the Time of the Emperor *Henry III.* had one Daughter married to *Conrad III.* Emperor of *Germany*, and another to *Emanuel* Emperor of *Constantinople*. Their last Earl *Gebhard* died of the Plague at *Rome*, in the Reign of the Emperor *Frederick II.* and leaving no Issue-Male, this City and its Ter-

ritories came to the Duke of *Bavaria*, and afterwards to the Family of *Newburg*, a Branch of which does still reside here, where they have a stately Palace, and call'd themselves Counts *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, Dukes of *Newburg*, *Bavaria*, *Juliers*, *Cleves*, &c. from whom the present Elector *Palatine*, of the Family of *Newburg*, is descended. The adjacent Country is so stony, that they have no Water but from one small Rivulet, with which they brew excellent Beer, that supplies their Want of Wine. The Duke's Palace and the Church are fair Structures. 'Tis well built, and the Streets uniform; but it suffered much by the Civil Wars of *Germany*; the Effects of which are still to be seen by ruinous Houses.

3. *Cham*, on the Rivers *Champ* and *Regen*, 39 Miles S. E. from *Amberg*, formerly rul'd by a Marq. of its own, who govern'd the Borders of *Bavaria* and *Bohemia* for the Emperor. The last of their Princes, about 1220, sold it to the Duke of *Bavaria*. Their chief Traffick is from Travellers, who come this Way out of *Bavaria*, and other Parts of *Germany*, to *Bohemia*.

4. *Waldsassen*, a rich *Cistercian* Monastery, a German League from *Eger* or *Egna*, on the Frontiers of *Bohemia*, to which belongs the Market-Town of *Dursenreuth*, with many adjoining Villages. 'Tis noted for the Monuments of several Landgraves of *Lichtenberg*, Counts of *Salzbach*, and other German Princes, who lie buried here. The Archbishop is a Prince, and pays 144 Florins per Annum to the Emperor.

5. *Castel*, another famous Monastery, on the River *Lauter* or *Lauterbach*, one of the pleasantest Countries of the *Upper Palatinate*, formerly govern'd by Counts of its own, who came from *Zeland* upon an Irruption of the Sea into that Country, and built a Castle and three Churches here, at the Mouth of so many Springs. His Posterity turn'd it into a *Benedictine* Monastery about 1098, and Count *Otto* endow'd it nobly some Time after. The Jesuits have lately got Possession of it, as they have done of many other rich Houses and Mannors in *Bavaria*. Among other ancient Monuments in their Chapel, the most remarkable is the Epitaph of *Sigefrid Schwepperman*, a great Champion in the Days of the Emperor *Lewis IV.* which

ends thus; *Let every Man have his Egg, but stout Schwepperman two*; which was occasion'd thus: The Emperor having obtain'd a great Victory against his Competitor *Fredrick III.* chiefly by the Conduct of this General, there being nothing left after the Battle but Eggs, he commanded that every Soldier should have one, and this Champion two, which has since become a Proverb in those Parts.

6. *Newburg*, for Distinction-sake called *Formwaldt*, because situated not far from the *Bohemian* Forrests. 'Tis a small City with a Castle, of no great Strength, and was taken in 1634 at one Assault by the *Suedes*. It lies on the River *Schwarzach*, but is poor, the Country affording no Commodities for Trade.

7. *Luchtenberg*, noted only for giving Title to a Landgrave. 'Twas formerly govern'd by Princes of its own, but now subject to the Elector of *Bavaria*. 'Tis defended by a Castle, and lies about 18 Miles N. E. from *Amberg*.

8. *Averbach*, at the Head of the *Vils*, noted for the fair and strong Monastery of *Nichelsfeld*, founded by *Otto* Bishop of *Bamberg*, the Great Apostle of *Pomeran*, about 1119.

Cities and noted Towns in this Country subject to the Dukes of Newburg.

1. *Newburg*, on the S. of the *Danube*, a neat little City, 12 Miles W. from *Ingolstadt*, and 15 E. from *Donawert*. 'Twas formerly the Seat, and still gives Title of Duke to the Elector *Palatine*; which Dukedom, *Heylin*, by Mistake, ascrib'd to the other *Newburg* last mention'd. It had its Name in Opposition to *Altemberg*, or the Old Town; the Ruins of which are still to be seen near it. *Velferius* says, it was a Bishoprick in *Charlemagne's* Time, when their Bishop *Manno* took Place of all the rest in a National Council held in 711: But *Brunner*, in his Annals of *Bavaria*, says, he was the first and last Bishop of this Diocese, which was united to that of *Augsburg*; and *Maximilian*, when he finish'd the *Bavarian* War in 1505, annex'd this City, with many other great Towns of the Circle, to the *Upper Palatinate*. Soon after it was made a

separate Dutchy, of which *Newburg* is still the Metropolis. The Dutchy is, according to *Moll*, 50 Miles long on both Sides the *Danube*, and 38 where broadest. This new Principality being erected, *Otto Henry*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Newburg*, built out of the Ruins of an old Castle a stately Palace, which was the Residence of his Successors; one of whom fortified this City. The noble Nunnery of *Benedictines*, formerly the chief Ornament of the Town, was founded by the Emperor *Henry II.* and his Empress *Conigund*, about 1007; or, as some say, they only repair'd it. It was dissolv'd in 1555, when the Duke embrac'd the *Augsburg* Confession. But *Wolfgang William* turning Papist, he built a fair Church and College out of the Ruins of this Nunnery, and gave them to the Jesuits, who still possess them. The great Trade of this Town is in Wine, which is sold Weekly in their publick Markets; and the Duke has a great Revenue from a Toll on the Vessels that pass up and down the *Danube*, over which they have a Bridge. 'Tis noted for an Image of the Virgin, known by the Name of *Our Lady of Newburg*, to which the superstitious People ascribe many Miracles. This City was taken by the Elector of *Bavaria* in 1703. *Philip William*, Duke of *Newburg*, succeeded to the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine* in 1685, being the nearest Male of Kin to that Illustrious Family. He was the first Popish Prince who succeeded to that Electorate since the Reformation, to the great Disadvantage of the Protestants of that Country, and of all *Germany*. He was very fortunate in his Issue, having 4 Daughters married to great Princes; the first to the late Emperor *Leopold*, the 2d to the late King *Charles* of *Spain*, the 3d to the late King of *Portugal*, and the 4th to Prince *James* of *Poland*. His eldest Son the present Elector, married the late Emperor's Daughter; his 2d Son is Great Master of the *Teutonic* Order; his 3d married the Princess *Radzeville*, Widow to a Marg. of *Brandenburg*; his 4th is Dean of *Augsburg*, and President of the Chapter of *Constance*; and his 5th Bishop of *Breslaw*; so that 'tis now one of the most potent Families of the Empire.

2. *Langingen*, a strong and well fortified Town on the *Danube*. Some call it *La-wingen*.

wingen. It lies 22 Miles W. from *Donawert*, is a neat City, and has a good Trade. By the many *Roman* Antiquities found in the Neighbourhood, there's Ground to suppose, that it was formerly one of their Colonies. 'Twas anciently subject to the Dukes of *Swabia*; but was sold by *Conradine*, their last Duke, to the House of *Bavaria*, who in 1505 annex'd it to the *Palatinate*. The famous *Albertus Magnus* was born here, of a Noble and Ancient Family, and his Memory is much honour'd by the Citizens. In his Time, a stout Shoemaker of the Town procur'd them great Reputation, by killing a *Hungarian* Giant in a Duel; for which, the Emperor *Otto I.* among other Favours, gave them for their Arms a Moor's-Head crown'd, with a Gold Chain about his Neck, which they bear still. The chief Ornaments of the Town are, their Bridge over the *Danube*, the Castle, and great Church, which is cover'd with Copper, and has a Tower of 301 Foot high. 'Twas formerly the Sepulchre of the Dukes of *Newburg*, and other Princes of the *Palatine* Family; but they are now commonly entomb'd at *Newburg*.

3. *Hochstadt*, on the *Danube*, about 8 Miles E. from *Lavingen*. The Bishop of *Bamberg* lays Claim to this Town; but the Duke of *Newburg* keeps Possession by Strength. In 1634, the *Cross*, during the Civil Wars of *Germany*, did barbarously cut off many of the Inhabitants, and ruin'd most of the Town; but they have since rebuilt it pretty well, are defended by a very strong Castle on the *Danube*, and well supplied with all Necessaries, there being rich Corn-Fields and good Pastures in the Neighbourhood; but that which eternizes its Fame, is the famous Victory obtain'd here in *August*, 1703, by the Duke of *Marlborough* and Prince *Eugene*, over the *French* and *Bavarians*. In Remembrance of which, there's a noble Pillar, with an Inscription upon it, erected in the Field of Battle.

4. *Blenheim*, about 8 Miles N. from *Hochstadt*, famous for the taking of 20 *French* Battalions of Foot, and 12 Squadrons of Dragoons, after a stout Resistance, by the Earl of *Orkney*, where the late Lord *Cutts* did also gain immortal Honour. The chief Particulars of this great Victory, we gave an Account of, Page 494, &c.

5. *Dillingen*, on the *Danube*, betwixt *Lavingen* and *Hochstadt*, is a pretty little City, with a fine College of *Jesuits*. It has the Title of a County, and belongs to the Bishop of *Augsburg*, who has a fine Palace here, in which he usually resides.

6. *Naburg*, a pleasant City on the River *Nab*, from whence it has its Name, about half a *German* League from *Amberg*, stands on the top of a Hill, and is a great Road for Travellers betwixt *Bohemia*, &c. and *Ratisbon*.

7. *Aichstadt*, about 12 Miles N. from *Ingolstadt*. 'Tis a Bishop's See, upon the River *Altmuehl*. Their first Bishop is said to have been *St. Willibald*, by some thought to be descended from an *English* *Saxon* King; but others say, he was Son to *Richard* Duke of *Swabia*. The Bishop's Palace, a Mile from the Town, still bears his Name. This City is but small, and noted for some Relicks, to which the Priests ascribe Miracles. The *Scheffer* Stones, mentioned in the Description of *Manisfeld*, are found in the neighbouring Fields. *Moltz*, *La Forreß*, and *Sausen*, reckon this Bishoprick in *Franconia*, where we have given a further Description of it.

The City and Territories of Newmarckt in the Upper Palatinate.

1. *Newmarckt*, a fair City on the Banks of the *Sulz*, about 5 *German* Leagues from *Nuremberg*, and 2 from *Altorf*. 'Twas formerly subject to the Marquisses of *Vohburg*, afterwards to the Kings of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Swabia*, the Dukes of *Bavaria*, and the Electors *Palatine*, from whom it was taken during the late Civil Wars; before which, there was a considerable Protestant College here, but destroy'd by the Duke of *Bavaria*, who reduc'd the Town, that was formerly an Imperial City. It stands in a pleasant and fruitful Country; but the Air is too sharp for Vines. Their chief Commodity is Iron, and their Rivers are cover'd with Iron Mills.

2. *Gnadenberg*, i. e. The Hill of Grace, noted for a Monastery of the Order of *St. Salvator*. It lies on the Banks of the *Schwarzach*, half a *German* League from *Altorf*. 'Tis divided into two Parts, one for Monks, and another for Nuns, with one Church betwixt them, which was a magnificent

ficient Fabrick, and had 36 Altars. *Catharine* Dutchess of *Pomeran*, who had for her Husband *John Duke of Bavaria*, founded this Monastery about 1426, and is buried here. It embraced the Reformation in the 16th Century; but since the restoring of Popery, has lost its former Grandeur, and the Revenues are shar'd by two Jesuits, and one of the Elector's Lieutenants.

3. *Allersberg*, on the W. of this District, is a Town of Trade, which, with its Territory, is subject to the Duke of *Newburg*.

Other Places of Note in *Newmarckt* are, 1. *Freyenstailein*, destroyed by the Swedes in 1632, and afterwards came to Count *Tilly*, whose Heirs pretend to it, with a Salvo to the Elector of *Bavaria's* Right. 2. *Sultzburg*, from whence the adjacent Country is called *Sultzgow*. 3. *Hollenstein*, a Wall'd Town and Castle on the Confines of the Bishoprick of *Aichstat*, famous for the Iron Mines in the Neighbourhood. There are so many Proprietors of this Country, that 'tis hard to distinguish their Boundaries; but the Chief are the Elector of *Bavaria* and the Duke of *Newburg*.

The Circle of S W A B I A, or S W E V I A.

DR. *Nicholson* observes, That when the *Romans* came first into these Parts, *Suevia* was a large Kingdom, lying as far W. as the *German Ocean*, and as far N. as the utmost Bounds of the *Swedish* Dominions; so that *Tacitus* reckons no less than 54 different Branches of the *Suevian* Nation, of whom we have given a particular Account from *Cluverius* in *Ancient Germany*. The Doctor observes further, That there's Reason to think, that *Suevia* and *Germany* were at first synonymous Terms with the *Romans*, who afterwards appropriated the Name of *Saevi* to the *Hermunduri*, the most considerable Branch of 'em, who inhabited that now called *Swabia*. *La Forreſt* says, That on the Fall of the *Roman* Empire, it contained all the Country betwixt the *Rhine*, the *Alps*, and the *Elb*, and they call'd their Governors, Kings; but *Clovis*, King of *France*, depriv'd them of that Title after the Battle of *Tolbiac*,

when he gave it to *Thierry*, his eldest Son, and it continued under the *French* Kings of the first Race. *Charlemagne* made some of his Officers Governors of this Country, with the Title of Dukes, and the Sovereignty was usurp'd by their Successors. This Dutchy fell afterwards to several Families, till about 1078, when the Emperor *Henry IV.* invested his Son-in-Law *Frederick Count of Hohenstauffem* with it. His Posterity kept it till 1269, that the Dutchy of *Swabia* was re-united to the Crown, says *La Forreſt*, by the Death of *Conradine*, who was beheaded by Order of *Charles of France*, King of *Naples*. The Emperor *Rodolph I.* invested *Rodolph* his eldest Son with it about 1288; but *John Duke of Swabia* was deprived of it, for having assassinated the Emperor *Albert* his Uncle.

Dr. Nicholson says, That no Prince of the Empire does now pretend a Title to the whole Dutchy, which is subject to many Rulers. The Dukes of *Wirttemberg* have the largest Share; the Arch-Dukes of *Austria* and the Elector of *Bavaria* have another great Part of it; and the rest is possessed by the Marquisses of *Baden*, and the Imperial Cities of *Augsburg*, *Ulm*, &c. as may be seen in the *Matricula* of the Empire, P. 512. The Boundaries of *Swabia* at present are, on the N. the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, and *Franconia*; on the S. *Switzerland*, and the County of *Tirol*; on the W. *Alsace*, and the Upper Part of the Palatinate of the *Rhine*; and on the E. *Bavaria*, and Part of *Franconia*. 'Tis in Length from E. to W. if we include the Marq. of *Baden*, 140 Miles; and where broadest, from N. to S. 132. 'Tis commonly divided into 4 Parts; the first contains the Dutchy of *Wirttemberg*, and the Cities of *Ulm*, *Reutlingen*, *Eſtingen*, *Nordlingen*, *Hailbron*, and *Hall*: The 2d contains the Marq. of *Baden*, the City of *Rotweil*, &c. The 3d has the Bishopricks of *Constance* and *Kempten*, with the Cities of *Bibrach*, *Iſſna*, and *Lindaw*: The 4th has the City and Diocese of *Augsburg*, with the Cities of *Kaufbeuren*, *Memmingen*, &c.

La Forreſt says, That the House of *Austria* has in this Country the Marq. of *Burgaw*, the Bishoprick of *Constance*, the Landgraviate of *Nellenburg*, the County of *Hohenberg*, the *Ortnaw*, the *Brisgaw*, and the Foreſt Towns.

Clayton and *Frecherus* are of Opinion, That *Heidelberg* stands in *Swabia*, and that the *Neckar* is the Boundary betwixt *Francia* and *Swabia*.

This Country was anciently called *Alamannia*, which was afterwards communicated to the whole Empire. *Swabia* in general has Plenty enough of Corn, tho' in many Places 'tis full of large Woods and Forrests, which abound with Venison of all Sorts, good Breeds of Horses, Kine, and Sheep; and in their Mountains, they have Mines of Silver, Copper, and other Metals. Most of their Woods are Pine and Fir. Their Air is healthful; and besides Corn, the Country produces abundance of Wine and Flax; and of the latter, the Inhabitants make much Linen Cloth, which they sell in great Quantities, and in this Trade employ most of their Poor. *Plutarch* says of the ancient Inhabitants, That they were the bravest, boldest, and best Warriors, of the German Nation. The modern Inhabitants being accustomed to spare Diet, and mean Lodgings, are fit to endure all the Fatigues of War: Yet not only Strangers, but their own Authors, accuse both Sexes of being excessively inclin'd to Veneries.

The Diversities of Sovereigns occasion the Diversities of Religions in this Country, where there are *Papists*, *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, and *Jews*.

'Tis commonly divided into *Upper* and *Lower Swabia*.

The chief Towns of Upper Swabia.

1. *Augsburg*, in Latin *Augusta Vindelicorum*, and anciently *Licetionum Damasia*, on the Conflux of the *Lech* and the *Wertach*, in Long. 29. 47. Lat. 48. 20. 25 Miles S. from *Donawert*, and 62 S. W. from *Ratisbon*. It had its Name from *Augustus Caesar*, who about 12 Years before our Saviour subdued these Parts, and planted a Roman Colony here under *Drusus Nero*, Brother of *Tiberius*. The *Vindelici* were a Branch of the *Illyrians*, who inhabited Part of this Country, and gave it the other Part of its Name; and the *Licatii*, who probably derived their Name from the River *Lech*, occasioned its being called *Licetionum Damasia*; and the

Vindelici are supposed to have had their Name from the *Vinda*, now the *Wertach*, which falls into the *Lech* near *Augsburg*. This City continued under the *Romans* and *Goths* 550 Years, and was afterwards possessed by the Kings of *France*, till the Empires of *Germany* and *Rome* were joined to the Crown of *France* by *Charlemagne*. After which it became subject to the Dukes of *Swabia*, till *Conradin*, their last Duke, sold them their Freedom, and obtained a Confirmation of their Privileges from the Emperor. Some of the old Chronicles of this City say, That Christianity was first planted here by *Lucius*, the first Christian King of *England*, then called *Britain*, about 190, after he had establish'd Christianity at home. But *Dr. Nicholson* justly observes, this seems to be a Monkish Fable, contriv'd for the Honour of the Monastick Life, as preferable to that of a King, especially since they say he travelled also to *Coire* in the *Grisons* Country, and was martyr'd there for his Religion; whereas *Matthew of Westminster* says, he died at *Glocester* in 201. But the whole Story of this King has been so much exploded by the Learned of late Years, that it deserves no Credit. However this may be, there's good Authority to prove, that Christianity was planted here in *Dioclesian's* Time, for which *Narcissus Gerundenfis* and others were martyr'd by his Lieutenant *Gaius* about 303: And in 400, we have an Account, That *Theonestus* and *Albanus* opposed the *Arian* Heresy in this City. *La Forrest* says, 'twas taken by *Attila* the Hun in 452, and by *Clodius* of *France* in 496. It came afterwards to his Son *Thierry* King of *Austrasia*, and then to the ancient Dukes of *Bavaria*. *Charlemagne* took it in 787. His Son *Louis*, the Emperor annex'd it to the Kingdom of *Bavaria* in 817. But in 912, when the *Carlovingian* Race was extinguish'd, it became a Free City, and was endow'd with many Privileges by *Charles IV.* and other Emperors. In 1518, *Luther* gave an Account of his Faith at the Diet here; and in 1530, the Protestants also presented their Confession of Faith to the Emperor *Charles V.* in the Diet here, from hence called the *Augsburg Confession*, as before-mention'd; but the Protestant Princes being persecuted, levied an Army for Defence of their Liberty and Religion, which obliged the Emperan

Peror to call a Council for determining those Differences, where Matters were debated by 7 Deputies on each Side. For the Papists, there were named the Bishop of *Augsburg*, and *Henry Duke of Brunswick*, two Lawyers, and three Divines, viz. *Wimpin*, *Ecceius*, and *Cockleus*. For the Protestants, *George Marquis of Brandenburg*, *John Frederick Elector of Saxony*, *Melancton*, *Brentius*, and *Scheffius*. *Luther*, who was one of 'em, durst not appear with them, for fear of the like Treatment which *John Hef* and *Jerome of Prague* met with at *Constance*; but staid at *Coburg*, on the Borders of *Francia*, from whence he gave them his Advice. The main Things debated were, the Mass, Priests Marriage, Jurisdiction of Bishops, Monastick Vows, and Transubstantiation. The Saxons, says *Dr. Nicholson*, inclin'd to give the Bishops more Respect and Authority, than *Luther* would allow them, who published a Book, Entituled, *Contra Statum Ecclesie, & falsè nominatum ordinem Episcoporum*; i. e. Against the State of the Church, and the Order of Bishops, falsly so called. With him agreed the *Hessians*, *Lunenburghers*, and *Nurembergers*; so that Heats arising, the Deputies were contract'd on both Sides, and the whole Dispute left to *Melancton* and *Ecceius*, assisted by two Lawyers each: But *Charles V.* being displeas'd with the Demands of the Protestants, and hearing that the *Turks* prepared to invade the Empire, he dissolved the Council by an Edict, wherein he order'd, That no other Doctrine should be taught concerning the Lord's Supper, but what had hitherto been received in the Church of *Rome*; That the Cross should be us'd in Baptism; That Statues and Relicks of Saints should be restored and esteemed as formerly; That to deny Free-will, should be an enormous Crime; That the Doctrine of Justification by Faith should be abolish'd, and the Merit of Works maintain'd. In a Word, That the whole Doctrine and Discipline of the Church of *Rome* should be received, and those of the contrary Opinion prosecuted as Hereticks. But the Protestants being too strong to be thus treated, he was oblig'd to revoke his Decree next Year, and return again to *Augsburg*, where he propos'd that call'd the *Interim*, to accommodate Religious Differences, which contain'd a mix'd Model of Religion and Church Government, permitted a few Lu-

theran Doctrines, and enjoin'd most of the Popish, so that it pleas'd neither Side: And the Protestants persisting in their Demands, they were allowed the Freedom of their Religion in a Diet held here in 1555.

The Curious may find an Account of this *Interim* in *Sleidan's Commentaries*, *Annæ* 1548, and how 'twas oppos'd by both Sides, for different Reasons. The Court of *Rome* and the bigotted Papists oppos'd it, because it allow'd Communion in both Kinds, and the Marriage of Priests; and the Protestants rejected it, because it enjoin'd most of the Popish Doctrines; so that the Emperor's Edict, commanding it to be observ'd, had no Effect. The Senate of *Augsburg* embrac'd *Luther's* Reformation, as *Sleidan* informs us, in 1535, and sent to him for Ministers. They afterwards, as *La Forrest* says, expelled their Bishop and Clergy; but *Sleidan* says, they deserted the City upon the Change of Religion, and the Senate publish'd a Paper against them, directed to the Emperor, and States of the Empire, with an Account how ill they had behaved themselves, and had attempted to raise Tumults in the Town. But the Emperor, set on by the Popish Clergy, took the Town, and restored Popery in 1551; and next Year 'twas restored to the *Lutherans* by the Treaty of *Passaw*. Since 1555, the Magistracy of the City has been half Papists, and half *Lutherans*, according to *La Forrest*; but *Dr. Nicholson* says, they consist of 23 Papists, and 22 *Lutherans*, and that their Common-Council has 150 of each. In 1634, the Duke of *Bavaria* took it after a long Siege; but they were restored to their Liberty by the Treaty of *Munster*. 'Tis also famous for the League form'd here in 1687, betwixt the Emperor, the King of *Spain*, the Princes of the Empire, the Prince of *Orange*, the *Dutch*, the Duke of *Savoy*, &c. to declare War, says *La Forrest*, against the King of *France*, and to dethrone the late King *James of Great Britain*: But perhaps there is more Truth in what he says of the Elector of *Bavaria*, who took it in 1704, after 13 Days Siege, with a Design, by that and his other Conquests, to pave his Way to the Empire, which had been possess'd by several of his Ancestors.

Most of the Houses are built of Timber and Clay; but near a 4th Part of the Town is built of Free-stone. The Publick Buildings,

ings, as the Cathedral, the Churches, Town-Hall, Conduits, &c. are in general magnificent and stately; but the Glory of the Town, says Dr. *Nicholson*, is that called the *Fuggery*, which consists of several stately Streets and fair Palaces, built and possessed by the Noble Family of the *Fuggers*, who are Lords of a great Part of the adjacent Country. Four of these Streets in the *Fuggery* are built cross-wise, make a fair Town of themselves, and are inhabited by poor People, who have an Annual Pension. Over the Gate of this Princely Hospital, there's an Inscription in Latin, signifying that 3 Brothers of this Noble Family, out of Thankfulness to God, had, for the Good of the Commonwealth, out of their large Estate, built these 106 Houses, of which the Four Streets consist, for the Use of the frugal Poor of the City. They are under the Inspection of their Chaplain, who has a noble Salary allow'd him. There's a vast Number of *Roman* Monuments in and about this City, of which several Authors have given a large Account. There's a Library in this City, famous for a good Collection of MSS. *Comringius* makes it equal to that of *Vienna*. The Learned *Welfer* left them the greatest Part of those Rarities; and a great Number of Greek MSS. have been added since by several Citizens. A Catalogue of this Library was published by *Reiser*, their Library-Keeper, in 1675.

Monconys commends this City for the Largeness of the Streets, and the Beauty of the Houses, many of which are painted on the Outside. They have also many noble Fountains, with Brazen Statues of different Figures, such as *Mercury*, *Hercules* killing the *Hydra*, and some of 'em are adorn'd with the Statues of Emperors. He gives a large Description of the Town-Hall, which is reckon'd second to that of *Amsterdam*: 'Tis very lofty, the Front is 38 Foot broad, and the Length of it 111 Foot. 'Tis divided into 3 Stories: The first is enter'd into by a fine Porch, adorn'd with two Columns of Marble, and supported by 8 Pillars. The 2d is a Hall of the same Size, with a delicate Sieling of Joyner-work, supported by 8 Columns of green Marble, whose Bases and Chapters, of the *Corinthian* Order, are of Brass. The 3d Story is a large Hall of the same Size, 110

Foot long, 38 broad, and 52 high: The Sieling is of Joyner-work, fram'd in Compartments, painted and gilded. It has two great Gates by which one enters it on each Side of curious Architecture in Joyner-work, painted and gilded; and there are two other on each Side, which enter into as many large Chambers on both Sides the Hall, but not so high. The Upper Hall is pav'd with Marble: And *Misson* says, the Walls are adorn'd with Paintings, intermix'd with Emblems and Devices, relating to the Government; but the Roof, he says, exceeds all the rest for its singular Beauty, the Squares and Pannels of the Compartments being enriched with Sculptures, richly gilt, and beautified with curious Pictures, and other Ornaments. In the upper Chambers, there are very fine Stoves, as there are likewise in the lower, where the Magistrates usually meet; but they are sunk in the Floor, and do not appear but only by a round Copper Grate, which lets the Heat through. There are two Platforms from the Chambers on the Sides, whence one looks down into the great Hall; and the whole Fabrick is of fine hewn Stone.

The next remarkable Structure is their Arsenal, which is very large: The Porch is a fine Piece of Architecture of hewn Stone, with 5 great Figures in Brass over it, one of 'em being the Genius of Peace, with a Flaming Sword in her Hand, trampling upon the Devil of War, and 3 little Cupids about her. By another Gate, one enters into a great Court, where, on the Right Hand, and at the further End, there are two Structures, one 76, and the other 40 Paces long, and each of 20 broad. The two Halls below are full of Cannon, most of 'em Brass, and among them a Leather Culverine, a Six Pounder 26 Foot long; and on the Side by the Walls, there are Pyramids of Bullets handsomely pil'd up. Over each of those two Magazines there are 5 Stories. In the first, are 300 Harquebuses. In the 2d, 3000 new Muskets. The 3d has old Muskets and Arms for Horse: And in the 5th, are Pikes and other Arms for 15000 Men. In a Word, 'tis one of the best furnish'd Magazines in *Germany*. There's a Gate in the Town called the Secret Gate, which was contriv'd to let in People in Time of War, without any Dan-

ger, and has so many Engines and Divisions with Gates and Keys, and Apartments for Guards at some Distance from one another, where the Passengers are examin'd, that 'tis impossible for the Town to be surpris'd by such as are thus let in. They make use of it in Time of Peace, to let People in and out at all Hours of the Night, paying 6 *d.* for a Horseman, and 2 *d.* for a Footman. *Misson* says, the Fortifications of the City are not very considerable; yet it has bravely held out many great Sieges. The *Lutherans* are much more numerous than the *Papists*; but they live in a good Understanding. Their Poor are maintain'd in one and the same Hospital; and to avoid giving Offence, the *Lutherans* pull off their Hats to the Priests and the Company when the Host is carried through the Streets. The *Jews* are confin'd to a separate Place; and for every Hour they stay in the other Parts of the City, are obliged to pay a Florin. They have brought a Branch of the River *Lech* into the City, whose Water is clear and good, and upon this they have several Towers, with great Cisterns on the Top, fill'd by Pumps, which are mov'd by Mills, and convey the Water all over the Town.

'Twas formerly a Place of great Traffick; but is much decayed since Commodities from the *Mediterranean* cease to be brought this Way from *Italy*, and from thence conveyed to other Parts of the Empire. The Cathedral has a Gate of Brass, over which there are represented several Scripture-Histories in *Basso-Relievo*. Their Mechanicks are equal to those of *Nuremberg*, and excel them in Clocks, Goldsmiths-work, and Ivory, in which they are very curious. They make Chains of Steel so very fine, of a Span long, that when they put them about the Neck of a Flea, it will lift it up when it leaps; and these they sell for 10 *d.* a-piece. The Citizens have great Variety of Habits, which are so regulated by the Magistrates, that every one's Quality and Religion may be discern'd by them. The City carries a Pine-Apple for its Arms, which seems to have been a very ancient Bearing in this Place; for a Pillar of 5 or 6 Foot high was lately dug up here, with a Pine-Apple on the Top, and certain Medals of *Augustus*, with such a Pillar on the Reverse; by which 'tis probable, that this

City was then the Boundary of the Empire on that Side. *Mr. Ray* says, it is about 8 *English* Miles round.

2. *Ulm*, on the *Danube*, about 37 Miles W. from *Augsburg*, reckon'd the second for Grandeur, tho' not for Antiquity, in *Swabia*. Yet *Cluverius* thinks it to be as ancient as any of its Neighbours, and takes it to be the *Alcimannis* of *Ptolemy*; but if so, it must have decreased much afterwards, for 'twas only a Village, till *Charlemagne* added the rich Monastery of *Augs* to it. After which, it grew by degrees till it came to be an Imperial City. Its Name is derived from the Elm-Trees, of which there are many in the Neighbourhood. Soon after it was made Imperial, they purchased the County of *Helfenstein*, with some other Towns and Castles, from neighbouring Princes; so that their Territory in a little Time came to be 6 *German* Miles long, and 4 broad. The *Danube* begins first to be navigable here by Vessels of any great Burthen, which advances their Trade of Linen and Cottons. Their Government is by 41 Aldermen, most of which are of the Nobility, and the rest Tradesmen: Out of the Nobility, they chuse Annually two Bayliffs, who preside in their Councils. Their chief Ornament is the Cathedral, which is scarcely exceeded by any in the Empire, except by the great Church of *Strasbourg*. 'Tis said to have been 111 Years in building; during which Time, they had a great Number of Architects in constant Pay. It has 5 stately Spires, the highest of which is supported by 36 vast Pillars, and is 102 Foot high. Their Organ is very remarkable, and has been described by two Learned Men. 'Twas 23 Years a making, is 93 Foot high, 28 broad, has 16 Pair of Bellows, with 125 Pounds of Lead on each, and has above 3000 Pipes of pure *English* Tin, the largest of which is 40 Inches in Circumference, and above 13 in Diameter: But *Dr. Nicholson* thinks it to be short of the Organ in the Cathedral of *Exeter*. There are many other stately Buildings in this City; among which, the Town-House is most remarkable. *La Forrest* says, the City is large, populous, and has a good Trade. They embrac'd the Reformation in 1529, and most of the Inhabitants, and all the Magistrates, are *Lutherans*. Their Territory

tory contains 40 Bailiwicks and Lordships. *Monconys* says, the *Danube* serves for a Ditch on one Side, and the rest is encompassed with a good Wall; beyond which, there is a Ditch 25 Paces broad, which is filled by Water from a little River that runs through the Town. It has besides very fine Ramparts, with 11 Royal Bastions, with Fausses-brays, large Ditches, fine Counterscarps, and Half-Moons, before the Courtaings, all fac'd with Brick, with deep Ditches full of Water, and Cavaliers on some of the Bastions all along the Walls; and within the Town, the Soldiers of the Garison have very pretty small Houses assign'd 'em. He adds, That they have a Stone Bridge of 4 Arches over the *Danube*, which forms several Islands near it; and that they have abundance of ingenious Mechanicks, especially for Clock-work. The great *Franciscan* Monastery was, upon the Reformation, turn'd into a College, where they have Professors of all Arts and Sciences. This Town was taken by Surprize by the Elector of *Bavaria* in 1702; but retaken after the Battle of *Hochstat*.

3. *Bibrach*, i. e. a River of Otters, so call'd from the Multitude of those Creatures near this Place, from whence it had an Otter for its Arms. 'Tis said to have been an Imperial City since the Year 800, and was wall'd in the Reign of *Frederick II*. It stands in a pleasant fruitful Valley, encompassed with fair Fields, Gardens, and Meadows. The River affords them Plenty of Fish, and their Woods Store of Timber. There's a hot Sulphureous Bath in the Town, which draws great Concourse of People of Quality and others hither in the Spring; and their Number is the greater, because it lies almost in the Center of a great Circle of Imperial Cities. It stands upon the River *Rufs*, and the States of the Circle of *Swabia* meet here. The Magistrates are half Protestants, half Papists. The Elector of *Bavaria* took it in 1702. The most remarkable Things in the Town are, *St. Martin's* Church, and the neighbouring Hospital, where Provision is made for many decay'd Citizens. It lies about 20 Miles S. W. from *Ulm*.

4. *Bucaw*, or *Buchaw*, a small Imperial Town, about 11 Miles S. W. from *Bibrach*. 'Tis remarkable for little but its Nunnery,

where all the Nuns are Countesses or Baronesses, and have Liberty to marry, except the Abbess, who is obliged to take the Vow of Chastity. She is one of the Fourteen who is a Princess of the Empire, and has a Vote in the Diet, according to *La Forrest*, and the *Matricula* of the Empire; which shews the Mistake of some Geographers, who made this an Abbey of Men, and the Abbot a Prince of the Empire.

5. *Memmingen*, on the *Bach*, betwixt the *Danube* and the *Liller*, about 17 Miles S. E. from *Bibrach*. 'Tis thought to be the *Rostrum Vermania* of *Antonin*. 'Tis well fortified on one Side with a Marsh, and elsewhere with a strong Wall, and deep Trenches. 'Tis almost as large as *Ulm*, but much short in Buildings, and Number of Inhabitants. It has 7 Gates, and a small Rivulet that runs through it. The Inhabitants are Lutherans and Papists; the former have two Churches and a School, and the latter a Monastery of *Augustine* Friars, and a Nunnery. Their chief Trade is in Linen, Cotton, and Paper: The latter is reckon'd as good as any in *Germany*. They have great Privileges, and are exempted from the Imperial Chamber at *Rotweil*.

6. *Leutkirch*, a small Imperial City, but tolerably well built. It stands on a small River about 12 Miles S. W. from *Memmingen*. Some derive the Name from the Multitude of People who flock'd to it upon the first Preaching of Christianity, and maintain'd abundance of Preachers. *St. Martin's* Church here is a stately Fabrick, possessed by the Papists, who allow only a small Chapel to the Protestants. Half the Magistrates or more are Lutherans. This is a great Thoroughfare for Travellers to and from *Italy* and *Tirol*; and they have a good Trade in Linen-Cloth, Corn, and Flax. The Citizens have a Privilege to dig for Metals in any of the neighbouring Fields.

7. *Kempten*. This is reckon'd as ancient a Town as any in *Germany*. Their Antiquaries say, it was the *Cretica* of the Ancients, and inhabited by the *Cretici*; but being subdued by one of *Tiberius's* Generals, he call'd it *Campodunum*, because of the Hill which commands the whole Plain where it stands, and from which he play'd upon it. Hence by Corruption 'twas call'd *Kemp'en*. When it came under the

R r r r 2

French,

French, they call'd it *Vermetica*, from the multitude of Snakes and other venomous Worms about it; but it has since resum'd its old Name. It was made an Imperial Town by *Frederick IV.* who gave them for Arms the Spread-Eagle of the Empire, half *Or*, and half *Sable*, crown'd with the Imperial Crown. 'Twas taken by the Imperialists in 1633, who burnt 140 Houses, with the great Church, and put 450 of the People to the Sword. Their greatest Trade is in making and whitening Linen, and in lodging Travellers betwixt *Italy* and the Empire, and by the *Swissers*; who bring Salt from *Tirol*, which makes it one of the richest Towns in *Swabia*. They embrac'd the Reformation in 1530. 'Twas formerly the Seat of the Dukes of *Swabia*, and is famous for its Monastery, founded by *Hildegard*, Wife to *Charlemagne*. The Abbot is a Prince of the Empire, and Lord of the adjacent Territory, as he was formerly of the City, before it was made Imperial. It lies 13 Miles S. from *Memmingen*.

8. *Ish*, or *Eisha*, on a River of the same Name, mid-way between *Kempten* and *Lindau*, about 13 Miles from each. It appears, by an Inscription on an old Marble Monument, to have formerly been inhabited by a Roman Colony; and that the High-ways betwixt this City and *Kempten*, which is the Road betwixt *Italy* and the *Rhine*, was then repaired at the Charge of *Septimius Severus*, and *M. A. Antoninus*. In the neighbouring Fields, they have no Wine nor Wheat; but Oats, Rape-Seed, Beans, and Flax. Cattle and Corn, are brought from the *Alps* and other neighbouring Places to their Market. In 1633, in 12 Hours Time, 380 Houses, with most of their Publick Buildings, were burnt down, and the Brass Guns on their Bulwarks melted; but 'tis since rebuilt, and as flourishing as ever.

9. *Lindau*, an Imperial City, upon an Island in the Lake of *Constance*, into which there's an Entrance by a Stone Bridge of 290 Paces long. Part of the City lies upon the Bank of the Lake, on the N. E. Side. The Inhabitants shew the Ruins of an old Tower, which they pretend was built by *Tiberius*, in his Expedition against the *Vindelici*; but this is disputed, for 'tis said to have been first founded by *Adelbert*, one of *Charles the Great's* Courtiers, Lord of this Part of the

Country, who being seiz'd by a Tempest on the Lake of *Constance*, and drove ashore on this Island; did, in Remembrance of his Deliverance, build a Nunnery here about 810, and called it *Lindau*, from his landing in this Place. But *Dresser* denies this Erymology, and says, it had its Name from the Linden Trees planted round the Nunnery; and in Confirmation, alledges the Arms of the City, which are, a Linden-Tree Vert, in a Field Argent. However this be, the Nunnery gave Occasion to the building of the Town, and is govern'd by an Abbess, who is a Princess of the Empire, and has Sovereign Jurisdiction within the Precinct and Territories of the Nunnery. The Nuns must be all of Noble Families, and Papists, but may marry when they please. The Magistrates, and most of the Citizens, are Lutherans. The Situation of the City is pleasant and healthful, and it lies so convenient for Trade, because of the Lake, and the *Rhine* which runs through it, that they call it the *Venice* of *Swabia*. In that Part of the Town on the Bank of the Lake, they have Plenty of Vines, which yield a rough and harsh Wine. The Town on the Island is inhabited mostly by Fishermen, Watermen, and Weavers. They have several Springs of good Water, and on the N. Side of the Town many fair Fields and Meadows. It was made Imperial by *Rudolph I.* and lies about 27 Miles S. W. from *Kempten*. Its Castle and Situation make it very strong, so that the *Swissers* could not take it in 1647.

10. *Bregentz*, or *Bergentz*, on the same Side of the Lake, 5 Miles S. E. from *Lindau*; from whence the Lake was called *Lacus Brigantinus*, was formerly a famous City, and by *Antonin I.* called *Brigantia*. 'Tis now inconsiderable, but is Capital of a small County of the same Name. It lies at the Mouth of a little River that falls into the Lake, which *Dr. Nicholson* says is the largest in *Germany*, being 7 German Miles long, in some Places two, and in others three broad. 'Tis divided into two Parts, the largest of which reaches from *Bergentz* to the old Fort *Podmen*, from whence it first had the Name of *Podmensée*, and by Contraction *Bodensee*: Tho others say, 'twas so called because of its Depth. The other Branch is that which begins at *Constance*, and is usually called *Cel-*

fersee, from *Cell*, a considerable Village on its Banks.

11. *Buchorn*, on the same Side of the Lake, 12 Miles N. W. from *Lindau*. It derives its Name from the adjoining Woods of Beech. 'Twas formerly govern'd by a Count of its own, descended, as they pretend, from *Charlemagne*, and then by the Counts of *Altorf* and *Ravensburg*. It belongs now to the House of *Austria*, who have made it a Dependence of the City of *Überlingen*. The Town is not large, but has a good Trade by Ships, which daily pass from it to *Switzerland*, and from thence again into *Swabia*. The Air here is unwholesome.

12. *Ravensburg*, or rather *Gravensburg*, 10 Miles N. E. from *Buchorn*, on the same River. 'Twas first walled in 1100, afterwards made an Imperial City, and endow'd with many Privileges. In the middle of the Town, there's a very high Tower, called *Blaserturm*, or the Watch-Tower, which in 1552 was blown down by a Whirlwind, when the Watchman or Trumpeter, who, according to the *German* Custom, sounds with his Trumpet to give Notice of the Hour of the Night, fell down from the Top of it without receiving any Hurt, tho' his Wife and Son were killed by it, as appears by an Inscription made upon it when rebuilt. There's little else worth Notice here, but the Town-House, and some Churches. *La Forrest* says, 'tis well built; and that the Town-Council is composed of Lutherans and Papists.

13. *Altorf*, lies, according to *Dr. Nicholson*, within two *English* Miles of *Ravensburg*, is an ancient and famous Town; from the former Earls of which, proceeded a great Branch of the ancient Dukes of *Bavaria*, and the present Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Lüneburg*. Here was formerly the ancient Monastery of *Wingarten*, where the *Guelphian* Family was usually buried. It belongs now to the House of *Austria*, and is the usual Residence of the Emperor's Lieutenant for *Suevia*, who keeps a Court here, to determine all Causes brought before him from any of the Imperial Cities in *Swabia*.

14. *Wangen*, 10 Miles N. E. from *Lindau*, is a small Imperial City on the River *Arg*, famous for Sickles, which are made here in great Numbers, and sent over the Empire.

They have also a considerable Trade in Paper and Flax, but no Wine of their own Growth; tho' some Geographers have said the contrary.

15. *Überlingen*, a fair Imperial City on the Banks of the Lake of *Constance*, 27 Miles N. W. from *Lindau*. 'Tis encompassed with fine Orchards and Vineyards, and situate upon the top of a Rock; at the bottom of which, they dig Stones for building their Houses and Fortifications. The Situation is so pleasant and magnificent, that the ancient Dukes of *Swabia* made it their Residence. Upon the Failure of that Family in 1267, it came to the Emperor's Hands. They have a very good Harbour, from whence they send Vessels with Wine and Fruit to the neighbouring Countries and Towns, which makes the Place rich. Among other Privileges, they have this, That they are not to appeal from the Sentence of their Common-Council any further than to *Friburg* in *Brissgaw*, *Rothwel*, or *Ravensburg*. In the neighbouring Vineyards and Orchards, there are many cool Springs and Mineral Fountains; one of which is particularly famous against the Stone in the Bladder or Kidneys, and a decay'd Appetite. It springs out of a Rock on the E. Side of the Town, and is conveyed by Pipes into a Bath-House in the City for the Use of Patients. The Water has a Tincture of Lead, Copper, and Brimstone, and its Virtues are treated of at large by *Eschen Reuster*, a Physician and Native of the Place, in a *German* Treatise of the wholesomest Baths. He speaks likewise of another Mineral Spring in one of the Vineyards called *Am-Stollen*, which tastes something like *Sal Armoniac*, and by once or twice washing removes Warts from any Place of the Body. The Grapes of this Vineyard, which is a hot and sandy Soil, are the best in the Country. They have an Hospital, accounted the richest in *Swabia*, for poor and decrepit People, of which they have as little need as any of their Neighbours, being generally a laborious and frugal People, and have so good a Trade, that in Time of War they maintain 6 Horsemen and 60 Foot, says *Dr. Nicholson*, which is as much as many of the Princes are oblig'd to do by the *Matricula*; but their Proportion seems to be raised since

since that was constituted, for then they paid only 20 Foot.

16. *Rattolfzell*, or *Cella Ratolfi*, on that Part of the Lake called the *Cellersee*, to which it gives Name. *Ratolf*, Bishop of *Verona*, built a Palace here in 875, and gave Name to the Town, which afterwards fell, with many other Places, into the Hands of the Emperor. The Princes of *Wurtemberg* got Possession of it in 1632, but were forc'd to quit it after the Defeat of the Protestant Forces at the Battle of *Nordlingen*; since which, the House of *Austria* have taken Care to strengthen its Fortifications, chiefly on the Account of the impregnable Castle of *Hohen-Dwiel*, which lies near it. This Castle stands on the top of a high and inaccessible Hill, in the middle of a fine Plain on the Banks of the Lake, according to *Sanson*: But *Dr. Nicholson* says, near the Banks of the *Rhine*. A few Men may hold it out against an Army, the Hill is so very high and steep. Besides, the Soil is so full of Flints, that there's no springing of Mines to annoy it; nor can they be easily starv'd out, because on the top of the Hill they have a good Annual Crop of Corn and Wine. 'Twas formerly one of the Seats of the ancient Dukes of *Swabia*; and when that Family fail'd, it fell to other Masters, and at last, by Marriage in 1520, to the Dukes of *Wurtemberg*.

17. *Constance*, by the Germans called *Cöstnitz*, or *Cöstantz*, is the Metropolis of this Part of the Country, which *La Forrest* calls *Austrian Swabia*. *Dr. Nicholson* says, That all the Country on both Sides the Lake is called by the Name of *Hezog*, and this Lake is commonly taken for the true Boundary betwixt *Swabia* and *Switzerland*. This City lies on the S. W. Side of the Lake of that Name, in Long. 28; 5. Lat. 47. 8. about 8 Miles E. from *Überlingen*, 12 W. from *Buchow*, and 27 S. E. from *Schaffhausen*. Some derive its Name from *Constantius*, Father to *Constantine the Great*, who is said to have founded it, and made his Head Quarter here during the Winter. Others ascribe it to *Constantine* himself, who gave it this Name in Honour of his Father. But from an old Marble Monument, Part of which is still to be seen in the Chapel of *St. Blasius* here, which mentions the Emperors *Dioclesian*, *Maximilian*, and others, some think it to be

much more ancient; which *Dr. Nicholson* obviates, by supposing this Monument to have been brought hither from the Ruins of the old *Vitodurum*, which the Learned *Schedelius* thinks to have stood near this Place. However that is, 'tis certainly an ancient City, since we find it was taken by *Attila the Hun*. It came afterwards into the Hands of the French Kings, and in some of their ancient Records is called, *Villa Regia Dagoberti Regis*. Upon which *Dr. Nicholson* observes, That the French Kings would not suffer the great Towns, which they took at any distance from their own Seats, to be fortified, lest they should revolt. *La Forrest* says, That when *Childebert* King of *Austrasia* sack'd the Town of *Windisb*, which was a Bishop's See, the Bishoprick was transferred to this Place in 594. The Bishop is a Prince of the Empire, and one of the Directors of the Circle of *Swabia*, but Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Mentz*, and has his Residence at *Mersburg*. After 'twas made a Bishoprick, it increas'd daily, and was so well fortified in 938, that it resisted the Hungarian Army, which over-ran the neighbouring Country. 'Twas formerly an Imperial Town; but having refus'd the *Imperial* in 1534, was proscribed, and forced to submit to the House of *Austria*, who governs 'em by a Deputy, allows 'em most of their ancient Privileges, and to retain the Name of an Imperial City. *La Forrest* says, 'tis very populous, well built, has abundance of fair Structures, and is well fortified both by Art and Nature. It has a good Trade by the Neighbourhood of the *Rhine*, which passing by this City out of the great Lake into that called the *Cellersee*, runs through in a fair Stream, without mixing with the Water of the Lake. Their Churches, and particularly the Cathedral of *St. Stephen*, are very magnificent; and their Exchange, Town-House, Market-Places, and Bridges, are very stately. The Bishop has a sumptuous Palace in the Suburb called *Petershausen*, which was fortified in 1635, when the *Swedes* besieg'd the City. That which makes it most remarkable, is the Council held here in 1414, being called by the Emperor *Sigismund*, to remove the Schism occasion'd in the Church by three Popes at a Time; the *Italians* having set up one, the *French* another, and the *Spaniards*

a third, to the general Disturbance of the Christian World. The Council began, as usual, with Mass; at which, while they were singing the Hymn, *Veni Sancte Spiritus*; i. e. Come Holy Ghost, some body clap'd a Paper on the Door with these Words, *Aliis Rebus occupati, nunc adesse vobis non possumus*; i. e. We are taken up with other Affairs, and cannot be present with you now. This the Clergy took for an ill Omen. They quickly agreed to depose all the three Popes; and John, who was set up by the Italians, came hither, according to their Summons, in Expectation, that since he obey'd them, which neither of the other did, they would confirm him in the Chair; but finding it otherwise, he repented of his Forwardness, fled, was pursued, brought back, imprison'd, and depos'd; the other two who were absent had the same Fate; and the Council chose Martin V. at which the Emperor was so overjoy'd, that he immediately went to the Conclave, and kissed the new Pope's Foot. In the 8th Session, they condemn'd Wickliff's Doctrine, in which they inserted many false Articles, and order'd his Bones to be dug up and burnt. In the 15th Session, they condemn'd John Hus, notwithstanding his Safe-Conduct from the Emperor, who at first oppos'd it; but at last, as Sleidan informs us in his Commentaries, being told by the Council, *That Faith was not to be kept to Hereticks*, he comply'd, join'd in the Sentence against him, and order'd him and his Books to be burnt. To justify this, the Council made a Canon, That Faith should not be kept with Hereticks, or those suspected of Heresy, tho' they should come thither with the Emperor's Safe-Conduct, in order to be try'd or examin'd. In the 21st Session, they pass'd the like Sentence upon Jerome of Prague, who was burnt in the same Place with Hus, which the Burghers shew to this Day to any Stranger who desires it. This Council asserted their own Authority to be above that of the Pope, as is own'd by Carranzano, of the Order of the Predicants, in his *Summa Conciliorum*, printed at Lyons with Allowance in 1683; tho' many of the Papists be loth to own it. This Council lasted 4 Years; during which Time, there are said to have been in this little City 4 Patriarchs,

29 Cardinals, 346 Archbishops and Bishops, 564 Abbots and Doctors, 10000 Secular Princes and Nobles, 450 common Harlots, 1600 Barbers, and 320 Musicians, as Doctor Nicholson informs us.

The Bishoprick of Constance lies on the Banks of the Lech, on the Borders of Swiss *serland*, and is commonly reckon'd among the Allies of the Cantons. He is, besides being a Prince, a Count and a Baron of the Empire, was Sovereign of the Town before it was made Imperial, and is said to have 1000 Castles and Villages under his Jurisdiction.

In an Island in this Lake stands the rich Abbey of Reichenau, or *Auge*, founded by a Bishop of Meaux, who retir'd hither in the 9th Century. It was united to the Bishoprick of Constance in 1540. La Forrest says, this Bishoprick is one of the richest and largest in Germany; and that *Mersburg* on the same Lake, the Place of his Residence, is a very pretty City. It lies 12 Miles N. W. from *Buchorn*, over against Constance. Geographers are not agreed as to the Divisions of Upper and Lower Swabia, and therefore, without determining in which of the Parts the Towns stand, we shall only take Notice, That La Forrest places many of the Towns in Upper Swabia, which Dr. Nicholson places in the Lower; nor do our Maps exactly distinguish their Boundaries.

La Forrest, besides the Bishoprick of Constance, reckons in that which he calls *Austrian Swabia*,

I. The Marg. of BURGAW,

Which lies on the S. of the Danube; and had formerly Princes of its own, till 1282; that their Issue failing, the Emperor Rodolph gave it to his own Son Rodolph Duke of Swabia.

The Places of Note here are, 1. *Burgaw*, on the *Mindel*, the Capital of the Country, about 20 Miles N. W. from *Augsburg*. The Emperor Lewis of *Bavaria* besieg'd it in vain in 1321. 2. *Guntzburg*, a small City on the Danube, 8 Miles N. W. from *Burgaw*. It has a Castle, where the Lords of the Country formerly resided, and is now the Seat of the Emperor's Governor. The whole Coun-

Country of *Burgaw* is about 30 Miles long, and as much in Breadth.

II. The Landgraviate of NELLEMBURG.

'Twas Part of the ancient Landgraviate of the *Henow* or *Hegow*, formerly govern'd by Princes of its own; upon the Failure of whom, the Emperor *Rodolph II.* gave it to Arch-Duke *Ferdinand*.

The Places of Note here are, 1. *Nellemburg*, about 4 Miles S. from the *Danube*, and 12 N.W. from *Uberlingen*. 2. *Stokeim*, a small City about 7 Miles E. from *Nellemburg*. The Country is about 27 Miles long, and 12 broad.

III. The County of HOHENBERG,

Formerly govern'd by Princes of its own; but came to the Emperor *Rodolph I.* in the 13th Century, on his marrying the Heiress. It lies betwixt the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg* and the Principality of *Furstenberg*.

The chief Places are, 1. *Hohenberg*, a strong Castle near the Head of the *Neckar*, about 13 Miles N. W. from *Nellemburg*. 2. *Rotemburg* on the *Neckar*, 27 Miles N. E. from *Hohenberg*, which some make the Capital of the Country. 'Twas built by *Albert*, their last Count, in 1271. 3. *Willingen*, on the *Birg*, a large Village, noted for its wholesome Baths. 4. The *Ortnaw*, by some called *Mornaw*. It lies on the *Rhine*, contains no remarkable Cities, belonging properly to the House of *Austria*; but there are 3 Imperial Towns here which are under the Emperor's Protection, viz. 1. *Offenburg*, on the *Kintch*, or, as some call it, *Offingen*, within a League of the *Rhine*, and 10 Miles S. E. from *Strausburg*, where *M. de Villars* took a great Train of Artillery, that the Imperialists design'd to have put into Fort *Kheil*. 2. *Zell*, on the *Nagolt*, near the *Rhine*, 8 Miles S. E. from *Offenburg*. 'Twas taken by *M. de Villars* in 1703. 3. *Gengenbach*, mid-way betwixt *Offenburg* and *Zell*, which was taken by *M. de Villars* at the same Time. *Sanson* makes this Country about 24 Miles long, and 18 broad. The two Bailiwicks of *Oberkirk* and *Oppenaw* in this Country belong to the Bishoprick of *Strausburg*.

IV. The BRISGOW,

Which lies in the Neighbourhood of the *Rhine*, betwixt the *Ortnaw* and the Principality of *Furstenberg*.

The Places of Note here are, 1. *Friburg*, on the River *Treisem*, upon a Hill, where the *Black Forrest* begins. 'Tis now the Capital of *Brisgow*; but was first only a Village, built by Miners, who wrought in the Silver and Gold Mines betwixt it and *Brisac*. In a little Time they grew so rich, as to purchase the Estates and Titles of Noblemen; and the City grew so large, that, on a short Warning, they were able to send 3000 Men to the Field. It belong'd formerly to the Dukes of *Zeringen*, and afterwards by Marriage to the House of *Furstenberg*, from whom they revolted, and submitted to the House of *Austria* in 1386. 'Tis very populous and strong. 'Twas several times taken and retaken during the Civil Wars of *Germany*, particularly three times by the *Swedes*, in 1632, 1634, and 1638; and twice since by the *French*, in 1671, and 1677. 'Twas confirmed to them by the Treaty of *Nimwegen*. After which, they made the Fortifications very strong; but 'twas restored to the Emperor by way of Exchange at the Treaty of *Ryswick* in 1697. 'Tis also noted for a great Victory obtain'd near it by the Prince of *Condé*, then Duke of *Enguien*, over the *Bavarians* in 1644. 'Tis the Seat of a Sovereign Court, and of an University, founded by Arch-Duke *Albert* in 1450. There are 14 Religious Houses in the Town, and the Citizens are famous for polishing Precious Stones found in *Lorraine*, and the neighbouring Countries. *Baudrand* says, 'twas built in 1120 by the Duke of *Zeringen*, and that it was formerly an Imperial Town. He adds, that the Chapter of *Basle* resides here, tho' the Town be in the Diocese of *Constance*. It lies 30 Miles S. from *Strausburg*, and 10 Miles E. from *Brisac*.

2. *Brisac*, called by *Antonin*, *Mont Brisac*; and the ancient Inhabitants are by the Latins called *Brisgawi*. 'Twas formerly the Metropolis of *Brisgow*. Historians say, it was built by the Emperor *Valentinian*. It stands on the top of a round Hill, and is so well

well fortified by Nature and Art, that 'tis reckon'd one of the strongest Places in Europe. But they have only one deep Well, which furnishes Water to the whole City. In 1638, during the Civil Wars of Germany, it held out a great Siege against the Swedes and French, commanded by the D. of Sax-Weimar, for 4 Months: During which, Dr. Nicholson says, they were reduc'd to such Straits, as to dig up the dead Bodies of their Soldiers, and eat them, after they had been buried some Days; and on both Sides there were 80000 Men slain, and 1100000 Crowns spent in Ammunition; but being taken, it was given to the French by the Treaty of Munster. After which, the French King repair'd its Fortifications, and set up a Court of Judicature there, like the Chamber of Spies, to determine all Controversies. It was confirm'd to him by the Treaty of Nimwegen: After which, he laid Claim to several other Towns and Villages, as its Dependencies. 'Twas restor'd to the Empire by the Treaty of Ryswick; but retaken by the Duke of Burgundy in 1703, after 13 Days open Trenches. It is joined to some Islands in the Rhine by Bridges, which are fortified. On the W. Side, it has 8 Baffions fill'd with Earth, and fac'd with Brick; and before every Curtain, there's a Half-Moon. The Ditch is broad, and the Counterfcarp, Cover'd-way, and Palifadoes, in very good Order. It has also a strong Citadel. On the W. of the Town, the Fortifications are a League in Circumference, and the Town is capable of 10000 in Garison. It lies 32 Miles S. from Strasburg, and 10 W. from Friburg. It had a fair strong Bridge over the Rhine, which was destroyed by the French after the Treaty of Ryswick.

To Austrian Swabia, belong also those call'd the Four Forrest Towns, because they lie at the Entrance of the Black Forrest.

These TOWNS are,

1. *Rheinfeld*, a small City, with a Bridge over the Rhine above *Basse* in *Switzerland*. It was the Capital of a County, which came to the Emperor *Rodolph I* by his Marriage with *Anne* Countess of *Hohenberg*. The Duke of Sax-Weimar, General of the Swedes, took it in 1638; but 'twas restor'd to the

Empire by the Treaty of *Westphalia*. It lies on the S. Side of the Rhine, 28 Miles S. from *Brisac*, and 8 E. from *Basse*.

2. *Seckingen*, in an Island of the Rhine, 8 Miles E. from *Rheinfeld*. 'Twas taken by the Duke of Sax-Weimar in 1638, and restor'd to the Emperor in 1648.

3. *Laufenburg*, about 7 Miles E. from *Seckingen*. The Rhine divides it into two Parts. 'Twas taken and restor'd by the Swedes at the same Time with *Rheinfeld*.

4. *Waldshut*, or *Waldshut*, on the Conflux of the *Schult* and Rhine. It has its Name from being a Key into the *Black Forrest*, part of which it covers.

La Forrest, besides the Places already mention'd in *Upper Swabia*, takes Notice of those that follow.

1. *Arbon*, or *Arbonne*, a City near the Lake of *Constance*, which is inclos'd by the Dominions of the *Swissers*, and was formerly call'd *Arbor Felix*. *Sanson* places it 8 Miles N. E. from *St. Gall* in *Switzerland*, and 15 S. E. from *Constance*. 2. *Birchhoffzell*, a small Town on the *Sitter*, about 8 Miles W. from *St. Gall*. 3. *Kiburg*, on the *Danube*, a City which gave Title to the ancient Counts of that Name, who possess'd several Lordships in *Switzerland*. *Gustavus Adolphus* pass'd the *Danube* near this Place in 1632. 4. *Leckpruck*, on the River *Lech*, a small City, which was ruin'd during the Civil Wars of Germany. He mentions also 14 Abbies in this Country, besides those we have already describ'd; several of whose Abbots are Princes of the Empire; but we shall not insist upon them, because he says nothing remarkable of them.

Besides the Secular States already mention'd in *Upper Swabia*, he takes Notice of those that follow.

The Principality of FURSTEMBERG,

A small Country on both Sides the *Danube*, extended about 70 Miles in Length. It has the Fountains of that famous River within its Boundaries, and comprehends Part of the Landgraviate of *Bar*, of the County of *Heyligenberg*, and other Lordships, and was erect'd into a Principality in 1677.

S s s s

The

The chief Town is *Furstemberg*, on the *Danube*, about 12 Miles N. from *Schaffhausen* in *Switzerland*, and 22 N. E. from *Waldshut*. It gives a Title to the ancient Family of *Furstemberg*, which is descended from the Counts of *Friburg*, and divided into two Branches; that of *Heyligenberg*, call'd Princes; and that of *Blamberg*, call'd Counts. The Principality is subject to its own Prince, who is a Count of the Empire. His Family has produced several great Persons; among others, the Cardinal of *Furstemberg* Bishop of *Strasburg*, who being in the French Interest, helped to bring that City under the Subjection of *France*, and procur'd himself to be chosen Archbishop of *Cologne*, which was one of the Causes of the late War betwixt the Empire and *France*.

In this Country lie also, 1. *Huffingen*, a large open Town near the Fountains of the *Danube*. 2. *Doneschingen*, another large Town, within a League of the former, upon the Confines of the old *Hercinian* Forrest. 3. *Heyligenberg*, a Castle on a Mountain, with the Title of a County, belonging to the eldest Branch of the Family. It lies 9 Miles N. E. of *Uberlingen*, and came to this Family by marrying the Heiress in 1534.

The County of FURSTEMBERG,

Adjoining to the Principality, contains the Bailiwick of *Blamberg*, the Barony of *Moeskirk*, the Landgraviate of *Hulingen*, and two Lordships. Its Counts possess likewise *Gundelfingen* in *North Swabia*. The Family of *Blamberg* is divided into the Branches of *Moeskirk* and *Hulingen*. *Moeskirk*, the Title of the eldest Branch, is a pretty small Town, on a little River that falls into the *Danube*. *Hulingen*, the Title of a Landgraviate, belonging to the younger Branch, lies on the Frontiers of *Schaffhausen*. In this Country lies *Engen*, near the Lake of *Constance*; and *Wildenstein*, a large open Town with a Castle, near *Walburg*.

The County of SULTZ,

Lies near the Frontiers of *Zurich* and *Schaffhausen*, and takes its Name from a large open Town called *Sultz*, which gives

Title of Counts to one of the oldest Families in *Germany*.

The County of E M S,

Derives its Name from a Castle near the *Rhine*, towards the Frontiers of the Canton of *Appenzel*, and gives Title to the Counts of *Ems*. It lies about 10 Miles S. from *Bregenz*, is about 10 Miles long, and 5 broad. This Family is divided into two principal Branches, called the *Roman* and *German*; and the latter is divided into the Branches of *Hohenelms* and *Wadutz*.

The County of MONTFORT,

Lies S. of *Ems*, about 12 Miles long, and 6 broad, derives its Name from a fine Castle towards the Frontiers of *St. Gall* and *Appenzel*, within two Leagues of the *Rhine*. It gives Title of Count to the Family of *Montfort*, one of the oldest in *Swabia*.

The County of WALDBURG,

Which lies S. from *Ravensburg*, derives its Name from a fine Castle belonging to the Family of this Name, which is divided into the 4 Branches of *Wolfack*, *Zeil*, *Scheer*, and *Frauchburg*. This County is 20 Miles long, and 18 broad; comprehends the Lordships, 1. Of *Walsee* near *Walzburg*, a large open Town, fortified with a Castle. Here are the Tombs of the Counts of *Walzburg*. 2. Of *Wurtzach*, another large open Town, half a League from *Walsee*. 3. *Friedberg*, which has a fortified Castle, betwixt *Mengen* and *Saulgen*. 4. *Sheer*, an open Town, with a strong Castle, on the *Danube*.

The County of KOENIGSECK,

A pretty open Town, near the River *Schuss*, which gives Title of Count to the Family of this Name, descended from the ancient Family of the *Guelphs*, so well known in History. 'Tis divided into the Branches of *Rottenfels* and *Aulendorf*. *Rottenfels* is the principal Town of a Bailiwick of that Name in the *Algow*, and lies 23 Miles E. from *Bregenz*. *Aulendorf* is the chief Town

Town of a Lordship of that Name, and lies 8 Miles N. W. from *Waldsee*.

The County of KIRKBERG,

On the *Lifser*, otherwise call'd the County of *Suger*, gives Title to Counts of that Name. The County is 18 Miles long, and 8 broad. This Family is divided into several Branches, who are very rich. The Town of *Kirkberg* lies about 7 Miles S. from *Ulm*. These Counts possess likewise the Lordship of *Kirchheim*, a large open Town, within two Leagues of *Ursperg*; and the Lordship of *Obernorf*, a considerable open Town on the River *Lech*, 7 Miles S. from *Donawert*.

The Barony of MINDELHEIM,

In the *Algow*, lies betwixt the Bishoprick of *Augsburg* and the Abbacy of *Kempten*. *Mindelheim*, the chief Town, lies on the River *Mindel*, is a large open Place, 18 Miles N. from *Memmingen*, and 25 S. from *Augsburg*. It was formerly subject to Princes of its own, of several Families, and particularly to the Dukes of *Teck*, and afterwards to the Lords of *Rechberg* and *Fronsberg*, whose Issue failing, the Emperor *Rodolph II.* invested *William V.* of *Bavaria* with it. It continued in that Family till the Proscription of the late Elector; and after the Battle of *Hochstat*, was erected into a Principality for the Duke of *Marlborough* and his Posterity, as a Reward for his Grace's Share in that great Victory. He has a Vote in the Diet, and the Principality is always to be in the Hands of a Protestant. *Sansou* makes it, where longest, about 18 Miles, and the greatest Breadth about 16. It contains, besides *Mindelheim*, the Towns of *Ingried*, and *Schwabek*.

La Forrest mentions also in *Upper Swabia* the City of *Kaufbeuren* on the *Wertach*, formerly govern'd by Counts of its own, who sold 'em their Freedom in 1024; and next Year it was made an Imperial Town by the Emperor *Conrad II.* It lies 18 Miles N. E. from the Abbey of *Kempten*, and 33 S. from *Augsburg*. *Pfullendorf*, on the River *Sal*, a small and neat City, which was made Imperial by the Emperor *Frederick I.* It lies

10 Miles S. of the *Danube*, and 14 N. from *Uberlingen*, on the Lake of *Constance*.

La Forrest mentions the following Places in *Lower Swabia*.

The Principality of HOHENZOLLERN,

Which lies betwixt the Principality of *Furstenberg* and the Dutchy of *Wurtemberg*. It took its Name from the Castle of *Zollern*, built by the Emperor *Henry V.* in 1122. 'Tis, according to *Moll*, 34 Miles in Length, and about 10 where broadest; but in other Places scarce 5. 'Tis govern'd by its own Princes, descended from the ancient Counts of *Zollern*, whose Pedigree is derived from *Taffilo* Count of *Hechingen*. This Family is divided into the two Branches of *Hechingen* and *Sigmaringen*, who were made Princes of the Empire by *Ferdinand II.* They are Chamberlains of the Empire, and Vicars to the Elector of *Brandenburg* in that Office. They and their Subjects are Papists.

The Places of Note here are, 1. *Hechingen*, a small City, with the Title of a County, betwixt the *Danube* and the *Neckar*, 8 Miles S. from *Tubingen*. It gives Title to the eldest Branch of the Family. 2. *Zollern*, an ancient Castle on the River *Zollern*, which gives Title to the Lords who reside there. 3. *Heicherlock*, or *Hagerlach*, upon the same River, a small City, with the Title of a County. 4. *Sigmaringen*, a great open Town on the *Danube*, which gives Title to the younger Branch of this Family.

The Principality of OETINGEN,

A small Country betwixt the Marq. of *Anspach* and the Dutchy of *Newburg*. *Sansou* makes it 28 Miles long, and 18 broad, including *Nordlingen* and its Territory. The Lords of this Country are Protestants, and were made Princes of the Empire in 1674.

The chief Places are, 1. *Oettingen*, or *Oettingen*, on the *Wernitz*, 15 Miles N. W. from *Donawert*, and 10 N. E. from *Nordlingen*. One half of the Town belongs to the Princes of this Name, and the other to the Counts of *Oettingen*. 2. *Allerheimb*, on the same River, the Capital of a Bailiwick.

The County of *Oettingen* comprehends 3 Bailiwicks, belonging to the younger Branch of the Family, sub-divided into 4 other Branches, all Papists, who observe Seniority in Point of Succession among one another.

3. *Wallerstein*, on the *Eyer*, a great open Town, which gives Title to a Branch of the Family, and is Capital of a Bailiwick.

4. *Nordlingen*, called by the Latins, *Alia, Alia Flavia*, and *Nerolinga*. It lies on the River *Eyer*, in the Confines of the *Norgau*. 'Tis a small Imperial City, 10 Miles S. W. from *Oettingen*, 8 N. from *Blenheim*, and 15 N. W. from *Donawert*. 'Twas made an Imperial Town in 1251; and for their Security, is in League with the *Swissers*. 'Tis remarkable for two great Battles; the first in 1634, betwixt the *Germans* and the *Swedes*, when the latter were defeated; and the 2d in 1646, when the *Swedes* and the *French*, who came to the Assistance of the Protestants of the Empire, under the Prince of *Conde*, defeated the *Bavarians*.

5. *Dunkelspibel*, on the *Wernitz*, a small Imperial City in the County of *Oettingen*, taken by the *French* after the Battle of *Nordlingen* in 1646. One half of the Magistrates are Papists, and the other *Lutherans*.

6. *Gingen*, on the *Prenitz*, half-way betwixt *Ulm* and *Nordlingen*, a small Imperial City, whose Magistrates are Protestants.

The County of WASSENSTAIN,

Enclos'd by the Dutchy of *Wurtemberg*, was acquir'd by the Duke of *Bavaria* in 1627. The chief Place is *Weissenstain*, an open Town in a very fruitful Valley, defended by a strong Castle.

The County of LOEWENSTEIN,

Within two Leagues of the *Neckar*. It takes its Name from a Castle, and is partly included in the Dutchy of *Wurtemberg*. The Elector *Palatine* bought it in 1441, from the last of its ancient Counts; so that the present Count is a Branch of the *Palatine* Family, and has several other Lands, particularly the County of *Wertheim* in *Francia*.

The County of HOHENRECHBERG,

Betwixt the Dutchy of *Wurtemberg* and the Territory of *Ulm*. 'Tis possess'd by a Family descended from *Hildebrand*, surnam'd the *Salé*, or *Ugly*, which is divided into several Branches. The only Place of Note here is the Castle of the same Name, which gives Denomination to the County.

The County of GRAVENECK,

Betwixt the Dutchy of *Wurtemberg* and the Principality of *Hohenzollern*, belongs to Lords of the same Name, one of the oldest Families in *Swabia*. The Places of Note are, 1. *Graveneck*, a large open Town, with a fine Castle, well fortified, the usual Residence of the Counts. 2. *Eglingen*, a small City near *Nordlingen*, which belongs to this Family.

The Dutchy of Wurtemberg.

'TIS a Province of the Circle of *Swabia*, and abounds with every Thing that can bring Profit or Pleasure to the Inhabitants. Their Mountains are full of Mines and Vineyards, and the Vallies stock'd with large Herds of Cattle. They have abundance of pleasant Meadows and Forrests, with Variety of Game. 'Tis water'd with many small Rivers; and has several Lakes full of Fish. It has the Palatinate of the *Rhine* and *Franconia* on the N. the *Danube* on the S. the Principality of *Baden* on the W. and the Bishoprick of *Augsburg* on the E. *Moll* makes it about 70 Miles from N. to S. and including the *Black Forest*, 90 from E. to W. 'Tis so populous, that 'tis said to contain 63 Cities, 158 great Towns, 645 Villages, and 14 Abbies. Before the Civil Wars of *Germany*, the Duke was able to raise 24000 Men in 24 Hours; but that calamitous War lessen'd the Number of People here, as in other Places of the Empire. It was made a County in 1078, and a Dutchy in 1495, by the Consent of the Diet, because their Princes had much improv'd their Estates, which at first consisted only of the Castle of *Wurtemberg*,

berg, that gives Name to the County, with the Villages that depended upon it.

The *Atlas Historique* gives the following Account of their Origine and Genealogy: Authors differ as to their Origine: Some derive them from *Everard*, Great Master of *Charlemagne's* Household, who was Son to *Henry* Lord of *Butelsbach*: Others derive them from *Conrad* of *Wirtemberg*, who was made a Count of the Empire by *Henry IV.* for his good Services. His Son *Everard the Debonaire*, or the Good, enlarged his Dominions, by marrying the Heiress of the Duke of *Teck*, and was so potent, that he had always 6 Princes, 8 Counts, 5 Barons, and 70 Gentlemen, in his Retinue. His Son *Everard* acquir'd the County of *Montbelliard*, by marrying the Heiress. His Son *Louis* purchas'd 3 Lordships from the Count of *Helfenstein*. His Successor *Everard*, surnam'd the *Bearded*, was made Duke and Knight of the *Golden Fleece* by the Emperor *Maximilian I.* and dying without Issue, was succeeded by *Everard VII.* a Prince of the same Family. *Ulrich VI.* who was born in 1487, embrac'd *Lutheranism*, and enter'd into the League of *Smalkald*. He died in 1550; and was succeeded by his Son *Christopher*, who deliver'd his Country from the *Spanish Yoke*, and died in 1568. His Son *Louis II.* succeeded, founded the University of *Tubingen*, and having no Issue, appointed his Cousin *Frederick* to succeed. His Country suffer'd much by the Duke of *Guise*, who ravag'd it in 1608. He was succeeded by his Son *John Frederick*, who in his Youth travelled over the World, and died in 1628. The present Duke *Everard Louis*, his Great Grandson, was born in 1676. He is Knight of the *Golden Fleece*, and General of the Emperor's Horse. His eldest Son, *Frederick Louis*, was born in 1698. This Prince and his Subjects are Protestants, and are call'd the Branch of *Stutgard*, which is the eldest of the Family. The other Branches of this Family are that call'd the *Julian* and *Silesian* Branch, and that of *Bernstadt*. They descended from *Frederick* above mention'd. The present Prince is *Charles Frederick*, who was born in 1690. From *Julius Frederick II.* of this Branch, came that of *Weiltingen*, whose Prince is *Frederick Ferdinand*. From *Sylvius Nimrod*, the 2d of the *Julian* Branch, came that of *Juliusburg*, whose Prince is

Charles, born in 1682. From the above-mention'd *Frederick* did also proceed the Branch of *Montbelliard*, whose Prince *George* was despoil'd of his Dominions by the *French*, but reitor'd by the Treaty of *Ryswick*, and died in 1699. His Son *Leopold Everard*, the present Prince, was born in 1670, and is Knight of the Order of the *Elephant*. From *John Frederick*, the great Traveller, came the Branch of *Newstat*, by a 2d Son. The present Prince is *Frederick Augustus*. From *Everard VIII.* who was born in 1614, proceeded the Branch of *Wirtemberg*, whose present Prince, *Frederick Charles*, was born in 1652. He was General of the Emperor's Horse in the last War. His Son *Charles Alexander* is General Major of the Empire.

The Titles of the Princes of *Wirtemberg* are, Dukes of *Wirtemberg* and *Teck*, Counts of *Montbelliard*, Lords of *Heidenheim*, &c.

Their Dominions are, 1. The Duchy of *Wirtemberg*. 2. The County of *Aurach*. 3. The County of *Groningen*. 4. The Castle and Bailiwick of *Teck*. 5. Of *Kirkheim*. 6. Of *Owen*. 7. Of *Guttemberg*. 8. Of *Achalmen*. 9. Of the Fort of *Hohenstauffen*. 10. The Bailiwicks of *Balingen*. 11. Of *Dutlingen*. 12. Of *Blaubeuren*. 13. The Lordship of *Heidenheim*. 14. The County of *Kalbe*. 15. Part of the County of *Eberstein*. 16. The Lordship of *Tubingen*.

The Titles of the Princes of *Oels*, another Branch of this Family, are, Dukes of *Wirtemberg*, *Teck*, and *Oels*, Count of *Montbelliard*, Lord of *Heidenheim*, &c. Their Dominion is, the Principality of *Oels*.

The Dominions of the Branch of *Newstat* are, 1. *Newstat* and its District. 2. *Weinsberg*. 3. *Mackmuche*. The Dominions of the Branch of *Montbelliard* are, 1. The County of *Montbelliard*. 2. The Lordship of *Blamont*. 3. Of *Herricourt*. 4. Of *Chaffet*. 5. Of *Clemont*. 6. Of *Cleerval*. 7. Of *Passavant*. The 6 last are Fiefs of the County of *Burgundy*. The Branch of *Weiltingen* has *Weiltingen* and its District.

The *Atlas* says, the Duchy of *Wirtemberg* is one of the finest and most fruitful Countries in *Germany*. The *Danube*, which runs by its Neighbourhood, and the River *Neckar*, which runs through the Country, enrich the Inhabitants, by the Conveniency of transporting their Commodities: And

the

the Duke of *Wurtemberg* is still able to raise 20000 Men in a little Time. When the Emperor commands his Armies, the Duke carries the Imperial Cornet or Standard, which is Or, a *Baton Sable*, pointed *Argent*, with a *Spread Eagle Sable*. He is also Great Huntsman of the Empire, and Joint Director of the Circle of *Swabia* with the Bishop of *Constance*.

The Arms of *Wurtemberg* are, Or, 3 *Demi-Perches* or Branches of *Stags-Horns Sable*, laid Face-wise one above another, charg'd with 4 Antlers, each of the same, for *Wurtemberg*. In the 1st, *Lozenges Or* and *Sable*, for *Teck*. In the 2d, *Azure*, a *Standard Or*, plac'd Bend-wise, charg'd with a *Spread-Eagle Sable*, for the Standard of the Empire. In the 3d, *Gules*, 2 *Trouts Or*, Back to Back, and fac'd Pale-wise, for *Montbelliard*. The Helmets are Or Crown'd, surmounted with a *Horn*, with white Feathers in its Mouth, for *Wurtemberg* in the 1st. Or Crown'd, a *Dog's-Head Lozeng'd Or* and *Sable*, for *Teck*. The 2d Or Crown'd, surmounted with a *Lady Crown'd Argent*, and clad *Gules*, with 2 *Trouts Or*, instead of Arms, for *Montbelliard*.

Dr. *Nicholson* observes, That Duke *Ulrick* was drove out of his Dominions in 1519, when they were sold to the Emperor *Charles V.* But he was restor'd in 1534, by the Assistance of the King of *France*, and the Landgrave of *Hesse*. Whereupon 'twas agreed, That he should pay Homage to the House of *Austria*. But in 1599, the Duke was restored to his ancient State, the House of *Austria* reserving only the Title and Arms, and the Right of Succession on the Failure of the Duke's Heirs Male.

The Confession of *Wurtemberg*,

WAS one of those added for explaining the Confession of *Augsburg*, and presented to the Council of *Trent* by the Ministers of the Dukes of *Wurtemberg* and *Montbelliard* in 1552. It agrees in Doctrine with that of *Augsburg*, which it explains; and in many Things, is more particular and express. In the Head of Order, they declare against Sacrificing Priests, and for the Identity of Bishop and Presbyter; alledging, That except a Presbyter be appointed in the

Church for Teaching, he cannot rightly be called either Presbyter or Bishop. They declare also against significant Ceremonies, such as lighting of Wax Candles to adumbrate the Revelation or Light of the Gospel, and the Sign of the Cross, to denote Christ's Victory by it, &c.

Their chief Towns.

1. *Stutgard*, the Metropolis of the Country. It lies near the *Neckar*, about the middle of the Dutchy, in Long. 28. Lat. 48. 38. 62 Miles W. from *Nordlingen*, and 52 S. from *Strasburg*. 'Tis the Residence of the Duke, who has a Castle there very well fortified. 'Tis a noble Fabrick, adorn'd with delicate Groves and Gardens, with fair Rows of Orange-Trees, fine Grotto's and Water-works, and a Pleasure-House, as stately as that of any Prince of the Empire. The City is pretty large; but most of the Citizens Houses are built of Wood, and low. The Town is much resorted to, because of its natural Baths, which cure many Diseases. Some derive the Name from its being formerly a Place for breeding young Horses. This, they think, is confirmed by the Arms of the City, which is a young Colt let loose.

2. *Tubingen*, the 2d City of the Dutchy. 'Twas not long ago govern'd by Counts of its own, who had their Residence at *Leichenneck* in *Alsace*. It lies upon the *Neckar*, about 17 Miles S. from *Stutgard*; is a fair City, and adorn'd with an University, founded by Count *Everard*, formerly mention'd, in 1477. The College was projected by Count *Christopher*, built by Count *Lewis*, endow'd by Count *John Frederick*, and advanc'd in Reputation by Duke *Everard*. None are admitted here but such as are descended from ancient Families, and accounted Gentlemen. Here's a Supreme Court of Judicature, where all Causes, Civil and Criminal, are determin'd by 5 Nobles, 4 Doctors of the University, and 4 Burghers. There's likewise a Consistory of Divines and Civilians, who determine Ecclesiastical Causes. The first Rector of the University was *Nauslerus*, whose Historical Works were publish'd by *Melancthon* in 1500, and are much commended by *Camerarius*. The chief

chief Scholars they can boast of, of late, are *Crusius* and *Schickard*, both well vers'd in the Oriental Languages. In the Church of this City, are the Tombs of the Princes and Princesses of *Wurtemberg*. Some Antiquaries pretend, that the Emperor *Caracalla* had a Palace here, where he entertain'd the Germans with Publick Games.

3. *Wurtemberg*, a very ancient Castle on a Hill upon the *Neckar*, which gives Title to the Dukes, and the Name to the Country.

4. *Efingen*, on the *Neckar*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Stutgard*. 'Tis a small Imperial City, under the Protection of the Duke. 'Twas walled by the Emperor *Frederick II.* and made Imperial in the 16th Century. 'Tis a Place of good Trade, and the Magistrates are Protestants.

5. *Reitling*, or *Rutlingen*, on a small River which falls into the *Neckar*. 'Twas made Imperial by *Frederick II.* in 1240. It lies 12 Miles S. E. from *Tubingen*, is under the Protection of the Duke, and most of the Citizens are Protestants.

6. *Gemund*, on the Frontiers of the County of *Hohenrechtberg*, 28 Miles E. from *Stutgard*. *Frederick I.* made it Imperial in 1186. The Magistrates are Papists. 'Twas formerly noted for Tournaments held here by the Nobility of *Swabia*.

7. *Rotweil*, on the *Neckar*, at the Entrance into the *Black Forrest*, 37 Miles S. W. from *Tubingen*. 'Tis a small Imperial Town, fortified after the ancient Manner. An Imperial Chamber was established here by the Emperor *Conrad III.* when he made it Free in 1147. The French took it in 1643, under the M. de *Guebriant*, when they join'd the Swedes. The Marshal died of his Wounds next Day after it was taken. 'Twas also seized by the M. de *Villars* in 1703, after he pass'd the *Black Forrest*.

8. *Hailbron*, i. e. a Fountain of Health, so called from its famous Medicinal Springs. It stands in the Limits of this Dutchy, on the *Neckar*, 28 Miles N. from *Stutgard*. 'Tis a neat well built Town, and has a fine Bridge over the *Neckar*. 'Twas made Imperial by *Frederick II.* in 1240, and was several times taken and retaken during the Wars with the Swedes. Most of the Inhabitants are Protestants.

9. *Hall*, on a little River of the same Name, on the Frontiers of *Franconia*, 22 Miles E. from *Hailbron*. It has its Name

from a Salt Fountain in the Neighbourhood. It depended formerly on the Dukes of *Wurtemberg*; but was made Imperial by *Charles IV.* in 1360.

10. *Weill*, on the *Worm*, 12 Miles W. from *Stutgard*. 'Twas made Imperial by *Frederick II.* in 1240. The Inhabitants are Papists.

La Forreft takes Notice of the other Places following in this Country; 1. *Konstanz*, on the *Neckar*, a pretty Town, of good Trade. 2. *Heidenheim*, on the Frontiers of the Territory of *Ulm*, a large Town, well fortified. 3. *Scherndorf*, on the *Rems*, a small City, noted for the great Quantity of Salt made there. 4. *Marbach* on the *Neckar*, a small, but a pleasant Town. 5. *Lauffen*, another small Town on the same River, seated the most pleasantly of any in *Swabia*. 6. *Neustatt*, on the *Koker*, near the Borders of the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, a small City, which gives Title to a Branch of the Dukes of *Wurtemberg*. 7. *Befigheim*, on the *Ems*, a little above where it falls into the *Neckar*. 8. *Nagolt*, a small City on a River of the same Name. 9. *Neifsen*, within a League of the *Neckar*, a small City, which formerly belong'd to the Counts of *Weinsperg*. 10. *Aurack*, a small City, with a good Castle, on a rising Ground betwixt the *Neckar* and the *Danube*. 11. *Schultz*, on the *Neckar*, near the Borders of *Hohenzollern*. 12. *Hornberg*, a small City, upon a River at the Entrance into the *Black Forrest*. 13. *Reinfat*, an important Pass at the Entrance of the *Black Forrest*, which has been lately fortified, and the Foundations of a Town are marked out within the Fortifications. 14. *Dutlingen*, near the Fountain of the *Danube*, famous for a Battle betwixt the French and Imperialists in 1643.

The Marquisate of Baden.

THIS Country lies on the Eastern Banks of the *Rhine*, has the *Palatinate* on the N. *Switzerland* on the S. the *Black Forrest* on the E. and *Alsace* on the W. *Moll* makes it, including *Brifgow*, 87. Miles long, and the greatest Breath about 20. 'Tis exceeding fruitful in Corn, Wine, and Hemp, and every where so full of Villages, that some compare it to a continu'd City, interlac'd with

with fair Gardens. The *Rhine*, *Ents*, *Wurmb*, *Phints*, and other Rivers, afford them Plenty of Fish. Their Chafes and Parks are so well stock'd with Venison and Fowl, that the Rusticks have them for their ordinary Diet. They sell vast Quantities of Hemp and Flax to the *Dutch* and the *Flemings*. They have many Woods of Chesnuts, in which they have great Herds of Swine. They have many Quarries of Free-Stone, and Marble of all Colours; so that they build fair Houses at a small Charge. In the County of *Spanheim*, they have Agate, which they polish and export. But their chief Advantage is from their great Numbers of excellent hot Baths, and Mineral Springs, that occasion a great Resort of the Nobility from most Parts of the Empire, which has mightily civiliz'd the Inhabitants, and makes them very complaisant to Strangers. The People are stout and Warlike, inur'd to Labour and Hardships, and make as good Soldiers as any in the Empire.

The *Atlas Historique* gives us the following Account of the Genealogy of the Princes of this Family: *Archinoald*, Major-domo to *Clovis II.* King of *France*, is reckon'd the Founder of it. The next taken notice of is *Hugh* Count of *Ferette*, the 6th from *Archinoald*. After him came *Everard* Count of *Alsace*, from whence, according to some Authors, proceeded the Family of *Lorrain*. Next to him came *Gontran the Rich*, Count of *Altenburg*, from whence came the Branches of *Baden* and *Austria*: From whom, after 6 Descents, came *Herman III.* from whom sprung the first Branch of *Baden*, and that called the Branch of *Baden-Hochberg*, which were reunited in the 15th Century. 'Tis fit to observe here, That *Dr. Nicholson* says, the *German* Herald's can scarce determine the Pedigree of this Family, 'tis so ancient. Some derive them from the *Ursins*: Others from the House of *Della Scala*, or the *Scaligers*: But the most probable Opinion is, That they are of the same Origine with the House of *Austria*. The Branch of *Hochberg* came from *Berthold*, Lord of *Brissgaw*, first Duke of *Zeringen*, and afterwards made Duke of *Carinthia*, who died in 1077. *Herman IV.* Son to *Herman III.* above-mention'd, married into the *Palatine* Family of the *Guelphs*, and died in 1190. His Son *Herman V.* conquer'd Part of *Austria*, and

his Son *Frederick* was beheaded at *Naples* in 1269. So that his Brother *Rodolph* succeeded. From him, after 8 Descents, came *Christopher*, who united the Branches of *Hochberg* and *Baden*, and died in 1527. From him proceeded the Branches of *Baden Baden*, and of *Baden Durlach*. From him, after 7 Descents, came the late famous *Louis William*, who was Generalissimo of the Army of the Empire, signaliz'd himself by his great Victories against the *Turks*, and his Defence of the Empire against the *French*, in very discouraging Circumstances. He died in 1706, and has left behind him a Son, born in 1703, who is under his Mother's Guardianship.

The Princes of this Family are Papists; and a Branch of 'em, descended from Prince *Louis's* Grandfather, is that of *Lebeschütz* in *Bohemia*, whose present Prince, *Leopold William*, has a Defect in his Speech.

The Branch of *Baden Durlach* is *Lutheran*. The present Prince is *Frederick III.* call'd *The Great*, who was born in 1647, and has a numerous Issue; among whom, there's a Son, and two Grandsons.

Their Titles are, Margraves of *Baden* and *Hochberg*, Landgrave of *Sausenberg*, Count of *Spanheim* and of *Eberstein*, Lord of *Rotelen*, *Baden Weiler*, *Lahr*, and *Mühlberg*.

The Dominions of the Margraves of *Baden Baden* are, the Upper Marq. of *Baden*, Part of the County of *Eberstein*, Half the County of *Spanheim*, the Lordship of *Uffenberg*, 9 Towns in *Bohemia*, which came to them by Marriage; the Earldom and Castle of *Guntzburg*, betwixt *Ulm* and *Augsburg*, given to Prince *Louis* by the late Emperor, as a Reward of his great Services; and the Fort of *Kheil*.

The Dominions of *Baden Durlach* are, the Lower Marq. of *Baden*, the Marq. of *Hochberg*, the Landgraviate of *Sausenberg*, the Lordships of *Rotelen*, *Lahr*, *Baden Weiler*, and *Mühlberg*.

Their Arms are, Or, a *Brachant Gules*, for *Baden*. 1. *Checkee*, *Argent* and *Gules*, for *Spanheim*. 2. Quarter'd, a *Rose Gules*, and a *Bear Sable*, on a *Green Hill*, for *Eberstein*. 3. A *Lion Gules*, Crown'd Or, for *Brissgaw*. 4. three *Chevrons Sable* for *Baden Weiler*. 5. *Azure*, a *Wing expanded Argent*, charg'd with a *Demi-circle Or*, for *Uffenberg*. 6. *Coupee*, *Wav'd Or*, a *Lion Naissant*, *Gules*, *Fefs'd* and *Wav'd*

Wav'd Argent Azure, for *Rotlen*. 7. Or, a Fess Gules, for *Lahr*. 8. Or, a Lion Sable, and Crown'd Or, for *Mahlberg*. 9. Chequer, Or and Azure, for *Spanheim*.

The Difference betwixt the Arms of the two Families, is, That the Arms of *Eberstein* has only one Quarter in the Arms of *Baden Baden*; but two in those of *Durlach* and *Spanheim*, has two in the former, and but one in the 2d.

These two Families associate themselves with other Princes, according to their different Religions.

Their chief Towns.

1. **Baden**, the Metropolis of the Marquisate. It derives its Name from its numerous hot Baths, of which 'tis said to contain about 300. The Town stands among Hills, upon a rocky uneven Ground, so that the Streets don't lie straight: Some of the Baths are scalding hot; and all of 'em running from Rocks of Salt, Allum, and Brimstone, have the same Taste. Out of that called the *Kettle*, the Water boils at a wonderful rate, and smoaks as if it were set over a Furnace. They are Sovereign against the Cramp and Gout, and some other Distempers, and therefore much frequented. *Reiffer* has given a Learned Description of 'em. The Marquis has his Palace here, which, with the Baths, occasions the chief Trade of the Town. The Palace is well fortified, stands on a rising Ground, and is the principal Defence of the Town. It lies in Long. 27. Lat. 48. 45. 5 Miles E. from the Rhine, 18 N. E. from *Strasbourg*, and 15 E. from *Fort Louis*.

2. **Stolhoffen**, a small Town fortified by Art, and strong by its Situation, near a Morass. It lies 5 Miles S. W. from *Baden*, and about half a League E. from the Rhine. 'Tis famous for the Lines cast up here in the late and present War for Defence of the Empire.

3. **Gerspach**, a small City on the River *Murg*.

4. **Khiel**, on the E. Side of the Rhine, over against *Strasbourg*, a strong Fortrefs, which was taken by the Marshal de *Villars* in 1703.

The Marq. of Baden Durlach.

IT lies contiguous to that of *Baden Baden* towards the N. E.

Their chief Towns.

1. **Durlach**, the Capital of the Country, 18 Miles N. E. from *Baden*, and 10 S. W. from *Philipsburg*. 'Tis the Residence of the Prince, who has a magnificent Palace here, which far exceeds that of *Baden*, and is capable of entertaining the greatest Monarch in Europe. The Town lies on the Banks of the *Pfintz*, at the Foot of a Mountain; on the Top of which there's a strong Tower, with a continual Guard for the Security of the City. The Streets of the Town are straight and fair, and the Buildings stately and uniform. The Marquis has a large Collection of ancient Coins and Medals in his Closet, and a Library with many good Books. There's a *Gymnasium*, with Professors of the several Faculties.

2. **Pfortzheim**, 15 Miles S. E. from *Durlach*, by the Latins called *Porta Hercynia*, because it stands at the Entrance of the *Black Forrest*, Part of the *Hercynia Sylva*. On one Side the Town, there are fair Meadows and Pastures; and on the other, Woods and Mountains. It lies on the Conflux of the *Ens* and *Neckar*. It was formerly subject to the Dukes of *Swabia*, but now to the Marq. of *Baden Durlach*.

3. **Gersbach**, a small Town, with a Lutheran and Popish Church. Here the Marquis has a Palace, and Court of Judicature for determining Causes belonging to the County of *Eberstein*.

4. **Baden Weiler**, betwixt *Friburg* and *Basse*, near the Rhine, about 12 Miles S. from *Brisac*, in the Territories of which it lies, tho' Part of the Marq. of *Baden*. The hot Baths of this Place, which spring from Hills of Allum, Brimstone, and Nitre, are not so hot as those of *Baden*. Being drunk, they cure Asthma's, and all sorts of Stoppage and Shortness of Breath, old inveterate Agues and Fevers; and by washing and bathing, are excellent against Itch, Scabs, Leprosies, old Sores, and Bruises.

T t t

5. *Hoch-*

5. *Hochberg*, an ancient Castle, which gives Name to a Marq. and was the Title of a Branch of the Family, which fail'd in 1503. It lies on the Confines of the *Brifgaw*, 7 Miles N. from *Friburg*, and has a great open Town called *Emertingen* near it.

6. *Sausenberg*, an ancient Castle, which gives Title to a Landgraviate, and lies a little above *Baden Weiler*.

7. *Rotelen*, about 7 Miles S. W. from *Baden Weiler*, a Castle where the Branch of *Hochberg* had their Residence. *Spanheim* and *Mahlberg* are Castles which formerly gave Titles to Princes; but are otherwise of no great Note.

Alsace, or Elface,

HAS its Name from the River *EL* or *IL*, which runs through it, and not from *Edel Saffen*, as being one of the best Countries possessed by the *Saxons*, as some have imagin'd. It has the Palatinate of the *Rhine* on the N. *Switzerland* and Part of *Burgundy* on the S. *Lorrain* on the W. and the Marq. of *Baden* on the E. From S. to N. 'tis about 100 Miles long; and where broadest, from E. to W. excluding *Brifgaw*, about 25.

This Country is as rich and noble a Province, and as well furnish'd with Necessaries, especially Corn and Wine, as any in the Empire. Their Hills are cover'd with Chesnut Groves; and *Lebert-Hall*, with others of their Vallies, abound with Mines of Copper, Lead, &c. In other Places, they have rich Meadows and fat Pastures; so that they have Butter and Cheese equal to the best in *Holland*.

'Twas formerly subject to the Kings of the *Franks*; and *Hilderick*, one of them, bestow'd the Title of a Duke on his Favourite *Eitito* in 684. His Successors were drove out by *Charles Martel*, Master of the *French* King's Household; and in the Time of the Emperor *Otho I.* the Count of *Keiburg*, one of his Kinsmen, was made Landgrave of this Country. Others say, That the Emperor *Otho III.* divided it into two Landgraviates, and gave the *Upper* to the Counts of *Hapsburg*, and the *Lower Alsace* came afterwards to the Counts of *Oettingen*,

who sold it to the Bishop of *Strasbourg*. 'Twas since seiz'd by the *French* King, and confirmed to him by the Treaty of *Munster* in 1648. But being always accounted a Part of the Empire, we describe it here. 'Tis usually divided into *Upper* and *Lower*, besides the lesser Territories of *Ortenaw*, *Brifgow*, *Haguenaw*, *Sungaw*, &c. most of which are by some reckon'd Part of *Upper Alsace*, and by others Part of *Swabia*.

Their chief Towns.

1. *Strasbourg*, on the W. Side of the *Rhine*, in Long. 26. 43. Lat. 41: 42 $\frac{1}{2}$. about 12 Miles S. from *Fort Louis*. The Latins call it *Argentoratum*, *Argentina*, and *Strasburgum*. It stands on the Conflux of the *IL* and *Breisach*, which a little below it fall into the *Rhine*. *Cluverius* derives the Name from *Argen Stranten*, which signifies a bad Streer. It was at first design'd only for a Fort; but is now one of the most populous and best Trading Towns in *Germany*. The Citizens are generally rich and courteous, and have Houses to entertain Princes. 'Twas formerly an Imperial Town, being made Free by *Frederick II.* and so continued till it was treacherously taken by the *French* King in 1682. 'Tis pleasantly situated in the middle of a Plain, and embrac'd the Reformation in 1529. Since the *French* took it, it has lost much of its Religion, Liberty, and Trade. 'Tis the See of a Bishop, who is Suffragan of *Mentz*, and has many stately Buildings; among which, the Town-House, Arsenal, and Cathedral, are most remarkable. The last is one of the Wonders of *Germany*, and was described at large in a Treatise writ on purpose by *Schadaeus*, and publish'd there in 1617. The Tower of the Cathedral is reckon'd the highest in *Germany*, and by some of the whole World. From the Foundation to the Top of the Spire, *Schadaeus* reckons it 489 Feet, and 8 Inches; others reckon 575 Geometrical Feet. But that which makes it most famous, is the great Clock in it, which, by Mr. *Boyle* and others, is usually given as an Instance of the late great Improvement in Mechanicks. 'Twas finished in 1574, at the Charge of the Magistrates, by one *Habrecht*, a great Artist, of whose Work, they have many famous Pieces

Pieces of the same kind. He had his Instructions from two Learned Mathematicians, *Wolkenstein* and *Dalspödis*; the latter of whom publish'd a Treatise about this Clock. The first Thing it presents to our View, is a Celestial Globe, with all the Motions of the Planets, Fix'd Stars, &c. behind which, there's a Perpetual Almanack, in which the Day of the Month is pointed out by a Statue: The Hours are first crow'd by a gilt Cock, and then struck on a Bell by an Angel; near whom stands another, with an Hour-Glass in his Hand, which he turns as soon as the Clock has struck. The first Quarter is struck by a Child with an Apple; the 2d by a Youth with an Arrow; the 3d by a Man of full Age, with a Tip-staff; and the 4th by an old Man with his Cane. On the Outside of the Church, are shewn the true Increase and Decrease of the Moon, with the Course of the Sun through all the Signs of the Zodiac. *Misson*, in his Travels, says, this Clock does much exceed that at *Lyons*, both in the Variety and Curiosity of its Motions. *Ray* says, the Cathedral is a noble Structure, with a Pair of folding Gates of Brass at the W. End; That the Steeple is curiously built of carv'd Stone, and has 662 Steps from Bottom to Top: He went up 640 of them to a Place called the *Crown*, from whence there's a fine Prospect of the City and adjacent Country. He says, the City is of a great Circumference, well fortified with Walls and Outworks. *Misson* says, its Fortifications, since the *French* took it, are so prodigious, that he would not venture on describing them, but referred to the printed Platform for an Idea of them. They reach within 100 Paces of the *Rhine*, and the *French* King built a Citadel betwixt the City and the *Rhine*, which is reckon'd impregnable. The Arsenal is one of the noblest in *Germany*. *Ray* says, 'tis govern'd by two Councils, one of 71 Men, in which there are 6 Burgo-masters, 6 Stadt-masters, 15 *Patres Patriæ*, and 13 chosen out of the Militia. The other is called the Great Council, and consists of 300 Men chosen by the several Companies of the City. *La Forrest* says, That after they embrac'd the Reformation, they expelled the Bishop and Canons, and left the Papists only one little Church, belonging to the Commandery of

Maken; but when the *French* King took it, he restored Popery, with the Bishop to his See, and the Canons to the Cathedral, after they had been dispossest'd 152 Years. *Ray* says, their Publick Granaries, Store-Houses, and Wine-Cellars, are remarkable; That the Women there are generally handsome; That most of the Inhabitants were *Lutherans*; and in his Time, the Papists had but one Church, two Monasteries for Men, and two Nunneries: That the Bishop had a Palace in the City, where he was not allowed to stay above 3 Days at a time; but he might stay in an Inn 8. *Misson* says, their noble Arsenal was almost emptied by the *French*, who, besides the Citadel and other Forts, have added a great Horn-work on the Side next the *Rhine*, with several Forts on the Islands, which secure the Bridge, and command the River. This Town was left to the *French* by the Treaty of *Ryswick*; and Fort *Kheil* at the same Time was restored to the Empire. The Women here are noted for their odd and phantastical Dreffes, as well as for their Beauty. *Misson* takes Notice, That the Rivers which run through the City occasion abundance of Bridges; and that they have many Wells in the Streets, with Pails of Brass handsomely turn'd like small Mortars, with which they take up their Water. He mentions likewise abundance of Cannon of an extraordinary Size, and great store of Arms in their Arsenal. They have an University, founded in 1538, by the Protestant Magistrates, to which *Ferdinand II.* allow'd great Privileges.

2. *Zabern*, or *Elzace-Zabern*, to distinguish it from others of the same Name. 'Tis thought to be *Antonin's Tabernæ*, one of the old *Roman* Garisons, demolished by the ancient *Germans*, and rebuilt by *Julian* the Apostate. The City is defended by a strong Castle on the top of a high Rock, to which there is only a narrow Passage cut out of the Rock by one of the Bishops of *Strasburg*, who usually kept their Residence here, and a Court of Judicature for determining Causes in their Diocese. It lies about 15 Miles N.W. from *Alsace*. *La Forrest* says, 'tis noted for the Defeat of the *Lutheran* Army near it in 1525, by *Anthony* of *Lorraine*.

3. *Phaltzburg*, a little City, with the Title of a Principality, 12 Miles N. W. from *Zabern*. 'Tis pretty well fortified, at the Foot of a Mountain, on the Frontiers of *Lorraine*, to which it formerly belong'd.

4. *Lutzelstein*, a Fortress with the Title of a Count, on the Frontiers of *Lorraine*, about 6 Miles N. E. of *Phaltzburg*.

5. *Hagenaw*, an Imperial City, 15 Miles E. from *Zabern*, between the Rivers *Mottern* and *Zorn*, 6 Miles W. from the *Rhine*, and 14 N. from *Strasbourg*, encompassed with thick Woods, Corn-Fields, and fruitful Vineyards. 'Tis considerable for the Court of Judicature establish'd here in 1230 by *Frederick II.* It was given by *Charles IV.* to the Dukes of *Austria* in 1371, and was quit- ted to *France* by the Treaty of *Munster*. 'Twas anciently reckon'd one of the four chief Villages of the *German* Empire. The *Germans* besieg'd it in vain in 1674, and most of it was burnt by the *French* in 1677. 'Tis the Seat of the Great Baili of *Alsace*, and had the Supreme Court of Judicature for both *Alsaces*. The Emperor *Frederick I.* built a Palace here, where he kept his Residence. The *Jesuits* had in their College here a large old *Roman* Battering-Ram, a Piece of Antiquity of great Value, which 'tis suppos'd the *French* have either removed or destroyed.

6. *Fort-Louis*, on an Island in the *Rhine*, over against *Baden*, from which it lies about 6 Miles N. W. 'Tis small, but very strong, and was built by *Louis XIV.* to command the Passage of the River.

7. *Weissenburg*, an Imperial City in the Province of *Hagenaw*, Latins call it *Sebusium*, because 'tis suppos'd to have been the Seat of the ancient *Sebusii*. It lies 14 Miles N. E. from *Hagenaw*. *Dagobert* King of *France* presented them with a Crown of Silver gilt, adorn'd with a great many Turrets, and other Flourishes of Art, whose Diameter was 24 Foot. In Remembrance of this, the Citizens hung up a Crown of Copper of the same Size in their great Church, where 'twas broke by the Soldiers in the Civil Wars of *Germany*, and carried away. That same King granted them Privileges to hunt and fish for many Miles round; and the Emperor *Charles IV.* made

the Abbot of this Place a Prince of the Empire, and allow'd him to sit at his Feet in the Diet. *La Forrest* says, the Abbey was secularized by Pope *Alexander IV.* in 1496, and erected into a Provostship.

8. *Landau*, on the *Queich*, 11 Miles N. E. from *Weissenburg*. 'Tis properly a Part of the *Palatinate*, tho' now reckon'd Part of *Alsace*, because 'twas formerly under the Jurisdiction of *Hagenaw*. It was yielded to the *French* by the Treaty of *Munster*; and in 1702, was besieged by the King of the *Romans*, now Emperor, and taken, after great Loss on both Sides; the Confederates having lost 3 Princes, and, as *La Forrest* says, 16000 Men. *M. Tallard* took it again next Year, after having obtained a considerable Victory over the Allies near *Spire*. But it has since been retaken by the Confederates, who are still Masters of it. The Plunder of most of the Towns of the *Palatinate*, which the *French* lodg'd here in 1688, was destroyed by an accidental Fire in 1689.

9. *Drusenheim*, 8 Miles S. E. from *Hagenaw*, had its Name from *Drusus*, who built a Fortress here, to stop the Incursions of the *Germans* on this Side the *Rhine*.

10. *Malsheim*, on the River *Bruch*, 10 Miles W. from *Strasbourg*, whither the Canons of this City retired when they were chased out by the Protestants. 'Tis a small City, and was almost ruin'd by the Imperialists in 1677.

11. *Rosenheim*, on the *Mogel*, one of the 10 Cities that *Frederick II.* included in the Jurisdiction of *Hagenaw*. It lies 10 Miles W. from *Strasbourg*.

12. *Benfeld*, upon the *Ill*, a small City, well fortified, and formerly very considerable, but now almost in Ruins. It lies 14 Miles S. W. from *Strasbourg*.

13. *Schlestat*, a pretty small City, on the *Ill*, 7 Miles N. W. from *Benfeld*. 'Twas formerly an Imperial City, but taken by the *French*, and yielded to them by the Treaty of *Munster*. The Fortifications were demolished by the Confederates in 1673; but since rebuilt, and now made very strong.

All these are reckon'd in *Lower Alsace*.

The Towns in Upper Alsace.

Brisac and Eriburg are by some reckon'd in this Country; but by modern Geographers in *Swabia*, where we described them: So that the first Town here is,

Colmar, Lat. *Colmaria*, or *Columbaria*. It lies on the *Ill*, 12 Miles S. from *Schlestat*, and is now the Capital of *Upper Alsace*. Dr. *Nicholson* says, 'twas built out of the Ruins of the ancient *Argentaria*, conquer'd by the Emperor *Gratian* in 378, and afterwards destroyed by *Attila* the Hun. This City stands in a plain and fruitful Country, and was formerly so populous, that in the great Church at *Easter*, 'twas usual to have 4000 Communicants. The Duke of *Saxe-Weimar* took it in 1636; and after his Death, it was put into the Hands of the French in 1639, and quitted to them by the Treaty of *Munster*: Since which, they have established the Sovereign Council of *Alsace* here, which was formerly at *Ensisheim*; but the Town is much short of what it was formerly.

2. *Kaiserberg*, in a Valley, through which runs the River *Wilt*, a City formerly belonging to the Jurisdiction of *Hagenau*. It lies 8 Miles N. W. from *Colmar*.

3. *Turbheim*, formerly an Imperial Town on the River *Fech*, at the Foot of the Mountains.

4. *Mussler*, formerly an Imperial Town in the Valley of *St. Gregory*, 10 Miles W. from *Colmar*.

5. *New Brisac*, a small City, built since the Treaty of *Ryfwick*, about a Mile from the *Rhine*, over against *Old Brisac*.

6. *Murbach*, a famous Abbey at the Foot of the Mountains, which separate *Alsace* from *Lorraine*, 14 Miles S. W. from *Colmar*.

7. *Ensisheim*, on the *Ill*, 10 Miles S. from *Colmar*, a very ancient City, where were formerly the Sovereign Courts of *Alsace*.

8. *Mulhausen*, an Imperial City, in Alliance with the Cantons, 15 Miles S. from *Colmar*. It formerly belong'd to the Bishop of *Strasbourg*.

9. *Humingen*, a very strong Fortrefs, half a League below *Basse* on the *Rhine*. 'Twas built by the French King after the Peace of *Nimeguen*. 'Tis large enough to hold 4 or

5000 Men. 'Tis compos'd of 5 Bastions, and has a Magazine vaulted with Bricks, so strong, that 'tis Proof against Bombs. Besides the *Tenailles*, *Ravelins*, *Counter-scarp*, and double Ditch, two large Horn-works to the N. and S. and a 3d on the other Side the River, and from the Ramparts, there went Vaults to the Horn-works, for conveying Men to them; but all these were destroy'd, as was agreed by the Treaty of *Ryfwick*.

10. *Pfird*, by the French called *Feretz*, a small City, the Capital of *Suntgow*. It lies towards the Frontiers of *Basse*, is a pretty City, and well fortified, about 10 Miles S. W. from *Humingen*. 'Twas quitted to the French by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, and belongs now to the Duke of *Maxarin*.

11. *Besfort*, or *Besfort*, formerly the Capital of this Country; but was almost ruin'd by the Wars. It stands about 17 Miles N. W. from *Pfird*; and *La Forrest* says, 'tis well fortified, and defended by a strong Castle.

The County and City of MONTELLIARD.

It lies W. from the *Suntgow* and *Besfort*, is about 22 Miles long, and 12 broad. It belongs to a Branch of the Family of *Wirtemberg*, to whom it gives Title. Dr. *Nicholson* says, the Name is derived from the sweet Air breath'd from the neighbouring Hills. The Capital City is of the same Name, and lies 33 Miles W. from *Basse*, and 8 S. W. from *Besfort*, in a very pleasant Country, on the utmost Border of the German Empire towards *Burgundy*; whence the Inhabitants are a Mixture of French, Dutch, *Lorrainers*, *Savoyards*, *Swissers*, and *Burgundians*, and their Language a Mixture of French and German. The Houses are generally built of Stone, and 3 or 4 Stories high. The Streets are uniform and large; and without the City, there are fine Groves and Gardens, the chief of which is the Duke's Garden of Pleasure, with a stately Summer-House, and all manner of rare Plants and Herbs. It stands upon the Side of a Hill, on the Top of which there is a good Citadel. The Inhabitants of the City and County are *Calvinists*. Some reckon it Part of the French Country.

The Circle of F R A N C O N I A,

HAS Saxony on the N. Swabia and Part of Bavaria on the S. Part of Hesse, Westphalia, and the Palatinate of the Rhine, on the W. Part of Bavaria and Bohemia on the E. *Moll* makes it about 125 Miles from S. to N. and from E. to W. about 135. 'Tis Chief of the 10 Circles of the Empire. It has its Name from the *Franks*, its ancient Inhabitants, of whom we gave an Account in *Ancient Germany*, Page 417. *Dr. Nicholson* says, they were not one particular People, according to some Authors, but many of the ancient Germans, who enter'd into a League to defend themselves against the *Romans*, and took the general Name of *Franks*, to denote that they fought for their Liberty. Or, as others say, there being a great Controversy betwixt the *Swabians* and *Thuringians*, about 316 Years after Christ, the latter sent to *Clodimir King of France* for Assistance: Accordingly *Genebald* his Brother came with a great Army, fix'd himself in the Territories round *Wurtzburg*, and making himself Master of all the adjacent Country, gave it the Name of *Franconia*. 'Tis encompassed with Woods and Mountains, but has no Hills of any extraordinary Height. They have several Forreſts and Parks well stock'd with Deer, Wild-Boar, and other Sorts of Game. Most of the Hills, especially along the *Mayn* and *Tauber*, are cover'd with Vines, which yield as rich and as good a Wine as the best Vineyards on the *Rhine*. The Fields about *Bamberg* are very fruitful in Corn, Grapes, Apples, and other Fruit; and such Plenty of Liquorish, that 'tis usually carried off the Fields by Waggon-loads. The Citizens of *Bamberg* have also store of Melons and Saffron, and indeed of every Thing necessary for Profit or Pleasure. *La Forreſt* says, this Country was the usual Seat of the *French*, before they settl'd in *Gaul*; That the *French Kings* of the First Race establish'd Lieutenants there, who first had the Title of Dukes, and afterwards became Proprietors of the Country, which was possessed by several Lords, when *Pepin* gave it to the Bi-

shop of *Wurtzburg*; but those who were in Possession of this Dutchy maintain'd it against the Bishop, and became so potent, that *Conrad Duke of Franconia* was the first of the German Princes who possessed the Empire after the Posterity of *Charlemagne*. There were several other Emperors of that Family, and one of them, *Henry V.* gave this Country to *Conrad of Swabia*, his Nephew, who was afterwards Emperor. His youngest Son dying of the Plague at *Rome* in 1167, *Frederick I.* reunited this Dutchy to the Empire.

This Circle is divided into 6 lesser Principalities, 4 of which are subject to Spiritual Princes; viz. the Bishops of *Bamberg*, *Wurtzburg*, *Eichſtat*, and the Great Master of the *Teutonic Order*. The Temporal Princes are, the Burgraves of *Nurimberg*, and two Princes of the Family of *Brandenburg*. Besides these, there are some other small Counties and Lordships subject to other Princes of the Empire, and several of 'em swear Fealty to the Elector of *Mentz*; of all which in their proper Places. The Bishop of *Bamberg* has the Pre-eminence, and claims a sort of Archiepiscopal Jurisdiction over the rest; but the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* is more potent than he. The Bishop of *Eichſtat* has not much in *Franconia*, most of his Territories lying in *Bavaria* and *Swabia*. The Great Master of the *Teutonic Order* has little but a Title to a few Bailiwicks, which seldom take Notice of him as their Governor.

Dr. Nicholson says, the old *Frangick* Language of this Country, or *Lingua Theotisca*, is the Origine of the present *High Dutch*, in which he gives an Account of many Pieces still extant: Some of 'em were presented by the Learned *Junius* to the Publick Library of *Oxford*.

The prevailing Religion of this Country is *Lutheranism*; but they have likewise *Papists*, *Calvinists*, and some *Jews*.

Their chief Rivers are, the *Main*, the *Regnitz*, the *Altmulde*, the *Saal*, and the *Tauber*; all of which have their Rise in this Country.

La Forreſt divides the Country into Ecclesiastical and Temporal Dominions, and Imperial Towns.

The Ecclesiastical Dominions are,

I. The Bishoprick of WURTZBURG,

Which has its Name from the City so called, is the Metropolis of *Franconia*, and lies on the River *Main*, in Longitude 28. 50. Lat. 49. 50. 65 Miles S. E. from *Frankfort am Main*, and 58 N. E. from *Heidelberg*. The ancient Latins call it *Papelia*, and *Marcopolis*; but the Moderns, *Herbipolis*, according to the German Name, which signifies a Town of Herbs, because of the great Variety which grow in and about this Place. The Situation is very pleasant, and the adjacent Country abounds with all sorts of rich Fruits and Plants, in which it exceeds the neighbouring Provinces. The City is divided into two Parts by the *Main*, and joined by a Bridge. There are likewise several little Streams that run thro' the Streets, which adds to the Pleasantness of the City. *Goldmayer*, an Astrologer, born in this Place, alledges, the City was built 3 Years before our Saviour; but *Genebold* says, 'twas built 236 Years after. The Bishop has a stately Palace on the Top of a high Hill beyond the River, which some fancy to have been built before the City, because 'tis called *Old Wurtzburg*. The Bishoprick was founded in the 8th Century, by *St. Boniface*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, and is still Suffragan to that See. The Bishop has supreme Jurisdiction over the City in Temporals as well as Spirituals; and when he appears in Publick, there's a Sword carried before him with this Inscription;

Herbipolis sola judicat ense & stola.

Denoting both Jurisdictions; and when he says Mass, the Sword lies down before him on the Altar. Other remarkable Things here are, 1. the Hospital, one of the richest and most magnificent in *Europe*: The other is the University or great College, founded in 1043, which *Dr. Nicholson* says is very regular and uniform, and equal to most of the new-built Colleges in *Oxford*. The Bishop's Palace is join'd to the Town by a Wall flank'd by 4 Bastions. The City was

formerly Imperial, but reduced by one of the Bishops, and has since been subject to their See. He is a very potent Prince, has 400 Villages and Towns under him, and is able to raise 15000 Men. He has the Title of Duke of *Franconia*, and has above 100600 Crowns Revenue. His Chapter is compos'd of 24 Capitular Canons, and 29 who are domicil'd. They must all make Proof of the Nobility of their Descent; and when a new one is admitted, he must walk through the rest drawn up in a Lane, and each of 'em gives him a Lash with a Whip on the Back. *Monconys* says, the Fortifications of this City are not regular, but the Castle is very strong both by Nature and Art; the Cathedral is ancient, but not very magnificent, and is filled with the Tombs of their Bishops. The Bridge over the River is of Stone, and 300 Paces in Length. There is a good Arsenal in the Castle, well provided with Cannon and Arms. In one of the Courts of the Castle, there's a fine Fountain; and below the Castle, there's a Pump with 3 Branches, which raises the Water as high as the Castle, tho' it be at least 200 Fathom high, which is very much wonder'd at. In the Bishop's Cellar, there are above 60 great Tuns of curious Workmanship, the least of which contains 22 or 25 Waggon-loads of Wine, reckoning 6 Hogsheds to each Waggon-load; and there he said he drank Wine, which they told him was above 123 Years old, and was clearer than the best *Spanish*.

The Places belonging to this Bishoprick are, 1. *Oschensfurt*, a pretty small Town on the *Main*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Wurtzburg*. 2. *Kitzingen*, a good Town on the N. Side of the same River, about 8 Miles S. E. from *Wurtzburg*. Half of this City belongs to the Marquis of *Anspach*. 3. *Wolkach*, a large open Town on the *Main*. 4. *Carlsstat*, upon the same River, a very pretty Town, 12 Miles N. from *Wurtzburg*. 5. *Schwanau*, on the S. Side of the *Main*, 12 Miles N. W. from *Carlsstat*: 'Tis Capital of a Bailiwick, formerly Part of the County of *Reineck*, but acquir'd by the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* in 1559. 6. *Königsbaven*, a strong Town towards the Frontiers of the County of *Henneberg*, taken by the Swedes in 1631. It lies 45 Miles E. from *Wurtzburg*.

II. B. A. M.

II. BAMBERG.

Which derives its Name from *Baba*, the Emperor *Henry I.*'s Sister: Or, according to others, from *Papen*, as being anciently the Residence of Priests. It lies on the *Regnitz*, 43 Miles N. E. from *Wurtzburg*. 'Twas formerly Imperial, and govern'd by Earls of its own, who had their Residence at *Altenburg*, about a Mile from the Town, but is now subject to its Bishop, who has a Palace on an Island in the River *Regnitz*, which runs through the middle of the City, and a little below it falls into the *Idain*. The Palace is very magnificent and beautified, with fair Gardens and Orchards. The adjacent Country abounds with rich Fruits and Plants, and the Bishoprick is reckon'd 60 Miles in Length, and 30 in Breadth, besides several Manors in *Carinthia*, and Royalties elsewhere. *La Forrest* says, he is the first Bishop of the Empire, and depends immediately on the Pope. His Subjects are Papists, and cannot Appeal from him in his Decisions. The King of *Bohemia*, the Electors of *Bavaria* and *Brandenburg*, hold several Lordships of this See. He is Joint Director of the Circle with the Marquis of *Cullenbach*, and has a Right to receive the Oath which the Secular Electors swear to the Emperor, for the Offices of the Household which they bear. This Cathedral is one of the most Magnificent in the Empire, with a lofty Steeple and 4 noble Spires. The Chapter is compos'd of 20 Capitular Canons, and 15 Domicil'd. The Jesuits have a stately College here. Formerly when the Emperors had no Hereditary Countries in the Empire, *Bamberg* was the Place of their Residence, and in that case the Bishop was oblig'd to retire to *Villach* in *Carinthia*. The Bishoprick was founded by the Emperor *Henry II.* in 1106.

Other Places belonging to this Bishoprick, are, 1. *Forcheim*, a strong Town on the Conflux of the *Regnitz* and *Wisner*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Bamberg*. 2. *Chronach*, a Fortrefs on a small River of the same Name.

III. AICHSTAT, or EICHSTAT;

A Bishoprick which takes its Name from the principal Town that lies on the *Altmul*, 12 Miles N. W. from *Ingolstat* on the *Danube*, 12 N. E. from *Newburg*, and 12 S. E. from *Weissenburg*. The Bishoprick is about 30 Miles from E. to W. and from 8 to 15 and 16 in Breadth. The Latins call this Town *Ala-Narista*, and *Eisstadum*. The Bishop is Suffragan of *Mentz*, and was founded by Archbishop *Boniface* at the same time with *Wurtzburg*, and has been richly endow'd since by several Emperors and Princes. The Bishop is a Prince of the Empire, and has a Chapter of 16 Capitular Canons, and 15 Domicil'd. *John Conrad* of *Gemmingen*, says *La Forrest*, presented the Cathedral with a fine *Pyxis* for the Sacrament of pure Gold, weighing 40 Marks, enrich'd with 350 Diamonds, 1400 fine Pearls, 250 Rubies, and several other precious Stones. This Town was taken in 1703, by a Detachment of *French*.

Other Places in this Bishoprick, are, 1. *Willibaldsburg*, a Fortrefs built by one of the Bishops near this City. 2. *Dolfsstein*, a small City on the River *Altmul*.

IV. The DOMAIN of the Great Master of the Teutonic Order;

Of whom we gave a large Account in *Prussia*. After *Albert* of *Brandenburgh*, their Great Master, had imbrac'd *Luther's* Doctrine, he appropriated Part of that Country to himself, and quitted the other to the King of *Poland*: The Knights of the Order remov'd their Chapter to *Mariendal* in *Francia*, where they chose *Walter* of *Cronberg* for their Great Master, who sued *Albert* at the *Aulic* Council of *Vienna*, where he obtain'd a Decree against what he had done, which never had any Effect. This Order possesses still Eleven Commendaries, and the Commanders have a Right to chuse their Great Master, who is always a Prince of the Empire. The Knights before Admission must prove the Nobility of their Extract by 16 Descents, both by Father and

and Mother. Some of them are *Lutherans*, and other *Calvinists*, who possess Commanderies in *Saxony*, *Thuringia*, and *Hesse*.

Mariendal, called also *Margenthal*, and *Mergentheim*, in Latin *Mergetum*, & *Maria Domus*, is a small City on the *Tauber*, where the Grand Master has his Residence. It lies about $22\frac{1}{2}$ Miles S. W. from *Wurtzburg*.

The Secular Dominions in this Country are,

I. COBURG,

A Dutchy, whose Capital is of the same Name, and lies about 18 Miles N. E. from *Bamberg*. *Moll* makes it 43 Miles long, and about 16 where broadest. 'Tis possessed by the Duke of *Sax-Gotha* since 1674, who has a very fine Castle there. *Dr. Nicholson* says, 'tis usually reckon'd a Part of *Upper Saxony*, and one of the ancientest Towns in *Germany*. 'Tis thought to be *Ptolomy's Melocabium*, or *Melocabus*. The City is tolerable large, and well built, and defended by the Duke's strong Castle on a neighbouring Hill, where *Luther* was several times imprison'd, for speaking freely of his Superiors. There he composed several Hymns, which are devoutly sung by his Followers. From hence also he wrote several of his Epistles, which he dated from *Gruboe*, having transposed the Letters to conceal his Confinement, as *Dr. Nicholson* supposes. A College was founded here, with 11 Professors of all Faculties, by *John Casimir Duke of Saxony*, in 1602. He likewise built the Palace some Years before.

II. The Marquisate of CULLEMBACH,

Part of the Burgraviate of *Nuremberg*. It takes its Name from its Capital, which lies on the *Main*, 27 Miles N. E. from *Bamberg*. This Marquisate is situate betwixt the Bishoprick of *Bamberg* on the W. *Bohemia* on the E. *Saxony* on the N. and the Territory of *Nuremberg* on the S. 'Tis divided betwixt the two famous Branches of the House of *Brandenburg*, called *Cullembach* and *Baireith*, who are Princes of the Empire, and have

each of them a Vote in the Diet. The Marq. of *Cullembach* is Joint Director of the Circle of *Franconia* with the Bishop of *Bamberg*. The Town is defended by a Castle called *Blaffenburg*, which was ruin'd by those of *Nuremberg* in 1554; but they were afterwards obliged to rebuild it. The Extent of this Country from E. to W. according to *Moll*, is about 35 Miles, and from N. to S. about 30.

Baireith, the other Division of this Country, takes its Name from its Capital, which is a pleasant City, defended by a fine Castle, where the Prince resides. It lies 15 Miles S. E. from *Cullembach*; and this Country, according to *Moll*, is 38 Miles from N. E. to S. W. but of a very unequal Breadth, being 17 at the two Extremes, and in the Middle not above 4.

III. The Marquisate of ANSPACH, ONSPACH, or ONOLSBACH,

Belongs also to a Branch of the Family of *Brandenburg*, and is, according to *Moll*, 52 Miles from S. E. to N. W. and where broadest about 20. It takes its Name from its Capital City, about 27 Miles S. W. from *Nuremberg*. The Town is fortified, and has a good Castle, where the Prince resides.

Other Towns in this Country are, 1. *Craylingen*, on the *Tauber*, a pretty Town of good Trade. 2. *Craillsheim*, on the River *Jaxt*, Capital of a considerable Bailiwick. All these three Princes are *Lutherans*, and together are very considerable.

IV. The County of SCHWARTZENBURG,

Lies betwixt the Marq. of *Anspach* and the Bishoprick of *Bamberg*. Their Count has been a Prince of the Empire since 1634.

The Towns in this Country are,

1. *Schwarzenburg*, on the River *Lee*, with an ancient Castle, which gives Name to the Country. 2. *Schenfeldt*, on the *Main*, which is the most considerable Town of this Country. 3. *Hohen-Kottenheim*, the principal Town of the Barony of *Sensheim*, which lies S. of *Schwarzenburg*. This County and Barony are about 20 Miles long, and 15 broad.

V. The County of CASTEL,

Betwixt the Bishoprick of *Wurtzburg* and the County of *Schwartzenburg*. 'Tis about 27 Miles long, and 8 where broadest. 'Tis govern'd by Counts of its own, descended from the ancient Dukes of *Franconia*, and divided into the two principal Branches of *Remlingen* and *Rudenhusen*, the former Papists, and the latter Protestants. The chief Towns are, *Castel*, *Remlingen*, and *Rudenhusen*.

VI. The County of HENNEBERG,

Which takes its Name from an ancient Castle. It lies betwixt *Thuringia*, *Hesse*, and the Bishoprick of *Wurtzburg*. This Country, according to *Moll*, is 35 Miles long, and 15 broad. The Counts of this Country were made Princes of the Empire in 1310; but their Male-Issue failing, it came to the Family of *Saxony* by Marriage, together with *Coburg*, which was formerly Part of it, but given to a Prince of the House of *Saxony*, as a Portion to his Wife, Daughter to one of the Counts of *Henneberg*. The Country is populous and fruitful. *Henneberg*, from whence it takes Name, lies on a Hill 30 Miles N. W. from *Coburg*; but has nothing remarkable.

The chief Towns here are, 1. *Mainungen*. a pretty small City on the River *Verra*. 2. *Skleusingen*, on the *Skleus*, noted for a Meeting of the Electoral College in 1623, where *Ferdinand II.* transferred the Electoral Dignity from the *Palatine* Family to that of *Bavaria*. 'Tis reckon'd the chief City in the County, and was the Residence of their Princes, whose Monuments are still to be seen in the great Church. 'Tis also noted for a College erected here by the last Count of the ancient Family in 1557. 'Tis here fit to be noted, That *Sanson* and *Moll* do both of 'em call this Country by the Name of *Sax-Naumberg*. Some likewise include in it *Smalcald* and its Territory, which now belongs to the Landgrave of *Hesse*, which makes the Country 25 Miles broad.

Smalcald lies 16 Miles N. from *Henneberg*, and is famous for the League made by the Protestants there against the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1530. Of which, more in *Hesse*.

VII. The County of ERPACH,

Which lies betwixt the *Lower Palatinate* and the Archbishoprick of *Mentz*, and is by *Moll* made Part of the *Palatinate*. 'Tis 27 Miles long, and about 12 broad. *Dr. Nicholson* says, That most of the Towns and Villages in this County end in *Bach* or *Pach*, which signifies a Stream or Brook, with many of which this Country is well water'd, besides being encompassed with the *Rhine*, the *Neckar*, and the *Mein*, three of the most considerable Rivers of the Empire; so that it abounds with fruitful Vallies, rich Meadows, Vineyards, and all sorts of Corn. The ancient Inhabitants were Part of the old *Franks*, and the modern are accounted Men of Courage, Strength, quick Parts, and generally of good Extract. They make a great many Iron Stoves, with which they furnish other Parts of *Germany*. Their Count is a Prince of the Empire, and derives his Pedigree from *Eginhard*, Secretary to *Charlemagne*. The chief Town, of the same Name, lies on a small River 43 Miles W. from *Wurtzburg*, and 30 S. E. from *Frankfort am Main*. *Dr. Nicholson* says, the Town is not very considerable; and that *Latherus* says, this and some other neighbouring Cities have a Custom of confiscating the Estates of those who die above 25 Years of Age, and never attempted to marry.

VIII. The County of WERTHEIM,

Lies W. from the Bishoprick of *Wurtzburg*. *Moll* makes it 26 Miles long, and 12 broad. It takes its Name from the chief City, on the Conflux of the *Tauber* and *Main*, about 20 Miles W. from *Wurtzburg*. It stands in a fruitful Soil, and good Air, and their chief Trade is Wine: 'Twas formerly a flourishing Town; but suffered much by the Endeavours of their Count to restore Popery, which they opposed, and continue zealous *Lutherans*. This County was Part of the old *Francia Orientalis*, is plentiful in Corn, Wine, Pasturage, Wild-Fowl, and Venison. In the close of the 16th Century, it fell by Marriage to the Count of *Leuvenstein*. Among the several

Villages which depend on the City of *Wertheim*, that of *Nielaßhausen* is most noted, for the Birth and Education of *John Behaim*, who was burnt for an Heretick at *Wurtzburg* in 1476: He was a poor Boor, and in his Melancholy Fits fancied he saw strange Apparitions. He pretended that the Virgin *Mary* gave him a Visit, and told him, among other Secrets, That the Citizens of *Wertheim* ow'd no Obedience to the Count or other Magistrates, but that they were all as free and unbounded as the Rivers that water their Country. By this means, great Numbers of the common People were made his Profelytes, and follow'd him; which might have prov'd dangerous, had he not been suppress'd in time by the Bishop's Troops, who seiz'd their Leader, and brought him to his fiery Exit.

IX. The County of HOHENLOE.

Which lies betwixt the Marquis of *Anspach*, and the Territory of *Hall*, and is by *Sanjon* and *Moll* call'd *Holach*. 'Tis about 27 Miles long, and 15 where broadest. It takes its Name from an ancient Castle, the Seat of its Counts, who are of a very ancient Family, and divided into the chief Branches of *Nevinstein* and *Waldenburg*; the first, subdivided into those of *Weckerßheim* and *Lagenburg*; and the other, into those of *Pfoedelbach* and *Schillingsfurt*. They also possess the County of *Gleichen* in *Thuringia*. The chief Place of this County is *Sinderingen*, on the *Koker*.

Other Temporal Jurisdictions in this Circle, are; the Barony of *Limpurg* or *Limburg*, which lies S. from *Hohenloe*, is about 12 Miles broad and 12 long: The Territory of *Hall*, betwixt them, is about 12 Miles long and 5 broad. The small County of *Lewenstein*, S. W. from *Hohenloe*, is about 10 Miles long and 7 broad. *Moll* places both these in *Swabia*. And the County of *Reineck*, N. of *Wurtzburg*, about 15 Miles long, and 8 broad; the chief Town is *Reineck*. *Moll* places this in *Hesse*.

The Imperial Cities in Franconia.

1. *Nuremberg*, Lat. *Noricorum Mons*, *Nurimberga*, and *Nurimberga*, on the *Ragnitz*, Long. 30. 10. Lat. 49. 26. 50

Miles N. W. from *Ratisbon*, and 55 S. E. from *Wurtzburg*. 'Tis one of the greatest, finest, richest, and best trading Cities in *Germany*. *La Forrest* says, the Houses are all built of hewn Stone. The Streets are large, their Market-Places regular, and they have 11 Stone-Bridges; one of which, consisting but of one Arch, is reckon'd a wonder in Architecture. But before we come to the particular Description, 'tis proper to take Notice of its Antiquity, which is agreed by all to be very great; but those who pretend it to be *Ptolomy's Segodunum*, have fail'd in their Proof, as well as those who ascribe its Foundation to *Drusus* or *Tiberius Nero*: So that 'tis now generally believ'd to have had it's Name and Foundation from the *Norici*, part of whom inhabited this Country; and flying before the *Huns*, built this City for their Defence, and particularly the Castle on the adjoining Hill, under the Protection of which they first lodg'd in Tents, and afterwards built Houses till it grew up to a City: Most of the first Inhabitants were Smiths, and other Artificers in Iron. The *Castrum Noricum* is mention'd in the History of *Charlemagne*, as one of the chief Fortresses which gave a Check to his Conquests. After his Time, it became a Receptracle for such as plunder'd the neighbouring Country, which occasion'd it to be several Times attack'd, and almost destroy'd by succeeding Emperors: And to prevent such Practices for the future, they put a strong Garison into the Castle, commanded by the Burgrave or Governour of the City; who, upon Notice of any Robbery, issu'd out with his Guards to seize the Delinquents. This gave Occasion to the Custom which is still continu'd, of maintaining a Troop of Horse, and Two or Three Companies of Foot, at the publick Charge, to secure the Roads through the Woods, &c. in the Territories of this City, which at last became the Glory of *Germany*, and, considering its great Distance from the Sea, the Wonder of *Europe* for its Trade and Number of Inhabitants. For no City in the World has a greater Number of curious Workmen, in Steel, Brass, Ivory, Wood, &c. nor affords so good a Pennyworth of all sorts of Artificial Commodities. They are particularly so famous for Clock-work, that

U u u u the

the Grand Signior, having a noble Clock presented him by the King of Poland, sent it hither to be mended when out of Order. The Doctor says, The Town is about 7 Miles in compass, surrounded with a large Ditch, and a Triple-Wall, upon which there are 365 Towers, 180 of 'em built of hewn Stone, where the Cannon are plac'd for the Defence of the City. The Stone with which those Towers, and most of the Houses are built, is dug from Quarries in the Neighbourhood, is very soft at first, and easily wrought into any Figure, but when dry'd by the Sun and Wind, is as hard and durable as Marble. The *Regnitz*, which runs through the middle of the City, supplies the Ditch and most of the Town with Water. 'Tis let out of the City much in the same manner as 'tis receiv'd, by 12 large Arches, under the Walls; and upon the Streams, there's a great Number of Mills for Corn, Paper, Iron, &c. In some of which, Swords of all sorts, Knives, and other Iron-Ware, are made with a great deal of Readiness and Art. Within the Walls they have above 60 Mills, many of which are for Corn to serve the Town in case of a Siege. When a Traveller has seen all the other Cities of Germany, he finds himself surpriz'd by this, which exceeds them all in Fairness of Streets, Uniformity of Building, Difference of Habit, and Industry of the Inhabitants. It has about 550 Streets and Alleys, where most of the Houses are of Free Stone, and 6 or 7 Stories high. They have 10 Market-Places, 13 Publick Baths, and a vast Number of Conduits and Draw-Wells. Their chief Fountain is adorn'd with a great many Statues of Brass: The Sea-Horses and Nymphs about it are much larger than the Life; and *Neptune*, who stands on the Top, is about $3\frac{1}{2}$ Yards high. The Inhabitants are reckon'd above 60000; yet they have but properly two Parish Churches, viz. *St. Sebald's* and *St. Lawrence's*. The chief is that of *St. Sebald*, who is said to have been an English Saxon of the Blood Royal, and travell'd hither to Convert the Saxons in these Parts. In Remembrance of which, the *Norembergers* caus'd his dead Corps to be carried in Procession on a Cart, drawn by Oxen; and in that Place where they first halted they interr'd his Body, and

erected this Church to his Memory. The Sextons have a rare Collection of Relicks, &c. which they shew only to Princes and Travellers of Quality. The Church is as stately as any of its kind in the Empire; and the *Lutheran* Doctrine is preach'd here in Purity. Without the Church there's a large Crucifix of a black Colour, in which the People fancy the Magistrates have reposit'd a very great Treasure. *St. Lawrence's* Church is chiefly frequented by the Nobility; and most of the chief Families have their Tombs and Escutcheons here; and there's a long Table of the Names of such as lie buried in the Vaults, and the Time and Manner of their Death. Some of these Registers are above 500 Years old, and continue down to the present Time. *M. Rotenbeck* publish'd a Collection of the Epitaphs and Inscriptions in this and the other Churches and Chappels of the City in 1622. This City, among many other Privileges, has the keeping of most of the Imperial Ornaments made use of at the Emperor's Coronation; as, 1. The Imperial Crown, with which *Charlemagne* was crown'd, about which there's a Mitre enrich'd with vast Numbers of Diamonds, Rubies, Emeralds and Pearls; and on the fore-part a Cross of Diamonds of great Value. 2. His Dalmatick Robe embroidered with huge Pearls. 3. The Golden Apple, or Globe. 4. *Charlemagne's* Sword. 5. The Golden Scepter. 6. The Imperial Cloak embroider'd all over with Eagles, and border'd with great Emeralds, Diamonds, Saphires, and Chrysolites. 7. The Buskins covered with Plates of Gold. 8. The Gloves embroider'd with precious Stones. These Ornaments were first kept at *Carlsstein* in *Bohemia*, then at *Plintenberg* in *Hungary*, and from thence sent to *Nuremberg* by the Emperor *Sigismund*, who brought several other Relicks thither. The Castle where the Emperor lodges when he is here, stands on the Top of an high Hill, from whence there's a fair Prospect of the City. 'Tis adorn'd with many curious Pictures, and other fine Paintings; and in a Rock at the back of the Castle, there's a Draw-Well of an extraordinary Depth; but the Wheels are so contriv'd, that with Buckets they draw up the Water with very great Ease. Near this Well they shew the Armour of *Apelinus*, *Von Gailingen*,

Geilingen, the famous Sorcerer: And in the Wall of the Castle the Marks of his Horse's Feet when they pretend he leap'd from thence over the Town-Ditch. The Town-Hall is a stately Fabrick much larger than that of *Augsburg*, and as well adorn'd within. The Dining-Room, Council-Chamber, and other Apartments, are well painted and gilt, and adorn'd with curious Pictures. The chief Nobility and Gentry consists of 28 Families, and among them they chuse their Supreme Magistrates. Their Common-Council consists of 42 Members, whereof 13 are Burgo-Masters, 13 are Alderman, and the rest are call'd Elders; one Burgo-Master and Alderman have the Superiority over the rest by Turns for the Space of a Lunar Month. Matters of small Concern are debated publicly before the Common Council; but raising of Troops, levying of Taxes, and other Matters of great Moment, are refer'd to the Select Committee of Eight, who may call 3 or 4 Civilians for Advice, but grant them no Vote; for Men of that Faculty are allowed no Share in the Administration, but have Salaries for their Attendance when Occasion requires. These are their Two ordinary Courts of Judicature; but in extraordinary Cases, they have a great Council of 400, chosen out of all the Trades and Callings in the Town; and they annually chuse the Members of the other Courts. They never suffer Mechanicks to meet publicly except at Worship or Burials, to prevent the Danger of tumultuous Rabbles. They have a College, with Professors of all Faculties; but 'tis not much frequented since the University of *Altorff* was erected. *La Forest* says, The Castle is well fortified; that their Arsenal is one of the best furnish'd in *Germany*, and has Arms for 10000 Men. Their 28 Chief Families are distinguish'd by the Name of *Patrisians*, and their Senators are prudent to a Proverb: They were formerly subject to the Family of *Brandenburg*, who sold them their Liberty in 1477; but attempting to recover their Superiority over this City, it occasion'd a long War, which did not end till 1552. They embrac'd the Confession of *Augsburg* in 1530, and allow no Papists the Freedom of the City, and but half of a Church for their Worship. The *Calvinists*

are allowed none, but go a League our of Town to the Marq. of *Anspach*; and the *Lutheran* Ministers baptize their Children. The *Jews* live in a Village without the City, must pay something when they come into it, but not lodge in it. This Town submitted to *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden* in 1631. He encamp'd near it the Year after, and oblig'd the Imperialists to rise from before it twice. This City has Six Gates towards as many different Roads, each of them defended by a large Tower. They have 12 publick Fountains, 26 Wells, and 300 Cannon, besides the Arms above-mention'd in their Arsenal. *Monconys* says, when he was there the Town-House was not finish'd, but such Part of it as was exceeded that of *Amsterdam*. He commends their Artificers, and mentions one who made a Coach for the King of *Denmark*, that would go forward or backward, and turn about without Horses by Springs, managed by Two Boys within, and make about a League per Hour. He says, he saw small Cannon there of a Foot long that would carry 500 Paces, that there were two great Guns in the Arsenal, which carried Stone Bullets of 400 Pounds weight, and required but 50 Pounds of Powder to charge each. The Magistrate's Library is very large, consists of Four Galleries, and contains about 15000 Volumes bound in an Antick Manner. The Castle, he says, is an Ancient Building after the *Roman* Fashion, tho' he doubts of its being built by *Nero*. He admires the Brazen Monument of *St. Sebaldus*, and its noble Antick Figures, but says he was Son to a King of *Denmark*. The Workmen who made the Coach for the King of *Denmark*, was making for the *Dauphine* a Representation of a Squadron of Horse skirmishing with a Battalion of Foot, which march'd and fir'd by Springs. He says, the Walls of the City are very high, built of good hewn Stone, with large and deep Ditches fac'd also with Stone; but no other Fortifications except the Towers above-mention'd; some of which were very good Fortresses. *Dr. Brown* says, many of the Houses are painted on the Outside, and have gilded Balls on the Top; that *St. Lawrence's* Church is famous for its Bigness, and has Two Steeples in the Front; that the Floor

of

of the Senate-House is pav'd with gilt Stones, intermix'd with divers Colours, and in one of the Chambers there's the Pictures of most of the great Persons in *Germany*, who have been entertain'd there. *Misson* says, The Well in the Castle is said by the Inhabitants to be 1600 Foot deep, and that the Chain of the Bucket weighs 3000 Pounds. In one of the Halls of the Castle there are 4 *Corinthian* Pillars 45 Foot high, that were said to be brought from *Rome* by the Devil, being challeng'd to it by a Monk; which is just as true as the Conjuror's leaping on Horse-back from the Top of the Castle over the Town-Ditch. He says, in the Town-Library there are about 20000 Volumes, and a *Greek* MS. Copy of the Gospels of 900 Years standing, with the Prayers and Hymns formerly us'd in the *Greek* Church, in Characters very much different from those now in Use. They shew'd him a Treatise of Predestination, said to be printed at *Spires* in 1446; but there must be a Mistake, since they shew'd him another printed by *Fausius* at *Mentz* in 1459, with an Advertisement that it was not writ, but printed by a New Invention. He mentions the Cabinet of *Viati*, a private Citizen, and wonders that any Man of his Rank could have a Collection of so many Rarities from all Parts of the World. There's one great Apartment fill'd with Arms of all Nations, and another stor'd with excellent Pictures, Medals, curious Works both Ancient and Modern, Idols, Shells, Plants, Minerals, and other natural Productions. He shew'd him a Wind-Gun, which would do Execution at a Distance without any Noise. He says, in the publick Cellar, which is 250 Paces long, there were 20000 middle-siz'd Tuns, which they call *Aums*, full of Wine. He adds, the River might be made navigable without much Difficulty, which would much increase the Riches and Grandeur of the City. It has under its Jurisdiction 7 other Cities, and 480 Borough and Villages. A Peace was concluded here betwixt the Princes of *Germany* in 1649. The Territory is about 20 Miles broad, and 20 long.

About 15 Miles E. from *Nuremberg* lies *Altorf*, an University, founded by the Se-

nate of *Nuremberg* in 1578, where there are at least 200 Students. 'Tis now the most considerable Town subject to *Nuremberg*. Some say, 'twas founded by *Adolph*, a Count of *Nassau*, and from him call'd *Adolphsdorf*: Others say, it had its Name from the Emperor *Adolph*, who first endow'd it with Privileges. The *Nurembergers*, before they purchas'd it from the *Palatine* Family, attempted it several times by Arms in vain, and in 1449 were defeated before it by *Marquis Albert*, and forc'd to raise the Siege, after they had burnt half the Town. It has bred many learned Men of good Reputation. They have an excellent Physick-Garden stock'd with about 2000 Plants. They have likewise an Anatomy Theatre with several Skeletons, and other Curiosities; and in their Library, they have a fair *Horvius Eistensis*, and *Youngerman's* Collection of Plants, writ by his own Hand.

Laffen upon the *Regnitz*, 10 Miles N. E. from *Nuremberg*, is the next Place of Note, subject to that City; and they have several others that were anciently Parts of the *Upper Palatinate*, but taken by the *Nurembergers* during their Wars with *Marquis Albert* in 1504.

The Second Imperial Town in *Franconia* is *Waissemburg*, in the Bishoprick of *Eichstat*, 28 Miles S. from *Nuremberg*. 'Tis a small City, and considerable for little but its Rank.

3. *Rottenberg*, a very pretty City on the *Tauber*, in the Marquisate of *Ansbach*, 37 Miles S. W. from *Nuremberg*. 'Twas formerly subject to the Counts of *Castel*, but obtain'd their Liberty in 1191, which was confirm'd by *Henry VI.* the Year after.

4. *Wunscheim*, in the same Marquisate, 33 Miles N. W. from *Nuremberg*, on the River *Aisch*.

5. *Schweinsfurt* on the *Main*, in the Bishoprick of *Wurtzburg*, 26 Miles N. E. from that City, upon which they depended till 1388, that they obtain'd their Liberty. The *Latins* call it *Trajectus Suevorum*, because the *Swabians* pass'd the *Main* here, and some will have it to be founded 217 Years before Christ, but without any good Proof. 'Tis neither large nor populous, but well fortified.

The Circle of BURGUNDY.

THIS Circle is divided into Upper and Lower. The Upper contains that call'd the *French Country*, and the Lower the *Netherlands*. The former, though possess'd at present by the *French*, we shall describe here, because 'tis reckon'd Part of the Empire by the *Matricula*. *La Forrest* says, Its ancient Inhabitants were the *Sequani*, who begg'd *Cæsar's* Assistance against *Ariovistus*, and *Augustus* made their Country a Fifth Part of the *Gallia Lugdunensis*, call'd otherwise the Province of the *Sequani*. They continu'd under the *Romans* till the Empire of *Honorius*, when the *Burgundians*, from whence it had the Name of *Burgundy*, invaded it, and made it Part of their Kingdom, which was very large, comprehending not only the Dukedom and County of *Burgundy*, but *Alsace*, *Switzerland*, *Wallisland*, *Savoy*, and afterwards *Dauphiné*, the *Lyonois* and *Nivernois*; and was divided by the *Romans* into *Burgundy Cis*, and *Trans Jura*, because of the Mountain *Jura* which lay in the middle. We refer to what we said of them in the Description of Ancient Germany, Page 424. *Chroverius*, in his *Germania Antiqua*, explodes the Opinion of those who derive their Name from the *Burges*, or moveable Tents in which they dwelt. They were a very great and warlike People, and had Wars with the *Romans*, *Gauls*, *Huns*, &c. And most of their Common People were *Smiths*, *Carpenters*, &c. by which they got their Livelihood. Some say, they were call'd by *Stilico* the Roman General, to assist him against the *Gauls* or *Franks*, for which he gave them the Two *Burgundies*. *La Forrest* says, They made afterwards Part of the Kingdom of *Austrasia*, and were subject to the Second Race of the *French Kings*. That call'd *French Country*, is Part of the *Burgundia Trans Jura*, which was united to the Kingdom of *Arles* in 933. Some say, it continu'd an Independent Kingdom 120 Years in an uninterrupted Succession, till *Childebert* and *Clotaire*, the *French Kings* of *Paris* and *Soissons*, defeated and slew *Gunomarus* their last King; upon which the Western Parts were seiz'd by the *French*, and possess'd by them

for some Ages: And the Eastern Parts were seiz'd by other People. *Lewis the Pious*, Son to *Charlemagne*, erected it again into a Kingdom, the Capital of which being at *Arles*: It was from thence call'd, The Kingdom of *Arles*. *La Forrest* says, That *Otho William* fix'd himself here in 993, and took the Title of Count, which was left him by *Robert King of France* in 1002, after he had chased him out of the County of *Burgundy*. *Renand III.* one of his Successors, refus'd to do Homage for it to the Emperor *Lotharius II.* and defended his Independency so well, that his Country from thence was call'd *Franche County*. His only Daughter *Beatrix* carried it by Marriage to the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* in 1157. *Otho IV.*'s Son succeeded as Count Palatine of *Burgundy*. It came afterwards by Marriage to the Duke of *Chalons*, and afterwards to *Philip the Long* of *France*, who married *Jane* the Heiress. His Daughter brought it with the County of *Arras* to *Eudes IV.* Duke of *Burgundy* in 1318. *Philip* their Grandson dying without Posterity, *Margaret of Flanders* descended from a Second Daughter of *Philip the Long* of *France*, married *Philip of France*, Fourth Son to King *John* of *France*, who founded the Second Race of the Dukes of *Burgundy*, which continu'd till the Death of *Charles the Hardy*, the last Duke of *Burgundy*, whose History the Curious may find excellently writ in the Memoirs of *Philip de Commines*. After his Death, in the Battle against the *Swissers* in 1476, the Arch-Duke *Maximilian*, afterwards Emperor, married his only Daughter *Mary* of *Burgundy*, and united this Country with the *Netherlands* to the Empire, and call'd it the Circle of *Burgundy*. But *Lewis XI.* of *France* seiz'd that call'd the Dutchy, as an Escheat to his Crown; and the *French* have possess'd it ever since. The *French Country* continu'd subject to the House of *Austria*, till *Lewis XIV.* of *France* treacherously seiz'd it in 1668, but was obliged to restore it next Year. He seiz'd it again in 1674, and had it confirm'd to him by the Treaties of *Nimeguen* and *Ryswick*.

La Forrest says, The greatest Extent of this Province from S. to N. is 35 *French Leagues*; but *Mall* makes it 42. And the Breadth

Breadth from E. to W. 25; but *Moll* makes it more. It has *Larrain* on the N. *La Bresse* on the S. *Switzerland* on the E. and the Dut-
chy of *Burgundy* on the W.

Its chief Rivers are, the *Saon*, the *Louve*, the *Doux*, and the *Lognon*, which abound with Fish, and fructify the Country, that produces good Corn and Wine. Their Forreſts are ſtor'd with Game, and their Paſtures with Cattle. They have alſo Quar-
ries of Black Marble, Jaſper of ſeveral Co-
lours, and very fine Alabaſter.

'Tis divided into the 4 great Bailiwicks of *Besançon*, *Aval*, *Dole*, and *Amont*.

B E S A N C O N,

Is the Capital of the Province and Baili-
wick, and called in Latin *Vesuntio*, *Bisun-
tium*, *Vesuntium*, and *Chriſopolis*. It lies in
Long. 24 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 47. 12. 50 Miles S. W.
from *Montbelliard*, and 78 from *Baſle*. 'Tis
the See of an Archbiſhop, who has the Ti-
tle of a Prince of the Empire. The Par-
liament, or Chief Tribunal of this Coun-
ty, which was eſtabliſhed at *Dole* in 1422, by
Philip the Good Duke of Burgundy in 1424,
was transferred hither by *Lewis IV.* in 1694.
It has likewiſe an Univerſity, founded by
the Emperor *Ferdinand I.* in 1564. It is
one of the moſt ancient Towns in *Gaul*,
and was much eſteemed by the *Romans*, as
we find in *Cæſar's Commentaries*, and is
ſtill to be ſeen by the remaining Monuments
of its *Grandeur*; among which, there's
Part of an Amphitheatre built in Honour of
the Emperor *Aurelian*. 'Twas then the chief
Town of the *Sequani*, and the *Romans* eſta-
bliſhed a School here, with Profeſſors of
Oratory, as we find by *Anſonius*. 'Twas
taken from the *Romans* by the *Burgundians*,
and after made Imperial by *Henry I.* under
the Protection of the Duke of *Burgundy*.
'Twas exempted from the Empire, and
given to the *Spaniards* in 1651. 'Twas ta-
ken by the *French* in 1658, reſtored to them
by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle* next Year,
and taken again by the *French* in 1674 by
Siege, and left to them by the Treaties of
Nimeguen and *Ryſwick*. 'Tis divided into
two Parts by the River *Dubis*, now *Doux*,
over which there's a Stone Bridge; at one
End of which, there was built lately a fine
Triumphal Arch. The Town is defended

by two Citadels, one of 'em built on the
Mount *Celius*, and is embelliſh'd with ſeve-
ral fine Structures; the chief of which is
the Metropolitan Church of *St. John*, noted
for ſeveral pretended Relicks, and particu-
larly for what they call a Part of our Savi-
our's Handkerchief.

The Bailiwick of A V A L,

Contains the following Towns: 1. *Salins*,
ſo called from an excellent Salt-Spring,
from whence the *French King* has a great
Revenue. It lies betwixt two Mountains,
22 Miles S. W. from *Besançon*. The Town
is ſtrong, and well fortified, the Walls being
flank'd with high Towers, and defended by
two Caſtles, and a Citadel on the top of a
Rock, which make it almoſt impregnable.
The Store-houſe where they boil their Salt
is a ſtately Building. 2. *Portelier*, a ſmall
City on the Frontiers of *Switzerland*, near
the River *Doux*, 22 Miles S. E. from *Besan-
çon*. 3. *Arbois*, noted for its excellent Wine,
which is transported to other Countries.
It lies 25 Miles S. W. from *Besançon*, and 7
from *Salins*. 4. *Bletterans*, a City on a ſmall
River near the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, former-
ly fortified, but now diſmantled. 5. *St. Claude*,
a ſmall City, but very ſtrong. 'Tis noted
for its Abbey, where they keep the Body
of *St. Claude*, who was Archbiſhop of *Be-
ſançon* in the 7th Century, and gave Name
to it. It lies near the Mountain *Jura*, 32
Miles S. from *Salins*. 6. *Poligny*, a large
Town, 6 Miles S. from *Arbois*, noted alſo
for good Wine. 'Tis encompassed with
Gardens, Hills, and Forreſts, was formerly
well fortified, but now diſmantled.

The Bailiwick of D O L E,

Is ſo called from its Capital of the ſame
Name. 'Tis a very ancient Town, plea-
ſantly ſituated on the *Doux*, in a fruitful
Country, 8 Miles S. W. from *Besançon*. It
has fine Publick Structures, eſpecially the
Church of *Our Lady*, and the Jeſuits Col-
lege, which deſerve the View of Travel-
lers. *Philip the Good, D. of Burgundy*, found-
ed its Univerſity in 1426. *Lewis XI.* of
France took and ſack'd this Town in 1479.
The Prince of *Condé* beſieg'd it in vain in
1636. *Lewis XIV.* took it in a few Days
in

in 1668, and again in 1674, it having been restored to the *Spaniards* by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*; but quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, who have since dismantled it. It was formerly Capital of the County, and the Seat of the Parliament.

The Bailiwick of AMONT or GRAY,

So called from its Capital on the *Saon*, a small Town, but very neat. It was taken in 1674 by the *French King*, who demolished its Castle and Fortifications. It lies 10 Miles N. W. from *Besançon*.

Other Places of Note in this Bailiwick are, 1. *Beaume-les-Nonnains*, on the River *Ougnon*. 2. *Vesoul*, a little neat City, 33 Miles N. from *Besançon*, and N. E. from *Gray*. 'Twas several Times taken and retaken in the War betwixt the *French* and the House of *Austria*, but quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. 3. *Lure*, a famous Abbey on the River *Ougnon*, 18 Miles N. E. from *Vesoul*. 4. *Luxeuil*, another famous Abbey on the Frontiers of *Lorraine*, 8 Miles N. W. from *Lure*.

In this County, the *French King* has a Governor-General, a Deputy-Governor, and 11 Governors of Places in several Towns, there being no less than 3 in *Besançon*, one in the Citadel, and one in each Fort. On the E Side of this County, lies the Ridge of Hills called *Mont Jura*, which reach from *Bâle* on the N. to the River *Rhone* and the Province of *Bugey* on the S. and divide this Country from *Switzerland*, but go by several Names, according to the Countries they pass through. We refer the Description of the Dutchy of *Burgundy* to *France*, and that of the *Netherlands* to its proper Place.

The Circle of the UPPER RHINE.

THE several Princes and States contain'd in this Circle, may be seen in the *Matricula*, P. 513. We have already describ'd *Alsace*, and the Bishoprick of *Strasbourg*, which make Part of it, and chose to place them next to the Circle of *Swabia*, because they lie contiguous to it in the Map. The Archbishoprick of *Besançon* was likewise formerly accounted Part of this

Circle, as appears by the *Matricula*; but being now Part of the Circle of *Burgundy*, we have accounted for it there, and come to

The Palatinate of the RHINE.

PART of this Country belongs to the Circle of the *Upper Rhine*, and Part to the *Lower*, as may be seen by the *Matricula*; but we think it more proper to describe it altogether, than to divide it according to the Circles, which would necessarily occasion us to describe a great many other Dominions and Cities betwixt the one Part and the other of it, which would confound the Reader, and break the Course of the Map. We shall however, after a General Account of the Country, begin the Geographical Description with that Part of it which belongs to the Circle of the *Upper Rhine*, and take Notice which Part of it belongs to the *Lower Circle*, when we come to it.

The Palatinate of the *Rhine* has *Alsace*, Part of *Lorraine*, and *Swabia*, on the S. Part of the Archbishopricks of *Treves* and *Mentz* on the N. Part of *Treves* and *Lorraine* on the W. and Part of *Mentz*, *Franconia* and *Swabia*, on the E. *Moll* makes it 110 Miles from S. E. to N. W. and its greatest Breadth from N. E. to S. W. about 70. 'Tis called the *Lower Palatinate*, to distinguish it from that of *Bavaria*, called the *Upper*.

As to the Origine of the Name, *Cluverius* gives us many Arguments in his *Germ. Ant. Lib. 3.* to prove, That the ancient *Germans* called what the Moderns name *Palz*, *Paltz*, and *Pfaltz*; *Palanz* or *Palans*; and that 'tis the same that *Marcellinus* calls *Palas*, which he takes to signify in the old *Celtick* Tongue a Court of Jurisdiction, where the Officer called *Palatinus* presided. He quotes the *Speculum Saxonicum*, to prove, that every Province of the *Teutonic* Country had their *Paltzgraviate* or *Palatinate*, and particularly *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, and *Svevia*; nay, that same Author says, there were 5 Cities in *Saxony* called *Palantie*, where the King presided in those Courts; which shews the Mistake of such as derive the Name of this Office from those called *Comites Palatii*, in the Courts of the ancient *French Kings*.

X x x

'Tis

'Tis agreed however, that this Country is the oldest mention'd in the German History, call'd by the Name of *Palatinate*; and *Cluverius* argues with Reason, That those Countries, where such Courts were kept, had the Name of *Palatinate* from them, which is now appropriated to this Country by way of Eminence. The Curious may find more concerning the several Counts *Palatine* in *Selden's Titles of Honour*, wherein he seems to differ from *Cluverius*; and thinks, that the old Counts *Palatine* in the Empire had some Resemblance to the *Præfatus Prætorio* among the Romans, or the old Chief Justice in England, who had the supreme Jurisdiction for the King, and in his Name, in all Causes that came immediately to his Majesty's Audience: But perhaps the Difference may be reconcil'd thus; That those *French Comites Palatii* had only a Personal Jurisdiction, without the Addition of any Feudal Territory annex'd to it; whereas 'tis otherwise in the Empire: But in this we leave the Reader to his own Judgment, and shall take Notice from *Selden*, That there are other Sorts of Counts *Palatine*, whose Honour and Dignity consist only in the Personal Dignity, which is acquir'd by the Profession of the Law, or by Letters Patents; and of this Sort, both Emperors and Popes have created several, who have a Power sometimes to create Doctors of Divinity, Law, Physick, Philosophy, Poets Laureat, and Notaries, &c. but this, with their other Privileges, is at the Discretion of the Giver.

This Country is much the pleasantest Part of the German Empire, and has therefore been covered by neighbouring Princes in all Ages. Their Hills are cover'd with Vines, which yield the well known *Rhenish* Wine; their Plains and Vallies abound with all sorts of Corn and Fruit; and their Forests are well stock'd with Deer, and other Game. The *Rhine* passing through the middle of the Country, does very much improve their Commerce, and, with the *Neckar*, *Nabe*, and other Rivers, supplies them with Plenty of Fish; and their Mountains abound with Minerals; among which, *La Forreſt* mentions *Agate* and *Jasper*, and Gold found in the Sand of the *Rhine*, of which they coin Pieces, which bear its Name.

The same Author says, That the Part of

the Country on the E. Side the *Rhine*, was anciently inhabited by the *Sedusii*, who were expelled by the *Alemanni*. That on the W. Side, was Part of *Gaul*, afterwards Part of *Upper Germany*, and of the Kingdom of *Austrasia*. Both of 'em came to be subject to the Emperors of the *French Line*; but the Divisions which happen'd about the End of the 11th Century, gave Opportunity to the Counts of the Palace to make themselves Sovereigns of those Countries they held in Fee, and to enlarge their Dominions. These Counts, he says, were originally Judges, who followed the Court, and were entrusted by the Emperors to determine such Differences as happened betwixt the Courtiers and the People, and there were two of 'em, viz. the Counts *Palatine of Saxony*, and of the *Rhine*. Under the latter, were the Provinces which reach from *Franconia* and *Swabia* as far as the *Alps*. This justifies *Selden's* Opinion as to the Origine of the modern Counts *Palatine*; but does not argue against what *Cluverius* says of those of the ancient Sort.

La Forreſt says, the first Count *Palatine* was *Sigonfrid* or *Ehrenfrid*, descended from the Counts of *Arden*. After the Death of *Herman*, one of his Successors, in 1154, the Emperor *Frederick I.* invested his Brother *Conrad* in the *Palatinate*. *Agnes* his Granddaughter, in 1198, married *Henry of Saxony*, Son to *Henry the Lion*. Their Daughter *Agnes* married in 1225 *Orto the Illustrious of Bavaria*, whose Father *Louis of Bavaria* was invested in the *Palatinate* in 1215, by the Emperor *Frederick II.* to the Prejudice of *Henry*, Father of this *Agnes*. Of this Marriage came *Louis the Severe*, or the Ancient, who died in 1294, and left two Sons, from whom are descended the Families of *Bavaria* and the *Palatinate*: The former issued from *Louis*, who was Emperor; and the other from *Rodolph*, whose Posterity is divided into 4 Branches, viz. the Electoral Branch and that of *Newburg*, of *Deux-Ponts*, of *Birkenfeld*, and *Weldentz*.

We refer to what we have said on the Origine of this Family in the Account of that of *Bavaria*, P. 655. and shall only add from the *Atlas Historique*, That *Rodolph I.* of this Illustrious Family, Son to *Louis the Severe*, married *Mechtildis*, Daughter to the Emperor *Adolph of Nassau*, inherited the *Palatinate*

Matinate from his Father, and died in 1319. *Robert II.* who was the 4th from him, married *Beatrice* of *Sicily*, recover'd what the Emperor *Charles IV.* had taken from his Predecessors, and died in 1398. His Successor *Robert III.* called *The Severe*, married *Elizabeth* of *Nuremberg*, was declared Emperor in 1401, and died in 1410. His Successor *Stephen* married *Anne* of *Weldentz*, by whom he had that Country, as he had *Simmeren* and *Deux-Ponts* from his Father. His Successor *Frederick* married *Margaret* of *Guelderland*, and died in 1480. His Successor *John I.* married *Susanna* of *Nassau Saarbruck*, and died in 1509. His Successor *John II.* married *Beatrice* of *Baden-Hochberg*, and for his second Wife *Margaret* of *Oettingen*, and died in 1557. His Successor *Frederick III.* married first *Mary* of *Anspach*, afterwards *Amelia* of *Neuenhaer*, and died in 1576. His Successor *Louis V.* was a Learned Prince, married first *Elizabeth* of *Hesse*, and afterwards *Anne* of *East-Friesland*, and died in 1583. His Successor *Frederick IV.* married *Louisa Julia* of *Orange*, had great Quarrels with the House of *Austria* about the Affairs of Religion, and died in 1610. His Son and Successor *Frederick IV.* married *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *James I.* of *Great Britain*, succeeded to his Father's Quarrels with the House of *Austria* about Religion, and was chosen King of *Bohemia*; but for want of being duly supported, was defeated at the Battle of *Prague*: After which he lost both his Crown and Dominions, as we have mention'd before. He had Issue Princess *Sophia*, born in 1630, married to *Ernestus Augustus D.* of *Hanover*, who is now Electress Dowager, Mother to the present Elector, Presumptive Heiress to the Crowns of *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, and as Illustrious for her excellent Qualities, as for her high Birth. His other Issue was, *Henrietta Mary*, who married Prince *Ragotzki*, and died in 1651; *Maurice*, who was taken during the War with the Emperor, and died not long after; Prince *Rupert*, so well known in *England*, was also taken with his Brother, but afterwards released; was General for *K. Charles I.* of *Great Britain* against the Parliament, made by *K. Ch. II.* Duke of *Cumberland*, and died in 1682; *Edward*, who married *Anne Gonzague*, Daughter to the Duke of *Newers* in *France*.

He had two Daughters, the first married to *Frederick Duke of Brunswick*, and the second to *Charles Prince of Salms*, who are both dead. He had another, who is Dowager of *Henry Julius Prince of Conde*. *Frederick V.* has another Daughter, *Louisa Hollandina*, who is Abbess of *Maubisson* in *France*; and he had another called *Elizabeth*, a Princess of great Learning, who was Abbess of *Hersforden* in *Germany*, and died in 1680. *Frederick V.* was succeeded by his Son *Charles Louis*, who by the Treaty of *Westphalia* was restored to the *Lower Palatinate*, and the Electoral Dignity. He was a pious and learned Prince, and died in 1680. His Son *Charles* succeeded, was the last Elector of this Line, and died without Issue in 1685. He had a Sister called *Charlotte*, who was married to *Philip Duke of Orleans*. We have been the more particular in the Genealogy and Alliances of this Family, because of the Relation which the Electress Dowager of *Hanover*, who is a Daughter of it, has to our Crown; and because it shews her Predecessors have been Emperors; and that she is descended of the Illustrious Families of *Nassau* and *Orange*, as well as from our Royal Family.

The present Elector, of the Branch of *Newburg*, is descended from a Son of *Stephen*, formerly mention'd, of the Family of *Deux-Ponts*, one of whom, his Predecessor, call'd *Lewis II.* the 3d from *Stephen*, married a Daughter of *Hesse*, brought the Reformation into his Dominions, and died in 1532. His Successor *Wolfgang* succeeded to the Countries of *Newburg* and *Sultzbach*, and died in 1569. His Successor *Philip Louis* was Elector, received the *Calvinists* into his Dominions, married *Anne* of *Juliers*, and died in 1614. His Successor, *Wolfgang William* of *Newburg*, married first a Daughter of *Bavaria*, and then of *Deux-Ponts*, and died in 1653. His Successor *Philip William* married first *Anne Catharine* of *Poland*, then a Daughter of *Hesse-Darmstadt*, and died in 1690. We have formerly taken Notice of his numerous Issue, and their being so happily married, or otherwise provided for, in the Account of *Newburg*, P. 670. His Son *John William*, the present Elector, was born in 1658, and married first *Anne*, Daughter to the Emperor *Ferdinand III.* and for second Wife, *Anne Ma-*

by *Louisa of Medicis*. The other Branches of this Family are, 1. That of *Deux-Ponts*, descended from *Wolfgang* above-mention'd. His Son *John I.* of *Deux-Ponts* married *Magdalen* of *Juliers*, *Cleves* and *Berg*, introduc'd the Reformation into his Dominions, and died in 1633. His Son *John Casimir* of *Kleebourg* married *Catharine* of *Sweden*, and died in 1652. His Son *Charles Gustavus* married *Hedwige Eleonora* of *Holstein*, and, in his Mother's Right, was Crown'd King of *Sweden*. His Son *Charles XI.* King of *Sweden*, inherited the Dutchy of *Deux-Ponts*, married *Ulrica Eleonora* of *Denmark*, and died in 1697. His Son *Charles XII.* the present King of *Sweden*, was born in 1682. The ad Branch is that of *Sultzbach*, descended from *Philip Louis*, the Elector above-mention'd. The present Prince is *Theodorus*, who was born in 1659. The 3d Branch is that of *Birkenfels*, which proceeded from *Wolfgang* above-mentioned. The present Prince is *Christian II.* who was born in 1637. His Son *Christian* is Marshal de Camp in the French Army. From *Christian I.* of this Branch proceeded the Branch of *Gelenhausen*, whose Prince is *Frederick Bernard*, born in 1697, and makes a 4th Branch of this Family.

The Branch of *Veldentz* of this Family is barely extinguisht.

The Elector Palatine's Titles are, By the Grace of God, Count Palatine of the Rhine; Arch-Treasurer and Elector of the Empire; Duke of *Bavaria*, *Juliers*, *Cleves*, and *Berg*; Count of *Veldentz*, *Spanheim*, *March*, *Ravensberg*, and *Mauers*, Lord of *Ravensstein*, &c.

His Pretensions are, to the Vicariate of the Empire against the Elector of *Bavaria*; to the Right of the *Upper Palatinate*, to be Director of the Circle of the *Upper Rhine*, to the Dutchies of *Juliers* and *Cleves*, to the Bailiwicks of *Berg* and *Boeckelheim*, to some Rights concerning the Hunting of Wild-Beasts, Taxes, and giving Safe-Conducts in the Countries on the *Rhine*.

The Countries belonging to him are, the Dutchy of *Newburg*, the *Lower Palatinate*, the Bailiwick of *Boeckelheim*, the Dutchies of *Juliers* and *Berg*, the City of *Dusseldorp*, and the Lordship of *Ravensstein*.

His Arms are, a *Lion Or*, drawn arm'd.

langued, and crown'd, for the *Palatinate*, 8. *Lozeng'd*, *Argent* and *Azure*, for *Bavaria*, 2. Or, a *Lion Sable*, for *Juliers*, 3. *Gules*, an *Escutcheon Argent*, with Rays of a Carbuncle knotted Or, for *Cleves*, 4. *Argent*, a *Lion Gules*, arm'd and crown'd *Azure*, for *Berg*, 5. *Argent*, a *Lion Azure* crown'd, for *Veldentz*, 6. Or, a Front Chequer, *Argent* and *Gules*, for *March*, 7. *Argent*, 3 *Cheverons Gules*, for *Ravensberg*, 8. Or, a *Fesse Sable*, for *Mauers*, 9.

Dr. *Nickolson* says, Before the *Bohemian Wars* betwixt the Emperor and *Frederick V.* the Elector Palatine was as formidable as any of the Electors; but their Revenues were much lessen'd afterwards, even when restored, because the *Upper Palatinate* was given to the Elector of *Bavaria*: And tho' the Branch of *Newburg*, which has now the Electorate, had considerable Dominions of their own, yet the *Palatinate* having suffered much by the Barbarity of the French in the late and present Wars, he can scarce be said to equal his Predecessors of the extinguisht Line in Revenues.

La Forrest says, the Elector Palatine has Power to summon the Emperor before him, when any Suit is brought against him, or when he is charg'd with doing any Thing prejudicial to the Rights or Majesty of the Empire; and he is likewise one of the Directors of the Circle of the *Upper and Lower Rhine*.

The Present State of Europe says, his principal Councils and Courts of Justice are, 1. The Privy Council or Chancery. 2. The Council of War. 3. The Ecclesiastical Council. 4. The Chief Chamber. 5. The Court of Justice.

The Provincial Governments under him are, 1 in the *Under Palatinate*, 2 in the Dutchies of *Juliers* and *Berg*, 3 in the Dutchy of *Newburg*, 4 in *Ravensstein*.

In his Military Service, there's a General of the Ordnance and Foot, a General of the Horse, 2 Lieutenant-Generals, 6 Major-Generals, 1 General of the Artillery, and 5 Governors of Towns, besides what he has in the *Upper Palatinate*, restor'd to him since the Elector of *Bavaria* was proscribed.

He has of Standing Forces, 11 Regiments of Foot, including his Guards, 8 Regiments of Horse, and 4 of Dragoons.

Their RELIGION.

THE *Augsburg* Confession was introduced here by the Elector *Frederick II.* *Frederick III.* brought in the Doctrine and Discipline of *Geneva*. After his Death, *Lewis V.* restored *Lutheranism*. *Frederick IV.* restored *Calvinism*; but after *Frederick V.*'s Misfortunes, the House of *Austria* brought in Popery, which is still openly professed in this Country. His two Successors were *Calvinists*. Tho' the Majority of the People be Protestants, yet they have been much discouraged since the Succession of the Duke of *Newburg*, a Papist, to the Electorate, and by the barbarous Invasions of the *French*.

In the Harmony of Confessions, there is one composed by *Frederick III.* found writ in his Last Will, and published by his Son *John Casimir* in 1577, in Vindication of his Father, who was falsely charged by some to have gone back from what he had formerly professed in the Diet at *Augsburg*, Anno 1566. Whereas that excellent Prince sent for his Son *John*, in the Absence of his elder Brother, a little before his Death, told him, He had writ this Confession, as it had been formerly published, with his own Hand, inserted it in his Last Will, sign'd every Page of it, and charged him and his other Children, as they would answer to God, to adhere to it, and defend it; and accordingly it was publish'd by the Elector his Brother's Consent. He declares himself very expressly against Transubstantiation and Consubstantiation, and in Defence of the Ecclesiastical Constitution and Catechism, which he had publish'd in his Dominions before; which agrees with those of *Geneva*, and the *Habuerick* Churches.

The Geographical Description of the Country.

WE begin with that Part which belongs to the Upper Circle of the *Rhine*, and first with the

Bishoprick of SPIRES.

The City of this Name, which gives Denomination to the Bishoprick, lies in the

Palatinate of the *Rhine*, on the W. Side of that River, 8 Miles N. from *Philipsburg*, 17 N. E. from *Landau*, and 13 S. W. from *Heidelberg*. 'Tis thought to be the *Nemetum Civitas*, or *Noviomagus* mention'd by *Julius Caesar*; but *Freherus* alledges, That all the adjacent Country was formerly call'd by that Name. It lies in a Plain, and is a large and populous City; but owes its Security more to the Number of its Inhabitants, than its Fortifications. 'Tis supposed to have been built by the *Nemetes*, the ancient Inhabitants of this Country, and on that Account was called *Augusta Nemetum*. It has been the Darling of many Emperors, who endow'd it with many Privileges. *Henry IV.* made it Imperial in 1090, after having built many fair Structures there, particularly the Cathedral, in which he was buried, where there was his *Mausoleum*, and those of 7 other Emperors, till most of it was burnt down in 1689. 'Tis a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Mentz*. Its chief Privilege and Glory was the Imperial Chamber, or Sovereign Court of Judicature for the Empire, which *Baudrand* says was first established at *Frankfort* in 1495, by *Maximilian I.* but in 1530, was by *Charles V.* transported hither; but removed to *Wetzlar* in *Hessia*, after it was inhumanly burnt by the *French* in 1689. The *Atlas Historique* says, this Imperial Chamber was at first Ambulatory, having been at *Augsburg*, *Worms*, and *Nuremberg*, before it came hither. Their Business is to do Justice to the Subjects of the Empire. It consists of one Judge, who is a Papist, and two Presidents; one a Papist, and the other a Protestant; of 15 Assessors, 8 of 'em Papists, and 7 Protestants: But tho' this Chamber, as well as the *Aulick* Council at *Vienna*, give Definitive Sentence, yet there are some Causes in which the Subjects may appeal to the Emperor's Revival. The Subjects of the King of *Prussia*, and of the Elector of *Saxony*, do not belong to this Tribunal; their Affairs being determin'd by their own Princes without an Appeal. The *Saxon* Law is observ'd in *Lower Saxony*, and the *Roman* Law in the rest of the Empire. Dr. *Nicholson* gives the following Account of the Imperial Chamber; viz. In the Reign of *Charles the Great*, and some of his Successors, the Emperor, with the Bishops and Officers of the Crown, de-

termin'd all Ecclesiastical Causes: The Prelates, Counts, and others of Quality, were first heard in the Emperor's Court; but the Secular Princes could not be judg'd except in the Diets of the Empire: But when Law-Suits increas'd, and that it was troublesome for those concern'd in them to follow the Emperor's Court, which was not then fix'd, *Maximilian I.* establish'd this Chamber for the Ease of his Subjects. The Doctor says, the Assessors at first were but 16, and have been since increas'd to 30. The Emperor names the Supreme Judge, (who is always a Count or Baron, well vers'd in the Laws of the Empire) and 4 of the principal Officers; each Elector names one Assessor, and the rest are appointed by the other Members of the Diet. The Doctor likewise justly observes, That it can scarce be call'd a Sovereign Court, since their Sentences are subject to be reviewed by the Emperor and the Visitors; so that the supreme Decision seems to rest in them. But it being very difficult to obtain such a Review during the Quarrels betwixt the Protestant and Popish Princes, the latter being deny'd that Privilege, tho' 'twas their Right; the Protestants were restor'd to it by the Treaty of *Westphalia*. There are but few Appeals made hither, because of the Slowness of their Decision, there being many old Suits betwixt Princes of the Empire depending before them; but they have made more Dispatch since the Treaty of *Westphalia*: The Emperor's own immediate Subjects bring all their Law-Suits hither; but others bring only Appeals.

The German Lawyers dispute warmly, Whether the Authority of this Chamber, or of the *Aulick* Council, be greatest? But most of them are for that of *Spire*, and prove by Records, That the Emperor himself has been summoned before the Chamber of *Spire*; but 'tis alledg'd on the other side, That the Sentence of this Court is subject to Revisors, which that of the *Aulick* Council is not; and that when the Emperors have been summoned before that of *Spire*, the Summons run in his own Name; as in the Case of *Maximilian*, who was summon'd as Arch-Duke of *Austria* in his own Name as Emperor. In some Trials at Law, the Electors may be summoned to appear before this Court.

This City was taken by *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, who demolish'd its Fortifications, because he was not able to spare a sufficient Garrison for its Defence. There were many stately Houses and Churches in this City before 'twas burnt down; the chief of which was the Cathedral, beautified with 4 Towers. The Citizens have rebuilt much of it; but it will be long before it recover its ancient Splendour. The Magistrates, and most of the People, are Protestants: They swear Fealty to the Bishop, but are under the Protection of the Elector *Palatine*. The *Papists*, *Lutherans*, and *Calvinists*, had their Worship by Turns in the Cathedral at different Hours, as Doctor *Brown* informs us. The Houses were generally large, but of Wood, and not very convenient, as Mr. *Ray* says. *Nisson*, in his Travels, says, the Chief Judge of the Chamber of *Spire* represents the Emperor's Person, and has always a Scepter laid before him in Court.

The Bishoprick lies on both Sides the *Rhine*, is about 40 Miles long from E. to W. and 13 broad from S. to N. The See was founded in the 4th Century, and endow'd by several Emperors with large Revenues.

In this Bishoprick lies *Philipsburg*, on the E. Side of the *Rhine*, about 7 Miles S. from *Spire*, on the Mouth of the *Salza*. 'Twas formerly a Village, call'd *Udenheim*, and walled in by *Gerhard* Bishop of *Spire* in 1343, who first made it a City, and procur'd it large Privileges. It stands conveniently for commanding the adjacent Country, and therefore was well fortified by the Bishop in 1629, before the Civil Wars of *Germany*, when *Frederick V.* Elector *Palatine*, being Sovereign of the Town, and suspicious of the Bishop's ill Designs in fortifying this Place during a Peace, order'd him to desist; but the Bishop refused, and alledged the Emperor's Placet for what he did: Upon this, the Elector beat them down by Force. The Emperor did hereupon summon that Prince and his Confederates before the Chamber of *Spire*, and design'd to proceed against 'em with the utmost Severity, which was one of the Causes that gave Rise to the Civil Wars of *Germany*. The Bishop who begun the Fortifications, was *Philip Christopher* of *Lotteren*, and at the same Time Arch-

Archbishop of Treves, and from his own Name call'd it *Philipsburg*, says *La Forrest*, *Spinola*, the Spanish General, repair'd the Fortifications, which the Elector had demolish'd, and made it almost impregnable. It has since been taken 6 times, viz. in 1633, by the Imperialists; the Year after, by the Swedes; and in 1636, by the Imperialists: In 1644, by the Duke of *Enguin*, afterwards Prince of *Conde*; by the *Germani* in 1676; and by the Dauphin, on his own Birth-day, the first of November, 1688; but was restored to the Empire by the Treaty of *Roswick*. The present French King, before the breaking out of his War with Germany, being in Possession of this Town by the Treaty of *Munster*, did, in 1666, cause the following Inscription to be writ over the great Gate of this City.

Tuendis Rheni finibus.

Ludovicus XIV. Francorum & Navarra Rex Christianissimus, confecto in utraque Germania Bello; restaurata ubique Pace; Munimentum hoc sue virtutis, assertaque Libertatis Germaniae, Monumentum firmari isthoc aggere muroque regis sumptibus extructo, fecit.

ANNO 1666.

Perfecit in Terrorem Hostium, Fœderatorum Præsidium, Liliorum Subsidium, alterum Gallie cis Rhenum propugnaculum, ac Germaniam versus Ostium, inferius situ non Robore.

Quod ille claudit, nemo aperit; idem aperit, & nemo claudit.

i. e. "For defending the Countries on the Rhine.

"*Lewis XIV.* the most Christian King of France and *Navarre*, having finished the Wars in both *Germanies*, and restored Peace every where, caused this Fortress to be strengthen'd with these Ramparts and Walls at his own Royal Charge, as a Monument of his Valour, and of the Recovery of the German Liberty.

"In 1666.

"He compleated it for the Terror of his Enemies, the Support of his Allies, and a Security to the French, being the se-

"cond Bulwark of France on this Side the Rhine, and a Key into Germany; the lowest in Situation, but not in Strength.

"What he shuts, no Man opens; and what he opens, no Man shuts.

But being retaken by the Imperialists in 1676, the Emperor order'd that Inscription to be raz'd out, and the following one to be put in its stead.

Leopoldus Imperator, Caesar, Pius, Felix, Augustus, Victor & Triumphator, suscitò juvenis Sociis, cunctis Civibus, ardentis Hostibus, necessario Bello, restauranda ubique Pace, Munimentum hoc, vindicata ab injectis Gallicæ Servitutis compedibus Libertatis Publicæ, futurum ad posteris, Monumentum expugnavit, Germaniæque postliminio restituit.

Anno Christianæ Salutis 1676.

Terrori Hostium, Tutela Civium, Germaniæ Præsidio, alterum Gallie cis Rhenum Receptaculum, ac Germaniam versus Ostium, auspiciò plura pari successu recuperanda Augurio, Gallis clausis, Germanis reclusis.

Quod Gallus claudit, Germanus aperit.

i. e. "Leopold the Emperor, Caesar, Pious, Successful, August, Conqueror and Triumpher, having undertaken a necessary War, for assisting his Confederates, defending his Subjects, curbing his Enemies, and restoring Peace every where, took this Fortress by Siege, that it might be a Monument to Posterity of his breaking off the French Yoke of Slavery from the Neck of the Common Liberty, and restor'd it to Germany, after it had been unjustly taken from her.

"In the Year of our Salvation 1676.

"For the Terror of his Enemies, the Defence of his Subjects, and the Security of Germany, he shut against the French, and open'd to the Germans, this second Bulwark of France on this Side the Rhine, and Key into Germany, as a happy Omen of his like Success in recovering more,

"What the French shut, the Germans open.

Bishop.

Bishop Philip above-mention'd fortified this City with 7 Royal Bastions, and its Fortifications were afterwards much enlarged by *Spaniards*, the *Germans*, and the *French*. It stands about a quarter of a League from the *Rhine*; but its Fortifications extend almost to that River; and the Marshes that encompass it, add much to its Strength.

Other Places in this Bishoprick are, 1. *Bruxhal*, on the River *Salitz*, a great open Town with a Castle, where the Bishop ordinarily resides. 2. *Weibstat*, on a Brook which falls two Leagues below it into the *Neckar*. 3. *Altrip*, which was formerly fortified, because it commands a Pass on the *Rhine*.

The Bishoprick of WORMS,

Has its Name from that City, which was a Metropolitan Church, says *La Ferrest*, in the first Centuries; but was deprived of that Privilege by Pope *Zachary*, who transferred it to *Mentz* in 745, and made it Suffragan to that Sec. The Revenues of this Bishoprick were very considerable till the Reformation, when the Elector *Palatine* took off a considerable Part; so that the Bishop has now only some Villages, and half the Town. This City is reckon'd the second of the *Palatinate*. *Freher*, a Learned Antiquary, says, 'twas the Metropolis of the *Vangiones*; and that not long ago, there was an Inscription in Capitals over the *Peacock-Gate*, with these Words, *Specula Vangionum*. *Cluverius* says, its ancient Name was *Bormiotomagus*, and at last by Corruption was called *Wormatia*. 'Twas destroyed in 451 by *Attila the Hun*, and rebuilt 45 Years after by *Clovis I. of France*. The Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* enlarged it in 1158, and made it Imperial. While the Imperial Chamber was kept here, it was one of the most considerable Cities in Germany. *Munster* says, That in his Time, 100 Cities, great Towns and Villages, lay so near *Worms*, that they could bring Provisions thither, and return home the same Night; but it suffer'd much during the Civil Wars of Germany, but most by the *French* in 1693, when they burnt down in three Hours what had been the Work of several Ages. The Citizens have since rebuilt much of it. They are subject to the Bishop, but under the Protection of

the Elector *Palatine*. The Papists are numerous here, and have the Cathedral; but the Magistrates, and most of the Inhabitants, are *Lutherans*. 'Tis noted for *Luther's* bold Answer and Defence of himself at the Diet here, for which he was afterwards proscribed, and obliged to retire; during which, he wrote his Works from the Desert. This City lies on the W. Side of the *Rhine*, about 20 Miles N. W. from *Spires*. *Ray* says, 'tis a large City, but was much decayed in his Time; that there are 20 Canons belonging to the Cathedral, who chuse their Bishop. *Miffen* says, 'tis situate in a very fruitful Country, but has no other Fortifications than a double Wall; that 'tis as large as *Frankfort*, but ill Peopled, and become so poor, that he saw a House sold for 1000 Crowns, which had formerly yielded as much *per Annum*. There is so much empty Ground in the Town, that the Vines planted there yield Annually 1500 Fodders of Wine, a Fodder being 250 English Gallons. Their Wine is much esteem'd, and they make Presents of it, with some Fish, to Princes and Travellers of Quality. The *Lutherans*, when he was there, which was in 1687, had only one Church for their own Use, and had their Worship by Turns with the Papists in that of the *Dominicans*; but the Papists had all the rest of the Churches. They make no Processions, except on the Day after *Easter*, nor carry the Host in Publick. The *Calvinists* have a Church at *Neuhausel*, half a League out of the Town. The Churches of *St. Paul* and *St. John* are very ancient, built of vast square Stones, in an irregular Manner, with narrow Windows, and Galleries round the Outside just under the Roof; the Walls are 12 Foot thick, and seem not to have been design'd for a Church at first. The Cathedral is long and high, has a Tower at each of the 4 Corners, and is a strong Fabrick, with Gothic Ornaments. Over one of the Doors, there's the Figure of a strange Animal, of the Size of an Ass, with 4 Heads, supposed to be a Hieroglyphick of the 4 Beasts in *Ezekiel's* Vision. A Woman sits on the Back of it, which they say is the Representation of the Gospel. At the Entrance of *St. Martin's* Church, over a moveable Altar, he says there's a strange Picture, well worth a Traveller's View.

'Tis

'Tis about 5 Foot square, and has on the Top, at one Corner, a Representation of God the Father, addressing himself to the Virgin, who is on her Knees in the middle of the Picture, holding an Infant, representing our Saviour, by the Feet, and putting his Head into the Hopper of a Mill, which the 12 Apostles turn by the Help of a Wheel, and the Assistance of the 4 Beasts above-mention'd on the other Side. Hard by, the Pope is painted on his Knees receiving the Hosts, which fall from the Mill into a Golden Cup; one of which he presents to a Cardinal, who gives it to a Bishop, the Bishop to a Priest, and the Priest to a Layman. There are two publick Places of Meeting in this City; in the one they assemble twice a Week about Matters of State, and in the other for administering Justice. 'Twas in the first where *Luther* made his solemn Appearance, when being heated with the Debate, and by a Fire that was near him, he desir'd a Glass of Wine; which being brought, he was so eager in his Discourse, that he forgot to drink it, and soon after it broke in Pieces on the Bench where it stood, without any body's touching it; whence the *Lutherans* took it for granted, there was Poison mix'd with the Wine: Upon this, they broke the Bench in Pieces, which they still keep as a Memorial of his great Deliverance. *Misson* adds, That in the Mint, he saw a square Piece of Parchment in a Frame, with 12 sorts of Hands, writ with divers Miniatures, and several Draughts curiously done with a Pen, by one *Thomas Shoewener*, with his Feet, he being born without Arms, as the Inscription under it testifies. In a spacious Portico belonging to this House, there's a vast Number of Bones, and Horns hanging betwixt the Arches: The former, they say, were the Bones of Giants among the ancient *Vangiones*; and the latter, the Horns of the Oxen that drew the Stones which built their Cathedral. The Outside of the House is adorn'd with a great Number of Pictures, and among them several of these Giants in Armour. The Bishoprick of *Worms* lies on both Sides the *Rhine*, is about 2 Miles long, and 7 or 8 broad.

The Dutchy of Deux-Ponts,

IN *German*, *Zweybrücken*, and in *Latin*, *Bipontium*; has *Lorrain* on the W. and is surrounded with the *Palatinate*, of which it is a Part, on all other Sides. From N. E. to S. W. 'tis about 40 Miles long. In some Places 'tis 25 broad, and in others not above 8 or 9. It takes its Name from the Capital, on the River *Schwalbe*, and another, over which it has two Bridges, from whence it had its Name. The Town is small, but very neat, and fortified with a good Castle, built by one of its Dukes, descended from the *Palatine* Family. From *John*, one of these Dukes, came the Royal Family of *Sweden*, who are now possessed of this Dutchy. It lies near the Borders of the *Palatinate*, about 40 Miles S. W. from *Worms*, and 47 from *Spires*. It suffered much during the late and present Wars betwixt the *French* and *Germans*.

This Dutchy is divided into the 5 Bailiwicks of *Zweybrücken*, *Meizenheim*, *Lichtenberg*, *Newcastel*, and *Landsberg*, with Part of those of *Guttenberg* and *Bischweiler*; the last of which is in *Lower Alsace*, where the King of *Sweden* has also other Lands.

Germersheim is a considerable City near the *Rhine*, over against *Philipsburg*, from which it lies 5 Miles W.

Newstat, a small neat City near the River of *Spierbach*, about 16 Miles W. from *Spires*, noted for the Defeat of a Body of *Germans* in 1703 by the *French*, as they were coming to the Relief of *Landau*, then besieged by *M. Tallard*.

These above are the chief Places in that Part of the *Palatinate* which belong to the Circle of the *Upper Rhine*. What follows, belong to the Circle of the *Lower Rhine*.

1. *Heydelberg*, the Metropolis of the *Palatinate*, and, as some will have it, formerly, the chief Town of all *Swabia*. It has its Name from a little Shrub, resembling *Mirtles*, which grows in the Neighbourhood, and bears a Berry, by the *Germans* called *Hey*.

Y y y

delbeeren; whence Latin Authors call this City *Myrtilorum Mons*, and *Myrtiletum*. 'Tis encompassed with Hills cover'd with Vines, except towards the W. where there's a Prospect over a large and pleasant Plain; so that the Situation of the City is very agreeable, being in a fruitful Plain on the River *Neckar*, at the Foot of a Mountain, in Long. 27. 31. Lat. 49. 20. about 15 Miles N. E. from *Spire*, 25 N. W. from *Hallbron*, and 25 S. E. from *Worms*. It was a large, populous, and rich City, before the *French* destroyed it. Its chief Beauty consisted in one fair Street, with an uniform Market-place. It was much enlarged in 1392, and had the Suburb called *Borghelm* added to it. The Elector's Palace, on the Ascend of a Hill called *Conigstul*, which overlooks the whole City, was a stately and magnificent Fabrick, beautified with fine Grotto's, Gardens, &c. and not far from it, stood a strong Tower, which, for its Height and Fortifications, was scarce to be parallel'd in the Empire. 'Twas formerly called *Trutz-Keyser*, i. e. a Defiance to the Emperor: but upon the Restoration of the Elector by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, its Name was changed into the *Star-Fort*. Ray says, That the Palace was enclos'd with a Wall and a deep Ditch, hewn out of the Rock; and by an Inscription over the Gate, it appeared to have been begun by *Lewis V.* in 1519; but several Parts had been added since, and one particularly called the *English Building*. In a Cellar under one of the Towers, stood the famous Tun of *Heydelberg*, which contain'd 528 Hogsheds of Wine; but this was taken to Pieces in 1664; and tho' then the largest in the Empire, another was built which contained 600 Hogsheds. The old Tun was encompassed with great Hoops of Iron, weighing each 1200 Pound; but the new one, instead of Hoops, was built with large Trees of Knot-Timber, like the Ribs of a Ship, with several Inscriptions carv'd and painted upon them; and supported by carv'd Pedestals. On one Side of this Tun, there was a handsome Stair-Case leading to the Top, with a Gallery, set round with Ballisters, 43 Steps from the Ground; whereas the old Tun had only 17. Mr. Ray says, the Elector had a fine Closet of Curiosities, where, among other Things, he

saw a Purse made of *Alumen Plumsum*; which being made red-hot, received no Damage; but when cool, appeared the same as before. He saw there also two Unicorns Horns 8 or 10 Foot long, wreath'd, and hollow to the Top, being the Horns of a Fish, and not of a Four-footed Beast, as the Ancients imagin'd. There was also an Imperial Crown and Globe belonging to the Emperor *Rupertus* of this Family, richly beset with Precious Stones, and a choice Collection of ancient and modern Coins and Medals, and among the rest, a Copper *Swedish* Dollar, of the Size of a square Trencher, with the King's Arms and Effigies stamp'd at the 4 Corners. *La Forrest* says, this City was taken by the Spanish General Count *Tilly* in 1622, when he sack'd it, destroy'd many of the Monuments of the Magnificence of their Princes, and carried off their famous Library, that was kept in the Church of the *Holy Ghost*, and was one of the best stock'd with Books and curious MSS. of any in *Europe*; Part of which was carried to *Rome*, and added to the *Vatican* Library; and the other Part was added to the Emperor's Library at *Vienna*. The above-mention'd Church of the *Holy Ghost*, and that of *St. Peter*, contain'd many of the Monuments of the Electors, which, together with the Palace, were barbarously destroyed by the *French* in 1693, and the Corps of those Princes expos'd by the *French* when they took this City, by the Treachery or Cowardice of the Governor, who was a Knight of the *Teutonic* Order; but afterwards justly degraded, and branded publicly, with other Marks of Ignominy and Disgrace. The *French* at the same Time did brutishly ravish the principal Women of the Town in the great Church, whither they fled, notwithstanding they had a Promise of the General's Protection; and did so much ruin the City, that 'tis not like speedily to recover its ancient Splendour. *Scaliger* says, That the Library kept in this Church was larger, and fill'd with better Books, than that of the *Vatican*, and exceeded all in the Empire for the Number and Rarity of the Books, especially for its MSS. in *Hebrew*, *Greek*, *Latin*, *Chaldee*, *Arabic*, *Indian*, *Tartarian*, *Italian*, *French*, *German*, and *Bohemian* Languages; many of which

were

were destroyed, and the rest carried off by the Spaniards.

The University here was founded by Count *Rupert* in 1387, or, as some say, 40 Years before. It bred many great Men; and among others, *R. Agricola*, *Munster*, *H. Buschius*, *Xylander*, *Paul Cifner*, *Pacius*, *Franciscus Junius*, Father and Son; *Smetsius*, *Frecherus*, and *Janus Gruterus*. Dr. Brown says, the Situation of the City is such, that it cannot be regularly fortified. Ray says, the Houses were of Wood, but handsomely built, and the City was divided into 5 Independent Jurisdictions: The 1st called *Aulica*, under which were the Princes and Nobles, and the Marshal of the Court sat as President. 2. *Cancellaria*, to which belong'd all Counsellors, and other Officers of the Courts, Advocates, Doctors, &c. 3. *Bellica*, for the Soldiers, where the General presided. 4. *Academica*, for the Students, of which, the Rector *Magnificus* for the Time was President. 5. *Civica*, for the Citizens. He observes, That the Members of each of those Jurisdictions were not obliged to appear before any Court but their own; and that the City was divided into 4 Wards, under a Prætor and Burgomaster. He says, the University had 3 or 4 Colleges for the Subsistence of poor Scholars; and the Management of it was entrusted to the Academic Senate, composed of 16 Professors, 3 for Divinity, 4 for Law, 3 of Physick, and 6 of Philosophy; but 4 of the latter were only allow'd to sit, lest they should make too strong a Party. This Senate chuses Annually a Rector *Magnificentissimus*, an Honorary Title, resembling that of a Chancellor of the English Universities; and a Rector *Magnificus*, who is Chief of the Senate, and equivalent to our Vice-Chancellor: Besides whom, they chuse two or four more Officers out of their Number, who manage their Concerns; and when a Professor dies, the Senate chuses two in his Room, of whom the Prince names any one he pleases to succeed. This Senate has Power of Life and Death in their own Jurisdiction, the Prince having only reserv'd the Power of Pardoning, if he thinks fit, after they have pass'd Sentence. They have no other Degree in Philosophy but that of Master; but in Law and Physick, they create Licentiates and Doctors; and in Divi-

nity, Batchellors, Licentiates, and Doctors. They have no Regard to the Standing of the Candidates, but make 'em undergo two Examinations: The 1st, called *Examen Tentatorium*, before the Faculty in which he is to commence, and the Rector *Magnificus*. The 2d, called *Examen Rigorosum*, before the said Rector, and all the Professors; after which, they are to hold a publick Disputation *sub Præside*, a Lecture in their own Faculty, and a Speech. This Ceremony is perform'd with great Pomp, and concludes with a sumptuous Feast to all the Professors, and sometimes the Prince or his Deputy is present. Here the Professors publish an Annual Catalogue of their Names, and the Publick Lectures they intend.

The Elector *Palatine*, says Mr. Ray, is absolute in his Dominions; and since the Reformation, has the Supremacy in Ecclesiastical Affairs, that formerly belong'd to the Bishop of *Spire*. He is the Patron of all vacant Benefices; but allows the Ecclesiastical Council, composed of two Clergy men and two Laymen, to present two Candidates, of which he chuses one. The Generality of the People, says the same Author, are of the Reform'd Religion, i. e. *Calvinists*; and the Clergymen are divided into three Prefectures, each of which has an Inspector, who differs not from the other Ministers in Rank or Power, but has only a larger Salary. Each considerable Town has also its Prefecture or Presbytery; and that of *Heidelberg* was composed of 5 Ministers of that City, 2 Deputies from each of the above-mention'd Jurisdictions, except the *Aulica*, and 2 from each of the 4 Wards in the City, making in all 21; in which the Laymen have equal Votes with the Ministers, who have no other Prerogative in this Matter, but that one of 'em always presides by Turns. They can inflict no Church Censure, but to oblige Transgressors to make a publick Confession at the Church-Door, and to promise Amendment, the rest being left to the Civil Magistrate. The Elector is Master of all the Tithes in his Dominions, which in some Parts he allows to the Clergy, and in others he gives them Salaries out of the Church Revenues. Dr. Brown says, the French have a Church here, as well as the *Lutherans*; and that the latter was called the Church of *Providente*, of

delbeeren; whence Latin Authors call this City *Myrtillorum Mons*, and *Myrtileum*. 'Tis encompassed with Hills cover'd with Vines, except towards the W. where there's a Prospect over a large and pleasant Plain; so that the Situation of the City is very agreeable, being in a fruitful Plain on the River *Neckar*, at the Foot of a Mountain, in Long. 27. 31. Lat. 49. 20. about 15 Miles N. E. from *Spires*, 25 N. W. from *Hallbron*, and 25 S. E. from *Worms*. It was a large, populous, and rich City, before the *French* destroyed it. Its chief Beauty consisted in one fair Street, with an uniform Market-place. It was much enlarged in 1392, and had the Suburb called *Berghheim* added to it. The Elector's Palace, on the Ascend of a Hill called *Conigsflut*, which overlooks the whole City, was a stately and magnificent Fabrick, beautified with fine Grotto's, Gardens, &c. and not far from it, stood a strong Tower, which, for its Height and Fortifications, was scarce to be parallel'd in the Empire. 'Twas formerly called *Trutz-Keyser*, i. e. a Defiance to the Emperor: but upon the Restoration of the Elector by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, its Name was changed into the *Star-Fort*. Ray says, That the Palace was enclos'd with a Wall and a deep Ditch, hewn out of the Rock; and by an Inscription over the Gate, it appeared to have been begun by *Lewis V.* in 1519; but several Parts had been added since, and one particularly called the *English Building*. In a Cellar under one of the Towers, stood the famous Tun of *Heydelberg*, which contain'd 528 Hogsheds of Wine; but this was taken to Pieces in 1664; and tho' then the largest in the Empire, another was built which contained 600 Hogsheds. The old Tun was encompassed with great Hoops of Iron, weighing each 1200 Pound; but the new one, instead of Hoops, was built with large Trees of Knet-Timber, like the Ribs of a Ship, with several Inscriptions carv'd and painted upon them, and supported by carv'd Pedestals. On one Side of this Tun, there was a handsome Stair-Case leading to the Top, with a Gallery, set round with Ballisters, 43 Steps from the Ground; whereas the old Tun had only 17. Mr. Ray says, the Elector had a fine Closet of Curiosities, where, among other Things, he

saw a Purse made of *Alumen Plumosum*; which being made red-hot, received no Damage; but when cool, appeared the same as before. He saw there also two Unicorns Horns 8 or 10 Foot long, wreath'd, and hollow to the Top, being the Horns of a Fish, and not of a Four-footed Beast, as the Ancients imagin'd. There was also an Imperial Crown and Globe belonging to the Emperor *Rupertus* of this Family, richly beset with Precious Stones, and a choice Collection of ancient and modern Coins and Medals, and among the rest, a Copper *Swedish* Dollar, of the Size of a square Trencher, with the King's Arms and Effigies stamp'd at the 4 Corners. *La Forrest* says, this City was taken by the Spanish General Count *Tilly* in 1622, when he sack'd it, destroy'd many of the Monuments of the Magnificence of their Princes, and carried off their famous Library, that was kept in the Church of the *Holy Ghost*, and was one of the best stock'd with Books and curious MSS. of any in Europe; Part of which was carried to *Rome*, and added to the *Vatican* Library; and the other Part was added to the Emperor's Library at *Vienna*. The above-mention'd Church of the *Holy Ghost*, and that of *St. Peter*, contain'd many of the Monuments of the Electors, which, together with the Palace, were barbarously destroyed by the *French* in 1693, and the Corps of those Princes exposed by the *French* when they took this City, by the Treachery or Cowardice of the Governor, who was a Knight of the *Teutonic* Order; but afterwards justly degraded, and branded publicly, with other Marks of Ignominy and Disgrace. The *French* at the same Time did brutishly ravish the principal Women of the Town in the great Church, whither they fled, notwithstanding they had a Promise of the General's Protection; and did so much ruin the City, that 'tis not like speedily to recover its ancient Splendour. *Scaliger* says, That the Library kept in this Church was larger, and fill'd with better Books, than that of the *Vatican*, and exceeded all in the Empire for the Number and Rarity of the Books, especially for its MSS. in Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Chaldee, Arabic, Indian, Tartarian, Italian, French, German, and Bohemian Languages; many of which

were destroyed; and the rest carried off by the Spaniards.

The University here was founded by Count Rupert in 1387, or, as some say, 40 Years before. It bred many great Men; and among others, R. Agricola, Munster, H. Buschius, Xylander, Paul Cifner, Pacius, Franciscus Junius, Father and Son; Smectius, Preherius, and Janus Gruterus. Dr. Brown says, the Situation of the City is such, that it cannot be regularly fortified. Ray says, the Houses were of Wood, but handsomely built, and the City was divided into 4 Independent Jurisdictions: The 1st called *Aulica*, under which were the Princes and Nobles, and the Marshal of the Court sat as President. 2. *Cancellaria*, to which belong'd all Counsellors, and other Officers of the Courts, Advocates, Doctors, &c. 3. *Bellica*, for the Soldiers, where the General presided. 4. *Academica*, for the Students, of which, the Rector *Magnificus* for the Time was President. 5. *Civica*, for the Citizens. He observes, That the Members of each of those Jurisdictions were not obliged to appear before any Court but their own; and that the City was divided into 4 Wards, under a Prætor and Burgomaster. He says, the University had 3 or 4 Colleges for the Subsistence of poor Scholars; and the Management of it was entrusted to the Academic Senate, composed of 16 Professors, 3 for Divinity, 4 for Law, 3 of Physick, and 6 of Philosophy; but 4 of the latter were only allow'd to sit, lest they should make too strong a Party. This Senate chuses Annually a Rector *Magnificentissimus*, an Honorary Title, resembling that of a Chancellor of the English Universities; and a Rector *Magnificus*, who is Chief of the Senate, and equivalent to our Vice-Chancellor: Besides whom, they chuse two or four more Officers out of their Number, who manage their Concerns; and when a Professor dies, the Senate chuses two in his Room, of whom the Prince names any one he pleases to succeed. This Senate has Power of Life and Death in their own Jurisdiction, the Prince having only reserv'd the Power of Pardoning, if he thinks fit, after they have pass'd Sentence. They have no other Degree in Philosophy but that of Master; but in Law and Physick, they create Licentiates and Doctors; and in Divi-

nity, Bachelors, Licentiates, and Doctors. They have no Regard to the Standing of the Candidates, but make 'em undergo two Examinations: The 1st, called *Examen Tentatorium*, before the Faculty in which he is to commence, and the Rector *Magnificus*. The 2d, called *Examen Rigorosum*, before the said Rector, and all the Professors; after which, they are to hold a publick Disputation *sub Præside*, a Lecture in their own Faculty, and a Speech. This Ceremony is perform'd with great Pomp, and concludes with a sumptuous Feast to all the Professors, and sometimes the Prince or his Deputy is present. Here the Professors publish an Annual Catalogue of their Names, and the Publick Lectures they intend.

The Elector *Palatine*, says Mr. Ray, is absolute in his Dominions; and since the Reformation, has the Supremacy in Ecclesiastical Affairs, that formerly belong'd to the Bishop of *Spire*. He is the Patron of all vacant Benefices; but allows the Ecclesiastical Council, composed of two Clergymen and two Laymen, to present two Candidates, of which he chuses one. The Generality of the People, says the same Author, are of the Reform'd Religion, i. e. *Calvinists*; and the Clergymen are divided into three Prefectures, each of which has an Inspector, who differs not from the other Ministers in Rank or Power, but has only a larger Salary. Each considerable Town has also its Prefecture or Presbytery; and that of *Heidelberg* was composed of 5 Ministers of that City, 2 Deputies from each of the above-mention'd Jurisdictions, except the *Aulica*, and 2 from each of the 4 Wards in the City, making in all 21; in which the Laymen have equal Votes with the Ministers, who have no other Prerogative in this Matter, but that one of 'em always presides by Turns. They can inflict no Church Censure, but to oblige Transgressors to make a publick Confession at the Church-Door, and to promise Amendment, the rest being left to the Civil Magistrate. The Elector is Master of all the Tithes in his Dominions, which in some Parts he allows to the Clergy, and in others he gives them Salaries out of the Church Revenues. Dr. Brown says, the French have a Church here, as well as the *Lutherans*; and that the latter was called the Church of *Providence*, of

which the Elector, tho' a Calvinist, laid the first Stone. The Town-House was remarkable for its Clock, which had divers Motions, and represented several Figures of Men fighting, and of a Cock crowing, &c. when it struck. About a Mile from *Heydelberg*, he says, there's a solitary Place, from whence spring 3 Fountains from a Mountain; and after they have filled 5 Ponds, and passed through 3 Cascades or Falls, they run in so strong a Stream through the adjacent Plain, that they turn 4 Water-Mills within a small Distance of one another. This is called the *Wolf's Fountain*, because a certain Princess was tore in Pieces by a Wolf near this Place. This City was Part of the Bishoprick of *Worms* before 1225, when *Lewis I.* was invested with the Castle and Old Town: And about 500 Years ago, most of the Cities in the Neighbourhood were either Imperial, or subject to other Princes than the Counts *Palatine*, who have since become Masters of 'em by Marriage, Purchase, or Conquest. The Curious may see more about the Elector's fine Medals in *Moncony's Travels*.

Dr. Brown mentions a Monastery called *Lohensfelt* near *Heydelberg*, which belong'd formerly to the Jesuits, but was since bestow'd upon the *English*; about 100 of whom leaving their Native Country in 1661, came hither and settled with their Families. They call themselves *Christian Jews*, maintain'd a Community of many Things, did not cut nor shave their Beards, and observ'd many other Ceremonies enjoin'd in the Old Testament. Their Head was then one *Mr. Pool* of *Norwich*.

2. *Ladenburg*, on the *Neckar*, about 6 Miles N. W. from *Heydelberg*, a small but pleasant City, which belongs jointly to the Bishop of *Worms* and the Elector *Palatine*, and was spar'd by the *Spaniards* at the Bishop's Intercession.

3. *Manheim*, about a quarter of a League from the *Rhine*, on the E. Side of that River, and about 12 Miles N. W. from *Heydelberg*, near the Conflux of the *Rhine* and *Neckar*. It was strongly fortified by *Frederick IV.* in 1606; but was taken and dismantled by the *Spaniards* in 1622. 'Twas afterwards re-fortified by the last Elector of the old Family with several Outworks, and two Citadels; in one of which there was a

near Church built, called *Concordia*, where the *Papists*, *Lutherans*, and *Calvinists*, had their Worship by Turns. It was taken by the *French* in 1688, who being forc'd to abandon it next Year, destroy'd its Fortifications.

4. *Mosbach*, near the *Neckar*, Capital of a Bailiwick, lies about 18 Miles N. E. from *Heydelberg*.

5. *Horneck*, on the *Neckar*, a small City, which was pillaged by the *Bavarians* in 1622.

6. *Sintshelm*, a small City, in a marshy Country, about 12 Miles S. E. from *Heydelberg*, noted for the Victory which the *Marshall de Turenne* obtain'd there over the Imperial Army in 1674.

7. *Bretzen*, 18 Miles S. from *Heydelberg*, on the Borders of *Wurtemberg*, Capital of a Bailiwick of the same Name, and noted for being the Birth-place of *Melancthon*, who compos'd that called the *Augsburg Confession*.

8. *Frankendal*, on the W. Side of the *Rhine*, about 8 Miles N. W. from *Manheim*, was anciently an Abbey, which the Emperor *Frederick III.* caused to be fortified about 1489. It was long held out by the Protestants in the 16th Century; but at last taken by the *Spaniards*, who were beat out of it by the *Swedes*; but retook it two Years after, and kept it till 1652, tho' they were obliged to have restor'd it in 1648 by the Treaty of *Munster*. It was burnt down by the *French* in 1688.

9. *Altsheim*, or *Alzey*, upon a River of the same Name, lies about 12 Miles N. W. from *Worms*. It was formerly Capital of a County, and now of a Bailiwick. 'Tis a good Town, fortified with a Castle and Walls, and was formerly the Residence of the Electors.

10. *Lauterack*, on the Conflux of the Rivers *Glan* and *Lauter*, gives Title to the Counts of *Lauterack*, descended from *Rupert*, youngest Son to *Alexander the Lame*, Duke of *Deux Ponts*. It lies about 30 Miles W. from *Worms*, and is by the *Matricula* reckon'd to belong to the Upper Circle of the *Rhine*.

11. *Keiserflauter*, on the River *Lauter*, was formerly an Imperial Town. The Emperor *Robert* mortgaged it to the Elector *Palatine* in 1402. 'Tis Capital of a Principality,

24 25 26 27
0 5 10 15 30 45 60 75

English Miles

SPANISH

PROVINCES.

PART OF
FRANCE



The South West Part of GERMANY:
Containing y Dominions of y Archbishops
and Electors of MENTZ & TREVES;
and of y Elec: PALATINE of y RHINE:
The Circles of FRANCONIA & SWABIA:
ALSACE and y Dutchy of LORRAIN, y
WETERAW, &c. By H. Moll Geographer.

S U I S S

Arch Bishopricks. Bishopricks.

24

25

26

27



- P. Principality
D. Dutchy
M. Marquisate
B. Bishoprick
C. County
Bar. Barony
Teut. Teutonic Order
T. Territory

lity, whose Prince has a Vote in the Diet. It lies about 26 Miles S. W. from *Frankendal*.

12. *Eberenberg*, a strong Castle, remarkable for a long Siege it held out in 1692. It lies on the River *Nahe*, about 8 or 9 Miles E. from *Creutznach*.

13. *Creutznach*, on the *Nahe*, the Capital of that called the Fore-County of *Spanheim*. 'Tis a good Town, defended by a Castle, on a Hill called *Kaufenberg*, and lies about 18 Miles N. W. from *Alzheim*.

14. *Openheim*, upon a Hill on the Banks of the *Rhine*, was formerly an Imperial Town. The Emperor *Robert*, who died there in 1613, gave it a little before to his Son *Lewis*, who succeeded him in the Electorate. This City lies 22 Miles N. E. from *Creutznach*, 22 N. W. from *Worms*, and 11 S. E. from *Mentz*. 'Twas destroyed by the *French* in 1693.

15. *Simmeren*, lies on a small River of the same Name, about 25 Miles W. from *Mentz*, and is the Capital of a Principality, which has for a long Time been possessed by a Branch of the *Palatine* Family, to whom it was given in 1559. After the Death of *Osbo*, the Elector *Frederick IV.* left the Principalities of *Simmeren* and *Lawteren*, with Part of the County of *Spanheim*, to *Lewis Philip*, his youngest Son, in 1610. *Lewis Herman* Duke of *Simmeren* dying without Issue in 1673, the Elector *Palatine* became his Heir, and, as Duke of *Simmeren*, is Joint-Director with the Bishop of *Worms* of the Circle of the *Upper Rhine*, of which this Duchy, as well as that of *Deux-Ponts*, is reckon'd a Part.

16. *Baccarach*, a small City on the *Rhine*, 8 Miles E. from *Simmeren*, and 20 N. W. from *Mentz*. 'Tis famous for its excellent Wine, to which the Emperor *Wenceslaus* gave so much Reputation in the beginning of the 15th Century. Some derive its Name from *Bacchi Ara*, i. e. the Altar of *Bacchus*, upon the Account of its Wine.

17. *Veldentz*, near the Conflux of the *Moselle* and the *Lefer*, is the Capital of a County of that Name, which gives Title to a Branch of the *Palatine* Family. It lies about 20 Miles W. from *Simmeren*, and belongs to the Circle of the *Upper Rhine*.

18. *Birckenfels*, lies towards the Borders

of the Electorate of *Treves*, in the Upper County of *Spanheim*, 28 Miles E. from *Treves*, and 30 N. E. from *Deux-Ponts*, and gives Title of Prince to a Branch of the *Palatine* Family. It is walled and defended by a Castle. *Charles III.* of *Lorraine* died here in 1675.

19. *Trarbach*, a strong and important Place on the *Moselle*, about 5 Miles N. E. from *Veldentz*. The *French* took it in 1702, and defended it against the Imperialists, who were obliged to raise the Siege they laid to it in 1703.

Leningen, the Capital of the County of *Linage* or *Leningen*, lies 18 Miles N. W. from *Spires*, and about 20 S. W. from *Worms*.

Rhingrausstein, Capital of its County, lies betwixt *Creutznach* and *Eberenburg*, 35 Miles N. W. from *Worms*.

Oberstein, Capital of its County, lies 20 Miles W. from *Creutznach*.

Röpskirk, Capital of its County, lies 30 Miles W. from *Worms*.

The Duchy of Lorrain.

THIS Country has *France* on the W. *Alsace*, the Duchy of *Deux-Ponts*, and Part of the *Palatinate*, on the E. has *Burgundy* on the S. the Duchy of *Luxemburg*, and the Electorate of *Treves*, on the N. *Moselle* makes it about 118 Miles from N. to S. and much about the same from E. to W.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Medioretici*, and 'twas reckon'd Part of the first *Belgium*. *Baudrand* says, it had its Name from *Lotharius* King of *France*, quasi *Lotharii Regnum*: And under the *French* Kings of the first Race, it was Part of the Kingdom of *Austrasia*, of which *Thierry*, eldest Son to *Clotvis*, was the first King; and under those of the second Race, 'twas Part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, and had that Name from *Lotharius* above-mention'd, youngest Son to the Emperor *Lotharius*, who took the Title of King of that Country. After his Death, about 869, there was great Controversies about the Succession betwixt the Kings of *France* and *Germany*, who divided the Country betwixt them. *Charles the Simple* reunited *Lorrain* to the Crown of *France* about 915, and made *Reinier* Governor of it, who.

who took the Title of Duke. The Emperor *Henry the Fowler* taking Advantage of the Troubles of *France* during that Reign, invaded this Dutchy. The Emperor *Otho I.* gave the Government of it to *Bruno* Archbishop of *Cologne*; after whose Death, in 959, *Lorraine* was divided into Upper and Lower. The first was called *Mosellanica*, because the *Moselle* runs through it, and comprehended the Dioceses of *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, *Strasburg*, *Treves*, and *Luxemburg*. The Lower was call'd *Ripuarica*, because it lay betwixt the *Rhine*, the *Meuse*, and *Moselle*, and is now called *Brabant*. The Emperor *Otho II.* gave the latter to *Charles*, youngest Son to *K. Lewis IV.* called the *Ultra Marin*, who was excluded from the Crown of *France* after the Death of *Lewis V.* because he did Homage to *Otho* for that Dutchy. That same Emperor gave Upper *Lorraine*, with the Title of Duke, to *Thiery* of *Alsace*, Son to *Fredrick*, who had possessed it in that Quality. His Son *Fredrick* dying without Issue-Male in 1048, the Emperor *Henry III.* gave it to *Gerhard* of *Alsace*, who was the Founder of the present Family of *Lorraine*. His Male Line continued to the Time of *Charles I.* who leaving only one Daughter call'd *Isabel*, she married *Rene* of *Anjou* King of *Sicily* about 1430, and brought him the Dutchy of *Lorraine*. *Anthony* of *Vaudemont*, Grandson to Duke *John*, seiz'd it next Year. *Isabel*, Daughter to King *Rene*, succeeded *Anthony* in 1473. She was Mother to *Rene II.* Great Grandfather to *Charles II.* who had several Children; among others, *Henry* Duke of *Lorraine*, and *Francis* Count of *Vaudemont*. *Henry* was Father to *Nicholas*, that married *Charles* Count of *Vaudemont*, her Cousin-German, who took the Title of Duke of *Lorraine* in 1624, after the Death of *Henry*, by the Name of *Charles III.* so well known by his Misfortunes. *Lewis XIII.* of *France* made War upon him several times, for joining with the Count of *Soissons*, and others of his Enemies; but at last depriv'd him of his Dominions in 1634, after having declar'd him guilty of the Crimes of Lese Majesty, Felony, and Rebellion. But the Dutchy was restor'd again by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees* in 1692. The *French* invaded it again in 1674, by Vertue of a pretended Treaty made with *Charles III.* a-

bove-mention'd, in *February* 1662; by which, after his Death, he transferred to the *French* King the Dutchies of *Lorraine* and *Bar*, and confirmed it by another Treaty the Year following. This Prince oppos'd the Designs of the *French* till his Death, which happen'd in 1665. The *French* King did however, by a Treaty betwixt himself and the Empire in 1679, oblige himself to restore to Prince *Charles* of *Lorraine* the Dominions possess'd by his Uncle *Charles III.* when he was depos'd, except *Nancy*, and its Jurisdiction, which that generous Prince refus'd; so that he only enjoy'd the Title, while *Lewis XIV.* unjustly retain'd the Possession. This Prince was call'd by the Name of *Charles V.* and Son to Duke *Francis* of *Lorraine*, Brother to *Charles IV.* The Family having been ill treated by the *Spaniards*, under whose Protection they put themselves, they were forc'd to cast themselves upon the Court of *France*, where *Charles V.* was bred, and treated with all Princely Honour; but very unhappy in the Matches propos'd to him there, in every one of which he was disappointed, by the Churlishness of his Uncle, and the Treachery of the *French* Court, from whence he made his Escape by Way of *Italy* to *Vienna*, where the late Emperor receiv'd him kindly, promis'd him his Protection, and call'd him always Brother. The *French* King having demand'd *Marsal* in *Lorraine* from his Uncle, the young Duke came from *Vienna*, and put himself into the Place to defend it; but was forced to quit it, because of his Uncle's ill Temper, who could not endure his being possess'd of any Thing before his own Death: And they accus'd him of having spoken reproachfully of the *French* King; which being false, he came to the *French* Court all of a sudden to defend himself; but was deny'd Admittance, had a Guard set upon him, and was order'd to depart the Kingdom in few Days, because *Lewis XIV.* had no mind to part with *Lorraine*, nor to suffer him to consummate his Marriage with *Madammoiselle de Nemours*, to whom he was solemnly affianc'd; and the *French* King had agreed at the Contract, that he should have the Dutchies of *Lorraine* and *Bar*; but to avoid the Performance of his Promise, he prevail'd with the Pope to break

break the Contract, tho' the Duke had actually married her; but was never allow'd to Bed her, and she was afterwards married to the Duke of *Savoy*. The Duke being thus barbarously us'd, retir'd again to *Vienna*, where the Emperor renew'd his Assurances of Protection, and gave him first a Regiment of Horse; but would not allow him to take the Field, because he was then scarce 20 Years old; but he left the Court privately, and went to the Army in *Hungary*, where he contributed much to the Victory which General *Montecuculi* obtain'd over the *Turks*, and with his own Hand took a Pair of Colours from a *Turkish* Ensign, who run at him with the Lance to which they were fasten'd. It not being consistent with our Design to enlarge on the Lives of particular Princes, we shall only take Notice, That he did the Emperor signal Service afterwards as Generalissimo of his Armies, both against the *French* and *Turks*, which has immortaliz'd his Fame. He was afterwards married to the Emperor's Sister, by whom he had 4 Children, and dy'd in 1690, in the 48th Year of his Age, not without Suspicion of Poison, by some *French* Emisseries, he being then in a probable way of recovering his Dominions, by the Assistance of the Emperor and other Princes. He was succeeded in Title by his eldest Son *Leopold*, the present Duke, who was restored to his Dominions by the Treaty of *Ryswick*.

The Air of this Country is very temperate, and the Soil fruitful in Corn, Wine, and Grass, tho' some Part of it be Mountainous, and overgrown with Woods, which are Part of the old Forrest of *Ardenna*. In their Mountains, there are rich Mines of Lead, Copper and Silver, but especially of Iron. The Duke's chief Revenue is from his Salt Fountains. Their Forrests abound with Fowls, Venison, and Game of all sorts. Their most considerable Rivers are, the *Maes*, the *Moselle*, the *Sar*, the *Meurte*, and the *Saone*, which supply them with Plenty of Fish.

Lorraine is divided into 4 principal Parts, viz. *Lorraine Proper* or the Duchy, the Duchy of *Bar*, and those called the *French Lorraine*, and the *French Bar*.

The Duchy of *Lorraine* is divided into 4 Parts, viz. the Bailiwicks of *Nancy*, *Vosge*, *Pandourange*, and the Reunited Countries.

The chief Towns of the Dutchy.

1. *Nancy*, Lat. *Nancium*, *Nancadum*, and *Nannum*, near the River *Meurte*, in Long. 24 48. Lat 48 47. about 168 Miles E. from *Paris*, according to *Sanson*, and 83 W. from *Fort Louis* on the *Rhine*, is the Capital of the Dutchy, and the Place of the Duke's Residence. It stands in the middle of a large Plain, and is divided into two Parts; the Upper call'd the *Old Town*, and the Lower call'd the *New*. The *Old Town* is divided from the other by Ditches and Fortifications, is the least of the two, but best Peopled. It contains the Duke's Palace, the Entrance into which is very magnificent, and leads to a fair Court, surrounded with Piazza's, and adorn'd with large Towers, embellish'd with Figures and Bas-reliefs. One of the Towers serves for an Arsenal, and the rest for Stair Cases. The Garden of the Palace is very curious, on a Bastion where formerly the Wall of the City stood. Here stands also the Parish-Church of *St. Euphrasie*, with a fair Square before it. The *New Town* is much larger, and better built, but not so populous or rich. 'Twas formerly only a Suburb, but was walled in about the latter End of the 16th Century. It has a large Square, with stately Buildings, and opens upon three large Streets. In this Part are the Courts of Judicature, the Town-House, several Churches and Monasteries, and a College of *Jesuits*. This City is the Seat of a Primate, who, tho' not a Bishop, is allow'd to wear a Mitre. While it was under the *French*, it was the Seat of a Parliament, of a Chamber of Accounts, and a Seneschals Court. It has 4 Gates, and is pretty well fortified. This City has been several Times taken and retaken. *Charles the Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*, took it in 1475. from *Rene* Duke of *Lorraine*, who retook it the next Year. *Charles* besieg'd it again the Year after; but lost both his Life and the Battle before it. There's an old Chapel near the River *Meurte*, where the Particulars of this Battle are engraven on a Copper Plate. It was very well fortified during the Civil Wars in 1587. *Lewis XIII.* took it in 1633; and *Lewis XIV.* after having

ving added to its Fortifications, dismantled it, when he restor'd it to Duke *Leopold*. He fortified it again after he retook it; but by the Treaty of *Ryswick*, the Fortifications were to be demolished.

2. *St. Nicholas*, a large open Town on the *Meurte*, 7 Miles S. E. from *Nancy*, is noted for the Concourse of People who come thither to pay their Devotion to the Relicks of *St. Nicholas*, Bishop of *Myra* in *Lycia*, a great Opposer of the *Arian* Heresy at the Council of *Nice* in 325.

3. *Rosiers*, on the *Meurte*, 12 Miles S. E. from *Nancy*, a small City, noted for its Salt Fountains.

4. *Lunewille*, a very pleasant Town on the River *Vesouse*, 7 Miles S. E. from *Rosiers*.

5. *Blamont*, on the *Poisiers*, a City with the Title of a County, 13 Miles E. from *Lunewille*. 'Twas formerly fortified, but now dismantled.

6. *Marfal*, 20 Miles N. E. from *Nancy*, near the Head of the River *Seille*, among *Marthes*. It was put into the French King's Hands in 1663 by *Charles III.* of *Lorraine*, according to a Treaty made the Year before. 'Tis a small, but well fortified Town.

7. *Moyenwick*, upon the same River, a small City, yielded to France by the Treaties of *Munster* and the *Pyrenees*; but restor'd to the Duke of *Lorraine* by the Treaty of *Ryswick*, and the Fortifications demolish'd. The Salt Springs here bring the Duke a considerable Revenue. It lies about 3 Miles S. W. from *Marfal*.

8. *Chateau-Salins*, on the *Seille*, renowned for its Salt Springs, from whence it has its Denomination. It lies 15 Miles N. E. from *Nancy*.

9. *Nomeny*, on the same River, 12 Miles further N. W. has the Title of a Marquisate, and formerly depended on the Bishop of *Metz*.

10. *Vaudemont*, an open Town, with the Title of a County and Principality, 15 Miles S. W. from *Nancy*. It was formerly given in Appennage to a younger Son of the House of *Lorraine*, and is defended by a strong Castle.

11. *Vaxelise*, a small City, 17 Miles S. W. from *Nancy*.

The Bailiwick of VAUGE, contains

1. *Mirecourt*, on the *Maidon*, Capital of the Bailiwick. It lies near Mount *Vauge*, 23 Miles S. W. from *Nancy*. 2. *Neufchatel*, on the *Maes*, towards the Borders of *Champaign*, on which it formerly depended. It lies 33 Miles S. W. from *Nancy*. 3. *Charmes*, a very pleasant Town on the *Moselle*, 20 Miles S. from *Nancy*. 4. *Espinal*, on the *Moselle*, 12 Miles S. E. from *Charmes*. It was much noted during the Wars in the last Century. 5. *Remiremont*, on the *Moselle*, at the Foot of Mount *Vauge*, 45 Miles S. E. from *Nancy*. This City is noted for an Abbey of Canonesses, who all have Liberty to quit the Monastery and marry, except the Abbess, who has Spiritual and Temporal Power, and is under the Protection of the Duke of *Lorraine*. All the Canonesses must prove their Nobility for 4 Descents before they be admitted. The Abbey was founded by *St. Romerick*, and from him called *Romerickus Mons*, or *Romerickum Castrum*. The Town was fortified; but *Lewis XIII.* dismantled it in 1635. 6. *St. Diey*, on the *Meurte*, towards the Frontiers of *Alsace*, 30 Miles N. E. from *Remiremont*. 'Tis a small Town, but has a good Trade. 7. *Raon*, on the same River, at the Foot of Mount *Vauge*, 12 Miles N. W. from *St. Diey*. 8. *Fonsenay*, a Village 25 Miles S. from *Mirecourt*, famous for a great Battle betwixt the Emperor *Lotharius*, *Lewis* King of *Germany*, and *Charles the Bald* of *France*, three Brothers, with great Slaughter on all Sides, in 841.

The Bailiwick of VAUDEVANGE, contains

The Town of that Name, on the *Sarre*, which suffered much during the Civil Wars of *Germany*: 'Tis the chief of the Bailiwick; and *Bisch*, a little Town on the Frontiers of *Alsace*, which has the Title of a County, and was reunited to the Dutchy of *Lorraine* in 1680.

THE REUNITED COUNTRY, contains

1. *Saverden*, on the Frontiers of *Alsace*, a small City, with the Title of a County, which

which depended formerly on the Bishoprick of Metz. Part of it belongs to the Dutchy of Lorrain. It lies 47 Miles N. E. from Nancy. 2. *Hombourg*, a Castle on a Mountain, at the Foot of which there's a City, which is the Capital of the County of Sarbruck, and lies 60 Miles N. E. from Nancy. This County has been possessed by several Princes; and among others, by a Branch of the Family of Nassau, called Nassau-Weilburg, from whence came that of Nassau-Sarbruck.

The Dutchy of Bar,

WAS erected about 960, when Frederick of Alsace, being made Governor of Lorrain by Bruno Archbishop of Cologne, built a Town, which he call'd Bar, because 'twas a Barrier against the Incurfions of the People of Champagne. Sophia, Daughter to Frederick, brought this Country by Marriage to Lewis Count of Montbelliard. Robert, one of his Successors, married a Daughter of King John of France, who made him a Duke and Peer. Lewis, Cardinal of Bar, their Son, gave this Dutchy in 1419 to Rene of Anjou, afterwards King of Naples, and Duke of Lorrain. His Daughter Yoland was Dutcheß of Lorrain and Bar in 1473, by the Death of Anthony Count of Vandemont, her Grand Uncle. Since that Time, the Dutchy of Bar has followed the Fortune of the Dutchy of Lorrain, except that small Part of it called French Bar, which was left to France by the Treaty of Ryßwick. This Dutchy is the Appennage of the eldest Sons of the Dukes of Lorrain.

This Dutchy is divided into the 4 Bailiwicks of Bar, Bassignie, St. Michael, and Clere-mont.

The Bailiwick of BAR, contains

1. *Bar-le-duke*, Lat. *Baroducum*, on the Orney, the Capital of the Country. 'Twas called by the Surname of Duke, to distinguish it from other Towns named Bar. It lies near the Borders of Champagne, 38 Miles W. from Nancy. 'Tis a fair and well built City, with a Collegiate Church, and a College for Instruction of Youth. It was several times taken and retaken during the

last Century; and while under the French, had a Seneschal's Court and a Chamber of Accounts. 2. *Ligny*, on the same River, 8 Miles S. E. from Bar-le-duke. 'Tis a small neat City, but suffered much during the last Century. 3. *Dammarié*, on the Sauk, 5 Miles S. W. from Ligny, noted for the Defeat of a Body of Lorrainers by a Detachment of French in 1654. 4. *Commercy*, on the Meuse, a Principality belonging to the Prince of Lillibone, a Branch of the Family of Lorrain, whose Son was killed at the Battle of Luzara in Italy in 1702. It lies 25 Miles W. from Nancy.

The Bailiwick of BASSIGNIE, contains

1. *La Motthe*, a Town built on a Rock, at the Foot of which there's a Stream, which falls a little lower into the Maas. 'Twas formerly reckon'd impregnable; but the French took it in 1634, and demolished its Fortifications the Year after. It lies 33 Miles S. W. from Nancy. 2. *Gondrecourt*, on the Orney.

The Bailiwick of St. MICHAEL, contains

1. *St. Michael*, on the Maas, 27 Miles N. W. from Nancy. 'Tis the Capital of the Bailiwick; and the Parliament of Lorrain afterwards establish'd at Nancy, continued here a long Time. It was taken by Lewis XIII. in 1632, and restor'd by the Treaty of Livourdin. That same Prince took it again in 1633, when the Inhabitants revolted against his Garison; but at last were obliged to submit. 'Tis noted for a famous Monastery of the Order of St. Benet. 2. *Pontamousson*, Lat. *Messi-Pont*, a City with the Title of a Marq. It lies on the Moselle, near the Ruins of the Castle of Mousson, from whence it had its Name, about 12 Miles N. W. from Nancy. Charles Cardinal of Lorrain founded an University here in 1573 for the Jesuits, to teach Divinity, Philosophy, and the Learned Languages: Afterwards the Duke of Lorrain added Professors of Law and Physick; and Pope Gregory XIII. added a Seminary for the Scots Nation. 'Tis a fair City, but without Walls. 'Twas formerly defended by a Castle on a neighbouring Hill, which was demolished by Order of Lewis XIII. in 1635.

It has a Bridge over the *Moselle*, from whence it had Part of its Name, and has two Abbies, and several stately Churches. 4. *Hatron le Chattel*, betwixt *Verdun* and *Pontamousson*, 15 Miles N. W. from the latter. 'Tis a City with a small Territory, that has the Title of a Marquisate.

The Bailiwick of CLEREMONT, contains

1. *Clermont*, on a Hill, water'd by the River *Ayr*. It has the Title of a County. Its Fortifications were demolished in 1635.
2. *Varennes*, on the same River, which was fortified before the Wars betwixt France and Lorrain in the last Century.

We leave that Part of the Country called *French Lorrain*, and *French Bar*, to the Description of France, and proceed to the other Parts of Germany comprehended in the Upper Circle of the Rhine.

H A S S I A.

THIS Country has the Electorate of *Mentz* and *Francfort*, with its Territory, on the N. the *Palatinate* on the W. and S. and *Franconia* on the E. *Moll* makes the greatest Length from S. E. to N. W. about 100 M. and the greatest Breadth 80. But this is understood only of *Hassia* properly so called; for if we take in some other neighbouring Countries that belong to it, 'tis much larger. *Buno*, in his Notes on *Cluverius*, bounds it thus; It has *Thuringia* on the E. the Dutchy of *Brunswick* and *Westphalia* on the N. the Bishopricks of *Mentz* and *Treves*, and the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine*, on the W. and *Franconia* and the *Palatinate* on the S. *Reiskius*, in his Notes on *Bruno*, says, That after the Year 1130, when the Emperor *Lotharius* created his Son *Lewis* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, that Country and *Hesse* made one Landgraviate; but his Issue failing in *Lewis* and *Henry*, two Brothers, in 1249, it occasioned a new Succession and Division of the Country; for *Henry* of *Brabant*, Grandson to *Lewis* by a Daughter, claim'd *Hesse*; and *Henry the Illustrious*, Marquis of *Misnia*, Grandson to *Henry*, the other Brother by a Daughter, claim'd *Thuringia* and the *Palatinate* of *Saxony*, which occasioned a War, that was compromis'd by a Treaty

of mutual Succession betwixt those Families. After this, in 1557, the County of *Catzenellebogen* was added to *Hassia*, and *Ditzum* fell to the House of *Nassau*; but in 1648, *Hesse* was much enlarged by the Treaty of *Westphalia*.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Catti*, in after Ages called *Hassi*, as we observ'd from *Cluverius* in our Account of Ancient Germany, P. 413. And it appears by *Tacitus*, That they were one of the greatest and most Warlike People in Germany; and from a Branch of them called *Catti*, *Meliboci*, the County of *Catzenellebogen* is, with very good Reason, supposed to derive its Name.

La Forrest says, That *Hesse* was Part of the ancient Kingdom of *Thuringia*, so much spoke of in the History of the French Kings of the first Race, and was afterwards known by the Name of a Landgraviate, which he says is the same with a County. He adds, That *Charlemagne* created two sorts of Counts, the first to defend the Country by Arms, and the second to follow the Court, from whence they were called *Comites*, and their Business was to do Justice to the Subjects; and to this the German Names of Grave and Landgrave bear a Resemblance. *Selden*, in his Titles of Honour, Part II. Cap. 1. is of the same Mind, that a Landgrave is the same with *Comes Provincialis*; and that *Land* was added to the Word *Grave* as a Note of Excellency, because of the greater Extent of Dominions which some of those Graves had than others; and upon that Account it continues to be the Title of the Princes of *Hesse*. He adds, there are 4 Landgraves reckon'd as 4 Dukes, 4 Marquisses, 4 Counts, and 4 of most other Dignities, as the Chief of those Titles in the Empire; and the 4 chief Landgraves were those of *Thuringia*, *Hassia*, *Alsace*, and *Luchtemberg*. The most particular and ancient Creation of a Landgrave he meets with, is that of the above-mention'd *Lewis* Count of *Thuringia*, which he says was by the Emperor *Lotharius*, his Father-in-Law, in 1126, according to the Authors he there quotes, who say, That the Emperor perceiving *Lewis* his Son-in-Law to be a stout and powerful Knight in *Thuringia* and *Hassia*, by the Advice of his Princes, he solemnly invested him with Banners, as the Manner was, gave him the Title of a Prince, and order'd

order'd him to be proclaim'd Landgrave of *Thuringia*. He adds, That this Title, as well as that of Burgrave, does not always denote the same Degree of Eminency; for as the former has been sometimes given to Barons or Lords of lesser Territories, tho' it be a Note of Eminence in the Family of *Hesse*; so that of Burgrave has been given to Commanders of small Towns, as well as the Title of Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, a great City, was given to the Family of *Brandenburg*, by way of Eminence. *La Forge* says, That those Counts or Landgraves did, in after Times, usurp the Sovereignty of those Towns or Provinces of which they were made Governors, and those of *Thuringia* did the like; but this is only to favour the French King's Chimerical Pretensions, for we have just now heard, that a Landgrave of *Thuringia*, from whom those of *Hesse* are descended, were legally invested in this Dignity.

The *Atlas Historique* gives the following Account of the Origine of the Family of *Hesse*.

The Founder of the Families of *Hassia* and *Thuringia*, is by some Antiquaries reckoned to be *Basin* King of *Thuringia* in 485. He was succeeded by *Hermanfrid*, his Son, who married the Widow of *Thrasimond* King of the *Vandals*. He was killed by *Thierry* King of *Metz*, one of the French Princes, who invited him to his Court: After which *Thuringia* came to the Hands of the French; but *Raoul* revolted against them, made himself Sovereign, and *Conrad II.* invested *Lewis*, Son to *Charles* of *Lorraine*, with this Dignity in 1039. He was succeeded by *Lewis II.* and he by *Lewis III.* who was created Landgrave by *Lotharius II.* as above-mention'd, who is the first mention'd by any History of Credit that was legally invested with this Dignity. He was succeeded by *Lewis IV.* who married the Emperor *Conrad III.*'s Daughter, and died in 1172. *Herman* his Brother succeeded, and acquir'd the Palatinate of *Saxony* in 1181. His Daughter *Judith* married *Thierry* Marquis of *Misnia*. Their Son *Henry the Illustrious* was invested in *Thuringia* by the Emperor *Frederick II.* after whom the Succession came to *Henry III.* Son to *Sophia* of *Thuringia*, by *Henry* of *Bra-*

bant, from whom the present Landgrave is descended. The *Atlas* upon that Account gives us likewise the Genealogy of those Dukes of *Brabant*. He says, That this Country having been possessed by particular Princes, under the Title of Counts and Dukes of *Brabant* or *Lower Austrasia*, *Pepin Landan*, Son to *Carloman*, who liv'd in the Time of *Chilperick* of *France*, about the Year 580, was the first Duke of this Country, according to several Authors; and his Son dying without Issue, *Anchises* or *Anchigises*, *Chilperick's* Brother-in-Law, succeeded him. He was succeeded by *Charlemagne*, from whom the *Atlas* brings down the Genealogy to the above-mentioned *Henry III.* who married first a Daughter of *Cleves*, and then a Daughter of the Elector *Palatine*, and died in 1308. *Dr. Nicholson* observes, That his Mother *Sophia* was also descended from *Charlemagne*. He was succeeded by *Otho*, who was put into the Ban of the Empire, and died, according to the *Atlas*, in 1323; but according to the Doctor, in 1319. His eldest Son *Henry* dying without Issue, his younger Son *Lewis* succeeded to all his Dominions. He was succeeded by his Son *Herman* about 1372, who bravely assisted *Balthasar* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, against *Otho* Duke of *Brunswick*, died in 1414, and was succeeded by his Son *Lewis the Mild*, who was the first of the Family that had the Title of Count of *Ziegenheim* and *Nidda*. He was legally chosen Emperor in 1440, but refus'd it, liv'd in Peace all his Days, and died in 1458. Here 'tis fit to observe, That *Henry*, Son to *Herman* and *Sophia* of *Bavaria*, one of the same Family, was chosen Emperor in 1246; but was killed at the Siege of *Ulm* the next Year, and left no Issue. *Dr. Nicholson* makes this Remark, That had *Lewis the Mild* accepted the Dignity, 'tis probable his Posterity might still have enjoy'd it, they having all of 'em been Princes of great Spirit and Courage. He was succeeded by his Son *Lewis the Courageous*, who married a Daughter of *Wirtemberg*, and (says the *Atlas*) shar'd his Dominions with his Brother. He died in 1471, and was succeeded by the two *Williams* his Sons. *William I.* says *Dr. Nicholson*, being, after a long War, taken Prisoner by his Brother, was deprived of his Government, and died without Issue Male in 1515. The *Atlas* says, That

being wounded in the Brain in *Italy*, he was made incapable of Government, and yielded it to his Brother *William II.* who serv'd the Emperor *Frederick III.* and that his Cousin *William III.* made War upon him for the Succession, but died in 1500, and *William II.* died in 1509, 6 Years before his elder Brother *William I.* who having no Issue, *Philip the Magnanimous*, Son to *William II.* succeeded: He married *Christina* of *Saxony*, and was a Prince of such Valour and Conduct, that notwithstanding the Emperor *Charles V.* was his Enemy, he had the greatest Sway of any Prince in the Empire. In 1520, he defeated *Ferdinand King* of the *Romans*, and restored his Cousin Duke *Ulrich* of *Wirtemberg* to his Dominions. He was the chief who procur'd and made the League betwixt the Protestant Princes of the Empire in 1530 at *Smalcald*, in Defence of their Religion and Liberties. In 1545, he defended the City of *Gozlar* against the Duke of *Brunswick*, whom, together with his Son, he defeated and took, and seiz'd his Duchy. In 1548, he united most of the Princes and Imperial Cities of *Germany* in a League Offensive and Defensive against *Charles V.* but that War proving unsuccessful, and the Duke of *Saxony* his Confederate being taken, he was obliged to submit to the Emperor, after being taken at the Battle of *Mulberg*, on the following Conditions: 1. That he should dismantle all his Towns but *Cassels*. 2. That he should give up all his Ammunition. 3. That he should pay him 150000 Crowns: But after this Treaty, he was, contrary to the Emperor's Promise, and the Law of Nations, detained Prisoner 5 Years, upon a Trick of misspelling a Word in the Agreement, to which the Writer was corrupted, whereby the Emperor alledged, he did not promise that he should not be imprison'd, but that he should not be perpetually imprison'd. He was at last rescued by *Maurice D.* of *Saxony*, with the Assistance of his own Son *William*, in 1552. After which he liv'd peaceably at home; but sent Forces to assist the *French* Protestants. He was the first who introduc'd the *Augsburg* Confession into his Dominions. He finished the War of the Enthusiastical Boors, who took Arms at the Instigation of *Thomas* of *Muncer*, the Anabaptist. He was born in his Father's Camp

as he besieg'd *Chamb* in 1504, which was taken as a Presage that he would be a great Warrior. Some Authors say, he was so much inclin'd to the Marriage-Bed, that his Wife, to whom he was very honest, could not bear it, and therefore, with her Consent, and the Advices of Divines, he was allowed to take a Concubine. He died in 1567; and when the Physicians open'd his Corps, they found he had three Cods, which made his Excess of the Marriage-Bed more excusable. He died in 1567, and was succeeded by his Son *William IV.* call'd *The Wise*. He was a Prince of great Valour, Constancy and Piety, contributed much to the Rescue of his Father, as above-mentioned. He was also a Prince of great Learning, and publish'd several Things of Astrology, &c. The *Atlas* says, he introduc'd *Calvinism* into his Dominions, and died in 1592. He was succeeded by his Son *Maurice*, who was a learned and valiant, but unfortunate Prince. *Dr. Nicholson* and others say, it was he who introduc'd *Calvinism*. He had War with *Ferdinand II.* who took *Marpurg* from him, and, as some say, oblig'd him to demit the Government to his Son *William*. He died in 1632, and his Son *William V.* whom *Dr. Nicholson* makes but the 4th, call'd *The Constant*, succeeded. He was a brave Prince, but reduc'd to great Straits by the Emperor. He died in 1637, and left the Administration of the Government, with the Guardianship of his Son, to his Wife *Amelia Elizabeth* of *Heinaw*, the Heroine of her Age, who, after her Husband's Death, supported the Government successfully by Arms, rais'd Fortifications, got her Son's Dominions enlarged by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, and died in 1651. Her Son *William VI.* call'd *The Good*, succeeded. He married a Daughter of *Brandenburg*, was a great Supporter of *Calvinism*, and died in 1663. His Daughter *Charlotte* married *Christian V.* of *Denmark*. He was succeeded by his Son *Charles*, the present Landgrave, who is a very brave Prince, was one of the Confederate Generals upon the *Rhine*, and oblig'd the *French* to raise the Siege of *Rhinfeld* in 1692. His Son *Frederick*, the Hereditary Prince, was born in 1676, married a Daughter of *Brandenburg*, and is Lieutenant-General of the Horse of the United Provinces. The other

Branches

Branches of this Family are, 1. That of *Darmstat*, who came from *George*, a younger Son to *Philip the Magnanimous*, whose present Prince, *Ernest Lewis*, is the 4th from him. He married a Daughter of *Brandenburg Onoltzbach* or *Anspach*, by whom he has a Son called *Lewis*, with two more, and two Daughters. Dr. *Nicholson* observes, That this Branch is now little inferior in Dominions to that of *Hesse-Cassel*; the Territories of *Darmstat* and *Marpurg* having descended upon *George*, their Predecessor, who by that means became an Independent Prince, and a Terror to his eldest Brother *William*; and they have since enlarged their Territories. The Controversy betwixt the two Houses, about the Territories of *Marpurg*, has bred continual Jealousies and different Interests betwixt them, which is heighten'd by their different Religions, the Branch of *Darmstat* being *Lutheran*; but they unite together against the Elector of *Mentz*, of whom they are jealous, because he is their Neighbour, and has Territories mix'd with theirs. He adds, That the Power and Splendour of the Family of *Hesse* was considerably advanc'd by the *Recessus Imperii* in 1654, which establish'd the Right of Primogeniture in that Family, and prevents their dwindling into petty Princes, which has been the Fate of many Families in *Germany*, by dividing the Sovereignty among the several Branches. They have likewise strengthened themselves by their Matches with the two Northern Crowns, the Families of *Brandenburg*, *Saxony* and *Brunswick*, &c. From *George* of this Branch proceeded that of *Homburg*, whose Prince, being the 3d of that Branch, is *Frederick Jacob*, born in 1673. He has married a Daughter of *Hesse-Darmstat*. Another Branch is that of *Rhinfeld*, which proceeded from *Maurice* above-mentioned, by *Ernest* his Son, who turn'd Papist, and died in 1693. From him proceeded, 1. The Branch of *Mansfried-Rhinfeld*, whose present Prince is *Charles*, who was born in 1629. 2. The Branch of *Rotenberg*, whose present Prince is *William*. The Branch of *Rhinfeld* is Papists, and that of *Homburg* is *Lutherans*. The Present State of *Europe* mentions the Prince of *Hirschfeld*, Brother to the present Landgrave, who is a *Calvinist*, and has a numerous Family. There is also the Branch of *Philippthal*, that came

from *William VI*. The present Prince is *Philip*, who has a numerous Issue.

The Landgrave of *Hesse-Cassel's* Titles are, Landgrave of *Hesse*, Prince of *Hirschfeld*, Count of *Catzelnbogen*, *Dietz*, *Ziegenheim*, *Nidda*, *Schwernburg*, *Epenstein*, *Pleß*, *Itter*, *Franckenstein*, and *Budingen*.

The Countries he possesses are, 1. The Lower Landgraviate of *Hesse*, in which are *Cassel*, *Ziegenheim*, and the Lordship of *Pleß*. 2. *Marpurg*, in the Upper Landgraviate. 3. The Principality of *Hirschfeld*. 4. Part of the Lower County of *Catzelnbogen*. 5. The County of *Schwernburg*, except *Buckenburg*. 6. *Smaleald*, in the County of *Henneberg*. 7. The Bailiwicks of *Rotenberg* and *Saxenhausen*.

The Branch of *Darmstat* possesses, 1. The Upper Landgraviate, in which there are, *Gießen*, *Butzbach*, *Aendorf*, *Battenberg*, *Berg*, *Gleunda*, *Blamkerstein*, *Franckenau*, *Gera*, *Grunberg*, *Königsberg*. 2. The County of *Nidda*. 3. The Lordship of *Itter*. 4. The Upper County of *Catzelnbogen*, in which lies *Darmstat*. 5. The County of *Dietz*.

The Branch of *Rhinfeld* possesses, 1. The greatest Part of the Lower Country of *Catzelnbogen*, viz. *Rhinfeld*, *St. Goar* and *Gevernhausen*; the Bailiwicks of *Reichenberg*, *Flornstein*, and *Braunbach*. 2. *Rotenberg*, and its District.

The Branch of *Homburg* possesses, 1. *Homburg* with its District. 2. *Wewelingen* and *Helmstadt*, with its Dependencies. 3. *Bingheim*.

The Arms of *Hesse-Cassel* and *Darmstat*, are, 1. *Argent*, a double Cross *Gules*, for *Hirschfeld*. 2. *Sable*, a Star Or, Coupe Or, for *Ziegenheim*. 3. Or, a Leopard like a *Lioness*, *Gules*, arm'd and crown'd *Azure*, for *Catzelnbogen*. 4. *Gules*, Two Lions spotted like Leopards, langued and arm'd *Azure*, for *Dietz*. 5. *Sable*, Two Stars Or Coupe, for *Nyden*. 6. *Gules*, Three Passion Nails *Argent*, plac'd Pearl-wise, accompany'd with Three Leaves of *Nettles Argent*, plac'd Triangular-wise, cheveron'd and pointed in the Middle of the Escutcheon, Coupe *Gules*, for *Schwernburg*. 7. *Azure*, a Lion, part *Argent*, part *Gules*, for *Hesse*. 8. *Argent*, Two Fesses *Sable*, for *Isenburg*. The Helmets are Five: The First for *Hesse*; Second for *Hirschfeld*; Third for *Ziegenheim*; Fourth for *Catzelnbogen*; Fifth for *Schwernburg*.

The

The Landgrave of *Hesse* has a Privy-Council, a Court for the Game and Forrefts, a Chancery, Treasury, and Consistory, and another Court call'd the *French Commission*, relating particularly to the *French* in his Dominions, for the Administration of the Government. The *Present State of Europe* says, all the Privy-Counsellors are Members of the Consistory for Ecclesiastical Affairs; to whom are added, a Superintendent, a Metropolitan, one of the Court Preachers, and a Syndic. The Religion and Discipline of the Church is that of *Geneva*. The *Lutherans* are permitted to dwell in the Country; but go to their Worship in other Countries.

In his Military Service, there's a General, two Lieutenant-Generals, one Major-General, one Colonel of the Artillery, two Commissary-Generals of War, and one chief Paymaster, two Troops of Life-Guards, one of White, and the other of Black Horses; 3 other Regiments of Horse, 3 of Dragoons, and 5 of Foot, one of which is Guards, besides the Militia, which is commanded by a Lieutenant-General.

The People of this Country are numerous and warlike, being disciplin'd and train'd by the younger Sons of the Family, who are made Lieutenants and Captains of several Districts, and receive Pay from the Prince Regent.

The Laws most in Force in the Courts of Judicature, says Dr. *Nicholson*, are the *Roman* or Civil Law, to which they join Municipal Laws of their own.

The Country has in many Places large Woods and Forrefts; and towards the N. they have one called *Rheinbartswaldt*, which abounds with Deer, and all other sorts of Game. Their Vallies abound with Sheep, which have the finest Wool in *Germany*, that us'd to be bought by our *English* Merchants, and made into Cloth here, or in their Factories abroad. In their Mountains, they have Mines of Copper, Lead, and other Metals, of which they make sometimes great Profit. 'Tis computed, that the Landgrave has 40000 Men in his Dominions able to bear Arms. The Air is wholesome, tho' cold, and the Country is fruitful in Corn and Wine, especially towards the *Rhine* and the *Lach*, its principal Rivers.

The Christian Religion was first planted here about 730, by *Winefrid*, an *English* Saxon, afterwards Archbishop of *Mentz*, says Dr. *Nicholson*. We have heard before, that *Luther's* Reformation was introduc'd by *Philip the Magnanimous*, and continu'd to be the Establish'd Religion, till *Maurice* brought in *Calvinism*, which occasioned him a great deal of Trouble; for his immediate Predecessor *Lewis*, who had divided his Dominions betwixt his two Nephews *Maurice* and *Lewis*, put a Clause in his Will, That if either of 'em endeavour'd an Alteration of the Religion establish'd in his Dominions, he should forfeit his Right of Succession. Upon which *Lewis* claim'd his Brother's Forfeiture, which occasioned a great Breach betwixt them; but the Matter being referred to Arbitrators chosen on both Sides, they determin'd in Favour of what *Maurice* had done among his own Subjects. Upon this, *Lewis* appeal'd to the Emperor's Court, where he obtain'd a Decree, and an Army to support him against his Brother, who was obliged to submit, and left the whole Country to his Brother *Lewis*, and his Son *George*: And thus Matters continued till the Administration of *Amelia Elizabeth* above-mentioned, who drove *George* out of all his Dominions: After which, an Agreement was brought about by the Duke of *Saxony* in 1647. Since which, *Calvinism* has been the Establish'd Religion in *Hesse-Cassel*.

The Situation of the Country betwixt *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, and the Neighbourhood of *Westphalia*, occasions the Language of the People to be a Mixture of *High* and *Low Dutch*.

Lower Hestia,

Contains the Landgraviate of *Hesse-Cassel*, the Counties of *Waldeck* and *Hassfeld*.

Their principal TOWNS are,

1. *Cassels*, the Metropolis of *Hassia*, and the ordinary Residence of the Elder House, who are from hence called the Landgraves of *Hesse-Cassel*. 'Tis supposed to stand in the same Place where *Drusus* built his *Casselum Catterum*; and the modern Name fa-

vours

vours the Conjecture. 'Tis seated in a pleasant and rich Plain, on the Banks of the River *Fulda*, in Long. 28. 12. Lat. 51. 17. 92 Miles N. E. from *Mentz*, 88 S. from *Munster*, and 60 S. W. from *Hanover*, fortified with strong Walls, broad Ditches, and is almost as strong as *Hamburg*, and has a fine Stone Bridge over the River. The Landgrave's Palace is separate from the Town, and notably contriv'd with fair Chambers and Apartments in the Rampires, to lodge his Family during a Siege, out of the Reach of Bombs or Granadoes. The Houses of the ordinary Burgers have nothing of State, being generally built of Wood and Clay, and cover'd with Laths and Thatch. During the Civil Wars, the Imperialists pass'd by this City without attempting it, because they thought it impregnable. It had anciently a much greater Trade in Wool than at present; tho' their chief Income is still from that Commodity. The adjacent Fields are well stock'd with Sheep, which might bring them in great Profit, were the Inhabitants industrious, and skill'd in Manufacture; but they suffer Strangers to run away with the Profit of making and dressing of Cloth. They have a *Gymnasium* here, where there have been Professors of Note; but of late Years, it has been much eclips'd by the University at *Marpurg*. *La. Forrest* says, this City is now very large, and well built; that the Citadel is good; and that the Landgrave possesses several Territories in *Westeravia* and *Westphalia*. *Monconyr* says, the Fortifications are not regular, but very good; that the Palace is of hewn Stone, beautified without, and fine within, and has a great Number of noble Apartments, with a large Court in the middle; that 'tis very well fortified, has two Riding-Houses for managing the Great Horse, and very fine Gardens, with curious Fountains. The Arsenal is a great Building of hewn Stone, with Arms for 25000 Men; and in the Room underneath, there are 200 Cannon; some of which are 62 Pounds, and many taken from the Emperor and King of Spain. He saw Muskets there, which under the Rammer have Darts, that spring out at the End of the Piece as soon as 'tis discharged. From the Palace, there's a delicate View over the adjacent Country, from whence may be seen 60 Towns, the least

of which contain 300 Houses, a Prospect not to be matched in the Empire. The Streets of the City are large, and full of Shops; and they have several fine Markets, with good Provisions of all sorts; so that the People live very well. The Landgrave has a Library well furnish'd with Books, and Curiosities, too many to be insisted on. In the great Church, are the Monuments of the Landgraves in Brass, Copper and Marble, the Workmanship of which is very good; and they have Inscriptions upon them, with brief Histories of the Princes entomb'd. There are 4 Churches in the City, and the Cathedral called *St. Martin's* is capable of holding 4000 People. They have each of them two Ministers, except that called the *Soldiers Church*, which has but one. There's likewise a Church in the Palace for the Devotions of the Court.

2. *Hirschfeld*, on the same River, a small but neat City, with the Title of a Principality: 'Twas formerly an Abbey, founded by *Pepin*, and endowed by *Charlemagne* in the End of the 8th Century; but was converted into a Secular Principality by the Treaty of *Munster* in 1648. It lies 30 Miles S. E. from *Cassels*. The Abbey in this City, says *Dr. Nickolsen*, is as noble and artificial a Structure as any in the Empire. 'Tis built upon an Arch of 17 Pillars of one entire Stone each. *Sturmius* was their first Abbot, and, as some say, its Founder. 'Twas afterwards under the Inspection of *Alcuinus* or *Albinus*, *Charles the Great's* Schoolmaster, whose Monument is still in the Church. Since their last Abbot died in 1606, the Revenues were kept by one of the Family of *Hesse*, under the Title of Administrator. The District of this Monastery is about 3 German Leagues long, and 3 broad.

3. *Ziegenheim*, on the River *Schwalme*, a small City, Capital of a County of the same Name, which *Lewis the Pacifick* united to his Domain in 1453. It lies 22 Miles W. from *Hirschfeld*.

4. *Waldeck*, on the *Steinback*, 20 Miles S. W. from *Cassels*. 'Tis a small City, with a good Castle, is Capital of the County of its Name, and gives Title to the ancient Family of *Waldeck*, who still enjoy the County of *Pyrmont*.

The County of W A L D E C K,

Is reckon'd one of the most considerable in the Empire, and lies on the Frontiers of the Dutchy of *Westphalia*, and of the Bishoprick of *Paderborn*. 'Tis about 6 German Leagues broad, and 6 long, and reckon'd Part of *Hesse*, tho' under Princes of its own, who derive their Pedigree from *Witekind* Count of *Snaelberg*, whom *Charles the Great* made Prince or Advocate, as they were then called of the Church of *Paderborn*: But others say, the highest they can trace their Pedigree is to Count *Henry*, who slew *Frederick* Duke of *Brunswick*, Emperor Elect, at *Fritzlar* in 1400. This Prince took *Corbach*, and other neighbouring Towns, and craved Protection from the Landgraves of *Hesse*, to whom, for many Years after, his Successors paid Homage. This Family has produc'd many great Men, among whom, *Wolgrad II.* was so much esteem'd for his Bravery and Prudence, that he was chosen President of the Conference at *Ratisbon* in 1556. Prince *Waldeck*, of this Family, was a famous General who serv'd under King *William III.* of *England* after the Revolution. The Country is pleasant and fruitful in Corn and Wine. They have also Plenty of Venison, great Flocks of Sheep, and Mines of Iron and Coal; and for its Extent, is one of the richest Principalities of the Empire.

Other Places of Note in this County are,

1. *Wildungen*, a pleasant and well built City, divided into Two Parts, called the *Old* and *New*, seated on two Hills, with a pleasant Garden betwixt them, stock'd with all manner of choice Fruit, and beautified with curious Water-works, one of which conveys the Water as high as the Top of the adjoining Hills. This Town is noted for good Beer, which is transported into all the neighbouring Countries. They have also Springs of Mineral Waters, which tast strong of Vitriol, and make one drunk as soon as the strongest Wine. They corrode all sorts of Stone, and therefore are enclos'd in Wood. Their Virtues have been described at large by *Wolffius* and *Ellenberger*, two German Physicians.

2. *Corbach*, on the River *Sker*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Waldeck*, an ancient Town, formerly noted for a Mine of Gold found in its Neighbourhood. It lies at an equal Distance of 6 German Miles from *Marpurg*, *Cassels*, *Lipp*, and *Paderborn*, was anciently a free City, had many great Privileges, and is still reckon'd the chief in the County. Their principal Trade is in brewing Beer, as much esteem'd as that of *Wildungen*. Count *Wolgrad I.* founded an Univerfity here, which was afterwards well endowed; and among other Men of Repute, bred *Galenius* and *Ursin*, both well known to the learned World.

3. *Eysenberg*, a famous old Fort, on the Top of an Hill near *Corbach*. Count *Jasias* repair'd it, and at last made it a Seat fit for a Prince. In this Hill there are Mines of different Sorts, but chiefly of Iron, from whence it had its Name. There was formerly considerable Quantities of excellent Gold found there, of which the Counts have still several Rings and Vessels, which they keep in their Repository as great Rarities. About two English Miles from hence, at *Jodlesheim*, there's a Silver Mine; and at *Twisten*, near this Place, there are rich Copper Mines.

HAZFELD, or HARTZFELD.

It has a large Town, Capital of the County of the same Name, on the River *Eder*, 22 Miles S. W. from *Waldeck*, defended with a good Castle. The Counts were created Princes of the Empire by *Ferdinand II.* and possessed several Lands in *Francia*, *Silesia*, and *Wetteravia*.

Other Places of Note in this County are,

1. *Fritzlar*, on the River *Wiper*, 17 Miles S. W. from *Cassel*, a small Town belonging to the Elector of *Mentz*.

2. *Frauenberg*, or *Frankenaw*, a great Town on the utmost Bounds of the Landgraviate of *Hassia* Westward, on the *Eder*, which separates some Part of this Principality from *Westphalia*. 'Tis said to have been built by *Theodorick* King of *France* in 520. In 1590. the Burgers discover'd some Mines of Silver and Copper; but they have not turn'd to great Advantage. About 6 English Miles W. from this Place lies *Sachsen*.

senberg, the Ruins of an old Fort, built by the ancient Saxons, to secure the Frontiers of their Country from any sudden Incurſion which ſhould be made by the French Garifon at Franckenberg.

Upper Heſſia,

Contains the Landgraviate of Heſſe-Darmſtat, and the Counties of Catzenellebogen, Wied, Sayn, Lower Eſſenburgh, and Runkel.

The chief TOWNS and PLACES are,

1. *Marpurg*, reckon'd the ſecond Town in the Landgraviate, ſince it became the Seat of Landgrave *Ludowick*, ſecond Son to *Philip* above-mentioned. The Supreme and Common Court of Judicature for the Country, kept here, would ſeem to give it the Pre-eminence before *Caffel*; for hither there lies an Appeal for both the Burgers of *Caffel* and *Darmſtat*, and for all the other Subjects of both the Landgraves. This Court conſiſts of a Preſident, and 6 Aſſeſſors, who finally determine all Controverſies brought before them. 'Tis pleaſantly ſituate on the River *Lon*; and from the Bridge, there's a fine Proſpect of the neighbouring Vineyards, and ſhady Hills. The great Church is a ſtately Fabrick, founded by *Lewis* Biſhop of *Munſter*, Son to *Henry III.* Landgrave of *Thuringia*. Here there are noble Monuments, a great Part of whole Inſcriptions are given us at large by *Chytræus* in his *Delicie Itinerum*. The Univerſity here was founded by the ſame Prince in 1426, and is now one of the moſt conſiderable in the Empire. *La Forreſt* ſays, this Town belongs to the Landgrave of *Heſſe-Caffel*, is well built and fortified, and has a Citadel on a neighbouring Hill, reckoned one of the beſt in *Germany*. 'Tis alſo noted for the Death of *St. Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Andrew* King of *Hungary*, who married *Lewis V.* Landgrave of *Thuringia*. This City lies 40 Miles S. W. from *Caffel*, and 40 N. E. from *Franckfort am Main*. 'Twas formerly an Imperial City; and *Claverius* thinks it was the old *Caftrum Mattiacorum*.

2. *Gieſſen*, a fair old Town in the Upper *Heſſia*, about 6 German Miles from *Franckfort*, and 3 from *Marpurg*. 'Tis well guar-

ded by a ſtrong Wall, and regular Fortifications, and has an Armory, with Ammunition ſufficient for a conſiderable Army. They had an Univerſity here, which firſt began to flouriſh upon the Deſertion of *Lutheraniſm* by their Profeſſors at *Marpurg*, and their adhering to the Doctrin of *Calvin*. But in 1625, Landgrave *Lewis* recalled the Students; and by a ſtrict Ediſt, forbade any Profeſſors for the future to teach at *Gieſſen*. The Burgers of this Town, as of moſt others in *Heſſia*, live chiefly upon making, dreſſing, and vending of Cloth. The Royalty of the Town is, according to ſome Authors, divided betwixt the Landgraves of *Heſſe-Caffel* and *Darmſtat*. But the *Atlas Hiſtorique* and others ſay, it belongs wholly to the latter.

3. *Grunneberg*, or *Gromberg*, a ſmall Town, remarkable for an extraordinary high Bridge, which joins two Mountains. It lies 18 Miles E. from *Gieſſen*, and belongs to *Heſſe-Darmſtat*.

4. *Niſſen*, a large open Town, with the Title of a County, on a ſmall River of the ſame Name. It belongs alſo to *Heſſe-Darmſtat*.

The County of CATZENELLEBOGEN,

Which came to the Family of *Heſſe* by Marriage about 1479, belongs to Upper *Heſſe*. 'Tis divided into Upper and Lower; a Part of the latter belongs to *Heſſe-Caffel*; and the reſt is divided, ſays *La Forreſt*, betwixt the Branches of *Darmſtat* and *Rhinſfeld*. The Property of this County has been much diſputed betwixt the Houſes of *Naffau* and *Heſſe*; the former having married the Siſter of the laſt Earl, and the latter alledging a Donation from him. *Charles V.* adjudged it to the Family of *Naffau* in 1548; but at the Treaty of *Paffau*, it was given to the Landgrave *Philip*. However, he paid the Count of *Naffau* 600000 Crowns for the Surrender of it; but the Houſe of *Naffau* ſtill retains the Title. This County has a ſmall Town of the ſame Name, 9 Miles S. E. from *Naffau*, and 16 N. W. from *Mentz*.

5. *Darmſtat*, the chief Town in the Upper County of *Catzenellebogen*, and is the uſual Seat of the Landgraves of *Heſſe-Darmſtat*.

A a a a

ffar. The Landgrave's Palace is a Noble and Princely Structure, beautified with a spacious Garden, abounding with all sorts of Common and Foreign Fruits, and yielding Annually a great Quantity of rich Wines. Besides this, there are two more Pleasure-Houses, *Kranckstein* and *Sensfeld*, two English Miles from hence, each of 'em capable to entertain the Landgrave and his Attendants. The Town is not large, but makes a goodly Appearance, most of the Houses being of a great Height, and of hewn Stone. In 1622, it was surpriz'd and taken by *Frederick Elector Palatine*, and Count *Mansfeld*, when Landgrave *Lewis* and his two Sons were taken Prisoners for favouring the Emperor's Interest, which so highly incens'd our King *James I.* Father-in-Law to the Elector, that he sent them a threatening Letter, June 17, 1622; telling them, among other Things, That their pretended brave Exploit stunk in his Nostrils; and therefore advis'd them, as they tender'd his Friendship, to restore their Captives, which they did, and the Matter was accommodated. *Fr. Modius*, in his *Pandectis Triumphalis*, says, 'twas at this Town the *Germans* first gave over their Tiltng, upon an unlucky Accident which happen'd here in 1403. For the *Franconians* and *Hassians* having challeng'd one another to these Exercises, 17 of the *Franconian* Nobility, and 9 of the *Hassian*, were killed on the Spot. *La Forrest* says, this Town was once well fortified; but in the late Wars, the *French* ruin'd the Castle and Fortifications.

6. *Geraw*, a small neat City on the River *Schwartzbach*.

7. *St. Guer* or *Gear*, on the W. Side of the *Rhine*, a small City, defended by the famous Castle of *Rhinfeld*, built on the Top of a Mountain in 1255. It lies 16 Miles S. from *Coblentz*.

8. *Wied*, a great open Town, with the Title of a County, which had formerly Lords of its own, but came afterwards to the Family of *Runkel*. It lies 10 Miles below *Coblentz*, on the other Side the *Rhine*.

9. *Sayn*, another large Town, with a fine Castle, and Capital of a County, 6 Miles above *Wied*. It has belong'd to the Elector of *Cologne* since 1636, that their last Count died.

10. *Isenburg*, 10 Miles S. from *Wied*, a large open Town, having the Title of a

County, and a good Castle, belonging to a Prince of that Name, whose Family is divided into the Branches of *Offenback* and *Budingen*.

11. *Runkel*, a strong Wall'd Town on the *Lahn*, in a pleasant and rich Country: The chief Products whereof are given us by a Poet of their own in this Dittich:

*Argentum, Marmor, Ferrumq; & Fossile Saxum,
Vinum, Frumentum, Suavia Poma gerit.*

What little Silver the Country affords, is found at *Langheck*, a neighbouring Village; the Marble at *Schuppach*; and the Iron near *Walfenhausen*.

12. *Rotenburg* or *Rodenburg*, a fair Town on the *Fulda*, 8 Miles below *Hirschfeld*, in a pleasant Valley, betwixt two high Hills, famous for a Collegiate Church, consisting of a Dean and two Canons, nobly endow'd. A little below it, at a Village call'd *Morsen*, there's a Quarry of white Alabaster; out of which were dug most of the noble Monuments in the great Church at *Marpurg*.

13. *Alsfeldt*, one of the oldest Towns in *Hassia*, and thought to have been the Metropolis of the *Frenab* Territories in those Parts before the building of *Franckenberg*. What its Privileges anciently were, is not well known, since the Burgers lost their Charter, with what Records they had, in a great Fire some Ages ago: But the Chronicle of *Franckenberg* says, they had Power of Life and Death. In Remembrance of which, their Chief Magistrate has still a Sword carried before him. Their Town-Hall is a noble Structure; over the Door of which there's a Monument, in Remembrance of that dreadful Fire, with this Inscription, *Rerum irrecuperabilium summa felicitas obliuio; i. e.* 'Tis the best Way to forget Things irrecoverably lost. This Town was the first in *Hassia* that embrac'd *Luther's* Reformation. It lies 12 Miles E. from *Marpurg*.

14. *Eschwege*, near the Confines of *Thuringia*, 24 Miles S. E. from *Cassel*: 'Twas either built or wall'd by *Charles the Great*, and afterwards destroy'd by the *Huns*; but rebuilt in great Splendour by *Henry II.* It lies on the Bank of the River *Werra*, by which the Burgers convey their Wood, the great Commodity of those Parts, down to the

the *Weser*. Not far from hence, they have Plenty of Pit-Coal, exported in great Quantities to the neighbouring Countries.

15. *Schmalkalden*, a well built Town, on a Rivulet of the same Name. 'Tis noted for Mines of Iron in the Neighbourhood, and employing 400 Smiths, who make all sorts of Iron Ware, transported from hence to the remote Parts of the Empire. They also make and temper Steel, whence a small Village in the Neighbourhood has the Name of *Stallberg*. But that which most advanced the Honour of this Place, was the famous League against the Emperor *Charles V.* by the Protestant Princes in 1537; whence the bloody War that follow'd was called the *Schmalkaldish War*. It lies 36 Miles S. E. from *Hirschfeld*.

16. *Schwalbach*, a noted Town betwixt *Rhingaw* and the County of *Nassau*, famous for its Medicinal Springs, resorted to by Persons of the greatest Quality from all Parts of the Empire. The chief of them is called *Weinbrunn*, because its Waters have a tart or sour Taste. Their Colour is very clear and ChrySTALLINE: They are impregnated with Vitriol, Salt, Oker, Sulphur, Allum, and Salt-Petre; whence their Operation is observ'd to be various, and almost contrary, being in some Cases Laxative, and in others Restrictive. They cure Disturbances of Rheums, Head-ack, Hardness of Hearing, Bleer'd Eyes, &c. and are sovereign against all Hypochondriack Distempers. The other Fountains of best Note are, 1. *Linden-Brunnen*, the Waters of which are so spirituous, that no Glass will hold them; but if stop'd up close in a well temper'd Earthen Vessel over Night, they taste much stronger of the Vitriol next Morning. 2. The *Kochbrunn*, so called, because this is the only Water in the Village sweet enough to be us'd in Cookery. 3. The *Augustbrunn*, the Waters of which do very much resemble those of the *Weinbrunn* in Taste and other Qualities. 4. The *Grindbrunn*, an excellent Remedy against the Itch and Scabs, but very apt to cause that Distemper in those that drink 'em without it. 'Tis also good against the French Disease, the Running of the Reins, &c. 5. The *Rotelbrunn*, whose Water is chiefly used against Convulsions, and Fits of the Mother. The Nature and Physical Operations of all these Fountains,

have been largely treated on by several German Physicians; but are most accurately describ'd in a Treatise publish'd at *Frankfort* in 1631, under the Title of, *Responsa Medica de Probatione, Facultate & Usu Acidularum & Fonticum Swalbacis susurrantium, à celeberrimis aliquot Medicis ad D. Helvicum Dietericum, &c. Scripta*. They have two more Fountains, which they call *Prodelbrunnen*, that strangely differ from the rest, and indeed from any other Mineral Waters in Europe. Out of both, the Steams of Vitriol, Sulphur, and other Minerals, rise with such Vehemency and Force, that they are ready to choak any Man that holds his Head over them. They seem to boil continually; tho' the Waters are so cold, that the Burgers usually cool their Wine in them during the Summer. One of 'em throws out its Streams now and then with that Force, that in a few Minutes it empties it self so, as not to recover its usual Quantity of Water in some Days; which sudden Evacuation is said to proceed from an extraordinarily violent Eruption of subterraneous Spirits; which sometimes burst out like a Storm or Whirlwind. Not far from hence there was, not many Years ago, a famous Cellar, in which, if one let down a Dog or any other Creature, the sulphureous Vapours issuing from all Parts of it, would immediately take away its Breath, and stifle it. In this Condition 'twould lie as dead for some Hours; but when exposed to the fresh Air, would by degrees recover its Strength and Senses. It lies 12 Miles N. W. from *Mentz*, and 26 W. from *Frankfort*.

17. *Embs*, in the County of *Dietz*, noted for its Baths, preferable, according to some German Physicians, to those of *Wiesbaden* in the County of *Nassau*. *Weigelius* publish'd an Account of those Baths at *Frankfort* in 1627, and informs us, they are all built square, and so contriv'd, that the Water us'd in the Day is drawn off at Night, and succeeded by fresh Water next Morning. They are impregnated with Vitriol, Allum, Iron, and Sulphur, are good against natural Weaknesses in the Thighs, Legs, Arms, and other Parts, give present Ease in the Gout and Cramp, help Shortness of Breath, Obstructions in the Breast and Stomach, and are an approved Medicine for all Diseases curable by Bathing. The chief

Bath here was built by the Prince of *Hesse-Darmstadt* in 1583.

18. *Fulda*, the Metropolis of a Country, called by the *Germans*, *Buchen*, and by the *Latins*, *Fagonia*, because anciently a Wilderness of Beech-Trees, but now improv'd into a rich Province. 'Tis by some reckon'd Independent, by others Part of *Hesse*, and by *La Forrest* Part of *Wetteravia*. It takes its Name from the River on which it stands, 15 Miles S. from *Hirschfeld*, and 30 S. W. from *Marpurg*. 'Tis noted for an Abbey of *Benedictines*, founded by *St. Boniface* in 744, and afterwards richly endowed by succeeding Emperors. The Abbot is a Prince of the Empire, sits at the Emperor's Feet in all General Diets, and depends immediately on the Pope, to whom he pays some Tribute after his Election; and he is First Chaplain to the Empress. The great Church dedicated to *St. Boniface* is a stately Pile of ancient Architecture. The Monks have 3 MSS. one of the New Testament compleat, the 4 Evangelists distinct, and a Treatise on the Trinity; all said to be writ by *St. Boniface*, in a Character much different from any now in use. They had formerly a rich Library, well furnish'd with MSS. of all sorts, perused by the learned Antiquary *Flaccius*; but it was much embezzel'd during the Civil Wars. *Buwerius* writ a Treatise of the Antiquities of this Place, and of the Casualties which have befallen it, publish'd in 1612.

Other Places of Note in the Abbot's Jurisdiction are, 1. *Hamelburg*, said to be built by *Amalia*, *Charlemagne's* Sister. 2. *Geisa*, a pleasant Town, 16 Miles N. E. from *Fulda*. 3. *Brucknaw*, 12 Miles S. from *Fulda*, subject formerly to 4 Noblemen, Lords of the neighbouring District. 4. *Hunfeld*, a Market-Town 7 Miles N. E. from *Fulda*.

W E T T E R A V I A,

TAkes its Name from the River *Weter*, and contains the Country betwixt *Hassia* and the *Rhine*. That Part of it which lies towards the Bishoprick of *Cologne* and the Dutchy of *Berg*, is called *Westerwald*. It contains the Counties of *Budingen*, *Hanaw*, *Westerburg*, *Nassau*, and *Wiesbaden*, the Lordship of *Jostein*, the County of *Dieft*, the

Principality of *Hadamar*, the Lordships of *Beilstein*, and the Counties of *Sigen*, *Dillenburg*, *Weilburg*, and *Solms*, with the Imperial Towns of *Frankfort*, *Gelnhausen*, *Fridberg*, and *Wetzlar*. *Sanfon* reckons *Wetteravia* to be a Part of *Hesse*. That Family possesses Part of it; but the rest is enjoyed by other Princes; of which, in their proper Place.

This Country, according to *Moll*, is from S. E. to N. W. 105 Miles long, and 50 where broadest. *Dr. Nicholson* says, some derive the Name from the *Wedreuii*, its ancient Inhabitants; but without good Authority. It abounds with Corn and Wine, and other Necessaries for Profit and Pleasure, as much as most of the other Provinces on the Banks of the *Main* and *Rhine*.

The chief Places and Towns in it are,

I. The County of H A N A W.

The City of this Name lies, according to *Sanfon*, 12 Miles E. from *Frankfort*; but *Moll* makes it 15. 'Tis divided into the Old and New Town by the River *Kintz*, both encompassed with good Walls, and other Fortifications. The Situation is pleasant, the Town well built, and the Streets regular and uniform. 'Tis much frequented by Merchants of several Nations, particularly by the *French* and *Dutch*, who are allowed Churches, and the Liberty of Religion here. *La Forrest* says, they had Counts of their own, who fail'd about the End of the 14th Century, and were succeeded by the Family of *Lichtenberg*, who possess some Lands in *Lower Alsace* and the *Suntgow*. 'Twas twice taken, in 1631 by the *Swedes*, and in 1658 by the Imperialists; but not without Stratagem and Treachery. The County has *Fulda* on the N. Part of the Bishoprick of *Mentz* on the S. *Budingen* on the W. and *Reineck* on the E. is about 40 Miles long, and 15 where broadest.

II. B U D I N G E N,

On the River *Some*, 5 Miles N. from *Hanaw*: 'Tis a neat City, with a fine Castle, Capital of its County, which is about 20 Miles long, and 9 broad. 'Tis also called the County of *Upper Issemburg*, has *Solms* on the

the W. *Hanau* on the E. *Fulda* on the N. and *Nassau* on the S. The Counts of this Place had formerly their Residence at the Castle of *Ronenburg*, a noble old Fort near the Imperial Town of *Gelnhausen*.

III. The County of N A S S A U:

In Latin *Nassovia*, and *Nassgavia*, which signifies a wet or moist Country. 'Twas formerly of small Extent, but of late Ages became a considerable Principality, by the Accession of the Counties of *Weilburg*, *Idstein*, *Wiesbaden*, *Dillenberg*, *Beilstein*, *Gleilberg*, *Sigen*, *Hadamar*, &c. and under this Notion is usually called, The County of *Nassau Katzenellenbogen*. Taken in this Extent, it has *Westphalia* on the N. Part of the *Palatinate*, and of the Electorate of *Mentz*, on the S. the Landgraviate of *Hesse* on the E. and Part of the Dutchy of *Bergs* on the W. but lies so intermix'd with the Dominions of other Princes, that 'tis not easy to give the Dimensions of it. Dr. *Nicholson* says, each of these Counties, into which 'tis divided, are discernable by their different Soil and Product: In general, they yield good store of Hay, but little Corn. The County of *Dietz* is hard and hilly, has store of Venison, good Corn, and some Wine. The County of *Westerwald* has Plenty of fat Pasturage, breeds many large Cattle, and yields great Quantities of Cheese, as good as the best in *Holland*. In several Parts of *Sigen* and *Dillenburg*, they have good Mines of Iron, Lead, Copper, and other Metals; and at *Frudenberg*, they make as much Steel as furnishes most of the Empire. The County of *Nassau* was made a Principality by *Ferdinand II.* in 1653.

The Family of Nassau.

THE *Atlas Historique* has a large Genealogical Tree of this Family, and observes, that for Antiquity, it yields to none in the Empire: And that from Memoirs writ and preserved by its Counts, he is informed, that two Brothers, Counts of *Lebarten*, follow'd *Cesar* in his Conquest of the *Gauls*, who, as a Reward for their Service, gave them Part of the *French* County; and from hence they carry in their Arms

a *Lion Or.* in a *Field Azure*, sprinkled with little Bills or Tickers *Or.*

Those Princes began to build a Castle on the River *Lohn* in *Westeravia*, called *Lebarten*; and their Successors built another called *Luxemburg*, of which those Counts afterwards carried the Name. One of those Princes, in Remembrance of a Hunting-Match, which yielded him a great deal of Pleasure, built the little Town of *Nassau*, which afterwards gave Title to his Successors. He adds, that some Authors write, That a *Roman* Lord, called *Theodosius* of *Lo-peran*, having built some Castles in the County of *Nassau*, while the Emperor *Severus* was at *Mentz*, the Count complained of it to that Emperor; and in order to take away the Difference, *Theodosius* gave his only Daughter in Marriage to the Count of *Nassau*. He says also, That the Town of *Nassau*, which gave Name to the Principality, was formerly a considerable City, which is easy to be perceiv'd by the admirable Monuments still about it, such as the Remains of Publick Ways, Cirques, Aqueducts, Triumphal Arches, &c. About the Year 700, there was a Prince called *Theofret*, who reign'd in this City, and was succeeded by a Son of the same Name: And some Time after *Charlemagne*, there was one of those Princes call'd, *William with the short Nose*, the First, whose Successors can be exactly distinguished; and with him he begins the Genealogies of the Princes of *Orange*, which we shall take Notice of, after a short Account of what he says of the Genealogy of the Counts of *Nassau*. The first he mentions is *Walrave*, who married *Helen*, Daughter to *John* Count of *Ardenne*; but does not say what Time. He names 16 of his Successors, who all married into great Families; and the last of the 16, whom he calls *Walrave I.* married the Emperor *Henry III.*'s Niece. From him proceeded the Branch of *Nassau Guelderland*, whose Male-Issue fail'd, after 9 Descents, about 1371; and the Heiress *Mary* carried *Guelderland* to her Husband *William Duke of Juliers*. From *Walrave I.*'s 2d Son, called *Walrave II.* after 5 Descents, came the Branches of *Nassau Wiesbaden*, and *Nassau Dillenburg*, from *Henry II.* call'd *The Rich*, and his Wife the Countess of *Nassau Guelderland*, about the Year 1254. From the Branch of *Wiesbaden*, proceeded *Adolph* Count

Count of *Nassau*, who was chosen Emperor in 1292, and kill'd at the Battle of *Spire*. In 1298. From his Son *Gerlock* proceeded the Branch of *Wilburg*, about 1371, whose present Prince, *John Ernest*, is General of the *Palatine Troops*, and Governor of *Dusseldorp*. From *Lewis*, the 8th of this Branch, proceeded that of *Nassau Idstein*, whose present Prince is *George Augustus*. From *William Lewis*, eldest Son to the said *Lewis*, proceeded the Branch of *Orweiler*, whose Prince is *Frederick Lewis*. From the said *William* proceeded also the Branch of *Saarbruck*, whose Prince is *Gustavus Adolphus*. From him also proceeded the Branch of *Ufingen*, whose Prince is *William Henry*. The Branch of *Dillenburg*, which proceeded from *Henry the Rich* above-mentioned, after 8 Descents, produc'd the first Branch of *Nassau Orange*, which ended in *Rene* Prince of *Orange*, who died in 1544, and left his Cousin *William I.* of *Orange* his Successor in 1544. From *William Walgraw*, of the Branch of *Dillenburg*, came the 2d Branch of *Nassau Orange*, which, after 4 Descents, ended in *William III.* of *England*, and *II.* of *Scotland*, of Glorious Memory. From *William Walgraw* above-mentioned came *John* of *Nassau*, his Son, who establish'd the Protestant Religion in his Dominions, and died in 1606. From him proceeded the present Branch of *Nassau Dillenburg*, whose Prince, after 5 Descents, is *William*, born in 1670, and married to *Jane* of *Holstein Norburg* in 1698: *John* above-mentioned had a Son, from whom came the Branch of *Nassau Sigen*, whose Prince, after 3 Descents, is *William Hyacynthe*. From another of the Sons came the Branch of *Dietz*, whose present Prince is *John William Friso*, Prince of *Nassau Dietz*, and Stadtholder of *Friseland* and *Groningen*, born in 1687. From another Son of the said *John* proceeded the Branch of *Hadamar*, whose present Prince is *Francis Alexander*, born in 1674, and married to *Elizabeth* of *Hesse Roderberg*. From *Lewis Henry* of *Dillenburg*, Grandson to *John* above-mentioned, came the Branch of *Nassau Schawmburg*, whose Princess, *Ernestine Charlotte*, being the 2d of the Branch, married *William Maurice* of *Nassau Sigen* in 1662.

We come now to the Genealogy of the Princes of *Orange*, which the *Atlas* begins with *William* above-mentioned, who mar-

ried *Guiseburg*, a Princess of the *Saracens*, and afterwards *Guncbonda*. This Prince, according to the *Atlas*, was Son to *Theodoric* Prince of *Bourg*. From him he names 25 Successors, Part of whom he calls the First Branches of the Princes of *Orange*, or the Branch of *Baux Orange*, because they married into the Family of *Baux*; the Heiress of which Family married the Prince of *Chalons Orange*, which was united by Marriage to the First Branch of *Nassau Orange*; whose Male-Issue failing in *Rene* above-mentioned, they were succeeded by the Second Branch of *Nassau Orange*, as has been said already: But we refer the History of the great Princes of this Family of the Second Branch, till we come to the Account of *Holland*; and shall only take Notice, that even *La Forrest*, in his Historical Geography, owns, that this Family has been fruitful in great Men; and that *Cluverius* calls them the Ornament of *Wetteravia*, and the Glory and Support of the United Provinces. *Dr. Nicholson* observes very justly, That the Princes of *Nassau* have in all Ages been observ'd to be great Asserters of the People's Liberty, and ready on all Occasions to assist such as were brought under a Yoke of Tyranny: A Temper which most of their Neighbours have commended as Great and Generous, tho' others have as much decry'd it as Seditious and Rebellious; but this must be observ'd to proceed only from such as have either been Tyrants, or Abettors of Tyranny; and for this generous Temper, *Adolph* of *Nassau* was elected Emperor; tho' the Treachery of the Archbishop of *Mentz*, and others made his Reign short and unsuccessful.

The Counts of *Nassau* have ever enjoy'd as large Privileges and Immunities as any other Princes of the Empire, being always immediately subject to the Emperor, and refusing to pay Homage to any inferior Prince; and hence have always enjoy'd the Royal Prerogative of coining Gold and Money in their own Name. Some ancient Pieces of Gold, still current in the Empire, are a manifest Proof of this; on one Side of which we read, *Moneta Seigen*; and on the other, *Joh. Comes de Nassau*.

The Titles of the Princes of this Family are, Princes of *Nassau*, Counts of *Catzenellebogen*, *Vianen*, *Dietz*, *Limpurg*, and *Bronckhorst*, Lords of *Beilstein*, &c. Those

These of *Nassau Dietz*, add Princes of *Spiegelberg*, Lords of *Liesfeld*, &c.

The Titles of the Counts are, *Nassau Saarbrück*, and *Saarwerden*, Lords of *Lahr*, *Wiesbaden*, and *Idstein*, &c.

The Arms of the Princes of *Nassau* are, 1. *Azure*, sprinkled with *Billets Or*, a *Lion* of the same langued, for *Nassau*. 2. *Or*, a *Lion Gules*, crown'd and langued *Argent*, for *Catzenellebogen*. 3. *Gules*, two *Fesses Argent*, for *Vianen*. 4. *Gules*, two *Lions Or*, Leopard-wise, for *Dietz*. 5. *Argent*, a *Lion Gules*, crown'd *Argent*, for *Limpurg*. 6. *Gules*, a *Lion Argent* crown'd, for *Brockhorst*. 7. *Or*, two *Lions Gules* Leopard-wise, for *Wisch*. 8. *Gules*, three *Bossants* or three Pieces of *Coin Or*, 2d and 3d, for *Borcheloch*. The Helmets are, 1. *Or*, surmounted with two *Wings Sable*, for *Dietz*. 2. *Or*, surmounted with a *Peacock's-Tail Vert*, with a *Lion Gules*, for *Limpurg*. 3. *Or*, surmounted with two *Wings Sable*, and a *Lion Or*, for *Catzenellebogen*. 4. *Or*, surmounted with two *Horses Feet*, one *Or*, and one *Gules*, for *Wisch*. 5. *Or*, surmounted with two *Wings Sable*, a *Bend Argent*, for *Vianen*. 6. *Or*, surmounted with two *Horses Feet*, for *Brockhorst*.

The Arms of the Counts of *Nassau* are, 1. *Azure*, sprinkled with *Crosses Argent*, and a *Lion* of the same crown'd, for *Saarbrück*. 2. *Sable*, a *Spread-Eagle Argent*, for *Saarwerden*. 3. *Or*, a *Fesse Sable*, for *Meurs*. 4. *Or*, two *Lions Gules* Leopard-wise, for *Weilnau*. 5. *Azure*, sprinkled with *Billets Or*, a *Lion* of the same langued, for *Nassau*. 6. *Vert*, sprinkled with *Crosses Argent*, and a *Cross Or* Saltire-wise, for *Mechrenburg*. 7. *Or*, a *Lion Sable* langued, for *Mahlberg*. 8. *Or*, a *Fesse Gules*, for *Lahr*. The Helmets are, 1. *Or*, surmounted with a *Square*, embroider'd with *Crosses Argent*, on a *Cross Or*, for *Mechrenburg*. 2. *Or*, surmounted with a *Wolf's-Head Or*, with a *Collar* and *Points Argent*, for *Saarwerden*. 3. *Or*, surmounted with two *Wings*, part *Sable*, and part *Argent*, for *Saarbrück*. 4. *Or*, surmounted with a *Lion Or* crown'd, having on the Sides two *Buffalo's-Horns* blue, for *Nassau*. 5. *Or*, surmounted with two *Wings Sable*, for *Weilnau*. 6. *Or*, surmounted with a *Man clad Or*, surmounted with a *Bend Azure*; and instead of Arms, 2 *Buffalo's Horns* Bend-wise, *Azure*, for *Lahr*. 7. *Or*, surmounted with a *Buckler Or*, charg'd with a *Lion Sable*, for *Mahlberg*.

The Dominions of the Princes of *Nassau*, the Branch of *Sigen*, *Sigen* and its District. The Branch of *Dillenburg*; 1. *Dillenburg* and *Schwaburg*. 2. The County of *Holtzappel*. The Branch of *Dietz*; 1. *Dietz*. 2. The County of *Spiegelberg*. The Branch of *Hadamar*. *Hadamar* in *Weiteravia*.

The Dominions of the Counts of *Nassau* are, 1. The County of *Saarbrück*. 2. The County of *Saarwerden*. 3. The County of *Bockenheim*. 4. The County of *Wieberfelsler*. 5. The Provostship of *Herbstein*. 6. The Lordship of *Lahr*. 7. The Lordship of *Mahlberg*. 8. The Fort of *Homburg*. 9. The County of *Hanaw*. 10. The County of *Wülburg*. 11. The County of *Idstein*. 12. The County of *Wiesbaden*. 13. The County of *Uffingen*. 14. The County of *Gleichberg*. 15. The County of *Mechrenburg*. 16. The County of *Widen*. 17. The Town of *Schwalbach*. 18. Of *Kirchberg*. 19. Of *Kirchheim*. 20. Of *Stauf*. 21. *Ottweiler*.

The Town of *Nassau*, from whence this County takes its Name, is a small City with a Castle on the River *Lahn*, about 12 Miles S. E. from *Coblenz*, and was the usual Seat of the eldest Branch of this Illustrious Family.

Wiesbaden, the Metropolis of a County of the same Name, belonging to the Branch of *Nassau Saarbrück* we have describ'd already in the County of *Hesse*.

Idstein, Capital of a Barony, belonging to the same Branch, is a large Town, 20 Miles S. E. from *Nassau*.

Dietz or *Dieß*, lies on the River *Lahn*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Nassau*; has two fine Castles on Rocks, is Capital of a County, and belongs to a Branch of the Family of *Nassau*. It had formerly a Collegiate Church, subject to the Elector of *Treves*; but since the Reformation, the Revenues have been applied to the University of *Herborn*.

Hadamar, on the *Elße*, lies on the Confines of the Electorate of *Treves*, 20 Miles N. from *Mentz*, and gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Nassau*.

Beilstein, a large Town, among rocky Hills, Capital of its Lordship. It lies 22 Miles N. E. of *Nassau*, and gives Title of Count to a Branch of the Family. The Castle and Church are worth a Traveller's View.

Sigen, a small City with a Castle, on a River of the same Name, upon the Top of a rocky Hill, defended by a strong Wall, and regular Fortifications, is the Capital of its County, lies 30 Miles towards the N. E. from *Nassau*, and belongs to a Branch of the Family. 'Tis thought to be *Ptolomy's Segedunum*, which agrees well enough with its Situation. Near the Town there's a noble Iron Mine, with Furnaces and other Necessaries for working and cleansing that Metal. In 1559, the Prince's *Pedagogium* was brought hither from *Herborn*, and in a little Time became so famous, that 'twas frequented by Students from most Parts of *Germany*, *Poland*, *Liesland*, *Denmark*, &c. To which there was added, an Academy for training up Youth in Martial Exercises; a Foundation very well agreeing to the War-like Disposition of the House of *Nassau*.

Dillenburg, Capital of its County, lies 32 Miles N. E. from *Nassau*, is a Town of good Trade, has two Annual Fairs, and a strong Castle on the Top of an Hill, and is the Residence of that Branch of the Family of *Nassau*. In their Arsenal, they have Arms and Ammunition for some Thousands of Horse and Foot, and the Jaw-Bone of a monstrous Fish, caught near *Carwick*, well worth a Traveller's Sight. The chief Trade of this Town consists in Cattle and Wood.

Herborn, about 3 *English* Miles below *Dillenburg*, on the same River. 'Tis noted for an University of good Repute, and is fam'd for the Education of of *John Piscator*, *Matthias Martinus*, *John Althufius*, *George Pasor*, *Henry Alstedius*, and several others. In the Castle, they have a handsome Library, well furnish'd with printed Books in all Faculties. The University was endowed with the Revenues of Monasteries at the Reformation. The Trade of this City consists in Cotton and Woollen Cloth.

Weilburg, a large Town, Capital of its County, belonging to the Branch of the Family of *Nassau Saarbruck*, lies betwixt the County of *Solms* and the County of *Beilstein*, about 35 Miles E. from *Nassau*.

Solms, Capital of its County, that belongs to a Branch of the Family of *Nassau*, which is divided into those of *Brownfels* and *Lich*; and the former has another Branch called *Gressenstein*. It lies 15 Miles S. W.

from *Marburg*, and 35 N. from *Frankfort*. The usual Residence of the Count is the Castle of *Brunfels*, 15 Miles S. from *Solms*.

Wetterburg, a large Town, defended with a good Castle. 'Tis Capital of its County, and lies in the most Westerly Part of *Wetteravia*, 33 Miles N. from *Mentz*, and 11 S. from *Sigen*. The Family of its Counts is divided into the Branches of *Wetterburg* and *Linange*.

Lich, on the *Weter*, in the S. E. Part of the County of *Solms*. It lies 8 Miles N. E. from *Fridberg*, and gives Title to a Branch of the Family of *Solms*, who possess some Lands in the Country of *Lusatia*, *Wiesbaden*, in the most Southerly Part of the County of *Nassau*, is Capital of a Principality of the same Name, and belongs to the Branch of *Nassau Saarbruck*. Some take it to be the *Mattium* of the Ancients: tho' others, with more Reason, give that Honour to *Marburg*. 'Tis a large Town, about 8 Miles N. from *Mentz*, on the other Side the *Rhine*, and is certainly very ancient, as appears by the old Walls round the Town, which the *Germans* call *Heathen*, an Epithet they usually give to any thing which they think of an older standing than Christianity. 'Tis chiefly noted for its famous and healthful Baths, from whence it derives its Name. The Waters by the Taft appear to be impregnated with Sulphur, Salt, Allum, and Salt-Petre; but the first has the Ascendant, and makes the Waters of those Baths the hottest of any in these Parts of *Europe*, next to those of *Carlsbad* in *Bohemia*, and some in the *Black Forrest*. Several *German* Physicians have writ an Account of their Operation and Vertues.

The Imperial Towns in *Wetteravia*.

1. *Frankfort am Main*. Some derive the Name from *Francus*, the first Leader of the *Franks*, who they say founded it, but without good Authority. Others derive it from a Ford on the *Main*, by which the *Franks* use to make their Incursions upon the *Saxons*; and to defend the Passage, built the Town. 'Tis divided into Two Parts by the River *Main*. That on the N. Side is called *Frankfort*, and that on the other *Saxenhausen*, because founded, as 'tis suppos'd, by the

the *Saxons*. They are united by a Stone Bridge of 13 or 14 Arches, and subject to the same Magistrates. 'Tis well fortified with 11 Bastions, large and deep Ditches, and Counterescarps, with other Outworks; which tho' they have some Defects, considering the Exactness of the Modern Fortifications, this is in some Measure repaired by the Conveniency of its Situation in a low Country. The City is large, populous, rich, and drives a considerable Trade by the *Main*, *Rhine*, and several other Rivers which fall into 'em. They have two great Annual Fairs in *March* and *September*, frequented by Merchants with all sorts of Commodities, especially Books from most Parts of *Europe*, and publish Annually a Catalogue of such as are or will be brought thither; so that there's a greater Choice of Books here than in any Town in *Christendom*, during their Mart, which lasts 3 Weeks, but at other Times the Booksellers have but little Business. *Misson* says, they have 3 Annual Marts; but after the Fairs are over, *Monconys* tells us, That most of the Shops of the Foreign Merchants who come thither are shut up, and their Names writ over the Arch before their Doors. Most of the Streets are large, except two or three, which are full of Merchants Shops. The Houses are built either of red Stone, or of Wood plaster'd and painted, or cover'd with Slates. On the N. Side of the City, they have a spacious Horse-Fair, where a vast Number of good Horses are Annually bought and sold. *St. Bartholomew's Church* in this City is a venerable and stately Piece of Architecture. 'Twas built by *Pepin*, Father to *Charlemagne*. Here the Emperor is elected; for the Ceremonies of which, we refer to what we said, P. 506. *Monconys* says, the Town-House is no extraordinary Structure; that the Hall in it, where the Emperor, Electors, and Princes, meet in Council, has, besides the Throne, only some Benches cover'd with green Cloth, and some sorry Pictures; that the great Hall where they have their Entertainment is not very regular; that there's a great Square belonging to it, where at this Solemnity they roast an Ox, and thither one of the Electors comes in Person for a Piece of Beef, which he carries to the Emperor. Another goes to the Fountain in the middle of the Square, which on that

Occasion runs with Wine, and carries it to the Emperor: Another takes a Measure of Oats in the same Square, which he likewise carries to the Emperor: And another distributes in this Square, Pieces of Money, Medals, and other Things, after the Coronation. He adds, That Count *Papenheim* stands with his Sword drawn before the Place in the *Sacristie* or Vestry, where the Electors are shut up, to prevent their coming out, until they have finished the Election. In this City the Emperor has a Palace call'd the *Braunfeld*, which is a Mansion-House belonging to the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*, which, with the Port, the Fortrefs, the Bridge betwixt two Towers, the Bridge over the *Main*, which is 400 Paces long, and the Houses of several Noblemen, are the chief Ornaments of the Town. *Misson* says, That in the Apartment in the Town-House, where the Ceremonies of the Election are performed, the Original of the Golden Bull is preserved; That this Apartment is hung only with Tapestry, furnished with some Elbow Chairs of black Velvet, and a large Table with a green Carpet. This City is Imperial, and govern'd by its own Magistrates, who are, a Prætor, (as *Mr. Ray* informs us) 12 Burgomasters, 14 Eschevins or Aldermen, and 42 Counsellors. The Senate is divided into three Benches; the first is that of the Eschevins, the 2d of that called the *Literati* or Learned, and the 3d is of Tradesmen. When a Vacancy happens in the first Bench, 'tis supplied out of the 2d; the 3d never rises higher. The Senate chuses Annually two Burgomasters out of their own Number. The *Jews*, who are very numerous here, have their peculiar Quarters assign'd them, from whence they are not to stir in the Night-time: They are obliged to wear a Piece of yellow Cloth, to distinguish them from the other Inhabitants; and are forc'd to carry Water when Fire happens in any Place of the City, and do other sorts of Drudgery. The Magistrates, and most of the Inhabitants, are *Lutherans*, and have 5 Churches. The Papists are allow'd their Worship, have the Cathedral, two Convents for Men, and one for Women; but are not to make any publick Processions. The *Jews* are also allowed a Synagogue; but the *Calvinists* have their Church

at *Bochenheim*, about a League from the Town, and are obliged to marry, and to have their Children baptiz'd in the *Lutheran* Churches. There are several noble Fountains in the Town, and three in the Market-place. This City was noted for giving Refuge to the *English* Protestants, who fled from hence in the Days of *Queen Mary*, where they were countenanc'd by the Magistrates, and liv'd in very good Harmony, until, upon the Arrival of some more from *England*, who were zealous for the Ceremonies and Liturgy, they differ'd among themselves about those Things; and the latter insisting upon bringing their Worship to a Conformity to the Liturgy and Ceremonies, the Divisions grew to a great Height; and those that were for the Ceremonies, having accused *Mr. Knox* and others, who were for the Order of *Switzerland* and *Geneva*, which they had establish'd among themselves when they first planted there, of Disloyalty to the Emperor and House of *Austria*, because he had writ against *Queen Mary*, in a Book wherein he oppos'd Government by Women, and spoke sharply of the *Austrian* Persecution; he and his Followers were obliged to retire; the Magistrates who were their Friends being afraid of incurring the Emperor's Displeasure, if they should have protected them any longer. These Divisions gave great Offence to Foreign Protestants, and increased the Animosities which had been begun betwixt the two Parties in *Edward VI.*'s Time, and 'twas hop'd had been extinguished by the Blood of the Bishops, *Latimer* and *Hooper*, who had been the Chief of the contending Parties; but were reconcil'd when they came to suffer in *Queen Mary's* Reign; at which Time *Latimer* own'd his Weakness in those Differences, as *Fox* informs us in his *Acts and Monuments*. The Curious may see the whole Story of these unhappy Controversies in a Book, intituled, *The Troubles of Franckfort*; *Fuller's Church History*; and, *The Book of Martyrs*. The *English* Church, built here during that Time, is fallen much to Decay; and that called the *English* House, is now turn'd to a Storehouse. This City was one of the first which demanded the free Exercise of the *Lutheran* Religion; the Refusal of which, in 1522, occasioned them to set aside their Magistrates, and chuse others; and in 1530, the

Augsburg Confession was established here. There's a Monument to be seen over one of the Gates of this City, of a notorious Crime committed by 3 *Jews*, for which they were tied up in Sacks, and thrown into the *Main*. There are divers Springs and Mineral Baths belonging to this City, which are much frequented; and among others, there's a cold Bath, in which, *Zeiller* informs us, they used to wash Women when they went to be married, and as soon as their Month was over after Child-bearing.

The Territory of this City, which is subject to the Magistrates, has the Landgraviate of *Darmstat* on the S. *Wetteravia*, properly so call'd, on the N. the Archbishoprick of *Mentz* on the W. and the County of *Hanaw* on the S. The People of this District live chiefly by planting Vineyards, and making Wine. The Soil is cover'd with Woods or Vineyards, and has little Arable Ground. The Citizens are very neat in their Apparel, and, with those of their Territory, do still retain the Character of a stout and hardy People. The City lies in Long. 15. Lat. 50. 8. 20 Miles E. from *Mentz*, and 23 W. from *Hanaw*.

La Forrest says, the Citizens enter'd into the League of *Smalcald*; but were obliged to open their Gates to the Imperialists in 1547, and received the *Interim* the next Year. *Gustavus Adolphus* enter'd this City without Resistance in 1630, and the *Swedes* kept Possession till 1634. He says, the Magistrates are chosen from among the Nobility, but named by all the Corporations of Tradesmen, except the Tailors, because one of them was chief in the Revolt against their Magistrates in 1525, for refusing them the Freedom of their Religion. In that Part called *Saxenhausen*, Debtors have a Sanctuary for 14 Days in the House belonging to the *Teutonic* Order.

The 2d Imperial Town in *Wetteravia* is *Gelnhausen*, on the River *Kintz*, which has nothing remarkable but only its Rank. Before the Civil Wars, it was a fair City, beautified with many Palaces, and has still some Publick Structures, which look well; but most of the Citizens Houses are very mean, and themselves so poor, that 'tis scarcely able to keep up its Rank. It lies in the County of *Hanaw*, about 12 Miles N. E. from the City of that Name.

3. *Friedberg*, a rich Imperial City, at the Foot of the great Ridge of Hills called by the Germans, *Die-Höhe*, about 15 Miles N. E. from *Frankfort*, and 16 N. W. from *Hanaw*. It has many large Privileges granted them by *Frederick II.* and other Emperors, who honour'd this Place with their Residence for some Months in the Year. The Annual *Lent Fair*, now held at *Frankfort*, was formerly kept here; but, at the Request of the Merchants, was transported thither, for the Convenience of carrying their Goods by Water; in lieu of which, *Friedberg* had 4 Annual Fairs allow'd them, which keep up the Trade of the Place. The 3d of them they keep on the first Sunday after *Trinity*, which was first occasioned by their Anniversary, in Remembrance of the Dedication of their Church, which brought Pedlars thither with Toys; but at last came to a substantial Trade.

4. *Wetzlar*, near the Mouth of the *Dille*, 12 Miles N. W. from *Friedberg*. 'Tis an ancient City, but has nothing remarkable save the great Church, which makes a good Figure at a Distance. It suffered much by Fire in 1643, and is now noted for the Imperial Chamber, which was transported hither from *Spire*, when that City was destroyed by the *French*. The Provostship of the Town belongs to the Prince of *Hesse-Darmstadt*, who appoints the Mayor to do Justice in his Name.

Dr. *Nicholson* mentions the other following Towns in *Wetteravia*.

1. *Butzbach*, a neat small City, at the Foot of the *Höhe*, a Ridge of Hills, that begin at the Monastery of *Louch* on the *Rhine*, separate *Rhingaw* from *Catzellenbogen*, and extend as far as this City, &c. *Martellinus* says, the ancient Inhabitants were the *Bucinobantes*, from whom this Town had its Name. Near the Road betwixt this Town and *Gießen*, there are Ruins of old Walls and Forts, in which are sometimes found ancient Medals and Coins, that shew *Attila* and his *Huns* to have encamped in these Parts. There's a fair Castle in this City, where the Counts of *Solms* formerly resided. Here they had a good Library, with MSS. writ by *Gabriel Biel*, Provost of the Collegiate Church of *St. Mark*. On the neigh-

bouring Hills grows a strong and palatable Wine, that formerly brought their Prince a considerable Revenue. They had also Mines of Lead and Iron, which have fail'd of late.

2. *Mintzenberg*, a small Town near *Butzbach*, that formerly gave Title to a Count, who dwelt in the Castle that's now in Ruins. This Family was extinguish'd in 1250, and their Lands shar'd among the neighbouring Counts.

3. *Hain*, formerly subject to the County of *Mintzenberg*, but now Part of *Hanaw*. In this old Town, there are the Remains of a Square, and a round Tower. In the Wall of the former, there's a venerable Monument, which shew it to have been the Work of some Roman Commander.

4. *Ortenburg*, betwixt the County of *Nidda* and *Hanaw*, formerly a Place of Note, the Lords of it being Proprietors of the neighbouring Country. 'Tis now reduced to a Village, some neighbouring Monasteries and Places having been built of its Ruins.

5. *Ilmsstadt*, a famous and rich Monastery of *Augustine* Monks, in the very Heart of *Wetteravia*, and the best Soil of the Country. 'Twas anciently called *Elofsstadt*, and founded in 1075. During the Civil Wars of Germany, 'twas for some Time the Head Quarter of the Imperialists and *Bavarians*, and furnish'd them with sufficient Accommodations and Provisions.

The Circle of the LOWER RHINE.

WE formerly mentioned that Part of the Lower Palatinate belong'd to this Circle, and have already describ'd it. We come now to

The Electorate of MENTZ.

THIS Elector's Dominions being dispers'd in different Provinces of the Empire, viz. the Landgraviates of *Hassia*, *Thuringia*, the Counties of *Waldeck*, *Wetteravia*, and other Places, there's no exact Account to be given of the Boundaries of his Territories; but we shall treat of 'em in particular as they come before us. For the Privi-

leges and Offices the Elector holds in the Empire, we refer to p. 500, &c. where we treat of the Origine of the Electors, of the Election of the King of the Romans, and the Privileges of the Electors: To which we shall add, from the Ancient and Present State of Germany, That this Elector is High Chancellor of the Empire, and by Consequence, the second Person in it; Perpetual Dean of the Electoral College, Guardian of the Archives and Matricula, Visiter of the Aulic Council, of the Chamber of Spies, and all the other Courts of the Empire. All Foreign Princes and States direct to him what Propositions they make to the Empire, and to him the Princes and States of Germany make their Complaints, when they would have Grievances redressed: But notwithstanding all those Dignities, the Revenues of his Electorate don't exceed 7000 Crowns per Annum; though some say, His whole Revenues otherwise make about 100000 l. per Annum. He has to assist him in his Government, a Privy-Council, a Chamber of Justice, and Military Government of Towns and Forts.

Some German Antiquaries pretend, That this Bishoprick was founded by *Crescens*, whom *St. Paul* mentions to have gone from him into *Galatia*, 2 Tim. 4. 10. and that having preached in these Parts for 23 or 24 Years, he was martyr'd near this City, and his Corps buried in *St. Hilary's Church*, and from thence removed to that of *St. Albans*. Their Annals name a great many of his Successors, who were also Martyrs, but without any good Authority; since the best German Writers make *Worms* the more ancient Bishoprick, of which this was only a Suffragan till 729, that *Pepin* and Pope *Gregory III.* gave *Mentz* the Preference, and made it an Archbishoprick; which 'tis not probable they would have done, had the Bishoprick of *Mentz* been founded so early, and govern'd by such great Men: Soon after 'twas made an Archbishoprick, *St. Boniface*, formerly mention'd, was made their Archbishop, and martyr'd at *Daccum* in *Friezland*, in 755. The first of 'em that was made an Elector, was Archbishop *Willigisus*, who died in 1011, and is said to have been Son to a Saxon Wheelwright; whence 'tis alledg'd, The Electors bear a Wheel in their Arms to this Day.

The Chief Places.

1. *Mentz*, Lat. *Moguntia*; *Prology* calls it *Moconiacum*; and *Tacitus*, *Magentiacum*; and *Antonin's Itinerary*, *Maguntiacum*. In the Time of the Romans, 'twas the chief of their Towns in Upper Germany; and the Seat of their Governour in that Province. Its Name is most probably derived from the River *Main*, at the Mouth of which it lies: Some German Antiquaries say, 'Twas built 1364 Years before our Saviour, by *Nequam*, a Prince of this Country; but this is rejected as fabulous, and the Origine of it ascribed to *Claudius Drusus*, surnamed *Germanicus*, who, *Florus* says, built several Forts on the *Rhine*; and the Situation being convenient for such an End, 'tis probable this was one of 'em. *La Forrest* says, his Tomb is still to be seen there: But *Misson* thinks justly, That 'tis only a Trophy erected to his Memory; because, though he died in Germany, 'twas not near the *Rhine*; and he was buried in the *Campus Martius* at *Rome*: 'Twas ruin'd by *Attila* the Hun, in 451, and rebuilt by *Dagobert I.* of France, in 632. 'Twas very ill treated by the Emperor *Frederick Enobarbus*, in 1158, but rebuilt by the Emperor *Orto IV.* 'Twas formerly an Imperial City, but taken by *Adolphus* of *Nassau* its Archbishop, in 1462; since which, it has been subject to his Successors. Tho' *La Forrest* says, It was subjected to its Archbishops by *Frederick I.* in 1160. *Gustavus Adolphus* enter'd it in Triumph in 1631, and obliged the Citizens to pay 80000 Crowns, as a Ransom for their Lives and Houses: The Jews paid him 18000, and the Clergy 4000 more. He kept his Christmas here, attended by 6 chief Princes of the Empire, 12 Ambassadors, a great many Dukes, Lords, and other Nobles. It was retaken from the Swedes in 1635, but they took it next Year, and kept it till the Treaty of *Munster*. The French took it during the Civil Wars of Germany in 1644, and afterwards in 1688; but it was retaken from them by the Dukes of *Lorraine* and *Bavaria* in 1689. *Bau-drant* says, 'Twas well fortify'd of late, and has a strong and regular Citadel on a Neighbouring Hill. Dr. *Brown* says, The City is well stor'd with goodly Monasteries, Churches, and Publick Buildings, but the Streets

Streets narrow, and the Private Houses built after an antick Manner. *Misson* says, The Elector's Palace is built of reddish Stone, embellish'd with several Ornaments, and is regular and magnificent, tho' built after the old German Manner. In the Cathedral, there are many magnificent Tombs of the deceas'd Electors: The Ornaments, in which the Elector says Mass, are celebrated for their Richness; and the Canopy, under which they carry the Host in Processions, is cover'd all over with Pearl. The Elector has a Chapter of 42 Canons, 24 of which are Capitulars, who have a Vote in electing him, and the rest Domicil'd. They must all be Gentlemen, at least by four Descents, which shews how much they come short of the Humility of their first Elector, who was a *Wheelwright's* Son; and so far from being ashamed of his low Birth, that he not only ordered a Wheel to be put into his Coat of Arms, but painted on the Windows of his Palace and Cathedral. The Protestants are allowed to live here, but have not the Freedom of their Religion. This City boasts of the Invention of Printing, for which they quote the *Nether-Saxon Chronicle*, a Book of great Authority among the Germans, printed here in 1492; but for this, we refer to what we formerly said of the Controversie betwixt them, and the Town of *Harlem*, about this Matter. They likewise claim the Invention of Gun-Powder, which is also disputed with them, and suppos'd to have been found out by our Friar *Bacon*, 100 Years before them, as we mentioned, p. 436. They value themselves likewise on the Defeat of *Varus*, and the Roman Legions near this Place, which may be as well deny'd them, as we shew'd from *Cluverius* before, p. 436. They have an University, which was founded about the Year 800, by *Charlemagne*, but is now of no great Reputation. They have a Bridge of Boats over the *Rhine*, and *Gustavus Adolphus* laid another formerly over the *Main*, which was since taken away. This City lies in Long. 26. 45. Lat. 50. 5. 20 Miles W. from *Frankfort*, and 37 N. from *Worms*.

2. *Bingen*, a pleasant Town on the *Rhine*, 16 Miles W. from *Mentz*, and is subject to the Dean and Chapter of that City. 'Twas mentioned as a Fort and a City by *Tacitus*, *Ammiannus*, and *Ausonius*, and by them cal-

led *Bingium*; but by later Writers, *Bingia*. Here some will have *Drusus* to have ended his Days; and there's a Well in the Neighbourhood, call'd *Druselbrun*, which they think bears the Remembrance of his Name. 'Twas formerly an Imperial City, has a good Stone Bridge over the *Nabe*, and a Castle on a Neighbouring Hill. On an Island in the *Rhine*, near this City, stands the Ruins of an old square Tower, call'd the *Muse-Tower*, because of a Story generally believed in this Country of *Hatto II.* of that Name, Archbishop of *Mentz*, who seeing a Multitude of poor People, that came to beg Bread at his Gate, said disdainfully, They were Rats which eat up the Corn. Upon which he was, by the just Vengeance of Heaven, pursued by Rats and Mice, and fled to this Tower to avoid them; but in vain, for they swam the River after him, enter'd the Tower, and eat him up. Some reject this Story as a Fable; but the Country-People will not hear of its being contradicted, because they look upon it as a just Punishment of that covetous proud Wretch, and alledge several Histories of the like Nature, in Defence of it. *Tritheimius* says, he will neither approve nor condemn it. Dr. *Brown* mentions the Story, with this Addition, That the Archbishop is charg'd with having invited a great Number of Poor, on Pretence of giving them Corn, but instead of that, shut them up in a Barn, to which he set Fire; and when they cry'd out in the Flames, said, *Hear how the Mice-crap*: But we leave the Reader to his own Judgment of the whole.

3. *Elfeld*, a strong Town on the N. Side of the *Rhine*, 15 Miles W. from *Mentz*; adorned with a fair Church and a high Steeple, is the chief Town of the small Territory, call'd *Ringaw*, about 20 Miles long, on the Banks of the *Rhine*. This Country abounds with rich Wine, especially about *Rodesheim*, which is reckon'd the best in that Country. In this Tract lies the stately Monastery of *Erbach*; where many of the old Counts of *Nassau*, and some Archbishops of *Mentz*, lie buried. Dr. *Nicholson* says, The *Ringaw* looks like one entire City, intermix'd with Gardens and Vineyards, being on one Side shut in with the rocky Hills, call'd *Die-Höhe*, upon which they have Watch-Towers to discover the Approach

of.

of an Enemy; and on the other, they are secur'd against a Surprize by the *Rhine*.

4. *Eichfeld*, or *Eschfeld*, a small Tract of Land, encompass'd with the Landgraviates of *Hesse* and *Thuringia*, and the Dutchy of *Brunswick*; in which lie the Towns, 1. Of *Heiligenstat*, built by King *Dagobert* of *France*, who kept his Court here: There's a College of Jesuits in this Town, but nothing else remarkable. 2. *Tresfurt*, on the *Weser*, in a pleasant and fruitful Country. 3. *Duderstadt*, a small Hans-Town, anciently part of *Grubenhagen*, subject to the Dukes of *Brunswick*, by whom 'twas sold to the Archbishop of *Mentz*. 4. *Wormbys*, a Town of small Note, and some others.

5. *Fritzlar*, a strong Town in the Landgraviate of *Hesse*, formerly mention'd. It was destroy'd in 1232, by *Conrad* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, who put all the Inhabitants to the Sword: The Castle has been well fortified of late, and made as great a Strength as any in those Parts.

6. *Ommenburg*, or *Amelburg*, on the River *Ohm*, near *Marpurg* in *Hesse*, situated in a plain and fruitful Country: This Town is seen at a great Distance, and has a Collegiate-Church, but nothing else remarkable.

7. *Aschaffenburg*, the strongest Fort in the Elector's Dominions on the *Main*, at the Mouth of the *Aschaff*, a small River, from whence it has its Name. It lies 22 Miles E. from *Frankfort*, and about 40 E. from *Mentz*: 'Tis divided into the Upper and Lower Town, and beautified by a stately Palace lately built, where the Elector frequently resides. The Castle was built by Archbishop *Albert* in 1122, to secure himself from the Emperor, whose Resentments he dreaded, for thwarting him in the Election of a Bishop of *Wurtzburg*: 'Twas afterwards enlarged by his Successors. The Elector has a stately and spacious Cellar; and there's a noble Prospect from the Castle down the River *Main*, over which there's a fair Stone Bridge here.

8. *Hochst*, a small Town, with a Right to take Toll from Vessels that pass up and down the *Main*. This was given to the See of *Mentz* by the Emperor *Henry IV.* as a Compensation for Pope *Clement IVth's* having made *Prague* an Archiepiscopal See, and granting those Archbishops the Privilege to crown the Kings of *Bohemia*, which former-

ly belong'd to the Archbishops of *Mentz*. This Town was ruin'd by the *Swedes*, during the Civil Wars of *Germany*.

9. *Konigstein*, a small Town with the Title of a County, 19 Miles N. E. from *Mentz*; 'twas united to this See in 1597, having formerly belong'd to the Church of *Halberstadt*; 'tis very well fortify'd, but commanded by the Neighbouring Hills.

10. The City of *Reineck* in *Franconia*, where we have already describ'd it.

11. *Steinheim*, also in *Franconia*. 12. The City of *Erford* in *Thuringia*, already describ'd.

13. The *Bergrafs*, in the Lower Palatinate.

14. The County of *Loehr* on the Banks of the *Main*, which lies near *Aschaffenburg*.

15. *Epstein*, and some other Places in *Franconia*. 16. The City of *Urb* in *Spessart*, famous for its Salt Springs, and some other Places that are not describ'd.

The Electorate of Trier or Treves.

THE City of this Name, from whence the Country has its Denomination, was the Capital of the ancient *Treviri*, the Metropolis of *Gallia Belgica*; and is mention'd with more Credit and Grandeur by the Roman Writers, than any other City in this Country. The Pre-eminence it had above its Neighbours, procur'd it the Name of *Augusta*, which the Romans never bestow'd upon any thing that was ordinary. *Protolmy* calls it *Αὐγούσταν τῆς Γαλιεας*; and *Aufonius* gives it the same Character. *Dresser* says, That it vies for Antiquity with *Viterbo* and *Genoa*, in *Italy*; but however that is, 'tis certain 'twas a large and noted City before the Roman Colony was settl'd there under *Augustus*; and when the Roman Empire was divided, those who govern'd the Empire on this Side the *Alps*, had usually their Seat here; and among others, *Constantinus*, *Constantinus* the Father and Son, *Constance*, *Gratianus*, and *Maximus*. *Ammianus Marcellinus* calls it, *Domicilium Principum clarum*, i. e. The famous Residence of Princes; and *Aufonius* gives a noble Description of it; wherein he takes Notice of its large and noble Fortifications, and its great Trade. It suffer'd much in those Times, as *Salvian* Bishop of *Marseilles* informs us, in his Book *de Gubernatione Dei*; where he says, 'twas

'twas 4 times taken, and almost destroyed. The *Treviri* are said by *Mela* to be the most famous of the *Belge*, and were bounded up on the W. by the *Remi*; on the S. with the *Mediomatrici*; and in *Cæsar's* Time, their Eastern Boundary was the *Rhine*, and were a free People, until reduc'd by *Vespasian*; so that then they possessed most Part of the Electorate of *Mentz*, and the Country betwixt the *Maes* and the *Rhine*. But the Electorate is much more contracted now, has the Diocese of *Cologne* on the N. with Part of the Dutchy of *Berg*: It has *Lorraine*, the *Palatinate*, and Part of the Dominions of *Hesse*, on the S. the *Spanish* Provinces on the W. and *Wetteravia* on the E.

On the S. and W. the Country is but ill Peopled, and barren, over-run with Hills and Woods; and the cold Winds which generally blow among those Hills, has occasion'd some People to call it, *Planetarum Cloaca*; i. e. The Sink of the worst Influences of the Planets; but in these Deserts, there's great store of Deer, and all sorts of Venison. On the Banks of the *Rhine* and *Moselle*, the Country is well Peopled, and abounds with good Wine and Corn. *Mozl* makes the greatest Length of this Electorate from S. E. to N. W. 85 Miles; but the Breadth is unequal, being about 50 on the W. about 25 in the Middle, and in other Places not above 15.

Julius Cæsar says, their continual Wars with the *Germans* made the ancient Inhabitants a very Warlike People. The *Romans* found it so to their Cost, when they had a whole Army cut off by *Ambioriges*, the General of the *Treviri*. The modern Inhabitants being inur'd to an hard Way of Living, are still very fit for War.

Christianity is said to have been planted here by *Eucharisius*, one of the 72 Disciples, with his two Associates, *Valerius* and *Maternus*, sent hither by St. *Peter*, as they pretend. *Eucharisius* is said, upon his first Arrival, to have rais'd from Death the only Child of a rich Widow, converted her House into a Church, which was afterwards made a Monastery of *Benedictines*, and is now called St. *Matthias*. This they will have to be the Origine of the Bishoprick of *Treves*, where *Eucharisius* govern'd 24 Years, *Valerius* 15, and was succeeded by *Maternus*; but afterwards the People apostatiz'd, and

at *Treves* worship'd *Mars* and *Apollo*, whose Altars stood on two neighbouring Hills, which still retain their Names. Thus it continu'd till *Constantine* prohibited the Worship of Idols, and re-establish'd Christianity. In Remembrance of which, and of the Abolition of Idolatry, they have Annual Revels on the Hill where *Apollo's* Image stood, when they tumble a flaming Wheel or Barrel from the Top of the Mountain. They likewise alledge, That *Constantine* made it an Archbishop's See, and gave the Crozier to *Agritius*, the Patriarch of *Antioch*, in 333. We leave the Readers to judge, whether there be not some Monkish Invention in this History, since Authors contradict one another in it. *La Forrest* says, 'twas Pope *Silvester I.* who made *Agritius* an Archbishop in 330.

The chief Towns.

1. *Treves*, pleasantly situated on the *Moselle*, in Long. 25 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 49 $\frac{1}{2}$. 65 Miles W. from *Mentz*, 50 S. W. from *Coblenz*, and 65 S. W. from *Cologne*. Their Antiquaries pretend, that it was founded 1250 Years before *Rome*, in the Year of the World 1966; and *La Forrest* and *Baudrand* say, 'tis one of the most ancient Cities of Europe; and older than *Rome*. It was ruin'd 4 or 5 times by the *Huns*, *Vandals*, and *Goths*, says *Morery*; but always recover'd it self with greater Lustre, the Roman Emperors and Governors having made it their Place of Residence. *La Forrest* says, 'twas pillaged by the *French* in 415, ruin'd by the *Huns* in 451, by the *French* again in 468, and sack'd by the *Normans* in 882; but was afterwards repaired by the Inhabitants, who obtained large Privileges from the Emperors of the Houses of *Franconia* and *Swabia*. In 1568, it was taken by *James III.* its Archbishop; and since that Time, has been subject to them, by a Decree of the Emperor *Rodolph II.* in 1580. It was put into the Hands of the *French* in 1632, to preserve it from the *Swedes*, as was pretended. They kept it till 1645, and seiz'd it afterwards. The *Germans* retook it in 1675, when the Marshal de *Cregui*, who threw himself into it, refus'd to sign the Capitulation. They put a Garrison into it again in 1688, and was

was abandon'd by them upon the Duke of Marlborough's Approach. 'Tis noted for several Synals or Councils held here, particularly one in 386 against the *Priscillianists*, By Order of the Tyrant *Maximus*, at the Intercession of the Priest *Ibaicus*, who was afterwards excommunicated by the Bishops, because he had acted contrary to their Canons, which abhor'd the shedding of Blood: But *Maximus* having called another Council of his Party, they absolv'd *Ibaicus*. 'Twas formerly an Imperial City, till reduced by its Archbishop, as above-mentioned. 'Twas anciently much larger than at present, is but ill inhabited, and not very well fortified, tho' it is capable of being so by its Situation. 'Tis defended on the W. Side by the *Moselle*, and by a good Wall on the other Sides; upon the Angles of which there were Works lately made to cover the Curtains and Ravelins between them. The Allies cast up Lines for the Defence of the Town and Country in 1704; but were obliged to abandon them in 1705, and to destroy the Magazines laid up there for the Subsistence of their Army. Their Trade is also much decayed, so that the Houses are generally mean, but the Elector's Palace stately; and the Churches and other Public Buildings, says Dr. *Nicholson*, are as fair and more numerous here, than in any other City of its Bulk in the Empire. The *Roman* Coins and Medals, and other Marks of its Antiquity, are frequently found in the Ruins of the old City. *St. Jerome* mentions a good Library here in his Time, from whence he copy'd *St. Hilary's* Commentaries. Their University was founded in 1472, and is very well frequented with Students. They have 4 Collegiate and 5 Parish Churches, 2 Abbies, and several other Religious Houses. Their Archbishop was formerly Metropolitan of *Mentz*, *Cologne*, *Liege*, *Utrecht*, *Strauburg*, *Worms*, and *Spires*; so that he was once the greatest of all the German Metropolitans, till Pope *Zachary* exempted those Bishopricks from his Jurisdiction. He is now the least Metropolitan in Germany, having but three Suffragans under him, viz. the Bishops of *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, all in the Hands of the French. He has still many good Bailiwicks, viz. *Trier*, *Sarburg*, *Pfalzel*, *Welshbillig*, *Grimburg*, *St. Wendel*, *Kilburg*, *Witlich*, *Baldenaw*, *Schonnecken*, *Dawn*, *Ulmen*,

Bern-Castle, *Houstein*, *Zel*, *Cocheim*, *Munster*, in *Eysfeld*, *Hillesheim*, *Meir*, *Coblenz*, *Boppard*, *Weisfel*, *Mount-habor*, *Limpurg*, *Werheim*, *Engert*, *Grenles*, and *Herspach*; which, together with the extraordinary Taxes he imposes upon his Subjects, and from his inalienable Office of being Noble Guardian of the Miners, and the Customs of the *Moselle*, afford a very considerable Revenue; which, before the Wars, was reckon'd about 100000 *l.* Sterling *per Annum*; but is much less since. The Chapter is composed of 16 Capitular Canons, who have the Right of chusing the Archbishop, and of 24 Domicil'd. They receive none who cannot prove themselves to be Gentlemen by 4 Descents both by Father and Mother; but they admit no Princes or Counts; the Gentry thinking this the only Way for them to arrive at the Electoral Dignity. The Provost, the Dean, Treasurer, Schoolmaster, and Chanter, are distinguished by their Elective Dignities from the other Canons; and the 5 Archdeacons, who are named by the Archbishop with the Officials, are not of the Chapter, nor oblig'd to prove themselves to be Gentlemen. In the Cathedral, they pretend to have our Saviour's Coat, which they seldom shew'd, for fear of discovering the Cheat, and have never expos'd it since the Treaty of *Westphalia*; tho' before that Time, they pretended that several Miracles were done by it; as they did, that *St. Peter's* Staff raised *St. Maternus*, their suppos'd Bishop, with a Touch, 40 Days after he was dead; and to make the Story the more plausible, they alledge he was the Widow's Son; whom our Saviour had formerly raised from the Dead, as mention'd in the Gospel. This Archbishop precedes the Archbishop of *Cologne*, because his Church is more ancient; and besides his Privileges mention'd before in the Head of the Election of the Emperors, he has a Right to reunite to the Domains of his Church all the Fiefs in his Diocese, and those that fall to it for want of Heirs-Male, unless the next a-kin can shew a Privilege to the contrary. He can likewise, by his own Authority, put those whom he has excommunicated into the Ban of the Empire, if they do not reconcile themselves to the Church within a Year after their Excommunication. He has a Privy-Council to assist him in the Civil Government.

2. *St. Maximin*, a *Benedictine* Abbey with- in a quarter of a League of *Treves*, now united to this Archbishoprick.

3. *Phaltz*, a little neat City on the Con- flux of the *Kyll* and *Moselle*, and the W. Side the latter, about 4 Miles from *Treves*.

4. *Witlich*, Capital of a Bailiwick, on the Frontiers of *Luxemburg*; in the Castle of which, called *Ottenstein*, the Elector has his ordinary Residence.

5. *Prum*, a *Benedictine* Abbey, near the Head of the River *Prum*, of which the Elector is perpetual Administrator. It was founded by King *Pepin* in 760. It lies about 28 Miles N. W. from *Treves*.

6. *Cochaim*, on the *Moselle*, which *M. de Boufflers* took by Storm towards the end of the last Century. It lies 3 Miles N. E. from *Treves*.

7. *Münster*, the principal Town of the small Country called *Eyselt*, 40 Miles N. E. from *Treves*, and 10 S. W. from *Coblentz*.

8. *Saffich*, Capital of a County of the same Name, within a League of the *Rhine*.

9. *Coblentz*, on the Conflux of the *Moselle* and *Rhine*, from whence 'twas called *Confluentia*, and *Confluentes*. It lies 50 Miles N. E. from *Treves*, and 37 S. E. from *Cologne*. 'Tis mentioned in *Antonin's Itinerary*, and the *Notitia Imperii*; was the Seat of the first *Roman* Legion, and one of their *Præfects*, and is supposed to have been fortified, if not founded, by *Drusus*. 'Tis situate in a very pleasant Country, cover'd with choice Vines, and is of Triangular Form, two Sides of which are defended by the Rivers, and the other by a Wall and modern Fortifications; so that 'tis reckon'd one of the strongest Towns in *Germany*. 'Tis populous and large, and by the Conveniency of its Situation has a considerable Trade in Wood, Corn, Wine, and Iron. The Inhabitants are very civil and complaisant to Strangers, because of their Commerce; and their Houses are generally more uniform, and better built, than those of most other Cities on the *Rhine*. They have been subject to the Elector of *Treves* for many Years; but 'twas formerly an Imperial Town, till 1312, when 'twas exempted by the Emperor *Henry VII.* 'Tis pretended to have been given to the See of *Treves* by *Dagobert of France* above 1000 Years ago. Their best Publick Buildings are their two great

Churches, some Monasteries, and a Palace, where the Elector resides when he comes to this City. It has a Stone Bridge over the *Moselle*, and a Bridge of Boats over the *Rhine* to another of the Elector's Palaces. This Bridge is so contriv'd, that they let three of the Boats slip in the middle, to make a Passage for Vessels, and can quickly fasten them again.

On the other Side the *Rhine*, upon a very high Hill, stands the Elector's Castle of *Ehrenbreitstein* or *Hermanstein*, which is reckoned impregnable, commands the Town, and the Passage of the two Rivers; and besides the Strength of its Situation, is fortified by good Outworks. At the Foot of this Hill, on the Banks of the *Rhine*, stands the Elector's Palace above-mentioned, which is a noble Structure. Two large Wings, with a Front of it, and 5 Pavillions, look towards the River and the City.

10. *Meyn*, or *Meyen*, on the River *Netze*, 12 Miles W. from *Coblentz*. It gives Name to a neighbouring Territory, and has a Castle built in 1289, by *Henry* their Archbishop; and the Town was walled by *Baldwin* his Successor, who founded the Monastery there.

11. *Boppard*, *Lät. Bopartium*, and *Bodobriga*, a small City on the *Rhine*. It lies 8 Miles S. from *Coblentz*, has a strong Fort or Castle, built by Archbishop *Baldwin*, when this Town, which was formerly Imperial, was given by the Emperor *Henry VII.* to the See of *Treves*. It has a good Harbour for Vessels which pass up and down the *Rhine*, whence 'tis supposed to have taken its Name of *Boppart*, of which the present Name is a Corruption. 'Tis thought to be *Antonin's Bodobriga*; and by the Remains of its old Fortifications, is conceived to be one of those Forts which *Drusus* built on the *Rhine*. They were very unwilling to lose their Privilege of being an Imperial City, and for some Time resisted the Bishop's Pretensions; but were at last forced to submit. After which, he not only built a Castle to keep them in awe, but erected a Custom-house, to make Vessels which pass this Way pay Toll; both which continue to this Day. Other Publick Buildings worth viewing are, *St. Severus's* Church, and a stately old Palace called *Königshouse*, the Residence of the Barons of *Boppart*, who were Lords

of this and several other Castles in *Lorraine*. Near this Town, there's a fair Nunnery of *Franciscans*, and another of *Benedictines*.

12. *Engers*, a fair Town and Fort on the *Rhine*, betwixt *Coblentz* and *Andernach*. It gives the Name of *Engersgaw* to the neighbouring Territory, and lies 7 Miles N. from *Coblentz*, on the other Side the *Rhine*. It has a Castle, founded by *Cuno* Archbishop of *Treves*, who died in 1388. The Castle is from his Name called *Conen Engers*; and the noble Bridge which he built here over the *Rhine* is called *Cunostein*.

13. *Oberwesel*, on the W. Side of the *Rhine*, 18 Miles W. from *Coblentz*, at the Foot of a Hill. 'Twas formerly an Imperial City; but since 1312, has been subject to the Archbishop of *Treves*. It formerly belong'd to the Burgraves of *Schömburg*. 'Twas taken by the French under the Marquis de *Varenne* in 1703.

14. *Cell* or *Zell*, on the Banks of the *Moselle*, a large open Town, 28 Miles N. E. from *Treves*. 'Tis Capital of its Bailiwick; and by *Freherus*, in his Commentaries, called *Mosella Castellum Tabernarum*. The Town is pleasantly situated, and makes a great Quantity of Wine Annually, which occasions its having a good Trade, and being populous.

15. *St. Vendel*, a small Town on the Borders of the *Palatinate*, well fortified. 'Twas taken by the French in 1703. It lies 33 Miles S. E. from *Treves*.

16. *Sarburg*, on the River *Sar*, a small Town, well fortified, and much beautified, by *Henry de Vestingen* Archbishop of *Treves*. It lies on the Frontiers of *Luxemburg*, 8 Miles S. from *Treves*. 'Twas anciently called *Castra Sarra*. The chief Things of Note in it are *St. Lawrence's Church*, and *St. Nicholas's Hospital*.

17. *Limburg*, on the *Lohn*, betwixt the Counties of *Idstein* and *Weilberg* in the Country of *Hesse*, to the Princes of which Family most of its Territories belong. By an old Chronicle compos'd out of the Records of this City, it appears, That about 1336, they were able to send 2000 arm'd Men into the Field, and had above 8000 Communicants. Their Collegiate Church, dedicated to *St. Gregory*, was then govern'd by Canons of Noble Descent; but 'tis now decayed, having suffer'd much in the late Wars betwixt the French and the Empire.

18. *Ulm*, two German Miles N. W. from *Coeheim*, near which there's a famous Lake, where Tradition says, a monstrous Pike of 12 Foot long always appear'd before the Death of the Lords of that Place: As to which, the Reader may believe what he pleases.

19. *Montroyal*, a Town on the *Moselle*, with a strong Citadel and Outworks; which, together with its Situation in a Peninsula form'd by the *Moselle*, make it almost impregnable. 'Twas possess'd and fortified by the French during the last War; but they were obliged to restore and dismantle it by the Peace of *Ryswick*.

The Electorate of COLOGNE.

THIS Diocese has on the N. the Dutchy of *Cleves*, and County of *Marck*; on the S. the Archbishoprick of *Treves*; on the E. the Dutchy of *Berg*; and on the W. the Dutchy of *Juliers*, and Part of *Guelderland*. It contains the Baronies of *Arnsberg*, *Fredeberg*, *Bylstein*, *Fredehardeskirchen*, *Hovestat*, *Werle*, *Nehem*, and *Balve*, with the Manors of *Wildenborch*, *Homberschen*, *Hachenberg*, and *Hardenberg*, &c. We have formerly mentioned, in our Account of Ancient Germany, that the *Condrusi*, *Eburones*, and *Mannapii*, were the ancient Inhabitants of this Country, and afterwards drove out by the *Ubii*. The Bishoprick is said to have been founded by *Maternus*, formerly mentioned, who, with several of his Successors, were Bishops both of *Treves* and *Cologne*. It was made an Archbishoprick under *Agilulphus*, their 15th Bishop, about the Year 743, by Pope *Stephen III.* and was endowed by *Otho I.* and other Emperors. 'Twas afterwards made an Electorate, under *Erebert*, the 31st Bishop in their Catalogue, who died in 1021. This Elector is more rich and powerful than either of the other two Ecclesiastical Electors, for he generally holds the Bishopricks of *Liege* and *Hildesheim* in *Commendam*; but *Liege* especially is more immediately in his Power, since 'tis become a Custom among the Canons there to compliment the Elector of *Cologne* with their Bishoprick. Formerly the Bishops of *Münster*, *Utrecht*, *Liege*, *Minden*, and *Osnabrug*, were under his Jurisdiction; but since the Reformation

Reformation, that of *Utrecht* has been seculariz'd, as that of *Minden* was by the Treaty of *Westphalia*. He is Chancellor of the Empire for *Italy*, but does not perform the Office; for the *Italian* Princes, who depend upon the Empire, appoint Vicars to do it in their respective Dominions. His other Privileges we have describ'd already in our Account of the Electors, and of the Election of the Emperour. His annual Revenue is reckon'd to be about 100000 *l.* Sterling per Annum. He is also intitled Duke of *Engern* and *Westphalia*, which some say were, with the Revenue of those 2 Principalities, bestow'd upon this See by the Emperour *Otho I.* and others say, by *Frederick I.* upon the Forfeiture of *Henry the Lion*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*.

His great Chapter consists of 60 Canons, who are all Princes or Earls, for they admit none of an Inferior Quality. But the Power of Election is lodg'd in the 24 Seniors, according to the Ancient and Present State of *Germany*. The Diocese, so far as it lies contiguous, is about 40 Miles long, and 7 or 8 broad, of which he is supreme Lord. He has also a pretty large Country in *Westphalia*, and some other Places, inclosed by the Dominions of other Princes, which we shall mention in their proper Place. The last Elector was Prince *Clement Joseph* of *Bavaria*, who was elected in 1688, by the Interest of the Emperour and Confederates, in Opposition to Prince *William* of *Furstenberg*, who was set up by the Interest of *France*; but Prince *Clement* having since ungratefully join'd his Brother the late Elector of *Bavaria*, and the *French* King, against the Emperour, he has been dispossest of it. He has a Privy Council to assist him in the Temporal Government, a Council of War for Military Matters, a Chamber or Court for doing Justice to his Subjects; and the late Elector had besides, Garrisons, Guards of Horse-Granadeers, Partizans, Halberdeers, and Carabineers; 3 Regiments of Horse, 3 of Foot, and one of Dragoons.

This Archbishoprick being reckon'd part of the Circle of the *Lower Rhine* by the *Matricula*, which is certainly the best Authority; we shall describe the other remarkable Places of it, in order to finish the Circle of the *Lower Rhine*, before we come to

describe the City of *Cologne*, which, by the same *Matricula*, is reckon'd to belong to the Circle of *Westphalia*; and shall begin, according to the Course of the Map, with, 1. *Andernach*, on the *Rhine*, at the Foot of a Ridge of Mountains, 8 Miles below *Coblentz*. 'Tis memorable for the bloody Battle betwixt the Emperour *Charles the Bald*, and his Brother *Ludovicus Germanicus*, in 876 or 877. 'Tis fortified with a Castle and Bulwarks, is the Boundary betwixt the Archbishopricks of *Treves* and *Cologne*, has a Custom-House belonging to the latter; but its principal Trade is from lodging Passengers.

2. *Lintz*, a small, but very ancient City, on the E. Side of the *Rhine*, 18 Miles below *Coblentz*.

3. *Bonn*, on the *Rhine*, 19 Miles below *Andernach*, and 15 above *Cologne*. 'Twas called *Ara Ubiorum* by the Ancients, because of the Altars on which Sacrifice was offer'd to *Mars*, *Apollo*, and other Idols, said to have been destroy'd by Bishop *Maternus*. Others say, 'tis *Tacitus's Castra Bonnensta*, where the *Romans* sometimes winter'd, and where *Julius Caesar* made his Bridge over the *Rhine*: But *Cellarius* thinks, that the *Ara Ubiorum* was nearer *Cologne*. 'Tis also called by *Latin* Writers, *Colonia Julia Bonna*: *La Forrest* says, 'Twas built in the Reign of *Augustus*, by Order of *Drusus*. 'Tis a small City, but well inhabited, being the usual Residence of the Elector of *Cologne*, who has a magnificent Palace here. 'Tis situate in a plain and fruitful Country, abounding with Vineyards. This Plain lies at the end of a long Ridge of Mountains, which shut in the *Rhine* on both Sides as far as *Bingen*. Their Churches are stately, especially the Collegiate Church dedicated to the Martyr, *Pius*, *Cassius*, *Florentius*, *Mallusius*, with several others of the pretended *Theban* Legion that suffered under the Emperour *Maximian*, whose Bodies were said to be brought hither by *St. Helena*, who founded this Church to their Honour. The Town-House is well built, and adorned with fine Paintings. 'Twas formerly an Imperial City, but now subject to the Elector, and is noted for the Coronation of *Frederick* of *Austria*, who was chosen Emperour, in Opposition to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, in 1514. It suffer'd much during the Wars of the *Netherlands*, and was taken

by the Duke of Parma in 1588, being forc'd to surrender by Famine. The Fortifications are regular, the Walls faced with Brick, Ditches broad and dry, but the Counterscarp not very defensible. The Prince of Orange, our late King William, after he drove the French out of part of the United Provinces in 1673, took it from the French, into whose Hands the Elector of Cologne had put it; which forced them to withdraw all their Troops from the Dutch Territories. The French King having given Cardinal Furstemberg Troops to garrison this City, when he disputed the Election of Cologne; the Elector of Brandenburg besieged it in 1689, and forced it to surrender, after he had destroyed most of it with Bombs. At this Time, they found an Iron Chest in a Vault full of Gold Medals, to the Value of 100000 Crowns: They were of Ducat Gold; and the Impressions made for Roman, but very ignorantly, for it appear'd they were not above 4 or 500 Years old: Such of them as seem'd true, were of the late Greek Emperors. The French seized it again, but were forced to surrender it to the English and Dutch in 1703. The Elector has fine Gardens, with curious Waterworks and Grotto's, in the Neighbourhood of this City, and there's plenty of Game in the adjacent Mountains. Dr. Brown takes Notice, That there's a Chamber in the Elector's Palace, that goes a great way into the Rhine.

4. *Brensberg*, 18 Miles S. W. from Bonn, according to Mall and Sanfon, is a neat and pleasant Town.

5. *Lecknich*, a small Town, well fortified on the *Erpe*, upon the Frontiers of *Jugery*, 9 Miles S. W. from *Cologne*.

6. *Brue*, or *Brue*, betwixt Bonn and *Cologne*; a small City, with a fine Castle, where the Elector sometimes resides; and diverts himself by Hunting in a noble Forest in the Neighbourhood.

7. *Nays*, on the *Erpe*, a little before it falls into the *Rhine*, about 20 Miles lower than *Cologne*, almost over-against *Dusseldorp*. 'Tis frequently mention'd by Latin Authors, and particularly by *Tacitus*, who calls it *Nassum*, or *Nassus*. *Drusus* built a Fort here, to secure the Limits of the Roman Empire, which occasion'd the Building of this City. 'Tis pretty large, fortified by the River on

one Side, and by a double Wall on the other. 'Tis noted for holding out a long Siege against *Charles the Bold Duke of Burgundy*, in 1474, who espoused the Pretensions of his Kinsman *Rupert* against *Herman*, a Prince of *Hesse*, who was elected Bishop of *Cologne*: For which good Service, the Emperor *Frederick IV.* gave them many Privileges; and particularly to coin Money, to seal their publick Instruments with red Wax, and to bear the Spread-Eagle on their Arms, but on Condition that they should not exact Toll of any Vessels that traded thither. 'Tis said, The *Rhine* did anciently run by its Walls, on which they founded their Pretensions to levy Toll; but having alter'd its Course, they have now dug a navigable Canal from the *Erpe* to the *Rhine*. 'Twas several Times taken and retaken by the French and Confederates before the Peace of *Ryswick*. They have a Collegiate Church dedicated to *St. Quirinus*, where they shew his Tomb and Relicks; and some other publick Buildings.

8. *Zons*, on the *Rhine*, 7 Miles above *Nays*, was founded by Archbishop *Sigefrid*, is pretty well fortified; and the Houses being generally of Brick, make a good Appearance. Their chief Trade is Corn, of which they have Plenty in the adjacent Fields.

9. *Rhinberg*, or *Rhynerk*, a large Town on a Hill near the *Rhine*, which gives it its Name. 'Tis the lowermost Town belonging to this Electorate, and lies 40 Miles below *Cologne*: Some reckon it part of the Dutchy of *Cleves*, and others to belong to *Guelderland*, on which Account it has been frequently claim'd by the *Netherlanders*: 'Tis well fortified, is tolerably Rich, and stands well for Trade; the Neighbouring Country affording plenty of Wine. 'Tis Capital of a small County, about 10 Miles in Extent, and has a Right of Toll on the *Rhine*: 'Twas taken by the French in 1672, but restored soon after. Near this Town stands *Camp*, a rich Mitred Abbey, nobly endow'd by several Emperors.

10. *Murs*, Capital of a County, a neat small City, within a League of the *Rhine*, 8 Miles S. from *Rhinberg*, and 32 N. W. from *Cologne*; 'tis defended by a good Citadel, had formerly Counts of its own, but

has for some time belonged to the Princes of Orange, and is now claim'd by the King of Prussia, as Heir to King William III.

11. *Ordningen*, a small City near the Rhine, 6 Miles S. E. from *Meurs*.

12. *Keyserswart*, a small Town on the E. Side of the Rhine, 5 Miles N. from *Düsseldorf*, and 22 N. W. from *Cologne*. 'Twas formerly the most Northerly Town of the Diocese before *Rhinberg*, and some others in the Duchy of *Cleves* fell to it. *Bertius* says, That about 711, *Swibert* an Englishman built a College in the Island *Werdis*, where *Keyserswart* now stands, but there are no Remains of that College now to be seen. This Town is famous for the long Siege it held out against the Imperialists, commanded by the Elector *Palatine* in 1702; the Garrison being *French*, under the Marquis de *Blainville*, one of the Family of *Colbert*; but he was obliged to surrender, after he had held out 2 Months.

13. *Kempen*, or *Kerpen*, a strong Town and Castle, on the Borders of *Guelderland* and *Juliers*, above 3 German Leagues N. W. from *Cologne*, on the River *Erpe*. It held out a Siege in 1642, from the 20th of January till the 7th of February, against the *French*, *Hessians*, and other *Germans*, under the Duke of *Saxe-Weimar*, and the Castle held out 7 Days longer; the Garrisons being allowed honourable Terms. *La Forrest* places it in the Duchy of *Juliers*, but it was given by the *Spaniards* to the Elector of *Cologne*.

14. *Worringen*, on the Rhine, famous for a bloody Battle in 1297, betwixt the Archbishop of *Cologne*, supported by the Duke of *Brabant*, and the Citizens of *Cologne*, who gained the Victory. It lies on the W. Side of the Rhine, near *Zons*.

The Circle of WESTPHALIA.

THIS is a very large Circle, being from N. to S. according to *Moll*, about 185 Miles long; but if we take in the Duchy of *Juliers*, which the *Matricula* reckons part of it, 'tis 22 Miles longer; and where broadest from E. to W. about 150; but if we take in the Bishoprick of *Liege* according to the *Matricula*; 'tis broader: 'Twas formerly much larger, but we refer to the *Matricula* for the Governments contained in it. It has the Northern Sea on the N. Part

of *Juliers*, and *Wetteravia* on the S. the *Netherlands* on the W. and the Circle of *Lower Saxony* on the E.

Authors differ as to the Origine of its Name; some derive it from *Weyssinholen*, a white Horse, because the ancient Dukes of *Westphalia* bore that in their Arms. But others, with more Probability, derive it from *Westfeld*, being inhabited by the Western Saxons, between the *Weser* and the Rhine, to distinguish it from the *Eastfeld* inhabited by the East Saxons. Dr. *Nicholson* offers Arguments from several Authors, to prove, that the English Saxons were originally *Westphalians*, as appears by the *Saxon Version* of *Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, which says, they descended from 3 of the stoutest Nations in Germany, the Saxons, Angles and Jutes, who, he says, inhabited the Country call'd Old Saxony; and that *Westphalia* bore that Name, is asserted by S. *Peter Leovardensis*, who, in his Treatise *de Origine Frisiorum*, says, He met with several old Manuscript Chronicles, wherein this Country was call'd Old Saxony; and was afterwards called *West-Sassen*, to distinguish it from the Country of the East Saxons. The principal Objection against this, says the Doctor, is, that *Strabo* ascribes all the Country betwixt the Rhine and the Elbe to the Swedes; but he alleges, That the Objection is easily answer'd, if we consider that the Swedes were subdued by the Saxons. We leave the Reader to compare this with what we said in the Description of *S. Friesland*, p. 353, where the ancient Angli inhabited; and what we said from *Cluverius* concerning the Saxons, p. 417, and p. 419, where the Angli are reckon'd a Division of the Swedes, and p. 420; after which we leave them to their own Judgment: But it would rather seem, that it was the *Franks* who were conquer'd by the Saxons; of whom the Angli did afterward make a Part; then the Swedes; of whom they themselves were only a Division. But however that is, 'tis plain enough that the Saxons drove out the *Franks*, and gave the Name of Saxony to that part of the Country, as far as the Rhine; and 'tis probable, that part of those Saxons in *Westphalia* joined with the Angles and Jutes in their Expedition to Britain, which goes a great way to solve all Difficulties in this Matter: *Westphalia* being too large to give a general

Description of its Soil and Commodities, we must refer that to the particular Places: But they have a common Saying among themselves,

*Hospitiura vile Grooff broot, Dun bier, Lange Mile,
Sunt in Westphalia: Qui non vult credere
Loop Da.*

i. e. In *Westphalia*, you are sure to meet with bad Lodging, coarse Bread, small Beer, and long Miles; if you will not believe it, go thither and see.

In the Geographical Description, we shall begin with the City of *Cologne*, according to the Course of the Map, which lies pleasantly on the *Rhine*, Long. 25. 32. Lat. 50. 55. 40 Miles below *Coblentz*. 'Twas called by the Ancients, *Colonia Ubiarum*, and *Colonia Agrippina*; the first, because 'twas founded by the *Ubii*, who removed to this Country from the other Side the *Rhine*. But some, tho' without good Authority, pretend it to be much older, and that 'twas Tributary to *Troves* several Ages before our Saviour's Birth. 'Twas called *Colonia Agrippina*, says *Tacitus*, because *Agrippina*, Daughter to *Germanicus*, and Wife to *Claudius*, would have it honour'd with a *Roman* Colony, as being the Place of her Birth; and hence they chang'd their Name into *Agrippinensis*, which, as *Lipsius* observes, confutes the Opinion of those who will have it to be founded by *Agrippa* her Grandfather, for then they must have called themselves *Agrippenses*; and *Geltius* takes Notice of a Medal of *Claudius*, wherein 'tis call'd *Colonia Agrippina Ubiarum*. Others say, There was a Town here before the *Ubii* came, but they enlarged it about 20 Years before our Saviour's Birth; and that *Agrippina* having brought the *Roman* Colony thither 48 Years after, added much to its Circuit. In the Year of our Saviour 69, when *Vitellius* and *Vespasian* disputed the Empire, this Town was besieged by *Tutor* and *Sabinus*, who rebelled against the *Romans*, at which Time *Agrippina* was forced to receive their Garrison, but massacred them afterwards, when *Cerialis* had defeated the Rebels. *La Forrest*, and other *French* Authors say, That *Merovic*, a *French* King, drove the *Romans* from hence in the Reign of *Valentinian III.* about 449.

In 451, it was taken and ruin'd by *Atila the Hun*. The *Romans* afterwards rebuilt it, but were again dispossest'd by *Childrick*, Son to *Merovic*, who gave it to a Kindman of his own, who was Father to *Sigebert the Lame*, King of *Cologne*, who was assassinated by his own Son *Cloderick* about 599; for which, *Clodvis* the great King of *France* put *Cloderick* to Death, and united *Cologne* to *France*, under which it remained, say the *French* Authors, during their Kings of the first Race: After whom it fell to those Princes of the second Race, who were Kings of *Germany*. About 881, it was destroyed by the *Normans*, who at the same Time took and ruined many of the other great Cities in *Gallia Belgica*. 'Twas afterwards repaired by the Emperor *Orko the Great*, who subjected it to its Bishops, but his Grandson *Orho III.* made it Imperial about 993. *Frederick I.* enlarged its Privileges in 1189, after which it increased mightily, especially in 1260, when it enter'd into the League of the *Hans-Towns*, and was made the Capital of the fourth of their Provinces. After this, 'twas govern'd by Senators, as 'tis still, who have a great Resemblance to the ancient Senate of *Rome*. In 1513, the People made an Insurrection, and cut off their Consuls, Treasurers, and some other Magistrates, whom they charged with having cheated the Publick. 'Twas, during the *Roman* Government, the Metropolis of *Germania Secunda*; and because of its Senate, fine Structures, and large Extent, was by some call'd *Second Rome*. They had many Controversies with their Archbishops about the Jurisdiction over them, and refused to submit to any thing inconsistent with their Dignity of an Imperial City; but this was compromised by *Maximilian I.* who confirm'd their Privileges, yet oblig'd them to do Homage to the Archbishop, to the Effect following: "We the Free Burgers of *Cologne*, do promise to be faithful and favourable to N. Archbishop of *Cologne*, so long as he preserves us, our Wives, Children, and our City of *Cologne*, in our Rights, Honours and Ancient Privileges." Upon which, the Archbishop obliges himself thus: "We N. by the Grace of God Archbishop of the Holy Church of *Cologne*, Elector, and Arch-Chancellor of the Empire throughout

" &c.

"Italy"; that there may be between us and our dear Burgers of the City of *Cologne* an amicable Confederation, entire Confidence, and sincere and inviolable Peace; do by these Presents promise and assure in good Faith, and without Fraud, That we confirm all the Rights and Franchises written or unwritten, old or new, within or without the City of *Cologne*, which have been granted to it by Popes, Emperors, Kings, or Archbishops of *Cologne*; and will never violate nor infringe the same. In Witnesses whereof, we have caused the Seal of our Arms to be affixed to these Presents.

The Senate are Sovereign Judges in all Civil Matters; but in Criminal Causes, the Archbishop has the sole Right, after the Senate has seiz'd and examin'd the Criminals, to condemn or acquit them. This City was made an Archbishoprick; Ten Years after that Dignity was conferred on *Mentz*, and the Electoral Office was conferred on the Archbishop in 1011. *St. Anno*, one of their Archbishops, in 1055, procur'd the Eyes of some Judges there to be pulled out, for unjustly condemning a poor Woman, leaving only one Eye to one of 'em, who was to lead the rest home: And that their Punishment might serve for an Example to others, he order'd Brick-Heads, without any Eyes, to be nail'd over their Doors. The Citizens do not allow the Archbishop to reside above Three Days at a Time in the City, tho' he has Two Palaces here; for which Reason his usual Residence is at *Bonn*. 'Tis built in Form of a Half-Moon, on the Banks of the *Rhine*; is one of the finest, strongest, and largest Cities in *Germany*, encompass'd with two strong Walls, that have above 83 Towers upon them, and a triple Ditch, beautified with several fine Rows of Trees. On the Side of the *Rhine*, it has but one strong Stone Wall; but its chief Strength, according to *Dr. Brown*, consists in Outworks, Half-Moons, and Ravellins. *Ray* says, 'tis perhaps the biggest City in all *Germany*, and has within it 300 Acres planted with Vines, besides many other void Spaces. *Misson* says, it has 24 Gates, 13 to the Land, and 11 on the *Rhine*. *Mr. Ray* says, contrary to what we took Notice of before from the Ancient and Present State of *Germany*, that there are 62 Ca-

nons belonging to the Archiepiscopal See, 54 of whom are Canons Nobles, and 8 Presbyters; and that these 62, in Conjunction with the Dean who has two Voices, and two Burgomasters Regent who have 4 Voices, chuse the Archbishop: But most Authors differing from him, we suppose he is mistaken. The Government of the City is in 6 Burgomasters, 7 Eschevins or Aldermen, and 150 Counsellors, who all continue during Life; only two of the Burgomasters are Regents during a Year by Turns: The Eschevins are chosen by the Archbishop; and the Counsellors by the Companies of the City. There are only 50 of the Counsellors empower'd for a Year; so that it returns to the same Persons once in three Years. If a Burgomaster dies, the Counsellors have Power to chuse another. Most of the Inhabitants are Papists; but there are many Protestants, who are their chief Traders. The *Lutherans* have a Church within the City, and the *Calvinists* have one on the other Side the *Rhine* at *Mulheim*, two Miles from *Cologne*. *Dr. Brown* says, the chief Streets are large, and pav'd with broad Stones. The Ancient and Present State of *Germany* says, they reckon 365 Churches, great and small, in this City. *Dr. Brown* says, a great Part of the Town is taken up with Churches and Monasteries, many of them well endowed; and most of the Houses of the Canons and Prebends have large Gardens and Vineyards belonging to them. The Cathedral, dedicated to *St. Peter*, is very large and magnificent, but not finished. Here they pretend to shew the Tombs of the three Wise Men, who came from the East to worship our Saviour, and are hence called, The Three Kings of *Cologne*. They alledge, their Bodies were first removed to *Constantinople* by *Helena*, Mother to *Constantine the Great*; from thence to *Milan* by *Eusebius*, Bishop of that City; and when that Town was taken by *Frederick Barbarossa* in 1164, they were brought to *Cologne* by Archbishop *Reinold*. Besides these, they pretend to shew 1000 Heads of Martyrs in the Church of *St. Gerson*, who suffered here in the Reign of *Maximinianus*. In the Church of *St. Ursula*, they pretend to shew her Tomb; with an Inscription, signifying that 'twas discover'd by *St. Columba*, a Scotsman; and

and they alledge, that *St. Ursula*, and 11000 Virgins, who came from *Britain* to convert the Infidels in those Parts, were murder'd here by the *Huns*. Upon many of these Tombs, there were old Crosses and Lamps. By these Fables, the Popish Clergy delude the unthinking Rabble, and rob them of their Money, on Pretence of paying Devotions to these Relicks. Upon this Account, they have for a long Time called *Cologne* the *Holy City*; but think they deserve it better for withstanding the Reformation, which two of their Archbishops embrac'd, as *La Forrest* informs us. Of their great Number of Churches, *Dr. Nicholson* says, there are 11 Collegiate, 19 Parish-Churches, and 30. Chapels: Besides which, they have 12 Monasteries, 22 Nunneries, and 4 large Hospitals. *Misson* informs us, That among other Miracles said to be wrought by the Relicks of the Three Kings, they procured a great Rain to the *Hungarians*, who sent Pilgrims hither to beg their Assistance, when their Country was like to be ruin'd by a great Drought: In Remembrance of which, some Pilgrims come hither every 7 Years from *Hungary*, and are entertain'd for 15 Days by the Magistrates in an House built on purpose. In the vaulted Roof of the Church, almost over the Chapel which contains those Relicks, there's a Hole of 3 or 4 Foot wide, which they alledge, as appears by an Inscription round it, was made by a great Wind the 30th of *October*, 1404, at Night, that forc'd a great Stone through the Roof. This Stone they still shew in the Floor near the Chapel, and call it the *Devil's Stone*, alledging, that he threw it out of Malice. He adds, That in *St. Ursula's* Church, they have the Bones of the pretended Virgins hung up in great Order on the Walls: Some of their Heads, most noted for Miracles, are kept in Cases of Silver; others are cover'd with Stuffs of Gold; and some of them have Caps of Cloth of Gold and Velvet. They say, That the Arms of the City, which are, *Argent*, 11 *Flames Gules*, with a *Chief* of the 2d, charged with 3 *Crowns Or*, represent the 11000 Virgins, and the 3 Kings of the East. In the Church of the *Maccabees*, there's a Crucifix with an everlasting Periwig on its Head: For thö each of the *Hungarian* Pilgrims cut off a Lock from it when

they come, yet they tell you it was never diminished. At the Entrance of the Church of the Twelve Apostles, there's a Picture representing the following Story:

They say, That a Burgomaster's Wife being buried there in 1571, with a Ring of great Value on her Hand; the Sexton coming to steal the Ring, open'd the Coffin; and while he was pulling it off, the dead Body reviv'd, which made him run away in a Fright. Upon this, she came home to her House, and knocking at the Door, a Servant came, to whom she told the Adventure. He run and acquainted his Master with it, who told him, He would as soon believe that his Coach-Horses were in the Garret. Immediately a great Noise being heard in the Garret, the Servant run up, and found 6 Coach-Horses there, to convince his Master of his Infidelity. In the mean Time the Woman was let in, and by the Care of her Servants perfectly recover'd; and next Day the Horses were let down by Pullies from the Garret, where to this Day they shew several Wooden Horses, cover'd with the Skins, as they pretend, of those very Horses; and a Piece of Linen, which they alledge was spun by the same Lady, who liv'd 7 Years after her Recovery. These Things we relate, thö fabulous in themselves, for the Diversion of the Curious, and to shew the Advantages of the Reformation, which has deliver'd us from such Impositions. *Misson* adds, That they pretend the Ground of *St. Ursula's* Church will admit no other Corps but that of the martyr'd Virgins; and to prove this, shew a Tomb of a Daughter of the Duke of *Brabant*, who being interr'd there, rais'd her self up, and remaining in the Air, they were forc'd to put her Corps into this Tomb, which is rais'd two or three Foot above the Ground upon Iron Supporters, fix'd to one of the Pillars of the Church. A strange Instance of the Power of Bigottry, from which the Course of so many Years, the Neighbourhood of so many Protestants, the Light of Reason, and of the Sacred Records, has not deliver'd those poor unthinking Creatures.

The Town-House is a vast Fabrick, after the *Gothick* Manner, where there are several Rooms full of Bows, Arrows, Cross-Bows, Bucklers, and all sorts of Antick Arms.

Among

Among others, there's a Cross-Bow of Whalebone 12 Foot long, 8 Inches broad, and 4 Inches thick. From the Tower of this House, there's a lovely Prospect of the City and adjacent Country. This City is one of the greatest Emporiums in Germany, which makes it very populous. They have a great Trade with the Netherlands by long round-bellied Vessels of great Burthen, which in the Winter are secur'd within the Key from the Shoals of Ice. Several Ecclesiastical Councils have been held here; the oldest was that in 346, wherein Euphrates their Bishop was depos'd for Arianism. Another was held by Charlemagne's Order in the 8th Century, and several were held in the 9th for Reformation of Manners, against incestuous Marriages, and Oppressors of the Poor. In 1673, a Treaty of Peace was set on foot at the Convent of Carmelites near this City, betwixt the Emperor, King of Great Britain, Spain, France, &c. but was interrupted by the Seizure of William Count of Furzburg, who, tho' a Native of Germany, and a Count of the Empire, being bred in France, where he was an Abbot, left his Convent, turn'd Colonel in the French Service, and was sent hither as Plenipotentiary for France; but taken up as a Traitor, and carried to Vienna, where he was condemned, but not executed, and set at Liberty by the Treaty of Nimeguen. He was afterwards by the French King made Bishop of Straßburg, and advanc'd to be a Cardinal. An Account of all the remarkable Things which have happen'd to this City, publish'd from their Records, &c. till 1496, was publish'd here in 1500, by John Koelhoff, a Citizen. The greatest Part of it is said to have been composed by the Senate, and some of the chief Citizens. An University was founded here in 1388, and is reckon'd one of the best frequented in the Empire. Montconys says, the Pope has a Nuncio always here, to take Care of his Interest with the Popish Electors. The Town-House of this City, Dr. Brown says, is a goodly Structure; on the Front of which there's a Man in Basso Relievo engag'd with a Lion, representing one of their Burgomasters, who having exasperated their Clergy, they sent in a Lion upon him, which he slew on the Spot. Over against the City, on the other Side the Rhine, there's a Village called Deutz, in-

habited chiefly by Jews, whom the Elector allows to live there; but they are not suffered to enter the City without a Guard. This Village belongs to the Territories of Newburg. Misson says, there are some Families still in Cologne, who derive their Pedigree from the Romans that first settled there.

For the better understanding the ancient History and Geography of these Parts, we have inserted here Cluverius's Map of the ancient Inhabitants betwixt the Rhine and the Elbe, in Caesar and Trajan's Time.

There belongs likewise to the Elector of Cologne, in the Circle of Westphalia, 1. That called

The Dutchy of WESTPHALIA:

Which, according to Moll, is 55 Miles long from S. W. to N. E. and 47 where broadest from E. to W. It has the Bishopricks of Munster and Paderborn on the N. Wittecravia on the S. the County of Mark and Dutchy of Berge on the W. and the Landgraviate of Hesse on the E. Dr. Nishelson says, most of it is cover'd with Woods; but towards Lippstadt, the Country is pleasant and fruitful. They have store of Venison, Corn and Pasturage, and in some Places Mines of Lead, Copper and Silver; but so overpower'd with Water, that they turn to little Account. In this Country, K. Wittekind, and his Successors the Dukes of Saxony and Westphalia, are supposed to have had their Residence, and on that Account it retained the Name of a Dutchy.

The chief Towns are, Arnsberg, a neat and pleasant City on the River Roer, 47 Miles N. E. from Cologne. The Elector frequently resides here when he comes to hunt in this Country. 'Tis defended by a strong Castle, where the Governor has his Residence. 'Twas formerly subject to Counts of its own, the last of whom sold it to the See of Cologne in 1368, as the Chronicle of Cologne informs us.

2. Stadsberg, or Stadspurg, on the River Dimel, a small City, which was demolished by the Swedes in 1645.

3. Mulheim, which La Forreß makes Part of this Dutchy, tho' it lies properly within that of Berg, but is subject to the Elector of Cologne. It stands on the E. Bank of the Rhine, about 6 Miles below Cologne, is a

fair and large Town, and pretends to be the Old Cologne, the Metropolis of the ancient *Ubi*; but this does no way agree with History. Their chief Plea is from the great Quantities of Roman Coins and other Antiquities found in its Neighbourhood; but these might be occasioned by the settling of some Roman Garison in or about this Place afterwards. The Townsmen resolv'd to wall it round in the beginning of the last Century, and to make themselves an Imperial City; but were opposed by the Emperor *Matthias* and the City of Cologne; and the Emperor order'd the Spanish General *Spinola* to demolish their Outworks in 1614; and next Year the Citizens of Cologne sent Workmen to demolish all the new Buildings in the Place. The Townsmen attempted to fortify it again at the beginning of the Civil Wars, on Pretence of Security; but being still opposed by those of Cologne, it continues its Dependency on that City.

The 4th Town taken Notice of in this Dutchy is *Werle*, pleasantly situated betwixt the *Rovere* and *Lippe*, 12 Miles N. W. from *Arenberg*. 'Tis walled and fortified, and is the Residence of the Elector's Judge Official for *Westphalia*.

5. *Geseck*, on the Borders of *Paderborn*, 26 Miles N. E. from *Arenberg*. 'Tis a fortified Town, which came to the See of Cologne in 1501, and was afterwards taken by the *Netherlanders*, who possessed it some Time. It was also taken by the Landgrave of *Hesse* in 1636; but restored by the Treaty of *Westphalia*.

The 2d Country belonging to the Elector in the Circle of *Westphalia*, is

RECKLENHAUSEN,

A County 20 Miles long from E. to W. and 10 broad from S. to N. Its chief Town, of the same Name, lies in the middle of the County, 32 Miles N. E. from Cologne. 'Tis a strong Town, and was taken by the Elector of Cologne from the Duke of *Cleves* in 1343. 'Twas mortgaged afterwards by one of the Electors to the Count of *Schaumburg* for 17550 Crowns; but ranomed, with several other Places, by one of his Successors. There's a Nunnery here, whose Abbess or Priorefs has a Power of Life and

Death. She only is obliged to make the Vow of Chastity; but the Nuns are permitted to marry, after having stay'd here a certain Number of Years.

The next Town in this Country is *Dorstein*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Recklenhausen*. 'Tis a strong Town, and was well fortified by the Landgrave of *Hesse* in 1639. 'Twas besieged in 1641 by the Elector's Troops, and surrender'd after two Months Siege on honourable Terms.

The Dutchy of Juliers.

Some reckon this Country, with the Bishoprick of *Liege*, to be Part of the *Netherlands*; but we chuse rather to follow the *Matricula*, which makes them Part of the Circle of *Westphalia*, and therefore describe them here, according to the Course of the Map.

This Country has *Guelderland* on the N. the Dutchy of *Limburg*, and the Territory of *Aix la Chapelle*, with Part of the Archbishopricks of *Cleves* and *Cologne*, on the S. the Dutchy of *Bergs*, and Part of the Electorate of *Cologne*, on the E. and Part of *Brabant* on the W. The ancient Inhabitants of this and some of the neighbouring Countries were, according to *Bertius*, the *Bructeri*, *Eburones*, and *Menapii*: But for a further Account, we refer to what we have said of Ancient *Germany*. This Dutchy is plentifully stor'd with all Necessaries for Man and Beast, as Corn, Hay, Wood, &c. 'Tis particularly noted for a good Breed of Horses, and Plenty of Wood, which is transported into other Countries for the Use of Dyers.

This Dutchy, with those of *Cleves* and *Bergs*, and the Countries of *Marck* and *Ravensburg*, were for a long Time subject to the same Princes; but that Family being extinguished in 1609, the Emperor *Rudolph II.* conferred the Dominions on the House of *Saxony*; but with a *Salvo* to the Rights of the other Pretenders. Soon after, in the Reign of *Charles V.* the Families of *Brandenburg* and *Newburg* laid Claim to them, as being descended from Daughters of the former Princes. This Controversy was adjusted in some measure in 1611, when the Dutchy of *Cleves* and County of *Marck*, &c. were adjudged to the Family of

Brandenburg.

Brandenburg, and the Dutchy of Juliers to the Family of Newburg; for which, we refer to our former History of those Families, and to *Limneus*, in lib. 5. of his Treatise *de Jure publico Imperii Romano Germanici*, where every ones Pretensions are set down at large. This Dutchy is about 60 Miles long, and 30 broad.

The Principal Towns.

1. *Juliers*, by the Germans called *Gulich*, and by the Latins, *Juliacum*; which occasions some to think that it was founded by *Julius Caesar*, or by *Julia Agrippina*, who founded *Cologne*, which *Cluverius* thinks probable; but *Cellarius* doubts it, because 'tis not mention'd by any of the Ancients, till we meet with it in *Antonin's Itinerary*, and *Theodosius's Tables*. It lies on the River *Roor*, 23 Miles N.W. from *Cologne*, about 17 N.E. from *Aix la Chapelle*, and 22 S.E. from *Burenand*; Long. 25. 5. Lat. 50. 57. The Town is small, but well fortified, and neatly built: The Houses are of Brick, and the Streets broad and regular. The Citadel is large, contains the Duke's Palace, in a spacious Piazza, and is as strong as the best Engineers in Germany could make it, being 30 Years in Building. 'Twas taken by Prince *Maurice of Nassau* in 1610, from the D. of *Saxony*; and by the *Spaniards* in 1622, but restored to the D. of *Newburg* by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*. In the Suburbs there's a Monastery of *Carthusians*, nobly endowed by several Dukes of *Juliers*.

2. *Duren*, on the same River, 9 Miles S. from *Juliers*. *Cluverius* supposes it to be the *Marcodurum* of the Ancients, by some called *Marcomagum*: It pretends to the same Founder and Antiquity with *Cologne*; was formerly made Imperial by the Emperor *Rupert*, but subdued by the D. of *Juliers*, in 1407. The Streets are neat and uniform, and water'd by Streams in the middle. In *St. Martin's Church*, their fairest Structure, they pretend to have the Head of *St. Anne*, Mother to the Virgin, which formerly brought a great Concourse of Pilgrims thither. In 1543, *Charles V.* took this Town by Storm, and burnt it, after putting the Garrison to the Sword; but it has since been rebuilt, and is subject to the Dutchy of *Juliers*.

La Forrest reckons in this Dutchy, 1. *Kerpen* on the *Erpe*, which the *Spaniards* restored to the Elector of *Cologne*, but we have already described it. 2. The Abbey of *St. Cornelius Munster*, situated on the River *Dense*. There are several other Market-Towns in this Country, which not being described, we shall not insist upon them.

3. *Aken*, Latin *Aquisgranum*, 15 Miles S.W. from *Juliers*, 20 S.E. from *Maastricht*, and S.W. from *Cologne*; Long. 24. 50. Lat. 50. 47. called by the French, *Aix la Chapelle*, from a Chapel in the Great Church, much visited by Pilgrims, for the Multitude of its Relicks. This City lies betwixt the Dutchies of *Juliers* and *Limburg*, but is reckon'd part of the former, and is under Protection of the Duke. 'Twas anciently very considerable, the Seat of *Charlemagne*, and is now an Imperial, large and beautiful City.

Reusner, in his Treatise *de Urbibus Imperialibus*, fancies it had its Name from *Apollo Grannus*, a Deity well known to the ancient Germans and *Rhatians*; which is allowed by *Celtes*, in his Panegyrick on this City; one Verse whereof runs thus;

Fumat aquis calidis Granno Urbs ab Apollino dicta.

i. e. The Smoking Baths have rais'd this City's Fame,
Which from Apollo, Grannus had its Name.

But the most received Opinion is, That its Name came from *Serenus Grannus*, Lieutenant-General of *Gallia Belgica*, under the Emperor *Adrian*; who having, Anno Christi 53, discovered the Hot Springs here, beautified them after the Fashion of the *Roman Baths*, and built himself a Palace, and Lodgings for his Retinue near them. To confirm this, the Citizens still shew a venerable Piece of ancient Architecture at the End of the Town-House, which they call *Turris Grani*, and believe it to be part of the Ruins of his Palace, tho' some think the Architecture does not answer the Antiquity.

Attila the Hun, having afterwards destroyed this Place, with the rest of the Neighbouring Towns, it lay in Ruins; till *Charles the Great* hunting in the Woods near it, his Horse accidentally struck his Hoof into

D d d d d 2

one

one of the Hot Springs; which the Emperor observing, and finding by the Ruins of several great Piles of Buildings, that this must needs have been the ancient *Aquisgranum*, he ordered the Baths to be searched out and rebuilt: And being much taken with the pleasant Situation of the Place, he built a Palace, rebuilt the City, founded a Collegiate-Church, which he dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*, and endowed it with a noble Revenue in 804. By Degrees he finish'd that Part of the Town which is incircled by the old Wall; and thus it continued till 882, when 'twas again ruin'd, and the Emperor's Palace burnt by the *Normans*. It suffer'd much, after it was rebuilt, by other Fires, particularly by one in 1656, which burnt 26 Churches and Chapels, and 5000 Private Houses, which were quickly rebuilt, so that 'tis now more large and beautiful, than in *Charles the Great's* Time. In 1668, a Treaty was held here, and a Peace concluded between the Kings of *France* and *Spain*.

The Town-House, or Senate-House, is a very stately Structure of Free-Stone; 'twas built in 1533, and is adorned with Statues of all the Emperors since *Charles the Great*. The first and second Stories are divided into several Chambers; from all which, the Smoak of the Chimneys is convey'd through 4 large Pillars which support the uppermost Roof. The highest Story is one entire Room, 162 Foot long, and 60 broad. The Emperor, who used to receive his first Crown of Iron here, with the same Ceremonies as he did the second of Silver at *Milan*, and the third of Gold at *Rome*, used to entertain the Electors and other Princes, that attended the Solemnity in this Room.

In this Hall, there are several curious Pieces of Painting, by *Amisaga*, among which, that of the *Resurrection*, and another of *Charles the Great*, giving the Charter to the City of *Aken*, highly valued. In the middle of the Market-Place, before the Town-House, there's a stately Fountain, remarkable for its Largeness and Workmanship, by the famous Artist, *Gerard Coris*. It has 4 Springs, which run continually from above, into a large Copper Cistern of 30 Foot Diameter; and from thence, by 6 Pipes, into a Stone Cistern below, from whence 'tis conveyed through the City.

On the Top of the Fountain there's a large Brass Statue gilt, of *Charlemagne* in Armour, with his Face towards *Germany*. Round the Edges of the Brass Cistern, there's an Inscription in *Latin*, importing, "That the " hot Waters being discovered here by *Gracianus* a Roman Prince, Brother to *Nero* and " *Agrippa*. He first built the Baths; but " they were afterwards renewed by the Emperor " *Charlemagne*, who appointed that " this City should be the Seat of the Empire on this Side the *Alps*. Formerly this " cold Fountain run into the Baths, and " the Senate of this City adorned it with " this Brass Vessel, in 1620.

The Cathedral is large, but of an odd Figure, and of *Gothick* Architecture. At the West-End, there's a Steeple adorned with several Pyramids; and on the Top, with a large Globe and Cross. From this Tower, which is much higher than the Body of the Church, there's a Gallery, supported by a long Arch, to a Cupulo near the middle of the Church. The Inside is beautified with a vast Number of Pillars of Marble and Brass; gilded Statues, Brass Doors and Partitions, with a great deal of Mosaick-Work. Over the Place, where the Body of *Charles the Great* was first inter'd, hangs a very large Crown, given to this Church by the Emperor *Frederick I.* made of Silver and Brass gilt, adorned with 16 small Towers, 48 larger, and 32 lesser, Statues of Silver: Amongst which, are set 48 Candlesticks at great Festivals.

The Emperor *Frederick* removed the Body of *Charlemagne*, and buried part of it under the Altar of the Choir in a Silver Coffin, and the other Part near the Wall of the old Building, which he covered with the same Tombstone it had before, of white Marble, with the Figure of *Proserpina* upon it, and is supposed to have been taken from the Tomb of *Julius Caesar*. In this Church, there is also the Monument of the Emperor *Ordo I.* in black Marble.

Among the many pretended Relicks, worship'd by the Pilgrims who anciently flock'd hither, the most remarkable are, 1. The Gown which the *Virgin* is said to have wore at our Saviour's Birth, made of Wool, not unlike that which grows on Coco-Trees. 2. A coarse Linen Cloth our Saviour was begirt with, when he suffer'd. 3. A Piece of the Cord
that

that bound him when he was delivered to Pilate. 4. Some of the Blood of the Proto-Martyr St. Stephen, richly enshafed in Gold and precious Stones; upon which the Emperors are sworn at their Inauguration. 5. The Picture of the Virgin, with our Saviour in her Arms, embossed upon a Jaspis about 2 Inches broad, found in the Emperor Charlemagne's Tomb, and pretended to be the Work of St. Luke. 6. A noble Manuscript Copy of the Gospels, richly covered with Silver gilt, found in the same Tomb. 7. Charlemagne's Sword, wore by his Successors at their Coronation, and used in the Dubbing of Knights, and conferring other Honours. Some of these, and a great many more, were said to be procured by Charlemagne, from Aaron King of Persia, from the Patriarch of Jerusalem, from Constantinople, and other Places.

But the Hot Baths in this City, very much frequented by Germans and Foreigners, make the Town most considerable. Of these, there are 3 within the Inner Walls; the Emperor's Bath, the Little Bath, and S. Quirinus's. The first of them is in the same Place, and fed with the same Springs, with that which Charlemagne took so much Delight in, that he would often invite his Sons, Nobles and Guards, to bathe in it with him, it being then the Custom to bathe 100 together, tho' now the Baths are divided into lesser Partitions. The little Bath joins with the Emperor's, as the King and Queen's Bath in England; and they both rise so hot, that they let them cool 12 Hours before they use them. Dr. Brown says, These Baths are Nitro-Sulphureous, and that he saw Brimstone an Inch thick, Salt-petre, and other petrified Substances taken out of them. Besides these, there are in the outer Circle of the Town, other Baths which are not so hot as the former, whose Smell is somewhat offensive, and their Water not transparent: Dr. Brown says, They are Sulphureo Nitrous. They have also a Fountain of warm Water, much resorted to, and drunk in Summer Mornings for many Chronical Distempers. Near those hot Springs, there are many cold ones, by which the Heat of the former might be temper'd; and, as Dr. Brown says, with no great Charge, made the most delightful Baths in the World.

About a Furlong out of the S. Gate, stands the Village of *Porcetum* or *Borces*; so called, from the vast Number of wild Hogs that anciently frequented the Woods near this Place. They have here a famous Nunnery of *Bernardines*: The Abbess is Princess of the Empire, tho' there lies an Appeal from her Court to the Court of Aldermen at *Aken*. The Village is well built, and beautified with 4 Churches. There are here a great many hot Springs on both Sides of a small Rivulet, which waters the Town. These are by Pipes and Conduits conveyed into 14 Houses, and distributed into 28 Baths. Their Water is clear and pleasant, without any offensive Smell, but much hotter than any in *Aken*, being usually cool'd 18 Hours before it can be endur'd. They cool it with an Instrument pierced through with a great many Holes, with which also they stir the Water when you enter the Bath, to render the Heat less perceptible.

Dr. Brown says, They are for the most part square, and about 5 or 6 Yards over. He adds, There's one called *The Poor-Man's Bath* in the open Air; and in the Streets there's a Spring as hot as any that he has seen.

Near this Place there are several Mines of Lead, Coal, Vitriol, Sulphur, and Calmey, as they call it, or *Lapis Calaminaris*; with the last whereof they make Brass, in the following Manner: To 28 Pound of the best Swedish Copper, they put 100 Pound of this Mineral; to which they add some broken Pieces of Brass, and a good Quantity of the Dross of both the forementioned Simples. These they melt in Crucibles over a hot Furnace for 12 Hours together, and then pouring 8 of these Crucibles into one, they let the drossy and baser Parts boil over: Then they pour the liquid Metal into a Frame of Stone, bordered with Bars of Iron, by which Means they run into large Brass Plates, which are afterwards cut in Pieces with large Cissars made for that Purpose.

Mr. Ray says, The Government of this City is administer'd by a Mayor, 2 Burgo-Masters, 14 Eschevins, and 120 Counsellors. The Mayor has the Precedence among the Eschevins, is put in by the Duke of *Juliers*, and continues for Life, or *quamdiu se bene gesserit*. The Burgo-Masters are elected by the Majority of the Companies

nies of the City, and administer this Office 2 Years. The Eschevins officiate in the Quality of Judges, during Life. The Counsellors are all chosen by the several Companies, of which there are 14 or 15. The Territories belonging to this City are very large, comprehending near 200 Villages, enclosed on all Sides with Mountains.

Miffon says, It was formerly a very pleasant City, but has lost much of its ancient Lustre. The Emperors were formerly crowned here, but that Custom is laid aside; yet the Emperor always declares, in what Place soever he is crowned, the same shall not be interpreted as a Prejudice to the Privileges of this City. The Emperor is always a Canon of *Aix*, and in that Quality takes an Oath at the Time of his Coronation.

There is a Description in *Latin* of this City and its Baths, by *Dr. Blondel*, a Physician of that Town, which was printed at *Maeſſricht* in 1685. He says, That though *Charlemagne's* Pragmatick Sanction makes *Granus* the Founder of this City, Brother to *Nero* and *Agrippa*; the Chronicle of *Utricht* says, He was a *Roman* Senator, banished with his Family by *Nero*; and others say, He was his Proconsul in these Parts. He adds, That *Charlemagne* was himself a Canon in the Cathedral, and ordered that his Successors in the Empire should always be so. He says, That besides what it suffer'd by the *Huns* and *Normans*, 'twas burnt down in 1146, by an accidental Fire; but by the Bounty of the Emperors, and great Concourse of People, it grew so much, that in 1172, the Emperor *Frederick I.* added the outer Walls, Towers and Ditches. It suffered much again by Fire in 1224, when many of the Citizens and Strangers perish'd in the Flames: It had the like Misfortune in 1236. He says, The Town-House was built about 1353; and that the Brass Cistern of the Fountain above-mentioned, weighs 12000 Pound, is 10 Foot wide, and 13 in Circumference. He adds, The Circuit of the whole City is a League and a half, and that of the Inner City $\frac{1}{2}$ of a League. The Inner has 10 Gates, and the Outer 11. He says, Though the Town lies in a Valley, encompassed with Mountains and Woods; the Air is very wholsom, and the Soil fruitful and pleasant, and abounds with Corn,

Fruit, and Pasturage. The neighbouring Woods and Quarries, furnishes them with Materials for Fire and Building. They have 20 publick Fountains of good clear Water, besides many private Ones. They have 10 hot Mineral Fountains, and some cold ones, without *St. James's-Gate*, besides several in the adjoining Fields. The Streams of Water that run through the Town keep it very clean, and have several Mills upon them. Besides the other Mines already mentioned, they have rich Coal Mines, and are well supplied with all Necessaries by the Neighbourhood of the *Rhine* and *Maes*.

In this Description of the Cathedral, he says, That in the E. End of it there's a Throne, upon which our Saviour is represented sitting in Majesty, with a long Robe; and round the Throne there's the Representation of the 4 Animals mentioned in *Ezekiel's* Vision, and over his Head a Circle of golden Stars. Underneath there's the Symbol of the Cross, which was said to have appeared in the Air to the Emperor *Constantine*, when he defeated *Maxentius*: And near to this are represented the 24 Elders rising from their Seats, laying aside their Crowns, and falling down before the Throne; and the Windows about it are curiously gilt, and the Pavement beneath is of checker'd Marble, very artfully wrought. He says, That in the Great Crown which the Emperor *Frederick I.* gave to this Church, the Clergy formerly, at their great Solemnities, used to put up 450 Wax Tapers; but they seldom use now above half the Number. Over the chief Altar in this Church, there's a Chest of Silver and Gold of Antick Workmanship and Engraving, in which they have the 4 chief Relicks, which they shew to the *Hungarian* Pilgrims and others, at their Jubilee, that they celebrate once in 7 Years. On the Right Hand as they go into the Choir, there's a Pulpit, from whence the Sub-deacon sings the Gospel at Solemnities, cover'd with Plates of Gold and Silver, and adorned with many Jewels and precious Stones, being the Gift of the Emperor *Henry II.* in 1014. The Altar of the Choir is covered with Plates of Gold, representing our Saviour's Passion, and are supposed to have been taken out of *Charles the Great's* Sepulchre. In the upper part of the Church,

over-

over against the Prince's Altar, betwixt two Pillars, there's a Throne of white Marble, where the Emperors use to sit when chosen. 'Tis supposed to be the same that *Charles the Great* plac'd there.

His Account of the Baths or hot Fountains here is thus: Those in the Old Town are, *Nitro-Sulfo-Sulphureous*; those in the New Town are, *Sulphuro-Sulfo-Nitrous*; and those of *Borset* are, *Sulfo-Aluminous*. For the Difference of those Baths, the Way of using them, and our Author's Dissertation as to the natural Causes of Baths, we refer the Curious to the Book it self, to what we said in our Introduction, P. 59, 60, 61. and to another called, *Bathoniensium & Aquis—Grænenisium Thermarum Comparatio*; in a Letter to the Earl of Castelmair, printed at London in 1676, for the Agreement betwixt them and our English Baths. Only in short Dr. *Blondel* says, That Bathing with those of *Aix la Chapelle*, is good against all Affections of the Nerves, such as Convulsions, Palſies of all sorts, Numbness, Tremblings, Gout in the Feet or Hands, Sciatica's, Hardness of the Nerves, Contractions, Swellings, Distempers of the Bowels, Stomach, Spleen, inveterate Head-aches, Vertigo's, Tingling of the Ears, Nephritical Distempers, against all moist and cold Affections of the Womb, Stoppage or Flux of the *Menſes*, Barrenness, Abortion, Scabs of all sorts, and Dregs of bad Mercury made use of in Venereal Distempers; but he does not think them proper for such as have those Distempers actually upon them.

Those at *Borset* are so hot, that the People scald Pigs with the Water, and boil Eggs in it; but 'tis observ'd, that tho' they harden the Yolk, they never harden the White. These Baths are frequented by People of all Sorts, and Ages, who bathe in them for Diversion, without any Danger. They are not so strong as those in the City, and by Consequence fitter for weak People. They are good against the same Distempers, and also against Defluxions on the Head and Breast, moist and squeamish Stomachs, Dropſies, soft Swellings, and Diseases of the Womb, &c. and may be drunk as well as those of the City, were there any Occasion for it. The Fountains are so copious in both Places, that they are capable of filling several times in a Day above

50 Baths, or Channels of 50 and 70 Tun a-piece; and most of the Baths, except those for the Poor, are so contriv'd, that the old Water is drawn off by Conduits under Ground, and the Baths clean'd from all Impurities. The Doctor computes, that from the Baths in the City and *Borset*, there flows 6000 Tun of Water per Day, which carry as many Pounds Weight of Salt. He adds, That these Waters being drunk, are good, 1. Against hot Distempers of the Liver, Spleen, Reins and Bowels. 2. Against Obstructions of the Mesentery, Pancreas, Liver, Spleen, and Reins. 3. The Yellow Jaundice, Cachexy, and Dropſy proceeding from thence. 4. Inveterate and stubborn Fevers, New Tertians and Quartans. 5. The Whites in Women. 6. Bleeding at the Nose, and Flux of the *Menſes*. 7. They kill all sorts of Worms. 8. They help Conception, and dry over-moist Parts. 9. They purge the Urinary Vessels of all Impurities. 10. They cure Stoppage of Water and Stranguries. 11. They dissolve and expel the Stone and Gravel. 12. They help in Melancholy and Hypochondriacal Distempers. 13. They recover lost Appetite, strengthen weak and flatulent Stomachs, and quench immoderate Thirst. 14. They cure the Scurvy, Gout in Hands or Feet, Rheumatisms, and other Distempers proceeding from too much Serum in the Blood. 15. The most inveterate Cholicks. 16. They are excellent against Asthma's. 17. Scirrhus Swellings, Scrophulous Distempers, Imposthumes of the Mesentery, Diarrhea's, Ulcers of the Mouth, and Distempers of the Gums and Teeth.

This City suffered much during the Civil Wars in the middle of the 16th Century, when the greatest Part of the Citizens were Protestants; but the Marquis *de Spinola* took it, and re-establish'd Popery there, which is now the prevailing Religion. The Protestants are allowed no Church in the Town, but go to their Worship to a Church in the Dominions of the States of *Holland* in the Neighbourhood. 'Tis also noted for several Councils which were held here in the Reigns of *Charlemagne* and *Lewis the Pious*: In one of 'em, *Alcuin* disputed against the Bishop of *Urgel*, and convicted him of Heresy. The rest were about the Procession of the Holy Ghost, Reformation of

of Manners, Regulating of Monks and Nuns, and against such as had seiz'd the Patrimony of the Church.

La Forrest says, That when the Emperor is crown'd elsewhere, the Magistrates, who have the Charge of *Charlemagne's* Sword, Shoulder-Belt, and the Gospel in Golden Letters, which he made use of, send 'em to the Elector of *Mentz*, who gives them Security that they shall be restored. The same Author mentions *Sittard* on the Borders of *Limburg*, *Tudder*, and *Susteren*, little Cities belonging to the Duchy of *Juliers*.

The Bishoprick of Liege,

HAS *Flanders* and *Brabant* on the N. and W. the Duchy of *Limburg* on the E. *Luxemburg* and Part of *France* on the S. 'Tis about 70 Miles long from S. to N. and 25 from E. to W. but in one narrow Tract almost 60. The Country is rich and pleasant; and because of the multitude of Clergymen who dwell in *Liege*, and some neighbouring Cities, they call it the *Clergymen's Paradise*. The Valley in which the City of *Liege* stands, is more than ordinary pleasant and fruitful. Some think the Country took its Name from the Latin Word *Legio*, because a Roman Legion was slain near this Place by *Ambiorix*, the famous General of the *Eburones*: But others more probably derive it from a small River of the same Name, which falls here into the *Meuse*.

The most peculiar Commodities of this Country are, Brimstone and Vitriol: An Account of extracting and preparing which, was communicated to Sir *Robert Murray*, a Member of the *English* Royal Society, and is publish'd in their *Transactions* of 1665, N^o 2. to the Effect following:

The Substance from which both are extracted is the same, and not much unlike Lead-Ore; some small Quantities of which is now and then pick'd out of it. The Mines are like Coal-Pits, and dug according to the Depth of the Mineral, sometimes 15, and at other Times above 20 Fathom, according as the Vein lies, or as the Water under Ground suffers them to work. They are most apt to be overflow'd in Summer,

when the Drowth dries up the Water above Ground, so as they have not enough to work their Pumps. They make the Brimstone thus; They break Stone or Ore into small Pieces, and put it into Crucibles 5 Foot long, and made Pyramid-wise. These Crucibles they lay sloping, and the Brimstone being dissolved by the Heat of the Furnaces underneath, drops from the lower End into a Leaden Trough, through which there runs a continual Rivulet of cool Water, convey'd thither by Pipes to cool the dissolv'd Sulphur, which is usually 4 Hours a melting. This being done, they draw out the Ashes with a crooked Iron; and putting them into an Iron Wheelbarrow, carry them out, lay them in a Heap, and cover them with other elix'd Ashes, to keep them warm; and this they repeat as often as they make Brimstone.

When they make Copperas or Vitriol, they take a Quantity of the said Ashes, throw them into a Plank'd Pit 4 Foot deep, and 8 square, cover them with Water, and let them steep 24 Hours, or till an Egg will swim on the Top, which is a Sign that the Liquor is strong enough. When they design to boil it, they let it run through Pipes into the Kettles, and add to it half the Quantity of Water which remains after the boiling of the harden'd Copperas. These Kettles are of Lead, near 5 Foot high, 6 Foot long, and 3 broad, and are set upon thick Iron Bars. In these they boil the Liquor with a strong Coal Fire 24 Hours or more, according to the Strength of the Water. When 'tis boil'd to a Consistence, they remove the Fire, and cool the Liquor; which being done, they let it out at Holes beneath in the Sides of the Kettles by Wooden Troughs into several Receptacles, about 3 Foot deep, and 4 long, where it continues 14 or 15 Days, till the Copperas separates from the Water, and becomes Icy and hard. The remaining Water is that called *Mother Water*, which they mix with the Liquor above-mentioned: And the elix'd or drain'd Ashes are the Dregs or *Caput Mortuum*, which, the Lee whereof the Vitriol is made, leaves behind it in the Plank'd Pits.

This Country has also Mines of Lead and Iron, and Quarries of Marble.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. *Liege*, called *Leodium*, *Leodicum*, and *Legia*, by the Latins. 'Tis the Capital of the Country, and lies on the *Maes*, 17 Miles S. W. from *Aken*, 12 S. from *Maestricht*, 10 N. E. from *Huy*, and 17 N. W. from *Limburg*, in Long. 24. 15. Lat. 50. 40. 'Twas but an ordinary Village before the Time of *Charles the Great*; but the making it a Bishop's See, drew a Concourse of People to it. The See is said to have been founded by *Hubert*, Son to *Bertrand* Prince of *Aquitaine*; tho' some make it of a much older Date. They say, he came into *Brabant* on the Account of his Religion, which had not much Footing in his own Country: That at *Maestricht* he contracted a Friendship with *Lambert*, Bishop of that Place; and going afterwards to *Rome*, was made his Successor by Pope *Sergius*; those of *Maestricht* having murder'd *Lambert*: And tho' *Hubert* was much caref'd by the Inhabitants of that Town, yet not trusting 'em, he remov'd to *Liege*, where he built the Cathedral, which he dedicated to St. *Lambert*, and order'd his Corps to be interr'd here about 713. The Bishop is Suffragan of *Cologne*, and Prince of the City and Country of *Liege*, Marq. of *Franchement*, Count of *Loos* and *Haubaye*, &c. He calls himself likewise Duke of *Bouillon*, because of some Pretensions he has on that Dutchy. *La Forrest* says, the Chapter is compos'd of 60 Canons, all Nobles or Doctors. He is of the Opinion of those who say, the Town was founded by *Ambiorix*, K. of the *Eburones*, after he had cut off the *Roman* Legion. He says, 'twas walled by St. *Hubert* Bishop of *Maestricht*; that 'twas ruin'd by the *Normans* in 881; that *Henry I.* Duke of *Brabant* took it in 1212, and let his Men pillage it for 6 Days. There have been frequent Disorders here about the Elections of their Bishops, and many Quarrels betwixt them and the Magistrates of the City about the Sovereignty of the Town, which they pretend to be independent of him. In 1409, *John* Duke of *Burgundy* killed above 36000 *Liegeois*, for having made War upon their Bishop; and *Charles the Bold*, Duke of *Burgundy*, chastis'd them so severely on the like Account, that ever since they have entertained an irreconcilable Hatred to the *Burgundians*. We

have formerly taken Notice, That of late Years, they have generally chosen the Elector of *Cologne* for their Bishop.

The City is now large and beautiful, about 4 English Miles in Circumference, and much resembles *Roan* in *France*. Within the Walls, there are several Vallies, Hills and Islands, form'd by the *Maes*, which runs through it in two Streams. Most of the Streets are spacious and well built, and have a clear Stream running through the middle of 'em. Besides which, many of the best Houses have two or more Fountains with cool Spring Water. In the City and Suburbs are reckon'd above 100 Churches: The most stately of which is the Cathedral; for which, and many other excellent Fabricks, *Liege* has this Character given it by Travellers, That for fair Churches, Convents, and other Religious Foundations, no City in *Germany* or *France* is able to compare with it. The English Jesuits have a College here, well seated on the top of an Hill; and not far from thence, there's an English Nunnery. In St. *William's* Convent without the City, lies Sir *John Mandeville*, the famous English Traveller, whose Works are better esteem'd in *France* and *Germany* than here. Having viewed most Cities in the World, he chose this to spend his last Days in. Near his Grave are kept his Saddle, Spurs, and Knife, that he made use of in his Travels; and on his Tomb, there's an Inscription in old barbarous *French*, requesting those that pass over him to pray for him. They have an University here, once so famous, that at one Time they had 9 Kings Sons, 24 Dukes, and 29 Counts Sons, besides many others of Quality, who studied here; and, if we may believe *Meibomius*, in 1131, there were 21 Kings Sons in this University. This City is still very populous; but the Account given by some Historians, that *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, when he sack'd it, put 100000 of the Inhabitants to the Sword, as is mentioned by Dr. *Nicholson*, seems to have no good Authority; for *Commynes*, who was present in that War, and gives an Account of the sacking and burning the City, says no such Thing; but he owns, that abundance of 'em were drown'd. The Citizens are form'd into 32 Companies of Freemen; among whom the Godsmiths have the Pre-eminence.

E e e e

The

The Dioceſe of *Liege* was formerly more conſiderable than at preſent ; for *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, and *Hainault*, have enrich'd themſelves with its Spoils, beſides what it has ſuffered in the late and preſent Wars. It contains, or has a Right to, 52 Baronies, 18 Wall'd Towns, and 400 Villages, well Peopled. Dr. *Brown* ſays, the Biſhop's Palace in the City is a very noble Structure ; That the Cathedral is built of red Stone, and has abundance of fine Carving about it ; That the Canons of the Church are very rich and powerful. They have 60 called *Canonici Majores*, who muſt all be of Noble Extradion, except a few Learned Men they admit among them. Theſe 60 elect the Biſhop. They have 12 called *Canonici Madioces*, and 12 more called *Minores* or *Parva Menſa*, according to Mr. *Ray*, who ſays, the Three States of this Dioceſe, compos'd of the Clergy, Gentry, and Commons, have a conſiderable Share in the Government, there being no Tax rais'd, or other Matters of Weight tranſacted, without their Conſent. Dr. *Northleigh*, in his Deſcription of the *Spaniſh Netherlands*, ſays, they have a Key of a quarter of a Mile long upon the *Maas* for landing their Goods ; That it reaches to their new Bridge over the *Maas*, which has 6 Arches, every one twice as large as thoſe of *London* Bridge, and not much inferior to the celebrated Arch of the *Rialto* at *Venice*. Veſſels paſs eaſily through 'em. The Bridge riſes high in the middle, is broad enough for 5 or 6 Waggonſ to go a-breast, and is mounted with ſome Cannon. The Form of the City, he ſays, is Triangular, and their Citadel lies on a ſteep Hill ; was built by the Archbiſhop of *Cologne* in 1650, was afterwards demolished by the *French*, but ſince rebuilt, and ſtrongly fortified. He mentions great Variety of Dialling invented by the famous Mathematician *Limus* in the pleaſant Garden belonging to the *Engliſh* Jeſuits ; and among them, that in the middle of the Garden is the moſt curious, by its ſeveral Ways of ſhewing the Hours : 1. By a Wine-Glaſs ; in the middle of which, a perpendicular Gnomon directs to the Figures on the Outſide. 2. By a Glaſs reflecting like a Looking-Glaſs ; in which, if one centers his Eye, he ſees a little Star, cauſed by the Penetration of the Sun-Beams, that points at

the Hour. 3. A round Glaſs full of Wire, and ſmall Braſs Bars that ſurround it, from which, to the Point of Time, the Sun-Beams are reflected in a *Punctum*, as from a Burning-Glaſs ; ſo that by counting the Number of theſe little Bars, from the fiſt to the Point, where the Heat centers, a blind Man may, by his Fingers, find the Hour of the Day. 4. Reflexions on a Globe of Conſtellations for a Night-Dial. 5. By the Elevation of the Pole-Star, and the Light of the Sun trajected. 6. By the receding of the Gnomon, till it caſt no Shadow, the Reverse of ordinary Dials. He ſays, the Convent of *St. James* is a noble Structure, with two beautiful Monuments, one of their Founder, and the other of one of their Abbots, both curiouſly wrought in *Relievo* ; as is the Paſſion of our Saviour in the Skreen. They pretend to abundance of Relicks ; among which, they ſhew a Tooth, ſaid to be one of our Saviour's ; ſeveral Pieces of the Croſs ; ſome of *Mary Magdalen's* Hair ; a Shift of one of the Children murder'd by *Herod's* Command ; ſome of the Apoſtles Skulls ; and many Relicks of Martyrs. Among the laſt, they ſhew an *Antependium*, made of the embroider'd Cloak that our King *Charles I.* wore on the Scaffold when he was murder'd ; which the Doctor ſuppoſes, if it be true, muſt have been given them by his Queen. He adds, That in this City there are two or three handſome Squares ; and that the Biſhop's Palace is a noble Fabrick, with ſeveral Courts ; one of which is more ſpacious than our *Royal Exchange*, and has fine Piazza's. *Miſſon* ſays, the adjacent Coal-Mines have drawn thither a great many Armourers ; and that the Vineyards on the neighbouring Hills afford them a tolerable ſort of Wine, but not ſtrong ; the neighbouring Woods ſupply them with Plenty of Veniſon ; and they have excellent Mutton, fed in the Forreſt of *Ardenne*. This City was taken by the *French* in 1675, and next Year they deſtroy'd the Caſtle. It was retaken in 1702 by the Confederate Troops. Pope *Innocent II.* held a Council here in 1131, and crown'd the Emperor *Lotharius II.* in the Cathedral, when the Chapter, as their Annals ſay, conſiſted of 9 Kings Sons, 14 Dukes Sons, 29 Counts, and 8 Barons.

2. *Bouillon*, on the River *Semay*, is by *Dr. Nicholson* reckon'd to belong to this Diocese; but *La Forrest* and *Moll* reckon it in *Luxemburg*: To the Description of which, we refer it.

3. *Tongren*, called by the Latins *Tungro-rum Oppidum*, and anciently *Atuataca Tungro-rum*. 'Tis the oldest Town in these Parts, and was formerly very considerable, when there lay a pav'd Road from it to *Paris* of 200 Miles long; some Pieces of which are still to be seen. Many Roman Coins, and other Antiquities, have been found in and about this City. There's one very remarkable in the great Church, supposed to be the Image of *Minerva*, worship'd here before they were converted by *Maternus*; but others think, the Image agrees better to the Description of *Hercules*, who had a Temple in this Town. *La Forrest* says, a Bishop's See was founded here very early; but was transported first to *Maastricht*, and then to *Liege*; and some say, there were 100 Churches in it when it was destroyed by *Attila*; but it has nothing now of its ancient Lustre. The French King seiz'd it in 1672, but quitted it next Year. The Marshal *de Villeroi* took it by Surprize in 1703, with a Confederate Garrison of 700 Men; but abandon'd it again in 1705, upon the Approach of the D. of *Marlborough*. *Dr. Northleigh* says, they pretend it was built 1100 Years before our Saviour; and that 'tis generally believ'd, the Ruins of the old Castle, and the old Wall on Bishop *Maternus's* Chapel, are older than the Time of our Saviour's Birth. He says, he observ'd in the Moulding the Images of *Sol*, *Venus*, and *Jupiter*. Their old Church is a very handsome Gothic Structure, and has a Dean and 22 Canons. The French demolished the Jesuits Church there, which is since rebuilt. It had certainly a considerable Territory in the Time of the Romans, as appears from *Cesar*, *Strabo*, *Tacitus*, *Julius Capitolinus*, &c. About half a Mile from the Town, there's a Mineral Water of a Chalybiat Taste, which tinges the Earth and Stones with an Iron Rust, which some take to be the Spring describ'd by *Pliny* in his Natural History, *Lib. 3. Cap. 2.* but most Antiquaries apply it to the present *Spawi*, about 8 Leagues from hence; tho' considering the former Largeness of the Territory of this City, it may

perhaps include both. This Town lies 11 Miles N. W. from *Liege*, and 9 S. W. from *Maastricht*.

4. *Hoy*, on the *Maes*, 12 Miles S. W. from *Liege*, and 17 N. E. from *Namur*, is a fair old City, in a pleasant Valley, on a small River that falls here into the *Maes*, over which there's a fine Stone Bridge, that joins the two Parts of the Town. 'Tis the Capital of the *Gondroz*, and, according to some Antiquaries, was formerly a potent City call'd *Benefacum*, and afterwards *Huum*, or *Huyum*; but being ruin'd by the Incursions of the Barbarians, it lost its Jurisdiction. 'Tis defended by a strong Castle on a neighbouring Hill, and well fortified. It had formerly Counts of its own; but the last of 'em reign'd it to the See of *Liege*. They have Iron Mines in the Neighbourhood, which employ most of the Inhabitants. 'Twas taken by the French in 1675, who dismantled it. The Bishop of *Liege* fortified it again. The French retook it in 1693; but the Duke of *Marlborough* recover'd it in 1703.

5. *Dinant*, a very ancient City on the *Maes*, 12 Miles S. from *Namur*. 'Tis fortified with a strong Castle on a steep Rock, and has a Bridge over the *Maes*. The French dismantled it in 1554; but it was since more regularly fortified. It had formerly a considerable Trade; but has suffer'd much that Way by the late and present Wars. Their chief Income is from Black Marble, Iron and Brass. The French took it in 1675, but restor'd it to the Bishop of *Liege* by the Treaty of *Ryswick*.

6. *Franchimont*, or *Franchenberg*, anciently a large and populous City, but now reduc'd to a Village. 'Tis defended by a Castle, and gives Title of Marquis to the Bishop of *Liege*. The Inhabitants of its District were always accounted the best Soldiers of the Diocese. 'Twas ruin'd by *Charles*, the last Duke of *Burgundy*, and the Inhabitants dispers'd after he took the City of *Liege*, as above-mentioned. They have a good Mine of Lead, and a fine Quarry of Marble, in the Neighbourhood. It lies about 8 Miles S. W. from *Limburg*.

7. *Walcourt*, near the Head of the small River *Heur*. According to *La Forrest*, 'tis the Capital of the Country belonging to the Bishop of *Liege* betwixt the *Sambre* and

the *Maes*, and was noted for an Advantage which the Confederates obtain'd near it over the *French* in the beginning of the last War.

8. *Spaw*, called in Latin *Spadanius Vicus*, is a neat Village, seated in a Valley in the Forrest of *Ardenne*. 'Tis encompassed on all Sides with Hills, and on the N. it has high steep Mountains. It lies 14 Miles S. E. from *Liege*, and 7 S. W. from *Limburg*. 'Tis noted for its Mineral Waters, much frequented by People from all Parts of *Europe*, and on that Account has been always allow'd a Neutrality during the hottest Wars. 'Tis supposed to be the Fountain that *Pliny* mentions, as we took Notice above, to be near *Tungri*, a City of *Gaul*, whose Waters he said had a Taſt of Iron or Steel, was Purgative, cur'd Tertian Agues, and the Stone: When boil'd, it grew turbid, and at laſt of a red Colour. *Cluverius*, in his *Germania Antiqua*, Lib. 2. ſays, That this muſt be meant of the *Spaw*, and answers the Objection from *Pliny's* ſaying it belong'd to *Tungri*, a City of *Gaul*: That by *Civitas*, *Pliny* meant the Community of People call'd *Tungri*, and not the Town of *Tongerren*; and that 'tis certain, the *Spaw* lay within their Boundaries. Dr. *Brown*, in his Account of thoſe Waters, ſays, his Hoſt inform'd him when there, That he had ſent this Water as far as *Saragoſſa* in *Spain*; That he had then 30000 empty Bottles ready to fill; and the moſt convenient Time to do it was the hottest and drieſt Season in the Summer, or the hardeſt Froſt in the Winter, becauſe at ſuch Times the Water is ſtrongeſt, ſparkling and briſk. The chief of theſe Mineral Fountains, he ſays, are Four, viz. *Geronſter*, *Saviniere*, *Tonnelet*, and *Pohunt*. The firſt ſprings in the middle of a thick Wood, a Mile and a half S. from the *Spaw*: 'Tis the ſtrongeſt of any, according to Dr. *Brown*, and the beſt adorn'd, having a Pavilion over it, ſupported by 4 Stone Pillars, and a green Place clear'd in the Wood near to it, with a little Houſe for the Patients to warm themſelves in cold Weather. It ſmells ſtrong of Brimſtone, cauſes many that drink it to vomit, paſſes chiefly by Urine, as the reſt do, and ſtrikes a Purple with Nut-Galls, more inclining to Red than the *Cambridge* Waters. The Sediment is of a light Blue in the Fountain,

but of a dark dirty Red every where elſe. Near this, there's a large Spring in the Wood much like it, but not built or adorn'd. 2. *Saviniere*, lies a Mile and a half E. from *Spaw*, and is built up like a Tower. The Waters are not ſo ſtrong as the former, but peculiarly good againſt the Stone and Gravel. 3. *Tonnelet*, riſes in the Meadows near the Town, and having no Shades about it, is not ſo pleaſant as the other two. *Henricus ab Heer*, in his *Spadacrene*, ſays, 'tis more nitrous than the reſt, and cauſes ſuch a Chilneſs in the Mouth and Stomach, that few can drink it. 4. *Pohunt*, in the middle of the Town, where moſt of the Water that is ſent abroad is taken up, except there be Orders to the contrary. They ſometimes call it the Fountain of St. *Remacius*, a Biſhop of *Liege* of that Name, who beautified it with handſome Stone-Work. Over the Mouth of the Well, there's this Inſcription, *Sanitati Sacrum*, i. e. Conſecrated to Health; and the following Diſtich, with an Account of its Virtues:

*Obſtructum reſerat, durum terit, humida
ſiccant,
Debile fortificat; ſi tamen arte bibas.*

i. e. It opens Obſtructions, diſſolves hard Swellings, dries up too much Moiſture, and ſtrengthens weak Parts, if drunk according to the Advice of Phyſicians.

Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, That the Waters of *Pohunt* have a Vitriolate Taſt; and that if we put into it any thing auſtere, as Galls, Oak-Leaves, *Balaſtium*, &c. it turns black; That thoſe in the Woods are of a more Piquant Taſt, and of quicker Operation, than our Chalybeat Waters; That, according to Mr. *Boyle's* Experiments, they weigh two Grains in three Ounces more than *Cambridge*, and four Grains more than ſome of the *Wington* Waters, yet both leſs than the common Water by ſeveral Grains; but a conſiderable Allowance muſt be given for what they evaporate bringing hither. The Doctor ſays, they are cleerer on the Place than the *Engliſh* Chalybeats; and that 'tis worth Obſervation, that tho' by the exacteſt Scrutiny of Glaſſes, no viſible Difference has been found hitherto betwixt the Contexture of the Minute Parts of Com-

Common and Mineral Water, yet by Chymical Precipitations and ordinary Solutions, and sometimes by subiding, considerable Separations of a different Substance are made without much Difficulty. He adds, That these Waters are much colder than those commonly mix'd with Rhenish Wine upon the *Rhine* and *Moselle*, which generally pass under the Name of *Spaw* Water, and make a strong Ebullition with the Wine; whereas the true *Spaw* Water, tho' mix'd with Sugar, produces no such Ebullition, and is always bottled up in the Place in little Wicker Flasks; but the other in Stone Bottles. He adds, That near the great Well in the Town, there's another lesser one arch'd, the Water of which seems to be stronger than the other; and he thinks it deserves Observation, that there are several Springs both in the Town and Wood near those Chalybeat Waters, which have nothing either of their Taste or Virtue.

Other Places in this Diocese are, 1. *Horn*, a small Town with a Castle, on the *Maes*, Capital of its County, formerly belonging to the Dukes of *Burgundy*, afterwards to particular Lords, but now to the See of *Liege*. 2. *Maseick*, a little Town within a quarter of a League of the *Maes*, 18 Miles N. from *Maastricht*, of Importance, because of the Passage over that River. 3. *Loos*, *Lotz*, or *Borchloen*, a rich little Town betwixt *Tongerén* and *St. Truden*, Capital of its County, and about 6 English Miles distant from each. It had formerly Counts of its own, but was united to the See of *Liege* in 1372. It has a Collegiate Church, dedicated to *St. Odulphus*. 4. *St. Truden*, or *St. Tron*, a Wall'd Town on the Frontiers of *Brabant*, in the County of *Haebaye*. It has its Name from *St. Trudo*, who was martyr'd here in the 7th Century, and has a Monastery of *Benedictines* dedicated to his Memory. Sometimes 'tis called *Centron*, whence some have thought it was the Seat of the *Centrones* mentioned in *Cæsar's* Commentaries. One half of the Town is subject to the Bishop of *Liege*, and the other to the Abbot of the *Benedictines*. 'Tis fortified with a good Wall. 5. *Bilsen*, a small Town two German Leagues from *Maastricht*, and 4 from *Liege*. 'Twas destroyed by Fire in 1636, but well rebuilt since. Near this Town, there's a Nunnery called *Münsterbilsen*, richly endow'd

for young Ladies of Quality, who are allow'd to marry at Discretion. Among other Rarities here, they have a complete Unicorn's Horn near 7 Foot long. 6. *Hasselt*, a well built and populous Town on the *Demer*, 4 German Miles from *Maastricht*, and 6 from *Liege*, where the Bishop has a noble Palace, in which he resides sometimes. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Hassilius* and *Titelmannus*, two eminent Writers. Near this City lies the rich *Cisterian* Nunnery of *Hirckenrod*. 7. *Cowvin*, in the Forreft of *Lagne*, a small City, purchas'd by the Bishop of *Liege* from the Counts of *Hainault* about the End of the 11th Century. It lies 12 Miles S. W. from *Charleroy*. 8. *Verviers*, a large Town, well built, on the same River with *Franchimont*.

The Dutchy of Berg,

HAS its Name from its Mountainous Soil, has the Dutchy of *Juliers* on the W. the County of *March* on the N. the Dutchy of *Westphalia* on the E. and Part of the Electorate of *Cologne* on the S. 'Tis about 50 Miles long on the Banks of the *Rhine*, and 20 where broadest. 'Twas govern'd formerly by Lords of its own, but at last came to the House of *Juliers*, and was made a Dutchy in 1389, and came to the Family of *Cleves* in 1505; whose Male-Issue failing, a Dispute happen'd about the Succession by several Descendants from Daughters of the Family, which occasion'd great Troubles in *Germany*. The Family of *Brandenburg*, with the Assistance of the *Dutch*, maintain'd their Pretensions; and the Family of *Newburg* maintain'd theirs by the Assistance of the *Spaniards* in like manner; but at last they came to an Agreement, as we have formerly mentioned, in 1614, which was renewed and confirmed in 1651.

The chief PLACES are,

1. *Dusseldorp*, the Metropolis of the Dutchy, and Residence of the Duke of *Newburg*, now Elector *Palatine*, on the E. Banks of the *Rhine*, 26 Miles below *Cologne*, and 6 above *Keyserswart*. The Publick Buildings towards the *Rhine* make a very good Appearance, particularly the Duke's Palace, which

which is a very stately and noble Fabrick. The Town has its Name from a small River called *Duffel*, which empties it self here into the *Rhine*. 'Twas anciently an Imperial City, had a much greater Trade than at present; and in those Days, the Channel of the *Rhine* lay under its Walls; but Vessels cannot now come so close. They have three great Markets for Corn every Week, where great Quantities are bought up and exported. In the Collegiate Church, there are many Monuments of the ancient Dukes of *Juliers* and *Bergen*; but the most stately is that of Duke *William*, the last of the Family. They had formerly a small University, which the Jesuits have of late endeavour'd to restore; but without Effect. The Town is pretty large, and well fortified, but has no Suburbs. *Monconys* says, it has a Citadel, separated from the Town by a small Harbour, into which the *Rhine* enters, and forms a sort of a Gulph. The Jesuits have a fine College here, and a good Seminary for poor Scholars. The Citadel consists only of two Royal Bastions, fac'd with Brick, command the *Rhine*, and cover the City on that Side, which is fortified all round with fine Bastions, and Cavaliers upon them.

2. Not far from *Dusseldorp* stands *Geriheim*, a noble Village, comparable to several Cities in the Empire.

3. *Essen*, on the Borders of the County of *Marck*, 15 Miles N. E. from *Dusseldorp*. 'Twas made an Imperial Town, and had its Privileges confirmed by *Charles V.* in 1523. 'Tis famous for a noble and rich Nunnery founded about 877 by *St. Alfrid*, Bishop of *Hildesheim*; to which belongs the greatest Part of the Town, and several large neighbouring Mannors. The Revenues were settled at first for an Abbeys and 52 Nuns, and 20 Canons, whose Numbers have since been retrench'd. They admit none but the Daughters of Noblemen, who are permitted to marry at Pleasure. The Citizens are noted for making good Fire-Arms, and the adjacent Country abounds with Coal and Wheat.

4. *Bensburg*, a strong Fort and Monastery, built in 1298, of the Order of the *Holy Cross*, and the first of its kind in the Empire.

5. *Solingen*, a small City on the River

Wipper, 15 Miles S. E. from *Dusseldorp*, noted for making good Cutlers Ware.

6. *Wipperford*, on the same River, 15 Miles S. E. from *Solingen*, a small City, but formerly more considerable, when destroy'd by the *Normans* in 881.

The County of Marck,

IS reckon'd the largest County in *Westphalia*, and is supposed to derive its Name from having been the Boundary of Ancient *Germany* towards *Gallia Belgica*. It lies betwixt the *Lippe* and the *Roer*, and is commonly divided into the 15. Bailiwicks of *Isenlohe*, *Huerde*, *Altena*, *Boecksum*, *Schwartzenburg*, *Wetter*, *Hamm*, *Schwerten*, *Lunen*, *Unna*, *Newstat*, *Blaukenstein*, *Rade*, *Werden*, and *Camen*. *La Forrest* adds *Dorsmund*, as belonging also to this Country; which, according to *Moll*, is 43 Miles long from S. E. to N. W. and where broadest about 47 from E. to W.

The principal TOWNS are,

1. *Hamm*, on the Frontiers of *Munster*, 45 Miles S. E. from *Dusseldorp*, and 25 S. from *Munster*. 'Tis a poor Hans-Town on the River *Lippe*, and Capital of the County. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1673, but restor'd to the Elector of *Brandenburg* the Year after. The adjoining Country is fruitful in Corn, Hemp, and Flax, and the Townsmen have a good Income by Travellers betwixt *Germany* and the *Netherlands*.

2. *Unna*, another Hans-Town, in a large Plain, 9 Miles S. from *Hamm*. 'Tis less than the former, tho' formerly a Place of good Trade, before the Wars betwixt the Families of *Brandenburg* and *Newburg*, when it was reckon'd one of the richest Cities of *Low Germany*.

3. *Altena*, an ancient City, which formerly gave Title to the Counts of *Marck*, till about 1053, when the Count of *Altena* made himself Master of *Marck*, an old ruinous Place near *Hamm*, but then a considerable City. 'Tis remarkable for little now but its Castle.

4. *Werden*, on the Banks of the *Roer*, built in 1317. It lies 10 Miles N. E. from *Dusseldorp*, and is noted for the Monastery of *St. Lud.*

St. Ludger, whose Abbot founded it. Their chief Trade is in feeding Swine, of which vast Herds are brought hither Annually from other Parts of *Westphalia*, and great Numbers of Hams are every Year exported from hence. The River supplies them with Plenty of Eels, and other Fish, and the adjacent Fields abound with Corn. 'Tis a pretty neat City. The Abbey was seculariz'd by the Treaty of *Münster* in Favour of the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

5. *Soest*, on the River *Arse*, 15 Miles E. from *Hamm*. 'Tis a fair and large Imperial City, and reckon'd the largest in *Westphalia* next to *Münster*. 'Tis fortified with a double Wall, upon which stand 30 Turrets or Watch-Towers, and is encompassed with a large deep Ditch. It consists of 10 Parishes, but has many more Churches and Chapels. The Citizens have a Privilege to hunt and kill Venison in any of the neighbouring Countries, and have also a Supreme Court of Judicature, from which there lies no Appeal but to the Chamber of *Spires*. The Emperor *Frederick I.* bestowed this City and the Duchy of *Westphalia* upon *Reinold* Archbishop of *Cologne*, for his Service against *Henry the Lion* Duke of *Saxony*; but the Citizens finding their Privileges invaded by some of his Successors about 1441, they put themselves under the Protection of other Princes, and are now under that of the K. of *Prussia*; but the Collegiate Church of *St. Patroclus* is still under the Jurisdiction of the Elector of *Cologne*.

6. *Dortmund*, on the River *Empser*, 13 Miles S. W. from *Hamm*. It was formerly Capital of a County, which the Lords of it sold to the Inhabitants; upon which they took the Title of an Imperial City, which the Elector of *Brandenburg* disputes with them. 'Tis also one of the Hans-Towns, and tho' small, rich and populous. 'Twas formerly reckon'd the Capital of *Mark*.

The County of Ravensberg,

Takes its Name from a strong Fort on the Top of a Hill near the River *Hessel*. The whole Country is mountainous and rocky, has the Bishoprick of *Osnabrug* on the N. the Duchy of *Westphalia* on the S. the County of *Lippe* on the E. and

the Bishoprick of *Münster* on the W. It belongs to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, to whom it gives the Title of Count.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. *Bielevelt*, a strong Hans-Town, 7 Miles S. E. from *Ravensberg*, and 16 from *Osnabrug*, at the bottom of a great Hill, defended by the impregnable Fort of *Sporenberg*. It made a brave Defence against the French in the former Wars, when having gain'd a Hill which hangs over the Town, they play'd hard upon it with Grenado's and Fire-Balls, against which the Burgers cover'd their Houses with Webs of Linen-Cloth, which is their chief Manufacture, dip'd in Milk, that prevented their receiving any great Damage.

2. *Hervorden*, *Herwerden*, or *Herfurt*, another Hans-Town, 7 Miles N. E. from *Bielevelt*, in a pleasant Country, on the Conflux of the *As* and *Wehre*. 'Tis noted for a noble Nunnery, whose Abbess is a Princess of the Empire, and has a Vote in the Diet. 'Twas founded in 832 by Prince *Waltger*, who was converted by *St. Boniface*, as appears by an Inscription in the Chapel dedicated to *St. Waltger*. This Nunnery embrac'd the Reformation above 100 Years ago, and the Abbess and Nuns are *Calvinists*. The late Abbess was the learned Princess *Elizabeth*, Sister to the Electress Dowager of *Hanover*. She was the Miracle of her Sex, as may be perceived by the Letters that pass'd betwixt her and Monsieur *Des Cartes*, which are published in that great Man's Works. On a little Hill without the City, there's another Nunnery, which was founded by the Abbey of *Hervorden*, and serves it for a Nursery. They have a Deanness, Treasurers, and all the other Offices that belong to Collegiate Churches.

Dr. Nicholson gives the following Account of its Foundation, as he had it from one of their Vicars: In the Times of Popery, the Nuns of *Hervorden* having resolv'd to build a Church, they were inform'd by a Shepherd, that their Patroness the Virgin *Mary* appear'd to him like a Dove, sitting on the Stump of a Tree, and bid him tell them, She would have it built on that Hill, which they would not believe, except he would first

first hold a red-hot Iron in his bare Hand, and go bare-foot over some burning Ploughshares, which the Legend says he perform'd without any Hurt. Near the Altar, they show the Stump of the Tree, guarded with Bars of Iron; and an Annual Fair is still kept on the Hill, which from thence is called the *Vision Market*.

3. *Engern*, or *Angrivaria*, so called from the *Angrivarii*, the ancient Inhabitants of those Parts. 'Twas formerly a famous Town, and the Residence of King *Witekind*, who founded a Collegiate Church here of the Order of *St. Denis*. *Witekind* was buried in it, and his Epitaph was still legible within these few Years; but the Town being destroyed, and now only a poor Village, the Members of the College removed to *Herford*, where they still show some Relicks and other Rarities belonging to their Ancestors. This Town gives Title of Duke to the Elector of *Cologne*.

4. *Plotzwe*, on the *Weser*, 15 Miles E. from *Herwarden*, was anciently a Barony, that reached as far as *Herwarden*; but has for some Ages been reckoned Part of *Ravensberg*. The Castle was built by the Dukes of *Brunswick* for the Count of *Waldeck*, then Baron of this Place. The Town is conveniently seated for Trade; the River there being capable of large Ships.

The Dutchy of Cleve,

IS reckon'd one of the oldest Principalities in *Germany*, being first conferred upon *Ælius Gracilius*, or *Gracilius*, the Companion of *Charles Martel*, in his Expeditions against the *Frisons*, *Saxons*, and *Bavarians*: But *La Forrest* says, 'twas given him by King *Pepin* about 759. His Posterity match'd with the Family of *March* in 1532, by which they procured that County, and one of their Successors was created Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperor *Sigismund* in 1417. The Country is well furnished with Woods, Corn, and Pasturage, and is watered by the *Rhine*, the *Roor*, the *Lippe*, and the *Niersse*. The chief Forreſt is that of *Duysburg*, which almost encompasses that Town, and is thought by some to be this mention'd by *Tacitus*, and other ancient Authors, under the Name of *Sylva Teutoburgensis*. This Dutchy has the Dutch

Netherlands on the N. The Territories of *Cologne* and *Berg* on the S. Part of *Guelderland* on the W. and the Bishoprick of *Munster* on the E. *Moll* makes it 46 Miles long from S. E. to N. W. and about 20 where broadest.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. *Cleve*, so call'd from its Situation on the Rising of a Hill. It stands above 60 M. below *Cologne*, and about 11 S. E. from *Nimwegen*, within a League of the *Rhine*, in one of the finest Countries in *Germany*. *Cluverius* thinks it to be the Remains of the old *Colonia Ulpia Trajana*; the Main of which he supposes was at *Kellen*, about an English Mile from *Cleve*. It appears by several remarkable Ruins to have been formerly much larger than now, which favours *Cluverius's* Opinion. Over the S. Gate, there's the Monument of *Eumenius Rhetor*, who is said to have taught Oratory here; and under it there's an Inscription, which says, he liv'd here in the Time of *Julius Caesar*, who founded the Castle; of *Augustus*, who garrison'd it; of *Ulpian Trajanus*, who made it a Colony; and of *Ælius Adrianus*, who made it a City: But *Eumenius Rhetor's* being here, is strongly argued against by *Lippinus*, and stoutly defended by *Pighius*. The Castle is a Place of no great Strength, but pleasantly seated on the Top of an Hill; and there's a curious Prospect of the neighbouring Country from the Top of that called the *Swan Tower*. The City is little, but well Peopled, being the Residence of the Elector's Deputies who govern the Country, and the Place where the States assemble, who hold their Meeting in the Castle. There are several fine Houses here belonging to Persons of Quality; but those of the ordinary Burgers are mean. The great Church, a Monastery of *Capuchins*, and another of *Franciscans*, are the only Publick Buildings of Note, except the Castle. The Government of the City and Country is in the Hands of the *Calvinists*, who have a large handsome Church here; but the Publick Churches are possessed by the *Papists* in most Places of this Dutchy, by Agreement with the Duke of *Newburg*, who upon that Account is obliged to allow the Protestants a Liberty in his Dominions.

Mon-

Montconys says, the Town has no Fortifications; that the Castle is large, but irregular, and has two old square Dungeons; that it has very Majestick Apartments, and a great Hall, in the End of which there's an Alcove, to which they go up by 20 Steps, the whole Breadth of the Hall; from whence there's a Prospekt of the neighbouring Country further than one's Eye can reach, with a great Number of Cities and Villages, and a noble View of the Course of the *Rhine*, and of the River *Hel*, which runs by the Foot of the Castle. On the W. Side of the Town lies Prince *Maurice's* Parks, where there are a great many pleasant Ponds and Water-Works, Grotto's, &c. Above them, lies the high Hill called *Sternberg*, from whence one may see *Utrecht*, tho' 51 Miles distant, with near 40 other Cities and great Towns, 12 of which are seen through Walks cut in the Wood; at the End of each of which appears a fair rich City. On the E. Side stands the Prince's House in the Wood, where, among other Rarities, there's a notable Collection of old Roman Urns, and other Monuments of Antiquity, with several Inscriptions, omitted by *Gruterus*.

2. *Embrick*, on the E. Side of the *Rhine*, 4 Miles from *Cleve*. The Emperor *Rudolph* prevailed with the States of *Holland* to resign this Town to the Duke of *Cleve* in 1600, and at the same Time engaged the *Spaniards* to restore *Rhinberg* to the Elector of *Cologne*; but the *Spaniards* failing in their Performance, the States repossess'd themselves of *Embrick*, which they fortified; but restor'd it, with other Towns in that Duchy, to the late Elector of *Brandenburg*. The *Jesuits* have a College here, where they teach Youth. The Fortifications consisted of 8 or 9 very fine Bastions of Earth, Half-Moons of the same, and large deep Ditches on the Land Side; but on the Side of the *Rhine*, which is very broad there, they have only a Wall. They have always a small Garrison; but the Fortifications are neglected of late. 'Twas taken by the *French* when they invaded the *Netherlands* in 1672, but was restored in 1674. 'Tis a very ancient City, one of the *Hans-Towns*, and has a pretty good Trade. Over against it, there's a large Island in the *Rhine*, on the Corner of which, next the Town, there

was a Fortification; which, together with the Cannon of the Place, commanded the River.

3. *Griet*, betwixt *Embrick* and *Rees*, on the *Rhine*, formerly a strong Place; but was taken by the *Netherlanders* in 1636.

4. *Gennep*, at the Mouth of the *Niersse*, over against *Guelderland*. 'Twas anciently a large populous City, well fortified, and the chief Defence of these Parts; but of late the Fortifications have been demolished. 'Tis well seated for Trade; but lying on the Frontiers of *Guelderland*, and being subject to frequent Attacks, it has lost its Commerce. The *Dutch*, because of its Situation in the Road betwixt *Nimeguen* and *Venlo*, took it in 1641. The River *Niersse* abounds with delicate Eels, and there's a very strong Fort at a small Distance from the Town. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1672, but restored after they demolished its Fortifications.

5. *Goch*, on the *Niersse*, a little above *Gennep*, a small fortified Town, which was taken by the *Netherlanders* in 1641.

6. *Calcar*, on the River *Men*, 7 Miles S. E. from *Cleve*. 'Twas built for a Place of Refuge in case of any sudden Invasion from *Guelderland*, or the Electorate of *Cologne*, and grew populous and rich by their Trade in Linen-Cloth, Malt, and Beer. Duke *Adolph I.* built a vast Granary here, where most of the neighbouring Boors bring their Corn to be made into Malt. It has a strong Castle, a fine Market-Place, and a stately Town-House. *St. Nicholas's* Church, and the *Dominican* Monastery, where they have a great Library, are noble Structures. In the Road betwixt this Town and *Santen*, stands the rich Monastery of *Marienboom*; on the Wall of which, next to the Road, there's a Latin Inscription, to testify their Gratitude to the late Elector in 1650, for accepting their great Collection of MSS. on Condition that he would not turn them out, and secularize their Revenues.

7. *Santen*, near the Banks of the *Rhine*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Calcar*. 'Tis an ancient Town, which some say was built by *Trojans*, that came hither under *Francus*, one of *Hector's* Sons, who call'd it *Troja Franco-rum*. Others say, 'twas built by the *Sicambri*, and that 'twas called *Santen*, because the *Theban* Legion suffer'd here under the

F f f f f

Em-

Emperor *Maximianus*, which is just as true as that it was built by the *Trojans*. *Pighius* is of Opinion, That it was the *Ulpia Trajana*; but *Cluverius*, with more Reason, thinks it is the *Vetera Castra* of *Tacitus*, where *Julius Caesar* resided for some Time. 'Tis now very much decayed; but in their great Church, there are many fine Altars of good Workmanship, with abundance of Relicks; and if you will believe them, they have a MS. of *St. Paul's* writing.

8. *Wesel*, called *Nether Wesel*, to distinguish it from *Wesel* in the Dominions of *Treves*. It lies on the E. Side of the *Rhine*, 6 Miles from *Santen*, and is the largest and best built Town in the Dutchy. 'Tis a Hans-Town, and usually reckon'd among the Imperial Cities of *Westphalia*; but the Princes of *Cleve* freed it from the Monthly Contributions paid by other Imperial Towns. 'Tis strong, populous, and well seated for Trade. It first grew rich by the Concourse of Merchants who came hither from the *Netherlands*, to avoid the *Spanish* Persecution; but suffer'd much by the *French*, who took and plunder'd it in 1672, and exacted great Contributions from the Inhabitants, which forc'd many of 'em to retire. 'Twas restored in 1674, and is govern'd by its own Laws; but owns the Elector for Sovereign. Among other Publick Buildings, there's a noble Hospital here, founded by a Chancellor of the Dutchy, and richly endowed for aged and decrepit People. In the Porch of the great Church here, was born *Peregrine Bertie*, afterwards Earl of *Lindsey*, by the Lady *Catharine*, Dutches Dowager of *Suffolk*, who with her Husband fled beyond Seas in the Time of Queen *Mary's* Persecution; and not daring to discover her Quality, was reduced to great Straits for some Time. *Monconys* says, the Ramparts of the Town are flank'd with 9 good Bastions, 4 of which are fac'd with Brick; that there are two Suburbs, well fortified with good Bastions, Half-Moons, and Ditches; and that in the middle of the Curtains, there are Galleries which enter into the Ditch, and have at the end of 'em separate Places for the Men and Women in case of a Siege. There's a small Harbour here for Vessels that sail on the *Rhine*, with several Monasteries.

9. *Rees*, 12 Miles N. W. from *Wesel*, a large well fortified Town. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1672, and restored in 1674. 'Twas formerly garrison'd by the *Dutch*. There was also a Fort on the other Side the *Rhine*. The Protestants have a Church here, where they have preserved a very fine Altar, which has an excellent Sculpture on gilt Wood, containing the History of our Saviour's Life.

10. *Burich*, a fortified Town over against *Wesel*, within a quarter of a League of the *Rhine*. 'Twas taken by the *Netherlanders* during the *Belgick* War, and by the *French* in 1672, but restor'd again in 1674.

11. *Alphen*, a little City about half a League S. from *Burich*.

12. *Orsoy*, another little City on the W. Bank of the *Rhine*, about 6 Miles S. E. from *Burich*. 'Twas well fortified, but taken by the *French* in 1672, and the Garrison and Burgers cruelly treated by the *French* King, because they offered to hold out against his Army.

13. *Dinslacken*, near the Banks of the *Rhine*, 7 Miles S. E. from *Wesel*, is called by the *German* Geographers *Locus Martis*, but without Ground. 'Twas taken by the *Netherlanders* in 1627; since which, it has never recover'd its ancient State.

14. *Roerort*, on the Mouth of the *Roer*, which was also taken and fortified by the *Netherlanders*.

15. *Duisburg*, on the Borders of *Cleve* and *Berg*, about 16 Miles N. E. from *Wesel*. 'Tis alledg'd by some to be the *Teutoburgum* of the Ancients; and some think that the *Salus Teutoburgensis*, where *Varnus* was slain with his *Roman* Legions, is that called the *Duisburg* Wood. They have had a long Controversy with the Princes of *Cleve* about their Title to be an Imperial City; but have hitherto paid all Subjection to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, who calls himself Supreme Lord of this Place. 'Twas formerly noted for Annual Fairs; but that Trade is now enjoyed by *Francfort*. 'Tis a small City, but strong, well fortified and populous. They have an University; and *St. Salvator* and *St. Mary's* Churches, with several Monasteries, are very fair Structures. 'Twas taken by the *French* under Marshal *Turenne* in 1672, but restor'd in 1674.

The Barony of RAVENSTEIN,

A small Tract of Land betwixt *Guelderland* and *Brabant*, has for some Ages been added to the *Dutchy of Cleve*, and has its Name from the Castle of *Ravenstein* on the *Maes*, a *German League* below *Grave*.

The Bishoprick of Munster,

HAS that of *Osnabrug* on the E. the *Dutchy of Cleve*, and Part of the *County of Zutphen*, on the W. the *Counties of Bentheim* and *Steinfurt* on the N. and the *County of Mark* on the S. The Country is generally barren and ill Peopled, is about 100 Miles in Length, but of an unequal Breadth, being in some Parts 20, in some 40, and in others 60. 'Tis entirely subject to the Bishop, who is a Count of the Empire, and able to maintain 15000 Men. The principal Commodity of this Country is *Westphalia Bacon*. Their Bishops, till the Time of *Bernard Van Galen*, were always reckon'd peaceable, and fond of a Neutrality when their Neighbours were at War, and paid 12000 Crowns Annually to the States of *Holland* for their Protection; but that Bishop join'd with the *French* and *English* against the *Dutch*; and because of his Military Inclinations, was courted by the greatest Potentates. In all the Variety of Fortunes, he was successful in his War, being so cunning as to change Sides opportunely. He made it his Business to foment Divisions among his Neighbours, and to receive Pensions on both Sides; but all his Conquests were not able to compensate the Ruin of his Diocese, and the Loss of so many Thousands of Men as were kill'd by his Means. He died in 1678, just upon the Peace betwixt *France*, *Spain*, and the *Netherlands*. Upon which his Neighbours and Subjects made this Remark, That 'twas time for him to walk off the Stage, when Men grew weary of War, and desirous of Peace.

Their chief PLACES are,

1. *Munster*, the Metropolis of *Westphalia*, in a fruitful Soil, near the Banks of the

Ems, well fortified by Nature and Art. It lies in Long. 26. 7. Lat. 52. 52 Miles N. E. from *Cleve*, and 22 S. W. from *Osnabrug*. The Houses are generally fair and well built, there being a good Quarry of Free-Stone at *Bamberg*, two *German Leagues* from the Town. It has 5 Collegiate Churches, and a College of Jesuits well frequented. The chief College is that of the Cathedral, consisting of a Dean and Chapter, who chuse the Bishop. The River *As* runs through the City, and the Fishing of it belongs to the Bishop. The Bishoprick was founded by *Charlemagne* in 758, who made *St. Ludgar* their first Bishop. It has a strong Castle, and was formerly an Imperial Town; but was taken by *Bernard Galen* in 1661, and has since lost that Privilege. The Revenues of the Diocese were reckon'd in 1661 at 300000 Crowns per Annum; but are now much abated. This City is famous for the bloody Tragedy acted there in 1533 by the Enthusiastical Anabaptists, under the Conduct of *John Buckholt*, a Taylor, born at *Leyden* in *Holland*, and on that Account called *John of Leyden*. He brought over to his Party *Rothman*, a Minister of the Suburbs, who had embrac'd *Luther's* Doctrine, and successfully preach'd it in the City. The Senate endeavour'd to suppress those Disorders; but the Faction grew so strong, that they were obliged to give them a Toleration. After this, *Buckholt's* Followers pretended to Revelations, and bawl'd about the Streets, commanding all Men to repent, and be baptiz'd. Then they seiz'd the Town-Hall, with the publick Arms and Ammunition, and usurp'd the Government: After which they sent *Rothman* and *Knipperdolling* privately to invite all of their Perswasion in the neighbouring Countries, which fill'd the Town with Anabaptists, who drove out the other Inhabitants. In 1534, the Bishop besieg'd them, but in vain. In the mean Time *John of Leyden* took the Title of King, and made one of his Concubines Queen, whom he afterwards beheaded, for shewing a Dislike at some of his Frantick Tricks. In 1535, the Bishop, assisted by the Landgrave of *Hesse*, and the Troops of *Cologne*, surpris'd the City, by the Direction of a Deserter, took the Mock King, with his two great Favourites, and sent them in Derision to the

F f f f 2

neigh

neighbouring Courts. Next Year *John of Leyden* was torn to Pieces with hot Pincers, and his Bones hung in an Iron Cage on the Top of a Steeple. This City is also famous for the Treaty of *Westphalia*, concluded here in 1648. The Bishop is Suffragan to the Elector of Cologne.

2. *Meppen*, at the Mouth of the *Hase*, on the Frontiers of *Friesland*, 43 Miles N. from *Munster*. 'Twas fortified by *Gustavus*, a Swedish General, and afterwards sold to *Charles Lodewick*, Count *Palatine of the Rhine*, for 60000 Crowns. 'Tis reckon'd the Key of *East-Friesland*, and was taken by the *Netherlanders* in 1587. 'Tis the chief Town of *Lower Munster*.

3. *Hafelungen*, 10 Miles E. from *Meppen*. In 1639, 70 Imperialists surpris'd and defeated 100 Swedes, who besieged this small Place, which was defended by 50 Men.

4. *Kloppenburg*, 16 Miles N. E. from *Hafelungen*. 'Twas taken by the Swedes in 1635, and regularly fortified; but soon after surrendered to the Imperialists.

5. *Vech*, a small City near the Confines of *Osnabrug*, 13 Miles S. E. from *Kloppenburg*, formerly subject to Lords of its own, and is Capital of a County of 15 Parishes, each of which contain 10. or 12 Villages; and in the whole, there are 31 Seats of People of Quality. In 1394, the Duke of *Lunenburgh* and Count of *Hoy* invaded the Bishoprick of *Osnabrug*, and carried off much Plunder; but were surpris'd and defeated by the Burgers of *Vech*; who rescued the Prisoners and Booty.

6. *Warenberg*, on the *Ems*, said to have been built by *Varus*, a Roman Captain, who was kill'd at *Paderborn* in a Sedition, under the Reign of *Augustus*.

7. *Stromberg*, S. of *Warenberg*, Capital of a Burgraviate, for which the Bishops of *Munster* obtain'd in 1653. a Vote in the Diet.

8. *Goesfelt*, a small fortified Hans-Town on the River *Borkel*, 20 Miles W. from *Munster*, and the usual Place of the Bishop's Residence.

9. *Abusen*, or *Afenhuys*, on the *Regge*, Capital of a large Barony. It lies 15 Miles N. W. from *Meppen*.

10. *Borklee*, on the River *Borkel*, Capital of a Barony, which belongs to the Counts of *Stirum*.

11. *Tilligt*, on the *Ems*, noted for a Convention of the States of *Munster* in 1532, to oppose the Growth of *Lutheranism*.

12. *Rheyn*, a small neat City on the River *Ems*, 18 Miles N. from *Munster*.

There are several other Market-Towns in this Bishoprick, of which we have no Description.

The Bishoprick of Paderborn,

IS so large, that it contains 24 Market-Towns, 20 Seats of Men of Quality, 16 Monasteries, and 54 Parishes. It has on the E. the Dutchy of *Brunswick*, and Part of *Hesse*; on the W. the Dutchy of *Westphalia*; on the S. the County of *Waldeck*; and on the N. that of *Lippe*; and is, according to *Moll*, 43 Miles long, and 23 broad. There's a great Concourse of Drovers from *France*, *Brabant*, &c. to their Annual Fairs. They abound with Deer and other Venison, rich Springs of Salt, and have some Iron Mines.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. *Paderborn*, on the River *Pader*, a large, fine, and populous City, and one of the Hans-Towns, in Long. 30. 28. Lat. 51. 40. 32 Miles S. W. from *Cassel*, and 50 N. E. from *Munster*. The Bishoprick was founded by *Charlemagne* in 777, and is Suffragan of *Mentz*. 'Twas liberally endowed by neighbouring Princes. The *Romish* Legends make the Foundation of this Bishoprick miraculous; and say, That *Charles the Great* encamping on that Ground where the City now stands, his Army being at that Time in great Want of Water, the first Pin that was struck in the Ground to fasten his Pavilion gave Issue to a plentiful Spring, that now drives some Water-Mills; on which the Emperor order'd the Church to be built upon that Spring, from which the Town derives its Name: But if the opening of every Fountain be a Miracle, there are abundance performed by Labourers every Day. *La Forrest* and others alledge, That 'twas here where the Romans under *Varus* were defeated by *Arminius*, the General of the *Cherusci*; but *Claverius*, in the Third Book of his *Germania Antiqua*, offers many

Aut.

Authorities to prove, that *Varus* was defeated betwixt the Mountains and the Town of *Dietmelle*, which he takes to be the ancient *Teutobergum*, that lies about 12 Miles N. E. from *Paderborn*, and is by *Aimonius* call'd *Theothmelli*, which differs little from its present Name. To the Objection rais'd from *Ptolomy*, that this Battle happen'd near the River *Weser*, he answers, That *Ptolomy* mention'd this, because 'twas the most noted River near the Place of Battle, being within 11 or 12 Miles of it; which confutes those who would have *Duysburg* in the Dutchy of *Cleve* to be the ancient *Teutoburgum*, and that *Varus* was defeated in that called *Duysburg Wood*, there being 95 Miles distance betwixt *Duysburg* and *Dietmelle*. *Pomarius*, in his Chronicle of *Magdeburg*, says, That *Charlemagne* order'd the greatest Part of the *Westphalians* and *Saxons* to be baptiz'd in this Fountain at *Paderborn* in 776, and 777. The most remarkable Publick Structures in this City are, the Bishop's Palace and the Cathedral, to which *Otto II.* gave a Golden Crucifix of 60 Pound Weight, valued at 60000 crowns. *La Forrest* says, the Chapter is composed of 24 Capitular Canons, who are all obliged to study in some French or Italian University; and that the Cathedral is one of the finest in Germany. They lost their Privilege of being an Imperial City since 1604, when they were subjected to their Bishop. In *Luther's* Time, the Citizens began to embrace the Reformation; but *Herman* Archbishop of *Cologne* being elected their Bishop, he condemned 16 of the chief Burgers who embrac'd the Reformation to die, and forc'd the rest to swear, they would never endeavour any Alteration in Religion. *Theodore of Furstemberg*, their Bishop, built the adjacent Castle in 1590, and founded their University in 1592.

2. *Lippespring*, or *Lippesburg*, about a German League N. from *Paderborn*, so called from the River *Lippe*, which rises in a large Stream in this Town. It stands on the Edge of a Heath, two German Miles long, uninhabited, and much infested by Robbers. The Dean and Chapter of *Paderborn*, who are Lords of this Town, have a Castle here, near the Place where the River springs, which, before it leaves the Town, drives 3 or 4 Mills.

3. *Warburg*, a Hans-Town on the *Dymel*, 18 Miles S. E. from *Paderborn*, was formerly subject to Counts of its own, that were Members of the *Westphalian* States; but is now under the Bishop. It stands in a fruitful Soil, drives a great Trade in brewing strong palatable Beer, and has a considerable Income from the neighbouring Mines of Iron and Lead.

4. *Lude*, *Ludge*, or *Loy*, a Town properly in the County of *Pyrmont*, but subject to the Bishop. It lies 27 Miles N. E. from *Paderborn*, and is noted for a Medicinal Fountain, called the *Holy Well*, reckon'd a sovereign Remedy for most Distempers, and upon that Account much frequented. 'Tis also noted for *Charlemagne's* Encampment here in 787.

5. *Brackel*, on the River *Brug*, formerly an Imperial Town, but now subject to the Bishop. It lies 18 Miles E. from *Paderborn*.

6. *Hersel*, on the *Weser*, built by *Charlemagne* in the 8th Century, when he held a Meeting of the Estates there. It had a fine Castle, which was burnt by the *Hessians* in 1637.

7. *Buren*, 5 Miles S. from *Paderborn*, purchas'd from its own Lords by the Bishop in the 16th Century: 'Twas burnt by the Swedes in 1636, but since rebuilt.

8. *Welsburg*, on the River *Alme*, famous for the Cruelty of the *Huns* to the Inhabitants about 450.

9. *Solkot*, 8 Miles S. W. from *Paderborn*, noted for its Salt Pits, which bring in a considerable Revenue.

Our *Philosophical Transactions* of December, 1665, tell us of a Spring in this Bishoprick which loses it self twice in 24 Hours, but returns again with such Violence, that it drives 3 Mills not far from its Source; and because of its Noise, is called by the Inhabitants *Bolderburn*, or the Boisterous Spring. *Morery* says, it lies near *Oldenbeck*, in *Tourburg* Forrest; that it sometimes runs about an Hour, and then stops for three; that it ceas'd running from 1630, to 1638; after which it had a regular Course like other Springs: But the *Philosophical Transactions* being later, we may suppose that it now runs and stops by Turns. The *Philosophical Transactions* of January, 1665, gives us an Account of another Fountain called *Mirburn*, about two Miles from *Paderborn*, which rises

ses with a treble Spring; two of which, tho' not above a Foot and a half distant, differ so much in Quality, that whereas one of 'em is limpid, bluish, luke-warm, bubbling, and holding Sal Armoniac, Ochra, Iron, Vitriol, Allum, Sulphur, Nitre, Orpiment, us'd against Epilepsies, bad Spleens, and the Worms; the other is ice-cold, turbid, and whitish, much stronger in Taste, and heavier than the former, holding much Orpiment, Salt, Nitre, Iron, and some Sal Armoniac. All Birds that drink of it, are observed to die of Convulsions; but if they have common Salt given them immediately after, they do not die so soon: If they have Vinegar given them, they do not die at all; but in 7 or 8 Days after are troubled with the Pip. The Lungs of such as dy'd being open'd, they were found quite shrivel'd up: Yet People who are troubled with the Worms, taking a small Quantity of it mix'd with common Water, it kills the Worms, and brings them away in great Numbers; but makes the Patient very sick. The 3d Stream, that lies lower than the other two, and 20 Paces from them, is greenish, very clear, and of a pleasant Taste, partaking both of Sour and Sweet. 'Tis of a middle Weight, betwixt the other two, and is supposed to be a Mixture of both: For the Gentleman who sent this Account to the *Royal Society*, says, he mix'd an equal Quantity of the two former with a little common Fountain Water, and when they were stir'd together, and suffer'd to settle, they made a Water of the same Colour and Taste with the 3d Spring. We refer the Curious for a further Account of these, and other Springs in this Country, to the Works of *Taberna-Montanus*.

The Abbey of C O R B E Y,

Lies on the E. of this Bishoprick, betwixt it and the River *Weser*. Its Jurisdiction is about 16 Miles long, and 8 broad. The Town of *Corbey*, from whence it has its Name, lies on the *Weser*, 27 Miles E. from *Paderborn*, and, with the adjoining Country, is subject to its Abbot, who is a Prince of the Empire. *La Forrest* says, the Abbey was founded by St. *Adelard*, Abbot of *Corbey* in *France*, about 822, and by him called *New Corbey*. But others say, 'twas

founded by the Emperor *Lewis I.* It stands in the *Solanger Forrest*, and is half encompassed by the *Weser*. He also founded an University here, where several German Bishops have been bred. Their first Rector was *Anscharius*, several of whose Scholars were sent by the same Emperor to convert the Island of *Rugen*; for which the Emperor *Lotharius* bestow'd it upon this Abbey, according to his Vow, when he went to conquer it, That he would bestow it on St. *Vite*, who lay buried in that Monastery, as appears by his *Diploma*, sign'd at *Aix la Chapelle* the 20th of May, 844. *Letzner*, in his Chronicle of this Abbey, gives an Account of all the Abbots and famous Writers buried here; among whom he reckons *Witkind*, a famous Saxon Historian. Near this Place was found the Saxon Idol *Irmenscul*, formerly mentioned.

To this Monastery belongs the City of *Hexter* or *Huxer*, on the *Weser*, 4 Miles S. W. from *Corbey*. 'Tis a fair Town, of good Trade, by the Conveniency of the River, which occasions many of the German Nobility to keep their Houses here, for the Improvement of their Estates by Trade and Merchandize; a Practice not common to Germans of Quality. This Town suffered much during the Civil Wars, when 1500 Men were kill'd in one Siege, and thrown into the *Weser*; but it has since recover'd much of its ancient Lustre, has 3 fair Parish-Churches, and has several other Publick Buildings of Note. *La Forrest* says, it's now a Free Town, under the Protection of the Dukes of *Brunswick*. There are several other Towns and Mannors belonging to this Abbey, but not worth describing.

The County of Lippe,

IS a small Tract of Land S. of the Bishoprick of *Paderborn*. *Moll* makes it 35 Miles where longest, and about 11 where broadest. The Princes of this County are Counts of *Ritberg*, and some other Places in the Neighbourhood, which make them more considerable than the first View of their Dominions in the Map would seem to do. Some German Heralds derive their Pedigree from *Manlius*, who so bravely defended

ded the Roman Capital against the Gauls. Others bring them from the two *Ursini*. But all agree, that they are of ancient Roman Extract. They are divided into the Branches of *Diethmold*, *Brackel*, and *Buckemburg*, and have married into great Families.

Their TOWNS of Note are,

1. *Diethmelle*, *Diethmold*, or *Diethmold*, about 12 Miles N. E. from *Paderborn*, and is the chief Residence of the eldest House. *Clu-verius* derives the Name from *Dith* or *Diet*, the same with *Teuto*, the old German Idol; and, as we have mention'd before, makes it the ancient *Teutoburgum*. 'Tis also remarkable for a great Overthrow given to the Saxons in its Neighbourhood by *Charlemagne*, in his 6th Expedition against those People. The Town is small, and subsists chiefly upon the Court of the Prince.

2. *Lippe*, or *Lippeslat*, Lat. *Lippia*, on the River *Lippe*, 20 Miles W. from *Paderborn*, 35 S. E. from *Munster*, and 36 S. from *Osna-brug*. 'Twas built by Count *Bernard II.* in 1150, who was Son to *Bernard I.* Count of *Oberwal*, Favourite to the Emperor *Lotharius II.* The Town is well fortified, and by the Inhabitants reckon'd impregnable. It made a brave Resistance against *Dietrich Archbishop of Cologne* in 1447. The Fortifications have been much improved since, and 'twas the first Place in those Parts which resisted the French with any Success in their late Wars, that were concluded by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. Their chief Trade is in preparing Timber for building Vessels on the *Rhine*, to which it has an easy Conveyance by the River *Lippe*. 'Twas formerly the chief Residence of the oldest House of *Lippe*, to whom the County still belongs; but the City is now possessed by the King of *Prussia*.

3. *Horn*, an old Town near *Diethmold*, thought to be seated in or near the Place where *Varus* was defeated. It had Counts of its own till 1567, that it was made subject to the Counts of *Lippe*.

4. *Lemgow*, 15 Miles N. E. from *Paderborn*, and 5 N. from *Diethmold*, a rich and near Hans-Town on the River *Pega*, in a Country abounding with Corn. The Citizens are ingenious and industrious; two Qualities, says *Dr. Nicholson*, not very com-

mon in those Parts. Tho' they be subject to the Counts of *Lippe*, they have as large Privileges as other Hans-Towns, and are one of the Estates of *Westphalia*. The People are generally Lutherans, and have a good Gymnasium, and a Press for the Use of the Scholars.

5. *Uffen*, or *Salzuffen*, in the Road betwixt *Lemgow* and *Hervordren*, noted for a noble Salt-Spring; and a strong Cloth made here, and exported in great Quantities.

6. *Pyrmont*, a strong Fort near *Ludge*, about two German Miles from *Hamel* in the Dutchy of *Brunswick*. It had formerly Counts of its own, who were also Counts of *Spiegelberg*; but their Male-Issue failing, it came by Marriage to the Counts of *Lippe* in 1557.

7. *Ritberg*, a large Town with a Castle, on the *Ems*, 10 Miles N. E. from *Lippstat*. It had formerly Counts of its own; but *John*, the last of 'em, who rais'd a Disturbance among the States of *Westphalia*, was unanimously oppos'd by them, taken and imprison'd at *Cologne*, where he died. Upon which *Ritberg* came to the Count of *Lippe*, who married one of his Daughters; but it pays some Acknowledgment to the Bishop of *Paderborn*.

The County of Schawenburg.

HAS the Dominions of the House of *Brunswick* on the N. E. and S. and of the latter Part of the County of *Lippe*, with the Principality of *Minden*, on the W. *Moll* makes it 30 Miles long, and 17 broad. It abounds with Corn and Hay, Quarries of Free-Stone, of which they export great Quantities, Salt-Pits, Timber, Coal, Allum, Chalk, Venison; and some Years ago they had Copper Mines, in which there were some small Quantities of Gold, and Silver-Ore, which *Dr. Nicholson* thinks now to be lost. 'Tis water'd by the *Wefer*, *Hamel*, *Awe*, *Caspaw*, and the *Exter*; from which, and the *Steinhuder-See*, a Lake 5 Miles long, and 2 broad, they are plentifully supplied with Fish, especially *Perch*, for Consumption and Export. *La Forrest* says, this County was given by the Emperor *Conrad II.* to *Adolph*, a Saxon Lord, about 1032; whose Posterity failing in 1459, *Christian* of *Oldenburg*, King of

of Denmark, descended from a Daughter of the Family, fell Heir to it. *Otho*, descended from another Daughter, had the County of *Pimmenberg*; but his Posterity failing, *Pimmenberg* was divided betwixt the King of Denmark and the Duke of *Holstein*; and most of *Schawenburg* fell to the Landgrave of *Hesse-Cassel*, with which the *Atlas Historique* agrees.

The PLACES of Note here are,

1. *Schawenburg*, an old Castle on the Top of an high Hill on the E. Side the *Weser*, 17 Miles E. from *Minden*, and was the ancient Seat of their Counts.

2. *Buckenburgh*, the Seat of the 2d Branch of the House of *Lippe*, 12 Miles W. from *Schawenburg*. *Cluverius* thinks it to be the *As Bructerorum* of the Ancients, well known in the Time of *Tacitus* for Sacrifices offer'd there to *Hercules*, or an Idol that resembled him. It has nothing remarkable but the Count's Palace, which is a stately Fabrick.

3. *Rentelen*, on the W. Bank of the *Weser*, about 17 Miles N. E. from *Lemgow*, where there is a *Gymnasium*.

4. *Stathagen*, a pleasant little Wall'd City, in the middle of a large Forrest, 17 Miles W. from *Hanover*, and 8 N. from *Schawenburg*. 'Twas built by Count *Adolph* for a Residence of Pleasure, as appears by the Inscription on the Seal of the Town.

5. *Oldendorf*, a little strong Town about 5 Miles S. E. from *Schawenburg*. The Imperialists besieg'd it in vain in 1633, but took and plunder'd it in 1639. The Counts of *Lippe* have a Custom-House here, where all Vessels that pass up and down the *Weser* pay a Duty.

6. *Saxeibagen*, a Town with a strong Fort in the most Northerly Part of the County, about 16 Miles N. W. from *Hanover*.

The Principality of *Minden*.

MOL makes it about 26 Miles where longest from S. to N. and much the same Breadth from E. to W. It has the County of *Hoy* on the N. and *Lippe* on the S. and abounds with Corn, of which they export great Quantities; and in the N. and W. 'tis full of Woods and Hills, which abound with Game.

The PLACES of Note here are,

1. *Minden*, a large and rich Hans-Town, on the W. Bank of the *Weser*, 30 Miles W. from *Hanover*, and 38 E. from *Osnabrug*. *Charles the Great* made it a Bishoprick, and it continued so till 1638, that 'twas seculariz'd by the Treaty of *Munster* in Favour of the Elector of *Brandenburg*. The Cathedral is stately, but dark, and is said to have been formerly King *Witkind's* Palace, which upon his Conversion he turn'd into a Church. The Town is neat, and well fortified. 'Twas taken by the Imperialists in 1628, and by the Duke of *Brunswick* in 1634.

2. *Petersbagen*, on the same River, about 3 Miles below *Minden*. 'Tis defended by a good Castle, formerly the Residence of the Bishops, where now the Chancery for the Principality is kept.

The County of *Hoy*,

HAS *Bremen* on the N. *Minden* on the S. *Lunenburg* on the E. and *Diepholt* on the W. is 28 Miles long, and 20 broad. The chief Town, of the same Name, lies on the E. Side the *Weser*, 30 Miles N. E. from *Minden*, 40 S. W. from *Zell*, and 25 S. E. from *Bremen*. 'Tis a small Town, but well fortified, and has one of the strongest Castles in *Westphalia*. It had formerly Counts of an ancient *Saxon* Family, to whom 'twas given by the Emperor *Lotharius*. They were much respected in the Empire; but the last of 'em dying in 1582, the County was divided betwixt the Families of *Brunswick* and *Hesse*; the latter of which gave their Share, which was *Ucht* and *Freudenburg*, to the Counts of *Bentem*. The most considerable Place next to *Hoy* is *Nyenburg*, on the E. Side the *Weser*, 10 Miles E. from *Hoy*. 'Tis a well fortified Town, and sustained several Sieges during the Wars of Germany.

The Dutchy of *VERDEN* or *FERDEN*,

Is by the *Matricula* made Part of *Westphalia*; but we have formerly describ'd it as Part of the Dutchy of *Bremen*, to which 'twas united by the Treaty of *Westphalia*.

The

The County of Diepholt,

Lies betwixt *Hoy* and the Bishoprick of *Osnabrug*. *Moll* makes it 30 Miles long; but its Breadth is unequal, the broadest Place being about 18 Miles. The Capital, of the same Name, lies on the Lake *Dummer*, 27 Miles W. from *Hoy*. It had Lords of its own, whose Posterity failing in 587, it fell to the Dutchy of *Lunenbourg*. The Town was almost ruin'd during the Civil Wars of *Germany*; but is since rebuilt, and defended by a Fort. In this County there's a Hill called *Hulfemburg*, or the Mountain of *Help*, because, says the Chronicle of *Brunswick*, *Charlemagne* pray'd here against *Witkind* and his Idols; and having obtain'd the Victory, he built a Chapel on the Top of an Hill, which being much frequented, a large Village was built in the Neighbourhood, which they call *St. Hulp*. They had afterwards an Annual Fair granted them, where the Monks sold Indulgences; but since the Reformation, that Custom is abolish'd.

The Bishoprick of Osnabrug,

HAS Part of the Bishoprick of *Munster* on the N. the County of *Ravensburg* on the S. *Minden* and *Hoy* on the E. *Lingen* and Part of *Munster* on the W. *Moll* makes it 39 Miles from S. to N. and 28 where broadest from E. to W.

This is the first Bishoprick founded by *Charles the Great* after he subdued *Witkind* the *Saxon* about 776, when he dedicated the Cathedral to *St. Peter*, and the two Martyrs, *Crispin* and *Crispinianus*. It appears by his Diploma, that he exempted this Bishop from all manner of Homage and Service, except to go in an Embassy at the Emperor's Charge to negotiate any Match that should be propos'd betwixt the Families of the Emperors of the E. and W. *Dr. Nicholson* says, That since the Reformation, which was introduced here in 1634, there has been little more than the Name of a Bishop; the *Lutherans* not allowing the Execution of Episcopal Jurisdiction, and the *Papists* not being strong enough to obtain it for one of their own Opinion. By the

Treaty of *Westphalia*, the House of *Brunswick* is to enjoy this Bishoprick by an alternate Succession. 'Twas lately enjoyed by *Ernest Augustus* of *Hanover*, but now, says *La Forrest*, by a Prince of *Lorrain*. There are 25 Canons, 18 of which are enjoyed by *Popish Ecclesiasticks*; the Revenues of 4 by the *Jesuits*, for the Support of their College; and the other 3 by *Lutherans*. When they have a *Popish Bishop*, he is Suffragan to the Elector of *Cologne*.

The TOWNS of chief Note are,

1. *Osnabrug*, so called from a Bridge over the *Hase* or *Ose*. It lies 22 Miles N. E. from *Munster*, and 37 W. from *Minden*. It stands on a fair Plain. Some say, 'twas founded by *Julius Caesar*, but without any good Authority. *Charles the Great* erected a School for Latin and Greek, which is since become a *Gymnasium*, with 3 or 4 Professors of several Faculties. They have a considerable Trade by brewing a palatable thick sort of Beer, which they call *Buse*, and in baking the best white Bread in *Westphalia*. 'Tis noted for a Treaty betwixt the Emperor and the King of *Sweden* in 1648, wherein all the Affairs of the Protestants were concerted, which was a Branch of the Treaty of *Westphalia*. 'Tis a neat City, and adorn'd with several noble Publick Buildings. 'Tis divided into the Old and New Towns by the River *Ose*. 'Tis pretty strong, encompassed with Walls and Ditches, but commanded by a neighbouring Mountain within half a Cannon-shot, upon which there's an Abbey of Men of Quality. The Ancient and Present State of *Germany* says, it stands in the fruitfulest Part of *Westphalia*, and the Inhabitants are industrious, breed abundance of Cattle, particularly Hogs, which make the best *Westphalia* Bacon. They have also a considerable Trade by making Linen. The same Author adds, That the *Lutheran* Canons are capable of electing a Bishop, but not of being elected; whereas the *Popish* Canons are capable of both. The *Papists* have the Cathedral Church, and the Church and Monastery of the *Dominicans* in the Old City, and the Collegiate Church of *St. John* in the New. The Protestants have the great Parochial Church of *St. Mary* in the Old City, and

have a Voice in chusing Magistrates in both. The Bishop's Palace and Castle of *Petersburg* is well fortified, and a great Defence to the Town. Not far from the City, there's the Ruins of an old Church and Castle called *Beelem*, which some say was built by King *Witekind* upon his Conversion; and the Country People have an old Song with the whole Story of it, by which they pretend to prove he was baptiz'd here, and not at *Minden*; and this they sing with great Veneration. About two *English* Miles from hence lies the Monastery of *Rulle*, on the Bank of a Lake, so deep, that it could never yet be fathom'd.

2. *Iburg*, S. from *Osnabrug* about 10 Miles, with a commodious Castle, in which the Bishop formerly resided. 'Twas taken and plunder'd by *Philip the Great* of *Brunswick* in 1553.

3. *Quakenbrug*, a small and neat City on the River *Ose*, 28 Miles N. from *Osnabrug*.

The County of TECKLENBURG,

Lies on the S. W. of *Osnabrug*, is about 16 Miles long, and 9 broad. The only Place of Note in it is the Capital of the same Name, a large open Town, with a Castle, formerly the Seat of its Counts. It lies 7 Miles W. from *Osnabrug*. The Counts of this Place had formerly large Dominions in the Neighbourhood, which are now parcel'd out among other Princes; but this Town, with the Title, came to the Counts of *Bentem* about 1560. Some will have it to be the Remains of the ancient *Teselia*, the City of the *Angriuari*, who inhabited those Parts.

The County of LINGEN,

Lies on the N. W. Part of *Osnabrug*, is 15 Miles long, and about 10 broad. The only Place of Note in it is the Capital of the same Name. It came to the House of *Nassau* by the Marriage of the only Daughter of the last Count of *Buren* to *William* Prince of *Orange* about 1560. The Inhabitants are *Calvinists*.

The County of STEINFORT,

Is encompassed with the Bishoprick of *Munster*, and lies N. W. from the City of

Munster. 'Tis about 15 Miles long, and 9 where broadest. The only Town of Note in it is *Burchsteinfort*, on the Banks of the *Aa*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Munster*. It belongs to the Counts of *Bentem*. It has a *Gymnasium* for the Languages and Liberal Arts.

The County of BENTEM,

Lies N. from *Steinfort*, is 30 Miles long, and 13 where broadest. It has the United Provinces on the W. and N. These two Counties were formerly subject to different Families; but those of *Steinfort* succeeded to the other by Marriage. They are both full of Woods, except about *Bentem* and *Nienhuys*, where there are pleasant and fruitful Vallies on the River *Aa*. Count *Arnold*, who founded the *Gymnasium* at *Steinfort*, brought in the *Augsburg* Confession in 1564; but their Count *William Henry*, who turn'd Papist in 1668, gave some Trouble to his Protestant Subjects, till the States of *Holland* interposed. The only Place of Note is *Bentem*, the ancient Seat of their Counts, which lies 30 Miles N. W. from *Munster*. It lies in the middle of a Wood, and is of no great Note.

The County of DELMENHORST,

Lies S. E. from *Bremen*, is about 17 Miles long, and 7 broad. The only Place of Note is *Delmenhorst*, on the *Delm*, a small Town, fortified with a Castle, 10 Miles S. W. from *Bremen*. It formerly belong'd to the Counts of *Oldenburg*, and now to the King of *Denmark*.

The County of OLDENBURG,

Has the Sea on the N. Part of the Bishoprick of *Munster* on the S. the County of *Emden* on the W. and the Dutchy of *Bremen* on the E. 'Tis about 50 Miles long from S. E. to N. W. and about 30 where broadest. 'Tis generally barren, full of large Heaths and Marshes, which breed only a small sort of Cattle. The Inhabitants are generally poor, and live in mean Cottages of Clay and Turf; so that were it not for the Barony of *Jevern* in *East-Friesland*, with some other Accessions elsewhere, the Counts

Counts of *Oldenburg* could scarce maintain the Rank of a Prince of the Empire, tho' they boast of as much Antiquity as any in *Germany*, and derive their Pedigree from *Witekind King of the Saxons*, who they alledge call'd himself Count of *Oldenburg*: but *Dr. Nicholson* thinks it must have been of the Country of that Name in *Holstein*. Their own Counts fail'd upon the Death of *Anshony Gunter*, the last of 'em, in 1656; and the King of *Denmark*, who was of the same Family, succeeded, having agreed with the Duke of *Holstein* for his Pretensions. *Crantzius*, *Chytræus*, and *Helmoldus*, speak very honourably of the Antiquity of the Inhabitants.

The only Place of Note is *Oldenburg*, the Capital, on the River *Hund*, which falls into the *Weser* a little below, where there's a Custom-House, at which Ships pay Toll to the King of *Denmark*. The Town is well fortified with Walls and Ditches; and large Barges come up from the *Weser* as far as the Bridge, which brings them a good Trade. The Castle, in which the Count resided, is round, uniform, and stately; but the Houses of the Burgers are mean, and scarcely one of 'em of Stone. *Dr. Nicholson* says, That upon the Division of this County betwixt Count *Christian* and his Brother *Osbo* about 1247, the latter built a Palace on the River *Delma*, which gave Rise to the Town of *Delmenhorst*, formerly mentioned, which was afterwards fortified, and grew considerable. He founded also a Monastery there, which upon the Reformation was converted into a Church, a Free School, and an Hospital. It was taken in 1482 by the Bishop of *Munster*, but retaken in 1547 by the Count of *Oldenburg*. There are some other small Towns in this Country, of which we have no Description.

The County of E M B D E N,

Has the Province of *Groningen* on the W. the County of *Oldenburg* on the E. the Bishoprick of *Munster* on the S. and the Sea on the N. *Moll* makes its greatest Length from N. W. to S. E. 47 Miles, and its greatest Breadth about 36. Most of the *Germans* call it *Emmerland*, and will not allow the Name of *East-Friesland* to be Authentick.

Pliny makes the ancient Inhabitants to be the *Chausi Minores*, to which *Cluverius* agrees; and by the Description *Pliny* gives of their Manners, some of the modern Inhabitants do well enough answer the Character. *Dr. Nicholson* thinks from their Language, that they are of the same Stock with the *Hollanders*; and that some of the Remains of those *Netherlanders* who fled hither from the Spanish Persecution, may still be among them; but in general they differ much from the *Hollanders* and *Flemings*, and fall much short of them in Point of Industry. He adds, That the ancient *Frisi* were originally from the Province of *Utrecht*, and extended their Limits as far N. as *Denmark*, formed themselves into a Monarchy, and chose themselves a King upon extraordinary Occasions; but when those were over, obliged him to lay down his Authority, according to the Practice of the ancient *Saxons*. *Charles the Great* reduc'd them to a Province of his Empire; and thus they continued, till the Earldom of *Holland* was erected by *Charles the Bald* in 840, when this Country was made a Branch of the German Empire, and govern'd by the Emperor's Deputy, till 1453 or 1441, according to *La Forest*, *Ulrick Sirsene*, Governor of the Province, and one of the chief Lords of the Country, was created Count of *East-Friesland* by the Emperor *Frederick IV.* in Consideration of his great Services: Since which, the Title is continued to his Posterity. The first of whom was *Ezard* his Son, who succeeded him in 1468, and recovered *Fredeberg* from the Citizens of *Brunswick*, who much disturbed the Trade of *Embsden*. He was succeeded by his Son *Enno I.* in 1528, who recover'd *Greetzyl*, a considerable Port on the N. Point of *Embsland*, which had been surpris'd by the Duke of *Guelderland*. His Son *Ezard II.* succeeded in 1540, and by marrying the King of *Sweden's* Daughter, advanc'd his Interest and Reputation. His Son *Enno II.* received the *Augsburg* Confession. He was succeeded by his Son *Rudolphus Christianus*, who being a zealous *Lutheran*, and falling into a Controversy on that and some other Accounts with the Citizens of *Embsden*, who were *Catholics*, they dispossessed him in 1599, wherein they were assisted by the *Dutch*, under whose Protection they put themselves. His Son *Enno*, says *Morery*, en-

deavour'd to re-assert his Right, but in vain; and afterwards married his Daughter to his Brother *John*, by the Pope's Dispensation. In 1606, a Peace was made betwixt that City and the Count, by the Intercession of our K. *James I.* Since which Time, they have been govern'd by their own Magistrates; but have a Dependence on the States of *Holland*, as *Bertius* informs us. His Great Grandson *Enno Ludowick II.* was in 1641 married to *Henrica Catharina*, Daughter to *Henry Frederick* Prince of *Orange*, and created Prince of the Empire by *Ferdinand III.* in 1653; but dying without Issue-Male in 1660, he was succeeded by his Brother *George*, who married a Daughter of *Wirtemberg*, by whom he had *Christian Eberhard* in 1665, who succeeded him. *La Forreſt* says, there are 4 Branches of this Family, viz. that of the Eldest or the Prince, that of *Creange*, and two of *Nordeland*. The eldest Branch is *Lutherans*.

The chief PLACES of Note in this Country are,

1. *Embsen*, on the N. Side of the *Ems*, in Long. 25. 35. Lat. 53. 21. 70 Miles N. W. from *Bremen*, 47 from *Oldenburg*, and 20 N. E. from *Groningen*. 'Tis a rich, large, and populous City, fortified towards the Land with a double Ditch, regular Bulwarks and Bastions, and on the S. by a strong Wall and the River. *Ubbo Emmius* calls it the *Eye of Frisland*, because 'tis so conveniently situated, that from hence one may see a great way into the Ocean, and over the neighbouring Country. The *Island Neſſa*, which lies in *Dallert* Bay, over against *Embsen*, and is about 3 English Miles in Circumference, makes the Harbour as large and convenient as any on the *German* Coast. They have likewise artificial Canals, by which they can bring large Vessels into the Heart of the Town; and by opening their Sluces, can lay the neighbouring Country under Water, and make the Town inaccessible. Their Houses are generally neat and high, and the Town-Hall very magnificent. The Count keeps his usual Residence in their Castle, but has no Jurisdiction over them, nor will they allow him to fortify his Castle; but they pay him this Deference, that as when he writes to

them, he calls them *Loving Friends*; when they answer, they sign themselves his *Humble Servants*. They are very industrious, much addicted to Commerce, zealous Asserters of their Liberties, excellent Soldiers, make good Provision for their Poor, and allow Freedom of Worship to all but Papists. Our *English* Merchants formerly kept their chief Storehouse of Cloth here, upon some Difference with those of *Hamburg*; then they remov'd it to *Antwerp*, and at last return'd again to *Hamburg*.

2. *Norden*, a pleasant Sea-Port, about 12 Miles N. E. from *Embsen*. The Town is well built, but not fortified, nor is their Harbour capable of great Ships. 'Twas anciently the Burying-place of the Counts; but the great Church, with Part of the Town, being burnt down by the Baron of *Eſens* in 1531, their Monuments were removed to *Embsen*, where they have since been buried. 'Tis remarkable for the Defeat of a great Army of *Normans*, of which 10000 were killed near this Place.

3. *Aurich*, 15 Miles N. E. from *Embsen*. It gives the Name of *Auricherland* to the adjacent Country, which is rough, woody, and barren, but abounds with Venison and other Game. There are 7 great Fairs of Cattle here every Year. 'Tis encompassed by a slight Wall. They have also a Castle well fortified, the Residence of a Branch of the Family. In this Town are held the Courts of Judicature for the County, of which a Nobleman is always President, and a Doctor of Laws their Chancellor. They have 9 Assessors, 3 of which are Noblemen, and 6 Civilians. The President is obliged to attend the Prince's Court out of Term-time, and to determine Causes within the Verge of the Palace.

4. *Fevern*, 34 Miles N. E. from *Embsen*, a fair Town, which gives Title to a Baron, whose Lordship is about 40 Miles in Circumference, and contains many stately Seats of Nobility and Gentry. The Town is defended by a strong Castle, and has a good Trade by a Canal from the Sea. These Barons pretended formerly to be Sovereign Princes, but are now subject to the Counts of *Oldenburg*.

5. *Eſens*, 25 Miles N. E. from *Embsen*, and 10 W. from *Fevern*. It stands on a River of the same Name, which a little below falls

falls into the Sea. They have have a strong Castle, the usual Residence of their Barons. They had a long Quarrel with the Counts of *East-Friesland*, to whom they pretended to be superior; by Vertue of Grants from the Emperors *Frederick IV.* and *Charles V.* they alledged, it was not in the Power of the Emperors to grant it; but the Controversy was ended in 1581, by the Marriage of the Count of *East-Friesland* with the Heiress of *Efens*, which brought that Barony into the Counts Family. A great Part of this Town was burnt by those of *Bremen* in 1540.

6. *Witmund*, the Capital of a large Barony, which held of the Count of *East-Friesland* at the same Time with *Efens*. 'Twas formerly a Town of good Trade, but now much decayed. It lies about 5 Miles E. from *Efens*.

Other Places of Note in this Country are, 1. *Leer*, or *Lera*, on the *Ems*, a stately Market Town, which surpasses many German Cities, and has a good Trade. 2. *Fredeberg*, 30 Miles N. E. from *Embsen*. It formerly belong'd to the Citizens of *Brunswick*. There are many more Towns and Villages, as neat and populous as those in *Holland*, which we cannot insist upon; but refer the Curious to the Chorographical and Historical Account of that Country, publish'd at *Leiden* by the Learned *Ulbo-Emmius* in 1616.

The principal RIVERS of Germany are,

1. The *Danube*, which is so famous in all ancient Greek and Latin Historians, that *Eratosthenes* and *Apollodorus* are very severe upon *Homer*, for omitting it in his Account of the many large Rivers that fall into the Ocean. 'Tis known by the Name of *Ister*, especially below *Belgrade*; but is promiscuously call'd by both Names, as appears by *Ovid*, who speaking of some memorable Places near its Banks, says,

Stat vetus urbs, ripe vicina binominis Istri.

Mela will not allow it had the Name of *Ister*, till after it had run some Hundreds of Miles, wherein he has been follow'd by

others; but the contrary appears by *Polybius* and *Herodian*, compar'd with *Dion*; for they give the same Description of the whole by the Name *Danubius*, that he does of it under that of *Ister*. Some think, that the Difference of its Names happen'd from the Difference of the Language of the People who dwelt upon it. Authors do not agree as to the Etymology of the Name; but that given by German Writers seems most probable, since *Dona* in their Language signifies a Rushing and Noisy Stream; for every one knows that it runs with a rapid Course for many Miles, and makes a great Noise at several Cataracts. 'Twas known by the Name of *Ister* in the Time of *Jafon* and his *Argonauts*. It rises in *Swabia*, not far from a Village called from thence *Dona*, or *Thonia Eschingen*, in the *Black Forest*. The Hill at the Foot of which it springs is not above 15 or 16 Cubits high; and *Cluverius* says, the Fountain is inclos'd with a Wall. Soon after it leaves the Village, it receives two other Streams, that rise 15 German Miles higher up in the Country, which by others have been reckon'd the true Fountains of the *Danube*; and it receives 10 other considerable Rivers before it comes to *Belgrade*. Its whole Course, from its Fountain to the several Mouths, is reckon'd to be about 27 Degrees, which, reckoning 60 to a Degree, is 1620 English Miles, without including its Turnings and Windings, which must certainly make it much longer. 'Tis doubtless the greatest and noblest River in Europe, and by *Ovid*, who knew it very well, is reckon'd equal to the *Nile*, and resembles it in many Things, as may be seen by comparing it with an Account of the *Nile*, translated from a Portuguese MS. by Sir *Peter Wich*, at the Request of the *Royal Society*, and publish'd in 1673. It begins to be navigable at *Ulm*, which it encompasses with two fair Streams. There are Three remarkable Cataracts in it before it leaves Germany: The First is that called *Der-Saw-Russel*; i. e. The Swine's Snout, so called from a sharp pointed Rock which hangs over Part of the River near *Lintz* in *Austria*, about 92 English Miles above *Vienna*; under which there's a dangerous Whirlpool, that sucks in the Vessels which come near it, without extraordinary Care and Management. *Athanasius Kircher*, in his

Mun-

Mundus Subterraneus, says, whatever it sucks in, is thrown up again in a Lake near *Cannisch* in Hungary. The Second is that called *Der-Strudel*, from the Noise which the Waters make at its Fall near *Grenn* in *Austria*, where it runs with such Violence among the Rocks, that it distracts the Watermen with its Noise and Smoak, and many times splits or over-turns their Vessels; so that formerly few would venture to pass it without an expert Pilot from the Neighbourhood, who made it his Business to understand all the Turnings and Windings of this dangerous Passage; but of late Years the Watermen in those Parts are so well acquainted with it, that they reckon it no great Danger to pass this Way. On the Top of one of the highest Rocks, there's the Ruins of an old Castle, formerly inhabited by Pirates, who us'd to plunder Vessels on the River. The Third Cataract is called *Der-Wurzel*, i. e. Whirlpool, about a Furlong from the *Strudel*, but not so dangerous. As soon as you pass this, a Fellow comes on board from a Chapel dedicated to *St. Nicholas*, on the Bank of the River, with the Picture of that Saint, and an Alms-Box for the Passengers to throw in something as a Thank-Offering to *St. Nicholas* for their Deliverance. On the Top of a great Rock here, there's the Ruins of an ancient Fort, call'd the *Devil's Tower*, on this Occasion, as *Aventinus* informs us, *Bruno* Bishop of *Wurtzburg* attending the Emperor down the *Danube*, when they came to this Tower, one appear'd from it like a Black Man, and cry'd out, *Bruno, I am thy evil Genius, will do thee no Mischief at present, but meet with thee again e're long*: And when they came to *Bosenburg*, 10 Miles from hence, where they lodg'd, the Chamber in which the Emperor and the Bishop were fell down, and kill'd *Bruno*.

The swift Current of the *Danube* makes the Water muddy and whitish; so that the Waters of other Rivers which fall into it may be distinguish'd for a great way. Some Authors alledge it resembles the Ocean in this, that notwithstanding the many Rivers which fall into it, it is scarce ever discernably augmented, tho' those Rivers themselves overflow their Banks; and one Cause they assign for it is, that in the Summer the melted Snow from the Hills keeps the

Channel almost as full as the Floods do in the Winter, which has something of Truth in it, and is very discernable in those Rivers which fall into it from the *Alps*; which keeping the Stream always muddy, makes its Increase at other Times less visible.

The Trouts, Perches, Carps, and other sorts of Fish, are much larger in the *Danube* than other Rivers of Europe. Some ascribe this to the Saline Tinctures of its Water, which washing so many Mines, are supposed to contain more Principles of Fecundity and Nourishment than other Rivers; but this we leave to such as make Natural Philosophy their Study. The rarer Kinds of Fish here, that are not common elsewhere, are, 1. *Coppen*, a sort of *Caprin*. 2. *Biscurn*, which looks like a sort of a Lamprey. 3. *Grundel*, or a spotted sort of *Cobites*, with 6 Beards, 2 short, and 4 long. 4. The *Scheyden*, or *Silurus Gesuri*, somewhat resembling a Pike, but much larger. 5. The most remarkable of all is the *Huso* or *Hauson*, as they call it, which we formerly mentioned in our Description of *Austria*, P. 618. 'Tis a Salt-Water Fish, resembling our Sturgeon, and is supposed to come from the *Euxine* Sea. 'Tis so much valued by the Hungarians and Germans, that they reckon it one of the greatest Dainties for Persons of Quality, and seldom to be met with but at their Tables. We refer the further Description of this River to *Hungary*, and other Countries through which it passes; this being the chief of what is to be said of it, in so far as it relates to *Germany*.

The 2d great River in *Germany* is the *Rhine*. Authors are likewise divided about the Etymology of its Name. Some derive it from the Greek Word *Peiv*, which signifies to flow, because of its rapid Stream: Others from the Celtic Word *Ryen*, which signifies to separate, because it was the ancient Boundary betwixt *Gaul* and *Germany*; and others from the German Word *Rein*, which signifies Pure and Clean, because the ancient Inhabitants, as *Cesar* tells us, if they suspected their Wives, threw their newborn Children into it, fancying they would swim if legitimate; but sink if otherwise. *Schottelius* says, this occasioned the German Proverb, *When a Man was guilty of any notorious Crime, that the Rhine could never wash it*

it off. *Tacitus* says, the old *Germans* worship'd it as a God: To which *Martial* seems to allude, when he calls it the Father of Nymphs and Rivers.

It rises from two Springs 40 Miles distant, says *Dr. Nicholson*, but according to *Sanfon* not above 4. The first near a small Village called *Tavetsch*, out of a high Mountain named *St. Gostards*. The 2d from another Mountain near *Reinwald* in *Rhetia*; both of 'em among the *Alps*. These two Currents meet about 8 Miles from the City of *Coire* in the *Grisons* Country, and after a Course of 45 Miles, according to *Sanfon*, falls into the Lake of *Constance*, runs thro' *Switzerland*, and then thro' the rest of *Germany* and the United Provinces, till it fall into the Sea by several Mouths in the Dominions of the *Dutch*. The Cataracts of this River are reckon'd 9, whereof 7 are small, and all of 'em short of those in the *Danube*. The most dangerous and terrible of 'em is a little below *Schaffhuysen* in *Switzerland*, where it falls from the Top of a Rock 75 Foot high, and is not passable by Vessels. The other great Cataract is near *Lawffenburg* in *Switzerland*, where sometimes Watermen let down their Vessels by Ropes. It runs through a Country above 400 Miles long; but if we reckon its Turnings and Windings, it runs above 600, and is navigable by Vessels of a lesser Size at least 400. There's a great Dispute among ancient and modern Geographers about its Mouths. Formerly there were two known Channels by which it emptied it self into the Sea. They divided at *Schenkenschanz*, a Fort about 5 Miles below *Cleve*, from whence the Southern Branch, call'd the *Vahalia*, runs by *Nimeguen*, and mixing with the *Maas*, falls with it into the Sea below *Rotterdam* and the *Brill*. The other, which retains the Name of the *Rhine*, passing by *Arnhem*, *Utrecht* and *Leiden*, fell into the Sea at *Catwic*; but in 860, or, as some say, in 1170, an extraordinary Spring-Tide fill'd up the Harbour at *Catwic*, and obstructed the Current of the *Rhine*, which still runs with a slow Stream towards the Ruins of *Catwic*, but sinks before it comes near it, and is probably convey'd by a subterraneous Passage into the Sea, or some other River. Ano-

ther Channel by which it empties it self into the *Isel*, and with it falls into the *Zuyder* Sea, was made by the *Roman* General *Druis*, and still bears the Name of his Ditch: But we shall have Occasion to touch further on this Subject in the Description of the *Netherlands*.

The 3d great River is the *Elb*, which Name, some say, was given it, because it rises from 11 Fountains; and the *Saxon* Word *Elve* signifies 11. *Tacitus* and *Ptolemy* were both mistaken about the Head of this River; but *Dubravius* gives the exactest Account of it, viz. That it has its Rise from the Mountains near *Kirschberg* in *Silesia*, on the Confines of *Bohemia*, from 11 Fountains, which 'tis needless to name. It receives several others as it passes through *Bohemia* and *Saxony*, and at *Hamburg* bears Merchant-Ships, as large as most that traffick on the Ocean; it being usual to see in that Harbour, tho' 72 *English* Miles from the Sea, Vessels of 300 Tun, which is farther than Ships of that Burthen can sail in any other River of *Europe*. On the S. of *Hamburg*, it divides it self into a great many Branches, which form a vast Number of Islands; and a little below *Gluchstadt*, it empties it self by two Mouths into the *German* Ocean. 'Tis navigable by lesser Vessels a great way up into *Germany*, which very much promotes the Trade of the Country, especially by its Communication with the *Spre* and the *Moldaw*, the former in the Marq. of *Brandenburg*, and the latter in *Bohemia*; which has occasioned some to think it practicable to form a Communication betwixt this River and the *Danube*, and by that means betwixt the *German* Ocean and the *Black Sea*.

The other most remarkable Rivers in *Germany* are, 1. The *Oder*, which rises in *Moravia*, and after running 300 *English* M. thro' Part of *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*, falls into the *Baltick* by 3 Mouths. 2. The *Weser*, which begins in the Mountains of *Thuringia*, runs thro' *Hassa* and *Westphalia*, and falls into the *German* Ocean about 40 Miles below *Bremen*.

For such as are of less Note, 'tis needless to say any more of 'em than we have done in the particular Descriptions of the Countries through which they run.

C H A P. XXVIII.

The NETHERLANDS.

Including the 17 Provinces, has the German Ocean on the N. France on the S. *East-Friesland*, *Westphalia*, the Diocese of Cologne, the Dutchy of *Juliers*, and the Diocese of *Treves*, on the E. the British Ocean, and Part of France, on the W. If we take in the French Conquests, the Country, according to *Sanfon*, is about 290 Miles from the Borders of *Picardy* to the Mouth of the River *Ems*; and the greatest Breadth, from the Frontiers of *Treves* to *Gravelin*, is about 200; but the Breadth of the other Parts is very unequal, especially towards the United Netherlands.

The ancient Name of the Country was *Belgica*, according to *Cluverius*, and took its Name from its Inhabitants the *Bellovaci*; but 'twas then of a much larger Extent, having on the E. and N. the *Rhine* and the Ocean; on the W. the *Seine* and the *Marne*; and on the S. the Countries of the *Sequani*, *Leuci*, and *Lingones*, comprehending *Lower Alsace*, *Lorrain*, the *Westereich*, the Diocese of *Treves*, the Dutchies of *Luxemburg* and *Limburg*, the Bishoprick of *Liege*, Part of that of *Cologne*, the Dutchy of *Juliers*, half the Dutchy of *Guelderland*, the S. Part of *Holland*, all *Zeland*, *Brabant*, *Flanders*, the County of *Boulogne*, the 3d Part of *Normandy*, the greatest Part of the Isle of *France*, half *Champagne*, *Picardy*, *Aras*, *Hainault*, the County of *Namur*, and the Dutchy of *Bouillon*. He cautions Authors against the Mistake which some have fallen into of confounding *Belgium* with *Belgica*, the former being only a Part of the latter. We have formerly given an Account of the ancient

Inhabitants of most of that at present called the *Netherlands*, in our Description of Ancient Germany, P. 405, &c. The Reason *Cluverius* gives why this Country was rather called after the *Bellovaci*, than any of the other numerous People that dwelt in it, is, that he supposes in *Cesar's* Time they were at least the most noted People, if they had not the Sovereignty of the whole. He adds, That the ancient Inhabitants of that Part of the Country which lies on the N. Side the *Rhine*, were subdued by *Drusus* in the Reign of *Augustus*; and that those who lay on the S. Side in *Gaul*, had been formerly subdued by *Julius Caesar*. They continued under the Roman Empire, especially those on the S. Side, till the Time of *Theodosius*, when the Empire being over-run by Strangers, several People of Germany came hither one after another. Some of which having afterwards removed into France and Britain, the Inhabitants created Princes over themselves, and recover'd their Liberty. In Process of Time, all this Country was divided into 17 Provinces; some govern'd by Dukes, as *Brabant*, *Limburg*, *Luxemburg*, *Guelderland*; some by Counts, as *Flanders*, *Aras*, *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Namur*, *Zutphen*; one by a Marquis of the Empire, as *Antwerp*; and 5 by Lords, as *West-Friesland*, *Mecklen*, *Utrecht*, *Overissel*, and *Groningen*. *Friesland* he says, after it shook off the Roman Yoke, was govern'd by Kings for near 400 Years; but these being extinguished, they were brought under by *Charlemagne*; after whom they begun to chuse their separate Princes, as the rest had done before

RD ZEE

Tabular



before them. The several Princes marrying into one another's Families, they came all at last under the Dominion of the Duke of Burgundy, whose Heiress being married to the House of Austria, the Government of them fell into the Hands of that Family.

But the Inhabitants finding their Liberties invaded, from the Time of Charles V. his Great Grandson, they resolv'd to defend their Privileges by Arms; and after a War of 47 Years, 10 of them submitted to the Arms of Spain, and are now called, *The Spanish Netherlands*; and 7 recover'd their ancient Liberty, which are now called, *The United Provinces, or Netherlands*.

The Revolt of the Netherlands from the Crown of Spain: With a brief History of the Republick of Holland, from its Rise to this present Time.

THE Spanish and Italian Writers, such as Strada, &c. ascribe this Revolt to the Stubborness of the People, to the Change of their Religion, and to the Ambition of the Princes of Orange; but the Dutch Writers, Sir William Temple, Mr. Peers in Vol. IV. of Pitt's Atlas, and others, give the following Account of that Matter.

Their former Princes, the Dukes of Burgundy, being engag'd in War with France, began to raise greater Taxes upon 'em than they had been accusom'd to, which made them uneasy; but upon the Succession of the House of Austria, the bringing first of German Troops, and then of Spaniards and Italians, into the Country, heighten'd both their Charge and Discontents; yet Charles V. being a Prince of great Reputation, Conduct, and Success, and having a natural Kindness to the *Netherlanders*, among whom he was born, and employing their Great Men in his Court, Camp, and other Posts, he left them in a peaceable Condition, when he resign'd the Government to his Son Philip II. in 1556. This Prince being a Spaniard born, resolv'd to return to Spain, and to leave the *Low Countries* under a Subordinate Government, which, till his Father's

Time, had been the constant Seat of their own Princes. He likewise gave the chief Offices and Posts of Honour to Spaniards, introduc'd their Customs, Language, and Habit, into the Court of Flanders; and after the Peace, continued the Spanish and Italian Forces; and the same Taxes he had demanded from them during the War, which quickly lost him the Love of his Subjects. This he regarded so little, that when he return'd to Spain, he was so far from thinking their Grievances worth hearing or redressing, that he added new ones, by subverting their Constitution, and changing all their ancient Forms. At his Departure, he left his natural Sister, the Dutchess of Parma, to be Governess of the Country, with Cardinal Granvell to assist her as her Chief Minister; and order'd her to continue the Foreign Troops, and the former Taxes; to establish the 14 Bishops he had agreed with the Pope to add to the former three; to revive the Edicts of Charles V. against Luther, publish'd in a Diet of the Empire in 1550, tho' never executed in the *Low Countries*, even in that Emperor's Time; but this Philip was resolv'd on, in order to bring the Inquisition into the *Netherlands* against the Protestants, as 'twas practis'd in Spain against the Moors and Jews.

Sir William says, when these Things came to be known and executed, it made a general Uneasiness in the Minds of the People. The Insolency of the Spanish Troops, and the Charge of maintaining them in a Time of Peace, made the *Netherlanders* hate them, as the Instruments of their Slavery and Oppression. Therefore the States began their Complaints with this Grievance, with the general Consent and Concurrence of People of all Ranks; but meeting with no Redress, the States first refused to pay any more Money either for their own standing Troops, or for the Spaniards; and the People were so much discourag'd and enrag'd, particularly in Zealand, that they gave over working at their Dykes or Banks, and suffer'd the Sea to gain upon them, resolving rather to be drown'd, as they said, than to be made Slaves by the Spanish Soldiers. So that after many Disputes with the Governess, the King, upon her Remonstrance, remov'd those Spaniards, to the great Satisfaction of the People.

H h h h h

The

The next Controversy was about the 14 new Bishops. The Lords oppos'd it as a lessening of their Power to introduce so many great Men into the Council. The Abbots, out of whose Lands they were to be endow'd, decry'd it as an Usurpation upon the Rights of the Church, and contrary to the Will of the Decēas'd, who had mortify'd those Lands to particular Uses. The common People oppos'd it as much as any, and complain'd of it as the highest Degree of Oppression upon their Liberties and Consciences to erect 17 Spiritual Courts of Judicature instead of 3, especially when they must entirely depend upon the Pope or the King; every one exclaim'd against it; and *Strada* himself confesses it was a Breach of the King's Coronation-Oath, who at his Accession to the Government had sworn to preserve the Church and State as he found them. This Point however was gain'd by the Governess, but not without the general Discontent of the People, which in a little Time had fatal Effects.

At the same Time Sir *William* observes, a great many Protestants were drove out of *France*, *Germany*, and *England*, by Persecution, which in a little while fill'd the Country, but especially the Cities, with new Inhabitants; who being in Favour with the People, because of their Doctrine and Piety, as well as for the Riches and other Advantages they brought them, their Numbers increas'd every Day. This made Work for the Court of Inquisition, in which *Granvell* screw'd up his Master's Authority to the greatest Height. On the other hand, this Court became universally hateful to the Lords, because 'twas a new and arbitrary Judicature, unknown to their Ancestors; and 'twas no less odious to the People, because of the Cruelty of their Executions.

These Things occasion'd angry Debates in Council, which were increased by the absolute Power assumed by the Cardinal, a *Burgundian* of mean Birth, and more remarkable for his Parts than his Piety. This made the Prince of *Orange*, the Counts of *Egmont* and *Horn*, and other chief Lords of the Country, protest that they would not attend at Council while a Person so absolute sat there, to the Ruin of their Country. This at last oblig'd the Court to turn out the Cardinal: Upon which, the Prince

of *Orange* and other Lords return'd to Council, the Rigour in Affairs of Religion was abated, a Redress of other Grievances was promised, and the Governess was both honour'd and obey'd. But about the beginning of 1565, there was a Conference at *Bayonne* betwixt *Catharine* Queen Mother of *France*, her Son *Charles IX.* tho' very young, and his Sister *Isabella* Queen of *Spain*, to which none was admitted but the Duke of *Alva*. King *Philip* excus'd his own Presence, in order to make it pass for an Interview of Kindness betwixt the Mother and the Children; whereas 'twas own'd afterwards, that the Subject of the Conference was about Religion; and the Prince of *Orange* declar'd, That he had discover'd their Design to be a Combination betwixt the two Crowns, to assist one another in extirpating all Protestants out of their Dominions. The Truth of which was confirm'd by the Orders that soon after came from King *Philip* to the Dutchess of *Parma*, to put all Hereticks to Death without Remission; to publish and observe the Emperor's Edicts, and the Council of *Trent*; and to give her utmost Assistance to the Court of Inquisition, which was quite contrary to what he had promised to Count *Egmont*.

When this was divulg'd, the People were at first seiz'd with Astonishment, which soon gave Way to their Rage, as appear'd by their Looks, Speeches, Meetings, and Libels. Their Resentments were heighten'd by so many cruel Executions on the Account of Religion, and the Constancy of the Sufferers, that they breath'd nothing but Revenge against the Authors of those Proceedings, of whom the Duke of *Alva* was reckon'd the chief. In the beginning of 1566, the People mutiny'd in many Cities, hinder'd Executions, and forc'd Prisons and Officers, which was follow'd by a Confederacy of the Lords, never to suffer the Inquisition in the *Low Countries*, as being contrary to all Laws Sacred and Profane, and exceeding the Cruelty of all former Tyrannies. After this, the Count de *Brederoode*, at the Head of 200 Gentlemen, went through the Provinces to *Brussels*, and boldly petition'd the Governess to abolish the Inquisition, and the Edicts about Religion; and that those Affairs should be left to a general Meeting of the States. While the Go-

Governers look'd upon them with some sort of Astonishment, *Barlemont*, one of her Confidants, standing by her, said, *Madam, I hope you are not afraid of those Gueux*, which in their Language signifies Beggars; but the Count, and those who adher'd to him, were so far from being aham'd of the Reproach, that they glory'd in the Name, cloath'd themselves soon after in mean Apparel, and hung Budgets at their Girdles, with a Medal, having this Inscription on it, *We will be true to the King, even to our Budgets*.

These Proceedings oblig'd the Governors to milder Methods, and the promis'd to represent their Desires to the King, at which, tho' he was startled, his Answer came too late; and the People having lost all Confidence in him, a great Insurrection ensued, wherein they spoil'd many Churches of their Ornaments, pull'd down Images, and, which is unavoidable in such Cases, committed many Disorders. After this, the Protestants began to elect Magistrates of their own, and to set up Consistories in each Town, to form publick Confederacies, and to raise private Contributions for the Support of the Common Cause: But the Nobility and richest Citizens dreading the Effects of such Proceedings, tho' they were unsatisfied with the Government, yet on the Arrival of the King's Concessions, they join'd with the Governors to suppress the Insurrections, wherein the Authority of the Prince of *Orange*, and the Count of *Egmont*, who were belov'd by the People, was of great Use to her. But some Time after, the Government having reduced several Towns by Arms, others having submitted, the Count of *Egmont* having deserted the Confederacy, which afterwards prov'd his Ruin, Count *Bredersode* dying, and the Prince of *Orange* being forc'd to fly into *Germany*, the Country seem'd to be entirely reduc'd to their former Obedience.

King *Philip* had been long press'd by his wisest Counsellors to go into *Flanders*, where his Presence was thought necessary to suppress those Disorders: But instead of that, he sent the Duke of *Alva* with 10000 Veteran Troops to execute his first Resolutions with all Violence and Rigour; which, as *Bentivoglio* informs us, was not only contrary to the Advice of the Governors, and

his other best Friends, but displeasing to many of the *German* Popish Princes, who dreaded the Effects of so sudden a Change in a neighbouring Government; but the King was unmoveable in his Resolutions. Upon the Approach of this Army of *Spaniards* and *Italians*, under the most expert Officers in *Europe*, the Trading People left the Country in such Numbers and Precipitation, that, as the Governors inform'd the King, above 100000 of 'em went off in a few Days with their Effects: So great is the Antipathy, observes Sir *William*, between Merchants and Soldiers. When the Duke arrived, first he seiz'd the Counts of *Egmont* and *Horn*, which, with the suspected Death of the Marquis of *Bergen*, and the Imprisonment of *Montigny*, who had been sent to *Spain* with Instructions by the Governors, oblig'd her to desire Leave to retire. This was easily obtain'd, and she went for *Italy* the beginning of 1568.

The Duke of *Alva* having receiv'd the Government, with greater Powers than any of his Predecessors, he seiz'd the Count of *Buren*, the Prince of *Orange's* eldest Son, who was studying at *Louvain*, and sent him under a Guard to *Spain*: Then he erected a Council of 12, who determin'd all Civil and Criminal Causes sovereignly, without Appeal, put great Numbers of People to Death every Day, imprison'd, banish'd, and confiscated others, exceeded the Inquisition in Cruelty, and treated the Country with as much Barbarity, as if it had been a Conquest: Upon which Account, the People justly call'd it the Council of Blood. They utterly subverted the Constitution, depriv'd the Towns of their Charters, the People of their Liberties, the Knights of the *Golden Fleece* of their Privileges, and all other Courts of their Power; making as much Havock among the Subjects on Pretence of the above-mentioned Insurrections, as the Inquisition did among them on Pretence of Heresy. This occasioned People of all Ranks to complain of the laying aside the States, and of governing them by a standing Army, but without Redress. The Duke of *Alva* being naturally cruel, and inexorable, wanted nothing so much as Rebellion to make Work for his Army. The People were enrag'd, but over-aw'd, and without a Head. The Prince of *Orange* was

H h h h h 2

fled,

fled, and proclaim'd a Traitor, and the Counts of *Egmont* and *Horn* publicly executed at *Brussels*, notwithstanding all the great Services they had formerly done to *Charles V.* and King *Philip*, and their late Merits in suppressing the Insurrections of the People. After their Murther, the Prince of *Orange* was summoned to appear and take his Tryal; which not having obey'd, he was condemn'd as a Traytor, and his large Estate in the *Netherlands* and *Burgundy* confiscated; and a Proclamation was publish'd in King *Philip's* Name, authorizing any Man to kill him, and promising a Reward to them that should do it, or assist in it. This was publish'd through all the Provinces in 1580, which occasioned the Prince to publish that noble Piece, well known by the Name of his *Apology*, wherein he vindicates himself, and gives a large Account of all the Tyrannical Proceedings, Perjury and Treachery, of King *Philip*, and his Governors. This was publish'd at *Delft* in *Holland* the 25th of *January*, 1581, with a Letter directed to all the Kings and Potentates of *Christendom*; and this *Apology* was justified by the *States General* of the *Low Countries*. The Prince at the same Time made use of his Interest with the Princes of *Germany*, where he was living quietly when the Proclamation was publish'd against him, to obtain some Forces. He was also join'd by great Numbers who flock'd to him out of the Provinces, which were universally enrag'd at the Execution of Count *Egmont* their Darling, and likewise by Troops from the Protestants of *France*, who had then taken Arms under the Prince of *Condé*. With these Troops he enter'd *Brabant*, and after many Encounters with various Success, not being able to do much against the Duke of *Alva's* Veteran Troops, especially since his own began to mutiny for want of Pay, he was oblig'd to disband his Army, and to return to *Germany*. The Duke of *Alva* after this return'd to *Brussels* in Triumph; and out of the Cannon taken from *Lewis* of *Nassau*, who was defeated at the Battle of *Gemming* on the Borders of *West Friesland*, he order'd his own Statue to be cast in Brass, treading upon two smaller Statues, representing the two Estates of the *Low Countries*. This Statue was set up in the Citadel of *Antwerp*, that

he had newly built for curbing that City. Nothing could more raise the Indignation of the *Flemings* than this Piece of Insolence, considering that they had now lost the Liberties enjoyed by their Ancestors for so many Ages: But the Duke of *Alva* thinking them to be absolutely brought under, would be no longer ty'd to any Forms or Measures, but demanded larger Taxes than what had been usually granted, particularly the Hundredth Part of every Man's Estate at once, and for the future the Twentieth of all their Immoveables, and the Tenth of all that was sold. The States, with much Reluctancy, agreed to the first, as a Thing finish'd at once; but refused the other two, because of their Poverty, and the Ruin of Trade. But the Duke persisting, they petition'd the King for a Redress, without obtaining it: Upon which the Duke publish'd an Edict, commanding the People to pay it without the Consent of the States; which being refused, the Soldiers began to levy it by Force: The Townsmen shut up their Shops, and the Country People forbore coming to Market; so that there were no Provisions to be had in the Town. This so much enrag'd the Duke, that he order'd several of the Burgers, who refus'd Payment, to be hang'd immediately on their Sign-Posts; and as the Soldiers were going to put it in Execution, News came that the *Brill* in *Holland* was surpris'd, and a general Revolt in *Holland* expected, which forc'd the Duke to put a Stop to those barbarous Proceedings, for fear likewise of a general Revolt in *Brabant*. This Seizure of the *Brill* having begun the second Insurrection of the *Low Countries* in 1570, which ended in the Loss of the United Provinces to the Crown of *Spain*, we shall give the following Account of it:

A great many of the People who fled from the Duke of *Alva's* Cruelty, put themselves under Protection of the Count of *Marck*, who hated the Duke and his Government, while others of 'em fled into the Woods, and liv'd upon plundering the *Spanish* Soldiers, and their Adherents, to whom they did a great deal of Mischief, when the Prince of *Orange* first enter'd the Country with his Army. Some of the former, who had sav'd Money for their Subsistence, put out to Sea in Ships with the Prince of

Orange's

Orange's Commission, called themselves by the Name of the *Water Gueuse*, took all the *Spanish* Ships they met with, and by this Means acquir'd considerable Riches, sheltering themselves sometimes in the Harbours of *England*, and at other Times in the Mouth of the *Ems*, and other Ports of *Friesland*; but being prohibited the *English* Ports by Queen *Elizabeth*, then at Peace with *Spain*, *Strada* says, they were drove to the *Brill* by a Tempest, which they took by Storm. Upon this, the People being provok'd, as above, most of the Towns of *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *West-Friesland*, revolted, pull'd down the Images in their Churches, declar'd publickly for the Protestant Religion, and against the *Spanish* Tyranny, renounc'd King *Philip*, and swore Obedience to the Prince of *Orange*. They publish'd Libels against the D. of *Alva*, and pictur'd him with the Count of *Mark* standing behind him, putting a Pair of Spectacles on his Nose, because *Brill* signifies Spectacles in their Language. At the same Time Queen *Elizabeth*, upon some old Pretensions, seiz'd a great Sum of *Spanish* Money, as 'twas going to *Flanders* to pay their Army, and would never restore it, which prov'd a great Mortification to them in their then Circumstances.

The Prince of *Orange* having levy'd some new Troops in *Germany*, made use of this Opportunity to possess himself of *Holland* and *Zealand*, march'd up within 5 Leagues of *Brussels*, seiz'd several other Towns, and had like to have reduc'd all the Provinces, had not his Men been discourag'd, and the Duke of *Alva's* Party reviv'd by the horrid Massacre of the Protestants at *Paris*, contriv'd by the joint Councils of *France* and *Spain*, and one of the Effects of the Interview at *Bayonne*, formerly mention'd. This oblig'd the Prince of *Orange* to retire into *Holland*, because of the natural Strength of the Country, and the Genius of the People, who being proud of their ancient Fame, recorded in the *Roman* History, as noble Defenders of their Liberty, they scorn'd to come behind their Ancestors in defending themselves against the Tyranny of *Spain*. They were confirm'd in this Resolution by the Cruelty of the Duke of *Alva* and his Son, who upon the taking of *Narden*, cut off all the People, without

Regard to the Capitulation, Age or Sex, and destroy'd the Town; and upon the Surrender of *Haerlem* by Famine, after an obstinate Siege of 10 Months, kill'd 400 of the Burgers in cold Blood, which made their Averſion to the Government of *Spain*, and their Hatred to the Duke of *Alva*, incurable. In 1572, the Duke of *Alva* sat down before *Alkmaer*; but after a long and fierce Siege, was oblig'd to rise from before it, because of the Plague in his Camp; and the King becoming at last sensible of the Danger of a total Defection of the Provinces, he recall'd the Duke of *Alva*, who had made himself so hateful to the People, and sent in his stead Don *Lewis de Requesenes*, great Commander of *Castile*, who arriv'd here in 1573, and endeavour'd to appease the People, by pulling down the insolent Statue the Duke of *Alva* had set up in the Citadel of *Antwerp*: But the Distemper was too far gone to be cur'd; for they were so provok'd by the Duke of *Alva's* Cruelty, who boasted, besides what he had slain in Battles and Sieges, of his having brought 18000 Men to their End by the Hand of Justice, that they would hear no more of the *Spanish* Government. In 1574, the *Spaniards* besieg'd *Leiden*, and not being able to take it by Force, they resolv'd to starve it; but were prevented by the Boors, who open'd the Sluces, drown'd the Country, and forc'd the *Spaniards* to raise the Siege, which gave a great Turn for the worse to the Affairs of *Spain*. In the mean Time Don *Lewis de Requesenes* died without any appointed Successor; so that the Government, by the Custom of the Country, devolv'd upon the High Council, which, *Bentivoglio* says, occasioned the most violent Agitations that ever were known in *Flanders*; for the *Spanish* Army having taken *Ziricksea*, and being deny'd the Plunder of the Town, and also in want of Pay, they seiz'd and plunder'd *Alost* near *Brussels*: Upon which the People shut up their Shops, the Country-men gave over their Labour, and all took to Arms. They forc'd the Senate of *Brussels*; pull'd out such as were for the *Spanish* Government, kill'd all the *Spaniards* they met, demanded an Expulsion of all Foreigners out of the *Low Countries*, and an Assembly of the States; to which the Council was forced to agree. In the mean

Time,

Time, the chief Men of the Provinces agreed with the Prince of *Orange* to carry on their common Affairs by joint Councils; so that when the States assembled at *Ghent*, they agreed upon that Act, call'd, *The Pacification of Ghent*, in 1576. The chief Articles were; To drive all Foreign Soldiers out of the Province; To restore the ancient Constitution, which had been subverted by the Duke of *Alva*; To refer Matters of Religion in each Province to their own States; and that for Performance of it, the rest of the Provinces should enter into a Confederacy with *Holland* and *Zealand*. Here we must observe, That the Prince of *Orange* had acquir'd great Reputation by bringing King *Philip's* Commissioners to the like Agreement for *Holland* and *Zealand* the Year before, which pav'd the Way for this Agreement; which, says Sir *William Temple*, made the first Period of the *Low Country* Troubles, and prov'd to King *Philip*, by dear-bought Experience, that the best Conduct, and the boldest Armies, are not able to withstand the Torrent of a stubborn and enrag'd People, which ever bears all down before it so long as it lasts. Upon the passing of this Act, not only the *Spaniards*, but the *German* Troops, were order'd to depart the Country; and upon their Refusal, were declared Rebels. The *Spaniards* being enrag'd at this, plunder'd several Towns, and *Antwerp* among the rest, which alienated the Affections of many People from King *Philip*, who till then had adher'd to him. The *Spaniards* defended themselves in some of those Places till the Arrival of Don *John of Austria* to take the Government upon him.

The States refused to admit him, except he would confirm the *Pacification of Ghent*, which at length he did, by Consent of the King, and sent away the Foreign Troops; but soon after, on Pretence of complimenting Queen *Margaret of Navarre* upon her Journey from *France* to the *Spaw*, he surpris'd the Castle of *Namur*. Upon which the Provinces renounc'd the *Spanish* Government the third time, and called the Prince of *Orange* to *Brussels*, where the States made him Protector of *Brabant*; so that *Spain* had nothing left but the Provinces of *Namur* and *Luxemburg*. The rest of the Provinces, that did not chuse the Prince of

Orange, sent and offer'd their Government to Archduke *Matthias*, the Emperor's Brother. This was occasioned by the Envy of some of the Grandees against the growing Greatness of the Prince of *Orange*. Upon which they form'd a third Party, who declar'd their Adherence to the Church of *Rome*, and agreed in nothing with the Prince but in driving out the Foreign Troops, and Defence of their old Constitution. The Head of this Faction was the Duke of *Arjchut*; but the Archduke having neither the Consent of his Brother, nor the King of *Spain*, could do nothing to the purpose, and therefore return'd to *Germany*. In the mean Time Don *John* died suddenly, not without Suspicion of Poison by a *Spanish* Lady, and the Duke of *Parma* succeeded as Governor for *Spain*. The Malecontent Party offer'd their Government to *John Casimir*, of the *Palatine* Family; but being afterwards discontented with him, they sent for the Duke of *Alençon*, Brother to the *French* King, who came to their Assistance with a considerable Army. The Queen of *Navarre* had made an Interest for him on Pretence of going to the *Spaw*, as before-mentioned, whither Don *John* went foolishly to compliment her: But the very Day when the Duke of *Alençon* enter'd *Antwerp* in 1582, a *Biscayner* shot at the Prince of *Orange*, and wounded him, which began a Jealousy betwixt the *French* and the *Netherlanders*, that afterwards increas'd upon the Duke's Endeavours to possess himself of the Town by Violence, and make himself absolute; so that he was forced to return to *France*, after having been shamefully drove out of that City, and died of Grief at the Castle of *Thierry*. Upon the Growth of the Malecontent Party, and the Breach of the *Pacification of Ghent* by Don *John*, the Deputies of *Guelderland*, *Zutphen*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Utrecht*, and the Omlands of *Frise*, enter'd into the Union of *Utrecht* in 1579; wisely foreseeing, that the said Party, which pretended to follow a middle Course, would at last betray the whole to *Spain*. The chief Articles of that Union consisted in these Points, drawn out of the Instrument it self.

"The 7 Provinces unite themselves so
"as if they were but one Province, and so
"as never to be divided by Testament, Do-

"nation, Exchange, Sale, or Agreement;
"reserving to each particular Province and
"City all Privileges, Rights, Customs, and
"Statutes. In adjudging whereof, or Dif-
"ferences that shall arise between any of
"the Provinces, the rest shall not inter-
"meddle, further than to intercede towards
"an Agreement.

"They bind themselves to assist one ano-
"ther with Life and Fortunes, against all
"Force and Assaults made upon any of
"them, whether upon Pretence of Royal
"Majesty, of restoring Catholick Religion,
"or any other whatsoever.

"All Frontier Towns belonging to the
"Union, if old, to be fortified at the
"Charge of the Province where they lie;
"if new, to be erected at the Charge of
"the Generality.

"All Imposts and Customs, from three
"Months to three Months, to be offer'd to
"them that bid most; and, with the In-
"comes of the Royal Majesty, to be em-
"ployed for the common Defence.

"All Inhabitants to be list'd and train'd
"within a Month, from 18 to 60 Years
"old. Peace and War not to be made
"without Consent of all the Provinces.

"Other Cases, that concern the Manage-
"ment of both, by most Voices: Differen-
"ces that shall arise upon the first, between
"the Provinces, to be submitted to the
"Stadtholders.

"Neighbouring Princes, Lords, Lands,
"and Cities, to be admitted into the U-
"nion, by Consent of the Provinces.

"For Religion, those of *Holland* and *Zea-*
"land to act in it as seems good unto them-
"selves. The other Provinces may regu-
"late themselves according to the Tenor
"establish'd by *Matthias*, or else as they
"shall judge to be most for the Peace and
"Welfare of their particular Provinces;
"provided every one remain free in his
"Religion, and no Man to be examin'd
"or entrapp'd for that Cause, according to
"the *Pacification of Ghent*.

"In case of any Dissention or Differen-
"ces between Provinces, if it concern one
"in particular, it shall be accommodated
"by the others; if it concern all in general,
"by the Stadtholders: In both which Ca-
"ses, Sentence to be pronounc'd within a
"Month, and without Appeal or Revision.

"The States to be held as has been for-
"merly mentioned; and the Mint in such
"manner as shall hereafter be agreed by all
"the Provinces.

"Interpretation of these Articles to re-
"main in the States; but in case of their
"differing, in the Stadtholder's.

"They bind themselves to fall upon and
"imprison any that shall act contrary to
"these Articles; in which Case, no Privi-
"lege nor Exemption to be valid.

This Act was signed by the Deputies of
of *Guelderland*, *Zutphen*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *U-*
trecht, and the Omlands of *Frize*, Jan. 23,
1579. but was not sign'd by the Prince of
Orange till May following; and with this
Signification, judging that by the same the
Superiority and Authority of Arch-Duke
Matthias is not lessen'd.

That same Year the Cities of *Ghent*, *Ni-*
meguen, *Arnhem*, *Leewarden*, and some of
the Nobles of *Friesland*, with the Towns of
Venlo, *Ipre*, *Antwerp*, *Brada*, and *Bruges*, en-
ter'd into the Union; but the Confederates
were in so low and uncertain a State, be-
cause of the different Humours and Inte-
rests of the Parties they were made up of,
and because of the great Preparations a-
gainst them by *Spain*, that on their first
Coin they caus'd a Ship to be stamp'd, to-
sed by the Waves, without Sails or Oars,
and this Motto upon it: *Incertum quo fata-*
ferant; i. e. *We know not what Providence will*
do with us.

Not long after the Duke of *Alençon*'s un-
happy Management, the States renewed
their Union in 1583, obliging themselves
to see such Points of it as had been neg-
lected during the Fury of the War, careful-
ly observ'd; in case any Doubt happen'd,
to see it clear'd; and any Difficulties that
were arisen, compos'd: And as to Religion,
whereas in the first Union Popery was al-
low'd in all the Provinces, the States find-
ing that many of the Papists were for sub-
mitting again to the *Spanish* Yoke; they a-
greed, That in those Provinces which con-
tinued firm to the Union, the Protestant
Religion only should be openly exercis'd.
The Prince of *Orange* was barbarously mur-
ther'd at *Delft* by one *Balthazar Gerard*, a
Burgundian, who shot him Anno 1584, in the
51st Year of his Age, with a Pistol charg'd
with

with three Bullets; just as he was rising from Table, and ordering the Villain a Passport to go to a certain Place whither he was sending him; for he had got into the Prince's Service on purpose, pretending to be a Protestant, and that his Father had suffer'd Martyrdom for his Religion: Upon which Account the Prince employ'd him on several Messages, without suspecting his Fidelity. Thus the Court of Spain effected his Death at last, which they had several times attempted before: For besides the Shot by which he was wounded at *Antwerp* by a *Spaniard*, in hopes of the Reward promis'd him in King *Philip's* Proscription, the Baron *de Maurier* informs us in his Lives of the Princes of *Orange*, That *Salvado*, a *Spaniard*, who was in a Conspiracy with others to have murder'd him, confess'd before his Execution, by Order of the Parliament of *Paris*, that the Prince of *Parma* had given him 4000 Crowns to murder the Prince of *Orange* by Poison or otherwise. After the Prince received his Wound, he died immediately, with these Words in his Mouth, *Lord have Mercy on my Soul, and on this poor People*; which was an effectual Confutation of the Calumnies thrown upon him by the *Spaniards*, that his Ambition and Desire of Government was the Cause of his Revolt, since with his last Breath he plainly discover'd it to be the cordial Affection which he bore to his Country, as became so noble a Patriot. The People lamented his Loss as that of a common Father, and never was a Funeral attended with greater Pomp, and more real Sorrow. The execrable Assassin was soon after put to Death, and died so harden'd, that he said, If it were to be done again, he would do it: Yet this Villain is enroll'd by the Papists among their Martyrs.

The Murder of this great Prince was so far from discouraging the United States, that it confirm'd them in their Resolution never to submit again to the *Spaniards*: And after having done what they could in Honour to the Prince's Memory, they confer'd upon his Son Prince *Maurice* all his Honours and Employments, and bravely reject'd all the Proposals that were made them by the Court of *Spain*, being encourag'd and supported under-hand by Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, as a just Reprisal for

the Encouragement given to her *Irish* Rebels by the Court of *Spain*. K. *Philip* had lately increas'd his Dominions by invading and usurping *Portugal*; and aiming at the Universal Monarchy, he embrac'd at once the Protection of that call'd the *Catholic League* against *Henry III.* and *IV.* of *France*, and the Donation of *Ireland* made him by the Pope, which brought on his War with *England* and *France*, and engag'd both those Crowns in the Assistance of the *Dutch*; for thó Queen *Elizabeth* refus'd their Sovereignty when they petition'd her to accept it, yet in 1585 she enter'd into Articles with their Deputies, to furnish them great Supplies of Men and Money, upon their putting the *Brill*, *Flushing*, and *Ramekins*, into her Hands as Cautionary Towns. She sent Sir *John Norris* with Forces to assist them; and in 1587, being then at open War with *Spain*, who were preparing their Armado to invade her, she sent over greater Forces under the Earl of *Leicester* to assist them, and the States swore Obedience to him as Governor of the United Provinces. But his Government was of no long Duration, the States growing jealous that he affected an absolute Dominion, and having just Cause to be offended with his Male-Administration, particularly with the scandalous Loss of several of their Towns by his Governors, and the ill Management of their Naval Affairs, as we find in *De Witt's Interest of Holland*: And thó they were jealous also that the Queen would make a Peace with *Spain*, those Suspicions were soon removed by her Majesty's recalling the Earl of *Leicester*, and continuing her Supplies to them; and they on the other hand assisted her very frankly by Sea against the *Spaniards*. After the Earl of *Leicester's* Removal, they chose Prince *Maurice* to be their Governor, with a Reservation to Queen *Elizabeth*, to whom they paid the greatest Deference that ever they did to any Foreign Prince; and her Memory, their Successors still revere. Prince *Maurice* answer'd the Expectations which the States conceived of him, proved the greatest Captain of his Age, particularly for the Discipline of his Armies, and the Ways of Fortification he invented. Before his Father's Death, the Prince of *Parma*, by his Conduct, Valour, and other good Qualities, did, with the

Assistance of the Malecontents, reduce most of the Provinces to the Obedience of Spain; which he effected the more easily, because of the Differences which were fomented by the Popish Clergy betwixt the Protestants and Papists that were united against Spain; so that the Papists chas'd the Protestants out of *Buissenduc*, and the Protestants chas'd the Papists out of *Antwerp*. The Duke of *Parma* improving those Divisions, took several Towns, and endeavoured to bring off the Prince of *Orange* by large Promises, but in vain. The Duke of *Parma* recover'd all *Flanders*, with some other Provinces, and took *Antwerp* after a long Siege; so that the Affairs of the Confederate Provinces seem'd to be reduc'd to a desperate Condition by those Losses, and the Murder of the Prince; but were happily retrieved by Prince *Maurice's* Conduct, and Queen *Elizabeth's* Assistance. The reducing of *Flanders* by the Duke of *Parma*, forced all the Protestants to retire from thence into the United Provinces, which much contributed to their Strength, and to the Establishment of the Reformation there. Prince *Maurice* gain'd great Reputation by his first Essay, which was the Surprisal of *Axel*, and taking it by Scalade. The *Spaniards* at the same Time endeavour'd to amuse Queen *Elizabeth*, and to raise Jealousies betwixt her and the States, by making Proposals of Peace to her. But King *Philip's* Disimulation was soon discover'd by the Equipment of what he call'd his *Invincible Armado*; with which, and his Army in the *Netherlands*, he flatter'd himself with Hopes of conquering *England* and *Holland*; to which Pope *Sixtus V.* encourag'd him, by laying *England* under an Interdict, excommunicating Queen *Elizabeth*, and giving her Crown to any that could seize it. The *Atlas Historique* says, That both *England* and *Holland* were too negligent at first in preparing for their Defence; but if it were so, that Defect was happily supplied by the Care of Providence, and their after Diligence. The *Spanish Armado* was destroy'd by the Hand of Heaven, which scatter'd them by Tempests, and by the Valour of the *English*, who attack'd them with a Fleet far inferior in Number and Greatness of Ships, while the *Dutch* block'd up the Mouth of the *Scheld*, and hinder'd the Duke of *Parma* from send-

ing an Army that Way to invade *England* by Land; so that very few of the *Spanish Fleet* return'd home with the News of their Disaster, which occasion'd an universal Consternation and Mourning in *Spain*, and laid the Foundation of the Declension and Weakness which has since come upon that Monarchy.

After this, the Duke of *Parma* laid Siege to *Bergenopzoom*, but was forc'd to raise it. *Gertrudenberg* revolted to the *Spaniards*, and Prince *Maurice* reliev'd the Town of *Houfden*, which they had closely besieg'd, while the Duke of *Parma* took *Rhinberg*, after a long Defence; and the brave *Schenk* was unhappily drown'd while he attack'd *Nimeguen*, and had almost taken it in Behalf of the States. But Prince *Maurice* had better Success in surprising *Breda* by 70 Men, who got into the Citadel under a Load of Turf, which was carried in a Boat for Fuel to the Garrison. Sir *William Temple* observes, That the Affairs of the States had a mighty Turn for the better by the sharp Wars which Queen *Elizabeth* made upon the *Spaniards* in the *Indies* by Sea, and the Expeditions against *Lisbon* and *Cadiz*; to which Turn, the Declension of the Affairs of the League in *France* did very much contribute; for whose Support K. *Philip* was so passionately engaged, that he twice commanded the Duke of *Parma* to interrupt the Course of his Victories in the *Netherlands*, and march into *France* for the Relief of *Roan* and *Paris*, which were then much pressed by the Forces that the *French King* had rais'd against those of the League; and this, as Sir *William Temple* justly observes, did very much increase the Fame of this great Captain; but as much impair'd the State of the Affairs of *Spain* in the *Netherlands*, where Prince *Maurice* took several Places, notwithstanding the Opposition made to him by Count *Mansfeld*, an old and experienc'd Captain; and after the Duke's Return in 1590, the Prince took *Hulst* and *Nimeguen*, and oblig'd the Duke to raise the Siege of *Knodsemburg*. After these and several other Conquests during that Campaign, Prince *Maurice* return'd to *Holland*, loaden with Glory; and his Fame was spread through all *Europe*. In 1592, the Duke of *Parma* was commanded again into *France* to assist the Leaguers, but without much Effect; for their Affairs,

and those of *Spain*, received a fatal Blow by the Succession of *Henry IV.* to the Crown of *France*, and the good Correspondence he entertain'd with Queen *Elizabeth* and the States of *Holland*. This Year the Duke of *Parma* died, and with him the Success and Discipline of the *Spanish* Armies in the *Netherlands*. In the mean Time Prince *Maurice* appeased some Seditions in *Utrecht* and *Zealand*, and took *Stenwick*, *Coeworden*, and *Otmarsen*. In 1593, he retook *Gertrudenberg*, and punish'd those who occasioned its former Revolt. In 1594, Archduke *Ernest* succeeded the Duke of *Parma*. Prince *Maurice* miscarried in his Design on *Maestricht* and *Boisleduc*, but reduced *Groningen*. The Archduke made Proposals to the States, which they rejected; and soon after he and some other great Men form'd a Conspiracy to murder the Prince, and some of the principal States, as appear'd by the Confession of several of the Assassins who were seiz'd: Upon which the Design was happily defeated. In 1595, the Archduke died, and King *Philip* left the Government of the *Netherlands* to a Senate, under the Direction of the Count de *Fuentes*, their President. They sent Deputies to treat with Prince *Maurice*, but without Effect. About this Time the *Dutch* began to enlarge their Navigation to the *East-Indies*. In 1596, King *Philip* sent Archduke *Albert* to govern the *Netherlands*, where his Armies had been very mutinous since the Death of the Duke of *Parma*. Sir *William Temple* says, That the sending of Archduke *Albert* had a deeper Root and Design than appear'd at first; of which he gives the following Account:

King *Philip* finding his Body broke with Age and Infirmities, and his Mind with Care and distemper'd Thoughts, was willing now to be at Rest and Quiet, which he had never yet allow'd the World or himself. His Designs upon *England* by his *Invincible Armado*, had ended in Smoak; and those upon *France* had Events quite contrary to his Expectation. Instead of establishing a Tyrannical Government in the *Low Countries*, he had lost 7 of his Provinces, and kept the rest only by a War, which cost him more than they were worth. He had lately made a Peace with *England*, and desired it with *France*; and tho' he seem'd to make Peace with the *Dutch* in his

own Name, yet he wish'd it in another's, and was unwilling to entail a Quarrel upon his Son, which had ruin'd all his own vast Projects. He therefore committed the Management of this Affair to Archduke *Albert*, to whom he gave the Title of Governor and Prince of the *Low Countries*, who, if he could reduce them, was to govern them as *Spanish* Dominions; but if he could not, he was to marry *Clara Isabella Eugenia*, King *Philip's* beloved Daughter, and to receive the 10 Provinces as her Dowry, on Condition they should return to *Spain* if she died without Issue. He hop'd that the Birth and Manners of the Archduke, who was a *German*, and the generous and obliging Temper of *Isabella*, might gain more upon the *Netherlanders* than his own Tyrannical Conduct, and that at worst they might make a Peace, if they were not successful in War, without interesting the Honour and Greatness of the *Spanish* Monarchy. In Pursuit of this Determination, King *Philip*, while he intended nothing but Peace, made Preparations as if he design'd nothing but War, well knowing that his own Desires of Peace would signify nothing, except his Enemies were brought to desire it too. He therefore sent the Archduke with an Army into *Flanders*; and believing that Peace with *France* must be the first in Order, and make Way for that of the *Low Countries*, he marched into *France*, took *Amiens*, the Capital of *Picardy*, and gave the *French* Court such an Alarm, as they had not received in the former Wars. But we return from Sir *William's* judicious Reflection to the Course of the History, part of which has been anticipated by this necessary Digression. The Archduke brought with him *Philip* Prince of *Orange*, Prince *Maurice's* eldest Brother, whom we mentioned before to have been carried off from his Studies at *Lowain*, contrary to the Privileges of that University, thinking by his Means to bring the United Provinces to a Compliance. The Archduke had Success against the *French* at first, having taken *Amiens*, *Calais*, and *Arras*, from them, as well as *Hull* from the States. Soon after this, the Queen of *England* and the *Dutch* sent a Fleet against *Spain*, where they took *Cadiz*, as above mentioned: But a Misunderstanding betwixt the Commanders hinder'd the Ad-

vantage that might have accrued from it both to *England* and *Holland*. After this, the *Dutch* made an Alliance with *France* and *England*. King *Philip* sent a Fleet of 128 Sail against the *English* to revenge their plundering of *Cadiz*; but they were overtaken by a Tempest off of *Cape Finisterre*, that drove 40 of their Vessels ashore, and drown'd 5000 Men, which made this Expedition abortive. The same Year the *Dutch* continued their Navigation to the *East-Indies*, and sent a Vessel a third time to discover a Passage by the N.E. but miscarried in the Design, the Ship being frozen up, and the Men Wintering in *Nova-Zembla*. They all died but 12, who return'd with a melancholy Account of that fatal Adventure. In 1597, Prince *Maurice* defeated the Count *de Varax* with the *Spanish* Veteran Troops at *Turnhout*; but fail'd in his Design to surprise *Venlo*. This Year there happen'd a Difference betwixt the City of *Groningen* and the neighbouring Country, and likewise betwixt the Provinces of *Holland* and *Zealand* about a Tax on Merchandize; but they were both accommodated. Ambassadors from *Poland* and *Denmark* endeavoured to mediate a Peace betwixt the States and *Spain*; but the former rejected the Proposals, and publish'd their Reasons. This Year 4 *Dutch* Ships return'd from the *East-Indies*, after a Voyage of 3 Years; and their Success laid the Foundation of their *East-India* Company, which is since become so powerful. The Prince took *Rheinberg*, *Meurs*, *Grol*, *Bredesfort*, *Ostnarsen*, *Oldenseel*, *Lingen*, and all the other Towns beyond the *Rhine*, from the *Spaniards*; during the Archduke's Expedition against *France*; and the Prince, upon the Close of this Campaign, return'd to *Holland*, where he was received with great Pomp, and the loud Acclamations of the People. In 1598, Archduke *Albert* married *Isabella*, King *Philip's* Daughter above-mentioned, and had with her *Burgundy* and the *Netherlands*. He hop'd by this Means to have brought the *Dutch* to submit, on the Prospect of having a Prince of their own continually dwelling in the Country, whose Posterity would be Natives, and govern them according to their own Laws and Customs. He made use of the Prince of *Orange* to persuade them to it, but in vain;

for they look'd upon it to be only a Trap to ensnare them. After this, the States sent two splendid Embassies to *Henry IV.* of *France*, and Queen *Elizabeth*, being the first they had sent since they form'd their Republick, and made a new Treaty with *England*. At this Time a *Russian* had undertaken to murder Prince *Maurice*, but was discovered and punish'd. This Year King *Philip II.* of *Spain* died, having been a Prince of great Qualities as well as Dominions, but guilty of great Defects, being a Dissembler, Revengeful, Superstitious, and of unmeasurable Ambition. His whole Reign was a Course of War, during which he acquir'd *Portugal*, that was no lasting Conquest, and he lost the United Provinces. About this Time *Mendoza*, the Admirant of *Aragon*, commanded the *Spanish* Army in the *Netherlands*, passed the *Maes* into *Guelderland*, and marched to the Frontiers of *Germany*, where he committed great Disorders and Cruelties on Papists as well as Protestants, his lustful *Spaniards* not sparing the Nuns, which obliged the *German* Princes to raise Troops, and repulse him. In 1599, the *Dutch* Army being inconsiderable, it made Prince *Maurice* very uneasy, since he had not above 4000 Men to defend the Passages of the *Rhine* and the *Issel*. The States put out a considerable Fleet under *Peter la Donze*; but he was unsuccessful, having only burnt the Fort and Town of the *Canaries*, but lost his own Life, and part of his Equipage, in the Expedition. *Frederick Spinola* brought 6 Gallies into the *Netherlands* to infest the *Dutch* Trade, and was to have all the Prizes he took for a Reward. The *Dunkirkers* would not let him have their Harbours, so that he brought them to *Sluys*, and cruised upon the *Zealanders*, who were very much afraid of them at first; but at last defeated them in several Rencounters. The Republick endeavour'd to raise a Tax for the Support of the War; but some of the Provinces oppos'd it, and the Elector *Palatine* solicited other Princes of *Germany* to assist them. *Breute*, a *Norman* Gentleman in the Service of the States, with 19 of his Countrymen, challeng'd 20 *Spaniards* of the Garrison of *Boisledue* to a Combat, which they accepted: *Breute* kill'd the *Spanish* Commander at first, and the Conflict was so sharp, that half the Men on

both Sides were kill'd in a little Time; but the *French* fled, and *Breute* yielding, was barbarously kill'd by the *Spaniards*, tho' they promis'd him Quarter. The States of *Zealand* having represented the Necessity of making War in *Flanders*, Prince *Maurice* went thither in 1600 with an Army, and the Archduke encounter'd him near *Newport*, where the Victory fell to the *Dutch*, chiefly by the Bravery of the *English*, under the Conduct of Sir *Francis Vere*. The Archduke was wounded, and very near taken in this Battle, where he had 6000 Men killed, and 600 taken, with 300 Colours; but the Badness of the Season hinder'd Prince *Maurice* from improving this Victory. Some Conferences were held at *Bergenopzoom* this Year about Peace, but without Success. In 1601, the Archduke form'd the Siege of *Offend*, where the Garrison of the States made such a brave Defence, as very much dishearten'd him, and made him despair of Success; but being recruited by 8000 *Italians*, under the Marquis de *Spinola*, he left the Direction of the Siege to him, who took it after 3 Years, 3 Months, 3 Weeks, 3 Days, and 3 Hours; not so much by any want of Men or Provisions within, the Haven being open all that while, so that they had constant Supplies by Sea, but perfectly for want of Ground, which he gain'd from them Foot by Foot, till they had not so much left as would hold Men to defend it. Prince *Maurice* attempted to relieve it several times, but in vain, the *Spaniards* were so strongly intrench'd, and his Army not large enough to force them. In the mean time the *Dutch* increas'd in their Trade, *Olivier de Nord* having discover'd the Streights of *Magellan*, and their Navigation being successful in the *Indies*, from whence in 1602 they had Ambassadors sent them. They likewise burnt *Spinola's* Gallies, formerly mentioned, in 1603, and took *Sluys*, which he came to relieve, where his Troops were defeated, and himself kill'd. The King of *Spain* publish'd an Edict, allowing the *Dutch* to trade in his Kingdom; but because of the great Imposts he laid on their Goods, they would not accept it. The same Year they sent a Squadron to the *East-Indies* and *Brazil* to pillage the *Spaniards*. In 1604, the Emperor wrote to the *Dutch* to persuade them to Peace, which they re-

fused, and excused themselves, by alledging that they could not rely upon any Treaty with the *Spaniards*. This Year concluded the Siege of *Offend* above-mention'd, when the Garrison obtain'd very honourable Terms, and retir'd to *Sluys*, where Prince *Maurice* receiv'd them with as much Honour, because of their brave Defence, as if they had come from a Conquest. *Psiffendorf* says, the *Dutch* lost 70000 Men during that Siege; but the *Spaniards* a great many more, besides the Loss of *Rhinberg*, *Grave*, and *Sluys*, which Prince *Maurice* took in the mean time. The *English* under Sir *Francis Vere* did the *Dutch* great Service in Defence of this Town while he continued Governor, as both they and the *Scots* did on other Occasions; for they had Troops from *Scotland* before King *James* came to the Crown of *England*, the *Spaniards* having espoused the Cause of his Mother, in order to dethrone him; and *Strada* takes particular Notice of the Intrepidity of some of the *Scots* during this War, who in Engagements strip'd themselves, and fought naked, with amazing Courage. In 1605, the *Spaniards* made fresh Proposals of Peace, but without Effect, tho' *Spinola* took *Lingen*, *Groll*, and *Rhinberg*, from the States, and Prince *Maurice* miscarried in his Design upon *Antwerp*. This Year a *Dutch* Squadron return'd from the *East-Indies* and *Brazil*, with a great Booty they had taken from the *Spaniards*; and they sent out more Ships, under the Director of their *East-India* Company. In 1606, the *Spaniards* enter'd the United Provinces with several Armies, against whom Prince *Maurice* made a brave Defence on all Sides; so that they only took *Rhinberg*, but were repulsed at *Nimwegen* and *Zwol*. In 1607, the States continued successful in the *Indies* against the *Spaniards*, and in their Negotiations with the Princes in those Parts, by which in a manner they engrossed the Spice Trade. The *Portuguese* sustaining great Loss by these Expeditions, they advised the King of *Spain* to make Peace with the *Dutch*, wherein *Spinola* concurred with them, and Deputies were accordingly sent to the *Hague*, but without Success, tho' there was a Cessation of Arms for some Time. After this the *Dutch* sent *Hemskirk* with a Fleet against *Spain*. He attack'd the *Spanish* Fleet in the

Har-

Harbour of *Gibraltar*, tho' they were very strong, and had a numerous Artillery, and several Regiments of the best Land-Forces aboard. This brave Admiral was kill'd in the Battle; but his Fleet obtain'd a compleat Victory over the *Spaniards*. The Kings of *France*, *Denmark*, and *Sweden*, with several Princes of *Germany*, interposed for a Peace; but the Ratification of the Articles sent from *Spain* not being answerable to the Archduke's Promises, 'twas not then concluded; yet a great many Troops were cashier'd on both Sides on the Prospect of an Agreement. In 1608, the Negotiations were again set on foot; as to which, Sir *William Temple* gives us the following Account: The *Dutch* had pursued their *East-India* Trade with so much Application and Advantage, that they made themselves Masters of most of the Colonies and Forts belonging there to the *Portuguese*, then Subjects of *Spain*; That *Holland* became the great Magazine of all the Commodities of those Eastern Regions. In the *West-Indies*, tho' the Attempts of the *Dutch* were neither so frequent nor prosperous, the *Spanish* Plantations there being too numerous and strong, yet by the Multitude of their Ships set out with publick and private Commissions, they infested those Seas, laid wait for the *Spanish* Plate-Fleets, and sometimes attempted their Coasts in that New World, which was to touch *Spain* in the most sensible Part, and was a strong Motive to their Court to endeavour a Peace, in order to secure those Treasures, and preserve them in *Spain*, by stopping the Issue of those vast Sums that they continually sent out to maintain the War in the *Netherlands*. This occasioned the Proposals of Peace to come wholly from the *Spaniards*; but the *Dutch* would never hear of it, till the Archduke declared he would treat with them as with Free Provinces, upon whom neither he nor *Spain* had any Pretences: And the *Spanish* Court condescended so far as to treat at the *Hague*, the Seat of the States General; and the Archduke's Four chief Ministers were appointed to go thither to manage the Treaty, viz. their General *Spinola*, the President of the Council, and the Secretaries of State and War. The *Dutch* proceeded with the greatest Coldness imaginable, criticiz'd upon every Word of the Archduke's Decla-

ration to treat with them as Free Provinces and upon the King of *Spain*'s Ratification of it; so that they forc'd them to send Expresses to *Spain* upon every Occasion, and to attend their tedious Returns: For the Success of the States in 30 Years War by Land, and the mighty Growth of their Naval Power and Trade, had made all those concern'd in the War by Sea or Land averse to a Peace, as well as the greatest Part of their People, whose Hatred against *Spain* was still as great as ever; and not a few of them had Hopes of raising their Fortunes by the War, of which they had many great Examples among them: But that, says Sir *William*, which chiefly contributed to bring them to a Peace, was, 1. Their Jealousy of the Growth of *France* under the Conduct of *Henry IV.* who had then made a Peace with *Spain*: For they knew that the hot Spirits of the *French* could not long continue without some Exercise; and they were afraid that King *Henry's* great Preparations for War might be designed against *Flanders*, and that the Neighbourhood of the *French* would prove more dangerous to them than the Government of *Spain*, whose Power they now saw declining very fast. The 2d was their Jealousy of Prince *Maurice*, whose Credit and Power being founded on that of his Father, and advanc'd to a great Height by his own Personal Merit and Success, they were afraid he might aim at an absolute Power, he being then Stadtholder of 4 of the Provinces, and two of his Cousins of the other 3: These Jealousies were heighten'd by *Barnveldt*, Pensioner of *Holland*, a Person of great Abilities and Authority. This had more Influence upon the Peace than the Intercession of neighbouring Princes, or any other Consideration; yet the Treaty was like to break off on the Points of Religion, and the *Indian* Trade. But the latter of those Difficulties being referr'd, a Truce of 12 Years was sign'd in 1609; and Foreign Powers did after this receive the Deputies sent them by the States as Ambassadors. The principal Things agreed on at this Treaty were, 1. The Declaration by the Archduke, owning that he treated with them as with a Free People, which was afterward ratified by the King of *Spain*. The States a long time debated the Word *As*, conceiving it might bear a double

ble Meaning; but by the Advice of the French Ambassador, they pass'd from it, he having said, as *Puffendorf* informs us, that this Word could not add much to the Strength of *Spain*, nor diminish theirs.

2. That all Prisoners should be relieved on both Sides without Ransom.
3. That each Party should enjoy what they then possess'd.
4. That all Hostilities during the Truce should cease.
5. That a free Commerce should be restored on both Sides as before the War.
6. That no new Fortifications should be rais'd on either Side during the Truce.

About this Time the Differences betwixt the *Calvinists*, who had the Publick Establishment, and the *Arminians*, began to break out. *Hudson*, an *Englishman*, says the *Atlas Historique*, being sent this Year by the *Dutch East-India Company* to seek a Passage to the *Indies* by the N. was stop'd by Ice; and afterwards going to seek a Passage by *Davis's Streights*, discover'd that since call'd *Hudson's Bay*. He went to *England* in his Return, where he was detain'd, and oblig'd to serve his own Country, who made use of his Discovery. The *East-India Trade* being referred at the Treaty, as above-mentioned, new Controversies happen'd betwixt the *Dutch* and the *Spaniards*, and mutual Hostilities ensued in the *Indies* on that Account. In 1611, the Difference betwixt the *Calvinists* and *Arminians* occasioned great Disturbances in the State, the latter being countenanc'd by *Barneveldt* and others, who rais'd Suspicions of the Prince, as if he design'd to make himself absolute. In 1612, the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese* envying the Success of the *Dutch* in their Trade, they oppos'd their Commerce, and pretended that none but themselves had any Right to pass the Line, which oblig'd the States to set out a Fleet to secure their Navigation. In 1613, King *James I.* of Great Britain made Prince *Maurice* a Knight of the Garter. In 1614, new Differences happen'd betwixt the *Dutch* and the *Spaniards* about the Succession of *Cleve* and *Juliers*, which was claimed by the Elector of *Brandenburg* and the Duke of *Newburg*. *Puffendorf* says, the Emperor, upon the Death of the last Duke of those Countries in 1609, had a Mind to annex them to his own House, and sent the Archduke *Leopold* to make a Sequestration of them: Upon which he took the strong

City of *Juliers*; but was beat out again by the *Dutch* and *French*. The Elector of *Brandenburg* and Duke of *Newburg* came afterwards to an Agreement; but differing again, the Duke was supported by the *Spaniards*, and the Elector by the *Dutch*; so that the States and the *Spaniards* made War upon one another in the Name of their Allies, tho' the Truce was still continued betwixt themselves. During these Wars, *Spinola* took *Wesel* by Surprise, and the *Dutch* put Garrisons into *Rees* and *Embrick* in the Dutchy of *Cleve*; but were so much alarm'd at the taking of *Wesel*, which might give the *Spaniards* a new Opportunity of invading their Provinces on that Side, that they engaged the *English* and *French* to mediate an Agreement betwixt the Elector and the Duke, who divided those Dominions betwixt them, and engaged neither to call the *Dutch* nor the *Spaniards* afterwards into those Countries. In 1616, the *Dutch* sent *Barneveldt* into *England*, upon King *James's* Demand of the Money which Queen *Elizabeth* had advanc'd to them on the Security of the Cautionary Towns. *Barneveldt* agreed to repay the Sum, and had those Towns restor'd, which the States were the more willing to have effected, because till that Time the *English* Ambassador had not only the Preference of all others in their Dominions, but likewise a Vote in their Council of State; which, *Sir William Temple* says, was by Agreement with Queen *Elizabeth*, because of the Assistance she gave them; tho' the *Dutch* pretended, that 'twas on the Account of the Cautionary Towns being possess'd by the Crown of *England*, and that this Privilege was to cease upon the Redemption of those Towns. *Sir William* also observes, That when the States made the Truce with *Spain*, they enter'd into a mutual Alliance with *Henry IV.* of *France* for preserving the Peace, who, in case of a Breach, was to assist them with 10000 Men; and if he was invaded, they were to send him 5000. This King maintain'd a Body of Horse and Foot at his own Charge in their Service after his Truce with *Spain*, in order to oblige the *Dutch*, and to make himself the Arbitrer of Peace and War, he being their chief Support after Queen *Elizabeth's* Death. In 1617, *James le Maire* discovered a new Passage near the Streights of

of Magellan, by him call'd, *Le Maire's Streights*. He discovered also two Countries, one of which he called, *Maurice of Nassau*; and the other, *The Country of the States*. In 1618, the Troubles increasing in the Country by the Practices of the *Arminians*, and the Opposition made to them, the States assembled a National Synod at *Dort*, at which Divines assisted from *England*, *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and *Geneva*, wherein the 5 Articles of *Arminius* and his Adherents were condemned; but more of this when we come to the Account of their Religion. This Year *Philip Prince of Orange* died at *Brussels* without Heirs: Upon which Prince *Maurice*, his Brother, succeeded to his Title and Dominions. In 1619, *Barneveldt*, *Hugo Grotius*, and others, who had supported the *Arminians*, were Heads of the Faction that oppos'd Prince *Maurice*, and countenanc'd the levying of Troops to the Disturbance of the State, were imprison'd; for the Differences were come to that Height, that one of the Parties must be suppress'd, or the Ruin of the State endanger'd. Upon which *Barneveldt* was condemned to lose his Head in an Assembly of the States General, and was accordingly executed in the 72d Year of his Age, much lamented by many, because of the great Services he had done the State, and his having always profess'd himself a Patriot of his Country's Liberty. This made the Prince's Enemies write bitterly against him, as aiming still at an absolute Power. At the same time *Grotius* was condemn'd to perpetual Imprisonment in the Castle of *Louvestein*, from whence his Wife got him convey'd in a Chest by which she sent him Books. After this he retir'd into the *Spanish Netherlands*, and from thence into *France*, where he was kindly received by *Louis XIII*. He return'd afterwards to the *Netherlands*, upon Encouragement from Prince *Henry Frederick*; but the States would not suffer him to stay there: Upon which he went to *Christina* of *Sweden*, who employ'd him in Affairs of the greatest Importance, to *France*, and elsewhere; and he died at *Roslock* in *Mecklenburg* in 1649. But tho' he was a Man of extraordinary Learning and Parts, it must be own'd, that his Unsteadiness in Matters of Religion and Politics, gave too great Ground to the Adversaries of the then *Arminians* in *Holland*, one

of whose Leaders he was, to say, that they intended very dangerous Innovations in Matters of Religion, if not in the State. These Controversies laid the Foundation of that called the *Louvestein* or the Republican Faction, and that called the Prince's or Stadtholder's Faction, who, as Sir *William Temple* observes, have ever been very liberal in their mutual Reflections; the *Calvinists* charging the *Arminians* to be Enemies to the true and purer Reformation, and the *Arminians* charging them as Enemies to the true and free Liberty of the State. But this Matter will appear in a clearer Light when we come to the Synod of *Dort*.

In 1620, the Differences which happen'd betwixt the Emperor and the Elector *Palatine* occasion'd the *Spaniards* to assist the former, and the States the latter; so that they made War upon one another a second time in the Name of their Allies, without breaking the Truce.

In 1621, the Truce ending, both Sides prepared to renew the War. That Year the Archduke *Albert* died at *Brussels*, much belov'd of his Subjects, because of his sweet Temper. He was much troubled at his Death, because he had not been able to establish a lasting Peace with the *Dutch*.

In 1622, the War began afresh with *Spain*. *Spinola* took *Juliers*; but was oblig'd to raise the Siege of *Bergenszoom*, after he had lost 10000 Men before it; because Count *Mansfeld*, and *Christian Duke of Brunswick*, having defeated the *Spaniards* near *Fleury*, were marching to the Assistance of the *Dutch*.

In 1623, a Conspiracy was form'd against the Prince, but the Authors discover'd and punish'd. That same Year the States settled their *East-India Company* by an Edict, were successful in their Navigation, and took *St. Salvador* from the *Spaniards*.

In 1625, *Spinola* besieg'd *Breda*, and so fortified his Camp, that the Prince was not able to raise the Siege; so that it was taken after 9 Months Attack. The Loss of this Town, and the Miscarriage of his own Design on *Antwerp*, threw the Prince into a Melancholy, of which he died, extremely lamented, having been a wise and valiant Commander, and endowed with all the Qualities requisite in a great Captain.

In 1626, his Brother *Frederick Henry* succeeded. He hinder'd the *Spaniards* from finishing the Canal which they had begun to dig betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Mâes*, and design'd to have brought by the Town of *Gelder*.

In 1627, he was made Knight of the Garter: The Marquis *de Spinola* was called back to *Spain*, and the Prince took *Grol*.

In 1628, General *Carpenter*, sent out with a Fleet by the *East-India* Company, discovered that Part of *Terra Australis* called *New Holland*. *Peter Adrian*, with 12 Vessels, attack'd the *Spaniards* at the Isle of *Cuba*, drove their Vessels ashore, and brought home a rich Booty to *Holland*. Admiral *Heyn*, who the Year before had defeated and taken the *Brazile* Sugar Fleet, did this Year take the *Spanish* Plate Fleet, and brought home in 1629, in Plate and Goods, above 60 Millions. The Prince receiv'd him with great Honour, gave him noble Presents, and the States made him Knight and Admiral, and presented him with a Crown of Gold, in Form of a Lawrel. The Prince took *Boisseduc*, notwithstanding the brave Defence of the Garrison, and that the Count *de Berg* came with a great Army to relieve it. At the same Time the Governor of *Embrick* surpris'd *Wesl* for the States, which put a Stop to the Invasion of the *Spaniards*, who had pass'd the *Iffel* to ravage the United Provinces.

In 1630, the *Dutch* were successful in the *West* and *East Indies*, and obliged the Emperor of the Isle of *Java* to raise the Siege of *Battavia*, which he attack'd with 200000 Men, and the Year after with 150000; but also in vain: And their *West-India* Company possess'd themselves of *Brazile*. Cardinal *Richelieu* had corrupted the Governor of *Orange*; but the Prince having Notice of it, turn'd him out, and sav'd that Principality.

In 1631, the *Spaniards*, with a great Fleet of Gallies and other Ships, endeavour'd to cut off the Communication betwixt *Holland* and *Zealand*; but Vice-Admiral *Hollart* defeated them; and of 6000 Men on board that Fleet, only 11 escaped, besides the Governor of *Breda*, and one Captain.

In 1632, the Prince took *Venlo*, *Ruremond*, and *Maestricht*. The Imperial General *Paggenheim* came with a great Army to relieve

the latter; but the Prince intrench'd himself, so as to repulse him in several Attacks, which obliged the Town to surrender.

In 1633, the *Spaniards* despairing to reduce the United Provinces, made new Proposals of Peace, but in vain; and the Prince took *Rheinberg*, and all the Towns which the *Spaniards* had in *Guelderland*. This Year the Archduchess *Isabel* died at *Brussels*, in the 67th Year of her Age, much lamented by her Subjects, because of her Justice, Wisdom, and Exemplary Piety in her Religion.

In 1634, the Cardinal Infant, Brother to *Philip III.* of *Spain*, succeeded her as Governor of the *Spanish Netherlands*. The Count of *Nassau* defeated the *Portuguese* in *Brazile*, and the *Dutch* made a considerable Progress in the *Indies*.

In 1635, *France* declar'd War against *Spain*, and join'd their Troops with the *Dutch*; so that the *Spanish Netherlands* suffer'd much on both Sides. The Confederates took *Tillmont*, and besieg'd *Louvain*; but their Progress was hinder'd by Jealousies betwixt the *French* General and the Prince of *Orange*; and the *Spaniards* surpris'd the important Fort of *Schenk*.

In 1636, the Prince retook it by a vigorous Siege; and the *Dutch* Fleet defeated the *Dunkirkers* near *Diep*.

In 1637, the *Dutch* were successful in the *West-Indies*, took two or three Places, and gain'd a Battle. That same Year the Prince recover'd *Breda*.

In 1638, the Count *de Nassau* was oblig'd to raise the Siege of *Callo*, attack'd by the *Spaniards* with a superior Force, oblig'd to retire, and lost his Son in the Action.

In 1639, *Van Trump* defeated the *Spanish* Fleet on the Coast of *Flanders*, made their Admiral run ashore, burnt their Vice-Admiral, took two of their Ships, and forc'd the rest ashore. The *Spaniards* in Revenge sent out a greater Fleet to attack *Van Trump*. The Battle continued two Days; but the *Spaniards* were defeated, and few of 'em escap'd to *Dunkirk*. The *Spanish* Power being broke at Sea, the Prince enter'd *Flanders* next Year, but without any great Success. The States possess'd themselves of the Streights of *Malaca*, which was a great Advantage to their *East-India* Company.

In 1641, the Prince's Son *William* married *K. Charles I.* of Great Britain's eldest Daughter *Mary*, and the Prince took *Gennep*. The Cardinal Infant died, and was succeeded by *Castel Rodrigo* as Governor of the *Spanish Netherlands*.

In 1642, there was no great Matter done on either Side.

In 1643, the *Portuguese* shook off the *Spanish* Yoke, and chose the Duke of *Braganza*, a Prince of their own Blood Royal, for King, with whom the *Dutch* made an Alliance. Count *Maurice* of *Nassau*, who commanded in *Brazile*, sent some of his Men to *Chili*: They discover'd that call'd *Brewer's Streights*, from the Name of their Commander, and took several Forts; but his Death stop'd their Progress. He was succeeded by *Herkman*, with whom the Natives were so well pleas'd, that they revolted from under the *Spaniards*; but he was obliged to retire for want of a sufficient Number of Troops. The *Dutch East-India* Company made themselves Masters of the Streights which forms the *Peninsula* of the *East-Indies*, from *Cape Comorin* as far as the Coasts of *Coromandel*.

In 1644, Negotiations of Peace were set on foot betwixt the *Dutch* and *Spain*, but without Effect. The States renewed their Alliance with *France*, and engaged themselves to make no Peace without them. The *French* besieg'd *Gravelin* by Land, and *Van Trump* to block'd it up by Sea, that the *Spaniards* lost it. In the mean time the Prince took *Hulst* and *Sas van Ghent*.

In 1645, while the Preliminaries of Peace were treating at *Munster*, the Prince attempted to take *Antwerp*, but miscarried, because the *French* General refus'd to let him have 3000 Horse. This Year the *Portuguese*, during a Truce, and contrary to the publick Faith, says the *Atlas Historique*, possess'd themselves again of *Brazile*, which was a great Prejudice to the *Dutch West-India* Company.

In 1646, Cardinal *Mazarine* proposed the Siege of *Ghent*, in order afterwards to form that of *Antwerp*. The *Spaniards* being inform'd of this, sent to propose a Truce at the *Hague*; and the States of *Zealand*, with the City of *Amsterdam*, oppos'd the Design against *Antwerp*, because they thought the taking of that Town would damage their own Commerce.

In March 1647, the Prince of *Orange* died of a Dropsy, having been, says the *Atlas Historique*, the Ornament of his Country, the Support of the Republick, and the Instrument of its Liberty and Power.

He was succeeded by his Son *William II.* with general Applause. Some were for imposing hard Conditions upon him; but the more moderate Party carried it.

In 1648, the Peace was concluded betwixt *Spain* and the *Dutch* at *Munster*, wherein the King of *Spain* own'd them to be a Free and Sovereign People, and renounc'd for himself and his Successors all Pretences to Dominion over them. But as this Peace was an Authentick Acknowledgment of the Liberty of the Provinces, the Prince's Faction reckon'd it a Check to his Power. New Treaties were afterwards made with *Spain*, to clear some Things relating to Commerce: And Admiral *Baucher* did in Part retrieve the Affairs of the *Dutch* in *Brazile*; but was obliged to return to *Europe* for want of Soldiers and Ammunition, which prov'd a great Loss to their *West-India* Company; but that of the *East-Indies* gain'd by it: For this having occasioned a War with *Portugal*, which lasted till 1661, the *Dutch* took from the *Portuguese* almost all the Places they were possess'd of in the *East-Indies*.

In 1650, a General Assembly of the States met, to consider of Methods for discharging the publick Debts, and easing the People of the Taxes they had been obliged to pay during the War. Some of the States, and particularly those of *Holland*, as *Puffendorf* and the *Atlas* inform us, were for cashiering a great Part of their Troops. The Prince took it ill that they should talk of disbanding such a great Part of the Army, that had so faithfully serv'd their Country. He represented how dangerous this might be to the States during the War betwixt *France* and *Spain*, and that in *England* betwixt the King and the Parliament. The States being divided about this Matter, 'twas agreed upon by the Majority of the States General who were Friends to the Prince, that he should visit the Cities in Person, and endeavour to convince them; but this was petition'd against by some of the Cities in *Holland*, and particularly by *Amsterdam*, alleging, that if he should come thither in Person, he might, by changing their Ma-

K k k k k

gistrates.

gistrates, and other Alterations, invade their Liberty. The Prince, dissatisfied with those Proceedings, alledg'd they did it to affront him and his Officers. He went to *Dort*, *Haerlem*, and *Amsterdam*, to prevent their disbanding the Troops; and desir'd the Magistrates of the latter might be assembled, which being deny'd, provok'd him to the highest Degree. He demanded Reparation; but the Cities continued in their Resolution, alledging that it was according to their Privileges. Upon this the Prince took into Custody 6 of the States, whom he thought to be most opposite to his Designs, and among them *De Wit*, the Burgomaster of *Dort*, whom he sent Prisoners to the Castle of *Louvestein*. He likewise form'd a Design to surprise *Amsterdam* by his Army, but miscarried, some of the Troops having mistaken their Way in the Night, and their March being discover'd by the *Hamburg* Post, who rode through them without being discern'd. Upon this the *Amsterdammers* assembled their Senate, and sent Deputies to acquaint the Prince, That if he had put himself at the Head of so great an Army to execute any Design for the publick Good, they had 60000 Men ready to follow his Banner. He answer'd, That he had no other Design but the publick Service, and to reduce those to Reason, who, out of a seditious Principle, endeavour'd to break the Fundamental Union of the Provinces, of whom their Burgomaster *Bicker* being one of the chief, he was come at the Head of 30000 Men to punish him, according to the Laws of their Country; and bid the Deputies tell those of *Amsterdam*, That his Army being the same which had so frequently made *Spain* to tremble, and secur'd the Liberty of the Provinces, their 60000 Burgers would find it a hard Task to oppose them. The City being startled at this resolute Answer, put themselves in the best Posture of Defence they could, open'd their Sluces, and threaten'd to pierce their Dykes, in order to hinder his nearer Approach; but at the same time enter'd upon a Treaty with him. In order to give him some Satisfaction, they turn'd out Burgomaster *Bicker*, on Condition that he should release the 6 Gentlemen whom he had imprison'd. Thus the Affair was compromised; but the Prince was so much vex'd at

the miscarrying of his Design, and the disbanding of his Army, which made him incapable of doing any thing to relieve his Father-in-Law King *Charles I.* against the Designs which *Oliver* had then form'd upon his Life, that he was oppress'd with a heavy Melancholy; and going to compose some Differences betwixt the Nobles and Cities of *Guelderland*, he was taken ill, and returning to the *Hague*, his Physicians let him Blood; soon after which the Small-Pox appear'd, and he died the 6th of *November* following, when his Physicians thought him to be past all Danger, which gave occasion to a Discourse, that he had been poison'd. He was a Prince of excellent Qualities, of a strong Constitution, and a Majestick Countenance, which commanded Respect from all that beheld him. He was popular, valiant, able in Counsel, and indefatigable, well vers'd in Languages, History, and Mathematicks; and had he liv'd, was like to have equal'd, if not exceeded, any of his great Ancestors. Seven Days after his Death, the Princess was brought to Bed of a Son, *William III.* who was afterwards Stadtholder, and King of *Great Britain*; of whom in his Place.

In 1651, the Republick being without a General and Stadtholder, it occasioned a solemn Meeting of the States, to whom the Princess of *Orange* wrote, and recommended the Interest of the young Prince her Son: But the Remembrance of his Father's Attempt upon *Amsterdam*, and the Solicitations of *Cromwel*, who had then usurp'd the Government of *Great Britain*, occasion'd them to suppress the Office of Stadtholder; and they renew'd the Union of *Utrecht*. *Cromwel*, says the *Atlas*, having attain'd his ambitious Ends, he made use of several Pretexts to declare War against the *Dutch*, and one of them was, That the States had not done *England* Justice for the Murder of *Dr. Dorislaus*, who was sent from the Parliament as a Publick Minister to the *Hague*; but having been one of *K. Charles I.*'s Judges, was assassinated there by some *Scots* and others that belong'd to *King Charles II.* before he had his publick Audience of the States. To prevent a Rupture, the *Dutch* sent Ambassadors to *England*, who could effect nothing, says the Author of *The Life of Van Trump*. In the mean time the *English*, according

cording to that Author, had taken near 200 Merchant Ships, by which the *Dutch* suffered some Millions of Loss. The *English* likewise pretended to the Dominion of the Narrow Seas, and would allow no Flag to appear there but their own.

In 1652, the *English* declar'd War against the *Dutch*, and Admiral *Trump* put to Sea to convoy home some Merchant Ships; but had Orders to avoid engaging with the *English* if possible, and to pay the usual Respect to their Flag, if he chanc'd to meet them in the Narrow Seas. *Trump* was forc'd by a Tempest on the *English* Coast, but quitted it again as soon as possible, and made towards *Calais*: But being inform'd that the *English* were pursuing some Merchant Ships, he advanc'd to their Relief, and met *Blake* with the *English* Fleet, who, the *Atlas* says, had Orders to attack the *Dutch*. *Trump* prepared to give the usual Honours to the *English* Flag, and order'd one of his Captains to go on board with a Compliment to the *English* Admiral; but *Blake* having no Regard to these Marks of Submission, fir'd twice at *Trump's* Ship, who made no Return till he receiv'd a third Shot, and then the Fight began, which lasted till Night parted them; and both Admirals sent an Account of the Action to their Principals. *Trump's* Letter to the States was sign'd by all his Officers, to prove that he was not the Aggressor; and by *Blake's* Letter to the Parliament, after he retir'd to the *Downes*, 'twould seem to be true. The States sent *Trump's* Letter to their Ambassadors, to lay it before the Parliament; but the *Dutch* Ambassadors being at *Chelsey*, the Letter was kept up, and the Mob went to *Chelsea* to attack them, which obliged the Parliament to give them Guards; and *Cromwel* march'd with some Forces to the Coast to appease the People, and secure them against their Apprehensions of being ravag'd by the *Dutch*. The Curious may see more of this in *The Life of Van Trump*, with what *Blake* and his Officers said in their own Defence, alledging, that *Trump*, when he came to an Anchor before *Dover* Castle, refus'd to strike his Flag, tho' the Garrison fir'd three times to give him Notice of his Duty: And they pretended likewise, that *Trump* came up to the *English* Fleet on purpose to brave them; and to justify their Charge, produc'd a Co-

py of the Commission which *Trump* had given to his Captains. Yet by that Commission it does not appear there was any sufficient Ground for the Accusation; but it serv'd *Oliver* for a Pretext to cover his ambitious Designs. In the mean time the *Dutch* Ambassadors obtain'd Audience of the Parliament, to whom they made a Speech, and did what they could to renew a good Understanding betwixt *England* and *Holland*, but in vain. They sent another Ambassador, who made Application to the Parliament and Council of State, but without Success; so that the *Dutch* Ambassadors return'd home, and an Engagement happen'd betwixt *De Ruyter*, and the *English* Admiral *Asschew*, who had the worst. The *English* had also the Disadvantage in an Engagment near *Leghorn*, betwixt Commadore *Bodley* and the *Dutch* Commander *De Galen*; but the *Dutch* were worsted in the Fight betwixt *Calais* and *Dover* under *De Ruyter* and *De Wit*, the *English* Fleet under *Blake* being much superior in Force. Another Engagement happen'd betwixt *Trump* and *Blake*, wherein the *English* were obliged to retire into the *Thames*: But afterwards in another Engagement betwixt *Trump* and *Blake*, which lasted three Days, the *Dutch* were worsted. *De Galen* obtain'd another Advantage over the *English* in the *Streights*, but lost his Life in the Action. The *English* after this, in 1653, inclin'd to a Peace; but were prevented by *Cromwel*, who dissolv'd the Parliament. That Year a cruel Battle happen'd betwixt *Van Trump* and the *English* Admirals *Dean* and *Monk*, wherein the *Dutch* were worsted, which occasioned Tumults in *Holland*: And in *August* that Year, there happen'd another terrible Battle, wherein the *Dutch* were defeated, and *Trump* killed. He was buried with great State in *Holland*, and had a sumptuous Monument erected for him by the States.

In 1654, the *Dutch* made a dishonourable Peace with the *English*, in which there was an Article excluding the young Prince of *Orange* from all publick Offices in the Commonwealth, which occasioned some Commotions in *Holland*, the People having a great Love for him, because of the glorious Actions perform'd by his Ancestors in the Defence of their Liberty; but the prevailing Faction abolish'd the Office of Stadtholder and Cap-

tain-General, except in the Province of *Friesland*, where the People continued that Dignity in the other Branch of the Family of *Nassau*.

In 1655, Differences happen'd in *Overijssel*, where several of the Nobility chose the Prince of *Orange* for their Stadtholder, and nam'd Count *William* of *Nassau* for his Lieutenant, whence Quarrels ensu'd; but the Matter was accommodated by the Mediation of the States General.

In 1656, the States, on Account of their Trade, concern'd themselves in the Quarrels betwixt *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden*, and *John Casimir* King of *Poland*, whom they brought to a Peace by the Treaty of *Elbing*, their Admiral *Obdam* having overaw'd both of them with his Fleet. This Year, the sumptuous Stadthouse at *Amsterdam*, which they began in 1654, was almost finish'd. The Plague cut off many People in the Provinces of *Holland* and *Utrecht*, and 13000 died at *Leiden* in a small Time.

In 1657, Differences happen'd betwixt the *French* and the *Dutch*, because of some *French* Privateers, which took their Ships, and disturb'd their Commerce. The *Dutch* complain'd of it in vain, and took the Privateers, for which their Ships were seiz'd in *France*, and the *Dutch* made Reprisals; but *M. de Thou* being sent into *Holland* by the Court of *France*, made up the Difference, and the Ships were released on both Sides.

In 1657, the *West-India* Company discover'd the *New Netherlands*, built *New Amsterdam*, and made War on the *Portuguese* to recover *Brazils*.

In 1658, they sent a famous Embassy to *China*; but the *Jesuits* hinder'd the Success of it. Their Embassy in *Japan* had a better Effect. The States concern'd themselves in the War betwixt the *Danes* and *Swedes*, and deliver'd the King of *Denmark*, who was much streighten'd in his Capital. The *Dutch* Admiral *Obdam* defeated the *Swedish* Fleet, reliev'd *Copenhagen*, and enter'd it in a triumphant Manner.

In 1659, *De Ruyter* sail'd to the North, and joining his Troops with those of *Denmark*, defeated the *Swedes* at the Battle of *Niburg*; for Grief of which, the King of *Sweden* died.

In 1660, a Peace was concluded in the North by the Mediation of *England* and

France. The States were successful in the *East-Indies* against the *Portuguese*.

In 1661, the *Dutch*, by their Negligence, gave the *Chinese* an Opportunity to seize the Isle of *Formosa*, which was a great Prejudice to their *East-India* Company.

In 1662, an Alliance of 25 Years was renewed betwixt *England*, *France*, and *Holland*; and *John de Wit*, the Pensionary of *Holland*, got the Right of *Aubaine* taken off the *Dutch* Subjects in *France*, by which the *French* King was before intitled to the Estates of all Strangers that died in his Dominions.

In 1663, the *Dutch* had some Difference with the Bishop of *Munster*, but obliged him to keep the Peace, and were successful against the *Portuguese* in the *Indies*.

In 1664, an *English* Squadron under Commodore *Holmes* unexpectedly surpris'd and took several Forts from the *Dutch* on the Coast of *Guinea*; but *De Ruyter* quickly retook them. The *Dutch* did all they could to avoid a War with *England*, but in vain; so that they came to an open Rupture in 1665; the Duke of *York* and his prevailing Faction at Court refusing all the advantageous Proposals made by the *Dutch*, who put a Fleet to Sea under Admiral *Obdam*, to whom they gave positive, but imprudent, Orders to fight the *English*, let the Wind be how it would; which being forced to obey, contrary to the Opinion of his Officers, it had a fatal Effect to the *Dutch*; for the *English* Fleet, commanded by the Duke of *York*, Prince *Robert*, and the Earl of *Sandwich*, defeated the *Dutch*, burnt and sunk 19 of their Men of War, kill'd about 6000 of their Men, with the Loss only of 4 Men of War, and 1500 Men, on our Side, among whom were Rear-Admiral *Samson*, the Earls of *Marlborough* and *Falmouth*, the Lords *Portland* and *Fitzharding*, with 14 other Persons of Note. The Lord *Obdam*, in the beginning of the Action, attack'd the Duke of *York*, sunk the 3 Yachts that attended him, and had almost disabled him; but he was seasonably rescued by Vice-Admiral *Lawson* and Captain *Smith*; and *Obdam* being engaged with several other *English* Ships who had the Wind of him, he was blown up, either by an accidental Shot that enter'd his Powder-Room, or, as the *Dutch* say, by the Treachery of an *English* Gunner that serv'd on board him. *Obdam*

was interr'd with great State in *Holland*, and had a noble Monument erected for him, being one of their ancient Nobility.

In 1666, *De Ruyter* succeeding *Obdam* as Admiral, he fought the *English* Fleet under General *Monk* for 4 Days; and tho' the *English* behav'd themselves with their usual Gallantry, they lost, says the Author of *The History of the United Provinces*, 23 large Men of War, besides many others, and had 6000 Men killed, besides 2600 taken; the *Dutch* having lost about 6 Capital Ships, and 2300 Men. Notwithstanding which, our Court made publick Rejoycings at *London*, as if they had obtain'd the Victory. In August that same Year, another Engagement happen'd, wherein the *English* had the Advantage, for which *De Ruyter* blam'd the Conduct of *Van Trump*, who was thereupon discharged from his Employment, while *De Ruyter* himself acquir'd as much Glory by his Gallantry in the Fight, and brave Retreat, as if he had obtain'd the Victory: And besides the Honours he receiv'd from the States, the *French* King, who was then their Ally, sent him the Collar of the Order of *St. Michael*, with a Gold Chain, and his own Picture richly set with Diamonds. Soon after this Engagement, the States sent a Squadron to join 36 *French* in the *Mediterranean*, in order to destroy our Commerce there; a Treaty was set on foot by the Mediation of the Queen Mother of *England*, which had no Effect. And the *French* and *Dutch* having join'd their Fleet near *Dunkirk*, ours retir'd before 'em, after having lost one Ship of 50 Guns. Not long after this, 20 Men of War, under Commadore *Holmes*, made a Descent on the *Dutch* Coast near the *Vlissinge* and the *Texel*, where they burnt two Frigates, miss'd narrowly of destroying their *Russia* Fleet, and committed some other Hostilities, to countenance a Rebellion against the States, rais'd by one *Heemskirk*, who revolted with some of their Ships under his Command, burnt about 100 of their Merchant-men, and some Men of War on the Stocks; but being pursued by a *Dutch* Squadron, he was killed in the Engagement, several of his Ships taken, and the Men on board them executed in *Holland*, while the rest made their Escape to *England*.

In 1667, the *Dutch* made Proposals of Peace, which were treated of at *Breda*: But

while the *English* protracted the Negotiation, *De Ruyter* put to Sea, and anchoring at the Mouth of the *Thames*, sent 17 of his lightest Ships, with 4 Barks and 4 Fire-ships, into the River, where they took *Sheerness* Fort, demolished the Fortifications, and burnt or carried off the Naval Stores laid up there. After this, *De Ruyter* advanced as far as *Chatham*, where he met with little Resistance, except from a few *Scots* under the Command of Captain *Douglas*, who was burnt on board one of our Men of War as he bravely defended her. The *Dutch* came from thence to *Gravesend*, where they burnt 6 of our largest Ships, among whom were the Admiral and Vice-Admiral of the White, took the *Royal Charles*, and a Frigate of 44 Guns, which hasten'd the Conclusion of the Peace to the Advantage of the *Dutch*, who presented their Commanders *Ruyter*, *De Wit*, and *Ghent*, with a Gold Cup each, on which was engraven the Action of *Chatham*, to perpetuate in their Families the Memory of this great Enterprize. This Disgrace to *England* was chiefly ascrib'd to the Treachery of the *French*, who push'd the *Dutch* on to it during the Treaty, it being their Interest to foment a Division betwixt those Protestant Maritime Powers, in order to destroy both. That same Year, the *Dutch* East-India Company brought the King of *Madagascar*, and some other neighbouring Princes, to a Submission.

In 1668, the *French* King having treacherously declar'd War against *Spain* the Year before, on Pretence of the Rights of his Queen, which he had solemnly renounc'd at his Treaty of Marriage; the *Dutch* being alarm'd at his Progress, rais'd 25000 Men, and solicited *England* to enter into an Alliance with them, which brought on the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*.

In 1669, they solicited the Triple Alliance betwixt *England*, *Sweden* and themselves, which broke the *French* King's Measures, and provok'd him so much, that he found Means to break the said Triple Alliance, and engage *England* with him in a War against *Holland*, as we shall hear anon.

In 1671, the *Dutch* did all they could to prevent a Rupture with *England* and *France*, but in vain; for the *French* King, by the Interview betwixt King *Charles II.* and his Sister the Dutchess of *Orleans*, at *Dover*, had

had riveted that Prince in his Interest. The *Dutch* upon this prepar'd for War; but their Force was very unequal to that of their Enemies. Besides, they were divided into three Factions at home. The first was for continuing the Exclusion of the Prince of *Orange* from all the Dignities and Offices enjoyed by his glorious Ancestors; the 2d was for restoring him; and the 3d was Neuter, but at last join'd with the 2d, and carried it for the Prince; who in 1672, tho' very young, put himself at the Head of their Forces, which were then but inconsiderable. Tho' King *Charles II.* of *Great-Britain* endeavour'd to persuade them by his Ambassador *Sir George Downing*, that he would faithfully adhere to the Triple Alliance, he at the same time prepared his Fleet to attack the *Dutch* by Sea, and sent Forces into *France*, under the Conduct of his natural Son the late Duke of *Monmouth*; and soon after, without any Declaration of War, order'd *Commadore Holmes* to attack their *Smirna* Fleet in their Return home off of the Isle of *Wight*; which he did, and took some of 'em, after two Days Fight, wherein the *Dutch* made a brave Defence, and got home with most of their Fleet, having only lost one of their Convoys, and three Ships. This Conduct of King *Charles* was displeasing to the People, and the House of Commons, because it was contrary to the late Treaty of *Breda*, and done without any Declaration of War. But the King notwithstanding order'd 4 of their *East-India* Ships to be taken in their Return from *Bassavia*, and all their other Vessels to be seiz'd in his Harbours. In *April* following, he publish'd his Declaration of War, alledging they had broke the Treaty of *Breda*, disturb'd our Commerce in the *Indies*, injur'd the *English* at *Surinam*, and affronted his Person by insolent Medals and Pictures, and burnt his Effigies in *Persia*. The *French* King and the Bishop of *Munster*, with the Archbishop of *Cologne*, declar'd War against the *Dutch* at the same time; for which the *French* King alledged no other Reason, but that he was dissatisfied with their Conduct; and that he could no longer dissemble his Indignation, without a Diminution of his Glory. The Declarations of the two Bishops were every whit as frivolous: But we refer the Curious for the Motives of

this War to the History of it, publish'd in the First Volume of *State Tracts*, collected since the Revolution, translated from the *French* Copy printed at *Paris* in 1682; but suppress'd at the Instance of the *English* Ambassador, because of the Discoveries it made of the League betwixt the Kings of *France* and *England* for enslaving *Europe*, and introducing Popery into *England* and *Holland*.

In the mean time the Prince of *Orange* did all that he could for the Defence of his Country, and *De Ruyter* put to Sea with a Fleet. The *French* King at the same time invaded the *Netherlands* with 100000 Men in 4 Bodies, and took 6 of their Frontier Garrisons in the Dutchy of *Cleve*, in so little a Time, as struck an universal Terror into the *Dutch*, which was very much heighten'd by his passing the *Rhine*, while the Prince of *Orange*, who was encamp'd on the *Issel* with about 13000 Men, marched to cover the Country, and such Towns as were most exposed. At the same time *De Ruyter* attack'd the *English* and *French* Fleets in *Selbay*, commanded by the Duke of *York*. The Battle was fierce, and maintain'd with great Bravery on both Sides, and almost with equal Advantage; tho' each ascribed the Victory to themselves, and made publick Rejoycings accordingly. The Loss of Men was computed to be near the same; but the *English* lost four Ships, and the *French* one; whereas the *Dutch* lost but three. In this Engagement, we lost the brave Earl of *Sandwich*, who commanded the Blue Squadron, himself, with his Son, and 850 Men, being blown up, with his Ship of 102 Guns: But had it not been for the Advantage of the Wind, the *Dutch*, being much superior in Number, might probably have done us more Mischief. The Account of this Naval Engagement, in which the *Dutch* pretended to have the Victory, did serve to keep up the Spirits of their People; but the *French* Army having pass'd the *Rhine*, not without a Mixture of Treachery and Cowardice in some, that the Prince of *Orange* sent to oppose their Passage. They took several important Places, with the strong Forts of *Schenk* and *Knodsenburg*, while the Bishop of *Munster* took *Deventer*; and the *French* being Masters of the *Betaw*, the Prince was obliged to retire towards *Utrecht* where,

where being refused Admittance by the mutinous Faction, he was obliged to de-camp, and to divide his small Army into 4 Bodies, to cover the Country as well as he could; and the *French* took so many Towns, and made such a Progress, that the Pensionary *De Wit* advis'd the *Dutch* to sue for a Peace on the best Terms they could. Accordingly they sent Deputies to the *French* King, who insisted on such hard Conditions, that they resolv'd to abide the last Extremity rather than agree to them. The People in the mean time were so enraged at the Management of the two *De Witts*, whom they charged with all their Misfortunes, that some of them attempted to assassinate them both, for which one of the Assassins was executed. During these Disorders, *Zutphen* and *Utrecht* surrender'd to the *French*; and the Approach of their Army to *Naerden* occasioned an universal Confusion in the Cities of *Holland*, where the People besieged their Magistrates in their Houses, and threaten'd to kill 'em, except they would declare the Prince of *Orange* their Stadtholder, being of Opinion, that none but the Family that founded the Republick, were able to restore it. The City of *Amsterdam* was under such a Consternation, that the greatest Part of the People were for surrendering betimes, to save their Riches; but were dissuaded by their Magistrates, who prepar'd for a vigorous Defence, and laid the neighbouring Country under Water to hinder the Approach of the Enemy. Their Example being followed by other Towns, did, with the Conduct of the Prince, save their Republick, when it was brought to the Brink of Ruin. The Calamity of the Country, and the Inclinations of the People, being improv'd against the *De Witts* and their Party by the Princess Dowager, Grandmother to the Prince, and others of his Friends, supported by the Elector of *Brandenburg* who was his Uncle, the People threaten'd to abolish the perpetual Edict themselves, which excluded the Prince from the Dignities of his Ancestors, if the States would not do it. The Peasants of *West-Friesland*, who make the best Soldiers in the *Dutch* Dominions, refused to take Arms till they were admitted to swear to be true to the Republick, and to obey the States, and his Highness the Prince of

Orange. Upon which he was unanimously chosen General by the States, and enter'd upon his Office after taking the Oaths. Then he went to the Army intrench'd at *Newrop*, and kept his Post with so much Courage and Conduct against *Lewis XIV.* who commanded his Army in Person, that he forc'd him to retire with Loss, and to abandon his Works, when he thought to have beat the Prince out of his Trenches. But in the mean time the *Dutch* Frontier Towns and Garrisons fell so fast into the Hands of the *French*, that the People suspecting Treachery, would not be satisfied till the Prince was created Stadtholder, and possessed of all the Posts enjoyed by his Ancestors. The Inhabitants of *Dort* were the first that took Arms on that Account, and forc'd their Burgomaster old *De Wit*, Father to *Cornelius* and *John*, to draw up an Act, to absolve themselves and the Prince from the Oath they had taken to observe the perpetual Edict, which excluded him from the Stadtholdership, and sent for the Prince to accept it. He modestly represented the Danger that might accrue to them by his leaving the Army; but they would not be deny'd. He came to the City, where he was received with great Solemnity; but refused to be Stadtholder, till he was absolved from his Oath by Consent of the States General. They sent Ministers to confer with the Prince, and convince him that he might lawfully do it; and accordingly an Act was drawn in the Name of the Magistrates, by which they renounc'd the Perpetual Edict; and made the Prince their Stadtholder; which *Cornelius de Wit* refus'd to sign, till he was prevail'd on by the Tears of his Wife and Children. The Example of *Dort* being followed by the other Cities, and confirmed by the States General, who absolved the Prince and the People from their Oath to observe the Perpetual Edict; he was by general Consent created Stadtholder, and restored to all those Dignities which his Ancestors had purchas'd with their Blood. The People insisted likewise, that those whom they charged as the Occasion of their Calamities should be turned out of their Posts in the Government; and desir'd their new Stadtholder to interpose his Authority for that End; but he wisely acted

another Part, considering the Danger of the Juncture, and writ Circular Letters to the Cities, declaring it to be his Opinion, that the Deputies of the States, and the Magistrates of their Cities, had perform'd their Duties; and that such disorderly Practices deserv'd to be restrain'd by Corporal Punishments. From this Time the Dutch were inspir'd with new Courage. The small Town of *Ardeburgh* repuls'd 5000 French that attack'd them, and killed a great many of their Officers and Persons of Quality. Those of *Groningen* oblig'd the Bishop of *Munster* to raise their Siege, with the Loss of 10000 Men, after a prodigious Expence he had been at in the Undertaking. A Stop being thus put to the Course of the French King's Victories, the Dutch sent Deputies to *England* to sollicite a Peace with King *Charles II.* They were very grateful to the People, but coldly receiv'd at Court; yet the King gave them Audience, and having heard their Proposals, sent the Duke of *Buckingham*, the Marquis of *Hallifax*, and Mr. *Silvius*, to the French Court then at *Utrecht*. My Lord *Hallifax* and Mr. *Silvius* went directly thither; but the others going to the *Hague*, they had a Conference with the States, and another with the Prince of *Orange* at his Camp; and declar'd to them both, that the King had not enter'd into the Alliance with *France* to reduce them under the French Yoke, but only to humble them; and that *England* being alarm'd at the Progress of the French, was much inclin'd to the Interest of *Holland*: But notwithstanding this, says the Author of *The History of the United Provinces*, when they came to *Utrecht*, and knew the Instructions given by the King to the Lord *Hallifax* and Mr. *Silvius*, they labour'd all they could to renew the Alliance betwixt the two Crowns, while Preparations were making in *England* for a Descent upon *Holland* by our Fleet, which was accordingly attempted, but disappointed by a violent Tempest, which oblig'd our Fleet to return, without being able to put to Sea again that Year. In the mean time the Towns of *Grave* and *Nimeguen* were surrender'd to the French. The King of *France* having made the Duke of *Luxemburg* Governor of *Utrecht*, return'd to *France*, and in his Way was met by the English Ambassadors, who renewed a Treaty

with him for three Years; by which the two Crowns were to communicate to one another whatever Proposals of Peace were made: After which, their Demands were deliver'd to the Dutch Deputies that were sent to attend the French King and our Ambassadors.

The Demands of the French were, 1. That all Placets against French Wine and Manufactures should be recalled. 2. That the Papists should have Freedom of Worship, with publick Churches and Maintenance for their Priests through all the Dominions of the States. 3. That his Majesty should leave the Provinces in their present State, and restore such as he had conquer'd, except as follows. 4. The States should yield to the French King all the Countries, Towns and Places, they possess'd in *Flanders* and *Brabant*, that were yielded him by the King of *Spain*, except the Town of *Sluys* and the Island of *Cadfant*. 5. That they should also quit *Nimeguen*, *Knodsenburg*, *Schenckenschantz*, and that Part of *Guelderland* on the W. Side of the *Rhine*, together with the Island and Town of *Bommel*, the Island and Fort of *Voorn*, the Fort of *St. Andrew*, *Louvestein*, and *Crevecœur*. 6. The City of *Grave*, and the County of *Meurs*, for which the States should make the Prince of *Orange* a Compensation. 7. That the States should quit all their Pretensions to such Places as his Majesty had seiz'd in the Empire, together with the County of *Embsen*, and the Fort of *Liersort*, to the Count of *East-Friesland*. 8. That the French Subjects of all the Places to be yielded to the French King, should have Liberty to pass and repass through all the Domignions of the States by Sea or by Land, and all Rivers and Canals, without having their Goods, Baggage, Ammunition, or Provisions, visited, or paying any Duty. 9. That the States should restore all the Commanderies belonging to the Knights of *Malta* in their Dominions. 10. That they should restore the Count of *Benthem*, his Children to be bred Papists. 11. That they should pay for the Charge of the War 20 Millions. 12. That in Consideration of the Peace which his Majesty was willing to give them, they should Annually, on a certain Day, by an Ambassador sent on purpose, present him with a Gold Medal weighing a Mark, with this Inscription, That they

they owe the Preservation of their Liberty to his Majesty, which he and his Ancestors had in a great measure procur'd to them.

13. That if they did not accept these Proposals in 10 Days, his Majesty would not stand to them; and if they did, they must also give Satisfaction to the King of *Great Britain*, and to the Princes of the Empire, who were the *French King's* Allies. His Majesty likewise further declar'd, That without tying himself to the Terms which he had propos'd to them by way of Alternative, he would content himself with the Conquests he had already made, or should yet make, before they accepted his Proposals; viz. the whole Province and Dutchy of *Guisland* belonging to the said States, the Lordship of *Utrecht*, the County of *Zutphen*, and all the Towns and Forts he had possess'd himself of: And that he might the better secure the Possession of 'em, the States should resign to him the absolute Sovereignty of the Towns of *Maastricht* and *Wyck*, and all that they possess'd on the *Upper Maas*, *Dalen*, *Fauquemont*, the Town and Mayory of *Boisleduc*, with its Dependencies, and the Fort of *Crevuecaur*. And further, That the States should withdraw all their Garrisons in Towns and Places belonging to the Empire.

The Demands made by the King of *Great Britain* were, 1. That the *Dutch* should give him the Honour of the Flag without any Dispute; and that their whole Fleet should strike their Flags, and lower their Topsails, to any one *English* Ship bearing his Majesty's Flag, in any Part of the *English* Sea, as far as the Roads of *Holland*. 2. That the *English* remaining in *Surinam* should be allowed a whole Year to retire whither they pleas'd with their Effects, according to the Treaty of *Breda*. 3. That all his Majesty's Subjects, who had by him been declared Criminals, should for ever be banish'd their Dominions, and likewise all others whom his Majesty should signify to them had publish'd Seditious Books, or conspir'd against the Peace of his Kingdoms. 4. That towards the Charge of the War, they should pay his Majesty a Million of Pounds Sterling at certain Terms. 5. That they should pay him Annually 10000 *l*. Sterling for Liberty to fish for Herring on the *British* and *Irish* Coasts. 6. That the Prince of *Orange* and

his Posterity should from henceforward enjoy the Sovereignty of the United Provinces, except such Parts of 'em as were to be yielded to the two Kings and their Allies; or at least, that the Prince and his Heirs should for ever enjoy the Dignities of General, Admiral, and Stadtholder of the said Provinces. 7. That in three Months Time they should make a Treaty of Commerce. 8. That they should yield to his Majesty the Island of *Walcheren*, the Town and Castle of *Sluys*, the Islands of *Cadfan*, *Garee*, and *Voorne*, as Cautionary Places for the Performances of the Conditions. 9. That they should give full Satisfaction to the most Christian King.

These exorbitant Demands, which we have from the Author of *The Lives of the De Witt*, publish'd in *Holland* in 1677, were rejected both by the Prince and the States, who applied themselves to the Princes of *Germany* for Assistance, and sent them Copies of those Demands, which had the desired Effect. The Elector of *Brandenburg* arm'd first on their Behalf, and the Prince of *Orange* fortify'd the Places that were most expos'd, and changed many of the Magistrates to satisfy the People, who still made Complaints of the *De Witt* and their Faction. They publish'd Libels against the Pensionary, whom they charg'd with mismanaging the Publick Money, and their Military Forces. Upon which he wrote a Letter to the Prince, desiring him to justify his Conduct in both those Respects. To which, says the Author of *The History of the United Provinces*, and the Author of *The Lives of the De Witt*, the Prince answer'd, That he ought to despise those scurrilous Pamphlets, as he himself had been frequently forc'd to do; and for what related to the Publick Money, he referred it to the Council of State, because he himself knew nothing of the Matter. This Answer, says the Author of *The History of the United Provinces*, confirm'd the Suspicion of *John de Witt's* Enemies, tho' he procur'd a Discharge from the Council of State. His Brother *Cornelius de Wit* had the same Misfortune, tho' he was vindicated by *De Ruyter* as to his Behaviour in the Fleet; and not only they, but their Friends were pursu'd by the Hatred of the People, particularly *Peter Gratius*, who with much ado escap'd their

Fury, by retiring out of the Country; but he return'd afterwards, vindicated himself, and died of the Gout, or, as some say, of Poison, according to the last mention'd Author. The Count *de Mombae*, Brother-in-Law to *Cornelius de Wit*, was likewise condemned by a Council of War to lose all his Employments, and to be imprison'd for 15 Years; but making his Escape, he was condemned to lose his Head, and executed in Effigie. He was charged among other Things with not having defended the Pass of the *Rhine* as he ought to have done, when the *French* swam that River. While the Faction of the *De Wits* labour'd under these Misfortunes, a Barber-Surgeon called *Tschalaer* came to the Prince's Camp, and informed the Lord *Zuylenstein*, Natural Uncle to the Prince, that *Cornelius de Wit*, the Burgomaster of *Dart*, and Brother to the Pensionary *Johu de Wit*, had given him Money, and promis'd him a great Reward, to poison or murder the Prince, because, as he said, they could not otherwise preserve their Liberty, the Prince being now made Stadtholder, contrary to the Perpetual Edict, and that they might come to fall under a Foreign Power, by a Match betwixt some Foreign Potentate and a Daughter of the Prince, if he should have any. The Surgeon having given in this Information upon Oath, the Prince communicated the same to the Court of *Holland*, who thereupon committed *De Wit* to Prison; and after having examin'd both Parties, confronted them, and enquir'd into the Matter by Torture and otherwise, the Author of *The Lives of the De Wits* informs us, That considering all Circumstances, with the stedfast Adherence of the Surgeon to his Accusation, and the perplex'd Answers of the Defendant, they condemn'd the latter to lose all his Offices and Employments, banish'd him for ever out of *Holland* and *West-Friesland*, and order'd him to depart as soon as possible, without ever returning, on Pain of severer Punishment, condemn'd him in Costs of Suit, and set his Accuser at Liberty. *De Wit's* Wife and Friends presented several Petitions and Informations to the Court to vindicate the Defendant; insisting upon the well known Services he had done to the State for a great many Years, and that he was but just return'd

home from on board the Fleet, where his very Enemies would bear Witness to his Courage and Conduct. They alledged also the whole Tenor of his Conversation as a sufficient Defence against this Calumny, and referred to the Records of several Courts, where the Surgeon had been condemned for Perjury, and scandalizing several Persons of Note: That he was under Sentence at the same Time for a Rape, for which he was answerable to a Court of the Defendant's Jurisdiction, who was thereby entitl'd to his Forfeiture, for which he ow'd the Defendant a Grudge: That the Defendant never saw him but once, which was soon after his Return from Sea, when the Surgeon, after several Applications, was admitted to his Bed-Chamber, on Pretence of having something of Importance to discover to him, without any body's being by: That Mrs. *De Wit* distrusting the Fellow because of his ill Looks, and because of the universal Clamour that was rais'd against her Husband and his Brother, who had narrowly escap'd being murder'd by Assassins a very little before, she order'd the Chamber-Door to be kept open, and her Son and her Servant to stay in the next Room in view of the Bed upon which her Husband then lay, because of his Indisposition: That they heard all that pass'd betwixt her Husband and the Surgeon: That the latter, after some Discourse about the Calamities of their Country, and the present ill Posture of Affairs, said, He had something to propose to him, if he would keep it secret, and give him Assistance. To which her Husband answer'd, That if what he had to propose was good, he would do what he desir'd; but if otherwise, he might get him gone. To which the Surgeon reply'd, *Since you will not hear me, Sir, I'll be gone.* And so bidding him farewell, was let out of the House by her Servant, after he had stay'd about a quarter of an Hour. That *De Wit* reflecting upon what had pass'd, sent for the Town-Clerk, gave him an Account of what the Fellow had said, and desir'd him, since he was not able to go himself, that he would go to the present Burgomaster, and get a Warrant to take up and examine the Surgeon. A Warrant was accordingly had; but the Witness could not be found till after he had given in his Accu-

Accusation upon Oath, to which he was encourag'd by the Clamours of the People against her Husband. All which Mrs. *De Wit* and her Friends offer'd to prove, as may be seen at large in *The Lives of the De Wits* above-mention'd, together with the Surgeon's Defences. The Substance of which was, That the Courts, who had condemn'd him for the Crimes above-mentioned, had proceeded unjustly against him: That he came to *De Wit* in order to represent his Case to him, and to desire a Redress, which *De Wit* promis'd him, if he would do something he had to propose to him; and that he readily undertook it, provided it were in his Power. Upon this, *De Wit* having taken his Oath to keep the Proposal secret, perswaded him to poison or kill the Prince, for which he laid down several Schemes, promis'd to give him Money, and a considerable Post; and if he lost his Life in the Attempt, to reward his Friends. The Surgeon desir'd a Security under *De Wit*'s Hand, which he refused; but told him, there were 30 more Persons of Note engaged in the Design against the Prince, that would see to the Performance of what he had promis'd him. Upon this, the Surgeon, not daring to refuse for fear of his Life, consented to it, and *De Wit* gave him 6 Ducatoons in Hand, telling him, 'twas all the Money he had about him; and that he would not call for more, for fear of giving Cause of Suspicion. The Surgeon going home, was uneasy in his Mind until he had reveal'd it, as above; and that *De Wit* being sensible of his Danger, in order to prevent it, had sent for the Town-Clerk, as above-mentioned; and that they might easily have taken the Surgeon up if they would, since he was well known in the Town, and appear'd publicly there several Days after, before he made his Discovery.

But however that Matter was, the Surgeon being set at Liberty, and telling about the *Hague*, that *De Wit* was convicted upon his Accusation, the People, especially after *De Wit*'s Sentence was publish'd, began to murmur, and to grow tumultuous; to which they were prompted by the Surgeon, who told them, That if they did not prevent it, *De Wit* would soon be carried out of the Prison: Upon which they took Arms, and went to the Prison. In the

mean time the Pensionary, who had been sent for by his Brother, went to him, contrary to the Advice of his Friends; and as he was bringing him out of Prison, in order to depart according to Sentence, a Woman cry'd out to the Guard of Burgers who stood before the Prison-Door, *What the Devil! Men, there's the Traytors going off; drive them up again, or knock them dead.* Upon which, the Guard order'd them both to go up again, or they would fire upon 'em; and while the Pensionary spoke to them with Authority to forbear, they forc'd 'em both in again, and oblig'd their Coach to ride off, in which 'twas reported their Father sat, in order to have carried them to Dinner. In the mean time the Tumult increas'd, and the Report being spread, that *Cornelius* had escap'd, the People would not be satisfied till two of the Burgomasters and four Burgers went up, and satisfied them to the contrary. The Pensionary prevail'd with the Magistrates to dine with him and his Brother. But in the mean time all the Companies of Burgers came in Arms about the Prison, drew up in good Order, and would suffer no Man to go in for fear of an Uproar. Three Troops of Horse, which then lay in the *Hague*, did also mount: One of 'em went to the usual Place of Rendezvous, and the other two endeavour'd to get into the outer Court of the Prison; but the People kept them off with their Pikes and Muskets, and the arm'd Rabble got up to the Tops of the neighbouring Houses, to see that neither of the *De Wits* should escape; and perceiving that the Officers stay'd long in the Prison, and apprehending them to be murder'd, they began to throw Stones, and to fire their Pieces at the Doors and Windows, till the Officers spoke to them out at the Windows, and told them, All was well. In the mean time a false Report was spread, That the Mob of the neighbouring Villages and Towns had taken Arms, and were coming to plunder the *Hague*. This increas'd the Tumult, and some of the Burgers cry'd out, *We stay here to guard a couple of Rogues, who will certainly be rescued ere next Morning by Force or Craft; and if they escape, the Town will be next Day all in Blood and Confusion, and our Houses plunder'd.* Upon which, many requested that the *De Wits* might be car-

ried to the Town-House, where they would be kept securely without any Trouble. Others cry'd out, *Let us tie them to the Gibbet, and shoot them.* Upon which one of the Mob bid them follow him, and he would be their Leader; and then with their Muskets and Smiths Hammers they broke up the Doors, and came to the Chamber, where they found the Pensionary sitting upon the Foot of the Bed, reading in his Bible, and his Brother laid down in his Night-Gown. The Pensionary ask'd them, What they would have, and why all that Violence? One of 'em answer'd, *You must walk down, for we will have your Lives.* Cornelius rising from his Bed, spoke roughly to the Fellow, and bid him go down; but the Pensionary seeing that no Reason would do, he took his Brother by the Hand to go down Stairs, where he was wounded by a Pike over the Eye: Upon which he held up his Hands and Eyes to Heaven, recommending his Soul to God; and as he went out, was forced by the Mob to the very Place where he had been assassinated two Months before, and barbarously murder'd, covering his Face with his Cloak, says the Author of their Lives, as *Julius Caesar* did; and his last Words were, *Well Men! Well Citizens!* And soon after his Brother had the same Fate. Upon this, the Companies retir'd under their respective Colours in good Order, while the barbarous Mob carried their dead Bodies to the Gallows, where they hung the Pensionary a Foot higher than his Brother, and afterwards mangling their Corps, cut their Clothes in a Thousand Pieces, and sent them about the Country as if they had been Trophies of a Conquest; and, says *The History of the United Provinces*, and the Author of *The Lives of the De Witts*, some of 'em cut out large Pieces of their Flesh, which they broil'd and eat.

Thus fell those two great Men by popular Fury, Cornelius in the 49th, and the Pensionary in the 47th Year of his Age, both equally zealous, says that Author, for the Glory and Liberty of their Native Country, and formerly as much belov'd, as now they were hated by the People, who look'd upon them to be the Causes of all the Calamities with which their Country was at that time overwhelmed. The *Atlas Historique* says, the Cause of their Ruin was the

too great Opposition they made to the Prince's Parry; with which Sir *William Temple* seems to agree in *The Causes of the Fall of this Republick*, where he says, "That the chief Thing which concurr'd to weaken, and indeed to break the Strength of their Land Force, was the Alteration of their State, which happen'd by the Perpetual Edict of *Holland* and *West Friesland* upon the Death of the last Prince of *Orange*, for the Exclusion of the Power of Stadtholder, or at least the Separation of it from the Charge of Captain-General; for after that Time, the main Design and Application of those Provinces had been to work out by degrees all the old Officers both Native and Foreign, who had been formerly sworn to the Prince of *Orange*, and were still thought affectionate to the Interest of that Family, and to fill the Commands of their Army with the Sons or Kinmen of Burgomasters, and other Officers or Deputies in the State, whom they esteem'd sure to their popular Constitution, and good enough for an Age, wherein they saw no Appearance of an Enemy to attack them by Land. But the Humour of Kindness to the young Prince, both in the People and Army, was not to be dissolv'd or dispers'd by any Medicines or Operations either of Rigour or Artifice, but grew up insensibly with the Age of the Prince, ever presaging some Revolution in the State, when he should come to the Years of aspiring and managing the general Affections of the People; being a Prince who join'd to the great Qualities of his Royal Blood, the popular Virtues of his Country; silent and thoughtful; given to hear, and to enquire; of a sound and steady Understanding; much Firmness in what he once resolves, or once denies; great Industry and Application to his Business, little to Pleasures; Piety and Religion of his Country, but with Charity to others; Temperance unusual to his Youth, and to the Climate; frugal in the common Management of his Fortune, and yet magnificent upon Occasion; of great Spirit and Heart, aspiring to the Glory of Military Actions, with strong Ambition to grow great, but rather by the Service, than the Servitude of his Cour-

try.

try. In short, a Prince of many Virtues, without any appearing Mixture of Vice. At the same time the Prince was approaching the 22d Year of his Age, which the States of *Holland*, ever since their Alliance with *England* in 1668, pretended should be the Time of advancing him to the Charge of Captain-General and Admiral of their Forces, tho' without that of Stadtholder; but the nearer they drew to this Period, which was like to make a new Figure in their Government, the more desirous some of their Ministers seem'd either to decline or restrain it. On the other side, the Prince grew confident upon the former Promises of *Holland*, and the concurring Dispositions of the other Six Provinces, to his Advancement; and his Party, spirited by their Hopes, and the great Qualities of this young Prince, now grown ripe for Action, resolv'd to bring this Point to a sudden Decision; against which the other Party prepared, and united all their Defences. — Besides, those Ministers who had still the Direction of Affairs, bent their chief Application to the Strength and Order of their Fleet, rather than of their Army. — Perhaps content that some ill Successes should attend the Prince of *Orange* at his first Entrance upon the Command of their Armies, and thereby contribute to their Designs of restraining his Authority, while they were to leave him the Name of Captain-General. This indeed was not likely to fail, considering the ill Constitution of their old Army, the hasty Levies of their new, and the Height of the Faction now broken out in the State, which left both the Towns and the Troops in Suspence under whose Banners they fought, and by whose Orders they were to be governed, the Prince's or the States. — In this Posture were the Affairs of this Commonwealth when the War broke out, with those fatal Events that must needs attend any Kingdom or State where the Violence of a Foreign Invasion happens to meet with the distracted Estate of a Domestick Sedition. — Their Towns were without Order, their Burgers without Obedience, their Soldiers without Discipline, and all with-

out Heart; and indeed it was the Name of *England* joining in the War against them that chiefly broke their Hearts, and contributed more to the Loss of so many Towns, and so much Country, than the Armies of *Munster* and *France*.

These judicious Reflections of Sir *William*'s are confirmed by the Account given even by the Author of *The Lives of the De Witt*, who, tho' a Friend to that Faction, yet does not dissemble the great Opposition made in the United Provinces to the Exclusion of the Prince from the Dignities of his Ancestors, which was so very ungrateful to the People in general, and so manifestly contrary to their Fundamental Union concluded at *Utrecht*. That those who were for it thought it necessary to vindicate themselves, as not being the first Movers of it, but merely forc'd to it by *Cromwel*, who would listen to a Peace on no other Terms but the Exclusion of the Prince, lest he should some Time or other revenge the Murder of his Grandfather upon him and his Party, as *Van Beverning*, the Dutch Ambassador who negotiated the Treaty in *England*, did afterwards openly declare in the Assembly of the States General.

However that was, the Author of *The History of the United Provinces* says, the Prince of *Orange* was so far from shewing the least Countenance to these barbarous Proceedings, that when the States of *Holland* wrote to him, expressing their Abhorrence of so detestable an Action, he order'd a strict Enquiry to be made after the Authors and Promoters of it; but upon several Petitions by the Burgers of the *Hague*, who excus'd the same by the vast Numbers of those concern'd in it, these Proceedings went no further than summoning the Guilty before the Court of Justice. Soon after this the *Sieur Teckbars*, Head Bailiff of the Mayoralty of *Boisteduc*, and Cousin-German to the *De Witt*, was accused by his own Coachman of the like Conspiracy against the Prince, but acquitted, because the Coachman could not make good his Accusation. We have been the larger on this Particular, because the Dutch were then so much divided in their Opinions about it, as they are still, that both the Factions make it a Handle for bitter Reflections on one another. And as the

one Side was so much enraged against the Memory of the *De Witts*, that after their mangled Corps were buried, they threaten'd to take them up, to burn them, and scatter their Ashes, lest they should afterwards have Monuments erected for them as Martyrs of State, as some had talk'd of doing for *Barneveldt*: The other Party struck Medals in Honour of their Memory; of which the Curious may find an Account in the History of their Lives: And we leave the Reader to make his own Judgment on the whole.

Fagel was chosen Pensionary after the Murder of *De Witt*; and having observ'd the Fate of his Predecessors, because of their violent Opposition to the Family of *Orange*, he steer'd a contrary Course.

Much about this Time the Elector of *Brandenburg* wrote to the States, to whom he recommended the Prince, as inheriting all the Virtues of his Ancestors; and said, He thought himself oblig'd to have assisted him in recovering those Dignities, which they had so dearly purchas'd; but since the States had restor'd him, he doubted not that Heaven would prosper a Resolution so advantageous to the Publick.

After this, the Prince chas'd the *French* advanc'd Guards as far as their Trenches before *Utrecht*, and besieg'd *Naerden*, but without Success, the *French* being directed by some treacherous Peasants how to throw Succours into the Town; but not without Loss, the Prince having defeated 5 of their Regiments, and killed or wounded most of their Officers. Then he marched with 24000 Men to the Country of *Liege*, oblig'd the *French* to retire, and invested *Charleroy*, to bring them to a Battle, which they avoided, and the unseasonable Weather oblig'd the Prince to rise from before *Charleroy*; but he took *Bins*, made the Garrison Prisoners of War, demolished the Fortifications, and put his Army into Winter Quarters. During this Expedition, the Duke of *Luxemburg*, with 40000 Men, attempted to conquer and plunder the Province of *Holland* by the Favour of the Ice; but was prevented by a Thaw, and retir'd with Loss, having narrowly escap'd being drown'd himself. His Men made themselves more odious to the *Dutch* than ever by their Cruelties and Rapes, in some small

Places that had been abandon'd by the *Garrisons*; but the Return of the Prince soon restor'd Things to their former State.

In 1673, the Prince took *Naerden*, *Rhinberg*, and *Bonne*, which oblig'd the *French* to abandon most of their Conquests in the United Provinces. This, with the taking of *Coeworden* by Surprize, and some other Advantages, very much rais'd the Spirits of the *Dutch*; tho' the Elector of *Brandenburg*, for want of being duly assisted by the Empire, was oblig'd to come to a Neutrality with the *French* King, on Condition of having what the *French* had taken in the Dutchy of *Gleve* restored to him. That same Year the *Dutch* under *Van Trump* had another Engagement by Sea against the *English* and *French* commanded by Prince *Robert* near *Dungeness*, in which both pretended to the Victory; the *English* and *French* lost most Ships; the *Dutch* made Rejoicings in *Holland*, and order'd a Day of Thanksgiving for their Advantage. In July after, there was another bloody Engagement betwixt the Fleets at Sea, while the *English* prepared for a new Descent upon *Holland*; but after a sharp Engagement, they both retired without claiming the Victory, and the Descent miscarried. That same Year the *French* King took *Maefricht*, after a vigorous Siege; but his further Progress was stopp'd, by laying the Country about *Bergenopzoom* and *Boisledue* under Water. At the same time the *Dutch* recover'd most of the Places that had been taken from them by the Bishop of *Munster*.

In 1674, the Parliament and People of *England* being dissatisfied at the War with the *Dutch*, and uneasy at the Progress of the *French* in the *Netherlands*, a Treaty for a General Peace was set on foot at *Cologne*, but without Effect, because the Emperor order'd the Prince of *Fursenberg*, a Native of the Empire, but Plenipotentiary for *France*, tho' under Pretence of being so for the Elector of *Cologne*, to be carried off. In Consideration of the Prince of *Orange's* great Services, the States of *Holland* and *West-Friesland*, and the States General, made his Dignities Hereditary to him and his Heirs-Male lawfully begotten; so that he was exalted above any of his Ancestors in the 23d Year of his Age. This Year was also fought the Battle of *Senef*, where the *French* had

had the Advantage at first; but the Prince of *Condé* lost the Honour and Profit of it by his too great Eagerness. Both Sides claim'd the Victory; but the *French* avoided coming to a second Engagement, tho' the Prince of *Orange* did all he could to bring them to it. He gave such Proofs of his Courage and Conduct in this Battle, that the Prince of *Condé* gave him this Testimony, That he shew'd himself equal to the oldest Generals; but that he too frequently expos'd his Person, an Error which his high-wrought Courage would never allow him to reform. After this Battle, the Prince took *Grave*, which put an End to the Campaign.

In 1675, the States, upon Hopes of a Revolt on the Coasts of *Normandy*, set out a Fleet under *De Ruyter* and *Van Trump*; but the Conspiracy was discovered, as 'tis suppos'd by the King of *Great Britain*, says *The History of the United Provinces*, for which the *Chevalier de Raan* was beheaded, and some others executed in *France*; so that the Design miscarried: But *Trump* returning from the Coasts of *France*, defeated the *Swedish* Fleet, and forc'd them to return into their own Harbours, in pursuance of the League the States had made with some Princes of the Empire against the *Swedes*, who had invaded the Elector of *Brandenburg's* Dominions. The same Year the Prince took *Binch*; and the States of the Province of *Guelderland* offer'd him their Sovereignty, which, by the Advice of the other Provinces, he wisely refus'd, there being none of 'em for his accepting it but *Utrecht*; so that he thank'd them for their Proffer, says *The History of the United Provinces*, but told them, he could not comply, because it would prove the Occasion of Jealousy and Mistrust, as if he aim'd at nothing but his own Grandeur. Yet notwithstanding his Modesty, this gave Occasion to the *Louvestein* Faction to say, That he aim'd at the Sovereignty of all the Provinces: Upon which the States General, to prevent the ill Consequences of such Reflections, issued a severe Proclamation, forbidding all Persons, of what Rank or Degree soever, to utter by Word or Writing, that the Prince ever aim'd at any such Thing, or that the proposing of it to him had ever been debated in their Assembly. The Prince being after this taken ill

of the Small-Pox, the *French King* laying hold of the Opportunity, took *Liege*, *Dinant*, *Huy*, and *Limburg*. This Year the great Marshal *Turenne*, who had defeated the *Germans* at *Sinsheim* the Year before, was killed by a Cannon-Bullet as viewing the *German Camp*; and the Duke of *Lorraine* defeated Marshal *Crequi*, and afterwards took him with his Garrison Prisoners of War at *Troves*, whither he had retired after the Battle.

In 1676, the Treaty of *Nimueguen* was set on foot by the Mediation of King *Charles II.* but without Effect; so that the *French King* invaded the *Netherlands* with his Army, and took *Condé* and *Bouchain*. *De Ruyter* being sent to Sea against his Will, because his Fleet was too small, had two Engagements on the Coasts of *Sicily* with the *French*, and lost his Life in the second, wherein both Sides claim'd the Victory; but the *Dutch* were defeated in a third Engagement, and their Army miscarried in the Siege of *Maastricht*, where the Prince of *Orange* was wounded. That same Year he appeas'd some Religious Differences that had risen in *Zealand* upon the Subject of *Cocceianism*.

In 1677, the *French* took *Valenciennes*, *Cambray*, and *Sa. Omers*, and defeated the Prince near *Mont-Cassel*, which made the *Dutch* inclinable to accept the Proposals made by the *French* Plenipotentiaries at *Nimueguen*; but the Prince oppos'd it, as being contrary to their former League with the Princes of the Empire.

This Year the Prince was married to the Duke of *York's* eldest Daughter, the Princess *Mary*, our late Queen of Glorious Memory; which, with the ensuing Alliance betwixt *England* and *Holland*, put the Confederates in Hopes of obtaining an advantageous Peace with *France*; but the unsteady Management of the Court of *England*, and the Slackness of their Preparations to assist their Allies, together with the Clamours of the *Louvestein* Faction in *Holland*, that the Prince's Match would prove fatal to their Liberties, prevail'd with the States to clap up a separate Peace with *France*, contrary to the Mind of the Emperor, the King of *Denmark*, the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and their other Allies. The Prince having oppos'd it with all his Power, did all he could, says the above-mentioned Author, to trans-

verse

verse it, for which the *French* furnish'd him with a very good Opportunity, by continuing the Blockade of *Mons* during the Cessation of Arms. Upon this he attack'd the Duke of *Luxemburg's* Head Quarter at the Abbey of *St. Denis*, from whence he chas'd him with great Slaughter, tho' not without considerable Loss on his own Side. After this the Prince design'd to have relieved *Mons*; but as he was consulting about it, he receiv'd Advice that the Peace was concluded, of which he sent the Duke of *Luxemburg* Word, which put an End to the War at that Time. In this Action the Prince ventur'd so far, that he was in Danger of being kill'd; but was happily rescued by the Lord *Auverquerque*, who shot a *French* Captain just as he was going to discharge a Pistol at him; for which the States made that Lord a very noble Present.

In 1679, the *Dutch* sent Ambassadors to *France* to promote a Peace betwixt that Crown and their Allies, who had not agreed to the Peace of *Nimeguen*; but the *French* King refused to give their Ambassadors the Respect due to those of Crown'd Heads; tho' at last, having proved that this had been allow'd them by *Henry IV.* his Father, and himself, he comply'd: And a Peace betwixt *France* and the *Dutch* Allies was concluded.

In 1680, the Prince of *Orange* had an Interview in *Germany* with the Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Dukes of *Zell* and *Hanover*; after which he came to see his Uncle King *Charles* in *England*. The *French* propos'd a Defensive Alliance with the *Dutch*, who rejected it, and new Differences happen'd betwixt them and *France*, because the *French* King delay'd to settle the Limits betwixt him and the *Spaniards* in the *Netherlands*; and urg'd, that the King of *Spain* should renounce his Title of D. of *Burgundy*, which the *Spaniards* were forc'd to comply with.

In 1681, the *Dutch East-India* Company reduc'd their Tributary the King of *Ternate* in the *East-Indies*, for taking Part with the King of *Bantam*: And the States being alarm'd at the *French* King's seizing *Strasbourg* and *Cassal*, they made an Alliance of Guarantee with the *Swedes*, and propos'd the same to King *Charles*; but the Duke of *York* dissuaded him from it. This Proposal

provok'd the *French* King to threaten the *Dutch*; and he sent an Officer with some Dragoons to take up a *French* Count, that had retir'd to their Dominions; but the *Dutch* took the Officer, condemn'd him to die, and sentenc'd the Dragoons to work 10 Years in their Rasp-House. Yet when the Officer was carried to the Place of Execution, they pardon'd both him and the Dragoons! The Emperor being provok'd with the *French* King's seizing of *Strasbourg*, and his Pretences of reuniting several Places of the Empire by Virtue of the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, he enter'd into the Treaty of Guarantee, and made a League with the Circles of *Franconia* and *Upper Rhine* for Defence of that River. At the same Time the *French* King possess'd himself of the Principality of *Orange*, and dismantled the Town, which was complain'd of by the *English* and *Dutch* Ambassadors: But the *English* Court, instead of being cordial in the Matter, quarrel'd likewise with the *Dutch*, for having supported the young King of *Bantam* against his Father, who was their Enemy, and had resign'd the Crown to his Son, which he afterwards would have reassum'd; but the young King having prevail'd, by the Assistance of the *Dutch*, he order'd the *English*, who had taken Part with his Father, to depart his Dominions, which the Court of *England* charged on the *Dutch* as an Intrigue of theirs; but they excus'd themselves, and alledg'd, they did the *English* there all the good Offices they could, tho' they took Part with the old King against them to ruin their Commerce: However they offer'd an amicable Composition about that Matter.

In 1683, and 1684, the *French* continued their Encroachments on the *Spanish Netherlands*, and took *Luxemburg*. Upon which the Prince and the *Dutch* propos'd to raise an Army to stop their Progress; but the City of *Amsterdam* oppos'd it, which brought on the Peace of *Ratisbon*, where a Truce of 20 Years was concluded; yet the Prince of *Orange* had not his Principality restor'd.

In 1685, *Charles II.* of *Great Britain* died, and was succeeded by his Brother *James II.* Upon which the Duke of *Monmouth*, being oblig'd to retire from the *Spanish Netherlands* at the Solicitation of King *James*, went to *Holland*; as did others who were obnoxious to the Government in *England*. King *James* requir'd

requir'd the States to banish them; which they having agreed to, the Duke of *Monmouth* and the Earl of *Argyle* rais'd a Rebellion in *Great Britain*. Upon this, the States not only sent the 6 *British* Regiments in their Service to help to suppress them, according to Agreement when they were first rais'd, but the Prince of *Orange* offer'd to come in Person with more Troops; the latter of which King *James* refus'd; and notwithstanding this generous Offer, did not in the least interpose in Behalf of the Prince, whose Subjects were barbarously persecuted in *Orange*, and their Ministers sent Prisoners to *France*.

In 1686, King *James* allow'd the *Algerines*, then at War with the *Dutch*, the free Use of his Ports; and 20 of their Frigates in the Channel took above 30 rich *Dutch* Merchant Ships, most of whose Cargo they sold in *England*. This, together with a Memorial from the Marquis de *Albeville*, King *James's* Minister in *Holland*, about the Affair of *Bantam*, and the hindering of his Envoy to carry off Sir *Robert Peyton*, who had retir'd to their Country, gave the *Dutch* sufficient Reason to perceive that King *James* design'd to quarrel with them. The *French* King being likewise offended, because of the kind Reception they gave his persecuted Protestants, a Squadron of his Men of War took a *Dutch* Man of War in the *Streights*; but that Matter was soon compromised.

In 1687, the Marquis de *Albeville* gave in fresh Memorials concerning the Affair of *Bantam*, and the seizing some *English* Officers whom *Skelton* had employ'd to take up Sir *Robert Peyton*: Upon which the *Dutch* deliver'd the Officers, after having proceeded against them judicially, and banish'd them their Provinces; but they refus'd to banish Dr. *Burnet*, now Bishop of *Salisbury*, tho' King *James* requir'd it, the Doctor being naturaliz'd in *Holland*.

In 1688, King *James* having given evident Proofs of his Design to subvert the Protestant Religion, and the Liberties of *Great Britain*, he continued to press the *Dutch* about the Affair of *Bantam*, and demanded they should send home the 6 *British* Regiments in their Service; which the *Dutch* refused, because, according to Agreement, they were not to be sent home, ex-

cept *Britain* was engaged in a War. Besides, the old *British* Regiments there being disbanded in 1665, the new ones had taken an Oath of Fidelity to the States. However, they gave Passports to such Officers as had a Mind to return, which 40 of 'em accepted; but the rest, with the Troops, list'd themselves afresh in the Service of the States. In the mean time King *James's* Queen pretended to be brought to Bed of a Son, tho' there were violent Suspicions of the Truth of her Pregnancy: Besides, neither the Princess of *Orange* nor the Princess of *Denmark*, who were the Persons most immediately concern'd to know the Truth of it, were invited to be present at her Labour: The Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who ought to have been in the Bed-Chamber, by Vertue of his Office, at the same Time, was, with 6 other Bishops, imprison'd in the Tower, for refusing to read King *James's* Declaration for Liberty of Conscience, which he had publish'd with the Advice of his Judges, by Vertue of his Dispensing Power. This heighten'd the Discontents in *Great Britain*, and gave new Cause of Jealousy to the Prince of *Orange* and the States. At the same Time the *French* King prohibited Commerce with the *Dutch* as to Woollen Manufacturies and Herrings; and the Elector of *Cologne* being dead, he threaten'd the *Dutch*, if they interpos'd in the Election of his Successor, who he design'd should be the Prince of *Furstemberg*, that he would oppose them with his Troops, and began to march them accordingly. The *Dutch* perceiving plainly by these Steps, that *England* and *France* design'd a War upon them, they prepar'd for it. The *English* and *French* Courts demanded the Reasons of those Preparations. To which the *Dutch* answer'd, That they did it according to the Example of *England* and *France*. Upon this, the *English* Minister offer'd an Alliance with the *Dutch* against the Infractions of the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and the late Truce; but the States perceiving that this was only proposed to gain Time; and the Prince having a Memorial sent him from many of the chief Protestants of *Great Britain*, representing the Grounds they had to suspect the Birth of the pretended Prince, by which the *English* Court design'd to defraud his Princess of

her Right of Succession, and to overturn their own Religion and Liberties; the *Dutch* continued their Preparations with Vigour, and lent Part of their Army and Fleet to the Prince, who, pursuant to the Memorial, landed in *England*, where, King *James* being deserted, the Prince and Princess were declared King and Queen of *Great Britain*, and King *James* retired into *France*, having sent his Queen and pretended Son thither before: But we refer the further Account of this Matter to the History of *England*. The *French* King, to divert the Prince and States from this Enterprize, had threaten'd them with Memorials, and declar'd War against the *Dutch*, but without Effect.

In 1689, the *Dutch* sent Ambassadors to congratulate King *William* and Queen *Mary's* Accession to the Throne; and the *French* King, instead of bending his Force against the *Dutch*, invaded *Germany*, and ruin'd the *Palatinate*. The Close of that same Year, the *French* declared War against *Spain*, and invaded the *Netherlands*; but met with a considerable Repulse from Prince *Waldeck*, who commanded the *Dutch* Army at *Walcourt*.

In 1690, the *French* being superior in Number, defeated that Prince at the Battle of *Flerus*; but bought the Victory so dear, that they did nothing more that Campaign. That same Year the *French* engaged our Fleet and a Squadron of *Dutch* off of *Beachy-head*, wherein the Confederates had the worst: But we refer the Particulars to the *English* History.

King *William* having defeated the late King *James* in *Ireland*, and oblig'd him a second time to retire to *France* in 1691, his Majesty went to the *Hague*, where, in a Congress of Princes and Ambassadors, he concerted Measures for carrying on the War against the *French* in the *Netherlands*. An Engagement happen'd near *Leuse* betwixt the *French* and Prince *Waldeck*, where, tho' the *French* were superior in Number, they had equal Loss.

In 1692, the *French* King with 45000 Men, being cover'd by the Duke of *Luxemburg* with 60000, besieg'd and took *Namur*. King *William* march'd to have reliev'd it; but the great Rains so swelled the Rivers, that he could not pass them to effect it.

That same Year, a Plot was form'd by the *French* and the *English* *Jacobites* to have murder'd Queen *Mary*, while the *French* Fleet was to have invaded *England*; but the Plot was discover'd, and prevented by the Vigilance of Mr. *Johnston*, then Lord Secretary for *Scotland*; and the *English* and *Dutch*, under the Conduct of Admiral *Ruffel*, defeated the *French* Fleet near *La Hogue* on the Coast of *Normandy*, where the *French* lost 18 or 20 of their Capital Ships. At the same time a Plot was discover'd to have murder'd King *William* in *Flanders* by *Grandval*, a *French* Officer, and other Assassins; for which *Grandval* was taken and executed at the Head of the Army. Soon after this, the *English* and *Dutch* were defeated at *Stenkirk*, where they were overpower'd by the *French*, tho' the Loss was almost equal on both Sides.

In 1693, the *French* seiz'd and dispers'd most of the *Dutch* *Smirna* Fleet in their Return home. The *French* defeated the *English* and *Dutch* again at the Battle of *Landen*, while a great Part of their Army was detached to force the *French* Lines. The *English* and *Scotts* perform'd Wonders in this Battle; and the Loss of the *French* was so great, that tho' they kept the Field, they made no further Progress this Campaign. In the mean time the *French*, to divide the Confederates, made separate Proposals to the Emperor by the Pope, and to King *William* by the Minister of *Denmark*; but they were rejected.

In 1694, the *English* and *Dutch* made a Descent near *Brest*; but their Design being betray'd, miscarried. They bombarded *Diepe* and *Havre-de-Grace*, and attempted *Dunkirk* and *Calais*, without Success; but Admiral *Ruffel*, with another Part of the *English* and *Dutch* Fleet, sav'd *Barcelona*. King *William* fail'd in seizing *Pont d'Espiere* in *Flanders*, being prevented by the Vigilance of the *Dauphin*, who commanded the *French* Army; but the King took *Dixmuyd* and *Huy*. His Majesty appeas'd some dangerous Differences in Religion, which begun then to appear in *Holland*, and order'd the Publick Establishment, and the Canons of the Synod of *Dort*, to be duly observ'd there, according to the laudable Example of his Predecessors.

In 1695, the Confederates had a great Loss by the Death of Queen *Mary* of glorious Memory; and the *French* lost their great General the D. of *Luxemburg*. King *William*, notwithstanding his just Grief for the Death of that excellent Princess, return'd to *Flanders*, where he took *Namur* in fight of the *French* Army, after a vigorous Defence by *M. Boufflers*, who was arrested by way of Reprisal for the detaining the Garrisons of *Dixmuyd* and *Deynse* by the *French*, contrary to the Capitulation. Prince *Vaudemont* being well nigh surpris'd with Part of the Confederate Army by the *French*, made a noble Retreat. This Year a dangerous Tumult happen'd at *Amsterdam*, which lasted several Days, on Occasion of some Alterations introduc'd in their Way of Burying; but was happily suppress'd by the Magistrates and Train-Bands, and the Ring-leaders put to Death.

In 1696, a new Plot to assassinate King *William* was set on foot by the *French* Court and the *English* *Jacobites*, while the late King *James* marched with an Army to the Coasts of *Normandy*, where he was to have embark'd, upon a Signal that the Murther was effected; but he was disappointed, and the Insurrection of his Friends in *England* prevented by the Discovery of the Plot, and the Seizure and Execution of some of the chief Assassins and Conspirators. The *French* Magazine at *Givet* in *Flanders*, was burnt by the Confederate Bombs, and *Calais* was a second time attack'd in vain by the Confederate Fleet; but they bombarded *St. Martin* and *Olene*. This Year the *French* King found Means to break the Duke of *Savoy* off from the Confederacy. The Earl of *Galway*, then in *Italy*, gave Notice of the Design three Months before-hand; but it could not be prevented: The Duke, among other advantageous Terms, having obtain'd a Match betwixt his eldest Daughter and the Duke of *Burgundy*, eldest Son to the Dauphin. This prevail'd with the *Dutch* to listen to the *French* Proposals of Peace, which, by the Mediation of the K. of *Sweden*, was concluded at *Ryswick* in 1697. The *Dutch* having obtained more advantageous Conditions than they had by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and the *French* King having also own'd King *William*: But more of this when we come to *England*. This

Year the *Turks* did also agree to a Treaty of Peace with the Emperor at *Carlowitz*, by the Mediation of the *English* and *Dutch*.

In 1698, King *William* went into *Holland*, and from thence to *Zell*, where he had a Conference with the Duke of that Name about the Affairs of *Germany*. The same Year, a Treaty of Partition of the *Spanish* Monarchy was agreed upon betwixt *England*, *France*, and *Holland*, by which *Spain* and the *West-Indies* were, in case of the King of *Spain's* Death without Issue, to be settled upon the Electoral Prince of *Bavaria*, and *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Guipuscoa*, with the Places on the Coast of *Tuscany*, were to remain to the Dauphin, and the Duchy of *Milan* to be given to the Archduke *Charles* and his Heirs. The Elector of *Bavaria* was to be Tutor to his own Son during his Minority; and in case of his Death without Issue, the Elector and his other Posterity were to enjoy his Share: But the Electoral Prince dying, another Treaty of Partition was agreed upon in 1699 between *England*, *France*, and *Holland*, by which *Spain* and the *West-Indies* were to be settled upon Archduke *Charles* and his Heirs; and the Dauphin and his Heirs were to have *Naples*, *Sicily*, the Places belonging to *Spain* on the Coasts of *Tuscany*, *Guipuscoa*, &c. The Emperor rejected this Treaty, as being contrary to his Interest; and the *French* King, says the *Atlas Historique*, tho' he was the first that mov'd it, on Pretence of preventing the Wars that must otherwise ensue in *Europe*, charg'd it upon the *English* and *Dutch*, in order to make them hateful to the *Spaniards*, who could not endure to hear of the dismembring of their Monarchy.

In 1700, the *French* improving the Disgust which this Treaty had rais'd in the *Spaniards*, found Means to induce King *Charles II.* of *Spain*, as was pretended, to make a Will, or as others say, they and their Creatures, of whom Cardinal *Portocarrero* was the chief, made it for him; by which, contrary to the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*, and his own Father's Will, &c. the Duke of *Anjou*, second Son to the Dauphin, was declared Heir to the whole *Spanish* Monarchy; and *Charles II.* dying a little after, the *French* King fell in with the Will, and rejected the Treaty of Partition, for which he order'd his Ministers in *England* and *Hol-*

land to acquaint those two Powers with his Reasons; who being very much offended, they prepared to oppose his Pretensions: But the *French King*, by gaining the Electors of *Bavaria* and *Cologne*, was before-hand with them; and the former, tho' he was made Governor of the *Netherlands* in King *Charles II.*'s Time, by the Interest of those two Powers, made it easy for the *French King* to seize *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, *Charleroy*, and other Towns, where the *Dutch*, by *K. Charles II.*'s Consent, had Troops in Garrison for the Security of their own Frontiers, and those of the *Spanish Netherlands*. At the same Time a War broke out in the North betwixt *Sweden* and *Denmark*, on Account of the latter's Pretensions to *Holstein*; but the *English* and *Dutch*, to prevent the dangerous Consequences of it, brought those Princes to a Peace.

In 1701, the *Dutch* were very much alarm'd at the Approach of the Troops of *France*, while so many of their own were detained in the Garrisons of the *Netherlands*; of which the *French King* had made himself Master by the Elector of *Bavaria*'s Treachery: But King *William*, who was their Stadtholder, having come into *Holland*, did, in the Meeting of the States General, make a pathetick Speech, and assur'd them of the Continuance of his Affection for their Republick, and to do his Utmost for their Welfare, as he had always done. This was one of the last Proofs that he gave them of his Affection, for he was then in a bad State of Health. In the mean time the *French King*, by his Minister, propos'd to enter into a particular Conference with the States; but they refus'd to do any thing without King *William*'s Participation. However, because the *French King* pretended to detain their Troops in the *Spanish Netherlands*, because they had not own'd his Grandson as King of *Spain*, they remov'd that Objection by owning him, and recover'd their Troops; but they refus'd to enter into any further Treaty with him, except he would put *Venlo*, *Ruremond*, *Stevensweert*, *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, *Charleroy*, *Mons*, *Dendermonde*, and *St. Donas*, into their Hands as a Security: And *England* demand'd *Ossend* and *Newport*; to which the *French King* return'd no Answer: But the States having recover'd their Troops, were more resolute

than they had been before. The late King *James* dying this Year at *St. Germain*, the *French King*, contrary to the Treaty of *Ryswick*, own'd the pretended Prince of *Wales* as King of *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, which gave new Cause of Offence to the *English* and *Dutch*. The Elector of *Cologne* at the same time received *French* Troops into *Bonne*, *Rhinberg*, *Keyserswaert*, and the Citadel of *Liege*, where the *French* carried off the great Dean. All which did mightily incense the Empire. The Close of this Year, King *William* return'd to *England*, where he call'd a new Parliament, in order to carry on the War against *France*.

In 1702, the Duke of *Anjou* sent his Majesty a Letter by a Gentleman, to notify his Marriage with a Daughter of the Duke of *Savoy*; to which King *William* return'd no Answer, and sent the Messenger away. His Majesty, whose bad State of Health we formerly took Notice of, being eas'd of his Asthma, (with which he had been troubled most part of his Time) by vomiting at Sea when he came from *Holland*, did afterwards go a hunting for his Diversion; but his Horse falling, the Clavicula of his Neck was put out, but set again immediately; so that he found himself in a Condition to dispatch publick Affairs, and seem'd to recover; but dy'd of a Fever the 8th of *March*, to the great Regret of the whole Confederates, and particularly of *Great Britain* and *Holland*, which he had sav'd from Popery and Tyranny. Thus fell that great Man, the last of the House of *Orange*, who, contrary to all Expectation, was rais'd by Heaven to do such mighty Things. The *Atlas* gives him this Character, That he was a Prince of extraordinary Endowments, of a solid and piercing Judgment, of a superior Genius, and invincible Courage. His Patience, Evenness of Temper, and Firmness of Mind, were Proof against all Attacks. He was sober, vigilant, wise in Counsel, valiant in Arms, and so indefatigable, notwithstanding the Weakness of his Constitution, that he continually apply'd himself to publick Affairs. He was always an Enemy to Divisions, study'd the Peace of his Subjects among themselves, was ready to forget Injuries, and as much condemn'd Flattery and vain Glory, as he pursu'd what was solid and true; nor was he ever diverted by

Plea-

Pleasures or Grandeur from the Love that he bore to his Country and his Subjects. This, with what we have formerly quoted from Sir William Temple, may serve to give the World a brief View of that Prince's Character, and makes it appear truly great both in Adversity and Prosperity. Tho' to say he had no Failings, both as a private Man and a Prince, were a mean Piece of Flattery, and to make him more than a Man. By his Will, he left Prince William of Nassau, Hereditary Governor of Friesland, his universal Heir.

After his Death, the States confirmed their Alliance with his Successor Queen Anne, and their other Confederates. The French King, whom he had made to tremble when alive, insulted him in a Memorial presented to the States by his Resident after his Death, wherein he had this Expression, *That being restor'd to themselves, they would now be govern'd by their own Spirit.* To which they reply'd, "That their Republick was always animated by the same Spirit; and that the Counsels of his British Majesty were ever directed to their Welfare, and the Preservation of their Liberty.

Tho' the War betwixt the Confederates and the French King was not then formally declar'd, it was continued in Italy in the Emperor's Name, where Prince Eugene made a surprizing Progress, notwithstanding those Difficulties, which to another would have been unsurmountable. The Elector of Bavaria having return'd to his own Dominions, embroil'd the Empire. Upon which, at the Emperor's Solicitation, the English and Dutch declar'd War against France on one and the same Day. General Coehorn open'd the Campaign in the Netherlands by taking Fort St. Dona, and bombarding Fort Isabella; and Count Tilly advanc'd with his Army to Santen, to cover the Siege of Keyserwaert, which proved one of the most bloody that happen'd during this War; but was at last reduc'd by the Allies. At the same Time the French under the Duke of Burgundy attempted to surprisè Nimeguen, which they had well nigh effected; but were prevented by the Diligence of the Earl of Athlone. The French were also beat off from before Hulst; and the Earl of Marlborough, now Duke, oblig'd the French

to retire on the Maes, and took Fort St. Michael, Stochem, Venlo, Steyvenswaert, Ruremond, and Liege, in a little Time.

In 1703, the English and Dutch miscarried in their Design upon Cadix, but took the Spanish Galleons at Vigo, where they ruin'd Part of the French Fleet. In this Expedition, the Duke of Ormond and the late Sir George Rooke behav'd themselves with great Gallantry. This Year the Allies took Bonne, forc'd the French Lines in the Country of Waes, but could not bring them to a Battle, they were so strongly intrench'd. They endeavour'd to surprisè the Allies at the Battle of Ekeren, which was bravely fought on both Sides, and almost with equal Loss; but tho' the French were superior in Number, the Allies kept the Field, and both Sides claim'd the Victory. The Duke of Marlborough took Huy and Limburg. Gelders and Rhinberg were also surrender'd to the Allies: And this Year the Archduke Charles, being own'd as King of Spain by England and Holland, he visitèd both those Countries in his Way to Spain, whither he was conducted by the Confederate Fleet. The Death of the Earl of Athlone, and of the famous General and Engineer Coehorn, this Year, was a great Loss to the States.

In 1704, the Duke of Marlborough, with Part of the English and Dutch Army, march'd from Flanders to the Danube, and fought the famous Battle of Hochstet; of which we have already given an Account. Several Attempts were made to force the French Lines in Flanders, without Success; but the Dutch took Fort Isabella in Flanders, rais'd Contributions in the Enemy's Country, and forc'd Bruges to pay a considerable Sum to avoid a Bombardment.

In 1705, the States, in Conjunction with the Queen of Great Britain, press'd the Emperor to take more Care of pushing on the War upon the Upper Rhine, and to accommodate the Troubles in Hungary, and not leave the Burden of the War against France upon the English and Dutch, which produc'd large Promises, but faint Performances, from the Court of Vienna in both Respects. The English and Dutch under Sir John Leake defeated Pointi and the French Squadron, who came with fresh Supplies to the French and Spaniards that besieg'd Gibraltar. The French took Huy, while the English and Dutch

by

by the Slowness of the Imperialists, miscarried in their Designs upon the *Moselle*; so that the Duke of *Marlborough* was oblig'd, at the Desire of the States, to return with the Confederate Army to the *Netherlands*, where they retook *Huy*, and forc'd the *French* Lines near *Hillesheim* in *Flanders*, destroy'd almost 24 Squadrons of *Barbarians*, with 3 Regiments of *French*, and took many great and inferior Officers, with about 1400 Men, and several Colours and Standards. Baron *Spar*, with a Detachment of the *Dutch* Army, forc'd the *French* Lines at *Levendegem* near *Bruges*, and took 300 Men, with several Officers. After which the Confederates finish'd the demolishing of the *French* Lines, and took *Soutleuwe* and *Sant-wilut*, whilst the *French* took *Diest*. The Confederates under the Conduct of the Earl of *Peterborough* took *Barcelona*, the Capital of *Catalonia*, wherein the *English* and *Dutch* were particularly serviceable: But we refer the Particulars till we come to the Description of that Country.

In 1706, the *French* attack'd *Barcelona*, where the *English* and *Dutch* Troops made a brave Defence, and their Fleets contributed to the Relief of the Town; but we leave the Particulars to its proper Place. This Year was fought the Battle of *Rammels* in *Flanders*, under the Conduct of the Duke of *Marlborough* and General *Auverquerque*, where the *Dutch* Troops, and particularly the *Scots* in their Service, distinguish'd themselves with extraordinary Gallantry. The Heat of the Action being on the Left, where the *Dutch* were posted, the Duke of *Marlborough*, as he brought up the Horse of the Right to their Assistance, rallied some of the Troops, and gave others Orders to charge, was singled out by some of the Enemy, and being dismounted, was in Danger of being kill'd or taken, had not Major-General *Murray*, the Duke of *Argile*, and others, come seasonably up to his Rescue, and repulsed the Enemy. While the Duke was remounting, Colonel *Brinsfield*, his Gentleman of the Horse, was killed with a Cannon-Bullet. By this time the *French* Horse on the Right being entirely defeated, our Horse broke their Foot, and the Lord *John Hay*, with his Regiment of *Scots* Dragoons, took the *French* King's own Regiment of Foot Prisoners of War, and made them surrender their Colours and

Arms. The Pursuit continued all Night; and General *Auverquerque* following them with his *Dutch* Troops, took above 4000 of 'em, with about 80 Colours and Standards, most of their Artillery, Carriage, Baggage and Arms, with the Kettle-Drums and Standards of the Troops of the *French* King's Household. The *French* were supposed to have lost 8000 Men on the Field of Battle, and had about 6000 taken, among whom were two Major-Generals, two Brigadier-Generals, a Son of the Marshal de *Tallard*, a Nephew of the late Duke of *Luxemburg*, with other Officers of Distinction; and two Princes in their Service were killed. The Allies had 1066 Men killed, and 2577 wounded: The chief of those killed were, Prince *Lewis* of *Hesse-Cassel*, 1 Count, and 8 Colonels. The Deputies of the States, in their Letter to the States General, ascribed the Glory of this Victory, chiefly under God, to the Courage and Conduct of the Duke of *Marlborough* and the Lord *Auverquerque*, who animated the other Generals and Officers of the Army, who all, without Exception of any Nation whatever, attack'd the Enemy with the utmost Bravery and Unanimity. The *French* after this Battle abandon'd *Louvain*, and retir'd over the Canal of *Brussels*, being pursu'd by the Allies: Upon which the City of *Brussels*, the States of *Brabant*, and the Towns of *Mechlen* and *Alost*, submitted to *K. Charles*. *Ghent*, *Bruges*, *Audenard*, and *Antwerp*, follow'd their Example; and the States of *Flanders* own'd *K. Charles*. General *Churchill* was made Governor of *Brussels*, and all the *French* were order'd to depart the City. *K. Charles* was also successful in *Spain*. The Earl of *Galway*, with the *Portuguese* and other Confederates, came to *Madrid*: *Carthage* submitted. The *French* this Year besieg'd *Turin*, where the Duke of *Savoy* commanded in Person, having been oblig'd to send his Mother, his Dutches, and the rest of his Family, to *Genoa*; from whence the two Dutcheses sent a Representation of their Distress to the States General, with a Desire that they would use their utmost Endeavours to contribute to their Relief. The Ministers of *England* and *Holland* endeavour'd an Accommodation betwixt the Emperor and *Hungarian* Malecontents, without Success, which they charged upon the Imperial Generals and Ministers. Prince *Ragotzki* writ after this

this to the Queen of *Great Britain* and the States, thanking them for their Mediation, and gave them an Account, that he was willing to have surrender'd his own Dignity for the Sake of Peace, and desir'd the Continuance of their good Offices to procure it, which hitherto have had no Effect. This Year the *English* and *Dutch* laid Siege to *Offend*, and in a little Time obliged the Garrison to surrender on Terms, which was very extraordinary, considering how strong that Town is both by Art and the Nature of its Situation, and that the *Dutch* formerly held it out above 3 Years against the great *Spanish* General *Spinola*. The Town of *Menin* in *French Flanders* was also surrender'd to the *Dutch*, while the D. of *Marlborough* cover'd the Siege, in which the *French* lost 1300 Men, and the Allies about 517. Soon after the D. of *Savoy* and Prince *Eugene* defeated the *French* before *Turin*, and relieved that City, wherein the *Dutch* Troops behav'd themselves with great Gallantry, as was own'd by both those Princes in their Letters to the States: But we refer the Particulars, and the further Progress of the Imperialists in *Italy*, to its proper Place; as we do the Loss which the *Dutch* Troops under the Prince of *Hesse* sustain'd some Time after at the Battle of *Medoli* in *Italy*. King *Augustus's* Minister presented a Memorial to the States, and desir'd that they and the Queen of *Great Britain* would oblige the K. of *Sweden* to withdraw from *Saxony*, by invading his Dominions on the *Baltick*. *Dendermond* surrender'd on Terms to the D. of *Marlborough*; and the Confederates retook *Salamanca* in *Spain*, wherein the *English* and *Dutch* assisted; and their Fleet at the same time reduc'd *Ivica* and *Majorca* to K. *Charles's* Obedience. After this, General *Auverquerque* took *Aeth*, and made the Garrison Prisoners of War. The Elector of *Bavaria* made Proposals of Peace on the Behalf of *France*; but they were rejected by the Queen and the States.

In 1707, the *Dutch* sent a Squadron to *Portugal*, with Recruits for their Forces; and K. *Augustus* of *Poland* being driven from thence by the K. of *Sweden*, who invaded him in his own Country, and forc'd him by a Treaty to renounce the Crown of *Poland*, desir'd the States to be Guarantees in the Treaty betwixt him and the K. of *Swe-*

den; but the States were cautious in concerning themselves with that Matter. This Year the Allies were defeated at the Battle of *Almanza* in *Spain*, where the *English* and *Dutch* Troops suffered very much. The *Dutch* Envoy in *Portugal*, the Count de *Noyelles*, and other *Dutch* Officers, complain'd in their Letters of the Earl of *Galway's* Conduct in that fatal Battle: But we refer the Particulars to the Description of that Country. The *French* made an Irruption into *Germany*, and forc'd the Lines of *Stolhoffen*, where the *Dutch* Troops under the D. of *Wirtemberg* made a brave and a noble Retreat, tho' overpower'd by the Enemy. The States and the *English* did this Year extend their Charity to the *Vaudais*, who had been forc'd to abandon their own Country, and were reduc'd to great Straits by the *French* Army. This Year the Siege of *Toulon* was form'd, wherein the *English* and *Dutch* bore a great Share: But we refer the Particulars, and how it came to miscarry, to its proper Place. The States publish'd an Order against the negotiating of *French* Mint-Bills in their Country, to prevent the *French* King's drawing out their ready Money for those Bills, which had lost their Credit at home: And at the same Time they forbade the conveying of ready Money or Plate out of their Dominions. The Republick of *Genoa* made Application to the States for continuing a good Correspondence with them, which was agreed to. This Year the States concern'd themselves in the Election of the Bishop of *Paderborn* to be Bishop of *Munster*, and carried it, after some Opposition made by the Imperial Court. They did likewise, in Conjunction with the *English*, and others of the Allies, promote the K. of *Prussia's* Succession to the Principality of *Neuchassel* and the Country of *Vallengin*, in Opposition to the Prince of *Conti* and others, Pretenders set up by the *French* King. They made also several pressing Instances to the Diet of the Empire for carrying on the War with more Vigour on the Part of the *Germans* against *France*. They did the like to the Court of *Pienna*, and join'd with the *English*, in desiring that Prince *Eugene* might be sent to command in *Catalonia*, in order to retrieve the Affairs of *Spain*; but without Effect.

In 1708, they renewed those Instances; and the *English* and *Dutch* Squadron under the Command of Sir *John Leake* and the *Baron de Wassenar* took a *French* Convoy in the *Mediterranean*. This Year *Ghent* and *Bruges* were treacherously surrender'd to the *French*, which brought on the Battle of *Audenard*, where the *French* were defeated, lost above 4000 Men in the Field, and had 8000 taken, with a Lieutenant-General, 4 Major-Generals, 5 Brigadiers, 14 Colonels, 6 Lieutenants, 96 Cornets, 186 Gens-d'Armes, and 47 Quartermasters. The whole of their Officers that were taken amounting to 750. The Confederates lost a Major-General, 2 Colonels, 1 Lieutenant-Colonel, 42 other Officers, and about 1000 Centinels. The Electoral Prince of *Hanover* distinguish'd himself in this Action. The *French* afterwards retir'd to *Ghent*, and the D. of *Marlborough*, Pr. *Eugene*, and General *Suverquerque*, sent a Detachment, who demolished the *French* Lines in *Flanders*, and laid the *French* Country under Contribution as far as *Arras*, and a great way into *Picardy*. The *French* in the mean time posted themselves on the Canal of *Bruges*, took the Fort of *Plassendal* near *Ostend*, and made Incursions into the *Dutch* Territories. At the same time the Allies form'd the Siege of *Lisse*, and the *French* Army march'd to raise it, without Effect. Prince *Eugene* was dangerously wounded in one of the Attacks, and the *French* threw in a Supply of Powder into the Town, which, with the Mistake of one of our Engineers, did very much retard the Siege; and the *French* having stopp'd the Passage of the Confederate Convoys from *Ostend* and other Places, the Allies were reduc'd to Straits. This brought on the Battle of *Wimondal*, where the Confederates, by the admirable Conduct of Major-General *Webb*, with 7000 Men, defeated 24000 *French*, who lost above 4000 Men, and retired in Confusion, which gave an Opportunity to a Confederate Convoy to reach our Army before *Lisse*. The Allies did not lose above 1000 Men in this Expedition, and the Arrival of the Convoy enabled them to prosecute the Siege of *Lisse*, which brought the Marshal de *Boufflers* to a Capitulation. The Loss of the *French* in this Siege was computed to be about 7000, and that of the Allies about 9000. The

French after this took the Post of *Lessingen*, with 150 Men, but lost near 600 in the Action; and they surpris'd the Lord *Stairs* near *Furnes*, with some *Prussian* Squadrons and Battalions, whom, after a sharp Dispute, they obliged to surrender Prisoners of War. After this, the E. of *Bavaria*, with 10000 Men, having form'd a Correspondence in *Brussels*, attack'd that City, and had well nigh carried it; but was bravely repulsed by the Conduct of the Governor Monsieur *Pascal*, Major-General *Murray*, Baron *Wrangel*, and others, who were very much animated by the Presence of the Deputies of the States General. The D. of *Marlborough* and Pr. *Eugene* hearing of the Danger of *Brussels*, march'd to its Relief, and pass'd the *Scheld*, notwithstanding the strong Lines and Intrenchments which the *French* had rais'd to prevent it; but were obliged to abandon them, with the Loss of Part of their Baggage, Bread-Waggons, several Colours, Standards, and Kettle-Drums; and about 1000 Men killed or taken. In the mean time the Siege of the Citadel of *Lisse* was carried on with Vigour, and forc'd by Pr. *Eugene* to capitulate, where they left 90 Brass Cannon, with many of Iron, and 20000 Weight of Powder, but little Provisions. Thus this great and important City, with the Citadel, being reckon'd one of the strongest and most regular Fortifications in *Europe*, fell into the Hands of the Allies. After which the Confederates besieg'd *Ghent*, which they forc'd to surrender in a little Time; and the *French* did hereupon abandon *Bruges*, *Plassendal*, and *Lessingen*, and retir'd into their own Territories, which brought the Campaign to a glorious Conclusion. After this, the Council of State of the United *Netherlands* presented their Petition in the usual Form to the States General, recapitulating the Advantages which it had pleas'd God to give to the Confederate Arms in the *Netherlands*, *Italy*, and the *Mediterranean*; towards which, the *Dutch* Forces by Sea and Land had very much contributed: And in this Petition, they laid before them such Measures as they judg'd necessary for bringing the War to a happy Conclusion by a firm and a lasting Peace. On this Occasion they put the States in Mind of the Treachery of *France* in all their Treaties since that of *Munster*: And

And concluded, That the Memory of this War, and the Animosities conceiv'd by the *French* against the Republick, for having oppos'd their Encroachments, were not immediately to be extinguish'd by a Treaty of Peace, as was plain from their former Conduct, since they founded the War of 1672 on the Measures the States had taken before to prevent their seizing the *Spanish* Provinces in the *Netherlands*, as they have since done, their keeping Possession of the whole Monarchy of *Spain*; besides, the Hatred that the *French* bear to them on the Account of the Protestant Religion, which that Court had design'd to extirpate every where; and therefore 'twas their Opinion, that no other Peace with *France* but a sure one was to be admitted. The *French* during the Winter endeavour'd to bring the *Dutch* and others of the Allies to a separate Peace by large Concessions; but finding it in vain, they obtained Leave to send Deputies to *Holland*, and at last their Minister of State the Marquis de *Torcy*, with further Proposals for a General Peace, in the Beginning of 1709, where the well known Preliminaries, according to the Demands of the Allies, were concluded and sign'd by the Confederate Plenipotentiaries, and those of the *French* King, the 18th of May, 1709: But being afterwards rejected by the *French* King, it occasioned the renewing of the War.

Their GOVERNMENT.

WE have formerly taken Notice, That the Basis of their United Government is the Union of *Utrecht*, whence Sir *William Temple* justly observes, that it cannot properly be call'd a Commonwealth, but rather a Confederacy of 7 Sovereign Provinces for their mutual Defence, without any Dependency upon the other as to their particular Government. Each of the Provinces is likewise compos'd of many little States or Cities, which have several Marks of Sovereign Power within themselves, and are not subject to the Sovereignty of their Provinces, not being concluded in many Things by the Majority, but only by the universal Concurrence of Voices in the Provincial States. For, as

the States General cannot make War or Peace, new Alliances, or levy Money, without the Consent of every Province; the States Provincial cannot conclude any of those Points without Consent of each of the Cities that has a Voice in their Assembly. And tho' in many Civil Causes there's an Appeal from the Courts of the Cities to that of the Province, in Criminal there's none; nor can the Sovereignty of the Province exercise any Judicature, seize upon any Offender, pardon any Offence within the Jurisdiction of the Cities, or execute any common Resolution or Law, but by the Justice and Officers of the City it self: So that each City has a Power of Justice, of levying Money, and of making Peace and War; but the Coining of Money is in the Generality of the Union, by common Agreement; so that the principal Ingredients in the Composition of this State, are the Freedom of the Cities, the Sovereignty of the Provinces, and the Articles of the General Union; to which we may add the Authority and Dignity of their Stadtholder, when they have one.

The States General,

IN whom resides the Sovereign Authority of the United Provinces, assemble at the *Hague*. Each of the Provinces send their Deputies hither, in what Number they please; yet the Deputies of each Province have but one Voice, and the Deputies of the respective Provinces preside by Turns every Week. 'Tis this Assembly which declares War, makes Peace, and gives Audience to Foreign Ministers. The States of *Guelderland* have the first Voice, the States of *Holland* the 2d, *Zealand* the 3d, *Utrecht* the 4th, *Friesland* the 5th, *Overissel* the 6th, and *Groningen* the 7th. Sir *William* observes, That the States General us'd formerly to be assembled on extraordinary Occasions by the Council of State, who call'd them but seldom, because they usually consisted of above 800 Persons, which made the Debates long, and sometimes confus'd, the Resolutions slow, and upon sudden Occasions out of Time. In the Absence of the States General, this Council of State represented their Authority, executed their Resolves,

N n n n

and

and judged of the Necessity of a new Convocation; till after the Earl of *Leicester's* quitting the Government, the Provincial States desir'd of the General that they might, by their constant respective Deputies, continue their Assemblies under the Name of, *The States General*, which were never after assembled but at *Bergenopzoom*, for ratifying with more Solemnity their Truce with *Spain*. The Reason they alleg'd was this, That the Council of State assembled them but seldom, and at Will; and being to execute all in their Absence, they assum'd too much Authority: But their weightiest Reason was, That the *English* Ambassador, who, by Agreement with Queen *Elizabeth*, had a constant Place in their Council of State, should not be present at the first Digestion of their Affairs, which was then usually agreed upon in the Council of State. Since that Time, the States General have constantly sat in the Court at the *Hague*, being indeed but a Representative of the States General, whose Assemblies are now wholly dissolv'd. Neither Stadtholder, Governor, or any Person in Military Charge, has Session in the States General; and as every Province presides in their Week by Turns, the most qualified Person among the Deputies of that Province is chosen for President, and sits in an Arm'd Chair, at the Middle of a long Table, capable of holding about 30 Persons, which is the usual Number of this Council. The *Greffier* or Secretary sits at the lower End. When a Foreign Minister has Audience, he is seated at the Middle of the Table, over against the President, who proposes all Matters, makes the *Greffier* read all Papers, puts the Question, calls the Votes, and forms the Conclusion: Or if he refuses to conclude according to the Plurality, he is obliged to resign his Place to the President of the following Week, who concludes for him. This is the Method in all Affairs, except in Cases of Peace and War, Foreign Alliances, raising or coining of Monies, or of the Privileges of each Province or Member of the Union: In all which, the whole Provinces must concur; for in those Cases, Plurality is not weigh'd. This Council, as *Sir William* observes, tho' they are said to

be Sovereign, only represents the Sovereignty; and therefore, tho' Ambassadors are both received and sent in their Name, yet neither are their own chosen, nor Foreign Ministers answer'd, nor any of the above-mention'd Affairs resolv'd, without consulting first the States of each Province by their respective Deputies, and receiving Orders from them; and in other important Matters, tho' decided by Plurality, they frequently consult with the Council of State. This Method has never been broken, says *Sir William*, since the Foundation of their Republick, except in 1668, when he himself being sent by our *K. Charles II.* to conclude a League of Defence with the States, and another for the Preservation of *Flanders*, then invaded, and much of it conquer'd by *France*, he prevailed with the States General to conclude 3 Treaties in 5 Days, without having Recourse to the Provinces, who must likewise have consulted their several Cities, where the Foreign Ministers who oppos'd those Treaties could not have fail'd to have prevented 'em, since the engaging the Voice of any one City must have outdone it. He owns, that the States General endanger'd their Heads by this Step, had they been disown'd in it by their Provinces; but being unanimous, and knowing it to be the Interest of their Country, they ventur'd it, for which they were applauded by every Province, having thereby changed the Face of the Affairs of *Christendom*, and laid the Foundation of the Triple Alliance, and the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*, which at that time broke the *French* King's Measures. So great, says he, has the Force of Reason and Interest ever proved in this State, whose Safety and Greatness has been chiefly founded upon the strict Observance of their Constitution; tho' being overpower'd by the supreme Law of Necessity, they dispens'd with it in this Instance. Nor have they, says he, ever us'd any greater Means to unite the Members of their Union in necessary Resolutions, upon the most pressing Occasions, but by sending some of their ablest Members to represent to the dissenting Provinces their Reasons, and the Interest by which they have been induc'd to this or that Resolution.

The Council of State,

IS compos'd of one Deputy from *Guel-*
derland, says the *Atlas Historique*, three
 from *Holland*, two from *Zealand*, one from
Utrecht, two from *Friesland*, one from *Over-*
issel, and one from *Groningen*, which differs
 from what it was in *Sir William's* Time,
 when *Guelderland* and *Utrecht* sent two each,
 and *Friesland* but one. The Reason of which
 is, That upon the Re-admission of the
 Provinces conquer'd by *France* into the U-
 nion in 1674, the States General took one
 of the Votes from the Province of *Guel-*
derland, and gave it to *Groningen*, for the
 noble Defence which that City made against
 the Bishop of *Munster*, says the 4th Volume
 of *Pitt's Atlas*. But since the *Atlas Histo-*
rique makes the Number of this Council
 but 11, some other Alteration must have
 been made since that Time. In 1650, the
 Provinces of *Utrecht*, *Overissel*, and *Gronin-*
gen, pleaded for more Deputies in this
 Council; but 'twas oppos'd by *Holland*,
 which then in a manner govern'd all the
 rest, and was upbraided by those of *Guel-*
derland, as designing to enslave them. The
 Majority of Votes carries it in this Coun-
 cil, and every Deputy presides by Turns.
 In this Council the Governors of the Pro-
 vinces have a decisive, and the Treasurer-
 General only a deliberative Voice; yet he
 has much Credit, because his Place is for
 Life. So is the Person deputed from the
 Nobles of *Holland*, and the Deputies of *Zea-*
land; whereas the rest are but for two,
 three, or 4 Years. This Council of State
 executes the Resolves of the States Gene-
 ral, consults and proposes to them the most
 expedient Ways of raising Troops and Mo-
 ney, and the Proportion of both, superin-
 tend the Troops, Fortifications, Contribu-
 tions rais'd out of the Enemy's Country,
 the Forms and Dispos'd of all Passports, and
 the Affairs, Revenues, and Government, of
 all the Places conquer'd since the Union;
 which being gain'd by the common Arms
 of the State, depend upon the States Gene-
 ral, and not upon any particular Province.
 Towards the End of every Year, this Coun-
 cil forms a State of the Expence they think
 necessary for the ensuing Year, present it

to the States General, and desire them to
 demand so much of the States Provincial,
 to be rais'd according to the usual Propor-
 tions, which are of 100000 Gilders.

	Grs.	St.	D.
<i>Gelderland</i> , —————	3612	05	00
<i>Holland</i> , —————	58309	01	10
<i>Zealand</i> , —————	9183	14	02
<i>Utrecht</i> , —————	5830	17	11
<i>Friesland</i> , —————	11661	15	10
<i>Overissel</i> , —————	3571	08	04
<i>Groningen</i> , —————	5930	17	11

This was the old Rate; but a new one
 was since agreed on, according to the Pro-
 portion of 100 *l.* Sterling, which *Van Aitz-*
ma gives thus:

	l.	s.	d.
<i>Guelder</i> , —————	7	00	00
<i>Holland</i> , —————	42	00	00
<i>Zealand</i> , —————	13	00	00
<i>Utrecht</i> , —————	8	00	00
<i>Friesland</i> , —————	17	00	00
<i>Overissel</i> , —————	5	00	00
<i>Groningen</i> , and the <i>Omlands</i> , —	8	00	00

This Petition, as 'tis call'd, is made to
 the States General in Name of the Go-
 vernor and Council of State; and every
 Province raises what Money, and by what
 Means, they please, send their Quota to
 the Receiver-General, and convert the rest
 to the present Use, or reserve it for the fu-
 ture Occasions of the Province. The Coun-
 cil of State disposes of all Money design'd
 for extraordinary Affairs, and gives Orders
 for the whole Expence of the State, accord-
 ing to the Resolves of the States General;
 and these Orders must be sign'd by 3 De-
 puties of several Provinces, as well as by
 the Treasurer-General, and registred in the
 Chamber of Accounts, before the Receiver-
 General pays them, which is then done
 without any Charge or Delay.

The Chamber of Accounts,

WAS, according to *Sir William*, erected
 about 90 Years ago, for the Ease of
 the Council of State, to examine and state
 all the Accounts of the several Receivers,
 to controul and register the Orders of the
 N n n n n 2 Coun-

Council of State, which disposes of the Finances; and this Chamber is composed of two Deputies from each Province, who are changed every three Years.

The Council of the Admiralty,

IS subdivided into 5 Colleges, of which 3 are in *Holland*, viz. one at *Amsterdam*, one at *Rotterdam*, and one at *Horn*. The 4th is at *Middleburg* in *Zeeland*, and the 5th at *Harlingen* in *Friesland*. Each of these Colleges is composed of 7 Deputies, 4 of that Province where the College resides, and 3 nam'd by the other Provinces. The Admiral, or in his Absence the Vice-Admiral, has Session in all these Colleges, and presides when he is present. As soon as the Number and Force of the Fleets design'd for any Expedition is agreed by the States General, and given out by the Council of State to the Admiralty, each particular College furnishes their Proportion, which is as well known as that of the Money each Province is to raise. In all which, the Admiral has no other Share or Advantage besides his Salary, and Proportion of Prizes. The Captains and Superior Officers of each Squadron are chosen by the several Colleges, who appoint the Number of Men for every Ship. After this, each Captain uses his best Diligence to get his Number of as good Men as he can, and has the Care of Victualling his Ship for the Time appointed by the Admiralty at so much *per Head*. He likewise takes Care of Medicines; and, according to the Discharge of his Trust, he grows in Credit or otherwise with the Seamen, and according to their Report with the Admiralties, upon whose Esteem the Fortune of all Sea-Officers depends. This occasions an Emulation among the Captains who shall treat their Seamen best, instead of filling their own Purses by starving their Men, or giving them bad Diet. This Council of the Admiralty has Cognizance of all Crimes committed at Sea, judge Pirates, and all Frauds or Neglects in paying or collecting the Customs, which are appropriated to the Admiralty; and if not sufficient in Time of War, is otherwise supplied by the States: But in Time of Peace, when they are at

little other Expence, except for Convoys, the Overplus is applied to the building of Men of War, and laying up Naval Stores. So much for their Government in general. For the particular Government of their Provinces and Cities, we shall instance in that of the Province of *Holland*, and City of *Amsterdam*.

The Government of the Province of Holland.

THE Sovereignty of this Province is represented by Deputies of the Nobles and Towns, consisting of 19 Votes, of which the Nobles have only the first, and the Cities 18, according to the Number of those call'd *Stemms*, the other Cities and Towns having no Voice. These Cities were originally but 6, viz. *Dort*, *Haerlem*, *Delft*, *Leyden*, *Amsterdam*, and *Tergou*; but Prince *William* of *Nassau* added 12 more, viz. *Rotterdam*, *Gorcum*, *Schiedam*, *Schouwen*, *Brille*, *Alcmaer*, *Horn*, *Enchusen*, *Edam*, *Monnickendam*, *Medenblick*, and *Purmeren*. The latter of which, being a very small Town, has an equal Voice in the Provincial States with *Amsterdam*, which pays almost half the Charge of the whole Province; as the Province of *Overissel* has an equal Voice in the States General with *Holland*, which bears more than half the Charge of the Union. This is ascrib'd to the Policy of Prince *William I.* to lessen the Power of the Nobles, and ballance that of the greater Cities by the Voices of the smaller, which were more easy to be gain'd. The *Atlas Historique* leaves out *Tergou* among the Towns that send Deputies; and instead of it, places *Gouda*. The Nobles, tho' few in this Province, send 8 or 9 to the Provincial States; and when one dies, chuse another to succeed; and tho' they have all but one Voice, yet they are very considerable in the Government, being possess'd of the best Charges, Civil and Military, and having the Direction of all the Ecclesiastical Revenue that was seiz'd by the State upon the Change of Religion. They likewise send Deputies to all the Councils both of the Generality and Province, and have the Nomination of one Counsellor in the two great Courts of Justice. They have the

first

first Vote in the Assembly of the States, which gives them a great Weight in the Business under Consultation. The Pensioner of *Holland* sits with them, delivers their Vote, and assists at their Deliberations before they come to the Assembly; and tho' he be but Servant to the Province, and sits behind all their Deputies, yet he has always great Credit, because he is seldom chang'd; tho' they have a Power to chuse another, or continue him every 5th Year. He has Place in all the Assemblies of the Province, proposes all Affairs, gathers their Votes, forms their Resolves, and pretends to have Power not to conclude any important Affair by Plurality of Voices, if he think in his Conscience that he ought not to do it, or that it will be prejudicial to the Province. He is likewise one of their constant Deputies in the States General.

The Deputies of the Cities are chosen out of the Magistrates and Senate of each Town, in what Number they please. They have altogether but one Voice, are maintain'd at the Charge of the Cities; and one of their Burgomasters, with the Pensionary, are usually of the Number. The States of *Holland* meet in the Court at the *Hague* in *February, June, September, and November*, every Year. In the former Sessions, they fill up vacant Charges, renew the Farms of the Taxes, consult about the common Affairs of the Province, and determine particular Differences that may happen betwixt Towns. In *November*, they meet about their Quota agreed upon by the States General for the Support of the Union the following Year. On extraordinary Occasions, they are assembled by a Council called the *Gecommitteerde Raden*, or Commission Counsellors, who are properly a Council of State for the Province, composed of one Deputy from the Nobles, one from each of the 8 chief Towns, and one from 3 of the smaller Towns; each of which chuse a Deputy by Turns. This Council sits constantly at the *Hague*, proposes Matters to the Provincial States at their extraordinary Assemblies, and execute their Resolves. In these Assemblies they must all be unanimous; but aiming all at the common Good, they generally agree in what, after reasoning, appears to be their common Interest. When they come to a Resolve, they send some of their

Number to their respective Towns, with their Conclusions and Reasons, and desire Orders about it, which is generally granted: But if the Matter be intricate, and requires Delay, they adjourn till such Time as the Deputies can go to their respective Cities, and obtain their Consent.

The Province has likewise a Chamber of Accounts, who manage their Revenues, and have the absolute Disposál of the ancient Demesne of *Holland*, without accounting to the States; only upon a Necessity of Money, the States call upon them for a Subsidy of 2 or 300000 Crowns, or more, as they have occasion, or conceive the Chamber to be grown rich, beyond what is proportion'd to the general Design of increasing the Ease and Fortunes of the Persons that compose it, who are such as have grown aged in their Service, and passed through most of the Employments of State with Reputation: This being provided for them as an honourable and profitable Retreat.

The Provinces of *Holland* and *Zealand*, as they had one Governor before their Revolt from *Spain*, have one common Judicature exercis'd by two Courts of Justice; each of them common to both the Provinces. The first consists of 9 Counsellors from *Holland*, and 3 from *Zealand*, in which the Governor, by the old Constitution, us'd to preside, and to name all the Counsellors except one, who is chosen by the Nobles. There lies no Appeal from them in Criminal Causes; but in Civil there does, to the other Court called the *High Council*; from which there is no Appeal, but by Petition to the States of the Province for a Revision. When the States think there's Reason for it, they grant Letters Patents, in which they name some Syndics out of the Towns, who being added to the Counsellors of the two former Courts, judge the Cause in the last Resort.

The Government of the Province of Guelderland,

Agrees in general with that of *Holland*; but differs in this, that 'tis divided into the 3 Quarters of the *Betuwe*, the County of *Zutphen*, and the *Veluwe*; each of which

which have their States, composed of the Nobility, and of the Deputies of the Towns, in their several Jurisdictions; and the Provincial States are composed of the Nobility and Deputies of Towns of those 3 Quarters. All the Nobles that have certain Fees or Lordships in the Province, have a Voice in the Provincial States, of which they compose one half, and the Deputies of the Towns the other; and tho' some from among them are deputed to the States General, all the Nobles of *Guelder* may have Place there, if they will attend at their own Charge. The Towns that send Deputies to the Provincial States are, *Nimeguen, Tiel, Bommel, Zutphen, Doesburg, Doetekom, Loekum, Grol, Arnheim, Harderwick, Hattem, and Dreburg.*

The Government of the Province of Zealand.

THE Nobility here being extinguish'd in the *Spanish Wars*, the Prince of *Orange* possessing the Marquisates of *Flushing* and *Terneer*, is the only Nobleman of the Province, and has by himself or his Deputy the first Place and Vote in the Provincial States, the Council of State, and Chamber of Accounts; and as Sovereign of *Flushing* and *Terneer*, he creates the Magistrates there, and consequently disposes the Voices not only of the Nobles, but also of 2 Towns; whereas there are but 6 in all that send Deputies to the States, and make up the Sovereignty of the Province; the other 4 being *Middleburg, Zierikzee, Goes, and Tholen.*

The Government of the Province of Utrecht.

BESIDES the Deputies of the Nobles and Towns, 8 Delegates of the Clergy have Session, and make a 3d Member in the States of this Province. These 8 are chosen out of the 4 great Chapters of the Town; the Revenues of which, since the Bishoprick was seculariz'd, are possess'd by Gentlemen of the Province. The Towns that send Deputies are, *Utrecht, Amersford, Rhenen, Wyck Te Duurstede, Montford, and IJsselstein.*

The Government of the Province of Friesland,

Differs from the rest, and is composed of 4 Members, viz. the Quarter of *Ostergo*, consisting of 11 Bailiwicks; of *Westergo*, which has 9; of *Sevenwolden*, that has 10; and of the Towns of the Province, which are 11. These 4 Members send each their Deputies to the Provincial States, viz. two from every Bailiwick, and two from every Town, who represent the Sovereignty of the Province, and conclude all Affairs of what Importance soever, without either Recourse to those who deputed them, or being obliged to know their Intentions, which the Deputies of the other Provinces are strictly obliged to, as we have heard already. They differ likewise in this, that whereas in the other Provinces, the Nobles and the Towns chuse the Deputies which compose the States. Here 'tis quite otherwise; for every Bailiwick, which is composed of a certain Extent of Country, and Number of Villages, from 10 to 20, is govern'd by a *Greetsman*, or Bailiff, with a certain Number of Assessors, who with him determine all Civil Causes in the first Instance, but with Appeal to the Provincial Court of Justice. When the States are to be assembled, the Bailiff calls together all those who possess a certain Quantity of Land within his District; and these Men chuse, by Plurality of Voices, the Deputies which each Bailiwick sends to the Assembly. This Assembly of the States disposes of all vacant Employments, chuse the 9 Deputies which make a constant Council of State for the Province, and likewise 12 Counsellors, viz. 3 from every Quarter, who compose the Court of Justice for the Province, and judge of all Civil Causes in the last Resort, but of all Criminal from the first Instance; there being no other Criminal Court in the Province. The Towns that send Deputies to the States are, *Leenwaerden, Dockum, Franeker, Bolswert, Sneek, IJlst, Harlingen, Ostergo, Westergo, and Sevenwolden*; which are but 10 according to the *Atlas Historique*, though Sir William make them 11.

The Government of the Province
of Overissel.

ALL Gentlemen possess'd of Seigniorial Lands or Lordships, have a Seat in the Provincial States; and the Towns of *Deventer*, *Zwol*, and *Kampen*, send their Deputies.

The Government of the Province
of Groningen.

AS this Province lies on the same Tract of Land, they chuse their Deputies from the Country in the same Manner; and the Towns of *Groningen* and *Omlands* send their Deputies.

Sir *William* observes, That these 3 Provinces last mentioned, with the Countries betwixt the *Wefer*, the *Issel*, and the *Rhine*, were the Seat of the ancient *Frisons*, who under the Name of *Saxons*, because their Swords were made like a Sythe, and by them called *Seaxes*, conquer'd *England*. He says, the Bishop of *Munster*, whose Territories lie in this Tract of Land, gave him the first certain Evidences that this was the Seat of our *Saxon* Ancestors; in which he was confirmed by many Things he observ'd in the History of those Times, and by the great Affinity that he found betwixt the old *English*, and the ancient Language of the *Frisons*, whose Tongue to this Day has many Words of the same Signification and Sound with ours, and differs much from that of the *Hollanders*. He likewise observ'd many Things in their Constitution which looks like the Origine of ours, particularly their Bailiffs or *Greetmen* resemble our Sheriffs; their Assessors, our Justices; their Provincial Courts, our Quarter-Sessions; their 4 several Quarters, our Circuits; and the Composition of their States, our House of Commons. To this Original he likewise ascribes, that we never find in *England* upon Record any Lord or Lordship that pretends to the Exercise of High or Low Justice, which seems to be a Badge of some ancient Sovereignty, tho' they be frequent among our Neighbours both in Monarchies and popular States.

The Government of their Cities.

FOR a Specimen of that, we shall, according to Promise, give an Account of the Government of *Amsterdam*. The Sovereign Authority of this City lies in their Senate of 36 Men, who administer Justice according to their ancient Forms, in the Names of Officers and Places of Judicature. They levy Money in what Proportions they please, according to Occasion. The Senators are for Life, and were anciently chosen by the Votes of all the Free-men; but to avoid Tumults, because of their Number, about 140 Years ago the Burgers agreed, that they should be chosen by the Senate for the Time being; and when any of 'em dies, the rest chuse a new one, which makes their Government a sort of Oligarchy; and their Example was in a short Time followed by the other Towns of the Province, but with different Numbers, according to their Extent. The Senate chuses the Deputies which are sent from the City to the States of *Holland*, and the Burgomasters and Elchevins of the Town. The Burgomasters are 4, 3 of which are chosen Annually, and one of 'em continues two Years, and presides the first 3 Months of the 2d: After which the other three, call'd the Governing Burgomasters, preside by Turns. They are chosen by the Majority of those in the Senate, who have been Burgomasters or Elchevins. They resemble our Lord Mayor and Aldermen, represent the Dignity of the Government, do the Honour of the City on all Occasions, dispose of the vacant Offices that fall in their Time, and pay the Money out of the Treasury for the Occasions of the City, as they judge necessary. They keep the Key of the Bank of *Amsterdam*, and have the Inspection of it, which is never open'd except one of 'em be present. They likewise inspect the Stadthouse, Fortifications, and publick Buildings. This Office is of the greatest Trust, Authority, and Dignity, but not of any great Profit, their Salary being but 500 Guilders a Year each; only it paves the Way to other Employments in the City that are more gainful; and tho' they have Officers at their Disposal, worth 5000 Guilders

per Annum, they never take any Money for them, because that would ruin their Credit, and prevent their being chosen to other Places of Profit; but they may bestow Vacancies upon their Friends or Relations if they be capable. They are obliged to no extraordinary Expence in their Habits, Attendants, or Tables; but on all publick Occasions, are waited on by Men in publick Salary from the Town; and the Charge of whatever Feasts they make for Princes and Foreign Ministers, &c. is defrayed out of the publick Treasury, and proportion'd to their own Discretion. At other Times, they appear with all the Plainness and Modesty of private Citizens; and when their Time expires, they are of course disposed into other beneficial Employments of the Town, except they have lost their Credit by Mismanagement. There are 9 Eschevins, of which 7 are chosen Annually, and 2 of the preceding Year continue. A double Number is nam'd by the Senate, out of which the Burgomasters now chuse whom they think fit, as the Prince of Orange did in the former Constitution. They are Sovereign Judges in all Criminal Causes; but in Civil, there lies an Appeal from them to the Court of the Province, if it exceed a certain Sum; yet they pronounce Sentence of Death upon no Man without first advising with the Burgomasters, tho' they are not obliged to follow their Opinion; but this is reckon'd a necessary Precaution for the Lives of their Subjects, which are soon cut off, but never to be retrieved. Under these Sovereign Magistrates are the Treasurers, who receive and pay all the publick Money; the *Scout*, who takes Care of the Peace, seizes Criminals, and sees Justice executed; so that he resembles our Sheriffs; the Pensioner, who is a Civilian, vers'd in the Customs, Records, and Privileges of the City; concerning which, he informs the Magistrates, vindicates the Privileges of the City, is Servant to the Senate and Burgomasters, delivers their Messages, makes their Harangues on publick Occasions, and resembles our Recorder.

The Revenues of this City rise from the constant Excise upon all sorts of Commodities bought and sold within their Precinct, from the Rents of Houses or Lands that belong in common to the City; from cer-

tain Taxes upon every House for charitable Uses; Repairs and Ornaments of their Publick Buildings and Fortifications; from extraordinary Levies agreed to by the Senate for their Quota of the publick Charge laid on by the States of the Province, or by the Deputies of the States General, for the Support of the Union: And all these Payments are made into the common Stock of the City; so that their whole Revenue may be more easily calculated. Some compute it at 50000 Gilders *per Day*; and Sir *Wm. Temple* says, he has heard it affirm'd, that *Amsterdam* pays above 1600000 *l. Sterling per Annum* for the Use of the City, the Province and the Union. The Author of *The History of the United Provinces* says, in 1650, the Excise of Beer, Fleth, and Corn, carried to the Mill at *Amsterdam*, was lett at 1600000 Gilders, without reckoning the Excise of Wine, Turf, &c. the Taxes upon Houses, and the Income of Weights, for which there are 3 noble Buildings in different Parts of this City; one of which, before the *Stadthouse*, brings in above 100000 Gilders *per Annum*.

The Power of the Stadtholder.

THO' this Office be now extinguish'd by the Death of *K. William* in all the other Provinces but *Friesland*, we shall give this brief Account of it from Sir *Wm. Temple*: He had the Command of all Land and Sea Forces as Captain-General and Admiral, with a Disposition of all Military Commands, the Power of pardoning the Penalty of Crimes, the chusing of Magistrates upon the Nomination of the Towns; for they presented three to him, out of which he chose one; nor did the States use to resolve any important Matter without his Advice. Besides, as the States General represented the Sovereignty, the Prince represented the Dignity of the State by the publick Guards, and the Attendance of all Military Officers, by the Application of all Foreign Ministers, and all Pretenders at home, by the Splendour of his Court, and the Magnificence of his Expence, supported not only by the Pensions and Rights of his several Charges and Commands, but by a mighty Patrimonial Revenue in Lands, Sovereign

Prin-

Principalities, and Lordships in *France, Germany, Burgundy*, and several Parts of the 17 Provinces; so as Prince *Henry* was us'd to answer some that would have flatter'd him into the Designs of a more arbitrary Power, that he had as much as any wise Prince would desire in that State, since he wanted none besides that of punishing Men, and raising Money; whereas he had rather the Envy of the first should lie upon the Forms of the Government; and he knew the other could never be supported without the Consent of the People, to that Degree which was necessary for the Defence of so small a State against such mighty Neighbours. The Greatness of this State, says Sir *William*, seems much to consist in these Orders, how confus'd soever, and of different Pieces they may seem, but more in two main Effects of them, viz. the good Choice of the Officers of chief Trust in the Cities, Provinces, and State, and the great Simplicity and Modesty in the common Port, or Way of Living of their Chief Ministers; without which, the Absoluteness of the Senate in each Town, and the Immenity of the Taxes throughout the whole State, would never be endur'd by the People with any Patience, being both of 'em greater than in many of these Governments, which are esteem'd most arbitrary among their Neighbours; but in the Assemblies, and Debates of their Senates, every Man's Abilities are discover'd as their Dispositions are in the Conduct of their Lives and Domestick Affairs. The Observation of which either raises or suppresses the Credit of particular Men, both among the People, and the Senates of the Towns, who, to maintain their Authority with less popular Envy, give much to the general Opinion of the People in the Choice of their Magistrates.

To this Sir *William* adds, That the Salaries of all the great Officers of this State are very small, that of their Vice-Admiral not being above 500 *l. per Annum*, and that of the Pensioner of *Holland* not above 200. Thus, says he, this stomachful People, who could not endure the least Exercise of arbitrary Power or Impositions, or the Sight of any Foreign Troops under the *Spanish* Government, have been since inur'd to all of 'em in the highest Degree under their own

popular Magistrates, bridled with hard Laws, terrify'd with severe Executions, environ'd with Foreign Troops, and burthen'd with the greatest Hardship, and Variety of Taxes, that was ever known under any Government; but all this, whilst the Way to Offices and Authority lies through those Qualities, which acquire the general Esteem of the People; whilst no Man is exempted from the Course of the Law; whilst the Guard of the Inland and Trading Towns is left to the Burgers themselves; whilst no great Riches are seen to enter by publick Payments into private Purses, either to raise Families, or to feed the Prodigality of Luxurious Men: And while all publick Monies are applied to the Safety, Greatness, or Honour of the State, and the Magistrates bear an equal Share in all the Burthens they impose, the People bear it patiently.

Of their People, and Dispositions.

The *Acinus* and other Roman Writers reckon'd the ancient *Batavis* or *Hollanders* to be the bravest of the *Germans*, and the most steady Defenders of their Liberties, for which the *Romans* exempted them from Tribute, and demanded only Auxiliary Troops from them. Their Warlike Temper seems to have continued from that Time to the full Recovery of their Liberty from the *Spaniards*: Since which, if it has admitted of any Declension, it must be ascrib'd to their general Application to Trade, and their Employment of Foreign Troops; but such of 'em as are train'd to War, have even since that Time prov'd, that they still retain the Bravery of their Ancestors; and for their Love to Liberty, 'tis as prevalent as ever. Sir *Wm. Temple* divides them into 5 Classes, viz. the Boors, who cultivate the Lands; the Mariners and Watermen, who supply their Ships and Inland Boats; the Merchants or Traders, who fill their Towns; the Renteneers, or those that live in their chief Cities upon their Rents or other Estates; and the Gentlemen and Officers of their Armies. The first, he says, are diligent, but dull, not to be dealt with by hard Words, but easily manag'd by fair Treatment, and will yield to plain

O o o o o

Reason.

Reason, if allow'd Time to understand it. In the Country, not too near the great Towns, they are plain and honest, content with their own, and not covetous, feed most upon Herbs, Roots, and Milks, which he thinks to be the Cause why their Strength and Vigour falls short of their Bulk. Their Mariners, he says, are plain, but rough, surly, and ill-manner'd, which he ascribes to the Element they live on; to their Food, which is generally Fish and Corn; and partly to their Conversation. Their Valour, he says, is rather passive than active, which perhaps is a little strain'd; for we have felt to our Cost, that they can give Blows as well as take them. Their Merchants and Tradesmen living in great Towns, he says, are more mercurial, tho' not very inventive; but so good at Imitation, that many times they exceed the Original. They are Men of Industry and Application, are apt to take Advantage of the Ignorance of those they deal with, and are great Exacters, where the Law is in their own Hand; but when they deal with Men of equal Understanding, and are under the Reach of Justice, they are the plainest and best Dealers in the World: But this he thinks proceeds more from Custom than Conscience. Those, he says, in great Cities, who live on their Patrimonies, are better bred, but like the others in Garb and Parsimony. They breed their Youth generally at Schools and Universities, but chiefly to the Study of the Civil Law, which has not the Force of Law among them, but is pleaded before their Courts, and complied with, where they have no Laws of their own to the contrary, as far as the Authority of Men esteem'd wise passes for Reason. After they have finish'd their Studies, they travel for some Years, chiefly into *England* and *France*, not much to *Italy*, and less to *Spain*, and seldom to the *North*, unless in the Train of their Publick Ministers. The chief End of their Breeding, is to fit them for the Service of their Country in the Magistracy and Government; and from these, he says, proceed most of their Civil Officers, being descended of Families who frequently have been Magistrates of their native Towns for many Years, and some for several Ages; and of such were the Chief of their Ministers and Councils when he

was there, and not Mechanicks, as is commonly said among Foreigners; not but that many Merchants and Traders are frequently Magistrates, and deputed to their States: Nor do their States think it below them to apply their Stocks in carrying on some beneficial Trade by Servants, in Manufactures and otherwise; but the Generality of their States and Magistrates are of the other Sort, whose Estates consist in their Salaries, Rents of Lands, Interest of Money upon the Cantores, in Actions of the *East-India* Company, or in Shares upon the Adventures of great Merchants. Nor do those Families who are almost constantly in the Magistracy rise that Way to excessive Riches, but content themselves with the Honour and Esteem they acquire by being useful to the Publick, and a frugal Way of Living. The mighty Growth and Excess of Riches is among their Merchants and Traders, who apply themselves that Way, and are the better content with having little Share in the Government, since they are secure in what they possess. Yet when they attain to great Wealth, they frequently marry their Children into the Families of Magistrates, and by that Means pave their Way to Honour, which does not here lie in Titles, but in publick Employments.

Their Nobles are mostly employed in the Military and Civil Officers of the Provinces or State, differ from the rest in their Way of Living; and having been bred much abroad, affect rather the Garb of neighbouring Courts, than the popular Air of their own Country; value themselves more upon their Nobility, than in other Countries where 'tis more common; and think it dishonourable to match below their own Rank, even tho' they could better their Fortunes by it; and much imitate the *French* in their Mien and Way of Living, tho' they copy them but sordidly, and would do better to improve the Customs and Virtues proper to their own Country; tho' otherwise, Sir *William* says, they are an honest, good-natur'd, Gentlemanly sort of Men, and generally acquit themselves with Honour in the Service of their Country. Their Military Officers, and the Sons of the rich Merchants, imitate the Gentry, and the latter affect Employments, rather in the Army than in the State; and are desirous to see a Court

Court in their Country, that they may value themselves at home upon the Customs they have learn'd abroad. These, he says, are the general Dispositions of the *Dutch*; and among all the several Ranks, there's a great Frugality, it being reckon'd as dishonourable here that a Man should spend his whole Income, as 'tis to be vicious and profligate in other Parts. This enables them to bear their heavy Taxes with the more Ease: And they pay as willingly to the making of Canals, Bridges, Cawleys, pleasant Walks and Groves, near their great Cities, and to the Beauty, Conveniency, and sometimes Magnificence, of their publick Works, in which they take as much Delight, and are as proud of them, as People in other Countries are of their private Possessions. What they have to spare beyond what is necessary for their private Maintenance, and the publick Imposts, they lay out in the Ornament and Furniture of their Houses. Thus, he says, their publick Works, as Cawleys, Canals, &c. are always finished in the appointed Time; and the Way they made from the *Hague* to *Skeweling* was a Work becoming the old *Romans*, considering how quickly 'twas dispatched.

Their Charity, he says, is National, which appears by their Care to set their Poor at work, and to provide for such as are not able in well endow'd Hospitals. He gives a particular Instance of this in one at *Enckhuysen* for aged Seamen, where, he says, he met with the only rich Man that ever he saw in his Life; for when he offer'd him a Crown for having shew'd him the Hospital, and the adjoining Church, and giving him a pleasant Account of his Adventures by Sea, the Man refus'd it, and told Sir *William*, That he had no need of Money, being plentifully supplied with all Necessaries in the Hospital. He adds, That in general all Passions and Appetites seem to run lower here than in other Countries, Avarice excepted; and this they chiefly feed by Industry and Parsimony, which makes it scarce a Crime. They seldom quartel, except in Drink; and both Sexes are generally chaste, being little given to Amours. The Dulness of their Air disposes them to strange Assiduity, and Patience in every thing they undertake, which he thinks to be the main Reason of the great Progress they

have made in Arts and Trade, and of the Fatigue they are able to endure in Arms. He thinks the same Quality in their Air inclines them to eating and drinking, in which they are charged with Excess; but they think it necessary for Health, considering their thick and foggy Climate, the Coldness of their Complexion, and constant Application to Business; but he seldom knew any of their Chief Ministers or Officers guilty of drinking much; and if at any time they exceeded, it was rather in Complaisance to their Company at publick Entertainments, than from Inclination; and their Merchants and Traders think it scarce lawful to drink, till after they have done their Business at the Exchange; but in the Evening, apply themselves to their Diversions.

For the Cruelty so frequently laid to their Charge, because of what they barbarously did to some of our Men in the *East-Indies*, and the Murther of their Pensionary *De Wit* and his Brother. Sir *William* says, the latter at least deserv'd a better Return from his Country, after 18 Years spent in their Service, gives him a very great Character, and says, that whenever he was blinded, 'twas by the Passion he had for what he esteem'd the Interest of his Country: But this Action, he says, is rather to be attributed to the Misfortunes they were then under, than to any Customs or Dispositions he could observe among them; but he must confess, that Mankind is a various Creature, and not to be known, except he be seen in his Rage as well as in his Drink. They are generally not so long liv'd as in better Airs, and begin to decay early at *Amsterdam*: Yet at the *Hague*, he has known People a good deal above 70 in perfect Health and Sense; but this is not so usual in that Country, as in *England* and elsewhere. The Diseases of their Climate are the Gout and Scurvy; and in hot and dry Summers, they have infectious Fevers, especially at *Amsterdam* and *Leyden*, by which they either die suddenly, or languish long before they recover; but Plagues are not frequent, or at least they suppress the Talk of 'em. Strangers, he says, are apt to complain of the Spleen among them, but the Natives seldom or never. In short, he says, *Holland* is a Country where the Earth is better than the Air, and

Profit more in Request than Honour; where there's more Sense than Wit; more good Nature than good Humour; and more Wealth than Pleasure; where a Man would chuse rather to travel, than to live; may find more Things to observe, than to desire; and more Persons to esteem, than to love.

Their Ancient Religion.

THE *Atlas Historique* says, while they were Heathens, they worship'd the following Idols, viz. 1. The *Sun*, from which they derive their *Sunday*, and represented it holding a burning Wheel upon a Pedestal. 2. The *Moon*, from whom they derive their *Monday*, and represented her as a Woman with large Ears, holding a Moon in her Hand, and standing on a Pedestal. She was particularly worship'd by Travellers and Fishermen. 3. *Twisco*, from whom they derive their *Tuesday*. He was the most esteem'd, represented like an old Man in a loose Robe, holding a Scepter in his Hand, and standing on a Pedestal. 4. *Woden*, from whom they derive their *Wednesday*. He was their God of War, and was represented standing on a Pedestal, with a drawn Scimeter in his Right Hand, a Buckler in his Left, a sort of a Crown on his Head, and a Coat of Mail girded about him. 5. *Thor*, from whom they derive their *Thursday*. He was represented like an old Man on a Throne, with a Crown on his Head, a Scepter in his Right Hand, and Robes on his Body. They suppos'd him to preside over Wind, Rain, and Thunder. 6. *Friga*, from whom they derive their *Friday*. They represented this Idol in Form of a Woman with a Helmet on her Head, a *Cornucopia* in her Right Hand, a Bow on her Left Arm, and worship'd her as the Goddess of Peace, Plenty, and Love, with Groves, Fruit-Trees, and Corn-Fields, about her, and a Person worshipping before her. 7. *Seater*, from whom they derive their *Saturday*. They represented him as an old Man in a close Habit, standing on a Pedestal, with a Pail full of Fruit in his Right, and holding up a Wheel in his Left Hand. 8. *Ermenesaut*, the *Saxon* Idol formerly mentioned, whom they represented in Armour, with a Crown

on his Head, a Spear in his Right Hand, and a Buckler in his Left; and him they worship'd after their Return from their Victories.

The same Author says, That their Conversion to Christianity is ascrib'd to *St. Willembroeck*, an *English* Bishop, and 8 of his Companions, who about the Year 700 went from *England*, and preached to them.

Their Present Religion.

WE have formerly told how Popery was laid aside, and the Reformation establish'd; upon which they agreed on a Confession of Faith, consisting of 37 Articles, call'd, *The Belgick Confession*, in which their Church continued unanimous for a considerable Time, both as to Doctrine and Government, the latter being Presbytery, for which they declar'd in the 30th, 31st, and 32d Articles of their Confession. But there happen'd Divisions among them afterwards, of which we shall give a brief Account from the Preface to the Acts of the Synod of *Dort*, directed to all the Reform'd Churches, approv'd by that Synod, and publish'd, together with their Acts, by the Authority of the States General at *Dort* in 1620. This we judged the more necessary, because those Divisions were fomented by that Faction of the State call'd *Barnetwelts*, or the *Lowestein* Faction, who made it a Handle to cover their Designs against the Family of *Orange*, in order to lessen their Power, which they alledged was dangerous to the Republick.

The first that attack'd their Doctrine were 3 Popish Priests, who deceitfully pretended to embrace the Reformation, and were admitted as Ministers, tho' still Papists in Heart; but they were quickly suppress'd by the Care of the Church and State. The next who occasioned their fatal Divisions was *Jacobus Arminius*, in their Language call'd *Van Hermine*, one of the Ministers of *Amsterdam*, a Man of a good, but luxuriant Genius, and fond of Novelty. He attack'd the Doctrine and the Reputation of the chief Reformers, first privately, but at last publicly, by spreading the *Pelagian* Errors; for which, being rebuk'd by the Church, he forbore for some Time in pub-

publick, but still did it in private, and at last challeng'd *Franciscus Junius*, Professor of Divinity at *Leyden*, to a publick Dispute on that Head. *Junius* dying in 1602, *Arminius*, contrary to the Mind of the Presbytery of *Amsterdam*, was by a Faction of the State and Church called to succeed him after a Conference with *Gomarus* before the Curators of the University, and the Deputies of the Synod, in which he renounc'd the *Pelagian* Errors, approv'd what *St. Austin* had writ against them, with their Condemnation by the Fathers, and upon this was admitted. In order to remove all Suspicion at first, he defended the establish'd Doctrine in the publick Disputations against his own Opinion, as was ingenuously confess'd in Print by *Corvinus*, one of his Followers: But in a Year or two after he publickly maintain'd the contrary, by the Arguments of the Jesuits and Socinians, which he gave out in Manuscript, and his Opinions were spread by such as he taught in the University. Upon this, the Synod sent Deputies to confer with him, with Orders to report to them what pass'd in the Conference; but he declin'd it. In 1605, he was admonish'd by the Magistrates of the City, and some of the University, to come to a friendly Conference with the Presbytery of *Leyden*; which he also declin'd. Upon this, the Synod of *South-Holland* laid the Matter before the Curators, and enjoin'd the Ministers in their District to subscribe the receiv'd Confession and Catechism, and desired the Curators to command the Professors of *Leyden* to do the like; but they refus'd, on Pretence of referring the Matter to a National Synod, which was to meet in a little Time. The *Arminians* being by this Means embolden'd to preach publickly against the receiv'd Doctrine, and to condemn the Synod, the Deputies of the Church applied to the States in 1606 for a National Synod, which had been delay'd for many Years. This was agreed to in Appearance, on Condition of inserting a Clause in the Letters for calling it, that the Confession and Catechism should be revised. The Church said, there was no need of that Clause, since every Man had Liberty to propose his Objections in the Synod, and therefore desir'd it might be called in the usual Form: But the States of *Holland* insisting

upon it, the Clause was added, and Letters were given to the several Churches of the Provinces, to signify the Consent of the States for calling a National Synod. The Church rejoyc'd at this, tho' they were offended at the Clause, because, as it happen'd afterwards, they apprehended the *Arminians* would take this as a Licence to publish their Doctrine. In the mean time, the Synod of *South-Holland* order'd such of their Ministers as had any Objections against the Confession and Catechism, to lay them before their Presbyteries, that they might be referred to the National Synod; and they order'd the Professors of Divinity to do the like: But the *Arminians* declin'd both, pretending they were not ready; and *Arminius* did the same, on Pretence that he would fully explain himself at the National Synod. In 1607, the States General called together Divines from the several Provinces, to consult with them about the Time, Place, and Manner of holding this Synod; but *Arminius* and his Followers, who were called to this Meeting, would neither agree to be determin'd by the Synod, nor to exhibit their Opinions. This occasion'd the National Synod to be put off, which further embolden'd the *Arminians*. Upon this, the Church press'd for a Provincial Synod of *South* and *North Holland*, where *Arminianism* obtain'd most, to take Cognizance of the Matter; but the States put it off, on Pretence that they wanted Time, being then about treating with the *Spaniards*. *Arminius*, to avoid the Determination of the Synod, petition'd that he and his Adversaries might be heard by the Sovereign Council. The Church oppos'd this, as being contrary to their Constitution to bring Church Controversies in the first Instance before the Civil Magistrate, to whom in case of Necessity they were to be referred by the Synod; but 'twas carried against them by the States, who told them, The Sovereign Council would refer the Judgment of it to the Provincial Synod. When the Divines on both Sides came before the Sovereign Council in 1608, *Arminius* insisted, that his Adversaries should exhibit his Charge, and that he might act the Part of a Defendant. *Gomarus* oppos'd it, as a Thing not proper for Churchmen to accuse one another in the first Instance before the

Civill

Civil Magistrate; but declared, he was ready to prove before a lawful Synod, that *Arminius* had taught what was contrary to the Confession of Faith and Catechism; and that for the Satisfaction of the States, he thought it more proper that both of 'em should give a plain Declaration of their Doctrine before the Court, who would thereby be informed of the Matter of Fact, which was all they were to take Cognizance of; since the States had promis'd, that the Judgment of the Matter should be referred to the Synod. *Arminius* refus'd this, and boasted, that tho' he had been charged with Heterodox Doctrine, his Adversaries durst not accuse him. Upon this, *Gomarus* prov'd to the Court, by *Arminius's* own Writings, that in the Point of Justification, he had taught what was contrary to the Confession. *Arminius* being thus convicted, had Recourse to another Subterfuge, and propos'd, that both of 'em should deliver their Opinion by Way of *Theses*, with their mutual Animadversions, which *Gomarus* agreed to. The Conference being ended, the Sovereign Council reported to the States, that the Difference betwixt 'em was of no great Moment, and related chiefly to Subtilties about Predestination. *Gomarus* shew'd the contrary, and said, which afterwards came to pass, that the Differences betwixt them were so many, and of such Importance, that he was afraid they would in a little Time set one Church, Province and City, against another. The States order'd however, that what pass'd at this Conference should be sealed up, and communicated to no body till the Meeting of a National Synod. The Church perceiving that this was done in Favour of *Arminius*, lest his Opinion should appear under his own Hand, they petition'd that a Provincial or National Synod should be called as soon as possible to determine the Matter; but instead of that, the *Arminians* prevailed to have the Provincial Synod put off, contrary to Custom, till *October* following. In the mean time the Church order'd the *Arminians* to give in their Objections to their respective Presbyteries in time, that they might be laid before the Synod, which they refus'd, and the Provincial Synod was put off for two Months longer; but they had Allowance to meet in their particular

Synods. Upon this, the Synod of *South-Holland* order'd the *Arminians* in their District, and the Professors of *Leyden*, to exhibit their Objections in a Month's Time, on Pain of Church Censure. To avoid this, the *Arminians* prevail'd with the States to order those Objections to be sent to themselves, seal'd up, until the Provincial Synod should meet. *Arminius* being press'd to Obedience by the Deputies of the Church, he promis'd to give them an Answer: But in the mean time, in a General Assembly of the States, he made a large Speech, wherein he inveigh'd against the establish'd Doctrine, and endeavour'd to make it odious to the States. To which *Gomarus* gave a full and a solid Answer; and shew'd, that his Objections were the same made use of by the Jesuits and Socinians, and other Enemies of the Reformed Churches; and that his chief Design in appealing to the Civil Magistrate in the first Instance, was to pour Contempt upon the Church, before whom he knew he was not able to defend his Opinions; and therefore he labour'd all that he could to hinder the calling of a Synod. In 1609, the Deputies of the Church press'd *Arminius* to deliver them his Objections, according to his Promise; which he refused, on Pretence, that as the States had order'd the rest of the *Arminian* Preachers to deliver their Objections to them, he expected the like Order. By these Delays, the *Arminians* gain'd Ground. *Bertrius*, Regent of the Divinity College at *Leyden*, did openly maintain their Doctrine; and *Adolphus Venator*, one of the Ministers of *Alcmaer*, and several others, did avowedly preach Pelagianism and Socinianism, for which they were suspended by the Church; and in *Venator's* Censure, there was Notice taken of his lewd Life: But the *Arminians*, by Means of *Barneveldt*, *Grotius*, and others, procur'd an Order to have those Ministers restor'd, with which the Church declar'd they could not in Conscience comply, and petition'd the States for a Provincial Council, according to their Promise. *Arminius* and his Followers finding the States inclin'd to it, in order to divert them, propos'd another Conference before the States by a certain Number of Divines on both Sides, which was obtain'd. The Church desir'd that it might be manag'd in Writing,

ting, to prevent such Misrepresentations as had formerly happen'd; but the States order'd it should be *viva voce*, and afterwards writ, and laid before the Provincial Synod. They likewise appointed that *Venator*, tho' depos'd for his Lewdness, as well as his Errors, should be one of the Conference; but 'twas soon broke off, because of *Arminius's* bad Health. The States order'd that both Sides should write what had pass'd, in order to be laid before the Provincial Synod, which was perform'd on the Part of the Church, who press'd for a Synod; and in the mean time *Arminius* died without performing what he had promis'd. The *Arminians* growing more bold by the Delay of the Synod from Time to Time, and being absolutely against one, they endeavour'd to persuade the States not to suffer one to be call'd, according to the Constitution, but to name such Persons to compose the Synod, as they themselves thought fit, and to deprive the Church of her Freedom of Election; alledging, that they design'd to set up an Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction, independant of the State. Having by this Means procur'd the Synods to be further delay'd, the *Arminians* met privately, without Authority either from Church or State, drew up their Remonstrance against the establish'd Doctrine, from whence they were called *Remonstrants*; and having subscrib'd and deliver'd it to the States, they separated from the other Ministers, and made an open Schism; but prevail'd with the States not to give out any Copy of their Remonstrance. At the same time, contrary to the Mind of the Church, and of the Chief Magistrates of the Cities of *Holland*, they procur'd *Vorstius*, who was Professor of Divinity at *Steinfurt* in *Westphalia*, to be called to succeed *Arminius* as Professor of Divinity at *Leyden*, tho' he was then accused by the University of *Heydelberg* of being a Socinian, and publishing a Book concerning GOD, and the Divine Attributes, wherein he asserted, That GOD was Finite, Corporeal, compos'd of Essence and Accidents; That his Will was mutable; That he was liable to Passive Power, and other Monstrous Doctrines. In the mean time another Conference was appointed betwixt the *Calvinists* and *Remonstrants* before the States, to be manag'd by Writing; when the *Calvinists* ha-

ving then got a Copy of the Remonstrance, prov'd that the *Arminians* had slander'd the Doctrine of the Reform'd Churches, and conceal'd their own Opinions. During this Conference, *Vorstius* came to the *Hague*, and endeavour'd to vindicate himself to the States. The Ministers charg'd him with the Book and Principles above-mention'd, and with having lately publish'd and interpolated *Socinus's* Book concerning the Authority of the Holy Scriptures. After a Conference upon this Subject, the States asked the Ministers on both Sides, Whether he was fit to be Professor of Divinity? The *Arminians* answer'd, They had examin'd his Writings, and could find nothing in them inconsistent with Piety or Truth. The *Calvinists* maintain'd the contrary, and said, His Answers were so far from being satisfactory, that they confirmed their Suspicion of him, and humbly requested that he might not be admitted. *Vorstius* withdrawing, the Conference upon the 5 Articles was resum'd; which being continued for some Days, the States order'd both Sides to put in Writing what they had said, or had further to say, and send it to them. That in the mean time neither of them should boast of Victory; That they should be moderate in their Doctrine about the Articles, live in Peace and Charity with one another; and that the said Articles should remain as they were before; but they determin'd nothing as to *Vorstius*. Upon this, the Magistrates of *Dort* petition'd the States that he might not be call'd; in Compliance with which, they put a Stop to it. K. James I. of Great Britain having read *Vorstius's* Book concerning the Divine Attributes, and marked his principal Errors with his own Hand, he admonish'd the States, by his Minister Sir Ralph Winwood, not to admit a Man to be Professor of Divinity who was guilty of such Blasphemies and Errors. But the Matter being delay'd, and *Vorstius* endeavouring to vindicate himself by Apologies and Answers, K. James insisted on his Demand; of which *Johnstoun*, in his *Lat. Hist. of Brit. Affairs*, Printed at *Amsterdam* in 1655, gives us this fuller Account; That the King sent *Vorstius's* Book, with his own Remarks upon it, to Sir Ralph, with a Letter to the States, who had then admitted *Vorstius*, wherein he re-
pre-

presented the Scandal they had given to the Reform'd Churches, and the Danger that would arise from it to the Protestant Religion, in which the Church of England and that of the Netherlands had hitherto agreed. The States answer'd, That *Vorsius* was famous for his Learning, had writ well against *Bellarmin*; and upon hearing him and his Accusers, they found no Cause to reject him, he having recanted his Errors. The King not being satisfied with this Answer, order'd his Book to be burnt in St. Paul's Church-yard; writ again to the States, quoted the blasphemous Passages in *Vorsius's* Book; and told them, he was so far from truly recanting his Errors, that he had maintain'd them in his Apology, and deserv'd to be burnt as well as his Book. His Majesty added, That he wonder'd how they could suffer his Apology to be publish'd in Dutch, and read by all their Subjects; That he had hop'd the Mischief occasioned by *Arminius* and his Followers to their Church and State would have made them more cautious; and told them, That one of their Leyden Divines had the Impudence to send a Book to the Archbishop of Canterbury, with a Letter, in both which he maintain'd the Apostacy of the Saints, and asserted, That this was not contrary to the Doctrine of the Church of England. The King insist'd, That they should banish *Vorsius*, who was by his own Books convicted of Atheism and Blasphemy, tho' he endeavour'd to deny it by Equivocations, to avoid the Punishment he deserv'd; and advis'd them to chuse another Professor, who was free from Scandal. This Letter was dated the 7th of October, 1611. and sent with Instructions to Sir *Ralph*, wherein the King took Notice, That he found *Vorsius* had Patrons among the States, and order'd him to insist on his being banish'd; and if he were not, to enter a Protestation in his Name against him. Sir *Ralph* obey'd his Orders, deliver'd them the King's Letter, with his Remarks on *Vorsius's* Books and Apology; wherein, besides what's above-mentioned, he asserted, That GOD was not Infinite nor Omnipresent. Sir *Ralph* added, That 56 of the Leyden Students had petition'd against *Vorsius's* Admission; That he was condemn'd of many Errors by the Divines of *Basse* and *Heydelberg*, and convicted by his own Books;

and therefore insist'd on his Banishment. The States desired Sir *Ralph* to have Patience till they confer'd about it, and answer'd him to this Effect, That the Curators of the University had, at their Request, discharged him from being Professor, but allow'd him to live at Leyden as a private Citizen, till the Matter should be determined in the Meeting of the States in February next. Sir *Ralph* being dissatisfied with this Answer, enter'd the King's Protest to this Effect, That their calling of *Vorsius*, who was convicted of Blasphemy and Heresy, was dishonourable to his Majesty, who had oppos'd it, and a Scandal to all the Reform'd Churches: That instead of complying with his Majesty's Request, they obstinately deny'd it: That their Answers were ambiguous and confus'd: That they had given *Vorsius* Liberty to do that in private, which they were asham'd he should do in publick; therefore he protested against it, as an Injury and Reproach to the Reform'd Churches, and contrary to their League with the King, which was founded on their Communion in Religion; adding, That his Majesty could not but express his Repentments, that *Vorsius* was of more Account with them than their League with Great Britain: That he would publish the King's Protestation in Latin, that the World might see how much his Majesty abhor'd *Vorsius*, and all the Abettors of his Blasphemy and impious Heresies; and that he would not spare the Blood of his Subjects, his Children, or himself, in Defence of the Purity of the Reform'd Religion: The States answer'd very respectfully, That tho' his Majesty was partly disappointed at present as to *Vorsius*, they doubted not but the States would fully satisfy him at their next Meeting; which having not done, says *Johnstoun*, but putting it off from Time to Time; his Majesty publish'd a Book in Latin, Entitl'd, *Protestatio Anti-vorsiana*, wherein he prov'd *Vorsius's* impious Opinions to be contrary to the Laws of GOD, Man, and Nature, and shew'd himself to be very well vers'd in Controversial Divinity.

In the mean time, says the Preface to the Synod of *Dort*, some of *Vorsius's* Disciples in the University of *Franker* publish'd a Book of *Fausius Socinus* about the Duty of Man, wherein they advis'd all such as would be

be saved to leave the Communion of the Reform'd Churches, and to join with the *Photinians* and *Ebionites*; and this they recommended by a Preface. The States of *Friesland* intercepted also some of their Letters, by which it appeared what Tricks they made use of to promote Socinianism with Privacy and Safety; in which Design, *Vorstius*, *Utenbogardus*, and others, who appeared for the *Arminians*, were engaged. Upon this, the States of *Friesland* order'd all those Books to be burnt, banish'd the Students, and wrote to the States of *Holland* against *Vorstius*; urging, that the Union of the Provinces, which was principally founded upon their Agreement in Religion, might not be broke for such a Heretick. The States of *Zutphen* and *Guelderland* wrote to the same Purpose; upon which *Vorstius* was order'd to remove to *Gouda*, where he might vindicate himself by Writing. Then the States order'd the Ministers to draw up the State of the Controversy about the 5 Articles, and to give their Advice how the Differences might be reconciled. The *Arminians* insisted on a mutual Toleration, and the *Calvinists* urged to have the Doctrine on both Sides examin'd by the Word of GOD in a National Synod. The States were divided about it; but being informed, that they differ'd in other Things besides the 5 Articles, they order'd that no Innovation should be made in the receiv'd Doctrine.

After this, the *Arminians* stir'd up several Magistrates, by Slanders and Calumnies, to throw the *Calvinists* out of the Churches, and put *Arminians* in their stead; who being forc'd upon the People in many Places, they left those Preachers, and communicated with the *Calvinists*. The first Violence of this Sort was done at *Alemaer* in *Holland*, where *Venator* made the *Arminians* take Arms, throw out the *Calvinist* Magistrates and Ministers, and put *Arminians* in their Place. The like was done at *Rotterdam*, and *Episcopius* was forcibly impos'd on the Church of *Bleiswick*; tho' he was so scandalous, that the Presbytery of *Amsterdam*, where he had been a Minister, refus'd to give him a Certificate of the Goodness of his Life and Doctrine. The *Arminians* rais'd a severe Prosecution in the Province of *Holland* against such as separated from them in 1612; and they did the like in

Guelderland, *Utrecht*, and *Overissel*, where they threw out the *Calvinists*, and set up a new sort of Church Government, which was approved by the States of *Utrecht*, who gave a publick Toleration to the *Remonstrants*; and in *Guelderland*, the *Arminians* hinder'd the Meeting of the Synod. *Episcopius* was, by the Interest of the *Arminians*, call'd to succeed *Vorstius* as Professor of Divinity at *Leiden*. The *Calvinists*, to obviate those Mischiefs, sent two Deputies from every Province to petition the States for a National Synod, according to Promise; but *Utenbogardus*, by his Interest with the Pensionary of *Holland*, prevented it. Upon this, the *Arminians* grew more insolent every Day, and fill'd the Country with Tumults. Count *William Lodewick* of *Nassau*, Governor of *Friesland*, propos'd another Conference, in order to an Accommodation. The *Calvinists* agreed to it, on Condition that the *Arminians* would declare their Agreement with the establish'd Doctrine in every Thing else but the 5 Articles, which should be referred to a National Synod. *Utenbogardus* promis'd a Compliance on the Part of the *Remonstrants*, and a Conference was appointed in Febr. 1613. But by the Fraud of the *Arminians*, it came to nothing; for they would not submit to the Decision of the Synod, nor forbear to innovate the establish'd Doctrine, tho' the States General had forbid them to do it.

About this Time, *Grotius* went over to *England* with a wrong State of the Controversy; and by the Means of the Archbishop of *Canterbury* and *Causabon*, (says *The History of the United Provinces*) who had brought *K. James* to a more favourable Opinion of the *Arminians*, he obtain'd his Majesty's Consent for a Toleration to them. This (says the Preface to the Synod of *Dort*) being surreptitiously procured, and his Majesty prevail'd on to write to the States about it, according to a Copy given him by *Grotius*, made the *Arminians* more insolent than ever; so that they drew up a Form of Toleration in 1614, which was pretended to be agreed to by the States, tho' oppos'd by many of 'em. However they publish'd it, and set up a new Way of calling Ministers in 1615 by 4 Magistrates and 4 Preachers, in order to bring the *Arminians* into the Churches; and order'd this Method to be

observ'd through all the Provinces, which gave Occasion to many new Tumults. Upon this, the Churches sent Deputies to complain of it to the States; but when they came to the *Hague*, they were advised to forbear, till it was further urg'd upon them, since that Decree had not been confirm'd by all the States, and therefore could not have the Force of a Law. In the mean time the *Remonstrants* prevail'd with some of the States to throw out such Ministers in their Jurisdiction as would not comply with it. Upon which, the ejected *Calvinists* set up separate Churches, which were countenanc'd and frequented by the Pr. of *Orange*, the Governor of *Friesland*, and the Chief of the States. *Grotius* went to *Amsterdam* in 1616, to try if, with his Cunning and Eloquence, he could prevail with the Magistrates there to set up the new Form of Church Government, and establish the Toleration; which they refus'd, and pleaded for a National Synod, in which they were seconded by the other chief Cities of *Holland*. The *Arminians* finding themselves grown odious by those Innovations and Tumults, they publish'd a second Remonstrance in 1617, wherein they endeavour'd to vindicate themselves, and reproach'd the *Calvinists* as Schismatics, and the Causers of the Separation. To which they gave a solid Answer, and presented it to the States.

In the mean time the Disorders grew to such a Height, as threaten'd the Ruin both of Church and State. Upon which, King *James* being better inform'd, he acquainted the States by Sir *Dudley Carleton*, his Minister, (says Mr. *Johnston*) That they might expect his Assistance, if they would adhere to the establish'd Religion; and Sir *Dudley*, according to his Instructions, represented to the States the Danger they were in of being either betray'd to *Spain*, or destroy'd by a Civil War: Therefore he advis'd them to make use of their Power and Authority against the impious Fury of the *Arminians*, who had tumultuously taken Arms, and to call a National Synod. Upon which, the States order'd the *Arminians* to forbear their disorderly Practices, which they refus'd; and urg'd up the People to Sedition, openly curs'd Prince *Maurice*, made the *Burgers* take Arms against their Garrisons, pub-

lish'd a scandalous Libel, call'd, *The Balance*, against *K. James*, the Pr. of *Orange*, and the States, and insulted *K. James's* Minister. Upon this, the States declar'd the Author and Printer of the Libel to be guilty of High Treason, and promis'd a Reward to those who could discover them. Complaints being brought to the States from all Places, of the Persecution and Tumults rais'd by the *Arminians*, the Pr. of *Orange*, the States of *Zealand*, *Guelderland*, *Friesland*, and *Groningen*, press'd for a National Synod. The *Arminians*, to prevent it, had Recourse to their old Subterfuge of desiring a Conference; which not being agreed to, they objected against a National Synod as contrary to the Union, by which every Province had a Sovereign Power in Point of Religion; and that this Right ought to be defended by Arms. To which 'twas answer'd, That they formerly had National Synods, which was their Constitution; and this being the common Cause of all the Provinces, and their Unanimity in Religion, the principal Cement of the Union, the Differences could not otherwise be determin'd. Upon this, the *Arminians* increas'd the Tumults, and enter'd into a Conspiracy to raise Troops, which should neither be subject to the States General nor the Prince of *Orange*, but obliged by Oath to defend the *Remonstrants*, their Cause and Authority, as appear'd by their Letters. This oblig'd the States General at last to agree to a National Synod, and to invite all the Reform'd Churches to send Deputies to it, that it might have the greater Authority, because the *Arminians*, as their last Shift, objected against a National Synod, alledging it would be partial, and appeal'd to an Oecumenical Synod. After this, particular Synods were order'd to chuse their Deputies for the National Synod, which was perform'd in the usual Manner in all the Provinces, except those of *Holland* and *Utrecht*; where the *Arminians* being most numerous, and having form'd separate Classes, both Parties chose Deputies of their own. In the Synod of *Guelderland*, the *Arminians* were publicly convicted of slandering the *Calvinists*, and several of 'em turn'd out for Immoralities and Errors.

The States General having several times sent to those of *Utrecht* to disband the Troops they

they had rais'd to defend the *Arminians*, in case they should be condemn'd by the Synod, they refus'd to comply. Upon which, the States order'd the Prince of *Orange* with a Body of Troops to see it perform'd, which he did with great Prudence and Courage, and without any Effusion of Blood, at *Nimeguen* and *Zutphen*, as well as at *Utrecht*, and seiz'd *Barneveldt*, *Hogerbert*, and *Grotius*, the chief Leaders of the Faction, who oppos'd the disbanding of the Troops. This great Service rais'd the Envy of the *Arminians* against him, says *Johnstoun*, so that they threaten'd his Life, and put an Inscription under his Statue, wishing that *Brutus* were alive again. After dispersing their Troops, and seizing their Leaders, the chief of the *Arminian* Clergy, who had fomented the Tumult, such as *Utenbogardus*, *Taurinus*, *Venator*, and *Grevinchovius*, fled out of the Country; and the *French* K. interposed by his Minister for *Barneveldt*, and their other Leaders, but without Effect. In the mean time the particular Synods turn'd out several of the *Arminian* Preachers for their bad Lives and gross Errors; but censur'd none for their Opinion about the 5 Articles, because they were referred to the National Synod, which met at *Dort* the 13th of November, 1618.

We have insisted the longer on this, because those Controversies and Disorders have made a great Noise in the World, and have been differently represented, according to the Inclinations of Writers; but this is the Substance of what was published by the Authority of the States, and the Synod, which we thought might be acceptable.

When the Synod met, the Foreign Divines were attended by Deputies from the State and Church to the Place appointed, received with much Honour by the Deputies of the States General, and plac'd according to their Rank; those from *Great Britain* having the Preference. 'Twas agreed, that all the Proceedings should be in Latin, because of the Foreign Divines. 'Twas open'd by a Preface, Prayer, and Discourse, in that Language, by *Balthazar Lydius*, Minister at *Dort*: Then one of the States Deputies, in a short Speech, gave Thanks to the K. of *Great Britain* and the other Potentates for sending their Deputies, acquainted them with the Occasion of their Meeting,

and how near both the Church and State of the United Provinces were brought to Ruin, had it not been for the Care of the States, and the Prince of *Orange*, in suppressing the Tumult, and calling the Synod. Then the respective Deputies exhibited their Powers; and the Articles of the States for calling the Synod, and ordering their Method of Proceeding, were read, in Substance as follows: 1. That there should be a General Day of Prayer and Fasting for a Blessing on their Proceedings, and restoring Peace to the Church and State before they met. 2. That the 5 Controverted Articles should be expressly mentioned in the States Letter for calling it; but that other Grievances might be heard in their Place. 3. That every particular Synod should send 6 of those they thought fittest to the National Synod, 3 of 'em at least to be Ministers, and the other two or three Elders, or other Persons of known Probity and Capacity. 4. That the *French* Churches in the Dominions of the States, and in the *Spanish* Provinces, should be invited to send Deputies. 5. That the K. of *Great Britain*, the Protestant Churches of *France*, the Electors *Palatine* and *Brandenburg*, the Landgrave of *Hesse*, and the Protestant Churches of *Switzerland* and *Wetteravia*, and the Republick of *Geneva*, should be desired to send 3 or 4 pious, peaceable, and learned Divines each. 6. That Professors of Divinity should be called from the Universities and Colleges of the United Provinces. 7. That some learned Divines should be invited from the Churches of *East-Friesland* and *Bremen*. 8. That any other Divines, besides those that were chosen, might have Liberty to propose their Difficulties, upon Leave ask'd and given, provided they would submit them to the Judgment of the Synod. 9. The 5 Controverted Articles should be first debated. 10. That the Word of GOD should be the only Rule to examine them by, and that every Member should take an Oath accordingly; and that they had nothing before their Eyes but the Glory of GOD, and the Peace of the Church. 11. That what was approved by most Suffrages, should be a Canon; but those who voted otherwise, should not be censured or suspected on that Account. 12. That if any Thing doubtful happen'd in Debate, the Synod might have a Recess

as long as they thought fit for Deliberation, and meet again without a new Summons. 13. That the States of each Province should send two Delegates, to be continually present, and moderate in the Synod, to prevent Disturbance and Confusion. 14. That after the Conclusion, the whole should be reported to the States General for their Approbation.

Then the Deputies of the States and the Synod agreed, that such of the *Remonstrants* as were known to be most learned in the Controversy, should be summon'd to attend in 14 Days, to give an Account of their Opinions; and that they should have Liberty to explain and defend them as much as they could, and judged necessary, and to give in their Objections to the Confession and Catechism. Accordingly the Deputies of the States summoned 14 out of the several Provinces, among whom was *Episcopius*; and besides these, there were 3 *Arminians* chosen from the Synod of *Utrecht*. The whole Number consisted of 17 Deputies from the States, 56 Ministers and Elders, 4 Professors of Divinity from the *Dutch* Universities, and 1 from *Franker*, 4 Deputies from the Church of *England*, 1 from *Scotland*, 3 from the *Palatinate*, 4 from *Hesse*, 5 from *Switzerland*, 2 from *Wetteravia*, 3 from *Bremen*, 2 from *Geneva*, and 2 from *Embsen*; in all, 104. Then they chose a Præses, 2 Assessors, 2 Clerks; and 2 of the Deputies of the States, with 4 Elders, were chosen to collect the Suffrages.

When the *Remonstrants* came, they proposed new Conditions and Methods of Proceeding; which the Deputies of the States and the Synod having examin'd, they unanimously declar'd them insolent, unjust, unseasonable, contrary to what was prescribed by the States their Sovereigns, and slanderous to the Synod and the *Belgick* Churches, whom they accused as Schismatics. Upon this, the *Remonstrants* protested against the Synod as their Enemies and Schismatics, and by Consequence not proper Judges. The Synod having examin'd their Protestation, unanimously condemn'd it, and told the *Arminians*, That according to their Way of Proceeding, no Heresy or Error whatever could be censur'd; and that they had no Reason to make this Protestation, since the Foreign Divines could not be reckon'd Parties; and that their own

Sovereigns the States, to avoid all Partiality, had order'd the Scriptures to be the only Rule for trying their Doctrine, and oblig'd all the Members to take an Oath accordingly; and therefore advis'd the *Remonstrants* to lay aside those Tergiversations, and exhibit their Objections against the Confession and Catechism; with which they refused to comply, some of 'em pretending they were not ready; and when they were told that this could not be true, since they had long before given them into the States, they answer'd, That they had other Objections since some of the former they had alter'd; and that they had not yet agreed among themselves about it. In short, after many Delays, and much Trifling, the *Arminians* would stand to none of the Rules prescrib'd, nor debate or deliver their Opinions when demanded, but as they pleas'd. Upon which, the Deputies of the States, with the Consent of the Synod, agreed to dismiss them, and forbade them to come any more to the Synod, or to leave the City without the Consent of the States, because, as 'tis express'd in the Decree, instead of giving Obedience, they contemn'd Publick Authority, and had Recourse to all sorts of Tergiversations, Subterfuges, and Fallacies, in order to prevent the trying of their Opinions by the Word of GOD, and to prevent the happy Issue of the Synod, which the States had call'd and continu'd at so vast a Charge; and therefore 'twas unanimously agreed, they deserv'd no more to be heard. When the *Remonstrants* were called in to hear the Decree read, the Præses told them, because they had given out that the Foreign Divines favour'd their former Petition, they might now be satisfied, that all the Foreign Divines had declar'd, that the *Remonstrants* had both begun and concluded with Frauds and Lies; for *Episcopius*, who was their Spokesman, had been several times convicted of Falshood by the whole Synod. *If any thing appear harsh, it is the very Words of the Acts of the Synod, not ours; for we shall give nothing but Matter of Fact.*

The *Remonstrants* being thus dismiss'd, the Synod proceeded to examine the *Theses* they had given in about the 5 Controversed Articles, and what appeared further from their publick Writings to be their Opinion concerning them, and condemn'd them by their Canons, viz. their Opinions, 1. About

Pre-

Predestination. 2. About the Death of Christ, and the Redemption of Man by him. 3. and 4. Concerning the Corruption of Mankind, their Conversion to GOD, and the Manner of it. 5. Concerning the Perseverance of the Saints; for which, with the Arguments given by the Protestant Divines from the several Countries above-mentioned, we refer to the Book it self. After this, the Canons of the Synod were approved by the States General the 2d of July, 1619. Then they all approved the *Belgick* Confession, and the *Palatine* Catechism made use of in the *Netherlands* for the Instruction of Youth. They also condemned the horrid Confessions of the two *Arminian* Brothers, J. and Pet. *Geijsteranus*, Ministers of *Almaer* and *Egmond*, as containing the execrable Errors of *Socinus*, and the Blasphemies of the *Munster* Anabaptists. They afterwards condemned *Vorsius's* Doctrine, and then were dissolved, after a Speech by the Præses, wherein he gave Thanks to the Foreign Divines, and concluded with Prayer. Then the Members took Leave of one another with mutual Embraces, Thanks, Tears, and Exhortations, to continue stedfast in the Doctrine of the Reform'd Churches, and gave one another the Right Hand of Fellowship the 9th of May, 1620.

The E. of *Brandenburg* had appointed some Divines to attend the Synod; but they being hinder'd from coming by Sickness, and other unforeseen Accidents, he wrote to the States to excuse it; adding, that the Confession publish'd in his Dominions agreed with theirs, and those of the other Reform'd Churches; and that his Divines should approve of what the Synod did in Defence of that Doctrine. Their Confession was also approved by a National Synod of the Protestant Churches of *France*, assembled at *Vitry*, May 25. 1585. where, at the Request of the Deputies of the *Belgick* Churches, they testify'd their Agreement with them in Doctrine and Discipline, which was recorded in the Acts of the Synod of *Dort*, because the *French* K. would not allow the Protestant Churches in his Dominions to send any Deputies to that Synod.

By all this, Sir *W. Temple* seems to have very good Authority for what he says concerning the *Arminians*, That they were ra-

ther a Party in the State, than a Sect in the Church; and that their Principles in *Barneveld's* Time were thought to lead them towards a Conjunction, or at least a Compliance with the *Spanish* Religion and Government. He says, they are but few in Number, tho' in his Time they were considerable by the Persons who were of the better Quality, and many of 'em in the Government. He adds, That the *Calvinists* make the Body of the People, and are possess'd of all the publick Churches, as they have been ever since the Synod of *Dort* by the Decree of the States General. The *Anabaptists*, he says, are numerous, especially in *North-Holland*, but of the lower Sort of People. The Jews have Synagogues in *Amsterdam* and *Rsterdam*; and in the former, there are publick Meeting-Places of most Sects known amongst Christians. The *Papists* are not allow'd their Worship publicly, but 'tis conniv'd at privately, and they have no Disturbance on that Account; but are not admitted to publick, because of their Dependance on the Pope. Upon the whole, he says, 'tis hardly to be imagin'd how all the Violence and Sharpness, which attends the Differences of Religion in other Countries, seems to be appear'd or soften'd here, by the general Freedom which all Men enjoy, either by Allowance or Connivance; nor how Faction and Ambition are thereby disabled, to colour their interest'd and seditious Designs.

We shall add from *Pitt's Atlas*, That of late some new Opinions in Matters of Religion have been broach'd among 'em by the Writings of *Cocceius* and his Followers, which were like to have occasioned great Divisions; but that they were suppress'd in Time by the Pr. of *Orange* and the States. In 1676, the Curators of the University of *Leyden*, in order to prevent the ill Consequences of those Opinions, forbade the teaching or maintaining them within their Jurisdiction. By this Order it appears, that many of those Opinions were vain and extravagant, and others of 'em were nearly allied to those of the *Socinians* and *Pelagians*. Some of 'em were likewise suppos'd to be deriv'd from the Principles of *Des Cartes*: Upon which Account, the reading of his Metaphysics, either privately or publicly, were forbid in that University; and they

turn'd.

turn'd out *Heidanus*, Professor of Divinity, for writing against that Order. The Pr. of *Orange* and the States of *Zealand* did likewise turn out a Minister, and several of the Magistrates of *Middleburg*, for favouring those Opinions.

'Tis observ'd of the *Dutch*, that they are not so nice in observing the Lord's-Day as some of their Neighbours, it being usual for the common People, especially those of the *Cocceian* Opinion, to buy and sell, and to travel on that Day. They are said to be more affected with singing of Psalms, than any other Part of Worship; and being much addicted to Musick, such as are able, have Organs in their Churches, which play some Time after Sermon is over. The Psalm to be sung by the Congregation is mark'd upon Slates hung up in several Parts of the Church; and their Deacons make Collections for the Poor in the Church in a Purse with a Bell hanging at the Bottom of it, which they reach by a long Pole to every one in their Seats.

Their TRADE.

SIR *W. Temple* says, there is no Instance to be found where so vast a Trade has been manag'd as in the narrow Compass of the 4 Maritime Provinces of this Commonwealth. 'Tis generally esteem'd, that they have more Shipping than all the rest of *Europe*; yet they have no native Commodities towards the Building or Rigging the smallest Vessel, all which comes from abroad; as does their Wool for cloathing, and the Corn for feeding their People. They have nothing, he says, properly of their own Growth, considerable for their own Use or Traffick with others, besides Butter, Cheese, and Earthen Ware. He adds, they have not one good Haven on their whole Coast. The best are *H.woet* says, which has no Trade; and *Fushing*, that has little in comparison of other Towns in *Holland*. *Amsterdam*, that triumphs in the Spoils of *Lix-bon* and *Antwerp*, which before engrossed the greatest Trade of *Europe* in the *Indies*, is the most incommodious Harbour they have, being so shallow, that ordinary Ships cannot come up to it without the Advantage of Tides, nor great ones without unlading. The

Entrance of the *Texel*, and the Passage over the *Zuyder-Sea*, is more dangerous than a Voyage thence to *Spain*, lying all in blind and narrow Channels: Upon which Sir *William* makes this Remark, That 'tis not an Haven which draws Trade, but Trade that fills a Haven, and brings it in Vogue; nor has *Holland*, says he, grown rich by any Native Commodities, but by Force of Industry; by the Improvement and Manufacture of all Foreign Growths; by being the general Magazine of *Europe*, and furnishing all Parts with whatever they want; and by their Seamen's being the common Carriers of the World.

Since the Ground of their Trade cannot be deduc'd from Havens or Native Commodities, Sir *William* alleges the true Original and Ground of it to have been the crowding of such vast Multitudes of People into so small a Compass of Land, occasioned, 1. By the Civil Wars, that were so fatal to most of their Neighbours some Time before that Republick was founded, as well as since. 2. By the Persecutions in *Germany* under *Charles V. &c.* in *France* under *Henry II. &c.* in *England* under *Queen Mary, &c.* He supposes the Reasons why those People chose rather to fix in *Holland* than in many better Countries, seems to have been, 1. The great Strength of their Towns, which, by their Situation, are capable of putting a Stop to the Approach of an Enemy by the opening of their Sluces; which natural Strength has been as much improv'd at *Amsterdam*, as could possibly be done by Money and Art. 2. The Constitution of their Government, by which neither the States General nor the Prince could invade any Man's Person or Property within their Cities; nor was it to be fear'd that the Senates of the Towns would commit any such Violence, having no Soldiers in their Pay, the Burgers only being employ'd in Defence of the Towns, and the Execution of all Civil Justice. These Circumstances, he says, gave so great a Credit to the Bank of *Amsterdam*, that it invited People to come hither merely for the Sake of securing their Money in this Bank, which they knew not how to do at home: And many others remitted their Money hither, to provide for a Retreat against a Storm, because it could be easily drawn from hence

to any Part of the World. 3. The general Liberty they gave in Point of Conscience, 4. Because they made it always the great Principle of their State, which runs through all their Provinces and Cities even with Emulation, to make their Country the common Refuge of all miserable Men, from whose Protection hardly any Alliance, Treaties, or Interest, have ever been able to remove them. And Parsimony being honourable here, those who are brought low by Misfortune, may live as sparingly at home as they please; and, without any great Charge, make as good an Appearance abroad as their chief Ministers and richest Merchants. 5. The Reputation acquir'd by their Government for its steady and wise Conduct, as well as for the Success in Arms and Treaties; so that People thought themselves safe there from foreign Invasions and civil Commotions. 6. The great Beauty their Country is arriv'd at by Improvements of Industry, in Spight of Nature, which draws a great many People thither on purpose to see them.

The United Provinces being thus crowded with People, they were forc'd to Industry and Labour, or else to Want. Those that were vigorous, fell to Labour; and such as were not, endeavour'd to supply that Defect by Inventions or Ingenuity; and Land growing dear, because of the Multitude of the People, and Smallness of the Country, they were forc'd to apply themselves chiefly to Trade by Sea.

Sir William mentions some other Circumstances that have likewise advanc'd the Trade of that Country: 1. The low Interest for Money, which makes People venture it in Trade, or in any Projects by which Money might be gain'd, such as cutting Canals, making Bridges and Cawseys, levelling Downs, and dreining Marshes. 2. The Use of their Bank, which secures Money, makes all Payments easy, and their Trade quick. 3. A publick Register for Sale of Lands, which makes all Purchasers safe. 4. The Severity of Justice against all Thefts, Cheats, Counterfeits of Publick Bills, which is Capital amongst them; and against all common Beggars, who, if able to work, are put into Work-houses; and if not, into Hospitals. 5. The good Convoys for their Merchant-Ships. 6. The

Lowness of their Customs, and easiness of paying them; which, with the Freedom of their Ports, invites People to bring their Commodities hither, not only as to a Market, but as a Magazine, where they lodge them in case one Market fail, till another offers. 7. Their Order and Exactness in managing their Trade, which brings their Commodities into Credit abroad. This was first introduc'd by severe Laws and Penalties, but is now become habitual. Thus they had above 30 several Plaçaets about the Manner of Curing, Pickling, and Barrelling of Herring; and all Arms made at Utrecht are forfeited if sold without a Mark, or mark'd without Tryal. 8. The Concern which the chief Persons in the Government have in Trade by themselves or their Friends, which makes the Traders sure of all the Favour that the Government can give them. 9. The Custom of every Town's affecting some particular Commerce or Staple, and valuing themselves upon it, so as to improve it to the greatest Height; as *Flushing* by that of the *West-Indies*; *Middleburg* of *French Wines*; *Tirover* by the *Scots Staple*; *Dort* by the *English Staple*, and *Rhenish Wines*; *Rotterdam* by the *English* and *Scots Trade* at large, and by *French Wines*; *Leyden* by the Manufacture of all sorts of Stuffs, Silk, Hair, Gold and Silver; *Haarlem* by Linen, mix'd Stuffs and Flow'ers; *Delft* by Beer and *Dutch Porcelain*; *Surdam* by building Ships; *Exchuyzen* and *Manlandsluyt* by Herring-Fishing; *Friesland* by the *Greenland Trade*; and *Amsterdam* by that of the *East-Indies*, *Spain*, and the *Streights*. 10. The great Application of the whole Provinces to the Fishing-Trade upon the Coasts of *Great Britain*, which employs an incredible Number of Ships and Seamen, and supplies most of the South of *Europe* with a rich and necessary Commodity. 11. The mighty Advance they have made towards engrossing the whole Commerce of the *East-Indies*, by their Successes against the *Portuguese* and the *Natives*, by which they have forc'd them to Treaties of Commerce exclusive of all other Nations, and have built Forts upon the Passes, which command the Entrances into the Traffick of such Places: But more of this Trade when we come to give an Account of their *East-India Company*. 12. The Situation of their

Country extended upon the Sea, divided by two such Rivers as the *Rhine* and the *Meuse*, with the Vicinity of the *Emt*, *Weser*, and *Elbe*, which gives them an easy Opportunity of conveying their Goods into the Continent; as their many Canals at home makes Commerce easy betwixt one Town and another.

Sir William adds, That as the only and certain Scale of Riches arising from Trade in a Nation, is the Proportion of what is exported for the Consumption of others, to what is imported for their own. Never any Country traded so much, and consumed so little, as the *Dutch*. They buy infinitely, but to sell again, either upon improving the Commodity, or at a better Market. They are the great Masters of the *Indian* Spices, and of the *Persian* Silks, but wear plain Woollen, and feed upon their own Fish and Roots. They sell the finest of their own Cloth to *France*, and buy coarse out of *England* for their own Wear; and so of other Commodities. Their great Foreign Consumption is in *French* Wine and Brandy; but what they spend in Wine, they save in Corn to make other Drinks, which is brought from Foreign Parts. Thus it happens, that much going constantly out, either in Commodities or in the Labour of Seafaring-Men, and little coming in to be consumed at home, the rest returns in Coin, and fills the Country to that degree, that more Silver is seen in *Holland* among the common Hands and Purfes, than Brass either in *Spain* or in *France*; tho' the one be so rich in the best Native Commodities, and the other drains all the Treasuries of the *West-Indies*.

Sir William observes however, That Trade seem'd to be declining among them, for which he assign'd the following Causes: 1. The general Application that many other Nations had made to it, especially after the Peace of *Munster*. 2. The great Import of *East-India* Commodities by their *East-India* Company, which lessens the Rates of 'em, while the Charge of the Company is increased by War, Forts, Castles, Garrisons, Ships of War, &c. 3. The great Cheapness of Corn that had happen'd for many Years, which they us'd to purchase in the North with their Spices. And the last Cause he mentions, was the Increase of

Luxury among them, and particularly in the Extent of the new Town of *Amsterdam*, and the Sumptuousness of its Buildings, which had diverted a great deal of Money that had formerly been employ'd in Trade.

The 4th Volume of *Pitt's Atlas* gives this further Account of their Trade: About *Midsummer*, they begin to fish Herring near their own Coasts, where they are but few, and lean, the Seas there not being reckon'd very agreeable to them. The best Season for taking them is from the middle of *August* to *November*, when they are caught in greatest Plenty from *Scarborough* to the Mouth of the *Thames*. After this, the first tempestuous Weather hurries them into the middle of the *British* Seas, where they continue till about *Christmas*, and then return beyond *Scotland* and *Ireland* to the Northern Ocean, where they continue till *June*.

Guicciardin says, they are found no where but in the *British* and *North* Seas; and that they breed in the former, where they arrive earlier or later, according as the Winter comes on in the North Seas. The *Dutch*, to prevent Frauds to the Fishing Society by particular Persons, have made an Order, That they shall not begin to fish till the 24th of *June*; and they suffer no Man to sell any till they have been salted 10 Days at least. They have also Searchers in every Fishing-Town, to see that their Pickling-Barrels be tight, and their Salt good; and to take Care that their Herring be salted anew as soon as they are brought home, in some publick Place, to prevent all Fraud. They have also Packers who attend the Searchers, and throw out all such Herring as begin to decay: And that they may preserve the Credit of the Herring-Trade to themselves, they allow no Foreigners to take the like Care of their Fish in their Ports, but oblige them to carry them out as they brought them in. The Art of Curing Herrings was first found out by *Wm. Buckold*, a Native of *Bierfleet* in *Flanders*, where *Charles V.* erected a Monument for him. Sir *J. Burrows*, Garter King at Arms, in his Book, called, *The Sovereignty of the Seas*, publish'd in 1633, says, 1. That in the *British* Seas, at all Times of the Year, there may be taken Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, and other Sorts of good Fish: That not long before he wrote, in one Day, near *Minnegat* on the Coast

Coast of *Devonshire*, there were taken 500 Tun of Fish. On another Day, there were taken to the Value of 3000 *l.* And near *St. Ives* in *Cornwall*, 20 Lasts of Herring were taken at one Draught. 2. That 10000 Foreign Ships, 1400 of which belong'd to *Embsen* in *East-Friesland*, were maintain'd by this Trade alone. 3. That the *Hollanders* employ 8000 Fishing-Vessels on our Coasts, by which they maintain 15000 Mariners by Sea, and treble the Number of People by Land in Trades that relate to the Fishery. 4. That this Trade occasions Annually the building of 1000 Ships, by which they make Returns of the best Commodities of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *America*, while this Trade is neglected by the *Britains*, for whom Providence seems chiefly to intend it. 5. That by Computation, the *Dutch* have made 5 Millions in a Year by fishing of Herrings; the Customs of which, and the 10th Fish brought into their Treasury, make 800000 *l.* Sterling in a Year. The Curious may see more concerning the *Dutch* Fishing-Trade in a little Piece, Entitl'd, *John Keynor's Observations upon it*, about the Year 1601, which was Reprinted at *London* by the Order of the Lord Mayor, when a Fishing Company was erected here, after *K. Charles II.*'s Restoration, in which the *D.* of *York* and other great Persons were concern'd, tho' it came to nothing, because of Mismanagement: But that Author demonstrates in short, That the *Dutch* and others raise more Wealth out of our Seas in one Year, than the *K.* of *Spain* had from the *Indies* in four; That there were 20000 Ships, and 400000 People, employ'd by their Fishing-Trade; and his Computation of the Advantage which the *Dutch* make by it, is as high as that of *Sir J. Burrows*. But that which puts the vast Advantage of this Trade beyond all Dispute, is, the Proclamation of the States of 1624, where they call their Fishing-Trade the *Golden Mine* of their Provinces.

They had a *West-India* Company form'd much after the Manner of that of the *East-Indies*; but 'tis very much decayed, partly by Mismanagement, and partly by their Naval Wars formerly with *England*; for which we refer the Curious to the 4th Vol. of *Pitt's Atlas*. We cannot insist on their particular Trade of Export and Import; but 'tis

very considerable with most Trading Nations of the World.

Blau's Atlas adds, That the Quantity of Raw Silk brought by their *East-India* Company out of *Persia* is almost incredible, it being reported, that there's no fewer than 12000 People employ'd in separating and winding the same up into Bottoms, of which they make several Sorts of Silk Stuffs, Ribbons, Scarfs, &c. They have invented a Mill for the more expeditious working of Scarfs; but the States forbade the Use of it, except in some Sorts of Ribbons, because it hinder'd the employing of their Poor. They print vast Numbers of Books, of which they make great Profit; on which Account, the States are not very rigorous in putting their Laws for regulating the Press in Execution; though none ought to print any thing without a Licence from the respective States of the Provinces where they have Presses. There's greater Choice of Astronomical, Geometrical, and other Mathematical Instruments, in the United Provinces, than any where else in the World. They have also considerable Manufactures of Woollen Cloth, and exceed most other Nations in Dying, as they do in Painting. They are expert at making Musical Instruments, especially Organs, and very much affect Chimes of Bells. Their Bell-Founders, Letter-Founders, Jewellers, Gravers, Carvers, and Potters, are very ingenious in their several Arts. They are chiefly defective in Materials for a Trade to *Turkey*, such as fine Cloth, Lead, Tin, &c. Their Merchants, he says, observe this general Rule, to buy Commodities where they are made and sold cheapest, and vend 'em where they are bought dearest: Nor do they think it below them to sell by Retail, and accustom their Wives and Daughters to Merchandizing and Accounts, not only in their Shops, but to sail from City to City, to manage their Trade.

Pitt's Atlas gives this further Account of their Customs and Dispositions: They eat less Flesh than other Nations, and most of that salt; and their fresh Meat is generally dress'd in Towns by common Cooks, of whom they have many; and they are observ'd very much to affect stew'd Meat. The Magistrates take great Care to prevent the selling of any bad Meat, and they keep

distinct Markets for the Offal. They kill their Beef in Winter, and salt or smoke it for the Summer; when they eat it with Butter and Sallet, and spread their Hung-Beef in Slices upon Bread and Butter. The First Dish at Entertainments is usually a Sallet, of which they eat great Quantities. Boil'd Spinage minc'd, butter'd and mix'd with Currants, is a common Dish. Milk is the cheapest of all their Provisions. Their strong Beer, which they call thick Beer, is above Threepence the *English* Quart. Meat and Drink are generally dear; which is ascrib'd to their abounding with Money, and the Number of their Imports: So that their Day-workers and Labourers could hardly live, were not their Wages advanc'd in Proportion.

Their Land is commonly sold at 30 or 40 Years Purchase, and Houses let very dear, which, with the Lowness of Interest, puts them upon a Necessity of promoting Industry and Trade.

They have Associations in their Towns, which are divided into several Neighbourhoods, each of which have a Master, Treasurer, and Counsellors, whose Business is to make up Controversies among their Neighbours, and prevent Law Suits. These Societies pay to the Treasurer certain Fines, for not waiting duly upon a Corps to the Grave when invited, for every House they buy; and they are also paid certain Sums by the Heirs and Kindred of Persons who die, according to their Quality, Age, or Sex; and when these Fines amount to a Sum, they are spent in a Feast by the Society, after reading their Laws, which are calculated to prevent Disputes about Religion, and all other Occasions of Quarrel. When the Master, Treasurer, and Councillors are sate, the rest take their Places by Lots, and in the Evening they wait upon the Master to his House, where they are entertain'd with Liquor.

In some of their Towns, they chuse Commissaries from among their chief Burgers to take Care of Matrimonial Causes. They take the Names of the Persons to be married, with a Certificate of the Consent of the Parents or Guardians, which they deliver to the publick Preacher, who publishes the Banes 3 Times. The Papists, Remonstrants, and Anabaptists, are allow'd

to have Banes proclaim'd before the Town-Hall; where they are afterwards married in their own Way, in the Presence of two Magistrates, and sometimes in their own private Meetings. 'Tis look'd upon as a horrible Crime for a Man or Wife to beat one another. If a Man do it, says the *Aldor*, he must give the Neighbourhood a Gammon of Bacon, and if the Woman do it, she must give two. They are noted for being too indulgent to their Children; for which they are frequently punished by their Ingratitude and Rebellion; and this occasions the Children frequently, either to be sent to the *Indies*, or go thither of their own Accord.

The Times for their Burials are limited to a certain Hour, according to the different Way of the Places: But their Customs about Funeral Solemnities differ very much. In some Places, Men and Women are allow'd to follow the Corps together; in others, 'tis strictly forbidden. In some Parts, the Company, after the Interment, meet to feast or drink; in others, 'tis prohibited under severe Penalties; and Persons of the better Rank, instead of entertaining the Company at their own Houses, give them a Sum of Money, which they spend elsewhere. In their Towns, they have Persons on Purpose to invite People to their Burials, by printed Catalogues of their Names; and if the Corps be not carried out at the appointed Hour, the Friends of the Deceas'd must pay a considerable Fine, because Loss of Time is reckon'd equal to Loss of Money, in this trading Country; and they generally wear Mourning for their deceas'd Relations above a Year. The Papists and Lutherans bury in Consecrated Places; which the rest despise as superstitious. Those who bury in the Church, pay a great Rate for it; and the ringing of the biggest Bell, costs them usually 20 Shillings: But most of them, except the Papists, and some Lutherans, look both upon this Custom and the Charge as ridiculous.

Their Diversions are Cards and Dice; but they allow no Actions for Debts contracted by Gaming. They have particular Places, for bowling with Wooden Bowls, thro' an Iron Ring, for the Tennis, and for playing towards a fix'd Pale, with a Club and a Wooden Ball; and in the Winter, they

they divert themselves upon the Ice with their Skates, or by banding a Ball with a Wooden or Leaden Club, till they bring it to the determin'd Goal. They use Dancings at Weddings, and on some other Occasions, and have Comedies and other publick Shews, where, at the same time they pay Money to the Players, they pay a Tax to the States for the Use of the Poor, &c.

Their Houses are generally cleanly and neat, their Glas painted, and their Floors strow'd with Sand; and they are generally so nice, as to let none come into their Rooms without first cleaning their Shoes, or putting on Slippers; and those of the better Sort, affect to have their Furniture splendid and rich. In Publick Houses, their Beds are generally like Cabbins, short and narrow; yet they generally exact 10 d. or 12 d. for every Night. There are few Thatch'd Houses in these Provinces, and most of 'em have Gutters or Pipes to convey the Rain Water from the Roof into Cisterns, where 'tis kept for Family Uses.

Their East-India Company.

THE *Atlas Historique* gives us the following Account of it: The Dutch finding that separate Companies were not able to defend themselves against Spain, they form'd an East-India Company; towards the Capital Stock of which,

	Florins.
<i>Amsterdam</i> contributed	3674915
<i>Zealand</i> ,	1333882
<i>Delft</i> ,	470000
<i>Rotterdam</i> ,	177400
<i>Horn</i> ,	266868
<i>Enchuyfen</i> ,	536775
In all,	6459840

These 6 having advanc'd this Money, they settl'd a Chamber in each of the Towns, (that of *Zealand* being in *Middleburg*) from whence they chuse the 17 Deputies who direct the Affairs of the Company. They meet 4 times a Year successively at

Amsterdam for the Affairs of the Company, and twice at *Middleburg* alternatively, but not at the other Towns. Those Deputies are the Sovereigns of this Illustrious Company, but under the Authority of the States General. The *Atlas* says, they have had such Success, that they may well be esteem'd the finest and greatest Company in the World. That from the Time they were founded in 1602, to 1608, they augmented their Capital to 30000000; and since their Establishment, they have paid above 15 times the Capital to those concern'd; so that every Hundred Florins Stock is now worth above 600. They maintain in the *Indies* 15000 regular Troops, have 160 Vessels at Sea; and in the different Countries they possess, they are able to raise 120000 Men.

The 17 Directors are chosen as follows; 8 by the Chamber of *Amsterdam*, 4 by that of *Zealand*; *Delft*, *Rotterdam*, *Horn*, and *Enchuyfen*, one each; and the *Maes*, *Middleburg*, and *North-Holland*, chuse one by Turns.

These 17 Directors govern the Company, and represent the Sovereignty of the whole Body. By Plurality of Voices, they regulate all Affairs of Consequence, as the making of Counsellors, Captains, Lieutenants, the Equipping of Ships, the Sale of the Goods, the Division of the Profits; and all the particular Chambers must conform themselves to their Orders. They likewise appoint the Time for the Sale of the Goods, one half of which is sold in the Chamber of *Amsterdam*, a 4th in that of *Middleburg*, and a 16th in each of the other 4 Chambers, at the Time appointed, to the highest Bidder. But besides those 17 Directors, each of the Chambers have more belonging to the same Body. Thus *Amsterdam* has 10 more, besides the 8 sent to the Sovereign Court; and *Haerlem*, *Leyden*, *Utrecht*, *Dart*, and *Tergoe*, have each of 'em one there; as have the Provinces of *Guelderland* and *Friesland*. *Zealand* likewise, besides their 4 Directors, has 8 or 10 more from other Towns of the Province. All these Deputies are to give their Advice in their respective Chambers for the Good and Advantage of the Company; and when any of the Deputies die, the Towns to which they belong name three others in their stead, out of which

Q q q q q 2

the

the Magistrates chuse one. This Company meets twice a Week, and change their President each Month; so that every one presides in his Turn. There are two Advocates belonging to the Company, who make their Report of what is resolv'd on to the *Indies*: Upon which, the Company there form their Resolutions, and issue their Orders. There are 8 Deputies for the Affairs of the Marine, War, and Building of Ships; 4 to inspect their Magazines, and the Goods that are sent to and come from the *Indies*; 4 who take Care of the Money which the Company pays and receives; and the rest take Care of the Accounts, and other Affairs relating to Order and Justice, which is done to the meanest Mariner, as well as to the Officers.

They have also a Sovereign Company at *Batavia* in the *East-Indies*, but it depends on that in *Holland*; yet they have Power to declare War and make Peace with the Kings and Princes of the *Indies*, as the Sovereign Council thinks meet, which is composed of a General, who maintains his Dignity with great Lustre; of a Director-General, and 6 ordinary Counsellors, and sometimes of 2 or 4 extraordinary Counsellors, as the 17 Directors think meet. They have also a Court of Justice, called the Supreme Council or Parliament, composed of a President, a Vice-President, and 12 Counsellors. They determine all Affairs Civil and Criminal, and have a Power to condemn the General to Death if he be found guilty of Treason. They have also a Council in the City, composed of a Bayliff and Eschevins, in the same Manner almost as in *Holland*; and they have a Presidial Council for determining small Suits under 300 Florins. The General has his Office for 3 Years; but is often continued longer, if the Company think it for their Advantage. He has two Votes in the Council, and never goes abroad, nor gives Audience to *Indian* Ambassadors, without a Troop of Horse, and a Company of Foot Guards. The 2d Person is the Major-General, who commands all the Troops under the General. The 3d is the Director-General, who keeps the Keys of all the Company's Magazines, and is obliged to give an Account of 'em. All those Offices are conferred by the Sovereign Council of

State, which the Company in *Holland* approves for most part; but sometimes change them on Occasion.

The General Governments of the Company in the *East-Indies* are on the Coast of *Coromandel*, the Islands of *Amboina*, *Banda*, *Ternate*, *Ceylan*, and the Peninsula of *Malacca*.

The Particular Governments are, the Cape of Good Hope, the Isle of *Macassar*, at *Padam*, the Isle of *Timore*, at *Andragery*, and at *Cochin*, &c.

The Particular Factories of the Company in several Places of the *Indies* are, at *Ispahan*, *Gaumaron*, *Surate*, *Agra*, *Amadabat*, *Bengal*, *Palimbang*, *Bamby*, *Bangka*, *Siam*, *Ligar*, *Tonquin*, and at *Japan*, &c. *New Amsterdam*, and *New Holland*.

Their Forces and Revenues.

SIR W. Temple says, the Force of these Provinces is not to be measured by the Number or Dispositions of their Subjects, but the Strength of their Shipping, and standing Troops, which they maintain in Time of Peace; by the Numbers of both they are able to furnish in Time of War; by their constant Revenue to maintain the former; and by the Temporary Charge, they have been able to supply for the latter.

Their ordinary Revenues consist either in what is levied from the conquer'd Towns, and Countries of *Brabant*, *Flanders*, or the *Rhine*, and the ordinary Funds provided by the 7 Provinces every Year, according to their Proportions; and this Revenue, he says, is about 21 Millions of Guilders per Annum, which is 1890000 *l.* Sterling. The chief Funds out of which this is raised, is the Excise and Customs. The first is so great in general, that he has heard it observ'd at *Amsterdam*, that in a Tavern, a certain Dish of Fish, eaten with the usual Sauce, has paid above 30 several Excises; but their Customs are low and easy, and applied particularly to the Admiralty. By this Revenue they pay all their Troops, publick Officers, Ministers abroad, and the Interest of Money owing by the States, which in his Time was about 13000000 Guilders.

Their

Their standing Forces in 1670, during a general Peace, were 26200 Men, being 10 Regiments of Horse, and 19 of Foot, which cost them Annually 6119000 Guilders. In Time of Peace, they usually employ betwixt 30 or 40 Men of War in Convoys, besides some ready in their Harbours on all Occasions; which, with the building of Ships of War, costs them about 6000000 Guilders *per Annum*. He adds, that besides what was then owing by the States General, the Commons of Holland ow'd 65000000 Guilders, for which they paid Interest at 4 *per Cent.* which is paid so exactly, both Principal and Interest, that no Man ever demands it twice; so that 'tis reckon'd a Favour for any one to have their Money admitted, and they generally receive it back with Grief, because they know not where to dispose it with so much Safety and Ease; so that the common Revenue of particular Men lies much in the Cantores of the States General, or the particular Provinces, which are the Registers of their publick Debts.

The Imposts and Excises upon Houses and Lands are collected by the Magistrates of the several Places, who pay them into the Receivers. The Excise on Consumption is farm'd out to the highest Bidders for 3, 6 Months, or a Year. The Collection, Receipt, and Payment of all publick Money, is made without Fee to Officers who have certain Salaries from the State, which they dare not increase by private Practices or Extortions; so that whoever has a Bill for any publick Debt, it is as good as ready Money, being paid at Demand, without Charge or Trouble, and passes as readily in Payments, as the best Bills of Exchange.

Their extraordinary Revenue in case of a War, or other extraordinary Occasions, is sometimes rais'd by the Hundredth Part of the Estates of the People, Poll, or Chimney-Money, and sometimes by Imposts on every Man that travels in their common Roads in Coach, Waggon, or Horseback, and in their Canals or Rivers by Boats. By this Means, during the War with England in 1665, they rais'd 42000000; and when the Bishop of Munster invaded them in 1666, they had above 60000 Land-men, and 100 Ships of War at Sea. And in Oliver's Time,

about 1652, they prepared 150 Men of War to fight the *English*, as we are informed by *The History of the United Provinces*: And besides what they are able to do at home, their Company in the *East Indies* is capable of putting 50 Men of War to Sea, and to raise at least 30000 Men by Land, says Sir *W. Temple*; their Trade there being so large, that the same Gentleman says, he has known 22 Ships arrive from thence in one Year. On this Occasion Sir *Wm.* observes, That the Greatness of the Dutch at that Time seems justly to have rais'd the Glory of our Nation, which, during the Years 1665 and 1666, maintain'd a War not only against this powerful State, but against France and Denmark, in Conjunction with 'em; and all at a Time when England struggled at home with the calamitous Effects of a raging Plague, that in 3 Months of the first Year swept away incredible Numbers of People; and of a prodigious Fire, that in 3 Days of the 2d laid in Ashes that ancient and famous City of London, the Heart and Center of our Commerce and Riches, consuming the greatest Part of its Buildings, and an immense Proportion of its Wealth. Yet in the midst of these fatal Accidents, those two Summers were renown'd for 3 Battles of the mightiest Fleets that ever met upon the Ocean, whereof two were determin'd by entire and unquestion'd Victories, and Pursuit of our Enemies into their very Havens; the 3d having begun by the unfortunate Divisions of our Fleet, with the Odds of 90 of their Ships against 50 of ours; and in spite of such Disadvantages, having been continued or renewed for 3 Days together, wherein we were every Morning the Aggressors, ended at last by the equal and mutual Weakness and Weariness of both Sides, the Maims of Ships and Tackling, with Want of Powder and Ammunition; having left undecided the greatest Action that perhaps is to be met with in Story. And in this Battle *M. de Wit* confest to Sir *William*; that we gained more Honour to our Nation, and to the invincible Courage of our Seamen, than by the other two Victories: That he was sure their Men could never have been brought on the two following Days, after the Disadvantages of the first; and he believed no other Nation was capable of it but ours.

The Division of the Seventeen Provinces of the Netherlands. By M. Sanson, Geographer to the French King.

The Seventeen Provinces of the NETHERLANDS, are	The Dut- chies of { Brabant Limburg Luxemburg Guelderland Flanders Arras Haynault Namur Holland Zealand Zurphen. The Coun- ties of { The Mar- quisate of the Holy Empire { Antwerp The Lord- ships of { Malines Utrecht Over-Yssel Groningen Westfriesland		Towns. Spanish Brabant still. { Walheim Wavre Genap Vueren Affiche Cantecroy Perwys Sombref Tilly Reuzer Heuerle Gaesbeck Lew Gesta Vi- rompene Lammen Mastricht Boisleduc or the Bosch Breda Bergenop- zoom Grave Lillo Meghem Helmont Dutch Bra- bant { Eynhoven Ravenstein Steenbergen Sevenbergen Cuyck Oirschot Oosterwick Eersel Oudenbos Rosendal Limburg Kerpen Lomersum Oopen Balen Walhorn Montzen Herne Spremont Argenteau Norwagne Dutch
In the NE- THER- LANDS are contained the	Archbisho- prick of— { Bishoprick { of — { Cambray Liege		
	Towns. { Brussels Louvain Areschot Sichem Tilmont Dieft Halem Leuwe Landen Hannuye Judoigne Gemblours Neville Vilverden Liere Herentals Santvliet Hochstrate Turnhout Arendonck Scherpen- hewel Moll.		
The Dutchy of BRABANT is divided into	Spanish Brabant {	The Dutchy of LIMBURG is divided into	Spanish Limburg {

The NETHERLANDS.

857

The Dutchy of LUXEMBURG is divided into		The Dutchy of GUELDERLAND is divided into	
Towns.		Towns.	
Dutch Limburg	Wyck	Betuwe	Nimmegen
	Dalem		Bommel
	Fauquemont		Tiel
	Rolduc		Buren
Spanish Luxemburg	Schierlach	Veluwe	Culenburg
	Honsbrouck		Linden
	Bastogne		Batenburg
	Arlon		Fort de Skenk or Schenken-Schans
French Luxemburg	Chiny	Guelder	Arnhem
	Marche		Harderwick
	Roche		Elburg
	Rechesfort		Hattem
The Dutchy of LUXEMBURG is divided into	Durbuy	Zutphen	Wageningen
	Salme		Iseloort
	S. Wyt		Rosendaal
	Homfalise		Ruremonde
Spanish Luxemburg	Hoefingen	Guelder	Guelder
	Cleroux		Venlo
	Dickry		Wachten-donck
	Viane		Stralem
French Luxemburg	Bidburg	Zutphen	Erkelens
	Dudelstorf		Stephanwert
	Keyel		Montfort
	Echter		Kessel
The Dutchy of LUXEMBURG is divided into	Wasserbillich	Spanish Flanders	Brey
	Greven-Macheren		Zutphen
	Remich		Ghent
	Virton		Bruges
French Luxemburg	Neufchâtel	Dutch Flanders	Courtray
	Herbemont		Oudenarde
	Orchimont		Alost
	Villance		Osend
The Dutchy of LUXEMBURG is divided into	Bohemal	Spanish Flanders	Damme
	Hotton		Dixmuyde
	Esch		Deynse
	Brandenburg		Ninove
French Luxemburg	Mersche	Dutch Flanders	Gramont
	La Rochette		Rupelmonde
	Linsire		L'Escluse or Sluys
	Soleurre		Hulst
The Dutchy of LUXEMBURG is divided into	Bettingen	French Flanders	Amel
	Breitbach		Ardenburgh
	Luxemburg		Bieruliet
	Thionville		Tfendick
French Luxemburg	Montmady	Dutch Flanders	Sas-van-Ghent
	Juix		Oosterburgh
	Damvillers		Cassandria
	Marville		Philippine
The Dutchy of LUXEMBURG is divided into	La Ferte	French Flanders	Terneuse
	Konings-Macheren		Middleburg
	Rodembach		Bouchoute
	Esche		Doel

French

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

ARWOT

French FLAN-
DERS, where
are

Towards
the Sea

The County of ARRAS,
where are

Towns.

Lille, now
in the
Hands of
the Allies.

Tournay

Douay

Cassel

Ypres

Bailleul

Roulers

Armentières

La Bassée

L'Escluse

Orchies

S. Amand

Lannoy

Warneton

Commines

Warwick

Menin, in
the Hands
of the Al-
lies.

Estayre

Poperingue

Dunkirk

Gravelin

Berg S. Wi-

nock

Furnes

Bourbourg

Mardick

Arras

St. Omers

Ayre

Bethune

Hesdin

Lens

Bapaumes

S. Venant

St. Pol

Lillers

Pernes

Lubourg

Renty

Blangis

Fressin

Douriers

La Broye

Auxyle Chau

Avesnes le

Comte

Hucquoy

Pas

Oisy

The County of ARRAS
still.

The County of
HAYNAULT
is divided into

The County of NAMUR

The County of HOL-
LAND is divided
into South Holland,
and North Holland.

SOUTH HOLLAND

Towns.

Arleux

Riquebourg

La Gorgue

Espincy

Ath

Binche

Fontaine

L'Esque

Ligne

Beaumont

Le Roeulx

Soignies

Braine le

Comte

Enghien

Halle

Lefines

Chievres

S. Ghislain

Mons

Valenciennes

Bavay

Maubenge

Condé

Bouchain

Pecquencour

Landrechies

Le Quesnoy

Avesnes

Mariembourg

Philippeville

Namur

Charleroy

Bouvignes

Charlemont

Vaston

Dort

Haerlem

Delft

Leyden

Amsterdam

Goude

Rotterdam

Gorcum

Schiedam

Schoonhoven

S. Grave-

sand

S. Gertruy-

denberg

Huesden

Worcum

Vianen

Weerden

Oudewater

Tilstein

The

South Holland still.

Towns.

Afperen
Hockelem
Leerdam
Naerden
Wesep
Muyden
Klundert
Willemſtat
Hague
Katwyck-op-
Zee
Nortwyck

Voorn

Gorée

Over-Flac-
kée

Putten

Beyerland

Korndyck

Iſelmonde

Brill

Goeree

Somerdick

Geeruliet

Beyerland

Korndyck

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Iſelmonde

Towns.

To'en
S. Martens-
dyck

The Isle of Tolen

The Isle of North-
Beveland

The Isle of Wolferf-
dyck

Beveland

Sabbinge

Zutphen

Doesburg

Grol

Borckelo

Lochem

Dotekum

Brevoord

Lichtenforde

S. Heerenberg

Anholt

Werdt

Burch

Baer

Eybergen

The County of ZUTPHEN

The Marquisate
of the HOLY
EMPIRE

ANTWERP. *Antwerp*

The Lordship of MALINES.

Malines

Utrecht

Amersfort

Montfort

Wyck te Du-

erſtede

Rhenen

Breukelen

Kronenburg

Abcoude

Kamrick

Cockenge

Vreeswich

Amerongen

The Lordship of UTRECHT

Deventer

Campen

Zwol

Hasselt

Steenwyck

Bloczyl

Kuynder

Vollenhove

Swartzslyys

Gramsberg

Hardenberg

Ommen

Twentē

Sallant

The Lordship of
OVER-ISSEL
is divided into

R r r r r

The Isles of
South Hol-
land are

NORTH HOLLAND,
or Westfriesland.

The Isles of
North Hol-
land are

Texel

Eyerlandt

Vlieland

Schelling

Grind

Vieringen

Urck

Ens

Texel

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

Ofterland

The County of
ZEALAND

The Isle of Walcheren

The Isle of South-
Beveland

The Isle of Schouwen

Middleburg

Flushing

Veere

Arduyden

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

Ramckens

The NETHERLANDS.

	Towns.		Towns.
Twente	Oldenzael	Sevenvol-	Styckenborg
	Enschede		Heerenveen
	Goer		Sonega
	Diepenheim	The Isle of	Hollum
	Ottmarsum		
Drente	Denecham	The Isle of	Schiermonk-Oogh
	Coervorden		
	Meppel	The Arch-	bishoprick of CAMBRAY
	Ruynen		
	Arsen		
The Lordship of GRONINGEN	Valteschans	In the NETHERLANDS are included	Cambrai
	Holeschans		Chasteau-Cambresis
	Groningen		Crevecœur
	Delfzyl		Premont
	Dam		Liege
	Winschooten		Dinant
	Bourtang		Tongres
	Bellingwold		Huy
	Boon		Buillon
	Lange-Aker		St. Hubert
The Lordship of WESTFRIESLAND	Milwolde	The Bishoprick of LIEGE, of which the Bishop is Sovereign	Chiney
	Winschooter		Spa
	Solskamp		Franchimont
	Bourtang		Borchworm
	Liewarden		S. Tron
	Dockum		Borchloen
	Ostmershorn		Vise
	Franecker		Bylsen
	Harlinguem		Hasselt
	Sneck		Stockern
Ostergoe	Bolsward		Maseyck
	Slooten		Horn
	Staveren		Hamont
	Hindelopen		Wetz
	Worcum		Peer
	IJst		Bray
	Mackum		Herck
Westergoe			Chastellet
			Thwyn
			Fosse
			Courvin
			Fumay
			Revin

The

The GEOGRAPHY of the United Provinces.

SIR Wm. Temple observes, That *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Friesland*, and *Groningen*, lie on the Sea, and make the Strength and Greatness of this State: The other three, *Guelderland*, *Utrecht*, and *Overissel*, with the conquer'd Towns in *Brabant* and *Flanders*, serve as Outworks and Frontiers. No Man, he says, can tell what Changes have been made in the Face and Boundaries of those Provinces by the Inundations of the Seas and Rivers; but by the Description in the Roman History, the Face of their Coasts, and the Nature of their Soil, especially in *Holland*, was much as 'tis now 1600 Years ago, allowing only for the Improvements which have been made by Riches, Time, and Industry; and the Names and Course of the Rivers are much the same with what they were then. Any Changes that have happen'd since, he supposes to have been made by the Stoppages and the Rolling of the Sands upon the Mouths of the *Rhine*, the *Maes*, and the *Scheld*, which run through those Provinces into the Sea.

The Province of Holland.

Authors differ about the Origin of its Name: Some derive it from its low Situation; some from the German Word *Holt*; i. e. Wood, with which 'twas formerly cover'd. But others, with more Probability, derive it from *Holland* in *Denmark*. *Lotharius*, the 3d Son of the Emperor *Ludovicus Pius*, being oblig'd to grant this Province and *Zealand* to the *Danes* about the 9th Century, as *Conringius* says in his Book *De Finibus Germaniæ*; which is the more probable, because before that Time this Province was called *Vlaerdinga*, from *Vlaerdingen*, formerly a Town of great Note at the Mouth of the *Maes*. That Part of the Country which lies S. of the *Old Rhine*, was anciently inhabited by the *Baravi*, and after them by the *Frizons*. *Bentivoglio* observes, that 'tis cut through in so many Places by Rivers and artificial Channels, that it may be doubted whether it consists most of

Land or Water; and that they abound so in Ships, that it may be question'd whether the Number of their Ships and other Vessels be not equal to that of their Houses. Sir W. Temple says, That the Soil of the whole Province is generally flat, like the Sea in a Calm, and looks as if, after a long Contention between the Land and Water, it had at length been divided betwixt them; and that if the Number of Rivers and Canals, which lead not only to every great Town, but almost to every Village, and the innumerable Sails that course every where up and down, be duly consider'd, 'twill appear, that the People who live by Water, bear a good Proportion to those who live by Land.

The Effects of the Trade of this Province are such, that 'tis said of 'em, tho' they have no Wood of their own, they spend more than any Nation: Tho' their Fields bear little Corn, they have sometimes kept the Granary of *Europe*: Tho' they have neither Vines nor Wool, and very little Flax of their own Growth, yet there is no Place better stor'd with Wines: And they make more Cloth of both Sorts than any other Country of an equal, and than most of a larger Extent.

The Soil produces several Sorts of Fruit, and in some Places good Corn, but in small Quantities. The N. Part of the Province is Moorish, and unfit for Tillage. The other, which lies next *Brabant*, is mostly Meadows that about the End of *October* begin to be cover'd with Water; which being augmented by frequent Rains and Snows, continues all Winter; so that the Towns and Villages seem to stand in the Sea. This however makes their Ground fruitful for Pasturage, and occasions their making vast Quantities of Butter and Cheese; which, besides what they spend themselves, is reckon'd to bring them in Annually a Million of Carolins, which are about 3 s. 4 d. apiece. Besides the overflowing of the Country, the Climate it self does naturally abound in Moisture and Rain; so that 'tis difficult sometimes to distinguish the Spring, Summer, and Autumn. *Bentivoglio* says, their Winter is rather long than severe; but 'twou'd be all Fog and Mist, if it were not cleared by the Sharpness of their Frosts, which never fail

with every E. Wind for about 4 Months in the Year, and are much fiercer than in the same Latitude with us, because the Wind comes to them over a mighty dry Continent; but is moisten'd by the Vapours, or soften'd by the Warmth of the Motion of the Sea, before it reach us. This, says Sir William, is the greatest Disadvantage of Trade they receive from their Situation, tho' necessary to their Health, because their Havens are frequently shut up for two or three Months with Ice. The fierce Sharpness of these Winds makes the Changes of their Weather violent and surprizing, so as a warm faint Air turns in a Night to a sharp Frost, with the Wind coming into the N. E. and the contrary with another Change of Wind. The Spring is much shorter and less agreeable than ours, the Winter much colder, and some Part of the Summer much hotter. The extream Moisture of their Air is the Occasion of the great Neatness in their Houses, and Cleanliness in their Towns; for without that Care, their Country would not be habitable by such Crowds of People, the Air would corrupt upon every hot Season, and expose them to infectious Distempers, which they hardly escape 3 Summers together, especially about *Leyden*, where the Waters are not so easily renew'd; and therefore that City is kept the most neat and clean of all their Towns. The Moistness of their Air makes all Metals apt to rust, and Wood to grow mouldy, which they are forc'd to prevent by continual rubbing and scowring; as the Deepness of their Soil, and Wetness of their Season, obliges them to keep the Streets well pav'd, and to make long Causeways between many of their Towns, and in their Roads.

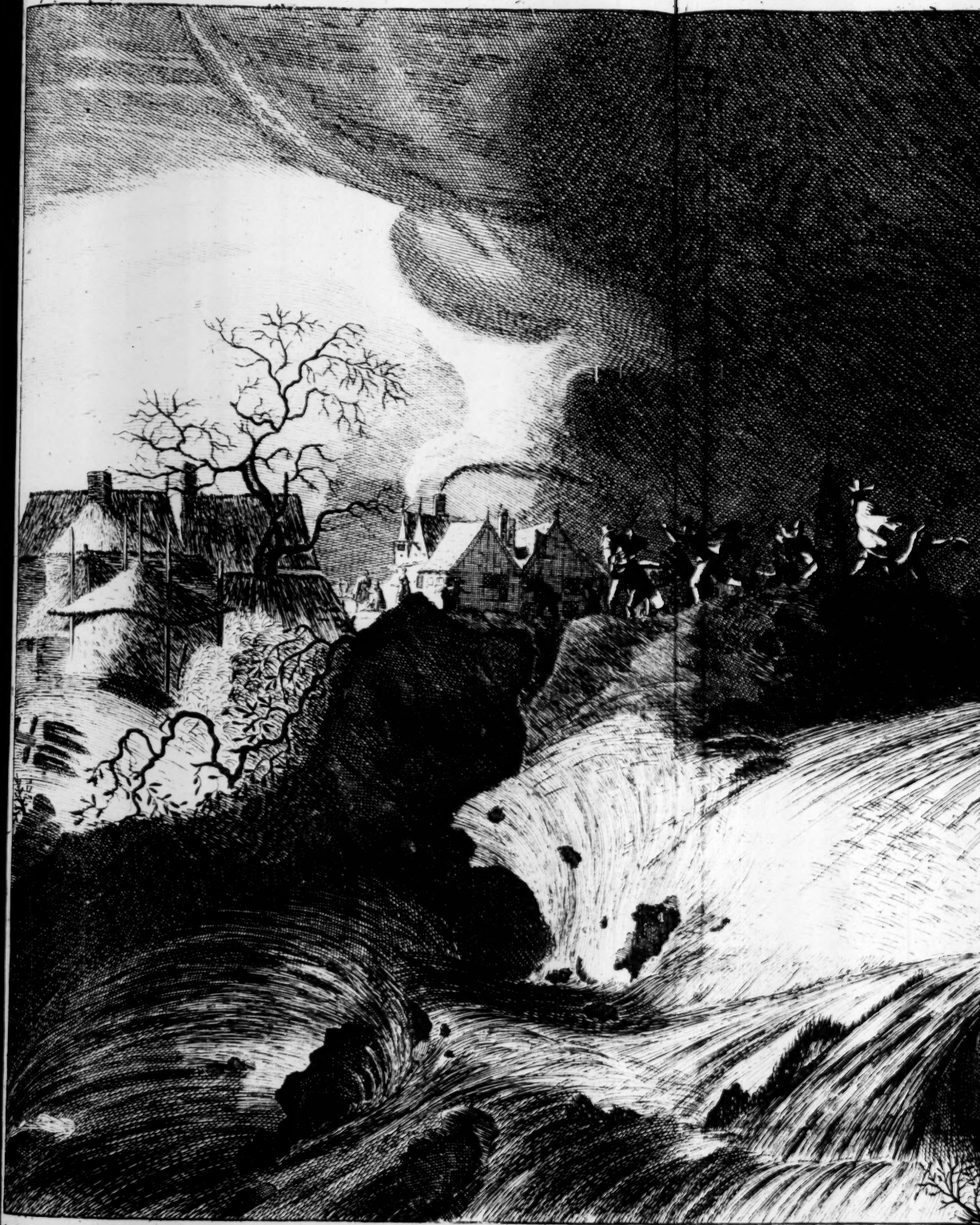
Their Inundations and Dikes, and the Causes of their High Tides.

THE Flatness of their Land exposes 'em to Danger of Inundations by the Sea, and to infinite Charge in making and repairing their Banks and Dikes, which employ Annually more Men than all the Corn of the Province of *Holland* could maintain. They have lately found the common Sea-weed to be the best Material for those

Dikes; which, fasten'd with a thin Mixture of Earth, yields a little to the Force of the Sea, and returns to its Posture when the Waves give back. Their Dikes are usually about 7 Ells high, and 17 broad at Bottom, made of the toughest Clay, fenc'd on the Land-side with Wood and Stone, and on the other with Mats of Rushes and Flags, stak'd down as high as the Tide generally rises, or with Sea-weed, as formerly mentioned, which hinders the Water from sap-ping and undermining the Body of the Dikes: But in *North-Holland*, when the Storm is very violent, they clap Sails on the outside of their Dikes, which they look upon to be the best Defence.

Guicciardin supposes, that the Height and Violence of the Tides upon their Coasts, proceed from their being stop'd in their Course from the great W. Ocean by the Interposition of *Great Britain*, which at each End of the Island swell into two vast and violent Currents; one of which coming through *St. George's Channel*, he judges to meet and clash with the other, whose Course is from the N. W. much about the Coast of *Holland*; so that when a Spring Tide, strong S. W. but especially N. W. Wind, and a considerable Land-Flood, happen together, the Coasts of the United Provinces, and several Parts of *Flanders*, are very much in Danger. The N. W. Wind makes the highest Tides upon the Coast of *Holland* and *Flanders*, and the greatest Inundations have happen'd during such Winds, the Moon being moreover in *Apogee*: Several Instances of which are brought in the *Philosophical Transactions*, N^o 64. The Reason why the N. W. Wind makes the highest Tide, is thought to be, because that Wind drives in the Flood much with an equal Force at both Ends of *Great Britain*; but the Current which comes from the N. W. is supposed to be the most impetuous of the two, because 'tis received out of a wider into a narrower Channel: Upon which Account it must needs swell higher; whereas the Channel of the other, which comes in betwixt *England* and *France*, is much enlarged by that Time it reaches the Coast of *Holland* and *Zealand*. There is another Reason given by Dr. *Wallis*, why the N. Tide must needs be the strongest; viz. the Waters of the Sea, because they cannot follow the

the



Draught or Prospect of the Dreadfull Inundation Or Breaking the Dykes in Holland Which Car



carried every thing before it. Defied the elements. It was a terrible sight.

the Earth fast enough in its diurnal Motion from W. to E. are thrown back upon the *American Shore*, which must be done with much the greatest Violence under the Equator, where the Motion of the Earth is quickest, and consequently the Sea is more deficient in accompanying its said Motion: Wherefore, if, as is also supposed on each Side of the Equator, the same Waters are returned back again in an Eddy to the S. E. and N. E. then this Return, the nearer it approaches the N. towards which the Earth's diurnal Motion is still slower and slower, must be made with the greater Violence and Rapidity.

History gives us frequent Accounts of the Sea's breaking in upon their Banks, destroying Multitudes of People and Cattle, and swallowing up large Tracts of Land, particularly on the 5th of November, 1530, when it overflowed a great Part of *Zealand*. *Strada* mentions another on *All-Saints Eve* in 1568, when the Sea swelled so high, that it broke some Banks, and overflowed others, with such a sudden and unheard of Inundation, that it cover'd some Islands of *Zealand*, great Part of the Coast of *Holland*, and almost all *Friesland*, was higher by a Foot than that which happen'd in 1530, and swallowed up 72 Villages; and in *Friesland* alone destroyed above 20000 People, whose Bodies, with those of their Cattle, their Household-Stuff, and broken Vessels, floating upon the drown'd Country, gave those that escap'd a lively Representation of *Noah's Deluge*. Many People getting up to the Tops of Trees and Rising Grounds, were in Danger of being famish'd, till they were brought off in Boats by the Care of the Magistrates. They suffer'd likewise much by an Inundation in 1655; but more by one in Nov. 1665, which drove in the Sea with such incredible Violence between the *Texel* and the *Helder*, that it carried Part of the Village of *Huyduynen* quite away, and laid all the Country between *Wiring* and *Zyp* under Water; the Dike near *Horn* was broke in two Places; the Water came to the Gates of *Medemblick*, overflowed many Villages, and of a sudden turn'd a large Tract of the Country into a continued Sea, which destroyed much People and Cattle. The Dike of *Muydenberg* was also broke down; so that all the Country round *Narden*, *Muyden*, and *Wesop*, as far as *Loren* in

Goyland, and *Balecorm* in the Province of *Utrecht*, was under Water. The Gates and Ramparts of *Nerden* were ruin'd; and that strong Rampart of Stone called the *Assel-Back*, built to repel the Waves, was hurry'd away, leaving a Hole where it stood of 36 Foot deep. In *Amsterdam*, the *Newen Dike*, with the Street upon it, and the neighbouring Market-place, was quite overflow'd. The Dike betwixt *Amsterdam* and *Haerlem* was broke in the Middle for 30 or 40 Rods; so that there was about 33 Foot Water in those Parts. There were many other Dikes had the same Fate; the Country in many Places, and particularly a great Part of *Water-Land*, was entirely swallow'd up; several Dikes in *Friesland* had Breaches made in them of 30 and 40 Rods long; so that a great Part of those Coasts seem'd to be irrecoverably lost: Yet after the ceasing of the Storm, by the incredible Industry of the People, those Dikes were repaired, and made stronger than before in the February following. The same Tempest did a great deal of Damage in *Zealand* and *Flanders*, and was observed to have much exceeded that in 1568. See the Cut of the *Inundations*.

Their Banks, especially those on the Rivers, do likewise suffer frequently by Shoals of Ice, as happen'd in 1638, when the Ice of the *Rhine* broke down the *Iffel* Dike near *Utrecht*, and laid most of *Holland* under Water: But this not having the continued Fury of the Marine Inundations, the Dike was speedily repaired, and the Waters were drain'd by the usual Help of Wind-Mills, of which they have great Numbers conveniently placed for carrying off the Winter-Rain, and Snow-Waters; which about the beginning of February, if the Frost do not hinder, are forced up by the Mills to vast Currents, and drove into particular Channels; so that the Earth becoming dry in a little Time, it begins to look green about March, when their Cattle are put out to Grass.

Besides those Dikes which are made by Art to secure them against such Inundations, Nature has afforded them several Helps, particularly 4 or 5 little Islands in the *Zuyder-Sea*, besides the *Texel*, the *Vlie*, and others on the Mouth of the said Sea on the Coast of *Friesland*, which break the first Fury of those N. Tempests: And from the *Honts-Besse* towards the upper End of *North-Holland*.

Holland, down to the *Beer* at the Mouth of the *Maes*, which is about 24 Leagues, the Violence of the Waves is curb'd by continu'd Rows of Sandy Hills; between which and the Sea, lies the finest Way in the World; and all along the Water is so shallow on the Shore, that in calm Weather a Man may go in a great Way without being put to swim. Upon this Shore many Ships are forced to run by contrary Winds, especially in Winter, when the Nights are dark and long; but when the Sea is calm, 'tis very pleasant to see the great Number of Ships under Sail on that Coast, some continually disappearing, and others immediately coming into Sight.

But as they have those Disadvantages above-mention'd by the Flatness of their Country, and the Softness of their Soil, they have this great Advantage by it, That they have cut numerous Canals, not only in this but in other Provinces, with little Trouble and Charge, which makes the Passage easy and convenient, and Carriage cheap betwixt one Town and another; and both Passengers and Goods are brought to their Set Stages at the appointed Time in their *Trekschuyts*, which are drawn by Horses, and the Passengers and Goods are secured from Rain, &c. the Boats being cover'd by a Deck above, and having Windows in the Sides to let in the Air, by which also the Passengers may see the Country as they travel. They have cut many new Canals since their Peace with *Spain* in 1648.

As the overflowing of their Country in the Winter fructifies their Soil, it gives them also the Opportunity not only of diverting themselves on the Ice, as formerly mentioned, but likewise of travelling expeditiously about Business with their Skates, by which some of 'em will make above 18 Miles an Hour, if the Ice be smooth and even; and they have likewise Sledges loaden with Goods, which the Men drive before them as they slide on their Skates; and they usually carry long Poles upon their Shoulders, to support them in case the Ice should break.

Their Soil, Beasts, Birds, Fish, Insects, &c.

IN order to the better dreining of their Ground, 'tis cut thro' with innumerable

Ditches and Channels; and the Ways thro' those Grounds are distinguish'd by Rows of Trees, which make them very pleasant. Their Pastures are mighty rich, and produce excellent Grass, mix'd with great Quantities of sweet Trefoil; so that 'tis little inferior to Oats and Barley for feeding of Cattle, which they conclude from their Hay's being much apter to take Fire than that of other Countries, if not thoroughly dry'd before it be stack'd up. By the Abundance of this choice Grass, they feed vast Herds of Cattle, and especially Cows, which give more Milk than in other Countries; one of 'em in some Parts of *Holland* giving no less than 3 great Pails in a Day. This, yields them vast Quantities of Butter and Cheese; in making and preserving of which, they excel most Countries, the Cheese of *Holland* and being thought not inferior to *Parmesan*.

The Landlords and Tenants are exceedingly careful to improve their Lands: The former obliges the latter to apply certain Portions of Ground to such and such particular Uses; not to feed above so many Cattle in such a Number of Acres; to see that the old Ditches be well scower'd, and kept open; to cut new ones where they are wanting; to let the plow'd Fields lie fallow one Year in so many, and to improve them with a sufficient Quantity of Dung: Which makes them vie with one another who shall best cultivate their Ground.

Some Years their Corn-Fields are very much infested with Field-Mice, which are of so productive a Nature, that they ingender almost as soon as brought forth. They first destroy the Roots, and afterwards carry what's left above Ground into their Holes: Nay, they pursue the Corn into the Barns; so that the Husbandmen set Pots half full of Water in the Ground to intercept and drown them. *Ubbo Emmius* says, there's also a small Insect about an Inch long, and no thicker at first than a slender Thread, which comes along with their Winter Mists and Fogs; and upon the first Approach of the warm Season, feeds upon the new-sprung Blades of Corn in the Nights and Mornings, but about Sun-rising retires again under Ground, where it consumes the Roots; but if the Heat of the Summer come early, those Insects do all perish by the End of May, otherwise they grow as big

big as a Man's little Finger; and at length, casting their Shells, change their Species, and become Volatiles. About the Beginning of the Spring, or as soon as the Trees put forth their Leaves, upon the first East Winds, they have vast Swarms of Caterpillars, which very much annoy their Corn and Fruits.

They are fond of Orchards and Gardens in most of the United Provinces; but there are fewest of them in *Holland*, because they have least waste Ground there. They are so curious in this Matter, that there's scarce any Tree, Shrub, Sort of Vine, Herb, Flower, Seed or Bulbous-Root, but what they have in their Gardens. Some Years ago they doted so extravagantly upon Flowers, especially on Tulips, that the meanest Mechanicks neglected their Business to trade in them; and some, who could ill spare it, would give 2 or 3000 Florins for the Root of a fine Flower; but finding the Profit did not answer the Pains and Expence, the ordinary Sort were soon cured of this Phrenzy.

Minerals they have none in *Holland*, and their chief Fossile is a Bituminous Earth, of which they make their Turfs. As they dig it in some Places, they find great Numbers of Trees under Ground, whose Boughs and Leaves appear so exactly, that some pretend to distinguish the Species of 'em. This is an Argument, that the Country was formerly overgrown with Wood, and those Trees are supposed to have been overturn'd by Tempests and Inundations, and in Process of Time cover'd over with Earth. In some Places they rake up Mud from the bottom of the Water, which they carry out in Boats, spread it upon the Ground as equally as they can, lay Boards upon it, tread it; and when the Water is squeez'd out, cut it in Form of Bricks, and dry it for Fuel. It is observ'd, that the Earth from whence they dig their Turf fills up again in a few Years, which affords the middling Sort a constant Fuel; the poorer in many Places making use of Cow's-Dung, which they dry up in the same Manner; but the better Sort do generally make use of Scots Coal.

They have no native Fossile Salt. In some Places they collect some small Quantities out of the Sea-Water. They are ex-

cellent at boiling and purifying what is brought to them from *France* and other Countries. They formerly gather'd Salt out of their burnt Turfs, which were supposed to be impregnated with it by the frequent Inundations of the Sea. Yet by their Industry and Trade, they have not only enough of Salt for themselves, tho' they use more of it than any Nation in *Europe*, but to supply other Countries.

The usual Grain in the United Provinces are, Summer and Winter Wheat, another resembling Barley in the Shape of the Ear, Buck-Wheat or Beach-Wheat, very much us'd by their Brewers; but the best and whitest Wheat is in *Zealand*. They have likewise Barley, Oats, Pease, Beans, and Rye, Colewort-Seed, and Rape-Seed; out of which they make Oil, Madder, Hops, and great Quantities of *French* Beans.

The Wild-Beasts in these Provinces are, some few Boars and Wolves, and such a Number of Foxes, that the States pay a Price for every one that's taken. They have Multitudes of Hares and Rabbits, which none but the Nobles have Licence to kill or take. They have but few Deer. In some Parts of *Drente*, they have a Creature of middle Nature, betwixt a Hog and a Bear. They have Multitudes of Squirrels, of which they tame great Numbers. Their Hogs are but indifferent Meat, being fed with Whey, and such other watshy Nourishment; yet they salt a great deal of Pork, which they send Annually to the *Indies*.

They have store of Horses, and have lately mended their Breed, several Villages contributing to keep a good Stallion, to which every Man of the Neighbourhood is obliged to bring his Mare. *Conringius* commends 'em for their large Size, delicate Colour, and excellent Shapes; but their Heads being thought too great and heavy, they have corrected that, by purchasing the choicest Stallions from neighbouring Countries. They have a great Trade in feeding Black Cattle, of which they purchase Annually many Thousands from *Holstein*, *East-Friesland*, &c. and fattening them in their own rich Pasture, sell them off in *October*. They have great Numbers of Sheep; but their best Mutton is in *Zealand*, where they feed upon Grass and Herbs, that abound with Salt.

Salt. In other Provinces, they feed much upon a low Shrub called Sweet-Broom, and an excellent Cheefe is made of their Milk.

They have Multitudes of Storks, which build and hatch on their Chimneys in Towns as well as Villages. They take Flight with their Young about the Beginning of *August*, and, as *Conringius* says, go to *Africk*, from whence they return Annually about the End of *February*. They have vast Numbers of Wild-Ducks from *Norway*, and the Coasts of the *Baltick*, from whence they come to feed in their Channels and Marshes about the End of Autumn, or the Beginning of Winter. They have large Flocks of Wild-Geese, Herons, which build about the Houses of their Gentry, where none are allow'd to disturb 'em, and Wild and Tame Swans, kept at the publick Charge in Moats and Ditches, with Officers to take Care of them. They have great Numbers of Partridges, Snipes, Water-Hens, Quails, Lapwings, whose Eggs they count a Dainty, Larks, Thrushes, and Pigeons, which they allow no Man to shoot. They have likewise Plenty of all the other Sorts of Domestick Fowl. About the Feast of *St. Martin*, they have particular Markets for selling Geese, when the poorest among 'em will be sure to have one for his Family; the Origine of which is ascribed to the particular Respect they paid formerly to *St. Martin Bishop of Tours*.

The Fish in and near their own Rivers are, Salmon, which abound most in the Mouth of the *Maes* and *Leck*; Pikes, Mulletts, Perches, Trouts, Shad-Fish, and abundance of Eels, many of which they salt up. In some Places, the Right of Fishing is restrain'd to the Nobles; in others 'tis free to every one, and they have Officers to keep the People within due Limits on this Head. The Fish upon their Coasts are, *Habardine*, *Haddocks*, great Numbers of *Soles*, *Rays*, *Sturgeons*, *Sea-Crabs*, *Pollards*, *Congars*, *Mackrel*, excellent *Sole-Fish*, *Smelts*, and *Herrings*; but the latter not being good, are sold very cheap to their Poor. They have Plenty of *Mufcles*, *Cockles*, *Crabs*, and other *Shell-Fish*, but no *Oysters*. Some of the latter were found in 1620 on the Coast of *Zeeland*, which

being very good, the Magistrates forbid to disturb them; but the greedy Seamen taking them by Night before they had settled, they soon removed, and have not been heard of since. They have many *Sea-Dogs* on some Part of their Coasts, which the Fishermen take thus; They disguise themselves in Beasts-Skins at such Times as those Fish come out of the Water; and dancing and playing Antick Tricks before them, draw them from the Shore, where they place Nets betwixt them and the Sea, and then throwing off their Disguise, pursue them till they are entangled and taken.

The Description of this Province agrees to most of the rest; but we shall take Notice of the particular Differences as they come in our way.

The Boundaries of this Province, including *North-Holland* or *West-Friesland*, which in all publick Acts is mentioned apart, are, the *German Ocean* on the W. the Province of *Utrecht* and *Beuwe* on the E. the *Zuyder-Sea* on the N. and *Brabant* and *Zealand* on the S. It lies between 51 Deg. 40 Min. and 53 Deg. of Lat. 23 Deg. 10 Min. and 24 Deg. 20 Min. Long. 'Tis about 80 Miles from N. to S. besides the Islands that lie in the Mouth of the *Zuyder-Sea*, and about 40 where broadest from E. to W. but in other Places scarce 25. 'Tis divided into N. and S. The N. is subdivided into *West-Friesland*, the Islands *Texel*, *Vlie*, and *Schelling*, *Waterland*, and *Kennemerland*, *Amsteland*, *Gailand*, *Rynland*, *Delfland*, and *Schieland*. *South-Holland* is subdivided into the Bailiwick of *Dort*, the Land of *Voorn*, the Islands of *Goeree* and *Overflackee*, according to modern Geographers; but according to the Archieves in their Chamber of Accounts, the Province is divided, 1. Into *North-Holland*, the Dyck-Graviat of *Rynland*, *Delfland*, *Schieland*, and the Country of *Worden*. 2. Into *South-Holland*. 3. Into *Voorn*. 4. Into *Kennemerland* and *West-Friesland*, which, according to this Division, is very improperly called *North-Holland*. The whole Province it said to contain 23 Wall'd Towns, and 400 Villages; but *M. de Fer*, in his *Methode Abregée*, reckons 32 Cities, 5 great open Towns, 407 Villages, 6 Fortresses, and 12 Islands; of which in their proper Places.

Their Ancient GOVERNMENT.

Grotius, in his Book *De Antiquitate Reipub. Batavice*, endeavours to prove the Freedom and Independency of this Province in all Ages, not excepting the Time when the Franks enlarg'd their Kingdom in those Parts. There's sufficient Ground indeed from History to say, that they were rather Allies than Subjects to the Romans; but Authors are not agreed that they preserv'd their Liberty after the Declension of the Roman Empire. The *Atlas Historique* gives us the Names and Chronology of 35 of their Counts; of the chief of whom we shall give a short History, after premising what Grotius has said of their ancient Constitution in 12 Heads: 1. If the Principality descended to a Female, she was not to marry without Consent of the States. 2. None but Natives should be Senators, Treasurers, or Prætors. 3. The States should meet when and where they pleased, without being obliged to ask Leave of the Prince. 4. That no Tax should be imposed, or any one exempted from paying them, without Consent of the States. 5. That no War, Offensive or Defensive, should be undertaken without their Approbation. 6. The Prince in his Letters should use the Dutch Language. 7. He should not coin or alter Money without Consent of the States. 8. He should not alienate any of his Dominions. 9. He should not assemble the States out of their own Country. 10. If he stood in need of Money, he should desire it of the States in Person, and levy none but what they granted. 11. Justice should be administered by the ordinary Judges. 12. If the Prince decreed or commanded any thing contrary to their ancient Customs and Laws, no Man should be obliged to obey him.

The Counts of Holland were also Sovereigns of Zealand: The first of 'em was Thiery or Theodorick, by some called Diderick, and Childrick, Son to Sigibert D. of Aquitain, who they say was of Trojan Race; and that the Emperor Charles the Bald being informed, about 863, that Holland was infested by the Danes, he did, at the Request of Pope John VIII. confer the Principality upon Thiery, who coming thither with an

Army, subdued the Frizons and Danes, and took Possession of the Country, against the Will of many of the People, who therefore rebelled, and drove him out; but being restored by the Emperor's Assistance, he punished the Rebels, and married, says *Scriverius*, Jenna (as some will have it) Daughter to Pepin, with whom he lies buried at Egmond. His Son Theodorick succeeded in 903, defeated the Frizons in two Battles, rebuilt the Monastery of Egmond they had burnt down, married Hildegard, Daughter to Lewis of France, died in the 50th Year of his Reign, and was buried at Egmond.

He was succeeded by his Son Arnolph, or, as the *Atlas* says, Thiery III. about 947, who reign'd but 5 Years, being slain, with the greatest Part of his Nobility, by the Frizons, and buried at Egmond. *Scriverius* makes Thiery III. Successor to Arnolph, and says, he took Adebold the Bishop of Utrecht in Battle, that had stir'd up the Frizons against him; whom having reduced, he gave Friesland to his youngest Son Florent; after which he went on a Pilgrimage to the Holy Land, died as he return'd about 947, in the 46th Year of his Reign, and was buried at Egmond, where long after, the Epitaphs of the 3 Thieries were found in Monkish Rhyming Latin. The *Atlas* makes Arnolph his Successor in 988, and says, he was succeeded by Thiery IV. in 993, who having in a Tournament at Liege kill'd the Bishop of Cologne's Brother, fled to his own Country, and was pursued by the Germans, who seiz'd Dort; but being surpris'd by the Earl, he kill'd them, with 400 Persons of Quality, and next Morning was shot into the Thigh with a poison'd Arrow by a sculking German as he pass'd carelessly thro' the Street, which on that Account is still called the Earl's Street, and died two Days after, in the 9th Year of his Reign. The *Atlas* makes Thiery V. his Successor in 1039; but *Scriverius* makes it Florent his Brother, who succeeded in 1049, and by digging Pits in the Ground, cover'd with Hay and Straw, routed the Archbishop of Cologne, the Bishop of Liege, and the Count of Lorrain. Four Years after he defeated the Germans again; but in his Return was surpris'd, defeated and slain, by the Earl of Cnik, at Hemert, betwixt the Maes and the Waal, in the 14th of his Reign over Holland, and the 21st over Friesland,

S f f f f

and

and interr'd at *Egmond*. His Widow *Gertrude* of *Saxony* govern'd for some Time as Guardian to her Son *Thiery*, and afterwards married *Robert*, surnam'd the *Frizon*, because he conquer'd that People; and in 1066 he assum'd the Government of *Holland*, which he manag'd with great Integrity; but was drove out by *Godfrey*, surnam'd the *Crook-back'd*, Count of *Lorraine*, and the Bishop of *Utrecht*.

Godfrey assum'd the Government in 1070, built *Delft*, and subdued the *Frizons*, who besieg'd him afterwards in *Alcmaer*; but the Bishop of *Utrecht* rais'd the Siege, and defeated the Enemy: After which, a Servant of young *Theoderick* kill'd *Godfrey*, by thrusting a Javelin up his Fundament as he was easing himself in a Room over a Ditch.

Thiery V. or, as some reckon him, the *Vlth*, succeeded in 1075, reduced the Bishop of *Utrecht* and the *Frizons*, whom he defeated in two Battles, and spar'd neither Age nor Sex.

He was succeeded by *Florent the Fat* in 1092, who was a peaceable and religious Prince, and died in the 3d Year of his Reign.

He was succeeded by his Son *Thiery VI.* or *VII.* in 1123. He defeated the *Frizons*, and afterwards besieged the Bishop of *Utrecht* in that City; but upon the Bishop's putting on his Pontifical Habit, and appearing at the Head of his Clergy in order to excommunicate *Thiery*, that Prince beg'd his Pardon, and retir'd. In his Time a great Part of *Utrecht*, with the principal Churches, was burnt. He died in the 40th Year of his Reign.

Florence III. succeeded him in 1163, who married the K. of *Scotland's* Daughter, was reconciled to the Bishop of *Utrecht* by the Emperor *Frederick*, defeated the *Frizons*, who invaded his Country, and burnt *Alcmaer*, for which he made them pay a prodigious Sum. After this, he went to the Recovery of the *Holy Land*, and died at *Antioch* in the 27th Year of his Reign.

He was succeeded by his Son *Thiery VII.* or *VIII.* He had War with his Brother *William*, which was ended by granting him *East* and *West Friesland* in Fee. He had afterwards War with the Duke of *Guelder*, invaded *Brabant*, and took *Boisleduc*, with a great many Prisoners of Quality; but in his Re-

turn was defeated and taken by the D. of *Lorraine*, who forc'd him to repair the Damages he had done to *Boisleduc* before he set him at Liberty: After which he died at *Dort*, in the 13th Year of his Reign.

He was succeeded by his Daughter *Ails*, who dying without Issue in a Year after, her Uncle *William I.* succeeded in 1204. He had War with the Bishop of *Utrecht*, but purchas'd a Peace by his Money, rigg'd out a Fleet, and landed in *Scotland* to possess himself of that Crown, upon the Death of the King his Uncle, to whom he pretended to be next Heir; but hearing that the Count of *Loos* had invaded *Holland*, he return'd, and died in 1223. The *Scots* Histories make no Mention of his Expedition to that Country; therefore we leave the Reader to his own Judgment about it.

He was succeeded by his Son *Florent IV.* a valiant Prince. The Countess of *Clermont* having heard much of his Courage, and being desirous to see him, she prevailed with her Husband to appoint a solemn Tournament, to which it being usual for all fam'd Soldiers to resort, *Florent* came thither, and by his gallant Deportment did so charm the Countess, that could not forbear praising him before her Husband; who being jealous at it, enter'd the Lists with some arm'd Men, and barbarously murder'd him in the Flower of his Age, and 12th Year of his Reign.

He was succeeded by his Son *William II.* in 1235, who was a Warlike Prince, and on that Account chosen K. of the *Romans*, when scarce 20 Years old. He appointed the Court at the *Hague* for determining the Law-Suits in *Holland* and *Zealand*. He sent his Brother *Florent* against the *Flemings* that had invaded his Country, and defeated them in a bloody Battle. K. *William* spar'd the Lives of the Prisoners, but sent them home naked. He went afterwards to *Italy*, where he received the Imperial Crown from Pope *Innocent*, and on his Return was received with great Respect in the Empire. He defeated the *Frizons* in a Battle; but as he was marching against them a second time, the Ice broke under his Horse, and he was slain by some of the Enemy that lay concealed among the Oziers in 1255.

He was succeeded by his Son *Florent V.* who obtained two Victories over the *Frizons*,

sons, and compos'd his Differences with the Earl of *Flanders*, by marrying his Daughter. He built stately Palaces in several Cities of *Holland*, and is said to have gone over into *England*, with a Design to pursue his Title to *Scotland*; but returned, because the *Flemings* had invaded his Country. In his old Age, he forc'd the Wife of *Gerard van Velsen*, his Favourite, who had disoblig'd him, by refusing to marry his Concubine; for which *Velsen*, with his Wife's Father and others, surpris'd and kill'd him in the 41st Year of his Reign. *Velsen* being afterwards taken, was put into a Hogshead full of sharp Nails, and roll'd up and down the Streets of *Leyden* till he died. Some others of the Conspirators were also put to Death, and the rest died miserably in Foreign Parts.

John I. Son to *Florent*, succeeded in 1296. He was in *England*, where he had married the King's Daughter, when his Father died; but hasten'd over, defeated the *Frizons* in two Battles, and died without Issue at *Haerlem* in the 4th Year of his Reign, Ann. 1299.

He was succeeded by *John II.* of *Hainault*, who was Son to his Grandfather's Sister. He was 5 Years Earl of *Holland*, defended his Brother, who was Bishop of *Utrecht*, against his Enemies; and his Son *William* defeated the *Flemings* by Sea, where they lost 10000 Men in one Battle. The Writers of those Times say, there were strange Apparitions of Fleets on the Sea before this Action. *John* died in 1304.

He was succeeded by his Son *William III.* who for his Piety, Justice and Mildness, had the Sirname of *Good*; as his Brother *John*, who was kill'd by the *Flemings*, was for his contrary Temper call'd, *John without Mercy*. In *William's* Reign, *Holland* was afflicted with Plague and Famine, which destroyed many of their People. In 1328, *Philip of France*, by the Assistance of *William*, obtain'd a great Victory over the *Flemings*. There's a memorable Story of an Act of Justice done by this good Earl not long before his Death upon the Bailiff of *South-Holland*, who had taken away a poor Man's Cow, (he refusing to sell her, because she gave such a prodigious Quantity of Milk, that his whole Family subsisted thereby) and in Exchange sent him another, nothing comparable to her; whom the Earl com-

manded in the first place, for the Wrong done, to pay the Countryman 100 Crowns; and afterwards, for the Injury done to himself and his Government, to be beheaded. He advis'd his Son *William*, upon his Death-Bed, to maintain Peace with his Neighbours, and lay no grievous Impositions upon his Subjects. He reign'd 33 Years. He had by his Wife *Jane of Valois* 3 Sons, *William*, *Lewis*, and *John*; with 4 Daughters, *Margaret* Dutchess of *Bavaria*, and Empress, *Joan* Countess of *Juliers*, *Philippa* Queen of *England*, and *Elizabeth*.

He was succeeded by *William IV.* in 1337, died without lawful Issue, leaving only one natural Son behind him. He was very zealous for the Propagation of the Christian Religion: Upon which Account he assisted the King of *Spain* in Person with a considerable Army against the *Moor*s; and by his Valour against those infidels, gain'd immortal Fame. When he return'd, he besieg'd *Utrecht*; and being ready to take and sack the Town, was perswaded by his Nobles to agree to a Peace, or rather Truce, upon Condition that 500 of the principal Citizens should come forth with their Heads and Feet bare, and upon their Knees beg his Pardon. After this he fought the *Frizons*; but engaging too boldly, was slain not far from *Staveren*.

He was succeeded by *Margaret*, Daughter to *William the Good*, and Wife to *Lewis of Bavaria* the Emperor. She came with a great Retinue into *Holland*, and having taken Possession, resign'd the Government to her Son *William*, who was to allow her an Annual Pension; but he afterwards return'd her the Provinces: Upon which there happen'd War between *Holland* and those of *Utrecht*, wherein the latter were worsted. In Revenge for her Brother's Death, she confiscated and put to publick Sale all the Goods of the *Friesland*ers that were found in *Holland*.

Her Son *William V.* Earl of *Holland*, *Zee-land*, and *Hainault*, and Lord of *Friesland*, succeeded. The Bishop of *Utrecht*, provok'd by his Hostilities, invaded *Holland*, and burnt two Towns. In his Time a great Part of *Haerlem* was burnt down; but the Incendiaries never discover'd. After he govern'd 7 Years, he fell mad, and kill'd *Gerard of Wateringen*, a Person of Noble

Extraction, for which he was secur'd, and the Administration taken from him.

He was succeeded by *Albert I.* about 1368. He was opposed by the *Cabillaustin* Faction, who were for setting up the Lady *Matilda*, Wife of the distracted Earl. *Albert* besieg'd the Town of *Delph* for burning some of his Castles, and setting at Liberty some Persons he had imprison'd, he compell'd them to make Reparation, and to dismantle the greatest Part of their Town. He had Wars with the *Gueltrians* and *Frisians*, govern'd 30 Years in his Brother's Name, 16 in his own, died, and was interr'd at the *Hague* in 1404.

His Son *William VI.* succeeded, made War with the D. of *Guelderland*, with whom he afterwards maintain'd a strict Friendship. He got his Daughter *Jaqueline* recogniz'd Heiress in an Assembly of the States, and died in 1417.

Jaqueline succeeded; and soon after *William* of *Arkel*, a powerful Lord, who had often bid Defiance to the Earls of *Holland*, surpris'd the Town of *Gorcum*, where the Lord of *Brederod* besieg'd him for *Jaqueline*, and recover'd it; but both of 'em lost their Lives in the Action. *Jaqueline* married the Dauphin of *France* for her first Husband; who dying in a Year after, she married *John D.* of *Brabant*. *John D.* of *Bavaria*, her Father's Brother, having the Emperor's Consent, claim'd the Province, because his Brother left no Issue-Male: Upon which *Dort* and several other Cities revolted to him. He continued as Guardian to his Niece for 3 Years, who falling at Variance with her Husband, a Divorce ensued: But after *John* of *Bavaria's* Death, the *Hollanders* renounc'd *Jaqueline*, and chose her Husband the D. of *Brabant*. She afterwards married *Humphry D.* of *Glocester*; and upon his Death, *Francis* of *Borfales*, the D. of *Brabant* being still alive; but finding no Hopes of Issue, she resign'd *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Hainault*, and *Friesland*, to her Cousin *Philip* of *Burgundy*, and soon after died at the *Hague*, in the 36th Year of her Age.

Philip of *Burgundy* took Possession, besieg'd *Calais*, then in the Hands of the *English*; but miscarried in his Design. He was the first that instituted the Order of the *Golden Fleece*; and by his Assistance, *Lewis* the Dauphin was advanc'd to the Crown of

France. One *John* of *Koeslein*, whom he advanc'd from the *Dunghill* to be his Favourite, attempted to poison him, which was discover'd by the Fellow he employ'd to buy it, because he did not give him the promis'd Reward: Upon which he was beheaded; and the Fellow having own'd, that he would not have discover'd it had he paid him the Money, he was also put to Death. *Philip* died at *Bruges* in the 34th Year of his Reign.

His Son *Charles the Bold*, formerly called Count of *Charolois*, succeeded him in the Dukedoms of *Burgundy*, *Brabant*, *Limburg*, and *Luxemburg*, the Earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artou*, *Hainault*, *French County*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Namur*, the Marquisate of the Empire, the Lordships of *Friesland*, *Salins*, and *Mechlen*. He took and almost ruin'd the City of *Liege*, and drove the D. of *Lorrain* out of his Country, which was recover'd by the Assistance of the *Swissers*, who defeated *Charles*, and kill'd 16000 of his Men near *Morat*. He afterwards laid Siege to *Nancy*, the Capital of *Lorrain*, where being betray'd by *Compobacchio*, an *Italian*, in whom he trusted so much, that he hanged a Gentleman who reveal'd the Conspiracy. He was kill'd, and his Army routed. He was one of the greatest Princes of his Time, and terrible to *Lewis XI.* of *France*, who had a Hand in his Ruin. He was so successful at first, that his Subjects reckon'd him invincible, and would not for a long Time believe he was dead, but gone on a Penance to *Germany*, where, *Naucleus* says, a poor Beggar receiv'd considerable Alms under the Notion of being that Duke.

He was succeeded by *Mary* his only Child, at 14 Years of Age. She was courted by the Archduke *Maximilian*, the Dauphin of *France*, the Prince of *Wales*, and other great Princes, whom her Father kept in Suspence. Her Inclination was to the Dauphin, afterwards *Charles VIII.* but his Father *Lewis XI.* making too much Hast to seize Part of her Dominions on her Father's Death, she was so much provok'd at it, that she married the Archduke *Maximilian*, Son to the Emperor *Frederick*, with whom her Father had formerly been in Treaty about it, and procured her Consent by a Letter to the Archduke.

A New Map of the
UNITED PROVINCES
or
NETHERLANDS &c.

By Herman Moll Geographer.

0 5 10 15 30 45

English Miles

NORTH



SEA.

- 53
- Chief Cities
 - Cities
 - * Universities
 - † Gentlemens Houses
 - Villages
 - Artificial Canals
 - a. The Zype
 - b. The Waert
 - c. Schermer
 - d. Beemster
 - e. Wormer
 - f. Pungner
 - g. Marken I.
 - h. Naender Meer
 - i. Vecht R.
 - k. Rhein R.

52



Maximilian, as soon as married, defeated the *French* in *Flanders*, and took *Tournay*. He died in 1519, and was succeeded by his Son *Archduke Philip*: He by his Son the Emperor *Charles V.* and he by *Philip III.* who was the last Count of *Holland*, and the second of that Name K. of *Spain*, in whose Time the *Dutch* revolted; of which we have already given an Account.

Their chief Towns.

A *Amsterdam*, the Metropolis of the United Netherlands, lies in *Amstelland*, in Long. 23. 30. Lat. 52. 23. 10 Miles E. from *Haerlem*, 18 N. E. from *Leyden*, 27 N. E. from *Rotterdam*, and 18 N. W. from *Utrecht*. It takes its Name from the Dam or Sluce on the River *Amstel* that runs thro' it, and falls into the *Ze*, a River, or rather an Arm of the S. Sea, which lies on the N. Side of the Town, and serves as a Port to this City, which is one of the richest and greatest Trading Towns in the World. 'Tis scarce mentioned in History before 1399, it being in those Days only a Village of Fishermen. The Ground on which it stands being Moorish, the Foundations were laid upon Masts, and other large Pieces of Timber, drove by vast Force, and at a prodigious Expence, into the Earth. It has received considerable Additions at different Times, as the Curious may see by *De Witt's* Maps of it. In 1342, 'twas only a small Town on the E. Side of the *Amstel*, with one Street in the middle, and 5 or 6 *crosses*. In 1400, 'twas enlarged as much more on the W. of that River. In 1482, 'twas increas'd so much on both Sides, that *Mary of Burgundy* thought fit to encompass it with strong Brick Walls of extraordinary Workmanship, as appears by two of the Gates still remaining, the rest of those Fortifications being demolish'd, to make Way for its further Enlargement. In 1585, it became the chief Seat of the Trade of those Provinces, and was much enlarged. In 1601, 600 Houses were new built by private Persons. In 1612, 'twas reckon'd 9100 Paces in Circuit: The Butchery, Guard-House, and the stately *Haerlem* Gate, being built about that Time; as was the New Church some Time before, and the

W. and N. Churches some Time after. In 1656, they took in a very large Space of Ground, which is since built up, and the whole inclos'd with new Walls of Brick, Gates of Stone, and a large Ditch all round, which gives it the Form of a Semi-circle. 'Twas above 60 Years ago reckon'd to contain 54000 Houses; whereas *Paris* then contain'd but 46000: And about 140 Years ago, an *English* Traveller reckon'd it full as big as *Venice*, and half as big as *London*; since which, it has received such considerable Additions and Improvements, that 'tis justly reckon'd one of the greatest and finest Cities in the World. Sir *W. Temple* says, that call'd the *New Town* is so spacious for Extent, and its Buildings so much more sumptuous and beautiful than those of the Old Town, that it must needs have diverted a great Part of that Wealth which was formerly applied to Trade. The City is exceeding populous, and neatly kept; the Streets are large, with Canals of Water in the Middle, over which there are many Stone Bridges, beautify'd with Iron Rails and Ballasters. The Houses are all of Brick or Stone, and very beautiful, especially those in the Streets of the New Town, call'd the *Lords, Kings, and Emperors* Char-nels, where many of the Houses are of Freestone, adorn'd with Columns and Chapters of the *Corinthian* Order. These three, with those call'd the *Haerlem* and *Cinghel* Street, are the chief of the City. Upon the Approach of the *French* in 1672, the Citizens willingly agreed to the spoiling of their fine Gardens for raising new Fortifications, which were made very regular and strong; and at the same Time a Dike being cut on the Side of the Land, they had fresh Water convey'd jinto the Town, which they very much wanted. The particular Buildings of most Note are, 1. The *Old Church*, a large and majestick Structure of the *Gothick* Order. 'Twas founded in 1360; but the fair Steeple, now its great Ornament, was not finished till 1566. In this Church was buried their famous Admiral *Heemskerck*, who defeated the *Spaniards* in the *Straights* in 1607, when he lost his Life in the Action, for which he has a noble Monument erected by the States, with a lofty Inscription. 2. The *New Church*, so call'd to distinguish it from the other. 'Twas founded a-

bout

bout 1414, burnt down in 1643, but soon rebuilt with much greater Splendour. At the same Time 6334 tall Trees were drove into a Plat of Ground of 100 Foot square, to raise a Tower for it of extraordinary Height; but the Foundation not being reckon'd strong enough, the Tower was not rais'd above 40 Foot high. In the Windows of this Church, the Emperor *Maximilian* is represented receiving a large Sum from the City, for which he gave them an Imperial Crown as a Crest to their Arms, being 3 *St. Andrews* Crosses, in 1490. In this Church Admiral *De Ruyter* lies buried, and has a sumptuous Monument erected for him by the States. It has also a Skreen before the Chancel of cast Brass, which is kept very beautiful and bright; and they have an Organ (supported by rich Marble Pillars) of extraordinary Workmanship, with a vast Number of Pipes, which imitate melodious human Voices. 3. The *West Church*, is a magnificent Structure, with a beautiful Tower, and a large Imperial Crown of Copper on the Top, 260 Foot from the Ground. 4. The *South Church*, is also a stately Building, with a Steeple 237 Foot high. They have several other Churches, which are very neat, but not comparable to these for Magnificence. *M. Ray* says, They have 24 establish'd Ministers belonging to the City; That the Pulpit of the *New Church* is valued at 1000*l.* Sterling; and that there's a sumptuous Monument there for Admiral *Van Galen*, who signaliz'd himself against the *Dunkirkers*, the Pirates of *Barbary*, and defeated the *English Squadron* at *Leghorn* in 1653. 5. The *STADT-HOUSE*, *Dr. Brown* says, is the noblest Structure in all this Country, and one of the finest in *Europe*. 'Tis built of Free-stone, 110 Paces in Front, which is more than *St. Peter's* at *Rome*, 81 Paces deep, and 116 Foot high. 'Tis adorn'd with Pillasters, Chapters, and Cornishes, of the *Corinthian Order*. *Mr. Ray* says, the Foundation cost 100000*l.* Sterling, it being built upon 13659 great Piles of Timber drove into the Ground; and some compute the Charge of the whole at 300000*0*. *Dr. Northleigh* says, 'tis adorned on the Outside with Statues and History in *Relievo*, besides the *Corinthian Pillars*; but the *Portico* is not answerable to the Magnificence

of the rest. At the Entrance on the Right Hand, lies Hall where the Malefactors receive their Sentence, adorn'd with Marble Statues hanging down their Heads, as if they bewail'd the Fate of the Criminals. The Floors are cover'd with Marble, and the Roofs finely carv'd, painted and gilt. The great Hall is a noble Room, adorn'd on all Sides with fine Marble Pillars of the *Corinthian Order*; the Roof finely painted, and the Floor of Marble, of surprizing Workmanship; for the Stones, without any other Lines but the joining of 'em, represent both the Celestial and Terrestrial Globes. The Ground-Rooms, which are us'd for the Offices belonging to the Bank, and the Prisons, &c. are 20 Foot high, and the first and second Stories 30 Foot high each: The Gallery and Door-Cases of the Offices are adorn'd with Marble, carv'd with exquisite Art: And all the Chambers have Marble Floors, with curious Painting on the Sielings and Chimney-Pieces. Over the Middle of the Front, which is somewhat more advanc'd than the rest of the Work, there's a Bevel above the Cornish, the Face of which is Marble, with a *Basso-Relievo* of curious Carving, a large Statue of Brass on the Top, and one more on each Side, representing Justice, Fortitude, and Plenty. Behind them, there's a handsome Tower in Form of a Pavilion, supported by Pillars, in which there's a fine Chime of Musical Bells. On the Back Front, there's another Bevel with *Basso-Relievo*; and on the Top of it, a large Atlas in Brass, bearing on his Shoulders a Copper Globe of 10 Foot diameter, which *Dr. Brown* says is much larger than that of *St. Peter's* at *Rome*, or than any of those at *Florence*, *Morocco*, or any *Turkish Mosque* that ever he heard of. This noble Structure was begun in 1648, and is scarce yet finished, at least as to the Paintings and other Ornaments. The Magistrates had their first Meeting in it the 23d of *April*, 1655. There's in it an Image of the Blessed Virgin, on a Pedestal of Black Marble, with a Latin Inscription, importing, that the first Stone was laid the 28th of *October*, 1648, when the War, which they had carried on above 80 Years for their Religion and Liberty against 3 *Philips* of *Spain* by Sea and Land, almost in all Parts of the World, was happily

pily concluded, and their Liberty asserted, such and such Persons being Consuls. In this House are kept their Courts of Judicature; and, which is an odd Custom, the Doors of such City Tenants as do not pay their Rent at the Day appointed, are brought hither, and not restored till they have made Satisfaction. In a Vault under the Stadthouse, is kept the *FAMOUS BANK OF AMSTERDAM*, supposed to be the greatest Treasure of the World. Sir *William Temple* says, That there's constantly an Appearance of infinite Riches there, such as Bars of Gold and Silver, Plate, and numberless Bags, which are said to be Gold and Silver, and may be so for ought that can be discovered by such as have only a transient Sight of them. The Burgomasters alone have the Inspection of it; and no particular Account being taken from Age to Age of what passes in and out, 'tis impossible to make any Guess at the Proportion between the real Treasure and Credit of it, which is not to be valued, being the same with that of the whole City, whose Stock and Revenue equals that of some Kingdoms; and they are bound to make good all the Money brought into it. 6. The *EXCHANGE*, a very stately and magnificent Structure, much after the Manner of the *Royal Exchange* at *London* before the Fire, but of an oblong Form. 'Tis built of Brick, with Pillars of Stone along the Walks; and in the Shops above, vast Quantities of all sorts of Goods are exposed to Sale. 'Tis exceeding large, frequented by an incredible Number of People and Merchants from all Nations. *Misson* says, 'tis 200 Foot long, and 120 broad: The Galleries above are supported by 46 Pillars, but not so spacious or many, as those of the Exchange of *London*. 7. Their *Spin-house*, for the Correction of loose young Women, and such as are taken walking in the Streets at Night, or in suspicious Places. Sometimes the Citizens send their Daughters hither for Chastisement, for which they have particular Chambers allotted. 8. Their House of Correction for idle Men, especially Youth, which was formerly the Nunnery of *Santa Clara*, but converted to this Use in 1595; as was that of *St. Ursula* for Correction of Females in 1596. At the Entrance of the House,

there are two Lions bridled; with this Inscription:

Virtutis est domare quæ cuncti pavent.

A very proper Emblem, since 'tis designed for curbing of the Vices of those who refuse Obedience to their Masters or Parents, and live disorderly. Such as come hither, are forced to earn their Bread, by rasping *Brazil Wood*; and if they cannot be brought to it by Blows, are put into a Cellar, where Water is gradually let in upon them, which they must pump out or drown. Some are put into this House during Life, and others longer or shorter, according to the Nature of their Crimes. To curb that barbarous Practice among their common People of slashing one another with Knives, there's a Law, That such as draw a Knife for that End, shall either pay down 100 *Livres*, or work 3 Months in this House. 9. Their Hospital for Children, where 600 Orphans are educated, and well look'd after. 10. Their *Dolhuys*, for delirious People, like our *Bedlam*. They have two other Hospitals, where above 2400 Children are maintain'd, and taught to read and write. They have two more, one of which is for decrepit or old Men, and another for 300 old and decrepit Women, besides an Hospital for the Sick; their Pest-house, a stately Building, founded in 1631; and another Hospital where all poor Travellers, without Distinction, are lodg'd and entertain'd for 3 Nights, and no longer. In order to defray the Expence of so many charitable Foundations, besides what's given towards them by well-dispos'd People, they impose several little Taxes, as a Penny upon every one that passes through the Gate after Candle-light, half the Money receiv'd at the Play-house; and upon Appointments at Taverns, or any other Publick House, they have Boxes to put in Forfeitures from those that do not keep their Time, for the Use of the Poor. Dr. *Northleigh* says, there's scarce a Window where you do not see a Box, with, *Remember the Poor* on it; and at every Bargain, something is reserv'd for that Use, which is collected Quarterly by the Parish Officers, who also on every *Wednesday* of the Month collect the Charity of the Inhabi-

tants at their Doors; and the Officers of the Hospitals do the same twice a Week. He adds, That the Mountebanks, Rope-dancers, and Musick-Booths, pay the 3d Penny; and 'tis reckon'd, that there's 80000 Guilders *per Annum* collected at the Play-house. By all which, with what's collected in Churches, and the appropriating of the Revenues of some former Monasteries, they maintain 20000 Poor Annually; and their Hospitals are so large, that some contain 500, some 1000, and others 1500 Persons. 10. Their publick *PAWN OFFICE* or *Lumbard-House*, is a mighty Convenience to this great City, for it prevents Extortions and Thefts; and as all forfeited Goods are sold here by open Sale, the Owners may buy their Goods again. Fraudulent Bankrupts are forc'd to pay Fines, and undergo Bodily Punishment; and such as are prov'd to be guilty of Perjury in giving an Account of their Estates, are put to Death. But on the other hand, Creditors are oblig'd to maintain their Debtors if they put them in Prison; and 'tis a Capital Crime for the Debtors to defraud their Creditors. Dr. Northleigh says, the publick Licences they give to Musick-Houses, where Men and Women make lewd Bargains, is what's most blameable in the Government of that City, and exceeds what's practis'd at Rome it self. 11. They have a *Schola Illusttris*, where in the Summer 6 Professors read Lectures in their several Faculties. It was formerly the Church of St. *Agnus's* Monastery, and converted to this Use in 1631. They have likewise a small Anatomical Theatre. 12. Their *EAST-INDIA HOUSE* contains an incredible Store of Spices, and other *Indian* Commodities. 13. Their *MAGAZINE* or *ADMIRALTY-HOUSE* is a stately large Brick Building by the Water-side, in the N. E. Part of the City. It is 3 Angles of a Square, in the Middle of which there's a Yard for building Men of War. The Front is 220 Foot long, and the Wings 200. The Rigging, Stores, and Arms, belonging to their Men of War, are kept in very good Order in several Chambers. 'Twas built in 1655, surrounded with a Ditch for its greater Security; and 72 Men of War lie near it. On the Top of this House, as in most others of Note in this City, they

have a Cistern to receive Rain, to supply the Defect of Spring-Water, which is very scarce here. A little E. from this House, stands the *EAST-INDIA COMPANY'S MAGAZINE*, which is a stately Row of Brick Buildings: Behind which there's a Yard with Docks for building Ships, a Rope-Yard, and Shops for Anchor-Smiths, and others concern'd in building of Vessels. Here they lay up their Stores and Wares, which they have not Room for in their other Warehouses, and in the *East-India* House that lies in the middle of the City. 14. Their Sluces are Works of prodigious Expence and Art, which deserve a Traveller's View. They were built to prevent the overflowing of their Cellars and lower Stories, which frequently happen'd when a strong N. E. Wind drove the Water of the *Zuyder-Sea*, and the River *Z* or *N*, out of their Channels. These Sluces are built at the Mouth of the 4 Channels that open to the *Z*, are of solid Brick-work, 10 or 12 Foot thick from the Bottom of the River to the Surface of the Earth, and built cross the Channel, leaving only a Passage for Ships, which are afterwards shut up with strong Flood-Gates, that are capable at all Times to resist the Force of the Water. 15. Their *West-India* House is a stately Building. 16. The *Jews* Synagogue is a very fair Structure, they having the Liberty of their Worship here, being allowed to live in a particular Quarter of the City, and a Walk for themselves on the Exchange. They live richer here than any where else, and are reckon'd about 20000 in Number. Dr. Brown says, they had Persons of Learning and other good Qualifications among them; and that he saw them perform Circumcision thus; They thrust a Probe betwixt the Glans and Præputium, dilating it so, that both the inward and outward Skin are drawn forward, and cut by a certain Instrument; after which the remaining Skin is immediately put back, the Blood stop'd, and the Plaster applied; and those present sung all the while, to drown the Cries of the Infant. Dr. Northleigh says, they have two Synagogues here, the worst of which is more sumptuous than those at Rome and Venice; and that they have Schools to educate their Youth in their Language and Religion. *Misson* says, there remains in this

this City a Convent of Nuns called *Beguines*, consisting of Maidens and Widows who have no Children, and need no other Qualification to be admitted, but a Certificate of their good Behaviour, and of having a Competency to live upon by themselves, or in Society with others of the Sisters, as they think meet. There were when he wrote about 130 of them. The Convent is built like a little Town, with a Wall and Ditch round it, and a Church within it, where they are obliged to perform their Devotions at stated Hours. They wear an odd black Habit, receive and pay Visits, and may quit the Convent when they please. He adds, That because the City is founded on Piles of Wood, they allow no Coaches there, but to some Physicians and Strangers of Note; and instead of them, use Sleds made like Coaches, but slow and uneasy. He computes the Number of Inhabitants to be 200000, and says, it may vie with any City in the World for Riches and Trade. Their standing Militia some Years ago consisted of 8250 Men. Mr. Ray says, That none but those of the establish'd Religion are allow'd Steeples or Bells in their Churches. Near the *Jews* Quarter, they have a Physick Garden, well stor'd with curious Herbs and Plants. This City has produc'd many famous Men in all Faculties. *Bleau* says, That in his Time the Presbytery or Consistory of *Amsterdam* consisted of 15 Ministers, 16 Elders, and 24 Deacons; one half of the two last being changed every Year. In 1685, their Bill of Mortality amounted to 6245. The Air of the City is not wholesome, and they were formerly (says Dr. *Northleigh*) much infested with the Plague; but not since 1663, that they laid aside their Wells, and made use of Rain-Water in their stead. We refer the Curious, who would know more of this City, to *Bleau's Theatrum Urbium*. Their Government we have mentioned before, as a Specimen of that of the other Cities in the *United Provinces*.

Having begun with *Amsterdam*, because 'tis the principal City of the *United Provinces*, we come next to *Haërlem*, and from thence Southward along the Coast round the Province, according to the Course of the Map, for the Ease of such Readers as think fit to compare our Description with the Map.

2. *Haërlem*, in the District of *Rhinland*. Some derive the Name from the *Heruli*; others from the Dutch Words *Eere* and *Lemmer*, which signify Glory purchas'd with the Sword, which is Part of its Arms. This City lies 10 Miles W. from *Amsterdam*, and 5 S. from the Sea. 'Tis large, populous, and pleasant: The Houses are of Brick, many of 'em splendid, and all of 'em neat: The Streets are large and even, and some of 'em have Canals. The Town is well fortified with strong Walls, and a broad Ditch; but the neighbouring Sand-Hills are so high, that they cannot be drown'd with its Sluces, which lessens its Strength. 'Twas burnt down in 1340, but rebuilt and enlarged beyond the River *Sparn* in 1400. 'Twas made a Bishop's See in 1559. The Cathedral, now call'd the great Church, is the most beautiful, strong and spacious, of that kind in the Province. Among others, here's the Epitaph of *Schoonus* their Schoolmaster, who, for his *Commedia Sacra*, was call'd the *Tarentius Christianus*. It had formerly a strong Castle, in which they besieged the Lord of the Place for his Tyranny, which had cost him his Life, but that his Lady capitulated to surrender, on Condition that she should be allowed to bring out as much of her most valuable Goods as she could carry on her Back: Upon which she brought him out betwixt her Shoulders, sav'd him from their Fury, and left the House to their Mercy. Their chief Trade is in weaving Damasks, Velver, Sattin, Taffety, with other Silk Stuffs, and Linen, the finest and whitest in the Province. They have also a considerable Trade in Thread, Tape, and whitening of Cloth, the Water of their Lake being the best for that Purpose of any in the Country. Some Time after the *Spaniards* became possessed of these Provinces, there were reckoned 25000 People in this City of full Age employed in Trade and Manufacture. Their Town-House and Burchery are handsome Structures. We have formerly taken Notice of their Controversy with the City of *Mentz* about the Invention of Printing, which is not without Reason ascrib'd to *Lawrence Coster*, one of their Citizens; over the Door of whose House, which stood about the middle of the City, there was a Latin Inscription, importing, that he invented

vented it in 1440. There was likewise a Statue erected for him on that Account, say *Boxhornius* and *Bleau*; but they were both removed by a late Proprietor, because they drew so many People to gaze at his House.

Their Government is by 4 Consuls, 7 *Elchevias*, a Burgomaster for Life, and a Council of 32. 'Tis famous for the Siege it held out against the *Spaniards* for 10 Months, says *Strada*, in 1573, when the Town was attacked with as much Violence, and defended with as great Obstinacy, as ever was known. The Townsmen were reduc'd to eat Leather, Grass, and the vilest sort of Animals. They kept a Correspondence with the Pr. of *Orange* by Carrier-Pigeons; which being discover'd at last by the lighting of one of 'em upon a Tent of the *Spanish* Camp, the *Spaniards* shot all the Pigeons they saw about the Town, and prevented it. One *Kamava*, a Woman of the Town, commanded a Regiment of Women, who help'd in defending the Works, repairing the Breaches, and frequently sallied upon the *Spaniards*. The latter having shot two Men's Heads into the City, signifying that one of 'em was *Philip Cemin*, who came to relieve the Town with 2000 Men; and that the other was *Anthony Painter*, who betray'd *Mons* to the *French*. The Citizens, by way of Reprisal, put the Heads of 11 *Spaniards* in a Barrel, which they threw over the Walls to the D. of *Alva*, with a Letter, signifying that they had paid him 10 Heads, that he might have no further Pretence of making War upon them for the Tenth Part, alluding to a Tax of the Tenth Part of every Man's Estate demanded by the *Spaniards*, the Refusal of which was one of the Occasions of the War; and told him, That since they had been long in his Debt, they had sent him the 11th for Interest. Being forc'd at last to surrender, on Promise of being secure from Plunder and other Violence, the *Spaniards*, says *Bleau*, put 2000 of 'em to Death in cold Blood, contrary to the Capitulation. The Soldiers in Garrison consisted of 4000, and were reduc'd to 1600, 900 of whom were thus barbarously put to Death. *Strada* would excuse this as a Judgment of God upon them for their mocking at Holy Things, meaning Images and Re-

licks, &c. And others charge it to the Rage of the Soldiers, because they were depriv'd of the Plunder, which the City redeem'd by paying 34000 *l.* Sterling. *Bleau* gives an Account of the Learned Men that have been bred in this City. Their Arms are, a Sword between 4 Stars, and a Cross over the Point, with this Motto, *Vim vici Virtus*; i. e. Valour overcomes Power. They say, this Atchievement was given them in the 12th Century by the Emperor *Frederick*, and the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, because, during the Holy War, when *Damietta*, anciently *Pelusium*, was besieg'd by the Christians, and their Fleet could not approach it, by reason of Chains drawn across the River, and fasten'd to strong Towers on both Sides, the *Hairlemers* in the Service arm'd the Keels of their Ships with sharp Saws, sail'd up the River with a strong Gale, and cut the Chains, which made Way for the rest of the Fleet, and occasioned the taking of the Town. In Confirmation of this, they say, there are two Bells in the high Tower of their Church made of *Corinthian* Brass: And as a Memorial of it, there are 3 Ships hung up in the great Church, and the Youth of the City make an Annual Procession about the Streets with little Ships, whose Prows are set with Saws. Dr. *Northleigh* says, there are 3 or 4 Organs in their great Church, and the Stalls of many Princes and others of Quality, who have been Knights of the *Golden Fleece*, with their Arms painted on the Stalls. *Mifson* says, in their Town-House the Magistrates keep the first Book that was printed by *Coster*, in a Silver Case wrap'd up in Silk, where they have also his Statue. *Meyerus* and *John Gerard* of *Leyden* say, That in 1403, a Mermaid was cast ashore by a Tempest near this City, was brought to eat Bread and Milk, and to spin, and liv'd many Years. She would frequently pull off her Clothes, and run towards the Water: She could not speak, but made a confus'd Noise; and having learn'd to make the Sign of the Cross, was buried in the Church-yard when she died. The latter said he had the Relation from several who had seen her.

Without the Walls there's a pleasant Wood, where the Citizens divert themselves. Here *Florance V.* built a Palace, which is call'd the Prince's Palace, where are
the

the Pictures of all the Earls of *Holland* very well done; and in the Summer-House in the Garden, there's that of *Lawrence Coster*. In the other Rooms, there are several excellent Pieces by *Heimskirk* and *Goltzius*; but the best are those of *Cornelius* of *Haërlem*: And here also is the Picture of a Ship with Saws in her Poop, in Remembrance of the Exploit of the *Haërlemers* at *Damiat* above-mentioned, by which they set at Liberty the Count of *Holland*, who was carried Prisoner into that City. They have two Hospitals handfomely kept for Aged and Sick. *Dr. Brown* says, he saw there some Malefactors punish'd by Whipping in this Manner; Upon a Scaffold they erect a Post, to which they tie the Criminals Hands stretch'd up as high as they can, and putting an Iron round their Middle, gave them so many Lashes with Rods as the Judges had appointed. From this City, that called *Haërlem Meer* has its Name, being a Lake above 20 Miles long, and so shallow, that it might easily be dreined, which would make a vast Addition to a Country where they want Ground; but the City of *Leyden* will not consent to it, because from hence they have Water to refresh their Canals, except the old Channel of the *Rhine* were cleansed; and this *Amsterdam* will not agree to; because it would bring *Leyden* a Trade by Sea, and injure their own Commerce. There are many old Castles and Gentlemen's Seats in the Neighbourhood of *Haërlem*; for which the Curious may consult *Bleau's Theatrum Urbium*.

3. *Leyden*, Lat. *Lugdunum Batavorum*, *Leyda*, and *Leyde*, the chief Town of the District of *Rhinland*. It lies, according to *Moll*, about 14 Miles S. W. from *Haërlem*, about 18 from *Amsterdam*, 15 N. W. from *Rotterdam*, and 8 N. E. from the *Hague*. 'Tis one of the neatest and pleafantest Cities in *Europe* for the Beautifulnes and Statelines of its Buildings, the Largeness and Cleanliness of its Streets, the Commodiousness of its Channels, and the agreeable Rows of Trees planted on each Side of 'em; but the Water not having a good Current, the Channels are apt to stink in Summer. It stands on the Old or Middle Channel of the *Rhine*; the Mouth of which being choak'd up, as we have formerly mentioned, occasions the Waters to stagnate. 'Tis encompassed by a

great Number of Cities and large Villages, with which it has an easy Communication by Canals. 'Tis called *Lugdunum Batavorum*, to distinguish it from *Lyons* in *France*; but the Etymology of *Lugdunum* is uncertain, tho' some derive it from *Legio* and *Dunum*, as having been a Station of a Roman Legion, and there being a Hill in the Middle of the City which is express'd by the Latin Word *Dunum*. 'Tis suppos'd to be older than *Haërlem* or *Dort*, tho' they have the Precedency in voting. *Cellarius* takes Notice of its being mention'd by *Ptolomy* and *Anonin*, and that 'tis there call'd *Caput Germaniarum*, which he takes to be meant of the old German Provinces in these Parts; tho' he owns, that it could not be then any thing so considerable as now. Some Ages ago it did not contain above 25 *Rhinlandish* Acres. It has been enlarged at several Times, viz. in 1294, 1313, 1389, 1510, and in 1644. It has 8 Gates, the chief of which, call'd the *White Gate*, was splendidly rebuilt in 1650; and the rest, together with their Bridges, have been lately rebuilt and beautified. *Bleau* says, it has 23 Wards, subdivided into 90 lesser Partitions, call'd Neighbourhoods, 30 Islands, 24 Channels, 180 Streets, 95 Bridges, and 40 Turrets on the Walls. Every Ward has 4 Magistrates, who take Care of Instruments to extinguish Fire. Each Neighbourhood has a Master and two Assessors to compose Differences between the People, and to see that Funerals be decently solemniz'd. The principal Church is that of *St. Peter*, a handsome Building, adorn'd formerly with a lofty Tower, which fell in 1512, and destroy'd their Archives that were kept in it. In this Church are the Epitaphs of many considerable Men. *St. Pancras's* Church is also very stately; and by the Foundations, it appears to have been design'd to have exceeded that of *St. Peter's* at *Rome* for Bulk. *St. Mary's*, now call'd the *French Church*, is a neat Building, but inferior to the other two. There's a Monument erected here for the great *Joseph Scaliger*, in the Place where he us'd to sit and hear Sermon, with a Long Inscription; tho' he himself order'd no more to be writ upon it, says *Henricus*, but *Josephus Justus Scaliger. Jul. Cas. Fil. hic expecto resurrectionem*; and upon the Edge of the Stone, *Terra haec ab Ecclesia empti est nemini Cadaver*

T t t t t :

huc

hic inferre licet. Here is also the Monument of the famous Herbalist *Clusius*, with a Latin Inscription, signifying that he was called thither to adorn the Academy, where he lived 16 Years, and died in 1609, in the 84th Year of his Age, and this Distich under it:

*Non potuit plures hic quærere Clusius Herbas,
Ergo novus Campus quærit in Elisiis.*

Which may be English'd thus:

*Since no more Herbs the Earth to Clusius yields,
He's gone a simpling to the Elysian Fields.*

They have also lately built a new Church of a Circular Form, much admir'd for its Workmanship, especially in the Inside. Their Hospitals are, 1. That of *St. Katharina*, founded about 1348, but much enlarged since. *Beau* says, it consists of 7 distinct Buildings, with 144 Beds for the Sick and Decrepit, and a great Number of Pallets for the Cure of the Diseas'd; a particular Apartment for those who have the *French* Disease, that are look'd after by the City Surgeons; one for entertaining poor Travellers for 3 Nights; another with 68 Beds for such as were distracted, or infected with the Plague, but now us'd for the Ease of the other Apartments when they are too full. Six Men and Six Women, called *Fathers* and *Mothers*, have the Charge of this Hospital. 2. *St. Elizabeth's* Hospital, for Women, which has 65 Beds, and an Apartment to entertain poor Women Travellers for 3 Nights. To this there's annex'd another House of 19 Beds, and there are 4 Men and 4 Women to look after the whole. 3. The Hospitals of *St. James* and *St. Barbara*, now made use of for Clothworkers. They have an Hospital for Orphans, that has been enlarged several times, where, *Dr. Northleigh* says, there are 900 entertained, better than in any other Place in the *Low Countries*. 'Tis govern'd by a Man and a Woman, who have the absolute Management of it, with 4 Men and 4 Women to assist them. They have likewise an Almshouse, where 12 Almoners distribute at Times Bread, Turf, and Money, to the Poor, according to the Number and Condition of their Families. 'Tis said,

they distribute Alms to 20000 Persons within the City. They have 13 other Tenements for the Accommodation of the poorer Sort. They have two great Annual Fairs, during which no Man can be arrested for Debt: The first begins on *Ascension-Day*; and during some Part of the Fair, the Citizens divert themselves with Cross-Bows, and ordinary Bows and Arrows. Their chief Trade is in Cloth and Camblers; and they make great Profit of their Gardening, their Parsnips being carried as far as *Amsterdam*, and much valued. Their Gardners have 4 or 5 Crops a Year from the same Ground; so that their Gardens are sold for 250, and sometimes 300 *l.* an Acre, tho' Arable Land yields but 200 *l.* and Meadow or Pasture but 140. They have 3 Boats that go every Day to *Amsterdam*, 8 to the *Hague*, and as many to *Delph*, at set Hours; and the like Number comes hither from those Places. They have likewise constant Passage-Boats to *Utrecht* and *Haerlem*. The great Court is a noble and large Structure; in the lower Part of which, besides what's applied to other Uses, there are Apartments for 3 Courts of Judicature, one belonging to the City, the other to the University, and the 3d to the Affairs of the *Rhinland*. Over these there are several Chambers for the Meetings of the Magistrates, and other Publick Offices. In that of the City there are many excellent Paintings, and the famous Siege of this Town in 1574 wrought in Tapestry. The Draught of the Last Judgment, by *Lucas Leydensis*, was so much valued by the Emperor *Rodolph II.* that he offered as many *Hungarian* Ducats of Gold for it as would cover it over. That called the *Rhinland-House* is also remarkable, where the Dyk-Grave, with his Assistants, meet about their Business, which is to take Care of the Sluces, Banks, Dikes, and Channels, in the *Rhinland*, to prevent Inundations, and to levy the Rent from the Lands which is appointed for this Use. That called the *Rhinland* is bounded on the W. by the Coast of *Holland*; on the E. by Part of the Diocese of *Utrecht* and *Amstelland*; on the N. by Part of the *Ze*, along the Course of the Dike that goes from *Haerlem* to *Amsterdam*, and by the Shallows and Washes as far as *Beverwick*; and on the S. by a Line drawn from

Mont-

Montfort to Oudewater, from thence to Gouda, and afterwards to the Hague. It had the Name of *Rhenland* from the middle Branch of the Rhine: And all the Inhabitants of this District are obliged, by Laws agreed on among themselves, to provide for the Maintenance and Reparation of the Dikes, Channels, and Sluces, in that Country; and they have several Councils, form'd of a Dyk-Grave, and 7 Assistants called *Heemraden*, who are all sworn to the faithful Execution of their Office. They have also a Hall call'd the *Prince's*, and another for the Archers; upon the Windows of which, all the Earls of Holland are curiously painted. They have a magnificent Building for examining and sealing of Cloth, which much exceeds our *Blackwell-Hall*, whereof they are said to have made 100000 Pieces in one Year. The *Burg*, formerly built for a Defence, but now only an Ornament to the City, stands about the middle of it, in an Angle made by the Channels of the Old and New Rhine. From hence the *Burgraves* or *Governors of Leyden*, frequently met with in History, had their Name. Some say, 'twas built by the *Romans*, as a Garrison to one of their Legions. Others ascribe it to *Hengist the Saxon*, as a Trophy for his Conquest of England. 'Tis a strong round Fortification, built of Stone, has an Ascent of 50 Steps, and is encompassed with a Wall 21 Foot high, the surrounding Arch being 610 Foot in Circuit. From hence there's a pleasant Prospect of the Town, the neighbouring Country, and *Haerlem Lake*. It has a deep dry Pit in the middle, supposed to have been the Gate of a Passage under Ground from hence to *Canwick* on the Sea, which is about 4 Miles. Over the Gate of it stand the Arms of the City, being the Cross-Keys, with a Lion Rampant Gardant, and a Sword in his Right Paw, with this Motto on one Side, *Pugno pro Patria*; i. e. I fight for my Country; and on the other, *Hec Libertatis ergo*; i. e. These are the Marks of my Liberty. The chief Streets are, *Rampinburg*, the pleasantest; that which reaches from the Hague Gate to that of *Utrecht*, which has the best Trade; and the *Haerlem Street* which is the largest. The Canal of the Old Rhine has 6 Bridges, 4 of Wood, and 2 of Stone: One of the latter is their Market for Corn, and the other for

Fish. This City was besieged by the *Spaniards* in 1574, who knowing the Strength of it, encompass'd it with 60 Forts, in order to starve them out. The Siege continued with great Vigour above 5 Months, which reduc'd the Inhabitants to the greatest Extremity by Hunger and Fatigue, during which above 10000 of 'em perished; but considering the barbarous Usage that *Haerlem* met with, they resolved to hold out to the last, and gave this Answer to one of the Enemy's Summons, *That they would not yield so long as they had one Hand to eat, and another to fight*. But their Necessities press'd so hard upon them at last, that they were forc'd to have Recourse to a desperate Remedy, which the Prince of Orange had advis'd them to before, viz. to cut the main Banks of the *Maes* and *IJssel* betwixt *Gouda* and *Rotterdam*, to lay the Country under Water; which at first rising but slowly, gave them little Help; but towards the End of September, all the Country about was turn'd to a Sea, and drown'd 1500 *Spaniards*, before they could retire. The first Relief they received was on the 3d of October; the Anniversary of which they still observe as a Day of Thanksgiving, and every Year they have a Tragi-Comedy to represent this Siege; and the Money receiv'd from the Multitudes that come to see it is applied to the Use of their Poor. They were forc'd to make Paper Money during the Siege, which was afterwards chang'd into Silver, being two Pieces of different Value. The bigger had stamp'd on the Face, a Lion holding up a Hat on a Spear, with this Legend round the Side, *Hec Libertatis ergo*; and on the Reverse the City Arms, and these Letters in the Middle, *N. O. U. L. S. G. I. P. A. C. i. e. Nummus obfissa Urbis Lugdunensis sub Gubernatione Illustrissimi Principis Auriaci Cusui*. In English; The Money of the besieg'd T. of *Leyden*, coin'd under the Government of the most Illustrious Pr. of Orange. The lesser Piece had on the Face, a Lion with a Cross-Keys, and this Legend, *Pugno pro Patria*; and on the Reverse, *Lugdunum Batavorum*. In 1575, the University was founded here by the State General, to reward the Inhabitants for their Bravery; in Remembrance of which, they kept a Jubile the 8th of February, 1675, their Scile being then 200 Years from its Foundation: And

And tho' the Country was then in great Distress because of the *French* Invasion, they gave the Pr. of *Orange*, the States, and others of the Nobility, a splendid Entertainment. The Schools of this University consist of a large Pile of Brick Building, 3 Stories high, and 2 Rooms on a Floor. In the uppermost, the famous Printer *Elzevir* kept his Shop. The Students have sometimes been 2000. Adjoining to it is the Physick Garden, well stor'd with Plants, and a long Gallery, where the Professor of Botany reads his Lectures. Here there are abundance of Curiosities; among others, a Sea-Horse as big as a Bull, whom it resembles in Shape, brought from the Cape of *Good Hope*; and a Bird's-Nest made of Sea-Froth, by a certain Fowl in the Kingdom of *Coramandel* in the *East-Indies*, which the *Chinese* dissolve in Pottage, and reckon it an excellent Dish. There's another Building for Publick Lectures near the Garden. There are only two endow'd Colleges in this University, the rest of the Students living where they please in the Town. The Professors, when they read Lectures, or preside in publick Disputations, wear Gowns, but not otherwise; and the Students wear no distinct Habit. Each Professor, besides what he has from the Students, has a Salary of about 2 or 300 *l.* per *Annium* from the States. They confer no Degrees but that of Master of Arts and Doctor in each Faculty. Those matriculated in the University-Register have very large Privileges, and are exempted from paying Excise, if above 20 Years of Age, for a certain Quantity of Beer and Wine. The Rector *Magnificus*, who was formerly chosen out of three presented to the Stadtholder, and now to the States General, is chosen Annually, and enters on his Office the 8th of *February*, the Day when the University was dedicated. Besides him, there are 3 Curators, who have the 4 Burgomasters for their Colleagues, and the Syndic for their Counsellor. The University Senate consists of 12 Professors, being 3 of each Faculty; but the Curators may augment their Number, under certain Limitations. The Rector, with his 4 Assessors, the Burgomasters, and some of the *Eschevins*, determine all Causes Civil and Criminal; and the Rector gives Sentence without Appeal. The most considerable Thing

in the Library are the MSS. which are numerous, and of great Value. *Joseph Scaliger* gave 'em 87, Dr. *Warner* 956, *Golinus* brought 221 from the *East*: They have 9 that came from *Mauritania*, 370 Greek and Latin, and 6 belonging to the old Library. In the Anatomy Theatre, which is much better than that of *Padua*, or our Chirurgion's Hall, they have vast Numbers of Skeletons of all Sorts and Sizes, several Mummies, Heathen Relicks and Idols, Habits of divers Countries, the Skeleton of a young Whale above 6 Yards long, taken out of an old one; a Man's Bladder, that holds two Gallons of Water; the Mummy of an *Egyptian* Prince, said to be 1800 Years old; and a Toadstool that grew in *Haerlem* Lake, said to be 1000. The Curious may see more of this in Dr. *Northleigh's* Description of the *United Netherlands*. There have been many famous Professors in all Faculties in this University, whom we have not Room to name. This City is also noted for the Birth of the Taylor, *Johm of Leyden*, King of the *Munster* Anabaptists. The Government of this City being like that of *Amsterdam*, we pass it over, as we do the Lordships, Villages, and Districts, under its Jurisdiction; of which the Curious may inform themselves from *Meursius's Athena Batava*, and *Boxhornius's Theatrum*. Dr. *Northleigh* says, the Apothecaries and Chirurgions, of the latter of which there's above 100, have each a Hall; and without the Walls there's a Pest-house, with a stately Walk of tall Trees to it. The House is well built, nobly endow'd, and a Revenue laid up for it every Year.

The chief Places in the Neighbourhood of *Leyden* are, 1. *Rhinsburg*, anciently a strong Town, that had a Nunnery for Women of Quality, and lies 4 Miles N. W. from *Leyden*. 2. *Nortwyck*, 4 Miles further N. W. a pleasant Place, inhabited by many Gentlemen. 3. *Valkenburg*, noted for a great Annual Horse-Fair in *September*, where Foreigners come to buy Horses. 4. *Britain's* House, or Castle, 5 Miles N. W. from *Leyden*, and about 1 1/2 N. from *Catwyck* on the Sea. 'Twas discovered about 300 Years ago, upon the retiring of the Ocean from the old Mouth of the *Rhine*; but more in 1550 and 1552, when the Sands were left bare for 20 Days. It has been a Square of

of 960 Roman Foot in Compass. At that Time many large Stones, Bricks, and old fashion'd Vessels, and Roman Coins of several Metals, were dug up, with this Inscription, *Ex Ger. Inf.* Some think 'twas built by *Galigula*, for a Granary of Corn brought out of Britain. 5. *Alphen*, about 8 Miles S. E. from *Leyden*, supposed to be *Antonin's Albiniana Castra*, or the Camp of *Alphenus Varus*, the *Batavian* General mentioned by *Tacitus*. 6. *Romburch*, between *Alphen* and *Leyden*, called by *Velfernus*, *Prætorium Agrippinae*, where many Roman Coins of Silver and Brass, and old Statues, &c. have been found. The District of *Rhinland*, of which *Leyden* is the Metropolis, contains above 57 Villages and Gentlemen's Seats; which, with the numerous Canals and pleasant Walks, make a most charming Prospect from the neighbouring Sand-Hills. Many of these Villages have their Annual Fairs, where formerly the Boors us'd to play at Back-Sword, and mangle one another with as much Fury as the Roman Gladiators, till 'twas forbid by the States. 7. *Bodegrave*, about 11 Miles S. E. from *Leyden*, the Seat of the ancient *Baguada*, mentioned by *Cornelius Aurelius*, supposed to have been a sort of Banditi. 'Twas a very fine Village till burnt by the French in 1672. 'Twas afterwards fortified by the Dutch, and noted for the Prince of Orange's Camp to cover the Country against the French at that Time. 8. *Woerden* or *Voerden*, about 7 Miles E. from *Bodegrave*. 'Twas built to be a Curb on *Utrecht* by Bishop *Godfrey* about 1160, and the Cause of bloody Wars betwixt the *Hollanders* and those of *Utrecht*: *Herman* of *Woerden*, one of the Assassins of Count *Florent V.* harboured there; upon which the Dutch took it. The French took it in 1672, fortified and put 2000 Men in it. The Pr. of *Orange* kill'd 2000 French before it, but fail'd of taking it. The French deserted it in 1703, after destroying most of the Fortifications, and made the Town pay 16000 Guilders to be rescued from the Flames. 9. *Oudemater*, about 7 Miles S. from *Woerden*, upon the *IJssel*, noted for good Hemp produced in its Soil, and for several Learned Men. The Spaniards burnt it in 1575, when they were forc'd from before *Leyden*, and cut off most of the Inhabitants: Since which, it has never recover'd its ancient Splendour.

In the Neighbourhood of *Leyden*, between *Rhinland*, the Ocean, the Body of *North-Holland*, the *Te*, and Lake of *Haerlem*, lies *Kenemerland*, which *Hadrianus Junius* thinks to have been the Seat of the ancient *Cannefates*, mentioned by the Roman Historians. *Courinzius* supposes it was called by the present Name, which signifies the King's Palace, because the ancient Counts of *Holland* resided here. The Latin Name *Cannefates* is said to come from their feeding on Conies, which abound in this Country. The Inhabitants formerly, under the Conduct of *Gysbrecht* Lord of *Amsel*, in the Reign of *Florent V.* took Arms against their Magistrates, out of a levelling Principle; but were afterwards reduced, and prosecuted the Murtherers of Count *Florent* with great Zeal, tho' their Leader *Gysbrecht* was one of 'em.

4. The *Hague*, Lat. *Haga Comitum*; in Dutch, *S. Gravenhage*; i. e. The Grove of the Earls. It lies about 8 Miles S. W. from *Leyden*, 6 N. W. from *Delph*, 12 N. W. from *Rotterdam*, and about two S. E. from *Scheveling*. 'Tis reckon'd the principal Village in *Europe*, is encompassed with a broad Ditch, enjoys all the Privileges of a City, except sending Deputies to the States; and is so large and populous, that it exceeds several considerable Cities: The Streets are long and large, the Buildings are stately, and it abounds with shady Walks. On the Side of *Delph*, there are lovely Meadows, through which there's a Way cut to *Scheveling* with infinite Expence. 'Tis a hollow, streight, and pav'd Road, where all Passengers, except the Fishermen of *Scheveling*, pay a certain Tax towards reimbursing the Charge, and keeping it in Repair; which Taxes are said to arise to 4000 Guilders per Annum. On the Side of *Leyden*, there's a large Wood, which abounds with Oaks, there being none else in the Province. 'Tis about 1500 Paces long; but nothing near so broad, well stor'd with Deer, Hares, and other Game; and is of great Use to the Inhabitants for taking the Air. In this Wood, there's a fair Structure built for a House of Mourning, by *Amalia* of *Solms*, Widow to Pr. *Henry Frederick* of *Orange*, which is signified by an Inscription of Gold Letters round the Gallery. It has a spacious Garden, with many pleasant Groves adjoining to the House.

At the Entrance on the Right, are two white Marble Statues of *William I.* and Prince *Maurice*; and on the Left, those of Prince *Henry Frederick* and *William II.* and further in on the same Side, a Chamber floor'd with Cedar, and hung with Arras, representing the glorious Actions of Prince *Henry*. In the Lantern on the Top, there's a Gallery for Musick; and in the middle of the Sieling, the Picture of Princess *Amalia* in Mourning. The Prince's Palace in the Town was built in 1250 by *William II.* Count of *Holland*, and K. of the *Romans*, who removed hither the Court of *Holland* from *Gravesand*. Part of the old Buildings, with a large Hall fill'd with Trophies taken from their Enemies, Stationers, and Picture-sellers, like that of *Westminster*, but nothing so large, still remain. The Palace added by *Pr. Maurice* makes it a noble and spacious Building: It contains the Prince's Lodgings, and the Places where the States General and Provincial, and the Supreme Court of *Holland*, meet. 'Tis fortified with good Ditches, and Guards are constantly kept at the Gates. On the N. Side, there's a large Pond, with stately Walks of Tile-Trees on its Banks. There are two Churches belonging to it, one of 'em formerly a *Jacobine* Cloyster, and the other lately built, of a round Figure, but no Pillars within, and so beautiful on the Outside, that 'tis scarce to be match'd in the *Netherlands*. There are two fine Piazza's, one before, and another behind the Palace, with stately Houses. Here Foreign Ambassadors are lodg'd, and in this Part of the Town the States General have their Houses. Every City has built Houses for their Deputies: That of the Deputies of *Leyden* is reckon'd the finest. A sumptuous House for founding of Cannon was built here in one Year during their War with *England*. In 1661, a Hospital was built by one *Newport*, a Popish Woollendrapier, for 60 poor Popish Widows; but the States oblig'd him to allow one half for Protestants. 'Tis built uniform, and every Widow has a Garden. The Market-place faces the great Church, which is a high square Tower. In this Church Admiral *Obdam* has a stately Monument, with an Account of his great Actions; particularly that wherein he was killed by the *English* in 1666, and blew up his own

Ship, as is said in his Epitaph. The Inhabitants refused formerly to have the Town walled or fortified, reckoning it more glorious to be the chief Village of *Europe*, than an ordinary City, which cost 'em dear: The D. of *Guelder's* General having invaded the Country meerly for the Plunder of this Town, which occasioned it afterwards to be encompassed with a Ditch. This Place has produc'd many Learned Men, among whom was *Joannes de Haga*, called otherwise *Joannes de Indagine*: But for this we refer to *Bleau* and *Guicciardin*.

Within two Miles of this Place lies the Village of *Ryswick*, where the Prince has a noble Palace, with fine Gardens. 'Twas formerly called *Newburg-House*, because built by a D. of *Newburg*. 'Tis famous for the Treaty concluded there betwixt the Confederates and *France* in 1697; is adorned with a Marble Stair-Cafe, Marble Floors, and Paintings by the best Masters; has a fine Terrace, and a noble and lofty Front of Free-stone.

5. *Scherveling*, 2 Miles N. W. from the *Hague*, lies on the Sea: Part of it is Annually carried off by the Waves; so that from being a Town of good Note, 'tis now become an inconsiderable Village; yet it retains its Privileges: And 'tis said, no Malefactor can be condemned at the *Hague*, except the Eschevins of this Town pronounce Sentence. 'Tis noted for Fishing, and for a Sailing-Chariot belonging to Prince *Maurice* kept here. 'Twas made by *Stevinus*, a great Mathematician, and in two Hours Time would sail from *Scherveling* to *Pu'ten*, which is 42 Miles, with 28 Persons in it; and tho' the Wind were strong, 'twas not discern'd by the Passengers, it sail'd so swift. *Grotius* made several fine Epigrams and Copies of Verses upon this famous Machine and its Author; for which we refer to *Bleau*. The Form of it resembled a Boat: It mov'd upon 4 Wheels of an equal Bigness, and had 2 Sails, was steer'd by a Rudder, plac'd behind the 2 hindermost Wheels, and was stop'd by letting down the Sails, or turning it from the Wind; so that it seem'd to exceed for Art the Chariots made use of by the *Chinese* in their Champion Countries. They likewise make use of a little Vessel in this Province capable of holding two Persons, with a Bottom like a Sledge,

Sledge, which they drive upon the Ice; and 'tis form'd to much like a Boat, that if the Ice should break, the Passengers are in no Danger. The *Atlas Historique* takes Notice, That in 1672, when *England* and *France* design'd to have invaded *Holland* by Sea, the Tide chang'd its usual Course, and was stop'd for 12 Hours, tho' very regular at other Times, to the great Astonishment of the Inhabitants; and next Morning the *French* and *English* Fleets were scattered by a dreadful Tempest. About 10 Miles S. W. from the *Hague* stands *Honstaerdyk*, a stately Palace belonging to the Pr. of *Orange*, with fine Gardens, beautiful Fountains and Statues, and among them some Antick ones, as *Roman* Gladiators, *Samson* tearing a Lion, &c. Dr. *Northleigh* says, 'tis superior to many noted Places in *Italy*: The lower Rooms are pav'd with Marble, and those above are very sumptuous. There are two Galleries full of excellent Paintings; and the Prince's Closet is curiously wainscotted with fine Japan-work. On the Backside there's a pleasant Grove, with several regular Plantations of Greens, which make a Square of half a Mile from each Angle to the Center; and beyond this they have a Place for Foreign Birds and Beasts, that are kept there in great Numbers.

About 6 Miles N. W. from the *Hague*, is the Village of *Losdun*, in whose Church lies entomb'd *Margaret*, Wife to *Herman* Count of *Hennenberg*, Daughter to *Florence* Count of *Holland* and *Zealand*, and Sister to *William* K. of the *Romans*; who, in the 40th Year of her Age, meeting with a poor Woman that had two Twins in her Arms, upbraided her as unchast; alledging, that one Man could not get two Children at once: Upon which the Woman, being provok'd, wish'd the Countess might have as many Children at a Birth as there were Days in the Year; which they say came to pass in 1276, when she was brought to Bed of 365 Sons and Daughters, that were all baptiz'd by *Guido*, a Suffragan of *Utrecht*; all the Males being called *John*, and the Females *Elizabeth*. *Guicciardin* quotes *Erasmus* and *Ludovicus Vives* for the Story. 'Tis also mentioned by Mr. *Ray*, Mr. *Misson*, and Dr. *Northleigh*; but the latter suspects it as a Popish Legend: Yet in the Church there's a Table fix'd to the Wall, with an In-

scription relating the Fact. This Inscription appears to be new, because that related by *Guicciardin* 100 Years ago is shorter, and of another Nature. They shew here two Brass Basons in which the Children were baptiz'd, with this Latin Distich under them:

*Entibi monstrosum nimis & memorabile factum,
Quale nec a Mundi Conditione datum.*

Importing, that such a Monstrous Birth was never heard of since the Creation. *Bleau* and *Johnson* do likewise relate the Inscription different from what 'tis now. From all which we may conclude, that there was certainly such a Monstrous Birth, since 'tis told by so many Authors of Credit, but aggravated with fabulous Circumstances by the Monks.

6. *Delph*, Lat. *Delphum*, and *Delphi*. It had its Name from the Ditch cut between it and the *Hague*. It lies 6 Miles S. E. from the *Hague*, 10 S. W. from *Leyden*, and 8 N. W. from *Rotterdam*. 'Tis a large, neat, and stately City, and has spacious Streets, with Currents of Water running through them. The Stadthouse is a noble Structure, with a Court of Justice, and 6 other large Apartments for the Magistrates. There's a spacious Square betwixt it and the New Church, which has a lofty Steeple. In this Church there's a noble Monument, erected to the Memory of Pr. *William* I. of *Orange*, who was barbarously murder'd here, as we formerly mentioned, with this Inscription:

D. O. M. Et aeterna Memoria Gulielmi Nassovii, Supremi Arausionensium Principis. Patr. Patr. qui Belgii Fortunam suas posthabuit & suorum, valedissimos exercitus ere plurimum privato bis conscripsit, bis induxit. Ordinum Auspiciis Hispaniae Tyrannidem propulit. Verae Religionis cultum; Avitas Patriae Leges; revocavit, restituit. Ipsam denique Libertatem tantum non asseritam, Mauricio Principi, Paterna virtutis haeredi Filio, Sta'iliendam reliquit. Herois vere pii, prudentis, invicti, quem Philip. II. Hisp. R. Europa Timor timuit; non d' mait, non terruit; sed empto Percussore fraude nefanda sustulit. Federat. Belg. Provinc. Perenni Memor. Monum. fec.

" To the great and good GOD, and to
" the immortal Memory of *William* of *Nas-*
U u u u u " *sa*,

"*Jau*, Sovereign Pr. of *Orange*, the Father
 " of his Country, who prefer'd the Pro-
 " sperity of the *Netherlands* to that of him-
 " self and his Family; did twice levy and
 " bring in an Army at his own Charge;
 " repell'd the Tyranny of *Spain* under the
 " Conduct of the States; recover'd and
 " restor'd the true Religion, and the ancient
 " Laws of his Country, and left its Liber-
 " ty to be established by his Son Pr. *Mau-
 " rice*, the Heir of his Father's Virtues:
 " The States of the United *Netherlands* have
 " erected this Monument, to perpetuate
 " the Memory of that truly pious, pru-
 " dent and invincible Hero, whom *Phi-
 " lip II.* of *Spain*, the Terror of *Europe*,
 " dreaded; but not being able to terrify or
 " conquer, he hir'd an Assassin treacherously
 " to murder.

Dr. *Northleigh* says, Pr. *William's* Tomb
 has his Effigies upon it in Marble, and his
 Statue standing by it in Brass, arm'd Cap-
 a-pé, and a Fame sounding over him, with
 this Motto, *Te vindice tuta Libertas*; i. e. You
 were the Champion and Preserver of our Li-
 berty; and another Emblem of his going on
 steadily in a Storm, with this Motto, *Servis
 tranquillus in Undis*. At his Feet there lies the
 Representation of a Dog, which they say
 dy'd of Grief when he was murder'd.
 The Dr. adds, That this Monument is a-
 dorn'd with as good Brass Statues and Mar-
 ble as any he saw in *Italy*. There are 4 other
 Princes and Princesses of his Family con-
 tain'd in this Monument. In the Old
 Church, which is also a stately Fabrick, but
 inferior to the New, are the Monuments of
 the great *Van Trump* and *Van Heine*, two of
 their Admirals, who were slain at Sea.

This City is two Miles in Circumference,
 and fortified with a Wall and Ditch, but
 after the ancient Manner. The chief Ma-
 gazine and Armory of the States is kept
 here, where they have two Pieces of Or-
 nance cast at *Lubeck* in 1669, which weigh
 8000 Pounds each. 'Tis noted for its excel-
 lent Earthen Ware, in Imitation of Porce-
 lain. It formerly had a great Trade in Beer,
 and likewise in Cloth; but the latter is
 much decay'd, (tho' they value themselves
 upon it) because of their Differences with
 our *English* Merchants, who removed from
 hence to *Rotterdam*. This City lies in a

Plain among pleasant Meadows, which they
 can overflow at Pleasure by their Sluces.
 'Twas built by *Godfrey the Crooked of Lorrain*,
 who was Count of *Holland* for some Years.
Albert of *Bavaria* took it after 7 Weeks
 Siege, because it favour'd the Faction of the
Hoeks: Upon which he dismantled it, and
 fin'd it in 10000 Crowns. In 1536, most
 of it was burnt down, when the old Storks,
 which build in their Chimnies, chose ra-
 ther to be burnt than to leave their Young.
 In 1654, the States Magazine was blown up
 here by an unknown Accident, which beat
 down about 200 Houses, killed and wound-
 ed many People, and others were miracu-
 lously sav'd under the Ruins. It has pro-
 duced many Learned Men in all Faculties,
 for whom we refer to *Bleau*; but they are
 aham'd of the blasphemous Heretick *David
 George*, who was born here of mean Paren-
 tage, and personated our Saviour, but fled
 from hence, and died under a Counterfeit
 Name at *Basse* in 1556, where his Corps was
 expos'd to publick Disgrace, and his Estate
 confiscated, *Delph's* Haven belongs to this
 Town, and lies within half a League of
Rotterdam, with which, and *Delph*, it has a
 Communication by a Canal. *Albert* of *Ba-
 varia* allow'd those of *Delph* to build this
 Haven, for the good Services they did him.
 The *East-India* Company have a stately
 House here. 'Tis conveniently seated for
 a strong Fortification, and sends out Bus-
 ses, &c. for Fishing. It has a tolerable
 Court and a Church, and is defended by
 3 strong Banks against Inundations and
 Tempests.

Seven Miles S.W. from *Delph* lies *Masland-
 Sluce*, formerly a small Village, but now
 become a considerable Town by their Fi-
 shery. About 3 Miles further S. lies *Vla-
 erdingen*, Lat. *Vlaerdinga*, now a poor Vil-
 lage; but once so considerable a Town,
 that anciently it gave Name to the whole
 Province. 'Twas mostly destroyed by In-
 undations, and their Trade is now enjoy'd
 by *Delph* and *Rotterdam*. Near the Mouth
 of the *Maas*, about 7 Miles from *Delph*, lies
Gravesand, Lat. *Comitis Arena*, formerly a
 well fortified Town, the Seat of the Counts
 of *Holland*, and of the Provincial States;
 but now a small Village. In 1546, upon
 digging up some old Foundations, several
 curious Earthen Vessels, suppos'd to be 1400
 Years

Years old, were found here. The adjacent Country produces the best Wheat, and sweetest Grass, in *Holland*, which makes the *Gravesand* Cheeses highly esteem'd. Near this Place stood the ancient Palace of the Lords of *Polan*, which, with several neighbouring Castles, were burnt by those of *Delph* in 1359. This Estate now belongs to the Family of *Orange*. Betwixt *Klaerdin-gen* and *Delph's* Haven, lies *Schiedam*, at the Mouth of the *Schie*, which gives Name to *Schieland*. This Town is very ancient, was made a City in 1274, and still has Magistrates, and some Villages under its Jurisdiction. 'Tis chiefly noted for Herring-fishing, and making of Nets.

7. *Rotterdam*, lies at the Mouth of the *Rotter*, 8 Miles N. E. from *Delph*, about 3 E. from *Schiedam*, 7 S. W. from *Goude*, and 8 N. W. from *Dort*. 'Tis the chief City of *Schieland*, and, according to *Guicciardin* and *Trithemius*, was founded by one *Ruterius*, a King of the *Franks*, in the 89th Year of Christ: The Truth of which is doubted. 'Tis of a Triangular Figure, and so much increas'd of late, that, next to *Amsterdam* and *Leyden*, 'tis suppos'd to be the biggest Town in *Holland*; but in Trade, is certainly next to *Amsterdam*. It lies on the N. Side of the *Maes*, which is very broad there, and makes a good Harbour, tho' 15 Miles distant from the Sea. By the deep Canals which run into the Heart of the City, Ships of great Burden come into it, lade and unlade at the Merchants Doors, where they lie safe from all Danger. The City is large, and exceeding populous; and their Port is frequented by more Ships from *Great Britain* than that of *Amsterdam*, because 'tis more commodious. The Greatness of their Trade has occasioned them to enlarge the Town, and to purchase new Privileges. They have a considerable Trade in Beer, which is transported to *Amsterdam* and other Places; and every Hour of the Day, at the ringing of a certain Bell, a Passage Boat goes off to some of the neighbouring Towns. The Houses are of Brick, and many of 'em magnificent, with Door-Cases, Window-Cases, and Stair-Cases, of Marble. The Streets are large and near. The *Stadthoufe*, *Exchange*, *East-India* House, and *Admiralty*, are good Structures; and their Glass-House one of the best in the

7 Provinces, where they make abundance of Glass Toys and Enamel'd Bowls, which they send to the *Indies*. They have 4 Churches, of which *St. Lawrence's* is the largest. From the Top of its Steeple there's a fair Prospect of *Delph*, the *Hague*, *Leyden*, *Dort*, and the greatest Part of *South-Holland*. This Town is noted for the Birth of several great Men, and particularly *Erasmus*, who was born in a little House near the great Church, and over the Door there's his Picture, with this Distich:

*Edibus his Ortus Mundum decoravit Erasmus,
Artibus ingenuis, Religione, Fide.*

Importing, That *Erasmus* was born here, to adorn the World with Arts, Learning and Religion. There are other Inscriptions of the same Nature in *Spanish* and *Dutch*. On the great Bridge in the spacious Market-place, there's a stately Brass Statue of *Erasmus*, in a fur'd Gown and a round Cap, with a Book in one Hand, and the other upon it, as if he were turning a Leaf. There are several Latin Inscriptions on the Pedestal in Commendation of this great Man, and they have likewise his Picture, which was sent them from *Basil* 4 Years before his Death. The *English* and *Scots* have two considerable Churches here. In the great Church are the Tombs of *Cornelius de Wit* and *de Cortenaer*, two of their Admirals, who were slain at Sea. Their fairest Structure is that called the *Cheminhuys*, or Senate-House, where they consult about Publick Affairs. 'Tis a spacious square Building, whose Front is of Free-stone, curiously adorn'd with Fret-work. The Air of this City is not very good; for its low Situation makes it liable to Fogs, and their Canals have not Current enough to carry off their Filth, which makes them noisome in the Summer; but there are many curious Walks about the City, which make it very pleasant, and its Situation is strong. Their Dock for building Ships deserves also a Traveller's View.

8. *Goude* or *Tergou*, is about 8 Miles N. E. from *Rotterdam*, stands on the Conflux of the *Iffel* and *Gouwe*, from which 'tis named. 'Twas founded by Count *Florent V.* about 1262, who granted it many Privileges. 'Twas burnt down about 100 Years after, and likewise in 1420, during the War be-

U u u u u 2

twixt

twixt *Jaqueline* of *Bavaria* and *Philip* of *Burgundy*. 'Tis almost of a round Figure, stands in a moorish Soil; and by their Sluces, can drown the adjacent Country, which makes it unaccessible, except by two Banks on each Side the *Iffel*, which are so well fortified, that no Enemy can come that Way; and the Town is likewise encompassed with a broad and deep Ditch. They had formerly a Castle, where the Archives of *Holland* were kept; of which nothing remains now but a high Tower. The Market-place is very large; the Town-House stands in the middle, and near it the great Church, which is said to exceed the Cathedral of *Cologne* for Bulk. It had a stately Tower, which, together with the Church, was burnt down by Lightning in 1552. After which, 'twas rebuilt in more Splendour than before. The Painting of its Windows is so extraordinary, as scarce to be equal'd. The whole Town was burnt down in 1438, all but 5 Houses. Their Buildings are for most part more neat than stately. The City is kept very clean by a multitude of Canals and small Currents, which are cleansed by the Tide. The Air is so good, that 'tis seldom or never troubled with the Plague. 'Tis encompassed with Multitudes of Gardens; and the Generality of the Citizens are observ'd to be such as have retired from the World, to spend the Remainder of their Time in Quiet and Pleasure. The Cheese made in its District is much esteemed. For the Learned Men born in this Place, we refer to *Bleau*.

Goudefuce, which takes its Name from this Place, lies near the old Channel of the *Rhine*, between *Bedegrave* and *Leyden*. 'Twas strongly fortified by the States, to stop the Incursions of the *French* in 1672 and 1673.

9. *Schoonhoven*, lies 8 Miles S. E. from *Goude*, 10 Miles W. from *Vianen*, and 13 E. from *Rotterdam*. It takes Name from its fine Gardens; and lies on the N. Side of the *Lech*. *Florent IV.* cast up a huge Bank between *Amerongen* and this Town in 1252, which brought great Profit to it and the neighbouring Country. 'Twas almost quite burnt down in 1330. 'Twas taken from *John* of *Brabant*, to whom most of the Cities of *Holland* had submitted, in 1424, by the Troops of Countess *Jaqueline*, when all the

Garrison, except *Albert Beyling*, one of the Governors of the Castle, were put to Death immediately; and he having only a Month's Time given him to visit his Friends, and settle the Affairs of his Family, he return'd, say the *Dutch Writers*, like *Regulus* the *Roman*, and put himself into the Hands of his Enemies, who cruelly buried him alive. Its Trade is advanced by a Stream of the *Iffel*, which falls here into the *Lech*, and they have a considerable Advantage by Herring-fishing. 'Tis so well fortified, that the *French* were repulsed before it in 1672 with considerable Loss. Its Fortifications have been much improved since that Time. *John Tate*, a Man of a Gigantic Stature, was born here since 1660, and carried about most Countries of *Europe* for a Show. A Man of a middle Stature might easily stand under his Arm-Pit. From the End of his middle Finger, which was 7 Inches long, to his Elbow, were 25 Inches and an half. The Length of his Hand to his Wrist was 11 Inches, and all his Limbs proportionable. *Oliver van Nort*, one of the first that sailed round the World, is buried here in the great Church. The famous *Longolius* and other Learned Men were born in this Place.

10. The *Brill*, lies in the Island called *Voorn*. *Hadrianus Junius* derives its Name from *Breheel*, as being situated on that broad Mouth of the *Rhine* called anciently *Helius*, which seems confirmed by the neighbouring Town called *Helvoetsluse*, at the Bottom of the said Channel. This Town is noted for being taken by the *Sea Geuse*, as formerly mentioned, which retrieved the Affairs of the United Provinces, and ruin'd those of *Spain*. 'Tis very strong, and has a convenient Port, which brings it a good Trade, and makes it populous. 'Twas one of the Cautionary Towns given to *Qu. Elizabeth* for assisting the *Dutch*, and restor'd to them 30 Years after by *K. James I.* The great *Sir Francis Vere* was Governor of it for some Time. The City is neat and well built, lies 12 Miles below *Rotterdam* to the W. and was the usual Place where Packet-Boats arriv'd from *England* formerly, till they found *Helvoetsluse* more convenient. The Streets are large and handsome: Their great Church is a good Structure, and the Steeple a Land-mark to Sailors. There are plea-

pleasant Walks of Trees on the Walls. The Island in general is fruitful in Wheat and other Corn; but the Air too moist by the Neighbourhood of the Sea and the *Maes*.

11. *Helvoetsluice*, lies 3 Miles S. from the *Brill*, has a convenient Harbour, where the Packet-Boat from *England* usually arrives. 'Twill be for ever memorable for the Pr. of *Orange's* setting out from hence with his Fleet and Army in 1688, to rescue *Great Britain* and *Ireland* from Popery and Slavery. The Land of *Putten* makes Part of the same Island, and is only divided from the Territory of the *Brill*, and that called *Beyerland*, by some Dikes and Channels. The chief Town is *Geeroliet*, seated among fruitful Fields; which, besides Corn, produces a Turf, and a prickly Herb like *Spanish Broom*, which Providence seems to have furnished on those sandy Downs, to prevent their being carried away by the Wind, and exposing the Country to Inundations. The two *Beyerlands* have likewise good Arable Land, and Pasture Grounds.

Three Miles S. W. of *Helvoetsluice* lies the small Island called *Goeree*, which signifies a good Road for Ships, by which the Town of that Name grew very rich; but the Harbour is of late choak'd up by Sand, which has lessen'd its Trade. There's a Tower here, which is a Land-mark for Sailors.

East from this Island lies *Over-Flackee*, about 13 Miles long, and 4 where broadest. It has many Villages and Towns, the chief of which is *Summersdyck*, that belongs to *Zealand*. It had formerly a good Trade, which is now decay'd. This Island has much good Corn Land, but little Pasturage. Betwixt *Voorn* and *Rotterdam*, lies the Isle of *Iffelmond* or *Overmaes*, where the *Iffel* empties it self into that River. 'Tis equal to any Part of the Province for Fruitfulness and Richness of Soil, is about 10 Miles long, and 4 where broadest. 'Twas recover'd from the Sea by *Charles the Warlike* of *Burgundy*.

12. *Dort*, is Capital of its Bailiwick, and the first in Dignity of the Province of *Holland*. This Bailiwick was made an Island in 1421, when a Tempest drove the Waters up the *Maes* and *Meruwe*, with such Violence, that it overflow'd the Banks, and swallow'd up a large Tract of Land between

Dort and *Brabant*, with 72 Villages, and 100000 People. Some say, That a wicked Boor, bearing a Grudge to one of his Neighbours, made a Hole in the Bank to let in the Water to drown him and his Family by Night, designing afterwards to have made up the Breach; but the Wind being high at the same time, the Waves broke in with such Force, that the Fellow was drown'd in the Attempt, and occasioned the Desolation above-mentioned. This City is very ancient, and, according to *Scri-verius*, was so considerable in 898, that it held out a Siege against one of the Counts of *Holland*. It stands on the *Meruwe*, which being made up of the *Maes*, the *Rhine*, and the *Ling*, gave Occasion for some Geographers to say, that it stood upon 4 Rivers. 'Tis so strong by Nature since its Bailiwick was made an Island, that it has little need of Art. 'Twas formerly the Seat of the Earls of *Holland*, and the Place where they and their Subjects swore mutually to one another upon their Inauguration. The Name of *Dordrecht* signifies a Ferry on the River *Dort*, upon which it formerly stood; but this River is now swallowed up by the Channel of the *Maes*. It lies about 9 Miles S. E. from *Rotterdam*, and 11 S. from *Goude*, is a large, rich, and populous City. The Houses are high, and of Brick, scarce inferior to those of *Antwerp*: The Streets are kept neat and clean, pav'd in the Middle with Stone, and on the Sides with Bricks set Edge-wise. The *English* Merchants keep a Court here, where they have great Privileges, and two Churches, as the *French* have one. From the Steeple of the principal Church, there is so large a Prospect, that one may see as far as *Breda*. In one of the upper Rooms of the Gunners-Hall or Guild, sate the famous Synod which condemn'd the *Arminians*. It has the Staple of Wines brought down the *Rhine*, and has close and strong arch'd Cellars for keeping it; but *Rotterdam* has now a large Share of that Trade. It has also the Staple of Corn, Wood, and other Merchandize, brought down the *Rhine*; and abundance of Salmon and other good Fish are taken near it. 'Tis called the Maiden City, because, as they say, 'twas never taken by an Enemy, tho' frequently besieged: Yet we have heard before, that the *Germans* possess'd them-

selves

selves of it when they pursued Count *Thierry*; but perhaps that was by Surprize. It must be own'd however to be very strong, being guarded on the W. and N. by the *Maes*, and a Channel from thence towards the Neck of the *Biesbos*, and the *Holland-Diep*; and on the S. and E. by the said *Biesbos*, which is a large Bay that reaches to *Gertruydenberg*, and is so called from the Bulrushes that grow in it. It has long enjoyed the Royalty of a Mint, being the Place to which the old Counts confin'd their Coinage. Dr. *Brown* says, the Steeple of the great Church has 312 Steps. The Apartment where the Synod was held is very fair and large, in which their Seats are still preserv'd, and shew'd to Strangers. The Government of this City differs much from the rest in *Holland*; therefore we shall give a short Account of it. 'Tis managed by a Schout, a Consul or Burgomaster, Senators, Eschevins, Ex-Senators, and a Council of Eight. The Schout or Judge represents the Governor of the Province, by whom he is chosen out of 3 presented to him by the other Magistrates, and votes after all the other Senators, his Business being chiefly for the Province. The Burgomaster is chosen every 4 Months by the Senators, Ex-Senators, and Council of Eight. He is chosen out of the Ex-Senators, has a sort of Supreme Authority, and 3 Halberdiers constantly to attend him, which is peculiar to him and the Governor of the Province. There's also another who is a sort of a Proconsul, and supplies his Place in case of Absence. Justice is administred by the Consul, 9 Eschevins, and 5 Senators, who are all changed once in two Years; in the first of which, 4 Eschevins and 3 Senators; and in the 2d, 5 Eschevins and 2 Senators, go out of Office, and these are called the Ex-Senators. The Eschevins differ from the Senators only in this, that they are more concern'd in examining the Pleas of those who have Law-Suits. The Council of Eight is chosen by the Governor of the Province, or the Court of *Holland*, out of 24 presented by the 4 Guilds of Tradesmen, each of which names 6. Their Business is to assist the Ex-Senators in the Election of a Consul, and to inform the Magistrates of what's amiss in the City. Their Learned Men are accounted for by *Blean*.

13. *Willemstadt*, lies 10 Miles S.W. from *Dort*, on the Frontiers of *Dutch Brabant*. 'Twas built in 1583 by Prince *William of Orange*, after whom 'twas called. The Town is small, but very strong, defended by a Wall, 7 Bastions, a double Ditch, and other Fortifications. It has a good Harbour, and lies conveniently to secure the Trade between *Holland* and *Zealand*, upon the Point of the Isle of *Ruggenhil*; the Houses are neat. They have a good Market-Place, Church, and Common Hall; but the Air is unwholesome and moist, and occasions dangerous Fevers and Agues, especially to Strangers. The Island on which it stands was recovered from the Water, that had a long Time overflow'd it, in 1654. This Island and that of *Finart* did formerly belong to *Brabant*, the States of which gave them to Pr. *William*.

14. *Clundert*, lies about 2 Miles S. E. from *Willemstadt*. 'Twas formerly so considerable a Harbour, that the Earls of *Holland* had one of their principal Custom-Houses here. In 1583, 'twas given to the Pr. of *Orange*, who fortified it with 8 Bastions and some Ravelins. It has a fine Church, and a good Chime of Bells.

15. *Sevenbergen*, lies 2 Miles E. from *Clundert*, was formerly a Wall'd Town, but dismantled by *Philip of Burgundy* in 1426, and is now only a populous Village.

16. *Gertrudenburg*, lies about 9 Miles E. from *Sevenbergen*, had its Name from *Gertrude*, a reputed Saint, who died here in 664. 'Tis in the District of *Dort*, belong'd formerly to *Brabant*, but was added to *Holland* by Count *William* in 1213. In 1611, the States gave the Sovereignty of it to Prince *Maurice*; so that 'tis Part of the Patrimony of the Family. 'Tis a Place of such Consideration, that the Province of *Holland* bound their Princes by Oath to keep it; and the States of *Brabant* laid the same Obligation upon theirs to recover it. It lies upon the *Maes* or *Meruwe*, which is so broad there, that it resembles a Sea. 'Tis very strongly fortified; and besides the Defence of the *Maes* on one Side, it has a Marsh on the other. 'Twas taken by the *Dutch* in 1573, but basely surrender'd to the Pr. of *Parma* in 1588. 'Twas afterwards besieged by Sea and Land, and forced to yield to Pr. *Maurice* in 1595, in Sight of Count

Count Mansfeld and the Spanish Army. The Prince, tho' then but young, did fortify his Camp so well, that the Spaniards could not attack him; and he kept his Army in such Discipline, that the Peasants labour'd their Ground within the Circuit of his Camp without any Molestation. They are supplied by the neighbouring River with good Salmon, Sturgeon, and such Plenty of Shads, that 18000 of 'em have been taken near it in one Day.

17. *Heusden*, lies about 10 Miles E. from *Gertrudenburg*. 'Tis a very ancient Town, having had Lords of its own in 857, who held it in Fee of the Counts of *Cleve*, but at last it came to the Count of *Holland*, which occasioned great Wars betwixt that Province and *Brabant*; but they were at last compromis'd by a Match betwixt a Son of *Holland* and a Daughter of *Brabant*, with whom 'twas quitted to the Dutch by way of Dowry. In 1407, the Citizens defeated the *Geldrians*, who contended with *Holland* about the Possession of the Town, and gave them such a compleat Overthrow, that they brought home more Prisoners than they themselves were in Number. 'Tis well fortified, and has a strong Castle, which is the Residence of a Governor appointed by the States. It has several Villages, Lordships, and small Forts, under its Jurisdiction. The Powder of their Magazine being set on Fire by Lightning in 1680, the Castle, with the greatest Part of the neighbouring Street, were blown up, the Town extremely shatter'd, and about 260 People killed. It stands on a Stream of the *Maes*, where it forms an Island, called the *Hemerder Waert*.

18. *Greveccuur*, lies 5 Miles S. E. from *Heusden*, upon the same River, is a little Town, but strongly fortified, which is supposed to be the Reason of its Name. It was taken and retaken during the Spanish War, and taken by the French in 1672, but abandon'd afterward.

19. *Worcum*, lies 8 Miles N. W. from *Heusden*. 'Tis a very ancient Town, and in old Writings called *Woudrichemum*. 'Tis the Capital of the Country of *Altena*, which formerly belong'd to the Counts of *Cleve*, from whom 'twas purchased by Count *William* in 1333, and afterwards held in Fee by the Lords of *Horn* till 1600, when the Count of *Horn* being executed at *Brussels* by the D. of *Alva*, his Widow sold it to the States

of *Holland*, with the Lordship of *Altena*, for 90000 Florins. 'Tis well fortified by Nature and Art, being situated on a Point of Land near the Conflux of that Branch of the *Rhine* called the *Wall* and the *Maes*.

20. *Loerueslein*, lies 2 Miles S. E. from *Worcum*, on the Point of the Island called *Bommelweert*, is one of the strongest Castles in *Holland*, and noted for giving Name to the Faction, the Chiefs of whom us'd to assemble there, to contrive how they might lessen the Power of the Princes of *Orange*; and 'twas afterwards made their Prison.

21. *Gorcum*, lies about 2 Miles N. from *Worcum*, on the other Side the *Maes*, and on the Mouth of the *Ling*. 'Tis called *Gorichemum* in old Writings, is a neat well built Town, strongly fortified by Nature and Art; and is, as well as *Worcum* and *Loerueslein*, reckon'd one of the Keys of *Holland*. It formerly belong'd to the Lords of *Arkel*, who built a Castle here, and oblig'd their Subjects to build Houses near it; so that it quickly grew from a poor Fisher-Village to be a considerable Town, and was walled in. They have a daily Market for Corn, Butter, Cheese, &c. brought down the *Ling* from the fruitful Country of the *Betaw*, by which, together with the People's applying themselves to Navigation, the Town is become exceeding rich. They have a good Church, from the Steeple of which may be seen 22 Wall'd Towns, with an infinite Number of Villages, which make a Prospect that's scarce to be parallel'd. Their Lords formerly nam'd their Senate; but in 1652, the States gave them Power to name their own Magistrates. Over the Water-Gate there's this Inscription, *Civitas in qua maxime Civis Legibus parent, & in Pace beata, & Bello invicta*; i. e. A City, happy in the Loyalty of its Inhabitants, blest'd in Peace, and unconquer'd in War. The French could not take it in 1672. Near this City, they shew a Place where they pretend *Hercules* of *Germany* formerly encamp'd, and gave Name to the Country of *Arkel*; the Lords of which were formerly so powerful, as to make War with the Counts of *Holland*; but being at last overpower'd, they sold their Lands to the Dukes of *Gelder*, who afterwards sold most of it to the Counts of *Holland*. *Bleau* gives an Account of the great Philosopher *Henry* of *Gorcum*; and others of their Learned Men.

22. *Heuslom*, or *Hoekelum*, lies 3 Miles N. E. from *Gorcum*. 'Twas anciently called *Hercules's Home*, and said to have been the Residence of the German *Hercules*. It had formerly a strong Castle, which is now demolished.

23. *Asperen*, lies 2 Miles E. from *Hoekelum*. 'Tis a small Wall'd Town, belonging to the Family of the *Boetslaers*, and is noted for giving Birth to some eminent Divines.

24. *Leerdam*, lies 5 Miles N. E. from *Gorcum*. It belongs to the Family of *Orange*, was formerly a considerable, but now a small Town, with the Remains of an ancient Castle, from whence the *Guelldrians* us'd to infest *Holland*.

25. *Vianen*, was built in 1190. 'Tis walled and fortified, enjoys great Privileges, and is an *Asylum* for poor Debtors. It stands on the S. Side of the *Lech*, a Branch of the *Rhine*, 5 Miles N. from *Leerdam*, had formerly Lords of its own, who pretended to be independent; and one of 'em maintain'd a long Suit upon that Account with *Philip II.* of *Spain*. It lately belong'd to the Noble Family of the *Bredersdes*, now extinguish'd. 'Tis a neat City, encompass'd with pleasant Fields, and has a stately high Tower adjoining to the Castle of *Batsestein*, the Seat of its Lords, which has fine Gardens, Statues, Pyramids, and Paintings.

26. *Newport*, lies 9 Miles W. from *Vianen*, on the Left Side of the Lake, formerly a large and rich Town, but now only a Village.

27. *Isselstein*, near 3 Miles N. from *Vianen*, on the Borders of *Utrecht*, formerly a Bone of Contention betwixt that Province and *Holland*. 'It belong'd to the Lords of *Egmond*; one of whom being accused of Treason against the Count of *Holland*, was besieged and taken here, and forc'd to resign it for an Annual Pension in 1417. After which, those of *Utrecht* took and burnt the Town, as the *Guelldrians* did in 1466; but it was rebuilt and fortified by *Frederick* of *Isselstein* in the Time of *Charles* of *Burgundy*, and came afterwards to the Family of *Orange*, who enlarged the Fortifications, and encompass'd it with pleasant Gardens and Inclosures. Their chief Trade is in Cables, Cordage, and other Materials for Shipping.

28. *Sewenhewsen*, 4 Leagues from *Leyden*, a Village remarkable for a pleasant Grove half a League long, and a Furlong broad, with a Channel in the Middle. Here abundance of Wild-Fowls are bred, the Profit of which, and from the Grove, is so considerable, that 'tis lett for 300 l. Sterling per Annum. The neighbouring Inhabitants flock hither in great Numbers to see the young Birds taken by shaking the Nests down from the Trees. Our *K. James I.* is said to have had two Vessels with young Birds from hence every Year. The chief of 'em are, Shags, resembling Cormorants, Lepelars or Spoonbills, Quacks or Night-Ravens, which make a Noise in the Night like one vomiting; Herons, Wood-Pigeons, and Tur-tles.

29. *Naerden*, the Capital of *Goyland*, lies upon the *Zuyder-Sea*, 12 Miles S. E. from *Amsterdam*, among Marthes, occasioned by the River *Vecht*. The old Town is swallow'd up by the Sea, the Ruins of which are to be seen at Low Water 200 Perches from the present Town. 'Tis small, but strong. 'Twas basely abandon'd by the Garrison when the *French* came before it in 1672, and retaken by the *Dutch* upon Terms in 1673, tho' the Garrison consisted of 3000 *French*, well furnish'd with all Necessaries, and in daily Expectation of Relief, for which the Governor was degraded, condemned to perpetual Prison, and all the Officers cashier'd, but one who protested against the Capitulation. This Town was surpris'd by those of *Utrecht* in 1481, who sent Soldiers thither dress'd like Marker-Women; but that same Year the *Naerdeners* defeated those of *Utrecht* in Battle, kill'd 1500 of 'em on the Spot, destroy'd several of their Castles, and with the Plunder built a Tower at *Naerden*, on which they plac'd this short Inscription, *Swijcht Utrecht; i. e.* Brag no more *Utrecht*, but hold thy Peace. In 1572. this Town surrender'd to the *D.* of *Alva's* Son, when he barbarously order'd all the Inhabitants to meet in the Market-place, and after having sent Priests to confess them, made his Soldiers cut 'em all off. Some Writers say, that most of 'em were Papists; and that when the Priests confessed them, they ask'd, If they were Catholics? And when answer'd, Yes, told 'em, *That was good for their Souls.* *Bentivoglio* says,

says, 'twas a Nest of Hereticks; and *Strada*, tho' he thinks they deserv'd Punishment for their Heresy, yet says, this Cruelty was a Crime, and attended with ill Consequences to the *Spanish* Affairs, because it made the *Hollanders* desperate, and occasioned their obstinate Defence of *Leyden* and other Places, being resolved to suffer all Extremities rather than submit to the *Spanish* Yoke. The States have made it very strong of late with Brick-Walls, Ravelins, Half-Moons, Counter-carps, and double Ditches; so that 'tis now as regular a Fortification as any in the Country, and a great Security to *Amsterdam*. The adjacent Country being high and sandy, the Air is better than in most Places of *Holland*.

30. *Muyden*, lies also on the *Zuyder-Sea*, 5 Miles W. from *Naerden*, at the Mouth of the *Vecht*. 'Tis a pretty small Town, extremely well fortified, with a Sluce, by which they can drown the adjacent Country. 'Tis reckon'd one of the strongest Ports in *Holland*, and has an ancient Castle, whither Count *Florent V.* was carried by the Traitor *Velsen*.

31. *Wesop*, upon the *Vecht*, 3 Miles S. from *Muyden*. 'Tis also well fortified, held out against the *French* in 1672, and is noted for good Beer, called *Flemish* Physick.

Westfriesland or North-Holland.

IT has the former Name, because anciently the Seat of the *Frisi* *Minors*; and the latter, because of its Situation. The chief Places which we shall take, according to the Course of the Map, are,

1. *Monnikendam*. It lies on the other Side the *Pampus*, 6 Miles N. E. from *Amsterdam*, and 6 N. from *Muyden*. It has its Name from the small River *Monnick*, which runs through it. 'Tis an ancient City, mentioned in the *Dutch Annals* of 1236; is well fortified with a Rampart and Walls, and has a Monk for its Arms.

2. *Saerdam*, lies on the River *Saren*, 8 Miles W. from *Monnikendam*; and tho' but a Village, is populous and large, and so remarkable for building of Ships, and well stor'd with Ship-Carpenters, that they commonly say, they can build as many in a Year's time as there are Days in it. Their chief

Trade lies in this, by which the Town is grown very rich. The Old Town stands below the Dam of the River, to which there has been added a long Row of Houses, called the New Town, on both Sides the River, out of which Ships are hawl'd over the Dam upon Rollers.

3. *Edam*, above 2 Miles N. from *Monnikendam*. It has its Name from a great Bank, to hinder the Inundation of the River &c. It lies on the *Zuyder-Sea*, and on the other Side has a very rich Country, formerly a great Lake, about 5 Miles long, and above 2 broad, now called the *Purmer*. Their chief Trade is in building of Ships, and making excellent Cheefe. The Mermaid, formerly mentioned in our Description of *Haerlem*, is said to have been caught in the Mud here by some Maids going to milk their Cows in the *Purmer*.

4. *Purmerend*, so called because it stands at one End of the *Purmer*, 4 Miles W. from *Edam*. It had anciently a neat and strong Castle, was fortified in 1573, and is grown very rich since the dreining of the *Beemster* Lake, which has added a fruitful Tract of Land to it. It belong'd to the Family of *Egmond*, who sold it to the States in 1590. The *Beemster* was drain'd in 1612, after 4 Years Labour. It contains 7090 Acres, besides the Highways and the Dikes that surround and cross it in several Places, which make in all 10000 Acres. Sir *W. Temple* says, the *Beemster* is so well planted with Gardens, Orchards, Rows of Trees, and fruitful Enclosures, that it makes the pleasantest Summer-Landskip he ever saw.

5. *Alcmaer*, lies about 14 Miles N. W. from *Purmerend*, and took its Name from the Marshes with which it was encompassed. 'Tis a very ancient City, suffered much by the Incurfions of the *Frizons* about 600 Years ago, which obliged Count *Wm.* to build a Castle for its Defence, and afterwards to fortify, and endow it with large Privileges. 'Tis one of the most beautiful and best built Towns in this Country, is surrounded with pleasant Gardens and rich Pastures; and from the Milk of their numerous Herds of Cows, make vast Quantities of Cheefe and Butter, which enriches the Town. 'Tis called the Gate of the Waterland, was burnt in 1328, but afterwards rebuilt with more Splendour. This Town repulld the

Spaniards in their first War with the *Netherlanders*, being then very strong by its Situation among Marshes, which are since drein'd. It has produc'd several Learned Men, and among others *Cornelius van Drebbel*, who pretended to the Invention of a perpetual Motion; and that he could, by Oprick Glasses, make himself appear in all Shapes and Habits: For an Account of which, we refer to *Hegenitius*. The City is wall'd round; and at the End of it, there's a large Grove regularly planted, which adds much to the Pleasantry of the Place.

6. *Hoorn*, lies on a Bay of the *Zuyder-Sea*, 11 Miles E. from *Alcmaer*, is a pleasant, rich, and large Town, encompassed with so many broad Dikes and Channels, that 'tis reckon'd impregnable. The Inhabitants are also noted for Courage. Some derive the Name from its crooked Harbour. On the Land-side, there are rich Pastures, fine Gardens, and pleasant Walks. They have an Annual Fair in *May*, where vast Quantities of Butter and Cheese are sold. They have also a considerable Trade by Sea, and in building of Ships, which has made it a rich and splendid Town. 'Twas built about 1300, and was afterwards noted for a great Trade in *Danish Cattle*. *Petrus Junius*, the famous Historian, and other Learned Men, were born here.

7. *Enchuyfen*, on the *Zuyder-Sea*, lies 9 Miles N. E. from *Hoorn*. 'Twas formerly built with Wood; but having suffered much by Fire, they build now with Brick. 'Tis very strong by its Situation and Art. 'Twas much enlarged in 1591, and will take an Hour and an half to walk round it. The Steeple of their Church is admired for its extraordinary Height. 'Tis one of the best Harbours in this Country; but the Mouth of it being liable to be choak'd by Sand, which made it impracticable for large Vessels, about 60 Years ago the Inhabitants cleans'd it, and made a new Harbour within the City. They build many Ships, drive a great Trade in fishing Herring, and send out large Fleets to the *Baltick* and other Places. In *Bentivoglio's* Time, it exceeded all the Towns of this Country in Number of Ships, and for Skill in Maritime Affairs. 'Twas the first Town in *Holland* which revolted from *Spain*, has a great Trade in *Danish Cattle*, and refining *French Salt*. *Tappe-*

rus and other Learned Men were born here. The Closet of Rarities collected by *Paludanus*, a Physician of this Place, is much commended by *Hegenitius*, who, among other Things in it, took Notice of a *Chamæleon* that was kept alive some Days; during which Time, it appear'd of all Colours but Red and White.

8. *Medenblich*, lies about 7 Miles N. W. from *Enchuyfen*, upon the *Zuyder-Sea*. 'Tis reckon'd the most ancient City of *North-Holland*, was formerly its Capital, and, as some say, the Seat of *Radbodus*, the famous *Frizon King*. Their Castle was repaired by *Florent V.* about 1282. The Town is small, but has a noble Harbour, capable of 300 large Vessels, and the largest and strongest Dikes against the Sea of any Town in this Country. The neighbouring Soil is very fruitful. It was formerly govern'd by a *Dykgrave*; but now they chuse their own Magistrates, after the Manner of other Cities in *North-Holland*.

9. *Schagen*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Medenblich*, is a rich Village, and the adjacent Country is reckon'd the richest Soil in *Europe*. Land is sold here at double the Rate of any other in *Holland*; there having been Trees upon it, one of which yielded as much Fruit at once, as brought the Owner 10 l. And there's the Picture of a Sheep bred here, hung up in the Shambles at *Amsterdam*, where 'twas sold for the like Sum. *Egmond*, a noble and well built Village, which gave Title to that Noble Family, lies in this Country, 3 Miles W. from *Alcmaer*. It had formerly a fine Castle, and a large Monastery. Six Miles further S. lies *Beverwick*, formerly noted for Pilgrimages to it. It has pleasant Inclosures, and a good Harbour on the Mouth of the *Wickermar*.

The Drein'd Lands of North-Holland are,

The *Zype*, the *Beemster*, and *Purmer*, formerly mentioned; the *Wormer*, and *Schermer*. The *Zype* was first drein'd and encompassed with Banks by *William Lord of Schagen*, and secur'd by stronger Fences in 1552; but the Sea broke 'em down in 1570. After which 'twas drein'd again, and secur'd by a Mole of prodigious Height and Bulk, Proof against all Attacks of the Sea, and is a very fruitful Soil. The Noise made by the

the Waves which break upon it resemble the barking of a Pack of Hounds, from whence 'tis called the *Hounds Wood*. 'Tis supported by large Beams of Timber, firmly plac'd in the Ground, and strongly fasten'd together, the Distance betwixt 'em being fill'd with large Stones that resemble Rocks; and the Mole is strengthen'd by 3 vast Banks cast up against it. There were no less than 30 Mills made use of to drain the *Beemster*, which is encompassed by a Channel from 4 to 8 Rods broad, and is join'd to *Purmerend* by a Bridge at the South End.

To North-Holland belong the following Islands.

1. The *Texel*, about 6 Miles long, and 5 broad. 'Tis defended from the Sea by Sand-Hills and strong Banks. Most of the Soil is applied to feed Sheep, of which they have great Flocks, and the Cheese made of their Milk vies with *Parmesan*. It contains besides several fair Villages, a large Town on the E. Side called *Burch*, which enjoys the Privileges of a City. The Inhabitants apply themselves to Agriculture and Herring-fishing; and the States, because of the Importance of this Place, which lies at the Mouth of the *Zuyder-Sea*, have built a strong Fortrefs here, where they have always a good Garrison.

2. *Flieland*, N. of the *Texel*, about 9 Miles long, and 2 broad. It has only one small Village, and is chiefly remarkable for the vast Quantity of Muscles that are found here.

3. *Schelling*, lies N. from *Flieland*, about 11 Miles long, and 3 broad. It has two Villages with Churches, and three without: The chief of 'em, containing about 1000 Houses, was burnt, with 100 Merchant-Ships, by Sir Robert Holmes, with an *English* Squadron, in 1666. Some reckon this Island to belong to *East-Friesland*. These Islands lying along the Mouth of the *Zuyder-Sea*, do, with several large Banks of Sand, break the Rage of the Ocean, and form two good Harbours at the *Texel* and *Vlie*; the first being a noted Station for Ships bound to the S. and the other for those bound to the N.

4. The *Wierings*, so called from the great Quantity of Sea-Weed nam'd *Ware*; is a

Number of little Islands, which lie further in on the Coast of *North-Holland*. The chief of 'em is 5 Miles long, and 2 broad, has several good Villages, a rich Soil, and large Flocks of Sheep. Sir William Temple thinks, that the *Zuyder-Sea* was form'd by some great Inundation, there being no Notice taken of it in ancient Authors; which is the more probable, because of the great Shoals of flat Sands that lie all over it, and of the Islands above-mentioned, that lie like the broken Remains of a continued Coast. This Sea is remarkable for a Battle betwixt the *Spanish* and *Dutch* Fleets in 1572. The Arms of the Province of *Holland* are, Or, a *Lion Gules*.

The Province of Zealand.

FROM *West-Cappell* to the Frontiers of *Dutch Brabant*, taking in the Channels which divide the Islands, 'tis about 30 Miles long; and from the W. Mouth of the *Scheld* to the Channel betwixt it and *Goeree*, is about 17 broad. Some derive the Name from its Situation, and others from *Zealand* in *Denmark*, from whence a Body of *Danes* invaded it, and settled here. The Air is sharper and less healthful than that of the neighbouring Countries, and Strangers who come hither are very subject to Agues and Fevers; yet that of *South-Beveland* is reckoned mild, and the Air of *Walcheren* is more temperate than in former Ages. The Nightingales frequent it of late, which they did not in former Times, when it was not so well planted with Gardens and Orchards as now. The Soil is generally fruitful, produces excellent Wheat, abundance of Colewort, of whose Seed they make great Profit, and Madder for Dying. They have good Pasture for Sheep, especially on the Shores; which being often overflow'd, impregnates the Earth, and gives the Grass such a Relish, that their Mutton is prefer'd to that of the other Provinces. The People are of a middle Stature, strong and well set. Their History speaks of a Woman born here, and brought by the Countess of *Holland* to the Marriage of *Charles the Fair* of *France* about 1323, where she was much admir'd for her great Bulk and Stature, the tallest Men looking like Children

to her, tho' both her Parents were of an ordinary Size. Her Strength was such, that she could easily lift up with each Hand a Barrel full of *Hamburgh Beer*, and could carry as much Weight as 8 strong Men. The better Sort are courteous and liberal, but the meaner rough and boisterous, and chiefly employ'd in sailing. They are the best Mariners of the 7 Provinces; and during a War, make great Advantage by Privateering. They have not many Artificers, their chief Application being to Fishing and Foreign Trade; and they are very dextrous at refining of Salt. In their Customs and Humours, they come nearer the *Brabanders* and the *French* than the *Germans* and *Dutch*; and their Women are very neat in their Dress. They were formerly under the same Count with *Holland*, but had their own particular Laws. A great Part of it was subdued by the Earls of *Flanders*, but recover'd again by their own Counts. Their Islands are divided into those on the E. and W. Side of the *Scheld*, which are under the Jurisdiction of two Treasurers, that have the Power of Judges, take Care of the Peace, and punish Offenders; but the Power of him on the E. Side of the *Scheld* is much eclips'd of late by the Bailiffs of *Zirick-zee* and *Tolen*. The Treasurer of the other has his Court at *Middleburg*. The Islands are 8, 4 beyond the *East-Scheld*, viz. *Schowen*, *Duveland*, *Tolen*, and *Oresland*; and 4 between that and the *West-Scheld*, viz. *Walcheren*, *South-Beveland*, *North-Beveland*, and *Wolferdike*. Three of 'em being more expos'd to the Ocean than the rest, the Inhabitants are at great Charge to preserve themselves by Dikes. In this Province there are 8 Cities, and 100 Villages.

The chief Island is *Walcheren*, Lat. *Walachria*, of a round Form, at the Mouth of the *Scheld*, about 9 Miles long, and 8 broad. It exceeds the rest in Number of Inhabitants, Splendour of its Cities, Villages, and Trade; has the Sea on the W. *South-Beveland* on the E. *Schowen*, with the Sea, on the N. and the Mouth of the *Scheld* on the S.

The TOWNS are,

1. *Middleburg*, so called because it stands about the middle of the Island, and not from *Mesellus*, a *Roman* Consul, as some

would have it. 'Tis large and populous, has many wealthy Merchants, the Streets are spacious, its Churches magnificent, and 20 in Number. One of 'em has an exceeding high Tower, sumptuously built, with a fine Clock and Dial, which is said to have cost 150000 Florins. The Stadthouse is a noble Fabrick, adorn'd with Statues and Images: It had very splendid Monasteries before the Reformation, especially that of *St. Nicholas*, whose Abbot represented the Clergy in the Meeting of the States. *Philip II.* made it a Bishop's See; but the States have since converted it to the Use of their own Meeting, a Chamber of Accounts, a College of Admiralty, and a Mint. This City is much enriched by the Staple of Wine from *France*, *Spain*, and *Portugal*. They purchas'd the Town of *Armuyden* above 100 Years ago; and their old Haven being choak'd up, they have cut a deep and broad Channel from that Town, by which Vessels of great Burden are brought into the City. 'Tis strongly fortified with a Wall, encompassed by large Ditches, and those Ditches furrounded by another Wall. The Lutherans, Anabaptists, and Jews, are allowed Places of publick Worship here. Their Government is by 2 Consuls and 11 Eschevins, chosen by a Council of 24; half of which are such of Quality and Reputation, as cannot be chosen themselves. For their Learned Men, such as *Paul* of *Middleburg*, &c. we refer to *Bleau*. *Dr. Brown* says, the new Church is Octagonal, with a Cupulo, and the Piazza of the Town-House Circular. They constantly maintain at the Entrance of the Town-House 3 Eagles, in Consideration of certain Privileges granted them by the Emperor. This Town lies 32 Miles S. W. from *Rotterdam*, in Long. 22. 30. Lat. 51. 45.

2. *Flushing*, 5 Miles S. from *Middleburg*, on the Mouth of the *Scheld*. About 300 Years ago, 'twas only a Ferry to *Flanders*; but increas'd so much by reason of its good Port, that 'twas wall'd by *Adolphus* of *Burgundy* about 160 Years ago. 'Tis of such Importance, that *Charles V.* order'd his Son *Philip* to take Care to preserve it. 'Tis not so large or well built as *Middleburg*, and the Streets are not so spacious; but it has several fine Structures, and particularly their Stadthouse, where they have the Pictures of all

all the Princes of the House of Nassau. The Houses are generally well built, and the Town well fortified, and rich. The D. of *Alva* order'd a Citadel to be built here; but the Inhabitants hang'd his Engineer; and the Town was the first that revolted after the *Genſe* seiz'd the *Brill*. 'Twas one of the Cautionary Towns given by the States to Queen *Elizabeth*, when the great Sir *Philip Sidney* was made Governor of it. 'Tis almost surrounded by the Sea, and their Canals bear Ships of great Burthen, which makes it a Place of vast Trade. They built a Church for the *English* in Q. *Elizabeth's* Time, with a new Stadthouſe, and a Palace for the Pr. of *Orange*. It belong'd formerly to the Marquisses of *Ter-Verē*; but was purchas'd, with the Marquissate, by the Pr. of *Orange* in 1581. when they swore Allegiance to him and his Heirs, and were ever after great Lovers of the Family.

3. *Ter-Verē*, or *Camp-Verē*, about 3 Miles N. from *Middleburg*, is well fortified, with a broad Ditch and 3 Bulwarks, answerable to the Number of its Gates. 'Tis a good Harbour, and the best furnish'd Arsenal of the Province. It has been the Staple of the *Scots* Trade since 1612, from which it has received great Profit. The *Scots* are allow'd the old Parish-Church here. It has been frequently in Danger by the Sea, which overturn'd the Tower that stood on the N. Side of the Harbour in 1630. 'Tis govern'd by its own Magistrates, who are 2 Consuls and 9 Eschevins, assisted by a Council of 24, but subject to the Family of *Orange*. Our noble and ancient Family of the *Veres*, Earls of *Oxford*, lately extinguish'd, were said to derive their Origin and Name from this Town.

4. *Arnmuyden*, so called from the River *Arn*, that runs from hence to *Middleburg*, lies above two Miles E. from it. The old Town of this Name is long ago ruin'd, and nothing of it left but a fair Church and a Hall. The new Town above 100 Years ago exceeded *Middleburg* in Magnificence and Riches, and had a good Harbour, capable of Vessels of 300 Tun. 'Twas purchas'd by the *Middleburgers* from *Philip* of *Burgundy*; but their Harbour being spoil'd by Sands, their Trade is decay'd, and their chief Subsistence now is from refining Salt. 'Tis en-

compass'd with Walls, and has its own Magistrates.

5. *Ramekens*, lies 2 Miles E. from *Flushing*, is a strong Fort, built by *Mary* Qu. of *Hungary*, when Governess of the *Low Countries* for *Charles V.* It stands pleasantly, encompass'd with Villages, Meadows, and Fields; and on one Side has a Creek, which is a safe Harbour for Ships. 'Twas one of the Cautionary Towns given to Qu. *Elizabeth*. *West-Cappel* lies on the W. Coast of the Island, was formerly a Place of great Trade, had a commodious Harbour, and is famous for the Maritime Laws us'd in the 7 Provinces, called by its Name; but was ruin'd by Inundations, and now reduc'd to a Village. Two Leagues and a half W. from *Middleburg* stands *Domburg*, formerly a rich and populous Town, with large Privileges, and abundance of *Roman* Antiquities, with Trunks of Trees, have been dug up in the Neighbourhood. The Palace of the Abbots of *Middleburg*, called *Westbove*, is pleasantly situated among Woods near this Place, which is now also reduc'd to a Village, being ruin'd by Inundations; yet both it and *West-Cappel* enjoy their former Privileges, and are govern'd by their own Magistrates. At *West-Soubourg*, between *Flushing* and *West-Cappel*, there's a large ancient Palace where *Charles V.* resid'd in 1555, when hinder'd by contrary Winds from sailing to *Spain*.

South-Beveland lies on the E. of *Walcheren*, extended towards *Brabant* in *Flanacrs*. 'Twas formerly 20 Dutch Leagues in Compass; but so much diminished by Inundations, that 'tis now but 7 Miles long, and 7 broad. In 1532, the Town and most of the Lordship of *Borsales* were swallowed up, and *Rommerswael* divided from the rest, and made an Island by it self. *Rommerswael* was a very ancient Town, of good Note, but ruin'd by 6 Inundations and Fire. The only Place of Note in *South-Beveland* is *Ter-Gow*, supposed to take its Name from a Goose, which is its Arms. It had large Privileges from *William* of *Bavaria* in 1350, and was wall'd in 1417. It suffer'd much by Inundations in 1539, but was restor'd by the Care of the Magistrates, and the Favour of *Charles V.* 'Twas besieged by the *Dutch* in the D. of *Alva's* Time, but relieved by 3000 of his Men, who waded through the drowned.

drown'd Part of the Island with Ammunition and Provision in Sacks, which oblig'd the Dutch to raise the Siege. They afterwards took it, and fortified it in 1585. Since which, it has increas'd in Riches and People, tho' not very large. It has 6 Gates, is neatly built, 3 Market-Places, a Grammar-School, and 3 Hospitals, all fine Structures. The chief Church was burnt down in 1618, but is since rebuilt very stately. It has a Channel to the Sea, by which small Vessels come up to the Town. The Lordship of *Borselen* belongs to it, and they appoint Magistrates to govern it. This City chooses their own Magistrates, who are a Prætor, 2 Consuls, and 9 Eschevins. There are 31 Villages in this Island, most of which have high Towers, that are Sea-Marks for Sailors; and there are many Gentlemen's Seats here, most of which are moated about.

Wolferdike lies on the N. of *South-Beveland*, is about 6 Miles long, and 1 broad, has some Villages and good Pastures. Part of it was swallowed up by Inundations, but has since been recover'd. The Streams about it are so violent, that they seem to contend which shall first devour it.

N. from this lies *North-Beveland*, formerly so pleasant a Country, that 'twas reckon'd the Garden of *Zealand*; but in 1532, 'twas overwhelm'd; and *Corsghene*, a Town of Note, with several Villages, were destroy'd. Great Part of the Island has since been recover'd, and particularly 2000 Acres not many Years ago near the Village of *Catzhoeke*.

The Islands beyond the East-Scheld are,

1. *Schouwen*, called in Latin *Schaldia*, from the River *Scheld*. 'Tis the largest of this Division, is 15 Miles long, and 5 or 6 broad. 'Twas formerly much larger, and divided only by a narrow Channel from *North-Beveland*, but was diminished by Inundations. It abounds with populous Villages, Gentlemen's Seats, rich Farms, and Inclosures.

The TOWNS are,

1. *Zirickzee*, reckon'd the oldest in *Zealand*, and to have been founded by one *Zi-*

ringus about 849. It lies on the S. Side of the Island, 10 Miles S. E. from *Middleburg*. It has a good Trade in Salt and *Madder*, the latter abounding more here than in the other Islands. Their Harbour has suffer'd of late by Sands. 'Tis a large Town, with several good Buildings. Their Church, called the *Munster*, dedicated to St. *Levinus*, one of their Apostles, is a very beautiful Structure, and the best in the Province, but not so splendid as formerly, having suffered much by Lightning in 1466. The Walls of the Town are old, and the Ditches but ordinary; yet 'tis so strong by Situation, and the Conveniency of laying the adjacent Grounds under Water, that 'tis not easy to be attack'd. It held out 8 Months against the *Spaniards* in 1575, when it surrender'd on Terms, which occasion'd a Mutiny in the *Spanish* Army, who expected the Plunder of the Town. 'Tis govern'd by 2 Consuls, 12 Eschevins, and a Council of 24, who have the Jurisdiction of the whole Island. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Susius* the Antiquary, and the Physicians *Lemnius* the Father and Son, &c.

2. *Browerhaven*, on the N. Side of the Island, 5 Miles from *Zirickzee*. It had its Name from their great Trade in Beer brought from *Holland*. 'Twas walled during the Civil Wars, has the Privileges of a City, but is much decreas'd, and subsists now chiefly by Husbandry and Fishing. It belong'd formerly to the Counts of *Holland*; but was annex'd by *Philip II.* in 1558 to the Province of *Zealand*.

3. *Bommene*, about 2 Miles E. from *Browerhaven*. 'Twas fortified in the first War with *Spain*, is impregnable by Land, and may be easily relieved by Sea.

The 2d Island is *Duvelande*, divided from *Schouwen* by a small Channel on the E. Side, is about 7 Miles long, and 4 broad. It has its Name from the Multitude of Doves bred there. Most of it belongs to the Town of *Zirickzee*, who have divided it into several Jurisdictions. 'Tis noted for a bold Attempt of the *Spaniards* in wading hither from *Philipsland* during the War, as is mentioned by *Strada* and *Bentivoglio*. 'Tis since joined to the Isle of *Schouwen* by a Bank, has no Place of Note in it, but only some Villages.

The

The 3d Island is *Tolen*. Its chief Town has the same Name, and lies on the E. Side of the Island, which is about 6 Miles long, and 5 broad, separated from *South Beveland* by a small Channel on the S. and by a lesser from *Dutch Brabant*. 'Tis a pleasant and fruitful Place. The Town and Island had its Name from a Custom-house erected here by the Counts of *Zealand*. 'Tis very well fortified, and the whole Island is so strong, that 'tis capable to resist a great Army. It has been augmented by the Addition of a large Tract of Ground belonging to the Family of *Orange*, called *St. Martin's Dike*. The Town is govern'd by 2 Consuls, 8 Eschevins, a Bailiff, Syndic, and Secretary.

The 4th Island is that called *Oresand* or *Moersand*, betwixt *Sehem* and *North Beveland*, but much nearer the last. 'Tis of small Extent, and has no Place of Note, but only Villages.

The Arms of the Province of *Zealand* are, Or, a *Lion Gules*, rising out of a *Sea Wave*, *Argent* and *Azure*.

The Province of Utrecht,

HAS the *Zuyder-Sea* on the N. Part of *Guelderland* and *Holland* on the S. Part of *Holland* on the W. and Part of *Guelderland* on the E. 'Tis in Length from S. E. to N. W. about 30 Miles, and from S. W. to N. E. the greatest Breadth about 25. The Ground is higher, much pleasanter, and fitter for Husbandry, than *Holland*, and the Air much better. It abounds with Gardens and Orchards, except about *Amersfort*, on the Borders of *Guelderland*, where 'tis barren and heathy. The Inhabitants appear by History to have been formerly of a very martial Disposition; but lost much of their Credit that Way by their easy Submission to the *French* in 1672, which some ascribe to Treachery, and others to the Decay of their Military Genius by a long Peace. But however that be, there was a great Alteration made in the Government of that Province in 1674, as a sort of Punishment, by which the Stadtholder had a much greater Power given him by the Provincial States in the Government of that Country than in the rest. They are said to have been converted to Christianity by the *English*, and

to have been subject to Bishops of their own for 900 Years. As to their Dispositions, some reckon them to come nearer the *Germans* than the rest of the *Dutch*, and not to be so much inclin'd to Trade as the Maritime Provinces. The common People are courteous and hospitable, which is owing in part to the great Number of Gentry who have been invited to live among them by the Wholesomeness of their Air.

The Province is divided into 4 Districts, under so many Marshals, viz. the Upper and Lower Diocese, *Emeland*, and the Land of *Montfort*.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. *Utrecht*, formerly called *Antonina*, and therefore, as well as from *Roman* Coins and other Monuments of Antiquity found about it, supposed to have been a *Roman* Colony; but *Junius*, *Bleau*, and others, are not agreed whether it was so called from *Antoninus* a *Roman* Senator, who is said to have fled from *Nera*, and settled here; from *Marcus Antonius*, *Cesar's* Legat in *Gall*; or from *Antoninus Pius*, who is said to have rebuilt it. *Cellarius* says, the *Trajectum* in *Antonin's Itinerary* appears by its Situation to be *Utrecht*, which had its Name from a Passage there over the *Rhine*; and that in *Charlemagne's* Time, the Epithet *Petrus* was added; and hence the common *Dutch* Word *Oudt* or *Alt* being join'd to *Trecht*, form'd the present Name; which is more probable than *Junius's* Conjecture, that it was form'd by the ignorant Vulgar from the Words, *V. TRIC. LEG. STAT.* as being the Station of the 35th Legion. 'Tis said to have been taken from the *Wilsa* by *Dagobert*, Son to *Clothar* of *France*, by whom 'twas enlarged and fortified. He is also said to have conferr'd it upon *St. Willebrod*, an *Englishman*, its first Bishop, who, *Bede* says, died in 636, and was succeeded by *St. Boniface*; after whose Martyrdom by the *Normans*, the See was translated to *Cologne*; but restor'd by *Pepin* and *Charlemagne*, and the Diocese extended to most Part of the old *Bastavia*, which made the Bishop one of the most powerful in *Christendom*, and enabled his Successors to make War with the Counts of *Holland*, as we have heard before. It continued to be a considerable Principality till the

the Time of *Charles V.* to whom 'twas resign'd by their Bishop *Henry of Bavaria*. This City lies on the Channel of the old *Rhine*, 19 Miles S. E. from *Amsterdam*, 25 from *Leyden*, and 19 N. E. from *Rotterdam*, in Long. 23. 47. Lat. 52. 7. 'Tis a fair, large, populous City, the Houses of Brick, and many of 'em stately; but the Streets not kept so neat as those of the Towns in *Holland*. They have curious and neat Cellars, and their Churches are magnificent. The chief is that of *St. Martin*, formerly the Cathedral, where *Charles V.* in 1536 held a solemn Meeting of the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*. 'Twas formerly mean, but splendidly rebuilt by Bishop *Adelbold* in 1023. 'Tis usually called the *Dome*, and has a Tower with 460 Steps, from whence there was a fine Prospect of the adjacent Country; but a great Part of the Church was demolished by a great Tempest in 1674. Here lies buried the Baron *Van Gaunt*, with a noble Monument: The Inscription shews, that he commanded when the *Dutch Fleet* came up to *Chatham*. The Church of *St. Mary*, commonly call'd the *English Church*, was built, as they say, by the Emperor *Henry IV.* to atone for his destroying one of that Name at *Milan*. When the Workmen were about it, they found a Vorago in the Place where they were to build one of the Pillars, but knew not how to secure the Foundation upon such a Quagmire. An ignorant Fellow called *Fuso* undertook it, but ask'd an exorbitant Rate; which the Bishop not being willing to grant, he suborn'd the Man's own Son to pump out the Secret, which was, to cover the Quag with Bulls-Hides. Upon this, *Fuso* being disappointed of his Reward, stabb'd the Bishop, according to the Story. There's the following Inscription upon the Pillar, asserting it to be so founded:

*Accipe Posteritas, quod post tua Secula narres,
Taurinis cutibus fundo solidata columna est.*

And over it there are ancient and odd Characters, which *Dr. Northleigh* supposes to be the Date of the Year. But he observes very justly, that it was *Frederick Barbarossa* who sack'd *Milan* 100 Years after *Henry IV.* and was commanded by the Pope to build this Church: So that it must either be a

Legend, or a gross Mistake as to the Founder; but the latter is more probable, for some ascribe it to *Frederick*. This Church has a small Library, with some old Books and MSS. and among others, a Bible of the old Translation in 6 Volumes, finely writ in an ancient Character, besides some Pagan Idols, and other Curiosities, as the Horns of Sea-Unicorns, and other Things given them by Emperors. *Dr. Brown* says, the great Church has 3 Steeples, one above another, from whence they have a Prospect of the adjacent Country, with 51 wall'd Towns, all within a Day's Journey of the Place. He also mentions the *English Church* and the Pillar above-mention'd, said to be founded in 1099, which can neither agree with the History of *Henry IV.* nor *Frederick I.* Before the Reformation, there were several large Monasteries and Religious Houses in and about this City, that are now turn'd to other Uses. The Streams which run through several of the Streets contribute much to the Beauty of the Town; and the Suburbs, which are large and convenient, and equal to the Number of its Gates, have likewise Channels running thro' them. The two principal Channels which run through the Length of the City are the *Vaert* and the *New Gracht*. The Buildings on each Side the latter are very splendid, and there are 35 arch'd Bridges of Brick over both. The City is surrounded with an Earthen Wall and a deep Ditch, with several Bulwarks; and *Mr. Ray* says, in his Time 'twas encompassed with a thick high Wall and a deep Trench. They were said to be out of Repair when the *French* came before it; but that can be no Apology for their Surrender, since they would not admit them to be repaired for fear of spoiling their Gardens and Walks; nor would they receive above two Regiments of the Troops offer'd them by the Prince of *Orange*: Which very much confirms the Suspicion, that they had a private Understanding with the *French King*, who made it his Head Quarter for near a Year and an half; but they had no other Reward for their Treachery, than being forced to pay him 2268000 Guilders during that Time. The *French* made it the Storehouse of the Plunder they took from the rest of the Provinces, which they were 14 Days a-carrying off

off when they left the Town in 1673. They had prepared Materials to build a Citadel, of which the D. of *Luxemburg* laid the first Stone, with the *French King's Arms* upon it. A publick School was erected here by one of their Bishops in 1459; and in 1634, the Provincial States turn'd it into an University, which has since flourish'd very much; tho' it has not the full Privileges of other Universities, being wholly subject to the Magistrates of the City. It has produc'd several great Men, and been noted for eminent Professors in all Faculties. Their Library has more Printed Books, but fewer MSS. than that of *Leyden*. The Market-place or Piazza is very fair, and the Center of several long Streets: The Painters Hall abounds with fine Pieces; and the Pall-mall without the Town, with 5 Rows of tall Trees on each Side, is extraordinary pleasant. There are likewise fine Walks about the old Walls, and a Physick Garden, but of no great Note. Pope *Adrian VI.* was born here, whose Epitaph, order'd by himself, bespeaks his Humility; as did his Refusal to change his Name, tho' born of mean Parentage. His Epitaph is thus:

Adrianus Sextus hic situs est, qui nihil sibi infelicis in vita duxit, quam quod imperaret.
i. e.

Adrian VI. lies here, who reckoned it his greatest Misfortune, that he should ever have been called to Government.

But that which perpetuates its Fame, is the Union of the 7 Provinces, the Foundation of which was laid here. Their Government is manag'd by 2 Scouts and 4 Burgomasters, 2 of whom are chosen Annually. They have likewise a Council of 40 Men to assist them.

2. *Amersford*, about 12 Miles N. E. from *Utrecht*, upon the River *Eems*, which runs by its Walls, and falls into the *Zuyder Sea*. 'Tis supposed to take its Name from a Ford on this small River. 'Tis an ancient Town, and was the usual Retreat of the Bishops of *Utrecht* when drove out by the Citizens; and the Inhabitants of this Place frequently help'd to restore them. 'Twas formerly

but small, as appears by the Remains of its ancient Fortifications. 'Tis now much larger, and will take near an Hour to walk round it. 'Tis of no great Strength, being commanded by a neighbouring Hill. The Buildings, especially those of the old Town, are very neat. They have two Churches, one of which is a large and stately Fabrick. Their Hospitals are equal to those of the greater Cities; and they have a publick School, where several eminent Persons have had their Education. It suffered much formerly by the *Gueldrians*, who took it in 1543. 'Twas also taken by the *Spaniards* in 1629, but afterwards quitted by them, and better fortified by the States. Their Government resembles that of *Utrecht*. They had formerly a great Trade in brewing Beer, but now subsist chiefly by feeding Cattle and Husbandry, there being good Arable and Pasture Ground on the E. and S. but on the W. and N. there's nothing but Hills, Woods, and barren Heaths.

3. *Wick-te-Duurstede*, the famous *Batavodurum* of the Ancients, lies 11 Miles S. E. from *Utrecht*, where the middle Branch of the *Rhine* leaves its ancient Channel, and runs into the *Lech*. 'Tis mention'd by *Tacitus* in his 5th Book, where he says, That a Body of *Germans* endeavour'd to break down the Bridge there. 'Twas afterwards destroyed by the *Normans*, but rebuilt, because of the Conveniency of its Situation, and continues to be a neat and pretty rich Town. 'Twas formerly used as a Place of Refuge by the Bishops of *Utrecht*.

4. *Rhenen*, a wall'd Town upon the *Rhine*, 6 Miles further E. an ancient Place, supposed to be the *Grinnes* of *Tacitus*. In the Fields, betwixt this Town and *Utrecht*, are dug most of the Turfs that serve the neighbouring Country for Fuel.

5. *Montfort*, lies near the *Iffel*, 6 Miles S. W. from *Utrecht*. 'Tis a neat Town, well fortified, and was built by *Godfrey* Bishop of *Utrecht* against the Incursions of the *Hollanders*. 'Tis the Capital of a small Territory, and noted for the Birth of *Lambertus Hortensius*, a Writer of good Fame. *M. de Per* says, the whole Province contains 5 Cities, 65 Villages, and 64 Gentlemen's Seats.

The Province of Guelderland,
and County of Zutphen.

Dutch Guelderland, from *Ginnep* on the *Mos* to *Campen* on the *Zuyder-Sea*, is 48 Miles from N. to S. and from the Frontiers of *Holland* to those of the Bishoprick of *Munster*, including the County of *Zutphen*, 'tis above 50. Some derive the Name from the Castle of *Guelder*, built by its first Lord *Wichardus a Ponte*; and others from the City *Gelduba*, mentioned in these Parts by *Tacitus*; but this cannot be the present *Guelder*, because that was in the Country of the *Ubii*, near *Nuys* on the *Rhine*. The ancient Inhabitants are supposed to have been the *Menapii* and *Batavi*. This Dutchy and the County of *Zutphen* have been for several Ages reckon'd one Principality, and gone by the common Name of *Guelder*. It has the *Zuyder-Sea* and Part of *Over-Iffel* on the N. *Dutch Brabant* and Part of *Cleve* on the S. *Over-Iffel* and Part of the Bishoprick of *Munster* on the E. *Utrecht* and Part of *Holland* on the W.

The Air is much better than that of *Holland* and the Maritime Provinces, because 'tis of a much higher Situation. The Soil is fruitful in Corn and Pasturage; and great Drovers of Cattle are Annually brought from *Denmark* and *Friesland* to be fatten'd here. 'Tis not alike fruitful in all Places; for a great Part of the *Velaw* lies upon a Gravel, and is full of Heaths, Woods, and barren Hills. *Zutphen* has good Pasturage, but not much Corn, because of its low and moorish Situation. The Inhabitants have in all Ages been valued for their Courage above most of their Neighbours, occasioned by the continual Wars of their ancient Dukes, and the Barrenness of a great Part of their Country, which made them chiefly apply themselves to Arms. Their Cavalry was esteem'd all over *Europ*; and 'tis observ'd of *Charles V.* that in order to abate their Military Genius, and secure the Possession of this Country to his Family, he excluded the *Gueldrians* out of his Armies. The Commons are reckon'd courteous and industrious, and much to resemble the *Germani*. *Conringius* says, they are more unanimous in Matters of Religion than their

Neighbours, and more successful in Arms than Arts.

Their Ancient GOVERNMENT.

IN the Ages succeeding to *Charles the Great*, Authors say, they were under an Hereditary Governor, called by the Name of Advocate, Guardian, or Tutor, who was succeeded by Earls, and then by Dukes.

The first Earl mentioned is *Otho* of *Nassau*, who was invested by the Emperor *Henry IV.* in 1079, died in 1107, and was succeeded by his Son *Gerard*, who died in 1131, and was succeeded by his Son *Henry*, who marrying a Daughter of *Brabant*, had the *Velaw* for her Dowry, and died in 1162. He was succeeded by his Son *Gerard*, who died without Issue in 1180. He was succeeded by his Brother *Otho II.* who died in 1202, and succeeded by his Son *Gerard III.* who died in 1271, and was succeeded by his Brother *Reinold the Warlike*, who was imprison'd by his own Son, and died in 1325. He was succeeded by his Son *Reinold II.* who was made the first D. of *Guelder* by the Emperor *Lewis*. He was succeeded by his Son *Reinold III.* who died without Issue in 1371. He was succeeded by *William* of *Juiliers*, Grandson to *Reinold II.* who died without Issue in 1402. He was succeeded by his Brother *Reinold IV.* who died without Issue in 1423. He was succeeded by *Arnold* of *Egmond*, his Nephew by his Sister, who was imprison'd by his Son *Adolph*, and rescued by *Charles the Warlike* of *Burgundy*, who would have reconciled his Son to him upon very good Terms; which *Adolph* barbarously refus'd, and said, He would rather be thrown into a Well with his Father upon him, alledging that he was unreasonable, who had been 44 Years D. of *Guelder*, not to let him have the Government now. *Adolph* being after this slain in the War, *Arnold* resign'd the Government, with the Emperor's Consent, in 1473, to *Charles* of *Burgundy*; who being kill'd before *Namur* in 1476, was succeeded by his Daughter *Mary*; but the *Gueldrians* revolted, and sent for *Katharine*, *Arnold's* Daughter, to whom they submitted during the Nonage of *Charles*, Son to *Adolph*, whom they solemnly recogniz'd. He died without Issue in 1539, and the

the Succession was disputed by *William* of *Cleves* as next Heir; but *Charles V.* came with an Army into the Country, and obliged him to resign, tho' he had been publicly invested by the States, and had a fair Title. To *Charles V.* succeeded his Son *Philip II.* of *Spain*, from whom *Guelderland* revolted with the other Provinces in 1580.

The Arms of this Province are Quarterly; 1. *Azure*, a *Lion Or*, crown'd *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Guelder*. 2. *Azure*, a *Lion Gules*, for the Earldom of *Zutphen*.

The States of this Province did formerly consist of the Nobles, and the Knights of the Province, the Governors of the Country Districts, and the Deputies of the Cities; but the 4 chief Cities of *Nimeguen*, *Ruremond*, *Zutphen*, and *Arnhem*, were, according to *de Laet*, the main Supporters of the publick Liberty against the Incroachments of their Princes; between whom and them 'twas agreed, That when any Subject was wrong'd by his Prince, he should complain to the Magistrates of the chief City of his Quarter, who were to demand a Redress from the Prince; which if not granted in two Months, the City was to seize all the Revenues of the Prince in that Quarter; and if he continued obstinate, the other Cities were to join with them. *M. de Fer* says, the whole Province, including *Spanish Guelderland*, contains 5 Counties, 16 Cities, 230 Villages, and 5 Fortresses.

The Quarter of Nimeguen.

THIS City is, by *Adrianus Junius*, reckoned to be the *Batavorum Oppidum* mentioned by *Tacitus*, which was burnt by *Civilis* when he retir'd into the *Batavorum Insula*, now called the *Betuwe*, just over against it, after he was defeated by the *Romans*; but *Cluverius* rather thinks it was that now called *Batenburg*, tho' the other be more probable. This City and its Territories having afterwards thrown off the *Roman Yoke*, maintain'd its ancient League with the *Gauls*, or rather *Franks*, and was for a long Time subject, for Protection at least, to the Kings of *Austrasia* or the Emperors.

Smetius, in his *Antiquitates Neomagenſes*,

printed at *Nimeguen* in 1678, is of Opinion, that this City was the *Batavorum Oppidum* mentioned by the *Romans*; which seems to be very probable, from the vast Number of *Roman Antiquities* found in and about that City, of which he and his Father made the noblest Collection that is perhaps to be found in any private Hand. They consist chiefly of Rings, Gems, Keys, Writing Instruments, Bells, Buckles, Lamps, Altars, Marbles, Measures, Weights, Statues, Seals, Pitchers and other Vessels, 11000 Coins, Idols, Inscriptions, &c. For which we refer the Curious to his Book, where such as love Antiquities will meet with grateful Entertainment, his learned Explications tending very much to illustrate the *Roman History* in that and other Parts of the World, and especially of their Emperors. Several of those Inscriptions upon Stones, &c. are fix'd on the Wall of their Town-House; but since very few of 'em relate to the Antiquity of this Place, we shall not insist upon them.

Charles the Great repair'd the Castle, which was built here by the ancient *Batavi*, where he and succeeding Emperors frequently resided, and held Conventions of the States. *Afchafnaburgensis*, in the Year 1046, calls it a Princely Palace, of incomparable Workmanship. Some pretend that this Castle was first built by *Julius Caesar*, and 'twas particularly asserted in an Inscription upon Marble fix'd to the Wall of it, taking Notice of its being repaired by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* in 1155; but this is controverted by the Learned, who also reject the Story of the Town's being first built by *Bato*, who is said to have brought the *Gatti* into this Country: But *Cluverius* owns, that 'tis mentioned by *Antonin* and the *Itinerary Table* as a famous City in their Time. It had the same Privileges allow'd it by *Frederick II.* and *Henry VII.* that were granted to *Aix la Chapelle*, and other Cities of the Empire; and 'tis noted for the Birth of the Emperor *Henry*, Son to *Frederick Barbarossa*. They had a Right to determine all Causes without Appeal, to the Royalties within their Territory, and were not oblig'd to march out of the City but under their Consul, and that no further than they might be able to return at Night. They were exempted from all Taxes throughout

Y y y y y 2

the

the Empire, and to this Day they are exempted from Tolls upon the *Maas*. They have always been tenacious of their Liberty, and were so much inrag'd at the K. of *Spain's* Proclamations for apprehending all Persons suspected of Heresy, without any Regard to their Privileges, that in 1566 they demolished all the Statues and Images in their Churches, and establish'd the Protestant Worship there. This City lies on the S. Side of that Branch of the *Rhine* called the *Waal*, about 29 Miles S. E. from *Utrecht*, 10 S. from *Arnhem*, 22 E. from *Bois-luduc*, and 10 N. W. from *Cleve*. 'Tis pleasantly situated on 5 little Hills in Form of a Semicircle, in Long. 24. 30. Lat. 51. 58. has a delicate Prospect towards *Cleve*, the *Maas*, the *Waal*, the *Rhine* and *Iffel*. From all which, those that travel by Water, have a very fine View of the City, which is well built of Brick for most part, and the Houses slated. It has been much enlarged at several Times, as appears by its old Walls. It has 5 Gates towards the Land, and as many towards the *Waal*; which, in the Opinion of some Learned Men, either deriv'd its Name from the *Gauls*, or gave it to them; the Transmutation, according to the Dialect of those Countries, of G. and W. being very frequent. Upon a high Hill adjoining to the River, stands the Castle called *Valckhoff*, which *Blau* says should be *Waalhoff*; i. e. a Palace on a *Waal*. 'Tis encompassed with high Stone Walls, has 3 large Courts, and 2 Chapels, the largest supported by 8 Pillars on each Side, and abounding with ancient Inscriptions; of which *Smeltius* gives an Account, and among other Things of *Roman* Urns, with black *Calculi* found in 'em, denoting the Ashes to be those of Malefactors; and of Leaden Medals found there, which are very rare. There's as pleasant a Prospect from the middle Tower of this Castle as is to be seen almost any where in *Europe*. Here's an Arch of a prodigious Bigness, with the Ruins of other Arches and Pillars, which amaze the curious Beholders. About 200 Years ago, the Fortifications were enlarged so as to take in both the Suburbs and Castle. The Remainders of the old Gates seem to resemble Triumphal Arches: The outer Wall is exceeding high, bairt with Brick, and guarded with strong Towers:

Some of whose Walls are 18 Foot thick. The chief of 'em is called the *Crown Tower*, because of the Pinnacles on its Top. Near this Tower there's a deep dry Ditch, with another adjoining full of Water, which was a Harbour for their Vessels in the Winter; but now they have built a larger on the Bank of the River, well secur'd with Fortifications. In the higher Part of the City, there are 3 large Ponds fed with hidden Springs; and through the whole, there are many deep Wells, which are observ'd to rise and fall as does the *Maas*, thō 6 Miles distant from it; whereas the *Waal* runs close by it, but in a Valley, towards which the Descent is considerable. Upon the Gate to the N. W. of the Castle, there are these Inscriptions; *Pax Imperii, Hucusque jus Stavriae. Melior est Bellicosa Libertas quam Servitus Pacifica*; i. e. "This is the Border of the Empire. So far reaches the Right of *Stavria*. 'Tis better to have Liberty with War, than Slavery with Peace." The Reason of 'em is suppos'd to be, That this was the Limits of the *Roman* Empire on this Side, and the Impost called *Stavria* reached not them, because, as we have heard before, they were exempted from Taxes. In 1608, a Canal for Vessels was dug betwixt hence and *Arnhem*, cross the *Betaw*, about 8 Miles long, at the Charge of those two Cities. Before the War with *Spain*, they had many Churches and other Religious Buildings; but now they have only 10, adorn'd with stately Towers: The chief is that of *St. Stephen*, a sumptuous Structure, supported by 35 Pillars of extraordinary Workmanship, with a magnificent Tower, beat down in the War, but since rebuilt. Their Archives are kept in a Part of this Church, inclos'd with Iron Grates; and in the Quire there's the Tomb of *Katharine of Bourbon*, Wife to *Adolphus* Duke of *Guelder*, with her Image in Brass, and 16 Coats of Arms expressing her Lineage. Near this Church stands the publick School, where their Youth are instructed in the Languages and Liberal Arts. 'Tis a Princely Structure, has the Images of the Apostles, several Doctors of the Church, and a noble Representation of the Last Judgment. They have two Hospitals for the Education of Orphans, two for old People, two for the Cure of Diseases, one for Lepers, and another:

ther for Lunatics. The Town-House is a magnificent Fabrick, with the Statues of several Emperors their Benefactors. The Seats for their Magistrates are beautifully adorn'd, and over the Heads of their Consuls there hangs a naked Sword, as an Emblem of Justice. They have also the Sword here with which the Counts of Egmond and Horn were executed at *Brussels* by the D. of *Alva's* Order. This City was Imperial till 1248, that 'twas given in Fee to *Otho III.* of *Nassau*, Count of *Guelder*, by the Emperor *William* Count of *Holland*. Their Government is by two Consuls, who have Maes born before them, a Council of 24, and 12 *Eschevins*. The Consuls are chosen Annually; and after the Expiration of their Office, are made Captains of the City Companies. Their chief Governor was formerly a Burgrave, who dwelt in the Castle, and extended his Jurisdiction over the City and District. They pay to the Bishop of *Liege*, for their Exemption from Toll on the *Maes* there, Annually on *Low-Sunday*, a Pair of Buff Gloves, and two Pounds of Pepper.

The Arms of this City are, a *Field Or*, with a *Spread-Eagle Sables*, on his Breast, a *Scutcheon Vert*, with a *Lion Or*, and an Imperial Crown, for their Crest.

The Citizens are addicted to Trade, War, and Learning, and seldom infranchise Strangers, but such as are like to adorn their Community. They make great Profit by brewing of Beer, and feeding of Cattle. This Town surrender'd to the *French* after 6 Days Siege in 1672, when the Garrison was made Prisoners of War. This scandalous Surrender, considering the Strength of the Place, was ascrib'd to the same Treachery which brought so much of that Country into the Hands of the *French*. They knew the Importance of it so well, that they began a Citadel there, employ'd 3000 Men daily on its other Fortifications, and 2000 in casting up Lines in the Neighbourhood. They made it one of their Store-houses for Plunder; and when they abandon'd it in 1674, they threw a Ship-load of Arms into the River, and forc'd 82000 Crowns from the City. 'Tis famous for the Treaty held here in 1678 and 1679, when a Peace was concluded betwixt the *French* and the Confederates. 'Twas well

nigh surpris'd by the *French* in 1702, not without Suspicion of Treachery; but was sav'd by the happy Retreat of the Earl of *Atblone* towards it, who oblig'd the *French* to march off with Loss. 'Twas frequently taken and retaken by the *Dutch* and *Spaniards* in the Beginning of the Civil Wars.

2. *Knodsenburg*, on the other Side the *Waal*, over against *Nimeguen*, so called, says *Bleau*, from a Sedition of the Inhabitants of *Nimeguen*, who appear'd there with knotty Cubs. 'Twas finish'd by Prince *Maurice* in 1590, to curb the *Spanish* Garrison of *Nimeguen*, tho' Count *Mansfeld* march'd with the *Spanish* Army to hinder him, but in vain. The Town was afterwards galled so much with the Cannon of this Fort, that the Duke of *Parma* laid Siege to it; but part of his Forces being defeated by Sir *Francis Vere* and Count *Solms*, he shamefully rais'd the Siege. Upon which the *Dutch* soon after took *Nimeguen*: The Duke pretended to excuse this, which was one of the most inglorious Actions of his Life, by his Orders from *K. Philip* to march into *France* and assist the Leaguers; but his Stay in those Provinces 5 Months after, discover'd the Weakness of his Apology.

3. *Battenburg*, Lat. *Aix Batavorum*, supposed by *Cluverius* to be that called their *Oppidum*, is now a small Town on the *Maes*, about 10 Miles S. W. from *Nimeguen*.

4. *Mook*, or *Mouch*, higher on the *Maes*, a small Village about 9 Miles S. from *Nimeguen*, famous for the Victory which the *Spaniards* obtain'd over Count *Lodowick*, Brother to *William Pr.* of *Orange*, in 1574, as he was coming to join the Prince, which was a great Discouragement to those who had revolted from *Spain*, and endanger'd their total Destruction, had not Providence order'd it otherwise.

5. *Tolhuys*, about 10 Miles E. from *Nimeguen*, on the other Side the *Waal*, formerly a Custom-House belonging to the D. of *Cleve*. It has a Castle, with one great Tower, within Musket shot of the River. 'Tis noted for the Passage of the *French* Army in 1672, by the Treachery of *Mombas*, formerly mentioned; tho' 'twas not effected without Loss, the Prince of *Condé*, with several other great Men, being wounded; and the D. of *Longueville*, with several others of Quality, kill'd in the Action.

6. *Schenckschans*, 2 Miles S. from the *Tel. buys*, upon the Point of the *Betaw*, where the *Rhine* divides it self into two Branches, the greater call'd the *Waal*, and the lesser retaining the old Name. 'Twas founded by *Martin Schenk* for the *Dutch* in 1588. He had deserted the Service of *Spain*, because another was prefer'd to him in the Government of *Friesland*. He did so much annoy the Places subject to *Spain* from this Fort, that when he was afterwards drown'd in attempting to surpris *Nimeguen*, the *Spaniards* there made publick Rejoycings for several Days; and when the Town was surrender'd to Prince *Maurice*, he did so much Honour to his Memory, that tho' he was born but of mean Parents in that City, he order'd his Corps to be buried in the Sepulchre of the Dukes of *Guelder*. This Place is so strong by its Situation, that the D. of *Parma* would never attempt it by Force. 'Twas betray'd to the *Spaniards* in 1635, but soon after recover'd by the Pr. of *Orange*, after 8 Months Siege, and strongly fortified. 'Twas afterwards betray'd to the *French* in 1672, but recover'd in 1674. It commands both Branches of the *Rhine*, with the Wind-Mills and Ditches that prevent the *Betuwe* from being overflowed, is fortified with a great Ditch, good Bastions, and a strong Rampart, on the Side next the Land, and by the *Rhine* and the *Waal* every where else; so that 'tis reckon'd one of the Keys of the *Netherlands*. It anciently belong'd to the Dukes of *Cleve*, and on that Account the K. of *Prussia* has Pretensions to it.

7. *Tiel*, on the S. Side of the *Waal*, 13 Miles W. from *Nimeguen*, is Capital of its District, a strong Town, of a long Figure, with a Marsh on the N. The Streets are narrow and crooked, and the Air unwholesome. 'Twas attacked in vain by *Charles V.* in 1528, but yielded to the *French*, and by them dismantled in 1672.

8. *Buren*, 5 Miles N. W. from *Tiel*: It has an ancient Castle, with a Wall and a deep Ditch, and is the Capital of a Lordship, which came to the Family of *Orange* by the Wife of *William I.* Daughter to the Count of *Buren*.

9. *Culenburg*, on the *Lech*, 4 Miles N. W. from *Buren*, Capital of a small County.

10. *Bommel*, 9 Miles S. W. from *Tiel*, a pleasant Wall'd Town, with broad and regular Streets. 'Tis very strong, with good Curtains, Bastions, and Towers, a double Wall, and double Ditches. It stands low, in a marshy Ground, which they can overflow from the *Waal* and the *Maes*. 'Twas yielded to the *French* in 1672, who spent 14 Days in destroying its Fortifications, carried off the Artillery and Ammunition, and oblig'd the Town to pay 36000 Guilders to prevent being burnt. 'Twas afterwards strongly fortified when recover'd by the States. 'Twas first walled in and made a City by *Otho* of *Nassau*, Count of *Guelder*, in 1299. 'Twas surpris'd and taken from the *Spaniards* in 1572 by a small Detachment, who were drove out by the Inhabitants, because they broke down the Images in their Church. 'Twas afterwards taken by the *Dutch*, and twice after attack'd by the *Spaniards* in 1589 and 1599; but they were repulsed both times with great Loss. The Town chuses their own Magistrates, under whose Jurisdiction are many good Villages, and all the District called *Bommelward*, which is an Island about 12 Miles long, and 4 broad, betwixt the *Waal* and the *Maes*. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Meningius* the Divine, and other Learned Men.

11. *Fort St. Andrew*, 3 Miles S. from *Bommel*, was founded by Cardinal *Andrew* of *Austria* near the Point of the Isle of *Bommel*, to command the *Waal* and the *Maes*, which communicate near it by a Canal. He fortified it with 5 Royal Bastions, good Curtains, a deep Ditch, a Cover'd way, and many Redoubts; so that 'twas reckon'd one of the strongest Forts in the Country. Prince *Maurice*, in 1599, took it with 3000 Men, while the *Spaniards* attempted to relieve it with 8000; the Garrison having mutinied, and agreed to surrender for 125000 Florins, in Consideration of their Arrears. 'Twas surrender'd to the *French* in 1672. About a Mile further W. on the Point of the Island lies *Fort Voorn*, since called *Fort Nassau*, because founded by Pr. *Maurice*, after the taking of *Fort St. Andrew*. 'Tis so strong as to be reckon'd impregnable. 'Twas basely surrender'd to the *French* in 1672.

The BETUWE.

HAVING thus given an Account of the chief Towns and Places of Note in this Country, we think fit to give a brief Description of it self, because 'tis the ancient *Batavia*, and the Seat of the *Batavi*, that make such a Figure in the *Roman History*. We have formerly taken Notice from *Tacitus*, that they were part of the *Catti*, who leaving their ancient Country, because of intestine Seditions, settled first here, and afterwards extended their Limits over that Part of the Country betwixt the *Waal* and the *Maes*. 'Tis controverted amongst Authors, whether they or the Country gave Name to one another? Some think they gave Name to it, because there seems to be some Footsteps of their Name in the Towns of *Battenberg* and *Battenhausen* in *Hesse*, from whence they came. Others think the Country gave Name to them, and that 'twas called *Betawe*, which in the old Language of the Country signifies a better Soil, to distinguish it from the neighbouring *Veluwe*, which signifies a Soil of a heathy Colour. Their Territories are supposed to have extended from *Rhinberg* in the Dutchy of *Cleve* to *Catwick* on the Sea, which is thought to have derived its Name from the *Catti*, and is not improbable, since *Tacitus* assigns them the Ocean for their Boundary on one Side. But the Curious may see more of this in *Cluverius's Germania Antiqua*, and *Cellarius's Notitia Orbis Antiqui*. The Country at present called the *Betuwe* reaches from *Schenkenshuys* on the E. to *Warcum* on the W. which is 40 Miles in Length; and the greatest Breadth betwixt *Grave* on the *Maes*, and *Arnhem* on the *Rhine*, is 17.

The Quarter of Arnheim,

HAS its Name from *Arnhem*, its chief City, which lies on the N. Side of the *Rhine*, about 8 Miles N. from *Nimeguen*. Authors agree, that 'tis the *Arenacum* of *Tacitus*. 'Tis the Capital of the *Veluwe*, and the Seat of the Supreme Council of *Guelder*. 'Tis very strongly fortified, with a

large Ditch fac'd with Free-stone, Brick Walls, and Ramparts. It has also 5 Gates, so very strong, that anciently they serv'd as Fortresses. That called the *Rhine Gate* was the chief, and has a strong Bulwark near it. 'Twas walled and fortified in 1233, by *Orho* Count of *Guelder*, exempted from Toll through the Dutchy, and had other great Immunities. In 1443, 'twas made one of the *Hans-Towns*. 'Tis overlook'd by a Hill on the Side of the *Veluwe*, from whence there's a pleasant Prospect of the City and neighbouring Country. From this Hill there flows a large Current of Water, which turns their Mills, and fills their Ditch. Before their Revolt from the *Spaniards*, there were many Monasteries and Religious Houses in and about this City, but most of 'em now in Ruins. It suffered much by Fire in 1525. The Church of *St. Martin*, called also *St. Eusebius*, is a noble Structure, with a stately Tower. The Dukes of *Guelder* had a Palace here; but most of it was blown up by Accident in 1589. They have an Hospital for ancient and poor Citizens nobly endow'd, with two others of less Note. In the adjoining Village of *Osterbeck* was born the Emperor *Henry III.* in 1027: The News of which being carried to the Emperor his Father by the Pastor of the Place, he rewarded him with the Bishoprick of *Utrecht*. 'Twas taken from the *Spaniards* by the Count of *Meurs*, who join'd with the *Dutch* in 1585, and was surrender'd to the *French* after one Day's Attack in 1672, when they presently begun to enlarge its Fortifications, and erect a Magazine; but when they left it, they forc'd the City to pay 'em 170000 Guilders. Near the *Rhine Gate*, there's a Bridge of Boats into the *Betuwe*. Their Government is by a Judge, who has Jurisdiction over the City, and a great Part of the *Veluwe*, and two Burgomasters, chosen out of their 12 *Eschevins*. They have also 6 Masters of Corporations, chosen out of a certain Number presented to the Consuls and *Eschevins* by their Fraternities; and 48 Jurats, chosen in the same Manner to assist in the Management of Publick Affairs. For their Learned Men, we refer to *Bleau*.

2. *Wagenin'en*, on the *Rhine*, 10 Miles W. from *Arnhem*. 'Tis supposed to be the *Vada* of *Tacitus*, that was so stoutly defended

ded by *Jul. Brigantius* against his Uncle *Civilis*, the fam'd *Batavian* General. It stands on a moorish Ground, which adds to its Strength. On one Side, there's a large Heath above 5 Leagues broad; and on the other, good Pastures, and Arable Land. 'Twas taken by the *French* without Resistance in 1672.

3. *Harderwick*, on the *Zuyder-Sea*, 20 Miles N. from *Arnhem*. 'Twas walled by *Otho* of *Nassau*, Earl of *Guelder*, and had a Staple of Fish, called *Den Asslagh*, granted them by *D. Arnold* in 1443. Most of it was burnt down in 1503, but since rebuilt, much after the Fashion of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*, the Porches being large, and the Houses high. The Church of *St. Mary* exceeds the rest, being a stately Structure, and the Roof and Arches of excellent Workmanship. It has an exceeding high Steeple, seen at a great Distance by Land and Sea. It also suffered much by the Civil Wars, and most of their Religious Houses are now demolished, or converted to other Uses. In one of 'em is kept their Univerfity, which was founded in 1648, having been a *Schola Illustrius* long before. They have a good Library, furnished with excellent Books in Latin, Greek, and the Oriental Tongues, with several Volumes printed in *Chinese*. The Rector, who is the Supreme Magistrate, is Annually chosen by the 6 Curators. In the neighbouring Woods, they have such Plenty of Blue-Berries in the Season, which continues but 6 Weeks, that the very Freight of what they sell to *Amsterdam*, where they are much esteem'd as a second Course, amounts to 400 Crowns. This City was taken by the *French* in 1672. They dismantled and burnt most of it in 1673, and demanded 12000 Guilders to save the rest: Since which, it has not recover'd its former State. Among other Learned Men, *Gerardus Voetius*, the famous Lawyer, was born here. 'Twas he and *Albertus Leoninus* who are said to have form'd the Model of the present Commonwealth of the United Provinces. The *Zuyder-Sea* has made great Incroachments on the S. Side of the Town, swallow'd up several Meadows, with a Church and Village, which obliges them to secure the City on that Side with Dikes and Fences. A little from hence lies the small Island of *Urk*, supposed to have

been the Seat of the ancient *Urii*. It has been much diminished of late by Inundations, which is another Proof of *Sir William Temple's* Assertion, That the *Zuyder-Sea* is much larger than what it was in former Ages. This City was formerly one of the *Hans-Towns*.

4. *Elburg*, lies on the S. Sea, about 10 Miles N. E. from *Harderwick*. 'Tis an ancient Town, and was walled by Count *William*, Son to *Reinold III.* about 1400, and was also one of the *Hans-Town*. 'Tis of a square Figure, has 3 Gates, and a small River runs through it, with 5 Stone Bridges over it, on one of which they keep their Fish-Market.

These are the Towns of the *Veluwe*, which is 34 Miles long, and near 30 where broadest. 'Twas first separated from *Germany* by *Drusus's* Ditch. It formerly belong'd to the Dutchy of *Brabant*, but came to the Duke of *Guelder* by Marriage. Some of the Country is barren; in other Places there are large Woods of Oaks and Beech. There are many Gentlemen's Seats and good Mansions in it; and the whole is divided into several Districts, which have their particular Courts of Judicature, from which there lies an Appeal to a Place called *Engelander Holt*, which lies 2 German Leagues N. E. from *Arnhem*. In this Country lies the Palaces of *Loo* and *Dieren*, belonging to the Family of *Orange*. The first lies 17 Miles N. of *Arnhem*, on a rising Ground, in the middle of a large Plain, where there's good Hunting. 'Tis a noble Structure of modern Architecture, with fine Gardens, shady Walks and Grotto's, with admirable Fountains, especially one called the *Faeson of Venus*. It has also two great Cascades, where the Water falls so easily from one *Baeson* into the other, that the whole resembles a broad Mirror. *Dieren* lies near a Village of the same Name, about 10 Miles N. E. from *Arnhem*, is much inferior to *Loo*, but a noble House, with pleasant Avenues, and conveniently seated for Hunting.

The County of Zutphen,

HAS *Guelderland*, properly so called, on the W. the Bishoprick of *Munster* on the E. *Over-Iffel* on the N. and the Dutchy of

of *Cleves* on the S. is about 24 Miles from N. to S. and 28 from E. to W.

This Country came to *Otho* Count of *Guelder*, who married the Heiress. Its Name is derived from its lying on the South Fens, so called with respect to the Situation of the *Frizons*, who formerly inhabited this Country.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. *Zutphen*, a rich and populous City; and since the Revolt from *Spain*, made one of the strongest in the 7 Provinces. It lies on the River *Iffel*, 15 Miles N. E. from *Arnhem*. 'Tis an ancient City, tho' of nothing so long standing as the others we have already mentioned in *Guelderland*. 'Tis divided by the River *Iffel* into Old and New. The Buildings are fair and neat. Many People of Quality live in this City. The chief Church is that dedicated to *St. Peter* and *St. Walburg*. Some say, 'twas founded by Count *Otho* III. of *Nassau*; but *Bleau* reckons it much older. 'Tis a sumptuous Building, with an exceeding high Steeple, which was twice burnt by Lightning, viz. in 1446, and 1600; but rebuilt with more Splendor in 1635. It had a College of Canons, of which the Earls of *Guelder* were formerly Provosts. They have a large Font of Brass of curious Workmanship, and in the E. Side of the Church a good publick Library. 'Tis noted also for the Monument of Count *Otho* III. and his Lady. There's the Ruin of a Palace near the Fishers-Gate, formerly the Seat of the Count of *Zutphen*; and near it, a very high Brick Tower, built in the Manner of a four-corner'd Pyramid, which is a great Ornament to the City, and affords a pleasant Prospect over the neighbouring Country. Near *St. Peter's* Church, there's a large and magnificent Structure, with 3 Fronts; in one Part of which, the Provincial States hold their Assemblies. The Counts of *Bronckhorst* have also a Palace here. There are two Bridges over the River, which join the Old and the New Town. The Air is healthful, and the Citizens courteous, being polish'd by the Numbers of Gentlemen who live here. They had formerly many Monasteries, now turn'd into Hospitals for Aged, Sick, Orphans, and Strangers. Those

without the Walls are demolished. The neighbouring Country abounds with Pasture and Arable Lands. 'Twas sack'd during the first War with *Spain* by the D. of *Alva's* Army, and the Inhabitants cruelly used. 'Twas afterwards retaken by the *Dutch* thus: They dress'd a Number of Soldiers like Women going to Market, with Arms under their Clothes, who coming early in the Morning, seiz'd the Gate as soon as 'twas open'd; and being follow'd by some Hundreds of Men from an Ambush, they made themselves Masters of the Town. The great Sir *Philip Sidney*, who serv'd under Sir *Francis Vere*, died of a Wound he received in this Siege. 'Twas basely surrender'd to the *French* in 1672, and the Garrison made Prisoners of War, tho' 'twas then fortified with 9 Bastions, 4 Half-Moons, 2 Horn-Works, 2 broad Ditches, treble Ramparts, and such other Works, as 'twas reckon'd impregnable. They abandon'd it again in 1674. Their Government is by Consuls, and 12 Eschevins, of whom the two Seniors are call'd Consuls. The Senators are for Life, except upon Misdemeanor or Resignation. They are assisted by a Council of 9, chosen out of the Commons, who have no Vote, but only give their Advice. There lies an Appeal hither from the inferior Cities to this Court, who have a Power of final Decision: But in extraordinary Cases, they are assisted by the Nobles of the City, and the Deputies of the Towns. This City had anciently a Mint, and was one of the *Hans-Towns*. *Gerard* of *Zutphen*, Master to the famous *Thomas a Kempis*, and other Learned Men, were born here.

2. *Doesburg*, 6 Miles S. from *Zutphen*, is by some called *Drusburgum*, and supposed to have been built by *Drusus*, because it lies near the Place where he cut his Ditch to bring the *Rhine* into the *Iffel*. By this Ditch, *Tacitus* says, *Germanicus* sail'd into the Lake *Flevus*, as his Father *Drusus* had done before him. This Town was fortified by the States during the War with *Spain*. 'Tis defended on one Side by the *Iffel*, and on the other by a great Marsh; so that 'tis only accessible by a Neck of Land. 'Twas surrender'd to the *French* in 1672, after a very feint Resistance, and abandon'd by them in 1674, when they dismantled it.

Z z z z z

3. *Dordrecht*.

3. *Detecum*, stands on the Old *Issel*, about 6 Miles S. E. from *Doesburg*, is a wall'd Town of no great Strength, and surrender'd to the Pr. of *Condé* in 1672.

4. *Groß*, 15 Miles S. E. from *Zurphen*, on the River *Slink*, where it falls into the *Berkel*. 'Twas fortified by *Charles V.* because it lies on an important Pass betwixt *Germany* and the *Netherlands*. 'Twas afterwards made stronger by the *Spaniards*; and when taken by Pr. *Maurice* in 1627, is said by *Grotius*, in his Account of this remarkable Siege, to have then 5 Bastions, join'd by strong Curtains, a Wall under the Bastions, a broad Ditch, and a Rampart beyond it, sloping in such a manner, as the Shot from the Town had direct Passage to the Enemy; whereas theirs flew over the Town, without doing it much Hurt. In this Siege Count *William of Nassau*, a young Prince of great Hopes, was slain. It had been formerly besieg'd in vain by Pr. *Maurice* in 1595, but was taken by him in 1597. 'Twas retaken by *Spinola* in 1606, but recover'd by Pr. *Maurice*, as we have heard, and so well fortified, that 'twas reckon'd one of the strongest Towns in the Provinces. It yielded after a short Resistance to the Bishop of *Munster* in 1672, but was recover'd afterwards by the States.

5. *Breefort*, 5 Miles S. from *Groß*. 'Twas fortified about 140 Years ago, and is so encompassed by Marshes and Fens, that there's no Access to it but by a narrow Path; and the adjacent Soil is so spongy and moist, that 'tis not easy to be drein'd. Prince *Maurice*, when he besieg'd it in 1597, contriv'd swimming Machines, by which he attack'd it. He lost so many Men before it, that the Soldiers, when they took it by Storm, were so enrag'd, that the Prince was not able to restrain them from the Cruelties and Disorders that are usual on such Occasions; so that they plunder'd it, and had a very rich Booty, the People of the adjacent Country having brought thither their best Effects.

6. *Lochem*, lies about 8 Miles E. from *Zurphen*, upon the River *Berkel*, is a Place of some Strength, and was taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in 1672; but he afterwards abandon'd it.

There are several Baronies, Præfectures, and considerable Villages, in this County.

The Province of Over-Issel,

IS from S. E. to N. W. 60 Miles long, of an unequal Breadth, but 40 where broadest. It has *Groningen* on the N. *Zurphen* and Part of the Bishoprick of *Munster* on the S. the *Zaayder Sea* and the Quarter of *Arnhem* on the W. and *Westphalia* on the E. It lies more open to Incursions from *Germany* than any of the 7 Provinces, and is but ill furnish'd with the natural Guards of Rivers and Forrests. The Soil in many Places is barren, being full of Sands, Heaths or Marshes; but in some Parts they have good Corn and Pasturage. 'Tis the worst inhabited of any of the Provinces, partly on the Account of the Barrenness of so great a Part of their Soil, and because their Situation is not convenient for Trade. 'Twas the Seat of the ancient *Brufferi*, and after of the *Frixons* and part of the *Saxons*, of whose Language, Manners, and Immunities, they still retain more than their Neighbours. The Bishop of *Utrecht* did formerly subdue this Province, and had it confirmed to him by Grants of Emperors; but 'twas resign'd to *Charles V.* by Bishop *Henry of Bavaria*. In some Parts of this Province, particularly the County of *Drent*, there are Stones of so prodigious a Bulk, which, not being the Product of the Soil, strike the Spectators with Amazement to think how they could be brought hither. Some of 'em lie upon the top of others, with Room for a Man to creep through betwixt them. The Inhabitants have a Tradition, that they were Heathen Altars; and that such miserable Wretches as were sacrific'd to their Idols, were forc'd to creep thorough betwixt those Stones, where they were all bedawb'd with Humane Ordure. The Province is divided into 3 Parts, the *Isseland* or *Salland*, which lies next the *Issel*, *Twente*, and *Drent*.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. *Daventer*, on the E. Side of the *Issel*, about 6 Miles N. from *Zurphen*, a large, populous, and neat City, whose Inhabitants, says *Comringius*, are much addic'd to Traffick and Learning. 'Tis an ancient City, and

and has been well fortified a long time. 'Twas formerly an Imperial and Hans Town, and made a Bishoprick, Suffragan of *Utrecht*, in 1559; but in 1580, the Bishoprick was abolished, when the Town, with the rest of the Province, revolted from Spain. 'Twas treacherously deliver'd up to them again in 1587 by Sir *William Stanley*, a Papist, who was made Governor by the Earl of *Leicester*: but recover'd by Pr. *Maurice* in 1591, when he very much added to its Fortifications. It stands in a pleasant Country, abounding with Pastures and Arable Lands. It has a large Market-Place, with a Guard-House, where some of the Citizens continually keep Guard. They have a Cathedral, with two other Churches, and a spacious Guildhall of ancient Architecture. They had formerly 5 Monasteries, with a Church each, 5 Hospitals for Strangers, and one for Orphans. They have a Power of Coinage, Weekly Markets, and 5 Annual Fairs. *Erasmus* had part of his Education in their Free-School, which about 60 Years ago had Professors of Philosophy, Divinity, Law, and Hebrew, assign'd it by the States. It has 6 Gates, some of 'em of curious Workmanship, especially that called the *Brink Port*, adorn'd with Statues and Inscriptions, and particularly that of *Charles V.* set up in 1544, as a Monument for his defending the Town. The Tower of *Noremburg*, adjoining to the Gate of that Name, is their most remarkable Building for Strength and Neatness: The Walls are 18 Foot thick, the Fabrick exactly round, the lowermost and uppermost Part of Stone, and the middle of Brick. 'Twas betray'd to the Bishop of *Munster* in 1672, when there were at least 10000 resolute fighting Men in it; and deliver'd to him at Night without Consent of the Garrison or Burgers, by the Treachery of some of their Magistrates. 'Twas quitted again in 1674 by the Bishop of *Cologne*, to whose Share it fell for 42000 Crowns, to save their Fortifications and Guns. *Gerard*, called the *Great*; *Hegius*, *Erasmus's* Schoolmaster; and the Geographer *Jacobus Davintrimus*, were born here. Their Government, says *Comringius*, is by Consuls, Eschevins, and Senators, in all 16; two of whom are Consuls, chosen every two Months out of

the Eschevins. They are assisted by a Common-Council of 48.

2. *Zwoll*, called anciently *Middlewick*, but now *Zwoll*, because of a swelling Disease, says *Bleau*, that formerly infested their Cattle. 'Twas made a City in 1230 by the Bishop of *Utrecht*, for the Service they did him in his War with the County of *Drent*. It lies 15 Miles N. from *Deventer*, upon a small Stream from the *Vecht*; which mixing with those of the black Waters, forms several Currents that run through the City, and contribute much to its Neatness. They fall into the *Vecht* without the Town, and make a Channel to the *Zuyder-Sea*, from whence the Tide flows up, which advances its Trade. The adjacent Country has many Orchards and Meadows, which, with the Walks of Trees within and without the Fortifications, make the City very pleasant. It has 3 large and strong Gates, which open into Suburbs, equal to good Villages. There are 24 Towers upon the old Walls, that were formerly its chief Defence; to which have since been added a double Ditch, 10 good Bastions, and a Trench between the *Zwoll* and the *Iffel*, upon which there are 4 good Fortresses, 3 of 'em so large, that they resemble little Towns. Their Trade consists chiefly in Timber, Cattle fatted in the neighbouring Pastures, *Bentham* Stones, Wool, Corn, Butter, and Cheese. The Inhabitants are reckon'd courteous to Strangers, and charitable to the Poor. Their chief Buildings are, 1. St. *Michael's* Church, in the great Market-Place, a large Structure of good Workmanship, noted for its fine Organ, Pulpit, harmonious Bells, and wonderful high Steeple. They have another Church called St. *Mary's*, with several that formerly belong'd to Monasteries. Their Guildhall is noted for its Antiquity, and the adjoining Tavern for the Image of St. *Christopher*. They have several Hospitals, a Granary, and a good Arsenal. They have likewise a College, wherein, *Bleau* says, there were usually 500 Students, and gives us an Account of their Learned Men. They have a Court, where all Causes are finally determin'd, and to which Appeals are made from the inferior Towns of the Province. The Government is much like that of *Deventer*. The Provincial

Vincial States meet in this Town, *Daventer*, and *Campen*, by Turns. They have 18 large and populous Villages under their Jurisdiction. They had anciently within their District two famous Monasteries: The first was that of *Winsem*, which had 70 Convents of the same Order under it; the other was that of Mount *Agnis*, of which the famous *Thomas a Kempis* was Prior. This City was treacherously yielded to the Bishop of *Munster* in 1672, and, in the Name of the Provincial States, sent Deputies to the other Cities of the Country to do the like. 'Twas quitted by the Bishop of *Cologne*, to whose Share it fell in 1674, when he sent two of their Magistrates to *Mastricht* as Hostages for 100000 Guilders demanded of the City. As a Punishment for this Treachery, the Towns of this Province were deprived of their Power to chuse their own Magistrates without the Prince's Consent. Their ancient Arms was *Sr. Michael* the Archangel bestriding the Dragon, and bearing a Shield in his Hand, with a white Cross painted upon it; but now only a Cross Argent in a Field Azure.

3. *Campen*, lies about 7 Miles N. W. from *Zwoll*, upon the W. Side of the *Iffel*, a little above where it falls into the *Zuyder-Sea*. It has its Name from the pleasant Fields which furround it. 'Tis a large and neat City, with capacious Churches of curious Workmanship, and a noble Guildhall. Their Custom-House is admir'd by the best Architects, and is so stately, that Princes and others of the greatest Quality are lodg'd and entertain'd in it. The Bridge over the *Iffel* is of a great Length, stands upon vast Pieces of Timber drove into the Bottom of the River, and is defended at the further End by a strong Fort, that has several Bastions. The City is encompassed by a thick Wall, with many high Towers, after the ancient Manner; so that its chief Strength lies in its Situation. This City has the Privilege of a Mint, with other large Immunities. Their Trade is decay'd of late, the Harbour being so much choak'd up, that it does not admit large Vessels. The Learned *Albertus Pigheius*, fam'd for his Skill in Mathematicks, Cosmography, and writing against *Luther*, for which he was much esteem'd and enrich'd by 3 successive Popes, was a Senator of this Place. The Govern-

ment of this City resembles that of *Zwoll*. 'Twas surrender'd in 1672 to the Bishop of *Munster*; and being allotted to the French, was quitted by them in 1673, when they exacted 80000 Guilders to save the Town and its Fortifications; several of which they destroy'd notwithstanding.

4. *Hasselt*, lies on the *Veche*, 7 Miles N. E. from *Campen*, was made a City by the Bishop of *Utrecht* in 1252, and built to oppose the *Frizons*. 'Tis a pleasant City, pretty rich, and govern'd in the same Manner as the rest.

Ommen, 13 Miles E. from *Zwoll*, a Wall'd Town, with the neighbouring Fortrefs of *Ommer*. *Sonce* belongs to *Friesland* and *Groningen*; and *Hardenberg*, another Wall'd Town, 7 Miles N. E. from *Ommen*, are both in the Jurisdiction of *Salland*.

5. *Geelmuyden*, lies on the *Veche*, 4 Miles N. E. from *Hasselt*. 'Twas made a City by *John* of *Nassau* Bishop of *Utrecht*, and had formerly a strong Castle, now in Ruins.

6. *Vollenhoven*, above 3 Miles E. from *Geelmuyden*, on the *Zuyder-Sea*, is a neat fortified Town, with a great Market for Corn from the *Baltick*, &c. and Capital of its District of the same Name. 'Twas the Seat of the K. of *Spain's* Grand Council in those Parts, and there was no Appeal from the Magistrates of the Town, only they were to pronounce Sentence in Presence of the Governor of the Province, who generally resided here, as many of the Nobility of the Province do still.

7. *Swartswys*, 5 Miles S. E. from *Vollenhoven*, is a strong Fort, was taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in 1672, when he enlarged the Fortifications so much, that the Dutch could not take it after 3 Attempts; but they recover'd it at last.

8. *Steenwick*, lies 7 Miles N. E. from *Vollenhoven*. 'Tis a small, but very strong Town, held out a Siege of 3 Months against the *Spaniards* in 1581, when they were obliged to rise from before it by the English under Colonel *Norris*. 'Twas afterwards taken by the *Spaniards*, and retaken by *Pr. Maurice* in 1592, after a sharp Siege, wherein the *Spanish* Governor said, He had been dug out like a Fox. The adjacent Country has good Pastures and Arable Land. 'Twas surrender'd to the Bishop of *Munster*, who quitted it in 1673, and basely ruin'd their

their Fortifications, tho' he had obtain'd 10000 Guilders to spare them; but 'twas since re-fortified.

9. *Blockzyl*, lies 6 Miles S. W. from *Steenwick*, at the Mouth of the River *Aa*, and on the Bank of the *Zuyder-Sea*, which it commands in-Part. 'Tis a Place of considerable Trade, very populous, and well fortified.

The District of T W E N T E,

Is divided into 9 Jurisdictions, each of which have their Courts.

The chief P L A C E S here are,

1. *Oldenzyl*, supposed to have been the Capital of the ancient *Salii*, and from them to have had its Latin Name *Salia*. It has been of more Note for its frequent changing of Masters, than for its Bulk or Strength. It lies on the Frontiers of the County of *Benthem* in *Westphalia*, 25 Miles N. E. from *Deventer*. 'Twas 4 times taken and retaken during the War with *Spain*, and at last recover'd by Prince *Henry Frederick*. 'Twas taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in 1672, but retaken by the Dutch in 1674.

2. *Gramsberg*, about 3 Miles N. E. from *Hardenberg*, and 6 S. W. from *Coevorden*, is an ancient Castle, memorable for the brave Defence which its Garrison of 36 Men made against the Troops of *Munster* in 1672, when they stood out two Storms by 900 Men, and yielded at last upon good Terms; but the Garrison was made Prisoners of War, contrary to Capitulation. The Bishop fortified it strongly afterwards, to distress *Coevorden*, and to facilitate his March into the Marshes of *Drente*, by casting up a Bank cross the *Vecht*; but he afterwards abandon'd it.

3. *Otmarsen*, 5 Miles N. from *Oldenzyl*, said to have been founded, and taken its Name from *Odornarus K.* of the *Franks*, because onë *Vechtman*, a Learned *Druid*, and one of his Familiars, was buried here: Or according to others, 'twas the Sepulchre of *Odornar* himself, and therefore called by his Name. 'Twas taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in 1672; but afterwards quitted by him. There are other Towns in this District, such as *Almelo*, *Humberg*, *Delden*,

Enschede, *Goor*, and *Diepenhem*; of which we find no Description.

The County of Drente, and Lordship of Westerwold:

This is a large Country, has *Groningen* on the N. *Sallant*, *Twente*, and the County of *Benthem*, on the S. *East-Friesland* on the W. *Emden* and other Parts of *Westphalia* on the E. A great Part of it has Marshes and Heaths, and other Parts abound with Turf, which are carried to *Holland* and elsewhere. 'Tis a distinct County, and not properly one of the United Provinces, tho' obliged to contribute to all their publick Taxes. They have a Right to chuse their own Governor, an Itinerant Court, from which there's no Appeal; and alledge, that they had formerly a Stadtholder; that they sign'd the Union with the rest of the Provinces, and were look'd upon as a distinct Member of the United States, till torn from them by the Bishop of *Munster's* Invasion: But we do not find that their Plea was much regarded, or that they have been allowed to send Deputies to the States General.

Their chief P L A C E S are,

1. *Coevorden*, on the Frontiers of *Westphalia*, 22 Miles N. E. from *Zwoll*, and 6 from *Hardenberg*. 'Tis, tho' a small Place, as strong a Fortress as any in *Europe*, and of great Importance by its Situation, because it commands the Passes into both the *Friesland*, *Drente*, and the *Omlands*. All the publick Ways about it, except what leads to *Groningen*, are so narrow, that an Army cannot march in that Country without great Difficulty. 'Tis strengthen'd on the N. E. and W. by unpassable Marshes. It has the Village *Dalen* on the N. and a large Heath that reaches as far as *Groningen*; and on the other Sides, such Fens as, together with its strong Works, make it impregnable. In 1581, 'twas surrender'd to the *Spaniards*, after the Confederate Troops under Count *Hohenloe* were defeated near *Hardenberg*; but recover'd soon after by *Hohenloe*, when he was reforc'd. The *Spaniards*, having defeated him a second time, it fell again.

again into their Hands. In 1592, Pr. Maurice having defeated the Spaniards under Verdugas, who was sent to relieve it, took it again. In 1593, Verdugas attack'd it once more, but was forc'd by Pr. Maurice to raise the Siege. In 1672, 'twas treacherously surrender'd to the Bishop of Munster, almost without Opposition, tho' defended by 7 good Bastions, bearing the Name of the United Provinces, with excellent Parapets, Fausse-Brays, and other Outworks; their Castle reckon'd impregnable, a large and deep double Ditch, and exceeding high and strong Ramparts; but in December following 'twas recover'd by the Dutch with very little Resistance, tho' the Garrison was strong, and well provided, and had Notice of their Approach; but the Dutch coming several Hours later than the Garrison was informed by Deserters, they took it for a false Alarm; and relying on the Strength of the Place, most of 'em went to Bed, being tir'd out with watching; the Dutch approach'd it under a Fog, and making their Assault, recover'd it with the Loss of 150 Men. In the close of 1673, the Bishop of Munster block'd it up, encompass'd it with a high Bank, and so coop'd up the Waters, that they very much annoy'd the Town, and made them despair of Relief: But while they were contriving to cut the Banks, they were broke down by a Storm, which relieved the Town, and drown'd some of the Bishop's Troops.

In the same Country, near Westervold, lies *Valterfchans*, 12 Miles N. E. from Coevorden, so good a Fortress, that 'tis able to resist the strongest Enemy: And nearer Coevorden, there lies another strong Fort called *Schans-Ten-Hole*; but not so considerable as the former.

The rest of this Country contains several neat and large Villages; the chief of which are, 1. *Meppel*, a large open Town, noted for furnishing Turfs to the Neighbourhood. 2. *Assen*, towards the N. of the Province, a small City, where there's a Court of Judicature. This Country is divided into 6 Districts, who have each 4 Judges, chosen Annually out of the Gentry and Peasants, that every Week distribute Justice and determine Suits in their respective Jurisdictions. They meet all together three times in a Year to determine Causes of a higher

Nature; but there lies an Appeal to the Supreme Court of the Province, which finally determines the Matter. Besides, every Village has an Officer called a *Scout*, who determines lesser Causes, and has a Power to distrein upon Goods. Coevorden, and the Lordship of *Ranen*, are exempted from all those Courts; the latter being subject to some Nobles, and the other to the Governor of the Province, who generally resides in the Castle of Coevorden. The Lordship of *Westervold* lies betwixt *Drente* and *East-Friesland*, and is generally moorish, except where it lies on the Bay of *Dullert*; contains about 12 Villages, and 2 Monasteries. It had formerly particular Lords, belong'd afterwards, with the County of *Drente*, to the Province of *Utrecht*, then to *Guelderland*; and at last 'twas given by the House of Burgundy to the City of *Groningen*, on Condition they should not change its Laws, nor diminish the Liberty of the Villagers; and under their Jurisdiction it still remains.

While *Over-Issel* was under the Bishop of *Utrecht*, the States of the Province had the Supreme Power, he being only President, and oblig'd to put their Resolves in Execution: Nor had he any Jurisdiction over the Clergy, or the three chief Cities of *Daventer*, *Campen*, and *Zwoll*; but he being unable to protect them, they submitted to the Emperor *Charles V.* on Condition that he should preserve their ancient Liberties and Privileges. They had some Difficulty after the *Munster* Invasion to be restor'd to their Privilege of sending Deputies to the States General; but at last they were allowed it in 1674. M. de Fer says, the whole Province contains 9 Cities, 10 large open Towns, 210 Villages, and 5 Fortresses.

The Province of Groningen,

HAS the Ocean on the N. *Over-Issel* on the S. *Friesland* on the W. and *Embsden* on the E. The greatest Length from S. E. to N. W. is 46 Miles; but its Breadth is unequal, the greatest being about 24; and that Part of the Province which lies betwixt *Over-Issel* and *Embsden*, or rather Part of *Westphalia*, is a very narrow Tract of Ground. 'Tis debated by Authors, whether the ancient Inhabitants were the *Fri-*

sons? But the present Inhabitants are agreed to be descended for most part from *Westphalia* and *Drente*. The Air of this Country is sharp, and well purified by continual Breezes; so that People of 70, 80, and 90 Years of Age, are frequent here. They have little Stone or Wood, but Plenty of Turf for Fuel: They have good Pasture Ground, and large Herds of great and small Cattle, but few Wild-Beasts. They have store of Salt and Fresh-Water Fish, and are in Disposition much like the *Frisons*, but more industrious and cautious, which is ascribed to their Trade and frequent Commerce with Strangers. *Ubbo Emmius* says, That an Age before he wrote, 'twas called the *Lesser Friesland*; and that tho' the whole went under the Name of *Groningen*, yet in their publick Acts 'twas only called *Omland*: But the Stile at present is *Groningen* and the *Omlands*.

Groningen is divided into the Lordship of *Gorecht*, a small Tract in the middle of the Country; the *Old Ampt*, lying E. from hence to the Bank of *Dollart* Bay; the *Westerveld*, which lies S. from hence, and runs like a small Wedge betwixt *Drente* and the Bishoprick of *Munster*.

The *Omlands* is divided into the W. Quarter betwixt *Friesland* and the *Gorecht*; *Hunsingo*, which is the N. Part of the Province; and *Five-Lingo*, which lies betwixt *Hunsingo* and the *Old Ampt*.

The chief PLACES are,

1. *Groningen*, 30 Miles N. W. from *Coevorden*, 21 S. W. from *Embsen*, and 29 E. from *Leewarden*, in Long. 25. 12. Lat. 53. 12. Some derive the Name from *Grunius*, a *Trejan* or *Franc*. It stands on the Rivers *Hunius* and *Aba*, in a Point of Land where they join; so that 'tis water'd with several Channels, artificial and natural. The *Aba* is received and let out of the City by several large Arches under its Fortifications; and where it goes out, receives the *Hunius*, which encompasses the E. and N. Parts of the City, and forms a Channel capable of a great Number of Vessels. The *Aba* has a Bridge of Brick over it within the City, which has been much enlarged at several times, particularly in 1635, when 'twas made one half larger than before. It has

17 great Bastions, with other Fortifications in proportion, and is encompassed with a Ditch of 270 Foot broad. The City is large and populous, and, if well garrison'd, reckon'd impregnable. It has a Communication with the *German Ocean* and the River *Em*, which makes it a Place of great Trade; having likewise the Conveniency of Commerce with the neighbouring Country by Rivers and Canals. It had formerly 3 Parish Churches, besides 5 belonging to Monasteries, and 4 to Hospitals. The chief of 'em, at the End of the great Market-place, is *St. Martin's*, where there was formerly an Organ made by *Rodolphus Agricola*. *St. Walburg's* and *St. Mary's* have a high Tower each; the first is of a round Form, is a strong Building, and has a Fountain in it, which springs continually. Its Tower is the best in the Country, and has 16 Bells, one of 'em very large. It has now but 3 Parish Churches, to which the other Parishes are united. The Church and Monastery of the *Franciscans* stands about the middle of the City, and those of *St. James* and the *Dominicans* on the N. near the Walls, but now turn'd to other Uses. The Friary near *St. Walburg's* is now the Residence of the Governor of the Province. They have 3 Market-Places; the largest of which, called the *Ox-Market*, is about 180 Paces square, in which stands their Town-House: The other, called the *Fish-Market*, is longer, tho' not so broad. Into these two Market-Places run 17 large Streets, 6 of which are in a straight Line to so many Gates of the City; and those in the Old Town are so neatly pav'd, that a Man may safely walk them in the darkest Night without any Light. They have 27 spacious Streets in all, several of 'em adorn'd with curious Buildings; and most of the Houses have Gardens and Fruit-Trees, which yield them both Profit and Pleasure. The City has great Privileges, was formerly one of the *Hans-Towns*, was exempted from appearing at other Tribunals. They had also the Privilege of coining Gold and Silver. It had the Benefit of a Staple, and has many particular Laws: The chief of which are, 1. That the Names of Bankrupts, if the Creditors require it, are publish'd from an upper Window of the Town-House, upon which they were formerly

outlaw'd; but now 'tis only a Reproach. 2. Upon the Death of the Parents, the Son has only a double Portion to that of the Daughter; and the Husband and Wife cannot sell or mortgage one another's immovable Estates without mutual Consent. 3. Those that are not baptiz'd according to the Church establish'd by Law, cannot inherit. 4. A 4th Part of such Estates as devolve to Persons dwelling beyond the *Ems* and the River *Laers*, comes to the publick Treasury of the City. The Emperor Henry III. gave to *Berthold* Bishop of *Utrecht* what he possessed in *Groningen*. The succeeding Bishops made this a Handle to lay Claim to the whole City, which occasioned many Quarrels betwixt them and the Citizens, till in 1392 the Bishop quitted his Pretensions; but in 1401, another Bishop renewing them, they submitted to the Earl of *East-Friesland*, then to the Duke of *Guelder*, and at last to *Charles V.* They revolted from *Spain* in 1579; but returning again under their Dominion, Prince *Maurice* in 1594 took the Town for the United Provinces. In 1672, they made such a brave Resistance against the Bishop of *Munster*, that he lost 10000 Men before it, and was obliged to raise the Siege; for which this City was rewarded with a double Vote in the Council of State of the United Provinces. There have always been great Controversies betwixt this City and the *Omlanders* about the Extent of their Jurisdiction, from which the latter plead Exemption; and 'twas accordingly determin'd in their Favour by the Pr. of *Orange* and the States. The Citizens are said to be haughty, great Lovers of Liberty, profuse in Diet and Habit, industrious in Trade, and tenacious of their Religion; yet they allow the Lutherans and Anabaptists a Toleration: Their Inclination to Profuseness has occasioned a Law to regulate their Expences at Weddings and other Solemnities. In 1614, an University was founded here, with Professors in all Faculties. Their first Rector was the famous *Ubbo Emmius*. There's a Settlement for 40 Scholars, who pay no more each but 45 Crowns *per Annum*; the rest of their Charge being born by the States. In their Library there's an Inscription, attested by credible Persons, giving an Account, That a Soldier liv'd there 16 Days after a

Wound received in the right Ventricle of his Heart. Their University is liberally endow'd out of the Revenues of the Monasteries. They have also a publick School, with 7 Masters for the Languages, who have each of 'em a House, and a handsome Salary. At the Entrance of the School, there's this Motto:

Fac ea quæ moriens facta fuisse voles.
i. e.

Live as you would die.

The Prince's Palace is on the N. Side of the City, and in one of its Chambers are the Pictures of all the Princes of *Orange* and Counts of *Nassau*. Near to this there's a very fine Garden, and the Stadthoufe, with a Latin Inscription, importing, That here the Magistrates of the City, and Nobles and Rusticks of *Omland*, meet for the publick Affairs of the Province. Their Government is by 4 Consuls and 12 Senators, whose Office continues for two Years, one half of 'em going out Annually, the like Number being chosen by the 24 Jurats in their Place; who, after hearing a Sermon, meet in the Town-Houfe, when the Consul for the Time puts 24 Silver Beans into a Hat; 5 of which being colour'd, those who draw them are the Electors, and are shut up until such time as they chuse 2 Consuls and 6 Senators, in the Room of those that go out. The Jurats are chosen in the same Manner. The Consuls and Senators have the Sovereign Power in the City; but in Matters of Peace and War, they take the Advice of the 8 Senators that went out last, and the Jurats, who represent the Corporations of the City. On extraordinary Occasions, they likewise call to their Assistance some other Citizens of the best Rank. There were formerly two *Ædiles* or Tribunes of the Corporations; but it having been found that they made use of their Sway to promote Faction and Sedition, they were laid aside, and the Jurats are all sworn against such Practices when admitted to their Office. They have another Council called *Hoofman's*, into which no Citizen is admitted but such as have been Consuls. Their Jurisdiction is over the Territory of the City and the *Omlands*, from whence 3 Members are admitted into this

this Council, where they preside in their Turns by Lot. This City is noted for the Birth of the famous *Rodolphus Agricola*, whom *Erasmus* calls the greatest Scholar that any Age has produc'd; and of *Weselius* his Contemporary, so universally learned, that he was called, *Lux Mundi*. For the rest, we refer to *Bleau*.

2. *Dam*, 11 Miles N. E. from *Groningen*, and about 2 Miles from the Bay of the *Ems*. It lies in a rich and pleasant Soil, is well built, but not fortified, because of the Jealousy of those of *Groningen* against the *Omlanders*, in whose Territory this Town is seated.

3. *Winschoten*, 15 Miles S. E. from *Groningen*, a Fortress in the Old *Ampt*, was taken and plunder'd by the Troops of *Munster* in 1674, and is remarkable for the first Battle betwixt the *Spaniards* and the *Dutch* in Defence of their Liberty in 1568, when Count *Lewis of Nassau* defeated the *Spanish* General *Arenberg*.

4. *Billingwolderschans*, near the Bay of *Dullart*, 6 Miles S. E. from *Winschoten*: It commands one of the most important Passes betwixt *Westphalia* and *Groningen*; and the Tide coming up to it, they have Sluces, by which they can drown the neighbouring Country. This Fort was taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in 1672; but afterwards recover'd by the *Dutch*.

5. *Bourtsangerfort*, lies 7 Miles S. E. from *Billingwolderschans*. 'Tis almost encompassed by unpassable Morasses, and was built by Prince *William of Nassau* in 1593, because of the Conveniency of its Situation, and repulsed *Verdugas* the *Spanish* General before 'twas quite finish'd.

6. *Langakerschans*, lies on the Bay of *Dullart*, 20 Miles S. E. from *Groningen*. 'Twas taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in 1672; but retaken by the brave General *Rabenhaupt* in 1673, when he found a great Booty there, the Troops of *Munster* having made it a Storehouse for their Plunder. There's another Fort called the Old or *Boonerschans*, betwixt *Langaker* and *Billingwolder*; which Forts, with the Morasses, make a very strong Frontier betwixt *Groningen*, the County of *Embsen*, and *Westphalia*.

7. *Delfzyl*, lies on the *Dullart* Bay, 2 Miles E. from *Dam*, is a very good Harbour, which for Situation, and other Advantages,

exceeds that of *Embsen*. 'Tis a Place of such Importance, that 'twas always well fortified by such as had it in Possession. The D. of *Alva* design'd to have built a good City here, but was prevented by the Wars to which his bloody Government gave Rise. 'Twas taken in the beginning of those Wars by the *Dutch*; but surrender'd to the *Spaniards* after the Defeat of the *Dutch* at the Battle of *Ardenburg*, and recover'd in 1591. 'Twas lately very well fortify'd by the States General, who have taken in as much Ground as makes it equal in Extent to a great Town. In 1672, their *East-India* Fleet of 14 Ships, whose Cargo was valu'd at 16000000 l. Sterling, escap'd hither from the *English* Fleet, which pursu'd them very close.

In the Old *Ampt* stands the ancient Village of *Midwold*, formerly a flourishing Place, but most of it now ruin'd by the *Dullart* Sea, which above 400 Years ago swallowed up 33 good Villages in those Parts.

The *Omlands*, as we have heard before, act in some Things jointly, and in others independant of the City of *Groningen*; which having occasioned many Differences betwixt them, the States General, to prevent the like, made several new Orders relating to the Government of that Province; particularly, That none should have any publick Employment unless a Protestant, having an Estate of such a Value, and of good Reputation; with some other Orders relating to a more equal Distribution of publick Offices, and what sort of Persons should be admitted to sit in the Provincial Assemblies.

The Province of Westfriesland,

HAS the *Zuyder-Sea* on the W. and Part of the S. the Province of *Groningen* and Part of *Over-Iffel* on the E. and S. and the Ocean on the N. *Moll* makes it about 40 Miles from N. to S. and 25 from E. to W. We have formerly taken Notice from *Cluverius*, That the *Frisi* were its ancient Inhabitants; and from Sir *W. Temple*, That Part of the *Saxons* who conquer'd *England* came from hence. Some say, this Country was much larger formerly, and join'd to the

A a a a a

three

three Islands on the N. of it, which have been separated by Inundations: That the Districts of *Oostergo* and *Westergo* were also divided by a large Bay; at the Mouth of which, where now stands *Berlecom*, there was a Town of great Trade, the Ruins of which are still to be seen; and that the *Lauwers* was formerly a deep and navigable River, but now choak'd up.

The Air of the Country being purified with frequent Winds, is better than could be expected from its low Situation; tho' in the Winter, the Fields are generally so full of Water, that there's no travelling but on Banks. In Summer, 'tis dry'd by the Season and Art, and in many Places affords good Pasturage and Arable Land, especially in *Oostergo*. *Westergo*, which is the larger Tract, is more level and fenney, but abounds with Fish and Fowl. Neither of 'em have any Woods; but they are supplied with Turf from a Bituminous Earth, which *Guicciardin* says did formerly take Fire of it self in this Province, near the *Zuyder-Sea*, and could not be stopp'd by Art or Industry, till it had burnt two Leagues in Length, and as much in Breadth, when the subterraneous Waters burst out and extinguish'd it, and form'd that Lake now call'd the *Jonkermeer*. *Becanus* says, the like happen'd in *Brabant* in 1541, and in the Province of *Utrecht* in 1567. *Ubbo Emmius* and *Guicciardin* say, the Inhabitants are fair, tall, stout, great Lovers of Liberty, frugal, affable, and modest; but when provok'd, grow outrageous. Few of 'em marry young, which is thought to be the Cause of their strong and healthful Constitution, and of the Vacuity of their Children. Jealousy is rare among them, and their Women chaste; but Adultery, when discover'd, severely punish'd. The Men are said to bear Cold, Hunger and Thirst, better than most other People. They are of a Martial Disposition, and not much addicted to Trade, which is ascrib'd to the Temper of their Nobility and Gentry, many of whom despise Commerce, or to-match with a Citizen's Family; yet their Ladies are much addicted to Spinning, and other Parts of good Housewifery, while their Husbands follow the Court and Camp, or divert themselves by Hunting. The Food of the meaner Sort is salt and smok'd Flesh, Bacon, Barley-

Broth, Cheese, and Butter; but they affect to have good Tables on *Sundays*. They are reckon'd good Companions; and tho' not so much addicted to Drinking as some of their Neighbours, carrouse frequently in Wine and Ale, and will very much resent the Refusal of being pledg'd. They usually drink in Horn Cups tip'd with Silver, encompassed with Rings of the same Metal; and when they have drank, 'tis common with both Sexes to reach out the Cup and their Hand, to be kiss'd by the courteous Pledger. The Nobility are splendid in their Apparel, live sumptuously, keep many Servants, and are great Admirers of Coaches and Calashes. Both Sexes follow the *French* Fashion in their Dress; and the elder Women affect much Gold and Silver in their Apparel on solemn Occasions. Their Language comes nearer the old *English* than any other in *Europe*. They were formerly said to chuse their Wives more for their Beauty and good Nature, than for their Riches; but of late, they look after good Portions as well as their Neighbours. When a Bride comes home, she takes Possession of the House by drinking to the Guests, and bidding them welcome. When a Husband dies without Issue, the Widow returns to her Kindred; and 'tis reckon'd scandalous if she marry within a Year after. The Relations of the Deceas'd mourn for a Year in black Vestments down to their Ankles; but in some Places they mourn only 30 Days. The Men were formerly so noted for Strength and Courage, that the *Hollanders* us'd to say, *As strong as a Frizon*, by way of Proverb.

Their Religion is that of the other Provinces establish'd by Law; but they tolerate Anabaptists, and connive at Papists. We have formerly taken Notice, That they were long subject to the *Romans*; and after they shook off their Yoke, subdued and possessed most of *Old Battavia*, till they were harass'd by the *Normans*. They are said to have had 7 Princes, 7 Dukes, and 9 Kings, of their own, who kept their Court at *Stavern*, and were called Kings of *East-Friesland*, to distinguish them from those of *North-Holland* or *West-Friesland*, who resided at *Medenblick*. 'Twas formerly join'd to *North-Holland*, as appears by their ancient Annals, when that Part of the Country

was possessed by one *Ivo Hopper* about 1013, who sold it off upon the finding of a live Herring in a Pool in the middle of one of his Fields, which he took as a Presage of the Inundation that happen'd soon after. They were afterwards subdued by the *Franks* under *Charlemagne*, who allow'd them great Privileges, and to chuse their own Governors, call'd *Potestates*, of whom they had 16. They were much troubled with Dissentions by the Factions of the *Schyningers* and *Vet-coopers*; at the same time when the *Hollanders* were plagued with the *Hoecks* and *Cabillaux*; the *Italians* with the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins*; *Flanders* by those who wore Hoods of different Colours; and *France* by Factions of the like Nature: As if some malignant Conjunction had then reign'd over all *Europe*. And tho' these Factions us'd to join in opposing Foreign Enemies, they gave Opportunity first to the *Saxons*, and then to the *Gueldrans*, to invade them, till they came to the House of *Burgundy*; after which they revolted with the other Provinces from the Crown of *Spain*.

The Province is divided into *Oostergo*, *Westergo*, and the 7 *Wolden* or *Forrests*: The first lies next to the River *Laars*, and the *Omlands* on the N. contains the Cities of *Leuwarden* and *Doucum*, with 12 Jurisdictions, 127 Villages, and had formerly 21 Monasteries, besides many ancient Castles and Noblemen's Houses. *Westergo* is the largest and most populous Division, contains the Towns of *Franecker*, *Sneek*, *Bolswarden*, *Hattingen*, *Slooten*, *Stavern*, *Hindelopen*, *Worcum*, and *IJst*, 8 Jurisdictions, 127 Villages, and formerly 24 Monasteries. It lies S. from *Oostergo*, and W. from *Sevenwolden*. The latter is for most part moorish, in other Places sandy and barren; but abounds with Turf, Lakes well stor'd with Fish, and has several small Woods, from whence it takes its Name. It has no Towns, but is divided into 9 Jurisdictions, containing 77 Villages, and formerly one Monastery. In some Places they have good Corn, but little Pasturage; and the Inhabitants living hard, are reckon'd the best Soldiers of the Province. During the *French* Invasion in 1672, they were miserably divided into Factions, and set up two different Provincial Assemblies, who enacted contrary Orders, and could not be brought to Reason

by their own Stadtholder, till the Prince of *Orange* march'd thither with a considerable Army in 1673, when he appeas'd their Differences among themselves, and reconcil'd them with those of *Groningen*.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. *Franecker*, in Long. 24. 15. Lat. 53. 10. 9 Miles W. from *Leuwarden*, 32 W. from *Groningen*, and 4 Miles E. from the *Zuyder-Sea*. 'Tis said to have been founded in 1191, and to take its Name from the Portion of Land on which 'twas built. It abounds with Channels, two of which run through the Length of the Town; and by their Communication with others, make it very neat, and advance its Trade. 'Tis encompassed with a good Rampart, a broad and deep Ditch; and the Air is so wholesome, that many Gentlemen have chose it for their Place of Residence, and built stately Houses in it. On the W. Side there's a Castle of Brick, surrounded by a deep and broad Ditch, and is so very strong, that it commands the City, and was the Seat of their Governors, till the Time of *Charles V.* The whole Town consists but of one Parish, with a large Church, called *St. Martin's*, adorn'd with a tall and handsome Steeple. They have an Hospital for 30 Orphans of both Sexes, where they are taught Reading, Writing, and Handycrafts; and the Girls, when marriageable, are provided with competent Portions. The Fields on the N. and W. lie high, and produce good Corn; but those on the other Sides are low, and cover'd with Water in Winter. The Channel which comes from *Leuwarden* runs through the City, is navigable, and has high Banks for the Convenience of Passengers, and of the Horses that draw their Boats when the Wind is contrary. Their University was founded in 1584, where they have 14 Professors, endow'd by the Revenues of the old Monasteries; and the Students, besides other Immunities, are exempted from Taxes on Wine and Beer. The Rector *Magnificus* is chosen Annually out of the several Faculties by Turns, and has the Cognizance of Civil Causes; but the Criminal are referr'd to the Court of the Province. For their Learned Men, we refer to *Blau*. They have likewise a Gram-

mar School of good Note. Their Government is like that of the other Cities formerly mentioned; but only this Town and *Leuwarden* in the whole Province chuse their own Magistrates, the rest being nam'd by the Stadtholder, out of a double Number presented to him.

2. *Leuwarden*, lies 9 Miles E. from *Franecker*, is the largest, richest, best built, and most populous, of the Province, tho' not so ancient, as some others. 'Twas walled in 1190, when it consisted but of one Parish. The Streets are cleanly, their Houses splendid, their Bridges well pav'd, and their Gardens pleasant. Their Churches, the Provincial Court, the Governor's Palace, and the Houses of their Nobles, are fine Structures. The Figure of the City is a sort of a Square, encompassed with a strong Rampart, a broad deep Ditch, 5 Bulwarks of Earth, with a Ditch each. It stands in a fruitful Soil; and by its navigable Canals, the largest of which runs to the Ocean, they have a good Trade with *Hamburg*, *Bremen*, *Embsen*, and *Holland*, and are plentifully supplied with Necessaries from the neighbouring Country. One of their Canals to the Westward is commanded by strong Sluces. They had formerly 4 Monasteries, now turn'd to other Uses. They have two Hospitals, one of 'em nobly endow'd for 100 poor People of both Sexes, and Accommodations for their Aged, Sick and Lunatick, and entertaining poor Strangers for two Nights at a time. They have several good Laws for regulating their Government, in which they admit no Military Men, nor any but those of the established Religion, and of competent Estates. *Bleau* gives an Account of their Learned Men.

3. *Doornum*, lies 10 Miles N. E. from *Leuwarden*, in a fruitful Country, abounding with Corn and Pasture, good Villages, and Gentlemen's Seats. *Hegenitius* says, he saw a Piece of Coin here with an Inscription, importing, That 'twas built by *Obbo D.* of *Friesland* in 248; wall'd by King *Gondebold*; who coin'd Gold there in 739; That its Walls being demolished in 1422, were rebuilt in 1516, demolished again in 1531, and rebuilt in 1592: But *Emmius* says, the first time 'tis mentioned in any Record, is in the Story of the Martyrdom of St. *Ba-*

niface about 1255; tho' some will have it earlier, in a Village near this Place, which, as the Legend says, was occasioned by his turning the Bread of an uncharitable Woman into Stones, for refusing to relieve him and his Companions in Extremity of Hunger. They pretended to have his Stole, Chalice, and Skull, there, which they shew'd to Strangers. It stands on the River *Es*, by which it communicates with the Ocean and *Leuwarden*. Their Buildings are rather neat than stately, and their Houses well furnish'd. Their Guildhall is a handsome Structure: The Stone Bridge near it so broad, that it serves for a Market; and the Arches so large and high, that Vessels pass under 'em. They have two other Bridges. The Town was fortified by the States in 1582, with a large Ditch, Rampart, and Bulwarks. One of their Bridges is drawn up with Chains, to let Vessels pass without pulling down their Masts. The River where it comes in and goes out of the Town is commanded by good Block-houses, and a strong Boom in the middle, left open by Day for the Passage of Ships, but let down by Night. On each Side of the Channel there's a fair beautiful Street, with a Bank to keep in the River, neatly pav'd with Flint, and fac'd with Stone. They have but one Parish-Church, and had formerly a handsome Cemetery, of which nothing remains now but a stately high Tower.

4. *Harlingen*, 4 Miles W. from *Franecker*, at the Mouth of the Canal, and on the Bank of the *Zuyder-Sea*. 'Twas formerly an inconsiderable Village, but now one of the most considerable Towns next to *Leuwarden* in the Country. It has been several times enlarged, and was strongly fortified by *William Prince of Orange* about 1579. 'Twas further enlarged, together with its Harbour, in 1597, and the adjacent Country may be overflowed by the Sluces in an Hour's time, which makes it very strong. Tho' the Harbour be large, and much frequented, 'tis not fit for Vessels of great Burden, which must either lie off a good Distance at Sea, or unload Part of their Cargo before they can get in. Their chief Trade is in making Sails, in importing and exporting Corn, Pitch, Tar, Fir-Trees, and Deal. On the S. Side was formerly a strong Castle, the Residence of *Albert the Saxon*, and

and other Tyrants, who plagu'd the Country, for which 'twas demolished by the Inhabitants. It has a Grammar-School and two Hospitals, and is govern'd by its own Magistrates, appointed out of a Number presented to the Provincial Council.

5. *Bolswaert*, on the Sea, 6 Miles S. from *Harlingen*. 'Tis an ancient City, stands on a rising Ground, encompassed with good Arable Lands and Pasturage. It had formerly a considerable Trade by Sea, but now deals chiefly with the neighbouring Towns by Canals. 'Tis one of the *Hans-Towns*, well Peopled, the Houses neatly built, and it has several Channels, which run through the Town, capable of smaller Vessels. It has 5 Gates, 4 Sluces on its Rivers, a small Market-Place, a Town-House, 1 Church with 2 Ministers, a Grammar-School with 3 Masters, 2 Monasteries, now converted to other Uses; with Hospitals for the Poor and Orphans. 'Tis govern'd by its own Magistrates, and encompassed by a good Ditch and Rampart.

6. *Sneek*, 5 Miles S. E. from *Bolswaert*, is an ancient, populous, neat, and well fortified Town. They trade in Fishing and other Commodities, are well furnished with Fresh-Fish by neighbouring Lakes, both for Consumption and Sale; and have a publick School, which, for the Salaries of the Masters, and Number of Scholars, is the best in the Province, next to that of *Leuwarden*. *Joachim Hopperus*, the famous Lawyer, who was President to the K. of Spain's Council at *Madrid*, was bred here. The adjacent Country has good Pasturage; but the Ground lying low, is not fit for Corn. It has a good Trade with the neighbouring Towns by Means of Canals.

6. *Worcum*, lies on the Sea, 8 Miles S. W. from *Sneek*, in a rich Soil. The Harbour is choak'd up by Sands; but it drives a good Trade with the neighbouring Country by Means of Canals, and is well supplied with Fish from the neighbouring Lakes. 'Tis also govern'd by its own Magistrates.

8. *Hindelopen*, lies on the same Bank of the Sea, 3 Miles S. from *Worcum*. It has a small Harbour, is govern'd by its own Magistrates, and subsists chiefly by Fishing and Husbandry.

9. *Slooten*, or *Sloot*, lies 7 Miles S. E. from *Hindelopen*, upon a navigable Current which

comes from a neighbouring Lake, called the *Slooten Meer*, and falls into the Sea about a League below the Town, by which it has a Trade with *Holland* and other Parts. This Canal is shut up at Night by a Boom. The Streets are very neat. They have a handsome Town House, 1 Church, 3 Gates, one of 'em large and stately; but the Fortifications not considerable, having been ruin'd in the *Spanish Wars*. Their Government is by 4 Consuls and 4 Senators, without any Common-Council.

10. *Stavoren*, lies on the Bank of the *Zuyder-Sea*, 9 Miles S. W. from *Slooten*. 'Tis by Latin Writers called *Stavia*, and *Stavordia*. *Ubbo Emmius* alledges, 'twas built and fortified in the first Year of Christ by a Prince of the Country, who appointed 3 Weekly Meetings of Sword-Players there, to instruct the Youth in the Art of Defence. The *Friesland* Writers say, 'twas not only the Metropolis of the Country, and the Seat of their Kings, but the greatest Emporium of both *Germanies*. That 'twas formerly a Place of great Trade, and particularly in the *Sound*, is evident from the Privilege they still enjoy, of being dispatch'd before all others by the Receivers of the K. of *Denmark's* Customs; and 'twas the only Town in the *Netherlands* which was allowed a Trade with *France* during the War betwixt *Charles V.* and the *French King*. 'Twas prodigious rich; but their Trade is now decay'd by the choking of their Harbour, which is ascrib'd to the Divine Justice that punish'd the Pride and Avarice of the Inhabitants; of which they give this remarkable Instance, That a Merchant's Wife being enrag'd at her Husband's bringing home from the East Country a Ship full of Wheat, which was then very cheap, she perswaded him to throw it over-board; where, being quickly cover'd with Sand, the Harbour was choak'd up a little time after. The first of the *Frison Kings* is said to have built a Temple and Sanctuary betwixt this Place and *Medenblick* in *North-Holland* about 463; and *Rathodus*, their 6th King, is said, when going to receive Baptism, to have return'd to his Idolatry, because the Bishop then told him, That his Ancestors were all damn'd. *Ubbo Emmius* alledges, That this Prince extended his Dominions as far as *Nimeguen*; which he takes

takes to be imply'd by the Inscription we have already mention'd on one of its Gates: *Hucusque jus Stavria*, and, *Hic est Pes Imperii*. But *Scrivervius* says, the Word *Stavria* denotes a Tribute that was paid through the Roman Empire, of which *Nimeguen* was then the Boundary on that Side; which is confirmed by the Chronicle of *Bohemia*, where the General Tax is called by that Name: And in several Places of *Germany*, the Tax for supporting the War against the *Turks*, and in the old Laws of the *Franks*, an Impost for clearing the Roads of Highwaymen, is called by the same Word. *Stavervan* is said to derive its Name from *Stavo*, a Log of Wood, which the Pagan *Frizons* worship'd under the Notion of *Jupiter*. 'Tis also recorded, That the Mouth of the River *Flevis* was anciently near this Town; and that about 1250, there was a Passage almost by Land from this City through a great Forrest to *Enchuyzen* in *North-Holland*, which is now a Road for Ships. About a Quarter of a League from *Stavervan*, into the Sea, there's still to be seen, a little under Water, the Ruins of an old Monastery, which the Mariners carefully avoid. This is another Proof that the *Zuyder-Sea* has been form'd by successive Inundations, of which *Stavervan* it self is an Instance; the greatest Part of the Old Town being thus swallowed up; so that at present 'tis reduced chiefly to two Rows of Houses on each Side of a small River, over which there are several Wooden Bridges. The Streets are kept very neat, and the Water penn'd up by Sluces, to let it out or in on Occasion. They have still some Trade, especially in Fishing, and Passage Boats over the Pools and Lakes of the neighbourhood. 'Tis fortified with a good Ditch and Rampart, and govern'd by its own Magistrates. 'Twas formerly the 3d of the *Hans-Towns*, and so powerful, says *Ubbo Emmius*, that in 1335 it wag'd War with *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*.

11. *Kuynderschan*, lies on the *Zuyder-Sea*, 15 Miles S E. from *Stavervan*, on the Mouth of the River *Kuynder*. 'Tis an ancient Village, which enjoys the Privilege of Trade, is strongly fortified with 5 good Bulwarks, and has another Fortification in the Neighbourhood called *Slykenburg*, which lies at the Conflux of two Rivers.

The Islands of *Ameland* and *Schiermonnikoog*, on the N. of this Province, are not describ'd, being inconsiderable, and having only 6 or 7 Villages upon them. *M. de Fer* reckons in the whole Province 11 Cities, 480 Villages, and 2 Islands.

Having finished the 7 United Provinces, we come to their Conquests in *Flanders* and *Brabant*.

DUTCH BRABANT,

HAS the Province of *Holland* and *Dutch Guelderland* on the N. *Spanish Brabant* and the Bishoprick of *Liege* on the S. *Zealand* on the W. Part of the Dutchy of *Glewie* and *Spanish Guelderland* on the E. *Moll* makes it 55 Miles from E. to W. and the greatest Breadth 31 from S. to N.

The chief PLACES are,

1. *Breda*, 8 Miles S. from *Gertrudenberg*, about 20 Miles W. from *Boisleduc*, and 25 N. E. from *Antwerp*. 'Tis a large, well built, populous, and very strong City, encompassed with thick Walls and Mounts of Earth, two Trenches full of Water, one of 'em very broad and deep; so that 'tis reckoned one of the strongest Towns in the *Netherlands*. *Dr. Brown* says, it has a large Ditch round the Counterfarp, a Ravelin betwixt each Bastion join'd to the Rampart on the inside of the Ditch, besides a good Number of Half-Moons and Horn-Works, and a Parapet, strengthen'd with a double Row of Elms. 'Tis subject to the *Dutch Commonwealth*, but without any Share in the Government: Yet it pays its ancient Quota to the Support of the Union. The Lordship of it belongs to the Family of *Orange*, having been annexed to the Family of *Nassau* by Marriage above 300 Years ago, together with the Barony, which contains 17 Villages. It stands on the Rivers *Had* and *Merk*, in a pleasant Country, abounding with Arable Land, intermix'd with Meadows, Pastures, and Copfes. The Palace, belonging to the Family of *Nassau*, is a handsome Structure, with a pleasant Garden between the Body of the Town and the Works. Prince *Henry* built another in the

the Citadel, in the Form of a Castle, after the Antick Way, with a noble Portico and handsome Gallery. It has also a fine Garden, where the Box-work is extreme curious. The great Church, with its Tower, are ancient and stately Structures. In the Side-Isle of the Quire, there's the Tomb of Prince Henry I. having the Effigies of himself and his Princess at length on a Marble Base, and a Marble Canopy over them, supported by 4 ancient Heroes kneeling, and Latin Inscriptions at the Corners, comparing him to *Julius Caesar* for Valour and Fortitude, and to *Atilius Regulus* for Magnanimity. There are several other Inscriptions in the Church relating to the Revolutions of the Town, particularly to the taking of it by *Spinola* in 1634, and the retaking of it by *Pr. Frederick Henry* in 1637. 'Tis noted for the Treaty to restore King *Charles II.* of Great Britain, and his Declaration from thence to his Subjects. Some say, the Union of *Utrecht* was likewise concluded here. 'Twas surpris'd by the *Spaniards*, who had a Correspondence with some Papiſts in the Town, in 1581; but retaken in 1590, 80 Soldiers being convey'd under a Load of Turf into the Castle. 'Twas afterwards besieged in 1624 by *Spinola* with 30000 Men, who surrounded it with such incredible Works, that 'twas not possible for *Pr. Maurice* to relieve it; so that almost after a Year's Siege 'twas forc'd to surrender by Famine. During the Time, the Garrison had rais'd such Fortifications, as made it one of the strongest Cities in the World. 'Twas retaken after an obstinate Defence by *Pr. Frederick* in 1637. The first Prince of the House of *Orange*, who had Possession of it about 1400, establish'd an Academy here, with Professors of the 4 Faculties, for the Instruction of Youth.

2. *Boisleduc*, *S. Hertogen Bosch*, Lat. *Sylvia Ducis*, and commonly *Bosch*, lies 20 Miles E. from *Breda*, on the Banks of the *Dromele*; which receiving there the *Aude* and the *Diese*, falls into the *Muese* at *Crovetaur*, about 4 Miles N. from thence. It had its Name from a neighbouring Wood, where the Dukes of *Brabant* us'd to hunt; which being cut down by *D. Godfrey* in his March against the *Guelarians* in 1172, the Town was then built, and walled about 1196, having been since much enlarged. It stands

on a rising Ground in the middle of Fens, of a great Extent, in most Places unpassable, and always overflow'd in Winter, which makes it of very difficult Access, there being no coming to it but by Cawseys made on purpose, half a Mile long. 'Tis of a triangular Form, and has 7 large Bulwarks, which make it 7660 Paces in Compass. It has several Canals, which bring up Vessels of good Burthen into the City. 'Tis encompassed by a strong Wall and a deep Trench. The Avenues are commanded by several Forts, and the Citadel commands one Side of the Town, and the Country towards *Bommel*; so that 'tis reckon'd almost impregnable. There are 51 Stone Bridges, and 38 Wooden ones, for publick Use over their Canals, and as many others belonging to private Families. It has a spacious Market-Place, encompassed with fair Buildings; and there are 10 broad Streets which center in it. The Houses in general are not so well built as those in *Holland*; but they have a stately Town-House, built after the Model of that of *Amsterdam*. The Church of *St. John*, formerly a Cathedral, is splendid and sumptuous; in the Quire of which are the Arms of many of the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*, and over their Seats an Account of their Institution, in Substance thus: "The most High and Mighty Prince *Philip*, call'd *The Good*, by the Grace of GOD, Duke of *Burgundy*, *Lorraine*, and *Brabant*, did in 1429, in the City of *Bruges*, in Imitation of *Gideon*, institute to the Honour of GOD and the Virgin, and for the Sake of *St. Andrew*, Patron of *Burgundy*, a Society of Honourable Knights, into which might be received Emperors, Kings, Dukes; Marquesses, and other Personages, his own Subjects or Foreigners, provided they were of Noble Blood and good Fame, to be called Knights of the *Golden Fleece*; and the lawful D. of *Burgundy*, if possessed of the *Low Countries*, to be their perpetual Chief. They were to be only 24 in-Number, including the Chief, with a Chancellor, a Treasurer, a Secretary, and King at Arms: And for their Regulation, he made several Ordinances. The Town was the first, as appears by their Instrument given in to the States in 1651, for being admitted as a Governing Member

of the Union, that own'd their Zeal by countenancing the preaching of the Protestant Religion, and seiz'd the Chancellor of *Brabant*, and another Grandee, sent thither by the Governess to hinder it; for which, in 1587, they were proscrib'd, and the Protestants forc'd to leave the Country, upon the Prince of *Orange's* Retreat. From that Time they were oppress'd by the *Spaniards*, till rescued by the *Germans*. In 1576, they sign'd the *Pacification of Ghent*. In 1578, they swore the Peace of Religion, and in 1579 embrac'd the Union of *Utrecht*. 'Twas after taken by the Pr. of *Parma*, when the Protestants were again banish'd. Pr. *Maurice* besieg'd it in vain in 1601; but Prince *Henry Frederick* retook it after an obstinate Siege. The *Mareschal Turenne* invested it in 1672, but soon after rais'd the Siege. Their Government is by two Prætors, who are generally Persons of Noble Descent, the one for Civil, and the other for Criminal Affairs. They are assisted by *Eschevins* and a Common-Council; but there lies an Appeal from this, and all the other *Dutch Cities* in *Brabant*, to the Tribunal instituted for that End at the *Hague* in 1591, consisting of 7 Senators, a Secretary, a Treasurer, and Attorney-General, who finally determine all Causes relating to *Dutch Brabant*. For Cardinal *Enkevondius*, and other Learned Men born here, we refer to *Bleau*. Their chief Trade is in making Needles, excellent Knives, and in Woollen and Linen Cloth. The Inhabitants are courteous, and of a more Martial Temper than any of their Neighbours. This City has a large Jurisdiction, comprehending *Campin*, *Peeland*, *Maeland*, the District of *Osserwick*, and the Towns of *Helmont*, *Eindhoven*, *Megen*, *Ravestein*, and *Grave*.

Buxtel, 6 Miles S. from *Boisleduc*, and of great Importance, because it commands the Sluces which keep in and let out the Waters all over the neighbouring Country.

Helmont, or *Helmond*, 19 Miles S. E. from *Boisleduc*; is a good wall'd Town, Capital of that call'd the *Peeland*, lies on the River *Aa*, and is noted for the Birth of the learned *Andreas Helmondanus*.

Eindhoven, a wall'd Town on the *Demmel*, about 9 Miles S. W. from *Helmont*, is the Capital of the District of *Campin*, has a Church dedicated to St. *Katharine*, and a

College of Canons belonging to it. 'Tis the Capital of the District called *Campinland*.

Megen, a handsome Town on the *Maas*, 11 Miles N. E. from *Boisleduc*, which gives Title to an Earldom, and has a Jurisdiction of good Extent.

Ravestein, on the *Maas*, 4 Miles S. E. from *Megen*, is a neat Town with a good Castle, and a pretty large Jurisdiction. 'Twas formerly a Place of Strength; but the Fortifications demolished by Agreement betwixt *Charles V.* and the D. of *Cleve*.

3. *Grave*, on the *Maas*, 4 Miles E. from *Ravestein*, and 16 N. E. from *Boisleduc*, a Town very strong by Situation and Art, and of great Importance, because it commands a considerable Pass on the *Maas*, whose Waters fill the Trenches that encompass its Bulwarks. On the other Side, there's a great Marsh always full of Water, which makes the Town unaccessible that Way. 'Tis besides exceedingly well fortified with Ravelins, a Counterscarp, Pallizado, and a great Horn-work, secur'd by a Cover'd-way. The Town of it self is very neat and pleasant, and esteem'd the strongest and easiest to be defended in the *Netherlands*. It had formerly a Collegiate Body of Canons belonging to St. *Elizabeth*. The Lordship of it belongs to the Family of *Orange*, one of whose Ancestors purchas'd the Fee-Farm of it of the Crown of *Spain*. 'Tis Capital of the Earldom of *Cuyck*, which is about 4 Miles long, and $1\frac{1}{2}$ broad, and contains about 17 Villages. The Country adjacent to this Town is low, and consists chiefly of Meadows and Pasturage. In 1586, 'twas by the Cowardice of the Governor surrender'd to the Pr. of *Parma*; and in 1602, recover'd again by Pr. *Maurice*. In 1672, 'twas treacherously surrender'd to the *French*, who fortified it strongly, and made it one of their Store-houses for Plunder. In 1674, the Pr. of *Orange* retook it after a Siege of 4 Months, the Garrison being reduced to eat Horse-Flesh, and there being a great Breach made in the Cover'd-way. 'Tis said, that 100000 great Shot were spent on both Sides; that the *French* lost 2000 Men, and the *Dutch* 5000: Yet they reckoned the taking it of such Importance, that they appointed a Day of Thanksgiving for it. Their Government is by a Judge and Scout,

Scout, 2 Consuls, and 7 Eschevins, that were Annually appointed by the Prince of *Orange*. They have also a Common-Council of 8, whose Advice they take in Matters of great Concernment. They enjoy great Immunities, and particularly an Exemption from most sorts of Imposts in the neighbouring Provinces.

4. *Bergenopzoom*, sometimes called only *Bergen*, and in Latin *Berge*, or *Montes ad Zoom*. It has its Name from its high Situation on the River *Zoom*. It lies 16 Miles S. W. from *Breda*. 'Twas formerly a Barony, but afterwards made a Marquisate by the Emperor *Charles V.* 'Twas likewise a Place of good Trade, till its Commerce was engrossed by *Antwerp*, which lies 17 Miles S. E. from it. 'Tis seated conveniently between *Brabant*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, and *Zealand*. The greatest Part of the adjacent Country lies very low, and is made habitable only by Banks. It secures the Intercourse betwixt *Holland* and *Zealand*, and opens the Way into *Spanish Brabant*. Its Harbour is pretty commodious, defended by 2 Forts and a Half-Moon, 4 Redoubts, and another Fortification; so that it can easily be relieved by Sea. The Town itself is exceeding strong; for besides the Wall and Trench, it has Half-Moons, Horn-Works, and other Fortifications. The Buildings are neat and handsome. It has 3 Market-Places; and that called the Great Market is very capacious. Its principal Buildings are, *St. Lambert's Church*, and the Marquises Palace. They had formerly a Nunnery, which is now made an Hospital. The Town was in Possession of the *Spaniards* at the Beginning of the Civil War; but upon a Mutiny, deliver'd to the *Dutch*. The D. of *Parma* endeavour'd to recover it in 1588, but in vain, 'twas so stoutly defended by the *English Auxiliaries*. In 1622, *Spinola* laid Siege to it, and attack'd it furiously; but *Pr. Maurice* oblig'd him to raise the Siege with the Loss of about 12000 Men. The Garrison fir'd 200000 great Shot at the *Spaniards*. The Arch-Dutcheffs *Isabella* in a few Years after fortified *Santvliet*, and raised other Works in the Shallows near and upon the *Scheld*: Upon which the States suspecting that these Things portended another Siege, they thought of making this Town so strong, that it should

not be easily taken. In 1628, they made a Communication between *Steenbergen* and this Place by a Channel, which united and made passable the 3 Marshes betwixt 'em. They also erected strong Forts in such Places as they found requisite; and the Sluce near *Steenbergen* was well fortified, because thereby the neighbouring Fields might be quickly overflown, and so the harrassing of the Land of *Tolen*, and the laying close Siege to *Bergen* on that Side, prevented; for it was supposed tenable enough on the S. Side by its own Works and Fortifications. The Marquisate of *Bergenopzoom*, with its Appendances, was restored to the Count of *Anvergne*, by the Peace of *Nimeguen* in 1678.

5. *Steenbergen* lies near the Sea, about 4 M. from *Bergenopzoom*, is a small Town, that was taken by the *Spaniards* without any Difficulty in 1612, in order to prosecute the Siege of *Bergenopzoom*; and after the raising of that Siege, was with as much Ease retaken by *Prince Maurice*. In 1627, it was strengthen'd with new Ramparts and Bulwarks, several Redoubts and small Forts in the adjoining Part of the Country, and united to *Bergen* by the Canal above mentioned for their mutual Defence. The first Fort stands in a Place called *Sansstraet*, from its sandy Soil, is about 180 Geometrical Rods in Circuit. The 2d, which is of the same Compass, lies close upon the Sand-Hills, in the middle between the other two. The 3d is the largest, being 220 Rods in Circumference, with a Horn-Work and Half-Moon. The *Spaniards* drew Forces together to hinder the Proceeding of this Work, but in vain, for it was cover'd by the Pr. of *Orange*.

6. *Santvliet* is 8 M. S. from *Bergenopzoom*, was begun by the *Spaniards* in 1627, with some other Forts in the Neighbourhood, in order to attack *Lillo*. They made it very strong, and it continued in their Hands after the taking of the other neighbouring Places. It was taken in 1705 by the Confederates, when the Forces under Command of the D. of *Marlborough* forc'd the *French* Lines, by which they had made this Place very strong on the Side of the Land; but 'twas dismantled by the Confederates.

7. *Lillo* on the *Scheld*, 9 M. N. W. from *Antwerp*, and 4 S. from *Santvliet*. It was
B b b b b b fort-

fortified and garrison'd by the Citizens of *Antwerp* about 1584, to secure the Passage of the River, and made so strong during the Siege of that City, that the *Spaniards*, after they became Masters of *Antwerp*, could not take it, but were repulsed from before it with the Loss of 2000 Men. It has continued in Possession of the *Dutch* ever since; is now enlarged to a pretty little Town, and reckon'd much stronger since its Harbour was choak'd up. It has a Right of demanding Toll upon the *Scheld*, and, with some other Forts in Possession of the *Dutch*, curbs the Trade of *Antwerp*.

These two Places are not properly in *Dutch Brabant*; but since they adjoin to it, and are under their Subjection, we chuse to describe them here, tho' they be Part of the Marquisate of the Holy Empire.

Betwixt this Town and *Santvuliet*, there lies also a strong Fort for the further Security of *Lillo*, called by the Name of *Henry Frederick*.

DUTCH FLANDERS,

Lies S. of *Zealand*, from which 'tis separated by the *Scheld*. 'Tis 31 Miles long, and 13 where broadest.

The chief PLACES are,

1. *Sluys*, about 5 Miles N. E. from *Bruges*, and 13 N. E. from *Ostend*. It has a very large Harbour, capable of containing 500 Ships. 'Tis one of the strongest Frontier Towns belonging to the States, and was formerly a Place of good Trade, which is now much decay'd. 'Tis extremely well fortified, and has always a good Garrison. 'Twas taken by the D. of *Parma* in 1587, but retaken by Pr. *Maurice* in 1604. After which he fortified it with great Care, because of its Importance.

2. *Ardenburg*, within a League of *Sluys* to the S. E. formerly the Capital of Maritime *Flanders*; but fell to Decay after the Removal of the Trade to *Bruges*. 'Twas taken by the *Dutch* in 1604, and made such a brave Defence against the *French* in 1672, that it repulsed them with the Loss of 1200 Men, tho' then but ill fortified.

3. *Middleburg*, a small Town 4 Miles S. E. from *Sluys*.

4. *Sas van Ghent*, a very strong Place among Marshes, 11 Miles N. from *Ghent*. It has Sluces by which they can lay the Country under Water in a little Time. It has been in Possession of the *Dutch* ever since 1644.

5. *Hulst*, in that called the Country of *Wass*, a very strong Town, which was taken by the *Dutch* in 1645, and confirmed to them by the Treaty of *Munster*. 'Tis a Place of good Trade, and lies 9 Miles E. from *Sas van Ghent*.

6. *Axel*, about a League W. from *Hulst*, was formerly only an open Town; but afterwards fortified by those of *Ghent*. *Philip the Good*, D. of *Burgundy*, dismantled it in 1452. 'Twas fortified by the *Dutch* during the *Spanish War*, and has since continued in their Possession.

7. *Liefkens*, on the Bank of the *Scheld*, over against *Lillo*, is a Fort which was rais'd by the States to secure the Passage of the *Scheld*.

8. *Ter-Neu*, a Place well fortified on the Bank of the *Scheld*, about 6 Miles N. from *Axel*.

9. *Philippin*, 4 Miles N. W. from *Sas van Ghent*, was a Fortrefs built by Order of *Philip II.* of *Spain*, about the Beginning of the last Century.

10. *Bier Pliet*, a little Island in the Mouth of a Branch of the *Scheld*, with a Town of the same Name, 4 Miles N. W. from *Philippin*. 'Tis a very important Fortrefs, because it commands the Passage from that Part of the Country into *Zealand*.

11. *Isendyck*, lies above 2 Miles W. from *Bier Pliet*, on the other Side of the Canal, is a little Town well fortified.

12. *Osborg*, on the Canal which separates the Isle of *Cadfant* from the Continent, is also a fortified Town.

13. *Cadfant*, an Island in the Mouth of the *Scheld*, over-against the Isle of *Walkeren* in *Zealand*, is 9 Miles long, and 4 broad. It has a Fortrefs of the same Name of great Consequence to the *Dutch*, because it preserves the Communication between *Zealand* and *Flanders*. This Island produces very good Wheat and Grass.

DUTCH LIMBURG,

THE Dutch possess in this Country, which is separated from *Dutch Brabant* by Part of the Bishoprick of *Liege*, says *La Foëst*, the Counties of *Falkenberg*; or *Fauquemont*, *Dalem*, and *Rolduc*. Some pretend that these never belong'd properly to the Dutchy of *Limburg*, but were only annex'd to it.

The chief PLACES are,

1. *Fauquemont*, or *Falkenberg*, on the *Gule*, about 8 Miles N. E. from *Maastricht*, and 19 W. from *Juliers*. 'Tis a large and neat Town, was formerly well fortified, and had a strong Castle. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1672, who made it much stronger; but being obliged to restore it by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, they dismantled it.

2. *Dalem*, on the *Ber*, 9 Miles S. W. from *Falkenberg*, and 7 S. E. from *Maastricht*. 'Tis a small Town, with an ancient Castle. It had formerly Earls of its own, who had a large Territory. It came afterwards to the Dukes of *Brabant*. The *French* took it in 1672, demolished the Fortifications, and restored it to the *Dutch* by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

3. *Rolduc*, on the E. Side of the Country, lies on the Frontiers of *Juliers*, 5 Miles N. from *Aix la Chapelle*, and 10 S. E. from *Falkenberg*, is a small Town, Capital of its County, and defended by an old Castle.

4. *Maastricht*, lies on the Frontiers of this Dutchy; therefore we chuse to describe it here, tho' it be commonly reckon'd Part of *Dutch Brabant*. It stands on the W. Side of the River *Maas*, 11 Miles N. from *Liege*, 18 N. W. from *Aix la Chapelle*, 28 W. from *Juliers*, and 33 E. from *Louvain*. It has its Name from its Passage over the *Maas*, which runs through one Side of it. The lesser Part on the E. Side, called *Wick*, belongs to the Bishop of *Liege*; but he leaves the Military Government of it to the *Dutch*. 'Tis a very ancient City. *St. Servatius* transported hither the Bishop's See from *Tongeren*. There is a Church here dedicated to that Saint, where they have many Re-

licks, and of which the Kings of *Spain* were formerly Canons. It has three *Dutch* Churches, and one in common to the *English* and *French*. The City is about 4 Miles in Circuit, and has two Monasteries of both Sexes, the Papists being allowed the Freedom of Religion here. The Stone Bridge, which joins the two Parts of the City, consists of 9 Arches, and is remarkable for its Beauty and Usefulness. This City has been of late much enlarged, and advanced in its Trade. The Streets are large, the Houses of Brick, well built, and cover'd with Slate, since it came into the Hands of the *Dutch*; but the old Buildings come short of the modern. They have also a neat Stadthouse, resembling that of *Amsterdam*. The City is strongly fortified, encompass'd with a good Wall and a Ditch, with several Outworks, after the modern Way; and a very high Bastion on the S. E. Side, to cover the Town from a Hill that would otherwise command it. On the Top of that Hill there stands an old Castle. It revolted from *Spain* with the rest of the Provinces, and was besieged by the Pr. of *Parma* in 1579, when it made a brave Defence, and repulsed the *Spaniards* in two bloody Attacks; but at last, the Garrison being wearied out, a Detachment of *Spaniards* stole over the Works by Night, and having killed the Guard, which they found asleep, they were soon followed by others, and became Masters of the Town, which, tho' then under Treaty with them, they almost dispeopled by their Cruelty and Rapine; so that 'twas a long Time before it could recover. 'Twas retaken by the Pr. of *Orange* in 1632, and continued in Possession of the States till 1673, when 'twas taken by the *French* King in Person after 13 Days open Trenches; when having master'd all the Outworks, the Garrison and Burgers forc'd the Governor to surrender upon advantageous Terms. He was much oblig'd for the taking of this Town to the Valour of the *English* and *Scots*, who were then in his Service under the late Duke of *Monmouth*. The *French* King put a strong Garrison into it, and added 6 Bastions to its Fortifications. The Prince of *Orange* attempted to retake it with an Army of 30000 Men in 1676; but the *French* approaching with a
B b b b b 2, greater

greater Army to relieve it, he was oblig'd to raise the Siege; so that 'twas not restored to the *Dutch* till the Treaty of *Nimwegen*. That Part called the *Wick*, on the E. Side the River, is reckon'd stronger than the Town. The *French* attempted this City in 1703; but were prevented by the late Lord *Swierquerque*, who commanded part of the Confederate Army in the Neighbourhood.

Within Cannon-shot of the Town, there's a Quarry of so extraordinary a Nature, as deserves a particular Description. It lies in a Hill on the Bank of the *Maas*, where there are 25 Fathoms of Rock and Earth over Head. The Hill is some Miles in Length, lies along the River towards *Liège*, is in some Places half a Mile broad, and in others three quarters. The Quarry has an Entrance towards the River, where Carts come with great Ease, and unload the Stones for Transportation, the Quarry lying level with the Bank of the River. The whole Hill being almost un-

dermin'd, affords the most surprizing Prospect that can be imagin'd, to those who enter it with Torch-light: For there are Thousands of square Pillars in large level Walks, most of 'em above 20 Foot high, and others much higher, all cut with so much Neatness and Regularity, that it looks more like the Contrivance of curious Architects for an Under-ground Palace, than the Work of common Quarriers, to support the Earth over them while they dig out the Stone. This Quarry serves the People of the Neighbourhood as an impregnable Retreat for themselves and their best Effects when Armies march that Way, for there is Room in it for above 40000 People; and those who should attempt to seek them out in it, run a Hazard of being knock'd on the Head, or kill'd by their Fire-Arms, from the Multitudes of the Turnings and Windings amidst the Rows of Pillars. The Curious may see more of this in our *Philosophical Transactions*, N^o 79.

FLANDERS or the
SPANISH NETHERLANDS.
 with y^e Archbishoprick of CAMBRESIS
 and Bishoprick of LYEGE. By H. Moll G.





52

51

50

- Arch Bishops
- Bishops
- Universities

FRONTIERS OF GERMANY

C. H A P. XXIX.

The SPANISH NETHERLANDS.

FOR the Countries which make up the Dominions of this Name, we refer to *Sanson's* Division of the 17 Provinces, P. 856. They are called so, because of their continuing under that Crown.

The General Description we have given of the *Netherlands*, agrees to these Provinces as well as to the rest; so that all we have to add is, That the Air of the *Spanish* Provinces is cold, but very healthful; That they have no Wine of their own Growth, but excellent Beer; That their Native Fuel is Turf. They have some Wood of their own from the Forrest of *Soignies*, and are supplied with what further they have occasion for from the Forrest of *Ardennes*, which belongs to *France*; from whence, and from *Germany*, they are furnished with Wine.

The Inhabitants are call'd *Flemmings*, from one of the Provinces, says *La Forest*; but he does not tell us which. Their Customs are a Mixture of *German* and *French*: From the latter, they have their Gaiety and Civility; and from the former, according to the same Author, for which his own Country is not much oblig'd to him, they have their *Sincerity*, and Inclination to good Cheer. He adds, That they are handsome and well shap'd; That their Women for Beauty are inferior to none in *Europe*, and they take Care to improve it. Their Religion is Popish, which he says they profess with greater Purity than in most other Places. They have a Court of Inquisition, which is more moderate than formerly, because of the Revolt it occasioned.

Their Government is by a Vice-Roy or Governor-General, under the K. of *Spain*.

The last appointed by that Crown was the late Elector of *Bavaria*, who still has the Title under the D. of *Anjou*, to whom he betray'd them. But tho' most of the Provinces be reconquer'd by the Confederate Arms for King *Charles III.* there is no Governor-General as yet nam'd by that Prince.

The Governor-General is assisted by three Councils: The 1st is that called the *Council of State*, where the Affairs of Peace and War, Leagues and Alliances, are transacted, and from whom, with the Governor, the Ministers they send to Foreign Courts have their Dispatches. This Council was appointed after the Revolt of the *Dutch*, those Matters being formerly managed by the Privy Council. It consists of a President, and such a Number of Counsellors as the King thinks fit. 2. The *Privy Council*, which consists of a President and 12 Counsellors, nam'd by the King, or the Vice-Roy by his Order. Their President is Keeper of the Great Seal. Here they determine Appeals from other Courts, administer Justice, grant Privileges, give Pardons, issue Edicts and Ordonnances, determine the Boundaries of Provinces, and decide all Controversies about the Right of Lordship and Dominion, both with Relation to the King and Subjects. These two Councils advise with one another upon Occasion. 3. The *Council of Finances*, or of the Revenues, says *Guicciardin*, consists of 3 Superintendants, a Treasurer, a Receiver-General, 3 Commissaries, 2 Secretaries, and inferior Officers. They take Care of the Prince's Domain, of Taxes and Subsidies, call the ordinary Receivers to an Account, take Care of the Fortifications,

tions, adjust the Charges of War, and farm out the Revenues.

Subject to them is the Chamber of Accounts, consisting of a President and 7 Members, to whom all Treasurers and Receivers of the Revenue in the several Provinces give in their Accounts. All these Councils follow the Court, as does the Grand Provost, who carries a red Wand as an Emblem of Justice. There are Provosts under him in every Province; but his Power is extended over all; and his Business is, with the Assistance of a Comptroller, to pass Sentence upon Robbers, Murderers, and Vagabonds. There's likewise a great Council or Tribunal at *Malins*, which judges Affairs in the last Resort upon Appeal from the other Provinces. They make use of the Civil and Canon Law, except where they are opposite to the Edicts of the Prince, and the Laws of the Country. There's a Court of the same Nature in every Province, with a President, and 12 or 18 Counsellors, who pass Sentence not only relating to the Officers of the Prince in their respective Provinces, but also with Matters relating to the Prince himself upon a legal Accusation: But from them there lies an Appeal to the Council of *Malins*, except in *Brabant* and *Hainault*, where the Sentence of those Courts is definitive.

Every Province has a Governor appointed by the King, but subject to the Vice-Roy. They have a limited Power with relation to the Affairs of the Countries, especially in Matters of War. There are Commissioners Annually dispatched to the principal Cities of each Province, to enquire into all Things relating to the Interest of the Prince; and in *Brabant*, their Power extends by a Privilege from the Pope to Ecclesiastical Persons and Things.

They have also an Admiral, who commands in Chief at Sea, has a Share of all Prizes taken in War; and without his Approbation, no Licence given by the Vice-Roy or the King, to export and import prohibited Goods, is valid. In short, at this Court they have all the usual Officers that are found at the Courts of any Prince in Europe.

These Provinces abound with Nobility, several of whom have the Title of Princes, Dukes, Marquisses, &c. which we cannot

insist upon. Their chief Order of Knighthood is that of the *Golden Fleece*, of which we have already given an Account. They had at first a Scarlet Robe; but *Charles the Hardy* chang'd it into Silk at a Chapter held at *Valenciennes*, where he assign'd them a Collar of Gold, with a Piece of Steel interlac'd, which seem'd to strike Fire out of a Flint. At the End of the Collar hangs the Golden Fleece, with this Motto, *Pretium non vile Laboris*; i. e. A Reward suitable to the Merit. And the Steel and Flint have this Motto, *Ante ferit quam Flamma micat*; i. e. You must strike before you can have Fire. The Knights at first were but 25; but *Charles V.* made them 50, who must all be Men of Quality, and such as in Spain are called *Grandees*.

The chief Government is in the Convention of Estates, which is call'd by the Vice-Roy in the King's Name, when Money is to be levy'd, Laws enacted, or other great Matters taken into Consideration. They usually meet at *Brussels*, because 'tis the Seat of the Government; and the *Brabanters* have a special Privilege, That they cannot be summoned out of their own Province; nor can those of *Luxemburg* and *Gueliers*, except on some extraordinary Occasion; and therefore their States usually meet at home. This Assembly, says *d'Auivy*, is made up of the Clergy, Nobility, and the Deputies of the chief Cities. They meet not all together, but by Provinces; and since the Revolt under the D. of *Alva*, the Prince's Proposals are made to them, according to their old Constitution, in very obliging Terms. If they refuse to consent, the Ministry make use of the best Arguments they can to bring 'em to it; which if they cannot effect, the Matter is referr'd to another Opportunity; for the Dissent of any one City prevents the passing the Resolve into a Law: And, as *Bentivoglio* says, the Prince had never the absolute Disposal of those People's Purses, it being the ancient Custom for them to desire only what was needful for his Occasions; the frequent Denial of which shew'd, that the granting of it was in the People's free Will.

The Power of these Provinces was very great under the last Dukes of the House of *Burgundy*, who were able to raise 100000 Men upon Occasion, and kept France in

awe:

ware: But 'tis much decay'd since the Revolt of the *Dutch*, as is also their Revenue and Trade. The former, before that Revolt, was reckon'd at 3000000 of Crowns *per Annum*; which was accounted more than that of any King in *Christendom*, except *France*. In 1550, the States granted to *Charles V.* an Aid called the *Novental*, or 9th Part of their Revenues, which brought him in 150000 Crowns *per Month*; but since the Revolt under *Philip II.* the Crown of *Spain* has been obliged to send great Sums thither for the Support of the Government: so that 'twas scarce worth while for them to retain those Provinces, had it not been to divert the Arms of *France* from invading the Kingdom of *Spain*.

It appears by the *Roman* Historians, That the *Belge*, the chief of the ancient Inhabitants, were a very warlike People, and so savage in *Cæsar's* Time, that they would admit no Commerce of Wine or any Thing else. Their Temper was plain and sincere; but if provok'd, fierce and untractable. They were eager in Pursuit of Honour, tenacious of their Liberty, fantastical in their Habit, insolent when victorious, and dispirited when beat. They liv'd for most part upon Milk and Flesh, especially that of Hogs, fresh and salt; and lay upon Beds spread on the Ground. They wore Trousers, much like those of the Highland *Scots* and *Irish*, and over them a Jacket with long Sleeves, and the Skirts of their Jackets reach'd to their Buttocks. Some of them had Raiment of several Colours, streak'd with Threads of Gold, and their chief Ornaments were Gold Chains and Bracelets. Their Arms were very long Swords, large Shields and Lances: Some of 'em had Bows and Arrows, and others Slings and Darts. If any one made a Disturbance in their Assemblies, or interrupted another when speaking, if they did not desist upon Admonition, the publick Executioner cut off so large a Piece of his Jacket, as made the rest useless, and himself ridiculous.

D'Auivy, Barclay, and Buno, give this Character of the modern Inhabitants, That they are for most part handsome enough, strong set, and well proportion'd. They are generally tall, surpass their Neighbours in Stature; but come short of the *Hollanders*, who are more remarkable for Men of an

extraordinary Size, as has been mentioned already; to which we shall add the Instance of one *Nicholas* in 1298, of whom Writers say, the largest of his Countrymen seem'd but Dwarfs to him, his Shoe being so large, that 4 Men together could put their Feet in it. They are commonly of a lively Complexion, and their Women fair, who begin to be wrinkled about 30. They are generally chaste, tho' free in their Conversation, and particularly in their Cups, as well as the Men; yet they are careful in their Household Affairs, and many of 'em so much entrusted by their Husbands in Matters of Trade, &c. that they grow imperious. The People are great Talkers, Lovers of Novelty; and tho' otherwise frugal, are much addicted to Feasting and Carousing, when they are apt to quarrel, which generally occasions another merry Meeting to make up the Difference.

Since the Revolt of the *Dutch*, those of Quality in the *Spanish Netherlands* have affected the *Spanish* Customs, and are more fond of pompous Titles than formerly. The common People live in greater Subjection to their Governors, seem to be fond of the *Spanish* Government, have an Aversion to that of *France*, and not much less to the *Dutch*, of whom they have a natural Jealousy, both upon the Account of their Trade and Religion; so that they do not much care for their Assistance, even when they want it. *Strada* says, they are not much taken with Gifts and kind Offices, which they are apt to forget, as well as Injuries, except they think themselves despised, and then they grow implacable. The *Walloons* do much resemble the *French* in Customs and Language; and *Crotius* says of 'em in general, That as the *Netherlanders* lie between *France* and *Germany*, they partake of the Virtues and Vices of both Nations.

Their Naval Power is much decay'd since the Revolt of the *Dutch*, their only Harbours being *Newport* and *Ostend*, which are neither of 'em extraordinary; nor are *Graveling* and *Dunkirk*, now in the Hands of the *French*; of much Account.

For their Inventions and Arts, the *Netherlanders* lay Claim to the teaching of others, the Way to make Cloth, Arras, Hangings, Clocks, Watches, and the Perfection of the

Mariners Compass; the Invention of which is allow'd them by some, but deny'd them by others. They also claim the Invention of Chariots, Painting with Oil, the making of Pictures and Glais, and the working of Worsted, Sais, Tapestries, and other Stuffs, which they taught the *English* when some of them were drove hither by the D. of *Alva's* Persecution. For their particular Manufactures, we shall take Notice of 'em in the Description of their Towns, and refer the Particulars of their Soil, &c. to the Description of the Countries.

Their general Language is the *Low Dutch* or *Flemmish*; but in Part of *Brabant*, *French Flanders*, the Countries of *Namur*, *Artois*, *Hainault*, *Luxemburg*, and quite through the *Ardenes*, they speak a corrupt *French*, which some call *Walloon*, and others *Romant*, as being mix'd with Part of the Language which the *Romans* left in those Provinces. Most of those about Court speak *Spanish*, and the People of Fashion speak good *French*.

Having already described *Dutch Guelderland*, we come next, according to the Course of the Map, to

SPANISH GUELDERLAND,

Which has *Dutch Brabant* and Part of the Bishoprick of *Liege* on the W. Part of the Dutchy of *Cleve* on the N. Part of the same Dutchy, and of the Electorate of *Cologne* on the E. and Part of the Dutchy of *Juliers* on the S. The greatest Length from S. to N. is about 35 Miles. The Breadth is unequal, and about 20 where broadest.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. *Ruremond*, on the Mouth of the *Roer*, where it falls into the *Maes*, about 25 Miles N. E. from *Maeſtricht*, and 10 S. W. from *Venlo*. 'Tis a rich and populous Town, its Walls strong, its Situation important, and the Buildings neat. The principal Church is dedicated to the Holy Ghost, and was made a Cathedral by *Philip II.* Here's a large and rich Monastery of *Carthusians*, much taken Notice of by Travellers. The adjacent Country is fertile in Corn, Pasturage, and Fruit. The City was sack'd in

the first War with *Spain* by the Prince of *Orange's* Army. 'Twas afterwards recover'd by the *Spaniards*, and retaken from them by the *Dutch* in 1632, when Count *Ernest Casimir* of *Nassau*, Governor of *Friesland*, was kill'd before it. 'Twas restored, together with the Country, to the Crown of *Spain* by the Treaty of *Munster*; and being seiz'd by the *French* upon the Death of *Charles II.* of *Spain*, 'twas surrender'd to the Confederates in 1702. *Bleau* gives an Account of the Learned Men that have been born here.

About 7 Miles N. lies *Kassel*, supposed to be the *Castellum* of *Ptolemy*, and the Metropolis of the *Menapii*. 'Tis now only a large Village on the top of an Hill, subject to its own Lord, and the Capital of its District.

2. *Venlo*, 10 Miles N. from *Ruremond*, on the *Maes*, a populous, trading, and well fortified Town. Their chief Commodities are, Corn, Free-stone, Marble, Brass, and Coal, brought hither from *Germany* by the *Maas*. It revolted from *Spain* during the Government of *Margaret* of *Austria*, who besieg'd it in vain; but it submitted to *Charles V.* in 1543, on Condition that they and the other Cities of *Guelderland* should enjoy their ancient Liberties. It has its Name from its Situation among Fens, and was made a City by *Reynold D.* of *Guelder* in 1343. 'Twas taken by the *Dutch* after it had surrender'd to *Charles V.* retaken by the *Spaniards* in 1636, and was recover'd from the *French* by the D. of *Marlborough* in 1702. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Goltzius*, the famous Medalist.

3. *Geldre*, which gives Name to the Province, lies about 9 Miles N. E. from *Venlo*. It receives the River *Niers* into its Trenches, lies in the middle of Marshes, and is so well fortified, that 'tis reckon'd one of the strongest Places in the *Netherlands*. It has an ancient Castle, formerly the Seat of its Governors, supposed to have been built by *Wichard*, their first Lord, who erected this Country into a Principality, after the Death of *Charles the Bald*. The Heire's being afterwards married to *Otho* of *Nassau*, who was created Count by the Emperor *Henry IV.* about 1069, one of his Descendants was made Duke by the Emperor *Leuw* of *Bavaria* in 1339; but his Posterity failing, it came to the Count of *Egmont*, who sold it

to

to Charles D. of Burgundy, as formerly mentioned; by whose Daughter it came to the House of Austria, to whom it continued firm after the Revolt of the other Provinces. It was taken by the Dutch in 1532, but retaken by the Spaniards in 1536, and recover'd from the French by the Prussians under General Lotum in 1703, after a Blockade of 15 Months. It has several Villages under its Jurisdiction, and has produc'd divers Learned Men, for whom we refer to *Blenn*.

4. *Stralen* lies 5 M. S. W. from *Geldre*, is Capital of a small Territory; and near it lies the Village of *Zant*, supposed to be *Antonin's Sablon* or *Sabulones*.

5. *Wachtendonck*, lies about 6 Miles S. from *Geldre*, on the River *Niers*, is chief of its District, and one of the strongest Towns in the Province, because of the neighbouring Marshes. It revolted from Spain, and was besieged 3 Months by Count *Mansfeld* in 1588; to whom 'twas surrender'd by Treachery. 'Twas surpris'd by Count *Lodewick* of *Nassau* in 1600, who marched some Troops over the Ice, which the Garrison had neglected to break. 'Twas taken again by the Spaniards in 1605.

6. *Stevenswaert*, 6 Miles S. from *Ruremond* on the *Maes*, a strong Fortress.

F L A N D E R S,

HAS Dutch Flanders on the N.E. the Province of *Arras* and *Picardy* on the S.W. the Sea on the N.W. and Spanish *Brabant* and *Hainault* on the S.E. The greatest Length, taking in that narrow Tract which runs in betwixt the *Artois*, the *Hainault*, and the Archbishoprick of *Cambray*, is, according to *Moll*, 76 Miles; and the greatest Breadth, from *Graveling* to the Frontiers of *Brabant*, is 65.

The ancient Inhabitants of this and the other Spanish Provinces, mentioned by the Romans, were the *Aduatii*, *Nervii*, *Centrones*, *Grudii*, *Leuaci*, *Pleumosi*, and *Gorduni*; these 5 latter being afterwards called *Sueconi*. For all whose Boundaries, we refer to P. 409, and 410, in our Account of Ancient Germany. Authors are divided as to the Origin of the Name. Some derive it from the Dutch Words *Veel* and *Anderen*, which

signify many others, alluding to the *Danes*, *Normans*, and other People who over-run it; as Germany had the Name of *Allemannia* from the several Sorts of People that possessed it; but *La Forrest*, and other French Geographers and Historians, say, 'twas so called from *Flandrina*, Wife to *Liderick II.* Prince of *Buck*, whose Predecessor was made Great Forrester of the Country by *Clotaivus II.* of France in 621, which is more probable.

This Country is by some reckon'd the richest Piece of Ground in *Christendom*, considering the Goodness of its Soil, the great Number of its Towns and Villages, Rivers and Canals; and is so well inhabited, that the Spaniards, who came thither with *Philip II.* took it for one continued Town. The Air is wholesome throughout; but that of the S. Part is reckon'd best. It lies almost upon a Level, is in few Places Hilly; but in no where can be said to be Mountainous. The Soil is generally fruitful; but that Part which lies next the Sea and France, exceeds in Fertility most Countries in Europe. They purchase great Numbers of Colts from neighbouring Countries, which in a little time are wonderfully improv'd in Shape, Size, and Swift-ness, by their excellent Air and Pasture. That called *Flemish Flanders* has no great store of Wheat, but abounds in good Fruit, Rye, Oats, Beans, Pease, Vetches, Hemp and Flax; by the latter of which they make great Profit of their most barren Ground. That called *French Flanders* produces an extraordinary Quantity of the best Wheat, Madder and Woad, and has as rich Pasturage as any in Europe. 'Tis reckon'd to have been for most part cover'd with Wood, till about the 9th Century, and was called the *Coal Forrest*, because of the great Quantity of Charcoal made there; which, *La Forrest* says, contributed much to destroy those vast Woods. He adds, That when it came under the French, they appointed 6 Forresters to oversee it, and divided it into two Parts; one called *Nemrosa*, from the Woods; and the other *Æsuaria*, because of the Marshes, and frequent Inlets of the Sea by the Mouths of the Rivers, &c. And by the Patents granted to those Forresters, they were to secure the Woody Parts against Robbers, and the Coasts against the Northern Pirates.

C c c c c

'Twas

Twass in after-Ages divided into the *Flemish* or *Teutonic*, *French* or *Walloon*, and *Imperial Flanders*. The former was so called, because of their Language, and that *Charlemagne* planted 4000 *Saxons* here. This is the largest, richest, and most populous Part, and lies betwixt the *Scheld*, the *Lis*, the *Aa*, and the Ocean. *Walloon Flanders*, so called because they spoke *French*, is divided from the other by the *Lis*, and reaches to the Frontiers of *France*. *Tournay* and *Doway* were its chief Towns before *Lisse* was built. *Imperial Flanders*, so called because it was under the Emperor's Jurisdiction, lies betwixt the *Scheld* and the *Dender*. The chief City is *Alost*, whose Earls paid Homage to the Emperor.

Their Earls having been famous in History, we shall give a brief Account of them.

The first Forrester, according to *French* Authors, was *Liderick*, Son to *Salvart* Pr. of *Dijon*, who was appointed by *Cleotarius* II. of *France* in 621. He was succeeded by 6 others of that Title, till the Time of *Charles the Bald*, who made *Baldwin*, surnam'd *Iron-Hand*, their first Count about 860. The *Flemings* say, they were the first Counts in *Europe*; but that must be understood of *French* Creation: For it appears by *Selden's Titles of Honour*, Part II. Cap. 1. That there were *Comites* before *Constantin's* Time. However, upon this Account the Earls of *Flanders* valued themselves so much, that they despised the Title of Duke, when their neighbouring Princes assum'd it. The Title of Count or Countess descended to their Posterity immediately upon the Death of their Predecessor, and they were solemnly invested with the Dignity by the Three Estates at *Ghent*, where they and their Subjects swore mutually to one another; and the like Ceremony was performed in all the other chief Towns and Castles of the Country. Before *Francis* I. of *France* renounc'd the Sovereignty of *Flanders*, they us'd to do Homage both to the Kings of *France* and the Emperor as soon as they took Possession. They perform'd it to the *French* Kings sitting on their Throne, came up to them bare Headed, without a Sword, bended their Knee to the Ground, put their Hands betwixt the King's, and swore Fealty, according to a Form repeated by the Chancellor

of *France*: After which they were admitted to kiss the King's Cheek, ranked among the Peers, and invested with the Marks of the Dignity; but when they did Homage to the Emperor for the County of *Alost*, and Country of *Waes*, he demanded no other Ceremony but their Oath, and then admitted them among the Counts of the Empire. When the *French* Kings were crown'd, the Earl of *Flanders's* Office was to gird on their Sword, and carry it before them: But notwithstanding this Homage, they had all the Rights of Sovereignty in *Flanders*, and were not obliged to appear in Judgment as other Peers, except their Succession were disputed, or when their Subjects appealed to the Court of *France* upon Denial of Justice by the Earls. But to come to their History; *Liderick* I. of *Buck* was so called, because he resided as Forrester in the Castle of *Buck*, now said to be the old Castle of *Lisse*. *Liderick* II. one of his Successors, was entrusted by *Charlemagne* to govern the *Saxon* Colony he settled in *Flanders*, and died in 808. His Son *Ingelram* succeeded, defended the Country against the *Huns* and *Vandals*, and died in 824. *Odoacer* his Son enlarged his Dominions, improved the Country, and died in 837. He was the last of the Forresters, and succeeded by

1. *Baldwin*, the first Earl, call'd *Iron-Hand*, because of his great Strength. He serv'd *Charles the Bald* against the *Saracens* and *Normans*, married his Daughter *Judith* without his Consent, for which he was excommunicated by the Pope; but afterwards reconciled to *Charles*, who enlarged his Dominions. He had Wars with the *Normans*, built the Castle of *Burgh* in *Bruges* to curb them, and died in 879.

2. *Baldwin* II. his Son, succeeded, took Part with his Cousin *Charles the Simple* of *France* against the Earl of *Anjou* and other Rebels, had Wars with the *Normans*, was a Prudent and Religious Prince, and died in 918.

3. *Arnold* his Son, by a Daughter of *Elfred* K. of *England*, succeeded. He had the Surname of *Great*, because of his good Qualities, signaliz'd his Valour against the *Danes*, *Huns*, and *Vandals*, died in 964, and was succeeded by his Son

4. *Baldwin* III. to whom he had in his old Age resign'd the Government by Consent

sent of the States. He was a valiant Prince, encouraged Trade, settled Manufactures, and died universally lamented in 961.

5. *Arnold II.* his Son, succeeded when very young. *Lotharius K.* of France invaded his Country during his Minority, and took from him the Counties of *Bullen*, *Terouenne*, and *St. Paul*. He took Part with *Charles* of *Lorrain* against *Hugh Capet*, who usurp'd the Crown of France, was remarkable for his Piety and Justice, and died in 988.

6. *Baldwin IV.* his Son, surnamed *Goodly Beard*, succeeded. The Emperor *Henry II.* made War upon him; but was afterwards reconciled to him, and gave him *Valenciennes* and *Zealand*. He was a brave, learned, and just Prince. In his Reign, *Flanders* was so afflicted with the Plague, that the Living were scarce enow to bury the Dead. He married *Ogina* of *Luxemburg*, who having no Child till the 50th Year of her Age, he order'd a magnificent Tent to be erected for her in the Market-Place of *Arras*, where she was brought to Bed of a Son, in the Presence of all the Citizens Wives that pleas'd to go in, because her former Barrenness had rais'd a Suspicion, that she design'd to impose a supposititious Prince upon 'em. This Son afterwards rebelled against his Father, and drove him out of his Country, which he recover'd by Help of the D. of *Normandy*, whose Daughter he had married upon the Death of *Ogina*. *Baldwin* died in 1036, and was succeeded by his unnatural Son.

7. *Baldwin* of *Lisle*, so call'd because he lov'd and adorn'd that City more than any other in *Flanders*. He assist'd his Son-in-Law, *William the Bastard* of *Normandy*, to take Possession of that Country, and likewise to conquer *England*, on Condition, say the *Flemish* Historians, that he and his Successors, Kings of *England*, shou'd pay to him, and the succeeding Earls of *Flanders*, an Annual Pension of 300 Marks in Silver, which was continued to *Baldwin* and his Son; but was afterwards with-held. *Henry I.* of France had so great an Opinion of *Baldwin*, that he left him Guardian to his Sons, and Governor of the Kingdom, till the eldest came of Age; which he perform'd with great Integrity. He had Wars with the Emperor *Henry III.* took from him the County of *Alost*, and afterwards obtain'd

from him by Treaty several other Lordships, with all *Zealand*. He married his second Son *Robert* to the Countess of *Holland*, and gave him the County of *Alost*, and Part of *Zealand*, upon taking an Oath, That he should make no further Pretensions to his Succession. Upon his Death-Bed, he sent for his eldest Son *Baldwin*, gave him pious Instructions relating to his Government and Personal Conduct, order'd him to keep firm to the Interest of France, from whom he had receiv'd such Honour and Advantage; and that tho' he himself had Pretensions to the Crown of France, as being of *Charlemagne's* Lineage, that he should submit to the Race of *Hugh Capet*, to whom he was nearly related; and soon after this he dy'd in 1067, having effac'd the ill Character he had at first for rebelling against his Father; and by his after Conduct acquir'd that of a brave, wise, and religious Prince. He was succeeded by

8. *Baldwin VI.* his Son, who by his Marriage acquir'd *Hainault*, and was call'd *Baldwin* of *Mons*, because he chose that City for the Place of his Residence. He was a courteous, religious, and just Prince; dy'd in the 3d Year of his Government, Anno 1070, gave Part of his Dominions to his Sons by a second Marriage, and recommended the Care of his Sons to the States.

9. *Arnold III.* his Son, surnam'd the *Unhappy*, succeeded, was ruin'd by the Pride and Covetousness of his Mother, and the Treachery of his Uncle *Robert the Frizzled*, who making War upon him, *Arnold* was kill'd fighting valiantly at *Mont-Cassil* in 1072; many of the *Flemings* having revolted from him because of his Mother's Hatred to them. He was succeeded by

10. *Robert I.* his Uncle, who making Interest with *Philip* of France, and doing him Homage, was by him supported in his Usurpation. In his Reign, the Country suffer'd much by a sharp and long Winter, tempestuous Weather, Earthquakes, and a Plague, which destroyed such Multitudes of People in 1092, that 'twas call'd the *Fiery Disease*. The *Flemish* Writers say, That his Ambassadors going to pay Homage to the Emperor, were told by an Apparition in Form of a Majestick Woman, That *Robert's* Male-Issue should fail in his Grandson for his Wickedness; and that he him-

self going to Jerusalem in Pilgrimage to atone for his Sins, was frighten'd by Visions in the Holy Sepulchre; and after his Return, died suddenly in 1093. He was succeeded by

11. *Robert II.* his Son, surnam'd of *Jerusalem*, because that City was taken from the *Saracens* chiefly by his Valour. In his Reign, *Flanders* was mightily afflicted with Plague, Famine, and Inundations, and continual Rains from *October* to *April* 1109, which forc'd many of the Inhabitants to retire to *England*, where they were planted in a Colony in the E. Part of the Country by *Henry I.* *Robert* took Part with *Lewis the Gros* of *France* against the *English*, by whom he was kill'd in a Sally from *Mante* on the *Seyne* in 1111. 'Tis said, that his Wife *Clemence* having 3 Sons by him, and being afraid she should burden the Family by her Fruitfulness, took Medicines to make her barren; for which she was punished by the Death of her 3 Sons without Issue, and by seeing the Government come to another Family. *Robert* was succeeded by

12. *Baldwin VII.* his Son, surnam'd the *Hatchet*, because he constantly carried one, with which he performed Justice upon Malefactors in Person. He was a great Justiciary, executed several Gentlemen with his Hatchet for robbing Merchants, and order'd one of his Lords to be cast into a Caldron of boiling Oil, which was prepar'd in the Market-Place of *Bruges* for a counterfeit Coiner, because he had robb'd a poor Woman of her Cattle, which was all she had to subsist on. He was very careful in appointing Judges, inspected their Behaviour himself in his Progress through the Countries for that End, and punish'd severely such as took Bribes. By sitting frequently in Judgment, he was Master of the Laws of his Country, and acquir'd the Love of his Subjects; it being his constant Maxim, That Princes ought to do Justice in Person as much as they could, and not leave it to Substitutes, since they demanded Personal Service from their People. He took Part with *Lewis the Gros* against the *English*, because they would not pay the Pension promis'd by *William the Conqueror*, and died of a Wound he received from them at a Siege in *Normandy* in 1119. He died without Issue, and on his Death-Bed declared his Cou-

sin *Charles*, Son to *Canutus K.* of *Denmark*, who had fled to him after the Murder of his Father, his Heir.

13. *Charles I.* surnam'd the Good, succeeded; but was oppos'd by *William of Ipres*, Nephew to *Robert* of *Jerusalem*, assisted by *Stephen* of *England*, who made him Earl of *Kent*, for having deliver'd him out of Prison, and restoring him to his Scepter, say the *Flemish* Writers; but *Charles* was too hard for him, obtain'd peaceable Possession, and the Reputation of a valiant and religious Prince. He punish'd severely Blasphemers and common Swearers, Witches, Soothsayers, and Magicians; and mix'd so much Courtesy with his Justice, that he was belov'd by his Country. In his Reign, the Corn being frozen by a severe Winter, such a Scarcity ensu'd, that he forbade the brewing of Beer, the keeping of Dogs, or giving Corn to Beasts, and in one Day distributed near 8000 Loaves, besides Money and Clothes, to the Poor of *Ipres*; and understanding that the *Vanfraets*, a rich Family in *Bruges*, had hoarded up a great Quantity of Corn, which they sold at excessive Rates, he condemn'd them to Death for Extortion; which he afterwards mitigated, by ordering their Houses to be pulled down, their Corn to be sold at moderate Rates, and the Money they had extorted to be restored to the Poor. One of this Family being Chancellor of *Flanders*, Provost of *St. Donatian* at *Bruges*, and concern'd in this Extortion, *Charles* sent for him to a publick Hall, where he himself was distributing Bread to the Poor, rebuk'd him for his Avarice, and sent him away without inviting him to Dinner with the rest of the Clergy, for which this wicked Priest disguis'd himself in the Habit of a Beggar, and murder'd the Prince at his Devotion in the Church in 1126. After which the Chancellor, with the rest of the *Vanfraets*, who were privy to the Design, invaded the Palace, kill'd the Prince's chief Officers, and fortified themselves in the Tower of *St. Donatian*, from whence he afterwards made his Escape; but he and his Accomplices were all overtaken by Justice, tho' they fled to several Countries, and were deservedly put to Death. Twenty eight of 'em were thrown Headlong from *St. Donatian's* Tower, their Houses demolish'd, their Estates

Estates confiscated; and to perpetuate the Memory of their Crime and Punishment, an Order was made, That the whole Family should be curs'd Annually on the 26th of March at the Gate of that Church, where at the same time the Praises of this excellent Prince were justly celebrated. The History of *Flanders*, lately publish'd in French, says, the Conspirators were embolden'd to this execrable Fact, because *Charles* being born a *Dane*, was not acceptable to many of the Nobility; but the Kings of *England* and *France*, and other neighbouring Princes, countenanc'd those who took Arms to revenge the Parricide. This History adds, That *Charles* had a Part of Scripture read and explain'd to him every Night after Supper by 3 Doctors of Divinity. *Charles* dying without Issue, he was succeeded by

14. *William the Norman*, Grandson to *Win. the Conqueror*, descended by the Mother from *Baldwin of Lisse*. He was put in Possession by *Lewis the Great of France*, tho' the Kings of *Denmark* and *England*, and others, were nearer a-kin to *Charles*; but he prov'd such a Tyrant, that the *Flemings* revolted, killed him in a Siege, and he was succeeded by

15. *Thierry of Alsace*, who was reckon'd next a-kin to *Charles the Good*, and Grandson to *Robert the Frizzled*. He was an affable, just, and wise Prince, made 4 Expeditions into the *Holy Land*, where he behav'd himself so well, that he stood fair to be made King of *Jerusalem*, had not the Jealousy of other Princes prevented it. He assisted at the Coronation of *Henry II. of England*, and built *Graveling*, where he died in 1169. He was succeeded by

16. *Philip of Alsace*, his Son, with whom he had shar'd the Government. He acquir'd by Marriage the Counties of *Vermandois*, *Valois*, and *Amiens*. He defeated and took *Florence of Holland*, subdued the County of *Alost*, and the Country of *Waes*, and was much in Favour with the Emperor *Frederick I.* who on his Account exempted the *Flemish* Merchants from Tolls in the Empire. He accompanied the Emperor *Henry VI.* with a magnificent Train to *Rome* for the Election of a Pope, and had so great a Kindness for *Philip II. of France*, that he challeng'd *Richard I. of England* to a Duel, in order to determine the Quarrel betwixt

them, and married his Niece to *Philip*, with whom he gave the Earldom of *Aras*, which prov'd fatal to his Successors, by opening a Passage to the *French* into their Dominions. He died of the Plague at the Siege of *St. John d'Acres*, when he went to assist the K. of *Jerusalem* in 1191; and having no Issue, on his Death-Bed he appointed for Successor his Sister

17. *Margaret*, who married *Baldwin IV. of Hainault*. Their Dominions were diminished by *Lewis VIII. of France*, who seiz'd all *West-Flanders*. Upon this the City of *Ghent* pretended to be Capital of the Country, and claim'd such Privileges as intrench'd on the Prerogative of their Sovereigns, whom they would not suffer to publish any Law there without their Consent. *Margaret*, who was much extolled for her Beauty and Piety, died in 1194, as did her Husband a few Years after.

18. *Baldwin VIII.* her Son, succeeded both to *Hainault* and *Flanders*. He went with other Princes on a Croisado to the *Holy Land*; and in his Way assisted the *Venitians* to take *Zara in Dalmatia*. While he was there, *Alexis Comnenus*, Son to *Isaac* Emperor of *Constantinople*, intreated his Help against his Uncle *Alexis Ducas*, who had dethron'd his Brother *Isaac*, and put out his Eyes. *Baldwin* took *Constantinople*, restor'd *Isaac*, and defeated *Ducas*. *Isaac* dying, his Son *Alexis Comnenus* succeeded; but being murder'd, and his Throne usurp'd by *Alexis Murzupla*, *Baldwin* and the other Princes return'd from the *Holy Land*, took *Constantinople* by Assault, drove out the Usurper; and there being no lawful Heir, *Baldwin* was chosen Emperor in 1200. He obliged the *Greek Church* to submit to the *Roman*, which occasioned the *Greeks* to revolt, and *Baldwin* was taken by an Ambush as he belieg'd the Chief of the Revolters in *Adrianople*, where they cut him in Pieces, upon an Accusation, as they pretended, by *Jane*, their Prince's Daughter, that he offer'd to marry and share the Empire with her, if she would deliver him out of Prison; but the *Greek* Historians deny this, and say, he dy'd a natural Death in 1207. His Brother *Henry* succeeded in the Empire of the East, and died in the 11th Year of his Reign. He was succeeded in the Empire by *Peter de Courtenay*, Earl of *Auxerre*, who

who was taken by the *Greeks* in an Ambush, and afterwards put to Death. He was succeeded by his Son *Robert*, who made himself hateful by debauching a Gentleman's Wife at *Constantinople*, which the Gentleman reveng'd by killing his Wife, and her Mother who had betray'd her, in the Emperor's Presence. *Robert* died in the 9th Year of his Reign, and was succeeded by his Son *Baldwin II.* who, after a Reign of 30 Years, was forc'd to fly from *Constantinople*, which was deliver'd up by Treachery to *Michael Paleologus*, who recover'd the Empire, and restor'd it to the *Greeks*; after it had continued in *Baldwin VIII.* and his Successors for 60 Years. But his Posterity could never regain it, because of the Aversion the *Greeks* had to the *Roman Church*. To *Baldwin VIII.* succeeded

19. *Jane* of *Constantinople*, his Daughter, who being deliver'd up to the K. of *France* by her Uncle, that was left Guardian by her Father upon his Departure to the *Holy Land*, the *French King*, to prevent her Match with the K. of *England*, married her to *Ferrand Pr.* of *Portugal*; at which the *Flemmings* being angry, they refused to submit to *Ferrand* till he brought his Wife with him; which having done, they received him joyfully, and he soon after enter'd into a Confederacy with *England* and others against the King of *France*, who took and kept him 12 Years in Prison, and he dy'd soon after his Release. *Jane* married for her second Husband *Pr. Thomas* of *Savoy*, and died in 1244.

20. *Margaret II.* her Sister, succeeded. She was married first to *Bochart d'Avenes*, of the Family of *Roussillon*, and afterwards to *William de Bourbon*, Lord of *Dampiere*. She had Children by both Marriages, who contended with one another for the Principality, because the Legitimacy of the first was disputed, their Father *Bochart* having been in Orders, which he conceal'd from his Wife; who, as soon as she knew of it, got him excommunicated, for which he dy'd of Grief. *St. Lewis* of *France* espous'd the Cause of her Son *John* by her first Husband, who took Arms against her, and was made Earl of *Hainault*, and a 2d Brother was made Lord of *Beaumont*. From them proceeded the Earls of *Hainault*, *Friesland*, and *Holland*; betwixt whom, and the Issue

of the 2d Marriage, there was always a mortal Hatred. *Margaret* inherited the Courage of her Father, appear'd frequently in Arms, encourag'd Trade, eas'd her Subjects from the Taxes they had paid to her Predecessors, by way of Attonement for her Sins, founded many Hospitals, made many good Laws, and died in 1279. She confirmed the Earldom of *Hainault* to her Grandchild *John d'Avenes*; her own Son *John*, who took Arms against her, having died before her, and she was succeeded in *Flanders* by

21. *Guido* of *Dampiere*, her Son by the 2d Marriage, who had a long and miserable Reign. He was taken by the *Hollanders*, against whom he made War in *Zeeland*, and not released till after a long Time. He was twice invited to *France* by *Philip the Fair*, who kept him Prisoner both times, and suffered him at last to die in Confinement. The *French* attempted to reduce *Flanders* as a Province to their Crown; but the People would not submit to it, nor to the Treaties that *Guido* had made with the *French King* during his Confinement, from which he was released, on Condition that he should return to Prison if he could not bring them to it; in which having failed, he return'd according to Promise, and died a Prisoner in 1314. During these Transactions, the *Flemmings* obtain'd a great Victory over the *French* near *Courtray* in 1302; but were defeated by them two Years after, and came to an Agreement with *Philip the Fair*, on Condition of restoring them *Guido's* two Sons, whom they had fraudulently surpris'd, with 50 of their prime Nobility.

22. *Robert III.* Son to *Guido*, succeeded; but was obliged for his Release to promise 20000 Livres to the *French*, and mortgaged *Lisle*, *Doway*, and *Orchies*, to them for a Security, which the *French* afterwards claim'd as their Property. He assisted *Charles D.* of *Anjou*, Brother to *St. Lewis* of *France*, in the Conquest of *Naples*, and married his Daughter. He died in 1322, and was succeeded by

23. *Lewis I.* his Grandson, whose Pretensions were oppos'd by his Uncle and Aunt, and the *French King*, who imprison'd him in the *Louvre*; but his Title being judg'd good by the Parliament of *Paris*, he was restor'd, upon doing Homage to *Charles the Beautiful*

Beautiful of France. His Conduct made him odious to his Subjects, who took Arms against him, under the Conduct of *Artevel*, a Brewer, because he favour'd the *French*, and hated the *English*, with whom the *Flemmings* had enter'd into a Confederacy, and upon that Account were excommunicated by the Pope, till a Truce was made betwixt *Philip de Valois* of *France* and *Edward III.* of *England*, in which the *Flemmings* were included, and the Excommunication taken off by the Cunning of the Brewer. *Lewis* was kill'd in the Battle of *Cressy* in 1346, where he fought valiantly for *Philip de Valois* against the *English*.

24. *Lewis II.* his Son, succeeded. He was in the Battle of *Cressy* with his Father, where he behav'd himself valiantly, tho' but 18 Years of Age, and narrowly escap'd, with the *French* King. The Citizens of *Ghent* had kept him from his Father to marry him with *Edward III.*'s Daughter, for the Sake of their Woollen Trade with *England*; but when *Edward* came over with the Princess to solemnize the Nuptials, *Lewis*, on Pretence of Hunting, made his Escape to his Father, then at *Paris*, where he married a Daughter of *Brabant*; which provok'd the *Flemmings* so much, that they form'd themselves into a Commonwealth, and refus'd to admit him, till he confirm'd their Treaty with *England*. He gave himself up to lewd Women, one of whom his Countess getting into her Hands, she cut off her Nose, by which Wound he died 6 Days after, with two Male Children that he brought forth before her Time. This did so much alienate *Lewis* from the Countess, that he fill'd his House with Concubines and Bastards; which, with his Prodigality, and vindictive Temper, made those of *Ghent* take Arms against him, under the Conduct of *Artevel* the Brewer: But this Commotion being appeas'd, he recover'd *French Flanders*, by marrying his only Daughter to the *French* King's Brother; and the Earldoms of *Arras* and *Burgundy* fell to him as Heir to his Mother *Margaret* of *France*. During his Reign, an Inundation overflow'd 27 Villages in *Flanders*, Anno 1377. He built a Palace at *Ghent*, with a Chamber for every Day of the Year. He was very magnificent to Foreign Princes, and was visited at *Ghent* by the Kings of *Cyprus* and *Denmark*.

He design'd to have reveng'd himself on the Citizens of *Ghent* after they were defeated by *Charles VI.* of *France* at *Rosbeck*, and their General the Brewer kill'd; but he died suddenly in 1383.

25. *Margaret III.* his Daughter, succeeded, being married to *Philip the Bold* of *Burgundy*, Brother to *Charles V.* of *France*, 15 Years before her Father's Death. She had been contracted before to *Edmund*, Son to *Edward III.* of *England*; but the Marriage was prevented by her Grandmother *Margaret*, who hated the *English* so much, that she untty'd her Robes in Presence of her Son, threaten'd to cut off her own Breasts, which had given him Suck, and throw them to the Dogs, if he did not break off that Match, and marry her to *Philip* of *Burgundy*, who obtain'd the Surname of *Bold*, because he fought so gallantly to prevent his Father King *John* of *France*'s being taken by the *English* at the Battle of *Poitiers*, where he was taken with him, for which his Father gave him the Duchy of *Burgundy* by Letters Patents in 1363, which was afterwards confirmed to him and his Heirs by his Brother *Charles V.* He was a Prince of great Courage and Prudence, gain'd the Citizens of *Ghent*, by pardoning them after 7 Years Rebellion, was Governor to his Nephew King *Charles VI.* of *France* during his Minority, and died in 1404, so much in Debt, notwithstanding the great Opportunities he had to enrich himself by his own large Dominions, and the Management of the Revenues of *France*, that his Widow, rather than be at the Expence of his Funeral, renounc'd her Charge in his Moveables. She died in 1406.

26. *John* of *Burgundy*, her Son, surnam'd the *Undaunted*, succeeded. He was bred in *France*, and was sent to assist *Sigismund* of *Hungary* against the *Turks*, where he was taken, and in Danger of being cut off, as was the greatest part of the *French* Nobility who were taken with him after the Battle, had not a Soothsayer perswaded the Grand Seignior *Bajazet* to save him, by telling him, That *John* would one Day occasion a great deal of Mischief to *Christendom*, and particularly to *France*, whither he return'd after being ransom'd, and was received there with great Honour. His Representation to the D. his Father, and to *Charles VI.* of *France* his Cousin,

Cousin, how contemptible the Schisms betwixt the Popes and Antipopes made the Christians to the *Turks*, and the Church of *Rome* to the *Greeks*, occasioned their putting an End to it. He was a Prince of great Courage and Prudence; and notwithstanding the War betwixt *England* and *France*, he procur'd a Freedom of Trade to his Subjects from both; but he stain'd his Character, by persuading Assassins to murder the Duke of *Orleans*, his Cousin-German and mortal Enemy, in 1407. He dissembled his Concern in it for some time, but at last openly own'd it, and got *John Petit*, a *Franciscan*, and Doctor of Divinity in the University of *Paris*, avowedly to defend it, as an Act like that of *Phineas*; for which the Duke deserv'd a Reward, alledging, that the Duke of *Orleans* had made use of Magick, and other wicked Arts, to possess himself of the Kingdom. There were others so bold as to offer to justify this Action before the Council of *Constance*. The Causes of this mortal Hatred were, 1. His Envy against the D. of *Orleans*, because he had the Government of the Kingdom during the Incapacity of his Brother *Charles VI.* 2. Because the D. of *Orleans* put Jest upon him, gave him ridiculous Names, and, as 'tis said, hit him a Box on the Ear in a publick Assembly. 3. Because the D. hinder'd him to besiege *Calais*, then possess'd by the *English*, for which he had made great Preparations. 4. Because 'twas alledg'd the D. of *Orleans* had offer'd Violence to the Dutchess of *Burgundy*, who was a very beautiful Princess. The D. thinking himself sufficiently excused by those Pretences, he had the Boldness to demand a Reward for this abominable Action in the Presence of the Dauphin, the Grandees of the Kingdom, and of the University and chief Citizens of *Paris*, at a publick Assembly. But however that was, *Charles VI.* gave him a Pardon, and seemingly reconcil'd the D. of *Orleans's* Children to him; but they quickly discover'd, that nothing less than his Blood would satisfy their Resentments. The Duke of *Burgundy* had not only provok'd the House of *Orleans*, but many of the Grandees of *France*, and particularly the Constable d'*Armagnac*; but the Citizens of *Paris* favour'd the Duke, and hated the Faction of *Orleans* or *Armagnac*, because they

would not stand to the Agreement, that the D. of *Burgundy* should govern the Kingdom jointly with the Dauphin, his Son-in-Law, during the Life of *Charles VI.* And while the D. of *Burgundy* was in *Flanders*, they let 800 of his Horse into the City, put on *St. Andrew's Cross*, the Device of *Burgundy* upon their Clothes, and taking Arms, murder'd the Constable, with several Officers of the Household, 4 Bishops, and above 3000 other Persons of Note. The D. of *Burgundy* seem'd to disapprove this, tho' 'twas supposed to be done by his Orders. All this together made the Faction of *Orleans* determine his Ruin. In order to which, they persuaded the Dauphin, afterwards *Charles VII.* who appear'd at their Head, to invite him to a Conference, on Pretence to concert Measures for driving the *English* out of the Kingdom; and to prevent Suspicion, the Dauphin took an Oath before the Legat, on the Cross and the Gospels, That the Duke nor his Party should receive no Damage; and as a further Security, they promised to deliver to the Duke the Castle of *Montereau*, on the Bridge of which Town, that was rail'd in on purpose, the Interview was appointed. The D. trusting to these Promises, met the Dauphin on the Bridge, and passing through a Door in the Rails to salute him, he bow'd his Knee, and told him, He was come to receive his Orders, and to consult how the *English* might be expell'd the Kingdom. The Dauphin charg'd him with Breach of Promise in not withdrawing his Garrisons; and while the Duke began to justify himself, the Dauphin gave him the Lye, and cry'd out aloud, *Now is the Time*. Upon which the Conspirators murder'd him in Presence of the Dauphin, which involv'd *France* in Blood and Misery for many Years, occasioned the Dauphin to be disinherited by his Father and Mother, and *Henry V.* of *England* to be proclaimed Regent; so that *Charles VII.* would certainly have lost the Crown, had it not been for the Assistance of the *Scots*, and the Courage his Troops were inspired with by *Joan of Arc*, the well known Maid of *Orleans*. *John D. of Burgundy* being thus cut off in 1419, he was succeeded by

27. *Philip III.* his Son, surnam'd the Good, because of his Clemency. He enter'd *France* with an Army, and join'd with the

English

English, to revenge the Death of his Father; and prevailed with *Charles VI.* of *France*, and his Queen, whose Daughter he had married, to disinherir the Dauphin, to match their Daughter *Katharine* with *Henry V.* of *England*, and to settle the Succession on their Posterity, as the only Means to deliver *France* from a dangerous War with *England*, and from the Stain which had been put upon the Honour of the Nation by the Dauphin. This brought on a War of 16 Years; but the Dauphin being come to the Crown, and the Duke being affronted by the Pride of some of the English, (says the History of *Flanders*) and particularly by *Humphrey D.* of *Glocester*, who had carried away from her Husband the *D.* of *Brabant*, *Jaqueline* Countess of *Hainault* and *Holland*, and afterwards married her. He inclin'd to a Peace, partly because being nearest Relation to *Jaqueline*, who had no Issue, he expected to be her Heir; and partly because he was troubled to see *France*, in which he was born, and whose Kings were his Ancestors, reduced to such a miserable Condition: But chiefly, because *Charles VII.* had in 1436 procur'd Ambassadors from several Crown'd Heads to meet at *Arras*, in order to mediate a Peace; and sent to beg the Duke's Pardon for the Murder of his Father. The English refused to part with their Title and Possession, and *Charles* sent some of his Grandees, who falling on their Knees at Church before *D. Philip*, beg'd his Pardon in their Masters Name for the Murder of his Father; to which he had been prompted to consent by wicked Villains in his tender Age; with which Duke *Philip* being mov'd, he burst out into Tears, and declar'd with a loud Voice, "That for the Sake of our Saviour's Passion, out of
"Pity to the People of *France*, and out of
"Respect to the Pope and the Council of *Basil*, and the Intercession of Christian
"Princes, he would forgive the King of
"*France*, on Condition that a Cross should
"be erected on the Bridge where his Father
"was murder'd; That all the Actors should
"be condemn'd; That the K. should give
"him the Towns and Counties he demanded, pay him 400000 Crowns, allow his
"Subjects in the Service of *France* to bear
"St. Andrew's Cross, and exempt himself
"from paying Homage." Upon this the

Treaty was concluded, the Legat absolv'd him from his Oaths and Leagues with the English, who reproach'd him bitterly for it, and hated him ever after. The Treaty being concluded, he order'd his Governor of *Paris* to drive the English from thence. Besides these Additions to his Dominions from *France*, he fell Heir to the Duchies of *Brabant* and *Limburg*, the Marquisate of the Empire, *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Friesland*, and the Duchy of *Luxemburg*, which made him the powerfulest Prince in Europe. He married for his 3d Wife the Daughter of *John King of Portugal*; She was received at *Bruges* with extraordinary Magnificence; and on the Day of his Nuptials, he instituted the Order of the Golden Fleece. He ransom'd from the English for 400000 Crowns the *D.* of *Orleans*, Son to *D. Lewis*, whom his Father had caus'd to be murder'd, married him to his Niece, a Daughter of *Cleves*, and made him a Knight of the Golden Fleece. He entertain'd the Dauphin of *France*, afterwards *Lewis XI.* and his Wife, 7 Years at his Court, whither they had retir'd from the Displeasure of the French King, who demanded him from *Philip*, and sent to tell him, That his Son would reward him, if ever he came to the Crown; as *Aesop's* Serpent did the Countryman, who took it up when stung by a bitter Frost, and warm'd it in his House, where it afterwards poison'd him: But *Philip* continu'd his Kindness to the Dauphin, and put him in Possession of the Crown after his Father's Death; for which he rewarded him as his Father foretold he would. Duke *Philip* also entertain'd in her Distress *Margaret*, Wife to *Henry IV.* of *England*, and Daughter to *Rene D.* of *Anjou*, who had both been his Enemies. He likewise pardon'd his own Son *Charles*, whom he had confin'd for speaking disrespectfully to him on the Account of his Favourites, and receiv'd him with Tears and Embraces when he came to make his Submission. He likewise pardon'd the Cities of *Ghent* and *Bruges*, who had forsaken him when he besieg'd *Calais*. For all which Actions of Clemency, he receiv'd the Surname of Good, and died full of Honour and Glory at *Bruges* in 1467, the 80th Year of his Age, and the 48th of his Reign. He left behind him 40000 *Lewis d'Ors*, 772 Marks of uncoin'd Silver, and Moveables

D d d d d

80

to the Value of 2000000 of Gold, a vast Treasure in those Days: He was buried with as great Magnificence as he had liv'd. His Corps was cover'd with a Mortuary of Gold, on which there lay a Sword of the same Metal, and there were 17000 Torches carried before him to the Grave. He was esteem'd by all the great Princes of the World; so that *Edward IV.* of *England*, when he fail'd to recover his Kingdom, trusted him with his two young Brothers, tho' *Philip* was related to the House of *Lancaster*, and *Edward* the Chief of the House of *York*. *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, Emperors of the East, came to desire his Assistance against the *Turks*, who had dispossest them. *David* Emperor of *Trapezond*, and the Kings of *Persia*, *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*, sent Ambassadors to desire his Assistance against the *Ottoman* Family, and call'd him by the Title of, Great Duke of the Western Regions. The Emperor *Frederick III.* design'd to have made him a Knight, and Vicar of the Empire in *Gaul*, and courted his Grand-Daughter *Mary*, for his Son *Maximilian*, which afterwards took Effect. But this great Prince was not without his Weaknesses, for he made *David*, one of his Bastard Sons, Bishop of *Utrecht* by Force, and another of his Relations Bishop of *Liege* by Bribery. He had likewise 7 other Bastards by several Mistresses.

28. *Charles II.* his Son, surnam'd the *Hardy* or *Terrible*, succeeded. He added the Dutchy, of *Guelder* and the County of *Zutphen* to his Dominions, and was invested in the latter by the Emperor with great Pomp and Ceremony; when the Number of his Train, the Richness of their Apparel, and the Sumptuousness of the Entertainment he gave to the Emperor and his Court, fill'd all that beheld it, and the Emperor himself, with Admiration. The History of *Flanders* says, he had 6 Earls and 600 Gentlemen attending him, all clad in Brocade: His own Cofferock was embroider'd with Gold, and adorn'd with Precious Stones, valued at 200000 Ducats. At his Entertainment, his Table was cover'd with Dishes and Vessels of massy Gold, embellish'd with Diamonds. At the 2d Course, there was one Vessel set before the Emperor valued at 6000 Ducats of Gold. His Chapel where he heard Mass was adorn'd with 60 Images

of Gold and Silver, and so full of Precious Stones, that they were valued at 200000 Ducats. The Reason of all this extravagant Pomp, was to induce the Emperor to make him King of *Burgundy*, and Vicar of the Empire on this Side the *Rhine*; upon which he was to give his Daughter in Marriage to *Maximilian*, the Emperor's Son. All Things were prepar'd for his Investiture in the Royalty; but the Emperor, of a sudden departed from him without doing it, but on what Reason is not said; tho' it may reasonably be suppos'd, that the Emperor was offended to see himself outdone in Pomp by the Vanity of a Prince so much below him in Dignity, tho' superior in Riches. That same Year *Sigismund* of *Austria* came to *Flanders*, and mortgaged to him the County of *Ferrette*, in which stand the Cities of *Brisac* and *Rhinfeld*, with a Design to engage him against the *Swissers*, with whom *Sigismund* was then at War. He married for 3d Wife, *Margaret*, Daughter to *Richard D.* of *York*, in 1468, at *Bruges*, with extraordinary Magnificence. He fancy'd this Princess for her Beauty; but his politick Reason for the Match was to prevent *England's* joining with *France* against him. In 1471, he received *Edward IV.* of *England*, his Brother-in-Law, with great Kindness when he was drove from his Dominions, and sent him back with an Army, which restor'd him. He likewise entertain'd, answerable to their Dignity, several Princes of the House of *Lancaster*, who fled to him in their Distress. He made several advantageous Treaties with *Lewis XI.* of *France*, by which he enlarged his Dominions, exempted himself from paying Homage to that Crown, and his Subjects from Appeals to *France*. Upon which he erected the Sovereign Court at *Malins*, in Imitation of the Parliament of *Paris*. He rais'd a Regiment of 800 Horse, arm'd Cap-a-pé, divided into 5 Troops, each of 'em commanded by a Knight of the *Golden Fleece*, to whom he allow'd extraordinary Salaries. He spent two or three Days a Week in determining Controversies among his Grandees and Courtiers in Person. He had continual Wars with his Neighbours, which oblig'd him to levy great Taxes on his Subjects, and occasioned the States to refuse several of his extravagant Demands.

He

He was so successful in his Wars at first, that he became the Terror of Europe, oblig'd the Emperor to a disadvantageous Peace, and Lewis XI. of France the like, after he defeated him at the Battle of *Montcheri*, and forc'd the Citizens of *Liege* to Submission, tho' supported under-hand by France; in the Siege of which City, he had certainly been surpris'd in his Quarters by a Sally, if the *Scots* in the French Service, says *Commynes*, had not with great Bravery repuls'd the strong Detachment that attack'd him and the Fr. K. by Night. We have already mention'd his severe Chastisement of that City when he took it. He stain'd his Character, by delivering up to the French K. the Earl of *St. Paul*, Constable of France, who had retir'd to him for Protection, upon the French King's restoring him *St. Quintin*. He repented of it when too late, and sent Orders to his Officers not to surrender the E. but his Command came 3 Hours too short, so that the Constable lost his Head; and tho' he fell unprovok'd, because he was a Man of no Faith, and had several times embroil'd the Courts of France, England, and Burgundy, yet the Duke could never wipe off the Reproach, which occasioned a Satyrical Reflection upon him, That when he had the Fox, which was the Name ordinarily given to the Earl, he skinn'd him to make use of his Fur, and gave his Body to the French K. Soon after this he took Nancy in Lorraine: His Dread of miscarrying in that Siege, by the Intrigues of the French, being one of the Causes of his Treachery to the Constable. But his Fortune soon after declin'd: He rashly engag'd against the *Swissers*, whom having a Design to subdue, he made War upon them on the trifling Pretence of their having taken a Cart-load of Goat-skins from the Subjects of the Count de *Romont*, a Prince of the House of *Savoy*, in whose Quarrel he had engag'd. He march'd into *Switzerland*, which he made no Doubt to conquer, and by that means to open his Passage into Italy; but was defeated by them at *Granfon*, where they took all his Baggage and rich Moveables. To revenge this, he attack'd them a 2d time at *Morat*, where they cut off most of his Army, and forc'd him to a shameful Retreat. This Disgrace threw him into Melancholy, and impair'd his Health; but when he recover'd, be-

ing full of Revenge against the D. of Lorraine, he besieg'd his Capital of *Nancy* a 2d time, against the Advice of his best Friends and Generals, in the Rigour of Winter, where he was betray'd by *Campo Basso*, an Italian, as formerly mentioned, who join'd the Enemy in the Time of the Battle, where the Duke was killed by a Gentleman of Lorraine, who being deaf, did not hear him when he desir'd Quarter, and clove his Head with a Halbert. His Corps was found 3 Days after thrown into the Ditch, and generously interr'd with great Magnificence in *St. George's Church* at Nancy by his Enemy the Duke of Lorraine, from whence his Corps was removed by his Grandson the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1553 to our Lady's Church at *Bruges*, where he erected a sumptuous Monument for him before the great Altar. Lewis XI. of France, who dreaded him, gave an extraordinary Reward to the Messenger who brought him the News of his Death. The Duke was a Prince of very great Qualities, a good General, capable of all the Fatigues of War, us'd to go the Rounds of his Camp himself, a severe Justiciary, but self-conceited, and valued his own Judgment so much, that he would not listen to the Advice of others, which occasioned his Ruin; for tho' the French King had given him Notice, that *Campo Basso* had offer'd to him to murder him, and tho' one of that Traytor's Confederates had acquainted him with his Design to betray him, he would believe neither. He understood several Foreign Languages, particularly Latin, Spanish, French, German, and English, lov'd to read History, and particularly the Lives of *Julius Caesar* and *Alexander*, was temperate in Eating and Drinking, and punish'd Excess that Way in his Soldiers as much as Desertion. He was particularly noted for his Chastity, would immediately cause such of his Soldiers to be hang'd as offer'd Violence to Women when he took Towns by Storm, and condemn'd a Sheriff in *Zealand* to Death for refusing to marry a young Woman that he had debauch'd. This great Prince fell thus in 1477, in the 43d Year of his Age, and 9th of his Reign.

29: *Mary*, his only Child, succeeded; and upon her Father's Death, was ungratefully and treacherously despoil'd of Part of her

D d d d d d

Domit

Dominions by *Lewis XI.* of *France*, her God-father, on Pretence of taking her under his Protection, which made many of the Governors of her Towns and Countries submit to him. This, with other Instances of his Treachery, verifi'd the Saying of his own Father, That he would reward the House of *Burgundy*, who gave him honourable Entertainment, as *Æsop's* Serpent did the Countryman, who warm'd it when benum'd with Cold. That which aggravated his Crime, was, that he had made a Truce of 9 Years with her Father, which he solemnly swore by all that was sacred he would inviolably observe. He deprived her of *Burgundy*, and of all that had been given to her Predecessors by the Treaties of *Arras* and *Causans*, demanded her to be put under his Protection, till the Dauphin, who was then but 7 Years of Age, should be fit to marry her, tho' she was then 20; and by his Artifices, and betraying some Letters to him relating to the Persons the design'd to entrust with the Management of the Government; and desiring him to direct all his Advices to them, he stir'd up the Citizens of *Ghent* against her, who having her chief Counsellors that she design'd to rely on, who were, the Lord of *Imbercourt*; and *Hugonet* her Chancellor, they put them in Prison; and charging them with Treachery against the late Duke, and betraying the Government into the Hands of *France*, &c. they try'd and condemn'd 'em: And tho' the Princess came into the publick Market-place, where they were brought to Execution, in a Mourning Habit, with her Hair dischevell'd, address'd her self to the People, and begg'd their Pardon with Tears, they put them to Death; which, tho' disrespectful in the highest Degree to their Sovereign, was reckon'd a just Judgment on them, because they had advis'd her Father to deliver up the Earl of *St. Paul* to *Lewis XI.* as above-mentioned. That Earl's Son was one of the chief of the *French* Courtiers who stir'd up the People against them to revenge his Father's Death. In 1477, she married *Maximilian* of *Austria*, who came to *Ghent* with several Electors and Princes of the Empire for that Purpose. But 5 Years after, this happy Couple were separated by a fatal Accident; for as she was riding a Hunting with her Husband,

her Horse stumbled, threw her against the Stump of a Tree, and being with Child, the Bruise cast her into a Fever, which carried her off a few Days after in 1482, in the 25th Year of her Age, and the 5th of her Reign, universally lamented for her excellent Qualities. She had 4 Children, 2 of which died before her; but *Philip* and *Margaret* surviv'd. In 1485, *Maximilian* was proclaim'd Tutor to his Son, and took an Oath for the faithful Discharge of his Trust; but when he was elected K. of the *Romans*, he carried his Son to *Malins*, where he bred him after the *German* Fashion, which disgust'd the *Flemmings*; and having by the Advice of his Counsellors, left out his Son's Name in the Money that he coin'd, and his *German* Garrisons having also disoblig'd the *Flemmings* by their ill Discipline, those of *Ghent* and *Bruges* imprison'd the chief of his Counsellors, whom they try'd, condemn'd, and executed, for giving him ill Advice, particularly to levy Money contrary to Law; and summon'd himself to appear before their Deputies, where, to pacify them, he saluted the 52 Masters of the Companies of *Bruges*, spoke to them standing, with his Hat in his Hand, agreed to all they desir'd, conform'd himself to their Manners, and was familiar with 'em. Upon which they declar'd, They would live and die with him; that what they had done, was only to punish such as had abus'd his Favour, and promis'd to protect his Person and Moveables, and not to deliver him to those of *Ghent*, nor to the *French*, which he dreaded most. They kept him however 3 Months under a Guard, on Pretence to save him from the Mob; but by the Intreaties and Threats of the Pope, the Emperor his Father, and other Princes, they came to an Agreement to forgive what was past on both Sides, for which he gave them Hostages. He afterwards recover'd them by Craft, and the Emperor came with an Army and declar'd War against *Bruges* and *Ghent*, who enter'd into an Alliance with *France*, which filled the Country with Tumults and Seditions, till a Peace was concluded at *Tours* betwixt *France* and *Maximilian*; who being afterwards chosen Emperor, he left his Son in the *Netherlands* under Guardians, and died at *Newstat* in *Austria* in 1519.

30. He was succeeded by his Son Philip IV. of Flanders, who became afterwards the first of that Name K. of Spain, by marrying the Heiress of that Crown. He was so much belov'd by the People, that the Flemings, contrary to their Custom, put his Name in all their publick Acts at the Age of 17. He was the first that sold the publick Offices of their Government to fill his Treasury, by the Advice of his Counsellors; but had otherwise such excellent Qualities, that he was called the Delight of Mankind; and when he went to Spain, the Flemings universally lamented his Absence, as that of a common Father. He died at Burgos, the chief City of Old Castile, in 1506; from whence his Heart was brought to Bruges, and put in his Mother's Sepulchre.

31. He was succeeded by his Son Charles V. afterwards Emperor; of whom having given an Account already, we shall only add, That in 1540, he came from Spain through France to suppress the Rebellion of Ghent, where he put to Death 30 of their chief Burgomasters, banish'd and forfeited a great many of the chief Citizens, disarm'd the Burgers, depriv'd them of their Privileges, forc'd their Magistrates to walk in Procession with Halters about their Necks, and built a Citadel, the first of its kind in Europe, to prevent any future Rebellion. But his carrying his Resentments too far in this and other Instances, contributed to lay the Foundations of that Revolt in the Netherlands, which proved so fatal to his Posterity.

We have insisted the longer on the History of Flanders, because it has been a Theatre of War for so many Ages, and contains so many remarkable Passages which relate to our own History, and that of France, Spain, and the Empire.

The chief Towns of Flanders are,

1. **Ghent**, Lat. *Gandavum*, suppos'd to have at first been called *Wanda*, when possess'd by the Vandals. It lies on the *Lys*, *Mourwater*, *Scheld*, and the *Lieue*, all navigable Rivers, 10 Miles S. from *Sae van Ghent* in Dutch Flanders, 20 S. E. from *Bruges*, and 22 S. W. from *Antwerp*, in Long. 22. 37. Lat. 51. 7½. 'Tis the greatest City in the Low Countries, but has decay'd in Trade and

otherwise since the Revolt of the Dutch. It has a Staple of Corn and other Grain, and has the Conveniency of Canals betwixt *Bruges*, *Sae van Ghent*, and *Antwerp*, besides the Advantage it has by the *Scheld* and other Rivers. There are 6 or 7 Forts on the Canal betwixt it and *Sae*, most of which belong to the Dutch, for the Security of that Passage. 'Tis reckon'd 7 Miles in Compass within the Walls, and about 10 Miles without, because of its Fortifications. There are several Corn-Fields and other wast Places within. The Body of the Town is well built, the Streets fair and clean, and the whole is well fortified with Walls and Ditches. It has 7 Churches, 55 Monasteries, of which that of the Jesuits is the fairest. There's a Cloyster here for English Nuns. The Cathedral is a stately Edifice. Its Tower, called *Bellefort*, is between 4 and 500 Steps high, with a gilt Copper Dragon on the top as large as a Bull. From hence there's a pleasant Prospect of the City and adjacent Country, which is very fruitful; and they have a Bell in it called *Roland*, of 12000 Pounds Weight, with very fine Chimes. This Church is dedicated to *St. Bavo*, and the Abbot has a considerable Tract of Ground, with some Marks of Sovereignty, and many Villages, under his Jurisdiction. There are several noble Tombs here; and in the Lower Church, there's a Lady's Tomb of one entire Touch-stone. *St. Michael's* Church is fam'd for its excellent Paintings, and that dedicated to *St. Peter* and *St. Paul* is a fine Structure. The Castle, formerly the Palace of their Princes, contains 300 Chambers; and in one of the least of 'em, *Charles V.* was born, on *St. Matthias's* Day, as appears by this Inscription moulded over the Chimney in Relief:

Matthia Luce exiguo Cubili natus Carolus Quintus.

The Numerical Letters making the Year of his Nativity. In this City was also born the D. of *Lancaster*, so well known by the Name of *John of Gaunt*. The Town-House is of fine Stone-work in Sculpture, adorn'd with Pilasters after the modern Way. They have several large Market-Places, and in one of 'em a noble gilt Statue of *Charles V.* On a Scaffold over against that called the *Friday's* Marker, there's a great Cannon moun-

ted, with a larger Bore than any Mortar-Piece. On the Bridge called *Dogebrack*, there are two Statues in Brass, representing a Son beheading his Father, of which they tell the following Story: Being both condemn'd to die, a Pardon was offer'd to either of 'em that would be the other's Executioner; and the Son being perswaded to it by the Father, as he was ready to give the fatal Blow, the Blade broke in his Hand; which being look'd upon as a singular Providence, and a Rebuke for the Barbarity of the Proposal, they were both pardon'd. This City is pleasantly situated in a good Air, and has so many Streams running through it, that 'tis divided into 26 Islands, join'd by 98 large Bridges, besides several lesser ones. Their chief Trade, besides Corn, is in Cloths, Stuffs, and Silks, of which there's so great a Quantity made here, that a 3d of the 50 Companies of Tradesmen in this City are employ'd about that Manufacture. The Citadel consists of 4 little Bastions, looks to the City on one Side, and to the Fields on the other. 'Tis regular, but much short of the modern Fortifications of that Nature. 'Tis an Episcopal See, Suffragan to *Malins*, and the Seat of the Provincial Council of *Flanders*. 'Twas formerly so powerful, that in the Reign of *Philip de Valois*, they sent 50000 Men to the Field. The Inhabitants have always been reckon'd Warlike, but much inclin'd to Tumults, as we have heard before. It has suffered much of late by the Wars; yet *La Forrest* says, there are 30000 Burgers in it who live on their Rents. 'Tis said to have been founded by *Julius Caesar*, because of the Convenience of its Situation. 'Twas taken by *Lewis XIV.* of *France* in 6 Days, *Anno* 1678; but restored by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. 'Twas possess'd by them again after the Death of *Charles II.* of *Spain*; but abandon'd after their Defeat at *Ramillies* in 1706. 'Twas betray'd to them in 1708, and retaken after a short Siege by the Confederates that same Year.

2. *Bruges*, 20 Miles N.W. from *Ghent*, on the Canal of *Reye*, in a large Plain, and about 11 Miles S.E. from *Ostend*. It had its Name from its numerous Bridges. It has a Canal to *Sluys* about 7 Miles long, cut at a vast Charge by the Inhabitants of *Sluys*, and secur'd by mighty Turn-pikes

from Inundations, by which Vessels of great Burden come up to the Town. But after *Sluys* fell into the Hands of the *Dutch*, those of *Bruges* dug another Canal to *Ostend*, which brings Ships of 2 or 300 Tuns to the City, and advances its Trade. 'Twas once one of the greatest Emporiums in *Europe*, and frequented by Merchants from all Countries, who had their Storehouses here, and were form'd into 17 Fraternities. Besides whom, they had 68 Companies of other Tradesmen and Artificers, with a Guildhall for each. *Antwerp* was then subservient to it; but the Merchants removed thither in 1500, because of the Wars; so that their remaining Trade consisted in *Spanish* Wool, for which 'twas made the chief Mart by the *English* after their Loss of *Calais* in 1558. *Spinola*, the *Spanish* General, cut a Canal betwixt this City and *Ghent* of 8 Leagues long, which he guarded with 200 Forts and Redoubts, as many Companies of Foot, and 6 Troops of Horse. 'Tis the 3d Town in *Flanders*, is large, well built, most of the Houses being 4 or 5, and some of them 6 Stories high; from the Tops of which there's a Prospect of a Fleet of Ships, and a fruitful and pleasant Country. The City is populous, of a round Form, and about 4 Miles in Circumference. It has 6 principal Streets, which center in the Market-place, and lead to the principal Gates. Most of the Streets are straight and large, and their Publick Buildings sumptuous. Near the Market-place, there's a Tower 343 Steps high, and not far from thence the Palace called *La Franche*, nobly adorn'd with the Pictures and Statues of Emperors, Kings, and Archdukes. There are 7 Parish-Churches here: That of *St. John* was made a Cathedral in 1559, when a Bishop, Suffragan to *Malins*, was established in this City by *Philip II.* who made him Chancellor of *Flanders*, as the Provost of the Church was before. The famous *Ludovicus Vivès* is entomb'd here. They have 60 Monasteries, 3 Colleges of Canons, and a College of Jesuits, sumptuously built at the Charge of the City. 'Tis well wall'd, fortified with Works of Earth, and deep Ditches. Besides their Trade in *Spanish* Wool, they drive a considerable Commerce in Manufactures of Cloth, Fustians, Stuff, Tapestry, &c. There's abundance of Canals

nals in the Town, over which there's a multitude of Bridges, and over one of those Canals, stands their publick Warehouse, where Vessels unload at the very Door. The first Decay of their Trade happen'd by the Rigour of their Magistrates, which occasioned many of their best Weavers to leave the City, and come for England. The *English* of Note are generally complimented here in the House where our K. Charles II. resided during his Exile; and several Houses have been erected with the Money given them by the Royal Family, where the Citizens exercise themselves with Bows and Guns: They are adorn'd with Pictures and other Monuments of the 3 Brothers. The Tower of our Lady's Church leaning on one Side by the Neglect of the Builder, he threw himself down from the Top of it, and was buried where he fell. The *English* have two Nunneries here; and in the Jesuit's Church there's a solid Fabrick, representing the Holy Sepulchre, the Plan of which was brought thither by a Lord, who went twice to Jerusalem on purpose, and is interr'd here.

3. *Damme*, on the old Canal of *Bruges*, 3 Miles N. from that City, a small Town, founded by Count Baldwin the Courageous in 1195, but ruin'd by those of *Bruges* in the 13th Century, because they were jealous of its Commerce, and kept by them above 60 Years; but towards the End of the 16th Century, 'twas strongly fortified by *Spinola*, the Spanish General.

Four Miles N. E. from *Damme*, lies Fort *St. Denis*; and about 2 Miles further N. lies Fort *Isabel*, on the Channel over against *Slyps*; and about 6 Miles W. from Fort *Isabel*, lies Fort *Blankenberg*, on the Coast; which were all taken by the Confederates in the present War.

4. *Ostend*, the Capital of the District call'd *Freeland*, or *Vryland*, because they shook off the Superiority of those of *Bruges*, lies on the Coast, 11 Miles N. W. from *Bruges*, and extends its Jurisdiction over the said Territory, which is about 7 Miles, and contains a great Number of Villages. 'Tis situated in a moorish Ground, among several Channels; two of the chief of 'em almost encompass it, and swell so high at full Tide, that the Town seems to stand in the Sea, and is so exactly fortified, that 'tis

reckon'd one of the strongest Places in the Netherlands. It has a large, and safe Harbour, capable of Ships of great Burden, and was lately enlarg'd by the *Spaniards*, and well defended by Forts. The Houses are well built, and uniform, but not high. The Streets are regular, well pav'd, strait, and neat; having been all built at once, after the Town was laid in Ruins, by the famous Siege which began in 1601 by *Spinola*, as we have formerly mentioned. We shall only add here, That it cost 100000 Men on both Sides, of which the *Dutch* and their Allies are reckon'd to have lost 30000. 'Twas so slightly fortified when the Siege began, that Princess *Isabella* is reported to have said, She would not shift her Smock 'till it was taken. Yet the Siege held out above 3 Years, and when surrender'd, 'twas reduc'd to a Heap of Rubbish. The *Spaniards* shot so many Bullets against the Sand-hill Bulwark, where they stuck, that it became a Wall of Iron, and dash'd all the fresh Bullets in Pieces when they hit it. 'Tis also remarkable for the Design form'd to surprise it by Treachery in 1658, by Cardinal *Mazarine*; when *Mareschal d'Aumont*, who had the Conduct of the Enterprize, thought himself so sure of it, that he sent the Cardinal Word, The Design was effected; and the Cardinal relying on this Intelligence, wrote confidently to *Frankfort*, where the Electors were met to chuse an Emperor, that the Town was taken, which so confounded them for some time, that they suspended the Election; but when the contrary was known, and that the *French* Troops were entrapp'd, it very much expos'd his Reputation and Politicks. *Mette-ran* and some other Writers fallily charge Sir *Francis Vere* with the Design to have betray'd it, while he was Governor of it for some Time during the famous Siege; but they are contradicted by Authors of better Credit, and the whole Conduct of that brave Gentleman, which shew'd him to be incapable of so much Baseness: He only gain'd Time by a Treaty with the *Spaniards* to fortify it, which sav'd it from immediate Ruin. The *French* possess'd themselves of it after the Death of Charles II. of Spain; but were oblig'd to surrender it in 1706, after a short Siege by the *English* and *Dutch*.

Plaffendael, a strong Fort, with a Sluce for letting Ships pass out and in, lies about 3 Miles E. from *Ostend*, and commands the Canal betwixt that Place and *Bruges*, and the Entrance of the Canal from *Newport*. 'Twas taken from the *French* before they lost *Ostend*, and seiz'd by them again when they surpris'd *Bruges* and *Ghent*; but abandon'd after they lost those Towns in 1708.

5. *Newport*, lies about 8 Miles S.W. from *Ostend*, and 14 from *Bruges*, near the Bank of the Sea, where a little River that runs by the Town falls into it, and makes a long and secure Harbour, but not capable of large Ships. The Town is well fortified with Walls, Ramparts, &c. the Streets broad and straight; but the Houses low built, and most of 'em of Timber. The Inhabitants maintain themselves chiefly by Fishing, and the *English* Packet-Boat goes Weekly betwixt this Place and *Dover*. 'Twas invested by the *Dutch* under Prince *Maurice* in 1600, and Archduke *Albert* coming to relieve it, it occasioned his memorable Defeat, mentioned P. 798. A little off of *Newport*, near the Sea, is a little Fort defended by a Wall, a Ditch, and Bulwarks. The chief Strength of this Town consists in its Situation; for by their Sluces, they can in less than an Hour lay the adjacent Country under Water for two Leagues. By this means, the *French* not only kept it in Possession, but interrupted the sending of our Convoys from *Ostend* to *Lisfe* during the Siege of the latter in 1708.

6. *Deynse*, a small Town on the River *Lys*, 10 Miles S.W. from *Ghent*, was united to the County of *Flanders* in 1316 by Count *Robert*, and is famous for the glorious Retreat of the Prince of *Vaudemont* from thence in 1695, when almost surrounded with the *French*.

7. *Dendermond*, on the Mouth of the *Dender*, where it falls into the *Scheldt*, about 10 Miles S.E. from *Ghent*, is a Place of Importance by its Sluces and Fortifications, is Capital of a District of the same Name, and has a considerable Trade in Fustians and other Stuffs. The *French* were repulsed before it in 1667; but having possessed it after the Death of *Charles II.* of *Spain*, they surrender'd it to the D. of *Marlborough* on Terms in 1706.

8. *Rupelmond*, on the Mouth of the *Rupel*,

where it falls into the *Scheldt*, 20 Miles E. from *Ghent*, a pretty small Town, the only Place of Note in the Country of *Waes*.

9. *Alost*, or *Alst*, on the River *Denier*, about 7 Miles S. from *Dendermond*, and 13 S.E. from *Ghent*, the Capital of that called *Imperial Flanders*, and of a County formerly subject to Lords of its own. 'Twas taken by the *Spaniards* in 1576, and by the D. of *Alençon* in 1582; after which 'twas garrison'd by the *English*, but betray'd by the Governor to the D. of *Parma*. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1667. Their King pretended to this Town and County in the Right of his Queen, but restor'd it by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, after dismantling it. He seiz'd it again after *Charles II.*'s Death; but his Troops abandon'd it after their Defeat at *Ramilles* in 1706. The Territories of this Town are large, viz. the County of *Alost*, the Country of *Waes*, and those called the 4 Offices of *Hulst*, *Axtel*, *Bouchot*, and *Astemele*, which comprehend above 150 Villages, and 4 Cities, which all together made up that called *Imperial Flanders*, because it held in Fee of the Empire. *Alost* was noted formerly for its Hop-Market and Tapestry.

10. *Ninove*, lies 6 Miles S. from *Alost*, and is a pretty small Town. *Grammont*, 5 Miles above it, is a small Town, built by Count *Baldwin* in 1068.

11. *Audenard*, lies on the *Scheldt*, about 16 Miles S. from *Ghent*. The River divides it into two Parts, and advances its Trade, which is chiefly in Tapestry and fine Linen. 'Tis Capital of a Castellany, which contains 33 Villages. 'Tis well fortified with strong Walls and regular Outworks, and by the Castle of *Pamele*, join'd to it with a Bridge, but is commanded by a Hill on the Side of *Alost*. 'Twas taken by the Lord of *Ravestein* in 1484, by *Blomars* in 1567, by the Prince of *Parma* in 1582, and by the *French* in 1658; but restored by the Treaty of the *Pyrénées*. They took it again in 1667, had it confirm'd by the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*, but restor'd it by the Peace of *Nimeguen*. They laid Siege to it in 1708, but were forc'd to abandon it, and receiv'd a remarkable Defeat near it, mentioned P. 826.

12. *Harlebeck*, on the *Lys*, 2 Miles below *Courtray*, the Capital of a small Territory.

13. *Courtray*,

13. *Courtray*, on the *Lys*, 12 Miles W. from *Audenard*, and 12 E. from *Ipres*. 'Tis divided by the River, reckon'd one of the Ancientest Towns of the Netherlands, and to have been considerable in the Days of *Cæsar*. 'Tis very strong by its Situation, well fortified, and has a good Citadel, which was built by the French in 1646, when they took the Town. The Spaniards retook it in 1647, the French took it again in 1667, and restor'd it by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*. They took it again once more; but 'twas retaken by the Allies in 1706. The Town is noted for making good Diaper and Cloth, in which they have a good Trade. *La Forreſt* ſays, they had an Annual Feaſt for a great Victory they obtained over the French in 1302, and about 80 Years after were ſurpris'd by the French as they celebrated that Feſtival, when the Town was burnt down, but rebuilt better than 'twas before.

14. *Menin*, lies on the ſame River, about 5 Miles above *Courtray*, is a ſmall Town, but ſo well fortified by the French, that 'twas reckon'd one of the ſtrongest and moſt regular Fortifications in Europe. 'Twas taken by the Allies in 1706, after 18 Days Siege. 'Tis noted for excellent Beer.

Commines, *Warwick*, and *Warneton*, are Places of Note betwixt *Menin* and *Liſſe*. The former was the Birth-place and Inheritance of the famous Stateſman and Hiſtorian *Philip de Commines*.

15. *Liſſe*, Lat. *Inſula*, and *Inſule*, by ſome called *Lila*, and by the Dutch, *Ryſſel*, lies about 12 Miles S. from *Courtray*, and 10 W. from *Tournay*, on the River *Deule*. It had its Name from its Situation among Marſhes, moſt of which are now drein'd. *La Forreſt* ſays, 'twas built in 1007 by Count *Baldwin IV.* and walled by *Baldwin V.* It ſuffered much in the 13th Century. *Philip Auguſtus* of France diſmantled it in 1213. 'Twas retaken next Year by Count *Ferrand*, and *Philip the Fair* ruin'd it in 1297. It had formerly Lords of its own, who had the Title of Caſtellans, from the 11th Century to 1234, that it came to the Family of *Peronne*, afterwards to the Family of *Luxemburg*, then to the Family of *Vendosme*, next to the Family of *Burgundy*, and from them to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. *Lewis XIV.* took it in 1667, fortified it with a noble Citadel,

flank'd with 5 Royal Baſtions, beſides many Half-Moons, and other Outworks. He fortified the Town ſo well, that 'twas one of the ſtrongest Places of Europe. He enlarg'd it alſo with a Suburb, adorn'd it with ſeveral fine new Streets, and built a good Arſenal. The Ditches are filled by the River *Deule*. 'Twas the only Town improved by his Conqueſts, and became very rich by their Trade in Linen Cloth, Camblets, Silks, &c. and by being in a manner the Center of Commerce betwixt France and the Netherlands, and many of the Inhabitants were concern'd in the Shipping of *Dunkirk*; and for the Conveniency of transporting Goods, there's a Canal cut betwixt the Town and the *Lys*. 'Twas confirm'd to the French by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, is a Town of great Antiquity, the Metropolis of what was anciently called French Flanders, had a large Jurisdiction, and a Chamber of Accounts for Flanders eſtabliſh'd here by *Philip the Bold*. The Town is very large, populous, and well built, eſpecially the new Streets, which are of Brick and Free-ſtone; but moſt of the old of Wood. The Market-place is ſpacious; the Town-Houſe ſmall, but handſome, and a ſtately Church near it. The moſt conſiderable Church is that of *St. Peter*. The neighbouring Country abounds with Flax. The French laid a Cauſway near 20 Miles long betwixt this Town and *Ipres*, thro' the marſhy Grounds. For the famous Siege of the Town and Citadel, and their being taken by the Allies in 1708, we refer to P. 826. The Invention of Painting in Oil, and of making Says and other Worſted Stuffs, is aſcrib'd to this City. The French King order'd theſe blaſphemous Inſcriptions to be put on the new Caſtle in 1673; *Gentes laudabunt te, & Reges Terræ Gloriam tuam*; i. e. *The Gentiles ſhall praiſe thee, and the Kings of the Earth thy Glory*; and, *In Sole poſui Tabernaculum meum*; i. e. *I have plac'd my Tent in the Sun*.

16. *Tournay*, Lat. *Tornacum*; in Dutch, *Dornick*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Liſſe*. It lies on the *Scheld*, over which it has ſeveral Bridges, is Capital of the fruitful and pleaſant Country of *Tournaiſſis*, the Seat of the chief Tribunal or Parliament for the French Conqueſts in the Netherlands ſince 1669, and a Biſhop's See, Suffragan of *Cambray*. *La Forreſt* ſays, it belong'd to the *Nervii*, and was

E e e e e

taken

taken by *Cæsar*, after he defeated them. 'Twas surrender'd to the Pr. of *Parma* on *St. Andrew's Day*, 1581, after a brave Defence by the Princess of *Epinay* in her Husband's Absence. *Strada* observes, That *St. Andrew's Day* has been fatal to it, it having been taken before on that Day by King *Henry VII.* of *England*, and the Emperors *Maximilian* and *Charles V.* *Henry VIII.* built a strong Castle here. 'Twas deliver'd to the Fr. in his Time by Cardinal *Woolsey's* Intrigues. The Town and Castle were basely surrender'd to the Fr. K. almost without Resistance, in 1667, and continu'd in his Hands till surrender'd to the Confederates, after a sharp Siege, in 1709, upon Articles, and the Garrison of the Citadel made Prisoners of War some Time after. The City is large, populous, and has a considerable Trade, especially in a sort of Table-Linen, from hence called *Dornick*. Dr. *Northleigh* says, it has 17 Parish-Churches. The Cathedral is a noble Pile, adorn'd with 5 Towers, plac'd in Form of a *St. Andrew's Cross*. The Buildings in general are handsome, and there are reckon'd 72 Companies of Traders in the Town. They had formerly a considerable Trade in Woollen Cloth, which is now decay'd. The Church of our Lady is a noble Fabrick, and the Quire adorn'd with excellent Marble Work. One of their ancient Structures of *Roman Architecture* is a Proof of their Antiquity. After the *French King* took it, he very much improv'd its Fortifications, which were, a double Wall, and a dry Ditch, with regular Bastions, and made many curious Mines or Vaults under Ground in the Citadel, which are very dark and deep, and so well contriv'd, that they look more like Terrass-Walks than Mines. In the Center of the Citadel there's a Well, whose Water is 50 Foot deep; and above the Brink of this Well, there are Balconies, which lead to the Vaults under Ground. *La Forrest* says, the *Scheld* begins to be navigable here, where there's a good Key; That they have still a considerable Trade in Stockings and Woollen Stuffs. 'Tis supposed to have been the Residence of *Childerick*, Father to *Clowis* of *France*, because when they were digging the Ruins in 1653, they found a Ring with that Prince's Name and Effigies engraven upon it.

17. *Oreghies*, about 7 Miles S. W. from *Tournay*, Capital of its Chatellany, and noted for making Woollen Stuffs. 'Tis a small, but ancient Place on the River *Scarp*.

18. *Doway*, Lat. *Duacum*, on the *Scarp*, 10 Miles S. from *Lise*, and 15 S. W. from *St. Amand*. 'Twas Capital of the *Catungé* mentioned by *Cæsar*, as 'tis now of its Chatellany, is a large, strong and rich Town. 'Tis noted for the Seminary founded here for *English* Papists, under the Conduct of *Jesuits*, by *Philip II.* of *Spain*, in 1569; from whence they removed about 20 Years after to *Rheims* in *France*, where they publish'd an *English* Translation of the Bible, well known by the Name of the *Rhemish Version*. 'Twas taken after a short Resistance by the *French King* in 1667, who has since fortified it very well. It has a Fort about a Cannon-shot below it on the *Scarp*, with Stüces, by which they can drown the adjacent Country. They have an Annual Fair in *September*, when they sell great Quantities of Worsted Camblets.

19. *St. Amand*, on the *Scarp*, above 10 Miles S. E. from *Tournay*, formerly a Place of good Strength, but dismantled by the *French* in 1667, who cut down the neighbouring Forrest. 'Tis noted for a rich Abbey dedicated to *St. Amand*, as lofty within and without as that of *Westminster*, with a double Row of Galleries or Corridores about it, both Sides excellently wrought in Stone-work and Mouldings. The Abbot has both Temporal and Spiritual Jurisdiction. 'Twas founded by *Dagobert V.* of *France* 804 30 Canons, to whom there's now added 20 *Jesuits*. The adjacent Country is pleasant and fruitful.

20. *Mortagne*, on the Conflux of the *Scheld* and *Scarp*, 6 Miles S. E. from *Tournay*. 'Twas taken and dismantled by the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1541.

21. *La Basse*, on the *Deule*, 14 Miles S. W. from *Lise*, on the Frontiers of *Arras*, a small Town, frequently taken and retaken by the *Spaniards* and *French*; but yielded to the latter by the Treaty of *Aix-la-Chapelle* in 1668.

22. *Armentiers*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Lise*, on the *Lys*, noted for its Trade in Cloth. 'Tis a Place of considerable Strength, was frequently taken and retaken, but yielded

yielded to the French by the Treaty of 1668.

23. *Mont-Kassel*, or *Cassel*, 20 Miles W. from *Menin*, and 14 N. W. from *Armentiers*. 'Tis situated on a Mountain, and supposed to be the *Castellum Morinorum* of the Ancients. 'Twas formerly a very large Town, but has suffered much by War. 'Tis noted for a great Victory gained by the *Flemings* over *Philip the Fair of France*, for another over them by *Philip de Valois* in 1328, and for a 3d in 1677 by *Philip Duke of Orleans*, who defeated the Pr. of *Orange*, afterwards our *K. William*, when he came to relieve *St. Omers* with 30000 Men. The Prince had 3000 Men killed, and 3000 taken, and the *French* lost 2000 Men. This Town is Capital of a Chatellany, which contains 500 Villages.

24. *Bailleul*, or *Belle*, about 8 Miles S. E. from *Mont-Kassel*, Capital of a small Chatellany, noted for the Birth of *Meyerus*, a *Flemish* Historian of good Note.

25. *Messins*, 4 Miles N. E. from *Armentiers*, and 5 S. W. from *Menin*, a handsome Town, where they make great Quantities of Cloth, and have a rich Nunnery, whose Abbess has both Temporal and Spiritual Jurisdiction.

26. *Ipres*, 9 Miles S. W. from *Menin*, and 11 from *Courtray*, Lat. *Ipra*; in *Dutch*, *Ipre*, from the River on which it stands. 'Tis Capital of its Chatellany, which is very large and fruitful, has a Vote in the Provincial States, and is honour'd with the Title of a Viscounty. 'Tis one of the neatest and richest Towns in *Flanders*, and vends a great Quantity of Says and Silks at their Annual *Lent Fair*, and would have been one of the largest Towns in the Country, but that it has several times been destroyed by Fire. 'Twas built in 960 by Count *Baldwin III.* and made a Bishoprick in 1559, Suffragan of *Malins*. 'Twas besieged and taken by the *French* in 1648, restored afterwards to *Spain*, but retaken by *Lewis XIV.* in 1678. Since which, it has continued in his Hands, being confirmed to him by the Treaty of *Nimwegen*. The Houses are well built, but the Fronts of Timber, and fortified with new and regular Outworks, besides a Wall. It lies low, and by its Sluces can lay the neighbouring Country under Water. Their chief Church

is the Cathedral of *St. Martin*, where there are Monuments of several other Bishops. Their Town-House is stately, and has a spacious Front. Their Market-place is large, and has an ancient well built Hall, the Repository for their Wool. They have several Convents; and on the Altar-Piece of the Jesuits Church, our Saviour's Resurrection is admirably painted. In their Cloister, they have the Pictures of all the Jesuits that have suffered in *England*, represented as Martyrs. The Chatellanies of *Bailleul* and *Kassel* belong to its Quarter.

27. *Bourbourg*, 22 Miles W. from *Ipres*, and 3 S. E. from *Graveling*, is a pleasant little Town on the top of an Hill, Capital of its Chatellany, one of the oldest in *Flanders*, and very fruitful, formerly subject to Lords of its own. 'Tis noted for its Free Fairs, has been several times taken and retaken by the *French* and *Spaniards*, and quit- ted to the former by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

28. *Graveling*, Lat. *Gravelinga*, on the Mouth of the River *Aa*, 10 Miles N. E. from *Calais*, and 10 S. W. from *Dunkirk*, in a Plain, cut with several Canals, which make it inaccessible on the Side of the Land. 'Twas ruin'd in the 11th Century by the *Normans*, but rebuilt in the 12th by Count *Thierry*. 'Twas formerly subject to the Chatellany of *Bourbourg*, and chang'd Masters several times, till it came to the Countess of *Flanders* in 1272. 'Twas strongly fortified by *Charles V.* in 1528; and in 1558, Count *Egmont* gave the *French* a great Defeat near this Town, but was afterwards ungratefully beheaded by the D. of *Alva*. Sir *Philip Sidney* attempted to surprize it in 1586, but was disappointed. The *French* took it in 1644, and the *Spaniards* retook it in 1652, with the Loss of 2000 Men. 'Twas taken from them by the *English* and *French* in 1658, and quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*. The Town is small, and ill built, but strongly fortified by 6 good Bastions, defended with Ravelins, and other Outworks, with several Forts to defend the Approaches of the Town; and one must pass 6 Draw-Bridges before they come into it. It has also a Citadel towards the Land, is defended by Fort *Philip* towards the Sea, and at a further Distance by the Forts of *Oye* and *l'Escluse*. When Strangers approach, the Can-

E e e e e 2

tinels

tinels give Notice of their Numbers by so many Tolls of a Bell; and Wool brought from *England* or *France* pays Custom here.

29. *Mardick*, a little Town and Fort about 2 Miles S. W. from *Dunkirk*, on the Bank of the Sea, noted for its Sieges. The *French* took and dismantled it in 1645; the *Spaniards* retook it in 1652; the *English* took it in 1658; and 'twas quitte'd to the *French* by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*; but there's nothing of the Fortifications now left, except a Wooden Fort with a few Guns.

30. *Winexbergen*, or *Berg St. Vinoc*, Lat. *Berga*, or *Mons Sanctæ Winocæ*, on the River *Colm*, 5 Miles S. E. from *Dunkirk*, with which it communicates by a Canal. It had its Name from a Monastery, built and dedicated here to *St. Vinoc*, an *Englishman*, by Count *Baldwin V.* in 1040. 'Tis Capital of a small Chatellany, honour'd with the Title of a Viscounty. They formerly made a great deal of Cloth; but that Trade is now much decay'd. The adjacent Country is very fruitful, feeds great Herds of Cattle, and abounds with excellent Cheese. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1645, and confirmed to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees* in 1658.

31. *Dunkirk*, on the Bank of the Sea, and at the Mouth of the River *Colm*, lies 10 Miles N. E. from *Graveling*, 20 N. E. from *Calais*; 10 S. W. from *Furnes*, 15 from *Newport*, and 20 from *Ostend*. It took its Name from a Church on the neighbouring Downs, and is said to have been built in 966 by Count *Baldwin III.* It had particular Lords of its own, called Chatellans, about the 13th Century. It came afterwards to the *Earls of Flanders*; and was walled in 1327 by *Henry IV.* Count of *Bar*, to whom it fell by Marriage, as it did afterwards to *Lewis* of *Luxemburg*, Constable of *France*. It came to the House of *Burgundy* with the rest of *Flanders*, and the Emperor *Charles V.* built a strong Fort here in 1535, which was made stronger by *Spinola*. 'Twas taken, sack'd and burnt, by the *French* in 1558, while they were treating with it about a Surrender. 'Twas afterwards surpris'd by the Duke of *Alençon's* Troops, when he attempted to make himself absolute in the *Netherlands*, under the Notion of being their Governor. The Duke of *Parma* recover'd it from the *French* after a

long Siege. He equipp'd part of a Fleet here to join the Invincible Armado that was to invade *England*; but the *Dutch* prevented their getting out. In 1590, Prince *Maurice* attempted it in vain by a Scalado. In 1647, the Prince of *Condé*, with the Assistance of the *English*, took it after a troublesome Siege. In 1652, 'twas besieged and retaken by Archduke *Leopold*, some *English* Frigates having block'd up the Harbour, and prevented its having any Relief by Sea. But in 1658, *Oliver* having enter'd into a League with *France*, a Body of *English* that join'd the *Mareschal de Turenne* laid Siege to it; and after defeating *Don John of Austria*, who came with an Army to relieve it, the Town surrender'd, the *Marquis de Lieda*, their Governor, being kill'd in a Sally, and, according to Treaty, 'twas put into the Hands of the *English*, but sold to *Lewis XIV.* by *K. Charles II.* in 1662. Since which, the *French* King has spar'd no Cost to make it one of the strongest Places of *Europe*. The Town is divided into the Upper and Lower, and is very much enlarged since it came into the Hands of the *French*. The Lower Town is the best fortified; but the whole is very strong. On the Land-side, it has double Walls and Works, and very high Bastions. Towards the Sea, it has treble Works. There are 3 great Forts at small Distances, which command the River or Canal, the Sluces, and the neighbouring Country. It has a Canal on the S. Side, and on the N. is almost encompassed by the Sea, in Form of an Half-Moon. The Sands being very troublesome, and frequently choking the Harbour, the *French* King was at vast Expence to build two long Galleries on each Side of it, with a long Bank of Timber-work, Faggots and Fascins, to secure it; and there are 4 Wooden Forts which defend the Entrance of the Port by Sea. He also erected two Risbanks, which are prodigious Forts, as strong as Art and Labour could make 'em: They command the Canal by which Ships enter the Town, and the Basin within, which is capable of holding 150 Men of War; and for the further Security of the Town, he erected a strong Citadel, which is reckon'd one of the finest in *Europe*, its Bastions resembling Mountains, enough to fill the Beholders with Amazement, and thofe

those who attack it with Despair of Success. The English began this Citadel, which he has since finished, and much exceeded the first Plan: But his principal Design of making this a Harbour fit for containing a sufficient Number of Men of War to command the Channel, has been happily defeated by Providence, a great Tempest having so filled the Harbour with Sand, that it can never be able to answer his End, tho he had built 3. great Sluces a little above the Town upon 3 Currents, in order to send vast Flashes of Water into the Channel, to drive out such Sands as might happen to lodge in the Mouth of it. He employ'd 14000 Men a long while on the Fortifications, Harbour, Basin, and Dock. Dr. Northleigh says, the Town is much of the Size of Oxford, the Streets large and regular, and the Houses neat. They have a large handsome Church, with a fine Altar, and a good Piece of Painting, representing the Last Judgment; and in one of the Chapels dedicated to St. George, there's a Representation of the Martyrdom of that pretended Saint, which is very much esteem'd. There's an English Nunnery of poor Clares here, and another of Benedictines, called the Rich Ladies. There's a Cloister of Franciscan Monks, and another of Nuns here; and the Tower of the great Church has 273 Steps to the top, from whence on a clear Day one may see Dover Cliffs. The Workmanship of the Marble Altar in this Church is said to have cost 20000 Florins. This was formerly a Town of good Trade, which is decay'd since 'twas sold to the French; but in Time of War, the French Squadrons and Privateers which lie here do very much annoy the Channel.

32. Furnes, 10 Miles N. E. from Dunkirk, on the River Colm, is Capital of its Chateaulany, and bears the Title of a Viscounty. The Town is small, but neat. 'Twas built or repaired about 870 by Baldwin, surnam'd Iron Hand, has been often taken and retaken by the Spaniards and French, and was quit- ted to the latter in 1668 by the Treaty of Aix la Chapelle. Their chief Trade is in Linen, and the Territory belonging to the Town is exceeding fruitful. 'Twas taken by the English in 1692, but retaken by the French next Winter.

33. Dixmuyd, lies about 5 Miles S. E. from

Furnes, and belongs to that Territory call'd the Franc of Bruges. 'Tis noted for sustain- ing several Sieges, its Strength, and the Importance of its Situation. 'Tis still in Possession of the French.

The Province of Artois or Arras.

HAS Flanders on the N. and E. Part of Hainault and the Bishoprick of Cambray on the E. and Picardy on the W. and S. It makes it from S. E. to N. W. 60 Miles, and the greatest Breadth from N. E. to S. W. about 32. The Latins call it *Artesia*, and *Archevia*; the French, *Arras*; and the Dutch, *Atrecht*. In Caesar's Time, 'twas the Coun- try of the *Atrebat*s, and by him made Part of *Gallia Belgica*. La Ferrest says, K. Clodion of France having conquer'd it in 444, made it a Province of France. When that Mo- narchy was divided into 4 Kingdoms by the Children of Clovis in 511, 'twas com- prehended in the Kingdom of *Austrasia*. Charles the Bald gave it with his Daughter Judith in 863 to Baldwin I. of Flanders. Isabel of Flanders brought it in Dowry to Philip Augustus of France in 1186. K. Louis VIII. gave it to his 3d Son Robert in 1226. It came afterwards by Marriage in 1318 to Eudes IV. of Burgundy; after the Death of Charles the Hardy. Lewis XI. seiz'd upon it in 1477, as a Fee-Male of the Crown of France. Charles VIII. quitted it in 1483 to the Emperor Maximilian; and it continued in the House of Austria till 1640, that the French seiz'd it, and had it confirmed to them by the Treaty of the Pyrenees. The Air is mild and temperate, the Soil fruitful, particularly of excellent Wheat, with other Corn and Fruit; but has no Vines, which some ascribe to the Neglect of the Inhabi- tants. Guicciardin says, it had 12 Wall'd Towns, 854 Villages, and was divided in his Time into 9 Chateaulanies.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. Arras, Lat. *Atrebatum Civitas*, *Nemetocenna*, and *Nemetacum*. It lies on the Scarpe, 13 Miles N. from the Frontiers of Picardy, 26 S. W. from Lille, and 12 S. W. from Douay. The City is large, consists of two distinct Towns, formerly separated by a Wall,

Wall, now demolished, The one was called the City, and the other the Town; the former subject to the Bishop, and the latter to the Prince. The City is the least, but pleasantest, well fortified with good Bulwarks and Trenches; and among other fair Structures, has a Cathedral dedicated to the Blessed Virgin, with a Library well stor'd with MSS. of Divinity. 'Tis a Bishop's See, which was founded in 531, was formerly Suffragan to the Archbishop of Rheims; but now to *Cambray*. They pretend to have a Wax Taper drop'd from Heaven, which they say burns, and does not consume; and this they keep in a particular Chapel. They have also a Pot of Manna, that they say was shower'd down from Heaven in *St. Jerome's* Time; and this they expose in Time of Drought, to excite the People to pray for Ruin. The other Part, called the Town, is very well fortified, and was reckoned so strong, that while 'twas possess'd by the House of *Austria*, they put an Inscription over one of the Gates, importing, That the French shall never take *Arras*, till the Mice devour the Cats. They took it however after 7 Weeks Siege in 1640. The Spaniards laid Siege to it in 1654, but were defeated, and forc'd to raise it on *St. Lewis's* Day. This Part of the Town has broad Streets, a spacious Market-place, and stately Churches: The Houses are well built, with large and deep Cellars, to which the Inhabitants retire during a Siege. *La Forrest* says, 'twas taken in 1427 by *Lewis XI.* and by the Emperor *Maximilian* in 1493, and quitted to the French by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*, who have since fortified it very regularly. *Baudrand* says, it has also a strong Citadel. 'Tis noted for making Sails, and that rich sort of Tapestry, which from thence is called *Arras*. The Abbey of *St. Vedastus* in this City has an Annual Revenue of 20000 Crowns. *Clusius* the famous Herbalist, and other Learned Men mentioned by *Blau* and *Guicciardin*, were born here.

2. *Baraune*, lies on the Frontiers of *Picardy*, about 11 Miles S. E. from *Arras*, is a very strong Town, and has a large Jurisdiction. 'Twas taken by the French in 1645, when their Commander *St. Preuil* attack'd the Garrison after they came out upon Terms; but lost his Head for breaking the Articles. 'Tis difficult to besiege this

Town, because there are no Springs or Rivers for the Convenience of the Besiegers.

3. *Hesdin*, Lat. *Hesdinum*, and *Hesdina*, lies 22 Miles N. W. from *Arras*, on the River *Canche*. There was an old Town of this Name upon the same River, anciently the Seat of the Earls of *Flanders* and *Arras*; but not being capable of Defence since the Invention of Guns, *Charles V.* demolish'd it, and built the present Town on the same River, and so well fortified, that 'tis reckon'd one of the strongest Towns in the Country, being a regular Hexagon, and situate in a Morass. 'Tis usually called *Hesdinsart*, because built by *Emanuel D. of Savoy*, who was General for *Charles V.* F. E. R. T. being the ancient Device of the House of *Savoy*. The French took it in 1639, under the Conduct of *M. de Melleray*, for which the French King made him a Marquis next Day.

4. *St. Pol*, or *Paul*, Capital of a small Chancellery in this Province, lies 9 Miles E. from *Hesdin*. This City was a long time possess'd by Lords of its own; one of whom being Constable of *France*, and playing fast and loose with *Lewis XI.* *Edward IV.* of *England*, and *Charles the Warlike D. of Burgundy*, the two latter betray'd him at last to the French King, who cut off his Head, as *Commynes* relates in his Memoirs.

5. *Lens*, Lat. *Lentium*, and *Lendium*, on the River *Souches*, 15 Miles N. E. from *St. Pol*, is a City with a considerable Jurisdiction, which has been ruin'd by the Wars. 'Twas taken in 1557 by the French, pillag'd in 1582 by those of *Cambray*, and sack'd soon after by the Spaniards. 'Tis noted for a great Victory which the French under the Prince of *Condé* obtained near it over the Spaniards in 1648.

6. *Bethune*, on the *Biette*, 9 Miles N. W. from *Lens*, a pretty neat Town, well fortified, and noted for its Fairs. 'Twas anciently subject to Lords of its own, from whom the present Family of *Bethune* is descended. They make great Quantities of excellent Cheese here. 'Twas taken by the French in 1645, and confirmed to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

7. *Aire*, or *Arien*, Lat. *Aria*, on the *Lys*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Bethune*. It stands in a Morass, which makes it almost inaccessible. The French took it in 1641; the Spaniards

wards retook it soon after; and the French took it again in 1676, and had it confirmed to them by the Treaty of Nimeguen. 'Tis encompassed on 3 Sides by a Morass, fortified with good Ditches, Bastions, Half-Moons, Redoubts, Horn-Works, and Counterescarp. It can be closely besieged only on one Side, where 'tis defended by the Fortress of St. James, which has 5 Bastions, 2 Half-Moons, and a deep Trench.

8. *Terouane*, or *Terouenne*, Lat. *Teruana*, or *Civitas Morinorum*, was formerly the Capital of the *Morini*, a People of *Gallia Belgica*, in *Cesar's* Time. 'Twas besieged in 1513 by *K. Henry VIII. of England*, when the Emperor *Maximilian*, in Honour of that Prince, fought under his Banner, and wore St. George's Cross. The Emperor *Charles V.* after having miscarried in the Siege of *Metz*, took and demolished this Place in 1553. Since which, its Diocese has been divided into the 3 Bishopricks of *Boulogne*, *St. Omers*, and *Ypres*.

9. *Renty*, 5 Miles W. from *Terouane*, is a Castle betwixt two Mountains, with a fair Village adjoining. 'Tis remarkable for a Victory obtain'd near it by the French over the *Spaniards* in 1554, when the latter lost 3000 Men; and *Charles V.* narrowly escaped.

10. *St. Omer*, on the River *Aspe*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Aire*, and 15 S. E. from *Calais*, Lat. *Fanum Sancti Audomari*, from *Audomarus*, a Native of *Constance* in *Germany*, and Bishop of *Teruana*, who built a Monastery here in 660; and the Reputation of his Sanctity occasioned such a Confluence of People to the Place, that it quickly grew a considerable Town, was first walled in 880, better fortified in 902, and at last became one of the strongest and most important Places of the *Spanish Netherlands*, from whence the Garrison insulted the Frontiers of *France*; and laid the Country about *Citell* and *Boulogne* under Contribution. 'Twas made a Bishop's See, Suffragan of *Cambray*, in 1599. Some are of Opinion, that 'tis the *Accius Portus* mentioned by *Cesar*, from whence he embarked to invade *Britain*; and by the Ruins of a Port, and the sandy Soil in the Neighbourhood, they reckon the Sea did then come up to it; but this is rejected for very good Reasons by *Cluverius* in his *Ger-*

mania Antiqua, Lib. 2. where he proves, that the *Accius Portus* of *Cesar* is that now called *Boulogne*. *St. Omers* is remarkable for the Riches of the Inhabitants, occasioned by a new Canal betwixt it and *Graveling*, for the Abbey of *St. Bertin*, and a Seminary of English Jesuits. 'Tis fortified both by Nature and Art, having on one Side the River and *Marthes*, and on the other is defended by a strong Castle on a rising Ground, several Bastions, Half-Moons, and deep Trenches. In the Neighbourhood there's a great Lake, in which there are several floating Islands, that afford good Pasturage for Cattle, and Shelter for Fish in Extremity of Heat or Cold. *Guccicardus* says, these Islands are easily drawn from one Place to another, by tying Ropes to the Bushes that grow upon them. On this Lake stands the noble and large Monastery of *St. Bernard*, by whom 'tis said to have been built. This City was taken by the D. of *Orleans* in 1677, after the Defeat of the Pr. of *Orange*, who advanced as far as *Mont. Kassel* to relieve it; and 'twas quitted to the French by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

The Archbishoprick of Cambray,

HAS *Hainault* on the N. and E. the *Artois* on the W. and *Picardy* on the S. Its greatest Length from E. to W. is about 25 Miles; the Breadth is unequal, being in some Places less, and in others not above 4 Miles. This Country was a long time a Bone of Contention betwixt the Emperors, the Kings of *France*, and Earls of *Flanders*. *La Foreest* says, *Clodion K. of France* took the City of *Cambray* in 441. That *Clodius I.* took it again in 564, and killed with his own Hand *Raguacaire*, who called himself King of it. The Emperor *Charles V.* took it in 1544, and built a Citadel there. The Duke of *Alençon*, Brother to *Henry III. of France*, obliged the D. of *Parma* to raise the Siege of it, and afterwards gave it to *John de Montluc de Balagny*, and 'twas confirmed to him, with the Title of Prince, by *Henry IV.* but the *Spaniards* recovered it next Year, and kept it till 1677, when 'twas taken by *Lewis XIV.* At the same time his Brother took *St. Omers*.

Wall, now demolished. The one was called the City, and the other the Town; the former subject to the Bishop, and the latter to the Prince. The City is the least, but pleasanter, well fortified with good Bulwarks and Trenches; and among other fair Structures, has a Cathedral dedicated to the Blessed Virgin, with a Library well stor'd with MSS. of Divinity. 'Tis a Bishop's See, which was founded in 531, was formerly Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Rheims*; but now to *Cambray*. They pretend to have a Wax Taper drop'd from Heaven, which they say burns, and does not consume; and this they keep in a particular Chapel. They have also a Pot of Manna, that they say was shower'd down from Heaven in St. Jerome's Time; and this they expose in Time of Drought, to excite the People to pray for Rain. The other Part, called the Town, is very well fortified, and was reckoned so strong, that while 'twas possess'd by the House of *Austria*, they put an Inscription over one of the Gates, importing, That the *French* shall never take *Arras*, till the Mice devour the Cass. They took it however after 7 Weeks Siege in 1640. The *Spaniards* laid Siege to it in 1654; but were defeated, and forc'd to raise it on St. Lewis's Day. This Part of the Town has broad Streets, a spacious Market-place, and stately Churches: The Houses are well built, with large and deep Cellars, to which the Inhabitants retire during a Siege. *La Perre* says, 'twas taken in 1427 by *Lewis XI.* and by the Emperor *Maximilian* in 1493, and quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*, who have since fortified it very regularly. *Baudrand* says, it has also a strong Citadel. 'Tis noted for making Sails, and that rich sort of Tapestry, which from thence is called *Arras*. The Abbey of *St. Vedastus* in this City has an Annual Revenue of 20000 Crowns. *Clusius* the famous Herbalist, and other Learned Men mentioned by *Bleau* and *Guicciardin*, were born here.

2. *Baraune*, lies on the Frontiers of *Picardy*, about 11 Miles S. E. from *Arras*, is a very strong Town, and has a large Jurisdiction. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1645, when their Commander *St. Preuil* attack'd the Garrison after they came out upon Terms; but lost his Head for breaking the Articles. 'Tis difficult to besiege this

Town, because there are no Springs or Rivers for the Convenience of the Besiegers.

3. *Hesdin*, Lat. *Hesdinum*, and *Hesdina*, lies 22 Miles N. W. from *Arras*, on the River *Canche*. There was an old Town of this Name upon the same River, anciently the Seat of the Earls of *Flanders* and *Arras*; but not being capable of Defence since the Invention of Guns, *Charles V.* demolish'd it, and built the present Town on the same River, and so well fortified, that 'tis reckon'd one of the strongest Towns in the Country, being a regular Hexagon, and situate in a Morass. 'Tis usually called *Hesdinfort*, because built by *Emanuel D. of Savoy*, who was General for *Charles V.* F. E. R. T. being the ancient Device of the House of *Savoy*. The *French* took it in 1639, under the Conduct of *M. de Melleray*, for which the *French* King made him a *Mareschal* next Day.

4. *St. Pol*, or *Paul*, Capital of a small Chancellery in this Province, lies 9 Miles E. from *Hesdin*. This City was a long time possess'd by Lords of its own; one of whom being Constable of *France*, and playing fast and loose with *Lewis XI. Edward IV. of England*, and *Charles the Warlike D. of Burgundy*, the two latter betray'd him at last to the *French* King, who cut off his Head, as *Commynes* relates in his Memoirs.

5. *Lens*, Lat. *Lentium*, and *Lendium*, on the River *Souchet*, 15 Miles N. E. from *St. Pol*, is a City with a considerable Jurisdiction, which has been ruin'd by the Wars. 'Twas taken in 1557 by the *French*, pillag'd in 1582 by those of *Cambray*, and sack'd soon after by the *Spaniards*. 'Tis noted for a great Victory which the *French* under the Prince of *Candé* obtained near it over the *Spaniards* in 1648.

6. *Bethune*, on the *Biette*, 9 Miles N. W. from *Lens*, a pretty near Town, well fortified, and noted for its Fairs. 'Twas anciently subject to Lords of its own, from whom the present Family of *Bethune* is descended. They make great Quantities of excellent Cheese here. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1645, and confirmed to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

7. *Aire*, or *Arien*, Lat. *Aris*, on the *Lys*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Bethune*. It stands in a Morass, which makes it almost inaccessible. The *French* took it in 1641; the *Spaniards*

wards retook it soon after; and the French took it again in 1676, and had it confirmed to them by the Treaty of Nimeguen. 'Tis encompassed on 3 Sides by a Morass, fortified with good Ditches, Bastions, Half-Moons, Redoubts, Horn-Works, and Counterescarpes. It can be closely besieged only on one Side, where 'tis defended by the Fortress of St. James, which has 5 Bastions, 2 Half-Moons, and a deep Trench.

8. *Terouane*, or *Terouenne*, Lat. *Teruana*, or *Civitas Morinorum*, was formerly the Capital of the *Morini*, a People of *Gallia Belgica*, in *Cesar's* Time. 'Twas besieged in 1513 by *K. Henry VIII.* of *England*, when the Emperor *Maximilian*, in Honour of that Prince, fought under his Banner, and wore St. George's Cross. The Emperor *Charles V.* after having miscarried in the Siege of *Metz*, took and demolished this Place in 1553. Since which, its Diocese has been divided into the 3 Bishopricks of *Boulogne*, *St. Omer*, and *Ipres*.

9. *Renty*, 5 Miles W. from *Terouane*, is a Castle betwixt two Mountains, with a fair Village adjoining. 'Tis remarkable for a Victory obtain'd near it by the French over the Spaniards in 1554, when the latter lost 3000 Men; and *Charles V.* narrowly escaped. *St. Omer*, on the River *Adre*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Aire*, and 15 S. E. from *Calais*, Lat. *Fonius Sancti Audomari*, from *Audomarus*, a Native of *Constance* in *Germany*, and Bishop of *Terouane*, who built a Monastery here in 660; and the Reputation of his Sanctity occasioned such a Confluence of People to the Place, that it quickly grew a considerable Town, was first walled in 880, better fortified in 902, and at last became one of the strongest and most important Places of the Spanish Netherlands, from whence the Garrison insulted the Frontiers of *France*, and laid the Country about *Citain* and *Boulogne* under Contribution. 'Twas made a Bishop's See, Suffragan of *Cambray*, in 1599. Some are of Opinion, that 'tis the *Ictus Portus* mentioned by *Cesar*, from whence he embarked to invade *Britain*; and by others Ruins of a Port, and the sandy Soil in the Neighbourhood, they reckon the Sea did then come up to it; but this is rejected for very good Reasons by *Cluverius* in his *Ger-*

mania Antiqua, Lib. 2. where he proves, that the *Ictus Portus* of *Cesar* is that now called *Boulogne*. *St. Omer* is remarkable for the Riches of the Inhabitants, occasioned by a new Canal betwixt it and *Graveling*, for the Abbey of *St. Bertin*, and a Seminary of English Jesuits. 'Tis fortified both by Nature and Art, having on one Side the River and Marshes, and on the other is defended by a strong Castle on a rising Ground, several Bastions, Half-Moons, and deep Trenches. In the Neighbourhood there's a great Lake, in which there are several floating Islands, that afford good Pasturage for Cattle, and Shelter for Fish in Extremity of Heat or Cold. *Guicciardin* says, these Islands are easily drawn from one Place to another, by tying Ropes to the Bushes that grow upon them. On this Lake stands the noble and large Monastery of *St. Bernard*, by whom 'tis said to have been built. This City was taken by the D. of *Orleans* in 1677, after the Defeat of the Pr. of *Orange*, who advanced as far as *Mont-Kassel* to relieve it; and 'twas quitted to the French by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

The Archbishoprick of Cambray,

Hainault on the N. and E. the *Artois* on the W. and *Picardy* on the S. Its greatest Length from E. to W. is about 25 Miles; the Breadth is unequal, being in some Places 12, and in others not above 4 Miles. This Country was a long time a Bone of Contention betwixt the Emperors, the Kings of *France*, and Earls of *Flanders*. *La Forest* says, *Clodion K.* of *France* took the City of *Cambray* in 441. That *Clovis I.* took it again in 504, and killed with his own Hand *Raguenaire*, who called himself King of it. The Emperor *Charles V.* took it in 1544, and built a Citadel there. The Duke of *Alençon*, Brother to *Henry III.* of *France*, obliged the D. of *Parma* to raise the Siege of it, and afterwards gave it to *John de Montluc de Balagny*, and 'twas confirmed to him, with the Title of Prince, by *Henry IV.* but the Spaniards recovered it next Year, and kept it till 1677, when 'twas taken by *Lewis XIV.* At the same time his Brother took *St. Omer*.

The chief PLACES are,

1. *Cambray*, Lat. *Cameracum*; in *Dutch*, *Camerick*, from whence their Country is called *Cambresis*, and *Cameracensis Ager*. The City is large, neat, well built, and most of the Streets center in the great Market-place, where there's a Town-House, with a famous Clock, much taken notice of. The Town is reckon'd one of the strongest in Europe, being defended by a Citadel, 5 regular Bastions, Ramparts, Walls, Half Moons, and large deep Ditches, which they can fill with Water in a very little time. Its Situation is very advantageous on the *Scheld*, 9 Miles N. from the Frontiers of *Picardy*, 16 S. E. from *Arras*, and 14 S. W. from *Valenciennes*. On the W. Side, in a low Bottom, it has very large Suburbs, with fine Gardens and Meadows on the River. It has 9 Parishes, 3 Abbies, many Religious Houses, Hospitals, and other publick Buildings. 'Twas formerly a Bishop's See; Suffragan of *Rheims*, but made an Archbishoprick in 1559. 'Twas likewise an Imperial Town, under Protection of the County of *Alost*, but united to the County of *Hainault* by *Charles V.* and quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of *Nimwegen*. Dr. *Northleigh* says, the Chapter consists of 48 Canons, and 95 other Ecclesiasticks: That the great Church of our Lady is a handsome Structure, with many Statues and Tombs of Saints; amongst which, those of *St. Sebastian* and *St. Michael*, of curious Marble, are the chief. The Quire and Nave of the Church are separated by Rails of Brass of curious Workmanship; and they have a Clock, which upon striking represents our Saviour's Passion. The Doctor adds, That in this Country he once met with a *Frenchman*, who by 15 Years Labour had made an artificial Head, which, by the Motion of certain Wire-work, Springs and Wheels, would utter whole Dialogues distinctly with a humane Voice, laugh, and express some other Affections; but at last 'twas stole from him. The Ditches of the Citadel are cut out of a Rock, and they have Sluces by which they can drown the adjacent Country. This Place is noted for making the fine Linen, from hence called *Cambrick*. 'Twas a terrible Thorn in the Sides of the *French* while

possessed by the *Spaniards*; and upon any Rupture, was able to lay the Country under Contribution as far as the *Seyne*. The Archbishop has both Temporal and Spiritual Jurisdiction, calls himself Duke of *Cambray*, and Count of *Cambresis*. The Soil of the Country is very fruitful in Corn, but has few Vines, tho' there be very good Fruit of other Sorts.

2. *Chateau Cambresis*, lies on the *Selle*, 13 Miles S. E. from *Cambray*, formerly a Town of Note, but ruin'd by the Wars. 'Tis famous for a Treaty in 1559 betwixt *Henry II.* of *France*, and *Philip II.* of *Spain*, to whom the *French* yielded up 198 considerable Places for *St. Quintin*, *Ham*, and *Chateaus*. 'Twas quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of *Nimwegen*, as was also *Ceneveaux*, another walled Town in this Province, about 6 Miles S. from *Cambray*.

The County or Province of Hainault,

HAS *Flanders* and *Brabant* on the N. Part of *Picardy* and *Champaign* on the S. Part of *Flanders*, *Arras*, and *Cambray*, on the W. Part of *Brabant*, the Counties of *Namur* and *Luxemburg*, on the E. Its greatest Length from S. E. to N. W. is about 60 Miles, and the greatest Breadth from E. to W. about 46. Most of it was anciently possessed by the *Eburenes*, or as some say the *Nervii*. It has frequently chang'd its Name, being first called *Pannonia*, because the Inhabitants worship'd the Idol *Pan*; afterwards *Salutis Carbonarius*, because of the great Quantities of Charcoal formerly made there: Then 'twas called *Lower Picardy*; and at last *Hainault*, from the River *Hain*. 'Tis called in Latin, *Hannonia*; in *Dutch*, *Hennegou*. The Air is clear and sweet, and the Soil fertile, being water'd with the *Sambre*, *Dender*, and other Rivers. It abounds with Corn and Pasture, Gardens and fruitful Orchards. Their Wheat is excellent, and they have Plenty of Lakes, Ponds, Springs, Mines of Iron, Lead, Marble, Touch-stone, and Coal. It has 24 walled Towns, 990 neat and pleasant Villages, and is divided into three Principalities of *Chimay*, *Ligne*, and *Brabant*; 10 or (as some say) 16 Barons, and 22 Baronies. They have also 26 Monasteries, 12 Seigneuries belonging to

to those they call Peers, with several high Offices, as Marechal, Steward, Great Huntsman, &c. The Provincial Estates consist of 5 Members. The 1st is the 12 Peers; the 2d, Prelates and Ecclesiastical Colleges; the 3d, Gentry; the 4th, the great Officers of the Country; and the 5th, the Magistrates of the chief Cities. In the Time of the Romans, 'twas part of the 2d Belgium, and came afterwards to particular Lords, who in the 9th Century took the Title of Counts. Their Male-Issue failing in 1063, it fell by Marriage to Count Baldwin VI. of Flanders, and afterwards to the Family of Bavaria, by marrying the Heiress; but at last Countess Joqualine made Philip the Good of Burgundy her Heir in 1436. It continu'd in the House of Austria till the French King seiz'd it, and had that Part called French Hainault quitted to him by the Treaty of Aix la Chapelle. Spanish Hainault is divided into the Counties of Mons and Brabant, or Bourbon.

The chief PLACES are,

1. *Mons*, Lat. *Montes*; in Dutch, *Bergben*; the Capital of the Country, and one of the best and strongest Cities in the Netherlands. It has its Name from its Situation upon a rising Ground of easy Ascent near the Banks of the *Trull*, a little above where it falls into the *Hain*. It lies 26 Miles S. W. from *Brussels*, 29 W. from *Namur*, and 21 S. E. from *Tournay*. 'Tis strong by Nature and Art, being situated near the Conflux of the *Hain* and *Trull*, and can easily overflow the neighbouring Country by its Sluces. 'Tis well fortified with a Stone Wall, firm Ramparts, a treble broad Ditch, and defended by a strong Castle. Dr. *Northleigh* says, one Side of the Town is fenny, and may easily be laid under Water: On the other, there are two Hills within Cannon-shot; and on the E. Side, there's a rising Ground which cannot be set under Water, but is fortified by 3 or 4 Redoubts, in the middle of large Trenches, which are not easy to be filled with Fascines, being two Pikes Length in Depth; and there are 24 Bastions, besides other Redoubts. The Buildings of the Town are stately and beautiful, the Streets large, the Market-place spacious, and the Inhabitants well supplied with Water by Conduits. Here's a famous College of Canonesses, who are at Liberty to marry when

they please. The Nunnery was founded by *Gualtrude* Princess of Lorraine, who order'd that none but Persons of Noble Descent should be admitted into it. They spend the Morning in Devotions; but in the Afternoon, alter their Dress, go abroad, and divert themselves by Singing, Dancing, and other Courtly Exercises. The Earls of *Hainault* are their Patrons, and name the Abbess, which is an honourable and rich Preferment. She us'd formerly to tender the Oath to the Count at his Inauguration, when he swore to protect the Nunnery, and to confer on him the Dignity of an Abbot. This Monastery is richly endow'd, the 10 Canonesses having 300 *l. per Annum* each, and the Abbess 900. It has also some Canonries for Men, who perform their solemn Devotions, and manage their other Affairs. In their Church, they have the Picture of a dead Body beginning to putrify, so exactly done, that the Sight of it is apt to offend those who have queemish Stomachs. The Bishop's Palace is a stately Fabrick; and they have a noble Tower of fine Architecture, which faces the Town-House. The Provincial Council sits in this City, and receives Appeals from all the Towns of *Hainault* except *Valentignies*, and determineth Causes in the last Resort. In 1572, this City was surpris'd by Count *Lewis* of *Nassau*, Brother to the Pr. of *Orange*, who sent 12 Soldiers that pretended to be Merchants, and to have great Quantities of Wine upon the Road, which they desir'd might be let in betimes in the Morning, lest it should be damag'd by the Heat of the Day; and having by this means obtain'd the Keys before the usual Time of opening the Gates, some Troops that lay in Ambush enter'd, and took the City. That same Year 'twas retaken by the D. of *Alva*. In 1678, the French besieg'd and reduc'd it to great Extremities; but the Pr. of *Orange* defeated the D. of *Luxemburg* before the Town; in which Action, the Earl of *Ossery*, and the British Subjects under his Command, gain'd great Honour. *Lewis* XIV. besieg'd and took it in 1691, but restor'd it by the Treaty of *Ryswick*. His Troops seiz'd it again after the Death of K. *Charles* II. of *Spain*, and still keep it. The Trade of this City consists chiefly in Says, and other Stuffs. It anciently gave Title of Count to the Earls of *Hainault*. It lies in Long. 22. 45. Lat.

F f f f f

50. 30.

50. 30. It is famous for the Battle of *Blarney*, fought near it the last of *August*, 1709. when the *Fr.* under *M. Villars* and *M. Boufflers* came to interrupt the Siege of *Mons*; and tho' strongly intrench'd, and defended by Woods, Ditches, &c. they were, after the most obstinate Defence they had made during the War, drove out of their Camp by the Confederates under the *D. of Marlborough* and *Pr. Eugene*, and chas'd some Miles from the Field of Battle, leaving behind them many of their Cannon, Colours, Standards, &c. with above 300 Officers Prisoners, and some Thousands of Men slain in the Field, besides many taken. The Confederates had also great Loss, but continued the Siege.

2. *St. Gilles*, on the *Haine*, about 5 Miles *W.* from *Mons*, is a small Town, and takes its Name from a rich Abbey, whose Abbot has both the Temporal and Spiritual Jurisdiction of the Town. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1677, and restored by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, after they had demolished its Fortifications. They repossest'd and fortified it since; but it was taken Sword in Hand by the Confederates in 1709, and the Garrison made Prisoners of War.

3. *Boslu*, about $2\frac{1}{2}$ Miles from *Mons*, is a neat Village, and has the fairest Castle in all the *Netherlands*; upon which Account *Charles V.* made it an Earldom.

4. *Valenciennes*, is said to have its Name from the Emperor *Valentinian*, who built it, being in Love with the Goodness of the Air, and the Fruitfulness of the neighbouring Soil. It lies on the *Scheld*, about 17 Miles *S. W.* from *Mons*, 16 *S. E.* from *Tournay*, and 14 *N. E.* from *Cambray*. The *Scheld* and a small River called *Rouelle* encompass and divide it by many Channels, and contribute to the Strength and Neatness of the Town. 'Tis the Capital of *French Hainault*, and reckon'd the best Town, says *La Forrest*, of the *French Netherlands*, because of its Situation in a Morass, and of its Citadel and other Works. During the two first Races of the *Fr. Kings*, 'twas govern'd by Counts of its own, who had a Power of Coinage. It fell by Marriage to the Count of *Hainault* in 884, and to the Count of *Flanders* that same way in 903. *Margaret* of *Flanders* brought it by Marriage to the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* in 1346: After which it came to the House of *Austria*. In 1677, *Louis XIV.* took it by Storm, after 5 Days

Siege, with 50000 Men, when he design'd only to take a Horn-work. He saved the Town from Plunder, but made the Inhabitants pay 40000 Crowns, which he laid out upon the Citadel. 'Tis fortified with strong Walls and Ramparts, extraordinary broad and deep Ditches, has 10 Bridges over the *Scheld*, with stately Houses upon them, can drown the neighbouring Country with its Sluces; and its Situation is such, that it can scarce be besieged by less than two or three Armies. *Dr. Northleigh* says, it lies on the Ascent of an Hill, in an oblong Form; and on the *N. W.* Side, resembles the *S. W.* Prospect of *Oxford*, with several Towers. It has a Causeway to *Lisse* and *Iprez*, 50 Miles long, laid by the *R. King's* Order. The Houses are for most part of Wood, the Market-place large, and the Town-House an ancient and long Structure. The Citadel is on a Hill, at some Distance from the Town, but nothing so strong as those of *Tournay* or *Lisse*. Their great Church, dedicated to our Lady, is a noble Fabrick; built on stately Arches of Marble and Porphyry. The Architecture is ancient, and the Windows so contriv'd, as to let in but a glimmering Light, like that of Thickets and Groves, which the Patrons of Superstition took to contribute to the People's Devotion. That of *St. John* is a modern Structure; and on *St. Peter's*, they have a good Mathematical Dial, which shews the Courses of the Sun, Moon, and other Planets, the Day of the Month, the Season of the Year, and the Length of the Day. They have 3 Convents of Friars. That of the *Franciscans* is very large, and their Chapel adorn'd with the Tombs of the Lords of *Hainault*. The *Jacobins* have in theirs a stately Monument of *John*, Nephew to the famous Count *Baldwin* of *Flanders*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, who built a Palace here, where the Counts of *Hainault* usually resided, because of its pleasant and healthful Situation on the *Scheld*. The *Dominican* Convent has Lodgings for 80 Friars. Here's an Hospital for Orphans of both Sexes, who are liberally maintain'd, and carefully instructed in Trades. Their Arsenal is a fair Structure, and the Town-House stands in the chief Market-place, adorn'd with a carv'd Frontispiece. They have a Corn and Cloth Market, a common Prison, with several spacious Halls; amongst which, the Cloth-

Clothworkers-Hall is most remarkable. They had formerly a good Trade in Cloth, and the Staple of French Wines; but their chief Commerce at present is in Silks and Linen. It had anciently a large Jurisdiction, and the Towns of *Condé*, *Bouchain*, and *Quesnoy*, with 100 Villages, depended upon it. 'Tis noted for the Birth of the Emperor *Henry VIII.* of *Mary*, Daughter to *Charles*, the last D. of *Burgundy*; of *Froissart* the French Historian, and of *Molinetus* the Poet. 'Twas the first Town in those Countries which denied Obedience to the Prince of *Parma*, and refused to admit a Garrison. 'Twas yielded to the French by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and continues in their Possession.

5. *Bouchain*, lies on the *Scheld*, 10 Miles S. W. from *Valenciennes*, and is the Capital of the District of *Ostervant*. It maintains a Communication between *Valenciennes* and *Cambray*, is little, but very strong, and was called the Maiden Town, because never taken till 1679, that the D. of *Orleans* took it at one Assault, when the Spanish and Dutch Armies were come as far as *Valenciennes* to relieve it. The French have since made it much stronger.

6. *Quesnoy*, Lat. *Queretum*, a small, but well fortified Town, on the *Rouelle*, 6 Miles S. E. from *Valenciennes*. It has a considerable Trade in Linen, and Stuffs made of half Silk. 'Twas taken by the French in 1655.

7. *Condé*, on the *Scheld*, 6 Miles N. E. from *Valenciennes*, and 12 W. from *Mons*. It lies on the Conflux of the *Scheld* and *Haine*, and is very strong. It gives Title of Prince to a Branch of the Family of *Bourbon*, to whom it came by the Marriage of *Mary* of *Luxemburg* to *Francis de Bourbon* Count of *Vendosme* in 1487. 'Twas the Appennage of *Lewis de Bourbon*, their Grandson, who was killed at the Battle of *Jarnack*, and founded the Branch of the Family of *Condé*. 'Twas often taken and retaken by the French and *Spaniards*, and quitted to the former by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. 'Tis a pretty little Town, and adorn'd with a small Castle.

8. *Barvay*, Lat. *Bagacum*, and *Baganum*, 11 Miles S. E. from *Valenciennes*. 'Tis a very old City, and by some thought to be the ancient and large City of *Belgium*, which gave Name to all those Countries. *Cellarius* thinks it to be the *Bagacum* of *Antonin's Itinerary*, called *Baganum* by *Peulomy* through Mistake. 'Twas twice burnt in the 16th

Century, and frequently taken in the 17th; so that 'tis now inconsiderable. 'Twas quitted to the French by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and taken by the Confederates in 1709, with 1500 wounded French that escaped from the Battle near *Mons*.

9. *Mabenge*, Lat. *Malobodium*, on the *Sambre*, 7 Miles N. E. from *Barvay*, and 18 from *Valenciennes*. It has a considerable Trade in Woollen-Cloth, and is made one of the strongest Towns in the Netherlands. It has a noble Chapter of Canonesses, all descended from great Families. 'Twas quitted to the French by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

10. *Landrecy*, on the *Sambre*, 14 Miles N. W. from *Mabenge*, and 17 S. E. from *Cambray*. 'Tis a very strong Town, and was besieged 6 Months in vain by the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1543. 'Twas taken by the French under Cardinal *de la Valette* in 1637. The *Spaniards* retook it 10 Years after. The French took it again in 1655, in the Sight of 30000 Men that came to relieve it. 'Twas quitted to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

11. *Avesnes*, 9 Miles E. from *Landrecy*, on the small River of *Hepres*. It has the Title of a County, and gave Name to a Family who were formerly Earls of *Hainault*, *Holland*, and *Zealand*. 'Tis a handsome and strong Town, and important by its Situation, being near the Frontiers of France, and one of the Keys of the County of *Hainault*.

12. *Chimay*, Lat. *Chimaicum*, lies in a Wood on the River *Blanche*, 14 Miles E. from *Avesnes*, and gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Crouy*. *Guicciardin* says, 'tis a neat Town, adorn'd with the Prince's Palace, which has pleasant Gardens and Labyrinths adjoining. 'Twas frequently ruin'd by the Wars; but has since been rebuilt by its Princes. 'Twas erected into a Principality by the Emperor *Maximilian I.* for his Favourite *Charles de Crouy*.

13. *Marientburg*, 9 Miles N. E. from *Chimay*, so called from *Mary Qu.* of *Hungary*, Sister to *Charles V.* in 1542, when 'twas built, and so strongly fortified, that 'twas reckon'd impregnable: Yet 'twas basely surrender'd to the French in 1554 by the Spanish Garrison, and quitted to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

14. *Philipville*, 6 Miles N. from *Marientburg*, on a Hill. 'Twas built by *Mary Q.* of *Hungary* in 1555, and called after her Name
E f f f f f a
p h e w

phew Philip II. of Spain. 'Tis the Capital of the Country betwixt the *Sambre* and the *Meuse* that belongs to the *French*. 'Tis extremely well fortified with 5 Royal Bastions, besides Walls and other good Works. 'Twas taken by the *French*, and quitted to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

15. *Charlemont*, on the *Meuse*, 9 Miles N. E. from *Marienburg*, and 9 S. E. from *Philippville*. Moll. places it in the County of *Namur*, but *La Porresse* in *French Hainault*. 'Tis a strong Fortress, and was built in 1555 by *Charles V.* from whom it had its Name.

16. *Givet*, a small Town below *Charlemont*, on the other Side the River, which the *French* have fortified, because of its convenient Situation on the *Meuse*.

17. *Buamont*, 11 Miles W. from *Philippville*, and 10 E. from *Mabenge*, a small and neat Town, well fortified on a rising Ground. It belongs to the Family of *Aerschot*, and has the Title of a County.

18. *Binche*, Lat. *Bincinum*, on a Branch of the *Haine*, 7 Miles E. from *Mons*, a very ancient and small, but pleasant City. Queen *Mary of Hungary* built a fine Palace here in 1542. 'Twas formerly a large and populous Place; but was burnt by the *French* when they took it in 1554. 'Twas afterwards restored to *Spain*, but retaken by the *French* in 1667; and restored again by the Treaty of *Ryswick*; but they have since repossessed themselves of it.

19. *Soignies*, on the River *Sonneque*, 9 Miles N. E. from *Mons*, a small Town, which belongs to the Chapter of *St. Vincent*.

20. *Brenne le Comptre*, on the River *Sain* or *Sin*, a small Town about 3 Miles N. E. from *Soignies*. 'Tis said to derive its Name from *Brennet*, its Founder, who was killed in his Attempt to plunder the Temple of *Delphos*, 280 Years before Christ.

21. *Aath*, on the *Tender* or *Dender*, about 12 Miles N. W. from *Mons*, Capital of the District of *Brabant* or *Burbant*. 'Tis a small, but pretty rich and well fortified City. 'Twas taken by *Lewis XIV.* in 1667, but restored in 1678. The *French* retook it in 1697, and restored it by the Treaty of *Ryswick*. It has a good Trade in Cloth.

22. *Steenkirk*, a Village, 8 Miles E. from *Aath*, famous for the Victory obtain'd there by the D. of *Luxemburg* over the Confederates in 1692.

23. *Enguien*, or *Enguien*, a small Town with the Title of a Barony, about 7 Miles N. E. from *Aath*. 'Tis noted for its fine Park and Labyrinth; and for giving the Title of Prince to a Branch of the House of *Bourbon* since 1487, that *Mary of Luxemburg* brought it by Marriage to *Francis* Count of *Fendosme*, Great Grandfather to *Henry IV.* *Lewis* Prince of *Condé* transferred the Name to *Nogent-le-Rotrou* in *Perche*, which he call'd *Enguin* *le François*. His Grandson *Henry II.* Prince of *Condé*, transferred it again to *Iffouden* in *Berry*; and it has been since transferred to *Montmorency* near *Paris*. *Louis II.* Prince of *Condé*, while Duke of *Enguin*, performed those great Actions which have ranked him among the greatest Heroes.

24. *Halle*, 8 Miles N. E. from *Enguien*, and 8 S. W. from *Brussels*, a small City, noted for a pretended miraculous Image of the Blessed Virgin, which draws abundance of superstitious People thither to worship it. This Image is about two Foot long, cover'd over with Gold, and crown'd with a Diadem of the same Metal. In one Arm, she holds an Image, representing our Saviour; and in her other Hand, a gilded Rose. Great Numbers of People come hither on the first Sunday of *September*, when Deputies are sent with Offerings and Presents from the chief Cities and Towns of the Country. The usual Offering was formerly a new Gown for the Virgin, which are now so numerous, that they are sold to such Votaries as think fit to buy them. The richest Ornaments and Utensils of the Chapel were given by *Philip the Good* and his Dutcheffs, *Charles V.* Archduke *Albert*, and *Maximilian I.* The latter gave a Rose-Tree of pure Gold, two Foot high, branching out, with Variety of Sprigs and Flowers, the same having been consecrated, and sent him by the Pope. *Lippus's* Silver Pen is hung up by the Image in a Chain of the same Metal, with a Copy of Verses under it, acknowledging, that the Virgin assisted him in all his Performances. There's a multitude of other rich Presents in the Chapel, several of which were plunder'd by the Soldiers in 1675, when the *Dutch* and *Spanish* Armies lay near the Place, for which some of 'em were taken and hang'd. The Town is wall'd, was taken by the *French* in 1690; but

but recover'd since, and better fortified, for the Security of *Brussels*.

The County of Namur,

HA *S* *Brabant* on the N. Part of *Hainault* and *Luxemburg* on the S. Part of *Hainault* on the W. and the Bishoprick of *Liege* on the E. 'Tis about 30 Miles from E. to W. and 24. where broadest from N. to S. The Soil is fruitful, and the Country abounds with Fowl and Venison, good Veins of Coal and Iron, with some of Lead, and excellent Quarries of dark-colour'd and speckled Marble; the last of which they call *Jasper*. They have also abundance of *Rossile Nitre*, and great store of Iron-work is made in the Country; for carrying on of which, they have Plenty of Ore, Wood, and Water; and the *Maes* and *Sambre* are of great Use to them for transporting their Commodities. There are 4 Wall'd Towns in the Province, 182 Villages, and several Monasteries, of which that of the *Remonstrances* at *Floris* on the *Sambre* is the chief. The Government of the County is managed by the principal Clergy, the Gentry, and the Deputies of the Towns. Some derive *Namurcum*, the Latin Name of the Town and County, from *Novus Murus*, a strong Hold built there by the *Romans*. Others derive it from the *Nemetes*, who drove out the former Inhabitants, called *Adnatrices*. *La Forrest* says, That *Sigebert* King of *Austrasia* gave this Province in 568, with the Title of a County, to *Glonerick* Count of *Durbuy*, from whose Posterity it came to the Family of *Ardennes*, and was divided into Upper and Lower; the former called the County, and the other the Marquisate. They were reunited in 980, by the Marriage of *Ermengarde* of *Lorraine* with *Albers* Marq. of *Namur*. 'Twas afterwards sold to the Count of *Hainault*, came next to the Earls of *Flanders*, and then to the Family of *Luxemburg*, by whom 'twas sold to *Philip* D. of *Burgundy* in 1423, and from that Family descended to the House of *Austria*.

The chief TOWNS are,

1. *Namur*, which lies about 29 Miles E. from *Mons*, and 32 S. E. from *Brussels*, in

Long. 23. 35. Lat. 50. 28. on the Conflux of the *Sambre* and *Maes*, betwixt two small Hills, in a flat Bottom. The greatest Part of the City lies on the N. of the *Sambre*; and they have a Stone-Bridge over each of the Rivers. On the other Side there's a very high Mountain, on which stands the Castle, which is a stately Structure, and reckon'd one of the strongest in *Europe* both by Art and Nature; the Rock on which 'tis built being steep on all Sides, and fortified to the greatest Perfection. Near the Castle there are many other Houses. The larger Part of the City is adorn'd with a Market-Place, a Town-House, several Churches, and many fine Stone Buildings. Their chief Parochial Church stands on the same Side with the Castle. This Town was made a Bishoprick, Suffragan of *Cambray*, in 1559, and the Church of *St. Alban* was made their Cathedral. The Town suffered much by an Inundation of the *Sambre* in 1571, which bore down all that came in its way. It swelled to an incredible Height, recorded by Marks, which are still to be seen on the Fronts of their Houses; and brought down such a quantity of Flints, as had almost choak'd up their Channel, and left a small Island, that still remains at the Conflux of the two Rivers. *Dr. Northleigh* says, they have 9 or 10 handsome Churches, and that of *St. John* is beautified with several fine Marble Altars. The *Jesuits* Church exceeds that of *Antwerp* both in Structure and Bulk, the Beauty of the Marble, and the Curiosity of the Workmanship. 'Tis supported by wreath'd Columns of red Marble, of the *Dorick* Order, curiously vein'd, near 14 Yard in Diameter, with beautiful Bases and Cornishes. They have very good Paintings, especially one of *Ruben's*, which represents our Saviour's Resurrection. This Church is 140 Foot long, 120 high, and 100 broad. The Castle, he says, is almost inaccessible, except from the River; and on the top of the Rock they have a very deep Well, and two good Springs, which supplies them constantly with Water. They have 3 Collegiate Churches, one of 'em a College of Canons, founded by one of their Earls, and much commended by Travellers. They have several Monasteries of both Sexes; but that of the *Franciscans* exceeds the rest, and is a very stately and noble Building.

Building. The Provincial Council meets in this City; but there lies an Appeal from them to the Court of *Malins*. The Citizens are well disciplin'd, of a Martial Temper, and have but few Merchants or Tradesmen among them. The City is of a Circular Figure, about as big as *Exeter*, and but indifferently built, except in two or three of their Squares. 'Tis well fortified with a Wall, Ditches, Ravelins, and Counterscarps, after the modern Way. The French King took it in 1692, and King William of Great Britain retook it after a long and vigorous Siege in 1695. The French seiz'd it with the rest of the *Netherlands* after K. Charles II.'s Death, and still possesses it.

2. *Bovines*, *Bouvines*, or *Bovignes*, Lat. *Bovine*, *Bovinicum*, and *Bovinum*, on the *Maes*, 9 Miles S. W. from *Namur*, and 2 below *Dinant*, a small Town, which was walled in 1173. It suffered much by War, especially in 1554, when 'twas almost ruined by the French. 'Tis chiefly noted for being a Pass betwixt *Namur* and *Luxemburg*. 'Twas basely surrender'd to the French in 1676 by the mutinous Garrison, who laid down their Arms, and would not defend it, tho' the Governor represented to them the Dishonour of the Action.

3. *Walcourt*, or *Valencourt*, about 16 Miles S. W. from *Namur*, a small Town, in a pleasant Territory, noted for a Victory obtain'd by the Confederates over the French in 1689.

4. *Charleroy*, on the *Sambre*, 14 Miles W. from *Namur*. 'Twas built by the Governor of the Spanish *Netherlands* in 1667, to stop the Incurfions of the French, and called after Charles II. of Spain. The French took it before the Fortifications were compleated, and made it one of the strongest Places in the *Netherlands*, because of its important Situation on the Frontiers of *Namur*, *Hainault*, and *Brabant*. 'Twas quitted to them by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*. The Prince of *Orange* besieged it twice in vain in 1672 and 1677. 'Twas restor'd by the Treaty of *Nimwegen*, retaken by the French in 1693, restor'd again by the Treaty of *Ryswick*; but re-seiz'd by them on K. Charles II.'s Death.

5. *Fleurus*, or *Flerus*, a famous Abbey 6 Miles N. E. from *Charleroy*, noted for a Victory by the French over the Confederates in 1690.

SPANISH BRABANT,

Including the Marquisate of *Antwerp*, and the Lordship of *Malins*, is, according to *Moll*, about 60 Miles from S. to N. where longest, and 38 from E. to W. where broadest. It has *Dutch Brabant* on the N. the County of *Namur* and Part of *Hainault* on the S. the Bishoprick of *Liege* and Part of *Dutch Brabant* on the E. *Flanders* and Part of *Hainault* on the W.

Authors differ about the Origine of the Name; but the most probable Opinion is, that it was so called from *Brach* and *Bandr*, which in the old Language of the Country signifies a neglected or uncultivated Soil, such as we have heard most of *Flanders* to have formerly been. The Territory so called was much larger anciently than now, tho' *Dutch Brabant* be included; so that it took in most of *Flanders*, and some adjoining Countries, as appears by the great Assistance the *Brabanders* have given to several Princes, the Exploits said to be perform'd by them in *Europe* and *Asia* during the Holy War, and several neighbouring Districts still under their Jurisdiction. The ancient Inhabitants were the *Aduatici* and *Ambivariiti*, mentioned by *Cesar*. They were afterwards called *Bethasii*, says *Cluverius*, and *Riparii* according to *La Forrest*, who, after the Declension of the Roman Empire, were govern'd by several Lords of their own. *Pepin of Landen*, in the 6th Century, was the first who assum'd the Title of Duke of *Brabant*, or *Austrasia Inferior*. *Pepin the Short*, one of his Posterity, reunited it to the Crown of France in 572. *Lotharius*, one of his Successors, gave it to his Brother Charles of France about 974. The Emperor *Charo II.* added a great Part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*, which he gave that Prince to hold of the Empire, for which he was excluded from the Crown of France. This Country came by Marriage to the Count of *Louvain* and *Mons* in 1004; and the Heiress of the last D. of *Brabant* brought it by Marriage to the Count of *Flanders* in 1347; and by other Marriages it came to the House of *Burgundy* in 1358, and from them to the House of *Austria*.

The

The Air of the Country is temperate and healthful; the Soil for most part fruitful, except in the N. where 'tis sandy, or cover'd with Broom and Heath. But the People of *Brabant* and *Flanders* have an extraordinary Way of improving their barren Ground, by planting it with Flax, by which one Acre is said to yield more than 4 or 5 of the best Corn Ground in the Country. *Blauu* observes, That betwixt *Antwerp* and *Ghent*, for 25 Miles together, on the barren Road, every 3d or 4th Field was in its Season stock'd with such excellent Flax; that it yielded from 40 to 50 *l.* per Acre, because of the vast Quantities of Linen made in that Country, and of the Flax they exported, whereof they reckon'd 100000 *l.* worth was Annually sent to *London*. After their Flax was gather'd in, they sow'd Turnips on the same Ground, which yielded as much per Acre as their best Corn Land. In the April following, they sow'd the same Ground with Oats or Rye; and upon the Oats, Clover-grass-Seed, harrowing the Ground with Bushes; and after the Oats were mow'd down, the Clover grew up, and afforded rich Pasture till *Christmas*. The next Year, it produc'd 3 Crops, so that the best Meadows in the Country did not yield the like, and continued good for 4 or 5 Years without renewing the Seed. What Turnips they did not sell, they beat together with the Leaves, after being well wash'd, boil'd, and gave 'em to their Cattle, which fatten'd, and made 'em give much Milk. They made also considerable Profit by the Sale of their Clover-grass, and of the Oil pressed out of the Seeds of their Turnips and Flax by their Wind-mills.

The States of this Country consist of the Abbots, the Nobility and Gentry, and the Deputies of the Cities.

The Privileges of the *Brabanders* are greater than those of their Neighbours; of which *Guicciardin* gives the following Account: 1. That neither their Persons or Estates can be stopp'd, sequestred, or arrested, in the first Instance in any Part of the Empire. 2. Their Duke can give no new Gifts, or confer any Inheritance upon the Clergy, without Consent of that Quarter, and of the Capital City where the Gift lies. 3. He cannot try or punish any Man but in a legal Way, or without being heard

by his Council or Advocate. 4. He can admit no Strangers into publick Offices, except some belonging to the *Chancery*. 5. The States are not to be conven'd out of their own Country; and what they enact elsewhere, does not oblige the People. 6. If the Prince invade their Privileges, they may protest against his Proceedings, renounce their Allegiance, chuse another, or provide for their own Security by what other Method they think fit.

The *French King* claim'd this Dutchy in Right of his Queen, and made War upon the *Netherlands* on that Account in 1667. alledging, that according to a customary Law of this Province, the Children of the first Marriage succeed to the Father's Inheritance; but the *Spaniards* answer'd, That his Queen and he had renounc'd all such Claims by their Contract of Marriage, ratify'd by the *Pyrenean Treaty*: That no Instance could be given of any such Succession to the Sovereignty of this Dutchy: And by the Edict of *Charles V.* and an Act of the States, 'twas declar'd inseparable from the Crown of *Spain*.

Spanish Brabant is divided into the Quarters of *Louvain*, *Brussels* and *Antwerp*. The first is said to have been a Country or Dutchy above 1500 Years ago, and govern'd the greatest Part of the Province. *Guicciardin* says, their Princes were called Earls of *Louvain*, till the Time of *Godfrey the Bearded* above 600 Years ago.

The chief T O W N S are,

1. *Louvain*, Lat. *Lovanium*. Some derive the Name from a *Scots* General or Lord, called *Louve* or *Lupus*; but others, with more Probability, from its Situation in a low fenny Ground. It lies on the River *Dele* or *Dyle*, about 14 Miles N. E. from *Brussels*, 28 N. W. from *Namur*, 12 S. E. from *Malines*, and 24 from *Antwerp*, in Long. 23. 30. Lat. 50. 52. The City is pleasantly situated, divided into two Parts by the River, and is 6 Miles within the Walls, with many Fields, Hills, and Gardens, which make it commodious and delightful. It has been enlarged at several Times: The last Walls were begun in 1361; and *Lipsius* says, That in 1427, it was considerably larger than *Liege*, *Cologne*, *Ghent*, or *Paris*, excluding

dung the Suburbs of the latter. *Bleau* says, it contains: 11 Market-Places, 12 principal Streets, 140 of less Note, 14 Mills, 16 Bridges, 4 publick Fountains, 53 Towers on the Walls, 11 Gates, built with curious white Stone, and 16 Draw-Bridges for securing them. 'Tis encompassed with large deep Ditches, cut in many Places through a stony Rock or hard Gravel: The Walls are strong, rais'd from the Bottom of the Ditch; and their most remarkable Tower is that called *Verloren Koft*, or Lost Labour, because they designed to have built 6 more such; but were hinder'd by some publick Calamity. About 1350, there were said to be 4000 Weavers Shops in this City, upon each of which 30 or 40 other Persons depended for a Livelihood; which *threws* it to have been very populous: And if other Trades bore any Proportion, seems to justify *Lipsius's* Account, who says, That on the Ringing of a publick Bell, which was a Signal for Tradesmen to leave Work, the Streets were so crowded, that the Women were forc'd to take in their younger Children, to prevent their being hurt in the Throng. Their most remarkable Church is that of St. *Peter*, whose Tower was one of the fairest in the Country, till damaged by Fire. It has 18 Canons, and a Provost, who formerly was always a Person of Quality, administred the Oath to the Prince upon his Inauguration, swore him to be their Patron, and had his Horse for his Fee. The *Dominicans*, *Franciscans*, and *Carthusians*, have each a Convent; and the latter lies so remote from all other Buildings, that they seem to live in a Desert within the Walls of this populous City. The *Jesuits* have also a College here. Their Churches in general, their Hospital, and other Publick Buildings, are fine Structures. *Goltz* commends the Town-House for a large and costly Fabrick of curious Workmanship; and among other Laws hung up here, takes Notice of one which order'd those who committed, or assisted in committing a Rape, to have their Heads cut off with a Saw. The Castle stands on a high Hill, surrounded with Vineyards, in a healthful Air, and from which there's so delightful a Prospect, that the Princes of the Country chose it for their Residence; and the Emperor *Charles V.* and his Sisters were bred

here in their Youth. They have an extraordinary Sluce, which was built about 1363, to command the Waters of the *Dyle*. A Man who had the Charge of it in 1573, neglecting to open the Flood-gates, upon a sudden Thaw, and a great Rain, the River swelled so high, that it broke over the Walls, overthrew several Houses, and drown'd many People and Cattle. Their large University, upon whose Account 'tis called a City of Scholars, was founded, some say, about 926, endow'd by *John IV.* D. of *Brabant*, and confirmed by *Pope Martin V.* in 1425; but they had no Power to confer Degrees in Divinity till Duke *Philip the Good* obtain'd it from *Pope Eugene IV.* *Beaune* says, in his Time it exceeded all the Universities in *Italy*, *Spain* and *France*. *Goltz* says, it had outdone its Mother of *Cologne*; and except that of *Paris*, exceeded all others for Number of Students, and Nearness of Buildings. The Students of Divinity wear constantly Gowns and Caps, and the rest only at publick Exercises. They have 43 Colleges, 4 of which, called *Pedagogies*, are chiefly for Instruction of Youth, and the rest for those of riper Years, who may go and come at Pleasure. In each of the 4 *Pedagogies*, called *Lilium*, *Falso*, *Porcum*, and *Castellum*, there are two Professors of Philosophy, each of which read two Hours per Day; the Students write after them; and when matriculated, are obliged to swear they believe all the Articles of the *Romish* Church. The Professors of those 4 Colleges chuse Annually out of them 48 Scholars of two Years standing; and after Examination, 12 of 'em are appointed for Exhibitions; and he who is first elected, has a Bell rung for him in his College 48 Hours together. Every Licentiate, upon his going out, is conducted from the Schools with Drums and Trumpets, treats all the Doctors and his Opponents, and gives Gloves. There's a Bell rung at his Lodgings 24 Hours together; he has Liberty to chuse a Coat of Arms, and is ever after accounted a Gentleman. *Goltz* says, they confer the Degrees of Master, Licentiate, and Doctor. The University is govern'd by a Rector and Senate, which consists of the superior Graduates of the 5 Faculties of Divinity, Canon Law, Civil Law, Physick, and Arts, who chuse the Rector every half Year. His Office is the

the highest Dignity, and the Magistrates of the City give Place to him. The Emperor *Charles V.* gave him the Right Hand at a solemn Procession. On Holidays, and other Solemnities, he is attended by 8 Beadles, who go before him with Silver Maces, and he is followed by his Menial Servants. They have also a Promotor, who, by Leave from the Rector, apprehends and punishes Criminals, sometimes by Death, but mostly by Fines. The Rector has great Power elsewhere; but in the Senate, who share the Supreme Authority with him, he is no more than President. If a Citizen sue a Scholar, the Cause is brought before the Rector; but if a Scholar sue a Citizen, 'tis brought before the Conservator, who is generally a Bishop or Abbot skill'd in the Laws, and sworn to preserve the Privileges of the University; and his Court being Ecclesiastical, to which Appeals lie from any other Court of that sort in *Brabant*, he has a Power to excommunicate upon Contumacy. They have a Chancellor, who confers Degrees, which is also perform'd by the Provost of *St. Peter's*, who takes Place next to the Rector. For the Learned Men produc'd here, we refer to *Bleau*.

Notwithstanding the above-mentioned Encomiums of this University, *Dr. Brown* says, *Oxford* may vie with it for Situation, and exceeds it in Buildings and Endowments. *Mr. Ray* says, the Gentlemen Students are plac'd in a peculiar Form, called *Scannum Nobilium*: All of 'em pay Fines for Absence from Lectures and Exercises; and the 12 appointed to Exhibitions above-mentioned have their Lodgings, Diet and Salary, in what College they please, chuse what Profession they think meet; and out of them the Professors are usually chosen. He adds, They give the Degrees of Batchelor Licentiate and Doctor; but can't be Licentiates in Divinity till after 11 Years Study, and seldom Doctors till 50 Years of Age, without extraordinary Proofs of their Ability. The Schools, he says, are better than those of *Cambridge*, but inferior to those of *Oxford*. In 1654, there were no less than 1600 Students here. In the chief College for Divinity, there are 120 Students maintain'd at the publick Charge; and in the 4 Pedagogies, there are 200 maintain'd in the like

manner. Their Licentiate, he says, is a Medium betwixt a Batchelor and a Doctor.

This City has the Precedency of all the rest in *Brabant*, because of its Antiquity; and that 'tis the Place where the Prince and People do first take the Oaths mutually to one another. It has also the first Vote in the Provincial States, except in raising Money, when *Antwerp* has the Precedency, because of its Wealth, and larger Proportion in its Share of the publick Taxes. 'Twas abandon'd by the *French* in 1706, after the Battle of *Ramelies*.

About half a League from this City, lies an ancient Palace belonging to the Dukes of *Aerschot*, formerly reckon'd one of the state-liest in *Europe*, but now ruinous; is still noted for a noble Avenue about a Mile long, and 40 Foot broad, being cut down to an exact Level through a hilly Ground, with Rows of Linden Trees on each Side, by which 'tis shaded like an Arbour. The Park and Gardens are extraordinary fine.

2. *Tilmont*, *Tirlemout*, or *Tienen*, about 8 Miles S. E. from *Louvain*, on the River *Geet*. 'Twas formerly a Place of great Extent and Commerce, and one of the principal Cities of the Province. 'Tis still about a League in Compass, retains its ancient Privileges, but suffered much by the *French* in 1675.

3. *Leewe*, Lat. *Levia*, on the *Geet*, 5 Miles E. from *Tirlemont*, a small, but strong Town, having been fortified to prevent the Incursions of the *Liegeois*, and enjoys the Privileges of the Second-Rate Cities of *Brabant*. 'Tis a neat City, and very strong, by reason of its Forts and Sluces. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1678, but restored by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. 'Tis noted for a great Priory of *Augustins*, whose Prior is one of the 12 chief Nobles of the Province. It has a great Trade in Beer, which is much esteem'd, and by some preferr'd to Wine.

4. *St. Trone*, or *Truyen*, Lat. *Centronas*, supposed to have been the Capital of that People. It lies 2 Miles S. E. from *Leewe*, 'twas ruin'd by the *French*, who dismantled it in 1675, and carried from hence 40 Waggon-load of Arms to *Maestricht*.

5. *Landen*, 5 Miles S. from *Leewe*, on the same River, a small, but ancient Town, noted for a dear-bought Victory obtain'd

G g g g g

by

by the *French* under the D. of *Luxemburg* in 1693, over the Confederates commanded by *K. William of Great Britain*, at *Neerwinden* near this Place.

6. *Hannuye*, 7 Miles S. from *Landen*, a small wall'd Town, in a pleasant and rich Country, Capital of its District.

7. *Ramelies*, 6 Miles W. from *Hannuye*, famous for the Victory obtain'd here over the *French* under the Conduct of the D. of *Marlborough* in 1706; of which we gave an Account, P. 824.

8. *Gemblours*, 11 Miles S. W. from *Ramelies*, Lat. *Gembiacum*: It is a wall'd Town, and stands on a steep Hill near the River *Orn*, had formerly the Title of a County; but the Abbot of a rich Abbey of *Benedictines*, built here about 922, and dedicated to *St. Hubert*, has for a long time had the Spiritual and Temporal Jurisdiction of the Place. They have a famous Library, well stor'd with MSS. of which *Erasmus* made great Use; some of 'em are suppos'd to have been writ by *St. Sigebert*, who compiled the brief Chronicle here from *Valentinian* the Younger and *Gratian* to his own Time, and died in 1112. The Town is encompass'd on all Sides with Precipices and deep Valleys, except on the E. where 'tis overtopped by the highest Point of the Hill. Near this Town lies the Ruins of one of those Caulways, which beginning at *Barway* in *Hainault*, led to the principal Towns in *Gaul*. 'Twas paved with great Stones, and a hard flinty Gravel underneath; which not being the Product of that Country, must have been brought hither from elsewhere with great Expence. The Inhabitants call 'em *Brunhault's* Caulways; and they alledge, they were made by a potent King of that Name, who had large Dominions in these Parts. They are not mentioned by *Julius Caesar*; so that they must either have been ruin'd before his Time, or made and ruin'd since. Near this City, the *Spanish* Forces under *Don John of Austria* obtain'd a Victory over the Confederate States in 1578. After which, a great Part of the Country return'd to the Obedience of *Spain*.

9. *Senef*, 12 Miles W. from *Gemblours*, noted for the Battle between the Prince of *Orange* and the Prince of *Condé* in 1674, where the Victory was claimed on both

Sides; but the Advantage was visible on that of the former, as we have mentioned P. 817. This Place lies properly in the Quarter of *Brussels*.

10. *Judoigne*, 6 Miles S. from *Tilmont*, on the *Geet*, remarkable only for its healthy Situation, and an ancient Castle, in which the Children of the Princes of *Brabant* were formerly brought up.

11. *Halen*, 14 Miles E. from *Louvain*, upon the *Geet*. It suffered much by the Wars betwixt *Brabant* and *Gelder*, and on that Account had large Privilege granted by its Princes.

12. *Dieft*, 4 Miles N. W. from *Halen*, noted for its Manufactures of Linen and Woollen. It has the Title of a Barony, is Capital of a considerable District, and has belong'd for some Ages to the Princes of *Orange*. 'Tis also noted for the Birth of *Cleward* the famous Linguist, who wrote the Greek Grammar that bears his Name, and was very well vers'd in the *Arabic*, which he had study'd in *Fez* in *Morocco*, and died as he was about to write against the *Mahometans* in that Language.

13. *Sichen*, or *Sichem*, on the *Demer*, about 3 Miles W. from *Dieft*, a small Place, neither strong by Nature nor Art, but remarkable for the noble Defence the Garrison and Inhabitants made against the Prince of *Parma*, who took it at last with great Slaughter, and afterwards plunder'd it, as *Bentivoglio* informs us.

14. *Areschot*, on the *Demer*, 5 Miles W. from *Sichen*, a small City, which the Emperor *Charles V.* erected into a Dutchy. 'Tis walled, and has a small Territory depending upon it.

Brussels Quarter.

THE chief City is *Brussels*, on the *Sinne* or *Saine*, about 14 Miles S. W. from *Louvain*, 11 from *Malins*, 22 S. from *Antwerp*, and 25 S. E. from *Ghent*, in Long. 23. 7. Lat. 50. 52. 'Tis situated in a rich Country, abounding with all Necessaries for Man and Beast: At one time it entertain'd 7 Crown'd Heads, besides the Dukes of *Savoy* and *Lorraine*, with 9000 Horse belonging to their Retinues. Within a quarter of a League

League to the S. lies the Forrest of *Soignies*, which furnishes the City with Fuel, and the Court with good Game for Hunting. The City is encompassed with many Abbies and Monasteries, and the neighbouring Country is well planted with Fruit-Trees of all Sorts, and watered with pleasant Fountains and Streams, whose murmuring Noise, expressed by the Dutch Word *Ruysselen*, is by some thought to have given Name to the City. The River *Sinne* runs through it, from whence to the *Rupel* there was a navigable Channel, made in 1560 by *Charles V.* and *Philip II.* which cost above 500000 Crowns. 'Tis 5 Leagues long, dug through a Mountain, which was reduced to a Level, has many Streams brought to it from the neighbouring Country, and 5 large Sluces built in convenient Places for collecting the Waters, and letting them out as Occasion requires, for the Vessels which trade with *Antwerp* and other Places; and 'tis observ'd, that the Bed of the Waters is 40 Foot higher at the Head of the Channel near *Brussels*, than at the Mouth of it where it falls into the *Rupel*. This City is far more populous than *Louvain*, tho' the Walls be 200 Paces less in Circumference. 'Tis well built; the Streets are large, handsome and convenient. 'Tis the Seat of the Viceroy of the *Spanish Netherlands*, and of all the Courts belonging to the Government. They are fond of the Number 7 in many chief Things belonging to the City; as, 7 publick Fountains, 7 principal Streets that center in the great Market, 7 stately Houses in the Market, let out by the Senate for the Use of the Corporation; 7 Parish-Churches, 7 Noble Families, eminent for their Antiquity and great Privileges; 7 Midwives, licens'd and sworn by the Senate, who are obliged to go to the Poor as well as the Rich when call'd; 7 publick Gates of *Dorick* Work, remarkable for leading to so many Places of Pleasure or different Exercise: The 1st, called the *Louvain* Gate, leads out to the best Fowling; the 2d, called *Algidomontana*, or Cold-Hill Gate, leads to a Place of Fishing; that called *Porta Obbruxellensis*, leads to Hunting; that of *Anderlecht*, to pleasant Fields; that of *Flanders*, to Pasture Grounds; that of *Laken*, to Springs and Vineyards; and that of *Mechlin*, to Gardens. 'Tis encompassed with

a double high Wall, and very large Ditches. On the Walls, there were formerly 74 Towers, but many of 'em now ruin'd by Age and War. The Walls are broad, and the Citizens walk on 'em as at *Antwerp*. The City is built on the Front of an Hill, and (says *Dr. Northleigh*) is larger than *Bristol*. Their Houses pretty much resemble the *English*, and are cover'd for most part with Slate and Tiles. Their most remarkable Church is that of *St. Gudula*, formerly dedicated to *St. Michael*; but *Gudula*, a Daughter to one of their Counts, having richly endow'd it, they chose her for their Patroness. It has two Towers, with 500 Steps each, and a Chapel, where they keep 3 consecrated Hosts, from which they alledge that Blood proceeded when they were stabb'd by some *Jews*, in Contempt of our Saviour, about 3 or 400 Years ago. They have an Annual Procession in Remembrance of this suppos'd Miracle, when they expose the Hosts as if they were still bleeding: This Church is an old *Gothick* Fabrick, and has the Tombs of some Dukes of *Brabant*. In *St. Mary's* Church are the Tombs of Archduke *Ernest*, and the Count of *Isenbourg*, with Inscriptions, containing their History. The *Jesuits* College is very noble, and by its Front, Church and Tower, seems to have been the Model to that of *Antwerp*. They have a fine private Chapel, a pleasant Garden, and a good Library; and betwixt the Windows, the Pictures of the chief Writers of their Society, with several *Roman* Antiquities brought from *Italy*. They have several Schools for Grammar, Rhetoric, and Philosophy, and the Brothers of the Society are about 70 in Number. The *Franciscans* and other Orders of both Sexes have Monasteries here; and they have one for penitent Harlots, who enter into the Order of *St. Austin*. They have also an Hospital for the Cure of the Sick, and 4 for the Entertainment of poor Strangers for 3 Days, with a Bedlam for Lunatics, and an Hospital for poor Children laid down in the Streets. The Palace where the Governor resides is an ancient Fabrick in the Park, to which adjoins the Emperor's Palace built by *Charles V.* with a curious Grottesque and Water-works. *Bleau* commends it as a stately and magnificent Palace, with Accommodations for the greatest Prince in the

World; but it comes short of the Magnificence of the present Times. The adjoining Park is very pleasant, adorn'd with Water-works, Grotto's, an Aviary, fine Walks, and well stor'd with Deer. The Palace has two Galleries, one of 'em adorn'd with the Pictures of Emperors, Kings, Queens, Princes, and other great Persons: Among 'em, there's a curious Piece representing Archduke *Albert*; and upon a closer View, it likewise represents the Archdutchess *Isabella*; and there's a Picture of hers of the same Nature. The Town-House is an ancient and noble Fabrick, whose Front much exceeds that of *Amsterdam*, and Water is convey'd by Pipes to the very Top of it. The Tower is adorn'd with a Brass Statue of St *Michael*, the Guardian Angel of the City: The Statue is 15 Foot high, and so accurately pois'd, that it can easily be turn'd round. In the Hall, there's great Variety of Pictures by the best Masters; one of 'em by *Ruben*, representing *Solomon* judging the Controversy betwixt the two Harlots, valued at 3000 Florins. The Palaces of *Egmont*, *Alva*, *Orange*, and *Bourneville*, are noble Structures. The Royal Stable is also worth a Traveller's View, having Room for 127 Horses, with all Necessaries for them. Over it, there's a Magazine for Arms, belonging formerly to the Dukes of *Burgundy*, where are kept the Sword of *Charles the Bold* D. of *Burgundy*, with which *Charles V.* us'd to create the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*; Archduke *Albert's* Armour, that he wore at the Battle of *Newport*; and the Chariot in which Archdutchess *Isabella* enter'd *Brussels*, which cost 14000 Crowns. They likewise preserve here the Skins of 3 Horses, so artificially stuffed, that they resemble the Originals; one that belong'd to King *Philip II.* which they say cost 12000 Crowns; the 2d to the Archdutchess *Isabella*, when she enter'd *Brussels*; and the 3d to Archduke *Albert*, on which he escap'd from the Battle of *Newport*. They have a Custom here, and in other Towns of the *Netherlands*, to harness 3 or 4 Mastiffs Side by Side, and make them draw Coaches, and little Carrs with Provisions and Goods; and they employ Women for Porters. This City abounds with People of Quality and Note, who take a Tour every Night in the Lower Town, but the Men and Women

in different Coaches and Circles; yet they meet continually; and by their frequent Talk and Salutations, do many times interrupt the general Society. They have an Annual Custom on the 19th of *January*, says *Misson*, for the Women to undress their Husbands, and carry 'em to Bed; and the Husbands treat their Friends next Day. They assign two Reasons for it: The 1st is, That the City being once obliged to surrender to their Enemy, the Women were allowed only to carry out their Children, and what else they thought most valuable; upon which they took their Husbands on their Backs: The 2d, That having escap'd in a Battle which they undertook under St. *Lewis*, they came home in a Body, were met by their Wives out of Town, and carried home in their Arms. Some few Protestants live here; but they dare scarce own their Religion, adds *Misson*; which does not very well agree with his Assertion, That they have no Inquisition in the *Netherlands*. 'Tis observ'd, that the Houses of the Citizens are for most part stately and splendid, and well furnish'd with Springs and Gardens. They are noted for Extravagancy in adorning the latter with Flowers; so that those of a small Plat have been valued at 7 or 8000 Florins. They make use of the Filth of the City for dunging their Flower-Beds, which makes it bear a good Price. There's a Marble Pyramid erected upon the Place where stood the Palace of *Culemburg*, which was raz'd by the D. of *Alva*, because the Confederate Lords met there for Consultation at the beginning of the Revolt; and there's an Inscription upon it in 4 Languages, giving an Account of the Matter. Dr. *Brown* takes Notice, That before the Court of the Palace, there are 5 Brass Statues, and that one of the Water-works in the Park imitates the Sound of all Musical Instruments, by a kind of perpetual Motion; but the most surprizing Thing here is the Echo in the Park, which makes 10 or 12, or, as some say, 15 distinct Replies, especially from the Gallery near the Riding-House. He adds, That about 5 Miles from this City, there's a Place called *Fontain*, where 3 Rivers cross one another, one of which is carried over a Bridge: That they have a Nunnery of *Beguins* with 800 Maids, who may quit the Convent and marry at Pleasure;

Pleasure; and that they have a new Church, which is Milk-white. There's likewise an *English* Nunnery in this City. The chief Manufactures are Lace and Tapestry. The Citizens are observ'd to be very courteous, especially to Strangers. In 1489, 33000 People died here of the Plague; and in 1529, they were grievously afflicted with the Sweating Sickness. At one time they had 2000, and some Hundreds of Houses, destroy'd by Fire, and at another time 1500 Weavers Shops. The Tradesmen of this City make 52 Companies, united into 9 larger Bodies, which they call Nations. The Armourers were formerly the most considerable, and noted, according to *Guicciardin*, for making Armour of Proof. The Townsmen have been accounted mutinous against the Nobility and Gentry, of whom the Magistrates consist; and the Weavers having been very active in some of those Mutinies, it occasioned a Law, which made it Capital for any of 'em to stay one Night in the City. When the *Netherlands* revolted, this Town was possessed for some Time by the Confederates, but reduced to Extremity, and forced to surrender to the Prince of *Parma* in 1585. Since which, it has continued under the Crown of *Spain*. Their Government is by two Consuls, one chosen out of the Nobility, and the other from the Commonalty; 7 *Eschevins*, chosen Annually by the Prince out of the 7 ancient and noble Families of the City; and 6 Common-Council-Men, chosen out of the chief Artificers. For their Learned Men, we refer to *Bleau*. This City suffered much in 1695, when 'twas bombarded by the *French* under *M. de Villeroy*; but the Houses which were then demolished have been since rebuilt with more Splendour. It missed narrowly of being surpris'd and taken by the Elector of *Bavaria* in 1708; of which we have given an Account, P. 826.

There are two Towns of Note which depend on this City; viz.

1. *Nivelle*, near the Head of the River *Simne*, 15 Miles S. from *Brussels*, was formerly considerable, and well fortified, being one of the 4 Cities which constituted the Marquisate of the Empire. It still enjoys large Privileges. *Pepin*, eldest Son to *Charlemagne*, and Father to *Gertrude*, the Foundress of their chief Church and Abbey of

Nuns, is said to be buried here. This Abbey entertains 42 Nuns, who must be Virgins, of Noble and Legitimate Extract by Father and Mother for 4 Generations. They chuse the Abbess by Consent of the Prince, and the Pope's Approbation. She has both Spiritual and Temporal Jurisdiction, and the Place is noted for making fine Linen; which vies with that of *Cambray*.

2. *Vilvorden*, on the Banks of the *Simne*, 6 Miles N. from *Brussels*. 'Tis strong by Situation and Art, and has a Castle, in which the Duke of *Alva* imprison'd those whom he thought to be disaffected. The Records of the Province were formerly kept here, under the Charge of a Delegate, appointed by their Princes. In this Place the famous *Mr. William Tindal*, the first that translated the New Testament into *English*, suffered Martyrdom, contrary to the Laws of Nations, being a Subject of *England*.

The Lordship of Malins,

IS about 6 Miles long, and 6 broad. It belong'd anciently to the Family of the *Bartholds*, who being extinguish'd, the Bishop of *Liege* and the Count of *Guelder* made War upon one another for it, and at last they agreed to divide it. They sold it in 1333 for 300000 Crowns to *Lewis* Count of *Flanders*, who refused to do Homage for it to the D. of *Brabant*, as its former Possessors had done, which occasioned a War, that was at last made up by a Match betwixt the Families. *Philip the Good* of *Burgundy* erected it into a separate Jurisdiction.

The chief TOWN is,

Malins, or *Mechlin*, Lat. *Mechlinia*, on the *Dyle*, 12 Miles N. from *Brussels*. 'Tis one of the oldest and most considerable Towns in the *Netherlands*, lies in a healthful Air, and is divided into two Islands, which are join'd by a great Number of Bridges. The City is full of Channels and winding Currents, some form'd by Art, and others by Nature. The Tide flows up the River about a League above this City, which contributes much to its Trade. The Houses are neat and large, the Streets spacious, and very clean. The Town is fortified with good

World; but it comes short of the Magnificence of the present Times. The adjoining Park is very pleasant, adorn'd with Water-works, Grotto's, an Aviary, fine Walks, and well stor'd with Deer. The Palace has two Galleries, one of 'em adorn'd with the Pictures of Emperors, Kings, Queens, Princes, and other great Persons: Among 'em, there's a curious Piece representing Archduke *Albert*; and upon a closer View, it likewise represents the Archdutchess *Isabella*; and there's a Picture of hers of the same Nature. The Town-House is an ancient and noble Fabrick, whose Front much exceeds that of *Amsterdam*, and Water is convey'd by Pipes to the very Top of it. The Tower is adorn'd with a Brass Statue of St *Michael*, the Guardian Angel of the City: The Statue is 15 Foot high, and so accurately pois'd, that it can easily be turn'd round. In the Hall, there's great Variety of Pictures by the best Masters; one of 'em by *Ruben*, representing *Solomon* judging the Controversy betwixt the two Harlots, valued at 3000 Florins. The Palaces of *Egmont*, *Alva*, *Orange*, and *Bourneville*, are noble Structures. The Royal Stable is also worth a Traveller's View, having Room for 127 Horses, with all Necessaries for them. Over it, there's a Magazine for Arms, belonging formerly to the Dukes of *Burgundy*, where are kept the Sword of *Charles the Bold* D. of *Burgundy*, with which *Charles V.* us'd to create the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*; Archduke *Albert's* Armour, that he wore at the Battle of *Newport*; and the Chariot in which Archdutchess *Isabella* enter'd *Brussels*, which cost 14000 Crowns. They likewise preserve here the Skins of 3 Horses, so artificially stuffed, that they resemble the Originals; one that belong'd to King *Philip II.* which they say cost 12000 Crowns; the 2d to the Archdutchess *Isabella*, when she enter'd *Brussels*; and the 3d to Archduke *Albert*, on which he escap'd from the Battle of *Newport*. They have a Custom here, and in other Towns of the *Netherlands*, to harness 3 or 4 Mastiffs Side by Side, and make them draw Coaches, and little Carrs with Provisions and Goods; and they employ Women for Porters. This City abounds with People of Quality and Note, who take a Tour every Night in the lower Town, but the Men and Women

in different Coaches and Circles; yet they meet continually; and by their frequent Talk and Salutations, do many times interrupt the general Society. They have an Annual Custom on the 19th of *January*, says *Misson*, for the Women to undress their Husbands, and carry 'em to Bed; and the Husbands treat their Friends next Day. They assign two Reasons for it: The 1st is, That the City being once obliged to surrender to their Enemy, the Women were allowed only to carry out their Children, and what else they thought most valuable; upon which they took their Husbands on their Backs: The 2d, That having escap'd in a Battle which they undertook under St. *Lewis*, they came home in a Body, were met by their Wives out of Town, and carried home in their Arms. Some few Protestants live here; but they dare scarce own their Religion, adds *Misson*; which does not very well agree with his Assertion, That they have no Inquisition in the *Netherlands*. 'Tis observ'd, that the Houses of the Citizens are for most part stately and splendid, and well furnish'd with Springs and Gardens. They are noted for Extravagancy in adorning the latter with Flowers; so that those of a small Plat have been valued at 7 or 8000 Florins. They make use of the Filth of the City for dunging their Flower-Beds, which makes it bear a good Price. There's a Marble Pyramid erected upon the Place where stood the Palace of *Culemburg*, which was raz'd by the D. of *Alva*, because the Confederate Lords met there for Consultation at the beginning of the Revolt; and there's an Inscription upon it in 4 Languages, giving an Account of the Matter. Dr. *Brown* takes Notice, That before the Court of the Palace, there are 5 Brass Statues, and that one of the Water-works in the Park imitates the Sound of all Musical Instruments, by a kind of perpetual Motion; but the most surprizing Thing here is the Echo in the Park, which makes 10 or 12, or, as some say, 15 distinct Replies, especially from the Gallery near the Riding-House. He adds, That about 5 Miles from this City, there's a Place called *Fontain*, where 3 Rivers cross one another, one of which is carried over a Bridge: That they have a Nunnery of *Beguins* with 800 Maids, who may quit the Convent and marry at Pleasure;

Pleasure; and that they have a new Church, which is Milk-white. There's likewise an *English* Nunnery in this City. The chief Manufactures are Lace and Tapestry. The Citizens are observ'd to be very courteous, especially to Strangers. In 1489, 33000 People died here of the Plague; and in 1529, they were grievously afflicted with the Sweating Sickness. At one time they had 2000, and some Hundreds of Houses, destroy'd by Fire, and at another time 1500 Weavers Shops. The Tradesmen of this City make 52 Companies, united into 9 larger Bodies, which they call Nations. The Armourers were formerly the most considerable, and noted, according to *Guisardin*, for making Armour of Proof. The Townsmen have been accounted mutinous against the Nobility and Gentry, of whom the Magistrates consist; and the Weavers having been very active in some of those Mutinies, it occasioned a Law, which made it Capital for any of 'em to stay one Night in the City. When the *Netherlands* revolted, this Town was possessed for some Time by the Confederates, but reduced to Extremity, and forced to surrender to the Prince of *Parma* in 1585. Since which, it has continued under the Crown of *Spain*. Their Government is by two Consuls, one chosen out of the Nobility, and the other from the Commonalty; 7 *Échevins*, chosen Annually by the Prince out of the 7 ancient and noble Families of the City; and 6 Common-Council-Men, chosen out of the chief Artificers. For their Learned Men, we refer to *Bleau*. This City suffered much in 1695, when 'twas bombarded by the *French* under *M. de Villeroi*; but the Houses which were then demolished have been since rebuilt with more Splendour. It missed narrowly of being surpris'd and taken by the Elector of *Bavaria* in 1708; of which we have given an Account, P. 826.

There are two Towns of Note which depend on this City; viz.

1. *Nivelle*, near the Head of the River *Simme*, 15 Miles S. from *Brussels*, was formerly considerable, and well fortified, being one of the 4 Cities which constituted the Marquisate of the Empire. It still enjoys large Privileges. *Pepin*, eldest Son to *Charlemagne*, and Father to *Gertrude*, the Foundress of their chief Church and Abbey of

Nuns, is said to be buried here. This Abbey entertains 42 Nuns, who must be Virgins, of Noble and Legitimate Extract by Father and Mother for 4 Generations. They chuse the Abbess by Consent of the Prince, and the Pope's Approbation. She has both Spiritual and Temporal Jurisdiction, and the Place is noted for making fine Linen, which vies with that of *Cambray*.

2. *Vilvorden*, on the Banks of the *Simme*, 6 Miles N. from *Brussels*. 'Tis strong by Situation and Art, and has a Castle, in which the Duke of *Alva* imprison'd those whom he thought to be disaffected. The Records of the Province were formerly kept here, under the Charge of a Delegate, appointed by their Princes. In this Place the famous *Mr. William Endak*, the first that translated the New Testament into *English*, suffered Martyrdom, contrary to the Laws of Nations, being a Subject of *England*.

The Lordship of Malins,

IS about 6 Miles long, and 6 broad. It belong'd anciently to the Family of the *Bartholds*, who being extinguish'd, the Bishop of *Liege* and the Count of *Guelder* made War upon one another for it, and at last they agreed to divide it. They sold it in 1333 for 300000 Crowns to *Lewis* Count of *Flanders*, who refused to do Homage for it to the D. of *Brabant*, as its former Possessors had done, which occasioned a War, that was at last made up by a Match betwixt the Families. *Philip the Good* of *Burgundy* erected it into a separate Jurisdiction.

The chief TOWN is,

Malins, or *Mechlin*, Lat. *Mechlinia*, on the *Dyle*, 12 Miles N. from *Brussels*. 'Tis one of the oldest and most considerable Towns in the *Netherlands*, lies in a healthful Air, and is divided into two Islands, which are join'd by a great Number of Bridges. The City is full of Channels and winding Currents, some form'd by Art, and others by Nature. The Tide flows up the River about a League above this City, which contributes much to its Trade. The Houses are neat and large, the Streets spacious, and very clean. The Town is fortified with good.

Good Walls; but its chief Strength lies in its Situation, for they can overflow the neighbouring Country with their Sluces. 'Tis divided into 7 Parishes, each of which has a magnificent Church; the chief is that of St. Rumbold, made an Archbishop's See in 1559, and Metropolitan of *Flanders*; their first Archbishop being Cardinal *Granvil*. The Statues of the Apostles are plac'd round the Walls. Among other Monuments, there's one containing an Inscription in *French*, but the Date worn out, importing, That there lies *Margaret*, Daughter of *Henry Stuart*, by her Royal Highness the Dutchess of *Orleans*, Daughter to *George Stuart* of the Illustrious House of *Stuart* and *Lenox* in *Scotland*, by Dame *Mary de Baquerille* of the Family of *Baquerille* in *Normandy*. The *Franciscan* Monastery is a curious, large, and stately Fabrick: The Nunnery of *Santa Clara* is reckon'd as good as any of the Order. The Magazine was formerly stor'd to Admiration for Sea and Land Service, but not so of late; and the Palaces of the Emperor, *Hoogstraet*, *Nassau*, *Egmont*, and *Arenberg*, are now much out of Repair. On the Road to *Louvain*, near this City, there was formerly a Cherry Orchard, reckon'd the largest in *Europe*; and on the Road to *Antwerp*, stood the Nunnery of *Alexis*, where 'tis said 15000 Women liv'd by Spinning, and making of Cloth, but might leave the Convent, and marry. It was destroy'd in the late Wars with *Spain*. *Guicciardin* says, That by a Flash of Lightning during a great Tempest in *August* 1546, a Tower near the Sand-Port was blown up, with 2000 Barrels of Powder, and the Water beat out of the Town-Ditches, tho' very deep, for 600 Paces, all the Houses within 300 Paces demolished, and abundance of People killed and wounded. The Blow made the Earth to tremble as far as *Antwerp* and *Brussels*. There are 17 Companies of Trademen in this City, the chief of whom are the Bakers, Fishmongers, Dyers, Tanners, Brewers, and Butchers; out of which 6 Companies, 6 *Eschevins* are Annually chosen, who, with the like Number chosen from among the Nobility, make up their Magistracy. The Tanners are so numerous, that they formerly took up one Quarter of the Town, and still inhabit 3 entire Streets. This Company has such

Privileges of Hunting and Hawking, as in other Places are allow'd only to the Nobility. They had formerly 3000 Weavers; but having taken Arms against the rest of the City, they were deprived of most of their Immunities, tho' they still take Place after the 6 other Companies above-mentioned. The chief Manufacture of this City is Lace and Point, so famous through all *Europe*, excellent Beer, Tann'd Leather, Bells, and great Guns, which are founded in this Place, Linen and Woollen Cloth. For their Learned Men, we refer to *Bleau* and *Guicciardin*. This City, and the Villages under its District, make one of the 17 Provinces. Their States consist of the Magistrates of the City, and the Representatives of the common People. Here also is held the great Council instituted by *Charles* of *Burgundy* in 1473, consisting of 35 Persons, the Prince himself being President. 'Twas new model'd by *Philip I.* of *Spain*, and reduced to 1 President, 16 Senators, 2 *Graphiaries*, 8 Secretaries, and some Assistants. To this Tribunal, before the Revolt, Appeals were brought from all the 17 Provinces, but now only from 10. They finally determine all Causes, tho' sometimes a Revision is allow'd. Hither also the Knights of the *Golden Fleece* are cited upon Misdemeanor.

The Marquisate of ANTWERP, or the Holy Empire,

IS, according to *Moll*, 35 Miles where longest from E. to W. and 25 from S. to N. 'Twas made a Marquisate by the Emperor *Orto II.* in 982, and given, with *Nether Lorrain*, to *Charles*, youngest Son to *Lewis IV.* of *France*; it came afterwards by Marriage to the Count of *Louvain*, and chang'd Masters in the same Manner as the Dutchy of *Brabant*, formerly mentioned.

The chief PLACES are,

1. *Antwerp*, which lies on the *Scheld*, 14 Miles N. W. from *Milins*, 22 N. from *Brussels*, 28 N. W. from *Louvain*, and 22 N. E. from *Ghent*, in Long 23. 7 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 51. 16. 'Tis

'Tis an ancient City; for *St. Willbrod* mentions a Church here committed to his Care in 656, in Lat. *Antwerpium*, and *Antwerpin*. The Origine of the Name is by some ascribed to a Giant who liv'd in the Neighbourhood, and us'd to cut off the Hands of those who did not please him, and throw them into the River; and to confirm this, they shew a Tooth which they pretend to be his, that is a Hand-breadth long, and weighs 16 Ounces; and the City has Hands cut off for part of its Arms; but this is rejected as fabulous, and the Name is derived from *Aen de Werve*, i. e. at the Wharf; part of the City near the Bank of the *Scheld* still retaining this Name. It lies in Form of a Bow, on the E. Side of the *Scheld*, which is 500 of their Ells broad, and at low Water 22 Foot deep. It rises 12 Foot more by the Tide, so that Ships of the largest Burthen can unload at their Keys. The *Scheld* runs through it by 8 Channels, some of them capable of holding 100 great Ships, which mightily advanc'd its Trade. *Guicciardin* says, in his Time it contain'd 13500 Houses, and had waste Ground for 3000 more. The Streets are straight and large, and the Buildings magnificent. *Bucanus* says, in this Respect it exceeds all other in Europe; and *Mr. Ray* says, it excels *Florence* in Beauty. *Dr. Northleigh* thinks 'tis as large as *London* within the Walls. *Misson* says, the Houses are built after a peculiar Way, half of Brick, and half of Wood, with Battlements at the Top, and very high Roofs, which make a handsome Appearance. *Dr. Brown* says, the Walls are very broad, fac'd with Brick and Free-stone, after the modern Way, being 110 Foot broad at Top, with several Rows of Linden Trees on them, where the Citizens divert themselves by walking. The Bastions are not very large, but the Ditch broad and deep; and on the whole, the Fortifications are more remarkable for their Beauty than Strength. The Citadel consists of 5 Bastions, is one of the best Fortifications of its kind in the *Netherlands*, and commands the City, River, and adjacent Country. 'Tis said to have cost above a Million of Crowns, and serv'd as a Model for most of the Citadels that have been built since. 'Twas begun by the D. of *Alva* in 1567; and finished in less than a Year the Walls, consisting at first of Earth; but were after-

wards lin'd with Brick and Stone. There's a good Space of empty Ground betwixt it and the City. 'Tis above a Mile in Compass, has large Storehouses for Ammunition and Provision, and convenient Lodgings for above 3000 Soldiers. In 1577, a great Part of it was destroy'd by the Citizens in a Tumult; but it was afterwards repaired, and made much stronger. Formerly a Statue of Brass of the cruel D. of *Alva* stood in the middle of the Place of Arms in the Citadel in compleat Armour, but without a Head-piece, extending his Right Arm towards the City, and his Hand open. He trampled under his Feet a Monster with 2 Heads and 6 Arms, with 2 Dishes hanging in its Ears, and a Satchel about its Neck, out of which came forth 2 Serpents. In its 6 Hands it held a Torch, a Leaf of Paper, a Purse, a torn Cloak, a Club, and an Ax; and at the Feet of the Monster lay a Vizor. On the Front of the Pedestal that fac'd the City there was an Inscription, importing, that 'twas erected in Honour of the King's excellent and faithful Minister *Ferdinando Alvaes* of *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, General of the *Netherlands* for *Philip II.* of *Spain*, who had confirm'd the Peace of the Provinces, by extinguishing Sedition, banishing the Rebels, and restoring Religion and Justice. The Monster above-mention'd represented the chief of the Nobility who headed the *Geuses*. But this insolent Statue did not stand long, being demolished by the People, who hated his Cruelty, and never ceased till he was recalled. Their most remarkable Structures are, 1. The Church dedicated to the Virgin, a magnificent Fabric, which was made a Cathedral at the Desire of *Philip II.* by Pope *Paul IV.* who assign'd it 7 Towns and 144 Villages for the Verge of its See, which is 50 Miles long, and 30 broad. This Church has 66 Chapels, and Altars so curiously built, and so sumptuously adorn'd with Statues and Pictures, as cause Admiration in the Beholders. *Charles V.* was wont to say of its Steeple, That for its excellent Carving, it deserv'd to be put in a Case, and only shewn upon Holidays. One of the two Towers adjoining to this Church is said to be 420 Foot high, besides its Cover, which is 5 Foot, and a Cross upon that 16 Foot; so that *Ortelius* prefers it to the Tower of *Strasbourg*.

burg. Dr. Northleigh says, he ascended it by 620 Steps, and then wanted 30 Foot to the Top, which is cover'd with Copper Pans; and on this they kindle a Fire when any Enemy approaches. From hence there's a Prospect of *Mechlin*, *Ghent*, *Louvain*, and other Cities, and likewise of the Isles of *Zealand*. It has 33 Bells, the largest of which, called *Charles*, from *Charles V.* is of a wonderful Bigness, and never rung but on extraordinary Occasions. They chime pleasantly every Hour, which is perform'd by one Man. Doctor Northleigh says, the Steeple is lower than that of *Salisbury*. The Skreen on the Side of the Church exceeds that of *Boisledue*. The Paintings of the Altars, which are adorn'd with exquisite Workmanship of Marble, are most of 'em by *Ruben*. The Portico of this Church, with its Marble Statues, is inferior to none in *Rome*. This Church has a Dean and 24 Canons, and an Order called the *Confraternity of the Circumcision*, who pretend to have our Saviour's Fore-skin, sent by *Godfrey of Bouillon K. of Jerusalem*; and on this Account go in publick Procession every *Trinity Sunday*, which they call the Festival of the *Præputium*. They have several other Fraternities, who have their peculiar Chapels here, where they perform their Devotions on certain Festivals. 2. The Jesuits Church, which is the most magnificent on this Side the *Alps*. The Front is a noble Piece of Architecture, with the Statue of *Ignatius Loyola* on the Top; and an Inscription, importing, that it was built by the City, to the Honour of Christ, the Virgin, and St. *Ignatius*, in 1561. The Pillars that support the Galleries, and the upper Row which sustain the Roof, are of the finest Marble; and the Walls and Roofs are wainscotted with Panels painted by *Ruben*, and other great Masters. The chief Altar is lofty and noble, of the most beautiful Marble, on which there's painted the Ascension of the Virgin by *Ruben*; and the Father represented, putting a Crown of Gold on her Head, with this Inscription, *Veni coronaberis*; i. e. Come, you shall be crown'd. Dr. Northleigh says, the Jesuits lead an idle and lazy Life here, have a very good Library, and a Chapel of their own, called that of the Society, with their Saints drawn by the best Masters, their Names in Capitals, and this Inscription un-

der them, *Sanctus splendor*; with the Days of their respective Festivals, which fixes the Worship of Saints, and Images upon 'em, thoough they stily deny it. The Doctor observes justly, that the Practice of the *Lutherans*, who have Crucifixes and Pictures in their Churches, is quite different, because they strictly forbid all Veneration to them, and keep them only as Remembrancers. 3. The Church of St. *James* is a noble Structure: Their High Altar is of the finest polish'd Marble, supported by two beautiful wreath'd Pillars of the *Corinthian Order*; and behind lies interr'd, in a by-Chapel of his own founding, the famous Painter *Ruben*, who painted the Banqueting-House at *Whitehall*; and among other noted Pieces, a Representation of the Last Judgment at *Antwerp*, valued at 500 l. Sterling. There's a great many Canons belong to this Church. 4. The Church of the *Prædicant Friars* is one of the largest of the City, and beautified with excellent Paintings. 5. The Abbey of St. *Michael*, belonging to the *Remonstrants*, is vastly rich, and has a noble Church, in which there's a Tomb of one of the Family of the *Stuarts*, and the Statues of the 12 Apostles round the Nave of the Wall. 'Tis also adorn'd with fine Paintings by *Ruben*. The Abbot has noble Apartments, in which there are 50 white Vestments. The Life of their Founder, who was Son to Count *Herebert*, a *Palatine*, in *Picardy*, is writ round the Wall in Latin Verse. 6. The Senate-House is a handsome Piece of old Architecture, built of curious speckled Marble: Being much impair'd by Time, 'twas rebuilt in 1460, burnt down soon after, but rebuilt again more splendidly in 1576. 7. The *Easterlings* House is a stately Fabrick, 97 Foot long, and 65 broad. 8. Their *Exchange* is a noble Structure, supported by 43 strong Pillars of white Marble, 180 Foot long, and 140 broad, in the Center of 4 large Streets. The *Royal Exchange* of *London* was built after its Model, but much exceeds the Original. 9. The House built by the Tapestry Merchants, which is 280 Foot long, and of a proportionable Breadth, and contains 26 Warehouses for that Commodity. 10. *Plantin's* Printing-House, one of the noblest in its kind in the World, is a sort of a square College, with Lodgings for Officers and Work-

Workmen, who are chiefly employ'd in Printing Divinity. They had formerly almost 100 different Funds of Letters, 2 of which were Syriac, 10 Hebrew, 9 Greek, and 47 Roman. 11. Their Hospital for the Education of Children dropt in the Streets, and another for the Maintenance of 12 Persons of Note of decay'd Fortunes, are very remarkable. 12. Their Glass-House and Water-House are extraordinary in their kind.

This City was formerly the most considerable for Trade in Europe. In 1550, 'twas reckon'd to amount to 133000000 of Gold, beside the Bank, as appears by their Records, which likewise mentions one *John Daens*, a Merchant, so rich, that having lent a Million of Gold to *Charles V.* upon Bond, he afterwards invited that Emperor to an Entertainment, and making a Fire of Cinnamon in the Room, threw the Bond into it. *Guicciardin* says, That in his Time, when *Antwerp* was in its most flourishing Condition, there have been 2500 Vessels lying together in the River; That 400 have come up with one Tide; and that 'twas usual for 500 to go and come in a Day: That 200 Waggons arriv'd every Day with Passengers from the neighbouring Countries, and 1000 in a Week us'd to come from *Germany*, the *Hans-Towns*, *Lorrain*, and *France*: That 10000 Country Carts us'd to be employ'd per Week in carrying Goods to and again; and that there were then 500 Coaches for the Use of the better Sort: But the Persecution by the D. of *Alva*, &c. the Revolt of the *Dutch*, and their blocking up of the *Scheld*, has sunk their Trade; so that their Port is without Ships, their Exchange without Merchants, and most of their Trade is removed to *Amsterdam*, and other Towns in *Holland*: Yet the City retains much of its ancient Beauty, and there are still many rich Families in it. About 30 Paces from the Jesuits Church there's a Well, the Iron Branches of which, where the Pulley hangs, are adorn'd with curious Foliage-work, made by a famous Smith, who falling in Love with a Painter's Daughter, her Father would not agree to the Match because of his Trade, tho' he was very rich; upon which the Smith laid by his Hammer, took up the Pencil, and became so great a Master at Painting, that he carried his Mistress,

as appears by an Inscription over his Tomb near the Gate of the Cathedral. The Water of the *Scheld* near this City is brackish; so that the Fountains of the City not being sufficient to furnish the Brewhouses with Water, they were obliged, at vast Expence, to bring Water for that Use by a Canal of 30 Miles, which empties it self into a great Cistern, from whence 'tis rais'd by Engines into a Bason, and thence convey'd by Pipes to the several Brewhouses. 'Twas formerly an Imperial City, and the Princes of *Nassau* were its Burgraves. The famous Geographer *Ortelius*, and the great Painter *Ruben*, with other Persons illustrious for Learning and Arts, were born in this City. The Particulars may be seen in *Bleau*. This Town join'd in the Revolt against *Spain*, and was well nigh being surpris'd by the D. of *Alençon*, Brother to *Henry III.* of *France*, who aim'd at an absolute Power, when he was chosen Governor of the *Netherlands*. In order to this, *Bentivoglio* says, the *French* possessed themselves of two Gates of the City, and let in a Body of their Troops; but having neglected to guard the Portcullis of *St. James's Gate*, by which they were to have received further Assistance, the Citizens let it down, took Arms, and killed or made Prisoners all the *French*, while the D. was gone out on Pretence of Hunting, to wait for the Success of his Plot: The miscarrying of which lost him the Government, and killed him with Grief, as we have formerly mentioned. This City was afterwards besieged and taken by the Prince of *Parma*, Governor of the *Netherlands* for the K. of *Spain*, after he had lain before it a Twelvemonth. This was one of the most remarkable Sieges that ever was heard of, according to the Account that *Meteran* and *Strada* give of it, wherein that Prince could never have succeeded, had it not been for that stupendious Bridge which he laid over the *Scheld*, in order to carry it on. The Citizens did all that they could to ruin this Bridge, and to that End built several Fire-Boats of a very extraordinary Form: They were compos'd of large firm Planks, with Room for a Mine in the middle, which was inclos'd with Brick and Lime, leaving only a small Passage for a Train to reach the Gunpowder, with which the Mine was filled; and over the Mine were laid great Quan-

H h h h h

ties

ties of Stones, Bullets, and other Materials that were fit to do Execution. Being thus prepar'd, the Citizens let them loose above the Bridge; the *Spaniards* made a Passage, by which all of 'em went through but one, without Effect. This stopping near the End of the Bridge, while Men were sent to take out the Powder, the Mine blew up, destroy'd those who were on board, and many others in the Boats of the Bridge, in all about 500. The Shock was so dreadful, that it made the Earth to tremble for several Miles, and threw the Water of the River a great way beyond its Banks: But this Design of blowing up the Bridge having miscarried, the Prince of *Parma* renewed the Siege with Vigour; and the rich Merchants being willing to save their Effects, they perswaded the Garrison to surrender in 1585. After which, the Prince of *Parma* re-establish'd Popery there, and restored the City to the Crown of *Spain*. This City was burnt by the *Danes* in 807, and suffer'd much by accidental Fires in 1236, 1456, and 1461. 'Twas taken by the Confederate States in 1566, afterwards retaken by the *Spaniards*; and upon the Death of *Requesens* the Governor of the *Spanish Netherlands*, the *Spaniards*, who mutiny'd for want of Pay, burnt down 500 Houses, sack'd the Town, and murder'd 7000 of the Inhabitants. The *French* hit'd one *Hoo* to betray the Citadel, and the Fort of *Montery* near *Brussels*, in 1674; but the Plot was discover'd, and disappointed by hanging the Traitor. The *French* seiz'd it after the Death of *Charles H.* of *Spain*, but abandon'd it after the Battle of *Ramillies* in 1706. They attempted it again by Treachery in 1708, when *Ghent* and *Bruges* were betray'd to 'em; but were disappointed. *Guicciardin* says, the Inhabitants in his Time were reckon'd 200000; that it had 13 Gates, 8 of which lie towards the River; and that they had 74 Bridges over the 8 Canals in the Town. They have 200 Streets, and 22 publick Places or Squares. Their Government is by 9 chosen out of the Nobility, 9 named by the Præfests or Masters of the Streets, and 18 others chosen from among the Persons of chief Note in the City; whose Names being all sent to the Prince, he appoints one half of 'em for a standing Senate, who afterwards chuse

two Burgomasters, one of whom appears in behalf of the City at the Meeting of the States, and the other administers Justice at home, having with the above-mention'd Senators a decisive Power in all Causes. They have also a Scout, who apprehends Criminals, and executes their Sentences upon them; and they have a Solicitor, who pleads Civil Causes before them; and chuse two Treasurers nam'd by the People, and a Receiver propos'd by the Nobility, to manage the publick Revenue, according to the Order of the Senate, who likewise appoint a Council of 12 from among the Deans of the 28 Companies of Trades, to assist in the Government.

2. *Lire*, or *Liere*, about 10 Miles S. E. from *Antwerp*, very strong by its Situation on the River *Neihe*. 'Tis a neat and pleasant Town, inhabited by Persons of Quality and rich Merchants, who leave off their Trade. It changed Masters several times during the Civil Wars of the *Netherlands*, and is very well fortified. Its Market-place vies with any of the Country for Extent, and the stately Buildings which surround it; is noted for its Manufactures, and for a Fair of Cattle one Day each Week from *St. John's-Tide* to *Martinmas*. The Collegiate Church of *St. Gummamus* is a magnificent Structure. They have also a fine Grammar-School, and several Religious Houses; among which, that of the *Carthusians* is the chief.

3. *Herentals*, on the same River, about 8 Miles N. E. from *Lire*, a pleasant Town, and tolerably well fortified. 'Tis noted for the Birth of a Physician called *Peter of Herentals*, famous for his Skill in the secret and specifick Virtues of Plants, by which he did great Cures, and communicated his Art to his two Sons *Peter* and *Theodore*, who succeeded him in Fame and Practice.

4. *Eckeren*, a small Town about 3 Miles N. from *Antwerp*, noted for a sharp Battle betwixt the *French* and the Confederates in 1703, when both Sides pretended to the Victory.

4. *Hoogstraten*, about 15 Miles N. E. from *Antwerp*, a large open Town, with the Title of an Earldom, and several Villages under its Jurisdiction. It belongs to the Noble Family of the *Lalains*.

Lillo and *Sandfiet*, already describ'd in *Dutch Brabant*, are reckon'd Part of this Marquisate.

The Dutchy of Limburg,

HAS *Juliers* on the N. Part of the Bishoprick of *Liege* on the S. Part of the same Bishoprick on the W. and the Dutchy of *Juliers* on the E. is 28 Miles where longest from N. to S. and about 75 broad. We have already describ'd the Dutch Part of it, P. 925. and come now to *Spanish Limburg*. *La Forrest* says, 'twas anciently inhabited by the *Eburones*, possessed afterwards by particular Lords, and sold about 1280 to the D. of *Brabant*: Since which, it has always followed the Fate of that Province, and is still subject to the same Courts.

Limburg, the chief Town, lies on the River *Vesè*, upon a Rock almost inaccessible, about 15 Miles S. E. from *Liege*, and 13 S. from *Aix la Chapelle*. 'Twas taken by the Dutch in 1633, retaken by the Spaniards some Time after, taken by the French in 1675, but restor'd by the Peace of *Nimeguen*. 'Twas seized by the French after the Death of *Charles II.* but recover'd by the Confederates under the D. of *Marlborough* in 1703. The Town is small, consists chiefly of one broad short Street, and the Buildings not remarkable. 'Tis chiefly noted for its Strength, being encompass'd with a strong Wall and a Trench, and has but one Passage, extreme difficult, on the Edge of a Rock, commanded by the Gate of the Town, which is well fortified. This is the only Place of Note in the Dutchy belonging to the Spaniards.

The adjacent Country abounds with all necessary Commodities except Wine, and is noted for excellent Wheat, store of Fuel, and the best Iron Mines in all those Parts.

The Dutchy of Luxemburg,

HAS the County of *Namur* and the Bishoprick of *Liege* on the N. Part of *Champagne* and *Lorrain* on the S. the Electorate of *Treves* on the E. Part of *Hainault* and *Champagne* on the W. The greatest

Length from S. E. to N. W. is about 68 Miles, and the greatest Breadth from S. W. to N. E. about 60. 'Tis commonly divided into the Districts of *Arduenne* and *Moselle*, or into the *Famenne* and *Arduenne*, and now into the French and Spanish *Luxemburg*. The District of *Famenne* is fruitful in Corn, and yields some Wine, with Quarries of Stone and other Fossils. That Part which lies towards *France* and the *Maes* is more woody and barren, has little Corn, but Plenty of all sorts of Venison; and in some of the Mountains, there are Mines of Iron. The chief Rivers are, the *Moselle*, *Else*, *Semay*, the *Ourte*, and the *Maes*, which run through *Arduenne*. The Dutchy has above 20 Wall'd Towns, and about 1200 Boroughs and Villages. 'Tis divided into 7 Earldoms, a great Number of Baronies and lesser Seignories, where the Lords have a greater Power over their Vassals than in any other Province of the Netherlands. The Provincial States are compos'd of the Prelates, Nobility, and Gentry, and the Deputies of the Cities. 'Tis said to have had its Name from a Castle, which the *Treviri* built in Honour of the Sun, where *Luxemburg* now stands, which they call *Lucis Burgum*. *Sigefrid*, Son to *Ricuinus Arduennensis*, famous in ancient History, having obtained Part of this Country from the Abbot of *St. Maximus of Treves*, enlarged his Territory, built the City, and was the Founder of the Earldom. It came afterwards to the Count of *Namur*, and by Marriage to the Marquis of *Arlong*; one of whose Posterity, called *John*, being chosen K. of *Bohemia*, divided his Dominions betwixt his two Sons. *Charles* the Eldest succeeded to the Crown of *Bohemia*, and was chosen Emperor. His younger Brother *Wenceslaus* having *Luxemburg*, his Brother erected it into a Dutchy in 1346; and *Elizabeth*, who fell Heiress to it afterwards, sold it to *Philip the Good* of *Burgundy* in 1422, from whom it came to the House of *Austria*, and continued under their Subjection till Part of it was quitted to the French by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

The chief PLACES under the Spaniards are,

1. *Luxemburg*, Lat. *Lutzenburgum*, *Luxemburgum*, and *Lucemburgum*, is by *Guicciardin* thought to be *Ptolomy's Augusta Romanduorum*,
H h h h h h 2 and

and by others his *Augusta Veromanduorum*: But *Cæsar* thinks the latter to be *St. Quirin*. The City is divided into the Old and New; the former is now the Suburbs of the latter, because lying in a Bottom, and commanded by the Hill, 'twas not capable of being defended since great Guns came in Fashion. The Main of the New City stands now on that Hill, surrounded with good Walls, strong Bastions, Counter-Guards, Half-Moons, Ravelins, Ditches, two Cover'd Ways, and other Fortifications. It lies in Long. 24. 45. Lat. 49. 43. about 20 Miles S. W. from *Treves*, 11 N. W. from *Thionville*, 44 S. from *Limburg*, and 64 S. E. from *Namur*. Dr. *Northleigh* says, it lies near the River *Alfirth*, that runs under it, upon a Precipice of Rocks, which also surround it, Nature having made a Vale betwixt the Rocks on which 'tis seated and those that front it, which makes it almost impregnable by Art; and it has been so fortified since, that 'tis one of the strongest Places in Europe; yet there are some adjacent Rocks from whence it may be bombarded. On the W. Side of it lies a Promontory of the opposite Hill jetting out, which is join'd to the Town-Gate by a Bridge. In the New City, there are only two Springs, and those so deep in the Earth, that they are seldom us'd. They have large Cisterns for holding Rain Water; and the Maids have a great Drudgery to bring their Water from the River, which runs at the Foot of the Hill. The Jesuits have a handsome Church here, and the *Franciscans* a Cloister, said to have been founded in the Life of *St. Francis*. In the Chapel belonging to their great Church, there are the Tombs of *John of Luxemburg* King of *Bohemia*, Son to the Emperor *Henry VII.* and of the famous Count *Mansfeld*, Governor of the *Spanish Netherlands*, with the Effigies of himself and his two Wives in Brass. The Town is neither large nor well built, except some Houses erected by the *French* King for the Officers of the Garrison. This City was taken by the Duke of *Orleans* in 1542, and retaken by the Emperor *Charles V.* two Years after. 'Twas taken again by the *French* in 1684, but restored by the Treaty of *Ryswick*. They seiz'd it again after the Death of *K. Charles II.* of *Spain*, and still keep it. On the E. Side, there was a stately Palace belonging to the

Counts of *Mansfeld*, with many noble Monuments of Antiquity; but 'twas ruin'd by the last Siege. *La Forrest* says, the *French* Family, entitl'd Dukes of *Luxemburg*, had formerly 3 Branches, but now only that of *Brienne St. Paul*, of which was the famous *Mareschal de Luxemburg*, Father to *Francis Frederick D. of Montmorenci*.

2. *Arlun*, or *Arlon*, about 10 Miles N. W. from *Luxemburg*, supposed to have been formerly a Place where the Moon was worshipp'd, and from thence called *Ara Lune*. 'Twas a handsome Town, but much endammag'd by the late Wars. 'Twas erected into a Marquisate in 1103.

3. *Chiny*, about 10 Miles S. W. from *Arlon*, Capital of a City of the same Name, formerly under Lords of its own, but united to the Dutchy of *Luxemburg* at the End of the 14th Century. 'Twas ruin'd by the *French* Wars, and has not recover'd its ancient Splendour. It has an independant Jurisdiction; and the supreme Administrators of Justice in both the County and Dutchy are co-ordinate in their Stiles, and call themselves the Governor, President, and Senators, of the Council of the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, and of the E. of *Chiny*.

4. *Neuschattel*, about 6 Miles N. from *Chiny*, was formerly a Place of great Strength and Beauty, but now decay'd.

5. *Bastogne*, or *Bastonnac*, about 13 Miles N. E. from *Neuschattel*, whose pleasant Situation makes it be called the Palace of *Ardennes*. 'Tis noted for its Horse-Fairs and noble Corn-Market.

6. *St. Hubert*, a famous Abbey, 9 Miles W. from *Bastogne*, so called because *St. Hubert* Bishop of *Liege* was buried there; to whom the Huntsmen address themselves in their Devotions.

7. *Roche fort*, 10 Miles N. W. from *St. Hubert*, remarkable for the Defeat of the *Spaniards* by the *French* near it in 1635.

8. *Marche-en-Famars*, Lat. *Martia*, supposed to have had its Name from the Idol *Mars*, who was worshipp'd there. It lies about 9 Miles N. E. from *Roche fort*. 'Tis an ancient Town, but remarkable for little else. *La Forrest* says, it has a pretty good Trade.

9. *La Roche en-Ardenne*, about 9 Miles S. E. from *Marche-en-Famars*, a small Town, where the *French* Kings of the 2d Race frequently

quently diverted themselves by Hunting, and where their chief Huntsmen resided. It takes its Name from a Rock upon which it stands. 'Tis the Capital of a County of the same Name, which is generally barren; but the Inhabitants better the Soil by breaking it up with a strong Team of Horses, afterwards plowing it across, and tearing off the Bushes, Brambles, and Heath, with a great Harrow, which they burn with the Turfs of the Soil at convenient Distances. The Inhabitants shew a Hole in the Rock here, called *K. Pepin's Chair*, where they say he us'd to rest himself upon Occasion, and gave Audience to the People that resorted to him for Justice.

10. *Salm*, on a small River near the Frontiers of *Limburg*, about 15 Miles N. E. from *La Roche*, Capital of a County, whose Lords were very famous in the 8th Century.

11. *Durbuy*, on the River *Urt*, about 10 Miles N. from *La Roche*, Capital of a County of the same Name, subject formerly to Lords of its own.

12. *St. Veit*, 15 Miles S. E. from *Durbuy*, a great open Town, chief of a Lordship, formerly belonging to the Counts of *Vian-den*, but now to the House of *Nassau*. About a Mile from thence lies *Sleide*, a neat open Town, Capital of a County, with Jurisdiction over several Villages, noted for being the Birth-place of the famous Historian *Joannes Skidanus*.

13. *Vian-den*, on a small River, about 19 Miles N. E. from *Luxemburg*, a great open Town, with the Title of a County, belonging to the House of *Nassau*.

In this Country is that called the Dukedom of the *Moselle*, which lies along that River between *Metz* and *Treves*, formerly a Principality of great Account for about 500 Years; but lost its Name upon erecting the Castle of *Bar*, when *Frederick*, the Founder of it, order'd it to receive a new Appellation from that Castle. It has since been divided into several lesser Portions, subject to several Princes. The Part which lies next to *Metz* fell under the Bishops of that Town, and from thence as far as *Coningsmachen* belong'd to the D. of *Luxemburg*, and the Remainder came to the Dukes of *Lorraine*, in Right of the Counts of *Bar*.

For the other Towns of *Eckternach*, *Wofserbillsch*, *Grewenmacheren*, *Remich*, *Virton*, &c.

there's nothing in them that merits a Description.

Bleau mentions the Principality of *Ardenne*, which was supposed to have been erected in the Time of the first Race of the *French Kings*, and was govern'd by Princes descended from *Clodion II.* King of that Race. This Country was most of it barren, and cover'd with Woods, as a great Part of it is still; but by constant Labour and Cultivation, it now produces all Necessaries for the Life of Man. It lies betwixt the County of *Namur*, *Hainault*, and the rest of *Luxemburg*; and the great Forrest of this Name was formerly worship'd by the idolatrous Pagans. The Women howl here at the Burials of their Relations like the *Irish*.

The Earldom of *Rouffy*, formerly called that of *St. Paul*, lies about mid-way betwixt *Luxemburg* and *Thionville*, supposed to derive its Name from a *Russian Lord*, who in ancient Times married the Heiress. *Guicciardin* mentions a Town called *Märville*, Capital of a Lordship, 12 Leagues from *Luxemburg*, upon the River *Chier*, which is divided betwixt the King of *Spain* and the Dukes of *Lorraine*, and for that Reason called the Common Town. He mentions also the Lordships of *Arancy* and *Reydersheyd*, the Earldom of *Ursimont*, towards the Borders of *France*, the County of *Mandersheyd*, in which there's a strong Castle; the Earldom of *Virnenburg*, near the Frontiers of *Treves*, which formerly belong'd to the Counts of *Mandersheyd*, who sold it to the D. of *Luxemburg* in 1270; *Rodemacheren*, a neat little Town, with a good Castle, about 9 Miles S. E. from *Luxemburg*; and *Ivroux* upon the River *Chier*, formerly a considerable Town, but ruin'd by the War, and dismantled when restored by the *French*.

French Luxemburg,

Lies on that Side next to *France* and *Lorraine*, and contains the following Places:

1. *Thionville*, Lat. *Theodonis Villa*; in Dutch, *Diedenborum*, on the *Moselle*, about 11 Miles S. E. from *Luxemburg*. 'Tis very strong by its Situation, and well fortified since 'twas taken by the *French*. *Charles the Great* made it one of the three Imperial Seats in *Lower Germany*.

Germany, and 'twas so strong as to be thought impregnable. The *French* under the Duke of *Guise* took it in 1558, after a long Siege, which cost them abundance of Men. 'Twas afterwards restored to the *Spaniards* by a Treaty of Peace, when they added to its Fortifications 6 Bulwarks, encompassed with a Wall of Brick and Stone, 4 large Horn-works, a broad and deep Ditch, set the floaping Curtain with Pallisadoes; and before the Gate of *Luxemburg*, they raised a vast Horn-work. Notwithstanding which, 'twas taken by the D. of *Bourbon* in 1643, after two Months Siege, and was quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*. 'Tis reckon'd the Capital of *French Luxemburg*.

2. *Montmedy*, about 24 Miles S. W. from *Luxemburg*, Lat. *Mons Medius*, or *Mons Maledictus*, stands upon a high Hill near the River *Chier*, is reckon'd a Place of Strength; but was frequently taken during the Wars, because of its being ill provided, according to the usual Neglect of the *Spaniards*. The *French* took it in 1657, and had it confirmed to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

3. *Dampvilliers*, Lat. *Dampvillerium*, or *Dampvillerium*, about 8 Miles S. E. from *Montmedy*, in a marshy Country. *Charles V.* fortified it as a Barrier against the *French*. The *French* took, plunder'd, and ras'd it, in 1541. The *Spaniards* rebuilt, and made it stronger than before; but the *French* retook it again in 1552. The *Spaniards* recover'd it afterwards; but the *French* took it once more in 1637, and 'twas quitted to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

4. *Bouillon*, Lat. *Bullonium*, about 12 Miles N. W. from *Montmedy*, on the River *Semois*, a strong Town, with the Title of a Dutchy, on the Frontiers of the Forrest of *Ardenne*. 'Tis guarded with a strong Castle, pleasantly situated, and is famous for the Birth of *Godfrey of Bouillon*, a great and generous Prince, who, with his Brothers *Ulfac* and *Baldwin*, led the Christians into the Holy Land against the *Turks* in 1096; and to enable himself to carry on that Expedition, mortgaged this Town and Dutchy to the Bishop of *Liege* for a great Sum of Money. He succeeded so well in this Enterprize, that in 3 Years time he drove the *Turks* out of the Holy Land, and was made King of *Jerusalem*; but refus'd to be

crown'd there, saying, He would never wear a Crown of Gold, where our Saviour wore one of Thorns. His Successors endeavour'd to recover the Town and Dutchy, by obliging the Bishop of *Liege* to restore it for Money he ow'd them, but could not effect it. *William* Count of *Marck* enjoy'd it by the Treaty of *Tongres* in 1484. The *Mareschal de la Marck* seiz'd it in 1552. *Charles V.* having taken it some Time before, and restor'd it to the Bishop of *Liege*; but after several Differences, says *La Forreſt*, *Charlotte de la Marck*, Dutcheſs of *Bouillon*, brought it by Marriage to *Henry de la Tour d'Auvergne*, Viscount of *Turenne*, so well known by the Name of the *Mareschal de Bouillon*, and left it to him at her Death in 1594. He married for 2d Wife *Elizabeth of Nassau*, by whom he had *Frederick Maurice* Duke of *Bouillon*, who in 1642 quitted to *Lewis XIII.* the Principality of *Sedan*, and the Dutchy of *Bouillon*, in Exchange for the Dutchies of *Albret* and *Chateau Thierry*, and of the County of *Eureux*. The Barons of *Sedan* and the Bishop of *Liege* did both of 'em assume the Titles of Dukes of *Bouillon*.

The principal RIVERS of the Netherlands.

1. **T**HE *Rhine*. To what we have said of this River already, *P. 784*, in the Description of *Germany*, we shall add, That at *Wick se Duerſtede* in the Bishoprick of *Utrecht*, it joins with a small River called *Leck*, and being diverted from its ancient Course, passes not to *Utrecht* as formerly; but that City is forc'd to supply the Loss of its noble Stream, says *Pitt's Atlas*, by an artificial Channel cut from the *Leck*, and called by the Name of *Iſſel*. *Cluverius*, in his Book *De Tribus Rheni Alveis*, and in his *Germania Antiqua*, has many Arguments to prove, that the middle Channel of the *Rhine*, which runs by *Arnhem*, *Leyden*, &c. was its first Channel, according to *Tacitus*; and being derived into the *Leck* by *Civilis*, who broke down the Bank cast up by *Drusus*, let that River almost into the middle of the Island of the *Batavi*; which, together with the ancient Branch called *Vahalis*, serv'd them as a double Trench against the *Romans*.

The

The ancient Channel of the *Rhine* being thus drain'd of its Water, and unable to carry down the Sand and Mud, he thinks might occasion the stopping up of that ancient Channel. But others say, That about 1360, the *Rhine* being swell'd by a prodigious Land-Flood, and its Mouth being at the same time stop'd by a tempestuous Sea, the Stream forc'd it self into the *Leck*, and under that Name runs by *Culenburgh*, *Vianen*, &c. and falls into the *Meruwe* near the Village of *Crimpen*, which is there also called by the Name of the *New Maes*. *Cluverius* likewise argues, that that Branch called the *Vahalis* cannot be the ancient Channel of the *Rhine*, because the *Maes*, into which it falls, carries the Name from it; of which there's no Example, that a River of less Note should carry away the Name from the greater. He refutes their Opinion who think, that the *Leck* was *Corbulo's* Ditch mentioned by *Tacitus* and *Dio*; and proves it to be that Ditch which begins at *Leyden*, where 'tis commonly called the *Flot*; runs from thence to *Delft*, *Maesland*, &c. and falls into the *Maes* near the Village of *Sluys*. There are two Rivers called the *Issel*, Lat. *Issula*; one of 'em comes out of the *Leck* near *Vianen*, and divides it self into 3 Branches: The first runs near *Schoonhoven*, and falls again into the *Leck* near *Crimpen*; the 2d joins with the principal Stream near *Gonde*, which running from *Vianen* to *Isselstein*, falls into the *Maes* between *Crimpen* and *Rotterdam*. The other *Issel* rises in *Westphalia*, near *Rasfeld*, on the Borders of *Cleve*, and running through *Zutphen* by *Burg*, *Dotekum*, and *Doesburg*, is augmented by a Channel from the *Rhine* cut by *Drusus Nero*, and falls into the *Zuyder-Sea* at *Campan* with a large Channel.

2. The *Maes*, rises from the Mountain *Vogesus* near *Langres*, in the Confines of *Burgundy* and *Champagne*, begins to be navigable by small Vessels at *St. Thibaut*, and runs through Part of *Lorrain*, *Champagne*, the Bishoprick of *Liege*, Counties of *Namur* and *Brabant*, and falls into the Sea at the *Brill*, which is 250 Miles in a direct Line; but taking in all its Windings, is above 400. After receiving the *Chier*, the *Semois*, the *Sambre*, the *Mehaigne*, the *Roer*, and many other lesser Rivers in its Way, it mixes with the *Vahalis* by two Channels betwixt

Bommel and *Mogen*; but its great Channel keeps its Name till it comes to the Village of *Bachoven*; and when it falls into the *Vahalis* at the Castle of *Louvestein*, 'tis there called the *New Maes*; and below *Gorcum*, is called by its own Name, and that of the *Meruwe*, from an old Castle, supposed to have been built by *Merovius K.* of *France*, whose Ruins are still to be seen in the Water near *Dort*; and after it comes to *Vlaerdingen*, 'tis called by the Name of the *Maes*, till it falls into the Sea; but the old Channel is that called the *Old Maes*, which runs by the Village of *Hedickhuysen*.

3. The *Scheld*, rises in *Picardy* between *Artois* and *Hainault*, near a Town call'd *Beauvervoir*, begins to carry small Vessels at *Valenciennes*, runs through the Diocese of *Cambray*, *Hainault*, and *Flanders*, and falls into the Sea by several Mouths in *Zealand*, after receiving the *Scarpe*, the *Haine*, the *Lys*, the *Dender*, and several other Rivers in its Course, which is through a Country in a direct Line of near 100 Miles; but including its Turnings, about 170 Miles; and Tide flows up as far as *Ghent*, which is above 30 Miles, if we reckon its Turnings.

The lesser Rivers are very numerous, supply the Country with Fish, and several of 'em serve for a Communication with the greater; but they do not merit a particular Description. The Lake *Flevus*, mentioned so often by the *Roman* Historians, *Cluverius* takes to be that now called the *Zuyder-Sea*.

The principal Woods and Forrests in the Netherlands are,

1. *Ardenne*, Lat. *Arduenna Sylva*, frequently mentioned by *Cesar*, as the largest Forrest in *Gaul*. *Cluverius*, after a long Dissertation to prove it, says, the greatest Length of this Wood from E. to W. betwixt the Conflux of the *Moselle*, the Borders of the *Atrebat*, and the Bank of the Ocean, was 240 Miles; and that the greatest Breadth, from the Borders of the *Mediomatrics* to the *Vahalis*, was 150; and that the chief Remains of it in his Time were in the *Westervan*, the Bishopricks of *Treves* and *Liege*, and the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*; and on this Side.

IN THE NETHERLANDS.

that of the Three Fountains, several Villages, Abbies and Monasteries, and Gentlemen's Country-Houses.

6. *Meerdale*, *Zavinterlo*, *Grotenhout*, and *Tournhout*, between *Louvain*, *Brussels*, and *Vilvoord*.

7. *Marlaigne*, on the Bank of the *Maes*, reaches from the Castle of *Namur* near *Philipville*.

8. *Niepe*, near the Borders of *Arras*, is the chief Forrest in *Flanders*, reaches as far as the River *Lys*; and that of *Nonnen* near *Ipres*, which reaches a great way N. and comprehends a great many Abbies and Villages.

9. *Pondsberg*, on the Borders of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, between *Grazant* and *Lessine*, a large Forrest, almost of an orbicular Figure. These 3 were Part of the Forrest of *Ardenne*.

10. *Le Blois Guillaume* in *Artois*, near *Renty*.

11. *Echterwald* in the Dutchy of *Guelderland*, near *Arnhem*.

12. *Sevenwolden* in *Friesland*, formerly mentioned; but it must be observed, that the State of these Woods and Forrests, is much alter'd since *Guicciardin* writ, from whom we have this Account. There are no Hills nor Mountains in this Country remarkable enough to merit a particular Description.

1. *Mormaut*, Lat. *Mormotium*, begins in *Hainault* near *Quésnoy*, reaches several Leagues towards *Vermandois*, contains some Towns and Villages, and many Hamlets. Some place it betwixt the *Sambre* and the *Maes*.

2. The Wood of *St. Amand* in the same Province, which begins on the Borders of *French Flanders*, and reaches near *Valenciennes*.

3. The Forrest of *Faigne*, Lat. *Sylva Faghiensis*, begins near *Auennes* in *Hainault*, and reaches to *Mezières* in *Champagne*, above 16 Leagues, but formerly much larger.

4. The Forrest of *Soignies* near *Brussels*, above 7 Leagues in Compass, and includes above 8000 Acres, 100 of which are cut down every Year, and replanted. 'Twas said to yield the King of *Spain* 50000 *Florens per Annum*. It contains a Castle, called

that of the Three Fountains, several Villages, Abbies and Monasteries, and Gentlemen's Country-Houses.

6. *Meerdale*, *Zavinterlo*, *Grotenhout*, and *Tournhout*, between *Louvain*, *Brussels*, and *Vilvoord*.

7. *Marlaigne*, on the Bank of the *Maes*, reaches from the Castle of *Namur* near *Philipville*.

8. *Niepe*, near the Borders of *Arras*, is the chief Forrest in *Flanders*, reaches as far as the River *Lys*; and that of *Nonnen* near *Ipres*, which reaches a great way N. and comprehends a great many Abbies and Villages.

9. *Pondsberg*, on the Borders of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, between *Grazant* and *Lessine*, a large Forrest, almost of an orbicular Figure. These 3 were Part of the Forrest of *Ardenne*.

10. *Le Blois Guillaume* in *Artois*, near *Renty*.

11. *Echterwald* in the Dutchy of *Guelderland*, near *Arnhem*.

12. *Sevenwolden* in *Friesland*, formerly mentioned; but it must be observed, that the State of these Woods and Forrests, is much alter'd since *Guicciardin* writ, from whom we have this Account. There are no Hills nor Mountains in this Country remarkable enough to merit a particular Description.



